# FINAL SUPPLEMENTAL ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT / SUPPLEMENTAL OVERSEAS ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT FOR SURVEILLANCE TOWED ARRAY SENSOR SYSTEM LOW FREQUENCY ACTIVE (SURTASS LFA) SONAR


DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY
CHIEF OF NAVAL OPERATIONS

**JUNE 2019**

# FINAL SUPPLEMENTAL ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT/SUPPLEMENTAL OVERSEAS ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT FOR SURVEILLANCE TOWED ARRAY SENSOR SYSTEM LOW FREQUENCY (SURTASS LFA) SONAR

**JUNE 2019**

# Abstract

**Designation:** Final Supplemental Environmental Impact Statement/Supplemental Overseas Environmental Impact Statement

**Title of Proposed Action:** SURTASS LFA Sonar Training and Testing

**Lead Agency:** Department of the Navy

**Cooperating Agency:** National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources

**Affected Region:** Western and Central North Pacific and Eastern Indian oceans

**Action Proponent:** Chief of Naval Operations

**Point of Contact:**
CAPT J. Thompson
SURTASS LFA Sonar SEIS/SOEIS Program Manager
4350 Fairfax Drive, Suite 600
Arlington, Virginia 22203
eisteam@surtass-lfa-eis.com

**Date:** June 2019

The Department of the Navy has prepared this Supplemental Environmental Impact Statement/Supplemental Overseas Environmental Impact Statement (SEIS/SOEIS) in accordance with the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA), as implemented by the Council on Environmental Quality Regulations and Navy regulations for implementing NEPA. The proposed action is the continued use of SURTASS LFA sonar onboard U.S. Navy surveillance ships for training and testing in the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans, with certain geographic constraints and mitigation and monitoring protocols applied. This SEIS/SOEIS evaluates the potential environmental impacts associated with the two action alternatives, Alternatives 1 and 2, and the No-Action Alternative to the following resource areas: air quality, marine environment, biological, and economic resources.

# Executive Summary

The United States (U.S.) Department of the Navy (Navy) has prepared this Supplemental Environmental Impact Statement/Overseas Environmental Impact Statement (SEIS/SOEIS) as a comprehensive assessment of the environmental impacts associated with the use of Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System (SURTASS) Low Frequency Active (LFA) sonar systems. The Navy as the lead agency for the Proposed Action is responsible for the scope and content of this SEIS/SOEIS. In accordance with 40 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) 1501.6, the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) is a cooperating agency, since the scope of the Proposed Action and alternatives involve activities that have the potential to impact protected marine resources under NMFS's jurisdiction, including marine mammals, threatened and endangered species, and essential fish habitat (EFH). In accordance with Council on Environmental Quality (CEQ) regulations, the Navy would issue a Record of Decision (ROD) that provides the rationale for choosing one of the alternatives. Since the issuance of an Incidental Take Authorization (ITA) is a major federal action under NEPA, NMFS, in accordance with 40 CFR 1506.3 and 1505.2, intends to adopt this SEIS/OSEIS and issue a separate ROD associated with its decision to grant or deny the Navy's request for an ITA.

On July 15, 2016, the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Ninth Circuit issued a decision in Natural Resources Defense Council (NRDC), et al. versus Pritzker, et al., which was an appeal of a challenge to NMFS's 2012 MMPA Final Rule for SURTASS LFA sonar. Both the Navy and NMFS have carefully and fully considered the Ninth Circuit's decision and have addressed it herein, as appropriate. The court ultimately dismissed the case in 2017 as a result of a settlement agreement.

On August 10, 2017, in consultation with the Secretary of Commerce and pursuant to Title 16, Section 1371(f) U.S. Code (U.S.C.), the Secretary of Defense determined that it was necessary for the national defense to exempt all military readiness activities that employ SURTASS LFA sonar from compliance with the requirements of the MMPA for two years from August 13, 2017 through August 12, 2019, or until such time when NMFS issues the required regulations and a Letter of Authorization (LOA) under Title 16, Section 1371, whichever is earlier. During the two-year exemption period, all military readiness activities that involve the use of SURTASS LFA sonar are required to comply with all mitigation, monitoring, and reporting measures set forth in the 2017 National Defense Exemption (NDE) for SURTASS LFA sonar.

**Proposed Action**

The Navy proposes to continue utilizing SURTASS LFA and compact LFA (CLFA) sonar systems onboard U.S. Navy surveillance ships for training and testing activities conducted under the authority of the Secretary of the Navy in the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans. In this SEIS/SOEIS, the terms "SURTASS LFA sonar" or "SURTASS LFA sonar systems" are inclusive of both the LFA and CLFA systems, each having similar acoustic operating characteristics. The Navy currently has four surveillance ships that utilize SURTASS LFA sonar systems but may develop and field additional SURTASS LFA sonar equipped vessels, either to replace or complement the Navy's current SURTASS LFA sonar equipped fleet. Under the 2017 NDE, the Navy is currently allowed to transmit 255 hours of LFA sonar transmission hours per vessel per year or a total of 1,020 sonar transmission hours per year. Under Alternative 1 of this SEIS/SOEIS, the Navy would transmit 360 hours of LFA sonar transmissions per year pooled across all SURTASS LFA sonar equipped vessels, while under Alternative 2, the Navy's Preferred Alternative, the Navy would transmit 496 total hours of LFA sonar transmissions per year across all SURTASS LFA sonar equipped vessels in the first four years, and would increase usage to 592 total hours of LFA sonar transmissions in year five and continuing into the foreseeable future, regardless of the number of vessels.

The geographic scope of the previous National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) and Executive Order (EO) 12114, *Environmental Effects Abroad of Major Federal Actions,* documents for SURTASS LFA sonar routine training, testing, and military operations was the non-polar areas of the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian oceans and the Mediterranean Sea. The geographic scope of this SEIS/SOEIS and the Navy's Proposed Action is the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans. The Navy scoped the geographic extent of this document to better reflect the areas where the Navy anticipates conducting SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities now and into the foreseeable future.

Since acoustic stimuli from use of SURTASS LFA sonar during training and testing has the potential to cause harassment of marine mammals, the Navy submitted an application to NMFS requesting authorization for the taking of marine mammals pursuant to section 101(a)(5)(A) of the MMPA and 50 CFR 216 (NMFS's implementing regulations). Once NMFS determines an application is adequate and complete, NMFS has a corresponding duty to determine whether and how to authorize take of marine mammals incidental to the activities described in the application. To authorize the incidental take of marine mammals, NMFS evaluates the best available scientific information to determine whether the take would have a negligible impact on the affected marine mammal species or stocks and an unmitigable impact on their availability for taking for subsistence uses. NMFS also must prescribe the "means of effecting the least practicable adverse impact" on the affected species or stocks and their habitat, and on the availability of those species or stocks for subsistence uses, as well as monitoring and reporting requirements. NMFS cannot issue an ITA unless it can make the required findings. NMFS proposed action is a direct outcome of responding to the Navy's request for an ITA.

**Purpose of and Need for the Proposed Action**

The Navy's statutory mission is the maintenance, training, equipping, and operation of combat-ready naval forces capable of accomplishing America's strategic objectives, deterring maritime aggression, and maintaining freedom of navigation in ocean areas (10 U.S.C. Section 5062). By law, the Secretary of the Navy is responsible for functions such as training, supplying, equipping, and maintaining naval forces that are ready to achieve national security objectives as directed by the National Command Authorities. Preparing and maintaining forces skilled in anti-submarine warfare (ASW) is a critical part of the Navy's mission. The purpose of the proposed action is to ensure that the Navy remains proficient in the use of SURTASS LFA sonar in support of the Navy's mission. The need for the Proposed Action is to maintain a system capable of detecting at long ranges the increasingly technologically advanced foreign submarine presence that threatens our national security.

The purpose of NMFS's action—which is a direct outcome of the Navy's request for authorization to take marine mammals incidental to SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities—is to evaluate the Navy's application pursuant to section 101(a)(5)(A) of the MMPA and 50 CFR 216 and issue an incidental take authorization if appropriate. The need for NMFS's action is to consider the impacts of the Navy's activities on marine mammals and ultimately allow the Navy to conduct its activities in compliance with the MMPA if the requirements of section 101(a)(5)(A) are satisfied. In short, the Navy submitted an application demonstrating the need and potential eligibility for an ITA under the MMPA, thus NMFS has a corresponding duty to determine whether and how to authorize take of marine mammals incidental to the activities described in the application.

**Alternatives Considered**

Alternatives were developed for analysis based upon the following reasonable alternative screening factors that allow the Navy to: meet all training and testing requirements for SURTASS LFA sonar systems, vessels, and crews; and meet all requirements for scheduling of maintenance and repair as well as vessel crews for SURTASS LFA sonar vessels. After consideration of the screening factors, the Navy has carried forward two action alternatives for analysis that meet the purpose and need for the Proposed Action.

Under the No Action Alternative, the Proposed Action would not occur, and the SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities would not occur. Although the No Action Alternative does not meet the purpose and need for the Proposed Action, it was nonetheless carried forward to provide a baseline for environmental consequences. For NMFS, pursuant to its obligation to grant or deny permit applications under the MMPA, the No Action Alternative involves NMFS' denial of Navy's application for an incidental take authorization under Section 101(a)(5)(A) of the MMPA. If NMFS were to deny the Navy's applications based upon the assumption that the Navy's proposed action would not occur, the Navy would not be authorized to incidentally take marine mammals associated with SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities.

Both action alternatives include the use of SURTASS LFA sonar systems, with geographical mitigations to include maintaining SURTASS LFA sonar received levels (RLs) below 180 decibels (dB) re 1 microPascal (µPa) (root-mean-square [rms]) (sound pressure level [SPL]) within 12 nautical miles (nmi) (22 kilometers [km]) of any emergent land and within 0.54 nautical mile (nmi) (1 kilometer [km]) of the boundary of a designated offshore biologically important area (OBIA) during their respective effective periods when significant biological activity occurs. Additionally, no more than 25 percent of the authorized amount of SURTASS LFA sonar would be used for training and testing activities within 10 nmi (18.5 km) of any single OBIA during any year unless there is a national security requirement. Furthermore, the SURTASS LFA sonar RLs would not exceed 145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) within known recreational and commercial dive sites unless the following conditions are met: should national security present a requirement to transmit SURTASS LFA sonar during training or testing activities such that exposure at known recreational or commercial dive may exceed RLs equal to 145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL), naval units would obtain permission from the appropriate designated Command authority prior to commencement of the activity; prior to conducting the training or testing activity, the designated Command authority shall conduct a risk assessment, taking into account the potential for exposure of SURTASS LFA sonar to divers.

Under Alternative 1, the maximum number of pooled LFA sonar transmission hours would not exceed 360 hours across all SURTASS LFA sonar-equipped vessels per year. Under Alternative 2 (Preferred Alternative), the annual pooled LFA sonar transmission hours are increased to 496 hours total per year across all SURTASS LFA sonar-equipped vessels in the first four years of the effective period, with the number of transmission hours increasing to 592 hours across all vessels during year 5 and continuing into the foreseeable future, regardless of the number of SURTASS LFA sonar-equipped vessels.

**Summary of Environmental Resources Evaluated in the SEIS/SOEIS**

CEQ regulations, NEPA, and Navy instructions for implementing NEPA and Executive Order 12114 specify that a SEIS/SOEIS should address those resource areas potentially subject to impacts. In addition, the level of analysis should be commensurate with the anticipated level of environmental impact. The following resource areas have been addressed in this SEIS/SOEIS: air quality, marine environment, biological, and economic resources. Since potential impacts were considered to be negligible or nonexistent for the following resources, they were not evaluated in this SEIS/SOEIS: airspace, geological resources, cultural resources, land use, infrastructure, transportation, public health and safety, hazardous materials and wastes, sociologic, and environmental justice.

Air quality may be affected as SURTASS LFA sonar vessels conduct training and testing activities in the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans. During the execution of their training and testing missions, SURTASS LFA sonar vessels would emit air pollutants and greenhouse gases into the atmosphere as the result of their engine's combustion of marine diesel fuel necessary to operate the vessels.

The only potential impact on marine environment resources associated with SURTASS LFA sonar activities is the addition of underwater sound to the ambient noise environment during use of both the SURTASS LFA sonar and the associated high frequency/marine mammal monitoring (HF/M3) sonar system. The parameters at which the HF/M3 sonar operates and the high transmission loss of its HF signals reduce the possibility for HF/M3 sonar to contribute to the ambient noise environment or affect marine animals. Therefore, the focus of the SEIS/SOEIS's analysis was on the intermittent increase in the ambient noise level in the frequency band (100 to 500 Hz) in which LFA sonar operates.

Biological resources that may be impacted by the proposed action are marine habitats and marine species, including marine and anadromous fishes, sea turtles, and marine mammals. The marine species that were evaluated must: 1) occur within the same ocean region as SURTASS LFA sonar use, and 2) possess some sensory mechanism that allows them to perceive low-frequency (LF) sound, and/or 3) possess tissue with sufficient acoustic impedance mismatch to be affected by LF sounds. Fishes are able to detect sound, although there is remarkable variation in hearing capabilities amongst species. While it is not easy to generalize about hearing capabilities due to this diversity, most fishes known to detect sound can at least hear frequencies from below 50 Hertz (Hz) up to 800 Hz, while a large subset of fishes can detect sounds to approximately 4,000 Hz and another, very small subset can detect sounds up to about 110,000 Hz. Thus, many species of fishes can potentially hear SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions and were considered for potential impacts. It is also likely that all potentially occurring species of sea turtles hear LF sound, at least as adults, and so were considered for potential impacts. Marine mammals are highly adapted marine animals, able to detect underwater sound. Marine mammal species that may occur in areas in which SURTASS LFA sonar might operate were included in the impact analysis. Four types of marine habitat areas, critical habitat, EFH, marine protected areas, and national marine sanctuaries, which are all protected under U.S. legislation, were considered in the impact analysis.

**Summary of Potential Environmental Consequences of the Action Alternatives and Major Mitigating Actions**

***Air Quality***: Effects on air quality are based on estimated direct and indirect emissions associated with the action alternatives. Under both action alternatives, SURTASS LFA sonar vessels would conduct training and testing activities potentially in the territorials seas (waters between 3 and 12 nmi [5.6 to 22 km] from shore) of the U.S. in Hawaii, Guam, and the Commonwealtlh of the Northern Marianas (CNMI) as well as in the global commons (i.e., beyond the territorial seas of any nation). An analysis of the potential HAP and greenhouse gas discharges resulting from the operation of the four SURTASS LFA sonar vessels in the global commons (95 percent of vessel operations) and in U.S. territorial seas (5 percent of vessel operations) was conducted. Although the action alternatives relate principally to the number of LFA sonar transmission hours per year, the air quality analysis focused on the annual movements of the LFA sonar vessels as they conducted their sonar missions per Alternatives 1 and 2.

The maximum estimated air emission of any of the six criteria air pollutants generated by the existing four SURTASS LFA sonar vessels under Alternatives 1 or 2 training and testing activities in both the global commons was nitrogen oxides. Nitrogen oxide concentrations were more than an order of magnitude greater than all other air pollutant concentrations estimated under both action alternatives. Estimates of the greenhouse gas emissions under Alternative 1 and Alternative 2 were estimated relative to the greenhouse gas, carbon dioxide ($CO_2$), and are expressed as $CO_2$ equivalency. The total estimated $CO_2$ equivalencies estimated for Alternatives 1 and 2 ranged from 5,329 to 8,764 metric tons per year $CO_2$ equivalency. To put these emission values into a more understandable perspective, the annual average $CO_2$ equivalency emissions from international shipping for the period 2007 to 2012 was 846,000,000 metric tons. Based on the small quantities of expected air emissions resulting from Alternatives 1 or 2, the meteorology of the study area, and the frequency and isolation of the proposed training and testing activities, the incremental contribution of air emissions resulting from the execution of the Proposed Action would not result in measurable additional impacts on air quality in the study area or beyond. Thus, the execution of the Proposed Action would not result in significant impacts to Air Quality.

***Marine Environment***: When deployed and transmitting, sound generated by SURTASS LFA sonar would temporarily add to the ambient noise level in the frequency band (100 to 500 Hz) in which SURTASS LFA sonar operates, but the impact on the overall noise level in the ocean would be minimal. SURTASS LFA sonar produces a coherent LF signal with a duty cycle of less than 20 percent and an average pulse length of 60 seconds (sec). In most oceans, the LF (10 to 500 Hz) portion of the ambient noise level is dominated by anthropogenic noise sources, particularly shipping and seismic airguns. The total energy output of individual sources was considered in calculating an annual noise energy budget (Hildebrand, 2005). The percentage of the total anthropogenic acoustic energy budget added by LFA source transmissions is estimated to be 0.21 percent under Alternative 1 and 0.29 and 0.34 percent, respectively, for years 1 to 4 and year 5 and beyond, under Alternative 2 when commercial supertankers, seismic airguns, mid-frequency military sonar, and SURTASS LFA sonar were considered. Implementation of either action alternative would not result in significant impacts to resources of the marine environment.

***Biological Resources***: Of the potential biological stressors associated with the Navy's proposed action, the only stressor that is likely to affect marine species or critical habitat is the transmission of LFA sonar signals. The potential for acoustic impacts to marine animals is assessed in the context of how impacts on individual animals affect the fitness or survivorship of the population or stock that comprise those individuals. Individual marine animals may experience behavioral responses that are not likely to result in fitness consequences for individuals or adverse population level impacts that exceed the least practicable adverse impact standard. Potential impacts on marine animals from transmission of SURTASS LFA sonar include:

- Non-auditory impacts: direct acoustic impact on tissue, indirect acoustic impact on tissue surrounding a structure, and acoustically mediated bubble growth within tissues from supersaturated dissolved nitrogen gas;
- Auditory impacts: permanent threshold shift (PTS), which is a permanent loss of hearing sensitivity over the frequency band of the exposure, or temporary threshold shift (TTS), in which

an animal's hearing sensitivity over the frequency band of exposure is impaired for a period of time (minutes to days);

- Behavioral change: for military readiness activities such as the use of SURTASS LFA sonar, Level B incidental "harassment" under the MMPA is defined as any act that disturbs or is likely to disturb a marine mammal by causing disruption of natural behavioral patterns to a point where the patterns are abandoned or significantly altered;
- Masking: when sounds in the environment interfere with an animal's ability to hear sounds of interest; and
- Physiological stress: a response in a physiological mediator (e.g., glucocorticoids, cytokines, or thyroid hormones).

Given the studies of sound exposure to fishes, the potential for impacts is restricted to within close proximity of SURTASS LFA sonar while it is transmitting sound. A summary of the thresholds defined by Popper et al. (2014), and modified by DoN (2017c), to account for the signal duration of exposure and add fishes with high-frequency hearing sensitivity, shows the probability of an impact is low to moderate and would require fishes to be within close proximity (<0.54 nmi [<1 km]) of the SURTASS LFA sonar while it was transmitting sound. The potential is minimal to negligible for an individual fish to experience non-auditory impacts, auditory impacts, or a stress response. A low potential for minor, temporary behavioral responses or masking of an individual fish may occur when SURTASS LFA sonar is transmitting sound, but there is no potential for fitness level consequences. Since a minimal to negligible portion of any fish stock would need to be in sufficient proximity during SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions to experience such impacts, the potential is minimal for SURTASS LFA sonar to affect fish stocks.

The paucity of data on underwater hearing sensitivities of sea turtles, whether sea turtles use underwater sound, or the responses of sea turtles to sound exposures make a quantitative analysis of the potential impacts from SURTASS LFA sonar signals difficult (NMFS, 2012), but available information suggests that there is a low to moderate potential for impacts to occur. DoN (2017) developed an auditory weighting function and an exposure function to estimate onset TTS and PTS for sea turtles. Given the frequency at which SURTASS LFA sonar transmits sound, the most protective calculations would use the threshold for onset TTS as 200 dB re 1 $\mu Pa^2$-sec and onset PTS as 220 dB re 1 $\mu Pa^2$-sec and would be weighted by 0 dB (DoN, 2017). Given the 60-sec duration of the typical SURTASS LFA transmission, the SPL thresholds for onset TTS and onset PTS are 182 dB re 1 µPa and 202 dB re 1 µPa, respectively. Based on simple spherical spreading (i.e., transmission loss based on 20 x $\log_{10}$[range{m}]), sea turtles would need to remain within 143 ft (44 m) or 14 ft (4 m), respectively, for the duration of an entire 60-sec LFA sonar transmission to experience onset of TTS or PTS. This would require them to swim at approximately 3 knots (5.6 kilometers per hour) for the 60-sec signal, which is faster than their average swim speeds, without being detected by the HF/M3 active sonar mitigation measure. The best estimate of a threshold for behavioral response in sea turtles is 175 dB re 1 µPa SPL (rms); this RL could occur at a distance of approximately 1 nmi (2 km) from the SURTASS LFA sonar. Given these thresholds for sea turtles, the probability of TTS is low and PTS is extremely low. No evidence exists on how sea turtles use sound to communicate or capture prey, so if any hearing loss were to occur, the potential for impact on important biological functions is likely limited.

In addition, given the lack of data on the distribution and abundance of sea turtles in the open ocean, it is not feasible to estimate the percentage of a sea turtle population that could be located in a SURTASS LFA sonar model area. Given that the majority of sea turtles encountered in oceanic areas in which

SURTASS LFA sonar is proposed to operate would in high likelihood be transiting through the area and not lingering, the possibility of significant behavior changes, especially from displacement, are unlikely and there is no potential for fitness level consequences. The geographical restrictions imposed on SURTASS LFA sonar use would greatly limit the potential for exposure to occur in nearshore areas such as nesting beaches where sea turtles would be aggregated, potentially in large numbers. While it is possible that a sea turtle could hear LFA sonar transmissions if the animal were in close proximity to the transmitting SURTASS LFA sonar source, when this is combined with the low probability of sea turtles potentially being near the LFA sound source while it is transmitting, the potential for impacts from exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar is considered negligible.

When exposed to SURTASS LFA sonar, marine mammals have the potential to experience auditory impacts (i.e., PTS and TTS), behavioral change, acoustic masking, or physiological stress (Atkinson et al., 2015; Clark et al., 2009; Nowacek et al., 2007; Southall et al., 2007; NMFS, 2018; Southall et al., 2019). However, SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions are not expected to cause non-auditory impacts, such as gas bubble formation or strandings, particularly in beaked whales. One potential impact from exposure to high-intensity sound in marine mammals is auditory impacts, specifically TTS. Several studies by a number of investigators have been conducted, focusing on the relationships among the amount of TTS and the level, duration, and frequency of the stimulus (Finneran, 2017; NMFS, 2018; Southall et al., 2019). None of these studies on marine mammals have resulted in direct data on the potential for PTS, empirical measurements of hearing, or the impacts of noise on hearing for baleen whales (mysticetes), which are believed to be most sensitive to SURTASS LFA sonar. In preceding SURTASS LFA sonar documentation (DoN, 2001, 2007, 2012, 2015, 2017), the potential for PTS and TTS was evaluated as MMPA Level A harassment for all marine mammals at RLs greater than or equal to 180 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL), even though NMFS stated that TTS is not a physical injury in MMPA rulemaking for SURTASS LFA sonar (NOAA, 2002, 2007, 2012). Since the 2012 SEIS/SOEIS was released, NMFS published acoustic guidance that incorporates new data and summarizes the best available information, the auditory weighting functions and acoustic thresholds of which were recently confirmed in a peer-reviewed scientific publication (Southall et al., 2019). The NMFS acoustic guidance defines hearing groups, develops auditory weighting functions, and identifies acoustic threshold levels at which PTS and TTS occur (NMFS, 2018). The Navy used this methodology for estimating the potential for PTS and TTS for SURTASS LFA sonar.

The potential impact on marine mammals from exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar is change in a biologically significant behavior. The Low Frequency Sound Scientific Research Program (LFS SRP) in 1997 to 1998 provided important results on, and insights into, the types of responses by baleen whales (mysticetes) to SURTASS LFA sonar signals and how those responses scaled relative to RL and context. These experiments still represent the most relevant predictions of the potential for behavioral changes from exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar. The results of the LFS SRP confirmed that some portion of the total number of baleen whales exposed to SURTASS LFA sonar responded behaviorally by changing their vocal activity, moving away from the source vessel, or both; but the responses were short-lived and animals returned to their normal activities within tens of minutes after initial exposure (Clark and Fristrup, 2001). The fact that none of the LFS SRP observations revealed a significant change in a biologically important behavior helped determine an upper bound for exposure risk. However, the LFS SRP results cannot be used to prove that there is zero risk at these levels. These LFS SRP results were used to derive the risk continuum function for SURTASS LFA sonar, from which the potential for biologically significant behavioral response was calculated. The SRP-based data on baleen whale responses to LFA sonar are realistic contextually and remain the best available data for the purpose of predicting potential impacts on LF-sensitive marine mammals from exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar.

The potential for masking and physiological stress to marine mammals was assessed with the best available data. The potential for masking from SURTASS LFA sonar signals is limited because no single frequency is transmitted for longer than 10 sec, and signals that consist of many frequencies do not span more than 30 Hz (i.e., they have limited bandwidths). Furthermore, when SURTASS LFA sonar is being used, the source is active only 7.5 to 10 percent of the time, with a maximum 20 percent duty cycle, which means that for 80 to 92.5 percent of the time, there is no potential for masking. More research is needed to understand the potential for physiological stress in marine mammals during noise exposure scenarios. The existing data suggest a variable response that depends on the characteristics of the received signal and an animal's prior experience with the received signal.

A quantitative impact analysis was conducted for marine mammals to assess their potential for PTS, TTS, and behavioral change. Fifteen representative modeling areas in the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans that represent the acoustic regimes and marine mammal species that may be encountered during LFA sonar activities were analyzed. To predict acoustic exposure, the SURTASS LFA sonar ship was simulated traveling in a triangular pattern at a speed of 4 knots (kt) (7.4 km per hour [kph]) for a 24-hr period, with a signal duration of 60 sec and a duty cycle of 10 percent (i.e., the source transmitted for 60 sec every 10 min for 24 hr). The acoustic field around the LFA sonar source was predicted with the Navy standard parabolic equation propagation model using the defined LFA sonar operating parameters.

Each marine mammal species potentially occurring in a model area in each of the four seasons was simulated by creating animats (model simulated animals) programmed with behavioral values describing their dive and movement patterns, including dive depth, dive duration, surfacing time, swimming speed, and direction change. The Acoustic Integration Model© (AIM) integrated the acoustic field created from the underwater transmissions of SURTASS LFA sonar with the three-dimensional movement of marine mammals to estimate their potential sonar exposure at each 30-sec timestep within the 24-hour (hr) modeling period. The sound energy received by each individual animat over the 24-hr modeled period was calculated as sound exposure level (SEL), and the potential for PTS and TTS was considered using the NMFS (2018) guidance. The sound energy received by each individual animat over the 24-hr modeled period was also calculated as dB single ping equivalent (SPE)[1] and used as input to the LFA risk continuum function to assess the potential risk of a behavioral reaction.

The results of these 24-hr sonar use simulations were scaled to calculate the potential annual impacts per activity, which were then summed across the stocks for a total potential impact for all activities. The scaling included determining the number of LFA sonar transmission hours that might occur in each model area, for each activity, and multiplying by the maximum 24-hr impact level for each stock that might occur in that model area. The end result was the number of individuals and the percentage of the stock or population that may experience TTS or behavioral changes from SURTASS LFA sonar exposures

1 The term "Single Ping Equivalent" (SPE) used herein is an intermediate calculation for input to the behavioral risk continuum used in the acoustic impact analysis for SURTASS LFA sonar. SPE accounts for the energy of all SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions that a modeled animal ("animat") receives during a 24-hr period of a SURTASS LFA sonar use as well as an approximation of the manner in which the effect of repeated exposures accumulate. As such, the SPE metric incorporates both physics and biology. Calculating the potential behavioral risk from exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar is a complex process and the reader is referred to Appendix B for details. As discussed in Appendix B, SPE is a function of SPL, not SEL. SPE levels will be expressed as "dB SPE" in this document, as they have been presented in preceding environmental compliance documentation for SURTASS LFA sonar: FOEIS/FEIS (DoN, 2001); FSEIS (DoN, 2007); FSEIS/SOEIS (DoN, 2012); FSEIS/SOEIS (DoN, 2015); and FSEIS/SOEIS (DoN, 2017).

on an annual basis. When mitigation is applied in the modeling-analysis environment, estimations of PTS effects were 0 for all species. Therefore, no PTS (MMPA Level A incidental harassment) is expected with the implementation of mitigation measures. As the result, no MMPA Level A incidental harassment takes have been requested from NMFS.

Thus, the anticipated impact associated with use of SURTASS LFA sonar during training and testing activities is MMPA Level B harassment of marine mammals. For most stocks of marine mammal species, the maximum annual percent of the stock or population that may experience Level B incidental harassment is less than 15 percent. This means that during one 24-hr period during the year, less than 15 percent of the population may react to SURTASS LFA sonar by changing behavior or moving a small distance, or may experience TTS. Of the 139 stocks within the SURTASS LFA sonar study area, eight stocks under Alternative 1 and eleven stocks in years 1 to 4 and fifteen stocks in years 5 and beyond under Alternative 2 have the potential for MMPA Level B incidental harassment greater than 15 percent. The highest percentage of a population that may experience Level B harassment is the WNP stock and DPS of humpback whales at 157.68 percent under Alternative 1 and 233.84 percent and 321.49 percent in years 1 to 4 and years 5 and beyond, respectively, under Alternative 2. This means that each individual in the population may react behaviorally or have TTS one to three times during one year. The percentage of the WNP stock and DPS of humpback whales that may experience Level B harassment is influenced by the size of the population, which is small (1,328 individuals). The next highest stock is the WNP stock of killer whales, with 53.41 percent potentially experiencing Level B harassment under Alternative 1 and 85.37 percent and 117.31 percent in years 1 to 4 and years 5 and beyond, respectively, under Alternative 2.

The potential for impacts to marine habitats, including critical habitat, EFH, marine protected areas, and national marine sanctuaries, was considered within the context of the addition of sound energy to the marine environment while SURTASS LFA sonar is transmitting. SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions represent a vanishingly small percentage of the overall annual underwater acoustic energy budget, and the proposed LFA sonar transmissions would not only intermittently add sound to the ambient noise environment and only to a limited ocean area. As such, SURTASS LFA sonar activities would not significantly affect the ambient noise environment of marine habitats.

The objective of mitigation for SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities is the reduction or avoidance of potential effects to marine animals and marine habitat. This mitigation objective is met by ensuring that the activities under the Proposed Action:

- Not expose coastal waters within 12 nmi (22 km) of emergent land to SURTASS LFA sonar signal RLs ≥180 dB re 1 µPa (rms)(SPL);
- Transmit SURTASS LFA sonar such that RLs ≥180 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) would result within 0.54 nmi (1 km) of the boundary of any OBIA during biologically important seasons;
- Use no more than 25 percent of the authorized amount of SURTASS LFA sonar for training and testing activities within 10 nmi (18.5 km) of any single OBIA during any year unless the following condition is met: should national security present a requirement to conduct more than 25 percent of the authorized hours of SURTASS LFA sonar within 10 nmi (18.5 km) of any single OBIA during any year, naval units would obtain permission from the appropriate designated Command authority prior to commencement of the activity. The Navy would provide NMFS with notification as soon as is practicable and include relevant information (e.g., sonar hours) in the annual activity reports submitted to NMFS.

- Minimize exposure of marine mammals and sea turtles to RLs of SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions by monitoring for their presence and delaying/suspending SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions when one of these animals enters the 2,000 yard (1.8 km) LFA mitigation/buffer zone; and
- Do not transmit SURTASS LFA sonar such that RLs = 145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) would occur at known recreational or commercial dive sites unless the following conditions are met: should national security present a requirement to transmit SURTASS LFA sonar during training or testing activities such that exposure at known recreational or commercial dive may exceed RLs equal to 145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL), naval units would obtain permission from the appropriate designated Command authority prior to commencement of the activity. Prior to conducting the training or testing activity, the designated Command authority shall conduct a risk assessment, taking into account the potential for exposure of SURTASS LFA sonar to divers.

The Navy and NMFS have designated 14 marine mammal OBIAs for SURTASS LFA sonar, which include expansions of all four OBIAs already designated in the study area; the Navy Fleet has assessed the practicability of implementing these OBIAs and has concurred that neither the national security mission nor personnel safety would be impacted by implementing the OBIAs.

The Navy would cooperate with NMFS and other federal agencies to monitor impacts on marine mammals and to designate qualified on-site personnel to conduct mitigation monitoring and reporting activities. The Navy would continue to conduct the following monitoring to prevent injury to marine animals whenever SURTASS LFA sonar is transmitting during training and testing activities:

- Visual monitoring for marine mammals and sea turtles from the SURTASS LFA sonar vessels during daylight hours by personnel trained to detect and identify marine mammals and sea turtles;
- Passive acoustic monitoring using the passive SURTASS towed array to listen for sounds generated by marine mammals as an indicator of their presence; and
- Active acoustic monitoring using the HF/M3 sonar, which is a Navy-developed, enhanced HF commercial sonar, to detect, locate, and track marine mammals and, to some extent, sea turtles, that may pass close enough to the SURTASS LFA sonar's transmit array to enter the LFA mitigation/buffer zone.

***Economic Resources***: Analysis of impacts to economic resources is focused on potential impacts to commercial fisheries, subsistence harvesting of marine mammals, and recreational marine activities. If SURTASS LFA sonar use were to occur in proximity to fish stocks, members of some fish species could potentially be affected by the transmitted LF sounds, but no potential exists for fitness level consequences or impacts to fish stocks. Due to the negligible impacts on fishes from the use of SURTASS LFA sonar within the required guidelines and restrictions, a negligible impact on commercial fisheries is estimated. The SURTASS LFA sonar study area does not overlap in time or space with subsistence hunts of marine mammals, so there would be no impact on the availability of marine mammal species or stocks for subsistence use. No significant impacts on recreational swimming, snorkeling, diving, or whale watching activities would result from the use of SURTASS LFA sonar due to the application of geographic restrictions for SURTASS LFA sonar use.

**Impact Summary**

The potential impacts under both action alternatives have been summarized for the resources potentially impacted by SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities (Table ES-1).

**Public Involvement**

On June 5, 2015, the Navy published a Notice of Intent (NOI) in the *Federal Register* (80 FR 32097) to prepare a SEIS/SOEIS for the continued employment of SURTASS LFA sonar and to support consultations associated with expiring MMPA and ESA 5-year regulatory permits for SURTASS LFA sonar (DoN, 2015b). The NOI provides an overview of the proposed action. No comments were received in response to the NOI.

Although the Navy prepared and completed a FSEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA sonar on June 30, 2017, and a Notice of Availability for the FSEIS/SOEIS was published in the *Federal Register* on July 7, 2017, no ROD detailing the Navy's decision, alternative selected, or mitigation and monitoring plan for the employment of SURTASS LFA sonar was issued. The Navy determined that the purposes of NEPA and EO 12114 relevant to SURTASS LFA sonar begun in June 2015 with the publication of a NOI would be furthered by the preparation of this additional SEIS/SOEIS. The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) published the Notice of Availability for the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA sonar use in the *Federal Register* on September 7, 2018. Per CEQ regulation (40 CFR §1506.10), a 45-day comment and review period commenced, ending on October 22, 2018. In conjunction with filing the Draft SEIS/SOEIS with the EPA and announcing its public availability, correspondence was sent notifying appropriate federal and state government agencies and organizations as well as other interested parties of the Draft SEIS/SOEIS' availability on the SURTASS LFA sonar website and at appropriate public libraries, in accordance with NEPA requirements and EPA guidelines.

The Navy received comments on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS from two federal agencies, two State agencies, and one group of non-governmental organizations. The Navy and NMFS prepared responses to comments received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS (Chapter 7).

**Table ES-1. Summary of Potential Impacts to Resource Areas[2]**

| *Resource Area* | *No Action Alternative* | *Alternative 1* | *Alternative 2* |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Air Quality** | | | |
| | No impact | Minor, localized, and intermittent air emissions, principally in the atmosphere of the global commons, with a negligible added concentration of air pollutants. | |
| **Water Resources** | | | |
| | No impact | Intermittent increase in ambient noise level during SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions for 360 hours per year | Intermittent increase in ambient noise level during SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions for 498 hours in years 1 to 4 and 592 hours in year 5 and into the foreseeable future |
| **Biological Resources** | | | |
| Marine Fishes | No impact | Low to moderate probability of non-auditory, auditory, behavioral, masking, or physiological stress impacts may result when fish are in close proximity (<0.54 nmi [<1 km]) of the transmitting SURTASS LFA sonar source | |
| Sea turtles | No impact | Low to moderate potential of non-auditory, auditory, behavioral, masking, or physiological stress impacts when turtles are in close proximity (<0.54 nmi [<1 km]) of the transmitting SURTASS LFA sonar source | |
| Marine mammals | No impact | Potential for auditory or behavioral impacts evaluated quantitatively with the best available science; low to moderate probability of non-auditory, masking, or physiological stress assessed with best available scientific information and data | |
| Marine Habitats | No impact | Small, intermittent, and transitory increase in overall acoustic environment of marine habitats resulting in a negligible impact | |
| **Economic Resources** | | | |
| Commercial fisheries | No impact | Minimal potential for impacts to commercially harvested species and no potential for fitness level consequences resulting in negligible impacts on commercial fisheries | |
| Subsistence harvest of marine mammals | No impact | SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities do not overlap in time or space with subsistence hunts of marine mammals, so there would be no impact on the availability of marine mammal species or stocks for subsistence use | |

2 If the conclusions for Alternative 1 and 2 were the same, one conclusion was presented for both alternatives.

## Table ES-1. Summary of Potential Impacts to Resource Areas[2]

| *Resource Area* | *No Action Alternative* | *Alternative 1* | *Alternative 2* |
|---|---|---|---|
| Recreational marine activities | No impact | Geographic restrictions limit the received level at known recreational and commercial dive sites to no greater than 145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL)[3] and no greater than 180 dB re 1 µPa within 12 nmi (22 km) of emerged lands, resulting in no impact on recreational diving, swimming, or snorkeling. Minimal potential for impacts to fish species and no potential for fitness level consequences resulting in negligible impacts on recreational fisheries. Geographic restrictions limit the sonar levels in coastal waters in which higher concentrations of marine mammals may occur, which correlates to areas of prime whale watching and thus, would result in no impact to whale watching activities | |

3 SURTASS LFA sonar sound field would be transmitted such that RLs = 145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) would occur at known recreational or commercial dive sites, unless the following conditions are met: should national security present a requirement to transmit SURTASS LFA sonar during training or testing activities such that exposure at known recreational or commercial dive may exceed RLs equal to 145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL), naval units would obtain permission from the appropriate designated Command authority prior to commencement of the activity. Prior to conducting the training or testing activity, the designated Command authority shall conduct a risk assessment, taking into account the potential for exposure of SURTASS LFA sonar to divers.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## LIST OF TABLES

## LIST OF FIGURES

## APPENDICES

# ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

| Acronym | Definition |
|---|---|
| °C | Degrees Centigrade/Celsius |
| °F | Degrees Fahrenheit |
| µPa | microPascal(s) |
| % | percent or percentage |
| $\mu g/m^3$ | micrograms per cubic meter |
| ABR | auditory brainstem response |
| AEP | auditory evoked potential |
| AIM | Acoustic Integration Model© |
| AM | amplitude modulated |
| $animals/km^2$ | animals per square kilometer |
| ANSI | American National Standards Institute |
| ANT | Antarctic |
| APPS | Act to Prevent Pollution from Ships |
| ASN(I&E) | Assistant Secretary of the Navy (Installations and Environment) |
| ASW | anti-submarine warfare |
| BIA | Biologically Important Area |
| BO | Biological Opinion |
| BE | Biological Evaluation |
| BRF | Behavioral Risk Function |
| BRS | Behavioral Response Study |
| CAA | Clean Air Act |
| CBLUG | consolidated bottom loss upgrade |
| CEE | controlled exposure experiment |
| CEQ | Council on Environmental Quality |
| CetMap | Cetacean Density and Distribution Mapping |
| CFR | Code of Federal Regulations |
| $CH_4$ | methane |
| CI | confidence interval |
| CITES | Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species |
| CLFA | Compact Low Frequency Active |
| cm | centimeter(s) |
| CNMI | Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands |
| CNO | Chief of Naval Operations (U.S.) |
| CNP | Central North Pacific |
| CO | carbon monoxide |
| $CO_2$ | carbon dioxide |
| CPUE | catch per unit effort |
| CSM | cross spectral matrix |
| CW | continuous wave |
| CWA | Clean Water Act |
| CV | coefficient of variance |
| CZ | convergence zone |
| CZMA | Coastal Zone Management Act |
| CZMP | Coastal Zone Management Plan |
| DASNE | Deputy Assistant Secretary of the Navy for Environment |
| dB | decibel(s) |
| dB re 1 µPa | decibels referenced to one microPascal |
| dB re 1 µPa @ 1 m | decibels referenced to one microPascal measured at one meter from center of acoustic source |
| $dB\ re\ 1\ \mu Pa^2$-sec | decibels of the time integral (summation) of the squared pressure of a sound event |
| DNA | deoxyribonucleic acid |
| DoD | United States Department of Defense |
| DoI | Department of the Interior |

| Acronym | Definition |
|---|---|
| DoN | United States Department of the Navy |
| DoS | Department of State |
| DPS | distinct population segment |
| DSEIS | Draft Environmental Impact Statement |
| EBSA | Ecologically or Biologically Significant Areas |
| ECS | East China Sea |
| EEZ | exclusive economic zone |
| EFH | essential fish habitat |
| EIS | Environmental Impact Statement |
| EO | Executive Order (Presidential) |
| EOG | Executive Oversight Group |
| EP | evoked potential |
| EPA | U.S. Environmental Protection Agency |
| ESA | Endangered Species Act |
| ESU | evolutionarily significant unit(s) |
| ETP | Eastern Tropical Pacific |
| FAO | Food and Agriculture Organization |
| FEIS | Final Environmental Impact Statement |
| FM | frequency modulated |
| FMP | fishery management plan |
| FOEIS/EIS | Final Overseas Environmental Impact Statement/EIS |
| FR | Federal Register |
| FSEIS | Final Supplemental Environmental Impact Statement |
| ft | feet/foot |
| FY | fiscal year |
| GIS | geographic information system |

| Acronym | Definition |
|---|---|
| GOM | Gulf of Maine |
| GOMx | Gulf of Mexico |
| HAP | hazardous air pollutant(s) |
| HAPC | habitat areas of particular concern |
| HARP | high-frequency acoustic recording packages |
| HF | high frequency |
| HF/M3 | high frequency/marine mammal monitoring |
| HLA | horizontal line array |
| hr | hour(s) |
| Hz | Hertz |
| IA | Inshore Archipelago |
| ICES | International Council for the Exploration of the Sea |
| ICP | Integrated Common Processor |
| IMMA | Important Marine Mammal Area |
| IMO | International Maritime Organization |
| in | inch(es) |
| IND | Indian (Ocean) |
| INPOPACOM | U.S. Indo-Pacific Command |
| IPPC | Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change |
| ISR | Intelligence, Surveillance, Reconnaissance |
| ITA | Incidental Take Authorization |
| ITS | Incidental Take Statement |
| IUCN | International Union for Conservation of Nature |
| IUSS | Integrated Undersea Surveillance System |
| IWC | International Whaling Commission |
| JE | Pacific coast of Japan |
| JW | Sea of Japan (minke stock) |

| Acronym | Definition |
|---|---|
| kg | kilogram(s) |
| kHz | kiloHertz |
| km | kilometer(s) |
| $km^2$ | kilometers squared |
| kph | kilometers per hour |
| kt | knot(s) |
| LPAI | least practicable adverse impacts |
| lb | pound(s) |
| LF | low frequency |
| LFA | Low Frequency Active |
| LFS SRP | Low Frequency Sound Scientific Research Program |
| LOA | Letter of Authorization |
| m | meter(s) |
| M3 | marine mammal monitoring |
| MARPOL | marine pollution |
| MBTA | Migratory Bird Treaty Act |
| MF | mid-frequency |
| MFA | mid-frequency active |
| MHI | Main Hawaiian Islands |
| mi | mile(s) |
| MILCREW | military crew |
| min | minute(s) |
| MMC | Marine Mammal Commission |
| MMPA | Marine Mammal Protection Act |
| MNM | marine national monument |
| MPA | marine protected area |
| MPRSA | Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act |
| MSAT | mobile source air toxics |
| msec | millisecond(s) |
| MSFCMA | Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act |
| mt | metric ton(s) |

| Acronym | Definition |
|---|---|
| NAAQS | National Ambient Air Quality Standards |
| Navy | U.S. Department of the Navy |
| NDAA | National Defense Authorization Act |
| NDE | National Defense Exemption |
| NEPA | National Environmental Policy Act |
| NIND | Northern Indian (Ocean) |
| NM | National Monument |
| NMSDD | Navy Marine Species Density Database |
| NMFS | National Marine Fisheries Service |
| nmi | nautical mile(s) |
| $nmi^2$ | nautical miles squared |
| NMPAC | National Marine Protected Area Center |
| NMS | National Marine Sanctuary |
| NMSA | National Marine Sanctuary Act |
| $N_2O$ | nitrous oxide |
| $NO_2$ | nitrogen dioxide |
| NOA | Notice of Availability |
| NOAA | National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration |
| NOI | Notice of Intent |
| $NO_x$ | nitrogen oxides |
| NP | North Pacific |
| NPDES | National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System |
| NPTZ | North Pacific Transition Zone |
| NRDC | Natural Resources Defense Council |
| NRFCC | National Recreational Fisheries Coordination Council |
| NWHI | Northwest Hawaiian Islands |
| $O_3$ | ozone |

| Acronym | Definition |
|---|---|
| OAML | Oceanographic and Atmospheric Master Library |
| OAWRS | Ocean Acoustic Waveguide Remote Sensing |
| OBIA | offshore biologically important area |
| OE | Offshore Japan |
| OEIS | Overseas Environmental Impact Statement |
| OIC | Officer in Charge |
| ONI | Office of Naval Intelligence |
| ONMS | Office of National Marine Sanctuaries |
| ONR | Office of Naval Research |
| OPAREA | operating area |
| OPNAV | Office of the Chief of Naval Operations |
| OPNAVINST | Office of the Chief of Naval Operations Instruction |
| OPR | Office of Protected Resources |
| OW | otariids underwater |
| OW | Offshore Japan (minke stock) |
| Pa | Pascal |
| PADI | Professional Association of Diving Instructors |
| PE | parabolic equation |
| PEO | Program Executive Office |
| PIFSC | Pacific Islands Fishery Science Center |
| P.L. | public law |
| $PM_{2.5}$ | particulate matter less than 2.5 microns in size |
| $PM_{10}$ | particulate matter less than 10 microns in size |
| ppm | parts per million |
| psu | practical salinity unit(s) |
| PTS | permanent threshold shift |
| PW | phocids underwater |

| Acronym | Definition |
|---|---|
| RDT&E | research, development, test and evaluation |
| RFRCP | Recreational Fishery Resources Conservation Plan |
| RL | received level |
| rms | root mean squared |
| ROD | Record of Decision |
| ROI | region of influence |
| SAG | surface active group |
| SAR | Stock Assessment Report |
| SCUBA | Self-Contained Underwater Breathing Apparatus |
| SD | standard deviation |
| sec | second(s) |
| SEIS | Supplemental Environmental Impact Statement |
| SEL | sound exposure level |
| SFA | Sustainable Fisheries Act |
| SH | Southern Hemisphere |
| SIND | Southern Indian (Ocean) |
| SIP | State Implementation Plan |
| SL | source level |
| SME | subject matter expert |
| $SO_2$ | sulfur dioxide |
| SOCAL | Southern California |
| SOEIS | Supplemental Overseas Environmental Impact Statement |
| SOJ | Sea of Japan |
| SONAR | sound navigation and ranging |
| SoNG | Swatch-of-no-Ground |
| SPE | single ping equivalent |
| SPL | sound pressure level |
| spp. | species |
| SRP | Scientific Research Program |
| SRS | sanctuary resource statement |

| Acronym | Definition |
|---|---|
| SSP | sound speed profile |
| SURTASS | Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System |
| SVP | sound velocity profile |
| T-AGOS | Tactical-Auxiliary General Ocean Surveillance |
| TL | transmission loss |
| tpy | tons per year |
| TTS | temporary threshold shift |
| TZCS | Transition Zone Chlorophyll Front |
| UNEP | United Nations Environmental Program |
| UNESCO | United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization |
| U.S. | United States |
| USDC-NDC | U.S. District Court, Northern District of California |
| U.S.C. | United States Code |
| USFWS | United States Fish and Wildlife Service |
| UME | unusual mortality event |
| USNS | U.S. Naval Ship |
| USS | United States Ship |
| VLA | vertical line array |
| VOC | volatile organic compound |
| WAU | Western Australia |
| WCPA/SSC | World Commission on Protected Areas/Species Survival Commission |
| WDPA | World Database of Protected Areas |
| WDCS | Whale and Dolphin Conservation Society |
| WDPA | World Database on Protected Areas |
| WNP | Western North Pacific |
| WP | Western Pacific |
| yd | yard(s) |
| YS | Yellow Sea |

# 1 PURPOSE AND NEED FOR THE PROPOSED ACTION

## 1.1 Introduction

The United States (U.S.) Department of the Navy (Navy) proposes to continue utilizing Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System (SURTASS) Low Frequency Active (LFA) and Compact LFA sonar (CLFA) systems onboard U.S. Navy surveillance ships for training and testing activities conducted under the authority of the Secretary of the Navy in the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans[1]. In this Supplemental Environmental Impact Statement/Overseas Environmental Impact Statement (SEIS/SOEIS), the terms "SURTASS LFA sonar" or "SURTASS LFA sonar systems" are inclusive of both the LFA and CLFA systems, each having similar acoustic operating characteristics.

The types of uses of SURTASS LFA sonar analyzed in this document differ in part from the Navy's previous documents under the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) and Executive Order (EO) 12114. Use of SURTASS LFA sonar for training and testing was addressed in the previous NEPA and EO 12114 documents, and also will be addressed here. The previous NEPA and EO 12114 documents, however, also included certain military operations among the scope of actions analyzed. Specifically, while those previous documents excluded operational use of SURTASS LFA sonar in armed conflict or direct combat support operations, or during periods of heightened national threat conditions, as determined by the National Command Authority[2] (the President and the Secretary of Defense), the previous documents did include analysis of military operations that involved surveillance for and tracking of unknown or adversary underwater contacts. For the reasons discussed below, this SEIS/SOEIS does not include analysis of the potential environmental impacts of any military operations using SURTASS LFA sonar, including activities that involve surveillance for and tracking of unknown or adversary underwater contacts.

As with the use of SURTASS LFA sonar in armed conflict, direct combat support, and during periods of heightened national threat conditions as directed by the National Command Authority, so too use of SURTASS LFA sonar in surveillance for and tracking of unknown or adversary underwater contacts is a military operation directed by the National Command Authority. These events are not conducted for training or testing purposes under the Title 10 authority of the Secretary of the Navy. These activities are military operations, directed by the National Command Authority and conducted to carry out national defense purposes.

The President of the U.S. is the Commander-in-Chief and has plenary authority to formulate military strategy and to direct and deploy military forces. To carry out that authority and implement those decisions, the President acts through the Secretary of Defense, who in turn directs combatant commanders to carry out the President's direction. The responsibilities of most of these combatant commands are based on geography. Commander, U.S. Indo-Pacific Command (INDOPACOM) is the relevant combatant commander here because his or her geographic area of responsibility includes the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans.

Combatant commands execute broad continuing missions under a single commander and are composed of forces assigned from two or more military departments. Combatant commands are established and

1 Throughout this document, the terms "training and testing activities" or "covered SURTASS LFA sonar activities" are used to represent the proposed action.

2 In current documents for SURTASS LFA sonar, the term "National Command Authority" is used to describe the same two officials collectively, the President and the Secretary of Defense. This term is used in the ensuing paragraphs.

designated by the President, through the Secretary of Defense, with the advice and assistance of the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff.

The President establishes the missions, responsibilities, and force structure of the respective combatant commands, as well as their geographic areas of responsibilities, through a classified executive branch document called the Unified Command Plan. The Unified Command Plan development and review process takes into consideration, among other things, the strategic context, global economic situation, and relationship with allies in formulating the command guidance from the President to combatant commanders. The mission of INDOPACOM is to protect and defend the territory of the United States, its people, and interests. With allies and partners, INDOPACOM enhances stability in the Asia-Pacific region by promoting security cooperation, encouraging peaceful development, responding to contingencies, deterring aggression, and, when necessary, fighting to win.

Under 10 USC §164 "Commanders of combatant commands: assignment; powers and duties", "the primary duties of the commander of a combatant command shall be as follows:

> (A) To produce plans for the employment of the armed forces to execute national defense strategies and respond to significant military contingencies.
>
> (B) To take actions, as necessary, to deter conflict.
>
> (C) To command United States armed forces as directed by the Secretary and approved by the President."

Combatant commanders and SURTASS LFA sonar operational units under their direction have a duty to protect the country and defend U.S. forces from attack and have no discretion in whether they carry out that duty. These are a national defense operation, not training or testing. For example, if SURTASS LFA sonar vessels drop a track or fail to acquire contact on an unknown or adversary submarine, that could have real consequences for our national defense. Such operations are not within the responsibilities of the Secretary of the Navy and are not appropriate for NEPA analysis.

In contrast, the statutory responsibilities of the military departments (in this case the Department of the Navy) include the responsibility to train and equip forces for operational use by a combatant commander. In the case of SURTASS LFA sonar, the statutory responsibility of the Secretary of the Navy is to train sailors and equip vessels with SURTASS LFA sonar, so they are prepared to conduct military operations involving the use of SURTASS LFA sonar. As in past environmental planning documents for SURTASS LFA sonar, this document will continue to analyze the potential environmental impacts associated with training and testing activities conducted under the authority of the Secretary of the Navy, including but not limited to crew proficiency training, participation in training exercises, acoustics testing, maintenance and system checks, and new system development and testing. Military operations using SURTASS LFA sonar, on the other hand, such as surveilling for and tracking unknown or adversary underwater contacts, are excluded from this NEPA analysis because those activities are performed at the direction of the National Command Authority, acting through and in support of a combatant commander, and not the Secretary of the Navy. The Secretary of the Navy has no authority to direct or limit such military operations.

Practical considerations also lead to the conclusion that such operations are not appropriate for NEPA analysis. Environmental compliance processes stretch over years. Unlike training or testing activities, which tend to be scripted and planned in advance, real world demands for naval military operations change daily and vary based on a broad array of threat factors and geo-political considerations. When the next crisis will occur, or where an adversary submarine will transit, is largely unknown. The master of a SURTASS vessel who detects an unknown underwater contact by definition does not know the identity of that contact, its assigned mission or intentions, where it intends to transit or for how long. The operator's mission is to track that contact and pass information on its location to other naval assets in the theater of operations for their awareness and potential engagement. The operational tempo levels and geographic presence required to meet these types of contingencies are not known in advance and cannot be limited by the permitting process for takes of marine mammals that is applied for training and testing activities. Based on all of these factors, analysis of military operations using SURTASS LFA sonar is not appropriate for inclusion in the proposed action under review in this SEIS/SOEIS.

The geographic scope analyzed in this document also differs from the previous SURTASS LFA sonar documents under NEPA and EO 12114. The geographic scope of the previous NEPA and EO 12114 documents for covered SURTASS LFA sonar activities was the non-polar areas of the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian Oceans and the Mediterranean Sea. The geographic scope of this SEIS/SOEIS and the Navy's Proposed Action is the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian Oceans. The Navy scoped the geographic extent of this document to better reflect the areas where the Navy anticipates conducting SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities now and into the reasonably foreseeable future. The operating features of SURTASS LFA sonar have remained the same since the 2001 FOEIS/EIS, with the exception that the typical duty cycle of SURTASS LFA sonar (ratio of sound "on" time to total time), based on historical SURTASS LFA sonar operational parameters, is 7.5 to 10 percent (DoN, 2007) rather than 10 to 20 percent (DoN, 2001). In early 2009, the first CLFA sonar vessel became operational, with three of the four SURTASS LFA sonar vessels now operating CLFA sonar; CLFA acoustic operating characteristics are similar to that of the larger SURTASS LFA sonar system.

### 1.1.1 Litigation

On July 15, 2016, the United States Court of Appeals for the Ninth Circuit issued a decision in Natural Resources Defense Council (NRDC), et al. versus Pritzker, et al., which was an appeal of a district court decision concerning a challenge to the National Marine Fisheries Service's (NMFS's) 2012 Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) Final Rule for SURTASS LFA sonar. Both the Navy and NMFS have carefully and fully considered the Ninth Circuit's decision and have addressed it herein, as appropriate. The district court ultimately dismissed the case later in 2017 as a result of a settlement agreement among the parties.

### 1.1.2 National Defense Exemption under the Marine Mammal Protection Act

On August 10, 2017, after conferring with the Secretary of Commerce and pursuant to Title 16, Section 1371(f) U.S. Code (U.S.C.), the Secretary of Defense determined that it was necessary for the national defense to exempt all military readiness activities that employ SURTASS LFA sonar from compliance with the requirements of the MMPA for two years from August 13, 2017 through August 12, 2019, or until such time when NMFS issues the required regulations and Letters of Authorization (LOAs) under Title 16, Section 1371, whichever is earlier. During the exemption period, all military readiness activities that involve the use of SURTASS LFA sonar are required to comply with all mitigation, monitoring, and reporting measures set forth in the 2017 National Defense Exemption (NDE) for SURTASS LFA sonar (Appendix A).

### 1.1.3 2019 SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar

The Navy has determined that the purposes of NEPA and EO 12114 would be furthered by the preparation of this additional supplemental assessment of the environmental impacts associated with SURTASS LFA sonar activities as described in the Proposed Action (Chapter 2.2). The Navy has scoped this SEIS/SOEIS and the Navy' associated take requests and consultations to reflect those areas of the world's oceans (the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans) where Navy anticipates conducting SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities for the reasonably foreseeable future. The Navy has provided greater detail on the SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities in the alternative's analysis (Chapter 2.3). The geographic scope will allow the Navy to more accurately assess and describe only those impacts associated with SURTASS LFA sonar activities in areas where the Navy expects to conduct these activities. Incorporated in this SEIS/SOEIS are the most up-to-date acoustic criteria and thresholds, as well as density and abundance estimates, for assessing the potential for impacts to marine mammals associated with exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar. This SEIS/SOEIS and associated analyses are planned to support consultations associated with regulatory permits and authorizations for SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities.

This SEIS/SOEIS has been prepared in compliance with NEPA (42 U.S.C. section 4321 et seq.); EO 12114; Council on Environmental Quality (CEQ) regulations for implementing the procedural provisions of NEPA (Title 40 Code of Federal Regulations [40 CFR] parts 1500 to 1508); Navy regulations for implementing NEPA (32 CFR part 775); and Navy environmental readiness policies.

The Navy, as the lead agency for the Proposed Action, is responsible for the scope and content of this SEIS/SOEIS. In accordance with 40 CFR 1501.6, NMFS of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) is a cooperating agency, since the scope of the Proposed Action and alternatives involve activities that have the potential to impact protected marine resources under NMFS's jurisdiction, including marine mammals, threatened and endangered species, and essential fish habitat (EFH). NMFS' cooperating agency role and regulatory authorities are further discussed in Section 1.7.2 and its Proposed Action is discussed in Section 2.2. In accordance with CEQ regulations (40 CFR 1505.2), the Navy intends to issue a Record of Decision (ROD) that provides the rationale for choosing one of the alternatives.

## 1.2 Location

The location of the proposed action is the non-polar areas of the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans (Figure 1-1). Fifteen representative model areas, with nominal, regional modeling sites to cover the spatial extent of the study area, have been selected and are shown to provide geographic context (Figure 1-1).

## 1.3 Purpose of and Need for the Proposed Action: Employment of SURTASS LFA Sonar

The Navy's statutory mission is to train and equip naval forces that are combat-ready and capable of accomplishing America's strategic objectives, deterring maritime aggression, and maintaining freedom of navigation in ocean areas (10 U.S.C. Section 5062). By law, the Secretary of the Navy is responsible for functions such as training, supplying, equipping, and maintaining naval forces that are ready to achieve national security objectives as directed by the National Command Authority. Preparing and maintaining

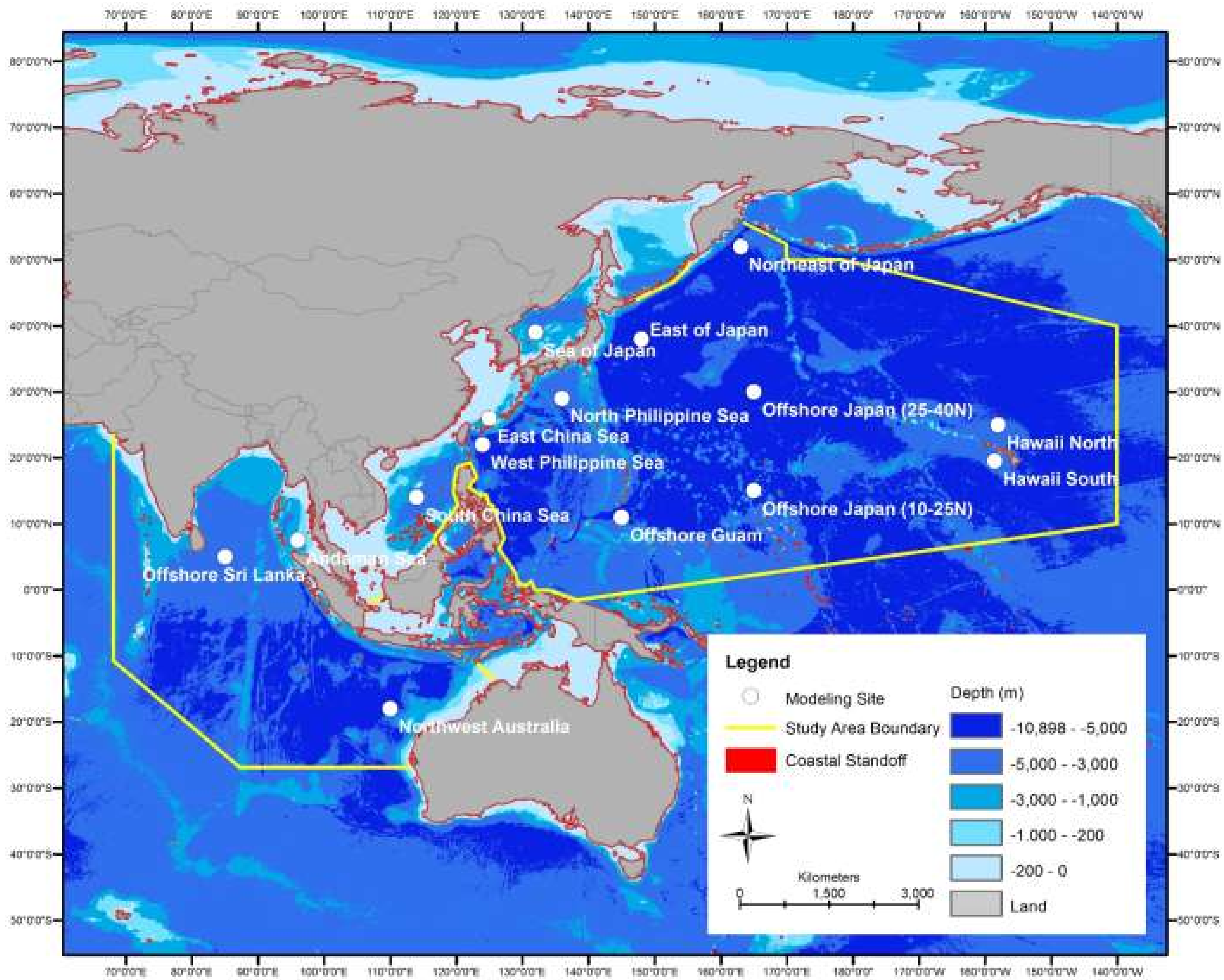



**Figure 1-1. Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar in the Western and Central North Pacific and Eastern Indian Oceans, Including Nominal Modeling Sites.**

forces skilled in anti-submarine warfare (ASW) is a critical part of the Navy's mission. Due to the advancements and use of quieting technologies in diesel-electric and nuclear submarines, undersea submarine threats have become increasingly difficult to locate solely using passive acoustic technologies. At the same time, the distance at which submarine threats can be detected has been decreasing due to these quieting technologies, and improvements in torpedo and missile design have extended the effective range of these weapons. To meet the requirement for improved capability to detect quieter and harder-to-find foreign submarines at greater distances, the Navy developed and uses SURTASS LFA sonar.

The purpose of the Navy's Proposed Action as detailed in this SEIS/SOEIS is to perform training and testing activities that ensure the Navy remains proficient in the use of SURTASS LFA sonar in support of the Navy's mission. The need for the Proposed Action is to maintain a system and crews capable of detecting at long ranges the increasingly technologically advanced foreign submarine presence that threatens our national security.

Since acoustic stimuli from the use of SURTASS LFA sonar during training and testing has the potential to cause harassment of marine mammals, the Navy submitted an application to NMFS requesting authorization for the taking of marine mammals pursuant to section 101(a)(5)(A) of the MMPA and 50 CFR 216 (NMFS's implementing regulations). Once NMFS determines an application is adequate and complete, NMFS has a corresponding duty to determine whether and how to authorize take of marine mammals incidental to the activities described in the application. To authorize the incidental take of marine mammals, NMFS evaluates the best available scientific information to determine whether the take would have a negligible impact on the affected marine mammal species or stocks and an unmitigable impact on their availability for taking for subsistence uses. NMFS must also prescribe the "means of effecting the least practicable adverse impact" on the affected species or stocks and their habitat, and on the availability of those species or stocks for subsistence uses, as well as monitoring and reporting requirements. NMFS cannot issue an incidental take authorization unless it can make the required findings. The purpose of NMFS's action – which is a direct outcome of the Navy's request for authorization to take marine mammals incidental to SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities—is to evaluate Navy's application pursuant to section 101(a)(5)(A) of the MMPA and 50 CFR 216 and issue an incidental take authorization if appropriate. The need for NMFS's action is to consider the impacts of the Navy's activities on marine mammals and ultimately allow the Navy to conduct its activities in compliance with the MMPA if the requirements of section 101(a)(5)(A) are satisfied.

### 1.3.1 Current Maritime Threats

The continued proliferation of adversary submarines poses threats not only to national security but also to regional geopolitical stability and global commerce. More than 530 submarines are operated by approximately 40 countries worldwide (Global Firepower, 2019). As a result, detection of and defense against enemy submarines is a top Navy priority. ASW training and testing activities prepare and equip sailors for countering such threats. Failure to detect and defend against hostile submarines can cost lives, such as the 46 sailors who died when a Republic of Korea frigate (CHEONAN) was sunk by a North Korean submarine in March 2010 (New York Times, 2010).

The Chief of Naval Operations (CNO) recently presented *A Design for Maintaining Maritime Superiority (Version 2.0)* (DoN, 2018) that updated Navy strategy developed in part to address the Navy's concern regarding Russian and Chinese military competition. In that document, the CNO stated, "It has been decades since last we [the U.S.] competed for sea control, sea lines of communication, access to world markets, and diplomatic partnerships. Much has changed since we last competed….China and Russia seek to accumulate power at America's expense and may imperil the diplomatic, economic, and military bonds that link the United States to its allies and partners." (DoN, 2018). In addition, the increasing military capabilities of North Korea and Iran, particularly the development of their nuclear weapon and missile programs, also represent developing national security concerns.

China has invested heavily in its military forces and has placed a high priority on the modernization of its submarine force, resulting in the rapid growth of the Chinese Navy's fleet, which is projected to surpass the U.S. Navy's fleet in number of ships by the mid-2020s (DoD, 2015; DoN, 2016). The Chinese Navy also operates one of the largest submarine fleets in the world, with about 60 commissioned submarines of all types; current estimates of the Chinese submarine fleet include 50 diesel-electric and 10 nuclear-powered submarines (Defense Intelligence Agency [DIA], 2019), although some sources have estimated the size of the Chinese Navy submarine fleet to currently include 76 vessels (Global Firepower, 2019). The U.S. Office of Naval Intelligence projects 74 Chinese submarines by 2020, including 11 nuclear-powered and 63 non-nuclear-powered submarines (ONI, 2015).

Although the Russian Navy's submarine fleet is estimated to be only a fraction of the Cold-War era capacity, Russia has invested substantially in modernizing their submarine fleet and capability, including the development and deployment of hybrid diesel-electric (Gady, 2016) and fourth generation nuclear-powered submarines. Early in 2017, Russia launched the second of its powerful *Yasen*-class multipurpose, nuclear attack submarines (Beckhusen, 2017; TASS, 2017). These submarines reflect cutting-edge design characterized by very low-level noise; the *Yasen*-class submarines are thought to be the quietest Russian submarines ever launched. Four more *Yasen* nuclear submarines are planned for deployment by 2022 (TASS, 2017), with one *Yasen* and one *Borie* class sumbarine coming along in 2019 (TASS, 2019). However, some analysts predict that even the launch of these submarines would not be sufficient to rebuild the Russian Navy to its former capacity (Beckhusen, 2017).

In 2017, North Korea conducted a series of missile tests, demonstrating its ability to strike Guam, Alaska, and anywhere within the continental U.S. with an intercontinental ballistic missile (New York Times, 2017). Iran's advanced missile weaponry, proxy forces, and other conventional capabilities continue to threaten regional Middle Eastern stability. Iran is recognized as a growing military threat due to its influence over Syria and Iraq and proximity to the Straits of Hormuz, which is a chokepoint of global significance for the transport of oil and natural gas products, and its improved ballistic and cruise missile capabilities (Cordesman and Toukan, 2016).

## 1.4 Scope of Environmental Analysis

This SEIS/SOEIS includes an analysis of potential environmental impacts associated with the Proposed Action and Alternatives in SURTASS LFA sonar's study area in the western and central Pacific and eastern Indian oceans. In addition to the reduction of the geographic scope covered in this SEIS/SOEIS, the types of proposed activities and associated number of LFA sonar transmit hours for those activities have also been updated, based on a reexamination of current and predicted requirements of SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing into the foreseeable future. The resulting environmental resource areas analyzed in this SEIS/SOEIS include air quality, marine environment, biological resources, and marine economic resources. Further discussion of all environmental resources and their consideration is included in Chapter 3.

## 1.5 Documentation Incorporated by Reference

Several key source documents are the foundation for this SEIS/SOEIS, and appropriate sections of these documents are incorporated by reference in this SEIS/SOEIS, per CEQ guidance. These documents are considered key documents because of the applicability in the action, analyses, or impacts to the Proposed Action detailed herein. Documents incorporated by reference herein, in part or in their entirety, include:

- FOEIS/EIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar (DoN, 2001)—This first impact assessment for SURTASS LFA sonar considered the employment of up to four SURTASS LFA sonar systems in the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian oceans and Mediterranean Sea.
- FSEIS for SURTASS LFA sonar (DoN, 2007)—This environmental impact document was prepared to remedy the deficiencies identified by order of the U.S. District Court for the Northern District of California, including the need for additional alternatives analysis, mitigation and monitoring, as well as an analysis of the potential impacts of low frequency (LF) sound on fishes.
- FSEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA sonar (DoN, 2012)—In addition to reviewing and updating the information available on the potential impacts of SURTASS LFA sonar on the environment, this impact assessment also provided a comprehensive analysis of offshore biologically important areas (OBIAs), of the 12-nautical mile (nmi) (22.2-kilometer [km]) coastal standoff distance, and of potential cumulative impacts associated with operation of other active sonar sources.
- FSEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA sonar (DoN, 2015a)—Pursuant to the amended summary judgment order issued by the U.S. District Court for the Northern District of California on May 22, 2014, this impact document was prepared for the limited purpose of remedying the NEPA deficiency identified in the Court's order. The Court specified that the Navy failed to use the best available data in its 2012 FSEIS/SOEIS (DoN, 2012) when it determined potential impacts from employment of SURTASS LFA sonar systems on one rather than the more updated five stocks of common bottlenose dolphins in Hawaiian waters.
- FSEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar (DoN, 2017)—This fifth impact assessment document for SURTASS LFA sonar updated information relevant to determining impacts on the marine environment, including using the latest acoustic criteria and thresholds promulgated by NMFS (NOAA, 2016).

## 1.6 Relevant Legislation and Executive Orders

The Navy has prepared this SEIS/SOEIS based upon federal legislation, statutes, regulations, and policies that are pertinent to the implementation of the Proposed Action, including those listed below. A description of the Proposed Action's consistency with the applicable laws, statutes, regulations, and policies, as well as the names of regulatory agencies responsible for their implementation, is presented in Chapter 6.

### 1.6.1 National Environmental Policy Act

NEPA establishes national policies and goals for the protection of the environment and stipulates that environmental factors must be given appropriate consideration in all decisions made by federal agencies regarding their major actions that occur within the U.S. (its lands, territories, and possessions), including waters within 12 nmi [22 km] from the coastline. Further, NEPA (42 U.S.C. sections 4321-4370h) requires an environmental analysis of major federal actions that have the potential to significantly impact the quality of the human environment. The analysis includes an evaluation of the environmental impact, irreparable environmental effects, alternatives to the proposed action, as well as short- and long-term impacts of the federal agency's proposed action. If a determination of significant impact (or potential significant impact) to the human environment is made, NEPA requires that federal agencies take a hard look at the environmental consequences of the proposed action, usually through the preparation of an EIS.

### 1.6.2 Executive Order 12114, Environmental Effects Abroad of Major Federal Actions

EO 12114 directs federal agencies to make informed environmental decisions for major federal actions outside the U.S. and its territories. Presidential Proclamation 5928, issued December 27, 1988, extended the exercise of U.S. sovereignty and jurisdiction under international law to 12 nmi (22 km) from all coastlines. However, the proclamation expressly provided that existing federal law or any associated jurisdiction, rights, legal interests, or obligations were not extended or otherwise altered. Thus, as a matter of policy, the Navy analyzes environmental actions and potential impacts that have the potential to significantly affect the environment within 12 nmi (22 km) of all coastlines under NEPA (an EIS or SEIS) and those potential impacts occurring beyond 12 nmi under the provisions of EO 12114 (an OEIS or SOEIS).

### 1.6.3 Council on Environmental Quality Regulations

The Code of Federal Regulations Title 40 (Protection of the Environment), Chapter V (CEQ), Parts 1500-1508, provide the CEQ regulations for the implementation of the procedural provisions of NEPA.

### 1.6.4 Navy Regulations

Navy regulations for implementing NEPA (32 CFR part 775) provide Navy policy for implementing CEQ regulations and NEPA.

### 1.6.5 Marine Mammal Protection Act

The MMPA of 1972 (16 U.S.C. sections 1361 et seq.) established a general moratorium on the taking and importation of marine mammals, with certain enumerated exceptions. Unless an exception applies, the Act prohibits persons or vessels subject to the jurisdiction of the United States from taking any marine mammal in waters or on lands under the jurisdiction of the United States or on the high seas." 16 U.S.C. 1372(a)(1), (a)(2). The term "take," as defined in Section 3 (16 U.S. Code [U.S.C.] section 1362 (13)) of the MMPA, means "to harass, hunt, capture, or kill, or attempt to harass, hunt, capture, or kill any marine mammal." "Harassment" was further defined in the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, with two levels of harassment: Level A and Level B. By definition, Level A harassment is any act of pursuit, torment, or annoyance that has the potential to injure a marine mammal or marine mammal stock, while Level B harassment is any act of pursuit, torment, or annoyance which has the potential to disturb a marine mammal or marine mammal stock in the wild by causing disruption of behavioral patterns, including, but not limited to, migration, breathing, nursing, breeding, feeding, or sheltering.

The MMPA directs the Secretary of Commerce to allow, upon request, the incidental, but not intentional, taking of small numbers of marine mammals by U.S. citizens or agencies who engage in a specified activity (other than commercial fishing) within a specified geographical region, if NMFS finds that the taking would have a negligible impact on the species or stock(s) and would not have an unmitigatable adverse impact on the availability of the species or stock(s) for subsistence uses (where relevant). The incidental take authorization must set forth the permissible methods of taking; other means of effecting the least practicable adverse impact on species or stocks and their habitat (i.e., mitigation); and requirements pertaining to the monitoring and reporting of such taking. The John S. McCain National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2019 (Public Law 115-232) extended the periods of permitted incidental taking under the MMPA for military readiness activities from five years to seven years. The application for incidental taking of marine mammals by SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities was amended to reflect this extension.

Within the 2004 National Defense Authorization Act (NDAA) (Public Law 108-136), the MMPA's definitions of Levels A and B harassment were amended, the small numbers provision was eliminated, and the specified geographic region requirement as applied to military readiness activities or certain scientific research activities conducted by or on behalf of the federal government was also removed. The 2004 NDAA also adopted the definition of "military readiness activity", as set forth in the Fiscal Year 2003 NDAA (Public Law 107-314). A "military readiness activity" is defined as "all training and operations of the Armed Forces that relate to combat" and the "adequate and realistic testing of military equipment, vehicles, weapons, and sensors for proper operation and suitability for combat use." For military readiness activities, Level A harassment was redefined as any act that injures or has the significant potential to injure a marine mammal or marine mammal stock in the wild, while Level B harassment was redefined as any act that disturbs or is likely to disturb a marine mammal or marine mammal stock in the wild by causing disruption of natural behavioral patterns, including, but not limited to, migration, surfacing, breeding, feeding, or sheltering, to a point where such behavioral patterns are abandoned or significantly altered. Further, NMFS' determination of "least practicable adverse impact on a species or stock and its habitat" must include consideration of personnel safety, practicality of implementation, and impact on the effectiveness of the military readiness activity.

Two federal agencies are responsible for regulating under the MMPA: NMFS and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS). NMFS is responsible for overseeing the protection of whales, dolphins, porpoises, seals, and sea lions under the MMPA, while USFWS oversees the protection of the solely coastal and land-based marine mammals, including walruses, manatees, sea otters, and polar bears.

### 1.6.6 Endangered Species Act

The Endangered Species Act (ESA) of 1973 (16 U.S.C. sections 1531 et seq.) establishes a national program for conserving threatened and endangered species of fish, wildlife, plants, and the habitat on which they depend. An endangered species is a species in danger of extinction throughout all or a significant portion of its range, and a threatened species is one that is likely to become endangered within the near future throughout all or in a significant portion of its range. The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) and NMFS jointly administer the ESA and are responsible for listing a species as either threatened or endangered, as well as designating critical habitat where applicable, developing recovery plans for these species, and undertaking other conservation actions pursuant to the ESA. The ESA generally prohibits the "take" of an ESA-listed species unless an exception or exemption applies. The term "take" as defined in Section 3 of the ESA means to "harass, harm, pursue, hunt, shoot, wound, kill, trap, capture, or collect, or to attempt to engage in any such conduct."

Section 7(a)(2) of the ESA requires federal agencies to insure that their actions are not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of endangered or threatened species or adversely modify or destroy their designated critical habitat. Federal agencies must do so in consultation with NMFS (or the USFWS) for actions that may affect species listed as threatened or endangered or critical habitat designated for such species under Section 4 of the ESA (50 C.F.R. §402.14(a)). If a federal action agency determines that an action "may affect but is not likely to adversely affect" endangered species, threatened species, or designated critical habitat and the consulting agency concurs with that determination, consultation concludes informally (50 C.F.R. §402.14(b)). The federal action agency, pursuant to Section 7(a)(4), shall confer with the consulting agency on any action which is likely to jeopardize the continued existence of any proposed species or result in the destruction or adverse modification of proposed critical habitat (50 C.F.R. §402.10). If requested by the federal agency and deemed appropriate, the conference may be conducted in accordance with the procedures for formal consultation in 50 C.F.R §402.14 (50 C.F.R §402.10(d)).

Section 7(b)(3) of the ESA requires that at the conclusion of consultation, the consulting agency provides an opinion stating whether the federal agency's action is likely to jeopardize ESA-listed species or destroy or adversely modify designated critical habitat. A similar opinion is included for proposed species or proposed critical habitat if either or both were part of the consultation. If the consulting agency determines that the action is likely to jeopardize ESA-listed species or destroy or adversely modify critical habitat, they then provide a reasonable and prudent alternative that allows the action to proceed in compliance with Section 7(a)(2) of the ESA. If incidental take is expected and certain conditions are met, Section 7(b)(4) requires the consulting agency to provide an incidental take statement that specifies the impact of any incidental taking and includes mandatory reasonable and prudent measures to minimize such impacts and terms and conditions to implement the reasonable and prudent measures.

### 1.6.7 National Marine Sanctuaries Act

In 1992, Title III of the Marine Protection, Research and Sanctuaries Act was re-designated as the National Marine Sanctuaries Act (NMSA) (16 U.S.C. sections 1431 et seq.). Under the NMSA, NOAA established a system of NMS to protect marine areas with special national conservation, recreational, ecological, historical, cultural, archaeological, scientific, educational, or aesthetic qualities. The NMSA authorizes the designation and management of NMS by the Office of National Marine Sanctuaries (ONMS), which is administered by NOAA's National Ocean Service.

Under Section 304(d) of the NMSA, federal agencies are required to consult with the ONMS on proposed actions that are "likely to destroy, cause the loss of, or injure a sanctuary resource". The NMSA defines "to injure" as "to change adversely, either in the short or long term, a chemical, biological or physical attribute of, or the viability of. This includes, but is not limited to, to cause the loss of or destroy" (15 C.F.R. § 922.23). ONMS has interpreted injury under the NMSA to include estimated MMPA Level A and Level B harassment of marine mammals found within a NMS.

Sanctuary regulations prohibit destroying, causing the loss of, or injuring any sanctuary resource managed under the law or regulations for that sanctuary (15 CFR part 922). NMSs are managed on a site-specific basis, and military exemptions vary amongst sanctuaries.

### 1.6.8 Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act

The Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (MSFCMA) (P.L. 94-265) was enacted to address impacts to fisheries on the U.S. continental shelf. It established U.S. fishery management over fishes within the fishery conservation zone from the seaward boundary of the coastal states out to 200 nmi (370.4 km) (i.e., boundary of the U.S. EEZ). MSFCMA also established regulations for foreign fishing within the fishery conservation zone and issued national standards for fishery conservation and management to be applied by regional fishery management councils. Each council is responsible for developing Fishery Management Plans (FMPs) for domestic fisheries within its geographic jurisdiction. In 1996, Congress enacted amendments to the MSFCMA known as the Sustainable Fisheries Act (P.L. 104-297) to address substantially reduced fish stocks resulting from direct and indirect habitat loss. Under MSFCMA, Federal agencies are required to consult with the Secretary of Commerce with respect to any action authorized, funded, or undertaken, or proposed to be authorized, funded, or undertaken, by such agency which may adversely affect essential fish habitat (EFH) identified under the MSFCMA. EFH is defined as the waters and substrate necessary to fishes or invertebrates for spawning, breeding, feeding and growth to maturity. Areas designated as EFH contain habitat essential to the long-term survival and health of U.S. fisheries.

### 1.6.9 Act to Prevent Pollution from Ships

The Act to Prevent Pollution from Ships (APPS) (33 U.S.C. 1901, et seq.) implements the 1973 provisions of the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, as modified by the Protocol of 1978 (MARPOL 73/78) and the annexes to which the U.S. is a party. The purpose of the APPS is to minimize or limit ship-borne aquatic and air pollution. The APPS applies to all U.S.-flagged ships located anywhere in the world and to all foreign-flagged vessels operating in U.S. navigable waters or while in port under U.S. jurisdiction.

### 1.6.10 Coastal Zone Management Act

The Coastal Zone Management Act (CZMA) (16 U.S.C. section 1451 et seq.) established partnerships between U.S. federal, state, or territory governments to address coastal zone issues. The CZMA provided the framework for coastal and Great Lake States and territories to develop coastal zone management programs that specifically cover land and water coastal resources. Thirty-four coastal states and territories participate in the Coastal Zone Management Program; Alaska withdrew from the program in 2011. NOAA administers the National Coastal Zone Management Program.

The federal consistency provision of the CZMA requires that the activities of federal agencies conducted within and outside the coastal zone that may have reasonably foreseeable effects on any land or water coastal use or natural resource of the coastal zone be carried out in a manner consistent to the maximum extent practicable with the enforceable policies of federally-approved state or territory management programs. Enforceable policies are the legally-binding policies (including constitutional provisions, laws, regulations, land use plans, ordinances, as well as judicial or administrative decisions) whereby a state or territory exerts control over private and public lands, water uses, and natural resources of the coastal zone. The federal consistency requirement was enacted as a mechanism to ensure adequate federal consideration of state and territory coastal management programs and to avoid conflicts between states or territories and federal agencies by fostering consultation and coordination (NOAA, 2000). Under certain circumstances, the President is authorized to exempt specific activities from the federal consistency requirement if he determines that these activities are of U.S. interest and importance.

### 1.6.11 Clean Water Act

The Clean Water Act (CWA) (33 U.S.C. section 1251 et seq.) was enacted to restore and maintain the chemical, physical, and biological integrity of the nation’s waters. Under authority of the CWA, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) regulates discharges of pollutants in surface waters of the U.S. and sets water quality standards for pollutants. Uniform National Discharge Standards promulgated under Section 312(n) of the Clean Water Act (as well as implementing regulations at 40 CFR Part 1700) govern discharges incidental of the normal operation of Navy vessels.

### 1.6.12 Clean Air Act

In 1963, the Clean Air Act (CAA) (42 U.S.C. §7401 et seq.) was enacted and amended in 1970 and 1990 to protect and enhance the quality of the nation's air resources and protect public health and welfare by regulating air emissions from stationary and mobile sources within the U.S. The CAA authorizes the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) to establish National Ambient Air Quality Standards (NAAQS) for criteria pollutants and to regulate emissions of hazardous air pollutants, with each state having established NAAQS. The CAA also regulates the emissions of U.S.-flagged vessels operating marine diesel engines, the sulfur content of their marine fuel, and the vessels themselves. Section 176(c)(1) of the CAA, commonly known as the General Conformity Rule, requires federal agencies to ensure that their actions conform to applicable implementation plans for achieving and maintaining the NAAQS for criteria pollutants.

### 1.6.13 National Historic Preservation Act

The National Historic Preservation Act of 1966 (54 U.S.C. §300101 et seq.) intends to preserve historic and archaeological sites in the United States and directs the federal government to provide leadership in preserving, restoring, and maintaining the historic and cultural environment. Sections 106 and 402 of the National Historic Preservation Act require federal agencies to take into account the effects of their undertakings on historic properties both inside and outside the U.S. The National Historic Preservation Act created the National Register of Historic Places, the list of National Historic Landmarks, and the State Historic Preservation Offices to help protect each state's historical and archaeological resources. Within the SURTASS LFA sonar study area, there is one World Heritage site that is in both Hawaii state waters and United States territorial waters, the Papahanaumokuakea Marine National Monument.

### 1.6.14 Executive Order 12962, Recreational Fisheries

EO 12962 (60 C.F.R. 30769) was issued in 1995 to ensure that federal agencies strive to improve the "quantity, function, sustainable productivity, and distribution of U.S. aquatic resources" to increase recreational fishing opportunities nationwide. The overarching goal of the Recreational Fisheries EO is to promote conservation, restoration, and enhancement of aquatic systems and fish populations by increasing fishing access, education and outreach, and multi-agency partnerships. The Secretaries of the Interior and Commerce Departments jointly oversee federal actions and programs mandated by this EO.

### 1.6.15 Executive Order 13089, Coral Reef Protection

EO 13089 was issued in 1998 "to preserve and protect the biodiversity, health, heritage, and social and economic value of U.S. coral reef ecosystems and the marine environment." This EO directs all federal agencies to protect coral reef ecosystems to the extent feasible and instructs particular agencies to develop coordinated, science-based plans to restore damaged reefs and to mitigate current and future impacts on reefs, both within the U.S. and internationally. This EO established the interagency U.S. Coral Reef Task Force to develop and implement a comprehensive program of research and mapping to inventory, monitor, and identify the major causes and consequences of degradation of coral reef ecosystems. The task force is administered by NOAA.

### 1.6.16 Executive Order 13158, Marine Protected Areas

EO 13158 defines marine protected areas (MPAs) as "any area of the marine environment that has been reserved by federal, state, territorial, tribal, or local laws or regulations to provide lasting protection for part or all of the natural and cultural resources therein." This EO was established to (1) ensure that federal agencies with authority for establishing MPAs take action to enhance or expand protection of existing MPAs and establish or recommend new MPAs; (2) develop a scientifically-based, comprehensive national system of MPAs; and (3) avoid causing harm to MPAs through federally conducted, approved, or funded activities.

### 1.6.17 Executive Order 13175, Consultation and Coordination with Indian Tribal Governments, and Department of Defense Instruction 4710.3, Consultation with Native Hawaiian Organizations

EO 13175 provides direction to federal agencies to ensure they conduct "regular, meaningful" consultations and collaborations with Indian tribal officials on the development of federal policies or actions that may have tribal implications. Indian tribes are defined under EO 13175 as any federally-recognized Indian or Alaskan native tribe, band, group, or community. Department of Defense Instruction 4710.03 provides direction for the Department of Defense to consult with Native Hawaiian Organizations when proposing actions may affect a property or place of traditional religious and cultural importance.

### 1.6.18 Executive Order 13840, Ocean Policy to Advance the Economic, Security, and Environmental Interests of the United States

Issued in June 2018, this EO revoked and replaced EO 13547, *Stewardship of the Ocean, Our Coasts, and the Great Lakes*. EO 13840 is intended to advance the economic, security, and environmental interests of the U.S. through improved public access to marine data and information; efficient federal agency coordination on ocean related matters; and engagement with marine industries, the science and technology community, and other ocean stakeholders, including Regional Ocean Partnerships.

Under this EO it is the policy of the United States to: (a) coordinate the activities of executive departments and agencies (agencies) regarding ocean-related matters to ensure effective management of ocean, coastal, and Great Lakes waters and to provide economic, security, and environmental benefits for present and future generations of Americans; (b) continue to promote the lawful use of the ocean by agencies, including United States Armed Forces; (c) exercise rights and jurisdiction and perform duties in accordance with applicable domestic law and—if consistent with applicable domestic law—international law, including customary international law; (d) facilitate the economic growth of coastal communities and promote ocean industries, which employ millions of Americans, advance ocean science and technology, feed the American people, transport American goods, expand recreational opportunities, and enhance America's energy security; (e) ensure that Federal regulations and management decisions do not prevent productive and sustainable use of ocean, coastal, and Great Lakes waters; (f) modernize the acquisition, distribution, and use of the best available ocean-related science and knowledge, in partnership with marine industries; the ocean science and technology community; State, tribal, and local governments; and other ocean stakeholders, to inform decisions and enhance entrepreneurial opportunity; and (g) facilitate, as appropriate, coordination, consultation, and collaboration regarding ocean-related matters, consistent with applicable law, among Federal, State, tribal, and local governments, marine industries, the ocean science and technology community, other ocean stakeholders, and foreign governments and international organizations.

## 1.7 Public and Agency Participation and Intergovernmental Coordination

Per CEQ regulations (40 CFR 1506.6) as well as Navy regulations and guidance, the public is to be involved in preparing and implementing NEPA procedures. Additionally, the Navy may be required to coordinate and consult with other federal agencies and tribal governments under various environmental statutes and executive orders.

### 1.7.1 Public Participation

On June 5, 2015, the Navy published a Notice of Intent (NOI) in the *Federal Register* (80 FR 32097) to prepare a SEIS/SOEIS for the continued employment of SURTASS LFA sonar and to support consultations associated with MMPA regulatory permits and associated ESA consultations for SURTASS LFA sonar (DoN, 2015b). The NOI provides an overview of the proposed action. No comments were received in response to the NOI.

Although the Navy prepared and completed a FSEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA sonar on June 30, 2017, and a Notice of Availability for the FSEIS/SOEIS was published in the *Federal Register* on July 7, 2017, no ROD detailing the Navy's decision, alternative selected, or mitigation and monitoring plan for the employment of SURTASS LFA sonar was issued. The Navy determined that the purposes of NEPA and EO 12114 relevant to SURTASS LFA sonar begun in June 2015 with the publication of a NOI would be furthered by the preparation of this additional SEIS/SOEIS.

The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) published the Notice of Availability for the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA sonar use in the *Federal Register* on September 7, 2018. Per CEQ regulation (40 CFR §1506.10), a 45-day comment and review period commenced, ending on October 22, 2018. In conjunction with filing the Draft SEIS/SOEIS with the EPA and announcing its public availability, correspondence was sent notifying appropriate Federal and state government agencies and organizations, as well as other interested parties, that the Draft SEIS/SOEIS was available on the SURTASS LFA sonar website and at appropriate public libraries in accordance with NEPA requirements and EPA guidelines.

The Navy received four comment letters from government organizations, one of which was from the EPA rating the DSEIS/SOEIS as "Lack of Objections," meaning no substantive changes to the proposed action are required, and one comment letter from environmental non-governmental organizations. Chapter 7 includes more information on the public participation process, a record of the comments received, and responses to those comments.

### 1.7.2 Cooperating Agency: National Marine Fisheries Service

This section explains NMFS's role and purposes for serving as a cooperating agency followed by sections on the status of Navy's consultations under the MMPA, ESA, NMSA, and MSFCMA. NOAA's NMFS Office of Protected Resources is serving as a cooperating agency pursuant to 40 CFR 1501.6 because the scope of the proposed action and alternatives involve activities that have the potential to affect marine resources under their jurisdiction. This mandate is broad in scope as NOAA's agencies have jurisdiction by law and special expertise for the entire suite of marine resources affected by the Navy's proposed action (e.g., marine mammals, ESA-listed species, EFH, commercial and recreational fisheries, and NMSs). As applicable, permits and authorizations are issued pursuant to the MMPA (50 CFR Part 216) and the ESA. In accordance with ESA and 50 CFR Part 402, NMFS also serves as the Consulting Agency for federal agencies proposing actions that may affect marine resources listed as threatened or endangered. NMFS has additional responsibilities to conserve and manage fishery resources of the

United States, which includes the authority to engage in consultations with other federal agencies pursuant to the MSFCMA 50 CFR Part 600 for actions that may adversely affect EFH.

Per the cooperating agency commitment, the Navy provided NMFS with versions of the draft and final SEIS/SOEIS documents for review, and NOAA, via NMFS, provided Navy with technical assistance and input in support of the analysis of impacts in areas of NOAA's subject matter expertise and jurisdiction. For example, NMFS circulated the draft and final SEIS/OEIS documents to relevant NOAA offices, compiled comments, and submitted them to the Navy. As a result, the Navy and NMFS participated in comment resolution meetings, in which the Navy addressed NOAA-related comments or outstanding issues.

Since NMFS's issuance of regulations and an LOA under the MMPA to the Navy is a major federal action triggering NMFS's independent NEPA compliance obligations, when serving as a cooperating agency, NMFS may satisfy this independent NEPA obligation by preparing a separate NEPA document or, if appropriate, by adopting the NEPA document prepared by the lead agency for issuance of an authorization. Therefore, NMFS, in accordance with 40 CFR 1506.3 and 1505.2, intends to adopt this SEIS/SOEIS and issue a separate ROD associated with its decision to grant or deny the Navy's request for regulations and an LOA pursuant to Section 101(a)(5)(A) of the MMPA.

### 1.7.3 National Marine Fisheries Service Consultation (ESA and MMPA)

In June 2018, pursuant to requirements of the MMPA and ESA, the Navy submitted application consultation packages for incidental taking of marine mammals and ESA-listed marine species, respectively, that may be associated with the proposed use of SURTASS LFA sonar. Final amended applications were submitted for the MMPA and ESA on December 14, 2018.

### 1.7.4 National Marine Sanctuaries Consultation

In accordance with Section 304 (d) of the NMSA, federal agencies are required to consult with the ONMS on actions internal or external to a Sanctuary that are likely to destroy, cause the loss of, or injure any sanctuary resource. Only one national marine sanctuary, the Hawaiian Islands Humpback Whale NMS, is located within the Navy's study area. The Navy has determined that the planned use of SURTASS LFA sonar pursuant to this SEIS/SOEIS does not require consultation under Section 304(d) of the NMSA.

### 1.7.5 Consultation/Coordination with Indian Tribal Governments

Pursuant to EO 13175, federal agencies are to consult and coordinate with federally-recognized Indian or Native Alaskan tribal governments on actions or policies that may have tribal implications. The Proposed Action includes SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities in U.S. waters of Hawaii, Guam, and the CNMI, where no federally-recognized tribes are located. Therefore, no consultation or coordination under EO 13175 is required.

### 1.7.6 Essential Fish Habitat Consultation/Coordination

Consultation/coordination under the MSFCMA was conducted as part of the analyses for the Navy's 2001 FOEIS/EIS (DoN, 2001) for SURTASS LFA sonar when the Navy made a determination of no adverse effects. The information in these documents regarding consultations and agency coordination on the MSFCMA remains valid and is incorporated by reference herein.

### 1.7.7 Coastal Zone Management Consultation/Coordination

Consultation/coordination under the CZMA was conducted as part of the analyses for the Navy's 2001 FOEIS/EIS (DoN, 2001) and 2012 FSEIS/SOEIS (DoN, 2012) for SURTASS LFA sonar. The information in these documents regarding consultations and agency coordination on the CZMA remains valid and is incorporated by reference herein.

Pursuant to the CZMA (15 CFR Part 930) regulations, as part of the analyses for the 2001 FOEIS/EIS, the Navy determined that its Proposed Action would be consistent to the maximum extent practicable with the relevant enforceable policies of the one state and two territories that are located in the current study area for SURTASS LFA sonar: Hawaii, Guam, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands (CNMI).

## 1.8 Literature Cited

Beckhusen, R. (2017). *Russia's shrinking submarine capacity*. Australian Naval Institute. Retrieved from <http://navalinstitute.com.au/russias-shrinking-submarine-capability/>.

Cordesman, A.H., & Toukan, A. (2016). *Iran and the Gulf military balance.* Washington, D.C.: Center for Strategic International Studies; Burke Chair in Strategy. Retrieved from <www.csis.org/burke>.

Defense Intelligence Agency (DIA). (2019). *China Military Power: Modernizing a force to fight and win.* Washington, D.C.: Department of Defense.

Department of Defense (DoD). (2015). *Annual report to Congress [on] military and security developments involving the People's Republic of China, May 2015*, pp. 8, 9, 32. Washington, D.C.: Office of the Department of Defense.

Department of the Navy (DoN). (2001). *Final overseas environmental impact statement and environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar.* Washington, D.C.: Department of the Navy, Chief of Naval Operations. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/FEIS-Vol-I.pdf>.

DoN. (2007). *Final supplemental environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar*. Washington, D.C.: Department of the Navy, Chief of Naval Operations. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/SURTASS_LFA_FSEIS.pdf>.

DoN. (2012). *Final supplemental environmental impact statement/supplemental overseas environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar.* Washington, D.C.: Department of the Navy, Chief of Naval Operations. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/SURTASS_LFA_FSEIS-SOEIS.pdf>.

DoN. (2015a). *Final supplemental environmental impact statement/supplemental overseas environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar.* Washington, D.C.: Department of the Navy, Chief of Naval Operations. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/wp-content/uploads/2018/01/Final_SEIS-SOEIS_SURTASS_LFA_sonar.pdf>.

DoN. (2015b). Notice of intent to prepare a supplemental environmental impact statement/supplemental overseas environmental impact statement for employment of Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar. Department of the Navy, Department of Defense. *Federal Register, 80*(108), 32097. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/wp-content/uploads/2018/01/NOI_FR_2015.pdf>.

DoN. (2017). *Final supplemental environmental impact statement/supplemental overseas environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar.* Washington, D.C.: Chief of Naval Operations, Department of the Navy. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/Navy_SURTASS-LFA_FSEIS-SOEIS.pdf>. 723 pages.

DoN. (2018). *A design for maintaining maritime superiority,* Version 2.0, 15 pages. Washington, D.C.: Office of the Chief of Naval Operations.

Einhorn, B. (2015, April 23). Submarines: Asia's underwater arms race. *Bloomberg Businessweek.* Retrieved from <https://www.bloomberg.com/news/articles/2015-04-23/submarines-china-leads-asia-s-underwater-arms-race>.

Gady, F. (2016, February 5). Russian submarine activity at highest level since Cold War. *The Diplomat.* Retrieved from <http://thediplomat.com/2016/02/russian-submarine-activity-at-highest-level-since-cold-war>.

Global Firepower. (2019). *Total submarine strength by country*. Retrieved from < https://www.globalfirepower.com/navy-submarines.asp>.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA). (2000). Coastal Zone Management Act federal consistency regulations; Final rule. *Federal Register, 65*(237), 77124-77175.

New York Times. (2010, August 31). Testing North Korean waters. *New York Times*. Retrieved from <https://www.nytimes.com/2010/09/01/opinion/01iht-edgregg.html?_r=2>.

New York Times. (2017, November 29). North Korea fires a ballistic missile, in a further challenge to Trump. *New York Times.* Retrieved from < https://www.nytimes.com/2017/11/28/world/asia/north-korea-missile-test.html>.

Office of Naval Intelligence (ONI). (2015). *The PLA Navy, new capabilities and missions for the 21st century,* April 2015, pages 18, 19-20. Washington, D.C.: Office of Naval Intelligence.

TASS. (2017, March 31). The might of Russia's advanced nuclear submarine. TASS: Russian News Agency. Retrieved from <http://tass.com/defense/938673>.

TASS. (2019, March 13). Russia's Northern Fleet to get new submarines. TASS: Russian News Agency. Retrieved from <http://tass.com/defense/1048426>.

# 2 Description of the Proposed Action and Alternatives

## 2.1 Introduction

This chapter describes the SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities that comprise the Proposed Action and that are necessary to meet the Navy's anti-submarine warfare (ASW) and national security mission. In subsequent chapters of this SEIS/SOEIS, the analysis of the potential impacts of SURTASS LFA sonar activities on the marine environment are presented.

## 2.2 Proposed Action

As set forth in Chapter 1, the U.S. Navy proposes to continue utilizing SURTASS LFA sonar systems onboard U.S. Navy surveillance ships for training and testing conducted under the authority of the Secretary of the Navy in the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans. The U.S. Navy currently has four surveillance ships that utilize SURTASS LFA sonar systems: U.S. Naval Ship (USNS) VICTORIOUS (Tactical-Auxiliary General Ocean Surveillance [T-AGOS] 19); USNS ABLE (T-AGOS 20); USNS EFFECTIVE (T-AGOS 21); and USNS IMPECCABLE (T-AGOS 23). The Navy may develop and field additional SURTASS LFA sonar equipped vessels, either to replace or complement the Navy current SURTASS LFA sonar equipped fleet.

In accordance with the MMPA, the Navy submitted an application to NMFS requesting authorization for the taking of marine mammals' incidental to these training and testing activities as described in this SEIS/SOEIS. NMFS' proposed action to authorize the taking of marine mammals incidental to SURTASS LFA sonar use is a direct outcome of responding to the Navy's request for rulemaking and a Letter of Authorization pursuant to the MMPA, as NMFS may either approve the Navy's request for an authorization (and provide appropriate requirements for the authorized takings; see Chapter 5) or deny the request.

The Navy is currently approved under the NDE to transmit 255 hours of LFA sonar transmission hours per vessel per year or a total of 1,020 transmission hours per year. Under Alternative 1, the Navy would transmit 360 hours of LFA sonar transmissions per year pooled across all SURTASS LFA equipped vessels, while under Alternative 2, the Navy's Preferred Alternative, the Navy would transmit 496 total hours of LFA sonar transmissions per year across all SURTASS LFA sonar equipped vessels in the first four years, and would increase usage to 592 total hours of LFA sonar transmissions in year five and continuing into the foreseeable future, regardless of the number of vessels.

As part of each action alternative, the Navy proposes to implement the same suite of procedural and geographic/temporal mitigation measures during SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities. Specifically, under either action alternative, the Navy would ensure that LFA sonar RLs from the Proposed Action are below 180 dB re 1 µPa (rms) within 12 nmi (22 km) of any emergent land and within 0.54 nmi (1 km) seaward of the boundary of any designated OBIAs during their effective periods of biological activity. Additionally, no more than 25 percent of the authorized amount of SURTASS LFA sonar would be used for training and testing activities within 10 nmi (18.5 km) of any single OBIA during any year unless the following condition is met: should national security present a requirement to conduct more than 25 percent of the authorized hours of SURTAS LFA sonar within 10 nmi (18.5 km) of any single OBIA during any year, naval units would obtain permission from the appropriate designated Command authority prior to commencement of the activity. The Navy would provide NMFS with notification as soon as is practicable and include the information (e.g., sonar hours) in its annual activity reports submitted to NMFS. Also, SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities would not occur within the territorial seas of foreign nations. Twenty-nine OBIAs have been designated worldwide as described in the NDE, of which four are found in the proposed study area (Chapter 5, Appendix C). As part of the Proposed Action, these four OBIAs have been expanded and 10 additional OBIAs designated in the study area. Further, LFA sonar RLs associated with training and testing activities are not to exceed 145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) within Hawaii State waters or within known recreational and commercial dive sites unless the following conditions are met: should national security present a requirement to transmit SURTASS LFA sonar during training or testing activities such that exposure at known recreational or commercial dive sites may exceed RLs of 145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL), naval units would obtain permission from the appropriate designated Command authority prior to commencement of the activity; and prior to conducting the training or testing activity, the designated Command authority shall conduct a risk assessment, taking into account the potential for exposure of SURTASS LFA sonar to divers.

Mitigation monitoring includes visual, passive acoustic, and active acoustic (high frequency marine mammal monitoring [HF/M3] sonar) monitoring to minimize, to the greatest extent practicable, adverse impacts when SURTASS LFA sonar is transmitting by providing the means to detect marine mammals or sea turtles within the 2,000 yards (yd) (1.8 km) mitigation/buffer zone for SURTASS LFA sonar and then suspending or delaying LFA sonar transmissions. The proposed suite of mitigation measures is described in Chapter 5 (Mitigation, Monitoring, and Reporting) of this SEIS/OEIS. The final suite of mitigation measures resulting from the ongoing planning, consultation, and permitting processes will be documented in the Navy's Record of Decision and all applicable authorizations or consultation documents.

### 2.2.1 Description of SURTASS LFA Sonar System

SURTASS LFA sonar is a long-range system that transmits in the low-frequency (LF) band (below 1,000 Hertz [Hz]) that is composed of both active and passive components (Figure 2-1). The active component is the LFA sonar source array while the passive component is the SURTASS receive array.

Sonar is an acronym for sound navigation and ranging, and its definition includes any system that uses underwater sound, or acoustics, for observations and communications. Sonar systems are used for many purposes, ranging from commercial "fish finders" to military ASW systems used for detection and classification of submarines.

The two basic types of sonar used in the SURTASS LFA sonar system are passive and active sonar:

- Passive sonar detects sound created by a source. This is a one-way transmission of sound waves through water from the source to the receiver. Passive sonar is similar to people hearing sounds that are transmitted through the air to the human ear. Very simply, passive sonar "listens" without transmitting any sound signals.
- Active sonar detects objects by creating a sound pulse or "ping" that is transmitted from the sonar through the water, reflects off a target object, and returns in the form of an echo to be detected by a receiver. Active sonar is a two-way transmission of sound waves through water (sound source to reflector to receiver). Some marine mammals use a type of active biosonar called echolocation to locate underwater objects such as prey or the seafloor for navigation.

SURTASS LFA sonar systems were initially installed on two SURTASS vessels: R/V *Cory Chouest*, which was retired in 2008, and USNS IMPECCABLE (T-AGOS 23). As future undersea warfare requirements

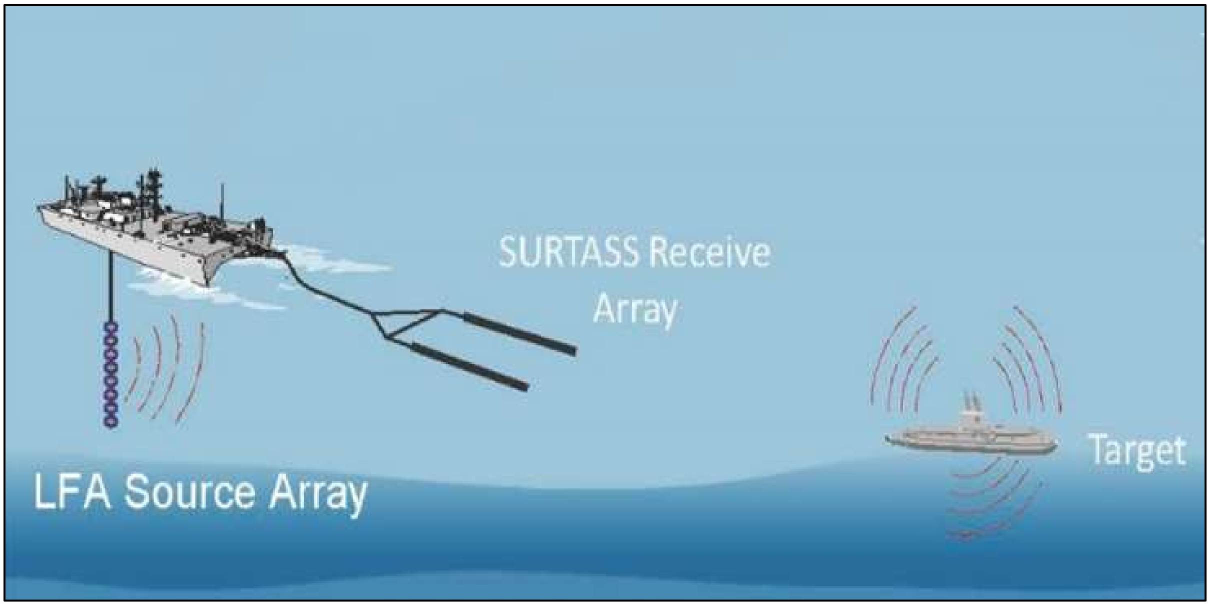



**Figure 2-1. Schematic of a SURTASS LFA Sonar System Deployed from a T-AGOS Vessel Including the Passive SURTASS Horizontal Line Array (Receive Array) of Hydrophones and the Active Vertical Line Array of LF Sonar Projectors (Source Array).**

continued to transition to littoral[1] ocean regions, a compact version of the LFA sonar system deployable on SURTASS ships was needed.

This compact sonar system upgrade is known as compact LFA or CLFA and consists of smaller, lighter-weight source elements than in the SURTASS LFA sonar system. The CLFA sonar system was installed on the VICTORIOUS Class platforms (e.g., T-AGOS 19, 20, and 21). CLFA sonar improvements include:

- Operational frequency within the 100 to 500 Hz range, matched to shallow-water environments with little loss of detection performance in deep-water environments;
- Improved reliability and ease of deployment; and
- Lighter-weight design with mission weight of 142,000 pounds (lb) (64,410 kilograms [kg]) for the CLFA sonar system versus 324,000 lb (155,129 kg) mission weight for the LFA sonar system.

The operational characteristics of the CLFA sonar system are comparable to the original LFA sonar system as detailed in Subchapter 2.1 of the FOEIS/EIS (DoN, 2001). Therefore, the potential impacts from CLFA sonar are expected to be similar to, but not greater than, the impacts associated with the LFA sonar system. For this reason, in this SEIS/SOEIS the term LFA sonar is used inclusively of the LFA and/or the CLFA sonar systems, unless otherwise specified.

1 The term littoral is an often-misunderstood term as it applies to Navy activities. In reference to naval warfare, the Navy defines "littoral" as the region that horizontally encompasses the land/water mass interface from 50 statute miles (80 km) ashore to 200 nmi (370 km) at sea; this region extends vertically from the seafloor and land surface to the top of the atmosphere (Naval Oceanographic Office, 1999). The more common definition of littoral pertains to the shore or a coastal region, while the marine science definition refers to the shallow-water zone between low and high tide. The Navy's meaning differs because it is based on a tactical, not geographical or environmental, perspective relating to overall coastal operations, including all assets supporting a particular operation regardless of how close, or far, from the shore they may be operating.

**References to Underwater Sound Levels**

- References to underwater sound pressure level (SPL) in this SEIS/SOEIS are values given in decibels (dBs), and are assumed to be standardized at 1 microPascal at 1 m (root mean square) (dB re 1 µPa at 1 m [rms]) for source level (SL) and dB re 1 µPa (rms) for received level (RL), unless otherwise stated (Urick, 1983; ANSI, 2006).
- In this SEIS/SOEIS, underwater sound exposure level (SEL) is a measure of energy, specifically the squared instantaneous pressure integrated over time; the appropriate units for SEL are dB re 1 $\mu Pa^2$-sec (Urick, 1983; ANSI, 2006; Southall et al., 2007).
- The term “Single Ping Equivalent” (SPE) used herein is an intermediate calculation for input to the risk continuum used in the acoustic impact analysis for SURTASS LFA sonar. SPE accounts for the energy of all LFA sonar transmissions that a modeled animal (“animat”) receives during a 24-hr period of a SURTASS LFA sonar use as well as an approximation of the manner in which the effect of repeated exposures accumulates. As such, the SPE metric incorporates both physics and biology. Calculating the potential risk from exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar is a complex process and the reader is referred to Appendix B for additional details. SPE levels will be expressed as “dB SPE” in this document, as they have been presented in preceding environmental compliance documentation for SURTASS LFA sonar: 2001 FOEIS/FEIS (DoN, 2001); 2007 FSEIS (DoN, 2007); 2012 FSEIS/SOEIS (DoN, 2012); 2015 FSEIS/SOEIS (DoN, 2015); and 2017 (DoN 2017a).
- Briefly, SPE accounts for the increased potential for behavioral response due to repeated exposures by adding 5 x log10 (number of pings) to each 1-dB RL increment (Kryter, 1985; Richardson et al., 1995; Ward, 1968). This calculation is done for each dB level received, with summing across all dB levels to determine the dB SPE for that animal. A more generalized formula is provided in the original FOEIS/FEIS (DoN, 2001).

#### 2.2.1.1 Active Sonar System Components

The active component of the SURTASS LFA sonar system, LFA, is an adjunct to the SURTASS passive capability and is employed when active sound signals are needed to detect and track underwater targets of interest. LFA sonar complements SURTASS passive activities by actively acquiring and tracking submarines when they are in quiet operating modes, measuring accurate target range, and re-acquiring lost contacts.

LFA sonar consists of a vertical source array of sound-producing elements that are suspended by cable under one of the T-AGOS vessels (Figure 2-1). These elements, called projectors, are devices that produce the active sonar sound pulses or pings. To produce a ping, the projectors transform electrical energy to mechanical energy (i.e., vibrations), which travel as pressure disturbances in water. The LFA sonar source is a vertical line array (VLA) consisting of as many as 18 source projectors. Each LFA source projector transmits sonar beams that are omnidirectional (360 degrees) in the horizontal, with a narrow vertical beamwidth that can be steered above or below the horizontal. The source frequency ranges between 100 and 500 Hz.

#### 2.2.1.2 Passive Sonar System Components

SURTASS is the passive, or listening, component of the system that detects returning sounds from submerged objects, such as threat submarines, through the use of hydrophones. Hydrophones transform mechanical energy (received acoustic sound waves) to an electrical signal that can be analyzed by the sonar processing system. The return (received) signals, which are usually below background or ambient noise level, are processed and evaluated to identify and classify potential underwater threats. SURTASS consists of a twin-line (TL-29A), "Y" shaped horizontal line array (HLA) of hydrophones with two apertures that is approximately 1,000 feet (ft) (305 meters [m]) long. The SURTASS HLA can be towed in shallow, littoral environments; can provide significant directional noise rejection; and can resolve bearing ambiguities without the vessel's course having to be changed.

#### 2.2.1.3 Operating Profile

The operating features of the active component of the SURTASS LFA sonar system, LFA sonar, are:

- The SL of an individual source projector on the LFA sonar array is approximately 215 dB re 1 µPa at 1 m (rms) or less. Since the projectors work together as an array to create the sound field, the array's measured sound field would never be higher than the SL of an individual source projector.
- Frequency range of 100 to 500 Hz.
- The typical LFA sonar signal is not a constant tone but consists of various waveforms that vary in frequency and duration. A complete sequence of sound transmissions (waveforms) is referred to as a wavetrain (also known as a ping). These wavetrains last between 6 and 100 seconds, with an average length of 60 seconds. Within each wavetrain, a variety of signal types can be used, including continuous wave (CW) and frequency-modulated (FM) signals. The duration of each continuous-frequency sound transmission within the wavetrain is no longer than 10 seconds.
- The maximum duty cycle (ratio of sound "on" time to total time) is 20 percent. The typical duty cycle, based on historical SURTASS LFA sonar operational parameters (2003 to 2017), is 7.5 to 10 percent.
- The time between wavetrain transmissions is typically from 6 to 15 minutes.

The Navy's proposed area for SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities includes the non-polar areas of the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans, not including the western Indian Ocean or Sea of Okhotsk.

Although SURTASS LFA sonar vessels usually operate independently from one another, SURTASS LFA sonar vessels may operate in conjunction with other naval air, surface, or submarine assets as part of naval exercises (please see Section 4.8 for cumulative impact analysis). SURTASS LFA sonar vessels generally travel in straight lines or racetrack patterns depending on the scenario. When the SURTASS or LFA sonar arrays are deployed, a SURTASS LFA sonar vessel must maintain a speed of at least 3 knots (kt) (5.6 kilometers per hour [kph]), with a typical speed of 4 kt (7.4 kph). When not towing the SURTASS or LFA sonar arrays, T-AGOS vessels travel at maximum speeds of 10 or 12[2] kt (18.5 to 22 kph). Movements

2 The USNS ABLE, EFFECTIVE, and VICTORIOUS may travel at top speeds of 10 kt (18.5 kph) when not towing the SURTASS LFA sonar arrays, while the USNS IMPECCABLE has a top speed of 12 kt (22 kph) when underway. The speed of future vessels is not known yet but will be evaluated if determined to differ from these specified speeds.

of SURTASS LFA sonar vessels are not unusual or extraordinary and are in line with routine operations of seagoing vessels.

## 2.3 Alternatives

NEPA's implementing regulations provide guidance on the consideration of alternatives to a federal agency's proposed action and require rigorous exploration and objective evaluation of reasonable alternatives. Only those alternatives determined to be reasonable, and which meet the purpose and need of the proposed action require analysis.

### 2.3.1 Reasonable Alternative Screening Factors

Screening criteria were developed to aid in assessing the feasibility of proposed alternatives and defining the range of reasonable alternatives. Potential alternatives that meet the Navy's purpose and need were evaluated against the following screening factors:

- The alternative must allow the Navy to meet all training and testing requirements for SURTASS LFA sonar systems, vessels, and crews.
- The alternative must allow the Navy to meet all requirements for maintenance and repair schedules, and vessel crew schedules for SURTASS LFA sonar vessels.

Two action alternatives (Action Alternative 1 and Action Alternative 2) would allow the Navy to meet its purpose and need and requirements of the screening factors. The No Action Alternative would not allow the Navy to meet any of the screening factor requirements or the Navy's purpose and need.

### 2.3.2 Alternatives Carried Forward for Analysis

After consideration of the screening factors, the Navy has carried forward for analysis two action alternatives that meet the purpose and need for the proposed action. Both action alternatives will utilize the SURTASS LFA sonar systems within the parameters described in the Operating Profile, as well as with the proposed mitigation measures introduced above and described in further detail in Chapter 5 of this SEIS/SOEIS. Although the No Action Alternative does not meet the purpose and need for the Proposed Action, it was nonetheless carried forward to provide a baseline for environmental consequences.

#### 2.3.2.1 No Action Alternative

Under the No Action Alternative, the Proposed Action would not occur, and the SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities would not occur. The Navy's purpose and need would not be met since its ability to train and test to locate and defend against enemy submarines would be greatly impaired. Although the No Action Alternative would not meet the purpose and need for the proposed action, as required by NEPA, the No Action Alternative is carried forward for analysis in this SEIS/SOEIS, as it provides a baseline for measuring the environmental consequences of the two action alternatives.

For NMFS, denial of regulations and an LOA constitutes the NMFS No Action Alternative, which is consistent with our statutory obligation under the MMPA to grant or deny incidental take authorization requests and to prescribe mitigation, monitoring, and reporting with any authorizations. Under the No Action Alternative, NMFS would not issue regulations or an LOA, and the Navy would not conduct their planned training and testing activities involving SURTASS LFA sonar. The No Action Alternative served as a baseline in this Final SEIS/OEIS against which the impacts of Navy's Preferred Alternative were compared and contrasted.

#### 2.3.2.2 Alternative 1

Under Alternative 1, 360 hours of LFA sonar transmissions are planned per year for training and testing activities, pooled across all SURTASS LFA sonar equipped vessels. This alternative represents a substantial reduction in the annual hours of LFA sonar transmissions for all vessels compared to the current authorized transmission hours. The Navy conducted an analysis to determine the minimum number of LFA sonar transmission hours per year required to meet its purpose and need. The following were considered during the Navy's analysis: 1) previous annual LFA sonar transmission hours; 2) the number of LFA sonar vessels available for training and testing activities and the need for their maintenance; 3) recent world events, which have resulted in an increase in the extent of the annual LFA sonar study area and system usage requirements for LFA sonar; 4) Navy requirements setting the minimum level of annual at-sea proficiency training hours for LFA sonar operators and civilian crew, which can only be met by using LFA sonar in an actual at-sea environment; 5) the need to use SURTASS LFA sonar assets to support acoustic research testing using Navy ships of opportunity; and 6) potential participation of LFA sonar vessels in naval exercises (e.g., Valiant Shield, Rim of the Pacific Exercise [RIMPAC]). Based on the results of this analysis, the Navy concluded that to meet the purpose and need for use of the SURTASS LFA sonar system in training and testing activities outlined in this SEIS/SOEIS, the minimum required number of LFA sonar transmission hours is 360 hours pooled across SURTASS LFA sonar equipped vessels.

The SURTASS LFA sonar transmission hours under Action Alternative 1 (360 hours per year pooled across all SURTASS LFA sonar equipped vessels) represent a distribution across five activities including:

- Contractor crew proficiency training (80 hours per year)
- Military crew (MILCREW) proficiency training (64 hours per year)
- Participation or support of naval exercises (72 hours per year)
- Vessel and equipment maintenance (48 hours per year)
- Acoustic research testing (96 hours per year)

Each of these activities utilizes the SURTASS LFA sonar system within the operating profile described above, therefore the number of hours estimated for each activity is merely for planning purposes.

#### 2.3.2.3 Alternative 2—Preferred Alternative

Alternative 2 is the Navy's Preferred Alternative. The annual LFA sonar transmission hours for Alternative 2 are increased above Alternative 1 to 496 hours total per year across all SURTASS LFA sonar equipped vessels in the first four years, with the number of transmission hours increasing to 592 hours across all vessels during year 5 and continuing into the foreseeable future, regardless of the number of SURTASS LFA sonar equipped vessels. While Alternative 1 represented the minimum number of LFA sonar transmission hours required to meet the Navy's purpose and need, Alternative 2 includes the consideration of 1) increased proficiency training of Navy personnel; 2) increased participation of SURTASS LFA sonar equipped vessels in naval exercises; 3) the age of the T-AGOS vessels and the increasing need for maintenance system checks; and 4) additional support of acoustic research testing.

In addition, in year 5 and beyond, the Navy is considering and is in the beginning planning stages for adding new vessels to its ocean surveillance fleet. As new vessels are developed, the onboard LFA and HF/M3 sonar systems will also need to be updated, modified, or even re-designed. As the new vessels and sonar system components are developed and constructed, at-sea testing would eventually be necessary. The Navy anticipates that new vessels or new or updated sonar system components will be ready for at-sea testing beginning in the fifth year of the time period covered by this SEIS/SOEIS. Thus, in addition to the activities described in Alternative 1, the Navy's activity analysis also included consideration of the sonar hours associated with future testing of new or updated LFA sonar system components and new ocean surveillance vessels. This resulted in two annual transmit hour scenarios: Years 1 to 4 would entail 496 hours total per year across all SURTASS LFA sonar equipped vessels, while year 5 and beyond would include an increase in LFA sonar transmission hours to 592 hours across all vessels to accommodate future testing of new ocean surveillance vessels and new or updated sonar system components. Though higher than the hours proposed in Alternative 1, this action alternative still represents a decrease from the currently authorized transmission hours of 1,020 per year.

Alternative 2 also represents an increased number of training and testing hours over that presented in Alternative 1 associated with maintaining the proficiency of contractor crew members and military personnel onboard LFA sonar vessels. While the training hours allocated in Alternative 1 for training of military sonar operators meet the minimum standard required, the increased LFA sonar transmission hours in Alternative 2 would provide additional training and testing capacity for vessels to participate in at-sea exercises with other Navy units and to conduct acoustic research testing.

The SURTASS LFA sonar transmission hours under Action Alternative 2 (496 hours per year pooled across all SURTASS LFA sonar equipped vessels in years 1 to 4 and 592 hours across all vessels in year 5 and beyond) represent a distribution across six activities including:

- Contractor crew proficiency training (80 hours per year)
- Military crew (MILCREW) proficiency training (96 hours per year)
- Participation or support of naval exercises (96 hours per year)
- Vessel and equipment maintenance (64 hours per year)
- Acoustic research testing (160 hours per year)
- New SURTASS LFA sonar system testing (96 hours per year)

Each of these activities utilizes the SURTASS LFA sonar system within the operating profile described above (i.e., frequency range, duty cycle, ping duration, etc.), therefore the number of hours estimated for each activity is merely for planning purposes.

### 2.3.3 Alternatives Considered but Not Carried Forward For Analysis

The initial FOEIS/EIS for SURTASS LFA sonar considered alternatives to SURTASS LFA sonar, such as other passive and active acoustic and non-acoustic technologies, as discussed in FOEIS/EIS Subchapters 1.1.2, 1.1.3, and 1.2.1; and Table 1-1 (DoN, 2001). These technologies were also addressed in the 2002 NMFS Final Rule (NOAA, 2002) and the 2002 Navy ROD (DoN, 2002). The acoustic and non-acoustic detection technologies considered included radar, laser, magnetic, infrared, electronic, electric, hydrodynamic, biological, and high- or mid-frequency active sonar. The FOEIS/EIS concluded that these technologies did not meet the purpose and need of the proposed action to provide Naval forces with reliable long-range detection of submarines and, thus, did not provide adequate reaction time to counter potential threats. Accordingly, these alternatives were eliminated from detailed study in the FOEIS/EIS in accordance with CEQ Regulation section 1502.14. Furthermore, these technologies were not considered practicable and/or feasible for technical and economic reasons. The non-acoustic technologies were also re-examined in Subchapter 1.1.4 of the 2012 FSEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA sonar (DoN, 2012), with the re-evaluation reaching the same conclusion as the 2001 FOEIS/EIS.

No new information on alternate technologies or their capabilities has arisen since the analyses in presented in the 2001 and 2012 SURTASS LFA sonar documents. These technologies also do not meet the purpose and need of this Proposed Action to provide Naval forces with the ability to train and test appropriately to become proficient in long-range detection of unknown or enemy sub-surface contacts in time to counter potential threats. Therefore, the relevant information from the 2001 and 2012 SURTASS LFA sonar documents remains valid and is incorporated by reference herein.

## 2.4 Literature Cited

American National Standards Institute (ANSI). (2006). *ANSI reference quantities for acoustical levels. ANSI-S1-8-1989*, revised 2006. New York, NY: The Acoustical Society of America.

Department of the Navy (DoN). (2001). *Final overseas environmental impact statement and environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar.* Washington, D.C.: Department of the Navy, Chief of Naval Operations. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/docs/FEIS%20Vol%20I.pdf>.

DoN. (2002). Record of decision for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar; Notice of decision and availability. Washington, D.C.: Department of the Navy, Chief of Naval Operations. *Federal Register, 67*(141), 48145-48154.

DoN. (2007). *Final supplemental environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar.* Washington, D.C.: Department of the Navy, Chief of Naval Operations. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/docs/SURTASS_LFA_FSEIS.pdf>.

DoN. (2012). *Final supplemental environmental impact statement/supplemental overseas environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar.* Washington, D.C.: Department of the Navy, Chief of Naval Operations. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/docs/SURTASS_LFA_FSEIS-SOEIS.pdf>.

DoN. (2015). *Final supplemental environmental impact statement/supplemental overseas environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar.* Washington, D.C.: Department of the Navy, Chief of Naval Operations. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/docs/Final_SEIS-SOEIS_SURTASS_LFA_sonar.pdf>.

DoN. (2017a). *Final supplemental environmental impact statement/supplemental overseas environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar.* Washington, D.C.: Department of the Navy, Chief of Naval Operations. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/docs/Navy_SURTASS-LFA_FSEIS-SOEIS.pdf>.

DoN. (2017b). *National defense exemption from requirements of the Marine Mammal Protection Act for Department of Defense Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar military readiness activities.* Washington, D.C.: Department of Defense. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/docs/SURTASS_LFA_NDE_10Aug17.pdf>.

Kryter, K. D. (1985). *The effects of noise on man* (2nd ed.). Orlando, FL: Academic Press.

Naval Oceanographic Office. (1999). *Fleet oceanographic and acoustic reference manual (RP 33).* Prepared under the authority of Commander, Naval Meteorology and Oceanography Command. Stennis Space Center, MS: Department of the Navy, Department of Defense.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA). (2002). Taking and importing marine mammals: taking marine mammals incidental to Navy operations of Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar; Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 67*(136), 46712-46789.

Richardson, W. J., Charles R. Greene, J., Malme, C. I., & Thomson, D. H. (1995). *Marine mammals and noise*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Southall, B. L., Bowles, A. E., Ellison, W. T., Finneran, J. J., Gentry, R. L., Greene Jr., C. R., Kastak, D., Ketten, D. R., Miller, J. H., Nachtigall, P. E., Richardson, W. J., Thomas, J. A., & Tyack, P. L. (2007). Marine mammal noise exposure criteria: Initial scientific recommendations. *Aquatic Mammals*, *33*(4), 411-522.

Urick, R. J. (1983). *Principles of underwater sound, 3rd Ed*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.

Ward, W. D. (Ed.). (1968). *Proposed damage-risk criterion for impulsed noise (gunfire).* Committee on Hearing, Bioacoustics and Biomechanics. National Research Council, National Academy of Sciences, Washington, D.C.

# 3 AFFECTED ENVIRONMENT

This chapter presents a description of the environmental resources and baseline conditions that could potentially be affected by implementing the proposed action or its alternatives. In compliance with NEPA, CEQ, and 32 CFR part 775 guidelines, the discussion of the affected environment (i.e., existing conditions) in the proposed action area of the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans focuses only on those resource areas potentially subject to impacts resulting from implementation of the proposed action, which occurs in the marine environment. Accordingly, the resource areas detailed in this SEIS/SOEIS are air quality, marine environment, biological, and economic resources. Additionally, the level of detail that describes a resource is commensurate with the anticipated level of potential environmental impacts.

Since SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities would occur within the marine environment and principally entail the introduction of acoustic energy into that environment, the following resource areas are thus not affected by the proposed action and consequently were not analyzed further in this SEIS/SOEIS:

- Water Resources—Only two components of water resources, marine waters and marine sediments, are germane to a Proposed Action that takes place entirely in oceanic waters. Training and testing activities of SURTASS LFA sonar would have no impact on marine sediments as all equipment is deployed only in the marine water column. No part of the proposed action would affect seafloor sediments. The execution of the Proposed Action would add sound to the ambient ocean environment, and water quality may potentially be affected should pollutants be discharged from the LFA sonar vessels into oceanic waters. As such, only the marine environment is considered further herein.
- Airspace Resources—No airspace is involved with the execution of SURTASS LFA sonar activities. All training and testing activities associated with use of SURTASS LFA sonar occur in the marine environment and enlist no airspace platforms or resources.
- Geological Resources—The Proposed Action and its alternatives are at-sea deployments of in-water sonar systems and related equipment that entail no deployment to the seafloor of any equipment that may cause physical disturbances to marine geological resources, including seafloor sediments.
- Cultural Resources—SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities would not impact any marine cultural resources such as shipwrecks since the generation of underwater sound would not affect any cultural artifacts nor is any equipment deployed from the LFA sonar vessels to the seafloor where cultural artifacts would be located.
- Land Use—The Proposed Action and alternatives occur at sea. As such, no construction activities associated with any terrestrial resources would be conducted and the Proposed Action would not involve any activities inconsistent with current or foreseeable land-use approaches and patterns.
- Infrastructure—Maintenance, repair, and porting to access ship staff associated with SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities require no expansion or alteration to any shore facilities. No changes to support facilities are planned as part of the Proposed Action.

- Transportation—During training and testing activities of SURTASS LFA sonar, T-AGOS vessels make no unusual maneuvers and operate according to all maritime regulations and normal oceanic vessel operation. No impacts to ocean-going ship or boating traffic would result from the training and testing activities of SURTASS LFA sonar.
- Public Health and Safety—SURTASS LFA sonar is employed for training and testing activities such that RLs would not exceed 145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) at dive sites (or in Hawaii State waters) where humans could potentially be affected by SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions unless a national security requirement exists[7]. Employment of the SURTASS LFA sonar systems is accomplished by skilled and trained merchant mariners and Navy personnel following all prudent safety measures. As such, no significant impacts to public health and safety are reasonably foreseeable.
- Hazardous Materials and Wastes—No hazardous waste or materials would be handled during the execution of the Proposed Action and no release of hazardous waste or materials is foreseeably expected as a result of the Proposed Action. Although some incidental discharges from the SURTASS LFA sonar vessels are normal for ship operations, SURTASS LFA vessels are operated in compliance with all requirements of the CWA and the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships (MARPOL 73/78), as implemented under the APPS (33 U.S.C. 1901 to 1915). Operation of the SURTASS LFA sonar system itself would not result in the discharge of pollutants regulated under the APPS. Therefore, no discharges of pollutants regulated under the APPS or CWA are reasonably expected from the operation of the SURTASS LFA sonar vessels nor would unregulated environmental impacts occur in association with the operation of the SURTASS LFA sonar vessels.
- Sociologic—The Proposed Action does not involve any activities that would contribute to changes in sociological resources such as demography, communities, or social institutions.
- Environmental Justice—Implementation of the Proposed Action would not result in adverse impacts to any environmental resource area that would be expected to disproportionately affect minority or low-income human populations in the areas adjacent to the SURTASS LFA sonar study areas, and accordingly, no significant impacts are reasonably foreseeable.

## 3.1 Regulatory Setting

This section provides a brief overview of the relevant primary federal statutes, executive orders, and guidance that together form the regulatory framework for the resource evaluation of the affected environment. Additionally, Chapter 6 (Other Considerations Required by NEPA) provides a summary listing and status of compliance with applicable environmental laws, regulations, and executive orders that were considered in preparing this SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA sonar.

7 The Navy would transmit SURTASS LFA sonar such that RLs would not exceed 145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) at known recreational or commercial dive sites unless the following conditions are met: Should national security present a requirement to transmit SURTASS LFA sonar during training or testing activities such that exposure at known recreational or commercial dive sites may exceed RLs of 145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL), naval units would obtain permission from the appropriate designated Command authority prior to commencement of the activity. Prior to conducting the training or testing activity, the designated Command authority shall conduct a risk assessment, taking into account the potential for exposure of SURTASS LFA sonar to divers.

### 3.1.1 National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA)

This SEIS/SOEIS has been prepared in accordance with the President's CEQ regulations implementing NEPA (40 CFR §§ 1500–1508). NEPA (42 U.S.C. §§ 4321–4347) requires federal agencies to prepare an EIS for a proposed action with the potential to significantly affect the quality of the human environment; to disclose significant environmental impacts associated with the proposed action; to inform decision makers and the public of the reasonable alternatives to the proposed action; and to consider agency and public comments on the EIS. Based on Presidential Proclamation 5928, issued 27 December 1988, impacts on ocean areas that lie within 12 nmi of land (i.e., U.S. territorial waters) are subject to analysis under NEPA.

### 3.1.2 Executive Order 12114, Environmental Effects Abroad of Major Federal Actions

The preparation of this SEIS/SOEIS has been conducted in accordance with Executive Order (EO) 12114 and Navy implementing regulations in 32 CFR Part 187. An OEIS is required when a proposed action and alternatives have the potential to significantly harm the environment of the global commons. The global commons are defined as geographical areas outside the jurisdiction of any nation and include the oceans outside of the territorial seas (more than 12 nmi (22 km) from emergent land) of any nation and Antarctica, not including the contiguous zones and fisheries zones of foreign nations (exclusive economic zones) (32 CFR § 187.3). Environment is defined in EO 12114 as the natural and physical environment and excludes social, economic, and other environments. As permitted under NEPA and EO 12114, this SEIS and SOEIS for SURTASS LFA sonar have been combined into one document to reduce duplication.

### 3.1.3 Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA)

The MMPA provides protection to the 46 species of marine mammals potentially occurring in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. NMFS has jurisdiction over the cetacean and pinniped species that may occur in the study area. An analysis of the potential to "take" marine mammals by MMPA Level A or B harassment in association with training and testing activities of SURTASS LFA sonar has been conducted as part of this SEIS/SOEIS and its associated permit applications.

Although the Navy is currently operating SURTASS LFA sonar under a MMPA NDE for the period of August 2017 through August 2019, the Navy has submitted an application to NMFS requesting rulemaking and an LOA for the continued use of SURTASS LFA sonar from August 2019 through August 2026 in the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans. The information on marine mammals presented herein forms the basis of the rulemaking and LOA application for SURTASS LFA sonar.

### 3.1.4 Endangered Species Act (ESA)

Species of marine invertebrates, marine reptiles, marine and anadromous fishes, and marine mammals listed under the ESA potentially occur in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar as well as critical habitat designated for two species of marine mammals. NMFS has authority over the ESA-listed marine and anadromous species and critical habitats that may occur in the waters in which SURTASS LFA sonar may be operated. The potential for training and testing activities of SURTASS LFA sonar to affect the ESA-listed species or critical habitats has been assessed as part of this SEIS/SOEIS and the related permit applications.

Section 7(a)(2) of the ESA requires each federal agency to ensure that any action it authorizes, funds, or carries out is not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of any endangered or threatened species or result in the destruction or adverse modification of critical habitat of such species. When a federal agency's action "may affect" a listed species or critical habitat, the agency is required to consult with NMFS or USFWS, depending on which Service has jurisdiction over the species (50 CFR § 402.14(a)). While the Navy currently operates SURTASS LFA sonar in non-polar, worldwide waters under the 2017 ITS and Biological Opinion, pursuant to Section 7 of the ESA, the Navy has initiated consultation with NMFS on the continued employment of SURTASS LFA sonar in the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans from August 2019 through August 2026. The request for initiation of Section 7 consultation and a Biological Opinion (BO)/Incidental Take Statement (ITS) pursuant to the ESA is based on the species and habitat information presented in this SEIS/SOEIS.

### 3.1.5 Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA)

The MPRSA of 1972 (33 U.S.C. §§ 1401-1445) regulates dumping of toxic materials beyond U.S. territorial waters and provides guidelines for designation and regulation of marine sanctuaries. SURTASS LFA sonar vessels comply with all federal regulations regarding ocean dumping and discharge requirements in waters of the U.S. or the global commons.

### 3.1.6 National Marine Sanctuaries Act (NMSA)

The NMSA provides for the designation and management of marine areas as national marine sanctuaries that have special national significance. A marine area may be designated as a National Marine Sanctuary (NMS) on the basis of its conservation, recreational, ecological, historical, cultural, archaeological, scientific, educational, or aesthetic qualities. Thirteen NMSs have been designated in U.S. waters but only one of those, the Hawaiian Islands Humpback Whale NMS is located in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar.

Although for most of the NMSs, prohibitions include exemptions for certain military activities, Section 304(d) of the NMSA requires federal agencies to consult with the ONMS before taking actions internal or external to a sanctuary that are "likely to destroy, cause the loss of, or injure any sanctuary resource" (16 USC 1434(d)). According to NOAA policy, injury to sanctuary resources includes estimated MMPA Level A and Level B harassment of marine mammals within a NMS, as both have the potential to adversely change a physical attribute or viability of affected individuals. The Navy has determined that its planned use of SURTASS LFA sonar pursuant to this SEIS/SOEIS does not require consultation under Section 304(d) of the NMSA for the one NMS, the Hawaiian Islands Humpback Whale NMS, located within the Navy's study area for SURTASS LFA sonar.

### 3.1.7 Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (MSFCMA) and Sustainable Fisheries Act (SFA)

The MSFCMA (16 U.S.C. § 1801 et seq.), enacted in 1976 and amended by the Sustainable Fisheries Act (SFA) in 1996, mandates identification and conservation of EFH in U.S. waters. EFH is defined as waters, including the water column, and benthic substrates necessary (required to support a sustainable fishery and the federally managed species) to fish for spawning, breeding, feeding, or growth to maturity (i.e., full life cycle). EFH waters include aquatic areas and their associated physical, chemical, and biological properties used by fish, and may include areas historically used by fish.

Federal agencies are required to consult with NMFS if their activities have the potential for adverse effects on EFH. The MSFCMA defines an adverse effect as “any impact which reduces quality and/or quantity of EFH [and] may include direct (e.g., contamination or physical disruption), indirect (e.g., loss of prey, reduction in species’ fecundity), site-specific or habitat wide impacts, including individual, cumulative, or synergistic consequences of actions” (50 CFR 600.810).

As part of the analyses for the Navy’s 2001 FOEIS/EIS (DoN, 2001) for SURTASS LFA sonar, the Navy made a determination of no adverse effects on EFH associated with the proposed SURTASS LFA sonar activities. The Navy provided the NMFS Office of Habitat Conservation with their EFH determination. The information regarding MSFCMA agency coordination is incorporated by reference herein. The Navy’s EFH determination remains unchanged.

### 3.1.8 Migratory Bird Treaty Act (MBTA)

The MBTA of 1918 (16 U.S.C. sections 703–712) and Migratory Bird Treat Reform Act of 2004 together provide the foundation for U.S. and international (Canada, Mexico, Japan, and Russia) protection of migratory birds. The 1,026 bird species protected under the MBTA include those species native to the U.S. and present in Canada, Mexico, Japan, and Russia. Native species are those that occur as a result of natural biological or ecological processes. The MBTA prohibits taking, killing, possessing, or purchasing any migratory bird[8] or their parts, nests, or eggs, unless permitted by regulation. USFWS manages and has regulatory responsibility for migratory birds, which include species of seabirds.

Military readiness activities of the U.S. Armed Forces are exempt from the prohibitions of the MBTA unless those activities may result in a significant adverse effect on a migratory bird population. The Armed Forces agency must confer and cooperate with the USFWS to develop appropriate and reasonable conservation measures to minimize or mitigate the significant adverse effects on the potentially affected migratory birds. The Navy has determined that its planned use of SURTASS LFA pursuant to this SEIS/SOEIS does not require consultation nor coordination under the MBTA.

### 3.1.9 Clean Water Act (CWA)

The CWA (33 U.S.C. § 1251 et seq.) regulates discharges of pollutants in surface waters of the U.S. and additionally provides for the protection of ocean waters (waters of the territorial seas, the contiguous zone, and the high seas beyond the contiguous zone) from point-source discharges (CWA Section 403). In 1996, the CWA was amended to create section 312(n), “Uniform National Discharge Standards for Vessels of the Armed Forces.” Section 312(n) directs the EPA and DoD to establish national standards for discharges incidental to the normal operation of armed forces vessels. These national standards preempt State discharge standards for military vessels. Navy vessels operate in compliance with the national discharge standards.

### 3.1.10 Clean Air Act (CAA)

The CAA (42 U.S.C. §7401 et seq.) regulates discharges of air emissions from stationary and mobile sources within the U.S., including U.S.-flagged vessels that operate using diesel fueled engines while in state waters (typically 3 nmi [5.6 km] from shore except Texas, western [Gulf of Mexico] Florida, and Puerto Rico, where the seaward boundary of the states is 9 nmi [16.7 km] from shore). The CAA

8 A migratory bird is any species or family of birds that live, reproduce, or migrate within or across international borders at some point during their annual life cycle. By regulation, a migratory bird is a bird of a species that belongs to a family or group of species native to the U.S. and its territories and is present in Canada, Japan, Mexico, or Russia.

authorizes the EPA to establish standards for criteria air pollutants to which all states must conform. Additionally, the General Conformity Rule of the CAA, requires federal agencies to ensure that their actions conform to applicable implementation plans for achieving and maintaining the National Ambient Air Quality Standards (NAAQS) for criteria pollutants. Only military tactical vehicles are exempt from the provisions of the CAA, but the President can issue regulations exempting the U.S. Armed Forces with compliance with the General Conformity Rule of the CAA for military assets that are uniquely military in nature; these exemptions are valid for three-year intervals. This SEIS/SOEIS includes an assessment of the air emissions contributed by SURTASS LFA sonar activities in U.S. waters of Hawaii, Guam, and Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands (CNMI) that are within the study area.

### 3.1.11 Executive Order 12962—Recreational Fisheries

EO 12962 on Recreational Fisheries (60 C.F.R. 30769) was issued in 1995 to ensure that federal agencies strive to improve the "quantity, function, sustainable productivity, and distribution of U.S. aquatic resources" so that recreational fishing opportunities increase nationwide. The overarching goal of this order is to promote conservation, restoration, and enhancement of aquatic systems and fish populations by increasing fishing access, education and outreach, and multi-agency partnerships. Since the Proposed Action would have no significant harm to fishes or fisheries and would in no way impair access to recreational fishing areas, the Navy concluded that it has fulfilled its EO 12962 responsibilities regarding recreational fishing uses and resources.

### 3.1.12 Executive Order 13158—Marine Protected Areas

The purpose of EO 13158 on marine protected areas (MPAs) is the protection of the significant natural and cultural resources within the marine environment by strengthening and expanding the Nation's system of MPAs, creating the framework for a national system of MPAs, and preserving representative habitats in different geographic regions of the marine environment.

MPAs are defined in EO 13158 as "any area of the marine environment that has been reserved by federal, state, territorial, tribal, or local laws or regulations to provide lasting protection for part or all of the natural and cultural resources therein." EO 13158 strengthens governmental interagency cooperation in protecting the marine environment and calls for strengthening management of existing MPAs, creating new ones, and preventing harm to marine ecosystems by federally approved, conducted, or funded activities (Agardy, 2000). The Navy assessed the national MPAs in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar, as specified under EO 13158.

### 3.1.13 Executive Order 13840—Ocean Policy to Advance the Economic, Security, and Environmental Interests of the United States

Issued in June 2018, this EO revokes and replaces EO 13547, *Stewardship of the Ocean, Our Coasts, and the Great Lakes*. This EO is intended to advance the economic, security, and environmental interests of the U.S. through improved public access to marine data and information; efficient federal agency coordination on ocean related matters; and engagement with marine industries, the science and technology community, and other ocean stakeholders, including Regional Ocean Partnerships.

Under this EO, it is the policy of the U.S. to: (a) coordinate the activities of executive departments and agencies (agencies) regarding ocean-related matters to ensure effective management of ocean, coastal, and Great Lakes waters and to provide economic, security, and environmental benefits for present and future generations of Americans; (b) continue to promote the lawful use of the ocean by agencies, including U.S. Armed Forces; (c) exercise rights and jurisdiction and perform duties in accordance with applicable domestic law and—if consistent with applicable domestic law— international law, including customary international law; (d) facilitate the economic growth of coastal communities and promote ocean industries, which employ millions of Americans, advance ocean science and technology, feed the American people, transport American goods, expand recreational opportunities, and enhance America's energy security; (e) ensure that Federal regulations and management decisions do not prevent productive and sustainable use of ocean, coastal, and Great Lakes waters; (f) modernize the acquisition, distribution, and use of the best available ocean-related science and knowledge, in partnership with marine industries; the ocean science and technology community; State, tribal, and local governments; and other ocean stakeholders, to inform decisions and enhance entrepreneurial opportunity; and (g) facilitate, as appropriate, coordination, consultation, and collaboration regarding ocean-related matters, consistent with applicable law, among Federal, State, tribal, and local governments, marine industries, the ocean science and technology community, other ocean stakeholders, and foreign governments and international organizations.

#### 3.1.14 Department of Defense and Navy Directives and Instructions

In addition to the U.S. federal legislation that governs Navy activities in the marine environment, the Navy is required to comply with environmental readiness guidelines and requirements promulgated in the *OPNAV 5090 Environmental Readiness Program Manual* by the Navy's Energy and Environmental Readiness Division. This SEIS/SOEIS has been prepared according to Navy environmental guidance.

## 3.2 Air Quality

### 3.2.1 Introduction

Air pollution is a threat to human health and also damages the environment as well as the exteriors of structures and buildings (EPA, 2007). Air pollution creates haze or smog that reduces visibility and interferes with aviation. To improve air quality and reduce air pollution, the CAA and its amendments (1970 and 1990) were enacted to set regulatory limits on air pollutants and ensure air quality and protect human health and the environmental from air pollution.

A region's air quality is influenced by many factors including the type, concentration, and emission rate of pollutants emitted into the atmosphere, the geographic extent and topography of region, the prevailing meteorological conditions (wind speed and direction, precipitation, and vertical atmospheric temperature gradient), and atmospheric chemistry. Most air pollutants originate from human-made sources, including mobile sources (e.g., cars, trucks, buses) and stationary sources (e.g., factories, refineries, power plants), as well as indoor sources (e.g., some building materials and cleaning solvents). Air pollutants are also released from natural sources such as volcanic eruptions and forest fires. Air quality in a given location is characterized by the concentration of various pollutants in the atmosphere. Ambient air quality is reported as the atmospheric concentrations of specific air pollutants at a particular time and location. The units of measurement are expressed as a mass per unit volume (e.g., micrograms per cubic meter [$\mu g/m^3$] of air) or as a volume fraction (e.g., parts per million [ppm] by volume).

Although the Proposed Action occurs in the marine environment, because it entails the use Navy ocean surveillance vessels, which use diesel-fueled engines, the air emissions of the SURTASS LFA sonar vessels are subject to the provisions of the CAA while operating in the state waters of Hawaii, Guam, or CNMI.

The following section includes information and discussion of criteria air pollutants, air quality standards, sources of air pollutants, permitting, and greenhouse gases.

### 3.2.2 Criteria Pollutants and National Ambient Air Quality Standards

The principal pollutants defining the air quality, called "criteria pollutants," include carbon monoxide (CO), sulfur dioxide ($SO_2$), nitrogen oxides ($NO_x$)[9], ozone ($O_3$), suspended particulate matter less than or equal to 10 microns in diameter ($PM_{10}$), fine particulate matter less than or equal to 2.5 microns in diameter ($PM_{2.5}$), and lead (Pb). Some criteria pollutants such as CO, $SO_2$, Pb, and some particulates are emitted directly into the atmosphere from emission sources, including marine vessels. Ozone, $NO_2$, and some particulates are formed as the result of atmospheric chemical reactions that are influenced by weather, ultraviolet light, and other atmospheric processes.

Under the CAA, the EPA has established NAAQS (40 CFR part 50) for these criteria pollutants. NAAQS are classified as primary or secondary. Primary standards protect against adverse health effects, while secondary standards protect against welfare effects, such as damage to farm crops and vegetation and damage to buildings. Some air pollutants have long-term and short-term standards. Short-term standards are designed to protect against acute, or short-term, health effects, while long-term standards were established to protect against chronic health effects.

Areas that are and have historically been in compliance with the NAAQS are designated as attainment areas. Areas that violate a federal air quality standard are designated as nonattainment areas. Areas that have transitioned from nonattainment to attainment are designated as maintenance areas and are required to adhere to maintenance plans to ensure continued attainment of the NAAQS. The CAA requires states to develop a general plan to attain and maintain the NAAQS and a specific plan to attain the standards for each area designated nonattainment for a NAAQS. These plans, known as State Implementation Plans (SIPs), are developed by state and local air quality management agencies and submitted to the EPA for approval. The State of Hawaii and the territory of CNMI are both in attainment and/or are unclassified with the NAAQS for all criteria pollutants, but Guam is not (EPA, 2018). One area on Guam, Piti-Cabras, is in non-attainment for the 2010 SO2 NAASQ (EPA, 2017, 2018).

### 3.2.3 General Conformity

Section 176(c)(1) of the CAA, commonly known as the General Conformity Rule, requires federal agencies to ensure their actions conform to applicable state implementation plans for achieving and maintaining the NAAQS for criteria pollutants. The General Conformity Rule applies to federal actions occurring in nonattainment or maintenance areas when the total direct and indirect emissions of nonattainment pollutants (or their precursors) exceed specified thresholds.

A conformity applicability analysis is the first step of a conformity evaluation and assesses if a federal action must be supported by a conformity determination. This is typically done by quantifying applicable direct and indirect emissions that are projected to result due to implementation of the federal action. Indirect emissions are those emissions caused by the federal action and originating in the region of interest, but which can occur at a later time or in a different location from the action itself and are reasonably foreseeable. The federal agency can control and will maintain control over the indirect action due to a continuing program responsibility of the federal agency. Reasonably foreseeable emissions are

9 Nitrogen dioxide ($NO_2$) is the most common of the nitrogen oxides that are considered primary air pollutants. Because other nitrogen oxides such as nitrous and nitric acids may also be found in the atmosphere, the more general term $NO_x$ is used to encompass all nitrogen oxides.

projected future direct and indirect emissions that are identified at the time the conformity evaluation is performed. The location of such emissions is known, and the emissions are quantifiable, as described, and documented by the federal agency based on its own information and after reviewing any information presented to the federal agency. If the results of the applicability analysis indicate that the total emissions would not exceed the de minimis emissions thresholds, then the conformity evaluation process is completed. Compliance with the General Conformity Rule is presumed if the net increase in reasonably foreseeable air pollutant emissions associated with a federal action would not exceed applicable federal *de minimis* levels.

The Navy conducted an evaluation of the potential air pollutant emissions associated with the Proposed Action occurring within the U.S. territorial waters that lie within the potential study area for SURTASS LFA sonar, namely Hawaii, Guam, and the CNMI. The evaluation was to determine if requirements of the CAA's General Conformity Rule were applicable to the Proposed Action. Due to Title 10 exemptions, Navy SURTASS LFA sonar vessels would never go into port in Hawaii, Guam, nor the CNMI. As such, the Navy determined that all air emissions generated as a result of the training and testing activities of SURTASS LFA sonar would occur outside of U.S. state and territory waters (i.e., beyond 3 nmi [5.6 km] from shore). Thus, the only activities that would be analyzed pursuant to the CAA are those associated with SURTASS LFA sonar vessels when they are conducting training and testing activities in the waters of the coastal standoff range (<12 nmi [22 km] from land) of Hawaii, Guam, and the CNMI. Since these areas are not subject to the CAA General Conformity rule, the Navy is not required to perform a CAA General Conformity evaluation for the Proposed Action.

### 3.2.4 Hazardous Air Pollutants

In addition to the six criteria pollutants, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) currently designates 187 substances as hazardous air pollutants (HAPs) under the CAA. HAPs are air pollutants known or suspected to cause cancer or other serious health effects, or adverse environmental and ecological effects (EPA, 2016a). Unlike the criteria pollutants, no national standards have been established for HAPs. The only HAPs emitted during the execution of the Proposed Action would be from the SURTASS LFA sonar vessels, which are considered to be mobile sources. HAPS generated by mobile sources are termed Mobile Source Air Toxics (MSATs). MSATs are compounds emitted from mobile sources that are known or suspected to cause cancer or other serious health and environmental effects. The primary method for controlling MSATs such as those generated by the SURTASS LFA sonar vessels is to reduce the HAP fuel content and alter the engine operating characteristics to reduce the volume of pollutant generated during engine combustion.

In 2001, the EPA issued its first MSAT Rule, which identified 201 compounds as being HAPs that require regulation. Six MSAT compounds were identified to have the greatest effect on human health: benzene, butadiene, formaldehyde, acrolein, acetaldehyde, and diesel particulate matter. Subsequent EPA rules identified several marine engine emission certification standards that must be implemented as applicable (40 CFR parts 89, 91, 94, 1042, 1043, and 1068).

MSAT emissions are typically one or more orders of magnitude smaller than concurrent emissions of criteria air pollutants and only become a concern when large amounts of fuel, explosives, or other materials are consumed during a single activity or in one geographic location. It is possible only to analyze HAPs qualitatively since the LFA sonar vessels (and their engines) would only be operated intermittently over a large geographic area and would produce negligible ambient HAPs, predominantly in areas not routinely accessed by the general public. For these reasons, HAPs are not further evaluated herein.

### 3.2.5 Greenhouse Gases and Climate Change

Greenhouse gases are gases that trap heat in the atmosphere and contribute to the "greenhouse effect", a natural phenomenon in which heat is trapped within the lowest portion of the Earth's atmosphere by greenhouse gases, causing radiant heating at the surface. Greenhouse gases influence the global climate by trapping heat in the atmosphere that would otherwise escape to space. Greenhouse gas emissions also occur as the result of human activities. The primary long-lived greenhouse gases directly emitted by human activities are $CO_2$, methane, nitrous oxide, hydrofluorocarbons, perfluorocarbons, nitrogen trifluoride, and sulfur hexafluoride; these gases combined are considered by the EPA to endanger both the public health and the public welfare of current and future generations (EPA, 2009c). Carbon dioxide, methane, and nitrous oxide occur naturally in the atmosphere. The heating effect resulting from concentrations of greenhouse gases in the atmosphere, particularly the increased concentrations attributed to human activities, is considered the primary cause of the global warming that has been observed over the last 50 years (EPA, 2009b). Global warming and climate change affect many aspects of the environment.

To estimate global warming potential, which is the heat trapping capacity of a gas, the U.S. quantifies greenhouse gas emissions using the 100-year timeframe values established in the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change Fourth Assessment Report (Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change, 2007), in accordance with reporting procedures of the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change, 2013). All global warming potentials are expressed relative to a reference gas, $CO_2$, which is assigned a global warming potential equal to 1. Six other primary greenhouse gases have global warming potentials: global warming potential of 25 for methane, 298 for nitrous oxide, 124 to 14,800 for hydrofluorocarbons, 7,390 to >17,340 for perfluorocarbons, 17,200 for nitrogen trifluoride, and up to 22,800 for sulfur hexafluoride.

Carbon dioxide is the predominant greenhouse gas emitted into the atmosphere (85.4 percent), principally from fossil fuel combustion (EPA, 2015). As a result, greenhouse gas emissions are typically reported in terms of $CO_2$ equivalency. CEQ guidance recommends that federal agencies consider 25,000 metric tons (mt) of carbon dioxide equivalent ($CO_2e$) emissions on an annual basis as a reference point below which a quantitative analysis of greenhouse gas is not recommended unless it is easily accomplished based on available tools and data. To estimate the $CO_2e$ of a non-carbon dioxide greenhouse gas, the appropriate global warming potential of that gas is multiplied by the amount of the gas emitted. All seven greenhouse gases are multiplied by their global warming potential and the results are added to calculate the total equivalent emissions of carbon dioxide. Weighted by global warming potential, methane is the second largest component of emissions, followed by nitrous oxide.

Revised 2014 guidance from CEQ, recommends that agencies consider both the potential effects of a proposed action on climate change, as indicated by its estimated greenhouse gas emissions, and the implications of climate change for the environmental effects of a proposed action. The guidance also emphasizes that agency analyses should be commensurate with projected greenhouse gas emissions and climate impacts and should employ appropriate quantitative or qualitative analytical methods to ensure useful information is available to inform the public and the decision-making process in distinguishing between alternatives and mitigations.

The execution of the Proposed Action is anticipated to release greenhouse gases into the atmosphere. The potential effects of proposed greenhouse gas emissions are by nature global and may result in cumulative impacts because most individual sources of greenhouse gas emissions are not large enough to have any noticeable effect on climate change.

## 3.3 Marine Environment

The potential impacts on the physical environment of the oceans associated with execution of the Proposed Action are the addition of pollutants resulting from the operation of the SURTASS LFA sonar vessels and addition of underwater noise during operation of both LFA sonar and the associated mitigation monitoring system, HF/M3 sonar. With the exception of the addition of sound to the oceanic environment, the operation of these sonar systems would not affect other marine environment resources, including seafloor sediments or oceanic water quality.

### 3.3.1 Marine Pollutants

SURTASS LFA sonar vessels are U.S. Coast Guard-certified and are operated in accordance with all applicable federal, international, and U.S. Navy rules and regulations related to environmental compliance, especially for discharge of potentially hazardous materials into the marine environment. The CWA regulates military vessel discharges into the marine environment under Section 312(n), Uniform National Discharge Standards for Vessels of the Armed Forces. The NDAA of 1996 amended Section 312 of the CWA to direct the DoD and U.S. EPA in the establishment of standards for potential discharges incidental to the normal operation of a military vessel. These discharge standards apply to military vessels operating in U.S. inland and territorial waters (i.e., 12 nmi from shore). Additionally, military vessels are also subject to compliance with the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships (MARPOL 1973 as modified by the Protocol of 1978), which is implemented by the APPS (33 U.S.C. 1901 to 1915).

Since the U.S. Navy adheres to regulations of the Uniform National Discharge Standards of the CWA and APPS for its sea-going vessels, unregulated environmental impacts from the operation of the SURTASS LFA sonar vessels would not occur. Since no impacts associated with the potential addition of pollutants or harmful materials to marine waters associated with the operation of the SURTASS LFA sonar vessels would occur, no further discussion of marine pollutants is included herein.

### 3.3.2 Ambient Noise

Marine animals use underwater sound to sense and obtain information about the ocean environment. Using both active (echolocation and vocalizations) and passive (listening) acoustics, marine animals employ sound for such functions as communication, navigation, obstacle and predator avoidance, and prey detection (Au and Hastings, 2008). The ability to use sound as an effective sensing medium in the ocean is dependent on the level of ambient or background noise in the ocean environment, since that noise could potentially interfere with an animal's ability to sense (hear) or produce sound.

Ambient noise is the typical or persistent background noise that is part of an environment. Ambient noise is produced by both natural and anthropogenic (human) sources, is typically characterized by a broad range of frequencies, and is directional both horizontally and vertically so that the received sound levels are not equal from all directions. Noise generated by surface ocean waves, wind stress, and biologically-produced (e.g., snapping shrimp) sounds are the primary contributors to the natural ambient noise soundscape in the frequency range of 300 Hz to 5 (kiloHertz) kHz; in polar regions, the sounds generated by moving sea ice dominant the ambient noise environment (Menze et al., 2017). The sound produced by propulsion systems of ocean-going ships, with frequencies centered from 20 to 200 Hz (but ranging as high as 1 kHz), is the dominate source of anthropogenic sound in the ocean (Hildebrand, 2009; Tyack, 2008).

A comprehensive overview of oceanic ambient noise can be found in Urick (1983), Richardson et al. (1995), and Au and Hastings (2008). Previous documentation for SURTASS LFA sonar presented information on the natural and anthropogenic components of ambient ocean noise: FOEIS/EIS subchapter 3.1.1 (DoN, 2001), 2012 SEIS/SOEIS subchapter 3.1.1 (DoN, 2012), and 2017 SEIS/SOEIS subchapter 3.2.1 (DoN, 2017a). Since the information presented therein remains valid and pertinent, it is incorporated by reference in this SEIS/SOEIS. Recent research and information, particularly on LF oceanic noise, follows.

#### 3.3.2.1 Ambient Oceanic Noise Trends

Ambient noise levels in both the Indian and Pacific oceans have increased over the last several decades. In the Indian Ocean, noise in the LF band (5 to 115 Hz) has increased 2 to 3 dB over the past decade, while acoustic data measured from the northeast Pacific Ocean indicate that deepwater LF (10 to 100 Hz) ambient noise levels have been rising for the last 60 years, principally attributable to distant shipping noise (McDonald et al., 2006; Miksis-Olds and Nichols, 2016). Širović et al. (2013) found that measured ambient noise levels of seven remote areas of the tropical and subtropical North Pacific Ocean were lower than those reported for other areas of the North Pacific and were indicative of only light shipping or distant ship noise.

The ambient noise levels in shallower continental shelf environments are more variable as the regional seafloor and topographic conditions strongly affect acoustic propagation. In the continental shelf environment of Southern California, the recent ambient noise levels were not as high as those measured in other coastal continental shelf areas such as in the Norwegian Sea, North Sea, and Eastern Canada (McDonald et al., 2008). Ship-related noise, however, dominated the LF soundscapes of all the shallower, coastal areas and increased in southern California waters by 6 to 9 dB over the 50 years for which data were available (McDonald et al., 2008).

Ambient noise data from the 1950s and 1960s show that noise levels increased at a rate of approximately 3 dB per decade or 0.55 dB per year. Beginning in the 1980s, however, the rate of increase in ambient noise levels slowed to 0.2 dB per year (Chapman and Price, 2011). Andrew et al. (2002) reported an increase of about 10 dB in the 20 to 80 Hz band during a six-year observation period (1995 to 2001), which was less than expected based on a rate of 0.55 dB increase per year (Andrew et al., 2011). Farrokhrooz et al. (2017) recently reported that in the northeast Pacific Ocean, little change had occurred in the 50-Hz noise level over the last four decades but that seasonal trends are obvious in ambient noise data for this region. Seasonal increases in ambient noise in the 17 to 20 Hz band during fall are likely associated with the presence of migrating baleen whales, and the ~2 dB increase in noise in the 40 to 50 Hz band from December through May likely is reflective of the increase in wind speeds at higher latitudes and/or the seasonal changes in shipping lanes (Chen et al., 2014; Farrokhrooz et al., 2017).

#### 3.3.2.2 Ambient Shipping Noise

The overall increasing ambient noise trends in both the Pacific and Indian oceans have primarily been attributed to increasing shipping noises (Miksis-Olds and Nichols, 2016). Recent measurements in the northeast Pacific region show a leveling or slight decrease in sound levels, even though shipping activity continued to rise, which confirms the prediction by Ross (1976) that the rate of increase in ambient ocean noise levels would be less at the end of the twentieth century compared to that observed in the mid-20th century (Andrew et al., 2011). Better design of propulsion systems may have contributed to this reduced increase in oceanic noise levels in at least some ocean areas (Chapman and Price, 2011).

Veirs et al. (2016) reported that ambient noise levels from ship noise not only have increased in the LF frequency band (100 to 1,000 Hz) but also in the high frequency (HF) band (10 to 40 kHz) by 5 to 1 dB at distances <1.6 nmi (3 km) in coastal waters. Thus, noise generated by both ships and boats ranges into the high frequencies used by many odontocetes, such as killer whales, and may mask communication and echolocation signals.

#### 3.3.2.3 Other Ambient Noise Sources

Shipping alone does not fully account for the increases in noise levels in the 30 to 50 Hz LF band that was observed from 1965 to 2003. Other sources of anthropogenic ambient noise in the ocean including noise from oil and gas exploration, seismic airgun activity, and renewable energy sources (e.g., wind farms) are contributors to the overall ocean soundscape. These sources contribute to sound in the lower LF frequency band and have been increasing over time (Miksis-Olds et al., 2013). Many of these anthropogenic sources are located along well-traveled shipping routes and encompass coastal and continental shelf waters that are important marine habitats (Hildebrand, 2009).

In some ocean regions, noise generated by seismic airgun surveys increasingly dominates the ambient noise environment; during summer to autumn of 2008 to 2014 in the Fram Strait region of the North Atlantic Ocean, seismic airgun noise was detected for more than 12 hours per day (Ahonen et al., 2017). Sound produced by renewable-energy production developments, particularly that of offshore wind energy, differ from other types of anthropogenic sound sources in that the underwater noise levels generated from the operation of a wind farms is more persistent and of longer duration. While the anthropogenic noise generated by seismic exploration is transient in nature, the expected lifetime of an offshore wind farm is twenty to thirty years. The associated noises from the operation of the wind farm would result in an almost constant and permanent source of noise in the vicinity of a wind farm (Tougaard et al., 2009).

As ocean ambient noise levels increase overall, remarkably, many sound-producing marine animals may also inadvertently, and probably as a very small measure, contribute to the rising oceanic ambient noise level. For example, some marine mammals that utilize the LF bands for communication have been observed to employ noise compensation mechanisms in loud soundscape environments. Baleen whales have been observed increasing the amplitude of their vocalizations to overcome increasing noise levels at specific frequencies; these compensation mechanisms for an increasingly noisy ocean environment in turn contribute to a slight increase in the naturally-derived component of rising ocean sound levels (Miksis-Olds et al., 2013).

#### 3.3.2.4 Climate Change and Ocean Acidification

Climate change refers to the changes in the Earth's climate, which throughout Earth's history have typically been due to very small variations in the Earth's orbit that alter the amount of the sun's energy the planet receives, causing cooling or warming of the Earth. However, scientists recognized in the middle of the 20th century that the Earth's increasingly warming atmosphere was not due to the historical causes of climate change but appeared instead to be significantly linked to anthropogenic causes. The principal cause in the current global warming trend has been scientifically linked to the unprecedented increased input of greenhouse gases into the Earth's atmosphere (Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change [IPCC], 2013).

Greenhouse gases primarily include naturally occurring carbon dioxide ($CO_2$), water vapor, ozone ($O_3$), methane ($CH_4$), and nitrous oxide ($N_2O$), but also include hydrofluorocarbons, perfluorocarbons, sulfur hexafluoride, and nitrogen trifluoride. These gases are a natural part of the Earth's atmosphere that regulates the Earth's climate by trapping the heat in the atmosphere that would otherwise escape into space. Without greenhouse gases blanketing the Earth, the surface temperature would be 60° F (15.6° C) colder (Karl et al., 2009). The increased levels of greenhouse gases in the Earth's atmosphere are significant because of their long duration in the atmosphere. After emission, atmospheric $CO_2$, $CH_4$, and aerosols can remain elevated for thousands of years, decades, or weeks to days, respectively (Karl et al., 2009).

Global warming and increased $CO_2$ concentrations in the atmosphere affect the oceans in several ways. Atmospheric warming has resulted in the warming of the oceans because atmospheric $CO_2$ is absorbed by the oceans as well as by vegetation on land. The greatest increase in ocean temperatures has occurred in surface waters, with the temperature of the upper 246 feet (ft) (75 meters [m]) of the oceans having increased by an average of 0.18° F (0.11°C) per decade from 1971 to 2010 (IPCC, 2013). Thus, as the concentration of $CO_2$ in the atmosphere has increased, so too has the absorption of $CO_2$ levels in the ocean. When $CO_2$ is absorbed in seawater, carbonic acid forms, resulting in the lowering of the pH[10] of seawater as ocean waters become less alkaline than normal (Cao and Caldeira, 2008). This process is known as ocean acidification.

The pH of the world's oceans has been remarkably stable at about 8.2 for millennia, but recent measurements indicate that the average pH has fallen to around 8.1 with further pH decreases (0.4 to 0.7 pH units) predicted over the next century (Gazioğlu et al., 2015). The greatest increases in ocean acidity are predicted to occur in waters at high latitudes, with moderate increases in acidity predicted in tropical and subtropical waters (Cao and Caldeira, 2008). The increase in ocean acidity would initially be less in deeper waters of the ocean, with models predicting that the pH at a depth of 3,281 ft (1,000 m) could decline by 0.2 to 0.5 pH units by 2100, depending on the environmental characteristics and location (Ilyina et al., 2009).

Ocean acidification would have profound effects on the oceans and their biota, even in polar waters. Reef-building corals are already being affected by warming oceans and ocean acidification; microbial communities may also be affected, which could disrupt or change nutrient cycling, efficiency of $CO_2$ uptake, and cause trophic shifts in the world's oceans (Subramaniam et al., 2017).

#### *3.3.2.4.1 Ocean Acidification and Ambient Ocean Noise*

Ocean acidification, caused by the increased absorption of $CO_2$ by surface ocean waters, which makes them more acidic (decrease in pH), has become a subject of worldwide concern. This concern is not only due to the changes in seawater chemistry and the resulting effects on organisms such as reef-building coral, but also due to the potential impact upon ambient ocean noise via changes in the acoustic absorption coefficient at low frequencies. Simply put, ocean acidification from rising $CO_2$ levels would result in decreased sound absorption in the LF bands and potentially increased levels of ocean ambient

10 pH refers to the potential of hydrogen in water soluble substances and is measured on a scale from 1 to 14, with pH values below 7 (neutral) being acidic and values above 7 being alkaline (basic).

noise. Ocean acidification has a strong dependency on pH at frequencies less than 2 kHz (Joseph and Chiu, 2010). A decrease in ocean acidity of about 0.45 pH units would result in a decrease in sound absorption by about 50 percent for frequencies below 1 kHz. As a result, LF sound would have to travel twice as far to lose the same amount of energy to absorption. Thus, LF sounds would propagate farther, increasing ambient noise levels, with most of the changes occurring in surface waters (Gazioğlu et al., 2015). This decrease in sound absorption may impact ocean ambient noise levels within the auditory range critical for environmental, military, and economic interests (Hester et al., 2008).

To understand better the potential effects ocean acidification may have on ambient noise levels, some researchers have tried to estimate the changes in ambient ocean noise levels due to the decreasing pH of the ocean. Joseph and Chiu (2010) estimated that by 2250, the ambient noise level would increase by 0.2 dB in the frequency range of 50 to 2,000 Hz if the pH of surface waters changed by 0.7 pH units. Reeder and Chiu (2010) also predicted changes of less than 0.5 dB for all frequencies in the deep ocean, with no statistically significant change in shallow water or surface duct environments when there was a decrease in pH from 8.1 to 7.4. Ilyina et al. (2009) estimated that ocean pH could fall by 0.6 by 2100, and sound absorption in the 100 Hz to 100 kHz band could decrease by 60 percent in high latitudes and deep-ocean waters over the same period. These authors further predicted that over the 21st Century, sound absorption in the 100 Hz to 100 kHz frequency band will decrease by almost half in regions of the world's oceans with significant anthropogenic noise, such as the North Atlantic Ocean.

However, underwater sound propagation is complex, and ocean pH is only one component affecting how sound propagates underwater. Since sound absorption is a relatively small factor in acoustic propagation at low frequencies, the impact of these changes in absorption (i.e., less than 1 dB) represent vanishingly small changes that likely would not be significant.

Ocean acidification is predicted to have a potentially more profound affect on the biological ambient noise environment. Rossi et al. (2016a) evaluated the potential for ocean acidification to alter the acoustic behavior of a marine animal that produces one of the loudest sounds in the ocean (up to 210 dB re 1 µPa @ 1 m), the snapping shrimp. In many coastal waters, the ambient noise environment is dominated by the sounds made by snapping shrimp. The results of the Rossi et al. (2016a) study indicate that when exposed to elevated $CO_2$ levels and the resulting more acidic water conditions, snapping shrimp reduced the sound level (including the SPL) and frequency of their snaps. In an associated study, Rossi et al. (2016b) found the altered biological ambient noise environment that lacked in biological sound production no longer attracted settlement-stage marine fish larvae. Where typically the ambient noise environment carried vital information that provided orientation and navigation clues to coastal species, attracting them to specific coastal habitats, these same larvae were no longer attracted to the coastal habitats (Rossi et al., 2016b).

## 3.4 Biological Resources

Biological resources include living, native, or naturalized plant and animal species and the habitats within which they occur. Habitat can be defined as the resources and conditions present in a specific area that support plants and animals. In the marine environment, only marine animals or wildlife and marine habitats may potentially be affected by the Navy's Proposed Action. Within this SEIS/SOEIS section, only those marine animals and their habitats potentially affected by SURTASS LFA sonar operations are discussed in detail.

### 3.4.1 Marine Species Selection Criteria

Since SURTASS LFA sonar systems operate in ocean environments, the potential exists for it to interact with marine or anadromous[11] species and their environments. Marine species have been screened to determine whether or not they may potentially be affected by LF sounds produced by SURTASS LFA sonar. Accordingly, to be evaluated for potential impacts in this SEIS/SOEIS, the marine species must: 1) occur within the same ocean region as the SURTASS LFA sonar operation, 2) possess some sensory mechanism to perceive LF sound, and/or 3) possess tissue with sufficient acoustic impedance mismatch to be affected by LF sounds. Species that did not meet these criteria were excluded from further consideration.

Marine species must be able to hear LF sound and/or have some organ or tissue capable of changing sound energy into mechanical effects to be affected by LF sound. For there to be an effect by LF sound, the organ or tissue must have acoustic impedance different from water, where impedance is the product of density and sound speed. Since many organisms do not have an organ or tissue with acoustic impedance different from water, they would be unaffected, even if they were in areas ensonified by LF sound. These factors immediately limit the types of organisms that could be adversely affected by LF sound.

A marine species' potential to be affected by SURTASS LFA sonar has been discussed in detail in previous NEPA documentation (DoN, 2007, 2012, 2015, 2017a). Except as noted below, there have been no significant changes to the knowledge or understanding relating to the factors that may affect an organism's ability to sense LF sound, and the previous contents of the SURTASS LFA sonar documentation are incorporated herein by reference. The screening information is summarized and updated, as necessary, in the remainder of this section.

For clarity, the marine species that were considered for potential effects from exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar have been categorized into two groups: those not further considered and those further considered herein. What follows is a description of the factors considered for each biological group and the resulting conclusions that led to the group being eliminated or carried forward for further consideration.

### 3.4.2 Marine Species Not Further Considered

#### 3.4.2.1 Marine Invertebrates

Marine invertebrates are a large and diverse group of marine animals that have no backbone. About 89 percent, or about 178,123 individual species, of marine animals are invertebrate species (World Register of Marine Species Editorial Board, 2018). Marine invertebrates include corals, cephalopods (e.g., squid, octopus) and other mollusks, crustaceans, sponges, and echinoderms and can range in size from the microscopic (e.g., copepods, which are 0.04 to 0.08 inches [*1 to 2 millimeters]*) to the macroscopic (e.g., giant squid that range to 39 ft [12 m]) (McClain et al., 2015; Walter and Boxshall, 2018).

Many marine invertebrates can be categorically eliminated from further consideration herein because: 1) they do not possess the requisite organs or tissues whose acoustic impedance is significantly different from water; and 2) they have high LF hearing thresholds in the frequency range used by SURTASS LFA sonar. For example, siphonophores and some other gelatinous zooplankton have air-filled bladders, but

11 Anadromous species are fishes that are born in freshwater but migrate to the ocean as juveniles, where they grow to adults before migrating back into freshwater to spawn. Examples of anadromous fishes are salmon, striped bass, and lamprey.

because of their size, they do not have a resonance frequency close to the low frequencies used by SURTASS LFA sonar. Some marine invertebrate species such as corals and abalones (with some species listed under the ESA) do not possess the tissues or auditory sensory organs necessary to detect LF sound.

The studies conducted on the sound perception ability of marine invertebrates indicate that they are exclusively sensitive to particle motion[12] (Mooney et al., 2010; Packard et al., 1990) in the LF range (<1 kHz). Marine invertebrates are generally thought to perceive sound via either external sensory hairs or internal statocysts[13]. Many aquatic invertebrates have ciliated "hair" cells that may be sensitive to water movements, such as those caused by currents or water particle motion very close to a sound source (Budelmann, 1992; Mackie and Singla, 2003). Budelmann and Williamson (1994) demonstrated that the hair cells in cephalopod statocysts are directionally sensitive in a way that is similar to the responses of hair cells on vertebrate vestibular and lateral line systems. The statocysts and hair cells may allow sensing of nearby prey or predators or assist in navigation. Detection of particle motion is thought to occur in mechanical receptors found on various body parts (Roberts et al., 2016). However, most invertebrate hearing studies have reported their findings in terms of SPL rather than particle motion, making their conclusions unsatisfactory in deducing anything about sound perception and the impacts of sound on aquatic invertebrates (Carroll et al., 2017; Popper and Hawkins, 2018). An important distinction between particle motion and sound pressure is that particle motion is directional, while sound pressure is not (it is a scalar quantity that acts in all directions) (Popper and Hawkins, 2018).

No hearing studies have been carried out on the larval stages of marine invertebrates (Kaplan and Mooney, 2016). Existing research indicates that free-swimming invertebrate and fish larvae may use acoustic cues produced by reef fish and crustaceans to orient themselves towards coral reefs. Some species of coral larvae apparently are capable of detecting reef sounds, which then instigates an attraction response to the reef location; these corals use the detection of the reef sounds as a means of identifying favorable sites for settlement and development to adult life stages (Vermeij et al., 2010). More recently, Kaplan and Mooney (2016) reported that average coral reef sound levels are so low that they are likely only discernible from very close to a coral reef, although individual transient sounds were louder and likely could be detected further from the reef, depending upon the hearing abilities of the larvae. Adult coral's sensory capabilities appear to be largely limited to detecting water movement using receptors on their tentacles (Gochfeld, 2004). The lack of information on the ability of larval coral or other lifestages, including adults, to sense sound, and thus, potentially be affected by it, leads to the conclusion that sound generated by SURTASS LFA sonar would not affect coral species.

Although some mollusks appear capable of sensing water movement, next to nothing is known about their ability to sense underwater sound or to be affected by it. Non-cephalopod mollusks, such as the abalone, possess no air-filled cavities that would be associated with sensory structures, no information on receptor systems that might be involved in hearing is available, and sound production is rare in mollusk species (Budelmann, 1992). Like larval coral, larval oysters have also been shown to respond to

---

12 Particle motion is the oscillation of water (or air) particles caused by the passage of sound through water. Water particles transmit their oscillatory motion to neighboring particles along the vector in which the underwater sound wave is moving through water. Particle motion is quantified using average displacement (m or dB re 1pm), velocity (m $sec^{-}$ or dB re 1 nm $sec^{-2}$), and acceleration (m $sec^{-2}$ or dB re 1 µm $sec^{-2}$) of the particles.

13 A statocyst is a sac-like sensory organ found in many invertebrate animals that is filled with fluid and lined with sensory hair cells.

the consistently higher mid-and high-frequency (1.5 to 20 kHz) sound levels produced on oyster reefs, resulting in the larvae being attracted to and settling on the oyster reefs (Lillis et al., 2013).

Among invertebrates, only cephalopods (octopus and squid) and decapods (lobsters, shrimps, and crabs) are known to be capable of sensing LF sound (Budelmann, 1994; Lovell et al., 2005; Mooney et al., 2010; Packard et al., 1990). Audiometric studies on adult invertebrates are also somewhat limited, but like most fish, those invertebrates tested (e.g., cephalopods and crustaceans) show lowest (i.e., most sensitive) thresholds below 1,000 Hz. Packard et al. (1990) showed that three species of cephalopods were sensitive to particle motion, not pressure, with the lowest thresholds of 2 to 3 x $10^{-3}$ meters per second squared (msec-$^{2}$) at 1 to 2 Hz. This type of hearing mechanism was confirmed by Mooney et al. (2010), who demonstrated that the statocyst of squid enables the animal to detect sound particle motion, for which a pressure threshold of 110 dB re 1 µPa at 200 Hz was measured. Mooney et al. (2016) reported on the results of a behavioral study that showed one species of squid possessed optimal hearing in the range from 200 to 400 Hz, with responses to 80 Hz. Additionally, behavioral responses to sound stimuli including escape and predator avoidance (inking, which occurred at the lowest sound frequencies and highest sound levels, body color changes, and jetting) (Mooney et al., 2016). Common cuttlefish respond behaviorally to sounds below 1,000 Hz (maximum sensitivities near 150 Hz), with escape responses (inking, jetting) observed between 80 and 300 Hz, sound levels above 140 dB re 1 µPa (rms), and particle acceleration of 0.01 msec$^{-2}$; body pattern changes and fin movements were observed at exposures from 80 to 1,000 Hz, SPLs of 85 to 188 dB re 1 µPa (rms), and particle accelerations of 0 to 17.1 msec$^{-2}$ (Samson et al., 2014). Thresholds at higher frequencies have been reported, with a frequency of 1,000 Hz and levels of 134.4 dB re 1 µPa and 139.0 dB re 1 µPa for the oval squid and the octopus, respectively (Hu et al., 2009). However, Mooney et al. (2010) suggested that the measurement techniques of Hu et al. (2009) placed the animals close to the air-sea interface and introduced particle motion to which animals were responding rather than the pressure measurements reported.

Few scientific studies have detailed the sensitivity of crustaceans to underwater sound, especially to particle motion. Popper et al. (2001) reviewed behavioral, physiological, anatomical, and ecological aspects of sound and vibration detection by decapod crustaceans. Many decapods possess an array of hair-like receptors within and upon their body surface that potentially responds to water- or substrate-borne displacements as well as proprioceptive organs that could serve secondarily to perceive vibrations (Popper et al., 2001), but the acoustic sensory systems of decapod crustaceans are under-studied. Both behavioral and auditory brainstem response (ABR) studies suggest that crustaceans may sense sounds up to 3 kHz, but their greatest sensitivity is likely below 200 Hz (Goodall et al., 1990; Lovell et al., 2005 and 2006). Adult American lobsters showed an auditory evoked potential (AEP) response up to 5 kHz (Pye and Watson, 2004). One of the few studies to investigate thresholds of particle motion on invertebrates found that hermit crabs behaviorally respond at a threshold of 0.09 to 0.44 msec$^{-2}$ (rms) (Roberts et al., 2016). Radford et al. (2016) measured the AEP response of the New Zealand paddle crab, a decapod crustacean, to both SPL and particle motion, and contrary to expectations, the SPL hearing thresholds were more sensitive in the LF (100 to 200 Hz) and higher frequency (2 kHz) ranges than the thresholds measured by particle motion. Hearing measurements of particle motion taken after experimental manipulation (crushing) of the paddle crab's statocyst showed that crabs could not sense sound, while the hearing measured by SPL only showed partial hearing loss. These results suggested to Radford et al. (2016) that while the statocyst is the primary hearing organ in the paddle crab, an undiscovered pressure sensitive sensory system may also exist.

Given the relative dearth of information about invertebrate hearing sensitivity, knowledge of their sound production capabilities may amplify our understanding of their sound sensitivity. Popper and Schilt (2008) reported that some invertebrate species produce sound, possibly using it for communications, territorial behavior, predator deterrence, and mating. Sound production has been documented in more than 50 crustacean species, with decapod crustaceans being well studied and known to produce sounds over a wide frequency range (Edmonds et al., 2016). Well known biological sound producers include the spiny and American lobsters (Buscaino et al., 2011; Latha et al., 2005) and the mantis and snapping shrimp (Herberholz and Schmitz, 2001). Snapping shrimp are found worldwide and make up a significant portion of the ambient noise budget between 500 Hz and to 20 kHz (Au and Banks, 1998; Cato and Bell, 1992; Heberholz and Schmitz, 2001). Mantis shrimp produce very LF sounds in the 20 to 60 Hz range (Patek and Caldwell, 2006). Based on the sounds produced by some invertebrate species, some researchers have suggested sensitivity to higher frequency sounds. European spiny lobsters, some of which were exposed to predators, produced ultrasound signals up to about 75 kHz by moving a structure at the base of the antennae over a rigid file (Buscaino et al., 2011); the investigators speculated that the signals might have an anti-predator function or might be used in intraspecific communication. The results of another study suggest that European spiny lobsters likely use sound as an aggregation cue (frequency not specified, although lobsters in the study produced sounds of up to 30 kHz) (Filiciotto et al., 2014).

Little data or information exists on the effects of sound, particularly LF sound, on marine invertebrates. The available information is principally on the effects associated with exposure to LF seismic survey noise (Carroll et al., 2017; Hawkins et al., 2015). Marine invertebrates have experienced anatomical damage to their statocysts, loss and damage to hair cells, neuron swelling, and organ damage as the result of exposure to airgun and other seismic survey noise, with damage remaining up to one year following exposure (André et al., 2011; Carroll et al., 2017; Christian et al., 2003; Day et al., 2016; Solé et al., 2013). Exposure to seismic survey noise has not been shown to cause mortality in larval or adult marine invertebrates nor does evidence exist for population-level effects, such as reduced abundance or catch rates, on marine invertebrates resulting from exposure to seismic survey noise (Carroll et al., 2017). Nedelec et al. (2014) investigated the effect repeated exposure to outboard boat noise had on sea hare (marine mollusk) development. The development of sea hare embryos and mortality of recently hatched sea hare larvae exposed to boat noise playback in the 10 to 3000 Hz range during controlled field experiments was reduced by 21 percent and increased 22 percent, respectively, compared to ambient noise exposure (Nedelec et al., 2014).

Although marine invertebrates would certainly be present in the proposed study area of SURTASS LFA sonar and many species of marine invertebrates are capable of sensing LF sound via localized particle motion, no information exists on how exposure to underwater sound such as LFA sonar may effect marine invertebrates. Neither do metrics nor exposure thresholds exist to enable quantification or assessment of noise impacts on marine invertebrates. Given this lack of a scientific basis upon which to assess impacts on marine invertebrates associated with exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar, no impact assessment on marine invertebrates is feasible. However, based on the limited data on how seismic survey noise, which is not similar to LFA sonar acoustically, effects marine invertebrates, no mortality of marine invertebrates is reasonably expected to occur from exposure to LFA sonar nor are population level effects likely. Thus, marine invertebrates, including the potentially occurring species of ESA-listed coral and cephalopod (chambered nautilus) that may occur in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar are not further considered herein.

#### 3.4.2.2 Seabirds

Seabirds or marine birds are a diverse group that are adapted to living and foraging in the marine environment. As a group, seabirds are distinguished from terrestrial bird species by typically having a longer life span, breeding later, and producing fewer offspring. Seabirds spend time ashore each year, usually during summer, to nest and rear their hatchlings, with many species spending considerable time wholly at sea (Schreiber and Chovan, 1986). Many seabirds are highly migratory, traveling vast distances, with some species migrating across entire ocean basins. Arctic terns, for instance, have the longest recorded migration of any animal, traveling more than 43,200 nmi (80,000 km) annually between breeding and foraging grounds (Voter and Sherley, 2017). The more than 350 species of seabirds that exist globally are classified in nine taxonomic orders, with seabirds from all but one of these orders potentially occurring in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar (Voter and Sherley, 2017). Seabirds may be found in all parts of the study area, from coastal, nearshore waters to the pelagic, open-ocean waters far from land. However, given the limitations on SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions in the coastal standoff zone surrounding any emergent land and ship operations that typically only entail transit through nearshore waters, the likelihood of SURTASS LFA sonar activities affecting coastal or nearshore seabirds is vanishingly low. The likely potential only reasonably exists for oceanic seabirds to even be exposed to SURTASS LFA sonar activities. Additionally, SURTASS LFA sonar vessels do not entail the deployment or use of any airborne sensors or equipment, so no impacts to flying seabirds are reasonably anticipated.

The potential for seabirds to be exposed to and potentially be affected by SURTASS LFA sonar depends on several factors, including the spatial distribution of foraging habitat in relation to LFA sonar operations, species-specific foraging strategies, and the ability to hear SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions underwater. Since seabirds forage underwater, their foraging strategies and ability to locate prey underwater may be facilitated by their ability to hear underwater sounds.

Seabird foraging behavior primarily involves taking prey within two feet (half a meter) of the sea surface (Ballance et al., 2001). Seabird foraging may be by plunge-diving, aerial-dipping, surface-dipping, surface-plunging, jump-plunging, surface-pecking, pursuit-diving, or scavenging. Most seabirds plunge-dive from the air into the ocean to capture prey, while others perform aerial dipping, which is the act of capturing food from the sea surface while the bird is in flight. Still other seabirds forage by surface-dipping, where they swim on the sea surface and dip below to capture prey near the sea surface; or surface-pecking, where the bird pecks at the water's surface with its beak; or by jump-plunging, which involves jumping upward from the ocean surface to then diving beneath the water surface to capture their prey. Pursuit-divers typically take their prey within 66 to 328 ft (20 to 100 m) of the sea surface after swimming after their prey, propelled either by their wings or feet underwater (Ballance et al, 2001). The deepest depth to which any pursuit-diver has been recorded was an Emperor penguin that dove to a depth of 1,755 ft (535 m) (Kooyman and Kooyman, 1995). Scavenging involves birds consuming dead floating prey on the sea surface. Plunge-diving seabirds such as gannets, boobies, tropicbirds, and brown pelicans are typically submerged for no more than a few seconds when foraging. Pursuit-divers, including penguins, auks, petrels, cormorants, grebes, and loons, swim/dive deeper and stay underwater longer than plunge-divers. Most pursuit-divers stay submerged for several minutes (Ronconi et al., 2010), with Sato et al. (2002) measuring typical mean dive durations up to 7.6 minutes, while Kooyman and Kooyman (1995) measured a maximum duration for diving penguins of 15.8 minutes. It appears that none of these foraging behaviors appear to require the use of underwater sound.

Few data on seabird hearing exist, especially on their underwater hearing ability. Hearing has been measured in only 10 seabird species, the majority of which are sea and diving ducks (Crowell, 2016). Further, little research or published scientific literature exists on the hearing abilities of birds underwater or on the manner in which birds may use sound underwater (Dooling and Therrien, 2012). Additionally, the mechanism(s) by which seabirds might sense underwater sound is unknown. Dooling and Therrien (2012) have speculated that diving birds may not hear as well underwater based on adaptations to protect their ears from pressure changes. Seabirds possess fat columns that connect with the tympanic membrane, suggesting soft tissue analogs to pinnae for channeling sound to the inner ear (Ketten, 2013). Until recently, hearing capabilities have been studied for only a few seabirds (Thiessen, 1958; Wever et al., 1969), and those studies indicated that seabird hearing ranges and sensitivity are consistent with what is known about bird hearing, with greatest hearing sensitivity between 1 and 4 kHz (Beason, 2004; Beuter et al., 1986; Dooling, 2002). Very few birds can hear below 20 Hz and most birds have an upper hearing limit of 10 kHz; no birds have exhibited hearing sensitivity at frequencies higher than 15 kHz (Dooling, 2002; Dooling & Popper, 2000). Wever et al. (1969) measured the hearing sensitivity of the black-footed penguin, a pursuit-diver, using cochlear potentials and reported the best hearing sensitivity to be between 600 Hz and 4 kHz.

Recently, the in-air hearing ability of ten diving bird species was measured with ABR technologies, revealing that all species tested had greatest sensitivity between 1 and 3 kHz, which matched the vocalization range of the species tested (Crowell et al., 2015). Therrien et al. (2012) also tested the hearing in six species of diving and sea ducks and reported the best range of hearing in all six species as between 1 and 4 kHz and the peak in hearing sensitivity at 1.5 to 3 kHz. Crowell et al. (2016) used behavioral methods to derive an in-air audiogram of an aquatic duck and reported best hearing sensitivity at 2.86 kHz and a threshold of 14 dB re 20 µPa. Recently several studies have investigated the hearing capabilities of the great cormorant, a diving seabird. Using psychophysical (behavioral) and ABR methods, Maxwell et al. (2016 and 2017) reported the greatest in-air hearing sensitivity of the great cormorant was observed at 2 kHz with a hearing threshold of 18 dB re 20 µPa (rms) measured by ABR, with the threshold derived from psychophysical methods 23 to 53 dB higher than the ABR threshold. Johansen et al. (2016) also measured the in-air and in-water hearing of the great cormorant using psychophysical and ABR methods and reported that the cormorant could hear both in the air and underwater, and measured the same frequency of hearing sensitivity 2 kHz, for both air and underwater with hearing thresholds of 45 dB re 20 µPa (rms) in-air and 79 dB re 1 µPa (rms) in-water. In related experiments using psychophysical (behavioral) methods, Hansen et al. (2017) reported greatest underwater hearing sensitivity also at 2 kHz but a slightly different hearing threshold of 71 dB re 1 µPa (rms). The great cormorant’s audiogram derived from both psychophysical and ABR methods was the typical U-shaped curve (Johansen et al., 2016). Although diving birds are able to hear underwater, their underwater hearing acuity is not as high as other aquatic, non-avian species, likely based on adaptations to protect their ears from pressure changes (Dooling & Therrien, 2012). Adaptations for diving may have evolved to protect in-air hearing ability and may contribute to reduced sensitivity underwater.

The known hearing range of seabird species is above the frequency range at which SURTASS LFA sonar transmits, and it is unknown, based on the available scientific information on seabird underwater hearing abilities, if diving seabirds can even hear, let alone be effected by LFA sonar transmissions. Diving seabird species have the greatest potential for exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions, since they remain submerged underwater longer and at greater depths than surface feeding species. Pursuit-diving seabirds, such as cormorants, murres, boobies, auklets, puffins, petrels, murrelets, and shearwaters would be the most likely species to potentially be exposed to SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions when foraging underwater.

No data are available on physiological effects to bird ear structures or behavioral responses due to underwater acoustic exposures. In general, birds are less susceptible to both permanent threshold shift (PTS) and temporary threshold shift (TTS[14]) than mammals (Saunders and Dooling, 1974), so an underwater sound exposure would have to be intense and of a sufficient duration to cause either PTS or TTS. A bird has the ability to avoid an intense sound by returning to the sea surface, thereby limiting the exposure duration to underwater sound. Additionally, birds have the ability to regenerate hair cells in the ear, usually resulting in considerable anatomical, physiological, and behavioral recovery within several weeks (Saunders and Dooling, 1974). Still, recovery from intense exposures is not always achievable, even over periods up to a year after exposure, and damage and subsequent recovery vary significantly by species (Ryals et al., 1999). Birds may be able to protect themselves against damage from sustained noise exposures by regulating inner ear pressure, an ability that may protect ears while in flight (Ryals et al., 1999). Some of the only data on the behavioral responses of seabirds to underwater sound is that of the effect of fishing gear pingers. Some seabird species, such as common murres, appear to respond with avoidance when exposed to the noise of 1.5 kHz-pingers (SL of 120 dB re 1 µPa rms) affixed to gillnets, although the pinger noise appeared to have no effect on rhinoceros auklets, which became entangled in the fishing gear at the same rate as pinger-less nets (Melvin et al., 1999 and 2011).

Thresholds have only been estimated for a limited number of seabirds (USFWS, 2016), but not for the species of seabirds that may occur in the potential study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. However, given that the few data on underwater hearing in seabirds indicates best sensitivities at 2 kHz (Hansen et al. 2017; Johansen et al., 2016), which is considerably above the 100 to 500 Hz frequency range of SURTASS LFA sonar, very little potential exists for most diving seabirds to experience auditory impacts from exposure to LFA sonar transmissions. USFWS (2016) estimated injury thresholds for seabirds exposed to various types of sonar in the Navy's Northwest Testing and Training Area. USFWS determined a threshold of 220 dB SEL re 1 $\mu Pa^2$-sec referenced to the frequencies of best hearing between 1 to 5 kHz, but no injury was estimated for sonar sources such as SURTASS LFA sonar.

It is highly unlikely that a seabird would experience a behavioral response given several factors. There are currently only four SURTASS LFA sonar vessels and sonar systems, with the potential for new or replacement vessels in year 5 and beyond; activities occur over a vast potential study area; and LFA sonar transmits at a very low duty cycle. It is likely that the physical presence of a SURTASS LFA sonar vessel and its slow speed when towing the LFA sonar array would alert any seabird in the area, so that it would be very unlikely that birds would forage in the ship's vicinity. Also, the V-shaped hull and encased propeller system of the T-AGOS vessels in addition with their low travel speed during training and testing activities makes the likelihood of a vessel strike of seabird at or near the sea surface to be so vanishingly low to be negligible. If a seabird were to dive near the vessel, the LFA sonar would have to be transmitting to potentially affect the bird, which it only does up to a 20 percent maximum (but more typically, 7.5 to 10 percent), and the bird would need to dive deep enough to encounter the LFA sonar

14 Permanent threshold shift (PTS) is a severe condition and auditory injury that occurs when sound intensity is very high or of such long duration that the result is permanent hearing loss and irreparable damage (Southall et al., 2007). Temporary threshold shift (TTS) is a lesser impact to hearing caused by underwater sounds of sufficient loudness to cause a transient hearing impairment for a period of time. With TTS, hearing is not permanently or irrevocably damaged, so TTS is not considered an injury.

sound field. Given these factors, the potential for a behavioral response is vanishingly small. There are no data that indicate whether seabirds use sound underwater and thus have the potential to experience masking. While studies of stress responses in seabirds related to foraging have been conducted (Paredes et al., 2015), no exposure studies have been conducted to determine the potential for a stress response from exposure to underwater sound. Without sufficient information, it is impossible to determine the potential for masking or physiological stress from exposure of seabirds to LFA sonar. However, as stated earlier, given the foraging strategies of seabirds and the operational profile of LFA sonar, seabirds are very unlikely to be in proximity to transmitting LFA sonar, resulting in a very limited potential for masking or a stress response to occur.

Although seabirds possess auditory organs and may be capable of hearing LFA sonar transmissions, their known in-air and underwater hearing sensitivity is in the 1 to 4 kHz range, which is above the transmission frequencies of SURTASS LFA sonar. Given the paucity of data on underwater hearing sensitivities of seabirds, how seabirds use underwater sound, and the responses of seabirds to sound exposures, it is impossible to precisely determine if SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions have the potential to affect seabirds. The underwater hearing sensitivity of seabirds combined with the low likelihood of seabirds being underwater and near the SURTASS LFA sonar source while it is transmitting together are indicative of the highly unlikely potential for biologically meaningful responses by seabirds to occur from exposure to LFA sonar or for the potential for fitness level consequences. Therefore, seabirds, including those species listed under the ESA and MBTA, have been excluded from further evaluation in this SEIS/SOEIS.

#### 3.4.2.3 Sea Snakes

Sea snakes are wholly or partially aquatic reptiles that primarily inhabit coastal areas in subtropical to tropical oceans, notably the Indian Ocean and western Pacific Ocean (Young, 2003). Sea snakes lack gills and must surface to breathe, typically diving to water depths no deeper than 328 ft (100 m) (Heatwole, 1999), and staying submerged for about 30 minutes, although some species can stay submerged for up to 1.5 to 2.5 hours (Heatwole and Seymour, 1975).

All but one of the nearly 60 species of sea snakes potentially occur in the shallow waters of the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. As many as 32 species of sea snakes occur in the waters of northern Australia alone (Marine Education Society of Australasia, 2015), one of which, the dusky sea snake (*Aipysurus fuscus)*, is listed under the ESA as endangered.

The dusky sea snake occurs in water depths less than 33 ft (10 m) amongst the corals and sand substrate of isolated, inner coral reef lagoons off northwestern Australia in the Ashmore Reef area (Timor Sea) and off Papua New Guinea in the Celebes Islands (Celebes Sea) (McCosker, 1975; Australian Government, 2016). Little is known about the population status of the venomous, benthic dusky sea snake, as no current or historical population data exist, but local surveys of some Australian reefs indicate severe population declines. Sea snakes typically have patchy distributions and can be found in very dense aggregations in certain locations within their ranges (Heatwole, 1997).

Although sea snakes possess no external ear and lack many of the interior auditory components that facilitate hearing, sea snakes do possess sensory organs or tissues that allow them to perceive underwater sound via vibration. Snakes possess an inner ear with a functional cochlea that is connected to their jawbones by a middle ear bone, through which they may perceive vibrational information (Friedl et al., 2008). Christensen et al. (2012) conducted experiments on a terrestrial python species to determine if they detected sound pressure or sound-induced mechanical vibrations through their body.

Their experimental results suggested to Christensen et al. (2012) that snakes lost hearing sensitivity to sound pressure when their outer and middle ears were completely reduced so that they now are primarily capable of detecting and responding to sound-induced, low-level vibrations, with greatest sensitivity below 400 Hz. Researchers have speculated that sea snake's inner ear may receive sound signals in water via their lungs, which may function similarly to swim bladders in fish. Westhoff et al. (2005) recorded ABRs to underwater vibrations and demonstrated that sea snakes are sensitive to low-amplitude water motion, although the sensitivity was comparatively low (low-amplitude water displacement from 100 to 150 Hz), it may be sufficient to detect movements of prey such as fish. Sea snakes also rely on their other sensory capabilities in place of hearing, with the turtle-headed sea snake, for instance, relying primarily on scent for chemical cueing of prey (Shine et al., 2004).

Research on hearing ability in snakes is limited, particularly for sea snakes. Additionally, a great deal of variability exists in the reported hearing sensitivity of terrestrial snakes and conclusions regarding snake hearing ability are not clear, particularly as earlier research measured responses to SPL rather than vibration. Based on cochlear potential data from 19 snake species, the best hearing of snakes was estimated in the range of 100 to 500 Hz with absolute sensitivity of most species ranging from 25 to 55 dB SPL (30 to 50 dB re 20 µPa at approximately 200 Hz) (Christiansen et al., 2012; Dooling et al., 2000). Midbrain AEP data showed the same absolute sensitivity but reported a much narrower frequency range in hearing sensitivity for several snake species, with the AEP sensitivity range of 150 to 450 Hz for one species versus 60 to 600 Hz measured by cochlear potential (Hartline 1971; Hartline and Campbell, 1969). Current scholarship suggests that snakes hear optimally in-air between 80 and 600 Hz, with some species hearing sounds up to 1,000 Hz. Christensen et al. (2012) noted that pythons had a flat audiogram with a best sensitivity of 78 dB re 20 µPa at 160 Hz, which was close to that measured for the rattlesnake. Young (2003) extrapolated from terrestrial snake data and corrected for water to derive a high hearing threshold for the sea snake in water of approximately 100 dB. Recently in a project funded by the Australia and Pacific Science Foundation, a team of Australian researchers measured the AEP of one sea snake species to determine their underwater hearing abilities. The resulting unpublished audiograms of the Stokes' sea snake showed a limited frequency range of about 40 to 1000 Hz, peaking at 60 Hz (Australia and Pacific Science Foundation, 2017). No information is available on the vocalization ability of sea snakes.

Sea snakes are predominately shallow diving, occur in very low densities, and typically inhabit coastal waters in which LFA sonar would not be transmitted above the 180 dB SPL level. It is, thus, unlikely that sea snakes would be exposed to LFA sonar transmissions at all and not at a sound intensity that would adversely affect them. Although sea snakes may be able to detect some component of LFA sonar transmissions, no information is available on how exposure to LF sonar or other anthropogenic sound sources affects sea snakes. Based on the dearth of information on the hearing ability and effects of underwater sound on sea snakes as well as the nearshore occurrence of sea snakes, the Navy has concluded that an impact assessment of sea snakes is not currently feasible. Further, given their extremely low sensitivity to sound pressure, if exposed to LFA sonar transmissions, sea snakes are highly unlikely to be subject to behavioral reactions and the risk of injury is so vanishingly small as to be discountable. For these reasons, sea snakes are eliminated from further consideration herein.

### 3.4.3 Marine Species Further Considered

Three marine taxa are further considered herein for potential impacts associated with SURTASS LFA sonar activities. These taxa include marine and anadromous fish, marine mammal, and sea turtle species that may occur in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar in the western and central North Pacific and Indian oceans.

### 3.4.3.1 Marine and Anadromous Fish

The study area for SURTASS LFA sonar spans two ocean basins and encompasses a wide variety of marine habitats. Although about 78 percent of marine fish species occur in coastal or inshore waters less than 656 ft (200 m) deep, the remainder are found in the open ocean waters in which SURTASS LFA sonar is most likely to be used (Moyle and Cech, 2004). Even considering this smaller percentage of open ocean species that may be exposed to SURTASS LFA sonar activities results in thousands of potentially occurring marine fish species and multiple life stages of each species. Additionally, many highly migratory fish species may move into and out of the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar either annually or seasonally. Given this vast and highly variable number of possible fish species in the study area, it is not feasible to describe and discuss the potentially occurring marine fish species individually, as is done for the other two taxa further considered, sea turtles and marine mammals. By comparison, a total of 55 species represent the potentially occurring marine mammal and sea turtle species in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar.

Fish are able to detect underwater sound, although there is remarkable variation in hearing capabilities amongst fish species. In general, however, most all fish that are known to detect sound can at least hear frequencies from below 50 Hz upwards to 800 Hz, while many fish can detect sounds to approximately 1 kHz and still other can detect sounds to about 2 kHz. Thus, many species of marine fish could potentially hear SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions. Of the estimated 33,700 living species of fish (Froese and Pauly, 2017), of which roughly 18,765 are marine species (WoRMS Editorial Board, 2018), hearing and sound production has only been studied in a very small percentage of species.

Marine fish can be categorized and assessed in many ways, either taxonomically, anatomically, ecologically, migrationally, commercially, or behaviorally. One of the key features in determining the impact that underwater sound may have on fishes is their anatomy, specifically the presence or absence of a gas or swim bladder[15]. Fishes that possess a swim bladder that is involved in hearing are most sensitive to underwater sound since they are able to detect particle motion and sound pressure. Fish species that possess swim bladders are more susceptible to sound pressure and barotrauma injuries to their ears and other body tissues than are fishes without swim bladders (Carlson, 2012; Halvorsen et al., 2011; Stephenson et al., 2010). Possessing a swim bladder may also increase many fishes' ability to detect sounds over a broad range of frequencies and from greater distances (Popper et al., 2014). Thus, to the extent possible, information about marine and anadromous fishes in this SEIS/SOEIS is described from the basis of the presence or absence of a swim bladder and the associated affect on hearing and acoustic impacts.

With thousands of potentially occurring marine and anadromous fishes in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar, it would be impossible to consider all species that may be affected by SURTASS LFA sonar activities. For this reason, descriptive species information is presented only for those marine and anadromous fish species or distinct population segments (DPSs)[16] of fish species listed under the ESA. However, some of the ESA-listed fish species that occur in the western Pacific or Indian oceans do not

15 A gas or swim bladder is an internal gas-filled organ in most bony (teleost) fishes that functions in storing oxygen, controlling buoyancy, maintaining hydrostatic position, and producing sound (Mohr et al., 2017).

16 Under the ESA, a DPS is a vertebrate population or group of populations of a species that is discrete from other populations and is significant to the entire species.

meet the criteria for co-occurrence with SURTASS LFA sonar activities. These fishes occur in inland, inshore, or very shallow[17] coastal waters where SURTASS LFA sonar would not operate and where fishes would be protected by the coastal-standoff-range mitigation measure for SURTASS LFA sonar. The ESA-listed marine and anadromous fish species that are excluded from further consideration on this basis are:

- Chinese sturgeon (*Acipenser sinensis*)—this anadromous sturgeon is listed for the Yangtze River basin, where it occurs only in the middle and lower Yangtze River and very close to shore in the East China and Yellow seas (NOAA, 2013).
- Dwarf Sawfish *(Pristis clavata)—is* restricted to shallow (< 33 ft [10 m]) tropical coastal, estuarine, and riverine waters of the western-central Pacific and Eastern Indian oceans, but the population is considered to now be limited to waters of northern and northwestern Australia and is likely extinct in the waters of Papua New Guinea and Indonesia; no records of occurrence in offshore waters have been substantiated (Kyne et al., 2013; NOAA, 2014a).
- Green sawfish (*Pristis zijsron*)—as a species, this sawfish is listed as endangered and is distributed in inshore estuarine and riverine habitats in waters typically no more than 16 ft (5 m) in the Indo-West Pacific, although the green sawfish is considered very rare in the Indian Ocean and may be extirpated from most of its historic range (NOAA, 2014a).
- Kaluga sturgeon *(Huso dauricus)*—this endangered fish only now occurs in the lower reaches of the Amur River in Russia and China (NOAA, 2013).
- Largetooth sawfish (*Pristis pristis*)—is an endangered species that occurs in shallow (<33 ft [10 m]) coastal, inshore, and river habitats of the Indo-Pacific and western Atlantic oceans, although currently this sawfish occurs only in isolated and often remote, very small populations throughout its historic range (NOAA, 2014a).
- Narrow sawfish (*Anoxypristis cuspidata*)—listed as endangered throughout its range, the narrow sawfish's distribution is restricted to shallow (130 ft [40 m]), inshore habitats with salinities between 25 and 35 practical salinity units (psu) in the western Pacific and Indian oceans, with a preference for muddy estuarine benthic habitats (NOAA, 2014a).

The remaining nine ESA-listed marine and anadromous fish species that potentially occur in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar are considered herein. No marine or anadromous fish species with potential occurrence in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar are currently proposed for listing under the ESA.

##### *3.4.3.1.1 Fish Physiology, Hearing, and Sound Production*

In previous documentation for SURTASS LFA sonar, detailed information on the hearing anatomy and measured hearing capabilities of fish was presented (DoN, 2007, 2012, 2017a). Since this SEIS/SOEIS builds upon that foundational information, only a basic overview of fish hearing and capabilities are presented here, in addition to any recent scientific advances in fish physiology and hearing.

Of the 100 or more fish species for which hearing has been studied, all are able to detect sound underwater. However, compared to the entirety of the fish taxa, this represents only a very small number of species that have been studied. It is apparent that many bony (teleost) fish, but apparently

17 Generally, SURTASS LFA sonar activities are conducted in waters deeper than 656 ft (200 m) in which potential objects of surveillance would be most likely to occur. However, testing and training activities using the CLFA source array and TL-29A receive array could be conducted in shallower water, depending upon the circumstances.

no elasmobranchs (sharks and rays), are capable of producing vocalizations and using these sounds in various behaviors. Hearing and sound production are documented in well over 240 fish species, encompassing at least 58 families and 19 orders, although it is likely that with additional study, many more fish species will be found to produce sounds.

Fish have two sensory systems that together allow them to detect sound underwater: inner ears and a lateral line system (Higgs and Radford, 2013). A fundamental component of both sensory systems is the highly-specialized sensory hair cell, by which mechanical energy (sound and motion) is converted to electrical signals. The ear and lateral line system send these electrical signals to the fish's brain along separate pathways, however.

All fish species have ears that can detect sound and convey information about gravity and particle motion (Popper et al., 2014). The fish inner ear is located in the head just behind the eye, and unlike terrestrial vertebrates, the inner ear of fish is not connected to an external opening in the head. The principal ear structures that function in fish hearing are three semicircular canals and otolith organs (Ladich and Popper, 2004; Schellart and Popper, 1992). The sensory regions of the semicircular canals and otolith organs contain many sensory hair cells. It is the relative motion between the otolith and the sensory hair cells that ultimately results in responses to sound or body motion. The precise size and shape of the ear varies amongst fish species (Popper and Coombs, 1982; Popper and Schilt, 2008; Popper et al., 2003). This variability in the inner ear morphology and hearing structures amongst fish species has resulted in wide diversity in hearing sensitivities, sometimes even in members of the same taxonomic family of fishes (Ladich and Schulz-Mirbach, 2016).

The lateral line system of fish consists of a series of receptors along the length of a fish's body that are sensitive to external particle motion from sources within a few body lengths of the animal (Popper and Schilt, 2008). By comparing the responses of different hair cells along the lateral line, fish are likely able to locate the source of vibrations (Coombs and Montgomery, 1999; Montgomery et al., 1995; Webb et al., 2008). The sensory hair cells along the lateral line system detect particle motion at frequencies from below 1 to about 400 Hz (Coombs and Montgomery, 1999; Hastings and Popper, 2005; Higgs and Radford, 2013; Webb et al., 2008).

The ear and the lateral line overlap in the frequency range to which they respond. The lateral line appears to be most responsive to signals ranging from below 1 to about 150 to 200 Hz (Coombs et al., 1992; Webb et al., 2008), while the ear responds to frequencies from about 20 Hz to several thousand Hz in some species (Popper and Fay, 1993; Popper and Schilt, 2008; Popper et al., 2003). The specific frequency response characteristics of the ear and lateral line system varies amongst fish species.

Hearing in many fish is improved by their ability to detect sound pressure via a gas or swim bladder (or other gas-filled structures) that re-radiates energy in the form of particle motion to the auditory organs of the ears. Fish species without a swim bladder detect little of the pressure component of sound (Popper and Fay, 1993). Being able to detect sound pressure as well as particle motion not only increases hearing sensitivity but also broadens the frequency bandwidth of hearing (Fletcher and Crawford, 2001; Sand and Hawkins, 1973). Hearing sensitivity is further amplified by the proximity of the swim bladder or gas bubbles to the inner ear or connections between the swim bladder and inner ear, which appear to enable higher-frequency hearing and better detection of sound pressure.

Fishes can be categorized by possession of similar anatomical features that affect their hearing capabilities and sensitivity (Popper and Fay, 2011). The categories of fishes include (Popper et al., 2014):

- Fishes with no swim bladder or other gas chamber (e.g., some flatfish, some tuna, sculpins, and elasmobranchs)—hearing is limited to particle motion detection frequencies well below 1 kHz;
- Fishes with swim bladders that is not involved in hearing (e.g., salmonids, such as steelhead trout and Pacific salmon, and sturgeons)—these species lack the anatomical hearing specializations and principally detect particle motion below 1 kHz;
- Fishes with a swim bladder or gas chamber that is involved in hearing (e.g., catfish, carp, sardines, and anchovies)—these fishes detect frequencies below 1 kHz, possess anatomical specializations to enhance hearing, and can detect sound pressure up to a few kHz;
- Fishes with a swim bladder and high-frequency hearing (e.g., Atlantic menhaden)—species can detect frequencies below 1 kHz and possess anatomical specializations and are capable of sound pressure detection at frequencies from to 10 to over 100 kHz, and possibly as high as 180 kHz (DoN, 2018a; Ladich and Fay, 2013).

Sensitivity to sound in most fish species occurs from below 100 Hz to several hundred hertz or several thousand hertz in a few species (Mann et al., 1997 and 2001). For those fish species for which hearing has been measured, greatest hearing sensitivity generally occurs in the range from 100 to 200 Hz and up to 800 Hz (Popper, 2003). Some members of one type of marine fishes (clupeiforms) with a swim bladder involved in hearing are able to detect sounds to about 4 kHz (Colleye et al., 2016; Mann et al., 1997 and 2001), with one subfamily in this taxon apparently able to detect very HF sounds, although their best hearing is still <1 kHz. Evidence suggests that at least some fish species can detect infrasound, typically defined as sounds below ~30 Hz. Infrasound hearing has been demonstrated in Atlantic salmon, Atlantic cod, plaice, Atlantic eel, and a perch (Karlsen, 1992a and 1992b; Knudsen et al., 1992; Sand and Karlsen, 1986; Sand et al., 2000). In all cases studied so far, however, detection in this frequency range only seems to occur when the fish is within a few body lengths of the sound source and not when the fish are further away.

The ability of fish to process complex soundscapes is also being better defined. Fay (2009) reviewed the literature on directional hearing abilities in fish. A number of species have been shown to be able to discriminate and orient to different sound sources. All fish are capable of detecting particle motion, and recent studies have shown that plainfin midshipmen fish follow the path of particle motion, not pressure, when orienting to and approaching sound sources (Zeddies et al., 2012). Possessing directional hearing in mammals helps reduce the effects of noise on signal detection ability, and presumably does so in fish as well. Likewise, the ability to differentiate between two sound signals that are presented simultaneously has been demonstrated in goldfish (Fay, 2009). These demonstrated abilities suggest that fish are capable of analyzing acoustic soundscapes, as has been shown in mammals, birds, and insects. This directional hearing ability also offers at least some fish to mitigate masking effects. As reviewed in Sisneros and Rogers (2016), fish were able to lower their masking levels when sources were separated by 20° and 85°, with this directional hearing providing them the ability to spatially filter sound to increase their signal detection ability.

Many species of fish produce sounds, with Myrberg (1981) reporting more than 50 fish families produce some kind of sound using special muscles or other structures that have evolved for this role, or by grinding teeth, rasping spines and fin rays, burping, expelling gas, or gulping air. Sounds are often produced by fish when they are alarmed or presented with harmful stimuli (Bass and Ladich, 2008; Myrberg, 1981; Zelick et al., 1999), but few species of fish produce sounds for purely social communication (Parmentier and Fine, 2016). Some of the sounds fish produce may involve the use of the swim bladder as an underwater resonator. Sounds produced by vibrating the swim bladder may be at a higher frequency (400 Hz) than the sounds produced by other moving body parts. The swim bladder drumming muscles are correspondingly specialized for rapid contractions (Bass and Ladich, 2008; Zelick et al., 1999). Sounds are used in reproductive behavior by a number of fish species, and the current data lead to the suggestion that males are the most active sound producers. Sound activity often accompanies aggressive behavior in fish, usually peaking during the reproductive season. Those benthic fish species that are territorial in nature often produce sounds regardless of season but particularly during periods of high-level aggression (Myrberg, 1981).

#### *3.4.3.1.2 Threatened and Endangered Marine and Anadromous Fish Species*

Nine species of marine and anadromous fishes listed under the ESA may occur in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar (Table 3-1). Anadromous fish species, such as salmon, are born in fresh water, migrate to the ocean where they grow into adults, after which they return to the freshwater streams or lakes of their birth to spawn; most Pacific salmon species die after spawning. Populations of many ESA-listed fish species have been delineated into DPSs or evolutionarily significant units (ESU). Brief descriptions are included here of each listed or proposed fish species', DPSs, or ESU's distribution, habitat, population, and hearing or sound producing capabilities.

➤ ***ESA-listed Fishes with No Swim Bladder or Gas Chamber***

Since none of the three ESA-listed species of elasmobranchs potentially occurring in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar (oceanic whitetip shark, scalloped hammerhead shark, and giant manta ray) possess swim bladders, their hearing sensitivity is limited to the detection of particle motion.

- *Oceanic Whitetip Shark (Carcharhinus longimanus)*

Effective March 1, 2018, as a species, the oceanic whitetip shark has been listed as threatened under the ESA (NOAA, 2018a). No critical habitat for the species has been designated, as NMFS determined that it was not currently determinable (NOAA, 2018a). The oceanic whitetip shark is listed as vulnerable on the IUCN Red List (Baum et al., 2015).

The oceanic whitetip shark was historically considered to be the most globally abundant and common pelagic shark in tropical waters. Although no global abundance exists for this shark, the available data and information suggest that overall this species has undergone a population decline that varies in extent regionally. In areas of the central and western Pacific Ocean, the abundance of oceanic whitetip sharks has declined by 86 to more than 90 percent (Young et al., 2016). Rice and Harley (2012) and FAO (2012) estimated the 2010 population in the western and central Pacific Ocean to include roughly 200,000 individuals, with the population severely depleted (NOAA, 2016e). While the data on the oceanic whitetip shark for the Indian Ocean are uncertain and less reliable, the best available information indicate varying levels of population decline, with the species having become rare throughout the Indian Ocean during the last two decades (Young et al., 2016). In some regions of its global range, however, such as in northwestern Atlantic Ocean, the oceanic whitetip shark populations have stabilized since 2000 (Young et al., 2016).

The oceanic whitetip shark is one of the most widely distributed shark species, occurring worldwide in pelagic tropical and subtropical waters of the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian oceans (Baum et al., 2015). This shark occurs most commonly in open ocean waters between 10° N and 10° S but occurs in lower numbers in outer continental shelf waters and around deep-water oceanic islands as well as oceanic waters between 30° N and 35° S (Baum et al., 2015; Compagno, 1984; Young et al., 2016). The occurrence of the oceanic whitetip shark is thought to be rare in the northeastern Atlantic Ocean and Mediterranean Sea, as these areas are near the northern extent of the species' range. Oceanic whitetipsharks occur in waters between 59° to 82° F (15° and 28° C) and exhibit a strong preference for the surface mixed layer when water temperatures are above 68° F (20° C). This shark typically is found in the upper 328 ft (100 m) of the water column but has been documented diving to water depths of 840 ft (256 m) and even as deep as 3,550 ft (1,082 m) for short periods (~13 minutes) (Carlson and Gulak 2012; Young et al., 2016).

**Table 3-1. Status under the ESA of the Marine and Anadromous Fish Species Listed Under the ESA that Potentially Occur in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar and that are Evaluated in this SEIS/SOEIS for Potential Impacts Associated with Exposure to SURTASS LFA Sonar.**

| ***Family*** | ***Fish Species*** | ***ESA Status*** | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | ***Threatened*** | ***Endangered*** |
| Carcharhinidae | Oceanic whitetip shark (*Carcharhinus longimanus)* | Throughout Its Range | |
| Mobulidae | Giant Manta Ray (*Manta birostris*) | Throughout Its Range | |
| Sphyrnidae | Scalloped hammerhead shark (*Sphyrna lewini)* | Indo-West Pacific DPS | |
| Acipenseridae | Sakhalin sturgeon (*Acipenser mikadoi)* | Throughout Its Range | |
| Salmonidae | Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) | Puget Sound ESU | Upper Columbia River Spring-run ESU |
| | | California Coastal ESU | Sacramento River Winter-run ESU |
| | | Upper Willamette River ESU | |
| | | Central Valley Spring-run ESU | |
| | | Snake River Fall-run ESU | |
| | | Lower Columbia River ESU | |
| | | Snake River Spring/Summer-run ESU | |
| | Chum salmon (*Oncorhynchus keta)* | Columbia River ESU | |
| | | Hood Canal Summer-run ESU | |
| | Coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch)* | Lower Columbia River ESU | Central California Coast Coho ESU |
| | | Oregon Coast ESU | |
| | | Southern Oregon/Northern California Coasts ESU | |

**Table 3-1. Status under the ESA of the Marine and Anadromous Fish Species Listed Under the ESA that Potentially Occur in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar and that are Evaluated in this SEIS/SOEIS for Potential Impacts Associated with Exposure to SURTASS LFA Sonar.**

| ***Family*** | ***Fish Species*** | ***ESA Status*** | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | ***Threatened*** | ***Endangered*** |
| Salmonidae (Continued) | Sockeye salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka)* | Lake Ozette ESU | Snake River Sockeye ESU |
| | Steelhead trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) | California Central Valley DPS | Southern California Coast DPS |
| | | Central California Coast DPS | |
| | | Lower Columbia River DPS | |
| | | Middle Columbia River DPS | |
| | Steelhead trout (continued) | Northern California-Coast DPS | |
| | | Puget Sound DPS | |
| | | Snake River Basin ESU | |
| | | South Central California Coast DPS | |
| | | Upper Columbia River ESU | |
| | | Upper Willamette River DPS | |

Note: ESU=evolutionarily significant unit

Although the oceanic whitetip shark is known as a highly migratory species capable of making long distance movements (Howey-Jordan et al., 2013), members of at least some regional populations in Brazil and the Bahamas (Cat Island) exhibit some degree of site fidelity (Tolotti et al., 2015). Tagged oceanic whitetip sharks in the western Indian Ocean and western North Atlantic Ocean traveled from 1,048 to 3,510 nmi (1940 to 6,500 km) from their tagging locations (Filmalter et al., 2012; Young et al., 2016). In the central North Pacific Ocean, tagged oceanic whitetip sharks have shown complex movement patterns that were generally limited to the tropical waters north of the North Equatorial Countercurrent (Musyl et al., 2011).

- *Giant Manta Ray (Manta birostris)*

The giant manta ray has been listed as threatened under the ESA as of February 21, 2018 (NOAA, 2018b). Critical habitat has not been designated as NMFS has concluded that it presently undeterminable. The giant manta ray is listed as vulnerable on the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species (Marshall et al., 2011).

The giant manta ray is considered a rare species throughout most of its range except in limited aggregation areas. Overall population size for the giant manta ray is unknown, but subpopulations appear to be small (about 100 to 1,500 individuals, sparsely distributed, and highly fragmented (Marshall et al., 2011; Miller and Klimovich, 2016). The Convention on International Trade in Endangered

Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES) (2013) reported that 10 worldwide populations of the giant manta ray have been studied, with 25 other aggregation sites having been noted, but the species is considered rare in all other areas, indicating that global population of giant manta rays is likely small. The rate of population decline appears to be high in several regions, with as much as an 80 percent decline over the last three generations (approximately 75 years), and a global decline of about 30 percent is strongly suspected (Marshall et al., 2011). The largest global aggregation site of giant manta rays is located in Pacific Ocean waters off Ecuador, where 1,500 individuals have been estimated and as many as 600 individuals are estimated at the largest aggregation site in the Indian Ocean (Mozambique) (CITES, 2013; Miller and Klimovich, 2016).

The giant manta ray is the largest living ray and has a circumglobal distribution in tropical, subtropical, and temperate oceanic waters but has also been observed in nearshore, highly productive waters and in waters surrounding coastal and offshore islands. The largest aggregation site in the world is located within the Ecuadorian waters of the Machalilla National Park and the Galapagos Marine Reserve (Hearn et al., 2014). In the Northern Hemisphere, the giant manta ray has been documented to occur as far north as southern California and Mutsu Bay, Japan waters in the Pacific; New Jersey and the Azores Islands in the Atlantic; and the Sinai Peninsula, Egypt in the Indian Ocean, while in the Southern Hemisphere, these rays have been observed as far south Peru, French Polynesia, and New Zealand in the Pacific; and Uruguay and South Africa in the Atlantic and Indian oceans (Marshall et al., 2011).

Giant manta rays appear to exhibit a high level of flexibility in their habitat use, especially water depths. Tagging studies have shown that the giant manta rays dive to water depths of 837 to 1,476 ft (200 to 450 m) at night (Rubin et al., 2008; Stewart et al. 2016) but are capable of diving to depths exceeding 3,281 ft (1,000 m) (Marshall et al., 2011). Considered a migratory species capable of traveling relatively long distances, the maximum estimated distance travelled by a tagged giant manta ray is 810 nmi (1,500 km) from an island off the Ecuadorian coast to Darwin Island in the Galapagos Islands (Hearn et al., 2014). Clark (2010) suggested that giant manta rays might conduct seasonal migrations to follow prey. A more recent study, however, using tagging, stable isotope, and genetic analysis of giant manta rays in Mexican waters provided evidence that giant manta rays may actually occur in well-structured subpopulations that exhibit a high degree of residency, especially to specific sites such as cleaning stations and feeding sites (Marshall et al., 2011; Stewart et al., 2016).

- *Scalloped Hammerhead Shark (Sphyrna lewini)*

The scalloped hammerhead shark is listed under the ESA, with the Indo-West Pacific DPSs listed as threatened. Based on the known geographic range of the species and genetic studies, the Indo-West Pacific DPS is bounded to the south by 36° S; to the north by 40° N; to the west by 20° E; and to the east, the boundary line extends from 130° W due north to 4° S, due west to 150° W, and then due north to 10° N (NOAA, 2014b). NMFS has not yet designated critical habitat for the scalloped hammerhead shark (NOAA, 2014b). The IUCN's Red List of Threatened Species lists the scalloped hammerhead shark as endangered (Baum et al., 2007).

No global estimates for the scalloped hammerhead shark are available, but where fisheries catch data are available, significant population declines have been observed, with declines in abundance of 50 to 90 percent over 32-year periods in some parts of the species' range (Baum et al., 2007). From Asian shark fin market data and statistical analysis, Clarke et al. (2006) estimated that from 1 to 3 million hammerhead sharks (*Sphyrna* spp.) are traded per year. Due to the extensive areal extent and complexity of the Indo-West Pacific DPS, NMFS estimates that although it is still observed throughout the entirety of the DPS range, likely there are multiple patterns of declining abundance within the DPS (NOAA, 2014b). For example, in Australian waters, the abundance of the scalloped hammerhead shark has declined about 58 to 85 percent (Heupel and McAuley, 2007); off South Africa, from 1978 to 2003, the catch per unit effort (CPUE) declined 64 percent (Baum et al., 2007); and decreases in CPUE in Papua New Guinea and Indonesia suggests localized population declines (NOAA, 2014b).

The scalloped hammerhead shark is a coastal and semi-oceanic species with a circumglobal distribution in warm-temperate to tropical coastal and oceanic waters, including bays and estuaries, that may occur in waters as deep as 902 ft (275 m), with occasional dives to even deeper depths (1,680 ft [512 m]) (Compagno, 1984; Compagno et al., 2005; Jorgensen et al., 2009). In the western Pacific Ocean, the scalloped hammerhead shark occurs in the waters of Japan, China, Vietnam, Thailand, Indonesia, the Philippines, eastern Australia, and New Caledonia (Compagno et al., 2005; Miller et al., 2014a). In the Indian Ocean, populations of this shark occur in the waters from South Africa to the Red Sea and eastward to Pakistan, India, Myanmar, and Western Australia (Miller et al, 2014a).

Scalloped hammerheads are highly mobile and partially migratory (Maguire et al., 2006). Tagging and genetic studies indicate wide-ranging movements and occasional long-distance dispersals in waters with similar oceanographic conditions, but DPSs are isolated by bathymetric barriers and oceanographic conditions (NOAA, 2014b). For instance, adult scalloped hammerheads generally move distances <108 nmi (200 km) but have occasionally been reported traveling up to 1,080 nmi (2,000 km).

➢ ***ESA-listed Fishes with a Swim Bladder/Gas Chamber Not Involved in Hearing***

Although the following ESA-listed marine fishes are bony fishes that possess swim bladders, no evidence exists that the swim bladder is involved in hearing. Further, these fishes possess no known auditory structures or tissues that would function to enhance hearing.

- *Sakhalin Sturgeon (Acipenser mikadoi)*

Endangered throughout its range under the ESA, the Sakhalin sturgeon is listed as critically endangered on the IUCN's Red List of Threatened Species (Mugue, 2010). No critical habitat will be designated for the Sakhalin sturgeon since its geographical range is entirely outside U.S. jurisdiction. Apparently never abundant, the population size of Sakhalin sturgeon has been declining for over 100 years to the extent that now only a few sturgeons are observed each year. The most current population estimate ranges from 10 to 30 adults entering the Tumnin River, Russia to spawn annually, with none captured during fish surveys from 2010 and 2013 (Mugue, 2010). Introduced into the Amur River estuary, five to 10 Sakhalin sturgeons are caught annually (Meadows and Coll, 2013).

The Sakhalin sturgeon occurs only in the waters of the western North Pacific Ocean from the Sea of Japan (as far south as Hokkaido, Japan and Wonsan, North Korea) north to the Bering Strait, including the Sea of Okhotsk, and associated rivers (Mugue, 2010; Shmigirilov et al., 2007). Sakhalin sturgeon migrate into freshwater rivers to spawn, principally now only in the Tumnin River, but rare adults have been observed in the Viyakhtu and Koppi rivers, Russia (Shmigirilov et al., 2007). Japanese researchers believe the Sakhalin sturgeon to be extinct in Hokkaido, Japan (Omoto et al., 2004).

An anadromous fish, the Sakhalin sturgeon lives from 15 to 20 years (NOAA, 2013), and begins spawning migrations to freshwater rivers once it reaches a length of about 4.4 ft (1.35 m) (Koshelev et al., 2012). Spawning occurs from June through July in the Tumnin River, Russia, and from April to May in rivers of Hokkaido, Japan (Mugue, 2010; Paul, 2007). Juveniles remain in freshwater or estuaries until the fall of their birth year, when they migrate to the sea (Birstein, 1993).

- *Chinook Salmon (Oncorhynchus tshawytscha)*

The Chinook salmon population in the waters of the U.S. Pacific northwest has been divided into 17 evolutionary significant units (ESUs). Of these Chinook salmon ESUs, seven are listed as threatened, two are listed as endangered, and one ESU, the Upper Klamath-Trinity River ESU, is a candidate for listing under the ESA (Table 3-1); fishes associated with all these ESA-listed ESUs may occur in the North Pacific part of the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. Critical habitat has been established for all nine ESA-listed ESUs of Chinook salmon and includes the freshwater spawning, rearing, and migration sites, as well as estuarine and marine juvenile and adult forage and migrational areas in the inland waters of California, Oregon, and Washington states. After significantly declining throughout its U.S. range, the majority of the ESA-listed Chinook ESUs are considered to be stable or improving, but two ESUs, the Upper Willamette Spring-Run ESU and the Sacramento River Winer-Run ESU, are considered to be under stress and declining (NOAA, 2016i; Northwest Fisheries Science Center, 2015).

Chinook, or king, salmon range throughout the North Pacific Ocean from Hokkaido, Japan and the Anadyr River, Russia and Monterey Bay, California northward to the Bering Strait and Chukchi Sea, as well as in associated inland tributaries and estuaries. Largest of the Pacific salmon species, the Chinook salmon is an anadromous fish that is highly migratory. After hatching in freshwater, Chinook salmon spend 3 months to 2 years in freshwater inland habitats before migrating often hundreds of miles seaward to estuaries and finally to the ocean, where they mature and remain from 1 to 6 years, but more commonly remain at sea between 2 and 4 years (USFWS, 2009). As adults, Chinook salmon return to their natal (birth) river or streams to mate, spawn, and die.

The life history and ecology of Chinook salmon exhibit a level of complexity and variability not known in other Pacific salmon species. Populations of Chinook salmon exhibit a great deal of variation in size, age of maturation, and habitat preference with at least some portion of this variation being genetically determined. For instance, a small population of male Chinooks remains in fresh water to mature and only spends 2 to 3 months in saltwater before returning to freshwater. At least one resident population of Chinook salmon in Lake Cushman, Washington never migrates to saltwater (Good et al., 2005). Additionally, not all Chinook salmon migrate to freshwater at the same time of year. Different seasonal (i.e., spring, summer, fall, or winter) migration "runs" or movements of Chinook salmon from the ocean to freshwater exist, even within an individual river system. These runs are identified on the basis of the season when adult Chinook salmon enter freshwater to begin their spawning migration. Entry into freshwater systems is thought to be mediated by water temperature and the water flow regime of the natal tributary.

Two types of Chinook salmon have evolved: the ocean- and stream-types. Ocean-type Chinook salmon tend to migrate along the coast while stream-type Chinooks are found offshore in the North Pacific. Stream-type Chinooks, found most commonly in headwater streams of large river systems, perform extensive offshore migrations into the North Pacific Ocean before returning to their natal streams in the spring or summer months. Stream-type Chinook salmon migrate during their second or sometimes their third spring to summer season (Busby et al., 1997). At the time of saltwater entry, stream-type (yearling) Chinook salmon are much larger than their ocean-type counterparts and are able to move offshore relatively quickly. Ocean-type Chinook salmon live in estuaries for longer periods in earlier lifestages and tend to utilize estuaries and coastal areas more extensively in the juvenile lifestage, and as noted, spend their adult life stage in coastal ocean waters. Ocean-type Chinook salmon return to their natal streams or rivers in fall through summer, with summer and fall migrational runs predominating. In most rivers, migration in the late summer or autumn of the first year represents the majority of the ocean-type emigrants. If environmental conditions are not conducive to emigration, ocean-type Chinook salmon may remain in fresh water for their entire first year.

- *Chum Salmon (Oncorhynchus keta)*

Two of four chum salmon ESUs, the Columbia River and Hood Canal Summer-run ESUs, are listed as threatened under the ESA, with fishes from both ESUs potentially occurring in the North Pacific portion of the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. Critical habitat for chum salmon has been designated in the transboundary inland waters of Washington and northwestern Oregon to protect freshwater spawning, rearing, and migrational sites as well as estuarine migrational and rearing areas (NOAA, 2005b). Once the most abundant of all Pacific salmon species, seven of the 16 historical spawning populations of chum salmon in the Hood Canal Summer-run ESU are now extinct, with the overall population of this ESU estimated in the early 2000s at several thousand and declining by 6 percent per year (Good et al., 2005). Although productivity of the Hood Canal Summer-run ESU remains low, recent information indicates that population rates have slightly increased in the last five years (NOAA, 2016k). The population of the Columbia River ESU is even lower, with an estimated population in the early 2000s of only 500 fish, and 14 of 16 spawning populations in this ESU are now considered extinct (Good et al., 2005). Abundances of the populations of chum salmon in the Columbia River ESU remain very low, with only three populations considered stable or very slightly increasing, while the other populations are in danger of extinction/extirpation (NOAA, 2016l).

The chum salmon has the widest natural geographic and spawning distribution of any Pacific salmonid, primarily because its occurrence extends farther north into the polar waters of the Arctic Ocean. With spawning populations ranging from Korea and Japan as far north as Russia in the western North Pacific, major spawning populations of chum salmon occur only as far south as Tillamook Bay on the northern Oregon coast in the eastern North Pacific Ocean. Like other Pacific salmon species, the chum salmon is anadromous and migrates from freshwater tributaries to saltwater, returning to the freshwater river or stream of birth to spawn once and die. However, one resident population in Puget Sound never migrates from the waters of the sound (USFWS, 2009a). Chum salmon do not travel as far upstream to spawn as other salmon, generally spawning close to saltwater. Like Chinook salmon, chum salmon are semelparous, only spawning once before dying.

Most chum salmon mature and return to their natal river of stream to spawn between 3 and 5 years of age, with 60 to 90 percent of the fish maturing at 4 years of age (USFWS, 2009a). Only one form, the sea-run, of chum salmon exists. Chum salmon spawn in the lowermost reaches of rivers and streams, typically within 62 mi (100 km) of the ocean, with spawning sites often located near springs. They migrate almost immediately after hatching to estuarine and ocean waters, in contrast to other Pacific salmonids, which migrate to sea after months or even years in freshwater (Pauly et al., 1998). This means that survival and growth of juvenile chum salmon depends less on freshwater conditions than on favorable estuarine and marine conditions.

- *Coho Salmon (Oncorhynchus kisutch)*

Four of the seven coho salmon ESUs in the U.S. are listed under the ESA with an additional ESU, the Puget Sound/Strait of Georgia, listed currently as a species of concern (Table 3-1). ESA-listed coho salmon may occur in the North Pacific part of the LFA study area. The Central California Coast ESU is listed as endangered while the Lower Columbia River, Oregon Coast, and Southern Oregon/Northern California Coast ESUs are listed as threatened. Critical habitat has been established for the four ESA-listed ESUs. Critical habitat for the Central California Coast ESU encompasses accessible reaches of all rivers (including estuarine areas and tributaries) between Punta Gorda and the San Lorenzo River (inclusive) in California, including two streams entering San Francisco Bay: Arroyo Corte Madera Del Presidio and Corte Madera Creek, while critical habitat for the Southern Oregon/Northern California Coasts ESU encompasses accessible reaches of all rivers (including estuarine areas and tributaries) between the Mattole River in California and the Elk River in Oregon, inclusive (NOAA, 1999). Critical habitat for the Oregon Coast ESU includes 72 of 80 occupied watersheds, contained in 13 sub-basins, totaling approximately 6,665 stream miles along the Oregon Coast, south of the Columbia River and north of Cape Blanco (Oregon) (NOAA, 2008a). The abundance of coho salmon south of Alaska has declined despite the establishment of large hatchery programs. Hatchery programs for coho salmon have been so successful that most salmon runs now consist of more than twice the number of hatchery-raised versus naturally-occurring coho salmon. The overall population trend for the ESA-listed ESUs in the early 2000s indicated declining abundances, particularly in the Central California Coast ESU, although abundances for some years show promising increases (Good et al., 2005). More recently, the abundance of the Oregon Coast ESU has shown long-term increases (NOAA, 2016m), while little change has been apparent in the population status of the Southern Oregon/Northern California ESU (NOAA, 2016o).

The distributional range of coho salmon extends from central California to Alaska and from Japan to Russia, principally in coastal marine waters, with these salmon not ranging as widely in open ocean waters as other species of Pacific salmon. The extent of coho migrations appears to extend westward along the Aleutian Island chain ending somewhere around Emperor Seamount (Pacific Fisheries Management Council [PFMC], 2000).

Coho salmon are anadromous, migrating from the marine environment into the freshwater streams and rivers of their birth to mate, spawn once, and die. Although anadromy is the norm, some coho salmon remain resident in freshwater, such as in Puget Sound/Strait of Georgia, where some coho salmon spend their entire lives (Emmett et al., 1991). Coho salmon exhibit a simple, 3-year life cycle, spending the first year or so of life in freshwater. Juvenile cohos spend about 15 months developing in freshwater, and then from spring through summer (April to August), peaking in May, migrate into the waters of the North Pacific Ocean. Upon entering the ocean, coho may spend several weeks or their entire first summer in coastal waters before migrating into open ocean waters (PFMC, 2000). Adult coho spend two years in the ocean before returning to freshwater to complete their life cycle by spawning and dying (Emmett et al., 1991). Some males known as "jacks" return to freshwater sooner as two-year-old spawners. The adult spawning migrations begin in summer and are completed by fall, with spawning having occurred by mid-winter. Spawning occurs earlier at the northern extent of the coho's geographic range (PFMC, 2000).

- *Sockeye Salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka)*

Two of seven sockeye salmon ESUs in the U.S. have been listed under the ESA; the Ozette Lake ESU is listed as threatened while the Snake River ESU is listed as endangered; sockeye from both the ESA-listed ESUs potentially may occur in North Pacific portion of the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. Critical habitat for the Snake River ESU consists of the river reaches of the Columbia, Snake, and Salmon Rivers and Valley and Alturas Lake Creeks, as well as Stanley, Redfish, Yellowbelly, Petitt, and Alturas Lakes (NOAA, 1993). The Hoh/Quillayute sub-basin is the focus of critical habitat for the Ozette Lake ESU and specifically includes all bodies of water in the watershed of Ozette Lake, which contains five rivers and three creeks (NOAA, 2005b). The sockeye salmon is listed as least concern on the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species (Rand, 2011).

Sockeye salmon are the third most abundant, after pink salmon and chum salmon, of the seven species of Pacific salmon. However, the Snake River ESU has remained at very low population levels of only a few hundred fish, though there have been recent increases in the number of hatchery reared fish returning to spawn (Good et al., 2005). The Ozette Lake ESU population is small, particularly when compared to historical levels, and the population status has only slightly improved, with the natural-origin spawning population estimated to include only 2,679 sockeye salmon (NOAA, 2016j). The abundance of the Snake River ESU, albeit still very low, shows an increasing trend in the population, with the introduction of hatchery stock thought to have prevented this ESU from becoming extinct (NOAA, 2015c).

Sockeye salmon range from about 44°N to 49°N and occur around the northern Pacific Rim of the Pacific Ocean, ranging from the Klamath River and its tributaries (Northern California and Oregon) to the Kuskokwim River, Alaska in the east and from Hokkaido, Japan to the Anadyr River, Russia in the west (Gustafson et al., 1997). Sockeye salmon prefer cooler ocean conditions than most other species of Pacific salmon and require lake environments for the first half of their lives, spending the remainder of their life cycle foraging in estuarine and marine waters of the North Pacific Ocean. For instance, nearly 90 percent of Asian sockeye salmon are reared in Kuril Lake in the Ozernaya River Basin, Kamchatka Peninsula, Russia (Gustafson et al., 1997).

Sockeye salmon are primarily anadromous and only spawn once before dying, but like Chinook salmon, exhibit a more varied life history and ecology than other species of Pacific salmon. Distinct landlocked populations (kokanee) of sockeye salmon exist that never migrate to marine waters, spending their entire life cycle in freshwater habitats (Burgner, 1991; Emmett et al., 1991). With the exception of certain river- and sea-type populations, the vast majority of sockeye salmon spawn in or near lakes (lake-type), where the juveniles develop for 1 to 3 years prior to migrating into marine waters. For this reason, the major distribution and abundance of sockeye salmon stocks are closely related to the location of rivers with accessible lakes in their watersheds for juvenile development, so that their occurrence in riverine habitats is more intermittent than that of other Pacific salmon. Sockeye spend approximately the first half of their life cycle in lake environments, with the remainder of their four to six-year life cycle spent foraging in estuarine and marine waters of the Pacific Ocean. “Lake-type” juvenile sockeye salmon rear in lakes for 1 to 3 years before migrating to the sea, while “river-type” sockeyes spawn in rivers without spending any time in lake developmental habitat, developing to juveniles during 1 to 2 years in the slow-velocity sections of rivers. In Washington and British Columbia, lake residence is typically closer to 1 to 2 years, whereas juvenile lake-residence is closer to 3 to 4 years in Alaska. “Sea-type” sockeye salmon migrate to the sea after spending only a few months in freshwater. Sockeye salmon spend between 1 and 4 years in the ocean before migrating back up the rivers to spawn and die (Gustafson et al., 1997).

After entering saltwater, the young sockeye spends the first season in coastal waters before moving in deeper offshore waters. Upon maturity, sockeye salmon in the Pacific Northwest return to freshwater from June to August, peaking in early July (Emmett et al., 1991). Adult sockeye salmon enter Puget Sound tributaries from mid-June through August, whereas Columbia River populations begin river entry in May. Salmon in Puget Sound spawn from late September to late December, sometimes into January, while salmon in the Columbia River spawn from late September to early November, with a small number of fishes in the Cedar River spawning into February (Gustafson et al., 1997).

- *Steelhead Trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss)*

Steelhead and rainbow trout are the same species, with steelhead trout exhibiting an anadromous lifestyle while rainbow trout remain wholly in freshwater throughout their lives and do not migrate into the ocean. In the U.S., steelhead trout are divided into 15 DPSs, with 11 ESUs listed under the ESA. The Southern California DPS is listed as endangered while 10 other DPSs listed as threatened under the ESA (Table 3-1), and a twelfth DPS, the Oregon coast DPS, is listed as a Species of Concern (NOAA, 2006a, 2007a). Steelhead trout from all 11 ESA-listed ESUs may potentially occur in the North Pacific portion of the LFA study area. Critical habitat has been designated for all of the ESA-listed DPSs of steelhead trout and includes the inland, freshwater river and stream habitat as well as coastal estuarine and marine habitat of California, Oregon, Washington, and Idaho (including Puget Sound) (NOAA, 2005a, 2005b, and 2016p). The population status of steelhead trout in U.S. waters is variable, with some DPSs declining or increasing, and others remaining unchanged. Some populations of the Northern California DPS may already be extirpated or extinct, with the summer-run populations considered to be more at risk (NOAA, 2016n). No overall abundance is available for the entire steelhead population.

The current distribution of steelhead trout ranges from the freshwater inland and marine waters from southern California to the Bering Sea and Bristol Bay of Alaska and to the Kamchatka Peninsula in Russia. Steelhead trout do not range into the deep central oceanic gyre waters of the North Pacific Ocean as do other Pacific salmonid species and occur in most streams in the Puget Sound region and many Columbia and Snake River tributaries (Pauley et al., 1986).

Steelhead trout exhibit one of the most complex life histories of any salmonid species. In addition to having a wholly freshwater ecotype[18] (rainbow trout), steelhead trout in the Pacific Northwest region of Washington, Oregon, and British Columbia can be divided into two phylogenetic groups, inland and coastal steelheads, separated by the Columbia and Fraser tributary systems in the Cascade Mountains (Busby et al., 1996). Steelhead trout can also be divided into two biological or reproductive ecotypes, stream-maturing and ocean-maturing, which are differentiated by their state of sexual maturity at the time of return entry to freshwater and the duration of their spawning migration. Stream-maturing steelhead are sexually immature when they enter freshwater from the ocean and require several months to mature and spawn while ocean-maturing steelhead are sexually mature when they freshwater and spawn thereafter. Like chinook, steelhead trout also exhibit have two adult migrational movement patterns, with summer- and winter-runs. Most summer runs occur east of the Cascades, with steelhead trout entering streams in summer to reach the spawning grounds by the following spring. A few rivers in western Washington also have established runs of summer steelhead. Steelhead trout that are part of winter-runs spawn closer to the ocean, requiring less travel time to spawn.

Steelhead trout are capable of spawning more than once but most die after spawning twice (NOAA, 1997). In waters north of Oregon, repeat spawning is uncommon, and more than two spawning migrations are rare. The frequency of two spawning migrations is higher in waters of Oregon and California, but more than two spawning migrations are rare. The largest number of spawning migrations known is five, which occurred in the Siuslaw River in Oregon (Busby et al., 1996).

Steelhead trout are the most long-lived of the salmon family, living as long as 11 years. Steelheads typically migrate to marine waters after spending two to four years in freshwater, but some juvenile steelheads have been known to live up to seven years in freshwater before migrating to the ocean.

18 An ecotype is a locally adapted population of a widespread species that show minor morphological or physiological changes resulting from selection of a particular habitat and which are genetically induced.

Males generally mature at two years of age with females maturing at three years. Steelhead trout typically remain in marine waters for two to three years prior to returning to their natal stream to spawn. Spawning migrations can occur throughout the year and adults typically spawn between December and June (Busby et al., 1996). Some populations of trout actually return to freshwater after their first season in the ocean, but do not spawn in freshwater, and then return to the sea after one winter season in freshwater.

#### 3.4.3.2 Sea Turtles

Although well adapted for life in the marine environment, sea turtles are air-breathing marine reptiles that rely partially on the terrestrial environment for nesting and hatching of their offspring. Habitat use by sea turtles is typically linked to lifestage, with many species of sea turtles found only in the pelagic environment during their post-hatchling lifestage and during transocean migrations. Most species of sea turtles are migratory and may only occur seasonally or during specific lifestages in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. Additionally, due to severe exploitation in the past, most sea turtle species currently occur only in parts of their former ranges and in very low numbers, particularly in the pelagic environment, where sea turtles are widely dispersed. Due to the devastation of sea turtle populations worldwide, all sea turtle species are protected under Appendix I of CITES, which prohibits international trade to and from signatory countries, and all but one sea turtle species is protected under the ESA.

Seven species of sea turtles are distributed circumglobally in the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian oceans and Mediterranean Sea. However, the distribution of one sea turtle species, the Kemp's ridley turtle, is restricted to the Atlantic Ocean and Mediterranean Sea. Thus, the Kemp's ridley turtle does not occur in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar and will not be considered further in this SEIS/SOEIS. Five of the six sea turtle species considered in this SEIS/SOEIS are listed under the ESA as threatened or endangered (Table 3-2). The global populations of the ESA-listed green and loggerhead turtles have been divided into DPSs. Only the DPSs that potentially occur within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar area are considered herein. DPSs of both the green and loggerhead turtles have been designated in the southwestern Indian Ocean, which is the only part of the Indian Ocean not included in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. Accordingly, these DPSs are also not further considered herein. The flatback turtle (*Natator depressus*), is not listed under the ESA, as its distribution is restricted to coastal waters off Australia, Papua New Guinea, and Guinea.

Hearing has been studied in four of the seven species of sea turtles, with the hearing sensitivity of the green, loggerhead, Kemp's ridley, and leatherback turtles reported to be <2 kHz, with greatest hearing sensitivity from 200 to 750 Hz (Bartol et al., 1999; Bartol and Ketten, 2006; Dow Piniak et al., 2012b; Lavender et al., 2012; Lenhardt 1994; Lenhardt et al., 1983; Martin et al., 2012; Mrosovsky, 1972; O'Hara and Wilcox, 1990; Ridgway et al., 1969). Since it is likely that all the potentially occurring species of sea turtles hear LF sound, at least as adults (O'Hara and Wilcox, 1990; Ridgway et al., 1969), the six species of potentially occurring sea turtles, namely the flatback, green, hawksbill, leatherback, loggerhead, and olive ridley turtles, are considered in this SEIS/SOEIS. Information is provided about what is known about sea turtle hearing and sound production capabilities, and each species' status, abundance, distribution, seasonality, diving and swimming capabilities.

##### *3.4.3.2.1 Sea Turtle Hearing and Sound Production*

Despite the small number of sea turtle species, only limited data and information on sea turtle hearing and sound production exist. Sea turtles have no ear pinnae (external ear openings), as their middle ears are covered by a layer of fat that is overlain by a thick layer of skin on their external head surface called

**Table 3-2. Sea Turtle Species and Their Associated Distinct Population Segments (DPSs) Occurring in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar that are Evaluated for Potential Impacts Associated with Exposure to SURTASS LFA Sonar in this SEIS/SOEIS and Their Status Under the ESA. Species Listed in Alphabetical Order by Family.**

| ***Family*** | ***Species*** | ***ESA Status*** | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | ***Threatened*** | ***Endangered*** |
| Cheloniidae | Flatback turtle (*Natador depressus*) | Foreign Species; Not Listed | |
| | Green turtle (*Chelonia mydas)* | Central West Pacific DPS | Central North Pacific DPS |
| | | | East Indian-West Pacific DPS |
| | | | North Indian DPS |
| | Hawksbill turtle (*Eretmochelys imbricata)* | | Throughout Range |
| | Loggerhead turtle (*Caretta caretta*) | Southeast Indo-Pacific Ocean DPS | North Indian Ocean DPS |
| | | | North Pacific Ocean DPS |
| | Olive ridley turtle (*Lepidochelys olivacea)* | All Other Populations | Pacific Coast of Mexico (Breeding Population) |
| Dermochelyidae | Leatherback turtle (*Dermochelys coriacea)* | | Throughout Range |

the tympanum; this layer of fat over the middle ear appears to be a distinguishing feature of sea turtle ear morphology. Sea turtle ears are adapted to hear both underwater and in air, with sound beingreceived either by bone conduction (Lenhardt et al., 1985), resonance of the middle ear cavity (Willis et al., 2013), or standard tympanic middle ear path (Christensen-Dalsgaard et al., 2012). Research conducted on green, loggerhead, Kemp's ridley[19], and leatherback turtles indicates that sea turtles hear LF sounds both in-water and in-air. Electrophysiological, behavioral, and morphological studies on hearing have been conducted on hatchling leatherback turtles (Dow Piniak et al., 2012a); juvenile green turtles (Bartol and Ketten, 2006; Dow Piniak et al., 2012b; Ridgway et al., 1969; Piniak et al., 2016); juvenile Kemp's ridley turtles (Bartol and Ketten, 2006); as well as post-hatchling, juvenile, and adult loggerhead turtles (Bartol et al., 1999; Ketten and Bartol, 2005/2006; Lavender et al., 2011, 2012; Martin et al., 2012). Additional investigations have examined adult green, loggerhead, and Kemp's ridley sea turtles. No published studies to date have reported audiograms of olive ridley or hawksbill turtles (Bartol et al., 1999; O'Hara and Wilcox, 1990; Ridgway et al., 1969). Further details on these studies were provided in DoN (2017a).

The available scientific research on sea turtle hearing capabilities indicates that overall, sea turtle's best hearing ranges is in the LF range between 200 and 700 Hz (Figure 3-1). To better illustrate the underwater hearing capabilities of sea turtles, the Navy compiled known data on sea turtle hearing and developed a composite audiogram (Figure 3-1) (DoN, 2017c). In-water, sea turtles are capable of

19 Even though the Kemp's ridley turtle does not occur in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar, information about this sea turtle's hearing is included to provide a complete overview of what informs our understanding of sea turtle hearing.

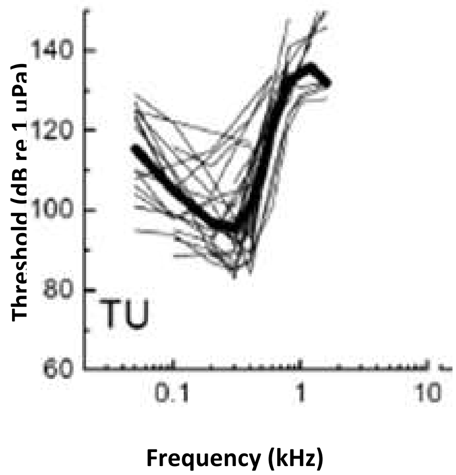



**Figure 3-1. Composite Underwater Audiograms for Sea Turtles with Composite of All Audiograms Shown as Heavy Black Line (DoN, 2017e).**

detecting sound between 50 and 1,600 Hz, with best hearing from 100 and 400 Hz and hearing sensitivity dropping off at higher frequencies (Bartol and Ketten, 2006; Ketten and Bartol, 2005/2006; Piniak et al., 2016). In-air, juvenile sea turtles appear capable of hearing sounds between 50 to 800 Hz, with a maximum hearing sensitivity around 300 to 400 Hz (Bartol et al., 1999; Dow Piniak et al., 2012; Piniak et al., 2016; Ridgway et al., 1969).

Very little is known about sound production or how sound is used for communication or other purposes by sea turtles. Some sea turtle species, such as the leatherback turtle, produce sounds when ashore nesting (Mrosovsky, 1972), but no underwater sound production by sea turtles has ever been documented. Cook et al. (2005) noted that the broadband sounds female leatherbacks made during nesting, breath noises (inhalations/exhalations), grunts, and gular pumps[20], ranged in frequency from 300 to 500 Hz (which is in the hearing range of leatherbacks), and appeared to be associated with respiration, although their possible role in communication could not be excluded. Adults and hatchlings freshwater turtles produce sounds, up to 17 distinct sounds in one species (Ferrara et al., 2013; Giles, 2009), although the purpose for these vocalizations is not fully understood. Ferrara et al. (2013) suggested that sound production by adult and hatchling turtles may be a way to aggregate adults and hatchlings for migration.

Ferrara et al. (2014) reported that leatherback turtle embryos and hatchlings produced sounds over a broad frequency range (119 to 24,000 Hz) while in their nests. Although the purpose for their vocalizations beyond some type of communication is unclear, sea turtle hatchlings (green, olive ridley, and leatherback turtles) vocalize during incubation, hatching, and after emergence from their eggs and nests (McKenna et al., 2019). Ferrara et al. (2014) suggested that the sounds produced by leatherback embryos and hatchling may be important for coordinating behavior, such as synchronization of hatching or emergence from their nests, but McKenna et al. (2019) were unable to demonstrate any correlation.

#### *3.4.3.2.2 Sea Turtle Population Estimates*

Sea turtles are difficult to observe and enumerate at-sea, especially in the open ocean environment, due to their small size, surface coloration, low percentage of time spent at the sea surface, low and greatly dispersed numbers, and small proportion of body visible at the sea surface. Population estimates or abundances of sea turtles are generally derived worldwide from counts of breeding females when they return to shore to nest or by counting the nests in which females have laid their eggs. This later method further complicates population estimation, as female turtles typically nest more than once per nesting season. An additional complication in depending upon counts of nesting females is that not all females reproduce every year. Although sea turtle population estimates derived from nest counts are the best available data, they often underestimate the total population, as they only represent counts of nesting females, and do not account for non-nesting females, males, or juveniles of the species. Unless

20 The gular organ in sea turtles is similar to the larynx and functions in respiration.

otherwise noted herein, sea turtle abundances are counts of nesting females. Few density data are available for sea turtles, except for some densities estimated at nesting beaches and these are rarely representative of the density of sea turtles in a particular region of the ocean environment in any given season.

##### *3.4.3.2.3 Potentially Occurring Sea Turtles*

- ***Flatback turtle (Natador depressus)***

The flatback turtle is listed under Appendix 1 of CITES, is considered data deficient by the IUCN, and is not listed under the ESA. Since this species is currently listed as data deficient by the IUCN, no species' status can be correctly assessed. The flatback turtle is classified as vulnerable under the Australian Environment Protection and Biodiversity Conservation Act. No estimate of the overall flatback turtle population size is available. Whiting et al. (2008) estimated an annual abundance of 3,250 flatback turtles at Cape Domett, Western Australia, and Sutherland and Sutherland (2003) estimated that 4,234 flatback female turtles came ashore at one the largest flatback rookeries on Crab Island, Australia during the austral winter in 1997. These abundances are the only estimates available for two of the four flatback genetic stocks occurring in Australia. Each of the two major nesting rookeries for flatback turtles in Queensland, Australia reported 100 nesting females per year and up to 500 nesting females at one of those rookeries (Limpus et al., 2013; Wilderman et al., 2017).

Flatback turtles have the most restricted distributional range of all sea turtle species. Flatback turtles occur principally in habitats with soft sediments throughout the continental shelf waters of northern Australia (including the waters off Western Australia, Northern Territory, and Queensland), Papua New Guinea, and Papua, Indonesia and are not found elsewhere in the world (Limpus, 2007). Flatback turtles do not have a pelagic or oceanic lifestage, and remain in relatively shallow, continental shelf waters throughout all developmental lifestages (Walker and Parmenter, 1990). This restricted water depth range is thought to be the cause for flatback turtles remaining endemic to Australia and parts of southern Indonesia (Van Buskirk and Crowder, 1994; Walker and Parmenter, 1990).

Nesting only takes place along the coast of northern Australia, where it occurs year-round at some beaches but only seasonally at other rookeries. Pike (2013) reported that there are 223 unique nesting sites for flatback turtles. Flatback turtles produce clutches of eggs that are about half the size of other hard-shelled turtles, but their eggs are larger and develop into hatchling turtles with twice the mass of other hard-shelled turtles (Walker and Parmenter, 1990). Foraging grounds are located in Indonesia and Papua New Guinea.

Once thought to be non-migratory, tagged flatback turtles have been recorded moving up to 702 nmi (1,300 km) between nesting beaches in northern Australia to foraging areas in Indonesia (southern Irian Jaya) (Limpus et al., 1983). Little is known about the diving or swimming behavior of the flatback turtle. Sperling (2007 and 2008) found that flatback turtles spend about 10 percent of their time at or near the water's surface; dive as deep as 98 ft (30 m); and dive for long periods of time, with a mean dive duration of 50 min and a maximum of 98 min. Sperling (2008) also discovered two apparent distinct dive types for flatback turtles that had not been described for other turtle species, which accounted for 2 to 5 percent of the dives the tagged turtles made during the study. Salmon et al. (2010) detailed the diving behavior of juvenile flatback turtles and noted that even at 3 weeks of age, they are capable of diving for 5.8 min to water depths as deep as 36 ft (11 m), with most dives <2 min in duration to shallow water depths (<13 ft [4 m]). The juvenile flatback turtles principally exhibited two types of dive profiles, V- and W-shaped dives, were capable of making repeated dives to the maximum water depth, and typically swam slowly when diving, on average <0.2 kt (9 cm/sec), but some of the juveniles were capable of swimming >1.9 kt (1 m/sec) (Salmon et al., 2010).

- ***Green Turtle (Chelonia mydas)***

Eleven worldwide DPSs for the green turtle have been designated as either threatened or endangered under the ESA (Table 3-3) (NOAA, 2016b). The green turtle is protected under CITES and is listed as endangered by the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species, with declining populations (Seminoff, 2004). Three ESA DPSs were listed as endangered (Central South Pacific, Central West Pacific, and Mediterranean DPSs) with eight DPSs listed as threatened (Figure 3-2[21]). The DPS boundaries were derived based on genetic analysis of tissue collected from female green turtles when they came ashore to nest. Thus, the DPS boundaries are indicative of the nesting populations of green turtles but are not indicative of the overall movements of green turtles. Green turtles often make long, oceanic migrations between nesting and feeding grounds, so green turtles from multiple DPSs may be found on foraging grounds or in the pelagic ocean environment.

Of the 11-green turtle DPSs, only four DPSs (Central West Pacific, Central North Pacific, East Indian-West Pacific, and North Indian DPSs) are located in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar (Table 3-2). In 1998, critical habitat was designated in the coastal waters around Culebra Island, Puerto Rico and its outlying keys from the mean high-water line seaward to 3 nmi (5.6 km); this critical habitat remains in effect for the North Atlantic DPS of the green turtle. NMFS has determined that additional critical habitat is not determinable at this time (NOAA, 2016b).

No complete global population estimates exist for the green turtle. Seminoff (2004) compiled known population data and information but no overall abundance could be derived due to the disparate data (number of nesting females, nests, eggs, and hatchlings) reported for the major worldwide green turtle rookeries. However, more recently, estimates of the female nesting abundance for each green turtle DPS were derived, resulting in a best estimate of the global population of green turtles as 570,926 turtles (NOAA, 2016b; Table 3-3). The two largest worldwide nesting populations occur at Tortuguero, Costa Rica (Caribbean), where on average, 22,500 female green turtles' nest per season; and Raine Island, Australia (Great Barrier Reef), where 18,000 females nest per season on average (Seminoff et al., 2015). The populations of green turtle in the waters of the CNMI were estimated as 795 to 1,107 turtles in Tinian waters and 297 turtles in Pagan waters; 97 percent of these populations are composed of juveniles and subadults (DoN, 2014). Although no abundance exists for the number of green turtles that occur in Hawaii, the Hawaiian green turtle population is increasing and has increased by 53 percent over the last 25 years (NMFS, 2018a). The number of nesting female green turtles at one of the two largest nesting areas in the western North Pacific, the Ogasawara Islands of Japan, has been increasing since the late 1970s, with a maximum number of 582 nesting females in 2008 (Kondo et al., 2017).

Green turtles are widespread throughout tropical, subtropical, and warm-temperate waters of the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian oceans and Mediterranean Sea between 30° N and 30°S (Lazell, 1980). Except during the juvenile lifestage and adult migrations when green turtles are found in the oceanic environment, green turtles principally inhabit the neritic zone, typically occurring in nearshore and inshore waters where they forage primarily on sea grasses and algae (Mortimer, 1982). Green turtles make long pelagic migrations between foraging and nesting grounds, swimming thousands of miles across the open ocean (Bjorndal, 1997; Pritchard, 1997). Nesting of green turtles occurs in over 80

21 The DPS ranges depicted in Figure 3-2 correspond to the nesting beach ranges for each DPS.

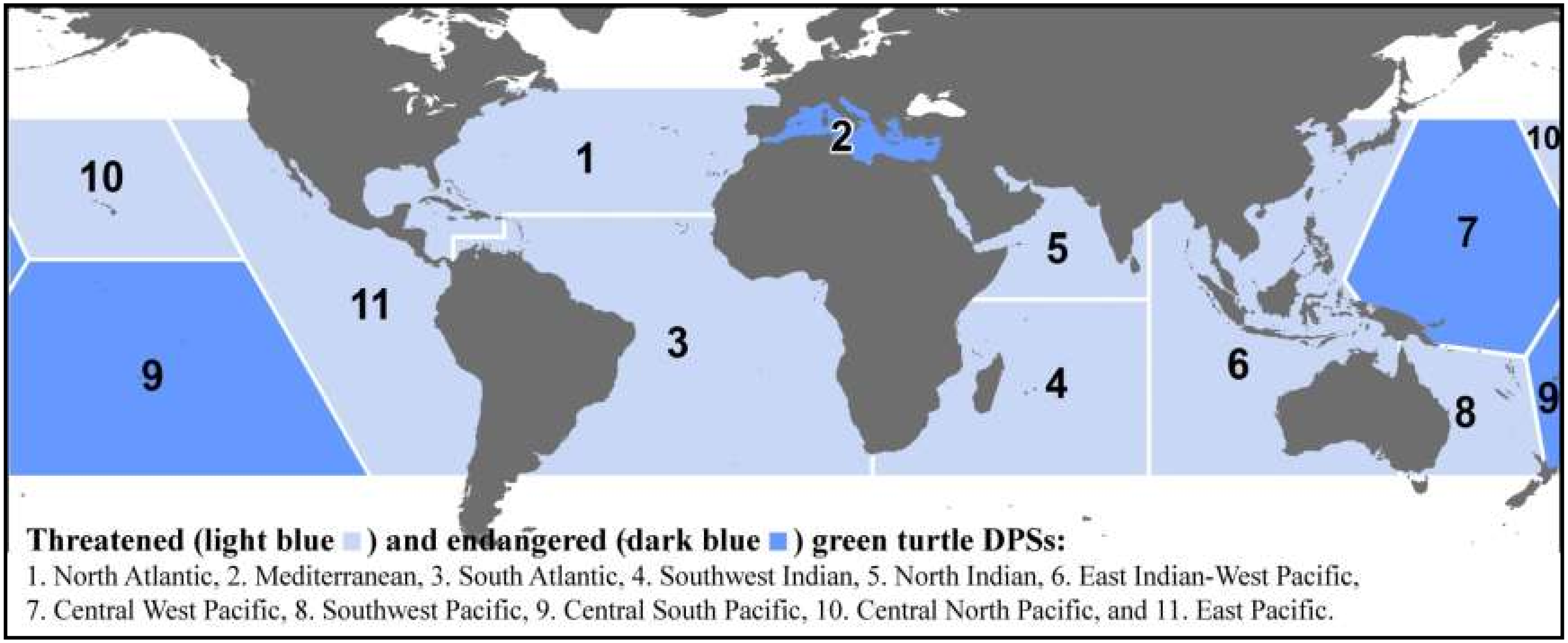



**Figure 3-2. Global Distribution of the Threatened and Endangered Distinct Population Segments (DPSs) Listed Under the ESA for the Green Turtle (NOAA, 2016c).**

**Table 3-3. Green Turtle DPSs, ESA Status, and Estimated Abundances with Worldwide Total Estimated Abundance (Seminoff et al., 2015).**

| *Green Turtle DPS* | *ESA Status* | *Estimated Abundance (nesting females)* |
|---|---|---|
| North Atlantic | Threatened | 167,424 |
| Mediterranean | Endangered | 698[22] |
| South Atlantic | Threatened | 63,332 |
| Southwest Indian | Threatened | 91,059 |
| North Indian | Threatened | 55,243 |
| East Indian-West Pacific | Threatened | 77,009 |
| Central West Pacific | Endangered | 6,518 |
| Southwest Pacific | Threatened | 83,058 |
| Central South Pacific | Endangered | 2,677 |
| Central North Pacific | Threatened | 3,846 |
| East Pacific | Threatened | 20,062 |
| Total | | 570,926 |

countries worldwide (Hirth, 1997). Pike (2013) estimated that green turtles use 1,781 unique nesting beaches worldwide. Green turtles may nest more than once, remaining in the nesting vicinity between nesting periods. After hatching, juvenile green turtles begin an oceanic lifestage that spans several years, after which green turtles typically migrate to neritic developmental and foraging habitats (Seminoff, 2004). Researchers have suggested that late-stage juveniles migrate from the pelagic developmental habitat to neritic habitat that they select foraging areas proximal to their natal beaches (Naro-Maciel et al., 2007; Prosdocimi et al., 2012); this natal homing of late-stage juveniles has also been shown in loggerhead and hawksbill turtles.

In the central Pacific Ocean, green turtles occur around most tropical islands, including the Hawaiian Islands where green turtles are the most common turtle species. Foraging in the Main Hawaiian Islands, about 90 percent of the Hawaiian adult green population migrates to French Frigate Shoals in the Northwest Hawaiian Islands, where nesting and mating occurs; nesting rookeries in French Frigate Shoals are the largest in the central North Pacific (Seminoff et al., 2015). Green turtles occur year-round in Guam and in the CNMI, particularly in the waters of Tinian and Pagan (DoN, 2014). Nesting of green turtles occurs on Guam and on Tinian Island, CNMI, from February through August with highest nesting occurring at Unai Dankulo beaches (DoN, 2014; Seminoff et al., 2015), although nesting also occurred on Rota in the 2000s (Kolinski et al, 2006). Two larger nesting areas for green turtles in the western North Pacific are found in the Ogasawara Islands of Japan and in Micronesia. The waters of the main Japanese islands as well as other areas of the western North Pacific are foraging and developmental grounds for green turtles hatched in the Ogasawara Islands (Seminoff et al., 2015; Tachikawa et al., 1994). Green turtles now only nest on seven beaches in China, with post-hatchlings from Chinese beaches having been observed migrating in multiple directions either into the South China Sea or to Okinawan waters

22 Median value

(Song et al., 2002); green turtles also nest on the shores of Vietnam, the Philippines, and Indonesia (NOAA, 2016b). Two primary nesting locations are found in the North Indian DPS, one in Oman and one in Yemen (NOAA, 2016b), but nesting also occurs along the shores of Pakistan, India, and Sri Lanka, with turtles migrating from the primary nesting areas in the northwest Indian Ocean to foraging habitat in the Arabian Sea, the Red Sea, Pakistan, and southward to the waters off Somalia (Khan et al., 2010; Rees et al., 2012; Al Saady et al., 2005). Widespread nesting of green turtles occurs throughout the eastern Indian Ocean, with nesting occurring at 58 sites, including large rookeries in Western Australia and Indonesia (Seminoff et al., 2015). Foraging grounds in the eastern Indian Ocean include the waters around the Andaman and Nicobar Islands and Indonesia (Andrews et al., 2006a; Suganthi, 2002).

Green turtles typically make shallow and short-duration dives to no more than 98 ft (30 m) for <23 min, but dives in excess of 453 ft (138 m) and for durations of 307 min have been recorded, with these deeper dives occurring more usually during winter (Blanco et al., 2013; Brill et al., 1995; Broderick et al., 2007; Hays et al., 2000; Hochscheid et al., 1999; Rice and Balazs, 2008). Migrating turtles in Hawaii showed a strong diurnal pattern, with maximum dive depths of 13 ft (4 m) occurring during the day, with deeper dives to more than 44.3 ft (13.5 m) occurring at night (Rice and Balazs, 2008). Hochscheid et al. (1999) reported that green turtles exhibit dives that are U, V, and S shaped. In their study of nesting green turtles in the Mediterranean Sea, Hochscheid et al. (1999) noted that the tagged turtles remained in coastal waters even during inter-nesting periods, and dove no 131 ft (25 m) but remained underwater for up to 40 min. Godley et al. (2002) reported travel speeds for three green turtles in nesting, open-ocean, and coastal habitats, with speeds ranging from 0.3 to 1.5 kt (0.6 to 2.8 kph), with crossing of deeper, open waters associated with faster swim speeds. Song et al. (2002) reported average swimming speeds ranging from 0.8 to 1.6 kt (1.4 to 3 kph) for migrating green turtles.

- ***Hawksbill Turtle (Eretmochelys imbricata)***

The hawksbill turtle is listed as critically endangered under the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species (Mortimer and Donnelly, 2008) and as endangered throughout its range under the ESA and is protected by CITES (Appendix I). Critical habitat for the hawksbill turtle has been established in the Caribbean Sea coastal waters surrounding Mona and Monito Islands, Puerto Rico from the mean high-water line seaward 3 nmi (5.6 km) (NOAA, 1998). In contrast to all other sea turtle species, hawksbill turtles' nest in low densities on dispersed, small beaches, making population estimation even more challenging. Hawksbill nesting occurs in at least 70 countries, although much of it now only occurs at extremely low numbers (Mortimer and Donnelly, 2008). Although population data are generally lacking for the hawksbill turtle, the best estimate of the number of annual nesting females worldwide is 22,004 to 29,035 turtles, which represents about 88 nesting areas (NMFS and USFWS, 2013a), and overall, the population trend is of decreasing populations (Mortimer and Donnelly, 2008). The largest populations of hawksbill turtles occur in the Yucatan Peninsula, Mexico; the Republic of Seychelles; Oman; and Australia (NMFS and USFWS, 2013a). Only four regional populations in the Pacific remain with more than 1,000 females nesting annually (one in Indonesia and three in Australia). The largest nesting population of green turtles in the Pacific Ocean occurs in eastern Australia, with some 6,500 females nesting per year, while in the Indian Ocean, about 2,000 females' nest in Western Australia and 1,000 nests in Madagascar annually (Limpus, 2009; NMFS and USFWS, 2013a). The largest nesting aggregation in the northwest Indian Ocean is located in Oman, where 600 to 800 hawksbill females nest annually (NMFS and USFWS, 2013a). Fewer than 20 hawksbill turtles nest annually in the Hawaiian Islands, while the population in the CNMI's consisting primarily of juvenile and subadult hawksbill turtles was estimated as 151 turtles around Pagan Island, while 50 to 71 hawksbill turtles were reported from around Tinian Island, but no hawksbill nesting occurs (DoN, 2014; NMFS and USFWS, 2013a).

Hawksbill turtles typically occur in tropical and subtropical waters of the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian oceans between about 30° N and 30° S latitudes (NMFS and USFWS, 2013a), and are especially often encountered in shallow lagoons and coral reefs. Hawksbill turtles even inhabit inshore waters of mangrove-lined bays and estuaries but are most typically associated with nearshore coral reefs environments. No hawksbills are reported from the Mediterranean Sea (Spotila, 2004). The largest populations live in the waters of the Caribbean Sea, the Seychelles, Indonesia, and Australia. Juvenile hawksbill turtles occur year-round in the waters of Pagan and Tinian, CNMI, although no nesting occurs on the beaches of these islands (DoN, 2014). In the U.S. Pacific, hawksbills occur in Hawaii, American Samoa, Guam, and the CNMIs. Through satellite tracking, the Hamakua Coast of Hawaii has been identified as an important foraging ground for Hawaiian hawksbills. In the northeastern Indian Ocean (Bay of Bengal), the hawksbill population found in the Andaman and Nicobars Islands is the largest in the Northern Indian Ocean (Andrews et al., 2006a). Hawksbill turtles are observed in Japanese waters but only nest in the Ryukyu Islands (Kamezaki and Matsui, 1997).

Hawksbills were once thought to be non-migratory residents of reefs adjacent to their nesting beaches, but recent tagging, telemetry, and genetic studies confirm that hawksbills are highly migratory, migrating hundreds to thousands of miles between feeding and nesting grounds (Plotkin, 2003). While the migratory habits of hawksbills are still largely unknown, it appears that similarly to other hard-shelled turtles, hawksbill turtle hatchlings and juveniles exhibit a pelagic phase when they spend years in the open ocean, although specifics about their occurrences at sea during these early lifestages are not known. After several years spent in the pelagic environment, hawksbill turtles shift habitats to coastal, neritic developmental and foraging habitat. Juveniles remain in developmental habitats until they are reproductively mature, when females migrate back to their natal beaches to mate and nest. Gaos et al. (2017) recently reported that the neritic foraging grounds of juvenile hawksbill turtles in the eastern Pacific Ocean are located near their natal beaches, indicating that sea turtles have fidelity to specific nearshore areas not only for nesting and mating but also for foraging; this finding has also been suggested for loggerhead and green turtles.

Hawksbill turtles appear to exhibit a diurnal diving strategy, actively foraging during the day and resting at night (Blumenthal et al., 2009; Okuyama et al., 2010), although Gaos et al. (2012) observed foraging dives during both the day and night. Not known as deep divers, hawksbills typically perform shallow dives to water depths between 33 and 164 ft (10 to 50 m), with mean dive depths between 16 to 26 ft (5 and 8 m) (Gaos et al., 2012; Van Dam and Diez, 1996). In the Seychelles, von Brandis et al. (2010) recorded the mean dive depths of juvenile hawksbill turtles as 27 ft (8.2 m) and 27.4 min, respectively. Hawksbill turtles are amongst the longest-duration divers, with routine dives ranging from 34 to 74 min (Starbird et al., 1999). The maximum dive depth recorded for hawksbill turtles is 299 ft (91 m) with a maximum dive duration of 138 min (Blumenthal et al., 2009; Hochscheid, 2014; Storch et al., 2005). Dive times have been shown to vary greatly during the inter-nesting intervals, with means of 30, 60, and 45 min (Walcott et al., 2013). Bell and Parmenter (2008) found that during the 14-day inter-nesting period of hawksbill turtles off eastern Australia, the mean dive time, dive depth, and surface intervals were 31.2 min, 19 ft (5.7 m), and 1.6 min, respectively, with the maximum water depth to which an inter-nesting female dove was 71 ft (21.5 m). Hawkes et al. (2012) reported that turtles outside Dominican Republic waters travelled an average of 19.4 nmi (36 km) per day, which resulted in a minimum speed estimate of 0.8 kt (1.5 kph), while turtles on the foraging areas moved 0.4 to 0.6 kt (0.67 to 1.17 kph).

Storch et al. (2005) reported descending and ascending dive speeds of 0.7 and 0.6 kt (0.37 and 0.31 m/sec), respectively.

- ***Loggerhead Turtle (Caretta caretta)***

Under the ESA, nine loggerhead turtle subpopulations or DPSs have been identified and designated worldwide as endangered or threatened (Table 3-4; Figure 3-3). As a species, the loggerhead turtle is classified as vulnerable by the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species, with 10 global subpopulations identified, whose IUCN status ranges from least concern to critically endangered (Table 3-4) (Casale and Tucker, 2017).

Five loggerhead DPS are listed as endangered under the ESA (Northeast Atlantic Ocean, Mediterranean Sea, North Indian Ocean, North Pacific Ocean, and South Pacific Ocean), while four DPS are listed as threatened (Northwest Atlantic Ocean, South Atlantic Ocean, Southeast Indo-Pacific Ocean, and Southwest Indian Ocean) (NOAA and USFWS, 2011) (Table 3-4; Figure 3-3), although only the North Pacific Ocean, North Indian Ocean, Southeast Indo-Pacific Ocean DPSs occur in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar (Table 3-2). In 2014, critical habitat was designated for the Northwest Atlantic Ocean DPS in the northwestern Atlantic Ocean and the Gulf of Mexico that includes nearshore reproductive habitat, winter habitat, breeding areas, constricted migratory corridors, and Sargassum habitat (NOAA, 2014). Critical habitat for the Northwest Atlantic Ocean DPS includes 38 marine areas along the coastlines and offshore of North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Louisiana, and Texas. Also, in 2014, the USFWS, which has jurisdiction over sea turtles on land, designated critical habitat for the Northwest Atlantic Ocean DPS about 685 miles of coastal beach to protect 88 loggerhead nesting beaches in coastal counties of North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, and Mississippi (DoI, 2014).

No complete population estimates for each loggerhead DPS exist, but Casale and Tucker (2017) estimated the size of each IUCN subpopulation by combining the nesting counts, for a minimum estimate of 200,246 loggerhead turtles (Casale and Tucker, 2017). One of the two major global populations of loggerhead turtles occur in the waters of the western Atlantic Ocean and northern Gulf of Mexico (Northwest Atlantic DPS), where the total nesting population in the U.S. has been estimated at approximately 68,000 to 90,000 nests per year (i.e., nesting females). The most recent count of 65,807 nesting females was reported for Florida in 2016, where the largest concentration of loggerhead nesting occurs in the Northwest Atlantic DPS (Florida Fish and Wildlife Conservation Commission [FFWCC], 2018). The nesting population in Florida had declined sharply, but since 2007, the nesting population of female loggerheads has increased by 65 percent, with an increase of 19 percent in the number of nesting females from 1989 through 2017 (FFWCC, 2018). The second largest nesting aggregation of loggerhead turtles occurs in the northwestern Indian Ocean in Masirah, Oman, where 20,000 to 40,000 females nest were reported annually (Baldwin et al., 2003), but more recent estimates note a decline in the number of nesting females, with the most current estimate of 11,000 nests annually at Masirah (Environment Society of Oman, 2016). The abundance of the entire Northwest Indian Ocean subpopulation was estimated as 70,000 nests per year (Castale and Tucker, 2017). These two most abundant global populations represent 75 percent of the world's nesting female loggerheads (Casale and Tucker, 2017). The largest nesting aggregation in the southeastern Indian Ocean is located on the coast of northwestern Australia where as many as 1,000 to 3,000 loggerheads nest (Hamman et al., 2013). All loggerhead nesting in the North Pacific Ocean occurs only in Japan, where more than 4,000 females historically nested, but the number of nesting females in Japan has declined, with fewer than

**Table 3-4. International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources (IUCN) Red List Classification of the Conservation Status of Loggerhead Global Populations (Casale and Tucker, 2017).**

| *Global Subpopulation/DPS* | *IUCN Red List Conservation Status* | *ESA Status* | *Current IUCN Estimated Abundance (nests per year)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| Mediterranean Sea | Least Concern | Endangered | 7,200 |
| North Indian DPS | | Endangered | |
| Northeast Atlantic Ocean | Endangered | Endangered | 15,000 |
| Northeast Indian Ocean | Critically Endangered | | 25 |
| North Pacific Ocean | Least Concern | Endangered | 9,053 |
| Northwest Atlantic Ocean | Least Concern | Threatened | 83,717 |
| Northwest Indian Ocean | Critically Endangered | | 70,000 |
| South Atlantic DPS | | Threatened | |
| Southeast Indian Ocean | Near Threatened | | 2,955 |
| Southeast Indo-Pacific Ocean DPS | | Threatened | |
| South Pacific Ocean | Critically Endangered | Endangered | NA |
| Southwest Atlantic Ocean | Least Concern | | 7,696 |
| Southwest Indian Ocean | Near Threatened | Threatened | 4,600 |
| Total for all IUCN Subpopulations | | | 200,246 |

Note: NA=not available

1,000 females now nesting in Japan annually (Conant et al., 2009; Hamann et al., 2013; Kamezaki et al., 2003). Castale and Tucker (2017) estimated the number of annual nests in the North Pacific as 9,053.

Loggerhead turtles are found in coastal to oceanic temperate, tropical, and subtropical waters of the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian Oceans and the Mediterranean Sea (Dodd, 1988). No migrational movements north/south across the equator are known. Habitat usage varies with lifestage. Loggerheads are highly migratory, capable of traveling hundreds to thousands of miles between feeding and nesting grounds. In the Pacific Ocean, loggerheads nest only in a limited number of sites in Japan and eastern Australia, New Caledonia, Vanuatu, and Tokelau, while foraging occurs in the Gulf of California and along Baja California, and in waters of Peru and Chile (Conant et al., 2009; Kamezaki et al., 2003; Limpus and Limpus, 2003). North Pacific loggerhead turtles make two transoceanic migrations, with hatchling and juvenile turtles making a 5,400 nmi (10,000 km) migration eastward across the North Pacific Ocean from nesting beaches in Japan (including the Ryukyu Archipelago) to developmental and foraging habitat off western North and Central America. Hatchlings use the Kuroshio and North Pacific Currents as transport (Bowen et al., 1995).

As late juveniles or adults, loggerhead turtles make a return westward migration across the North Pacific to return to Japanese waters to mate and nest. Thus, juvenile loggerheads are distributed in the pelagic waters of the North Pacific Gyre, with juvenile loggerheads originating from Japanese nesting beaches

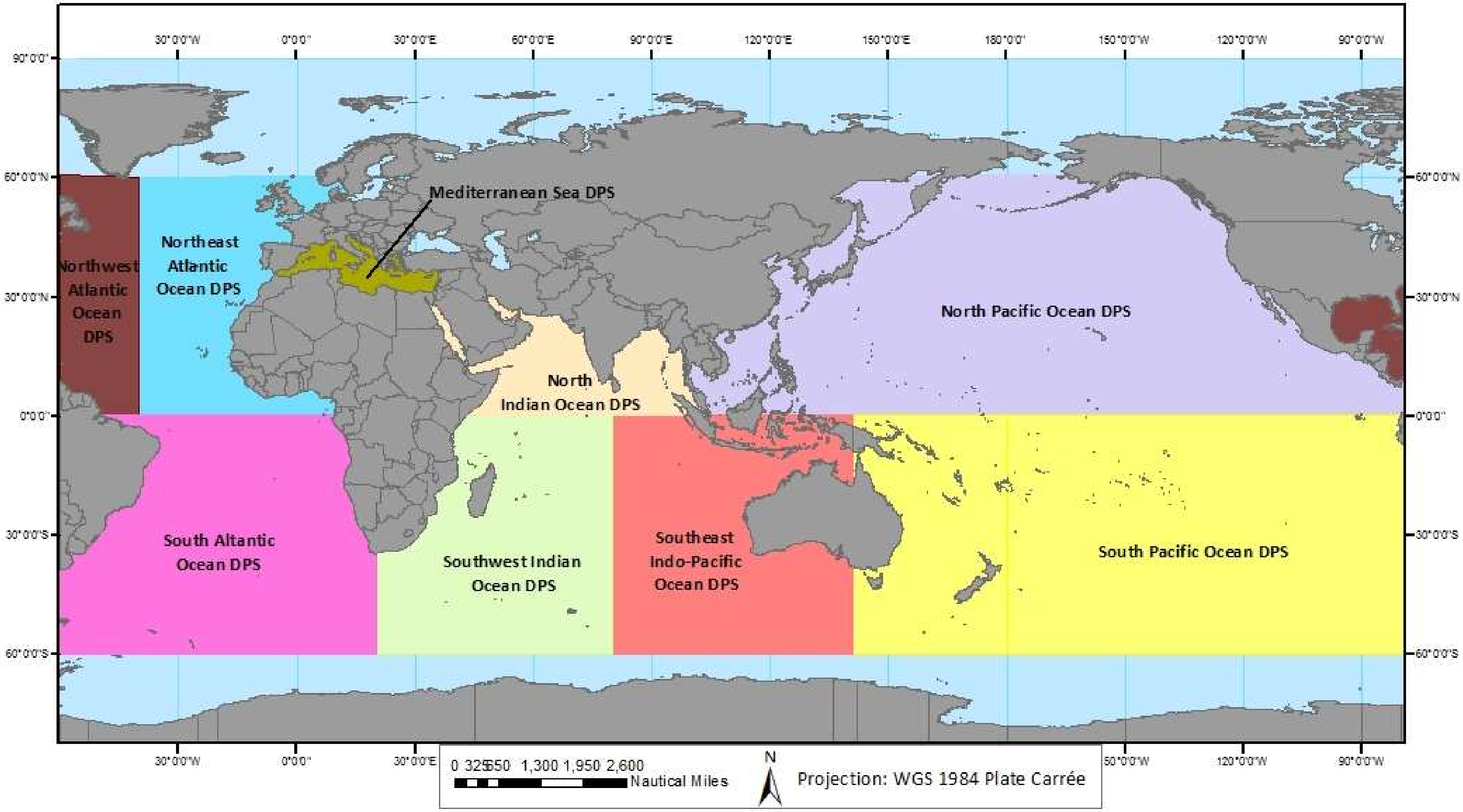



**Figure 3-3. Global Distribution of the Threatened and Endangered Distinct Population Segments (DPSs) of the Loggerhead Turtle (NOAA and USFWS, 2011); Only the North Pacific Ocean, North Indian Ocean, and Southeast Indo-Pacific Ocean DPSs are Located in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar.**

exhibiting high site fidelity to the Kuroshio Extension Bifurcation region, an area dominated by extensive meanders and mesoscale eddies (Polovina et al., 2006). Kobayashi et al. (2008) and Polovina et al. (2006) observed that pelagic foraging habitat of loggerhead turtles is characterized by elevated primary productivity (i.e., higher chlorophyll *a* concentrations) and sea surface temperatures in the range of 58° to 68° F (14.5° to 20° C), which are characteristics of the North Pacific Transition Zone in the North Pacific Ocean, which is an important foraging habitat for loggerhead turtles. When the larger or older juvenile loggerhead turtles migrate from their developmental and juvenile foraging grounds, researchers have shown that they migrate specifically to foraging areas near their natal beaches. Bass et al. (2004) and Bowen et al. (2004) described the natal homing of juvenile loggerhead turtles to neritic foraging near their natal beaches; this finding has also been shown for juvenile hawksbill and has been suggested for green turtles.

Although loggerhead turtles occur in Hawaiian waters, principally juvenile loggerheads are observed in offshore waters migrating between the Japanese nesting grounds and foraging and developmental habitats in the eastern North Pacific. The highest densities of loggerheads in the central North Pacific Ocean occur north of the Hawaiian Islands in association with the North Pacific Transition Zone (Polovina et al., 2000). In the western Pacific Ocean, loggerheads have been reported to forage as far south as the Philippine Islands and the mouth of the Mekong River, Vietnam (Limpus 2008; Sadoyama et al., 1996). Following nesting in Japan, satellite-tagged female loggerheads were observed to migrate to two different foraging grounds of the western North Pacific, the more neritic waters of the East China Sea and the oceanic waters along the perimeter of the Kuroshio Current (Hatase and Sakamoto, 2004; Hatase et al., 2002; Sakamoto et al., 1997). No loggerhead turtles' nest in the CNMI and during recent surveys, no loggerhead turtles were observed; oceanographic conditions north of the CNMI may function as a barrier to loggerhead occurrence in these islands (DoN, 2014).

Outside of the waters of the Arabian Sea in the northwestern Indian Ocean, loggerhead turtles are not common. In the northern Indian Ocean, nesting of loggerhead turtles primarily occurs in Oman and is rare elsewhere. In the eastern Indian Ocean, all nesting of loggerhead turtles occurs on beaches of Western Australia (Dodd, 1988). In the Indian Ocean, loggerhead turtles migrate, sometimes long distances, between their nesting grounds in Oman and foraging grounds off Oman, Yemen, southern Africa, Madagascar, Western Australia, and Indonesia. Tagging data have shown that nesting turtles from the dense nesting aggregations along the Oman coast use the waters of the Arabian Sea for foraging and seasonal migrational movements (Conant et al., 2009).

Polovina et al. (2003) observed that loggerhead turtles spent about 40 percent of their time at the water surface, and 70 percent of their dives were to no more than 16 ft (5 m) in water depth. Arendt et al. (2012) reported time at the surface was 3 to 6 percent of the time spent diving. Similarly, Howell et al. (2010) found that more than 80 percent the time, loggerheads in the North Pacific Ocean dove to water depths <16 ft (5 m), but 90 percent of their time was spent diving to depths <49 ft (15 m). In their study of free-ranging loggerhead turtles, Hochscheid et al. (2010) noted that the loggerheads infrequently spent extended periods, lasting on average 90 min, at the sea surface during the day. This irregular behavior was suggestive of possible recovery from extensive anaerobic diving or as a means of re-warming their core body temperature after diving to depth (Hochscheid et al., 2010). Even as larger juveniles and adults, loggerheads' routine dives are only to 30 to 72 ft (9 to 22 m) (Lutcavage and Lutz, 1997). Migrating male loggerheads along the east coast of the U.S. dove to water depths of 66 to 131 ft (20 to 40 m) (Arendt et al., 2012). Tagged loggerheads in the open Pacific Ocean dove as deep as 525 ft (160 m) (Polovina et al., 2003), but an adult loggerhead made the deepest recorded dive to 764 ft (233 m), staying submerged for 8 min (Sakamoto et al., 1990). Five different dive types of loggerhead turtle dives have been identified by Houghton et al. (2002) for inter-nesting loggerheads, with mean dive durations ranged from 2 to 40 min for the different dive types. The longest duration dive by a loggerhead turtle was 614 min during deep-bottom resting dives (Broderick et al., 2007). Mean inter-nesting travel speeds range from 0.3 to 0.37 kt (0.58 to 0.69 kph) (Abecassis et al., 2013). Migrating females swam at minimum speeds of 0.7 to 0.9 kt (1.3 to 1.7 kph) (Godley et al., 2003). Loggerheads in the Mediterranean Sea swam at a mean speed of 0.9 kt (1.6 kph), with a maximum speed near 1.6 kt (3 kph). Sakamoto et al. (1990) reported loggerhead diving swim speeds ranging from 0.4 to 1.89 kt (0.2 to 0.97 m/sec).

- ***Olive Ridley Turtle (Lepidochelys olivacea)***

The global population of olive ridley turtles is protected by CITES, classified as vulnerable under the IUCN (Abreu-Grobois and Plotkin, 2008), and listed as threatened under the ESA everywhere except the breeding stocks of the Mexican Pacific coast, which are listed as endangered under the ESA. No critical habitat has been designated for the olive ridley turtle. Although the olive ridley turtle is the most abundant sea turtle worldwide, many of its populations have declined or disappeared from historic areas. While many populations of olive ridley turtles have dramatically declined, some populations are stable or even increasing. For example, the once depleted population in La Escobilla, Mexico, which is the only remaining arribada beach in Mexico, has significantly increased, with the number of olive ridley turtles nests increasing from 50,000 nests in 1988 to over 1,000,000 nests by 2000 (uncorrected for nest frequency) (Márquez et al., 2002). However, globally, the increase in some populations has not offset the overall significant decreases in olive ridley populations. Abreu-Grobois and Plotkin (2008) estimated the worldwide population of olive ridley turtles as 841,309 to 851,590 nesting females, while NMFS and USFWS (2014) estimated 1.15 to 1.62 million olive ridley turtles worldwide. Although most olive ridley females' nest in mass aggregations of hundreds to thousands of turtles, called arribadas[23], some olive ridley females are solitary-nesters with widely dispersed nest sites. Solitary nesting occurs on the beaches of 43 countries (NMFS and USFWS, 2014). The most recent abundances of nesting females recorded at the worldwide major arribada nesting beaches include Ostional (134,400) and Nancite (8,320) on Costa Rica's Pacific coast; La Flor (27,906) in Pacific Nicaragua; La Escobilla (574,937) and Ixtapilla (3,261 to 11,429) in Pacific Mexico; and the Rushikulaya/Gahirmatha/Orissa region, India (150,000 to 200,000) (Abreu-Grobois and Plotkin, 2008). From data collected at sea, Eguchi et al. (2007) estimated the juvenile and adult olive ridley population in the eastern tropical Pacific (ETP) Ocean (area encompasses major arribada beaches in Mexico and Central America) as 1.39 million olive ridley turtles.

Olive ridley turtles occur in tropical to warm-temperate waters of the Pacific, Atlantic, and Indian oceans, but do not occur in the Gulf of Mexico or Mediterranean Sea (Spotila, 2004). Information from tagged olive ridley turtles indicates a preference for waters with the rather narrow temperature range of 77° to 82.4° F (25° to 28°C) (Polovina et al., 2004; Swimmer et al., 2009). To remain in waters of this optimal temperature range, Swimmer et al. (2006) noted that when oceanographic conditions changed, olive ridley turtles in the tropical Pacific altered their dive depths. Worldwide, olive ridley turtles have been recorded in coastal waters of over 80 countries, with nesting occurring in 60 countries (Abreu-Grobois and Plotkin, 2008). Although olive ridley turtles occur in the western and central Pacific Ocean, their distribution in these areas is more restricted to open ocean waters. Olive ridley turtles are not

23 An arribada is a Spanish term for the mass, synchronous nesting events characteristic to olive and Kemp's ridley turtles. During a period of 1 to 10 days, large numbers (100 to 10,000) of female ridley turtles come ashore at night to nest; arribada events can reoccur over 30-day intervals (Hamann et al., 2003).

common in the Hawaiian Islands, CNMI, and Guam, and nesting on any of these islands or any U.S. Pacific Island territory is extremely rare (DoN, 2014; NMFS, 2018b; State of Hawaii, 2013). Genetic analysis of olive ridley turtles caught as bycatch in Hawaiian longline fisheries suggests that the Hawaiian Islands represent some type of convergence area for olive ridleys since two-thirds of the bycaught olive ridleys were hatched in the eastern Pacific rookeries while the other third of olive ridley turtles derived from rookeries in the western Pacific and Indian oceans (State of Hawaii, 2013). Olive ridley turtle's occurrence in Japanese waters is considered rare and no nesting is known (DuPree, 1995; Kamezaki and Matsui, 1997). Olive ridley turtles occur more commonly in oceanic and neritic environments of the Indian Ocean (Abreu-Grobois and Plotkin, 2008).

Olive ridley turtles exhibit a complex natural history, all of which is not well understood. These turtles utilize a variety of oceanic habitats, depending upon their lifestage and geography. Most olive ridley turtles are highly migratory and spend much of their non-breeding life cycle in the oceanic environment, although some olive ridleys have been observed to inhabit coastal areas, including bays and estuaries, with no migration to the open ocean, particularly those turtles occurring in the western Atlantic Ocean (Plotkin, 2010; Pritchard, 1976). While olive ridley turtles migrate vast distances, they do not make trans-oceanic migrations typical of some other sea turtle species. Using satellite telemetry tags, scientists have documented both male and female olive ridleys leaving the breeding and nesting grounds off the Costa Rica-Pacific coast and migrating to the deep waters of the central Pacific Ocean. Hatchling olive ridley turtles begin a pelagic stage, during which they are transported by major ocean currents far from their natal beaches. Information is generally lacking, however, on the dispersal of post-hatchling and juvenile olive ridley turtles (NMFS and USFWS, 2014).

At sexual maturity, olive ridley turtles migrate and aggregate in shallow, coastal waters near nesting beaches. Some males, however, do not migrate to the neritic environment, but remain in the open ocean and mate with females as they move towards their natal beaches (Kopitsky et al., 2000). The post-breeding and nesting migrations of olive ridley turtles are complex and varied, with no apparent or interannually varying migrational pathways (Abreu-Grobois and Plotkin, 2008; NMFS and USFWS, 2014). In the eastern Pacific Ocean, olive ridley turtles are considered nomadic, moving thousands of miles over vast expanses of the ocean in search of food, possibly using water temperature as an environmental cue and seeking oceanographic features, such as thermal fronts and convergence zones, to locate suitable feeding areas (Plotkin, 2003; Spotila, 2004). In the ETP, tagged olive ridley have been observed spending as much as 36 percent of time in the vicinity of the Costa Rica Dome, a nutrient-rich circulation feature that encompasses waters of increased productivity and is a known foraging area for fish and marine mammals (Swimmer et al., 2009). Although during their pelagic stage, juvenile olive ridleys are transported by prevailing ocean currents and circulation, it is not clear that adult olive ridley turtles always use ocean currents for transport, passively floating with the currents, as data from satellite-tagged olive ridleys in the ETP and North Pacific indicated that the turtles actively swam against or across the prevailing currents (Beavers and Cassano, 1996; Polovina et al., 2004).

Diving in olive ridley turtles is not as well studied as in other sea turtle species (Hochscheid, 2014). Olive ridley turtles are capable of deep dives, having been recorded diving to a maximum water depth of 1,339 ft (408 m) (Swimmer et al., 2006), although routine feeding dives to depths from 33 to 361 ft (10 to 110 m) are more common (Bjorndal, 1997; Lutcavage and Lutz, 1997; Polovina et al., 2003 and 2004). Polovina et al. (2003) reported that olive ridley turtles only remained at the surface for 20 percent of the time, with about 75 percent of their dives to 328 ft (100 m) and 10 percent of total dive time spent at depths of 492 ft (150 m). Swimmer et al. (2006) noted that olive ridleys spent nearly 100 percent of their time in the top 199 ft (60 m) of the water column with very few dives exceeding 328 ft (100 m). Beavers and Cassano (1996) noted that in their satellite-tagging study of a male olive ridley turtle that the turtle dove longer at night than during the day. The maximum dive duration measured for tagged olive ridley turtles was 200 min in waters off northern Australia for post-nesting and foraging turtles, with the mean of the dives ranging from 24.5 to 48 min (McMahon et al., 2007). Inter-nesting females made routine dives of 54.3 min while breeding and post-breeding males apparently made shorter duration dives of 28.6 min and 20.5 min, respectively (Lutcavage and Lutz, 1997). Whiting et al. (2007) documented the movement and foraging behavior of inter-nesting olive ridley turtles and found that the turtles dove to maximum depths of 492 to 656 ft (150 to 200 m) during maximum dive durations of 120 to 150 min, and the olive ridleys traveled 89 to 567 nmi (165 to 1,050 km) to five foraging areas during the inter-nesting period. Migrating adults had a mean speed of 0.6 kt (1.1 kph) (Plotkin, 2010), which could have been an underestimate due to the minimum distance between satellite positions. Whiting et al. (2007), however, reported swim speeds of 1.7 to 3 kt (0.87 to 1.54 kph) during foraging excursions of inter-nesting adult olive ridley turtles.

- ***Leatherback turtle (Dermochelys coriacea)***

The leatherback turtle is the largest turtle in the world and one of the largest living reptiles. As a species, the leatherback is listed as vulnerable under the IUCN (Wallace et al., 2013), endangered throughout its range under the ESA, and is protected under CITES. Seven subpopulations of leatherback turtles have been recognized by the IUCN (Wallace et al., 2013): East and West Pacific; Northeast and Southwest Indian Ocean; and the Northwest, Southwest, and Southeast Atlantic subpopulations (Table 3-5; Figure 3-4). The IUCN Red List classifies the East and West Pacific and Southwest Indian and Atlantic Ocean subpopulations as critically endangered (Wallace et al., 2013). ESA critical habitat for the leatherback turtle has been designated in the Caribbean Sea waters adjacent to Sandy Point Beach, St. Croix, U.S. Virgin Islands, as well as in the northeast Pacific Ocean waters (NOAA, 1979b, 2012a). Northeastern Pacific critical habitat ranges along the California coast from Point Arena to Point Arguello east of the 9,843 ft (3,000 m) depth contour and from Cape Flattery, Washington to Cape Blanco, Oregon east of the 6,562 ft (2,000 m) depth contour, which together comprise an area ~41,914 miles2 (108,558 km2) of marine habitat and include waters from the ocean surface down to a maximum depth of 262 ft (80 m) (NOAA, 2012a).

Wallace et al. (2013) estimated that the worldwide population of leatherback turtles has decreased by 40 percent over the past three generations. The Turtle Expert Working Group (2007) and the recent analysis by Wallace et al. (2013) reported stable to slightly increasing population trends for Atlantic Ocean leatherbacks, while Pacific and Indian Ocean leatherback populations are decreasing, with Pacific nesting numbers having dramatically decreased over the last three generations (NMFS and USFWS, 2013b).

Determining an exact worldwide population is complicated by lack of data and data reported in non-consistent population indicators (i.e., number nesting females vice number nests, which are not equivalent). Based on available published data on leatherback turtle nest abundances (average number of nests) through 2010, Wallace et al. (2013) estimated the current global population as 54,262 leatherback turtle nests per year. However, Nel (2012) reported the earlier documentation by Dutton et al. (2007) of 5,067 to 9,176 leatherback nests in the West Pacific Ocean population, which would increase the worldwide leatherback abundance to 57,147 to 61,256 nests annually (Table 3-5). The Northwest Atlantic Ocean subpopulation is the largest in the world, with an estimated 34,000 to 94,000 individuals (The Turtle Expert Working Group, 2007) and 50,842 nests per year (Wallace et al., 2013).

**Table 3-5. Worldwide Subpopulations, Conservation Status, and Abundance Estimates of Leatherback Turtles as Identified by the International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources (IUCN) Red List Classification (Wallace et al., 2013).**

| *Subpopulation* | *IUCN Red List Conservation Status* | *2010 IUCN Abundance Estimate/Nel (2012) (nests per year)* |
|---|---|---|
| East Pacific Ocean | Critically Endangered | 926 |
| Northeast Indian Ocean | Data Deficient | ND |
| Northwest Atlantic Ocean | Least Concern | 50,842 |
| Southeast Atlantic Ocean | Data Deficient | ND |
| Southwest Atlantic Ocean | Critically Endangered | 53 |
| Southwest Indian Ocean | Critically Endangered | 259 |
| West Pacific Ocean | Critically Endangered | 2,182/5,067-9,176 |
| Total | | 54,262 / 57,147-61,256 |

ND= No data

The largest worldwide nesting location of leatherback turtles is in Gabon, Africa, where Witt et al. (2009) reported 5,865 to 20,499 nesting females annually, for an estimated total 15,730 to 41,373 breeding females. Leatherbacks are now essentially extinct in Malaysia, as only two nests were documented in the early 2000s, and numbers of Western Pacific leatherbacks have declined more than 80 percent over the last three generations, while the population of Eastern Pacific leatherbacks has declined by more than 97 percent over the last three generations (NMFS, 2018c). The Mexico nesting subpopulation of Eastern Pacific leatherback stock, which was once considered the world's largest, representing 65 percent of the worldwide population, is now less than one percent of its estimated 1980 size (NMFS, 2018c). In the Indian Ocean, the number of leatherback turtles is low, with the best available data indicating that 400 to 600 nesting females are estimated to occur annually in the Nicobar and Andaman islands area of the Bay of Bengal/Andaman Sea, while only 100 to 200 leatherbacks are estimated to nest in Sri Lanka, and very low numbers (20 to 40 and <10 nesting females annually) are estimated for the southwestern and southeastern Indian Ocean, respectively (Andrews et al. 2006b; Nel, 2012).

Leatherbacks are the most pelagic and most widely distributed of any sea turtle and can be found circumglobally in temperate and tropical waters between 71°N and 47°S, including the Mediterranean Sea (Eckert et al., 2012; NMFS and USFWS, 2013b; Wallace et al., 2013). Leatherback turtles' nest in all oceans around the world except in the Mediterranean Sea (Eckert et al., 2012). The largest Atlantic nesting sites are located in Gabon, Africa and Trinidad, Caribbean Sea, but other significant nesting colonies are found in French Guiana; Suriname; Panama; Equatorial Guinea; Florida, U.S.; and St. Croix, U.S. Virgin Islands (Wallace et al., 2013). The largest nesting grounds in the Pacific is located in Indonesia, but other important Pacific nesting sites are found in Costa Rica, Solomon Islands, and Papua New Guinea, with sparse nesting occurring in the Indian Ocean (Wallace et al., 2013). Leatherbacks are not resident to the waters Marianas Islands, CNMI, or Hawaiian Islands nor do they nest on these islands but are observed in offshore, pelagic waters surrounding the islands (DoN, 2018a; Hadpei, 2013).

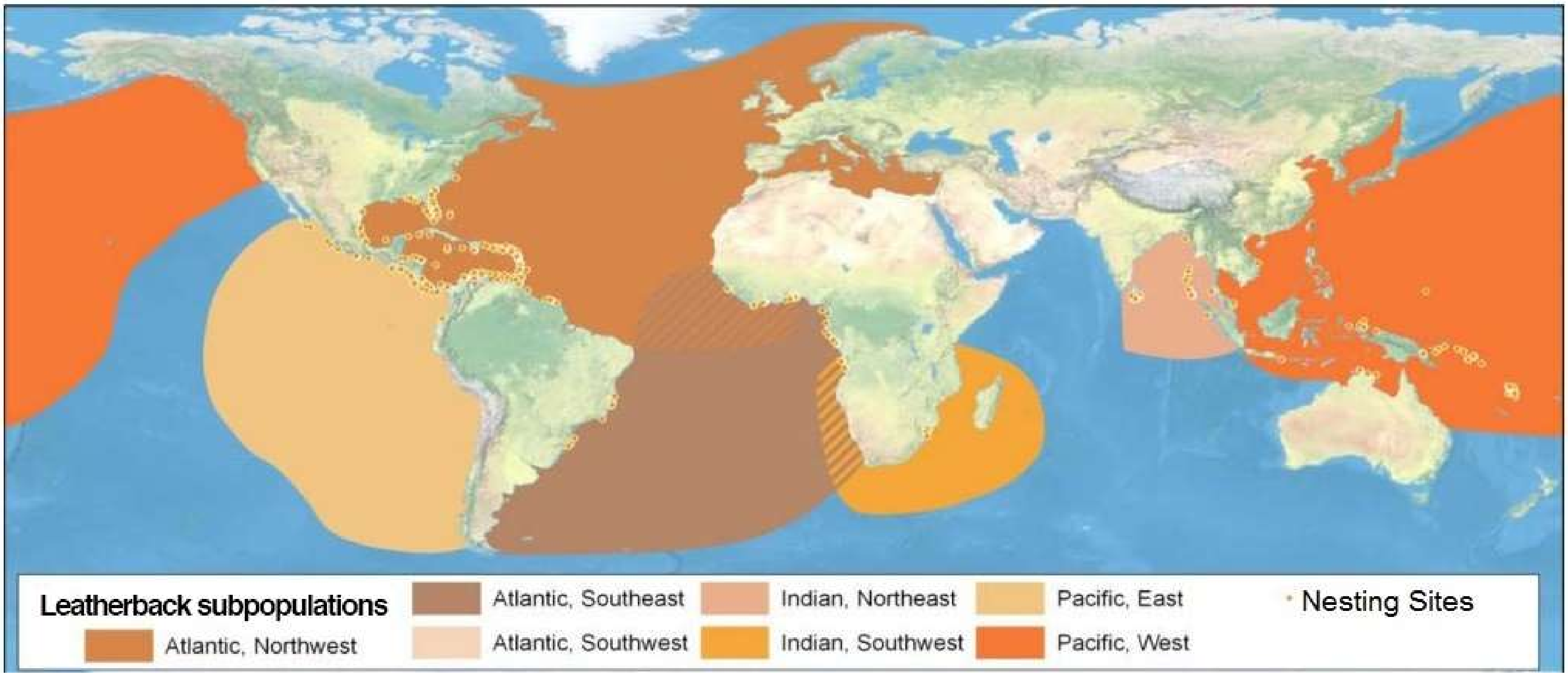



**Figure 3-4. Location and Distribution of the Seven Worldwide Subpopulations of Leatherback Turtles and their Nesting Sites (Wallace et al., 2013).**

Highly migratory, leatherback turtles make annual long-distance excursions between their nesting and feeding grounds. Although the most oceanic of all sea turtles, leatherback turtles also may be found seasonally in highly productive continental shelf and slope waters, where they may spend months foraging (Benson et al., 2011; Dodge et al., 2014). Benson et al. (2011) also found that the time of year when leatherback turtles nested in the western Pacific made a difference in the habitat used following nesting, with those turtles nesting in summer migrating into temperate waters of the North Pacific or the tropical waters of the South China Sea, but winter nesters migrated into temperate and tropical waters of the southern hemisphere. During their migratory phases, leatherbacks rarely stop swimming, and individuals have been documented to swim greater than 7,015 nmi (13,000 km) per year (Eckert, 1998; Eckert, 1999). In the western Atlantic, leatherbacks travel north in the spring, following the Gulf Stream and feeding opportunistically on the spring blooms of jellyfish they find en route. Continuing northward, arriving in waters corresponding to the continental slope by April, and finally, continuing on to leatherbacks arrive in continental shelf and coastal waters off New England and Atlantic Canada where they remain through October. In the fall, some leatherbacks move southward, essentially retracing their northward migration route offshore, while others cross the Atlantic to Great Britain and migrate south along the eastern Atlantic (James et al., 2005). Similarly, populations that nest in the eastern Atlantic and Indian oceans make annual transoceanic migrations between breeding grounds and feeding grounds, with turtles from the largest rookery in Gabon, West Africa migrating post-nesting to three foraging regions of the Atlantic: tropical waters of the equatorial Atlantic, temperate waters off South America, and temperate waters off southern Africa in the Benguela and Agulhas Currents (Witt et al., 2011).

Western Pacific Ocean leatherbacks engage in one of the greatest migrations of any air-breathing marine vertebrate, swimming from nesting beaches in the tropical western Pacific (primarily in Indonesia, Papua New Guinea, and the Solomon Islands) to foraging grounds in the eastern North Pacific Ocean off the Americas (Figure 3-5). This 6,083-nmi (11,265-km) trans-Pacific journey requires 10 to 12 months to complete (NMFS, 2016d). Eastern Pacific leatherbacks nest primarily in Mexico and Costa Rica (with isolated nesting sites in Panama and Nicaragua) and foraging grounds off Mexico, Central America, Chile, and Peru (NMFS, 2018c). Studies of leatherback turtle movements in the Pacific Ocean indicate that that there may be important migratory corridors and habitats used specifically by leatherbacks (Eckert, 1998; Eckert, 1999; Morreale et al., 1996). Shillinger et al. (2008) confirmed the existence of a persistent

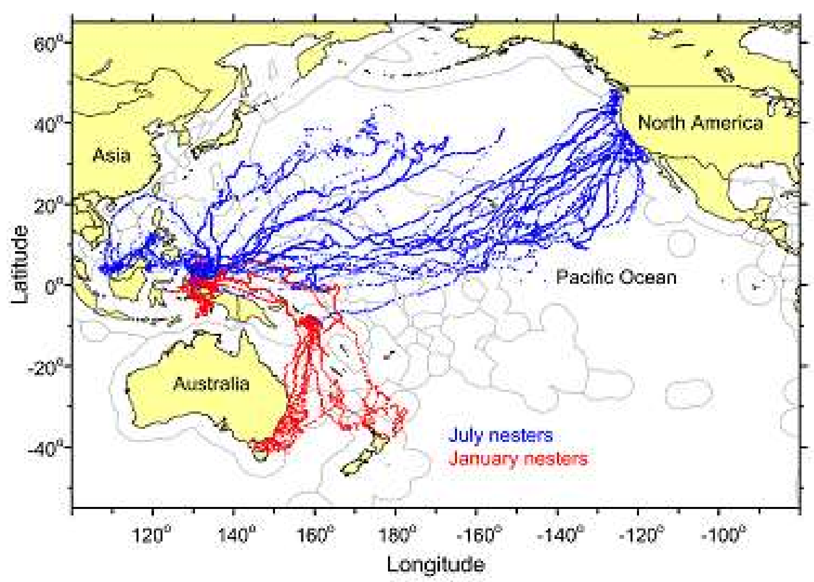



**Figure 3-5. Trans-Pacific Seasonal Movements of Tagged Leatherback Turtles Showing Their 6,083 Nmi (11,265 Km) Journey from Nesting to Foraging Grounds (NMFS, 2016d).**

migration corridor for leatherbacks spanning the Pacific basin from the coast of Central America along the equator into the South Pacific.

Leatherback turtles make the deepest dives of any sea turtle, with the deepest dive recorded at 4,198 ft (1,280 m) (Doyle et al., 2008). Their longest duration dive was 86.5 min, but most dives are no more than 40 min (Byrne et al., 2009; López-Mendilaharsua et al., 2009; Sale et al., 2006). In their examination of nearly 10 years of satellite tag data on leatherback turtles in the North Atlantic Ocean, Hougthon et al. (2008) found that 99.6 percent of leatherback dives were to water depths less than 984 ft (300 m) while only a miniscule 0.4 percent were to deeper water depths, with the dives to waters >984 ft (300 m) occurring principally during the day and during migrational transit. Dives of 13 to 256 ft (4 to 78 m) and 256 to 827 ft (78 to 252 m ) and of longer duration (28 to 48 min) characterize the migratory phases of the leatherback, while shallower dives (<164 ft (50 m]) and of shorter duration (<12 min) are more typical of foraging dives (James et al., 2005). Bradshaw et al. (2007) reported median dive depths and durations of over 17,618 dives of adult female leatherbacks as 174 ft (53 m) and 22 min, respectively. In the Atlantic, Hays et al. (2004) determined that migrating and foraging adult leatherbacks spent 71 to 94 percent of their diving time at depths from 230 to 361 ft (70 to 110 m). Wallace et al. (2015) noted that leatherback turtles in Nova Scotian (North Atlantic) waters dove and foraged almost continuously during the day, spending 61.5 percent of the time diving and making short (4.5 min), shallow (<98 ft [30 m]) dives and capturing prey at the bottom of their dives or on their ascent, and diving to forage in areas where prey were most abundant and dense. Eckert et al. (1996) also noted that interesting leatherbacks dove nearly continuously during the day and that daytime dives were longer and to deeper water depths than night dives. Salmon et al. (2004) noted that in their study of juvenile leatherback turtles that the majority of their dives were V-shaped with a minority of W-shaped dives, and that not surprisingly, older turtles dove deeper (up to 59 ft [18 m]) than younger turtles but diving frequency did not differ with age, indicating that as leatherbacks rapidly grow during the beginning of the pelagic lifestage, their diving ability also rapidly progresses. The modal speeds of swimming leatherback turtles ranged between 1.1 to 1.6 kt (2 to 3 kph) with absolute maximum speeds in the range of 3.5 to 5.4 kt (6.5 to 10 kph) (Eckert, 2002). Inter-nesting leatherback turtles swam at speeds ranging from 0.7 to 1.4 kt (1.25 to 2.5 kph) (Byrne et al., 2009).

#### 3.4.3.3 Marine Mammals

Marine mammals are highly adapted aquatic animals, occurring in aquatic habitats ranging from freshwater rivers to the deep ocean. Most marine mammals are wholly aquatic, but some, such as pinnipeds, also depend partially upon the terrestrial environment for limited purposes that include birthing, molting, resting, and predator avoidance. Some pinnipeds spend part of each day hauled out on shore while others only go ashore once a year to give birth and molt. The distribution of marine mammals is difficult to predict, as these highly mobile animals are capable of traveling long distances, with some species undergoing lengthy seasonal migrations. Despite their mobility, however, the distribution of marine mammals is not typically random or homogeneous but is often characterized by irregular clusters (patches) of occurrence that frequently correlate with locations of high prey abundance.

Marine mammals are divided into four basic taxonomic groups: Mysticeti, Odontoceti, Pinnipedia, and Sirenia, which respectively are baleen whales; toothed whales (including dolphins and porpoises); seals, sea lions, and walruses; and manatees and dugongs. Collectively, mysticete and odontocete species of marine mammals are called cetaceans. Some of the marine mammal species that occur in the western or central North Pacific or Indian oceans do not meet the criteria for co-occurrence with SURTASS LFA sonar activities, as these species occur in inland or very shallow coastal waters where SURTASS LFA sonar activities would not occur. These neritic and inshore marine mammal species are excluded from further consideration:

- Shallow-water Porpoises—The distribution of porpoise species such as the Indo-Pacific finless porpoise (*Neophocaena phocaenoides)* and narrow-ridged finless porpoise (*Neophocaena asiaeorientalis)* is in riverine, nearshore, shallow waters where SURTASS LFA sonar is highly unlikely to be used.
- River Dolphins—Freshwater dolphin species, such as the Ganges River dolphin (*Platanista gangetica gangetica*), the endangered Indus River dolphin (*Platanista gangetica minor*), and the highly endangered baiji/Chinese river dolphin (*Lipotes vexillifer*) (which may possibly already be extinct) are restricted to riverine waters of the Ganges, Indus, and Yangtze rivers, respectively. These river dolphins today only occur in the main channels of these rivers, well inshore of where SURTASS LFA sonar would be used.
- Coastal Dolphins—Inshore and coastal delphinid species such as the Irrawaddy dolphin (*Oracella brevirostris*), Australian snubfin dolphin (*Oracella heinsohni*), Indian Ocean humpback dolphin (*Sousa plumbea*), Indo-Pacific humpbacked dolphin (*Sousa chinensis*), Australian humpback dolphin (*Sousa sahulesis*), and Taiwanese humpbacked dolphin (*Sousa chinensis taiwanensis)* all occur in shallow, coastal waters very near to shore. The Taiwanese humpbacked dolphin is listed as endangered under the ESA. However, Taiwanese humpback dolphins have only been reported in shallow (<82 ft [25 m]) nearshore waters, no more than 1.6 nmi (3 km) from shore (Dares et al., 2014; Wang et al., 2016). Further, these coastal dolphin species are not known to hear sounds in the range at which the SURTASS LFA sonar system transmits (NMFS, 2018g).
- Sirenians—One sirenian species, the dugong (*Dugong dugon*) may occur in the shallow inshore and coastal waters of the Indo-West Pacific, where they are widely but discontinuously distributed in waters that are typically less than 16.4 ft (5 m) deep (Jefferson et al., 2015). Although dugongs have been sighted near reefs up to 43.2 nmi (80 km) from shore in waters up to 75 ft (23 m) deep (Marsh et al., 2002), such occurrences are very rare and considered atypical. Moreover, the water depths of the offshore reefs where dugongs have uncommonly been observed are so shallow to preclude the use of SURTASS LFA sonar in those types of environments.

Excluding these species leaves a remainder of 46 marine mammal species potentially occurring in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar (Society for Marine Mammalogy [SMM], 2017). The 46 potentially occurring marine mammals include five pinniped species, 10 mysticete species, and 31 odontocete species (Table 3-6). All marine mammals are protected under the MMPA, while 11 of the marine mammals potentially occurring in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar are listed under the ESA as either threatened or endangered. The populations of five of the ESA-listed species potentially occurring in the study area have been divided into DPSs. Only those DPSs occurring within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar are included for assessment in this SEIS/SOEIS.

Although there are no direct measurements or data on auditory thresholds for any mysticete species, anatomical evidence strongly suggests that their inner ears are well adapted for LF hearing, suggestive of functional hearing from 7 Hz to 35 kHz, with good sensitivity from 20 Hz to 2 kHz (Ketten, 1998; NMFS, 2018g). Additionally, all baleen whales produce LF sounds. Odontocete species studied to date hear best in the mid- (150 Hz to 160 kHz) to high-frequency (275 Hz to 160 kHz) range, and as a consequence, are less likely to be affected by exposure to LF sounds than mysticetes (NMFS, 2018g). However, odontocetes depend upon acoustic perception and sound production for communication, prey location, and probably for navigation and orientation as well. Pinnipeds are taxonomically divided into three families: eared seals (family Otariidae), earless, or true seals (family Phocidae), and walruses (family Odobenidae). However, no polar occurring pinnipeds, such as the walrus, are considered herein. The functional hearing ranges of otariid and phocid pinniped species is 60 Hz to 39 kHz and 50 Hz to 86 kHz, respectively (NMFS, 2018g).

Since mysticete species are considered sensitive to LF sound, the 10 potentially occurring mysticete species in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar are assessed in this SEIS/SOEIS. The potential exists for odontocetes to perceive and be affected by exposure to LFA sonar transmissions, so the 31 odontocete species that may occur in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar are also assessed in this SEIS/SOEIS. The five pinniped species that potentially occur in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar are capable of hearing SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions, and as such, merit consideration herein.

Information about the status, stocks, abundances, distribution, seasonality, diving, and swim speeds for each of the 46 potentially occurring species of marine mammals is presented herein. This information represents the best available on these species and stocks and is presented in taxonomic order (as organized in Table 3-6) and follows the taxonomy defined by the SMM (2017). Abundance and stock information is limited to those populations, stocks, or DPSs that are found in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar.

##### *3.4.3.3.1 Cetaceans*

Cetaceans (whales, dolphins, and porpoises) are wholly aquatic and never purposefully return to land. They are an ecologically diverse group that are classified in two suborders: Mysticeti or baleen whales and Odontoceti or toothed whales (which is also inclusive of dolphins and porpoises) (SMM, 2017). Considered in this SEIS/SOEIS are 41 cetacean species, 10 of which are mysticetes and 31 odontocetes. Six of the potentially occurring mysticete species or at least one of these species' DPSs, are listed as endangered under the ESA, as are two odontocete species that are likely to occur in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar (Table 3-6).

Mysticetes are distinguished by their larger body size and specialized baleen feeding structures, which are keratinous plates that replace teeth and are used to filter zooplankton (e.g., krill) and small fishes from seawater. In contrast, odontocetes have teeth for feeding and exhibit greater foraging diversity. Both cetacean groups are capable of emitting sound, but only odontocetes emit biosonar or echolocation signals that can be used for prey and object location and navigation.

Sound production and hearing are highly developed in all studied cetacean species. Of all mammals, cetaceans have the broadest acoustic range and fully specialized ears adapted for underwater hearing. Little information, however, is available on the hearing capabilities of most cetacean species (Ketten, 1994 and 2000). Although the hearing capability of no mysticete species has been directly measured, the scientific consensus is that mysticetes hear LF sound, with their generalized hearing range from 7Hz to 30 kHz, as estimated from observed vocalization frequencies, behavioral reactions to sound playback, and anatomical studies of mysticetes auditory systems (NMFS, 2018g; Southall et al., 2019). Odontocetes hear a broader range of sound frequencies, including mid- to high-frequencies that range from 150 Hz to 160 kHz, depending upon the species. Odontocete species such as the majority of dolphins and beaked, toothed, and bottlenose whales have greatest hearing sensitivity in the mid-frequency ranges of 150 Hz to 160 kHz, while the remainder of odontocetes including porpoises,

**Table 3-6. Marine Mammal Species and Stocks (or DPSs) Evaluated in this SEIS/SOEIS for Potential Effects Associated with Exposure to SURTASS LFA Sonar and their Status Under the ESA and MMPA. Taxonomy Follows that of the Society for Marine Mammalogy (2017), with Species Shown in Alphabetical Order within each Family.**

| *Family* | *Marine Mammal Species* | *ESA Status* | *MMPA Status* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | ***Cetaceans—Mysticetes*** | | |
| Balaenidae | North Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena japonica*) | Endangered | Depleted |
| Eschrichtiidae | Gray whale *(Eschrichtius robustus)* | Endangered—Western North Pacific DPS | Depleted—Western North Pacific DPS |
| Balaenopteridae | Antarctic minke whale (*Balaenoptera bonaerensis)* | | |
| | Blue whale (*Balaenoptera musculus)*<br>Pygmy: *Balaenoptera musculus brevicauda*<br>Northern: *Balaenoptera musculus musculus*<br>*Northern Indian: Balaenoptera musculus indica* | Endangered | Depleted |
| | Bryde's whale (*Balaenoptera edeni)*[24] | | |
| | Common minke whale (*Balaenoptera acutorostrata)*<br>*North Pacific: Balaenoptera acutorostrata scammoni* | | |
| | Fin whale (*Balaenoptera physalus)*<br>Northern: *Balaenoptera physalus physalus*<br>Southern: *Balaenoptera physalus quoyi* | Endangered | Depleted |
| | Humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*)<br>North Pacific: *Megaptera novaeangliae kuzira*<br>Southern: *Megaptera novaeangliae australis* | Endangered—Western North Pacific DPS | Depleted |
| | Omura's whale (*Balaenoptera omurai*) | | |
| | Sei whale (*Balaenoptera borealis*)<br>Northern: *Balaenoptera borealis borealis*<br>Southern: *Balaenoptera borealis schlegelii* | Endangered | Depleted |
| | ***Cetaceans—Odontocetes*** | | |
| Physeteridae | Sperm whale (*Physeter macrocephalus*) | Endangered | Depleted |
| Kogiidae | Dwarf sperm whale (*Kogia sima*) | | |
| | Pygmy sperm whale (*Kogia breviceps)* | | |

24 The Gulf of Mexico population of Bryde's whale is listed as endangered under the ESA, but this DPS does not occur in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar.

**Table 3-6. Marine Mammal Species and Stocks (or DPSs) Evaluated in this SEIS/SOEIS for Potential Effects Associated with Exposure to SURTASS LFA Sonar and their Status Under the ESA and MMPA. Taxonomy Follows that of the Society for Marine Mammalogy (2017), with Species Shown in Alphabetical Order within each Family.**

| *Family* | *Marine Mammal Species* | *ESA Status* | *MMPA Status* |
|---|---|---|---|
| Ziphiidae | Baird's beaked whale (*Berardius bairdii)* | | |
| | Blainville's beaked whale (*Mesoplodon densirostris)* | | |
| | Cuvier's beaked whale (*Ziphius cavirostris*) | | |
| | Deraniyagala's beaked whale (*Mesoplodon hotaula)* | | |
| | Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale (*Mesoplodon ginkgodens)* | | |
| | Hubbs' beaked whale (*Mesoplodon carlshubbsi*) | | |
| | Longman's beaked whale (*Indopacetus pacificus*) | | |
| | Southern bottlenose whale (*Hyperoodon planifrons)* | | |
| | Spade-toothed beaked whale (*Mesoplodon traversii)* | | |
| | Stejneger's beaked whale (*Mesoplodon stejnegeri)* | | |
| Delphinidae | Common dolphin (*Delphinus delphis)*<br>Indo-Pacific: *Delphinus delphis tropicalis* | | |
| | Common bottlenose dolphin (*Tursiops truncatus truncatus*) | | |
| | False killer whale (*Pseudorca crassidens*) | Endangered—Main Hawaiian Islands Insular DPS | Depleted—Main Hawaiian Islands Insular DPS |
| | Fraser's dolphin (*Lagenodelphis hosei*) | | |
| | Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin (*Tursiops aduncus*) | | |
| | Killer whale (*Orcinus orca)*[25] | | |
| | Melon-headed whale (*Peponocephala electra*) | | |
| | Northern right whale dolphin (*Lissodelphis borealis*) | | |
| | Pacific white-sided dolphin (*Lagenorhynchus obliquidens)* | | |
| | Pantropical spotted dolphin (*Stenella attenuata*) | | |
| | Pygmy killer whale (*Feresa attenuata*) | | |

25 The Southern Resident killer whale DPS is listed as endangered, but this DPS occurs principally in U.S. and Canadian inland waters, which is not located in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar.

**Table 3-6. Marine Mammal Species and Stocks (or DPSs) Evaluated in this SEIS/SOEIS for Potential Effects Associated with Exposure to SURTASS LFA Sonar and their Status Under the ESA and MMPA. Taxonomy Follows that of the Society for Marine Mammalogy (2017), with Species Shown in Alphabetical Order within each Family.**

| *Family* | *Marine Mammal Species* | *ESA Status* | *MMPA Status* |
|---|---|---|---|
| Delphinidae (Continued) | Risso's dolphin (*Grampus griseus*) | | |
| | Rough-toothed dolphin (*Steno bredanensis*) | | |
| | Short-finned pilot whale (*Globicephala macrorhynchus)* | | |
| | Spinner dolphin (*Stenella longirostris)* | | |
| | Striped dolphin (*Stenella coeruleoalba)* | | |
| Phocoenidae | Dall's porpoise (*Phocoenoides dalli*)<br>*dalli*-type*: Phocoenoides dalli dalli*<br>*truei*-type: *Phocoenoides dalli truei* | | |
| | Harbor porpoise (*Phocoena phocoena*) | | |
| ***Pinnipeds*** | | | |
| Otariidae | Northern fur seal (*Callorhinus ursinus*) | | |
| | Western Steller sea lion (*Eumetopias jubatus jubatus*) | Endangered—Western DPS/stock | Depleted |
| Phocidae | Hawaiian monk seal (*Neomonachus schauinslandi*) | Endangered | Depleted |
| | Ribbon seal (*Histriophoca fasciata)* | | |
| | Spotted seal (*Phoca largha*) | Threatened—Southern DPS | Depleted—Southern DPS |

cephalorhynchid and river dolphins, two species of *Lagenorhynchus* dolphins (hourglass and Peale's dolphins), and the two *Kogia* species have hearing sensitivity in the frequency range from 275 Hz to 160 kHz (NMFS, 2018g). Sound production in cetaceans varies over a wide range of frequencies, sound types, and sound levels. While all functions of underwater sound production are not completely understood, vocalizations are likely used for echolocation, communication, navigation, sensing of the environment, prey detection, and orientation (Clark and Ellison, 2004; Ellison et al., 1987; George et al., 1989; Tyack, 2000). Some mysticetes such as humpback and blue whales produce songs, complex repetitions of patterned sequences, while most odontocetes produce click echolocation sounds as well as complicated sets of pulses and whistles (Frankel, 2018).

- ***Mysticetes (Baleen Whales): Balaenidae***

  - *North Pacific Right Whale (Eubalaena japonica)*

The North Pacific right whale is listed as endangered under the ESA, depleted under the MMPA, protected under CITES, and as a species, is classified as endangered under the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species, although the Eastern North Pacific (ENP) stock is classified as critically endangered (Reilly et al., 2008i). Two stocks or populations of North Pacific right whales have been identified, with the ENP stock encompassing right whales found in the Gulf of Alaska and the Bering Sea while the Western North Pacific (WNP) stock consists of right whales occurring in the Commander Islands, off the coast of Kamchatka, the Kuril Islands, and in the Sea of Okhotsk (Brownell et al., 2001; LeDuc et al., 2012). ). Critical habitat, comprising a total of 27,756 $nmi^2$ (95,200 $km^2$) in area for the North Pacific right whale has been designated in two areas of Alaska's marine waters: southeastern Bering Sea and the northwestern Gulf of Alaska where North Pacific right whales have been observed foraging (NOAA, 2008b). No overall population estimate for North Pacific right whales is available, but likely, less than 1,000 North Pacific right whales are currently living, as the population of ENP right whales is very small, with only 31 whales estimated (Wade et al, 2011; Muto et al., 2018). The WNP stock, which occurs within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar, is estimated to include 922 individuals (Best et al., 2001).

Since so few North Pacific right whales exist, little information about the species is available. North Pacific right whales regularly occur only in the Sea of Okhotsk and the southeastern Bering Sea with very rare occurrences documented in the waters of the Gulf of Alaska, Sea of Japan (off South Korea), and North Pacific waters around the Ogasawara and Kuril islands; Hokkaido, Japan; and offshore Kamchatka (Jefferson et al., 2015; NMFS, 2018d; Sekiguchi et al., 2014). Since 2013, two North Pacific right whales have been reported off Hokkaido (one entangled) and one right whale was documented off South Korea, which was the first observation of this species in the Sea of Japan in 41 years (NMFS, 2018d). No swim speed information is available for the North Pacific right whale except that they are known to be slow swimmers. Thode et al. (2017) estimated the water depth of gunshot and upcall vocalizations to range from near the surface to 82 ft (25 m), which is consistent with the dive patterns of the North Atlantic right whale. Dive durations range from 41 to 726 sec (Crance, 2017).

There is no direct measurement of the hearing sensitivity of right whales (Ketten, 2000; Thewissen, 2002). However, thickness measurements of the basilar membrane of North Atlantic right whale suggests a hearing range from 10 Hz to 22 kHz, based on established marine mammal models (Parks et al., 2007); this same range can be used as a proxy for North Pacific right whales. McDonald and Moore (2002) studied the vocalizations of North Pacific right whales in the eastern Bering Sea using autonomous seafloor-moored recorders and described five vocalization categories: up-calls, down-up calls, down calls, constant calls, and unclassified vocalizations. The up-call was the predominant type of vocalization and typically swept from 90 to 150 Hz, while the down-up call swept down in frequency for 10 to 20 Hz before it became a typical up call, and the down and constant calls were typically interspersed with up calls (McDonald and Moore, 2002). Constant calls were also subdivided into two categories: single frequency tonal or a frequency waver of up and down, which varied by approximately 10 Hz; the down and constant calls were lower in frequency than the up calls, averaging 118 Hz for the down call and 94 Hz for the constant call (McDonald and Moore, 2002). Munger et al. (2011) reported the SL of North Pacific right whale upcalls to be averaged from 176 to 178 dB re 1 μPa @ 1 m, with a frequency range of 90 to 170 Hz. Crance (2017) described a sixth type of North Pacific right whale vocalization as a gunshot, which is an impulsive signal that ranges from 50 Hz to 5.5 kHz, with an average duration of 0.3 sec.

➢ ***Mysticetes (Baleen Whales): Eschrichtiidae***

- *Gray Whale (Eschrichtius robustus)*

Two genetically distinct stocks and DPSs, the WNP and Eastern North Pacific (ENP), of gray whales exist in the North Pacific Ocean (LeDuc et al., 2002). The ENP stock and DPS of gray whales was delisted from the ESA. The WNP DPS of gray whales is extremely small and remains listed as endangered under the ESA, depleted under the MMPA, and is considered critically endangered under the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species (Reilly et al., 2008a). The WNP stock/DPS was once thought to be extinct, but a small population of 290 gray whales has been estimated (Carretta et al., 2019).

Gray whales occur in shallow (16 to 49 ft [5 to 15 m]) coastal waters of the North Pacific Ocean and adjacent seas, occurring as far south as southern China in the western North Pacific and Mexico in the eastern North Pacific Ocean (Jefferson et al., 2015). Gray whales annually migrate north-south from high latitude feeding grounds to low latitude breeding grounds. Information about the WNP gray whale stock/DPS is not nearly as complete as is information about the eastern stock. Historically, the WNP gray whale fed in summer off the northeastern coast of Sakhalin Island in the Sea of Okhotsk and in Pacific waters off Kamchatka and migrated southward along the Pacific coast off Honshu, Japan as well as in the coastal waters of eastern Russia and Korea to their winter breeding grounds (Kato and Kasuya, 2002; Meier et al., 2007; Weller et al., 2002 and 2008). Currently, however, the winter breeding grounds of the very small, endangered DPS of WNP gray whales is not known, and the migrational routes of the members of this population are not fully understood. Satellite tagging, tracking, and photo-ID matching of WNP gray whales from the Sakhalin and Kamchatka feeding grounds showed that a part of the WNP population of gray whales migrates across the North Pacific Ocean and have been observed during winter in the Pacific waters of North America and Mexico (Cooke, 2018; Mate et al., 2015; Weller et al., 2012; Urbán R et al., 2013).However, not all Western North Pacific gray whales migrate east across the Pacific. Since 1990, about 30 sightings and strandings have been documented in Japan, mainly on the Pacific Honshu coast (Kato et al., 2016). Reilly et al. (2018a) noted that the recent sightings in Pacific waters off eastern Japan during the migrational period suggest that WNP gray whales are using those waters as an additional or former migrational route. U.S. Navy acoustic detections of gray whales in relatively shallow waters of the East China Sea between September and March indicate that some WNP gray whales make seasonal migrational movements through these waters, moving south in spring and returning north in fall (Gagnon, 2017 as cited in IWC, 2017; MMC, 2018).WNP gray whales regularly forage in eastern Kamchatka waters during summer and recent sightings of mother-calf pairs off southeastern Kamchatka in the Olga Harbor/Bay area suggests that the area may be a second nursery ground (Tyurneva et al., 2010; Yakovlev et al., 2011). Although the exact locations of breeding and calving grounds for the WNP gray whale are unknown, Hainan Island in the South China Sea has been suggested as a possible location (Brownell and Chun, 1977).

Currently, however, the winter breeding grounds of the very small, endangered DPS of Western North Pacific gray whales is not known, and the migrational routes of the members of this population are not fully understood. Tracking of Western North Pacific gray whales from the Sakhalin feeding grounds equipped with satellite tags and photo-ID matching showed that a part of the Western North Pacific population of gray whales migrates across the North Pacific Ocean and have been observed during winter in the Pacific Northwest and Mexico (Cooke, 2018; Weller et al., 2012).

Gray whales generally are not deep or long-duration divers. Swartz (2018) noted the maximum dive depth known for gray whales as 557 ft (170 m), and Stewart et al. (2001) reported a maximum duration of 13.25 min for gray whales, although Swartz (2018) reported a longer maximum dive duration of 26 min. Typical dives are to water depths of < 98 ft (30 m), with dives to <33 ft (10 m) most common, and mean dive durations of 2.24 min (Stelle et al., 2008; Stewart et al., 2001). Würsig et al. (1986) noted that during summer, foraging gray whales exhibited dive times as long as 7 min, with a mean duration of 4 min. Swim speeds during migration average 2.4 to 4.9 kt (4.5 to 9 kph), with pursued gray whaled reaching speeds of 8.64 kt (16 kph) (Jones and Swartz, 2009). Gray whales migrating in Canadian waters moved with mean speeds of 2.5 to 3.2 kt (4.7 to 5.9 kph) (Ford et al., 2013).

Sparse data exist on the hearing sensitivity of gray whales. Ridgway and Carder (2001) attempted to measure hearing thresholds in a stranded gray whale but were not successful. Dahlheim and Ljungblad (1990) suggest that free-ranging gray whales are most sensitive to tones between 800 and 1,500 Hz. Migrating gray whales showed avoidance responses at ranges of several hundred meters to LF playback SLs of 170 to 178 dB when the source was placed within their migration path at about 1.1 nmi (2 km) from shore, but this response ceased when the source was moved out of their migration path even though the RLs remained similar to the earlier condition (Clark et al., 1999). Gray whales detected and responded to 21 kHz sonar signals, indicating that their hearing range extends at least that high in frequency (Frankel, 2005).

Gray whales produce a variety of sounds from about 100 Hz to 4 kHz (Swartz, 2018). The most common sounds recorded during foraging and breeding are knocks and pulses with frequencies from <100 Hz to 2 kHz, with most energy concentrated at 327 to 825 Hz (Richardson et al., 1995). Tonal moans are produced during migration in frequencies ranging between 100 and 200 Hz (Jones and Swartz, 2009). A combination of clicks and grunts has also been recorded from migrating gray whales in frequencies ranging below 100 Hz to above 10 kHz (Frankel, 2018). The SLs for sounds produced by gray whales ranges between 167 and 188 dB (Frankel, 2018).

- ***Mysticetes (Baleen Whales): Balaenopteridae***

  - *Antarctic Minke Whale (Balaenoptera bonaerensis)*

The Antarctic minke whale is listed by the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species as data deficient (Reilly et al., 2008b). Reilly et al. (2008b) suggested a corrected population estimated as 339,000 individuals (CV=0.079), while the International Whaling Commission (IWC) more recently estimated the entire population as 515,000 (IWC, 2013; Perrin et al. 2018). The population of Antarctic minke whales occurring off Western Australia has been estimated as 90,000 whales (Bannister et al., 1996).

Antarctic minke whales range from the waters of the Southern Ocean in Antarctica south of 60° S to the ice edge during austral summer to waters of the Pacific, Atlantic, and Indian oceans from about 10° to

30° S during austral winter, when they have been observed as far north as Brazil and Peru, with some whales having been reported to overwinter in Antarctic waters (Reilly et al., 2008b; Perrin et al., 2018). Antarctic minke whales are primarily oceanic, occurring in waters beyond the continental shelf break (Perrin et al., 2018).

Leatherwood et al., (1981) observed that Antarctic minke whales off Ross Island, Antarctica dove for durations between 9.7 to 10.8 min, and after making a series of shallow dives, the whales dove up to 14 min. Diving behavior has been recorded from foraging individuals, with three dive types identified: short and shallow, under ice, and long and deep (Friedlaender et al., 2014). The mean dive depth for short, shallow dives was 33 ft (10 m), 98 ft (30 m) for under ice dives, and 187 ft (57 m) for long, deep dives (Friedlaender et al., 2014). Dive times ranged from 1 to 6 min (Friedlaender et al., 2014). Risch et al. (2014) noted that Antarctic minke whales made shallow dives to <131 ft (40 m) at night and deeper dives to over 328 ft (100 m) during the day. The Antarctic minke whale can swim at speeds of up to 10.8 kt (20 kph).

Hearing sensitivity of Antarctic minke whales has not been measured (Ketten, 2000; Thewissen, 2002). However, models of minke whale middle ears predict their best hearing overlaps with their vocalization frequency range (Tubelli et al., 2012). Antarctic minke whales produce a variety of sounds, including whistles, clicks, screeches, grunts, downsweeps, calls that sound like clanging bell, and a sound called “bio-duck” (Leatherwood et al., 1981; Risch et al., 2014a). Downsweeps are intense, LF calls that sweep down from about 130 Hz to about 60 Hz, with a peak frequency of 83 Hz, and an average SL of about 147 dB re 1 µPa @ 1 m (Schevill and Watkins, 1972). The “bio-duck” sound was first described in the 1960s and resembles the quack of a duck. Bioduck signals consist of a series of pulse trains of short downswept signals with a peak frequency of 154 Hz, SL of 140 dB re 1 µPa @ 1 m, and sometimes include harmonics up to 1 kHz (Risch et al., 2014a). The bio-duck sound appears to be produced when whales are at the sea surface before foraging dives.

- *Blue Whale (Balaenoptera musculus) and Pygmy Blue Whale (Balaenoptera musculus brevicauda)*

Multiple subspecies and stocks exist worldwide but only the pygmy blue whale is typically differentiated as a species at-sea. The information available for the pygmy blue whale in the part of the study area in which it may occur is detailed herein; otherwise, information is presented on the blue whale as a species. The blue whale is listed as endangered under the ESA; depleted under the MMPA; protected under CITES; and as endangered (blue), data deficient (pygmy blue), and as critically endangered (Antarctic blue) by the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species (Reilly et al., 2008c). The global population of blue whales is estimated between 10,000 to 25,000 individuals (Reilly et al., 2008c). In the central North Pacific (CNP) stock of blue whales, 133 individuals (CV=1.09) are estimated to occur (Bradford et al., 2017), while 9,250 blue whales are estimated for the WNP stock (Tillman, 1977). The Northern Indian Ocean stock of blue whales has been estimated to include 3,432 whales (IWC, 2016), while 1,657 blue whales are estimated to occur in the Southern Indian Ocean stock (inclusive of both pygmy blue and blue whales) (Jenner et al., 2008; McCauley and Jenner, 2010).

Blue whales are distributed in oceanic subpolar to tropical waters of the world’s oceans and some continental seas except the Mediterranean Sea and Gulf of Mexico (Jefferson et al., 2015). Occurring primarily in open ocean waters, they also may occur in neritic waters when foraging and possibly when breeding. Blue whales occur in lower numbers in the central and western North Pacific than in the eastern North Pacific Ocean, but blue whales are reported from Hawaiian waters and from Kamchatka and the Kuril Islands to offshore Japan (Sears and Perrin, 2018). Blue whales occur throughout the Indian Ocean, with at least some blue whales off Sri Lanka remaining at low-latitudes throughout the year, presumably, because oceanographic upwelling supports sufficient productivity and prey (de Vos et al., 2014). The pygmy blue whale occurs in the Southern Hemisphere, particularly in the Indian Ocean off the west coast of Australia and moves between ~42°S and the Molucca Sea near the equator (Double et al., 2014). Not all blue whales are migratory, as some remain resident and do not seasonally move from lower latitude calving and breeding grounds and higher latitude foraging grounds (Jefferson et al., 2015; Sears and Perrin, 2018).

The swimming and diving behavior of blue whales has been relatively well characterized. General blue whale dive durations and dive depths range from 5 to 15 min and 591 to 656 ft (180 to 200 m), respectively (Croll et al., 1998 and 2001a). Dives of 20 to 30 min are not unusual and the longest dive recorded was 36 min long (Jefferson et al., 2015; Sears and Perrin, 2018). Calambokidis et al. (2008a) reported a maximum dive depth of 961 ft (293 m). Foraging blue whales appear to dive more shallowly, with average foraging dives reaching only 223 ft (67.6 m) (Croll et al., 2001a). A migrating pygmy blue whale was observed consistently diving to 43 ft (13 m) (Owen et al., 2016). Dive descent swim rates of 2.4 kt (4.5 kph) have been recorded (Williams et al., 2000). The common surface swim speed for blue whales is 1.6 to 3.2 kt (3 to 6 kph), but travel speeds of 3.8 to 10.8 kt (7 to 20 kph) are not unusual, and the maximum swim speed reported for a blue whale 18.9 kt (35 kph) (Sears and Perrin, 2018).

No hearing sensitivity has been measured for blue whales (Ketten, 2000; Nummela, 2009). Blue whales produce a variety of LF vocalizations ranging from 10 to 200 Hz throughout the year but with peaks in midsummer and winter (Alling and Payne, 1990; Clark and Fristrup, 1997; Edds, 1982; Rivers, 1997; Stafford et al., 1998, 1999a, 1999b, and 2001; Thompson and Friedl, 1982; Sears and Perrin, 2018). The majority of blue whale vocalizations are infrasonic sounds from 17 to 20 Hz with a SL of 188 dB re 1 µPa @ 1 m (Sears and Perrin, 2018), which makes their vocalizations amongst the loudest made by any animal (Aroyan et al., 2000; Cummings and Thompson, 1971). However, calls produced during foraging have been measured at lower SLs, ranging from 158 to 169 dB re 1 µPa @ 1 m (Akamatsu et al., 2014). Short sequences of rapid frequency modulated (FM) calls below 90 Hz are associated with animals in social groups (Mellinger and Clark, 2003; Moore et al., 1999). Off Australia, at least five types of pygmy blue whale calls were detected that consisted of amplitude modulated (AM) and FM components with frequencies ranging from 20 to 750 Hz, and durations between 0.9 and 4.4 seconds (Recalde-Salas et al., 2014). Calls produced by foraging blue whales off Iceland were FM downsweeps with a frequency range of 105 to 48 Hz and durations of 1to 2 sec (Akamatsu et al., 2014). Blue whales also produce a variety of transient sound (i.e., they do not occur in predictable patterns or have much interdependence of probability) in the 30 to 100 Hz band (sometimes referred to as "D" calls). These usually sweep down in frequency or are inflected (up-over-down), occur throughout the year, and are assumed to be associated with socializing when animals are in close proximity (Mellinger and Clark, 2003). Blue whales also produce long, patterned hierarchically organized sequences that are characterized as songs. Blue whales produce songs throughout most of the year with a peak period of singing overlapping with the general period of functional breeding.

The call characteristics of blue whales vary geographically and seasonally (Stafford et al., 2001). McDonald et al. (2006) have suggested that song characteristics could indicate population structure. In temperate waters, intense bouts of long, patterned sounds are common from fall through spring, but these also occur to a lesser extent during the summer in high-latitude feeding areas. Call rates during foraging may be very low, with a recent study recorded four calls during ~22 hours (Akamatsu et al., 2014).

- *Bryde's Whale (Balaenoptera edeni)*

The taxonomy of the Bryde's whale has not been completely resolved (SMM, 2017). Nevertheless, two forms of the Bryde's whale have been provisionally recognized: the larger, oceanic Bryde's whale (*B. edeni brydei*) and the smaller, coastal Eden's whale (*B. edeni edeni*) (Kato and Perrin, 2018; Kershaw et al., 2013; Luksenberg et al., 2015; SMM, 2017). The offshore Bryde's whale occurs globally in pelagic waters, while the Eden's whale typically occurs in nearshore waters of the Pacific and Indian oceans (SMM, 2017). The examination of genetics samples from the Pacific and Indian oceans by Kershaw et al. (2013) clarified the existence of two forms of Bryde's whales, and the additional osteological and genetic analyses by Luksenberg et al. (2015) confirmed the conclusion of two Bryde's whale subspecies (Kato and Perrin, 2018). In the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar, both forms of Bryde's whales occur (de Boer et al., 2003; Martenstyn, 2016; Reilly et al., 2008d). However, due to the lack of resolution regarding the taxonomy and specific information about the Eden's whale in most areas, information is presented herein on the Bryde's whale at the species level.

The Bryde's whale is currently protected under CITES, classified as a data deficient as a species by the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species (Reilly et al., 2008d), and the Gulf of Mexico (GOMx) Bryde's whale is listed as endangered under the ESA (NOAA, 2019). The GOMx Bryde's whale population includes those Bryde's whales that breed and feed solely in the GOMx. NMFS made the determination that the GOMx Bryde's whale is a unique evolutionary lineage, taxonomically distinct from other subspecies, and is thus classified as an unnamed subspecies rather than a DPS (NOAA, 2016h). The IWC recognizes four stocks of Bryde's whales in the North Pacific Ocean: Western North Pacific (WNP), Eastern Tropical, East China Sea, and Gulf of California (IWC, 1996) and the following stocks for the Southern Hemisphere: Western and Eastern South Pacific, Northern and Southern Indian Ocean, South African Inshore, and South Atlantic (IWC, 1980). NMFS additionally has identified a Hawaii stock of Bryde's whales in the central North Pacific Ocean. No global population estimates of Bryde's whales exist. In the western North Pacific Ocean, the population of Bryde's whales is estimated by the IWC as 20,501 whales (IWC, 2009). In the East China Sea, the stock of Bryde's whale is estimated as 137 individuals (IWC, 1996), and in Hawaiian waters, 1,751 Bryde's whales (CV=0.29) have been estimated (Bradford et al., 2017). In the Northern Indian Ocean, 9,176 Bryde's whales have been estimated (IWC, 2016; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993), while 13,854 Bryde's whales have been estimated for the Southern Indian Ocean (IWC, 1981).

Bryde's whales occur roughly between 40°N and 40°S throughout tropical and warm temperate (>61.3°F [16.3°C]) waters of the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian oceans year-round (Kato and Perrin, 2018; Omura, 1959). Bryde's whales occur in some semi-enclosed waters such as the Gulf of California, Gulf of Mexico, and East China Sea (Kato and Perrin, 2018). Recent sightings indicate that the range of Bryde's whales is expanding poleward (Kerosky et al., 2012). Bryde's whales are distributed in the subarctic-subtropical transition area of the western North Pacific Ocean (frontal boundary where subarctic waters intersect the warmer waters of the Kuroshio Current) throughout summer, which is thought to be a feeding area (Watanabe et al., 2012), although the foraging distribution in the western North Pacific is highly linked to the distribution of their prey (Sasaki et al., 2013). Most Bryde's whales are thought to migrate seasonally toward the lower latitudes near the equator in winter and to high latitudes in summer (Kato and Perrin, 2018). However, Bryde's whales remain resident in areas off South Africa, California, and the Gulf of Mexico throughout the year, migrating only short distances (Best, 1960; Tershy, 1992; Rosel et al., 2016). Foraging grounds are not well known for this species, although there is evidence that they feed on a wide range of food in both pelagic and nearshore areas (Niño-Torres et al., 2014). Murase et al. (2016) noted that two satellite-tagged Bryde's whales in the offshore waters of the western North Pacific Ocean did not remain in the northern, subarctic-tropical transition feeding area throughout the summer, but instead traveled southward to tropical waters between 20° and 30°N.

Bryde's whales can dive to a water depth of about 984 ft (300 m) (Kato and Perrin, 2018). The maximum dive time reported for two Bryde's whales off Madeira Island was 9.4 min, with more routine dives lasting 5 min, and mean dive durations of 0.4 to 6 min (Alves et al., 2010). Bryde's whales off Venezuela made dives in duration of 3 to 11 min (Notarbartolo di Sciara, 1983). Alves et al. (2010) also reported routine dives by Bryde's whales to water depths from 131 to 656 ft (40 to 200 m) and a dive to a maximum depth of 958 ft (292 m). Bryde's whales are relatively fast swimming whales. The maximum swim speed reached by a Bryde's whale was recorded at 10.8 to 13.5 kt (20 to 25 kph), with average swim speeds reported between 1.1 and 3.8 kt (2 and 7 kph) (Kato and Perrin, 2018; Murase et al., 2016). Bryde's whales tracked off Kauai, HI swam at speeds that ranged from 0.8 to 8.6 kt (0.15 to 16 kph), with an overall mean swim speed of 3.2 kt (6 kph) (Helble et al., 2016).

No direct measurements of Bryde's whales hearing sensitivity have been conducted (Ketten, 2000). Bryde's whales are known to produce a variety of LF sounds ranging from 20 to 900 Hz, with the higher frequencies being produced between cow-calf pairs (Cummings, 1985; Edds et al., 1993). Oleson et al. (2003) reported call types with fundamental frequencies below 240 Hz. These lower frequency call types have been recorded from Bryde's whales in the Caribbean, ETP, and off the coast of New Zealand. Additional call types have been recorded in the Gulf of Mexico (Širović et al., 2014). Calves produce discrete pulses at 700 to 900 Hz (Edds et al., 1993). SLs range between 152 and 174 dB re 1 µPa @ 1 m (Frankel, 2018). Pulsive, FM and AM calls with a frequency range of 50 to 900 Hz and 0.4 to 4.5 second duration were recorded off Brazil (Figueiredo, 2014).

- *Common Minke Whale (Balaenoptera acutorostrata)*

The taxonomy of the minke whale has been complex to unravel and is not yet fully resolved. The SMM (2017) has subdivided the common minke whale into three subspecies, with two subspecies representing the standard minke whales that are now known to occur only in the North Pacific (*B. acutorostrata scammoni*) and Atlantic *B. acutorostrata acutorostrata)* oceans, and a third unnamed subspecies representing the dwarf form that principally occurs in the waters of the Southern Hemisphere. Separation of the information and data about the standard and dwarf forms of the common minke whale is further complicated by a non-distinct boundary between the forms, with the dwarf form sometimes moving into waters of the Northern Hemisphere, and the two forms only being distinguishable at sea by subtle coloration differences (Jefferson et al., 2015). Little to no population-level data is available on the dwarf minke whale, so for purposes of this SEIS/SOEIS, information is presented on the common minke whale as a species, inclusive of the dwarf minke whale.

The common minke whale is protected under CITES as well as the MMPA and is classified by the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species as species of least concern (Reilly et al., 2008e). The IWC has recently re-evaluated the stock structure of common minke whales in the western North Pacific Ocean, and although not fully resolved given a lack of data for minke whales during winter on their reputed breeding grounds, the IWC has concluded that most likely five stocks of common minke whales occur in the western North Pacific Ocean (Wade and Baker, 2011). The IWC proposes the following stocks of common minke whales in the western North Pacific Ocean: Yellow Sea stock (Y stock), Sea of Japan stock (JW stock), Pacific-coast of Japan stock (JE stock), Pacific nearshore (<10 nmi [18.5 km] from coast) stock

(OW stock), and Pacific offshore stock (OE stock) (Wade and Baker, 2011). These stock definitions are based on unique genetic characteristics (i.e., mitochondrial DNA and microsatellite DNA) and dates of conception of the common minke whales in each of the proposed stock areas. For example, common minke whales in the Y stock (Yellow Sea) all conceive in the autumn while common minke whales in the OW and OE stocks (Pacific nearshore and offshore) conceive only in winter (Wade and Baker, 2011). The Navy considers these stock definitions to be the best available science to characterize the populations and stocks of common minke whales that occur in the western North Pacific Ocean region of the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. Further, the SMM (2017) has differentiated a North Pacific subspecies of common minke whales. Thus, it is the North Pacific subspecies of the common minke whale (Table 3-6) that occurs in the western and central North Pacific Ocean region of the study area.

The IWC reported a 1992 to 2004 population estimate of minke whales in the Southern Hemisphere as 515,000 (IWC, 2016), while the population of common minke whales in the Northern Hemisphere has been estimated to include at least 180,000 individuals (Jefferson et al., 2015). The population of the WNP OE stock of common minke whales has been estimated as 25,049 individuals (Buckland et al., 1992; Miyashita and Okamura 2011), while the Y stock is estimated to include 4,492 whales (Hakamada and Hatanaka, 2010; Miyashita and Okamura, 2011), and the JW stock is estimated to include a population of 2,611 whales (Miyashita and Okamura, 2011). The Hawaii stock of common minke whales occurring in the central North Pacific Ocean has been estimated to include 25,049 individuals (Buckland et al., 1992). A single stock of common minke whales has been identified for the Indian Ocean, with an estimated abundance of 257,500 whales (IWC, 2016).

Minke whales occur most often in tropical to polar coastal/neritic and inshore waters of the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian oceans but more infrequently also occur in pelagic waters. Common minke whales are considered rare in the northern Indian Ocean (Salm et al., 1993; Sathasivam, 2002), Gulf of Mexico, and Mediterranean Sea (Jefferson et al., 2015). Common minke whales are thought to be migratory, at least in some areas, but migratory pathways are not well known and populations in some area remain resident year-round (Reilly et al., 2008e). Likely, these whales migrate seasonally to higher latitudes to feed and move to lower latitudes to breed and calve (Víkingsson and Heide-Jørgensen, 2015).

Minke whales in the St. Lawrence River performed dives characterized as short and long dives, with short dives lasting between 2 and 3 min, while long dives ranged from 4 to 6 min (Christiansen et al., 2015). Stockin et al. (2001) observed dives of common minke whales averaging 1 to 1.4 min in length, while Stern (1992) noted dives of 4.4 min durations, and Joyce et al. (1989) measured dive durations off Norway of 1 to 6 min (Joyce et al., 1989). Kvadsheim et al. (2017) reported that the dives of four tagged minke whales could be characterized as long, deep; intermediate; and short, shallow dives, accounting for 14 percent, 29 percent, and 57 percent of all baseline dives, respectively. Tagged minke whales dove to a maximum depth of 492 ft (150 m), and rarely dove deeper than 394 ft (120 m) (Kvadsheim et al., 2017). The mean swim speed for minke whales in Monterey Bay was 4.5 kt (8.3 kph) (Stern, 1992), while Blix and Folkow (1995) reported a “cruising” speed of minkes as 6.3 kt (11.7 kph). Ford et al. (2005) reported that common minke whales pursued by killer whales swim at speeds ranging from 8.1 to 16.2 kt (15 to 30 kph).

Hearing sensitivity of minke whales has not been directly measured (Ketten, 2000; Thewissen, 2002). However, models of minke whale middle ears predict their best hearing overlaps with their vocalization frequency range (Tubelli et al., 2012). Sounds produced by common minke whales encompass a wide frequency range and variety of call types (Frankel, 2018). Minke whales produce a variety of sounds, primarily moans, clicks, downsweeps, ratchets, thump trains, grunts, and “boings” in the 80 Hz to 20 kHz range (Edds-Walton, 2000; Frankel, 2018; Mellinger et al., 2000; Risch et al., 2014a; Thompson et al., 1979; Winn and Perkins, 1976). The signal features of their vocalizations consistently include LF, short-duration downsweeps from 250 to 50 Hz. The energy in thump trains is concentrated in the 100 to 400 Hz band (Winn and Perkins, 1976; Mellinger et al., 2000). Complex vocalizations recorded from Australian minke whales involved pulses ranging between 50 Hz and 9.4 kHz, followed by pulsed tones at 1.8 kHz and tonal calls shifting between 80 and 140 Hz (Gedamke et al., 2001). The minke whale was been identified as the elusive source of the North Pacific "boing" sound (Rankin and Barlow, 2005; Risch et al., 2014a). Boings begin with a brief pulse and then a longer AM and FM signal lasting 2 to 10 sec over frequencies from 1 to 5 kHz (Rankin and Barlow, 2005; Risch et al., 2014a). SLs of common minke whale calls ranged from 164 to 168 dB re 1µPa @ 1 m (Risch et al., 2014b). Both geographical and seasonal differences have been found among the sounds recorded from minke whales (Risch et al., 2013).

- *Fin Whale (Balaenoptera physalus)*

The fin whale is listed as endangered under the ESA, depleted under the MMPA, protected under CITES, and as endangered by the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species (Reilly et al., 2013). The SMM (2017) has differentiated Northern and Southern subspecies of fin whales (Table 3-8). Since these subspecies are not differentiated at sea or in available population data and information, hereafter all information about the fin whale will only be referenced as a single species. The global population is estimated as <100,000 whales (Reilly et al., 2013). The population of fin whales in the Hawaii stock is estimated as 154 fin whales (CV=1.05) (Bradford et al., 2017), while fin whales in the East China Sea stock are estimated to include 500 individuals (Mizroch et al., 2009; Tillman, 1977; Evans, 1987), and the abundance of the WNP stock has been estimated as 9,250 individuals (Mizroch et al., 2009; Tillman, 1977). The northern Indian Ocean population of fin whales has been estimated to include 1,716 individuals (IWC, 2016), while the Southern Indian Ocean stock of fin whales off western Australia is estimated as 38,185 whales (Branch and Butterworth, 2001b; Mori and Butterworth, 2006).

Fin whales are widely distributed in all oceans of the world, from tropical to polar oceanic waters, but appear to be absent from equatorial waters (Aguilar and García-Vernet, 2018). Fin whales are sometimes observed in neritic waters, but typically when deep water approaches near to land (Jefferson et al., 2015). Although fin whales have traditionally been considered migratory, acoustic data suggests no seasonality in the annual distribution of fin whales (Watkins, et al., 2000). Although fin whale calls have been reported from the central Pacific waters of Hawaii in all months except June and July, sightings of fin whales in these waters are rare (Muto et al., 2018). Specific breeding areas are unknown.

Fin whales dive for a mean duration of 4.2 min at depths averaging 197 ft (60 m) (Croll et al., 2001a; Panigada et al., 2004). The deepest dive recorded for a fin whale was to a depth of 1,542 ft (470 m) but dives to <328 ft (100 m) are more routine (Panigada et al., 1999). Fin whales forage at water depths between 328 to 656 ft (100 and 200 m), with foraging dives lasting from 3 to 10 min (Aguilar and García-Vernet, 2018; Witteveen et al., 2015). When traveling, fin whales have been recorded diving only to an average of 194 ft (59 m) (Croll et al., 2001a). Swimming speeds average between 5 to 8 kt (9.2 and 14.8 kph) (Aguilar, 2009). The average speed of descent during dives in the Mediterranean has been measured as 6.2 kt (11.5 kph), while the swim speed of ascending dives was recorded as 4.1 kt (7.6 kph) (Panigada et al., 1999). Watkins (1981) reported bursts of speed in fin whales up to 10.8 kt (20 kph). Singing fin whales swam at average speeds of 2.9 to 4.8 kt (5.3 to 8.8 kph) (Varga et al., 2018).

There is no direct measurement of fin whale hearing sensitivity (Ketten, 2000; Thewissen, 2002). Fin whales produce a variety of LF sounds that range from 10 to 200 Hz (Edds, 1988; Watkins, 1981; Watkins et al., 1987a). Short sequences of rapid FM calls from 20 to 70 Hz are associated with animals in social groups (Edds, 1988; McDonald et al., 1995; Watkins, 1981). The most common fin whale vocalization is what is referred to as the "20-Hz signal or call", which is a LF (18 to 35 Hz) loud and long (0.5 to 1.5 sec) patterned sequence signal centered at 20 Hz (Clark et al., 2002; Patterson and Hamilton, 1964; Watkins et al., 1987a). The pulse patterns of the 20-Hz signal vary only slightly geographically and with season (McDonald et al., 1995, Oleson et al., 2014; Širovic´ et al., 2007, 2013; Varga et al., 2018). The 20-Hz signal is common from fall through spring in most regions but also occurs to a lesser extent during the summer in high-latitude feeding areas (Clark and Charif, 1998; Clark et al., 2002). In the Atlantic, 20-Hz signals are produced regularly throughout the year, with Atlantic fin whales also producing higher frequency downsweeps ranging from 100 to 30 Hz (Frankel, 2018). Fin whales produce the 20-Hz call in two forms: songs and call-counter calls (Buccowich, 2014; McDonald and Fox, 1999; McDonald et al., 1995; Oleson et al., 2014; Širovic´ et al., 2013; Varga et al., 2018; Watkins et al., 1987a). 20-Hz songs are simply regular patterns of 20-Hz calls that are associated with reproductive behavior, and are only produced by males (Croll et al., 2002; Delarue et al., 2013; Širovic´ et al., 2013 and 2017; Thompson et al., 1992). 20-Hz call-counter calls are irregular patterns of 20-Hz signals that likely have a general communication function and are produced by single or multiple fin whales in an area (McDonald and Fox, 1999; McDonald et al., 1995; Širovic´ et al., 2013). Estimated SLs of the 20-Hz signal are as high as 180 to 190 dB re 1 µPa @ 1 m (Charif et al., 2002; Clark et al., 2002; Croll et al., 2002; Patterson and Hamilton, 1964; Thompson et al., 1992; Watkins et al., 1987a; Weirathmueller et al., 2013). Varga et al. (2018) reported the SLs of the 20-Hz songs off Southern California as 194.8 dB re 1 µPa @ 1 m (peak to peak) and 180.9 dB re 1 µPa @ 1 m (rms). Fin whales also produce 40 Hz downsweeps (Širović et al., 2012; Watkins, 1981).

- *Humpback Whale (Megaptera novaeangliae)*

The humpback whale is protected under CITES and is considered least concern as a species by the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species (Childerhouse et al., 2008; Reilly et al., 2008f). The worldwide ESA status of the humpback whale has been revised, with 14 worldwide DPSs identified (Figure 3-6). Of the 14 DPSs, only five are now listed under the ESA as threatened or endangered: the Arabian Sea, Cape Verde/Northwest Africa, WNP, and Central America DPSs are listed as endangered while the Mexico DPS is listed as threatened (NOAA, 2016a). Only one ESA-listed DPS, the WNP, occurs within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar (Table 3-6). NMFS has determined that the remaining nine global DPSs do not currently warrant listing under the ESA and that the protections of the ESA no longer apply to these nine DPSs (NOAA, 2016a). No critical habitat has been established for the humpback whale. Further, the SMM (2017) has differentiated Northern and Southern subspecies of humpback whales (Table 3-6). However, since these subspecies are not differentiated at sea or in available population data and information, all information about the humpback whale that follows will be referenced at the species rather than subspecies level.

The humpback whale DPSs are based, among other factors, on the locations of humpback whale breeding grounds (Figure 3-6). In the North Pacific Ocean, four breeding grounds have been identified: Central America (Costa Rica, Panama, Guatemala, El Salvador, Honduras and Nicaragua), Mexico (mainland Mexico and Revillagigedos Islands), Hawaii, and the Western North Pacific (Okinawa, Philippines, and a third unknown breeding location in the western North Pacific) (Bettridge et al., 2015; NOAA, 2015b and 2016a). Three breeding areas have been identified in the Indian Ocean: Arabian Sea

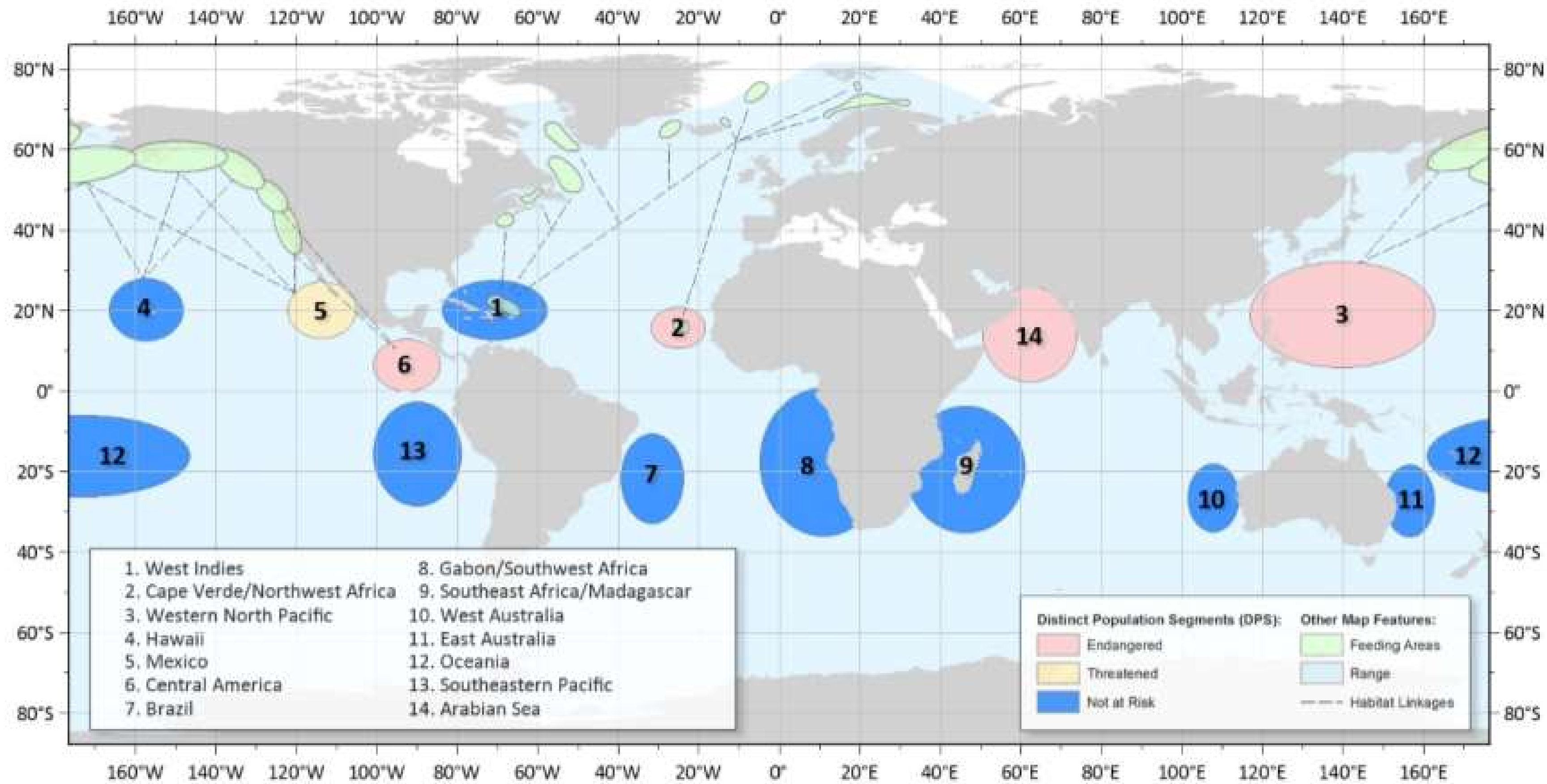



**Figure 3-6. The Worldwide Distinct Population Segments (DPSs) of the Humpback Whale Listed Under the ESA. Four DPSs are Listed as Endangered (Arabian Sea, Cape Verde/Northwest Africa, Central America, and Western North Pacific), while One DPS (Mexico) is Listed as Threatened and all Other 10 DPSs not Listed Under the ESA. Image Courtesy of NMFS (2016c).**

(where the population is non-migratory), southeast Africa/Madagascar (including the Seychelles Islands), and west Australia (NOAA, 2015b and 2016a). Contrastingly, stocks of humpback whales are identified by geographic areas that include discrete or multiple feeding areas. For instance, in the North Pacific Ocean, stocks of humpbacks include the California-Oregon-Washington (humpbacks that feed in the California-Oregon and Washington-British Columbia feeding areas), Central North Pacific (CNP) (with feeding areas from southeast Alaska to the Alaskan Peninsula), Western North Pacific (feeding areas in the Aleutian Islands, the Bering Sea, and Russia), and America Samoa (which feeds in the Southern Ocean along the Antarctic Peninsula) (Carretta et al., 2016). Humpback whales from one DPS may migrate to feed in more than one feeding areas in varying numbers, meaning that animals from one DPS may occur in more than one stock. In the North Pacific Ocean, for example, whales in the Hawaii DPS and CNP stock forage in varying percentages of the DPS or stock in three feeding areas of Alaska during the summer (Figure 3-7).

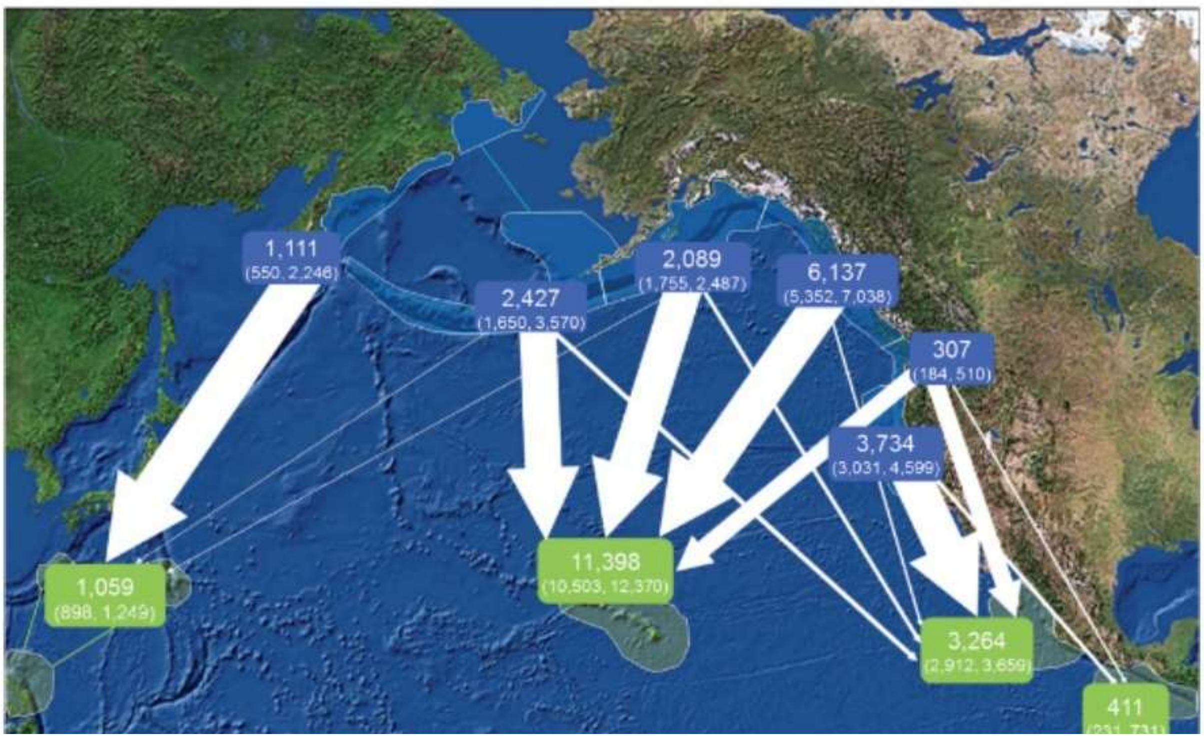



**Figure 3-7. Seasonal Migrational Movements of Humpback Whales DPSs and Stocks in the North Pacific Ocean Between Summer Foraging Grounds (Blue) and Winter Breeding Grounds (Green). Estimated Humpback Whale Abundances are Presented by Area (95 Percent Log-Normal Confidence Intervals are given in Parentheses) (Wade et al., 2016).**

The most current estimate of the humpback whale's global population is based on summing regional abundances, for an estimated total of 136,582 humpback whales worldwide (IWC, 2016). The population of humpback whales in the entire North Pacific Ocean is estimated as 21,808 (CV=0.04) whales (Barlow et al., 2011; Bettridge et al., 2015). In the western and central North Pacific Ocean portion of the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar, the population of the WNP DPS and stock of humpback whales is estimated to include 1,328 individuals (Bettridge et al., 2015), while the abundance of the CNP stock and Hawaii DPS is estimated as 10,103 whales (Calambokidis et al., 2008; Muto et al., 2018). In the eastern Indian Ocean, the population of humpback whales off Western Australia (Western Australia DPS and stock) is estimated to include 13,640 individuals (Bannister and Hedley, 2001).

Humpback whales are distributed throughout the world's oceans and are only absent from high Arctic and some equatorial waters, although they occur only rarely in some parts of their former Pacific range, such as the coastal waters of Korea, and have shown no signs of a recovery in those locations (Gregr, 2000; Gregr et al., 2000). Humpbacks occur both in neritic and pelagic waters, with neritic occurrences particularly during summer on foraging grounds and during winter when they may be found in waters close to islands and reef systems (Clapham, 2018). Humpback whales are a highly migratory species that have been documented traveling over 5,292 nmi (9,800 km) one way, which is the longest known migration of any mammal (Stevick et al., 2011). Humpback whales travel to high latitudes in the spring to begin feeding and to the warmer temperate and tropical waters in the winter to calve and breed. Despite this potential for long distance dispersal, there is considerable evidence that dispersal or interbreeding of individuals from different major ocean basins is extremely rare and that whales from the major ocean basins are differentiated by a number of characteristics. Data indicate that not all humpbacks migrate annually from summer feeding to winter breeding sites and that some whales remain in certain areas year-round (Barco et al., 2002; Christensen et al., 1992; Clapham et al., 1993; Murray et al., 2013; Straley, 1999). The small Arabian Sea population of humpback whales is non-migratory, breeding, and foraging in the same region (Bettridge et al., 2015; Pomilla et al., 2014).

Dive times of humpback whales have been recorded from 3 to 4 min in duration (Dolphin, 1987; Strong, 1990). Recently, Burrows et al. (2016) reported dive times that ranged from 7.5 to 9.6 min, with a mean of 6.0 min. Dive times on the wintering grounds can be much longer, with singing humpbacks typically diving between 10 and 25 min in duration (Chu, 1988). Humpback whales dove to depths from 131 to 512 ft (40 to 156 m) during foraging dives (Dolphin, 1988; Goldbogen et al., 2008). The deepest recorded humpback dive was 790 ft (240 m), with most dives ranging between 197 to 394 ft (60 and 120 m) (Hamilton et al., 1997). During their long-distance migrations, humpback whales swim at speeds ranging from 0.7 to 7.7 kt (1.3 to 14.2 kph) (Cerchio et al., 2016; Chaudry, 2006; Chittleborough, 1953; Gabriele et al., 1996; Guzman and Félix, 2017; Horton et al., 2011; Kennedy et al., 2014). Swim speeds of humpbacks during dive descent range from 2.4 to 3.9 kt (4.5 to 7.2 kph) while speeds on ascending dives were 2.9 to 4.9 kt (5.4 to 9 kph) (Dolphin, 1987).

No direct measurements of humpback whale hearing sensitivity exist (Ketten, 2000; Thewissen, 2002). Due to this lack of auditory sensitivity information, Houser et al. (2001) developed a mathematical function to describe the frequency sensitivity of humpbacks by integrating the humpback basilar membrane position with known mammalian data. The results predicted the typical U-shaped audiogram with sensitivity to frequencies from 700 Hz to 10 kHz with maximum sensitivity between 2 to 6 kHz (Houser et al., 2001).

Humpbacks produce a great variety of sounds that fall into three main groups: 1) sounds associated with feeding; 2) social sounds; and 3) songs associated with reproduction. These vocalizations range in frequency from 20 to 10,000 Hz. Feeding groups produce stereotyped feeding calls ranging from 20 to 2,000 Hz, with dominant frequencies near 500 Hz (Frankel, 2018; Thompson et al., 1986). Feeding calls were found to have SLs in excess of 175 dB re 1 μPa @ 1 m (Richardson et al., 1995' Thompson, et al., 1986). Humpback whales in the Northwest Atlantic Ocean produce "megaclicks", which are click trains and buzzes with most of their energy below 2 kHz, with relatively low SLs of 143 to 154 dB re 1 μPa @ 1 m (peak-peak) (Stimpert et al., 2007). "Whup" calls are composed of a short AM growl followed by a rapid upsweep from 56 to 187 Hz (Wild and Gabriele, 2014). Additional social sounds have been described that range from 70 Hz to 3.5 kHz, with a mean duration ranging from 0.8 to 16.7 sec (Fournet et al., 2015; Stimpert et al., 2011). Social sounds in the winter breeding areas are produced by males and range from 50 Hz to more than 10,000 Hz with most energy below 3,000 Hz (Silber, 1986). Calves produce short, LF sounds (Zoidis et al., 2008). Dunlop et al. (2007) reported 34 types of calls from migrating humpbacks ranging from 30 Hz to 2.4 kHz and between 0.2 and 2.5 sec in duration, with 21 of these call types being incorporated into songs; the median source level of these social sounds is 158 dB re 1 μPa (Dunlop et al., 2013).

During the breeding season, males sing long, complex songs with frequencies between 25 Hz and 5 kHz, with mean SLs of ~165 dB re 1 μPa @ 1 m (broadband) (Au et al., 2006; Frankel et al., 1995; Payne and McVay, 1971). The songs vary geographically among humpback populations and appear to have an effective range of approximately 5.4 to 10.8 nmi (10 to 20 km) (Au et al., 2000). Singing males are typically solitary and maintain spacing of 2.7 to 3.2 nmi (5 to 6 km) from one another (Frankel et al., 1995; Tyack, 1981). Songs have been recorded on the wintering ground, along migration routes, and less often on feeding grounds (Clapham and Mattila, 1990; Clark and Clapham, 2004; Gabriele and Frankel, 2002; Magnúsdóttir et al., 2014; Stanistreet et al., 2013; Van Opzeeland et al., 2013; Vu et al., 2012). Gabriele and Frankel (2002) reported that humpback whales sing more frequently in the late summer and early fall than previously observed.

- *Omura's Whale (Balaenoptera omurai)*

Until relatively recently, the Omura's whale was previously known as a small form of Bryde's whale (Wada et al., 2003). Cerchio et al. (2019) recently reviewed all known records and photographs of the Omura's whale and described the pigmentation and morphology characteristics that are now known to distinguish the species and will provide identification indicators to allow much more ready differentiation at sea from other similarly sized *Balaenoptera* whales.

The Omura's whale is considered data deficient by the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species (Reilly et al., 2008g). The IWC recognizes the Omura's whale but has not yet defined stocks or estimated its population, and no global abundance of Omura's whales exists. The only abundance estimate that relates to Omura's whale is that derived by Ohsumi (1980) for what he characterized at the time as unusually small Bryde's whales in the Solomon Islands. At least part of the whales Ohsumi (1980) identified as small Bryde's whales in the Solomon Islands have now been shown through genetic analysis to have been Omura's whales (Sasaki et al., 2006; Wada et al., 2003). Thus, while not ideal, given the paucity of data currently available for this species, Ohsumi's (1980) estimate of 1,800 individuals is the only and best available estimate of Omura's whales in the WNP stock. The Northern Indian Ocean stock of Omura's whales that occurs in the Andaman Sea area has been estimated to include 9,176 individuals (IWC, 2016; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993), while the Southern Indian Ocean is estimated to number 13,854 individuals (IWC, 1981).

Omura's whales have a very limited Indo-Pacific distribution in tropical to warm temperate neritic waters, although some records are reported from oceanic waters (Cerchio et al., 2019). Primarily coastal occurring with a continuous distribution in the eastern Indo-Pacific region, the Omura's whale has now been observed in all oceans except the central and eastern Pacific Ocean and North Atlantic Ocean (north of Mauritania); all Omura's whale records are located between 35°N and 35°S (Cerchio et al. 2019). The characteristics of the population of Omura's whales in Madagascar waters with small, localized populations and low genetic diversity may be indicative of the range-wide characteristics of Omura's whale populations (Cerchio et al., 2015 and 2019).

No information is available on the migratory behavior of Omura's whales. The presence of mothers and calves in northwestern Madagascar waters suggested to Cerchio et al. (2015) that the area was a breeding and calving area. Swim speeds and dive behavior characteristics have not yet been documented for the Omura's whale.

Hearing has not been measured in the Omura's whale, but Omura's whales are classified as LF hearing specialists, presumably capable of hearing sound within the range of 7 Hz to 35 kHz (NMFS, 2018g; Southall et al., 2019). Omura's whales have been recorded producing long (mean duration = 9.2 sec), broadband, AM calls with energy concentrated in the 15 to 50 Hz band, with a rhythmic sequence with 2-3 min intervals between utterances (Cerchio et al., 2015). Cerchio and Yamada (2018) reported that the Omura's calls to be rhythmically repeated at 130 to 180 sec intervals, suggestive of a song display, with singing documented to last up to 12 hr without pause, and five to six singers being audible on single hydrophones.

- *Sei Whale (Balaenoptera borealis)*

The sei whale is listed as endangered under the ESA, depleted under the MMPA, protected under CITES, and as endangered by the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species (Reilly et al., 2008h). The SMM (2017) has differentiated Northern and Southern subspecies of sei whales (Table 3-6). While the Navy recognizes this taxonomy, the subspecies are not differentiated at sea or in the available population data and information. Accordingly, all subsequent information presented herein about the sei whale is referenced only to the species level. The global population for the sei whale has been estimated by the IUCN to include 31,600 individuals (Reilly et al., 2008h) while Jefferson et al. (2015) reported a population as large as 80,000 whales. The population of the Hawaii stock of sei whales is estimated as 391 whales (CV=0.9) (Bradford et al., 2017), while the the North Pacific stock is estimated to include 7,000 whales (Mizroch et al., 2015; Tillman, 1977). The Indian Ocean stock of sei whales is estimated as 13,854 whales (IWC, 1981).

Sei whales occur in temperate, oceanic waters of all world oceans, occurring very uncommonly in neritic waters, the Mediterranean Sea, and in equatorial waters (Horwood, 2018; Jefferson et al., 2015). The sei whale is migratory, seasonally traveling between low latitude calving grounds to high latitude foraging grounds, although these migrations may not be as extensive as that of other mysticetes (Jefferson et al., 2015). Specific breeding grounds are not known for this species, although the waters off northwest Africa have been suggested for the North Atlantic sei whales (Prieto et al., 2014).

Ishii et al. (2017) documented U- and V-shaped dives of foraging sei whales and noted that they dove no deeper than 187 ft (57 m) during the day and to no more than 40 ft (12.2 m) at night, with maximum durations of 12 min. Dive times of sei whales range from 0.75 to 15 min, with a mean duration of 1.5 min (Schilling et al., 1992). When foraging, sei whales make shallow dives of 65 to 100 ft (20 to 30 m), followed by a deep dive up to 15 min in duration (Gambell, 1985). Sei whales are fast swimmers, surpassed only by blue whales (Sears and Perrin, 2009). Swim speeds have been recorded at 2.5 kt (4.6 kph), with a maximum speed of 14.8 kt (27.4 kph) (Brown, 1977; Olsen et al.; 2009). Prieto et al. (2014) reported that the mean swim speeds of satellite-tagged sei whales during migration were 3.3 to 4 kt (6.2 to 7.4 kph) and an "off-migration" speed was measured as 3.2 kt (6 kph). Ishii et al. (2017) measured mean swimming speeds of 1.9 to 2.7 kt (3.6 to 5 kph) for two sei whales.

No direct measurements of sei whale hearing sensitivity exist (Ketten, 2000; Thewissen, 2002). Sei whale vocalizations are the least studied of all the rorquals. Rankin and Barlow (2007) recorded sei whale vocalizations in Hawaii and reported that all vocalizations were downsweeps, ranging from on average from 100.3 to 446 Hz for "high frequency" calls and from 39.4 to 21.0 Hz for "low frequency" calls. In another study, McDonald et al., (2005) recorded sei whales in Antarctica with an average call frequency of 433 Hz. A series of sei whales FM calls have been recorded south of New Zealand with a frequency range of 34 to 87 Hz and a duration of 0.4 to 1.7 sec (Calderan et al., 2014).

- ***Odontocetes (Toothed Whales): Physeteridae***

  - *Sperm Whale (Physeter macrocephalus)*

The sperm whale is listed as endangered under the ESA, depleted under the MMPA, protected under CITES, and classified as vulnerable by the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species (Taylor et al., 2008). Jefferson et al. (2015) reported a putative global sperm whale population estimate of 360,000 individuals. The sperm whale stock in the North Pacific Ocean has been estimated to include 102,112 individuals (CV=0.155), while 4,559 sperm whales (CV=0.33) have been estimated for Hawaii stock (Bradford et al., 2017; Muto et al., 2018). The Indian Ocean stock of sperm whale is estimated as 24,446 individuals (IWC, 2016; Perry et al., 1999; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993).

With the largest distributional range of all cetaceans except killer whales, sperm whales are primarily found in deeper (>3,280 ft [1,000 m]) polar, temperate, and tropical waters of the world's oceans and Mediterranean Sea (Reeves and Whitehead, 1997). Female sperm whales nearly always inhabit waters >3,281 ft (1,000 m) in depth far from land (Whitehead, 2018). The migration patterns of sperm whales are not well understood, as some whales show seasonal north-south migrations, and some whales show no clear seasonal migration pattern at all, especially in the equatorial waters (Whitehead, 2018). In ocean waters between 40° N and 45° N, female sperm whales with calves often remain on breeding grounds throughout the year, while males migrate between low-latitude breeding areas and higher-latitude feeding grounds (Pierce et al., 2007; Rice, 1989; Whitehead, 2003). In the Northern Hemisphere, "bachelor" groups (males 15 to 21 yr old) generally leave warm waters at the beginning of summer to migrate to feeding grounds and in fall and winter, most bachelors return south, although some may remain in the colder northern waters during most of the year (Pierce et al., 2007). Specific breeding and foraging grounds are not well known for this species.

Sperm whales may make the longest and deepest dives of any mammal, with the maximum-recorded dive reaching 4,921 ft (1,500 m) (Davis et al., 2007), although examination of stomach contents of sperm whales suggests that sperm whales may dive as deep as 10,498 ft (3,200 m) (Clarke, 1976). Foraging dives to depths of 965 to 4,701 ft (294 to 1,433 m) and non-foraging dives to a water depth of 1,640 ft (500 m) were recently measured (Guerra et al., 2017; Joyce et al., 2017). In general, dive durations range between 18.2 to 65.3 min (Watkins et al., 2002). Foraging dives typically last about 30 to 65 min (Joyce et al, 2017; Papastavrou et al., 1989; Wahlberg, 2002), while non-foraging dives of about 30 min were measured (Joyce et al., 2017). Sperm whale's surface speeds generally average 0.7 to 2.2 kt (1.3 to 4 kph), with maximum speeds of about 5.1 kt (9.4 kph) (Jochens et al., 2008; Lockyer, 1997; Watkins et al., 2002; Whitehead, 2018). Dive swim rates range from 2.8 to 5.5 kt (5.2 to 10.1 kph) (Lockyer, 1997).

Audiograms measured from a sperm whale calf suggest a hearing range of 2.5 to 60 kHz, with best hearing sensitivity between 5 and 20 kHz (Ridgway and Carder, 2001). Measurements of evoked response data from one stranded sperm whale have shown a lower limit of hearing near 100 Hz (Gordon et al., 1996).

Sperm whales produce broadband echolocation clicks with energy from less than 100 Hz to 30 kHz (Goold and Jones, 1995; Madsen et al., 2002a; Møhl et al., 2000; Thode et al., 2002; Watkins and Schevill, 1977; Weilgart and Whitehead, 1997). Regular click trains and creaks have been recorded from foraging sperm whales and may be produced as a function of echolocation (Jaquet et al., 2001; Madsen et al., 2002b; Whitehead and Weilgart, 1991). A series of short clicks, termed “codas,” have been associated with social interactions and are thought to play a role in communication (Pavan et al., 2000; Watkins and Schevill, 1977; Weilgart and Whitehead, 1993). Clicks are strongly directional, with SELs measured between 202 and 236 dB (Madsen and Møhl, 2000; Møhl et al., 2000; Møhl et al., 2003; Thode et al., 2002). Møhl (2003) reported that the maximum SL for sperm whale clicks was 236 dB with other calls ranging from 226 to 234 dB. Zimmer et al. (2005b) reported SL of the sperm whale’s HF sonar component of clicks that are used to search for prey as 229 dB (peak value), while the LF component is apparently used to conveys sound to conspecifics at large ranges and peak frequencies that are depth dependent to over 1,640 ft (500 m). Sperm whales also produce sounds including creaks, squeals, and trumpets as well as codas, which are series of 3 to 20 clicks that last from 0.2 to 2 sec and are social vocalizations (Whitehead, 2003 and 2018).

- ***Odontocetes (Toothed Whales): Kogiidae***

  - *Pygmy Sperm Whale (Kogia breviceps) and Dwarf Sperm Whale (Kogia sima)*

Both the pygmy sperm whale and dwarf sperm whale are listed as data deficient under the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species (Taylor et al., 2012a and 2012b). Abundance estimates of the global population sizes for these species are unknown. Population estimation by species is difficult as due to difficulty in distinguishing these species at sea, data for both species are typically combined. Where possible, population data by species are presented herein. The population of both species (*Kogia* spp.) combined and individually in the WNP stocks has been estimated as 350,553 whales (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003). The Hawaii stocks of the dwarf sperm whale and pygmy sperm whale are estimated as 17,519 individuals and 7,138 individuals, respectively (Barlow, 2006; Carretta et al., 2014). The Indian Ocean stocks of pygmy and dwarf sperm whales are estimated to number 10,541 individuals (Wade and Gerrodette, 1993).

Pygmy and dwarf sperm whales are distributed worldwide, primarily in temperate to tropical deep waters, and are especially common in waters along continental shelf breaks (Evans, 1987; Jefferson et al., 2008). Dwarf sperm whales seem to prefer warmer water than the pygmy sperm whale (Caldwell and Caldwell, 1989). Little evidence exists for seasonal movements in either species (McAlpine, 2009).

In the Gulf of California, *Kogia* spp. have been recorded with an average dive time of 8.6 min, while dwarf sperm whales exhibited a maximum dive time of 43 min (Breese and Tershy, 1993). Swim speeds vary and were found to reach up to 5.9 kt (11 kph) (Scott et al., 2001).

Sparse data exist on the hearing sensitivity of pygmy sperm whales and no data on the hearing sensitivity of the dwarf sperm whale have been measured. An ABR study on a rehabilitating pygmy sperm whale indicated an underwater hearing range with greatest sensitive between 90 and 150 kHz (Carder et al., 1995; Ridgway and Carder, 2001).

Recordings of captive pygmy sperm whales show they produce sounds between 60 and 200 kHz with peak frequencies at 120 to 130 kHz (Carder et al., 1995; Ridgway and Carder, 2001; Santoro et al., 1989). Echolocation pulses of pygmy sperm whales were documented with peak frequencies at 125 to 130 kHz (Ridgway and Carder, 2001). Thomas et al. (1990a) recorded an LF swept signal between 1.3 to 1.5 kHz from a captive pygmy sperm whale in Hawaii. Jérémie et al. (2006) reported frequencies ranging from 13 to 33 kHz for dwarf sperm whale clicks with durations of 0.3 to 0.5 sec. Merkens et al. (2018) recently reported that the sounds produced by captive and free-ranging dwarf sperm whales were very similar to those of pygmy sperm whales, and were characterized as narrow-band, HF clicks with mean frequencies from 127 to 129 kHz and inter-click intervals of 110 to 164 msec.

- ***Odontocetes (Toothed Whales): Ziphiidae***

  - *Baird's Beaked Whale (Berardius bairdii)*

The Baird's beaked whale is currently classified as data deficient under the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species (Taylor et al., 2008a). While the abundance of the global population size is unknown, the abundance of Baird's beaked whale in the WNP stock has been estimated as 5,688 individuals (Kasuya and Perrin, 2017; Miyashita, 1986 and 1990).

Baird's beaked whales occur in the North Pacific, including the Bering and Okhotsk seas (Kasuya, 1986; Kasuya, 2009) and off California (Yack et al., 2013). These whales inhabit deep water and appear to be most abundant at areas of steep topographic relief such as shelf breaks and seamounts (Dohl et al., 1983; Kasuya, 1986; Leatherwood et al., 1988). Baird's beaked whales were documented as having an inshore-offshore movement off California beginning in July and ending in September to October (Dohl et al., 1983). Ohizumi et al. (2003) reported that Baird's beaked whales migrate to the coastal waters of the western North Pacific and the southern Sea of Okhotsk in the summer.

Baird's beaked whales were recorded diving between 15 and 20 min, with a maximum dive duration of 67 min (Barlow, 1999; Kasuya, 2009). In a recent study, a Baird's beaked whale in the western North Pacific had a maximum dive time of 64.4 min and a maximum depth of 5,830 ft (1,777 m). Minamikawa et al. (2007) reported that Baird's beaked whales dive deeply (>3,280 ft [>1,000 m]), followed by several subsequent intermediate dives (328 to 3,280 ft [100 to 1,000 m]). Few swim speed data are available for any beaked whale species.

Direct measurements of Baird's beaked whale hearing sensitivity have not been measured (Ketten, 2000; Thewissen, 2002). Baird's beaked whales have been recorded producing HF sounds between 12 and 134 kHz with dominant frequencies between 23 to 24.6 kHz and 35 to 45 kHz (Dawson et al., 1998). This species produces a variety of sounds, mainly burst-pulse clicks, and FM whistles. The functions of these signal types are unknown. Clicks and click trains were heard sporadically throughout the recorded data, which may suggest that these beaked whales possess echolocation abilities. There is no available data regarding seasonal or geographical variation in the sound production of these species and no estimated SLs have been documented.

  - *Cuvier's Beaked Whale (Ziphius cavirostris)*

Cuvier's beaked whale is currently classified as a least concern (lower risk) species by the IUCN Red List of Threatened Specie (Taylor et al., 2008b). No global population estimate for this species is known. Abundances of Cuvier's beaked whales are estimated as 90,725 whales in the WNP stock (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003) and as 723 individuals (CV=0.69) for the Hawaii stock (Bradford et al., 2017). The population of Cuvier's beaked whales in the Southern Hemisphere is estimated as 76,500 individuals (Dalebout et al., 2005), of which 27,222 individuals are estimated to occur off Western Australia (Wade and Gerrodette, 1993).

The Cuvier's beaked whale is the most cosmopolitan of all beaked whale species. Except for the high Arctic and Antarctic waters, Cuvier's beaked whales are widely distributed in tropical to polar oceanic waters of all oceans and major seas, including the Gulf of Mexico, Gulf of California, Caribbean Sea, Mediterranean Sea, Sea of Japan, and Sea of Okhotsk (Heyning and Mead, 2009; Jefferson et al., 2008; Omura et al., 1955). No data on breeding and calving grounds are available.

Cuvier's beaked whales exhibit exceptionally long and deep foraging dives (Shearer et al., 2019). Dive durations range between 20 and 87 min with an average dive time near 30 min (Baird et al., 2004; Heyning, 1989; Jefferson et al., 1993). Schorr et al. (2014) reported a maximum dive depth of 9,816 ft (2,992 m) that lasted 137.5 min. In the Caribbean Sea, Cuvier's beaked whales performed dives to a mean depth of 3,868 ft (1,179 m) and mean dive duration of 65.4 min, with non-foraging dives as deep as ~ 1,640 ft (500 m) over 40 min, and foraging dives ranging between 2,297 to 6,234 ft (700 and 1900 m) over 3- to 100 min (Joyce et al., 2017). Joyce et al. (2017) also reported that Cuvier's beaked whales exhibited long recovery times (or inter-dive intervals) with a median of 68 min at the surface between dive bouts (Joyce et al. 2017). Cuvier's beaked whales in the northwestern Atlantic Ocean off Cape Hatteras were reported to exhibit short surface intervals and highly bimodal dives, with deep dives to a median water depth of 4,777 ft (1,456 m) and median duration of 58.9 min, and shallow dives to a median depth of 919 ft (280 m) with a median duration of 18.7 min (Shearer et al., 2019). Shallow and deep dive times for Cuvier's beaked whales in the waters of southern California waters were reported to have durations of ~ 20 min and ~ 60 min, respectively (Falcone et al., 2017). Swim speeds of Cuvier's beaked whale have been recorded between 2.7 and 3.3 kt (5 and 6 kph) (Houston, 1991).

Hearing sensitivity of Cuvier's beaked whales has not been measured (Ketten, 2000; Thewissen, 2002). Cuvier's beaked whales were recorded producing HF clicks between 13 and 17 kHz; since these sounds were recorded during diving activity, the clicks were assumed to be associated with echolocation (Frantzis et al., 2002). Johnson et al. (2004) recorded frequencies of Cuvier's clicks ranging from about 12 to 40 kHz with associated SLs of 200 to 220 dB re 1 µPa @ 1 m (peak-to-peak). Johnson et al. (2004) also found that Cuvier's beaked whales do not vocalize when within 656 ft (200 m) of the surface and only started clicking at an average depth of 1,558 ft (475 m) and stopped clicking on the ascent at an average depth of 2,789 ft (850 m) with click intervals of approximately 0.4 sec. Zimmer et al. (2005a) also studied the echolocation clicks of Cuvier's beaked whales and recorded a SL of 214 dB re 1 µPa @ 1 m (peak-to-peak). There are no available data regarding seasonal or geographical variation in the sound production of Cuvier's beaked whales.

- *Longman's Beaked Whale (Indopacetus pacificus)*

Longman's beaked whale, also known as the Indo-Pacific beaked whale, is currently classified as data deficient by IUCN. Very few population data are available for this little-known beaked whale. Although no global abundance estimate of this species is available, 7,619 Longman's beaked whales (CV=0.66) are estimated to occur in the Hawaii and WNP stocks (Bradford et al., 2017), while 16,867 whales are estimated to occur in the Indian Ocean stock (Wade and Gerrodette, 1993).

The distribution of this rarely occurring beaked whale is oceanic tropical waters of the Indo-Pacific oceans (Leatherwood and Reeves, 1983; Jefferson et al., 2008; Pitman, 2018). Longman's beaked whales appear to be rare in the eastern Pacific and Indian oceans but occur more commonly in the western Pacific and western Indian oceans, suggesting to Pitman (2018) that this species prefers the warmer waters typically found in western ocean basins. Nothing is known about possible seasonal movements of this beaked whale.

Only a small number of dive times have been recorded for the Longman's beaked whale. Two dive duration periods were reported by Anderson et al. (2006) for Longman's beaked whales: short durations lasting from 11 to 18 min and long durations ranging from 20 to 33 min, although one beaked whale possibly was submerged as long as 45 min. No data are available on swim speeds.

No direct measurements of hearing sensitivity are available for the Longman's beaked whales (Ketten, 2000; Thewissen, 2002). Longman's beaked whales produce burst-pulse, echolocation click, and pulse vocalizations. Echolocation clicks have a frequency range between 15 and 25 kHz, while pulses exhibit a 25 kHz FM upswept frequency signal and burst-pulses are a long sequence of clicks lasting ~ 0.5 seconds (Rankin et al., 2011).

- *Mesoplodon Beaked Whales*

Six species of *Mesoplodon* beaked whales may occur in the SURTASS LFA sonar study area. These species include: Blainville's, Deraniyagala's, ginkgo-toothed, Hubbs', spade-toothed, and Stejneger's beaked whales (Table 3-6). The *Mesoplodon* species are not well known, are difficult to identify to the species at sea, and so little about their behavior has been documented that much of the available characterization for beaked whales is to genus level only; for this reason, information on the *Mesoplodon* beaked whale species is presented together.

Species in the genus *Mesoplodon* are currently classified with a data deficient status by IUCN. The worldwide population sizes for all species of *Mesoplodon* spp. are unknown. The population of Blainville's beaked whales in the Hawaii stock was reported as 2,105 whales (CV=1.13) (Bradford et al., 2017), while 8,032 Blainville's beaked whales have been estimated for the WNP stock (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003; LGL, 2011). In the North Pacific stocks, populations of 22,799 whales have been estimated for Deraniyagala, ginkgo-toothed, and Hubbs' beaked whales (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003). In the Indian Ocean stock, populations each of 16,687 whales are estimated for Blainville's, Deraniyagala, ginkgo-toothed, and spade-toothed beaked whales (Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The population of Stejneger's beaked whales is estimated to include 8,000 individuals in the WNP stock (Kasuya, 1986).

With the exception of cold, polar waters, *Mesoplodon* beaked whales are distributed in all of the world's oceans in deep (>6,562 ft [2,000 m]) pelagic waters. The distribution of ginkgo-toothed beaked whales is restricted to the tropical and warm-temperate waters of the North Pacific and Indian oceans. In the North Pacific Ocean, Stejneger's beaked whales occur in temperate to subarctic waters, while Hubbs' beaked whale occurs only in temperate waters (Olson, 2018). Spade-toothed beaked whales have a very restricted distributional range in the southern Pacific Ocean and the southeastern most Indian Ocean, ranging from Australia and New Zealand to Chile. Blainville's beaked whales are the most cosmopolitan of the beaked whales and can be found in the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian oceans in warm temperate and tropical waters (Pitman, 2009b). The little known Deraniyagala beaked whale ranges throughout the tropical waters of the equatorial Indo-Pacific (Dalebout et al., 2014).

Dives of Blainville's beaked whales average 7.5 min during social interactions (Baird et al., 2004). Dives over 45 min have been recorded for some species in this genus (Jefferson et al., 1993). Dive depths are variable among *Mesoplodon* species and are not well documented. In Hawaii, a Blainville's beaked whale was observed to dive to a maximum water depth of 4,619 ft (1,408 m), with the dive duration ranging from 48 to 68 min (Pitman, 2009b). Blainville's beaked whales in the Caribbean Sea performed dives with a mean depth of 3,704 ft (1,129 m) and mean duration of 46.1 min, with the whale's non-foraging dives reaching ~1,148 ft (350 m) and lasting 40 min, while foraging dives ranged between 1,969 to 6,234 ft (600 and 1,900 m) with a duration between 30 and 70 min (Joyce et al., 2017). Few swim speed data are available for any beaked whale species. Schorr et al. (2009) reported a horizontal swim speed of 0.4 to 0.8 kt (0.8 to 1.5 kph) for a Blainville's beaked whales in Hawaii with a maximum rate of 4.4 kt (8.1 kph).

The hearing sensitivity of a stranded Blainville's beaked whale was measured at 5.6 and 160 kHz, with the best hearing response ranging between 40 and 50 kHz, with AEP thresholds less than 50 dB re 1 μPa (Pacini et al., 2011). In a study of echolocation clicks in Blainville's beaked whales, Johnson et al. (2006) found that the whales make various types of clicks while foraging. The whales have a distinct search click that is in the form of an FM upsweep with a minus 10 dB bandwidth from 26 to 51 kHz (Johnson et al., 2006). Blainville's beaked whales also produce a buzz click during the final stage of prey capture that has no FM structure but exhibits a minus 10 dB bandwidth from 25 to 80 kHz or higher (Johnson et al., 2006). Johnson et al. (2004) studied Blainville's beaked whales and concluded that no vocalizations were detected from any tagged beaked whales when they were within 656 ft (200 m) of the surface. The Blainville's beaked whale started clicking at an average depth of 1,312 ft (400 m), ranging from 200 to 570 m (656 to 1,870 ft), and stopped clicking when they started their ascent at an average depth of 2,362 ft (720 m), with a range of 1,640 to 2,591 ft (500 to 790 m). The intervals between regular clicks were approximately 0.4 second, and trains of clicks often ended in a buzz. Blainville's beaked whales have a somewhat flat spectrum that was accurately sampled between 30 and 48 kHz, with a slight decrease in the spectrum above 40 kHz, although the 96 kHz sampling rate was not sufficient to sample the full frequency range of clicks from either of the species (Johnson et al., 2004).

- *Southern Bottlenose Whale (Hyperoodon planifrons)*

The IUCN classifies the status of the southern bottlenose whales as least concern (lower risk). The population of southern bottlenose whales south of the Antarctic Convergence has been estimated as 500,000 whales, which makes this species the most commonly observed beaked whale in Antarctic waters (Jefferson et al., 2008). In the Indian Ocean, an estimated 599,300 southern bottlenose whales occur (Kasamatsu and Joyce, 1995).

Southern bottlenose whales are found south of 20°S, with a circumpolar distribution (Leatherwood and Reeves, 1983; Jefferson et al., 2008). Evidence of seasonal migration shows a northward movement near South Africa in February and southward movement toward the Antarctic in October (Sekiguchi et al., 1993). Calving and breeding grounds are unknown.

Hooker and Baird (1999) documented dives for the closely related northern bottlenose whales, reporting regular dives between 394 ft (120 m) and 2,625 ft (800 m), with a maximum recorded dive depth to 4,770 ft (1,453 m). The deeper dives of northern bottlenose whales have been associated with foraging behavior (Hooker and Baird, 1999). Martin Lopez et al. (2015) reported a mean dive depth of 5,158 ft (1,572 m) and a mean dive duration of 49 min. Dive durations have been recorded close to 70 min. Southern bottlenose whales have been observed diving from 11 to 46 min, with an average duration of 25.3 min (Sekiguchi et al., 1993). General swim speeds for ziphiids average 2.7 kt (5 kph) (Kastelein and Gerrits, 1991).

There is no direct measurement of hearing sensitivity for bottlenose whales (Ketten, 2000; Thewissen, 2002). Off Nova Scotia, diving northern bottlenose whales produced regular click series (consistent inter-click intervals) at depth with peak frequencies of 6 to 8 kHz and 16 to 20 kHz (Hooker and Whitehead, 1998). Click trains produced during social interactions at the surface ranged in peak intensity from 2 to 4 kHz and 10 to 12 kHz. Additional measurements report that the whales produce FM sweeps from 20 to

55 kHz, with rms source levels between 175 and 202 dB re 1μPa @ 1 m (Wahlberg et al., 2011a). There is no seasonal or geographical variation documented for the northern bottlenose whale. There are no available data for the sound production of southern bottlenose whales.

- ***Odontocetes (Toothed Whales): Delphinidae***

  - *Common Dolphin (Delphinus delphis delphis) and Indo-Pacific Common Dolphin (Delphinus delphis tropicalis)*

The SMM (2017) has recently resolved and revised the complex taxonomy of the common dolphin, which it had formerly divided into multiple subspecies. Although the Indo-Pacific common dolphin is retained as a subspecies, the SMM no longer recognizes the long-beaked and short-beaked subspecies of common dolphins—these species are now simply the common dolphin. Thus, in this SEIS/SOEIS, we include two species of common dolphins: the common dolphin and the Indo-Pacific common dolphin. The Indo-Pacific common dolphin is essentially a long-beaked variant that occurs in the Indian Ocean (SMM, 2017). However, the characterizations that define the two species are difficult to assess at sea, and until recently, at-sea observations only reported "common" dolphins generically. Since little information is known to the species level, information that follows refers to both subspecies of common dolphins.

The common dolphin is classified as a least concern (lower risk) species by the IUCN. The global population for all common dolphin species is unknown. In the WNP stock, 3,286,163 common dolphins are estimated (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003), while 1,819,882 common and Indo-Pacific common dolphins are estimated to occur in the Indian Ocean (Wade and Gerrodette, 1993).

Common dolphins are widely distributed worldwide in temperate, tropical, and subtropical oceans, primarily in neritic waters of the continental shelf and steep bank regions where upwelling occurs (Jefferson et al. 2015; Perrin, 2009b). These dolphins seem to be most common in the coastal waters of the Pacific Ocean, often occurring within 97.2 nmi (180 km) of land (Jefferson et al., 2015

Dive depths range between 30 and 656 ft (9 and 200 m), with a majority of dives 30 to 164 ft (9 to 50 m) (Evans, 1994). The deepest dive recorded for these species was 850 ft (260 m) (Evans, 1971). The maximum dive duration has been documented at 5 min (Heyning and Perrin, 1994). Swim speeds for *Delphinus* spp. have been measured at 3.1 kt (5.8 kph) with maximum speeds of 8.7 kt (16.2 kph); but in other studies, common dolphins have been recorded at swimming up to 20 kt (37.1 kph) (Croll et al., 1999; Hui, 1987). Common dolphins tracked off California swum at an average speed of 4.9 kt (9 kph) {Wiggins et al., 2013).

Very little is known about hearing in common dolphins. Popov and Klishin (1998) measured the hearing threshold of a common dolphin by auditory brainstem response and discovered an U-shaped audiogram with a steeper high-frequency branch and an auditory range from 10 to 150 kHz, with greatest sensitivity between 60 and 70 kHz; it should be noted that the dolphin was ill, died while in captivity, and testing appears to have been conducted on the dead animal. Aroyan (2001) modeled three-dimensional hearing in the common dolphin to elucidate the hearing processes and reported tissue-borne sound reception channels in the head of the common dolphin with the suggestion that the lower jaw exhibits strongly directional reception. Common dolphins produce sounds as low as 0.2 kHz and as high as 150 kHz, with dominant frequencies at 0.5 to 18 kHz and 30 to 60 kHz (Au, 1993; Moore and Ridgway, 1995; Popper, 1980]; Watkins, 1967). Signal types consist of clicks, squeals, whistles, and creaks (Evans, 1994). Whistles of the short-beaked common dolphin range between 3.5 and 23.5 kHz

(Ansmann et al., 2007), while the whistles of long-beaked common dolphins ranges from 7.7 to 15.5 kHz (Oswald et al., 2003). Most of the energy of echolocation clicks is concentrated between 15 and 100 kHz (Croll et al., 1999). The maximum peak-to-peak SL of common dolphins is 180 dB. In the North Atlantic, the mean SL was approximately 143 dB with a maximum of 154 (Croll et al., 1999). There are no available data regarding seasonal or geographical variation in the sound production of common dolphins.

- *Common Bottlenose Dolphin (Tursiops truncatus)*

Overall, the common bottlenose dolphin is classified as least concern (lower risk) by the IUCN. The global population for the bottlenose dolphin is unknown. The abundance of common bottlenose dolphins in the WNP Northern Offshore stock, which includes bottlenose dolphins in the area of the WNP bounded by 30° N, 145°E to 180°E, is estimated as 100,281 dolphins (Kasuya and Perrin, 2017; Miyashita, 1993). The population of the WNP Southern Offshore stock of bottlenose dolphins, found in the area between 23° to 30° N, 127°to 180° E, has been estimated to include 40,769 dolphins (Kanaji et al., 2018). Common bottlenose dolphins occurring in Pacific coastal waters of Japan are part of the Japanese Coastal stock, which is estimated to include 3,516 dolphins (Kanaji et al., 2018). The Inshore Archipelago stock of common bottlenose dolphins that occurs in the Asian continental seas includes 105,138 dolphins (Miyashita, 1986 and 1993). The Hawaii population of pelagic common bottlenose dolphins includes 21,815 individuals (CV=0.57) (Bradford et al., 2017); while the insular Hawaiian stocks of common bottlenose dolphins include an estimated 184 dolphins in the Kauai/Niihau stock, 743 individuals in the Oahu stock, 191 dolphins in the 4-Island stock, and 128 individuals in the Hawaii Island stock (Baird et al., 2009; Carretta et al., 2018). The population of common bottlenose dolphins in the Indian Ocean stock is estimated as 785,585 dolphins (Wade and Gerrodette, 1993), while 3,000 common bottlenose dolphins may occur in the waters off Western Australia (Preen et al., 1997).

The bottlenose dolphin is distributed worldwide in temperate to tropical waters. In North America, they inhabit waters with temperatures ranging from 50 to 89°F (10 to 32°C) (Wells and Scott, 2009). Common bottlenose dolphins are primarily found in coastal waters, but they also occur in diverse habitats ranging from rivers and protected bays to oceanic islands and the open ocean, over the continental shelf, and along the shelf break (Scott and Chivers, 1990; Sudara and Mahakunayanakul, 1998; Wells and Scott, 2009). Seasonal movements vary between inshore and offshore locations and year-round home ranges (Croll et al., 1999; Wells and Scott, 2009). Calving season is generally year-round with peaks occurring from early spring to early fall (Scott and Chivers, 1990). There are no known breeding grounds.

Dive times for bottlenose dolphins range from 38 sec to 1.2 min, with dives having been recorded to last as long as 10 min (Croll et al., 1999; Mate et al., 1995). The dive depth of a bottlenose dolphin in Tampa Bay, Florida, was measured at 322 ft (98 m) (Mate et al., 1995). Wild offshore bottlenose dolphins were reported to dive to depths greater than 1,476 ft (450 m) (Klatsky et al., 2007). The deepest dive recorded for a bottlenose dolphin is 1,755 ft (535 m) by a trained individual (Ridgway, 1986). Sustained swim speeds for the bottlenose dolphin range between 2.2 and 10.8 kt (4 and 20 kph) and may reach speeds as high as 29 kt (54 kph) (Lockyer and Morris, 1987).

Bottlenose dolphins hear underwater sounds in the range of 150 Hz to 135 kHz (Johnson, 1967; Ljungblad et al., 1982). Their best underwater hearing occurs between 15 and 110 kHz, where the threshold level range is 42 to 52 dB RL (Au, 1993). Nachtigall et al. (2000) more recently measured the range of highest sensitivity as between 25 and 70 kHz, with peaks in sensitivity at 25 and 50 kHz (). Bottlenose dolphins also have good sound location abilities and are most sensitive when sounds arrive directly towards the head (Richardson et al., 1995). Bottlenose dolphins are able to voluntarily reduce their hearing sensitivity to loud sounds (Nachtigall and Supin, 2015).

Bottlenose dolphins produce sounds as low as 50 Hz and as high as 150 kHz with dominant frequencies at 0.3 to 14.5 kHz, 25 to 30 kHz, and 95 to 130 kHz (Croll et al., 1999; dos Santos et al., 1990; Johnson, 1967; McCowan and Reiss, 1995; Oswald et al., 2003; Popper, 1980; Schultz et al., 1995). The maximum SL reported is 228 dB (Croll et al., 1999). Bottlenose dolphins produce a variety of whistles, echolocation clicks, low-frequency narrow, “bray” and burst-pulse sounds. Echolocation clicks with peak frequencies from 40 to 130 kHz are hypothesized to be used in navigation, foraging, and predator detection (Au, 1993; Houser et al., 1999; Jones and Sayigh, 2002). According to Au (1993), sonar clicks are broadband, ranging in frequency from a few kilohertz to more than 150 kHz, with a 3 dB bandwidth of 30 to 60 kHz (Croll et al., 1999). The echolocation signals usually have a 50 to 100 msec duration with peak frequencies ranging from 30 to 100 kHz and fractional bandwidths between 10 and 90 percent of the peak frequency (Houser et al., 1999). Burst-pulses, or squawks, are commonly produced during social interactions. These sounds are broadband vocalizations that consist of rapid sequences of clicks. Inter-click intervals (ICIs) vary to form different types of click patterns such as 1) low-frequency clicks that have no regular repeating interval; 2) train clicks (ICI = 35-143 msec); 3) Packed clicks (ICI = 2-6 msec); and 4) Burst, with an ICI of 1.7 to 4.9 msec, with more clicks than a packed click train (Buscaino et al., 2015). Burst-pulse sounds are typically used during escalations of aggression (Croll et al., 1999). Whistles range in frequency from 1.5 to 23 kHz and have durations up to 4 seconds (Díaz López, 2011; Gridley et al., 2015). Each individual bottlenose dolphin has a fixed, unique FM pattern, or contour whistle called a signature whistle. These signal types have been well studied and are used for recognition, but may have other social contexts (Janik et al., 2013; Jones and Sayigh, 2002; Kuczaj et al., 2015). Signature whistles have a narrow-band sound with the frequency commonly between 4 and 20 kHz, duration between 0.1 and 3.6 seconds, and an SL of 125 to 140 dB (Croll et al., 1999).

- *False Killer Whale (Pseudorca crassidens)*

False killer whales are classified as least concern (lower risk) by the IUCN. Three populations of false killer whales have been identified in Hawaiian waters, but only the Main Hawaiian Island Insular DPS of false killer whales is listed under the ESA as endangered and depleted under the MMPA (NOAA, 2012b). The populations of false killer whales occurring in the insular waters of the Hawaiian Islands have been shown to be genetically and behaviorally distinct from false killer whales found in oceanic or offshore waters (Chivers et al., 2010; Martien et al., 2011; NOAA, 2012b). The boundaries between the Hawaiian Island populations of false killer whales are complex and overlapping. The areal extent of the Main Hawaiian Island Insular DPS of false killer whales is a 39-nmi (72-km) radius around the Main Hawaiian Islands, with the offshore extent of the DPS’ outer boundary connected on the leeward sides of Hawaii Island and Niihau to encompass the offshore movements of Main Hawaiian Islands Insular DPS false killer whales within that region (Carretta et al., 2015). In comparison to other populations of false killer whales, the Main Hawaiian Islands Insular DPS is characterized by a very low abundance and very high density, suggesting that either the nearshore habitat used by these whales is highly productive or these whales employ an unique habitat-use strategy that supports a high density of false killer whales (Oleson et al., 2010; Wearmouth and Sims, 2008). Critical habitat has been designated for the Main Hawaiian Island Insular DPS of the false killer whale (NOAA, 2018c). The critical habitat for the Main Hawaiian Islands DPS of false killer whales includes waters from the 148- to 10,499-ft (45-to 3,200-m) depth contours around the Main Hawaiian Islands from Niihau east to Hawaii (Figure 3-8); some Navy and

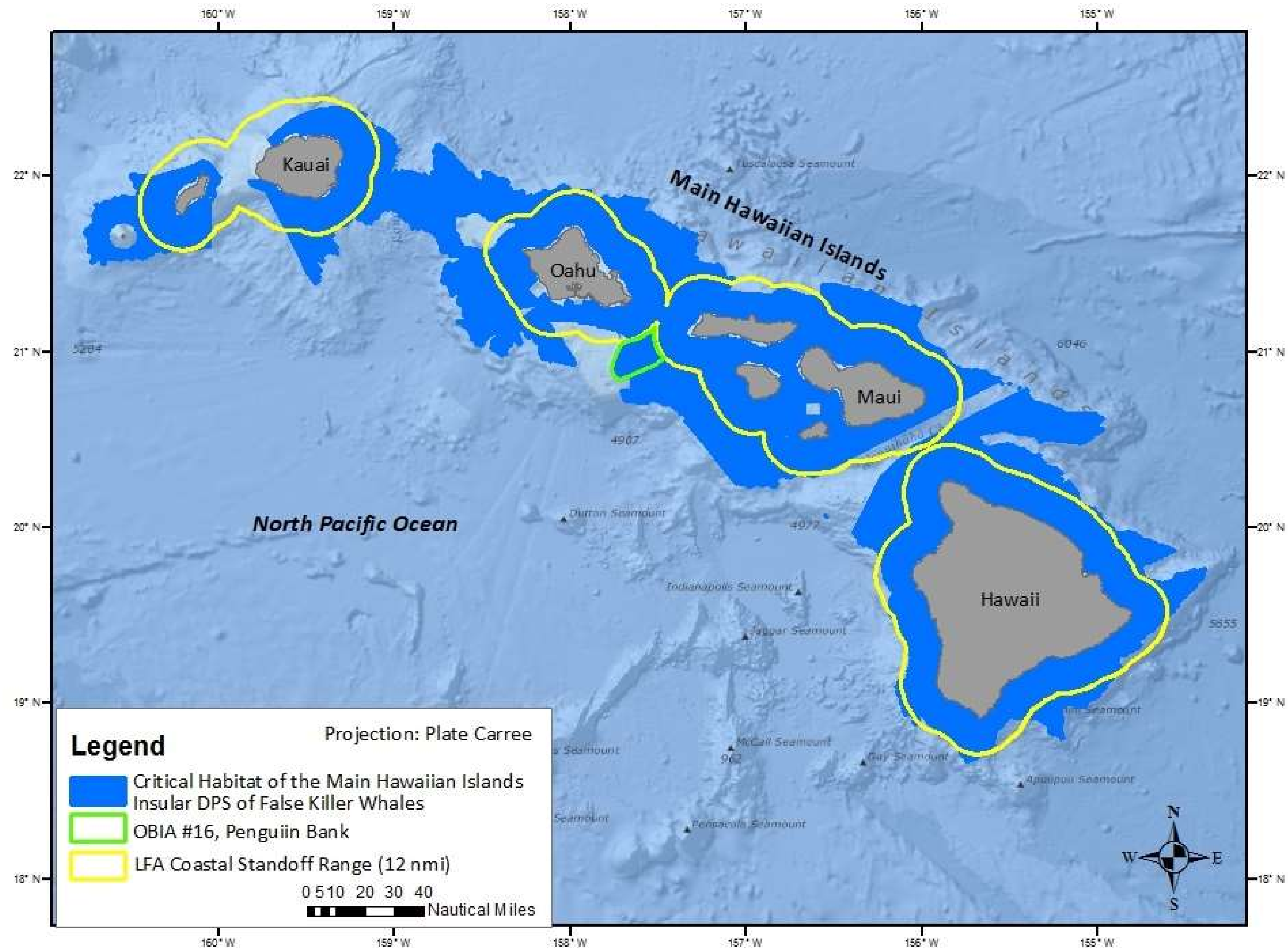



Figure 3-8. Critical Habitat Designated for the Main Hawaiian Islands Insular Distinct Population Segment of False Killer Whales in Hawaiian Waters (NOAA, 2018d).

other federal agency areas, such as the Pacific Missile Range Facility offshore ranges, are excluded from the critical habitat (NOAA, 2018c).

The global population for the false killer whale is unknown. Estimates of 16,668 whales have been documented in the northwestern Pacific (Miyashita, 1993) and 9,777 whales have been estimated in the Inshore Archipelago stock of the Asian continental seas (Miyashita, 1986). In Hawaiian waters, false killer whale populations have been estimated as 1,540 whales (CV=0.66) in the Hawaii pelagic population, 617 whales (CV=1.11) in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands DPS, and 167 whales in the Main Hawaiian Islands Insular DPS (Bradford et al., 2018; Carretta et al., 2018). The population of false killer whales in the Indian Ocean has been estimated as 144,188 whales (Wade and Gerrodette, 1993).

False killer whales are found worldwide in tropical to warm temperate zones in deep (> 3,300 ft (1,000 m) waters (Baird, 2009a; Odell and McClune, 1999; Stacey et al., 1994). Although typically a pelagic species, they approach close to the shores of oceanic islands and regularly mass strand (Baird, 2009a). In the North Pacific Ocean, false killer whales are well documented in the waters of southern Japan, Hawaii, ETP, and off the U.S. West Coast. In the waters of the Hawaiian Archipelago, false killer whales occur in nearshore (Baird et al. 2008, 2013) and pelagic waters, including waters surrounding Palmyra and Johnston Atolls (Barlow et al., 2008, Bradford and Forney, 2013). False killer whales have a poorly known ecology. Breeding grounds and seasonality in breeding are unknown; however, one population does have a breeding peak in late winter (Jefferson et al., 2015). These whales do not have specific feeding grounds but feed opportunistically (Jefferson et al., 2015).

False killer whales tagged in the western North Pacific performed both shallow and deep dives. Shallow dives had a mean duration of 103 sec and a mean maximum depth of 56 ft (17 m), while deep dives had a mean duration of 269 sec (SD = 189) and a mean maximum depth of 424 ft (129 m) (SD = 185) (Minamikawa et al., 2013), while the longest dives lasted 15 min and the deepest went to 2,133 ft (650 m). Dives were deeper during the day, suggesting that the whales are feeding on the deep scattering layer during the day (Minamikawa et al., 2013). False killer whales have an approximate swim speed of 1.6 kt (3 kph), although a maximum swim speed has been documented at 14.5 kt (26.9 kph) (Brown et al., 1966; Rohr et al., 2002).

False killer whales hear underwater sounds in the range of less than 1 to 115 kHz (Au, 1993; Johnson, 1967). Their best underwater hearing occurs at 17 kHz, where the threshold level ranges between 39 to 49 dB RL. In a study by Yuen et al. (2005), false killer whales' hearing was measured using both behavioral and AEP audiograms. The behavioral data show that this species is most sensitive between 16 and 24 kHz, with peak sensitivity at 20 kHz. The AEP data show that this species best hearing sensitivity is from 16 to 22.5 kHz, with peak sensitivity at 22.5 kHz. Au et al. (1997) studied the effects of the Acoustic Thermometry of Ocean Climate (ATOC) program on false killer whales. The ATOC source transmitted 75-Hz, 195 dB SL signals. The hearing thresholds for false killer whales were 140.7 dB RL ± 1.2 dB for the 75-Hz pure tone and 139.0 dB RL ±1.1 dB for the ATOC signal. False killer whales have the ability to reduce their hearing sensitivity in response to loud sounds (Nachtigall and Supin, 2013).

False killer whales produce a wide variety of sounds from 4 to 130 kHz, with dominant frequencies between 25 to 30 kHz and 95 to 130 kHz (Busnel and Dziedzic, 1968; Kamminga and Van Velden, 1987; Murray et al., 1998; Thomas and Turl, 1990). Most signal types vary among whistles, burst-pulse sounds and click trains (Murray et al. 1998). Whistles generally range between 4.7 and 6.1 kHz. Echolocation clicks of false killer whales are highly directional and range between 20 and 60 kHz and 100 and 130 kHz (Kamminga and van Velden, 1987; Madsen et al., 2004a; Thomas and Turl, 1990). There are no available data regarding seasonal or geographical variation in the sound production of false killer whales. Estimated peak-to-peak SL of captive animal clicks is near 228 dB re 1 µPa @ 1 m (Madsen et al., 2004a; Thomas and Turl, 1990).

- *Fraser's Dolphin (Lagenodelphis hosei)*

Fraser's dolphin is classified as a data deficient species by the IUCN. The global population for this species is unknown. Abundances or densities of Fraser's dolphins only exist for a limited number of regions. In the WNP stock, 220,789 Fraser's dolphins are estimated; while in the Central North Pacific stock, which includes Hawaii, 51,491 dolphins (CV=0.66) have been estimated (Bradford et al., 2017). The Indian Ocean population is estimated to include 151,554 dolphins (Wade and Gerrodette, 1993).

Fraser's dolphins occur primarily in tropical and subtropical waters of the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian oceans (Croll et al., 1999; Dolar, 2009). This oceanic species is most commonly found in deep waters (4,921 to 6,562 ft [1,500 to 2,000 m]) usually 8.1 to 11 nmi (15 to 20 km) from shore or where deepwater approaches the shore, as occurs in the Philippines, Taiwan, some Caribbean islands, and the Indonesian-Malay Archipelago (Jefferson et al., 2015). Breeding areas and seasonal movements of this species have not been confirmed. However, in Japan, calving appears to peak in the spring and fall. There is some evidence that calving occurs in the summer in South Africa (Dolar, 2009).

Little information on the diving ability of the Fraser's dolphin is available. Based on prey composition, it is believed that Fraser's dolphins feed at two depth horizons in the ETP: the shallowest depth in this region is no less than 820 ft (250 m) and the deepest is no less than 1,640 ft (500 m). In the Sulu Sea, these dolphins appear to feed from near the surface to at least 1,968 ft (600 m). Off South Africa and in the Caribbean Sea, Fraser's dolphins were observed feeding near the surface (Dolar et al., 2003). According to Watkins et al. (1994), Fraser's dolphins are known to herd when they feed, swimming rapidly to an area, diving for 15 sec or more, surfacing and splashing in a coordinated effort to surround the school of fish. Swim speeds of Fraser's dolphin have been recorded between 2.2 and 3.8 kt (4 and 7 kph) with swim speeds up to 15 kt (28 kph) when escaping predators (Croll et al., 1999).

Hearing sensitivity of Fraser's dolphins has not been measured (Ketten, 2000; Thewissen, 2002). Fraser's dolphins produce sounds ranging from 4.3 to over 40 kHz (Leatherwood et al., 1993; Watkins et al., 1994). Echolocation clicks are described as short broadband sounds without emphasis at frequencies below 40 kHz, while whistles were frequency-modulated tones concentrated between 4.3 and 24 kHz. Whistles have been suggested as communicative signals during social activity (Watkins et al., 1994). There are no available data regarding seasonal or geographical variation in the sound production of Fraser's dolphins. Source levels were not available.

- *Indo-Pacific Bottlenose Dolphin (Tursiops aduncus)*

Only recently has this species' taxonomy been clearly differentiated from that of the common bottlenose dolphin. Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphins are considered data deficient by the IUCN. No global abundance estimates exist for the species and even regional abundance estimates are few, even though it is the most commonly observed marine mammal species in some coastal regions of the world. Estimates of Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphins include 218 animals in Japanese waters and 1,634 to 1,934 dolphins in Australian waters (Wang and Yang, 2009). The population includes more than 24 dolphins off Taiwan and 44 dolphins in the northeast Philippines (Jefferson et al., 2015). In the Indian Ocean, the population has been numbered at 7,850 dolphins (Wade and Gerrodette, 1993).

Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphins occur in warm temperate to tropical waters of the Indian Ocean and southwestern Pacific Ocean, from South Africa and the Red Sea and Persian Gulf to southern Japan, Indonesia, Malaysia, and central Australia (Jefferson et al., 2015). Considered principally a coastal species, the Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin occurs predominantly in continental shelf and insular shelf waters, usually in shallow coastal and inshore waters (Cribb et al., 2013; Jefferson et al., 2015). However, movements across deep, oceanic waters have been reported (Wang and Yang, 2009).

Little information is known about the diving ability of the Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin, but dive depths and durations are thought be less than 656 ft (200 m) and from 5 to 10 min (Wang and Yang, 2009). Swimming speeds range from 0.8 to 2.2 kt (1.5 to 4.1 kph), but bursts of higher speeds can reach 8.6 to 10.3 kt (16 to 19 kph) (Wang and Yang, 2009).

Although much is known about hearing in the common bottlenose dolphin, specific hearing data are not yet available for the Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin. These dolphins produce whistle and pulsed call vocalizations. Whistles range in frequency from 4 to 12 kHz (Gridley et al., 2012; Morisaka et al., 2005a). Morisaka et al. (2005a) found variations in whistles between populations of Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphins and determined that ambient noise levels were likely responsible for the whistle variability (Morisaka et al., 2005b). Variability in whistle structure has been documented between both nearby and distant groups, although a few whistle types were shared, suggesting that their repertoire is driven by social functions such as group identity (Hawkins, 2010). Preliminary analyses suggest that Info-Pacific bottlenose dolphins use signature whistles like the common bottlenose dolphin (Gridley et al., 2014). Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin echolocation clicks have peak-to-peak source levels that range between 177 to 219 dB, with a duration of 8-48 μsec, and peak frequencies that range from 45 to 141 kHz (de Freitas et al., 2015; Wahlberg et al., 2011b).

- *Killer Whale (Orcinus orca)*

The killer whale is classified as a data deficient species under the IUCN. In 2005, NMFS listed the Southern Resident killer whale DPS as endangered under the ESA (NOAA, 2005c). Both the Southern Resident and AT1 Transient stocks of killer whales are listed as depleted under the MMPA. Critical habitat has been designated for the Southern Resident killer whales in the inland marine waters of Washington (Puget Sound, Strait of Juan de Fuca, and Haro Strait) (NOAA, 2006).

Generally, three major ecotypes of killer whales have been identified: the coastal (fish-eating) residents, the coastal (mammal-eating) transients, and the offshore types of killer whales. The basic social unit for all of these ecotypes is the matrilineal group (Ford, 2009). In resident killer whales, pods are formed from multiple matrilines and related pods form clans. Resident killer whales in the North Pacific consist of the southern, northern, southern Alaska (which includes southeast Alaska and Prince William Sound whales), western Alaska, and western North Pacific groups (NOAA, 2005c).

Although no current global population estimates are available, Jefferson et al. (2015) estimated the killer whale worldwide abundance near 50,000 individuals. An abundance of 146 killer whales (CV=0.96) are currently estimated in the Hawaii stock (Bradford et al., 2017; Carretta et al., 2014), while 12,256 whales estimated to occur in the WNP stock (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003). In the Indian Ocean, killer whales' number 12,593 individuals (Wade and Gerrodette, 1993).

The killer whale is perhaps the most cosmopolitan of all marine mammals, found in all the world's oceans from about 80°N to 77°S, especially in areas of high productivity and in high latitude coastal areas (Ford, 2009; Leatherwood and Dalheim, 1978). However, killer whales appear to be more common within 430 nmi (800 km) of major continents in cold-temperate to subpolar waters (Mitchell, 1975). Individual populations are known to migrate between high and low latitude waters (Dahlheim et al., 2008; Durban and Pitman, 2012; Matthews et al., 2011). In the northwestern Pacific along the coast of southeastern Kamchatka, fish-eating, coastal killer whales forage in Avachinskaya Bay (aka Avacha Bay), although some transient (mammal-eating) killer whales have been detected in these waters acoustically (Burdin et al., 2007). As of 2011, 640 killer whales were estimated to occur in Avacha Bay (Russian Orcas, 2019), and killer whales in these waters have been categorized into three acoustic clans (Filatova et al., 2011). The Avacha Bay killer whales were considered resident in the bay, but photo-ID matches with killer whales in the Commander Islands have shown that some movements take place between the two locations. The Avacha Bay killer whales are now considered part of the Eastern Kamchatka resident group, which encompasses both Avacha Bay and the Commander Islands (Filatova et al., 2012a).

The diving behavior of killer whales differs between fish-eating and mammal-eating types. Baird et al. (2005) reported that southern resident (fish-eating) killer whales in Washington State had a mean maximum dive depth of 463 ft (141 m [SD = 62 m]), with a maximum dive depth of 807 ft (246 m). Males dove more often and remained submerged longer than females and dove more during the day than at night. Fish-eating killer whales in Antarctica dove to depths ranging from about 656 to 2,625 ft (200 to 800 m) (Reisinger et al., 2015); these killer whales also dove significantly deeper during the day than the night. Miller et al. (2010) reported on the diving behavior of transient (mammal-eating) killer whales in Alaska. Dives were categorized as short and shallow or long and deep. Short dives lasted less than one minute to water depths <16 ft (5 m), while deep dives ranged between 39 to 164 ft (12 and 50 m) in depth and lasted from 4 to 6 min. The mammal-easting killer whales dove much less deeply than the fish-eating whales, reflecting the distribution of their prey. Swimming speeds usually range between 3.2 to 5.4 kt (6 to 10 kph) but short bursts of speeds up to 20 kt (37 kph) have been documented (Lang, 1966; LeDuc, 2009).

Killer whales hear underwater sounds in the range of <500 Hz to 120 kHz (Bain et al., 1993; Szymanski et al., 1999). Their best underwater hearing occurs between 15 and 42 kHz (Hall and Johnson, 1972; Szymanski et al., 1999). Killer whales produce sounds as low as 80 Hz and as high as 85 kHz with dominant frequencies at 1 to 20 kHz (Awbrey, 1982; Diercks et al., 1973; Diercks et al., 1971; Evans, 1973; Ford, 1989; Ford and Fisher, 1982; Miller and Bain, 2000; Schevill and Watkins, 1966). An average of 12 different call types (range 7 to 17)—mostly repetitive discrete calls—exist for some pods of killer whales (Ford, 2009). Pulsed vocalizations tend to be in the range between 500 Hz and 10 kHz and may be used for group cohesion and identity (Ford, 2009; Frankel, 2018). Whistles range in frequency up to at least 75 kHz (Filatova et al., 2012; Samarra et al., 2015; Simonis et al., 2012). Echolocation clicks are also included in killer whale repertoires but are not a dominant signal type in comparison to pulsed calls (Miller and Bain, 2000). Erbe (2002) recorded received broadband SPLs of killer whale's burst-pulse calls that ranged between 105 and 124 dB RL at an estimated distance of 328 ft (100 m). Offshore killer whales tracked in the Southern California Bight had SLs for echolocation clicks of 170 to 205 dB re 1μPa @ 1 m (peak-peak) (Gassmann et al., 2013). Whistle source levels ranged between 185 and 193 dB re 1 μPa @ 1 m. Pulse call source levels ranged between 146-158 dB re 1μPa @ 1 m. While the basic structure of killer whale vocalizations is similar within all populations, geographic variation between populations does exist (Samarra et al., 2015).

All pods within a clan have similar dialects of pulsed calls and whistles. Killer whales engaged in different activities produce different proportion of calls, suggesting that high-frequency and biphonic calls are used for long range communication, and LF monophonic calls are used for intra-pod signaling (Filatova et al., 2013). Intense LF pulsed calls (683 Hz, 169 to 192 dB re 1 µPa @ 1 m (peak-peak) appear to be used to manipulate herring prey, increasing foraging efficiency (Simon et al., 2006).

- *Melon-headed Whale (Peponocephala electra)*

Melon-headed whales are classified as a lower risk (least concern) species by the IUCN. The global population for this species is unknown. Kanaji et al. (2018) estimated the population of the WNP to include 56, 213 individuals. Two populations have been documented in Hawaiian waters: the Hawaiian Islands stock with an estimated 8,666 whales (CV=1.00) (Bradford et al., 2017), and the Kohala resident population with an estimated 447 whales (CV=0.12) (Aschettino, 2010; Carretta et al., 2014; Oleson et al., 2013). In the Indian Ocean, the melon-headed whale population has been estimated as 64,600 whales (Wade and Gerrodette, 1993).

The melon-headed whale occurs in pelagic tropical and subtropical waters worldwide (Jefferson and Barros, 1997). Breeding areas and seasonal movements of this species have not been confirmed.

Few data are available on diving or swim speed for the melon-headed whale. Melon-headed whales feed on mesopelagic squid found down to 4,920 ft (1,500 m) deep, so they appear to feed deep in the water column (Jefferson and Barros, 1997). Mooney et al. (2012) reported in preliminary research findings that a tagged melon-headed whale in Hawaiian waters dove deeply to near the seafloor, >984 ft (300 m), at night but stayed near the sea surface during the day, with no dives >67 ft (20 m). Melon-headed whales in the Caribbean appeared to have two modes of foraging diving, with a small percentage of foraging dives descending less than 328 ft (100 m), while most of the foraging dives ranged from 492 to 1,640 ft (150 to 500 m) (Joyce et al., 2017). Dive durations were as long as 18 min (Joyce et al., 2017). No swim speeds for are available for this species.

There is no direct measurement of hearing sensitivity for melon-headed whales (Ketten, 2000; Thewissen, 2002). The first confirmed description of melon-headed whale vocalizations was reported by Frankel and Yin (2010). Melon-headed whale's clicks have frequency emphases beginning at 13 kHz and extending to at least 100 kHz (Baumann-Pickering et al., 2015a; Frankel and Yin, 2010). Dominant frequencies of whistles are 1 to 24 kHz, with both upsweeps and downsweeps in frequency modulation. Burst-pulse sounds had a mean duration of 586 msec. No available data exist regarding seasonal or geographical variation in the sound production of this species. Changes in vocalization activity patterns suggest that melon-headed whales may forage at night and rest during the day (Baumann-Pickering et al., 2015a).

- *Northern Right Whale Dolphin (Lissodelphis borealis)*

The northern right whale dolphin is classified as a least concern (lower risk) species by the IUCN. The global population in the North Pacific Ocean of the northern right whale dolphin is estimated as 68,000 animals (Jefferson et al., 2015).

This oceanic species is only found in temperate to subarctic regions of the North Pacific from roughly 34° to 54° N and 118° to 145° W (Jefferson et al., 2015; Lipsky, 2009). This range extends from the Kuril Islands (Russia) south to Japan and from the Gulf of Alaska to southern California. Northern right whale dolphins have been most often observed in waters ranging in temperature from 46.4 to 66.2°F (8 and 19°C) (Leatherwood and Walker, 1979). Northern right whale dolphins can occur near to shore when submarine canyons or other such topographic features cause deep water to be located close to the coast. Seasonally the northern right whale dolphin exhibits inshore-offshore movements in some areas, such as off southern California (Lipsky, 2009).

The maximum recorded dive duration for northern right whale dolphins is 6.25 min with a maximum dive depth of 656 ft (200 m) (Fitch and Brownell, 1968; Leatherwood and Walker, 1979). Swim speeds for northern right whale dolphins can reach 18.3 to 21.6 kt (34 to 40 kph) (Leatherwood and Reeves, 1983; Leatherwood and Walker, 1979).

There is no direct measurement of the hearing sensitivity of the northern right whale dolphin (Ketten, 2000; Thewissen, 2002). These dolphins produce sounds as low as 1 kHz and as high as 40 kHz or more, with dominant frequencies at 1.8 and 3 kHz (Fish and Turl, 1976; Leatherwood and Walker, 1979). Echolocation clicks have peak frequencies that range from 23 to 41 kHz (Rankin et al., 2007). The maximum known peak-to-peak SL of northern right whale dolphins is 170 dB (Fish and Turl, 1976). Northern right whale dolphins also produce burst-pulse sounds that are lower in frequency and shorter in duration than echolocation click sequences. The peak frequencies of burst-pulses signals range from 6 to 37 kHz with durations from 1 to 178 msec (Rankin et al., 2007). Northern right whale dolphins do not produce whistles (Oswald et al., 2008).

- *Pacific White-sided Dolphin (Lagenorhynchus obliquidens)*

Pacific white-sided dolphins are listed as least concern under the IUCN. In the North Pacific Ocean, an abundance of 931,000 Pacific white-sided dolphins has been estimated (Buckland et al., 1993; Jefferson et al., 2015).

Pacific white-sided dolphins are mostly pelagic and have a primarily cold temperate distribution across the North Pacific; in the western North Pacific, this species occurs from Taiwan north to the Commander and Kuril Islands while in the eastern North Pacific, it occurs from southern Gulf of California to the Aleutian Islands (Black, 2009; Jefferson et al., 2015). Pacific white-sided dolphins are distributed in continental shelf and slope waters generally within 100 nmi (185 km) of shore and often move into coastal and even inshore waters. No breeding grounds are known for this species.

From studies of the ecology of their prey, Pacific white-sided dolphins are presumed to dive from 393.7 to 656 ft (120 to 200 m), with most of their foraging dives lasting a mean of 27 sec (Black, 1994). Captive Pacific white-sided dolphins were recorded swimming as fast as 15.0 kt (27.7 kph) for 2 sec intervals (Fish and Hui, 1991), with a mean travel speed of 4.1 kt (7.6 kph) (Black, 1994).

Pacific white-sided dolphins hear in the frequency range of 2 to 125 kHz when the sounds are equal to or softer than 90 dB RL (Tremel et al., 1998). This species is not sensitive to LF sounds (i.e., 100 Hz to 1 kHz) (Tremel et al., 1998). Pacific white-sided dolphins produce broad-band clicks in the frequency range of 60 to 80 kHz with a SL at 180 dB re 1 µPa @ 1 m (Richardson et al., 1995). These clicks have spectral peaks at 22.2, 26.6, 33.7, and 37.3 kHz with spectral notches at 19.0, 24.5, and 29.7 kHz. These spectral characteristics can be used to identify the species from recordings (Soldevilla et al., 2008). There are no available data regarding seasonal or geographical variation in the sound production of *Lagenorhynchus* dolphins.

- *Pantropical Spotted Dolphin (Stenella attenuata)*

The pantropical spotted dolphin is one of the most abundant dolphin species in the world. This species is listed as a least concern (lower risk) species by the IUCN. The WNP population of pantropical spotted dolphins is estimated to include 130,002 individuals (Kanaji et al., 2018). Pantropical dolphins in the Central North Pacific stock, which encompasses the Hawaiian Islands, are comprised of four stocks: the pelagic stock, estimated as 55,795 dolphins (CV=0.55) (Bradford et al., 2017), as well as the Hawaii Island, Oahu, and 4-Islands stocks, which have each been estimated to include 220 individuals (Courbis et al., 2014). As many as 736,575 pantropical spotted dolphins have been estimated to occur in the Indian Ocean (Wade and Gerrodette, 1993).

Pantropical spotted dolphins occur throughout tropical and sub-tropical waters from roughly 40°N to 40°S in the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian Oceans (Perrin, 2009c). These dolphins typically are oceanic but are found close to shore in areas where deep water approaches the coast, as occurs in Taiwan, Hawaii, and the western coast of Central America (Jefferson et al., 2015). Pantropical spotted dolphins also occur in the Persian Gulf and Red Sea.

Pantropical spotted dolphins dive to at least 557.7 ft (170 m), with most of their dives to between 164 and 328 ft (50 and 100 m) for 2 to 4 min, and most foraging occurs at night (Stewart, 2009). Off Hawaii, pantropical spotted dolphins have been recorded to dive to a maximum depth of 400 ft (122 m) during the day and 700 ft (213 m) during the night (Baird et al., 2001). The average dive duration for the pantropical spotted dolphins is 1.95 min to water depths as deep as 328 ft (100 m) (Scott et al., 1993). Dives of up to 3.4 min have been recorded (Perrin, 2009c). Pantropical spotted dolphins have been recorded swimming at speeds of 2.2 to 10.3 kt (4 to 19 kph), with bursts up to 12 kt (22 kph) (Perrin, 2009c).

Greenhow et al. (2016) studied the hearing thresholds of a pantropical spotted dolphin using AEP and behavioral methods, and found the peak hearing sensitivity at 10 kHz, with a cutoff frequency between 14 and 20 kHz. Pantropical spotted dolphins produce whistles with a frequency range of 3.1 to 21.4 kHz (Richardson et al., 1995). They also produce click sounds that are typically bimodal in frequency with peaks at 40 to 60 kHz and 120 to 140 kHz with SLs up to 220 dB re 1 µPa (Schotten et al., 2004).

- *Pygmy Killer Whale (Feresa attenuata)*

Pygmy killer whales are one of the least known cetacean species. They are classified as data deficient by the IUCN. The global population for this species is unknown. Estimates of the Hawaiian population include 10,640 whales (CV=0.53) (Bradford et al., 2017), and 30,214 whales are included in the WNP population (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003). An estimated 22,029 pygmy killer whales have been estimated in the Indian Ocean (Wade and Gerrodette, 1993).

Pygmy killer whales have been recorded in oceanic tropical and subtropical waters of all oceans (Caldwell, 1971; Donahue and Perryman, 2009). These whales are sighted relatively frequently in the ETP, the Hawaiian archipelago, and off Japan (Donahue and Perryman, 2009; Leatherwood et al., 1988). The population in Hawaiian waters shows high site fidelity and is considered to represent a resident population (McSweeney et al., 2009). No data are available to confirm seasonal migration patterns for pygmy killer whales. No data on breeding and calving grounds are available.

No dive data are available. Baird et al. (2011) reported that tagged pygmy killer whales in Hawaiian waters swam at speeds from 1.5 to 1.7 kt (2.7 to 3.1 kph).

Little information is available on the hearing sensitivity of pygmy killer whales. Recently, AEP-derived audiograms were obtained on two live-stranded pygmy killer whales during rehabilitation. The U-shaped audiograms of these pygmy killer whales showed that best hearing sensitivity occurred at 40 kHz with lowest hearing thresholds having occurred between 20 and 60 kHz (Montie et al., 2011). These stranded animals did not hear well at higher frequencies (90 and 96 dB at 100 kHz) (Montie et al., 2011). The peak frequencies of wild pygmy killer whale clicks ranged from 45 to 117 kHz, with peak-to-peak source levels that ranged from 197 to 223 dB (Madsen et al., 2004b). Pryor et al. (1965) described the LF “growl” sounds produced by pygmy killer whales.

- *Risso's Dolphin (Grampus griseus)*

Risso's dolphins are classified as a least concern (lower risk) species by the IUCN. No global population abundance exists for the Risso's dolphin. The WNP and Inshore Archipelago stocks of Risso's dolphins are each estimated to include 143,374 individuals (Kanaji et al. 2018); the Inshore Archipelago stock occurs in the Asian continental seas. In the Hawaii stock, 11,613 Risso's dolphins (CV=0.43) have been estimated (Bradford et al., 2017). The population of Risso's dolphins in the Indian Ocean is estimated to include 452,125 individuals (Wade and Gerrodette, 1993).

Risso's dolphin inhabits deep oceanic and continental slope waters from the tropics through the temperate regions (Baird, 2009b; Jefferson et al., 1993; Leatherwood et al., 1980). These dolphins occur predominantly at steep shelf-edge habitats, in waters between 1,300 and 3,281 ft (400 and 1,000 m) deep and temperatures ranging from 59° to 68° F (15° and 20°C) and rarely below 50° F (10°C) (Baird, 2009b). Seasonal migrations of Risso's dolphins in Japanese and North Atlantic populations have been apparent, although seasonal variation in their movement patterns elsewhere have not been studied (Kasuya, 1971; Mitchell 1975). No data on breeding grounds are available, and Risso's dolphins have been known to calve year-round, but peak breeding times differ by habitat. In the North Atlantic, breeding peaks in the summer, while in Japan breeding peaks in summer-fall, and in California, breeding peaks in fall-winter (Jefferson et al., 2015).

Dive times up to 30 min have been reported for Risso's dolphins (Jefferson et al. 2015). Arranz et al. (2018) reported that Risso's dolphins spend 1 to 3 min at the surface between foraging dives; echolocate throughout foraging dives, a behavior atypical of deep-diving odontocetes; and often continue to forage during ascent. Out of 37 foraging dives observed from tagged Risso's dolphins, 57 percent were to shallow water depths (<295 ft [90 m]) while only 12 percent were to deep water depths (1,148 to 1,476 ft [350 to 450 m]) (Arranz et al., 2018). Typical Risso's dolphin swimming speeds are 3.2 to 3.8 kt (6 to 7 kph) (Kruse et al., 1999). Risso's dolphins studied in the Ligurian Sea also swam at speeds from 3.2 to 3.8 kt (6 to 7 kph), remained at the surface for about 7 to 15 sec between dives that lasted 5 to 7 min and occasionally longer (Bearzi et al., 2011). Swim speeds from Risso's dolphins were recorded at 1.1 to 6.5 kt (2 to 12 kph) off Santa Catalina Island (Shane, 1995). Tag data from a rehabilitated and released Risso's dolphin in the Gulf of Mexico indicate that the Risso's dolphin swam on average at 3.9 kt (7.19 kph) and the majority (95 percent) of the dives were within 50 m of the sea surface, with the deepest to 1,312 to 1,640 ft (400 to 500 m) (Wells et al., 2009).

Audiograms for Risso's dolphins indicate that their hearing RLs equal to or less than approximately 125 dB in frequencies ranging from 1.6 to 110 kHz (Nachtigall et al., 1995). Philips et al. (2003) reported that Risso's dolphins are capable of hearing frequencies up to 80 kHz. Optimal underwater hearing occurs between 4 and 80 kHz, with hearing threshold levels from 63.6 to 74.3 dB RL. Other audiograms obtained on Risso's dolphin (Au et al., 1997) confirm previous measurements and demonstrate hearing thresholds of 140 dB RL for a 1-second 75 Hz signal (Croll et al., 1999). Au et al. (1997) estimated the effects of the ATOC source on false killer whales and on Risso's dolphins. The ATOC source transmitted 75-Hz, 195 dB SL acoustic signal to study ocean temperatures. The hearing sensitivity was measured for Risso's dolphins and their thresholds were found to be 142.2 dB RL ± 1.7 dB for the 75 Hz pure tone signal and 140.8 dB RL ± 1.1 dB for the ATOC signal (Au et al., 1997). Another individual had best hearing at 11 kHz, and between 40 and 80 kHz, a response threshold of about 60 dB re 1μPa (Mooney et al., 2015). These values are comparable to those previously reported by (Nachtigall et al., 1995; Nachtigall et al., 2005). Risso's dolphins are able to reduce their hearing sensitivity while echolocating (Nachtigall and Supin, 2008).

Risso's dolphins produce sounds as low as 0.1 kHz and as high as 65 kHz. Their dominant frequencies are between 2 to 5 kHz and at 65 kHz (Au, 1993; Corkeron and Van Parijs, 2001; Croll et al., 1999; Watkins, 1967). Risso's dolphins produce tonal whistles, burst-pulse sounds, echolocation clicks and a hybrid burst-pulse tonal signal (Corkeron and Van Parijs, 2001). Echolocation clicks have peak frequencies around 50 kHz, centroid frequencies of 60-90 kHz with peak-to-peak source levels of 202-222 dB re 1 µPa at 1 m (Madsen et al., 2004a). In one experiment conducted by Phillips et al. (2003), clicks were found to have a peak frequency of 65 kHz, with 3 dB bandwidths of 72 kHz and durations ranging from 40 to 100 msec. In a second experiment, Phillips et al. (2003) recorded clicks with peak frequencies up to 50 kHz, with a 3-dB bandwidth of 35 kHz. Click durations ranging from 35 to 75 msec. Estimated SLs of echolocation clicks can reach up to 216 dB (Phillips et al., 2003). Bark vocalizations consisted of highly variable burst pulses and have a frequency range of 2 to 20 kHz. Buzzes consisted of a short burst pulse of sound around 2 seconds in duration with a frequency range of 2.1 to 22 kHz. Low frequency, narrowband grunt vocalizations ranged from 400 to 800 Hz. Chirp vocalizations were slightly higher in frequency than the grunt vocalizations, ranging in frequency from 2 to 4 kHz. There are no available data regarding seasonal or geographical variation in the sound production of Risso's dolphin.

- *Rough-toothed Dolphin (Steno bredanensis)*

The rough-toothed dolphin is classified as least concern by the IUCN. Globally, few population estimates are available. The populations of rough-toothed dolphins in the WNP stock is estimated to include 5,002dolphins (Kanaji et al., 2018), while the Hawaii stock was estimated to include 72,528 individuals (CV=0.39) (Bradford et al., 2017). In the Indian Ocean, the population of rough-toothed dolphins was estimated at 156,690 individuals (Wade and Gerrodette, 1993).

Rough-toothed dolphins occur in oceanic tropical and warm-temperate waters around the world and appear to be relatively abundant in certain areas; these dolphins are also found in continental shelf waters in some locations, such as Brazil (Jefferson, 2009b). In the Pacific, rough-toothed dolphins inhabit waters from central Japan to northern Australia and from Baja California, Mexico, south to Peru. Rough toothed dolphins are also found in the Indian Ocean, from the southern tip of Africa to Australia (Jefferson et al., 2015). Seasonal movements and breeding areas for this species have not been confirmed.

Rough-toothed dolphins can dive to 98 to 230 ft (30 to 70 m) with dive durations ranging from 0.5 to 3.5 min (Ritter, 2002; Watkins et al., 1987b). Dives up to 15 min have been recorded for groups of dolphins (Miyazaki and Perrin, 1994). Rough-toothed dolphins are not known to be fast swimmers, often skimming the surface at a moderate speed (Jefferson, 2009b). Swim speeds of this species vary from 3.0 to 8.6 kt (5.6 to 16 kph) (Ritter, 2002; Watkins et al., 1987b).

Very little information is available on the hearing sensitivity of rough-toothed dolphins. Cook et al. (2005a) performed AEPs on five live-stranded rough-toothed dolphins and found that these dolphins could detect sounds between 5 and 80 kHz; the authors believe that rough-toothed dolphins are likely capable of detecting frequencies much higher than 80 kHz. Rough-toothed dolphins produce sounds ranging from 0.1 kHz up to 200 kHz (Miyazaki and Perrin, 1994; Popper, 1980; Thomson and Richardson, 1995). Clicks have peak energy at 25 kHz, while whistles have a maximum energy between 2 to 14 kHz (Lima et al., 2012; Norris, 1969; Norris and Evans, 1967; Oswald et al., 2007; Popper, 1980). There are no available data regarding seasonal or geographical variation in the sound production of this species.

- *Short-finned Pilot Whale (Globicephala macrorhynchus)*

Two ecotypes of short-finned pilot whales occur in the western North Pacific Ocean off Japan, the northern (Shiho) and southern (Naisa) ecotypes, which are distinguishable by pigmentation, morphological, genetic, acoustic, and geographical characteristics (Kanaji et al. 2018; Kasuya, 1998; Kasuya and Perrin, 2017; Olson, 2018; Van Cise et al., 2016 and 2017a). The northern ecotype is distinguished at sea by a saddle-patch near the dorsal fin, and the two forms are restricted to the waters off northern and southern Japan, respectively, by the Kuroshio Front; the northern ecotype of the short-finned pilot whale is located in the area roughly between 35° and 43° N latitude while the southern ecotype is found from about 23° to 35° N latitude (Miyashita, 1993; Kasuya and Perrin, 2017). Recent research on short-finned pilot whales in Hawaiian waters indicates that genetically, the Hawaiian area pilot whales are similar to the southern ecotype found off Japan (Van Cise et al., 2016). The short-finned pilot whale is classified as data deficient by the IUCN. A global population estimate of short-finned pilot whales is unknown. The population of short-finned pilot whales in the Indian Ocean has been estimated at 268,751 individuals (Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). In the North Pacific Ocean, an abundance of 19,503 whales (CV=0.49) is estimated for the Hawaii stock of short-finned pilot whales (Bradford et al., 2017). In the WNP Ocean, two stocks of short-finned pilot whales are recognized, the WNP Northern and WNP Southern, with respective abundances estimated as 20,884 and 31,396 individuals (Kanaji et al., 2018).

Short-finned pilot whales occur in nearshore to pelagic, tropical to warm-temperate waters of the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian oceans (Olson, 2018). Little seasonal movement has been documented in this species, but most occur in oceanic waters annually, only moving inshore to follow the movements of their prey (Croll et al., 1999). Short-finned pilot whales are considered nomadic, although resident populations are known to occur in California's Channel Islands, Madeira Islands, Hawaiian Islands, and in the Strait of Gibraltar (Olson, 2018). Additionally, two short-finned pilot whale populations are likely in Hawaiian waters, particularly in the Main Hawaiian Islands: an insular, inshore population as well as a pelagic, offshore population (Carretta et al., 2018; Van Cise et al., 2017b).

Both long- and short-finned pilot whales are considered deep divers, feeding primarily on fish and squid (Croll et al., 1999). Short-finned pilot whales off Tenerife showed a bimodal dive behavior with a large number of dives to 984 ft (300 m), very few between 984 to 1,640 ft (300 and 500 m), and many dives with a maximum depth between 1,640 to 3,343 ft (500 and 1,019 m) (Aguilar Soto et al., 2008). Generally, dive times increased with dive depth, to a maximum duration of 21 min. (Ridgway, 1986). Data from Madeira Island show that dives can last as long as 20 min to as deep as 3,281 ft (1,000 m) (Alves et al., 2013), although the majority of recorded dives were much shorter and shallower, and almost all of these were recorded during the daytime. Two whales that had stranded were equipped with satellite tags and were tracked for 16 and 67 days, with 93 percent of their dives to less than 328 ft (100 m) (Wells, 2013). Short-finned pilot whales have swim speeds ranging between (3.8 and 4.6 kt (7 and 9 kph) (Norris and Prescott, 1961). Short-finned pilot whale perform underwater 'sprints', with velocities ranging up to 17.5 kt (32.4 kph) that are associated with foraging attempts (Aguilar Soto et al., 2008).

AEPs were used to measure the hearing sensitivity of two short-finned pilot whales, one captive and one stranded (Schlundt et al., 2011). The region of best hearing sensitivity for the captive whale was between 40 and 56 kHz (thresholds of 78 and 79 dB re 1 µPa, respectively) with the upper limit of functional hearing between 80 and 100 kHz (Schlundt et al., 2011). The only measurable detection threshold for the stranded pilot whale was 108 dB re 1 µPa at 10 kHz, which suggested severe hearing loss above 10 kHz (Schlundt et al., 2011). The hearing range of the captive short-finned pilot whale was similar to other odontocete species, particularly of larger toothed whales. Another four stranded short-finned pilot whales were tested with AEP, and their greatest sensitivity was measured between 20 to 40 kHz for all whales, with thresholds between 70 and 80 dB re 1μPa, with higher thresholds (25 to 61 dB) measured at 80 kHz measured for the adults than the juveniles (Greenhow et al., 2014).

Short-finned pilot whales produce sounds as low as 280 Hz and as high as 100 kHz, with dominant frequencies between 2 to 14 kHz and 30 to 60 kHz (Caldwell and Caldwell, 1969; Fish and Turl, 1976; Scheer et al., 1998). The mean call frequency produced by short-finned pilot whales is 7.87 kHz, much higher than the mean call frequency produced by long-finned pilot whales (Rendell et al., 1999). The frequency content of tonal calls extends to at least 30 kHz (Sayigh et al., 2013). Echolocation abilities have been demonstrated during click production (Evans, 1973). Pilot whales echolocate with a precision similar to bottlenose dolphins and vocalize with other school members (Olson, 2018). SLs of clicks have been measured as high as 180 dB (Fish and Turl, 1976). The center frequency of their clicks is 25 kHz, with a mean 10 dB bandwidth of 10 kHz (Baumann-Pickering et al., 2015b), and a mean click duration was 545 milliseconds (msec). There are little available data regarding seasonal or geographical variation in the sound production of the short-finned pilot whale, although there is evidence of group specific call repertoires (Olson, 2018) and specific call types can be repeated (Sayigh et al., 2013).

- *Spinner Dolphin (Stenella longirostris)*

Spinner dolphins are classified overall as a data deficient species by the IUCN. Spinner dolphins are one of the most abundant dolphin species in the world. In the western North Pacific, 1,015,059 spinner dolphins have been estimated (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003). In Hawaiian waters, the Hawaii pelagic stock includes 3,351 dolphins (Barlow, 2006), while the island associated populations include the Kauai and Niihau stock of 601 individuals, the Hawaii Island stock that number 665 dolphins, the Oahu/4-Islands stock with 355 spinner dolphins, the Kure/Midway Atoll stock of 260 dolphins, and the Pearl and Hermes Reef stock of 300 spinner dolphins (Andrews et al., 2006; Carretta et al., 2019; Karczmarski et al., 2005). The spinner dolphin population in the Indian Ocean is estimated as 634,108 individuals (Wade and Gerrodette, 1993).

Spinner dolphins are pantropical, occurring in tropical and most subtropical oceanic waters from about 40°S to 40°N, except in the Mediterranean Sea (Jefferson et al. 2015). Spinner dolphins are found in coastal regions of Hawaii, the eastern Pacific, Indian Ocean, and off Southeast Asia, usually resting in the shallow waters of bays of oceanic islands and atolls (Perrin, 2009d). The dwarf species occurs only in the shallow waters of Southeast Asia and northern Australia is found in shallower waters in the Gulf of Thailand, Timor Sea, and Arafura Sea (Jefferson et al., 2015).

Based on where their prey is located in the water column, spinner dolphins likely dive as deep as 1,969 ft (600 m) (Perrin, 2009d). Dive durations are unknown for this species. Spinner dolphins are known for their aerial behavior, spinning up to seven times during one aerial leap from the water, reaching heights of 9 ft (3 m) above the water surface with an airborne time of 1.25 sec (Fish et al., 2006). Hawaiian spinner dolphins have swim speeds ranging from 1.4 to 3.2 kt (2.6 to 6 kph) (Norris et al., 1994).

Greenhow et al. (2016) measured the hearing threshold of a spinner dolphin using AEP methods, and reported a peak sensitivity at 40 kHz and functional hearing up to 128 kHz; these sensitivities are similar to those of other measured dolphins. Spinner dolphins produce burst pulse calls, echolocation clicks, whistles, and screams (Bazua-Duran and Au, 2002; Norris et al., 1994). The results of a study on spotted and spinner dolphins conducted by Lammers et al. (2003) revealed that the whistles and burst pulses of the two species span a broader frequency range than is traditionally reported for delphinids. The fundamental frequency contours of whistles occur in the human hearing range, but the harmonics typically reach 50 kHz and beyond. The whistle contours of near shore spinner dolphins in Hawai'i show geographic variation between groups (Bazua-Duran and Au, 2004), correlating with the Island associated populations. Additionally, the burst pulse signals are predominantly ultrasonic, often with little or no energy below 20 kHz (Lammers et al., 2003). Echolocation clicks show the typical delphinid broadband character, with center frequencies ranging from 34 to 58 kHz, peak frequencies from 27 to 41 kHz, and durations of 140 to 620 μs (Baumann-Pickering et al., 2010).

- *Striped Dolphin (Stenella coeruleoalba)*

Striped dolphins are a lower risk (least concern) species classified by the IUCN. In the Hawaii stock, 61,201 striped dolphins (CV=0.38) are estimated (Bradford et al., 2017). The WNP population of striped dolphins is divided into Northern, Southern, and Japanese Coastal stocks, with 497,725; 52,682; and 19,631 whales, respectively, estimated for each stock (Miyashita, 1993; Kasuya and Perrin, 2017). The Indian Ocean striped dolphin population is estimated to include 674,578 individuals (Wade and Gerrodette, 1993).

Striped dolphins are common in tropical and warm-temperate oceanic waters of the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian oceans and adjacent seas between roughly 50° N and 40° S (Jefferson et al., 2015). Striped dolphins may be found in coastal waters in areas with very narrow continental shelves or where deep waters are found close to shore. Their occurrence appears to be associated with oceanographic fronts or circulation features in many regions, such as the ETP. Striped dolphins occur further north than other *Stenella* species, although in the western North Pacific Ocean, striped dolphins only very rarely occur in the Sea of Japan, East China Sea, Yellow Sea, or Sea of Okhotsk, even though the water temperatures appear to be in the range the species prefers (Kasuya and Perrin, 2017). In the western North Pacific Ocean, striped dolphins are divided into three stocks in the Pacific waters east of Japan. The oceanic Northern and Southern stocks of striped dolphins are latitudinally separated at about 35° N, while the Japanese Coastal stock is located west of the Northern and Southern stocks in the Pacific waters southeast of the main Japanese Islands of Honshu, Kyushu, and Shikoku (Kasuya and Perrin, 2017).

Dive times are unknown for this species. Based on stomach contents, it is predicted that striped dolphins may be diving down 656 to 2,297 ft (200 to 700 m) to feed (Archer, 2009). Average swim speeds of 5.9 kt (11 kph) were measured from striped dolphins in the Mediterranean (Archer and Perrin, 1999).

The behavioral audiogram developed by Kastelein et al. (2003) shows hearing capabilities from 0.5 to 160 kHz. The best underwater hearing of the species appears to be at from 29 to 123 kHz (Kastelein et al., 2003). Striped dolphins produce whistle vocalizations lasting up to three seconds, with frequencies ranging from 1.5 to >24 kHz, with peak frequencies ranging from 8 to 12.5 kHz (Azzolin et al., 2013; Thomson and Richardson, 1995). An examination of whistle structure within the Mediterranean Sea found geographic variation between different sub-populations (Azzolin et al., 2013).

- ***Odontocetes (Toothed Whales): Phocoenidae***

  - *Dall's Porpoise (Phocoenoides dalli)*

Dall's porpoises are separated taxonomically into two subspecies: the *truei*-type and the *dalli*-type, with both subspecies occurring in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. Dall's porpoise is considered least concern under the IUCN. The total population of Dall's porpoise is estimated at 1.2 million (Jefferson et al., 2015). The population of the WNP *truei* subspecies of the Dall's porpoise is estimated as 178,157 individuals (Kasuya and Perrin, 2017; Miyashita et al., 2007), while the Sea of Japan and WNP *dalli* populations are estimated to include 173,638 porpoises (IWC, 2008) and 162,000 porpoises (Kasuya and Perrin, 2017; Miyashita et al., 2007), respectively.

The Dall's porpoise is found exclusively in the North Pacific Ocean and adjacent seas (Bering Sea, Okhotsk Sea, and Sea of Japan) from about Baja California to Japan in the south and Bering Sea to the north (Jefferson et al., 2015). Although this oceanic species is primarily found in deep oceanic waters from 30°N to 62°N, or in areas where deepwater occurs close to shore, it has been observed in the inshore waters of Washington, British Columbia, and Alaska (Jefferson et al., 2015). Distribution in most areas is very poorly defined (Jefferson, 2009a).

Dall's porpoises are relatively deep divers, diving to 900 ft (275 m) for as long as 8 min (Hanson et al., 1998; Ridgway, 1986). Thought to be one of the fastest swimming of the small cetaceans (Croll et al., 1999; Jefferson, 2009b), Dall's porpoise's average swim speeds between 1.3 and 11.7 kt (2.4 and 21.6 kph). Swim speeds are dependent on the type of swimming behavior (slow rolling, fast rolling, or rooster-tailing) (Croll et al., 1999), but Dall's porpoises may reach speeds of 29.7 kt (55 kph) for quick bursts (Leatherwood and Reeves, 1983).

Although there is no direct measurement of the hearing sensitivity of Dall's porpoises (Ketten, 2000; Thewissen, 2002), the reaction thresholds of Dall's porpoise for pulses at 20 to 100 kHz are estimated to be about 116 to 130 dB RL or higher for pulses shorter than one millisecond or for pulses higher than 100 kHz (Hatakeyama et al., 1994).

Dall's porpoises produce sounds as low as 40 Hz and as high as 160 kHz (Awbrey et al., 1979; Evans and Awbrey, 1984; Evans and Maderson, 1973; Hatakeyama et al., 1994; Hatakeyama and Soeda, 1990; Ridgway, 1966) and can emit LF clicks in the range of 40 Hz to 12 kHz (Awbrey et al., 1979; Evans, 1973). Narrow band high frequency clicks are also produced with energy concentrated around 120 to 141 kHz with a duration of 35 to 251 μsec (Au, 1993; Kyhn et al., 2013). Their maximum peak-to-peak SL is 175 dB (Evans, 1973; Evans and Awbrey, 1984). Dall's porpoises seldom whistle.

- *Harbor Porpoise (Phocoena phocoena)*

Harbor porpoises are classified overall as least concern under IUCN. Three major residential isolated populations exist: 1) the North Pacific; 2) North Atlantic; and 3) the Black Sea (Bjorge and Tolley, 2009; Jefferson et al., 2008). However, morphological and genetic data indicate different populations exist within these three regions (Jefferson et al., 2015). The global population for the harbor porpoise estimated to be at least 675,000 (Jefferson et al., 2015). The WNP population of harbor porpoises consists of an estimated 31,046 individuals (Allen and Angliss, 2014; Hobbs and Waite, 2010).

Harbor porpoises are found in cold temperate and sub-arctic neritic waters of the Northern hemisphere (Bjørge and Tolley, 2009; Gaskin, 1992; Jefferson et al., 1993). They are typically found in waters of about 41 to 61° F (5 to 16° C) with only a small percentage appearing in more polar waters (32° to 39° F [0° to 4° C]) (Gaskin, 1992). Harbor porpoises are most frequently found in coastal waters, but do occur in adjacent offshore shallows and, at times, in deep water (Croll et al., 1999; Gaskin, 1992). Harbor porpoises show seasonal movement in northwestern European waters that may be related to oceanographic changes seasonally (Gaskin, 1992; Heimlich-Boarn et al., 1998; Read and Westgate, 1997). Although migration patterns have been inferred for the harbor porpoise, data suggest that seasonal movements of individuals are discrete and not temporally coordinated migrations (Gaskin, 1992; Read and Westgate, 1997).

Dive times of the harbor porpoise range between 0.7 and 1.7 min with a maximum dive duration of 9 min (Westgate et al., 1995). Recently, van Beest et al. (2018) reported mean dive durations of tagged harbor porpoises of 53 sec and mean dive depths of 50.9 ft (15.5 m). The majority of dives range in depth from 65.6 to 426.5 ft (20 to 130 m), although the maximum dive depth recorded is 741.5 ft (226 m) (Westgate et al., 1995). Three tagged porpoises in shallow Danish waters had an average dive rate of 45 dives per hour, with maximum dive depth of 82 ft (25 m) (Linnenschmidt et al., 2013). Maximum swim speeds for harbor porpoises range from 9.0 to 12.0 kt (16.6 and 22.2 kph) (Gaskin et al., 1974). A mean horizontal/surface swim speed of 1.26 kt (2.3 kph) was reported for free-ranging harbor porpoises (van Beest et al., 2018).

Harbor porpoises can hear frequencies in the range of 100 Hz to 140 kHz (Kastelein et al., 2002; Kastelein et al., 2015; Villadsgaard et al., 2007). Kastelein et al. (2002) determined the best range of hearing for a two-year-old male was 16 to 140 kHz; this harbor porpoise also demonstrated the highest upper frequency hearing of all odontocetes presently known (Kastelein et al., 2002). In a series of experiments designed to investigate harbor porpoise hearing with respect to naval sonar, the hearing threshold for 1 to 2 kHz FM signals was 75 dB, without the presence of harmonics. When harmonics were present, the threshold dropped to 59 dB, and the thresholds for LF sonars were higher than for MF sonars; the measured threshold for 6-7 kHz signals was 67 dB (Kastelein et al., 2011).

Harbor porpoises produce click and whistle vocalizations that cover a wide frequency range, from 40 Hz to at least 150 kHz (Verboom and Kastelein, 1995). The click vocalizations consist of four major frequency components: lower frequency component (1.4 to 2.5 kHz) of high amplitude that are may be used for long-range detection; two middle frequency components consisting of a low amplitude (30 to 60 kHz) and a broadband component (10 to 100 kHz); and a higher frequency component (110 to 150 kHz) that is used for bearing and classification of objects (Verboom and Kastelein, 1995). Vocalization peak frequencies are similar for wild and captive harbor porpoises, with the peak frequencies reported to range from 129 to 145 kHz and 128 to 135 kHz, respectively (Villadsgaard et al., 2007). Maximum SLs vary, apparently, between captive and wild dolphins, with maximum SLs of 172 dB re 1 µPa at 1 m in captive dolphins but range from 178 to 205 dB re 1 µPa at 1 m in wild dolphins (Villadsgaard et al., 2007). Variations in click trains apparently represent different functions based on the frequency ranges associated with each activity.

#### *3.4.3.3.2 Pinnipeds*

Pinnipeds (sea lions, seals, and walruses) are globally distributed amphibious marine mammals with varying degrees of aquatic specialization (Berta, 2009; Goebel, 1998). Five pinniped species are considered in this SEIS/SOEIS, including two otariid and three phocid species (Table 3-6). Of these species, three are listed under the ESA with DPSs that occur in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. Otariid and phocid pinnipeds differ morphologically, ecologically, and physiologically; Berta (2018) provides a good overview of otariid and phocid pinnipeds.

Pinnipeds are able to hear both in air and water and are sensitive to a wide range of frequencies (from about 75 Hz to 180 kHz) and can detect sounds at low pressure levels, with their lowest hearing thresholds at about 55 to 58 dB (Berta, 2018; Cunningham, 2015; Reichmuth et al., 2013; Kastak and Schusterman, 1998). Phocids exhibit the more extensive hearing range of the two groups of pinnipeds, particularly in high frequency ranges, as their ears appear to be better adapted to underwater hearing (NMFS, 2016b). Most pinnipeds produce sounds, often both in-air and underwater, with most sounds associated with some type of behavior.

## ➢ ***Otariidae***

- *Northern Fur Seal (Callorhinus ursinus)*

Northern fur seals are currently classified as vulnerable under IUCN Red List of Threatened Species (Gelatt et al., 2015). The Pribilof Island/Eastern Pacific stock, which does not coincide with the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar, is considered depleted under the MMPA. The global population of northern fur seals in 2014 was estimated as 1.29 million seals, which represented a population decline of about 30 percent since 1976 (Gelatt et al., 2015). The Western Pacific stock of northern fur seals is estimated to include 503,609 individuals (Gelatt et al., 2015; Kuzin, 2014).

Northern fur seals are widely distributed in pelagic waters across the North Pacific Ocean from about 35° N northward to the Bering Sea, including the Sea of Okhotsk and the Sea of Japan (Jefferson et al., 2015). Primary breeding sites include the Commander Islands, Kuril Islands, Pribilof Islands, Robben Island, Bogoslof Island, Tyuleny Island, Farallon Islands, and San Miguel Island (Gentry, 2009b). Northern fur seals are one of the most pelagic pinnipeds, with adults only coming ashore for about 40 days during the breeding season and not hauling out on land except during that period. In late autumn, northern fur seals leave their rookeries and migrate southward for the winter to foraging areas. Northern fur seals from the Bering Sea and Aleutian Islands rookeries migrate into the northeastern Pacific through the Aleutian passes, while seals from Tyuleny Island, the Commander Islands, and Kuril Islands migrate southward into the Sea of Japan and in the Pacific waters off Japan (Gentry, 2009b; Horimoto et al., 2016 and 2017). In the Sea of Japan, adult male northern fur seals predominate and forage in waters over the narrow continental shelf that drops steeply into 6,562 ft (2,000 m) deep waters (Horimoto et al., 2016), while in Pacific waters of northern Japan, adult female and juvenile northern fur seals dominate (Horimoto et al., 2017).

Maximum recorded dive depths of breeding female northern fur seals are 680 ft (207 m) in the Bering Sea and 755 ft (230 m) in Pacific waters off southern California (Goebel, 1998). Juvenile fur seals in the Bering Sea had an average dive time of 1.24 min at an average depth of 57.4 ft (17.5 m) (Sterling and Ream, 2004). Kooyman et al. (1976) measured shallow dives (to 66 ft [20 m]) of northern fur seals to last 1 min, while deeper dives (to 459 ft [140 m]) were from 2 to 5 min in duration, and the average interval between dives was 17 min. Goebel et al. (1991) calculated average dive durations of 4.1 min for shallow dives and 7.3 min for deep dives, which were similar to the measured modal durations of <2 min for shallow dives and 3 to 5 min for deep dives that Ponganis et al. (1992) reported. Ream et al. (2005) and Sterling et al. (2014) noted that the preponderance of deeper dives occurs at night during the full moon, likely related to the vertical migration of prey. Routine migration swim speeds are 1.54 kt (2.85 kph), while during foraging, swim speeds averaged between 0.48 and 1.23 kt (0.89 and 2.28 kph) (Ream et al., 2005). Lactating female northern fur seals swam 2.7 kt (5 kph) during foraging forays in the Bering Sea (Battaile et al., 2015).

The northern fur seal can hear sounds in the range of 500 Hz to 40 kHz (Babushina et al., 1991; Moore and Schusterman, 1987), with best hearing ranging from 2 and 12 kHz (Gentry, 2009a). Moore and Schusterman (1987) measured the in-air hearing sensitivity of the northern fur seal as 500 Hz to 32 kHz and the in-water hearing sensitivity from 2 to 32 kHz. Babushina et al. (1991) reported that underwater hearing sensitivity of the northern fur seal is 15 to 20 dB better than in-air hearing sensitivity. Northern fur seals are known to produce clicks and high-frequency bleating sounds under water (Frankel, 2018). On land during breeding season, males make low growls and roars (Antonelis and York, 1985). Female northern fur seals emit calls when returning from foraging trips to attract and locate their pups (Bartholomew, 1959).

- *Western Steller Sea Lion (Eumetopias jubatus jubatus)*

The Steller sea lion is divided taxonomically into two species that effectively represent the Western and Eastern stocks and DPSs of Steller sea lions (SMM, 2017). The Western Steller sea lion occurs west of Cape Suckling, Alaska (Loughlin and Gelatt, 2018). As a species, the Steller sea lion is classified as near threatened under the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species, with the Western Steller sea lion classified as endangered (Gelatt and Sweeney, 2016). Under the ESA, only the Western DPS of is listed as endangered under the ESA and depleted under the MMPA. The Western stock/DPS and Asian stock of the Western Steller sea lion occur within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. Critical habitat for both species (stocks/DPSs) of Steller sea lions is designated under the ESA in three geographic locations in the North Pacific Ocean, Gulf of Alaska, and the Bering Sea including: 1) Alaska rookeries, haulouts, and associated areas; 2) California and Oregon rookeries and associated areas; and 3) special aquatic areas in Alaska (Shelikof Strait area, Bogoslof area, and Seguam Pass area). Critical habitat designations include terrestrial, aerial, and aquatic habitat zones (NOAA, 1993a). The worldwide population size of Steller sea lions is estimated to be 160,867 (Gelatt and Sweeney, 2016). The Western U.S. stock and DPS (west of Cape Suckling, Alaska) is estimated at 54,267 sea lions (Muto et al., 2019), and the Western Asian stock (Russia to Japan) stock of Steller sea lions has been estimated to include approximately 23,500 individuals (Burkanov, 2017; Muto et al., 2019), for a total Western Steller sea lion population of 77,767 individuals.

Steller sea lions are found in temperate to sub-polar waters and are widely distributed throughout the North Pacific Ocean from Japan/Korea and central California to the southern Bering Sea, including the Sea of Japan and Sea of Okhotsk (Jefferson et al., 2015). The northernmost rookery is found at Seal Rocks in Prince William Sound, Alaska, and the southernmost rookeries are found at Año Nuevo Island in California and Medny Island, in the Commander Islands, Kamchatka (Burkanov and Loughlin, 2007; Loughlin, 2009). Steller sea lions typically occur in coastal to outer continental shelf waters but cross deep oceanic waters in parts of their range (Jefferson et al., 2015; Loughlin and Gelatt, 2016). Steller sea lions are not migratory, but often disperse widely over the North Pacific after the breeding season.

Most dives by pup and juvenile Steller sea lions are of short duration (<1 min) and to shallow water depths (<33 ft [10 m]), although they are capable of diving to the same depths and dive durations as adults (Pitcher et al., 2005). Juvenile and sub-adult Steller sea lions dove to the maximum depth of 1,184 ft (361 m), which was the deepest measurable depth, and for the maximum durations of 4.9 min and 13.2 min, respectively (Rehberg and Burns, 2008). Female Steller sea lions on foraging trips during the breeding season dove to the maximum dive depth of 774 ft (236 m), while the longest dive was longer than 16 min; the average dive depth for foraging females was 97.1 ft (29.6 m) and the average dive time was recorded at 1.8 min (Rehberg et al., 2009). The deepest dive depth to which a Steller sea lion has been recorded diving is 1,391 ft (424 m). Swim speed has been estimated at 1.5 kt (2.82 kph), with a range of 0.2 to 3.3 kt (0.4 to 6.05 kph) (Raum-Suryan et al., 2004). A swim speed measured during dives was 2.7 kt (5 kph) (Merrick et al., 1994). Hindle et al. (2010) measured three adult Steller sea lions swimming at transit speeds from 3.5 to 4.5 kt (6.5 to 8.3 kph) and noted that these transit speeds were associated with minimal energetic costs.

Using behavioral methods, Kastelein et al. (2005) measured the underwater audiograms of a male and a female Steller sea lion. Maximum hearing sensitivity in the male Steller sea lion was at 1 kHz for 77 dB RL signals, with the range of best hearing between 1 and 16 kHz, at 10 dB from the maximum sensitivity; the average pre-stimulus responses occurred at low frequency signals (Kastelein et al., 2005). The maximum hearing sensitivity of the female Steller sea lion was 25 kHz for a RL signal of 73 dB RL (Kastelein et al., 2005). The reasons for the differences in hearing capability between the male and female adult Steller sea lions was not known.

Steller sea lions produce sounds both in air and underwater. The underwater sounds produced by Steller sea lions have been described as clicks and growls (Frankel, 2009; Poulter, 1968). The in-air sounds produced by male Steller sea lions, described as belches, growls, snorts, scolds, hisses, and LF roars appear to be part of territorial demonstrations during the breeding season (Kastelein et al., 2005). Females and their pups make in-air communication sounds that are described as bellows and bleats (Loughlin, 2009). No available data exist on seasonal or geographical variation in the sound production of this species.

- ***<u>Phocidae</u>***

  - *<u>Hawaiian Monk Seal (Neomonachus schauinslandi)</u>*

Hawaiian monk seals are listed as endangered under the ESA throughout its range, as endangered under the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species (Littnan et al., 2015), as depleted under the MMPA, and are protected under CITES. Critical habitat for the Hawaiian monk seal has been established from the shore to 121 ft (37 m) of water depth in 10 areas of the Northwest Hawaiian Islands (NWHI) (NOAA, 1988). In 2015, revisions to the Hawaiian monk seal's critical habitat were established (NOAA, 2015a). The critical habitat now includes all of Kure Atoll, Midway Islands, Pearl and Hermes Reef, Lisianski Island, Laysan Island, Maro Reef, Gardner Pinnacles, French Frigate Shoals, Necker Island, Nihoa, Kaula Island and Niihau and Lehua Islands to the 628-ft (200-m) isobath It also includes selected portions of the remaining main Hawaiian Islands and all waters to the 656-ft (200-m) isobath (excluding National Security Exclusion zones off Kauai, Oahu and Kahoolawe) (NOAA, 2015a). The Hawaii stock of Hawaiian monk seals consists of two subpopulations: Northwest Hawaiian Islands (NWHI) and the Main Hawaiian Islands (MHI) (NMFS, 2018). Since the early 1990s, a small but increasing number of monk seals and an increasing number of annual births have been documented in the MHI (NMFS, 2018). The two subpopulations of Hawaiian monk seals are not isolated from one another, with seals moving between the two subpopulations and island groups (NMFS, 2018e). The subpopulation of Hawaiian monk seals that occurs in the NWHI, which encompasses 80 percent of the overall population, is currently considered stable and is possibly increasing while the MHI subpopulation continues to expand (NMFS, 2018 and 2018d). Six breeding groups within the NWHI subpopulation have been identified: Kure Atoll, Midway Islands, Pearl and Hermes Reef, Lisianski Island, Laysan Islands, and French Frigate Shoals (Littnan et al., 2015). The best available, most current population estimate for the Hawaii stock of Hawaiian monk seals is 1,427 individuals (95 percent confidence limit=1,542) (NMFS, 2018).

Hawaiian monk seals only occur throughout the subtropical waters of the Hawaiian Archipelago and Johnson Atoll (NOAA, 2011), and may be found in water depths ranging from 3 to 984 ft (1 to 300 m) in shelf, slope, and bank habitats. Hawaiian monk seals come ashore (haul out) daily on a variety of substrates, including sandy beaches, rocky shores, rock ledges, and emergent reefs. Hawaiian monk seals from Kure Atoll, the westernmost atoll in the NWHI, may forage on Hancock Banks, NW of Kure Atoll. Although not a migratory species, Abernathy (1999) and Parrish et al. (2002) reported that Hawaiian monk seals may travel a distance of as much as 216 nmi (400 km) to forage. Hancock Banks are approximately 162 nmi (300 km) northwest of Kure Atoll and are characterized by a single pinnacle that is shallower than 1,476 ft (450 m), which is within the known foraging range for foraging Hawaiian monk seals. In this SEIS/SOEIS, Hawaiian monk seals are considered to potentially range and forage as far west as Hancock Banks, which is located within the Offshore Japan (25 to 40° N) modeling area (Model Area #8) for SURTASS LFA sonar. Hawaiian monk seals exhibit high site fidelity to their natal island (Gilmartin and Forcada, 2009), and pupping only occurs on sandy beaches.

Hawaiian monk seals spend a greater proportion of their time at sea; Wilson et al. (2017a) noted that on average, Hawaiian monk seals spent 49 percent of their time diving, 19 percent on the sea surface, and 32 percent of their time hauled out on land. Hawaiian monk seals appear to exhibit a single dive type, which is a square-shaped, benthic dive pattern that indicates more than 50 percent of the dive time is spent foraging along the seafloor in deeper more offshore waters; most dives (70 percent) occurred during daylight hours (Wilson et al., 2017). This species commonly dives to water depths less than 328 ft (100 m), but dives have been recorded as deep as 984 to 1,805 ft (300 to 550 m) (Parrish et al., 2002; Stewart et al., 2006). Wilson et al. (2017a) reported that Hawaiian monk seals in the MHI dove to water depths from 66 to 98 ft (20 to 50 m). The Hawaiian monk seal can also dive for up to 20 min and perhaps longer (Parrish et al., 2002). Routine dives range from 3 to 6 min in primarily shallow water depths from 33 to 131 ft (10 to 40 m) are typical (Stewart, 2009; Wilson, 2015). Kiraç et al. (2002) reported mean dive times of 6.4 min, while Wilson et al. (2017a) reported mean dive durations of 5.9 min. Swim speed data on the Hawaiian monk seal are sparse. Hawaiian monk seals swim near the bottom almost exclusively while at sea (Parrish et al., 2005 and 2008; Wilson, 2015). Parrish and Abernathy (2006) reported Hawaiian monk seals swimming with a velocity of 3.9 kt (7.2 kph).

Only one audiogram has been recorded for the Hawaiian monk seal, which indicated relatively poor hearing sensitivity, a narrow range of best hearing sensitivity (12 to 28 kHz), and a relatively low upper frequency limit (Thomas et al., 1990b); it should be noted that this information may not be representative, as the Hawaiian monk seal tested was an older, captive animal. Above 30 kHz, high-frequency hearing sensitivity dropped markedly (Thomas et al., 1990b). No underwater sound production has been reported for this species. Recorded in-air vocalizations of Hawaiian monk seals consist of a variety of sounds, including a liquid bubble sound (100 to 400 Hz), a guttural expiration (about 800 Hz) produced during short-distance agonistic encounters, a roar (<800 Hz) for long-distance threats, a belch-cough made by males when patrolling (<1 kHz), and sneeze/snorts/coughs of variable frequencies that are <4 kHz (Miller and Job, 1992).

- *Ribbon Seal (Histriophoca fasciata)*

Ribbon seals are classified as least concern by the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species (Lowry, 2016). The most recent population of ribbon seals occurring in the Sea of Okhotsk, Russia was estimated as 181,179 individuals (95 percent CI=118,392 to 316,995) (Chernook et al., 2015), while the Alaska, Bering Sea population of ribbon seals was estimated to include 184,000 seals (95 percent CI=146,000 to230,000) (Conn et al, 2014; Muto et al., 2017). Lowry (2016) combined these Bering Sea and Sea of Okhotsk estimates for a total North Pacific population estimate of 365,000 ribbon seals, which is close to the approximated estimate of 500,000 seals that Boveng and Lowry (2018) recommended.

The ribbon seal is a pagophilic or ice-loving species, with a distribution limited to the northernmost Pacific Ocean and Arctic Ocean including the Chukchi Sea, with predominant occurrence in the Bering Sea and Sea of Okhotsk (Fedoseev, 2009; Jefferson et al., 2015). Ribbon seals are associated with the southern edge of the pack ice from winter through early summer, where they pup and molt on the ice that is commonly found along the continental shelf where there is high water circulation (Fedoseev, 2009). During the summer months, ribbon seals have a pelagic distribution that likely encompasses a broader distributional range than the time of year when the seals are dependent upon sea ice (Jefferson et al., 2015).

Few dive data and no swim speed data are known for the ribbon seal. Boveng et al. (2013) noted that ribbon seal diving patterns are tied to season, with a tendency for the dive depths to increase as the ice edge expands south, nearer to the continental shelf break. When ribbon seals on are on the sea ice in shallow water during spring, they dive to the sea floor, typically to depths of 233 to 328 ft (71 to 100 m), but when not tied to sea ice, ribbon seals dive deeper, up to 1640 ft (500 m) and rarely to 1,969 ft (600 m) (Boveng et al., 2013). London et al. (2014) reported that ribbon seals often dove to water depths of 656 ft (200 m) with some dives exceeding 1,969 ft (600 m). No dive duration data are available (Ponganis, 2015).

There is no direct measurement of auditory threshold for the hearing sensitivity of the ribbon seal (Thewissen, 2002). Ribbon seals produce two types of underwater vocalizations with frequencies between 100 Hz and 7.1 kHz and an estimated SEL recorded at 160 dB (Watkins and Ray, 1977). Ribbon seals produce short, broadband puffing noises and downward-frequency swept sounds that are long and intense, include harmonics, vary in duration, and do not waver; puffs last less than 1 sec and are below 5 kHz while sweeps are diverse and range from 100 Hz to 7.1 kHz (Watkins and Ray, 1977). Watkins and Ray (1977) hypothesized that the sounds of ribbon seals produce are associated with social interactions during the mating season and may be part of territorial displays. Ribbon seals also produce grunts, roars, growls, and hisses (Jones et al., 2014; Miksis-Olds and Parks, 2011). Miksis-Olds and Parks (2011) noted that the ribbon seal vocalizations were only recorded when ice covered was >80 percent, typically during the winter to spring breeding season.

- *<u>Spotted Seal (Phoca largha)</u>*

Spotted or largha seals are classified as a least concern by the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species (Boveng, 2016). The Southern DPS of spotted seals, which consists of breeding concentrations in the Yellow Sea and Peter the Great Bay in the Sea of Japan, is listed as threatened under the ESA and depleted under the MMPA. The global population of the spotted seal is estimated to include 640,000 individuals (Boveng, 2016; Frost and Burns, 2018). Fedoseev (2000) reported that 180,000 seals occur in the Sea of Okhotsk stock/DPS, while Mizuno et al. (2002) reported an average abundance of 10,099 seals in the southern Sea of Okhotsk off Hokkaido, Japan during March and April 2000. Conn et al. (2014) and Muto et al. (2019) estimated 461,625 spotted seals (95 percent CI: 388,732 to 560,348) in the Alaska stock/Bering Sea DPS. Additionally, Trukhin (2019) reported 3,200 to 3,600 spotted seals in Peter the Great Bay in 2017 and that the population is stable. The seasonal population of spotted seals in Liadong Gulf, China (including Bohai Sea) is estimated as 1,500 seals (Han et al., 2005 and Han, 2011 in Yan et al, 2015; Han et al., 2010). In the northern Sea of Japan along the southwestern coast of Redun Island off Hokkaido, Japan, 1,184 spotted seals have been estimated seasonally (Shibuya et al., 2016). The total estimated population of the Southern DPS/stock of spotted seals is estimated as 6,284 individuals (Han et al., 2005 in Yan et al., 2015; Han et al., 2010; Shibuya et al., 2016; Trukhin, 2019).

Spotted seals occur in cold temperate and polar waters of the North Pacific and Arctic oceans, including the Yellow Sea, East China Sea, Sea of Japan, Sea of Okhotsk, Bering Sea, and Chukchi Sea; spotted seals occur as far east in the Arctic Ocean as the Mackenzie River Delta and as far west as about 170° E (Boveng, 2016; Jefferson et al., 2015). Spotted seals are found either in open-ocean or in pack-ice habitats throughout the year, including the ice over continental shelves during the winter and spring

(Burns, 2009). This species hauls out on sea ice but also comes ashore on land during the ice-free seasons of the year (Boveng, 2016). The range of spotted seals contracts and expands in association with ice cover, and their distribution is most concentrated during the period of maximum ice cover (Burns, 2009). When the ice cover recedes in the Bering Sea, some spotted seals migrate northward into the Chukchi and Beaufort seas. As the ice cover increases in the northern waters of their range, spotted seals migrate southward through the Chukchi and Bering seas to maintain association with drifting ice. Peak haul-out time is during molting and pupping from February to May (Burns, 2009).

Dives as deep as 984 to 1,312 ft (300 to 400 m) have been reported for adult spotted seals, with pups diving to 263 ft (80 m) (Bigg, 1981). London et al. (2014) noted that most spotted seal dives were to depths <230 ft (70 m) but dives from 230 to 656 ft (70 to 200 m) were observed primarily during the late winter and spring. Lowry et al. (1994) reported that spotted seals in the Chukchi Sea dove to waters <328 ft (100 m) in depth and that no dives exceeded <10 min in duration. Swim speeds range from 0.2 to 2.8 kt (0.4 to 5.2 kph), with an average speed of 1.2 kt (2.2 kph) have been observed (Lowry et al., 1998).

Underwater hearing sensitivity in a spotted seal has been measured to 72.4 kHz (Reichmuth et al., 2013). Sills et al., 2014 measured spotted seals underwater hearing sensitivity from 300 Hz to 56 kHz, with best sensitivity between 2 and 30 kHz, while in air, spotted seal's hearing sensitivity ranges from 6 Hz to 11 kHz. Recently, Cunningham and Reichmuth (2017) tested the ability of several pinniped species to hear high frequency (HF) sounds underwater; the ability of a 4-year old spotted seal to hear underwater sounds from 50 to 180 kHz was measured, with the spotted seal able to detect sounds up to 180 kHz, which was well beyond the limit of their presumed HF hearing capability. Adult spotted seals vocalize in the air and underwater (Frost and Burns, 2018). Underwater vocalization of captive spotted seals increased 1 to 2 weeks before mating and was higher in males than females, with the sounds produced including growls, drums, snorts, chirps, and barks that ranged in frequency from 500 Hz to 3.5 kHz (Richardson et al., 1995). Yang et al. (2017) reported that spotted seals exhibit an extensive repertoire of underwater vocalizations, including knocks, growls, drums, and sweeps, but the vocalizations show limited complexity. The calls were described as short (12 to 270 msec), LF pulsating (peak frequency <600 Hz), narrow bandwidth (169 to 232 Hz) sounds (Yang et al., 2017). Seven types of in-air vocalizations have been identified in captive spotted seals, including pup call, yearling call, bark, growl, grunt, moo, and throat guttural calls, which range in frequency from 139 Hz to 2.3 kHz with durations ranging from 92.8 to 1208 msec and peak-to-peak source levels of 109 to 124 dB re 20µPa, depending upon the age and sex of the individual (Zhang et al., 2016).

#### *3.4.3.3.3 Occurrence and Population Estimates of Marine Mammals in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar*

As the previous species-specific sections have illustrated, marine mammals are not homogeneously distributed throughout the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. However, to effectively assess impacts to marine mammals potentially associated with SURTASS LFA sonar activities, information is not only needed about which marine mammals occur in all regions of the vast study area for SURTASS LFA sonar but also about when and how many occur in all areas of the LFA sonar study area. A temporal and spatial framework is needed to divide the study area and effective period into manageable components.

Since the behavioral ecology of most marine mammal species is mediated by seasonally driven changes in light, temperature, and associated prey availability, standard seasons have been used as the temporal framework. For this SEIS/SOEIS and associated documentation, four seasons defined according to the following monthly breakdown are used:

- Winter: December, January, and February
- Spring: March, April, and May
- Summer: June, July, and August
- Fall: September, October, and November.

This seasonality is based on the Northern Hemisphere. For the part of the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar that lies in the Southern Hemisphere, austral seasons pertain, which are the reverse of this standard timeframe. Austral winter occurs from June through August while austral summer lasts from December through February.

Deriving a spatial framework for the impact analysis required consideration of the geographic usage constraints (i.e., coastal standoff range) of SURTASS LFA sonar, the Navy's national security purpose for conducting SURTASS LFA sonar testing and training activities, and appropriate acoustic and environmental conditions. The Navy devised a spatial framework of 15 representative areas to model SURTASS LFA sonar activities in the study area of the central and western North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans that represent the acoustic regimes and marine mammal species potentially encountered during SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities (Table 3-7).

With this spatial and temporal framework in place, deriving the associated marine mammal species and associated population numbers for each model area in each season was required. Since the MMPA mandates protection of marine mammal stocks, stocks of each of the potentially occurring marine mammal species in each of the SURTASS LFA model areas had to also be identified. The potentially occurring marine mammal species and stocks for each modeling area were verified with distributional information and data from published scientific literature; government reports, including NMFS's stock assessment reports (SARs) for U.S. waters; and information from international organizations such as the IUCN and IWC.

Compiling population data and information is challenging for such a vast area as the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. Yet, density and abundance estimates are a critical component of the analysis to estimate risk to marine mammal populations from activities occurring in the marine environment. Population estimates of marine mammals are difficult to collect since these marine species spend much of their time submerged beneath the sea surface and are not easily observed. To collect sufficient sighting data to derive reasonable abundance or density estimates, however, multiple observations are required, often in areas that are not easily accessible (e.g., far offshore). For most cetacean species, abundances and densities are estimated using line-transect surveys or mark-recapture studies (e.g., Barlow, 2010; Barlow and Forney, 2007; Calambokidis et al., 2008), which usually provide a single abundance or density estimate for each species observed across broad geographic areas, such as waters within the U.S. EEZ off Hawaii. Though the single abundance or density provides a good average estimate of the total number of individuals in a specified area, it does not provide information on the species distribution or concentrations outside that limited area nor does it provide abundance or density estimate for other seasons that were not surveyed.

Abundance estimates are typically more available than are density estimates, which require more sophisticated sampling and analysis and are not always available for each species/stock in all model areas or seasons. Despite the greater availability of abundance data, population-level data on potentially

**Table 3-7. Locations of the 15 Representative Modeling Areas for Covered SURTASS LFA Sonar Training and Testing Activities.**

| *Modeling Area* | *Modeling Area Name* | *Location of Modeling Area Center* | *Notes* |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | East of Japan | 38°N, 148°E | |
| 2 | North Philippine Sea | 29°N, 136°E | |
| 3 | West Philippine Sea | 22°N/124°E | |
| 4 | Offshore Guam | 11°N, 145°E | Navy Mariana Islands Testing and Training Area |
| 5 | Sea of Japan | 39°N, 132°E | |
| 6 | East China Sea | 26°N, 125°E | |
| 7 | South China Sea | 14°N, 114°E | |
| 8 | Offshore Japan 25° to 40°N | 30°N, 165°E | |
| 9 | Offshore Japan 10° to 25°N | 15°N, 165°E | |
| 10 | Hawaii North | 25°N, 158°W | Navy Hawaii-Southern California Testing and Training Area; Hawaii Operating Area |
| 11 | Hawaii South | 19.5°N, 158.5°W | Navy Hawaii-Southern California Testing and Training Area; Hawaii Operating Area |
| 12 | Offshore Sri Lanka | 5°N, 85°E | |
| 13 | Andaman Sea | 7.5°N, 96°E | |
| 14 | Northwest of Australia | 18°S, 110°E | |
| 15 | Northeast of Japan | 52°N, 163°E | |

occurring marine mammals are very scarce for some of the 15 modeling areas, particularly in the Indian Ocean. Overall, no single source of abundance or density data exists in even one model area for every species, stock, or season. The process for developing abundance and density estimates for every species/stock in the 15 potential model areas in all seasons was a multi-step procedure that first utilized data with the highest degree of fidelity. In modeling areas where no abundance estimates were available for a stock, a surrogate abundance was needed. In modeling areas where no abundance estimates were available for a stock, a surrogate abundance was needed. A surrogate abundance estimate derived for a similar oceanographic area for the same species or a conspecific was used.

Abundance estimates were derived using the best available information and data (Table 3-8), including the most up-to-date NMFS draft SARs for U.S. Pacific waters (e.g., Carretta et al., 2018, and Muto et al., 2018).Population-level data for the majority of marine mammal stocks in the Indian Ocean are extremely scarce as few areas of this vast ocean expanse have been surveyed for marine mammals. While the meager Indian Ocean abundance data were used when available, a more comprehensive approach was needed to estimate abundances and densities for the majority of the marine mammal

**Table 3-8. Marine Mammal Species, Stocks (DPSs), Abundance, and Density Estimates by Season as well as the Associated References for the 15 Proposed SURTASS LFA Modeling Areas in the Central and Western North Pacific Ocean and Indian Ocean (Reference Index Shown at End of Table).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Name*[26] | *Abundance* | *Abundance References* | *Density (animals per km²)*[27] | | | | *Density References* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | *Winter* | *Spring* | *Summer* | *Fall* | |
| ***Model Area #1: East of Japan*** | | | | | | | | |
| Blue whale | WNP | 9,250 | 1 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | | 0.00001 | 1, 2, 3, 4 |
| Bryde's whale | WNP | 20,501 | 40 | 0.0006 | 0.0006 | 0.0006 | 0.0006 | 5 |
| Common minke whale | WNP OE | 25,049 | 6 | 0.0022 | 0.0022 | 0.0022 | 0.0022 | 6 |
| Fin whale | WNP | 9,250 | 1, 41 | | | 0.0002 | 0.0002 | 1 |
| Humpback whale | WNP stock and DPS[28] | 1,328 | 42 | | | 0.00036 | 0.00036 | 4, 7 |
| North Pacific right whale | WNP | 922 | 43 | 0.00001[29] | 0.00001 | | | |
| Sei whale | NP | 7,000 | 44 | 0.00029 | 0.00029 | 0.00029 | 0.00029 | 13 |
| Baird's beaked whale | WNP | 5,688 | 45 in 46 | | | 0.0029 | 0.0029 | 9 |
| Common dolphin | WNP | 3,286,163 | 2, 3 | 0.0761 | 0.0761 | 0.0761 | 0.0761 | 2, 3 |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | WNP Northern Offshore | 100,281 | 10, 46 | 0.0171 | 0.0171 | 0.0171 | 0.0171 | 10 |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | WNP | 90,725 | 2, 3 | 0.0031 | 0.0031 | 0.0031 | 0.0031 | 2, 3 |
| Dall's porpoise (*truei*) | WNP *truei* | 178,157 | 54 in 46 | 0.0390 | 0.0520 | | 0.0520 | 2, 3 |
| False killer whale | WNP | 16,668 | 10 | 0.0036 | 0.0036 | 0.0036 | 0.0036 | 10 |
| Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale | NP | 22,799 | 2, 3 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 2, 3 |
| Harbor porpoise | WNP | 31,046 | 11, 47 | 0.0190 | 0.0190 | 0.0190 | 0.0190 | 11 |
| Hubbs' beaked whale | NP | 22,799 | 2, 3 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 2, 3 |

26 NP=North Pacific; WNP=Western North Pacific; CNP=Central North Pacific; WP=Western Pacific; ECS=East China Sea; SOJ=Sea of Japan; IA=Inshore Archipelago; IND=Indian; NIND=Northern Indian; SIND=Southern Indian; WAU=Western Australia; ANT=Antarctic; YS=Yellow Sea; OE=Offshore Japan; OW=Nearshore Japan; JW=Sea of Japan/Minke; JE=Pacific coast of Japan; SH=Southern Hemisphere

27 No density in a season means that the marine mammal is not expected to occur in that model area during that season.

28 DPS=distinct population segment, which is a discrete population or group of populations of the same species that is significant to the entire species. Populations are identified stocks under the MMPA and as DPSs under the ESA. Thus, the humpback whale and other species are listed by stock and DPS (DPS/stock) where relevant.

29 A density value of 0.00001 with no reference citation indicates that no density was available for this species; because a density was necessary to compute takes, the lowest value possible was assigned to the data-sparse species for the purpose of impact estimation.

**Table 3-8. Marine Mammal Species, Stocks (DPSs), Abundance, and Density Estimates by Season as well as the Associated References for the 15 Proposed SURTASS LFA Modeling Areas in the Central and Western North Pacific Ocean and Indian Ocean (Reference Index Shown at End of Table).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Name*[26] | *Abundance* | *Abundance References* | *Density (animals per km²)*[27] | | | | *Density References* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | *Winter* | *Spring* | *Summer* | *Fall* | |
| Killer whale | WNP | 12,256 | 2, 3 | 0.0001 | 0.0001 | 0.0001 | 0.0001 | 12 |
| *Kogia* spp. | WNP | 350,553 | 2, 3 | 0.0031 | 0.0031 | 0.0031 | 0.0031 | 2, 3 |
| Pacific white-sided dolphin | NP | 931,000 | 19 | 0.0082 | 0.0082 | 0.0082 | 0.0082 | 2, 3 |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | WNP | 130,002 | 48 | | | 0.0259 | 0.0259 | 10 |
| Pygmy killer whale | WNP | 30,214 | 2, 3 | 0.0021 | 0.0021 | 0.0021 | 0.0021 | 2, 3 |
| Risso's dolphin | WNP | 143,374 | 48 | 0.0097 | 0.0097 | 0.0097 | 0.0097 | 10 |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | WNP | 5,002 | 48 | 0.00224 | 0.00224 | 0.00224 | 0.00224 | 20 |
| Short-finned pilot whale | WNP Northern | 20,884 | 10 | 0.0128 | 0.0128 | 0.0128 | 0.0128 | 10 |
| Sperm whale | NP | 102,112 | 49 | 0.00123 | 0.00123 | 0.00123 | 0.00123 | 13 |
| Spinner dolphin | WNP | 1,015,059 | 2, 3 | | | 0.00083 | 0.00083 | 14 |
| Stejneger's beaked whale | WNP | 8,000 | 9 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 2, 3 |
| Striped dolphin | WNP Northern Offshore | 497,725 | 10 in 46 | 0.0111 | 0.0111 | 0.0111 | 0.0111 | 10 |
| Northern fur seal | WP | 503,609 | 51, 52 | 0.368 | 0.158 | | | 34 |
| ***Model Area #2: North Philippine Sea*** | | | | | | | | |
| Blue whale | WNP | 9,250 | 1 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | | 0.00001 | 1, 2, 3, 4 |
| Bryde's whale | WNP | 20,501 | 40 | 0.0006 | 0.0006 | 0.0006 | 0.0006 | 5 |
| Common minke whale | WNP OE | 25,049 | 6 | 0.0044 | 0.0044 | 0.0044 | 0.0044 | 6, 35 |
| Fin whale | WNP | 9,250 | 1, 41 | 0.0002 | 0.0002 | | | 1 |
| Humpback whale | WNP stock and DPS | 1,328 | 42 | 0.00089 | 0.00089 | | 0.00089 | 4, 17 |
| North Pacific right whale | WNP | 922 | 43 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | | | |
| Omura's whale | WNP | 1,800 | 55 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 4 in 40 |
| Blainville's beaked whale | WNP | 8,032 | 2, 3 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 2, 3 |
| Common dolphin | WNP | 3,286,163 | 2, 3 | 0.0562 | 0.0562 | 0.0562 | 0.0562 | 2, 3 |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | Japanese Coastal | 3,516 | 48 | 0.0146 | 0.0146 | 0.0146 | 0.0146 | 10 |

**Table 3-8. Marine Mammal Species, Stocks (DPSs), Abundance, and Density Estimates by Season as well as the Associated References for the 15 Proposed SURTASS LFA Modeling Areas in the Central and Western North Pacific Ocean and Indian Ocean (Reference Index Shown at End of Table).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Name*[26] | *Abundance* | *Abundance References* | *Density (animals per km²)*[27] | | | | *Density References* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | *Winter* | *Spring* | *Summer* | *Fall* | |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | WNP | 90,725 | 2, 3 | 0.0054 | 0.0054 | 0.0054 | 0.0054 | 2, 3 |
| False killer whale | WNP | 16,668 | 10 | 0.0029 | 0.0029 | 0.0029 | 0.0029 | 10 |
| Fraser's dolphin | WNP | 220,789 | 2, 3 | 0.0069 | 0.0069 | 0.0069 | 0.0069 | 15 |
| Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale | NP | 22,799 | 2, 3 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 2, 3 |
| Killer whale | WNP | 12,256 | 2, 3 | 0.00009 | 0.00009 | 0.00009 | 0.00009 | 12 |
| *Kogia* spp. | WNP | 350,553 | 2, 3 | 0.0031 | 0.0031 | 0.0031 | 0.0031 | 2, 3 |
| Longman's beaked whale | WNP | 7,619 | 18 | 0.00025 | 0.00025 | 0.00025 | 0.00025 | 12 |
| Melon-headed whale | WNP | 56,213 | 48 | 0.00428 | 0.00428 | 0.00428 | 0.00428 | 13 |
| Pacific white-sided dolphin | NP | 931,000 | 19 | 0.0119 | 0.0119 | | | 2, 3 |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | WNP | 130,002 | 48 | 0.0137 | 0.0137 | 0.0137 | 0.0137 | 10 |
| Pygmy killer whale | WNP | 30,214 | 2, 3 | 0.0021 | 0.0021 | 0.0021 | 0.0021 | 2, 3 |
| Risso's dolphin | WNP | 143,374 | 48 | 0.0106 | 0.0106 | 0.0106 | 0.0106 | 10 |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | WNP | 5,002 | 48 | 0.00224 | 0.00224 | 0.00224 | 0.00224 | 20 |
| Short-finned pilot whale | WNP Southern | 31,396 | 48 | 0.0153 | 0.0153 | 0.0153 | 0.0153 | 10 |
| Sperm whale | NP | 102,112 | 49 | 0.00123 | 0.00123 | 0.00123 | 0.00123 | 13 |
| Spinner dolphin | WNP | 1,015,059 | 2, 3 | 0.00083 | 0.00083 | 0.00083 | 0.00083 | 14 |
| Striped dolphin | Japanese Coastal | 19,631 | 10 in 46 | 0.0329 | 0.0329 | 0.0329 | 0.0329 | 10 |
| ***Model Area #3: West Philippine Sea*** | | | | | | | | |
| Blue whale | WNP | 9,250 | 1 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | | 0.00001 | 1, 2, 3, 4 |
| Bryde's whale | WNP | 20,501 | 40 | 0.0006 | 0.0006 | 0.0006 | 0.0006 | 5 |
| Common minke whale | WNP OE | 25,049 | 6 | 0.0033 | 0.0033 | 0.0033 | 0.0033 | 6 |
| Fin whale | WNP | 9,250 | 1, 41 | 0.0002 | 0.0002 | | | 1 |
| Humpback whale | WNP stock and DPS | 1,328 | 42 | 0.00089 | 0.00089 | | 0.00089 | 4, 17 |
| Omura's whale | WNP | 1,800 | 55 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 4 in 40 |
| Blainville's beaked whale | WNP | 8,032 | 2, 3 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 2, 3 |

**Table 3-8. Marine Mammal Species, Stocks (DPSs), Abundance, and Density Estimates by Season as well as the Associated References for the 15 Proposed SURTASS LFA Modeling Areas in the Central and Western North Pacific Ocean and Indian Ocean (Reference Index Shown at End of Table).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Name*[26] | *Abundance* | *Abundance References* | *Density (animals per km²)*[27] | | | | *Density References* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | *Winter* | *Spring* | *Summer* | *Fall* | |
| Common dolphin | WNP | 3,286,163 | 2, 3 | 0.1158 | 0.1158 | 0.1158 | 0.1158 | 16 |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | WNP Southern Offshore | 40,769 | 48 | 0.0146 | 0.0146 | 0.0146 | 0.0146 | 10 |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | WNP | 90,725 | 2, 3 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 2, 3 |
| Deraniyagala's beaked whale | NP | 22,799 | 56 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 2, 3 |
| False killer whale | WNP | 16,668 | 10 | 0.0029 | 0.0029 | 0.0029 | 0.0029 | 10 |
| Fraser's dolphin | WNP | 220,789 | 2, 3 | 0.0069 | 0.0069 | 0.0069 | 0.0069 | 15 |
| Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale | NP | 22,799 | 2, 3 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 2, 3 |
| Killer whale | WNP | 12,256 | 2, 3 | 0.00009 | 0.00009 | 0.00009 | 0.00009 | 12 |
| *Kogia* spp. | WNP | 350,553 | 2, 3 | 0.0017 | 0.0017 | 0.0017 | 0.0017 | 2, 3 |
| Longman's beaked whale | WNP | 7,619 | 18 | 0.00025 | 0.00025 | 0.00025 | 0.00025 | 12 |
| Melon-headed whale | WNP | 56,213 | 48 | 0.00428 | 0.00428 | 0.00428 | 0.00428 | 13 |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | WNP | 130,002 | 48 | 0.0137 | 0.0137 | 0.0137 | 0.0137 | 10 |
| Pygmy killer whale | WNP | 30,214 | 2, 3 | 0.0021 | 0.0021 | 0.0021 | 0.0021 | 2, 3 |
| Risso's dolphin | WNP | 143,374 | 48 | 0.0106 | 0.0106 | 0.0106 | 0.0106 | 10 |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | WNP | 5,002 | 48 | 0.00224 | 0.00224 | 0.00224 | 0.00224 | 20 |
| Short-finned pilot whale | WNP Southern | 31,396 | 48 | 0.0076 | 0.0076 | 0.0076 | 0.0076 | 10 |
| Sperm whale | NP | 102,112 | 49 | 0.00123 | 0.00123 | 0.00123 | 0.00123 | 13 |
| Spinner dolphin | WNP | 1,015,059 | 2, 3 | 0.00083 | 0.00083 | 0.00083 | 0.00083 | 14 |
| Striped dolphin | WNP Southern Offshore | 52,682 | 10 in 46 | 0.0164 | 0.0164 | 0.0164 | 0.0164 | 10 |
| ***Model Area #4: Offshore Guam*** | | | | | | | | |
| Blue whale | WNP | 9,250 | 1 | 0.00005 | 0.00005 | | 0.00005 | 18 |
| Bryde's whale | WNP | 20,501 | 40 | 0.0004 | 0.0004 | 0.0004 | 0.0004 | 13 |
| Common minke whale | WNP OE | 25,049 | 6 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | | 0.0003 | 2, 3 |
| Fin whale | WNP | 9,250 | 1 | 0.00006 | 0.00006 | | 0.00006 | 18 |

**Table 3-8. Marine Mammal Species, Stocks (DPSs), Abundance, and Density Estimates by Season as well as the Associated References for the 15 Proposed SURTASS LFA Modeling Areas in the Central and Western North Pacific Ocean and Indian Ocean (Reference Index Shown at End of Table).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Name*[26] | *Abundance* | *Abundance References* | *Density (animals per km²)*[27] | | | | *Density References* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | *Winter* | *Spring* | *Summer* | *Fall* | |
| Humpback whale | WNP stock and DPS | 1,328 | 42 | 0.00089 | 0.00089 | | 0.00089 | 4, 17 |
| Omura's whale | WNP | 1,800 | 55 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 4 in 37 |
| Sei whale | NP | 7,000 | 44 | 0.00029 | 0.00029 | | 0.00029 | 13 |
| Blainville's beaked whale | WNP | 8,032 | 2, 3 | 0.00086 | 0.00086 | 0.00086 | 0.00086 | 18 |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | WNP Southern Offshore | 40,769 | 51 | 0.00899 | 0.00899 | 0.00899 | 0.00899 | 18 |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | WNP | 90,725 | 2, 3 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 18 |
| Deraniyagala's beaked whale | NP | 22,799 | 2, 3 | 0.00189 | 0.00189 | 0.00189 | 0.00189 | 18 |
| Dwarf sperm whale | WNP | 350,553 | 2, 3 | 0.00714 | 0.00714 | 0.00714 | 0.00714 | 14 |
| False killer whale | WNP | 16,668 | 10 | 0.00111 | 0.00111 | 0.00111 | 0.00111 | 13 |
| Fraser's dolphin | CNP | 16,992 | 15 | 0.02104 | 0.02104 | 0.02104 | 0.02104 | 18 |
| Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale | NP | 22,799 | 2, 3 | 0.00189 | 0.00189 | 0.00189 | 0.00189 | 18 |
| Killer whale | WNP | 12,256 | 2, 3 | 0.00006 | 0.00006 | 0.00006 | 0.00006 | 18 |
| Longman's beaked whale | WNP | 7,619 | 18 | 0.00311 | 0.00311 | 0.00311 | 0.00311 | 18 |
| Melon-headed whale | WNP | 56,213 | 48 | 0.00428 | 0.00428 | 0.00428 | 0.00428 | 13 |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | WNP | 130,002 | 48 | 0.0226 | 0.0226 | 0.0226 | 0.0226 | 13 |
| Pygmy killer whale | WNP | 30,214 | 2, 3 | 0.00014 | 0.00014 | 0.00014 | 0.00014 | 13 |
| Pygmy sperm whale | WNP | 350,553 | 2, 3 | 0.00291 | 0.00291 | 0.00291 | 0.00291 | 14 |
| Risso's dolphin | WNP | 143,374 | 48 | 0.00474 | 0.00474 | 0.00474 | 0.00474 | 18 |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | WNP | 5,002 | 48 | 0.00185 | 0.00185 | 0.00185 | 0.00185 | 12 |
| Short-finned pilot whale | WNP Southern | 31,396 | 48 | 0.00797 | 0.00797 | 0.00797 | 0.00797 | 18 |
| Sperm whale | NP | 102,112 | 49 | 0.00123 | 0.00123 | 0.00123 | 0.00123 | 13 |
| Spinner dolphin | WNP | 1,015,059 | 2, 3 | 0.00083 | 0.00083 | 0.00083 | 0.00083 | 14 |
| Striped dolphin | WNP Southern Offshore | 52,682 | 10 in 46 | 0.00616 | 0.00616 | 0.00616 | 0.00616 | 13 |

**Table 3-8. Marine Mammal Species, Stocks (DPSs), Abundance, and Density Estimates by Season as well as the Associated References for the 15 Proposed SURTASS LFA Modeling Areas in the Central and Western North Pacific Ocean and Indian Ocean (Reference Index Shown at End of Table).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Name*[26] | *Abundance* | *Abundance References* | *Density (animals per km²)*[27] | | | | *Density References* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | *Winter* | *Spring* | *Summer* | *Fall* | |
| ***Model Area #5: Sea of Japan*** | | | | | | | | |
| Bryde's whale | WNP | 20,501 | 40 | 0.0001 | 0.0001 | 0.0001 | 0.0001 | 2, 3 |
| Common minke whale | WNP JW | 2,611 | 37 | 0.00016 | 0.00016 | 0.00016 | 0.00016 | 2, 3 |
| Fin whale | WNP | 9,250 | 1 | 0.0009 | 0.0009 | | 0.0009 | 2, 3 |
| North Pacific right whale | WNP | 922 | 43 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | | | |
| Omura's whale | WNP | 1,800 | 55 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 4, in 37 |
| Western North Pacific gray whale | WNP stock and Western DPS | 290 | 91 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | |
| Baird's beaked whale | WNP | 5,688 | 45 in 46 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | | 0.0003 | 9 |
| Common dolphin | WNP | 279,182 | 16 | 0.1158 | 0.1158 | 0.1158 | 0.1158 | 16 |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | IA | 105,138 | 45, 92 | 0.00077 | 0.00077 | 0.00077 | 0.00077 | 12 |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | WNP | 90,725 | 2, 3 | 0.0031 | 0.0031 | 0.0031 | 0.0031 | 2, 3 |
| Dall's porpoise (*dalli*) | SOJ *dalli* | 173,638 | 58 | 0.0520 | 0.0520 | | 0.0520 | 2, 3 |
| False killer whale | IA | 9,777 | 45, 92 | 0.0027 | 0.0027 | 0.0027 | 0.0027 | 2, 3 |
| Harbor porpoise | WNP | 31,046 | 11, 47 | 0.0190 | 0.0190 | | 0.0190 | 11 |
| Killer whale | WNP | 12,256 | 2, 3 | 0.00009 | 0.00009 | 0.00009 | 0.00009 | 12 |
| *Kogia* spp. | WNP | 350,553 | 2, 3 | 0.0017 | 0.0017 | 0.0017 | 0.0017 | 2, 3 |
| Pacific white-sided dolphin | NP | 931,000 | 19 | 0.0030 | 0.0030 | | | 2, 3 |
| Risso's dolphin | IA | 143,374 | 48 | 0.0073 | 0.0073 | 0.0073 | 0.0073 | 10 |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | WNP | 5,002 | 48 | 0.00224 | 0.00224 | 0.00224 | 0.00224 | 20 |
| Sperm whale | NP | 102,112 | 49 | 0.00123 | 0.00123 | 0.00123 | 0.00123 | 13 |
| Spinner dolphin | WNP | 1,015,059 | 2, 3 | | | 0.00083 | 0.00083 | 14 |
| Stejneger's beaked whale | WNP | 8,000 | 9 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 2, 3 |
| Northern fur seal | WP | 503,609 | 51, 52 | 0.368 | 0.158 | | | 34 |
| Spotted seal | Southern stock and DPS | 6,284 | 59, 60, 93, 94 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | |

**Table 3-8. Marine Mammal Species, Stocks (DPSs), Abundance, and Density Estimates by Season as well as the Associated References for the 15 Proposed SURTASS LFA Modeling Areas in the Central and Western North Pacific Ocean and Indian Ocean (Reference Index Shown at End of Table).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Name*[26] | *Abundance* | *Abundance References* | *Density (animals per km²)*[27] | | | | *Density References* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | *Winter* | *Spring* | *Summer* | *Fall* | |
| ***Model Area #6: East China Sea*** | | | | | | | | |
| Bryde's whale | ECS | 137 | 61 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 12 |
| Common minke whale | YS | 4,492 | 35, 62 | 0.0018 | 0.0018 | 0.0018 | 0.0018 | 6 |
| Fin whale | ECS | 500 | 1, 41 | 0.0002 | 0.0002 | 0.0002 | 0.0002 | 1 |
| North Pacific right whale | WNP | 922 | 43 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | | | |
| Omura's whale | WNP | 1,800 | 55 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 4 in 37 |
| Western North Pacific gray whale | WNP stock and Western DPS | 290 | 91 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | | 0.00001 | |
| Blainville's beaked whale | WNP | 8,032 | 2, 3 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 2, 3 |
| Common dolphin | WNP | 279,182 | 16 | 0.1158 | 0.1158 | 0.1158 | 0.1158 | 16 |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | IA | 105,138 | 45, 92 | 0.00077 | 0.00077 | 0.00077 | 0.00077 | 12 |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | WNP | 90,725 | 2, 3 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 2, 3 |
| False killer whale | IA | 9,777 | 45, 92 | 0.00111 | 0.00111 | 0.00111 | 0.00111 | 13 |
| Fraser's dolphin | WNP | 220,789 | 2, 3 | 0.00694 | 0.00694 | 0.00694 | 0.00694 | 15 |
| Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale | NP | 22,799 | 2, 3 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 2, 3 |
| Killer whale | WNP | 12,256 | 2, 3 | 0.00009 | 0.00009 | 0.00009 | 0.00009 | 12 |
| *Kogia* spp. | WNP | 350,553 | 2, 3 | 0.0017 | 0.0017 | 0.0017 | 0.0017 | 2, 3 |
| Longman's beaked whale | WNP | 7,619 | 19 | 0.00025 | 0.00025 | 0.00025 | 0.00025 | 12 |
| Melon-headed whale | WNP | 56,213 | 48 | 0.00428 | 0.00428 | 0.00428 | 0.00428 | 13 |
| Pacific white-sided dolphin | NP | 931,000 | 19 | 0.0028 | 0.0028 | | | 2, 3 |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | WNP | 130,002 | 48 | 0.01374 | 0.01374 | 0.01374 | 0.01374 | 10 |
| Pygmy killer whale | WNP | 30,214 | 2, 3 | 0.00014 | 0.00014 | 0.00014 | 0.00014 | 13 |
| Risso's dolphin | IA | 143,374 | 48 | 0.0106 | 0.0106 | 0.0106 | 0.0106 | 10 |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | WNP | 5,002 | 48 | 0.00224 | 0.00224 | 0.00224 | 0.00224 | 20 |
| Sperm whale | NP | 102,112 | 49 | 0.00123 | 0.00123 | 0.00123 | 0.00123 | 13 |
| Spinner dolphin | WNP | 1,015,059 | 2, 3 | 0.00083 | 0.00083 | 0.00083 | 0.00083 | 14 |

**Table 3-8. Marine Mammal Species, Stocks (DPSs), Abundance, and Density Estimates by Season as well as the Associated References for the 15 Proposed SURTASS LFA Modeling Areas in the Central and Western North Pacific Ocean and Indian Ocean (Reference Index Shown at End of Table).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Name*[26] | *Abundance* | *Abundance References* | *Density (animals per km²)*[27] | | | | *Density References* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | *Winter* | *Spring* | *Summer* | *Fall* | |
| Spotted seal | Southern stock and DPS | 1,500 | 59, 93 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | |
| ***Model Area #7: South China Sea*** | | | | | | | | |
| Bryde's whale | WNP | 20,501 | 40 | 0.0006 | 0.0006 | 0.0006 | 0.0006 | 5 |
| Common minke whale | YS | 4,492 | 35, 62 | 0.0018 | 0.0018 | 0.0018 | 0.0018 | 6 |
| Fin whale | WNP | 9,250 | 1 | 0.0002 | 0.0002 | | 0.0002 | 1 |
| Humpback whale | WNP stock and DPS | 1,328 | 42 | 0.00036 | 0.00036 | | 0.00036 | 4, 7 |
| North Pacific right whale | WNP | 922 | 43 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | | | |
| Omura's whale | WNP | 1,800 | 55 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 4 in 37 |
| Western North Pacific gray whale | WNP stock and Western DPS | 290 | 91 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | | 0.00001 | |
| Blainville's beaked whale | WNP | 8,032 | 2, 3 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 2, 3 |
| Common dolphin | WNP | 279,182 | 16 | 0.1158 | 0.1158 | 0.1158 | 0.1158 | 16 |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | IA | 105,138 | 45. 92 | 0.00077 | 0.00077 | 0.00077 | 0.00077 | 12 |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | WNP | 90,725 | 2, 3 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 2, 3 |
| Deraniyagala's beaked whale | NP | 22,799 | 2, 3, 64 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 2, 3 |
| False killer whale | IA | 9,777 | 45, 92 | 0.00111 | 0.00111 | 0.00111 | 0.00111 | 13 |
| Fraser's dolphin | WNP | 220,789 | 2, 3 | 0.00694 | 0.00694 | 0.00694 | 0.00694 | 15 |
| Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale | NP | 22,799 | 2, 3 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 2, 3 |
| Killer whale | WNP | 12,256 | 2, 3 | 0.00009 | 0.00009 | 0.00009 | 0.00009 | 12 |
| *Kogia* spp. | WNP | 350,553 | 2, 3 | 0.0017 | 0.0017 | 0.0017 | 0.0017 | 2, 3 |
| Longman's beaked whale | WNP | 7,619 | 18 | 0.00025 | 0.00025 | 0.00025 | 0.00025 | 12 |
| Melon-headed whale | WNP | 56,213 | 48 | 0.00428 | 0.00428 | 0.00428 | 0.00428 | 13 |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | WNP | 130,002 | 48 | 0.01374 | 0.01374 | 0.01374 | 0.01374 | 10 |
| Pygmy killer whale | WNP | 30,214 | 2, 3 | 0.00014 | 0.00014 | 0.00014 | 0.00014 | 13 |

**Table 3-8. Marine Mammal Species, Stocks (DPSs), Abundance, and Density Estimates by Season as well as the Associated References for the 15 Proposed SURTASS LFA Modeling Areas in the Central and Western North Pacific Ocean and Indian Ocean (Reference Index Shown at End of Table).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Name[26]* | *Abundance* | *Abundance References* | *Density (animals per km²)[27]* | | | | *Density References* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | *Winter* | *Spring* | *Summer* | *Fall* | |
| Risso's dolphin | IA | 143,374 | 48 | 0.0106 | 0.0106 | 0.0106 | 0.0106 | 10 |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | WNP | 5,002 | 48 | 0.00224 | 0.00224 | 0.00224 | 0.00224 | 20 |
| Short-finned pilot whale | WNP Southern | 31,396 | 48 | 0.00159 | 0.00159 | 0.00159 | 0.00159 | 13 |
| Sperm whale | NP | 102,112 | 49 | 0.00123 | 0.00123 | 0.00123 | 0.00123 | 13 |
| Spinner dolphin | WNP | 1,015,059 | 2, 3 | 0.00083 | 0.00083 | 0.00083 | 0.00083 | 14 |
| Striped dolphin | WNP Southern Offshore | 52,682 | 10 in 46 | 0.00584 | 0.00584 | 0.00584 | 0.00584 | 12 |
| ***Model Area #8: Offshore Japan/Pacific (25º to 40ºN)*** | | | | | | | | |
| Blue whale | WNP | 9,250 | 1 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | | 0.00001 | 1, 2, 3, 4 |
| Bryde's whale | WNP | 20,501 | 40 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 12 |
| Common minke whale | WNP OE | 25,049 | 6 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 6 |
| Fin whale | WNP | 9,250 | 1, 41 | | | 0.0001 | 0.0001 | 1 |
| Humpback whale | WNP stock and DPS | 1,328 | 42 | | | 0.00036 | 0.00036 | 4, 7 |
| Sei whale | NP | 7,000 | 44 | | 0.00029 | 0.00029 | 0.00029 | 13 |
| Baird's beaked whale | WNP | 5,688 | 45 in 46 | 0.0001 | 0.0001 | 0.0001 | 0.0001 | 9 |
| Blainville's beaked whale | WNP | 8,032 | 2, 3 | 0.0007 | 0.0007 | 0.0007 | 0.0007 | 12 |
| Common dolphin | WNP | 3,286,163 | 2, 3 | 0.0863 | 0.0863 | 0.0863 | 0.0863 | 2, 3 |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | WNP Northern Offshore | 100,281 | 10 in 46 | 0.00077 | 0.00077 | 0.00077 | 0.00077 | 12 |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | WNP | 90,725 | 2, 3 | 0.00374 | 0.00374 | 0.00374 | 0.00374 | 12 |
| Dall's porpoise | WNP *dalli* | 162,000 | 65 in 46 | 0.0390 | 0.0520 | | 0.0520 | 2, 3 |
| Dwarf sperm whale | WNP | 350,553 | 2, 3 | 0.0043 | 0.0043 | 0.0043 | 0.0043 | 12 |
| False killer whale | WNP | 16,668 | 10 | 0.0036 | 0.0036 | 0.0036 | 0.0036 | 10 |
| Hubbs' beaked whale | NP | 22,799 | 2, 3 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 2, 3 |
| Killer whale | WNP | 12,256 | 2, 3 | 0.00009 | 0.00009 | 0.00009 | 0.00009 | 12 |

**Table 3-8. Marine Mammal Species, Stocks (DPSs), Abundance, and Density Estimates by Season as well as the Associated References for the 15 Proposed SURTASS LFA Modeling Areas in the Central and Western North Pacific Ocean and Indian Ocean (Reference Index Shown at End of Table).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Name*[26] | *Abundance* | *Abundance References* | *Density (animals per km²)*[27] | | | | *Density References* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | *Winter* | *Spring* | *Summer* | *Fall* | |
| Longman's beaked whale | WNP | 7,619 | 18 | 0.00025 | 0.00025 | 0.00025 | 0.00025 | 12 |
| Melon-headed whale | WNP | 56,213 | 48 | 0.0027 | 0.0027 | 0.0027 | 0.0027 | 12 |
| *Mesoplodon* spp. | WNP | 22,799 | 2, 3 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 2, 3 |
| Northern right whale dolphin | NP | 68,000 | 19 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | | 0.00001 | |
| Pacific white-sided dolphin | NP | 931,000 | 19 | 0.0048 | 0.0048 | 0.0048 | 0.0048 | 2, 3 |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | WNP | 130,002 | 48 | 0.0113 | 0.0113 | 0.0113 | 0.0113 | 12 |
| Pygmy killer whale | WNP | 30,214 | 2, 3 | 0.0001 | 0.0001 | 0.0001 | 0.0001 | 12 |
| Pygmy sperm whale | WNP | 350,553 | 2, 3 | 0.0018 | 0.0018 | 0.0018 | 0.0018 | 12 |
| Risso's dolphin | WNP | 143,374 | 48 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 12 |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | WNP | 5,002 | 48 | 0.0019 | 0.0019 | 0.0019 | 0.0019 | 12 |
| Short-finned pilot whale | WNP Northern | 20,884 | 10 | 0.0021 | 0.0021 | 0.0021 | 0.0021 | 12 |
| Sperm whale | NP | 102,112 | 49 | 0.0022 | 0.0022 | 0.0022 | 0.0022 | 12 |
| Spinner dolphin | WNP | 1,015,059 | 2, 3 | 0.0019 | 0.0019 | 0.0019 | 0.0019 | 12 |
| Stejneger's beaked whale | WNP | 8,000 | 9 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 2, 3 |
| Striped dolphin | WNP Northern Offshore | 497,725 | 10 in 46 | 0.0058 | 0.0058 | 0.0058 | 0.0058 | 12 |
| Hawaiian monk seal | Hawaii | 1,427 | 35 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | |
| Northern fur seal | Western Pacific | 503,609 | 54, 55 | 0.0123 | | | | 20 |
| ***Model Area #9: Offshore Japan/Pacific (10° to 25°N)*** | | | | | | | | |
| Blue whale | WNP | 9,250 | 1, 38 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | | 0.00001 | 1, 2, 3, 4 |
| Bryde's whale | WNP | 20,501 | 40 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 12 |
| Fin whale | WNP | 9,250 | 1 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | | | |
| Humpback whale | WNP stock and DPS | 1,328 | 42 | 0.00036 | 0.00036 | | 0.00036 | 4, 7 |
| Omura's whale | WNP | 1,800 | 55 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 4 in 37 |
| Sei whale | NP | 7,000 | 44 | 0.00029 | | | 0.00029 | 13 |

**Table 3-8. Marine Mammal Species, Stocks (DPSs), Abundance, and Density Estimates by Season as well as the Associated References for the 15 Proposed SURTASS LFA Modeling Areas in the Central and Western North Pacific Ocean and Indian Ocean (Reference Index Shown at End of Table).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Name*[26] | *Abundance* | *Abundance References* | *Density (animals per km²)*[27] | | | | *Density References* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | *Winter* | *Spring* | *Summer* | *Fall* | |
| Blainville's beaked whale | WNP | 8,032 | 2, 3 | 0.0007 | 0.0007 | 0.0007 | 0.0007 | 12 |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | WNP Southern Offshore | 40,769 | 48 | 0.00077 | 0.00077 | 0.00077 | 0.00077 | 12 |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | WNP | 90,725 | 2, 3 | 0.00374 | 0.00374 | 0.00374 | 0.00374 | 12 |
| Deraniyagala's beaked whale | NP | 22,799 | 2, 3 | 0.00093 | 0.00093 | 0.00093 | 0.00093 | 2, 3 |
| Dwarf sperm whale | WNP | 350,553 | 2, 3 | 0.0043 | 0.0043 | 0.0043 | 0.0043 | 12 |
| False killer whale | WNP | 16,668 | 10 | 0.00057 | 0.00057 | 0.00057 | 0.00057 | 12 |
| Fraser's dolphin | CNP | 16,992 | 15 | 0.00251 | 0.00251 | 0.00251 | 0.00251 | 12 |
| Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale | NP | 22,799 | 2, 3 | 0.00093 | 0.00093 | 0.00093 | 0.00093 | 2, 3 |
| Killer whale | WNP | 12,256 | 2, 3 | 0.00009 | 0.00009 | 0.00009 | 0.00009 | 12 |
| Longman's beaked whale | WNP | 7,619 | 18 | 0.00025 | 0.00025 | 0.00025 | 0.00025 | 12 |
| Melon-headed whale | WNP | 56,213 | 48 | 0.00267 | 0.00267 | 0.00267 | 0.00267 | 12 |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | WNP | 130,002 | 48 | 0.01132 | 0.01132 | 0.01132 | 0.01132 | 12 |
| Pygmy killer whale | WNP | 30,214 | 2, 3 | 0.00006 | 0.00006 | 0.00006 | 0.00006 | 12 |
| Pygmy sperm whale | WNP | 350,553 | 2, 3 | 0.00176 | 0.00176 | 0.00176 | 0.00176 | 12 |
| Risso's dolphin | WNP | 143,374 | 48 | 0.00046 | 0.00046 | 0.00046 | 0.00046 | 12 |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | WNP | 5,002 | 48 | 0.00185 | 0.00185 | 0.00185 | 0.00185 | 12 |
| Short-finned pilot whale | WNP Southern | 31,396 | 48 | 0.00211 | 0.00211 | 0.00211 | 0.00211 | 12 |
| Sperm whale | NP | 102,112 | 49 | 0.00222 | 0.00222 | 0.00222 | 0.00222 | 12 |
| Spinner dolphin | WNP | 1,015,059 | 2, 3 | 0.00187 | 0.00187 | 0.00187 | 0.00187 | 12 |
| Striped dolphin | WNP Southern Offshore | 52,682 | 10 in 46 | 0.00584 | 0.00584 | 0.00584 | 0.00584 | 12 |
| ***Model Area #10: Hawaii North*** | | | | | | | | |
| Blue whale | CNP | 133 | 18 | 0.00005 | 0.00005 | | 0.00005 | 18 |
| Bryde's whale | Hawaii | 1,751 | 18 | 0.000085 | 0.000085 | 0.000085 | 0.000085 | 20 |
| Common minke whale | Hawaii | 25,049 | 6 | 0.00423 | 0.00423 | | 0.00423 | 21 |

**Table 3-8. Marine Mammal Species, Stocks (DPSs), Abundance, and Density Estimates by Season as well as the Associated References for the 15 Proposed SURTASS LFA Modeling Areas in the Central and Western North Pacific Ocean and Indian Ocean (Reference Index Shown at End of Table).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Name*[26] | *Abundance* | *Abundance References* | *Density (animals per km²)*[27] | | | | *Density References* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | *Winter* | *Spring* | *Summer* | *Fall* | |
| Fin whale | Hawaii | 154 | 18 | 0.00006 | 0.00006 | | 0.00006 | 18 |
| Humpback whale | CNP stock and Hawaii DPS | 10,103 | 7, 66 | 0.00529 | 0.00529 | | 0.00529 | 7, 22 |
| Sei whale | Hawaii | 391 | 18 | 0.00016 | 0.00016 | | 0.00016 | 18 |
| Blainville's beaked whale | Hawaii | 2,105 | 18 | 0.00086 | 0.00086 | 0.00086 | 0.00086 | 18 |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | Hawaii Pelagic | 21,815 | 18 | 0.00118 | 0.00118 | 0.00118 | 0.00118 | 20 |
| | Kauai/Niihau | 184 | 23, 67 | 0.065 | 0.065 | 0.065 | 0.065 | 23 |
| | 4-Islands | 191 | 23, 67 | 0.017 | 0.017 | 0.017 | 0.017 | 23 |
| | Oahu | 743 | 23, 67 | 0.187 | 0.187 | 0.187 | 0.187 | 23 |
| | Hawaii Island | 128 | 23, 67 | 0.028 | 0.028 | 0.028 | 0.028 | 23 |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | Hawaii | 723 | 18 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 18 |
| Dwarf sperm whale | Hawaii | 17,519 | 14 | 0.00714 | 0.00714 | 0.00714 | 0.00714 | 14 |
| False killer whale | Hawaii Pelagic | 1,540 | 24, 57, 68 | 0.00060 | 0.00060 | 0.00060 | 0.00060 | 20, 24 |
| | Main Hawaiian Islands Insular stock and DPS | 167 | 69, 91 | 0.0008 | 0.0008 | 0.0008 | 0.0008 | 24 |
| | Northwestern Hawaiian Islands | 617 | 25, 57, 68 | 0.00060 | 0.00060 | 0.00060 | 0.00060 | 20, 24 |
| Fraser's dolphin | Hawaii | 51,491 | 18 | 0.02104 | 0.02104 | 0.02104 | 0.02104 | 18 |
| Killer whale | Hawaii | 146 | 18 | 0.00006 | 0.00006 | 0.00006 | 0.00006 | 18 |
| Longman's beaked whale | Hawaii | 7,619 | 18 | 0.00311 | 0.00311 | 0.00311 | 0.00311 | 18 |
| Melon-headed whale | Hawaiian Islands | 8,666 | 18 | 0.0020 | 0.0020 | 0.0020 | 0.0020 | 26 |
| Melon-headed whale | Kohala Resident | 447 | 26 | 0.1000 | 0.1000 | 0.1000 | 0.1000 | 26 |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | Hawaii Pelagic | 55,795 | 18 | 0.00369 | 0.00369 | 0.00369 | 0.00369 | 20 |
| | Hawaii Island | 220 | 70 | 0.061 | 0.061 | 0.061 | 0.061 | 27 |
| | Oahu | 220 | 70 | 0.072 | 0.072 | 0.072 | 0.072 | 27 |

**Table 3-8. Marine Mammal Species, Stocks (DPSs), Abundance, and Density Estimates by Season as well as the Associated References for the 15 Proposed SURTASS LFA Modeling Areas in the Central and Western North Pacific Ocean and Indian Ocean (Reference Index Shown at End of Table).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Name*[26] | *Abundance* | *Abundance References* | *Density (animals per km²)*[27] | | | | *Density References* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | *Winter* | *Spring* | *Summer* | *Fall* | |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin (Continued) | 4-Islands | 220 | 70 | 0.061 | 0.061 | 0.061 | 0.061 | 27 |
| Pygmy killer whale | Hawaii | 10,640 | 18 | 0.00435 | 0.00435 | 0.00435 | 0.00435 | 18 |
| Pygmy sperm whale | Hawaii | 7,138 | 14 | 0.0029 | 0.0029 | 0.0029 | 0.0029 | 14 |
| Risso's dolphin | Hawaii | 11,613 | 18 | 0.00474 | 0.00474 | 0.00474 | 0.00474 | 18 |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | Hawaii | 72,528 | 18 | 0.00224 | 0.00224 | 0.00224 | 0.00224 | 20 |
| Short-finned pilot whale | Hawaii | 19,503 | 18 | 0.00459 | 0.00459 | 0.00459 | 0.00459 | 20 |
| Sperm whale | Hawaii | 4,559 | 18 | 0.00158 | 0.00158 | 0.00158 | 0.00158 | 20 |
| Spinner dolphin | Hawaii Pelagic | 3,351 | 14 | 0.00159 | 0.00159 | 0.00159 | 0.00159 | 20 |
| | Kauai/Niihau | 601 | 67 | 0.097 | 0.097 | 0.097 | 0.097 | 28 |
| | Hawaii Island | 665 | 91 | 0.066 | 0.066 | 0.066 | 0.066 | 29 |
| | Oahu/ 4-Islands | 355 | 67 | 0.023 | 0.023 | 0.023 | 0.023 | 28 |
| | Kure/Midway Atoll | 260 | 67 | 0.0070 | 0.0070 | 0.0070 | 0.0070 | 14 |
| | Pearl and Hermes Reefs | 300 | 71, 72 | 0.0070 | 0.0070 | 0.0070 | 0.0070 | 14 |
| Striped dolphin | Hawaii | 61,201 | 18 | 0.00385 | 0.00385 | 0.00385 | 0.00385 | 20 |
| Hawaiian monk seal | Hawaii | 1,427 | 33 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 33, 37 |
| ***Model Area #11: Hawaii South*** | | | | | | | | |
| Blue whale | CNP | 133 | 18 | 0.00005 | 0.00005 | | 0.00005 | 18 |
| Bryde's whale | Hawaii | 798 | 15 | 0.00012 | 0.00012 | 0.00012 | 0.00012 | 20 |
| Common minke whale | Hawaii | 25,049 | 6 | 0.00423 | 0.00423 | | 0.00423 | 21 |
| Fin whale | Hawaii | 154 | 18, 91 | 0.00006 | 0.00006 | | 0.00006 | 18 |
| Humpback whale | CNP stock and Hawaii DPS | 10,103 | 7, 66 | 0.00631 | 0.00631 | | 0.00631 | 7, 22 |
| Sei whale | Hawaii | 391 | 18 | 0.00016 | 0.00016 | | 0.00016 | 18 |

**Table 3-8. Marine Mammal Species, Stocks (DPSs), Abundance, and Density Estimates by Season as well as the Associated References for the 15 Proposed SURTASS LFA Modeling Areas in the Central and Western North Pacific Ocean and Indian Ocean (Reference Index Shown at End of Table).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Name*[26] | *Abundance* | *Abundance References* | *Density (animals per km²)*[27] | | | | *Density References* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | *Winter* | *Spring* | *Summer* | *Fall* | |
| Blainville's beaked whale | Hawaii | 2,105 | 18 | 0.00086 | 0.00086 | 0.00086 | 0.00086 | 18 |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | Hawaii Pelagic | 21,815 | 18 | 0.00126 | 0.00126 | 0.00126 | 0.00126 | 20 |
| | Oahu | 743 | 23, 67 | 0.187 | 0.187 | 0.187 | 0.187 | 23 |
| | 4-Islands | 191 | 23, 67 | 0.017 | 0.017 | 0.017 | 0.017 | 23 |
| | Hawaii Island | 128 | 23, 67 | 0.028 | 0.028 | 0.028 | 0.028 | 23 |
| | Kauai/Niihau | 184 | 23, 67 | 0.065 | 0.065 | 0.065 | 0.065 | 23 |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | Hawaii | 723 | 18 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 0.0003 | 18 |
| Deraniyagala beaked whale | NP | 22,799 | 2, 3, 64 | 0.00093 | 0.00093 | 0.00093 | 0.00093 | 2, 3 |
| Dwarf sperm whale | Hawaii | 17,519 | 14 | 0.00714 | 0.00714 | 0.00714 | 0.00714 | 14 |
| False killer whale | Hawaii Pelagic | 1,540 | 24, 57, 68 | 0.00086 | 0.00086 | 0.00086 | 0.00086 | 20, 24 |
| | Main Hawaiian Islands Insular stock and DPS | 167 | 69, 91 | 0.0008 | 0.0008 | 0.0008 | 0.0008 | 24 |
| Fraser's dolphin | Hawaii | 51,491 | 18 | 0.02104 | 0.02104 | 0.02104 | 0.02104 | 18 |
| Killer whale | Hawaii | 146 | 18 | 0.00006 | 0.00006 | 0.00006 | 0.00006 | 18 |
| Longman's beaked whale | Hawaii | 7,619 | 18 | 0.00311 | 0.00311 | 0.00311 | 0.00311 | 18 |
| Melon-headed whale | Hawaiian Islands | 8,666 | 18 | 0.0020 | 0.0020 | 0.0020 | 0.0020 | 26 |
| | Kohala Resident | 447 | 26 | 0.1000 | 0.1000 | 0.1000 | 0.1000 | 26 |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | Hawaii Pelagic | 55,795 | 18 | 0.00541 | 0.00541 | 0.00541 | 0.00541 | 20 |
| | Hawaii Island | 220 | 70 | 0.061 | 0.061 | 0.061 | 0.061 | 27 |
| | Oahu | 220 | 70 | 0.072 | 0.072 | 0.072 | 0.072 | 27 |
| | 4-Islands | 220 | 70 | 0.061 | 0.061 | 0.061 | 0.061 | 27 |
| Pygmy killer whale | Hawaii | 10,640 | 18 | 0.00435 | 0.00435 | 0.00435 | 0.00435 | 18 |
| Pygmy sperm whale | Hawaii | 7,138 | 14 | 0.0029 | 0.0029 | 0.0029 | 0.0029 | 14 |
| Risso's dolphin | Hawaii | 11,613 | 18 | 0.00474 | 0.00474 | 0.00474 | 0.00474 | 18 |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | Hawaii | 72,528 | 18 | 0.00257 | 0.00257 | 0.00257 | 0.00257 | 20 |

**Table 3-8. Marine Mammal Species, Stocks (DPSs), Abundance, and Density Estimates by Season as well as the Associated References for the 15 Proposed SURTASS LFA Modeling Areas in the Central and Western North Pacific Ocean and Indian Ocean (Reference Index Shown at End of Table).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Name*[26] | *Abundance* | *Abundance References* | *Density (animals per km²)*[27] | | | | *Density References* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | *Winter* | *Spring* | *Summer* | *Fall* | |
| Short-finned pilot whale | Hawaii | 19,503 | 18 | 0.00549 | 0.00549 | 0.00549 | 0.00549 | 20 |
| Sperm whale | Hawaii | 4,559 | 18 | 0.00131 | 0.00131 | 0.00131 | 0.00131 | 20 |
| Spinner dolphin | Hawaii Pelagic | 3,351 | 14 | 0.00348 | 0.00348 | 0.00348 | 0.00348 | 20 |
| | Oahu/4-Islands | 601 | 67 | 0.023 | 0.023 | 0.023 | 0.023 | 28 |
| | Hawaii Island | 665 | 91 | 0.066 | 0.066 | 0.066 | 0.066 | 29 |
| | Kauai/Niihau | 355 | 67 | 0.097 | 0.097 | 0.097 | 0.097 | 28 |
| Striped dolphin | Hawaii | 61,201 | 18 | 0.00475 | 0.00475 | 0.00475 | 0.00475 | 20 |
| Hawaiian monk seal | Hawaii | 1,427 | 33 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 33, 37 |
| ***Model Area #12: Offshore Sri Lanka*** | | | | | | | | |
| Blue whale | NIND | 3,691 | 73 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 89 in 37 |
| Bryde's whale | NIND | 9,176 | 74 | 0.00041 | 0.00041 | 0.00041 | 0.00041 | 89 in 37 |
| Common minke whale | IND | 257,000 | 73 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | 0.00625 | 0.00001 | 90 in 37 |
| Fin whale | IND | 1,846 | 73 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | 37 |
| Omura's whale | NIND | 9,176 | 73 | 0.00041 | 0.00041 | 0.00041 | 0.00041 | 89 in 37 |
| Sei whale | NIND | 9,176 | 73 | 0.00141 | 0.00045 | 0.00045 | 0.00095 | 89 in 37 |
| Blainville's beaked whale | IND | 16,867 | 74 | 0.00105 | 0.00105 | 0.00105 | 0.00105 | 90 in 37 |
| Common dolphins | IND | 1,819,882 | 74 | 0.00513 | 0.00516 | 0.00541 | 0.00538 | 90 in 37 |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | NIND | 785,585 | 74 | 0.04839 | 0.04829 | 0.04725 | 0.04740 | 90 in 37 |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | NIND | 27,272 | 74 | 0.00506 | 0.00508 | 0.00505 | 0.00505 | 90 in 37 |
| Deraniyagala beaked whale | IND | 16,867 | 74 | 0.00513 | 0.00516 | 0.00541 | 0.00538 | 90 in 37 |
| Dwarf sperm whale | IND | 10,541 | 74 | 0.00005 | 0.00005 | 0.00005 | 0.00005 | 89 in 37 |
| False killer whale | IND | 144,188 | 74 | 0.00024 | 0.00024 | 0.00024 | 0.00024 | 89 in 37 |
| Fraser's dolphin | IND | 151,554 | 74 | 0.00207 | 0.00207 | 0.00207 | 0.00207 | 89 in 37 |
| Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin | IND | 7,850 | 74 | 0.00048 | 0.00048 | 0.00047 | 0.00047 | 90 in 37 |
| Killer whale | IND | 12,593 | 74 | 0.00697 | 0.00155 | 0.00693 | 0.00694 | 90 in 37 |

**Table 3-8. Marine Mammal Species, Stocks (DPSs), Abundance, and Density Estimates by Season as well as the Associated References for the 15 Proposed SURTASS LFA Modeling Areas in the Central and Western North Pacific Ocean and Indian Ocean (Reference Index Shown at End of Table).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Name*[26] | *Abundance* | *Abundance References* | *Density (animals per km²)*[27] | | | | *Density References* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | *Winter* | *Spring* | *Summer* | *Fall* | |
| Longman's beaked whale | IND | 16,867 | 74 | 0.00513 | 0.00516 | 0.00541 | 0.00538 | 90 in 37 |
| Melon-headed whale | IND | 64,600 | 74 | 0.00921 | 0.00920 | 0.00937 | 0.00936 | 90 in 37 |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | IND | 736,575 | 74 | 0.00904 | 0.00904 | 0.00904 | 0.00904 | 89 in 37 |
| Pygmy killer whale | IND | 22,029 | 74 | 0.00138 | 0.00137 | 0.00152 | 0.00153 | 90 in 37 |
| Pygmy sperm whale | IND | 10,541 | 74 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | 89 in 37 |
| Risso's dolphin | IND | 452,125 | 74 | 0.08641 | 0.08651 | 0.08435 | 0.08466 | 90 in 37 |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | IND | 156,690 | 74 | 0.00071 | 0.00071 | 0.00071 | 0.00071 | 89 in 37 |
| Short-finned pilot whale | IND | 268,751 | 74 | 0.03219 | 0.03228 | 0.03273 | 0.03279 | 90 in 37 |
| Sperm whale | NIND | 24,446 | 74 | 0.00129 | 0.00118 | 0.00126 | 0.00121 | 90 in 37 |
| Spinner dolphin | IND | 634,108 | 74 | 0.00678 | 0.00678 | 0.00678 | 0.00678 | 89 in 37 |
| Striped dolphin | IND | 674,578 | 74 | 0.14601 | 0.14629 | 0.14780 | 0.14788 | 90 in 37 |
| ***Model Area #13: Andaman Sea*** | | | | | | | | |
| Blue whale | NIND | 3,691 | 73 | 0.00003 | 0.00003 | 0.00003 | 0.00003 | 89 in 37 |
| Bryde's whale | NIND | 9,176 | 74 | 0.00038 | 0.00036 | 0.00037 | 0.00037 | 89 in 37 |
| Common minke whale | IND | 257,500 | 73 | | 0.00001 | 0.00968 | 0.00001 | 90 in 37 |
| Fin whale | IND | 1,846 | 73 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | | 0.00001 | 90 in 37 |
| Omura's whale | NIND | 9,176 | 73 | 0.00038 | 0.00036 | 0.00037 | 0.00037 | 89 in 37 |
| Blainville's beaked whale | IND | 16,867 | 74 | 0.00094 | 0.00089 | 0.00094 | 0.00099 | 90 in 37 |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | NIND | 785,585 | 74 | 0.07578 | 0.07781 | 0.07261 | 0.07212 | 90 in 37 |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | NIND | 27,272 | 74 | 0.00466 | 0.00482 | 0.00480 | 0.00473 | 90 in 37 |
| Deraniyagala beaked whale | IND | 16,867 | 74 | 0.00094 | 0.00092 | 0.00097 | 0.00099 | 90 in 37 |
| Dwarf sperm whale | IND | 10,541 | 74 | 0.00005 | 0.00006 | 0.00006 | 0.00005 | 89 in 37 |
| False killer whale | IND | 144,188 | 74 | 0.00023 | 0.00023 | 0.00024 | 0.00023 | 89 in 37 |
| Fraser's dolphin | IND | 151,554 | 74 | 0.00176 | 0.00179 | 0.00180 | 0.00180 | 89 in 37 |
| Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale | IND | 16,867 | 74 | 0.00094 | 0.00092 | 0.00097 | 0.00099 | 90 in 37 |

**Table 3-8. Marine Mammal Species, Stocks (DPSs), Abundance, and Density Estimates by Season as well as the Associated References for the 15 Proposed SURTASS LFA Modeling Areas in the Central and Western North Pacific Ocean and Indian Ocean (Reference Index Shown at End of Table).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Name*[26] | *Abundance* | *Abundance References* | *Density (animals per km²)*[27] | | | | *Density References* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | *Winter* | *Spring* | *Summer* | *Fall* | |
| Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin | IND | 7,850 | 74 | 0.00076 | 0.00078 | 0.00073 | 0.00072 | 90 in 37 |
| Killer whale | IND | 12,593 | 74 | 0.00744 | 0.00178 | 0.00730 | 0.00734 | 90 in 37 |
| Longman's beaked whale | IND | 16,867 | 74 | 0.00444 | 0.00429 | 0.00459 | 0.00440 | 90 in 37 |
| Melon-headed whale | IND | 64,600 | 74 | 0.00884 | 0.00848 | 0.00878 | 0.00846 | 90 in 37 |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | IND | 736,575 | 74 | 0.00868 | 0.00841 | 0.00829 | 0.00873 | 89 in 37 |
| Pygmy killer whale | IND | 22,029 | 74 | 0.00121 | 0.00113 | 0.00125 | 0.00131 | 90 in 37 |
| Pygmy sperm whale | IND | 10,541 | 74 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | 89 in 37 |
| Risso's dolphin | IND | 452,125 | 74 | 0.09197 | 0.09215 | 0.09173 | 0.09366 | 90 in 37 |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | IND | 156,690 | 74 | 0.00077 | 0.00078 | 0.00077 | 0.00074 | 89 in 37 |
| Short-finned pilot whale | IND | 268,751 | 74 | 0.03354 | 0.03364 | 0.03543 | 0.03504 | 90 in 37 |
| Sperm whale | NIND | 24,446 | 74 | 0.00109 | 0.00099 | 0.00107 | 0.00105 | 90 in 37 |
| Spinner dolphin | IND | 634,108 | 74 | 0.00736 | 0.00711 | 0.00701 | 0.00726 | 89 in 37 |
| Striped dolphin | IND | 674,578 | 74 | 0.14413 | 0.14174 | 0.14123 | 0.14402 | 90 in 37 |
| ***Model Area #14: Northwest of Australia***[30] | | | | | | | | |
| Antarctic minke whale | ANT | 90,000 | 75 | | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | |
| Blue whale/Pygmy Blue Whale | SIND | 1,657 | 76, 77 | | 0.00003 | 0.00003 | 0.00003 | 89 in 37 |
| Bryde's whale | SIND | 13,854 | 78 | 0.00032 | 0.00032 | 0.00032 | 0.00032 | 89 in 37 |
| Common minke whale | IND | 257,500 | 73 | | 0.01227 | 0.01929 | 0.01947 | 90 in 37 |
| Fin whale | SIND | 38,185 | 79, 80 | 0.00001 | 0.00099 | 0.00128 | 0.00121 | 90 in 37 |
| Humpback whale | WAU stock and DPS | 13,640 | 81 | | 0.00007 | 0.00007 | 0.00007 | 89 in 37 |
| Omura's whale | SIND | 13,854 | 78 | 0.00032 | 0.00032 | 0.00032 | 0.00032 | 89 in 37 |

30 Seasons are presented following Northern Hemisphere monthly breakdowns for consistency. That is, winter for this mission area would actually be austral summer in the Southern Hemisphere where this mission area is located.

**Table 3-8. Marine Mammal Species, Stocks (DPSs), Abundance, and Density Estimates by Season as well as the Associated References for the 15 Proposed SURTASS LFA Modeling Areas in the Central and Western North Pacific Ocean and Indian Ocean (Reference Index Shown at End of Table).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Name[26]* | *Abundance* | *Abundance References* | *Density (animals per km²)[27]* | | | | *Density References* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | *Winter* | *Spring* | *Summer* | *Fall* | |
| Sei whale | SIND | 13,854 | 78 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | |
| Blainville's beaked whale | IND | 16,867 | 74 | 0.00083 | 0.00083 | 0.00082 | 0.00083 | 90 in 37 |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | WAU | 3,000 | 82 | 0.03630 | 0.03652 | 0.03459 | 0.03725 | 90 in 37 |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | SH | 76,500 | 83 | 0.00399 | 0.00406 | 0.00402 | 0.00405 | 90 in 37 |
| Dwarf sperm whale | IND | 10,541 | 74 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 0.00004 | 89 in 37 |
| False killer whale | IND | 144,188 | 74 | 0.00020 | 0.00020 | 0.00019 | 0.00020 | 89 in 37 |
| Fraser's dolphin | IND | 151,554 | 74 | 0.00145 | 0.00148 | 0.00149 | 0.00147 | 89 in 37 |
| Killer whale | IND | 12,593 | 74 | 0.00585 | 0.00435 | 0.00588 | 0.00580 | 90 in 37 |
| Longman's beaked whale | IND | 16,867 | 74 | 0.00393 | 0.00393 | 0.00403 | 0.00412 | 90 in 37 |
| Melon-headed whale | IND | 64,600 | 74 | 0.00717 | 0.00717 | 0.00635 | 0.00637 | 90 in 37 |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | IND | 736,575 | 74 | 0.00727 | 0.00727 | 0.00715 | 0.00746 | 89 in 37 |
| Pygmy killer whale | IND | 22,029 | 74 | 0.00100 | 0.00104 | 0.00101 | 0.00097 | 90 in 37 |
| Risso's dolphin | IND | 452,125 | 74 | 0.07152 | 0.07214 | 0.06944 | 0.07173 | 90 in 37 |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | IND | 156,690 | 74 | 0.00059 | 0.00060 | 0.00059 | 0.00059 | 89 in 37 |
| Short-finned pilot whale | IND | 268,751 | 74 | 0.02698 | 0.02759 | 0.02689 | 0.02716 | 90 in 37 |
| Southern bottlenose whale | IND | 599,300 | 74 | 0.00083 | 0.00083 | 0.00082 | 0.00083 | 90 in 37 |
| Spade-toothed beaked whale | IND | 16,867 | 74 | 0.00083 | 0.00083 | 0.00082 | 0.00083 | 90 in 37 |
| Sperm whale | SIND | 24,446 | 74 | 0.00096 | 0.00087 | 0.00097 | 0.00092 | 90 in 37 |
| Spinner dolphin | IND | 634,108 | 74 | 0.00561 | 0.00549 | 0.00568 | 0.00563 | 89 in 37 |
| Striped dolphin | IND | 674,578 | 74 | 0.12018 | 0.12041 | 0.11680 | 0.11727 | 90 in 37 |
| ***Model Area #15: Northeast of Japan*** | | | | | | | | |
| Blue whale | WNP | 9,250 | 1 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | | 0.00001 | 1, 2, 3, 4 |
| Common minke whale | WNP OE | 25,049 | 6 | 0.0022 | 0.0022 | 0.0022 | 0.0022 | 6 |
| Fin whale | WNP | 9,250 | 1 | | 0.0002 | 0.0002 | 0.0002 | 1 |
| Humpback whale | WNP stock and DPS | 1,328 | 42 | | 0.000498 | 0.000498 | 0.000498 | 89 in 37 |
| North Pacific right whale | WNP | 922 | 43 | | | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | |

**Table 3-8. Marine Mammal Species, Stocks (DPSs), Abundance, and Density Estimates by Season as well as the Associated References for the 15 Proposed SURTASS LFA Modeling Areas in the Central and Western North Pacific Ocean and Indian Ocean (Reference Index Shown at End of Table).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Name*[26] | *Abundance* | *Abundance References* | *Density (animals per km²)*[27] | | | | *Density References* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | *Winter* | *Spring* | *Summer* | *Fall* | |
| Sei whale | NP | 7,000 | 41 | | 0.00029 | 0.00029 | | 13 |
| Western North Pacific gray whale | WNP stock and Western DPS | 290 | 86 | | | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | |
| Baird's beaked whale | WNP | 5,688 | 45 in 46 | | 0.0015 | 0.0029 | 0.0029 | 9 |
| Common dolphin | WNP | 3,286,163 | 2, 3 | 0.0863 | 0.0863 | 0.0863 | 0.0863 | 2, 3 |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | WNP | 90,725 | 2, 3 | 0.0054 | 0.0054 | 0.0054 | 0.0054 | 2, 3 |
| Dall's porpoise | WNP *dalli* | 162,000 | 65 in 46 | 0.0390 | 0.0520 | 0.0650 | 0.0520 | 2, 3 |
| Killer whale | WNP | 12,256 | 2, 3 | 0.0036 | 0.0036 | 0.0036 | 0.0036 | 31 |
| Pacific white-sided dolphin | NP | 931,000 | 19 | 0.0048 | 0.0048 | 0.0048 | 0.0048 | 2, 3 |
| Sperm whale | NP | 102,112 | 49 | 0.0017 | 0.0022 | 0.0022 | 0.0022 | 12 |
| Stejneger's beaked whale | WNP | 8,000 | 9 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 0.0005 | 2, 3 |
| Northern fur seal | Western Pacific | 503,609 | 51, 52 | 0.00689 | 0.01378 | 0.01378 | 0.01378 | 19 |
| Ribbon seal | NP | 365,000 | 86 | 0.0904 | 0.0904 | 0.0452 | 0.0452 | 32 |
| Spotted seal | Alaska stock and Bering DPS | 461,625 | 66, 88 | | 0.2770 | 0.1385 | | 32 |
| Steller sea lion | Western/Asian stocks and Western DPS | 77,767 | 66 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | 0.00001 | |

## TABLE 3-8 CITED LITERATURE REFERENCES

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | Tillman, 1977 |
| 2 | Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 |
| 3 | Ferguson and Barlow, 2003 |
| 4 | LGL, 2008 |
| 5 | Ohsumi, 1977 |
| 6 | Buckland et al., 1992 |
| 7 | Calambokidis et al., 2008 |
| 8 | Masaki, 1977 |
| 9 | Kasuya, 1986 |
| 10 | Miyashita, 1993 |
| 11 | Hobbs and Waite, 2010 |
| 12 | LGL, 2011 |
| 13 | Fulling et al., 2011 |
| 14 | Barlow, 2006 |
| 15 | Bradford et al., 2013 |
| 16 | Carretta et al., 2011 |
| 17 | Acebes et al., 2007 |
| 18 | Bradford et al., 2017 |
| 19 | Buckland et al., 1993 |
| 20 | Forney et al., 2015 |
| 21 | Martin et al., 2015 |
| 22 | Mobley et al., 2001 |
| 23 | Baird et al., 2009 |
| 24 | Bradford et al., 2015 |
| 25 | Oleson et al., 2010 |
| 26 | Aschettino, 2010 |
| 27 | Oleson et al., 2013 |
| 28 | Hill et al., 2011 |
| 29 | Tyne et al., 2014 |
| 30 | Murase et al., 2014 |
| 31 | Springer et al., 2003 |
| 32 | Moreland et al., 2012 |
| 33 | NMFS, 2018 |
| 34 | Horimoto et al., 2016 |
| 35 | Miyashita and Okamura, 2011 |
| 36 | Norris et al., 2017 |
| 37 | DoN, 2018 |
| 38 | Carretta et al., 2015 |
| 39 | Stafford et al., 2001 |
| 40 | IWC, 2009 |
| 41 | Mizroch et al., 2009 |
| 42 | Bettridge et al., 2015 |
| 43 | Best et al., 2001 |
| 44 | Mizroch et al., 2015 |
| 45 | Miyashita 1986 and 1990 |
| 46 | Kasuya and Perrin, 2017 |
| 47 | Allen and Angliss, 2014 |
| 48 | Kanaji et al., 2018 |
| 49 | Kato and Miyashita, 1998 |
| 50 | Allen and Angliss, 2015 |
| 51 | Kuzin, 2015 |
| 52 | Gelatt et al., 2015 |
| 53 | Wade and Baker, 2011 |
| 54 | Miyashita, 2007 |
| 55 | Ohsumi, 1980 |
| 56 | Lacsamana et al., 2015 |
| 57 | Carretta et al., 2016 |
| 58 | IWC, 2008 |
| 59 | Han et al., 2010 |
| 60 | Trukhin, 2019 |
| 61 | IWC, 1996 |
| 62 | Hakamada and Hatanaka, 2010 |
| 63 | Evans, 1987 |
| 64 | Dalebout et al., 2014 |
| 65 | Miyashita, 1991 |
| 66 | Muto et al., 2019 |
| 67 | Carretta et al., 2014 |
| 68 | Bradford et al., 2014 |
| 69 | Bradford et al., 2018 |
| 70 | Courbis et al., 2014 |
| 71 | Karczmarski et al., 2005 |
| 72 | Andrews et al., 2006 |
| 73 | IWC, 2016 |
| 74 | Wade and Gerrodette, 1998 |
| 75 | Bannister et al., 1996 |
| 76 | Jenner et al., 2008 |
| 77 | McCauley and Jenner, 2010 |
| 78 | IWC, 1981 |
| 79 | Branch and Butterworth, 2001 |
| 80 | Mori and Butterworth, 2006 |
| 81 | Bannister and Hedley, 2001 |
| 82 | Preen et al., 1997 |
| 83 | Dalebout et al., 2005 |
| 84 | Miyashito and Kato, 1998 |
| 85 | Muto et al., 2016 |
| 86 | Lowry, 2016 |
| 87 | Burkanov, 2017 |
| 88 | Conn et al., 2014 |
| 89 | Kaschner et al., 2006 |
| 90 | SMRU Ltd., 2012 |
| 91 | Carretta et al., 2019 |
| 92 | Kishiro and Kasuya, 1993 |
| 93 | Han et al., 2005 and Han 2011 in Yan et al. 2018 |
| 94 | Shibuya et al., 2016 |

stocks or DPSs occurring in the Indian Ocean mission areas for SURTASS LFA sonar. Therefore, abundances for most stocks were estimated using surrogate data for the same species in a marine area with similar oceanographic and ecological characteristics.

Densities are estimates of the number of individuals in a species or stock that are present per unit area, typically per square nautical mile or kilometer. Statistically, density estimation of marine species, in particular marine mammals and sea turtles, is very difficult because of the large amount of survey effort (at-sea observation) required, often spanning multiple years and covering vast expanses of ocean, to obtain an adequate amount of data upon which to estimate densities. Line-transect sighting surveys (which are the most common type of "distance sampling" used for density derivation) typically focus on characterizing the probability of visually detecting an animal or group of animals so that the number of individuals missed during the observations can be quantified and estimated. The result of line-transect-based density estimation generally provides a single average density estimate for each species (unless stratification is performed), for the entire area covered by the survey, and usually is constrained to a specific timeframe or season. The estimate does not provide information on the species distribution or concentrations within that area and does not estimate density for other timeframes/seasons that were not surveyed. However, even given these provisos, line-transect based density estimates typically provide the best available density estimates. When deriving density estimates for the 15 model areas, direct estimates from line-transect (sighting) surveys that occurred in or near the representative model areas were utilized first (e.g., Barlow, 2006).

However, density estimates were not always available for each species/stock in all model areas. Ideally, density data would be available for all species for all areas in all seasons. In areas where survey data are limited or non-existent, known or inferred habitat associations must be used to predict densities. When density estimates derived from line-transect or other surveys were not available in a model area, then density estimates from a region with similar oceanographic/environmental characteristics were extrapolated to that mission area and species/stock. For example, the ETP has been extensively surveyed for marine mammals, with those survey data providing a comprehensive understanding of marine mammals in tropical and warm-temperate oceanic waters (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). Data from such well-studied areas are the foundation for population estimates of data-poor species of the western North Pacific and Indian Oceans, where stock and population-level data are scarce. Further, density estimates are sometimes pooled for species of the same genus if sufficient data are not available to compute a density for individual species. This is often the case for species-groups such beaked whales (*Mesoplodon* spp.) or pygmy and dwarf sperm whales (*Kogia* spp.). Density estimates are often available for these species-groups rather than the individual species in some model areas. Last, density estimates are usually not available for very rare marine mammal species or for those that have been newly defined (e.g., the Deraniyagala's beaked whale). For such species, the lowest density estimates of 0.00001 animals per square kilometer (animals/km$^2$) were used to reflect the very low potential of occurrence in a specific SURTASS LFA sonar model area for data sparse species, such as the North Pacific right whale. Density estimates for the potentially occurring marine mammal stocks in the modeled areas located in the Indian Ocean were derived from one source (Table 3-8), the Navy's Marine Species Density Database (NMSDD) (DoN, 2018). The NMSDD provides a systematic method for selecting the most appropriate density value for each species' stock in a given area and season. The NMSDD integrates direct survey sighting data with distance sampling theory to convolve designed-based density estimates, stratified-designed based density estimates, estimates from density spatial models, and habitat-suitability index models to result in spatially and seasonally explicit densities for most marine mammal species. Currently, the NMSDD is not publicly available since proprietary geospatial modeling data are included in the database, for which the Navy has established proprietary data sharing agreements. However, products of the Navy's database have been made available to the public, such as the *U.S. Navy Marine Species Density Database Phase III for the Hawaii-Southern California Training and Testing Study Area, NAVFAC Pacific Technical Report* (DoN, 2017b). This report has been used to support Navy environmental compliance documentation for Pacific testing and training areas. The citations for the sighting surveys or other data upon which the densities were derived in the NMSDD have been cited and incorporated herein when appropriate. Densities derived from the NMSDD for the potentially occurring marine mammal stocks were averaged over each modeled area during each season.

Predictions of potential environmental impacts are largely influenced by the accuracy with which the marine mammal abundances and densities are estimated for the selected geographic area and season, which is indicated with measures of uncertainty associated with the population estimates**.** Uncertainty in abundance and density estimates is typically expressed by the coefficient of variation (CV), which is calculated using standard statistical methods and describes the uncertainty as a percentage of the population mean. A CV can range upward from zero, indicating no uncertainty, to higher values approaching one that connotes a higher level of uncertainty about the population estimate. For example, a CV of 0.85 (or 85 percent) would indicate high uncertainty in a given population estimate. When the CV exceeds 1.0, the estimate is very uncertain. Another method for characterizing uncertainty is a confidence interval (CI). This expression typically relates to the 95 percent probability that the "true" population value falls within the given CI range of values. Therefore, a CI with a wider range of values (e.g., 150 to 550) indicates that there is greater uncertainty about the true value than a CI with a smaller range of values (e.g., 300 to 400).

When sufficient information about seasonal movements was available for marine mammal stocks in mission areas or ocean regions, that seasonality is reflected in the density estimates. Density estimates were truncated to no more than five decimal places (Table 3-8). Detailed information on the stock definitions, derivation of the abundance and density estimates, uncertainty (i.e., coefficient of variation [CV] or confidence intervals [CI], as well as the scientific sources from which the information and data were extracted for each species/stock in each model area of the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar may be found in Appendix D.

#### *3.4.3.3.4 Marine Mammal Strandings*

Stranding occurs when marine mammals passively (unintentionally) or purposefully go ashore either alive, but debilitated or disoriented, or dead. Although some species of marine mammals, such as pinnipeds, routinely come ashore during all or part of their life history, stranded marine mammals are differentiated by their helplessness ashore and inability to cope with or survive their stranded situation (i.e., they are outside their natural habitat and survival envelope) (Geraci and Lounsbury, 2005). The MMPA defines a stranding as: a) a marine mammal that is dead and is (i) on a beach or shore of the U.S.; or (ii) in waters under the jurisdiction of the U.S. (including any navigable waters); or b) a marine mammal is alive and is (i) on a beach or shore of the U.S. but is unable to return to the water; (ii) on a beach or shore of the U.S. and, although able to return to the water, is in need of apparent medical attention; or (iii) in the waters under the jurisdiction of the U.S. (including any navigable waters) but is unable to return to its natural habitat under its own power or without assistance (16 U.S. Code Section 1421h).

Strandings of multiple marine mammals are called mass strandings, which occur only rarely. A mass stranding of marine mammals is the stranding of two or more unrelated cetaceans (i.e., not a mother-calf pair) of the same species coming ashore at the same time and place (Geraci and Lounsbury, 2005). Mass strandings typically involve pelagic odontocete marine mammal species that occur infrequently in coastal waters and are usually typified by highly developed social bonds (e.g., pilot whales). Marine mammal strandings and mortality events are natural events that have been recorded historically from as early as 350 B.C. (Aristotle, ca. 350 B.C.), with stranding events occurring throughout the world's oceans.

While anthropogenic factors have been linked directly or indirectly to some marine mammal strandings and mortality, the vast majority of stranding causative factors are natural in origin. Additionally, mass strandings can rarely be attributed to one cause; instead, usually a complex series of conditions, factors, and behaviors have resulted in marine mammals coming ashore and dying. However, the causes of unusual mortality events (UMEs) are often attributable to one specific factor, such as an algal bloom of toxic-producing phytoplankton, or malnutrition. Under the MMPA, an UME is defined as a stranding that is unexpected; involves a significant die-off of any marine mammal population; and demands an immediate response (16 U.S.C. 1421h, Section 410(6)). Even for UMEs, however, discerning the cause of a mortality event is not a surety. For instance, of the 65 UMEs that occurred in the U.S. since the UME program began in 1991, causes could only be verified for 32 of the 65 events, with most of the identifiable events being caused by infections, malnutrition, human interactions, and biotoxins (NMFS, 2018f).

Since marine mammal stranding networks have become established, the reporting of marine mammal stranding and mortality events has become better documented and publicized, leading to increased public awareness and concern, especially regarding the potential for anthropogenic causes of stranding and mortality events. Underwater noise, particularly sounds generated by military sonar or geophysical and geologic seismic exploration, has increasingly been implicated as the plausible cause for marine mammal mortality and stranding events. However, despite extensive and lengthy investigations and continuing scientific research, definitive causes or links are rarely determined for the vast majority of marine mammal mass strandings and UMEs. It is generally more feasible to exclude causes of strandings or UMEs than to resolve the specific causative factors leading to these events. For instance, an UME in Alaska in which 46 fin whales died, with 12 of those fin whales having been found dead in a 27-day period, the use of underwater sound (sonar and seismic testing), radiation, ship strikes, infectious diseases, predation, algal toxin exposure, and starvation due to oceanographic changes were all excluded as causes of this long-lasting UME. However, the international team of scientists investigating the UME were unable to determine a definitive cause of the UME, but they noted the unusual oceanographic conditions during the period when the UME occurred (NMFS, 2108f).

Given the difficulty in correlating causative factors to marine mammal stranding and mortality events, it is imperative that assumptions not be made about the cause of these events prior to thorough investigations and analyses being conducted on all the physical evidence and associated factors. As a result of such scientific investigations and research over the last decade, especially on beaked whales, scientific understanding has increased regarding the association between behavioral reactions to natural as well as anthropogenic sources and strandings or deaths of marine mammals. Scientists now understand that for some species, particularly deep-diving marine mammals, behavioral reactions may begin a cascade of physiologic effects, such as gas and fat embolisms, that may result in injury, death, and strandings of marine mammals (Fernández et al., 2005; Cox et al., 2006; Zimmer and Tyack, 2007).

The Navy monitors not only it's SURTASS LFA sonar activities for injured or disabled marine mammals but also monitors the principal marine mammal stranding networks and other media for marine mammal strandings in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. The Navy correlates marine mammal stranding events spatially and temporally with SURTASS LFA sonar activities. The Navy compiled marine mammal stranding information from all parts of the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar that occurred over the last two years from e-news alerts, via social media for domestic and international stranding organizations, and by searching available stranding networks for relevant regional information. The majority of the stranding data for the western North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans was reported by the International Dolphin and Whale Stranding Network (https://www.facebook.com/Stranding Network/), which is an informal group of scientists, advocates, and concerned individuals that maintains a thorough compilation of all strandings of marine mammals reported throughout the world. Data for the Philippines were compiled from the Philippines Marine Mammal Stranding Network, although their database is not currently updated beyond 2016 (Aragones et al. 2017), and marine mammal stranding data for Hawaii, Guam, and CNMI were compiled by West (2018).

The Navy has evaluated the spatial and temporal overlap of the compiled strandings with SURTASS LFA sonar activities, and no overlap exists. No mass strandings of marine mammals occurred in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar during the last year, and no individual strandings of marine mammals occurred in the vicinity of SURTASS LFA sonar activities during or directly following the periods when LFA sonar transmissions occurred. No injured or disabled marine mammals were observed during or after any SURTASS LFA sonar activities. Although causes for the marine mammal strandings were rarely given, when reported, the cause of the stranding or mortality of the stranded cetacean was typically due to ingestion of plastics or entanglement in fishing gear.

### 3.4.4 Marine Protected Habitats

Many habitats in the marine environment are protected for a variety of reasons, but typically, habitats are designated to conserve and manage natural and cultural resources. Protected marine and aquatic habitats have defined boundaries and are typically enabled under some Federal, State, or international legal authority. Habitats are protected for a variety of reasons including intrinsic ecological value; biological importance to specific marine species or taxa, which are often also protected by federal or international agreements; management of fisheries; and cultural or historic significance. Three types of marine and aquatic habitats protected under U.S. legislation or Presidential EO, critical habitat, essential fish habitat, and marine protected areas, are described in this section.

#### 3.4.4.1 Critical Habitat

The ESA requires NMFS and USFWS to designate critical habitat for any species that it lists under the ESA, except foreign species. Critical habitat is defined under the ESA as the specific areas within the geographic area occupied by a listed threatened or endangered species on which the physical or biological features essential to the conservation of the species are found, and that may require special management consideration or protection; and specific areas outside the geographic area occupied by a listed threatened or endangered species that are essential to the conservation of the species (16 U.S.C. §1532(5)(A), 1978). Critical habitat is not designated in foreign countries or any other areas outside U.S. jurisdiction. Although not required, critical habitat may be established for those species listed under the ESA prior to the 1978 amendments to the ESA that added critical habitat provisions. Under Section 7 of the ESA, all federal agencies must ensure that any actions they authorize, fund, or carry out are not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of a listed species or destroy or adversely modify its designated critical habitat.

Critical habitat designations must be based on the best scientific information available and designated in an open public process and within specific timeframes. Before designating critical habitat, careful consideration must be given to the economic impacts, impacts on national security, and other relevant impacts of specifying any particular area as critical habitat. One hundred fifty-seven marine and anadromous species have been listed as threatened or endangered under the ESA, including 63 foreign species (NMFS, 2017b). Critical habitat has been designated for 48 of the marine and anadromous species, although some of the critical habitat for anadromous species is located in inland freshwater bodies (NMFS, 2016a). Although NMFS has jurisdiction over many marine and anadromous species listed under ESA and their designated critical habitat, the USFWS also has jurisdiction over marine/anadromous species, such as the manatee, polar bear, walrus, and sea otter; and shares jurisdiction with NMFS for some species, such as the Atlantic salmon, gulf sturgeon, and all sea turtles.

Of the marine species that have been listed as threatened or endangered under the ESA and that occur in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar, critical habitat has been designated for two species, the Hawaiian monk seal and the Main Hawaiian Island (MHI) Insular DPS of the false killer whale, within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. Critical habitat for the Hawaiian monk seal has been designated in the Northwestern (NWHI) and MHI and includes seafloor and marine neritic and pelagic waters within 33 ft (10 m) of the seafloor from the shoreline seaward to the 628-ft (200-m) depth contour at 10 areas in the NWHI on Kure Atoll, Midway Islands, Pearl and Hermes Reef, Lisianski Island, Laysan Island, Maro Reef, Gardner Pinnacles, French Frigate Shoals, Necker Island, Nihoa, Kaula Island and Niihau and Lehua Islands, and six areas in the MHI on Kaula, Niihau, Kauai, Oahu, Maui Nui (i.e., Kahoolawe, Lanai, Maui, and Molokai), and Hawaii (excluding National Security Exclusion zones off Kauai, Oahu, and Kahoolawe) (NOAA, 2015a). The MHI critical habitat also includes specific terrestrial areas from the shoreline inland 16 ft (5 m).

The physical or biological features of the Hawaiian monk seal critical habitat that support the species' life history needs include: 1) areas with characteristics preferred by monk seals for pupping and nursing; 2) shallow, sheltered nearshore marine areas preferred by monk seals for pupping and nursing; 3) marine areas up to 1,640 ft (500 m) in depth preferred by juvenile and adult monk seals for foraging; 4) areas with low levels of human disturbance; 5) marine areas with adequate prey quantity and quality; and 6) significant shore areas used by monk seals for hauling out, resting, or molting (NOAA, 2015a).

Nearly all of the critical habitat for the Hawaiian monk seal lies within the coastal standoff distance for SURTASS LFA sonar, wherein the sound field generated by LFA sonar cannot exceed 180 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) within 22 km (12 nmi) of any land, including islands. A small area of the monk seal's critical habitat at Penguin Bank extends beyond the 22-km coastal standoff distance. Though Penguin Bank extends beyond the protection of the coastal standoff distance, Penguin Bank is an OBIA for SURTASS LFA sonar. Additionally, under the CZMA stipulations with the State of Hawaii for SURTASS LFA sonar, the Navy agreed not to operate LFA sonar in the waters over Penguin Bank or in Hawaii state waters up to the 600-ft (183-m) isobath, which coincides with the OBIA boundary for Penguin Bank. Thus, SURTASS LFA sonar activities would not be conducted in waters of the portion of the monk seal's critical habitat that extends beyond the coastal standoff range.

Critical habitat has been designated for the Main Hawaiian Island Insular DPS of the false killer whale (NOAA, 2018c). The critical habitat for the Main Hawaiian Islands DPS of false killer whales includes waters from the 148- to 10,499-ft (45-to 3,200-m) depth contours around the Main Hawaiian Islands from Niihau east to Hawaii (Figure 3-8). Some Navy and other federal agency areas, such as the Pacific Missile Range Facility offshore ranges, are excluded from the designated critical habitat designation (NOAA, 2018c).

The physical or biological features of the designated critical habitat that are essential for the conservation of the MHI Insular DPS of false killer whales include: 1) island-associated marine habitat (productive, deeper, just offshore waters of varying water depths) for MHI insular false killer whales; 2) prey species (large pelagic fish and squid) of sufficient quantity, quality, and availability to support individual growth, reproduction, and development, as well as overall population growth; 3) waters free of pollutants of a type and amount harmful to MHI insular false killer whales (i.e., good water quality) so that false killer whales can forage and reproduce free from disease and impairment; and 4) habitat free of anthropogenic noise that would significantly impair the value of the habitat for false killer whales' use or occupancy (i.e., no anthropogenic noise of a certain level, intensity, and duration that could alter the ability of false killer whales to detect, interpret, and utilize acoustic cues that support important life history functions, or can result in long-term habitat avoidance or abandonment) (NOAA, 2017).

### 3.4.4.2 Marine Protected Areas

The term "marine protected area" (MPA) is very generalized and is used to describe specific regions of the marine and aquatic environments that have been set aside for protection, usually by individual nations within their territorial waters, although a small number of internationally recognized MPAs exist. Of the estimated 5,000 global MPAs, about 10 percent are located in international waters (WDPA, 2009). The variety of names and uses of MPAs has led to confusion over what the term really means and where MPAs are used. Internationally, an MPA is considered "any area of the intertidal or subtidal terrain, together with its overlying water and associated flora, fauna, historical and cultural features, which has been reserved by law or other effective means to protect part or all of the enclosed environment" (Kelleher, 1999). In the U.S., an MPA is defined by EO 13158 as "any area of the marine environment that has been reserved by federal, state, territorial, tribal, or local laws or regulations to provide lasting protection for part or all of the natural and cultural resources therein."

MPAs have been proven to be effective conservation tools to manage fisheries, preserve habitat and biodiversity, and enhance the aesthetic and recreational value of marine areas (NRC, 2000). Although the objectives for establishing protection of marine areas vary widely, MPAs are typically used to achieve two broad objectives: 1) habitat protection, and 2) fisheries management and protection (Agardy, 2001). Many MPAs are multi-use areas while others only allow restricted uses within the designated MPA boundaries.

#### *3.4.4.2.1 U.S. Marine Protected Areas*

In the U.S., MPAs have conservation or management purposes, defined boundaries, a permanent protection status, and some legal authority to protect marine or aquatic resources. In practice, U.S. MPAs are defined marine and aquatic geographic areas where natural and/or cultural resources are given greater protection than is given in the surrounding waters. U.S. MPAs span a range of habitats including the open ocean, coastal areas, inter-tidal zones, estuaries, as well as the Great Lakes and vary widely in purpose, legal authority, agencies, management approaches, level of protection, and restrictions on human uses (NMPAC, 2009). Currently, about 100 federal, state, territorial, and tribal agencies manage more than 1,700 marine areas in the U.S. and its territories (NOAA, 2014c). Forty-one percent of U.S. EEZ waters are encompassed in some type of MPA, with 97 percent of existing U.S. MPAs located in Federal waters (NOAA, 2014c). Two U.S. agencies primarily manage Federally-designated MPAs. The Department of Commerce's NOAA manages national marine sanctuaries (NMS), national monuments, fishery management zones, and in partnership with states, national estuarine research reserves, while the Department of Interior manages the national wildlife refuges and the national park system, which includes national parks, national seashores, and national monuments. U.S. MPAs include national marine reserves, refuges, preserves, sanctuaries, parks, monuments, and seashores, as well as areas of special biological significance, fishery management zones, and critical habitat.

To address this situation and improve the nation's ability to understand and preserve its marine resources, Presidential EO 13158 of 2000 called for an evaluation and inventory of the existing MPAs and development of a national MPA system and national MPA center. The EO called for a national system that protects both natural and cultural marine resources and is based on a strong scientific foundation. The Department of Commerce established the National MPA Center (NMPAC), which has inventoried U.S. MPAs and has developed the criteria for the National MPA System. Although EO 13158 provided the formal definition of an MPA, the NMPAC has developed a classification system that provides definitions and qualifications for the various terms within the EO (NMPAC, 2011). The National MPA System's classification consists of five key functional criteria that objectively describe MPAs:

- Conservation focus (i.e., sustainable production or natural and/or cultural heritage),
- Level of protection (i.e., no access, no impact, no-take, zoned with no-take area(s), zoned multiple use, or uniform multiple use),
- Permanence of protection,
- Constancy of protection,
- Ecological scale of protection (NMPAC, 2011).

The first two of these criteria, conservation and protection, are the keystones of the classification system. These five criteria influence the effect MPAs have on the local ecosystem and on human users.

By 2014, the most recent year for which data are available, more than 1,700 MPAs had become part of the National MPA System (NOAA, 2014c). Three of the largest MPAs in the U.S. system are located in the western and central North Pacific Ocean. The Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument (NM), encompassing the Northwest Hawaiian Islands, was expanded in 2016 to become the largest U.S. MPA and one of the largest in the world, with an area of 439,916 nmi$^2$ (1,508,870 km$^2$). The Pacific Remote Islands Marine NM became the second largest MPA in the U.S. system when its area was expanded in 2014 to its current area of 370,710 nmi$^2$ (1,271,500 km$^2$), which includes Howland, Baker, and Jarvis Islands; Johnston, Wake, and Palmyra Atolls; and Kingman Reef (Marine Conservation Institute, 2017a). Established in 2009, the Marianas Trench Marine NM includes 71,900 nmi$^2$ (250,000 km$^2$) of marine waters and submerged lands, which includes waters and submerged lands in three of the northernmost Mariana Islands and only the submerged land of 21 volcanic sites and the Mariana Trench (USFWS, 2012). The waters of these three largest MPAs in the western and central North Pacific Ocean are located in the study areas of SURTASS LFA sonar.

#### *3.4.4.2.2 International Marine Protected Areas*

Although there are several efforts to document international MPAs, including one led by the United Nations, no one organization is responsible for cataloging international MPAs and the ways in which information and statistics about MPAs are compiled differ amongst organizations. International MPAs encompass a very wide variety of habitat types and designation purposes as well as a good degree of variability in the levels of protection and legal mandates associated with each MPA. MPAs have been designated by nearly every coastal country of the world, and by current estimates, more than 15,000 MPAs exist globally, protecting from 3.7 to 7.26 percent of the world's oceans (Figure 3-9) (IUCN, 2017; Marine Conservation Institute, 2017b; Protected Planet, 2018). A number of international MPAs have been established for the sole purpose of protecting cetaceans. Although most international MPAs lie along the coast of the designating country, many international MPAs encompass large extents of ocean area and encompass international as well as territorial waters. Many of the large oceanic MPAs are also listed as World Heritage Sites (UNESCO, 2009). In 2017, Marae Moana or Cook Islands Marine Park was designated by the government of the Cook Islands, making it the largest international MPA, with an area of nearly 583,107 $nmi^2$ (2 million $km^2$) (Cook Islands Marine Park, 2017). The Papahānaumokuākea Marine NM of the U.S. is the largest MPA in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar.

#### *3.4.4.3 National Marine Sanctuaries*

The National Marine Sanctuary System includes 13 national marine sanctuaries (NMSs) and the management of two marine national monuments (NMs) (Papahānaumokuākea and Rose Atoll), together encompassing more than 453,072 $nmi^2$ (1,553,993 $km^2$) of U.S. marine and Great Lakes waters (see http://sanctuaries.noaa.gov/). National monuments are described in a separate section. Each NMS was established to protect the aquatic habitats, marine and aquatic species, and historical artifacts encompassed within a sanctuary and has an established management plan that guides the activities and programs, sets priorities, and contains relevant regulations. Only one NMS is located in the potential SURTASS LFA sonar study area.

For the purpose of providing a summary of resources in each sanctuary; pressures on those resources; the current condition and trends; and management responses to the pressures that threaten the integrity of the marine environment, Office of National Marine Sanctuaries' (ONMS') Condition Reports divide sanctuary resources into water, habitat, living, and maritime archaeological resources; however, it should be noted that the characterization of sanctuary resources by these categories can be different than or non-inclusive of specific definitions in the NMSA or at 15 C.F.R. pt. 922 for legal and regulatory purposes. For instance, the definition of "sanctuary resource" is established in the NMSA and "cultural resources" and "historical resources" are defined at 15 C.F.R. § 922.3; regulatory definitions are broader than those used in the ONMS condition reports:

- *Sanctuary resource* means any living or non-living resource of a national marine sanctuary that contributes to the conservation, recreational, ecological, historical, educational, cultural, archeological, scientific, or esthetic value of the sanctuary.
- *Cultural resources* means any historical or cultural feature, including archaeological sites, historic structures, shipwrecks, and artifacts.
- *Historical resource* means any resource possessing historical, cultural, archaeological or paleontological significance, including sites, contextual information, structures, districts, and objects significantly associated with or representative of earlier people, cultures, maritime heritage, and human activities and events. Historical resources include "submerged cultural resources", and also include "historical properties," as defined in the National Historic Preservation Act, as amended, and its implementing regulations, as amended.

Waters include the water column of the sanctuary; habitat includes pelagic, benthic, and coastal areas of importance within a sanctuary; living resources include the biota, including plants and animals, that occur year-round or seasonally in a sanctuary, and finally, a maritime heritage or archaeological

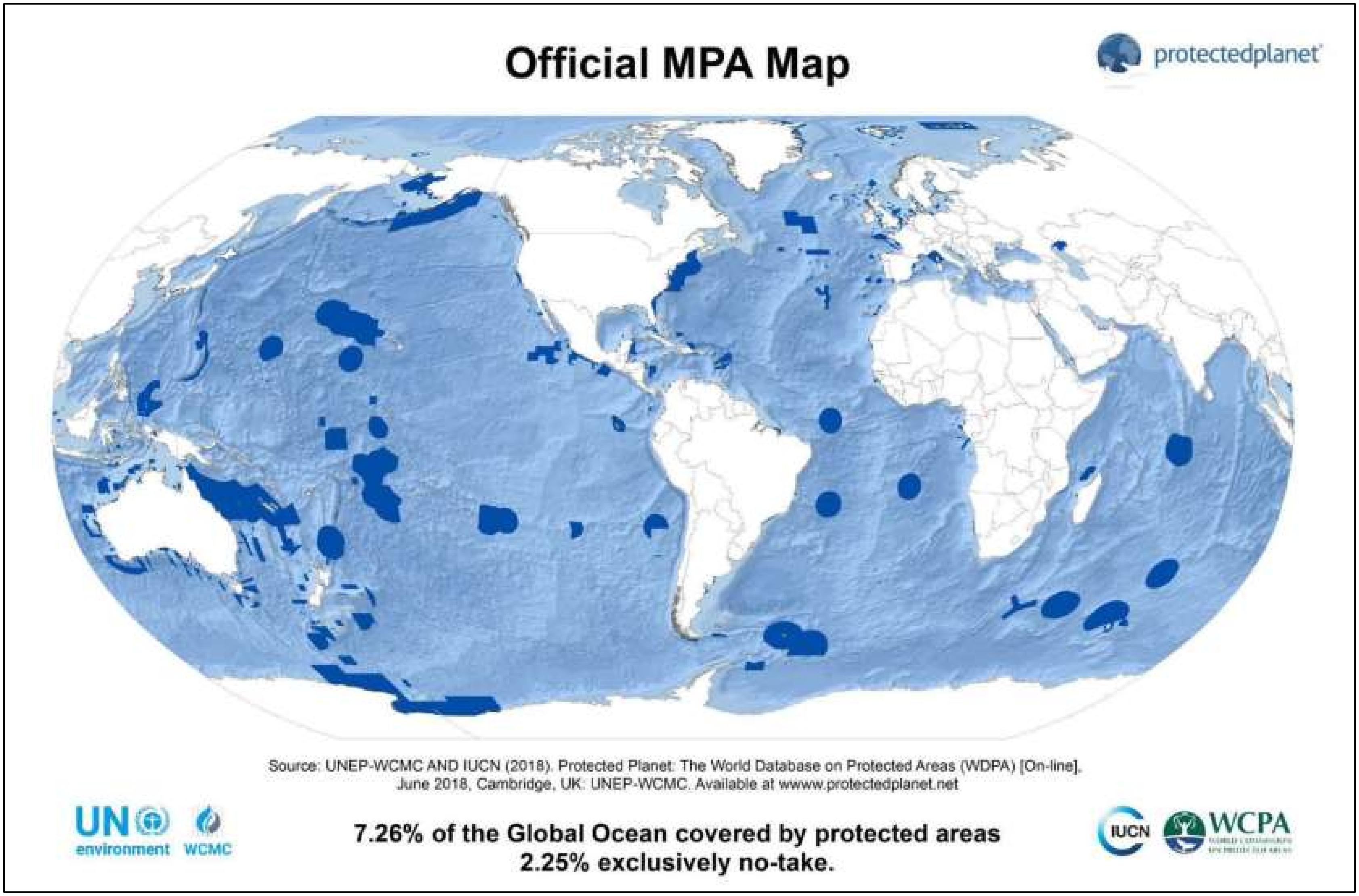



**Figure 3-9. Marine Protected Areas of the World's Oceans (Protected Planet, 2018a).**

resource is defined any type of historical, cultural, archaeological, or paleontological significance resource that is more than 50 years old.

- Sanctuaries have established activities that are prohibited or regulated within the sanctuary boundary. However, Department of Defense (DoD) agencies are exempt from these prohibitions or regulations in many of the NMSs. Details of the military exemptions for each NMS may be found in 15 C.F.R. part 922. The focus of each sanctuary's habitats descriptions in this section are on those habitats that occur in the waters in which SURTASS LFA sonar is most likely to be operated (i.e., not in intertidal, coastal habitats).

##### *3.4.4.3.1 Hawaiian Islands Humpback Whale NMS*

Designated in 1992, the Hawaiian Islands Humpback Whale NMS was created to protect humpback whales and their habitat in Hawaii. Encompassing 1,218 $nmi^2$ (3,548 $km^2$) of the submerged lands and waters surrounding the Main Hawaiian Islands from the shoreline to the 600-ft (183-m) isobath, the sanctuary is separated into five discrete protected area around Maui, Lana'i, and Moloka'i, including Penguin Bank, as well as parts of O'ahu, Kaua'i and Hawai'i. The sanctuary encompasses waters used by an estimated half of the North Pacific population of humpback whales for calving and breeding from late fall through spring (roughly October through May (ONMS, 2010b).

- ***Sanctuary Resources***

  *Living (Biota):* Hawaii Islands Humpback Whale NMS is comprised of two sanctuary resources: the humpback whale and its habitat. While other marine biota occur in the waters of the sanctuary, including ESA-listed coral, sea turtles, and the Hawaiian monk seal as well as numerous marine fishes, only the humpback whale is detailed. Hawaiian humpback whales are part of the Hawaii DPS, which is not listed under the ESA, as it is not at risk (NOAA, 2015d). Scientists estimate that more than 50 percent of the entire North Pacific humpback whale population migrates to Hawaiian waters each winter to mate, calve, and nurse their young. Humpback whales occur in Hawaiian waters only seasonally, when they arrive to calve from roughly December through April, annually.

- ***Prohibited Activities***

Activities prohibited or regulated in the sanctuary include approaching a humpback whale within 100 yd (91 m) by any means; operating aircraft above the sanctuary within 1,000 ft (304 m) of a humpback whale except as necessary to take off or land the aircraft; taking a humpback whale (unless authorized by the ESA or MMPA); possessing a living or dead humpback whale or its parts; discharging or depositing any materials within or outside the sanctuary that may enter the sanctuary and injure a humpback whale or its habitat; altering the seabed; and interfering in any manner with an enforcement action (CFR 15 §922.184).

- ***DoD Exemptions***

According to CFR 15 §922.183, all classes of military activities that were identified in the FEIS/Management Plan and all classes of military activities that were being or had been conducted before the effective date of the sanctuary regulations (as identified in the FEIS/Management Plan) are allowed activities in the sanctuary and are not subject to further consultation under the NMSA. Military activities proposed after the effective date of the sanctuary regulations are also included as allowed activities if the DoD consults with the ONMS on the activities. If an allowable military action is modified so that it is likely to destroy, injure, or cause the loss of a sanctuary resource significantly greater than was considered in a previous consultation, then the modified activity will be considered a new activity for which consultation is required. If a military activity subject to consultation under section 304 of the NMSA is required to respond to an emergency situation, and the DoD determines in writing that failure to conduct the activity will threaten national defense, the DoD may request that the military activity proceed during the consultation process. If the request is denied, the secretary of the pertinent military branch may decide to proceed with the execution of the military activity; in this case, the secretary of the military branch must provide the ONMS director with a written statement of any effects of the activity on sanctuary resources.

### 3.4.4.4 Marine National Monuments

Marine NMs are designated by presidential authorization under the Antiquities Act to conserve and protect areas of the marine environment. Five U.S. marine NM have been authorized in the Pacific and Atlantic oceans and are cooperatively managed by federal and some State or territorial agencies. DoD activities within each NM are conducted in accordance with the requirements of the monument's presidential authorization. The Antiquities Act specifies no consultation by Federal agencies in association with NMs. Three large marine NMs lie within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar: Papahānaumokuākea Marine NM, Pacific Remote Islands Marine NM, and the Marianas Trench Marine NM. The boundaries of these marine NMs have been under review and in 2017, the U.S. Secretary of the Interior recommended to the President that the area of the Pacific Remote Islands Marine NM be reduced, and its waters opened to commercial fishing (Zinke, 2017).

#### *3.4.4.4.1 Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument*

On Friday, August 26, 2016, President Obama signed a proclamation expanding the Papahānaumokuākea Marine NM. Previously the largest contiguous fully-protected conservation area in the U.S., the expanded boundaries made it the largest protected area in the world at 439,916 $nmi^2$ (1,508,870 $km^2$), nearly the size of the Gulf of Mexico, and the largest marine NM in the U.S. Papahānaumokuākea NM is globally recognized for its biological and cultural significance; it is also the only mixed United National Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) World Heritage site in the U.S. and only one of 35 mixed World Heritage sites in the world. The expanded monument is managed by four co-trustees: Federal Departments of Commerce and Interior, Hawaii Department of Land and Natural Resources, and Office of Hawaiian Affairs.

The extensive coral reefs found in Papahānaumokuākea NM include over 7,000 marine species, one quarter of which are found only in the Hawaiian Archipelago. Many of the islands and shallow water environments of the NM are important habitats for rare species such as the threatened green turtle and the endangered Hawaiian monk seal, as well as the 14 million seabirds representing 22 species that breed and nest in the monument. Land areas also provide a home for four species of bird found nowhere else in the world, including the world's most endangered duck, the Laysan duck. For more information about the NM and its resources, please visit the ONMS' website (<http://sanctuaries.noaa.gov/papahanaumokuakea-expansion/>). Information about the monument's regulations may be found in 50 C.F.R. Part 404.

#### *3.4.4.4.2 Pacific Remote Islands Marine National Monument*

The Pacific Remote Islands Marine NM became the second largest marine NM and MPA in the U.S. system when its area was expanded in 2014 to its current area of 370,710 $nmi^2$ (1,271,500 $km^2$). Pacific Remote Islands Marine NM includes Howland, Baker, and Jarvis Islands; Johnston, Wake, and Palmyra Atolls; and

Kingman Reef (Marine Conservation Institute, 2017c). Pacific Remote Islands Marine NM is co-managed by NOAA and USFWS, except for Wake Island and Johnston Atoll, which are managed by the DoD. The waters of the NM are known for their biodiversity, amongst which are species found no where else on earth.

#### *3.4.4.4.3 Marianas Trench Marine National Monument*

Established in 2009, the Marianas Trench Marine NM includes 71,900 $nmi^2$ (250,000 $km^2$) of marine waters and submerged lands, which includes waters and submerged lands in three of the northernmost Mariana Islands and only the submerged land of 21 volcanic sites and the Mariana Trench (USFWS, 2012). The Marianas Trench Marine NM is co-managed by the USFWS, NOAA, DoD, and the government of the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands. The Marianas Trench Marine NM consists of three units, only one of which, the Islands unit, includes marine waters. The other two units consist of submerged land, including the Mariana Trench, which is the deepest place on earth.

### 3.4.4.5 Essential Fish Habitat

In recognition of the critical importance habitat plays in all lifestages of fish and invertebrate species, the MSFCMA, as amended, protects habitat essential to the production of federally managed marine and anadromous species within the U.S. EEZ. The MSFCMA, reauthorized and amended by the Sustainable Fisheries Act, called for the identification and protection of EFH. Under the MSFCMA, the NMFS has exclusive federal management authority over U.S. domestic fisheries resources and oversees the nine regional fishery management councils (FMCs) and approves all Fishery Management Plans (FMPs), which in some areas are termed Fishery Ecosystem Plans (FEPs). The 1996 EFH mandate and 2002 Final EFH Rule require that regional FMCs, through federal FMPs/FEPs, describe and identify EFH for each federally managed species, minimize to the extent practicable adverse effects on such habitat caused by fishing, and identify other actions to encourage the conservation and enhancement of such habitats.

Congress defined EFH as “those waters and substrate necessary to fish for spawning, breeding, feeding, or growth to maturity” and the term “fish” as “finfish, mollusks, crustaceans, and all other forms of marine animals and plant life other than marine mammals and birds” (16 U.S.C. §1802[10]). The regulations for implementing EFH clarify that “waters” include all aquatic areas and their biological, chemical, and physical properties, while “substrate” includes the sediment, hard bottom, structures underlying the waters, and associated biological communities that make these areas suitable fish habitats (NOAA, 2002). Habitats used at any time during a species’ life cycle (i.e., during at least one of its lifestages) must be accounted for when describing and identifying EFH, including inshore bays and estuaries (NOAA, 2002). Habitat areas of particular concern (HAPC) are subsets of EFH areas that are designated to indicate an areas’ rarity, susceptibility to anthropogenic-induced degradation, special ecological importance, or location in an environmentally stressed region. HAPC do not confer additional protection or restriction but are intended to prioritize conservation efforts. In determining whether an EFH area should be designated as a HAPC, one or more of the following NMFS criteria must be met: (a) the ecological function provided by the habitat is important; (b) the habitat is sensitive to human-induced environmental degradation; (c) development activities are, or will be, stressing the habitat type; or (d) the habitat type is rare. HAPC are typically EFH areas that meet more than one of these criteria.

The MSFCMA requires federal agencies that fund, permit, or carry out activities that may adversely affect EFH to consult with the NMFS regarding the potential impacts of the federal actions on EFH and respond in writing to the NMFS or FMC recommendations. NMFS’ conservation recommendations are non-binding (NMFS, 2002). Adverse effects are defined as “any impact that reduces quality and/or quantity of EFH"; adverse effects include direct or indirect physical, chemical, or biological alterations of the waters or substrate and loss of, or injury to, benthic organisms, prey species and their habitat, and other ecosystem components, if such modifications reduce the quality and/or quantity of EFH (50 CFR §600). Adverse effects to EFH may result from actions occurring within or outside of the areal extent of the designated EFH and may include site-specific or habitat-wide impacts, including individual, cumulative, or synergistic consequences of federal actions. NMFS (2002) describes the process by which federal agencies can integrate MSFCMA EFH consultations with ESA Section 7 consultations.

Nine FMCs, including the HMS Division of NMFS, are responsible for designating EFH and HAPC in all U.S. territorial waters for hundreds of marine and anadromous fish and invertebrate species. Since EFH is only designated in waters of the U.S. EEZ, in the SURTASS LFA sonar study area, EFH is located only in waters of Hawaii, Guam, CNMI, and the Pacific Remote Islands (only some of which are located within the study area).

The types of general habitat that have been designated as EFH in U.S. state and territory waters within the SURTASS LFA study area include (NOAA, 2013; WPFMC, 2004):

- **Benthic Habitat:** These seafloor habitats include the hard and soft seafloor substrate as well as artificial structures.
- **Structured Habitats:** Areas that provide shelter for a variety of species and include:
  - Coral Reefs: Created by living coral organisms that are inhabited many fishes and invertebrates. EFH may include only parts of the reef, such as the outer reef for some crustacean species. Also includes coral beds of precious corals.
  - Vegetated Beds: These structured nearshore habitats are created by rooted vegetation or macroalgae.
- **Marine Waters/Water Column:** The water column from the surface of the ocean to water depths from 328 to 2,297 ft (100 to 700 m). Depending upon the species or management group, the designated habitat may refer only to a specific part of the water column, such as surface or bottom waters, to specific water depths in the water column, such as waters from 984 to 2,297 ft (300 to 700 m), or to the entire water column. This habitat is important for a wide variety of species and lifestages.
- **Marine Protected Areas (MPAs):** Specific waters within the U.S. EEZ where fishing is prohibited or only allowed by special permit. Waters landward of the 299-ft (91-m) isobath surrounding Howland, Baker, and Jarvis Islands, Rose Atoll, and Kingman Reef and in a box designated by four corner geographic coordinates around French Frigate Shoals have been designated as no-take (no fishing) MPAs while waters from shore to the 299-ft (91-m) isobath surrounding Palmyra and Johnson Atolls and Wake Island are low-use MPAs, where fishing is only allowed by special permit (WPRFMC, 2006).

EFH in the study area is designated for the following species or management groups (NOAA, 2013; WPFMC, 2004, 2009):

- Crustaceans (lobsters, crabs, shrimps)—Water column to depths of 328 ft (100 m) (juvenile and adult spiny and slipper lobsters/Kona crabs) or 492 ft (150 m) (eggs and larvae spiny and slipper lobsters/Kona crabs) from the shoreline to the U.S. exclusive economic zone (EEZ) boundary. For deepwater shrimp, the outer reef slopes between 984 and 2,297 ft (300 and 700 m) (eggs and larvae) or 1,805 to 2,297 ft (550 to 700 m) (juveniles and adults).

In Hawaiian waters, adult and juvenile spiny lobsters are typically found on rocky substrate in well-protected areas, in crevices, and under rocks in waters seaward of reefs and within the lagoons and atolls of the islands. The pronghorn spiny lobster, found in the other U.S. Pacific islands, occurs in association with coral reefs, typically on the windward side of oceanic reefs. All banks in the NWHI with summits less than 96 ft (30 m) as HAPC for the juvenile spiny lobster.

- Bottomfish—Water column to depth of 1,312 ft (400 m) boundary or water column to depth of 1,312 ft (400 m) plus the seafloor from shore to EEZ. Very little is known about the life histories, habitat use, food habits, or spawning behavior of most adult bottomfish and seamount groundfish or about the distribution and habitat requirements of juvenile bottomfish. The Pacific islands where EFH is designated are primarily volcanic peaks with steep slopes, and narrow, insular shelf habitat. The species in the Bottomfish Management Unit (MU) are found concentrated on the steep slopes of deepwater banks. The 600-ft (180-m) isobath is commonly used as an index of bottomfish habitat. Adult bottomfish are usually found in seafloor habitats characterized by hard substrate and structural complexity.

  The deepwater bottomfish that occur in Guam and the CNMI are characterized as shallow- and a deep-water fishes, with shallow-water bottomfish being found in waters from 0 to 330 ft (0 to 100 m) and including species such as groupers, snappers, and jacks. The deep-water bottomfish complex in Guam and the CNMI occurs in waters from 330 to 1,300 ft (100 to 400 m) and primarily includes snappers and groupers. In Hawaiian waters, however, the bottomfish complex is found in waters from 165 to 900 ft (50 to 270 m) and includes snappers, carangids, and one grouper species.

  All escarpments and slopes between 132 to 918 ft (40 to 280 m) throughout the Western Pacific Region, including the Hawaii Archipelago, are designated as bottomfish HAPC. Additionally, three known areas of juvenile opakapaka habitat in Hawaiian waters are also designated as HAPCs.

- Seamount groundfish—Water column to depth of 656 ft (200 m) (eggs and larvae) or 1,969 ft (600 m) (juveniles and adults) of all EEZ waters bounded by 29°to 35° N and 171° E to 179° W. Species in this unit include the armourhead, ratfish butterfly, and alfonsino. Little information exists about the distribution of the lifestages in this MU. Due to that lack of knowledge, only EFH for the adult lifestage has been designated for this MU. No HAPC has been designated for the Seamount Groundfish MU.
- Pelagics—Water column to depth of 656 ft (200 m) (eggs and larvae) or 3,281 ft (1,000 m) (juveniles and adults) from shore to EEZ boundary. Species within this management unit include temperate and tropical species of pelagic bony fishes (five species), sharks (9 species), and squid (three species) including tuna (eight species), billfish (six species), and mackerel. Many of the species in the pelagic MU are highly migratory and are capable of traveling vast distances across the North Pacific Ocean. Although most of the species in this MU are found in oceanic waters, some of the shark species can be found in nearshore shallow waters as well. The water column from the surface to a depth of 3,281 ft (1,000 m) above all seamounts and banks within the EEZ shallower than 6,562 ft (2,000 m) from the surface are designated as HAPC for the Pelagics MU.

- Precious corals—Known precious coral beds (nine named locations) in the Hawaiian Islands. Precious coral species occur only in the deep interisland channels and off promontories in water depths between 98 to 328 ft (30 to 100 m) (shallow species) and 984 to 4,921 ft (300 to 1,500 m) (deep water species). Precious corals include pink, bamboo, gold, black coral species. Eight coral beds of pink, bamboo, and gold corals have been identified, including one bed in the NWHI, while three major and several smaller beds of black corals are known. Precious corals are non–reef building corals that inhabit water depth below the photic zone on hard substrate in areas with moderate to strong currents. Black corals are most often found under vertical drop-offs.

  Three banks of pink, bamboo, gold precious corals, Makapuu, Wespac, and Brooks banks have been designated as HAPC for the Precious Coral MU. One area in the Auau Channel has been designated as an HAPC for black coral.

- Coral reef ecosystem—All seafloor and water column to depth of 328 ft (100 m) from shore within the EEZ boundary. This MU includes species that are currently being harvested as well as species that may potentially be harvested in state and federal waters.

  As many as 28 areas in the MHI and NWHI have been designated as HAPC for the Coral Reef Ecosystem MU, even though the areal extents have not been yet been defined for all areas. Some of the HAPC are already protected as wildlife refuges or state parks.

Not all of the designated EFH in the waters of Hawaii, Guam, CNMI, and the Pacific Remote Islands is located in areas where SURTASS LFA sonar would operate. Structured biogenic EFH such as vegetated shores, macroalgae beds, submerged rooted vegetation beds, and coral reef habitats are located in nearshore waters where SURTASS LFA sonar does not operate. Hawaii, Guam, CNMI, and the Pacific Remote Islands are all islands or atolls, which are distinguished by narrow, insular shelves that are predominately located within the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA sonar (i.e., <12 nmi [22 km] from shore). As such, these areas are protected against exposure from sonar RLS above 180 dB (rms). The only insular area that lies outside the coastal standoff range is Penguin Bank in Hawaii. Per agreement with the State of Hawaii, no training and testing activities would be conducted in the waters over Penguin Bank, as defined by the 600-ft (183-m) isobath. There is, thus, little to no potential for these nearshore, insular habitats to be affected by SURTASS LFA sonar activities.

## 3.5 Economic Resources

Since SURTASS LFA sonar operates in open ocean areas, it has the potential to interact with other commercial activities taking place in these areas, including commercial fishing, aboriginal subsistence whaling, and recreational activities including diving and whale watching. The following section will outline activities that may take place concurrently with SURTASS LFA sonar activities. Many recreational aquatic activities take place in nearshore or inland water areas where SURTASS LFA sonar is not proposed to operate.

### 3.5.1 Commercial Fisheries

Global commercial fisheries were discussed in detail in Chapter 3 of the 2012 EIS/SEIS (DoN, 2012) and the 2017 SEIS/SOES (DoN, 2017a) and this information remains pertinent and valid and is thus incorporated herein by reference. The following discussion relates to information on global commercial fisheries that relate to the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar.

### 3.5.1.1 Global Fisheries Production

Global fishery statistics are compiled per year by the United Nation's Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (FAO). The general composition of the global marine fisheries catches in 2016 was marine fishes, crustaceans, and mollusks with a total of 79.3 million tons (71.9 million metric tons) of overall marine harvested landings (FAO, 2018); 2016 is the most current year for which statistics and information on global fisheries is available. Global marine fishery harvest/production has been stable for the last five years, varying only between 89.5 and 92.7 million tons (81.2 and 84.1 metric tons) (FAO, 2018). Eighty-eight percent of the global fishery production was for direct human consumption.

### 3.5.1.2 Trends of the Top Fish Producing Countries

In 2016, the year for which the most current data are available, seven countries, not including the U.S., in or adjacent to the SURTASS LFA sonar study area were amongst the top 10 worldwide marine fishery producing nations (Table 3-9). Both in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar and the world, China is not only the top harvester of marine species but also is the leading exporter of fish and fish products (Table 3-9). China's fishery harvest/production was stable in 2016 but is expected to decline as a progressive catch reduction policy is implemented. The northwest Pacific Ocean, which is defined by the FAO to include northwest Pacific waters from north of the Philippines to northern Russia, continues to be the most productive fishing area in the world (FAO, 2018).

**Table 3-9. Top 10 Worldwide Fishing Nations in 2016 by Mass of Marine Fishery Landings (FAO, 2018).**

| ***Country*** | ***Total 2016 Marine Fishery Landings (tons)*** |
|---|---|
| China | 16,806,096 |
| Indonesia | 6,734,883 |
| United States of America | 5,398,373 |
| Russian Federation | 4,923,477 |
| Peru | 4,161,101 |
| India | 3,967,982 |
| Japan | 3,491,692 |
| Viet Nam | 2,952,437 |
| Norway | 2,241,616 |
| Philippines | 2,056,045 |

The harvest of Peruvian anchovies dominated the world's marine fisheries in the past, but by 2016, Alaska pollock had become the most harvested fish in the world, with 3,831,798 tons harvested in 2016 (FAO, 2018). FAO reports, however, that preliminary examination of 2017 fishery landing data indicate a recovery of the anchoveta landings (FAO, 2018). Landings of cephalopods (e.g., squid) declined in 2016 after five years of continuous growth, with landings other mollusks also declining. About 77 percent of the stocks of the top ten species with the most landings globally are fished at sustainable levels (FAO, 2018).

FAO noted the continued increasing trend in tropical marine fishery landings, which contrast to temperate ocean fisheries where developed nations conduct most of the fishery harvest. Marine fishery landings reached a maximum in the eastern and western Indian Ocean in 2016, having steadily increased since the 1980s (FAO, 2018).

The total number of fishing vessels in the world is estimated at 4.6 million in 2016, with 2.6 million or 61 percent of those vessels powered by engines. Eighty-six percent of the global motorized fishing vessels are less than 39 ft (12 m) in length, with only 2 percent of the world's fishing fleet comprised of vessels in excess of 78 ft (24 m). The Asian fishing fleet is the largest, with 3.5 million vessels, of which about 65 percent are motorized; the statistics for the Asian fishing fleet are similar to the global fleet, with about 85 percent of fishing vessels under 39 ft (12 m) in length, 10 percent of vessels from 39 to 78 ft (12 to 24 m) long, and 5 percent of Asian fishing vessels at least 78 ft (24 m) in length (FAO 2018).

### 3.5.2 Subsistence Harvest of Marine Mammals

SURTASS LFA sonar would not be operated in Arctic waters nor in the Gulf of Alaska or off the Aleutian Archipelago where subsistence uses of marine mammals occurs in the U.S. Therefore, no subsistence hunting regulated under the MMPA would occur in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar.

### 3.5.3 Recreational Marine Activities

Marine recreational activities include swimming, snorkeling, recreational diving, and whale watching. Swimming and snorkeling may occur anywhere in relatively shallow waters near any shoreline.

Recreational dive sites are less numerous, as they typically occur in nearshore waters where some underwater feature or habitat, such as coral reefs or shipwrecks, create destinations for recreational divers. Likewise, whale watching only occurs in marine waters in which marine mammals can be observed, at least seasonally.

#### 3.5.3.1 Recreational and Commercial Diving

Recreational or sport diving is underwater diving for leisure or recreation with diving as the focus, while commercial diving is underwater diving for underwater industrial, construction, engineering, maintenance, or other commercial work for which the diver is paid, with diving being secondary to the underwater work, including scientific research (46 CFR Part 197.204). Recreational divers typically use SCUBA (self-contained underwater breathing apparatus) equipment and rebreathers while commercial divers typically use surface-supplied breathing systems or even underwater diving bells. Generally, recreational diving occurs in waters with a maximum depth of 131 ft (40 m), beyond which safety issues such as oxygen toxicity and nitrogen narcosis significantly increase the risk of diving using recreational diving equipment and practices. Specialized skills and diving equipment (including gas mixtures) are needed for technical and commercial diving at water depths beyond 131 ft (40 m) (PADI, 2016). Commercial divers are professionals that work in fields such as oil and gas exploration and production, underwater salvage, cable-laying, underwater search and rescue, and underwater construction.

Commercial divers working underwater are governed by industry and government safety and health regulations (e.g., Occupational Safety and Health Administration governs commercial diving safety in U.S. waters, 29 CFR Part 1910). The underwater sites, such as fixed oil or gas platforms, where commercial divers work are well marked on nautical charts, and if work is being conducted on a structure not charted, a notice to mariners is published so that all ships, boats, and maritime traffic are aware of the location of the underwater diving work. As such, the health and safety of commercial divers is ensured by regulations and safety requirements under which these professionals work.

Recreational diving, including snorkeling, primarily occurs at known recreational dive sites, including shipwrecks, sunken aircraft, reefs, or, less commonly in the study area, oil/gas platforms that are in coastal waters, including insular coastal waters. These popular sites are well documented. For instance, the locations of oil/gas rigs and platforms are charted on nautical charts and other maps. As many as 152 offshore rigs and platforms are found in Southeast Asian waters, 39 offshore rigs and platforms are located in the waters off Western Australia, 34 rigs/platforms in Indian waters, and fewer than 5 exploration rigs are located in Indonesian waters (Government of Western Australia, 2015; Price, Waterhouse, and Coopers, 2017; Quora, 2015; Statistica, 2018). Most shipwrecks are also well documented as are the coastal locations of reefs, caves, or other natural dive sites.

Some of the world's premier and most popular recreational diving sites are located in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. However, recreational dive sites are not equally distributed by country or even region of the world. Dive site locations vary with the recreational and leisure purposes for diving. For instance, recreational diving for the purpose of observing marine wildlife such as manta rays, sharks, or coral reef communities are necessarily dependent upon the discrete habitats in accessible coastal regions where these wildlife proliferate or to which they migrate seasonally. Recreational diving to explore shipwrecks or other sunken artifacts depends upon the arbitrary locations where ships or aircraft have sunk or been sunk. Thus, dive sites for these types of recreational diving purposes are often concentrated in sub-tropical and tropical waters where coral reefs or manta ray aggregations abound or in areas where World War II air and sea battles took place.

- **Dive Site Compilation**

To protect human divers from possible exposure to LFA sonar transmissions, the Navy must have an understanding of the locations where recreational and commercial diving occurs. As noted, fixed locations where commercial diving may occur are well marked on nautical charts and at-sea navigation systems, which are common tools employed by seagoing vessels such as the SURTASS LFA sonar vessels. Additionally, notices to mariners are received by the SURTASS LFA sonar vessels to advise them of updates to nautical charts, navigational hazard or safety issues, including underwater operations such as construction or repair projects that use divers. Over 60 countries that produce nautical charts also produce notice to mariners. Mariner notices are updated from once a week to at least once a month, depending upon the country (U.S. Coast Guard Navigation Center, 2018). Since these mechanisms provide more accurate information on the dynamic locations where commercial diving may be occurring than any static information, no additional locational information on commercial dive sites is included herein.

Information on recreational dive sites in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar is publicly available for most of the countries found in the study area. Accordingly, the first step in compiling information on the recreational dive sites within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar began with compiling a list of the countries in the study area with ocean coastlines. Twenty-four countries with marine coastlines are located within the study area. However, recreational dive site information was not available for all these countries. Recreational diving in Bangladesh and North Korea is a very new activity that is undeveloped, so that only sparse or no information on recreational dive sites is available (PADI, 2019). Although recreational diving occurs in the waters of South Korea, no information was available on recreational diving in North Korean waters except a note from a Chinese tour company stating that it brought the first SCUBA diver to North Korea in 2014 and that it offered diving tours to Russia for North Koreans (Young Pioneer Tours, 2019). The British Indian Ocean Territory (BIOT) is located in the study area but it is not considered a tourist destination, and the BIOT government has prohibited the use of scuba or underwater swimming equipment in its territory (British Indian Ocean Territory, 2019). Thus, no information on recreational dive sites in either North Korea or BIOT are included herein.

Information on recreational dive sites in the remaining 22 study-area countries, including the U.S. (Hawaii, Guam, and CNMI), was compiled from publicly available sources. The compiled recreational dive sites are listed by country in Appendix E. No one source exists that provides comprehensive information on dive sites in all study area countries. Three websites were particularly useful in compiling information on dive sites within the study area: Professional Association of Diving Instructor (PADI) travel destinations (<https://travel.padi.com/destinations/>), DiveSeven world dive atlas and logbook (<http://diveseven.com/atlas>), and the WannaDive world dive site atlas (<https://www.wannadive.net/>). Information on dive sites was also obtained from other available sources, particularly sources that were only focused on specific regions of an individual country; all sources from which information was obtained are noted in Appendix E. Although information on the dive sites in a specific country or region was available from multiple sources, typically the source listed provided the most comprehensive information about a dive site. Dive sites for some countries were so numerous that for practical purposes, only those most popular or highly rated were included. Also, when multiple dive sites were clustered in one area, a representative site was selected that typically was centrally located. This was predominantly the case for Palau, where hundreds of recreational dive sites are available for a small geographic area. Although not always available, the maximum water depth of the recreational dive sites was included. Based on that information, most recreational dive sites in the SURTASS LFA study area are located in waters less than 131 ft (40 m) (Appendix Table E-1).

Extensive dive site information was available for the Hawaiian and Marianas Islands, based on data compiled by the Navy (DoN, 2005a and 2005b, 2015, and 2018a). Many the data, however, available for the Hawaiian and Marianas Islands included place names as well as geographic information, but a large number of the dive site records only included geographic information and no place names. The data for which only geographic data were available for Hawaii and the Marianas were compiled from NOAA's Office of Response and Restoration, which produced Habitat Sensitivity Index databases of coastal resources, including recreational dive sites, at risk during oil spills (NOAA, 2001 and 2006). Although only the recreational dive sites for which places names were available are listed in Appendix E for the Marianas and Hawaii, all available data for these two island areas has been compiled.

While the names of recreational dive sites and their general, descriptive locations are readily available, information on the specific geographic locations (i.e., latitude and longitudes) of each dive site were not typically available. Only one source, WannaDive, provided geographic coordinates for the recreational dive sites listed in their global database. Although the WannaDive database is extensive, it is by no means comprehensive.

#### 3.5.3.2 Whale Watching

Sustainable whale watching conducted in harmony with cetacean populations in a healthy environment is the goal of the IWC. The IWC works with scientists, governments, and the whale watching industry to assess threats and identify best practices to provide safe observing conditions for both humans and cetaceans. This ongoing research has resulted in the development of principles and guidelines for whale watching which have helped guide the development of whale watching regulations around the world. The IWC's Whale-watching Working Group has produced a five-year whale watching strategy that has been adopted by the IWC and is developing a Handbook for Whale Watching. This handbook will be a web-based tool that will provide guidelines and support to whale watching operators, national, and regional regulators to ensure that whale watching is sustainable into the future (IWC, 2016a).

## 3.6 Literature Cited


Abecassis, M., Senina, I., Lehodey, P., Gaspar, P., Parker, D., Balazs, G., & Polovina, J. (2013). A model of loggerhead sea turtle (*Caretta caretta*) habitat and movement in the oceanic North Pacific. *PLoS ONE, 8*(9), e73274. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0073274.

Abernathy, K. J. (1999). *Foraging ecology of Hawaiian monk seals at French Frigate Shoals, Hawaii* (Master's thesis). University of Minnesota, Twin Cities, MN.

Abreu-Grobois, A., & Plotkin, P. (2008). *Lepidochelys olivacea. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2008*: e.T11534A3292503. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2008. RLTS.T11534A3292503.en>.

Acebes, J. M. V., Darling, J.D., & Yamaguchi, M. (2007). Status and distribution of humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) in northern Luzon, Philippines. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 9*(1), 37-43.

Agardy, T. (2000). Key steps taken to preserve the U.S.'s marine heritage. *Issues in Science and Technology, 17*(1), 26.

Agardy, T. (2001). Marine protected areas need to work for people and achieve conservation simultaneously. Keynote presentation presented at the Pacific Science Intercongress Meeting, 4 June 2001, Guam.

Agardy, T., Bridgewater, P., Crosby, M. P., Day, J., Dayton, P. K., Kenchington, R., Laffoley, D., McConney, P., Murray, P.A., Parks, J.E., Peau, L. (2003). Dangerous targets? Unresolved issues and ideological clashes around marine protected areas. *Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems, 13*, 353-367. doi: 10.1002/aqc.583.

Aguilar, A. (2009). Fin whale (*Balaenoptera physalus*). Pages 433-437 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen (Eds.), *Encyclopedia of marine mammals, 2nd ed*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Aguilar, A., & García-Vernet, R. (2018). Fin whale *Balaenoptera physalus*. Pages 368-371 in B. Wursig, J.G.M. Thewissen, & K.M. Kovacs, (Eds). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals, 3rd ed*. San Diego, California: Academic Press.

Aguilar de Soto, N., Johnson, M.P., Madsen, P. T., Diaz, F., Dominguez, I., Brito, A., & Tyack, P. (2008). Cheetahs of the deep sea: deep foraging sprints in short-finned pilot whales off Tenerife (Canary Islands). *Journal of Animal Ecology, 77*, 936-947.

Ahonen, H., Stafford, K.M.., de Steur, L., Lydersen, C., Wiig ,Ø., & Kovacs, K.M. (2017). *Marine Pollution Bulletin*. doi: 10.1016/j.marpolbul.2017.09.019.

Akamatsu, T., Rasmussen, M. H., & Iversen, M. (2014). Acoustically invisible feeding blue whales in Northern Icelandic waters. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 136*(2), 939-944. doi:10.1121/1.4887439.

Al Saady, S. M., Al Kiyumi, A. A., & Mendonca, V. M. (2005). Oman sea turtles migration routes – Evidence from returned tags. *NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SEFSC 528*, page 91. Paper presented at the Proceedings of the 21st International Symposium on Sea Turtle Biology and Conservation, 2001, Philadelphia, PA.

Allen, B. M., & Angliss, R. P. (2014). *Alaska marine mammal stock assessments, 2013*. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-AFSC-277. Seattle, WA: Alaska Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Allen, B. M., & Angliss, R. P. (2015). *Alaska marine mammal stock assessments, 2014*. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-AFSC-301. Seattle, WA: Alaska Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Alling, A.K., & Payne, R. (1990). *Song of the Indian Ocean blue whale, Balaenoptera musculus.* S. Leatherwood, (Ed). Special issue on the Indian Ocean Sanctuary. Cambridge, MA: International Whaling Commission.

Alves, F., Dinis, A., Cascão, I., & Freitas, L. (2010). Bryde's whale (*Balaenoptera brydei*) stable associations and dive profiles: New insights into foraging behavior. *Marine Mammal Science, 26*(1), 202-212.

Alves, F., Dinis, A., Ribeiro, C., Nicolau, C., Kaufmann, M., Fortuna, C. M., & Freitas, L. (2013). Daytime dive characteristics from six short-finned pilot whales *Globicephala macrorhynchus* off Madeira Island. *Arquipelago-Life and Marine Sciences, 31*, 1-8.

American National Standards Institute (ANSI) (2006). ANSI reference quantities for acoustical levels. New York, NY: Acoustic Society of America.

Anderson, R. C., Clark, R., Madsen, P. T., Johnson, C., Kiszka, J., & Breysse, O. (2006). Observations of Longman's beaked whale (*Indopacetus pacificus*) in the western Indian Ocean. *Aquatic Mammals, 32*(2), 223-231.

Andrew, R. K., Howe, B. M., & Mercer, J. A. (2011). Long-time trends in ship traffic noise for four sites off the North American West Coast. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 129*(2), 642-651. doi:10.1121/1.3518770.

Andrew, R. K., Howe, B. M., Mercer, J. A., & Dzieciuch, M. A. (2002). Ocean ambient sound: Comparing the 1960s with the 1990s for a receiver off the California coast. *Acoustics Research Letters Online, 3*(2), 65. doi:10.1121/1.1461915.

Andrews, K. R., Karczmarski, L., Au, W. W. L., Rickards, S. H., Vanderlip, C. A., & Toonen, R. J. (2006). Patterns of genetic diversity of the Hawaiian spinner dolphin (*Stenella longirostris*). *Atoll Research Bulletin, 543*, 65-73.

Andrews, H. V., Tripathy, A., Aghue, S., Glen, S., John, S., & Naveen, K. (2006a). The status of sea turtle populations in the Andaman and Nicobar Islands of India. Chapter 5 in *Towards Integrated and Collaborative Sea Turtle Conservation in India* (pp. 32). Bonn, Germany: UNEP/Convention on Migratory Species-Indian Ocean-South-East Asia.

Andrews, H. V., Chandi, M., Vaughan, A., Aungthong, J., Aghue, S., Johnny, S., John, S., and Naveen, S. (2006b). Marine turtle status and distribution in the Andaman and Nicobar islands after the 2004 M 9 quake and tsunami. *Indian Ocean Turtle Newsletter No. 4*, 3-11.

Ansmann, I. C., Goold, J. C., Evans, P. G. H., Simmonds, M., & Keith, S. G. (2007). Variation in the whistle characteristics of short-beaked common dolphins, *Delphinus delphis*, at two locations around the British Isles. *Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom, 87*(01), 19-26.

Aragones, L. V., Roque, M. A. A., Flores, M. B., Encomienda, R. P., Laule, G. E., Espinos, B. G., . . . Braun, R. C. (2010). The Philippine marine mammal strandings from 1998 to 2009: Animals in the Philippines in peril? *Aquatic Mammals, 36*(3), 219-233. doi:10.1578/am.36.3.2010.219.

Aragones, L. V., Laggui, H.L.M., & Amor, A.K.S. (2017). The Philippine marine mammal strandings from 2005 to 2016. PMMSN Technical Report Series 1. Quezon City: Philippines. 161 pages. Retrieved from <http://pmmsn.org/resource-center/>.

Archer, II, F. I. (2009). Striped dolphin *Stenella coeruleoalba*. Pages 1127-1129 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewisse (Eds.) *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*, $2^{nd}$ ed. New York, NY: Academic Press.

Archer, II, F. I., & Perrin, W. F. (1999). *Stenella coeruleoalba*. *Mammalian Species, 603*, 1-9.

Arendt, M. D., Segars, A. L., Byrd, J. I., Boynton, J., Schwenter, J. A., Whitaker, J. D., & Parker, L. (2012). Migration, distribution, and diving behavior of adult male loggerhead sea turtles (*Caretta caretta*) following dispersal from a major breeding aggregation in the Western North Atlantic. *Marine Biology, 159*(1), 113-125. doi:10.1007/s00227-011-1826-0.

Aristotle. (~350 B.C.). *Historia animalium*. Translation D.W. Thompson. 1910th Ed. Oxford University Press.

Aroyan, J. L. (2001). Three-dimensional modeling of hearing in *Delphinus delphis*. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 110*(6), 3305-3318.

Aroyan, J. L., McDonald, M. A., Webb, S. C., Hildebrand, J. A., Clark, D., Laitman, J. T., & Reidenberg, J. S. (2000). Acoustic models of sound production and propagation. In W. W. L. Au, A. N. Popper, & R. R. Fay, (Eds.), *Hearing by whales and dolphins* (pp. 409-469). New York, NY: Springer-Verlag.

Arranz, P., Benoit-Bird, K. J., Southall, B. L., Calambokidis, J., Friedlaender, A. S., & Tyack, P. L. (2018). Risso's dolphins plan foraging dives. *Journal of Experimental Biology, 221*, jeb165209. doi:10.1242/jeb.165209.

Aschettino, J. M. (2010). *Population size and structure of melon-headed whales (Peponocephala electra) around the Main Hawaiian Islands: Evidence of multiple populations based on photographic data.* Master's thesis. Hawai'i Pacific University, Honolulu, HI.

Au, W., Popper, A.N., & Fay, R.R. (2000). *Hearing by whales and dolphins*. Volume 12. Springer Handbook of auditory research. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag.

Au, W. W. L. (1993). *The sonar of dolphins*. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag.

Au, W. W. L., & Banks, K. (1998). The acoustics of the snapping shrimp *Synalpheus parneomeris* in Kaneohe Bay. *The Journal of Acoustical Society of America, 103*(1), 7.

Au, W. W. L., & Hastings, M. C. (2008). *Principles of marine bioacoustics*, 1st ed. New York, NY: Springer.

Au, W. W., Giorli, G., Chen, J., Copeland, A., Lammers, M., Richlen, M., Jarvis, S., Morrissey, R. Moretti, D., & Klinck, H. (2013). Nighttime foraging by deep diving echolocating odontocetes off the Hawaiian Islands of Kauai and Ni'ihau as determined by passive acoustic monitors. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 133*(5), 3119-3127. doi:10.1121/1.4798360.

Au, W. W. L., Nachtigall, P. E., & Pawloski, J. A. (1997). Acoustic effects of the ATOC signal (75 Hz, 195 dB) on dolphins and whales. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 101*, 2973-2977.

Au, W. W. L., Pack, A. A., Lammers, M. O., Herman, L. M., Deakos, M. H., & Andrews, K. (2006). Acoustic properties of humpback whale songs. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 120*(2), 1103-1110.

Australia and Pacific Science Foundation. (2017). Investigating the impact of seismic surveys on threatened sea snakes in Australia's North West Shelf. Retrieved from <http://www.apscience.org.au/projects/APSF_12_5/apsf_12_5.html>.

Australian Government. (2016). *Aipysurus fuscus in species profile and threats database*. Department of the Environment, Australian Government, Canberra, Australia. Accessed April 2016. Retrieved from: <http://www.environment.gov.au/sprat>.

Awbrey, F. T. (1982). Ross Sea killer whale vocalizations: Preliminary description and comparison with those of some Northern Hemisphere killer whales. *Reports to the International Whaling Commission, 32*, 667-670.

Awbrey, F. T., Norris, J. C., Hubbard, A. B., & Evans, W. E. (1979). *The bioacoustics of the Dall porpoise-salmon drift net interaction*. Hubbs/Sea World Research Institute Technical Report 79-120. San Diego, CA: Hubbs/Sea World Research Institute.

Azzolin, M., Papale, E., Lammers, M. O., Gannier, A., & Giacoma, C. (2013). Geographic variation of whistles of the striped dolphin (*Stenella coeruleoalba*) within the Mediterranean Sea. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 134*(1), 694-705. doi:10.1121/1.4808329.

Babushina, Y. S., Zaslavskii, G. L. & Yurkevich, L. I. (1991). Air and underwater hearing characteristics of the northern fur seal audiograms frequency and differential thresholds. *Biophysics, 36*(5), 909-913.

Bain, D. E., Kriete, B., & Dahlheim, M. E. (1993). Hearing abilities of killer whales (*Orcinus orca*). *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 94*(3), 1829.

Baird, R. W. (2009a). False killer whale *Pseudorca crassidens*. Pages 405-406 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen (Eds.), *Encyclopedia of marine mammals, 2nd Ed*. New York, NY: Academic Press.

Baird, R. W. (2009b). Risso's dolphin *Grampus griseus*. Pages 975-976 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen, (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*, 2nd ed. New York, NY: Academic Press.

Baird, R. W., Gorgone, A. M., McSweeney, D. J., Webster, D. L., Salden, D. R., Deakos, M. H., Ligon, A. D., Schorr, G. S., Barlow, J., & Mahaffy, S.D. (2008). False killer whales (*Pseudorca crassidens*) around the main Hawaiian Islands: Long-term site fidelity, inter-island movements, and association patterns. *Marine Mammal Science, 24*, 591-612.

Baird, R. W., Gorgone, A. M., McSweeney, D.J., Ligon, A. D., Deakos, M. H., Webster, D. L., Schorr, G. S., Martien, K.K., Salden, D. R., & Mahaffy, S. D. (2009). Population structure of island-associated dolphins: Evidence from photo-identification of common bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops truncatus*) in the main Hawaiian Islands. *Marine Mammal Science, 25*(2), 251-274.

Baird, R. W., Hanson, M. B., & Dill, L. M. (2005). Factors influencing the diving behaviour of fish-eating killer whales: Sex differences and diel and interannual variation in diving rates. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 83*(2), 257-267.

Baird, R. W., Ligon, A. D., Hooker, S. K., & Gorgone, A. M. (2001). Subsurface and nighttime behaviour of pantropical spotted dolphins in Hawai'i. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 79*, 988-996.

Baird, R. W., McSweeney, D. J., Ligon, A. D., & Webster, D. L. (2004). *Tagging feasibility and diving of Cuvier's beaked whales (Ziphius cavirostris) and Blainville's beaked whales (Mesoplodon densirostris) in Hawaii.* (Contract report, order number AB133F-03-SE-0986). La Jolla, CA.

Baird, R. W., Schorr, G. S., Webster, D. L., McSweeney, D. J., Hanson, M. B. and Andrews, R. D. (2011). Movements of two satellite-tagged pygmy killer whales (*Feresa attenuata*) off the island of Hawai'i. *Marine Mammal Science, 27*(4), E332–E337. doi:10.1111/j.1748-7692.2010.00458.x.

Baldwin, R., Hughes, G. R., & Prince, R. I. T. (2003). Loggerhead turtles in the Indian Ocean. Pages 218-232 in A. B. Bolten & B. E. Witherington, (Eds.). *Loggerhead sea turtles*. Washington, D.C.: Smithsonian Institution Press.

Ballance, L. T., & Pitman, R. L. (1998). Cetaceans of the western tropical Indian Ocean: Distribution, relative abundance, and comparisons with cetacean communities of two other tropical ecosystems. *Marine Mammal Science, 14*(3), 429-459.

Ballance, L. T., Ainley, D. G., & Hunt, Jr., G. L. (2001). Seabird foraging ecology. Pages 2636-2644 in J. H. Steele, S. A. Thorpe, & K. K. Turekian (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of ocean sciences, Volume 5*. London, England: Academic Press.

Banner, A. (1967). Evidence of sensitivity to acoustic displacements in the lemon shark, *Negaprion brevirostris* (Poey). In P. H. Cahn (Ed.), *Lateral line detectors*. Bloomington, IN: Indiana University Press.

Banner, A. (1972). Use of sound in predation by young lemon sharks, *Negaprion brevirostris* (Poey). *Bulletin of Marine Science, 22*(2), 251-283.

Bannister, J.L., & Hedley, S.L. (2001). Southern Hemisphere Group IV humpback whales: their status from recent aerial survey. *Memoirs of the Queensland Museum 47*, 587-598.

Bannister, J. L., Kemper, C. M., & Warneke, J. M. (1996). *The action plan for Australia cetaceans.* Canberra, AU: Australian Nature Conservation Agency. ISBN 0 642 21388 7.

Barco, S. G., McLellan, W. A., Allen, J. M., Asmutis, S. R. A., Mallon, D. R., Meagher, E. M., Pabst, D. A., Robbins, J., Seton, R. E., Swingle, W. M., Weinrich, M. T., & Clapham, P. J. (2002). Population identity of humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) in the waters of the US mid-Atlantic states. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 4*(2), 135-141.

Barlow, J. (1999). Trackline detection probability for long-diving whales. Pages 209-221 in G. W. Garner, S. C. Amstrup, J. L. Laake, B. F. J. Manly, L. L. McDonald, & D. G. Robertson (Eds.). *Marine mammal survey and assessment methods*. Brookfield, IL: A.A Balkema.

Barlow, J. (2006). Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters estimated from a summer/fall survey in 2002. *Marine Mammal Science, 22*(2), 446-464.

Barlow, J. (2010). *Cetacean abundance in the California Current from a 2008 ship-based line-transect survey.* NOAA Technical Memorandum NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-456. La Jolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Service, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Barlow, J., & Forney, K. (2007). Abundance and population density of cetaceans in the California Current ecosystem. *Fishery Bulletin, 105*, 509-526.

Barlow, J., Calambokidis, J., Falcone, E. A., Baker, C. S., Burdin, A. M., Clapham, P. J., . . . Yamaguchi, M. (2011). Humpback whale abundance in the North Pacific estimated by photographic capture-recapture withbias correction from simulation studies. *Marine Mammal Science, 27*(4), 793–818. doi:10.1111/j.1748-7692.2010.00444.x.

Barlow, J., Rankin, S., Jackson, A., & Henry, A. (2008). Marine mammal data collected during the Pacific Islands Cetacean and Ecosystem Assessment Survey (PICEAS) conducted aboard the NOAA ship McArthur II, July-November 2005. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-420. La Jolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service. 27 pages.

Bartholomew, G. A. (1959). Mother-young relations and the maturation of pup behavior in the Alaska fur seal. *Animal Behaviour, 7*, 163-171.

Bartol, S. M. (2008). A review of auditory function of sea turtles. *Bioacoustics, 17*(1-3), 57-59. doi:10.1080/09524622.2008.9753763.

Bartol, S. M., & Ketten, D. R. (2006). Turtle and tuna hearing. Pages 98-105 in Y. Swimmer, & R. Brill, (Eds). *Sea turtle and pelagic fish sensory biology: Developing techniques to reduce sea turtle bycatch in longline fisheries*. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-PIFSC-7. Retrieved from <http://www.pifsc.noaa.gov/tech/NOAA_Tech_Memo_PIFSC_7.pdf>.

Bartol, S. M., & Musick,J. A. (2003). Sensory biology of sea turtles. Pages 79-102 in P. L. Lutz, J. A. Musick, & J. Wyneken, (Eds.). *The biology of sea turtles, Vol. II*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.

Bartol, S. M., Musick, J. A., & Lenhardt, M. L. (1999). Auditory evoked potentials of the loggerhead sea turtle (*Caretta caretta*). *Copeia, 3,* 836-840.

Bass, A. H., & F. Ladich. (2008). Vocal-acoustic communication: from neurons to brain. Pages 253-278 in J. F. Webb, R. R. Fay, & A. N. Popper (Eds.). *Fish bioacoustics*. New York, NY: Springer.

Bass, A. L., Epperly, S. P., & Braun-McNeill, J. (2004). Multi-year analysis of stock composition of a loggerhead turtle (*Caretta caretta*) foraging habitat using maximum likelihood and Bayesian methods. *Conservation Genetics, 5,* 783–796.

Battaile, B. C., Nordstrom, C. A., Liebsch, N., & Trites, A. W. (2015). Foraging a new trail with northern fur seals (*Callorhinus ursinus*): Lactating seals from islands with contrasting population dynamics have different foraging strategies, and forage at scales previously unrecognized by GPS interpolated dive data. *Marine Mammal Science, 31*(4), 1494–1520. doi:10.1111/mms.12240.

Baum, J., Clarke, S., Domingo, A., Ducrocq, M., Lamónaca, A. F., Gaibor, N., Graham, R., Jorgensen, S., Kotas, J. E., Medina, E., Martinez-Ortiz, J., Monzini Taccone di Sitizano, J., Morales, M. R., Navarro, S. S., Pérez-Jiménez, J. C., Ruiz, C., Smith, W., Valenti, S. V. and Vooren, C. M. (2007). *Sphyrna lewini*. The IUCN red list of threatened species. Version 2014.3. Retrieved from <www.iucnredlist.org>.

Baum, J., Medina, E., Musick, J.A. & Smale, M. (2015). *Carcharhinus longimanus. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2015*: e.T39374A85699641. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2015.RLTS.T39374A85699641.en>.

Baumann-Pickering, S., Roch, M. A., Wiggins, S. M., Schnitzler, H. U., & Hildebrand, J. A. (2015a). Acoustic behavior of melon-headed whales varies on a diel cycle. *Behavioral Ecology and Sociobiology, 69*(9), 1553-1563. doi:10.1007/s00265-015-1967-0.

Baumann-Pickering, S., Simonis, A. E., Oleson, E. M., Baird, R. W., Roch, M. A., & Wiggins, S. M. (2015b). False killer whale and short-finned pilot whale acoustic identification. *Endangered Species Research, 28*(2), 97-108. doi:10.3354/esr00685.

Baumann-Pickering, S., Wiggins, S. M., Hildebrand, J. A., Roch, M. A., & Schnitzler, H.-U. (2010). Discriminating features of echolocation clicks of melon-headed whales (*Peponocephala electra*), bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops truncatus*), and Gray's spinner dolphins (*Stenella longirostris longirostris*). *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 128*(4), 2212. doi:10.1121/1.3479549.

Bazua-Duran, C., & Au, W. W. L. (2002). The whistles of Hawaiian spinner dolphins. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 112*(6), 3064-3072.

Bazua-Duran, C., & W. W. L. Au. (2004). Geographic variations in the whistles of spinner dolphins (*Stenella longirostris*) of the Main Hawai'ian Islands. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 116*(6), 3757-3769.

Bearzi, G., Reeves, R. R., Remonato, E., Pierantonio, N., & Airoldi, S. (2011). Risso's dolphin *Grampus griseus* in the Mediterranean Sea. *Mammalian Biology, 76*(4), 385-400.

Beason, R. (2004). What can birds hear? *Wildlife damage management*. Internet Center for USDA National Wildlife Research Center. Lincoln, NE: University of Nebraska.

Beavers, S. C., & Cassano, E. R. (1996). Movements and dive behavior of a male sea turtle (*Lepidochelys olivacea*) in the eastern tropical Pacific. *Journal of Herpetology, 30*(1), 97-104.

Bell, I. P., & Parmenter, C. J. (2008). The diving behavior of inter-nesting hawksbill turtles, *Eretmochelys imbricata* (Linneas 1766), on Milman Island Reef, Queensland, Australia. *Herpetological Conservation and Biology, 3*(2), 254-263.

Benson, S. R., Eguchi, T., Foley, D. G., Forney, K. A., Bailey, H., Hitipeuw, C., . . . Dutton, P. H. (2011). Large-scale movements and high-use areas of western Pacific leatherback turtles, *Dermochelys coriacea*. *Ecosphere, 2*(7), art84. doi:10.1890/ES11-00053.1.

Berkson, H. (1967). Physiological adjustments to deep diving in the Pacific green turtle (*Chelonia mydas agassizii*). *Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology, 21*(3), 507-524.

Berta, A. (2018). Pinnipeds, overview. Pages 733–740 in B. Würsig, J. G. M. Thewissen, & K, Kovacs (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals, 3rd Ed*. New York, NY: Academic Press.

Best, P. B. (1960). Further information on Bryde's whale (*Balaenoptera edeni* Anderson) from Saldanha Bay, South Africa. *Norsk Hvalfangst-Tidende, 49*, 201-215.

Best, P. B. (1975). *Status of Bryde's whale (Balaenoptera edeni* or *B. brydei)*. Paper presented at the Marine Mammal Symposium, Rome, Italy.

Best, P. B., Bannister, J. L., Brownell, Jr., R. L., & Donovan, G. P., (Eds). (2001). Right whales: Worldwide status. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, (Special Issue 2)***,** 1-309.

Best, P.-B., Rademeyer, R.-A., Burton, C., Ljungblad, D., Sekiguchi, K., Shimada, H., Thiele, D., Reeb, D., & Butterworth, D.-S. (2003). The abundance of blue whales on the Madagascar Plateau, December 1996. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management 5*(3), 253-260.

Bettridge, S., Baker, C. S., Barlow, J., Clapham, P. J., Ford, M., Gouveia, D., Mattila, D. K., Pace, III, R. M., Rosel, P. E., Silber, G. K., & Wade, P. R. (2015). *Status review of the humpback whale (Megaptera novaeangliae) under the Endangered Species Act.* NOAA Technical Memorandum NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-540. La Jolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Service, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Beuter, K. J., Weiss, R., & Frankfurt, B. (1986). *Properties of the auditory system in birds and the effectiveness of acoustic scaring signals.* Presented at the Bird Strike Committee Europe (BSCE), 18th Meeting Part I, Copenhagen, Denmark.

Bigelow, H. B., & Schroeder, W. C. (1953). Sawfishes, guitarfishes, skates and rays. Fishes of the western North Atlantic. *Memoirs of Sears Foundation for Marine Research 1*, 514.

Bigg, M. (1981). Harbour seal *Phoca vitulina* and *P. largha*. In S. H. Ridgway & R. J. Harrison (Eds.). *Handbook of marine mammals*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Birstein, V.J. (1993). Sturgeons and paddlefishes: Threatened fishes in need of Conservation. *Conservation Biology 7*(4), 773-787.

Bjørge, A., & K. A. Tolley. (2009). Harbor porpoise *Phocoena phocoena*. Pages 530-533 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen, (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*, 2nd ed. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Bjorndal, K. A. (1997). Feeding ecology and nutrition in sea turtles. Pages 199-231 in P. Lutz & J. A. Musick, (Eds.). *The biology of sea turtles*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.

Black, N. (2009). Pacific white-sided dolphin *Lagenorhynchus obliquidens*. Pages 817-819 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen, (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*, 2nd ed. New York, NY: Academic Press.

Black, N. A. (1994). *Behavior and ecology of Pacific white-sided dolphins (Lagenorhynchus obliquidens) in Monterey Bay, California.* Masters thesis, San Francisco State University, San Francisco, CA.

Blanco, G. S., Morreale, S. J., Seminoff, J. A., Paladino, F. V., Piedra, R., & Spotila, J. R. (2013). Movements and diving behavior of internesting green turtles along Pacific Costa Rica. *Integrated Zoology 8*(3), 293-306. doi:10.1111/j.1749-4877.2012.00298.x.

Blumenthal, J. M., Austin, T. J., Bothwell, J. B., Broderick, A. C., Ebanks-Petrie, G., Olynik, J. R., Orr, M. F., Solomon, J. L., Witt, M. J., & Godley, B. J. (2009). Diving behavior and movements of juvenile hawksbill turtles *Eretmochelys imbricata* on a Caribbean coral reef. *Coral Reefs, 28*(1), 55-65. doi:10.1007/s00338-008-0416-1.

Bonfil, R., Clarke, S., & Nakano, H. (2008). The biology and ecology of the oceanic whitetip shark, *Carcharhinus longimanus*. Pages 128-139 in *Sharks of the open ocean: Biology, fisheries, and conservation.* M. D. Camhi, E. K. Pikitch, & E. A. Babcock, (Eds). Blackwell Publishing.

Bonner, W. N. (1990). *The natural history of seals*. New York, NY: Facts on File.

Boveng, P. (2016). *Phoca largha*. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2016: e.T17023A45229806. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2016-1.RLTS.T17023A45229806.en>.

Boveng, P., & Lowry, L. (2018). Ribbon seal: *Histriophoca fasciata*. Pages 811-813 in B. Würsig, J. G. M. Thewissen, & K, Kovacs (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals, 3rd Ed*. New York, NY: Academic Press.

Boveng, P. L., Bengtson, J. L., Buckley, T. W., Cameron, M. F., Dahle, S. P., Kelly, B. P., Megrey, B. A., Overland, J. E., & Williamson, N. J. (2009). *Status review of the spotted seal (Phoca largha).* NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-AFSC-200. Seattle, WA: Alaska Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Boveng, P. L., Bengtson, J. L., Cameron, M. F., Dahle, S. P., Logerwell, E. A., London, J. M., Overland, J. E., Sterling, J. T., Stevenson, D. E., Taylor, B. L., & Ziel, H. L. (2013). *Status review of the ribbon seal.* NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-AFSC-255. Seattle, WA: Alaska Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Bowen, B. W., Abreu-Grobois, F. A., Balazs, G. H., Kamezaki, N., Limpus, C. J., & Ferl, R. J. (1995). Trans-Pacific migrations of the loggerhead turtle (*Caretta caretta*) demonstrated with mitochondrial DNA markers. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America, 92*(9), 3731-3734.

Bowen, B. W., Bass, A. L., Chow, S.-M., Bostrom, M., Bjorndal, K. A., Bolten, A. B., . . . Dutton, P. H. (2004). Natal homing in juvenile loggerhead turtles (*Caretta caretta*). *Molecular Ecology, 13,* 3797-3808.

Bowen, D. W., Beck, C. A., & Austin,D. A. (2009). Pinniped ecology. Pages 852-86 iIn W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen (Eds.), *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*, 2nd Ed. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Boyle, M. C., FitzSimmons, N. N., Limpus, C. J., Kelez, S., Velez-Zuazo, X., & Waycott, M. (2009). Evidence for transoceanic migrations by loggerhead sea turtles in the southern Pacific Ocean. *Proceedings of the Royal Society B, 276*, 1993-1999. doi:10.1098/rspb.2008.1931.

Bradford, A. L., & Forney, K. A. (2013). *Injury determinations for cetaceans observed interacting with Hawaii and American Samoa longline fisheries during 2007-2011.* PIFSC Working Paper WP-13-002. Honolulu, HI: Pacific Islands Fishery Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Bradford, A. L., Baird, R. W., Mahaffy, S. D., Gorgone, A. M., McSweeney, D. J., Cullins, T., Webster, D. L., & Zerbini, A. N. (2018). Abundance estimates for management of endangered false killer whales in the main Hawaiian Islands. *Endangered Species Research, 36*, 297-313. doi: 10.3354/esr00903.

Bradford, A. L., Forney, K. A., Oleson, E. M., & Barlow, J. (2014). Accounting for subgroup structure in line-transect abundance estimates of false killer whales (*Pseudorca crassidens*) in Hawaiian waters. *PLoS ONE 9*(2), e90464. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0090464.

Bradford, A. L., Forney, K. A., Oleson, E. M., & Barlow, J. (2017). Abundance estimates of cetaceans from a line-transect survey within the U.S. Hawaiian Island exclusive economic zone. *Fishery Bulletin, 115*, 129-142.

Bradford, A. L., Oleson, E. M., Baird, R. W., Boggs, C. H., Forney, K. A., & Young, N. C. (2015). *Revised stock boundaries for false killer whales (Pseudorca crassidens) in Hawaiian waters.* (NOAA Technical Memorandum NOAA-TM-NMFS-PIFSC-47). Honolulu, HI: Pacific Islands Fishery Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Bradshaw, C. J. A., McMahon, C. R., & Hays, G. C. (2007). Behavioral inference of diving metabolic rate in free-ranging leatherback turtles. *Physiological and Biochemical Zoology, 80*, 209-219.

Branch, T. A., & Butterworth, D. S. (2001a). Southern Hemisphere minke whales: Standardised abundance estimates from the 1978/79 to 1997/98 IDCR-SOWER surveys. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 3*(2), 143-174.

Branch, T. A., & Butterworth, D. S. (2001b). Estimates of abundance south of 60°S for cetacean species sighted frequently on the 1978/79 to 1997/98 IWC/IDCR-SOWER sighting surveys. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 3*(3), 251-270.

Branch, T. A., Stafford, K. M., Palacios, D. M., Allison, C.,Bannister, J. L., Burton, C. L. K., Cabrera, E., Carlson, C. A., Vernazzani, B. G., Gill, P. C., Hucke-Gaete, R. K., Jenner, C. S., Jenner, M.-N. M., Matsuoka, K., Mikhalev, Y. A., Miyashita, T., Morrice, M. G., Nishiwaki, S., Sturrock, V. J., Tormosov, D., Anderson, R. C., Baker, A. N., Best, P. B., Borsa, P., Brownell, Jr., R. L., Childerhouse, S., Findlay, K. P., Gerrodette, T.,Ilangakoon, A. D., Joergensen, M., Kahn, B., Ljungblad, D. K., Maughan, B., Mccauley, R. D., Mckay, S., Norris, T. F., Oman Whale and Dolphin Research Group, Rankin, S., Samaran, F., Thiele, D., Waerebeek, K. V., & Warneke, R. M. (2007). Past and present distribution, densities and movements of blue whales *Balaenoptera musculus* in the Southern Hemisphere and northern Indian Ocean. *Mammal Review, 37*(2), 116–175. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2907.2007.00106.x.

Braulik, G. T., Ranjbar, S., Owfi, F., Aminrad, T., Dakhteh, S. M. H., Kamrani, E., & Mohsenizadeh, F. (2010). Marine mammal records from Iran. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 11*(1), 49-63.

Breese, D., & Tershy, B. R. (1993). Relative abundance of Cetacea in the Canal de Ballenas, Gulf of California. *Marine Mammal Science, 9*(3), 319-324.

Brill, R. W., Balazs, G. H., Holland, K. N., Chang, R. K. C., Sullivan, S., & George, J. (1995). Daily movements, habitat use, and submergence intervals of normal and tumor-bearing juvenile green turtles (*Chelonia mydas* L.) within a foraging area in the Hawaiian Islands. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology, 185*, 203-218.

British Indian Ocean Territory (BIOT). (2019). British Indian Ocean Territory guidance for visitors. Retrieved from <https://assets.publishing.service.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment_data/file/462887/Guidance_for_Visitors.pdf>.

Broderick, A. C., Coyne, M. S., Fuller, W. J., Glen, F., & Godley, B. J. (2007). Fidelity and over-wintering of sea turtles. *Proceedings of the Royal Society B, 274*, 1533–1538. doi:10.1098/rspb.2007.0211.

Brown, D. H., Caldwell, D. K., & Caldwell, M. C. (1966). Observations on the behavior of wild and captive false killer whales, with notes on associated behavior of other genera of captive delphinids. *Los Angeles County Museum Contributions in Science, 95*, 1-32.

Brownell, Jr., R. L., & Chun, C. (1977). Probable existence of the Korean stock of the gray whale (*Eschrichtius robustus*). *Journal of Mammalogy, 58*(2), 237-239.

Buccowich, J. (2014). *Fin whale song variability in the Southern California Bight, from 2008 through 2012*. Master's thesis, University of California, San Diego, CA. Viewed at <https://escholarship.org/uc/item/6741g38s>.

Buchan, S. J., Stafford, K. M., & Hucke-Gaete, R. (2015). Seasonal occurrence of southeast Pacific blue whale songs in southern Chile and the eastern tropical Pacific. *Marine Mammal Science, 31*(2), 440-458. doi:10.1111/mms.12173.

Buckland, S.T., Cattanach, K. L., & Miyashita, T. (1992). Minke whale abundance in the northwest Pacific and the Okhotsk Sea, estimated from 1989 and 1990 sighting surveys. *Report of the International Whaling Commission, 42*, 387-392.

Buckland, S.T., Cattanach, K. L., & Hobbs, R. C. (1993). Abundance estimates of Pacific white-sided dolphin, northern right whale dolphin, Dall's porpoise and northern fur seal in the North Pacific, 1987-1990. *International North Pacific Fisheries Commission Bulletin, 53*, 387-407.

Budelmann, B. U. (1992). Hearing in nonarthropod invertebrates. Pages 141–155 in D. B. Webster, R. R. Fay & A. N. Popper (Eds.). *Evolutionary biology of hearing*. New York, NY: Springer Verlag.

Budelmann, B. U. (1994). Cephalopod sense organs, nerves and the brain: Adaptations for high performance and life style. *Marine and Freshwater Behaviour and Physiology, 25*(1-3), 13-33.

Budelmann, B. U., & Williamson, R. (1994). Directional sensitivity of hair cell afferents in the octopus statocyst. *Journal of Experimental Biology 187*(1), 245-259.

Buran, B. N., Deng, X., & Popper, A. N. (2005). Structural variation in the inner ears of four deep-sea elopomorph fishes. *Journal of Morphology, 265*(2), 215-225.

Burdin, A. M., Hoyt, E., Filatova, O. A., Ivkovich, T., Tarasyan, K., & Sato, H. (2007). *Status of killer whales (Orcinus orca) in Eastern Kamchatka (Russian Far East) based on photo-identification and acoustic studies. Preliminary results*. Paper presented at the International Whaling Commission SC/59/SM4. Retrieved from <http://www.russianorca.com/Doc/Science/SC56SM15.pdf>.

Burgner, R. L. (1991). Life history of sockeye salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*). Pages 1-117 in Groot, C. & L. Margolis, (Eds). *Pacific salmon life histories*. Vancouver, British Columbia: UBC Press.

Burkanov, V. (2017). Results of breeding season Steller sea lion pup surveys in Russia, 2011-2016. *Memorandum to T. Gelatt and J. Bengston, April 6, 2017*. Retrieved from <https://www.afsc.noaa.gov/nmml/PDF/SSLRussiaPupCountsMemo2017.pdf>.

Burns, J. J. (2009). Harbor seal and spotted seal *Phoca vitulina* and *P. largha.* Pages 533-542 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen, (Eds). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*, 2nd ed. San Diego, CA: Elsevier.

Busby, P., Grant, S., Iwamoto, R., Kope, R., Mahnken, C., Matthews, G., Myers, J., Roni, P., Schiewe, M., Teel, D., Wainwright, T., Waknitz, F.W., Waples, R., Williams, J., Bryant, G., Wingert, C., Lindley, S., Adams, P., Wetheimer, A., & Reisnbichler, R. (1997). *Reivew of the status of Chinook salmon (Oncorhynchus tshawytscha) from Washington, Oregon, California, and Idaho under the U.S. Endangered Species Act.* National Marine Fisheries Service. 448 pages.

Busby, P. J., Wainwright, T. C., Bryant, G. J., Lierheimer, L. J., Waples, R. S., Waknitz, F. W., & Lagomarsino, I. V. (1996). *Status review of west coast steelhead from Washington, Idaho, Oregon, and California.* NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NWFSC-27. National Marine Fisheries Service, Northwest Fisheries Science Center. 261 pages.

Buscaino, G., Buffa, G., Filiciotto, F., Maccarrone, V., Di Stefano, V., Ceraulo, M., Mazzola, S., & Alonge, G. (2015). Pulsed signal properties of free-ranging bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops truncatus*) in the central Mediterranean Sea. *Marine Mammal Science, 31*(3), 891-901. doi:10.1111/mms.12194.

Buscaino, G., Filiciotto, F., Gristina, M., Bellante, A., Buffa, G., Di Stefano, V., Maccarrone, V., Tranchida, G., Buscaino, C., & Mazzola, S. (2011). Acoustic behavior of the European spiny lobster *Palinurus elephas*. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 441*, 177–184.

Busnel, R. G., & Dziedzic, Z. (1968). Caracteristiques physiques des signaux acoustiques de *Pseudorca crassidens* Owen (cetaces odontocetes). *Extrait de Mammalia, 32*(1), 1-5.

Byrne, R., Fish, J., Doyle, T. K., & Houghton, J. D. R. (2009). Tracking leatherback turtles (*Dermochelys coriacea*) during consecutive inter-nesting intervals: Further support for direct transmitter attachment. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology, 377*(2), 68-75. doi:10.1016/j.jembe.2009.06.013.

Calambokidis, J., Falcone, E. A., Quinn, T. J., Burdin, A. M., Clapham, P. J., Ford, J.K.B., Gabriele, C.M., Leduc, R., Mattila, D., Rojas-Bracho, L., Straley, J. M., Taylor, B.L., Urbán R., J., Weller, D., Witteveen, B.H., Yamaguchi, M., Bendlin, A., Camacho, D., Flynn, K., Havron, A., Huggins, J., & Maloney, N. (2008). *SPLASH: Structure of populations, levels of abundance and status of humpback whales in the North Pacific.* (Final report for Contract AB133F-03-RP-00078, Report prepared for U.S. Department of Commerce, Western Administrative Center, Seattle, Washington). Olympia, WA: Cascadia Research.

Calambokidis, J., G.S. Schorr, G.H. Steiger, J. Francis, M. Bakhtiari, G. Marshal, . . . Robertson, K. (2008a). Insights into the underwater diving, feeding, and calling behavior of blue whales from a suction-cup-attached video-imaging tag (CRITTERCAM). *Marine Technology Society Journal, 41*(4), 19-29.

Calderan, S., B. Miller, K. Collins, P. Ensor, M. Double, R. Leaper, & J. Barlow. (2014). Low-frequency vocalizations of sei whales (*Balaenoptera borealis*) in the Southern Ocean. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 136*(6), EL418-EL423. doi:10.1121/1.4902422.

Caldwell, D. K. (1971). The pygmy killer whale in the western Atlantic with a summery of world records. *Journal of Mammalogy, 52*(1), 207-209.

Caldwell, D. K., & Caldwell, M. C. (1989). Pygmy sperm whale *Kogia breviceps* (de Blainville, 1838), Dwarf sperm whale *Kogia simus* Owen, 1866. Pages 234-260 in *Handbook of marine mammals, Vol. 4: River dolphins and the larger toothed whales*. New York, NY: Academic Press.

Caldwell, M. C., & Caldwell, D. K. (1969). Simultaneous but different narrow-band sound emissions by a captive eastern Pacific pilot whale, *Globicephala scammoni*. *Mammalia, 33*, 505-508.

Cao, L., & Caldeira, K. (2008). Atmospheric CO2 stabilization and ocean acidification. *Geophysical Research Letters, 35*(19), L19609. doi: 10.1029/2008gl035072.

Carder, D., Ridgway, S. H., Whitaker, B., & Geraci, J. (1995). *Hearing and echolocation in a pygmy sperm whale Kogia.* Paper presented at the 11th biennial conference on the biology of marine mammals, Orlando, FL.

Carlson, T.J. (2012). Barotrauma in fish and barotrauma metrics. Pages 229–234 in Popper, A.N., & Hawkins, A.D., (Eds). *The effects of noise on aquatic life*. New York, NY: Springer Science + Business Media, LLC.

Carlson, J. K., & Gulak, S. J. B. (2012). Habitat use and movements patterns of oceanic whitetip, bigeye thresher, and dusky sharks based on archival satellite tags. *Collective Volume of Scientific Papers ICCAT,* 68, 1922-1932.

Carretta, J. V., Chivers, S. J., & Perryman, W. L. (2011). Abundance of long-beaked common dolphin (*Delphinus capensis*) in California and western Baja California waters estimated from a 2009 ship-based line-transect survey. *Bulletin of the Southern California Academy of Sciences, 110*(3), 152-164.

Carretta, J. V., Forney, K. A., Oleson, E. M., Weller, D. W., Lang, A. R., Baker, J., Muto, M. M., Hanson, B., Orr, A. J., Huber, H., Lowry, M. S., Barlow, J., Moore, J. E., Lynch, D., Carswell, L., & Brownell, Jr., R. L. (2017). *U.S. marine mammal stock assessment report: 2016. NOAA Technical Memorandum NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-577.* La Jolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Carretta, J. V., Forney, K. A., Oleson, E. M., Weller, D. W., Lang, A. R., Baker, J., Muto, M. M., Hanson, B., Orr, A. J., Huber, H., Lowry, M. S., Barlow, J., Moore, J. E., Lynch, D., Carswell, L., & Brownell, Jr., R. L. (2018). *U.S. Pacific marine mammal stock assessment report: 2017. NOAA Technical Memorandum NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-602.* La Jolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Carretta, J. V., Oleson, E., Weller, D. W., Lang, A. R., Forney, K. A., Baker, J., Hanson, B., Martien , K., Muto, M. M., Orr, A. J., Huber, H., Lowry, M. S., Barlow, J., Lynch, D., Carswell, L., Brownell, Jr, R. L., & Mattila, D. K. (2014). *U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments, 2013.* (NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-532). La Jolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Carretta, J. V., Oleson, E. M., Weller, D. W. , Lang, A. R., Forney, K. A., Baker, J., Muto, M. M., Hanson, B., Orr, A. J., Huber, H., Lowry, M. S., Barlow, J., Moore, J. E., Lynch, D., Carswell, L., & Brownell, Jr., R. L. (2015). *U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments: 2014*. (NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-549). La Jolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service. doi:10.7289/V5/TM-SWFSC-549.

Carretta, J. V., Oleson, E. M., Baker, J., Weller, D. W. , Lang, A. R., Forney, K. A., Muto, M. M., Hanson, B., Orr, A. J., Huber, H., Lowry, M. S., Barlow, J., Moore, J. E., Lynch, D., Carswell, L., & Brownell, Jr., R. L. (2016). *U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments: 2015*. (NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-561). La Jolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service. doi:10.7289/V5/TM-SWFSC-561.

Carretta, J. V., Forney, K. A., Oleson, E. M., Weller, D. W. , Lang, A. R., Baker, J., Muto, M. M., Hanson, B., Orr, A. J., Huber, H., Lowry, M. S., Barlow, J., Moore, J. E., Lynch, D., Carswell, L., & Brownell, Jr., R. L. (2019). *U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments: 2018*. (NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-617). La Jolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service. Retrieved from <https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/national/marine-mammal-protection/marine-mammal-stock-assessment-reports-region>. 382 pages.

Carroll, A.G., Przeslawski, R., Duncan, A., Gunning, M., & Bruce, B. (2017). A critical review of the potential impacts of marine seismic surveys on fish and invertebrates. *Marine Pollution Bulletin 114*, 9-24. doi: 10.1016/j.marpolbul.2016.11.038.

Casale, P., & Tucker, A.D. (2017). *Caretta caretta. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2017*: e.T3897A119333622. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2017-2.RLTS.T3897A119333622.en>.

Casper, B. (2011). The ear and hearing in sharks, skates, and rays. Pages 262-269 in A. Farrell, (Ed.). *Encylopedia of fish physiology*. New York, NY: Academic Press.

Casper, B. M., & Mann, D. A. (2006). Evoked potential audiograms of the nurse shark (*Ginglymostoma cirratum*) and the yellow stingray (*Urobatis jamaicensis*). *Environmental Biology of Fishes, 76*(1), 101-108. doi:10.1007/s10641-006-9012-9.

Casper, B. M., & Mann, D. A. (2007). The directional hearing abilities of two species of bamboo sharks. *The Journal of Experimental Biology, 210*(3), 505-511.

Casper, B. M., & Mann, D. A. (2009). Field hearing measurements of the Atlantic sharpnose shark *Rhizoprionodon terraenovae*. *Journal of Fisheries Biology, 75*(10), 2768-2776. doi:10.1111/j.1095-8649.2009.02477.x.

Casper, B. M., Lobel, P. S., & Yan, H. Y. (2003). The hearing sensitivity of the little skate, *Rana erinacea*: A comparison of two methods. *Environmental Biology of Fishes, 68*, 371-379.

Castellote, M., Clark, C. W., & Lammers, M. O. (2012). Acoustic and behavioural changes by fin whales (*Balaenoptera physalus*) in response to shipping and airgun noise. *Biological Conservation, 147*(1), 115-122. doi:10.1016/j.biocon.2011.12.021.

Cato, D. H., & Bell, M. J. (1992). *Ultrasonic ambient noise in Australian shallow waters at frequencies up to 200 kHz*. Ascot Vale, Victoria, Australia: Materials Research Laboratory.

Cerchio, S., Andrianantenaina, B., Lindsay, A., Rekdahl, M., Andrianarivelo, N., & Rasoloarijao, T. (2015). Omura's whales (*Balaenoptera omurai*) off northwest Madagascar: Ecology, behaviour and conservation needs. *Royal Society Open Science, 2*(10), 150301. doi:10.1098/rsos.150301.

Cerchio, S., Strindberg, S., Collins, T., Bennett, C., & Rosenbaum, H. (2014). Seismic surveys negatively affect humpback whale singing activity off northern Angola. *PLoS ONE, 9*(3), e86464. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0086464.

Cerchio, S., Trudelle, L., Zerbini, A. N., Charrassin, J. B., Geyer, Y., Mayer, F. X., Andrianarivelo, N., Jung, J. L., Adam, O., & Rosenbaum, H. C. (2016). Satellite telemetry of humpback whales off Madagascar reveals insights on breeding behavior and long-range movements within the southwest Indian Ocean. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 562*, 193-209.

Cerchio, S., Yamada, T. K., & Brownell Jr., R. L. (2019). Global distribution of Omura's whales (*Balaenoptera omurai*) and assessment of range-wide threats. *Frontiers in Marine Science, 6*, 67. doi:10.3389/fmars.2019.00067.

Chapman, N. R., & Price, A. (2011). Low frequency deep ocean ambient noise trend in the northeast Pacific Ocean. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 129*(5), EL161-165. doi:10.1121/1.3567084.

Charif, R. A., Mellinger, D. K., Dunsmore, K. J., & Clark, C. W. (2002). Estimated source levels of fin whale *(Balaenoptera physalus)* vocalizations: Adjustments for surface interference. *Marine Mammal Science, 18*(1), 81-98.

Chaudry, F. A. (2006). A comparison of east Australian humpback whale migratory behaviour between the northern and southern migrations. *ECS 2006* (Gydnia, Poland).

Chen, J.-M., Tan, P.-H., Hsieh, C.-M., Liu, J.-S., Chen, H.-S., Hsu, L.-H., & Huang, J.-L. (2014). Seasonal climate associated with major shipping routes in the North Pacific and North Atlantic. *Terrestrial, Atmospheric and Oceanic Sciences Journal 25,* 381–400.

Chernook, V. I., Burkanov, V. N., & Solovyev, B. (2014). Results of instrumental aerial survey of ice-associated seals on the ice in the Okhotsk Sea in May 2013. *Proceedings of TINRO, 179*, 158-176.

Chittleborough, R. G. (1953). Aerial observations of the humpback whale (*Megaptera nodosa*). *Australian Journal of Marine and Freshwater Research, 4*, 219-226.

Chivers, S. J., Baird, R. W., Martien , K. M., Taylor, B. L., Archer, E., Gorgone, A. M., Hancock, B. L., Hedrick, N. M., Matilla, D., McSweeney, D. J., Oleson, E. M., Palmer, C. L., Pease, V., Robertson, K. M., Robbins, J., Salinas, J. C., Schorr, G. S., Schultz, M., Thieleking, J. L., & Webster, D. L. (2010). *Evidence of genetic differentiation for Hawai`i insular false killer whales* (*Pseudorca crassidens*). NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-458. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, La Jolla, CA. 49 pages.

Christensen, C. B., Christensen-Dalsgaard, J., Brandt, C., & Madsen, P. T. (2012). Hearing with an atympanic ear: Good vibration and poor sound-pressure detection in the royal python, *Python regius*. *The Journal of Experimental Biology, 215*(Pt 2), 331-342. doi:10.1242/jeb.062539.

Christensen, I., Haug, T., & Oien, N. (1992). A review of feeding and reproduction in large baleen whales (Mysticeti) and sperm whales *Physeter macrocephalus* in Norwegian and adjacent waters. *Fauna norvegica Series A, 13*, 39-48.

Christensen-Dalsgaard, J., Brandt, C., Willis, K. L., Christensen, C. B., Ketten, D., Edds-Walton, P., . . . Carr, C. E. (2012). Specialization for underwater hearing by the tympanic middle ear of the turtle, *Trachemys scripta elegans*. *Proceedings of the Royal Society B, 279*, 2816–2824. doi:10.1098/rspb.2012.0290.

Chu, K. C. (1988). Dive times and ventilation patterns of singing humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*). *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 66*(6), 1322-1327.

Clapham, P. J. (2018). Humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*). Pages 489-492 in B. Würsig, J. G. M. Thewissen, & K. Kovacs (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*, 3rd Ed. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Clapham, P. J., & Mattila, D. K. (1990). Humpback whale songs as indicators of migration routes. *Marine Mammal Science, 6*(2), 155-160.

Clapham, P. J., Baraff, L. S., Carloson, C. A., Christian, M. A., Matilla, D. K., Mayo, C. A., Murphy, M. A., & Pittman, S. (1993). Seasonal occurrence and annual return of humpback whales, *Megaptera novaeangliae*, in the southern Gulf of Maine. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 71*, 440-443.

Clark, C. W., & Charif, R. (1998). *Monitoring the occurrence of large whales off north and west Scotland using passive acoustic arrays.* Society of Petroleum Engineers (SPE). SPE/UKOOA European Environmental Conference, Aberdeen, Scotland, April 1997.

Clark, C. W., & Clapham, P. J. (2004). Acoustic monitoring on a humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) feeding ground shows continual singing into late spring. *Proceedings of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences, 271*, 1051-1057.

Clark, C. W., & Ellison, W. T. (2004). Potential use of low-frequency sounds by baleen whales for probing the environment: evidence from models and empirical measurements. Pages 564-589 in J. A. Thomas, C. F. Moss, & M. Vater (Eds.). *Advances in the study of echolocation in bats and dolphins*. Chicago, IL: University of Chicago Press.

Clark, C. W., & Fristrup, K. (1997). Whales '95: A combined visual and acoustic survey of blue and fin whales off southern California. *Reports of the International Whaling Commission, 47*, 583-600.

Clark, C. W., & Fristrup, K. M. (2001). Baleen whale responses to low-frequency human-made underwater sounds. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 110*(5, Part 2), 2751.

Clark, C. W., Borsani, J. F., & Notarbartolo di Sciara, G. (2002). Vocal activity of fin whales, *Balaenoptera physalus*, in the Ligurian Sea. *Marine Mammal Science, 18*(1), 286-295.

Clark, C. W., Tyack, P., & Ellison, W. T. (1999). *Technical Report 1: Low frequency sound scientific research program technical report (responses of four species of whales to sounds of SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions).* Report for the U.S. DoN. Included in Overseas environmental impact statement and environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar.

Clark, T. B. (2010). *Abundance, home range, and movement patterns of manta rays (Manta alfredi, M. birostris) in Hawai'i.* (Doctoral dissertation, University of Hawaii at Manoa, Honolulu, Hawaii).

Clarke, M. R. (1976). Observations on sperm whale diving. *Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom, 56*, 809-810.

Clarke, S. C., Magnussen, J. E., Abercrombie, D. L., McAllister, M. K., & Shivji, M. S. (2006). Identification of shark species composition and proportion in the Hong Kong shark fin market based on genetics and trade records. *Conservation Biology, 20*, 201-211.

Colleye, O., L. Kever, D. Lecchini, L. Berten, & E. Parmentier. (2016). Auditory evoked potential audiograms in post-settlement stage individuals of coral reef fishes. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology, 483*, 1–9.

Compagno, L. (1984). *FAO species catalogue. Vol. 4. Sharks of the world. An annotated and illustrated catalogue of shark species known to date. Part 1. Hexanchiformes to Lamniformes.* FAO Fisheries Synopsis (125) Vol.4, Pt.1. Rome, Italy: Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. 249 pages.

Compagno, L. A., Dando, M., & Fowler, S. (2005). *Sharks of the world*. Princeton, New Jersey: Princeton University Press.

Conant, T. A., Dutton, P. H., Eguchi, T., Epperly, S. P., Fahy, C. C., Godfrey, M. H., MacPherson, S. L., Possardt, E. E., Schroeder, B. A., Seminoff, J. A., Snover, M. L., Upite, C. M., & Witherington, B. E. (2009). *Loggerhead sea turtle (Caretta caretta) 2009 status review under the U.S. Endangered Species Act.* Report of the Loggerhead Biological Review Team to the National Marine Fisheries Service, August 2009.

Conn, P. B., Ver Hoef, J. M., McClintock, B. T., Moreland, E. E., London, J. M., Cameron, M. F., Dahle, S. P., & Boveng, P. L. (2014). Estimating multispecies abundance using automated detection systems: Ice-associated seals in the Bering Sea. *Methods in ecology and evolution 5,* 1280-1293. doi: 10.1111/2041-210X.12127.

Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES). (2013). *Consideration of proposals for amendment of Appendices I and II: Manta rays*. Sixteenth meeting of the Conference of the Parties. Bangkok, Thailand, March 3-14.

Cook Islands Marine Park. (2017). Marae Morana becomes reality. Retrieved from <https://www.maraemoana.gov.ck/index.php/all-news/marine-park-news/198-marae-m>.

Cook, M. L. H., Manire, C. A., & Mann, D. A. (2005a). Auditory evoked potential (AEP) measurements in stranded rough-toothed dolphins (*Steno bredanensis*). *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 117*(4), 2441.

Cook, S. L., & Forrest, T. G. (2005). Sounds produced by nesting leatherback sea turtles (*Dermochelys coriacea*). *Herpetological Review, 36*(4), 387-390.

Cooke, J.G. (2018). *Eschrichtius robustus*. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2018: e.T8097A50353881. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2018-2.RLTS. T8097A50353881.en>.

Coombs, S., & Montgomery, J. C. (1999). The enigmatic lateral line system. Pages 319-362 in Fay, R. R., & Popper, A. N., (Eds.). *Comparative hearing: Fish and amphibians*. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag.

Coombs, S., Janssen, J., & Montgomery, J. (1992). Functional and evolutionary implications of peripheral diversity in lateral line systems. Pages 267-294 in Webster, D.B., Fay, R.R., & Popper, A.N., (Eds.). *The evolutionary biology of hearing.* New York, NY: Springer.

Corkeron, P. J., & Van Parijs, S. M. (2001). Vocalizations of eastern Australian Risso's dolphins, *Grampus griseus*. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 79*(1), 160-164.

Cortés, E. (1999) Standardized diet compositions and trophic levels of sharks. *ICES Journal of Marine Science, 56,* 707-717.

Courbis, S., Baird, R. W., Cipriano, F., & Duffield, D. 2014. Multiple populations of pantropical spotted dolphins in Hawaiian waters. 2014. *Journal of Heredity, 105*(5), 627-614.

Cox, T. M., Ragen, T. J., Read, A. J., Vos, E., Baird, R. W., Balcomb, K., . . . Benner, L. (2006). Understanding the impacts of anthropogenic sound on beaked whales. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 7*(3), 177-187.

Crance, J. L., Berchok, C. L., & Keating, J. L. (2017). Gunshot call production by the North Pacific right whale *Eubalaena japonica* in the southeastern Bering Sea. *Endangered Species Research, 34*, 251-267. doi: 10.3354/esr00848.

Cribb, N., Miller, C., & Seuront, L. (2013). Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin (*Tursiops aduncus*) habitat preference in a heterogeneous, urban, coastal environment. *Aquatic Biosystems, 9(*3), 1-9.

Croll, D. A., Acevedo-Gutierrez, A., Tershy, B. R., & Urban-Ramirez, J. (2001a). The diving behavior of blue and fin whales: is dive duration shorter than expected based on oxygen stores? *Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology—Part A: Molecular & Integrative Physiology, 129*(4), 797-809.

Croll, D. A., Clark, C. W., Acevedo, A., Tershy, B., Floress, S., Gedamke, J., & Urban, J. (2002). Only male fin whales sing loud songs. *Nature, 417*, 809.

Croll, D. A., Tershy, B. R., Acevedo, A., & Levin, P. (1999). *Marine vertebrates and low frequency sound.* Technical report for LFA EIS. Prepared by Marine Mammal and Seabird Ecology Group, Institute of Marine Sciences, University of California, Santa Cruz, CA.

Croll, D. A., Tershy, B. R., Hewitt, R. P., Demer, D. A., Fiedler, P. C., Smith, S. E., Armstrong, W., Popp, J. M., Kiekhefer, T., Lopez, V. R., Urban, J., & Gendron, D. (1998). An integrated approach to the foraging ecology of marine birds and mammals. *Deep Sea Research II, 45*, 1353-1371.

Crowell, S. C. (2016). Measuring in-air and underwater hearing in seabirds. Pages 1155-1160 in A.N. Popper, & A. Hawkins, (Eds.). *The effects of noise on aquatic life II.* Advances in experimental medicine and biology 875. New York, NY: Springer Science + Media. doi: 10.1007/978-1-4939-2981-8 .

Crowell, S. E., Wells-Berlin, A. M., Carr, C. E., Olsen, G. H., Therrien, R. E., Yannuzzi, S. E., & Ketten, D. R. (2015). A comparison of auditory brainstem responses across diving bird species. *Journal of Comparative Physiology A: Neuroethology, Sensory, Neural, and Behavioral Physiology*. doi 10.1007/s00359-00015-01024-00355.

Crowell, S. E., Wells-Berlin, A. M., Therrien, R. E., Yannuzzi, S. E., & Carr, C. E. (2016). In-air hearing of a diving duck: A comparison of psychoacoustic and auditory brainstem response thresholds. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 139*(5), 3001.

Cummings, W. C. (1985). Bryde's whale *Balaenoptera edeni* Anderson, 1878. Pages 137-154 in S. H. Ridgway and R. Harrison (Eds.). *Handbook of marine mammals, Vol. 3: The sirenians and baleen whales*. London, United Kingdom: Academic Press.

Cummings, W. C., & Thompson, P. O. (1971). Underwater sounds from the blue whale, *Balaenoptera musculus*. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 50*(4 (Part 2)), 1193-1198.

Cunningham, K. A. M. (2015). *Pinniped hearing in a rapidly changing acoustic environment* (Ph.D. Dissertation), University of California at Santa Cruz, Santa Cruz, CA. Retrieved from <https://escholarship.org/uc/item/737223k8>. p. 157.

Cunningham, K. A., & Reichmuth, C. (2017). High-frequency hearing in seals and sea lions. *Hearing Research, 331*, 83-91.

Cunningham, K. A. M. (2015). *Pinniped hearing in a rapidly changing acoustic environment.* (Ph.D. Dissertation). University of California at Santa Cruz, Santa Cruz, CA. Retrieved from https://escholarship.org/uc/item/737223k8. pp. 157.

Dahlheim, M. E., & Ljungblad, D. K. (1990). Preliminary hearing study on gray whales *Eschrichtius robustus* in the field. Pages 335-346 in J. Thomas and R. Kastelein (Eds.), *Sensory abilities of cetaceans*. New York, NY: Plenum Press.

Dahlheim, M. E., Schulman-Janiger, A., Black, N., Ternullo, R., Ellifrit, D., & Balcomb Iii, K. C. (2008). Eastern temperate North Pacific offshore killer whales (*Orcinus orca*): Occurrence, movements, and insights into feeding ecology. *Marine Mammal Science, 24*(3), 719-729. doi:10.1111/j.1748-7692.2008.00206.x

Dalebout, M. L., Robertson, K. M., Frantzis, A., Engelhaupt, D. A. N., Mignucci-Giannoni, A. A., Rosario-Delestre, R. J., & Baker, C. S. (2005). Worldwide structure of mtDNA diversity among Cuvier's beaked whales (*Ziphius cavirostris*): Implications for threatened populations. *Molecular Ecology, 14*, (11), 3353-3371.

Dalebout, M. L., Baker, C. S., Steel, D., Thompson, K., Robertson, K. M., Chivers, S. J., Perrin, W. F., Goonatilake, M., Anderson, R. C., Mead, J. G., Potter, C. W., Thompson, L., Jupiter, D., and Yamada, T. K. (2014). Resurrection of *Mesoplodon hotaula* Deraniyagala 1963: A new species of beaked whale in the tropical Indo-Pacific. *Marine Mammal Science, 30*(3), 1081-1108.

Dares, L. E., Hoffman, J. M., Yang, S. C., & Wang, J. Y. (2014). Habitat characteristics of the critically endangered Taiwanese humpback dolphins (*Sousa chinensis*) of the Eastern Taiwan Strait. *Aquatic Mammals, 40*(4), 368-374. Doi:10.1578/AM.40.4.2014.368.

Davis, R. W., Jaquet, N., Gendron, D., Markaida, U., Bazzino, G., & Gilly, W. (2007). Diving behavior of sperm whales in relation to behavior of a major prey species, the jumbo squid, in the Gulf of California, Mexico. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 333*, 291-302.

Dawson, S., Barlow, J., & Ljungblad, D. (1998). Sounds recorded from Baird's beaked whale, *Berardius bairdii*. *Marine Mammal Science, 14*(2), 335-344.

de Boer, M. N., Baldwin, R., Burton, C. L. K., Eyre, E. L., Jenner, K. C. S., Jenner, M.-N. M., . . . Simmonds, M. P., (Eds). (2003). *Cetaceans in the Indian Ocean Sanctuary: A review.* Wiltshire, United Kingdom: Whale and Dolphin Conservation Society.

de Freitas, M., Jensen, F. H., Tyne, J., Bejder, L., & Madsen, P. T. (2015). Echolocation parameters of Australian humpback dolphins (*Sousa sahulensis*) and Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops aduncus*) in the wild. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 137*(6), 3033. doi:10.1121/1.4921277.

Deguignet, M., Juffe-Bignoli, D., Harrison, J., MacSharry, B., Burgess, N., Kingston, N. (2014). 2014 United Nations list of protected areas. UNEP-WCMC: Cambridge, UK.

Delarue, J., Martin, B., & Hannay, D. (2013). Minke whale boing sound detections in the northeastern Chukchi Sea. *Marine Mammal Science, 29*(3), E333-E341. doi:10.1111/j.1748-7692.2012.00611.x.

Department of the Interior (DoI). (2014.) Endangered and threatened wildlife and plants; Designation of critical habitat for the northwest Atlantic Ocean distinct population segment of the loggerhead sea turtle; Final rule. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Department of the Interior. *Federal Register 79*(132), 39756-39854.

Department of the Navy (DoN). (2001). *Final overseas environmental impact statement and environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar.* Washington, DC: Chief of Naval Operations, Department of the Navy. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/FEIS-Vol-I.pdf>.

DoN. (2005a). Marine resources assessment for the Hawaiian Islands operating area. Pacific Division, Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Pearl Harbor. Contract #N62470-02-D-9997, CTO 0026. Prepared by Geo-Marine, Inc., Plano, TX.

DoN. (2005b). Marine resources assessment for the Marianas operating area. Pacific Division, Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Pearl Harbor. Contract #N62470-02-D-9997, CTO 0027. Prepared by Geo-Marine, Inc., Plano, TX.

DoN. (2007). *Final supplemental environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar.* Washington, D.C.: Chief of Naval Operations, Department of the Navy. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/SURTASS_LFA_FSEIS.pdf>.

DoN. (2012). *Final supplemental environmental impact statement/supplemental overseas environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar.* Washington, D.C.: Chief of Naval Operations, Department of the Navy. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/SURTASS_LFA_FSEIS-SOEIS.pdf>. 1100 pages.

DoN. (2014). *Final sea turtle marine resources survey report in support of the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands Joint Military Training environmental impact statement/overseas environmental impact statement*. Prepared for Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Pacific, Honolulu, HI. Prepared by Tetra Tech, Inc., Oakland, CA. 217 pages.

DoN. (2015). *Mariana Islands training and testing activities final environmental impact statement/Overseas environmental impact statement*. Pearl Harbor, HI: Chief of Naval Operations, Department of the Navy. <https://mitt-eis.com/Documents/2015-Mariana-Islands-Training-and-Testing-EIS-OEIS-Documents/Final-EIS-OEIS>.

DoN. (2017a). *Final supplemental environmental impact statement/supplemental overseas environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar.* Washington, D.C.: Chief of Naval Operations, Department of the Navy. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/Navy_SURTASS-LFA_FSEIS-SOEIS.pdf>. 723 pages.

DoN. (2017b). U.S. Navy marine species density database Phase III for the Hawaii-southern California training and testing study area. NAVFAC Pacific Technical Report. Naval Facilities Engineering Command Pacific, Pearl Harbor, HI. <https://hstteis.com/portals/hstteis/files/reports/U.S._Navy_Marine_Species_Density_Database_Phase_III_Technical_Rpt_for_HSTT_Oct2017.pdf>. 274 pages.

DoN. (2017c). *Criteria and thresholds for U.S. Navy acoustic and explosive effects analysis (Phase III). Technical report*. San Diego, CA: SSC Pacific. Retrieved from <https://hstteis.com/portals/hstteis/files/reports/Criteria_and_Thresholds_for_U.S._Navy_Acoustic_and_Explosive_Effects_Analysis_June2017.pdf>. 194 pages.

DoN. (2018). Navy marine species density database. Geospatial global database. Accessed May 2018. Chief of Naval Operations, DoN.

DoN. (2018a). *Final environmental impact statement/overseas environmental impact statement for Hawaii-southern California training and testing*. Pearl Harbor, HI: Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Pacific. <https://www.hstteis.com/Documents/2018-Hawaii-Southern-California-Training-and-Testing-Final-EIS-OEIS/Final-EIS-OEIS>.

DeRuiter, S. L., & Doukara, K. L. (2012). Loggerhead turtles dive in response to airgun sound exposure. *Endangered Species Research, 16*, 55-63.

DeRuiter, S. L., Boyd, I. L., Claridge, D. E., Clark, C. W., Gagnon, C., Southall, B. L., & Tyack, P. L. (2013). Delphinid whistle production and call matching during playback of simulated military sonar. *Marine Mammal Science, 29*(2), E46-E59. doi:10.1111/j.1748-7692.2012.00587.x.

de Vos, A., Pattiaratchi, C., & Harcourt, R. (2014). Inter-annual variability in blue whale distribution off southern Sri Lanka between 2011 and 2012. *Journal of Marine Science and Engineering, 2*(3), 534-550. doi:10.3390/jmse2030534.

Díaz López, B. (2011). Whistle characteristics in free-ranging bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops truncatus*) in the Mediterranean Sea: Influence of behaviour. *Mammalian Biology-Zeitschrift fur Saugetierkunde, 76*(2), 180-189. doi:10.1016/j.mambio.2010.06.006.

Diercks, K.J., Trochta, R.T., & Evans, W.E. (1973). Delphinid sonar: Measurement and analysis. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 54*(1), 200-204.

Diercks, K.J., Trochta, R.T., Greenlaw, C.F., & Evans, W.E. (1971). Recording and analysis of dolphin echolocation signals. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 49*(1A), 135-135.

Dive Zone. (2018). Diving sites in Maldives. Retrieved from <https://divezone.net/diving/Maldives>.

Dodd, C. K. (1988). Synopsis of the biological data on the loggerhead sea turtle *Caretta caretta* (Linnaeus 1758). U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Report, 88(14), 1-110.

Dodge, K. L., Galuardi, B., Miller, T. J., & Lutcavage, M. E. (2014). Leatherback turtle movements, dive behavior, and habitat characteristics in ecoregions of the Northwest Atlantic Ocean. *PLoS ONE, 9*(3), e91726. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0091726.

Dohl, T. P., Guess, R. C., Duman, M. L., & Helm, R. C. (1983). *Cetaceans of central and northern California, 1980-1983: Status, abundance, and distribution.* OCS Study MMS 84-0045. Los Angeles, CA: Minerals Management Service.

Dolar, M. L. L. (2009). Fraser's dolphin *Lagenodelphis hosei*. Pages 469-471 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen, (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals, 2nd ed*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Dolar, M. L. L., Walker, W. A., Kooyman, G. L., & Perrin, W. F. (2003). Comparative feeding ecology of spinner dolphins (*Stenella longirostris*) and Fraser's dolphins (*Lagenodelphis hosei*) in the Sulu Sea. *Marine Mammal Science, 19*(1), 1-19.

Dolphin, W. F. (1987). Dive behavior and estimated energy expenditure of foraging humpback whales in southeast Alaska. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 65*(2), 354-362.

Dolphin, W. F. (1988). Foraging dive patterns of humpback whales *Megaptera novaeangliae* in Southeast Alaska USA: A cost-benefit analysis. *Canadian Journal of Zoology 66*, 2432-2441.

Donahue, M., & Perryman, W. L. (2009). Pygmy killer whale *Feresa attenuata*. Pages 938-939 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen, (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals, 2nd ed*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Dooling, R. J. (2002). *Avian hearing and the avoidance of wind turbines*. Colorado: National Renewable Energy Laboratory.

Dooling, R. J., & Popper, A. N. (2000). Hearing in birds and reptiles. Pages 308–359 in R. J. Dooling, R. R. Fay, & A. N. Popper, (Eds.). *Comparative hearing in birds and reptiles* (Vol. 13). New York, NY: Springer-Verlag.

Dooling, R. J., & Therrien, S. C. (2012). Hearing in birds: What changes from air to water. Pages 77-82 in A. N. Popper, & A. Hawkins, (Eds.). *Effects of noise on aquatic life.* New York, NY: Springer Verlag.

Dooling, R. J., Lohr, B., & Dent, M. L. (2000). Hearing in birds and reptiles. Chapter 7 in R. J. Dooling, R. R. Fay, & A. N. Popper (Eds.). *Comparative hearing: Birds and reptiles—An overview.* (Springer Handbook of Auditory Research book series (SHAR, volume 13) pp. 309-359). New York, NY: Springer.

dos Santos, M. E., Caporin, G., Moreira, H., Ferreira, A. J., & Coelho, J. L. B. (1990). Acoustic behavior in a local population of bottlenose dolphins. Pages 585- 598 in J. Thomas & R. Kastelein (Eds.). *Sensory abilities of cetaceans*. New York, NY: Plenum Press.

Double, M. C., Andrews-Goff, V., Jenner, C., Jenner, M.-N., Laverick, S. M., Branch, T. A., & Gales, N. J. (2014). Migratory movements of pygmy blue whales (*Balaenoptera musculus brevicauda*) between Australia and Indonesia as revealed by satellite telemetry. *PLoS ONE,* 9(4), e93578. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0093578.t001.

Dow Piniak, W. E., Eckert, S. A., Harms, C. A., & Stringer, E. M. (2012a). *Underwater hearing sensitivity of the leatherback sea turtle (Dermochelys coriacea): Assessing the potential effect of anthropogenic noise.* U.S. Dept. of the Interior, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management Headquarters, Herndon, Virginia. OCS Study BOEM 1156. 35 pages.

Dow Piniak, W. E., Mann, D. A., Eckert, S. A., & Harms, C. A. (2012b). Amphibious hearing in sea turtles. Pages 83-87 in A. N. Popper & A. Hawkins, (Eds.). *The effects of noise on aquatic life*. Advances in experimental medicine and biology, Vol. 730. New York, NY: Springer.

Doyle, T. K., Houghton, J. D. R., O'Súilleabháin, P. F., Hobson, V. J., Marnell, F., Davenport, J., & Hays, G. C. (2008). Leatherback turtles satellite-tagged in European waters. *Endangered Species Research, 4*, 23-31. doi: 10.3354/esr00076.

Dunlop, R. A., Cato, D. H., & Noad, M. J., & Stokes, D. M. (2013). Source levels of social sounds in migrating humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*). *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 134*(1), 706-714. doi:10.1121/1.4807828.

Dunlop, R. A., Noad, M. J., Cato,D. H., & Stokes, D. (2007). The social vocalization repertoire of east Australian migrating humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*). *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 122*(5), 2893-2905.

Dunlop, R.A., Noad, M.J., McCauley, R.D., Kniest, E., Slade, R., Paton, D., Cato, D.H. (2017). The behavioural response of migrating humpback whales to a full seismic airgun array. *Proceedings of the Royal Society B, 284*. doi:10.1098/rspb.2017.1901.

Dupree, M. (1995). Passing through enemy waters: Marine turtles in Japan. *Pacific Basin Law Journal, 14*(1), 75-102.

Durban, J. W., & Pitman, R. L. (2012). Antarctic killer whales make rapid, round-trip movements to subtropical waters: evidence for physiological maintenance migrations? *Biology letters, 8*(2), 274-277. doi:10.1098/rsbl.2011.0875.

Dutton, P. H., Hitipeuw, C., Zein, M., Benson, S. R., Petro, G., Pita, J., . . . Bakarbessy, J. (2007). Status and genetic structure of nesting populations of leatherback turtles (*Dermochelys coriacea*) in the Western Pacific. *Chelonian Conservation and Biology, 6*(1), 47-53.

Eckert, K. L., Wallace, B. P., Frazier, J. G., Eckert, S. A., & Pritchard, P. C. H. (2012). Synopsis of the biological data on the leatherback sea turtle (*Dermochelys coriacea*). Biological Technical Publication BTP-R4015-2012. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service. Retrieved from <https://digitalmedia.fws.gov/cdm/ref/collection/document/id/1519>.

Eckert, S. A. (1998). Perspectives on the use of satellite telemetry and electronic technologies for the study of marine turtles, with reference to the first year long tracking of leatherback sea turtles. Epperly, S.P. & Braun, J., (Eds). *NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SEFSC-415. Proceedings of the Seventeenth Annual Sea Turtle Symposium*.

Eckert, S. A. (1999). *Habitats and migratory pathways of the Pacific leatherback sea turtle.* Final Report to the National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources. San Diego, CA.

Eckert, S. A. (2002). Swim speed and movement patterns of gravid leatherback sea turtles (*Dermochelys coriacea*) at St Croix, US Virgin Islands. *Journal of Experimental Biology, 205*(23), 3689-3697.

Eckert, S. A., Liew, H. C., Eckert, K. L., & Chan, E. H. (1996). Shallow water diving by leatherback turtles in the South China Sea. *Chelonian Conservation and Biology, 2*(2), 237-243.

Edds, P. L. (1982). Vocalizations of the blue whale, *Balaenoptera musculus*, in the St. Lawrence River. *Journal of Mammalogy, 63*(2), 345-347.

Edds, P. L. (1988). Characteristics of finback *Balaenoptera physalus* vocalizations in the St. Lawrence Estuary. *Bioacoustics, 1*, 131-149.

Edds, P. L., Odell, D. K., & Tershy, B. R. (1993). Vocalizations of a captive juvenile and free-ranging adult-calf pairs of Bryde's whales, *Balaenoptera edeni*. *Marine Mammal Science, 9*(3), 269-284.

Edds-Walton, P. L. (2000). Vocalisations of minke whales (*Balaenoptera acutorostrata*) in the St. Lawrence Estuary. *Bioacoustics, 1*, 31-50.

Edmonds, N. J., Firmin, C. J., Goldsmith, D., Faulkner, R. C., & Wood, T.D. (2016). A review of crustacean sensitivity to high amplitude underwater noise: Data needs for effective risk assessment in relation to UK commercial species. *Marine Pollution Bulletin, 108*, 5-11. doi: 10.1016/j.marpolbul.2016.05.006.

Eguchi, T., Gerrodette, T., Pitman, R. L., Seminoff, J. A., & Dutton, P. H. (2007). At-sea density and abundance estimates of the olive ridley turtle *Lepidochelys olivacea* in the eastern tropical Pacific. *Endangered Species Research, 3*(2), 191-203. doi:10.3354/esr003191.

Ellison, W. T., Clark, C. W., & Bishop, G. C. (1987). *Potential use of surface reverberation by bowhead whales, Balaena mysticetus, in under-ice navigation: preliminary considerations.* Paper presented at the International Whaling Commission meeting.

Emmett, R.L., Hinton, S. A., Stone, S. L., & Monaco, M. E. (1991). *Distribution and abundance of fishes and invertebrates in west coast estuaries. Volume II: Species life history summaries.* ELMR Report No. 8. Rockville, Maryland: NOAA/NOS Strategic Environmental Assessments Division. 329 pages.

Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). (2007). The plain English guide to the Clean Air Act. Publication No. EPA-456/K-07-001. Office of Air Quality Planning and Standards, Research Triangle Park, NC.

EPA. (2009b). Technical support document for endangerment and cause or contribute findings for greenhouse gases under Section 202(a) of the Clean Air Act. Climate Change Division, Office of Atmospheric Programs. Retrieved from <https://www.epa.gov/sites/production/files/2016-08/documents/endangerment_tsd.pdf>.

EPA. (2009c). Endangerment and cause or contribute findings for greenhouse gases under Section 202(a) of the Clean Air Act; Final rule. *Federal Register 74*(239), 66496-66546.

EPA. (2015). Inventory of U.S. greenhouse gas emissions and sinks: 1990-2013. Retrieved from <http://www3.epa.gov/climatechange/Downloads/ghgemissions/US-GHGInventory-2015-Main-Text.pdf>.

EPA. (2016a). Hazardous air pollutants. Retrieved from <http://www.epa.gov/haps>.

EPA. (2017). *Inventory of greenhouse gas emissions and sinks, 1990-2015.* EPA 430-P-17-001. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. 633 pages. Retrieved from <https://www.epa.gov/sites/production/files/2017-02/documents/2017_complete_report.pdf>.

EPA. (2018). Green Book criteria pollutant nonattainment summary report. Retrieved from <https://www3.epa.gov/airquality/greenbook/ancl3.html>.

Environment Society of Oman. (2016). Annual report 2016. Retrieve from <www.eso.org.om>. 51 pages.

Erbe, C. (2002). Underwater noise of whale-watching boats and potential effects on killer whales (*Orcinus orca*), based on an acoustic impact model. *Marine Mammal Science, 18*(2), 394-418.

Evans, P. G. H. (1987). *The natural history of whales and dolphins*. New York, NY: Facts on File Publications.

Evans, W. E. (1971). Orientation behavior of delphinids: Radio telemetric studies. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences, 188*, 142-160.

Evans, W. E. (1973). Echolocation by marine delphinids and one species of fresh-water dolphin. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 54*(1), 191-199.

Evans, W. E. (1994). Common dolphin, white-bellied porpoise *Delphinus delphis* Linnaeus, 1758. Pages 191-224 in .H. Ridgeway and R. Harrison, (Eds.). *Handbook of marine mammals. Volume 5: The first book of dolphins*. New York, NY: Academic Press.

Evans, W. E., & Awbrey, F. T. (1984). High frequency pulses of Commerson's dolphin and Dall's porpoise. *American Zoologist 24*(3):2A.

Evans, W. E., & Maderson, P. F. A. (1973). Mechanisms of sound production in delphinid cetaceans: a review of some anatomical considerations. *American Zoologist, 13,* 1205-1213.

Falcone, E. A., Schorr, G. S., L.Watwood, S., DeRuiter, S. L., Zerbini, A. N., Andrews, R. D., . . . Moretti, D. J. (2017). Diving behaviour of Cuvier's beaked whales exposed to two types of military sonar. *Royal Society Open Science, 4*, 170629. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1098/rsos.170629.

Farrokhrooz, M., Wage, K. E., Dzieciuch, M. A., & Worcester, P. F. (2017). Vertical line array measurements of ambient noise in the North Pacific. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 141*(3), 1571–1581. doi: 10.1121/1.4976706.

Fay, R. (2009). Soundscapes and the sense of hearing of fishes. *Integrated Zoology, 4*(1), 26-32.

Fedoseev, G. A. (2000). *Population biology of ice-associated forms of seals and their role in the northern Pacific ecosystems.* Center for Russian Environmental Policy, Russian Marine Mammal Council, Moscow, Russia. 271 pages (Translated from Russian by I. E. Sidorova, 271 pages.).

Fedoseev, G. A. (2009). Ribbon seal. Pages 955-958 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen, (Eds.) *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*, 2$^{nd}$ ed. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Ferguson, M. C., & Barlow, J. (2001). *Spatial distribution and density of cetaceans in the eastern tropical Pacific Ocean based on summer/fall research vessel surveys in 1986-1996.* (NMFS-SWFSC Administrative Report LJ-01-04). La Jolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Ferguson, M. C., & Barlow, J. (2003). *Addendum: Spatial distribution and density of cetaceans in the eastern tropical Pacific Ocean based on summer/fall research vessel surveys in 1986-96*. (NMFS-SWFSC Administrative Report LJ-01-04, Addendum). La Jolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Fernández, A., Edwards, J. F., Rodríguez, F., A. Espinosa de los Monteros, Herráez, P., Castro, P., . . . Arbelo, M. (2005). "Gas and fat embolic syndrome" involving a mass stranding of beaked whales (Family *Ziphiidae*) exposed to anthropogenic sonar signals. *Veterinary Pathology, 42*(4), 446-457.

Ferrara, C.R., Vogt, R.C., & Sousa-Lima, R.S. (2013). Turtle vocalizations as the first evidence of posthatching parental care in Chelonians. *Journal of Comparative Psychology, 127*(1), 24-32. doi: 10.1037/a0029656.

Ferrara, C.R., Vogt, R.C., Harfush, M.R., Sousa-Lima, R.S., Albavera, E., & Tavera, A. (2014). First evidence of leatherback turtle (*Dermochelys coriacea*) embryos and hatchlings emitting sounds. *Chelonian Conservation and Biology, 13*(1), 110-114.

Figueiredo, L. (2014). Bryde's whale (*Balaenoptera edeni*) vocalizations from southeast Brazil. *Aquatic Mammals, 40*(3), 225-231. doi:10.1578/am.40.3.2014.225.

Filatova, O. A., Fedutin, I. D., Burdin, A. M., & Hoyt, E. (2011). Responses of Kamchatkan fish-eating killer whales to playbacks of conspecific calls. *Marine Mammal Science, 27*(2), E26-E42. doi:10.1111/j.1748-7692.2010.00433.x.

Filatova, O. A., Ford, J. K., Matkin, C. O., Barrett-Lennard, L. G., Burdin, A. M., & Hoyt, E. (2012). Ultrasonic whistles of killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) recorded in the North Pacific (L). *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 132*(6), 3618-3621. doi:10.1121/1.4764874.

Filatova, O. A., Deecke, V. B., Ford, J. K. B., Matkin, C. O., Barrett-Lennard, L. G., Guzeev, M. A., . . . Hoyt, E. (2012a). Call diversity in the North Pacific killer whale populations: Implications for dialect evolution and population history. *Animal Behaviour, 83*(3), 595-603. doi:10.1016/j.anbehav. 2011.12.013.

Filatova, O. A., Guzeev, M. A., Fedutin, I. D., Burdin, A. M., & Hoyt, E. (2013). Dependence of killer whale (*Orcinus orca*) acoustic signals on the type of activity and social context. *Biology Bulletin, 40*(9), 790-796. doi:10.1134/s1062359013090045.

Filiciotto, F., Vazzana, M., Celi, M., Maccarrone, V., Ceraulo, M., Buffa, G., Stefano, V.D., Mazzola, S., & Buscaino, G. (2014). Behavioural and biochemical stress responses of *Palinurus elephas* after exposure to boat noise pollution in tank. *Marine Pollution Bulletin 84*, 104-114.

Filmalter, J., Forget, F., Poisson, F., Vernet, A.L., Bach, P., & Dagorn, L. (2012). Vertical and horizontal behaviour of silky, oceanic white tip and blue sharks in the western Indian Ocean. *IOTC–2012–WPEB08–23.*

Fish, F. E., & Hui, C. A. (1991). Dolphin swimming—A review. *Mammal Review, 21*(4)**,** 181-195.

Fish, F. E., Nicastro, A. J., & Weihs, D. (2006). Dynamics of the aerial maneuvers of spinner dolphins. *Journal of Experimental Biology, 209*(4), 590-598.

Fish, J. F., & Turl, C. W. (1976). *Acoustic source levels of four species of small whales.* Naval Undersea Center Report. San Diego, CA: U.S. Naval Undersea Center.

Fletcher, L. B., & Crawford, J. D. (2001). Acoustic detection by sound-producing fishes (Mormyridae): The role of gas-filled tympanic bladders. *The Journal of Experimental Biology, 204*(2), 175-183.

Florida Fish and Wildlife Conservation Commission (FFWCC). (2018). *Index nesting beach survey totals (1989-2017).* Retrieved from <http://myfwc.com/research/wildlife/sea-turtles/nesting/beach-survey-totals/>.

Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (FAO). (2018). *The state of world fisheries and aquaculture—Meeting the sustainable development goals*. Rome, Italy: FAO. 227 pages. Retrieved from <http://www.fao.org/documents/card/en/c/I9540EN>.

Ford, J. K. B. (1989). Acoustic behaviour of resident killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) off Vancouver Island, British Columbia. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 67*(3), 727-745.

Ford, J. K. B. (2009). Killer whale (*Orcinus orca*). Pages 650-657 in W.F. Perrin, B. Würsig, and J.G.M. Thewissen, (Eds). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals, 2nd ed*. San Diego, California: Academic Press.

Ford, J. K. B., & Fisher, H. D. (1982). Killer whale (*Orcinus orca*) dialects as an indicator of stocks in British Columbia. *Report of the International Whaling Commission, 32,* 671-679.

Ford, J. K. B., Durban, J. W., Ellis, G. M., Towers, J. R., Pilkington, J. F., Barrett-Lennard, L. G., & Andrews, R. D. (2013). New insights into the northward migration route of gray whales between Vancouver Island, British Columbia, and southeastern Alaska. *Marine Mammal Science, 29*(2), 325-337. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.2012.00572.x.

Ford, J. K. B., Ellis, G. A., Matkin, D. R., Balcomb, K. C., Briggs, D., & Morton, A. B. (2005). Killer whale attacks on minke whales: Prey capture and antipredator tactics. *Marine Mammal Science, 21*, 603-618.

Forney, K. A., Becker, E. A., Foley, D. G., Barlow, J., & Oleson, E. M. (2015). Habitat-based models of cetacean density and distribution in the central North Pacific. *Endangered Species Research, 27*, 1-20. doi: https://doi.org/10.3354/esr00632.

Fournet, M. E., Szabo, A., & Mellinger, D. K. (2015). Repertoire and classification of non-song calls in Southeast Alaskan humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*). *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 137*(1), 1. doi:10.1121/1.4904504.

Frankel, A. S. (2005). *Gray whales hear and respond to signals 21 kHz and higher*. Paper presented at the 16th biennial conference on the biology of marine mammals, San Diego, CA.

Frankel, A. S. (2018). Sound production. Pages 889-901 in B. Würsig, J. G. M. Thewissen, & K. Kovacs, (Eds.), *Encyclopedia of marine mammals, 3rd ed.* San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Frankel, A. S., & Yin, S. (2010). A description of sounds recorded from melon-headed whales (*Peponocephala electra*) off Hawai'i. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 127*(5)**,** 3248–3255.

Frankel, A. S., Mobley, J., & Herman, L. (1995). Estimation of auditory response thresholds in humpback whales using biologically meaningful sounds. Pages 55–70 in R. A. Kastelein, J. A. Thomas, & P. E. Nachtigall, (Eds). *Sensory systems of aquatic mammals.* Woerden, Netherlands: De Spil Publication.

Frantzis, A., Goold, J. C., Skarsoulis, E. K., Taroudakis, M. I., & Kandia, V. (2002). Clicks from Cuvier's beaked whales, *Ziphius cavirostris* (L). *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 112*(1), 34-37.

Friedlaender, A. S., Goldbogen, J. A., Nowacek, D. P., Read, A. J., Johnston, D., & Gales, N. (2014). Feeding rates and under-ice foraging strategies of the smallest lunge filter feeder, the Antarctic minke whale (*Balaenoptera bonaerensis*). *The Journal of Experimental Biology,* 217(Pt 16), 2851-2854. doi:10.1242/jeb.106682.

Froese, R. & Pauly, D., Eds. (2017). FishBase. World Wide Web electronic publication; version 2017. Retrieved from <www.fishbase.org>.

Frost, K.J., & Burns, J.J. (2018). Spotted seal *Phoca largha*. Pages 928 to 931 in B. Würsig, J. G. M. Thewissen, & K. Kovacs, (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals, 3rd Ed.* San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Fulling, G.L., Thorson, P.H., & Rivers, J. (2011). Distribution and abundance estimates for cetaceans in the waters off Guam and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands. *Pacific Science, 65*(3), 321-343.

Gabriele, C., & Frankel, A. S. (2002). The occurrence and significance of humpback whale songs in Glacier Bay, southeastern Alaska. *Arctic Research of the United States, 16*, 42-47.

Gabriele, C. M., Straley, J. M., Herman, L. M., & Coleman, R. J. (1996). Fastest documented migration of a North Pacific humpback whale. *Marine Mammal Science, 12*(3), 457-464.

Gagon, C. (2017) as cited in International Whaling Commission (IWC). (2017). Report of the scientific committee, IWC meeting SC/67a, Bled, Slovenia, 9-21 May 2017. IWC/67/Rep01. Retrieved from <https://archive.iwc.int/pages/search.php?search=!collection24503&bc_from=themes>.

Gambell, R. (1985). Sei whale (*Balaenoptera borealis)* Lesson, 1828. Pages 155-170 in *Handbook of marine mammals*, Vol. 3. London, England: Academic Press.

Gaos, A. R., Lewison, R. L., Jensen, M. P., Liles, M. J., Henriquez, A., Chavarria, S., . . . Dutton, P. H. (2017). Natal foraging philopatry in eastern Pacific hawksbill turtles. *Royal Society Open Science, 4*, 170153. doi:10.1098/rsos.170153.

Gaos, A. R., Lewison, R. R., Wallace, B. P., Yañez, I. L., Liles, M. J., Baquero, A., & Seminoff, J. A. (2012). Dive behaviour of adult hawksbills (*Eretmochelys imbricata*, Linnaeus 1766) in the eastern Pacific Ocean highlights shallow depth use by the species. J*ournal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology, 432-433,* 171-178. doi:10.1016/j.jembe.2012.07.006.

Gaskin, D. E. (1992). Status of the harbour porpoise, *Phocoena phocoena*, in Canada. *Canadian Field-Naturalist, 106*, 36-54.

Gaskin, D. E., Arnold, P. W., & Blair, B. A. (1974). *Phocoena phocoena*. *Mammalian Species, 42*, 1-8.

Gassmann, M., Henderson, E. E., Wiggins, S. M., Roch, M. A., & Hildebrand, J. A. (2013). Offshore killer whale tracking using multiple hydrophone arrays. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 134*(5), 3513-3521. doi:10.1121/1.4824162.

Gazioğlu, C., Müftüoğlu, A.E., Demir, V., Aksu, A., & Okutan, V. (2015). Connection between ocean acidification and sound propagation. *International Journal of Environment and Geoinformatics, 2*(2), 16-26.

Gedamke, J., Costa, D. P., & Dunstan, A. (2001). Localization and visual verification of a complex minke whale vocalization. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 109*(6), 3038-3047.

Gelatt, T., & Sweeney, K. (2016). *Eumetopias jubatus*. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2016: e.T8239A45225749. Retrieved from <http://www.iucnredlist.org/details/8239/0>.

Gelatt, T., Ream, R., & Johnson, D. (2015). *Callorhinus ursinus*. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2015: e.T3590A45224953. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2015-4.RLTS.T3590A45224953.en>.

Gentry, R. (2009a). Eared seals. Pages 339-348 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen, (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*, 2nd ed. New York, NY: Academic Press.

Gentry, R. (2009b). Northern fur seal *Callorhinus ursinus*. Pages 788-791 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen (Eds.), *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*, 2nd Ed. New York, NY: Academic Press.

Geraci, J.R., & Lounsbury, V.J. (2005). *Marine mammals ashore: A field guide for strandings*, 2nd Ed. Baltimore, MD: National Aquarium in Baltimore.

Giles, J. C., Davis, J. A., McCauley, R. D., & Kuchling, G. (2009). Voice of the turtle: The underwater acoustic repertoire of the long-necked freshwater turtle, *Chelodina oblonga*. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 126*(1), 434-443.

Gilmartin, W. G., & Forcada, J. (2009). Monk seals *Monachus monachus*, *M. tropicalis*, and *M. schauinslandi.* Pages 741-744 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*, 2nd ed. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Gochfeld, D.J. (2004). Predation-induced morphological and behavioral defenses in a hard coral: Implications for foraging behavior of coral-feeding butterflyfishes. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 267*, 145–158.

Godley, B. J., Broderick, A. C., Glen, F., & Hays, G. C. (2003). Post-nesting movements and submergence patterns of loggerhead marine turtles in the Mediterranean assessed by satellite tracking. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology, 287*(1), 119-134.

Godley, B. J., Richardson, S., Broderick, A. C., Coyne, M. S., Glen, F., & Hays, G. C. (2002). Long-term satellite telemetry of the movements and habitat utilisation by green turtles in the Mediterranean. *Ecography, 25,* 352-362.

Goebel, M. E. (1998). Female foraging behavior: Inter-and intraannual variation in individuals. In R. L. Gentry (Ed.), *Behaviour and ecology of the northern fur seal*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.

Goebel, M. E., Bengtson, J. L., DeLong, R. L., Gentry, R. L., & Loughlin, T. R. (1991). Diving patterns and foraging locations of female northern fur seals. *Fishery Bulletin, 89*, 171-179.

Goldbogen, J. A., Calambokidis, J., Croll, D. A., Harvey, J. T., Newton, K. M., Oleson, E. M., Schorr, G., & Shadwick, R. E. (2008). Foraging behavior of humpback whales: kinematic and respiratory patterns suggest a high cost for a lunge. *Journal of Experimental Biology, 211*, 3712-3719.

Good, T. P., Waples, R. S., & Adams, P., Eds. (2005). *Updated status of federally listed ESUs of West Coast salmon and steelhead.* NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NWFSC-66. National Marine Fisheries Service; National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. 598 pages.

Goodall, C., Chapman, C., Neil, D., Tautz, J., & Reichert, H. (1990). The acoustic response threshold of the Norway lobster, *Nephrops norvegicus*, in a free sound field. Pages 106-113 in Wiese, K., W.D., K., & Mulloney, B., Eds. *Frontiers in crustacean neurobiology*. Boston, MA and Berlin, Germany: Birkhäuser Basel.

Goold, J. C., & Jones, S. E. (1995). Time and frequency domain characteristics of sperm whale clicks. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 98*(3), 1279-1291.

Gordon, J., Gillespie, D., Rendell, L. E., & Leaper, R. (1996). Draft report on playback of ATOC like sound to sperm whales (*Physeter macrocephalus*) off the Azores.

Gowans, S. (2009). Bottlenose whales *Hyperoodon ampullatus* and *H. planifrons*. Pages 129-131 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*, 2nd ed. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Government of Western Australia. (2015). North west shelf oil and gas. Retrieved from <http://www.dmp.wa.gov.au/Documents/Petroleum/PD-SBD-GEO-105D.pdf>.

Greenhow, D. R., Brodsky, M. C., Lingenfelser, R. G., & Mann, D. A. (2014). Hearing threshold measurements of five stranded short-finned pilot whales (*Globicephala macrorhynchus*). The *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 135*(1), 531-536. doi:10.1121/1.4829662.

Greenhow, D.R., Cardwell, A., Powell, J.R., Hill-Cook, M.L., Stamper, M.A., Byrd, L., Manire, C.A., Brodsky, M.C., Bauer, G.B., & Mann, D.A. (2016). Comparison of three *Stenella* spp. audiograms measured using auditory evoked potentials and behavioral methods. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 140*(4), 3297. doi:10.1121/1.4970482.

Gregr, E. J. (2000). An analysis of historic (1908-1967) whaling records from British Columbia, Canada. Master's thesis, University of British Columbia, Canada.

Gregr, E.J., Nichol, L., Ford, J.K.B., Ellis, G., & Trites, A.W. (2000). Migration and population structure of northeastern Pacific whales off coastal British Columbia: An analysis of commercial whaling records from 1908-1967. *Marine Mammal Science, 16*(4), 699-727.

Gridley, T., Berggren, P., Cockcroft, V. G., & Janik, V. M. (2012). Whistle vocalizations of Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops aduncus*) inhabiting the south-west Indian Ocean. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 132*(6), 4032-4040. doi:10.1121/1.4763990.

Gridley, T., Cockcroft, V. G., Hawkins, E. R., Blewitt, M. L., Morisaka, T., & Janik, V. M. (2014). Signature whistles in free-ranging populations of Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphins, *Tursiops aduncus*. *Marine Mammal Science, 30*(2), 512-527. doi:10.1111/mms.12054.

Gridley, T., Nastasi, A., Kriesell, H. J., & Elwen, S. H. (2015). The acoustic repertoire of wild common bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops truncatus*) in Walvis Bay, Namibia. *Bioacoustics, 24*(2), 153-174. doi:10.1080/09524622.2015.1014851.

Guerra, M., Hickmott, L., van der Hoop, J., Rayment, W., Leunissen, E., Slooten, E., & Moore, M. (2017). Diverse foraging strategies by a marine top predator: Sperm whales exploit pelagic and demersal habitats in the Kaikōura submarine canyon. *Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers, 128*, 98-108.

Gustafson, F.G., Wainwright, T.C., Winans, G. A., Waknitz, F. W., Parker, L. T., & Waples, R. S. (1997). *Status review of sockeye salmon from Washington and Oregon.* NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NWFSC-33. National Marine Fisheries Service; National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. 282 pages.

Guzman, H. M., & Félix, F. (2017). Movements and habitat use by southeast Pacific humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) satellite tracked at two breeding sites. *Aquatic Mammals, 43*, 139-155.

Hapdei, J. (2013). CNMI DLNR-DFW Sea Turtle Program team leader. Personal communication with Kevin Kelly, Tetra Tech. July 12, 2013. As cited in DoN, 2014.

Hall, J. D., & Johnson, C. S. (1972). Auditory threshold of a killer whale (*Orcinus orca*) Linnaeus. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 51*, 515-517.

Halvorsen, M. B., Casper, B. M., Woodley, C. M., Carlson, T. J., & Popper, A. N. (2011). Predicting and mitigating hydroacoustic impacts on fish from pile installations. Washington, D.C.: National Cooperative Highway Research Program, Transportation Research Board, National Academy of Sciences. 100 pages.

Halvorsen, M. B., Wysocki, L. E., & Popper, A. N. (2006). Effects of high-intensity sonar on fish. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 119*(5), 3283.

Hamann, M., Kamrowski, R. L., & Bodine, T. (2013). *Assessment of the conservation status of the loggerhead turtle in the Indian Ocean and South-East Asia.* Bangkok, Thailand: IOSEA Marine Turtle MoU Secretariat. 64 pages.

Hamann, M., Limpus, C. J., & Owens, D. W. (2003). Reproductive cycles of males and females. Pages 135-161 in Lutz, P. L., Musick, J. A., & Wyneken, J., (Eds). *The biology of sea turtles*, Volume II. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.

Hamilton, P. K., Stone, G. S., & Martin, S. M. (1997). Note on a deep humpback whale *Megaptera novaeangliae* dive near Bermuda. *Bulletin of Marine Science, 61*(2). 491-494.

Han, J. B. (2011). *Effect of land reclamation on the spotted seals and the Seals' Conversation Zone of Dalian Industrial Park in Jinzhou Bay, Bohai Sea, China*. Marine environmental impact report. Dalian City, China: Liaoning Ocean and Fisheries Science Research Institute. 41 pages.

Han, J.-B., Sun, F.-Y., Gao, X.-G., He, C.-B., Wang, P. L., Ma, Z.-Q., & Wang, Z.-H. (2010). Low microsatellite variation in spotted seal (*Phoca largha*) shows a decrease in population size in the Liaodong Gulf colony. *Annales Zoologici Fennici, 47*, 15-27.

Han, J. B., Wang, W. & Ma, Z. Q. (2005). Spotted seals in the estuary of Shuangtaizi River of Liaodong Bay. *Marine Environmental Science, 1*, 51–53 (Abstract translated from Chinese).

Hansen, K. A., Maxwell, A., Siebert, U., Larsen, O. N., & Wahlberg, M. (2017). Great cormorants (*Phalacrocorax carbo*) can detect auditory cues while diving. *The Science of Nature, 104*(5), 45. doi: 10.1007/s00114-017-1467-3.

Hanson, M. B., Baird, R. W., & DeLong, R. L. (1998). *Short-term movements and dive behavior of tagged Dall's porpoise in Haro Strait, Washington*. Pages 59-60 in Abstracts, World Marine Mammal Science Conference, Monaco, 22-24 January 1998.

Hartline, P. H. (1971). Physiological basis for detection of sound and vibration in snakes. *Journal of Experimental Biology, 54*, 349-371.

Hartline, P.H., & Campbell, H.W. (l969). Auditory and vibratory responses in the mid-brains of snakes. *Science, 161*, 1221-1223.

Hastings, M. C., & Popper, A. N. (2005). Effects of sound on fish. Prepared for California Department of Transportation; Contract number 43A0139. Sacramento, CA: Jones & Stokes Consulting. 82 pages.

Hatakeyama, Y., & Soeda, H. (1990). Studies on echolocation of porpoises taken in salmon gillnet fisheries. Pages 269–28 in J.A. Thomas and R.A. Kastelein, eds. *Sensory abilities of cetaceans: Laboratory and field evidence.* New York, NY: Plenum Press.

Hatakeyama, Y., K. Ishii, T. Akamatsu, H. Soeda, T. Shimamura, & T. Kojima. (1994). A review of studies on attempts to reduce the entanglement of the Dall's porpoise, *Phocoenoides dalli*, in the Japanese salmon gillnet fishery. *Report of the International Whaling Commission, 15*, 549-563.

Hatase, H., & Sakamoto, W. (2004). Forage-diving behaviour of adult Japanese female loggerhead turtles (*Caretta caretta*) inferred from Argos location data. *Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom, 84*, 855-856.

Hatase, H., Kinoshita, M., Bando, T., Kamezaki, N., Sato, K., Matsuzawa, Y., . . . Sakamoto, W. (2002). Population structure of loggerhead turtles, *Caretta caretta*, nesting in Japan: Bottlenecks on the Pacific population. *Marine Biology, 141*, 299-305.

Hawkes, L. A., Tomás, J., Revuelta, O., León, Y. M., Blumenthal, J. M., Broderick, A. C., Fish, M., Raga, J. A., Witt, M. J., & Godley, B. J. (2012). Migratory patterns in hawksbill turtles described by satellite tracking. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 461,* 223-232. doi:10.3354/meps09778.

Hawkins, A.D., Pembroke, A.E., & Popper, A.N. (2015). Information gaps in understanding the effects of noise on fishes and invertebrates. *Reviews in Fish Biology and Fisheries, 25*(1), 39-64. doi: 10.1007/s11160-014-9369-3.

Hawkins, E. R. (2010). Geographic variations in the whistles of bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops aduncus*) along the east and west coasts of Australia. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 128(*2), 924. doi:10.1121/1.3459837.

Hays, G. C., Hochscheid, S., Broderick, A. C., Godley, B. J., & Metcalfe, J. D. (2000). Diving behaviour of green turtles: Dive depth, dive duration and activity levels. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 208*, 297-298.

Hays, G. C., Houghton, J. D. R., & Myers, A. E. (2004). Pan-Atlantic leatherback turtle movements. *Nature, 429*, 522.

Hearn, A. R., Acuña, D., Ketchum, J. T., Peñaherrera, C., Green, J., Marshall, A., Guerrero, M., & Shillinger, G. (2014). Elasmobranchs of the Galapagos marine reserve. Pages 23-59 in *The Galapagos marine reserve*. Springer International Publishing. doi 10.1007/978-3-319-02769-2_2.

Heatwole, H. (1997). Marine snakes: Are they a sustainable resource? *Wildlife Society Bulletin*, *25*, 766-772.

Heatwole, H. (1999). *Sea snakes,* 2nd Ed. Malabar, FL: Krieger Publishing Company.

Heatwole, H., & Seymour, R. (1975). Diving physiology. Chapter 15 in Dunstan, W.A. (Ed.). *The biology of sea snakes*. Baltimore, MD: University Park Press.

Heberholz, J., & Schmitz, B. (2001). Signaling via water currents in behavioral interactions of snapping shrimp (*Alpheus heterochaelis*). *Biological Bulletin, 201*, 6–16.

Heimlich-Boarn, J.R., P.G.H. Evans, J.B. Reid, & S. Northridge. (1998). *Cetaceans in northwest European waters: using diverse sightings to study ecological distribution and related abundance.* Abstract in Proceedings of The World Marine Mammal Science Conference, Monaco, 22-24 January 1998.

Herberholz, J., & Schmitz, B. (2001). Signaling via water currents in behavioral interactions of snapping shrimp (*Alpheus heterochaelis*). *The Biological Bulletin, 201*(1), 6-16.

Hester, K. C., Peltzer, E. T., Kirkwood, W. J., & Brewer, P. G. (2008). Unanticipated consequences of ocean acidification: A noisier ocean at lower pH. *Geophysical Research Letters, 35*(19), L19601. doi:10.1029/2008gl034913.

Heupel, M. R., & McCauley, R. B. (2007). *Sharks and rays (Chondrichthyans) in the north-west marine region.* Report to the Department of the Environment and Water Resources, National Ocean Office Branch, Hobart, Tasmania.

Heyning, J. E. (1989). Cuvier's beaked whale—*Ziphius cavirostris* (G. Cuvier, 1823). Pages 289-308 in S. H. Ridgway & R. Harrison (Eds.). *Handbook of marine mammals. Volume 4: River dolphins and the larger toothed whales*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Heyning, J. E., & Mead, J. G. (2009). Cuvier's beaked whale *Ziphius cavirostris*. Pages 294-296 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*, 2nd ed. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Heyning, J.E., & Perrin, W.F. (1994). Evidence for two species of common dolphins (genus *Delphinus*) from the eastern North Pacific. *Contributions in Science, 442*, 1-35.

Higgs, D. M., & Radford, C. A. (2013). The contribution of the lateral line to 'hearing' in fish. *Journal of Experimental Biology, 216*(Pt 8), 1484-1490.

Hildebrand, J. A. (2009). Anthropogenic and natural sources of ambient noise in the ocean. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 395*, 5-20. doi:10.3354/meps08353.

Hill, M. C., Bradford, A. L., Andrews, K. R., Baird, R. W., Deakos, M. H., Johnston, S. D., . . . Yin, S. (2011). Abundance and movements of spinner dolphins off the main Hawaiian Islands: Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center Working Paper WP-11-013.

Hindle, A. G., Rosen, D. A. S., & Trites, A. W. (2010). Swimming depth and ocean currents affect transit costs in Steller sea lions *Eumetopias jubatus*. *Aquatic Biology, 10*(2), 139-148. doi: 10.3354/ab00279.

Hirth, H. F. (1997). *Synopsis of the biological data on the green turtle Chelonia mydas (Linnaeus 1758).* Biological Report 97(1). Washington, D.C.: U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 120 pages.

Hobbs, R. C., & Waite, J. M. (2010). Abundance of harbor porpoise (*Phocoena phocoena*) in three Alaskan regions, corrected for observer errors due to perception bias and species misidentification, and corrected for animals submerged from view. *Fishery Bulletin, 108*, 251–267.

Hochscheid, S. (2014). Why we mind sea turtles' underwater business: A review on the study of diving behavior. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology, 450*, 118–136. doi:10.1016/j.jembe.2013.10.016.

Hochscheid, S., Bentivegna, F., Hamza, A., & Hays, G. C. (2010). When surfacers do not dive: Multiple significance of extended surface times in marine turtles. *The Journal of Experimental Biology, 213*, 1328-1337. doi:10.1242/jeb.037184.

Hochscheid, S., Godley, B. J., Broderick, A. C., & Wilson, R. P. (1999). Reptilian diving: Highly variable dive patterns in the green turtle *Chelonia mydas*. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 185*, 101-112.

Hooker, S. K., & Baird, R. W. (1999). Deep-diving behaviour of the northern bottlenose whale, *Hyperoodon ampullatus* (Cetacea: Ziphiidae). *Proceedings of the Royal Society of Biological Sciences: Series B, 266*(1420), 671-676.

Hooker, S. K., & Whitehead, H. (1998). *Echolocation of northern bottlenose whales—an analysis of click characteristics and their implications for foraging.* Paper presented at the World Marine Mammal Science Conference, Monaco.

Horimoto, T., Mitani, Y., Kobayashi, M., Hattori, K., & Sakurai, Y. (2017). Seasonal and spatial occurrence of northern fur seals *Callorhinus ursinus* around northern Japan. *Mammal Study, 42*(1), 51-56. doi:10.3106/041.042.0106.

Horimoto, T., Mitani, Y., & Sakurai, Y. (2016). Spatial association between northern fur seal (*Callorhinus ursinus*) and potential prey distribution during the wintering period in the northern Sea of Japan. *Fisheries Oceanography, 25*(1), 44-53. doi:10.1111/fog.12133.

Horton, T. W., Holdaway, R. N., Zerbini, A. N., Hauser, N., Garrigue, C., Andriolo, A., & Clapham, P. J. (2011). Straight as an arrow: Humpback whales swim constant course tracks during long-distance migration. *Biology Letters, 7*(5), 674-679. doi:10.1098/rsbl.2011.0279.

Horwood, J. (2018). Sei whale (*Balaenoptera borealis*). Pages 845-847 in B. Würsig, J. G. M. Thewissen, & Kovacs, K., (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*, 3rd ed. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Houghton, J. D. R., Broderick, A. C., Godley, B. J., Metcalfe, J. D., & Hays, G. C. (2002). Diving behaviour during the internesting interval for loggerhead turtles *Caretta caretta* nesting in Cyprus. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 227*, 63-70.

Houser, D. S., Gomez-Rubio, A., & Finneran, J. J. (2008). Evoked potential audiometry of 13 Pacific bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops truncatus gilli*). *Marine Mammal Science, 24*(1), 28-41. doi:10.1111/j.1748-7692.2007.00148.x.

Houser, D. S., Helweg, D. A., & Moore, P. W. (1999). Classification of dolphin echolocation clicks by energy and frequency distributions. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 106*(3), 1579-1585.

Houser, D.S., Helweg, D. A., & Moore, P.W.B. (2001). A bandpass filter-bank model of auditory sensitivity in the humpback whale. *Aquatic Mammals, 27*(2), 82-91.

Houston, J. (1991). Status of Cuvier's beaked whale, *Ziphius cavirostris*, in Canada. *Canadian Field Naturalist, 105*(2), 215-218.

Howell, E. A., Dutton, P. H., Polovina, J. J., Bailey, H., Parker, D. M., & Balazs, G. H. (2010). Oceanographic influences on the dive behavior of juvenile loggerhead turtles (*Caretta caretta*) in the North Pacific Ocean. *Marine Biology, 157*, 1011–1026. doi: 10.1007/s00227-009-1381-0.

Howey-Jordan, L. A., Brooks, E. J., Abercrombie, D. L., Jordan, L. K. B., Brooks, A., Williams, S., Gospodarczyk, E., & Chapman, D. D. (2013). Complex movements, philopatry and expanded depth range of a severely threatened pelagic shark, the oceanic whitetip (*Carcharhinus longimanus*) in the western North Atlantic. *PLoS ONE, 8*, 1-12.

Hu, M., Yan, Han, H. Y., Chung, W-S., Shiao, J-C., & Hwang, P-P. (2009). Acoustically evoked potentials in two cephalopods inferred using the auditory brainstem response (ABR) approach. *Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology, Part A: Molecular Integrative Physiology, 153,* 278-283.

Hui, C. A. (1987). Power and speed of swimming dolphins. *Journal of Mammalogy, 68*(1), 126-132.

Ilyina, T., Zeebe, R. E., & Brewer, P. G. (2009). Future ocean increasingly transparent to low-frequency sound owing to carbon dioxide emissions. *Nature Geoscience, 3*(1), 18-22. doi: 10.1038/ngeo719.

Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC). (2013). *Climate change 2013: The physical science basis.* Contribution of Working Group I to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change [Stocker, T. F., Qin, D., Plattner, G.-K., Tignor, M., Allen, S. K., Boschung, J., Nauels, A., Xia, Y., Bex, V., & Midgley, P. M., (Eds.)]. Cambridge, United Kingdom: Cambridge University Press. 1535 pages.

International Union for the Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources (IUCN). (2017). Global shift in marine protected area analysis and reporting. Retrieved from <https://www.iucn.org/news/protected-areas/201709/global-shift-marine-protected-area-analysis-and-reporting>.

International Whaling Commission (IWC). (1980). Report of the sub-committee on Bryde's whales. *Report of the International Whaling Commission,* 30, 64-73.

IWC. (1981). Report of the subcommittee on other baleen whales. *Report of the International Whaling Commission, 31*, 122-132.

IWC. (1996). Report of the subcommittee on North Pacific Bryde's whales. *Report of the International Whaling Commission 46*, 147-159.

IWC. (2008). International Whaling Commission: Report of the scientific committee. *Report to the International Whaling Commission 60/Report 1.* Cambridge, U.K.: IWC.

IWC. (2009). Population estimates. Retrieved from IWC website <http.www.iwcoffice.org/conservation/estimate.htm>.

IWC. (2013). Aboriginal whaling catch and catch limits. Retrieved from <http://iwc.int/table_aboriginal>.

IWC. (2016). *Whale population estimates*. Retrieved from <https://iwc.int/estimate>.

IWC. (2016a). *Whalewatching: Providing an international focus for the whalewatching sector*. Retrieved from <https://iwc.int/whalewatching>.

Ishii, M., Murase, H., Fukuda, Y., Sawada, K., Sasakura, T., Tamura, T., . . . Mitani, Y. (2017). Diving behavior of sei whales *Balaenoptera borealis* relative to the vertical distribution of their potential prey. *Mammal Study, 42*(4), 191–199. doi:10.3106/041.042.0403.

James, M. C., Eckert, S. A., & Myers, R. A. (2005). Migratory and reproductive movements of male leatherback turtles (*Dermochelys coriacea*). *Marine Biology, 147*(4), 845-853.

Janik, V. M., King, S. L., Sayigh, L. S., & Wells, R. S. (2013). Identifying signature whistles from recordings of groups of unrestrained bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops truncatus*). *Marine Mammal Science, 29*(1), 109-122. doi:10.1111/j.1748-7692.2011.00549.x.

Jaquet, N., Dawson, S., & Douglas, L. (2001). Vocal behavior of male sperm whales: Why do they click? *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 109*(5), 2254-2259.

Jefferson, T. A. (2009a). Dall's porpoise (*Phocoenoides dalli*). Pages 296-297 in W.F. Perrin, B. Würsig, and H.G.M. Thewissen, (Eds). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals, 2nd Ed.* San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Jefferson, T. A. (2009b). Rough-toothed dolphin (*Steno bredanensis*). Pages 990-992 in W.F. Perrin, B. Würsig, and H.G.M. Thewissen, (Eds). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals, 2nd Ed.* San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Jefferson, T. A., & Barros, N. B. (1997). *Peponocephala electra*. *Mammalian Species, 553*, 1-6.

Jefferson, T. A., Leatherwood, S., & Webber, M. A. (1993). *FAO species identification guide: Marine mammals of the world*. Rome, Italy: Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations.

Jefferson, T. A., Webber, M. A., & Pitman, R. L. (2008). *Marine mammals of the world a comprehensive guide to their identification*. San Diego, CA: Elsevier.

Jefferson, T. A., Webber, M. A., & Pitman, R. L. (2015). *Marine mammals of the world a comprehensive guide to their identification*, 2nd Ed. San Diego, CA: Elsevier.

Jenner, C., Jenner, M., Burton, C., Sturrock, V., Salgado Kent, C., Morrice, M., Attard, C., Moller, L. & Double, M.C. (2008). Mark recapture analysis of pygmy blue whales from the Perth Canyon, Western Australia 2000-2005. *Paper submitted for consideration by the International Whaling Commission Scientific Committee SC/60/SH16*.

Jérémie, S., Gannier, A., Bourreau, S., & Nicolas, J. C. (2006). *Acoustic monitoring of cetaceans in territorial waters off La Martinique (FWI), Lesser Antilles: global abundance and first description of Kogia simus vocalisations (November December 2004).* Paper presented at the Abstracts, Twentieth Annual Conference of the European Cetacean Society. 2-7 April 2006, Gdynia, Poland.

Jochens, A., Biggs, D., Benoit-Bird, K., Engelhaupt, D., Gordon, J., Hu, C., Jaquet, N., Johnson, M., Leben, R., Mate, B., Miller, P., Ortega-Ortiz, J., Thode, A., Tyack, P., & Würsig, B. (2008). *Sperm whale seismic study in the Gulf of Mexico, Synthesis Report.* 341 pages.

Johansen, S., Larsen, O. N., Christensen-Dalsgaard, J., Siedelin, L., Huulvej, T., Jensen, K., Lunneryd, S., Bostrom, M., & Wahlberg, M. (2016). In-air and underwater hearing in the great cormorant. Pages 505-512 in A.N. Popper, & A. Hawkins, (Eds.). *The effects of noise on aquaticl Life II.* Advances in experimental medicine and biology 875. New York, NY: Springer Science + Business Media. doi:I 10.1007/978-1-4939-2981-8_61.

Johnson, C. S. (1967). Sound detection thresholds in marine mammals. Pages 247-260 in W. N. Tavolga (Ed.). *Marine bio-acoustics*, Vol. 2. New York, NY: Pergamon Press.

Johnson, M., Madsen, P. T., Zimmer, W. M. X., Aguilar de Soto, N., & Tyack, P. L. (2004). Beaked whales echolocate on prey. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London Series B, 271*, S383-S386.

Johnson, M., Madsen, P. T., Zimmer, W. M. X., Aguilar de Soto, N., & Tyack, P. L. (2006). Foraging Blainville's beaked whales (*Mesoplodon densirostris*) produce distinct click types matched to different phases of echolocation. *The Journal of Experimental Biology, 209*(24), 5038-5050.

Jones, G. J., & L. S. Sayigh. (2002). Geographic variation in rates of vocal production of free-ranging bottlenose dolphins. *Marine Mammal Science, 18*(2), 374-393.

Jones, J. M., Thayre, B. J., Roth, E. H., Mahoney, M., Sia, I., Merculief, K., Jackson, C., Zeller, C., Clare, M., Bacon, A. et al. (2014). Ringed, bearded, and ribbon seal vocalizations north of Barrow, Alaska: Seasonal presence and relationship with sea ice. *Arctic, 67,* 203-222.

Jones, M. L., & Swartz, S. L. (2009). Gray whale (*Eschrichtius robustus*). Pages 503-511 in W.F. Perrin, B.G. Wursig, & J.G.M. Thewissen, (Eds). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals, 2nd ed*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Jorgensen, S. J., Klimley, A. P., & Muhlia-Melo, A. F. (2009). Scalloped hammerhead shark *Sphyrna lewini*, utilizes deep-water, hypoxic in the Gulf of California. *Journal of Fish Biology, 74,* 1682-1687.

Joseph, J. E., & Chiu, C. S. (2010). A computational assessment of the sensitivity of ambient noise level to ocean acidification. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 128*(3), EL144-149. doi:10.1121/1.3425738.

Joyce, G., Øien, N., Calmabokidis, J., & Cubbage, J. C. (1989). Surfacing rates of minke whales in Norwegian waters. *Reports of the International Whaling Commission, 39*, 431-434.

Joyce, T. W., Durban, J. W., Claridge, D. E., Dunn, C. A., Fearnbach, H., Parsons, K. M., . . . Ballance, L. T. (2017). Physiological, morphological, and ecological tradeoffs influence vertical habitat use of deep-diving toothed-whales in the Bahamas. *PLoS ONE, 12*(10), e0185113. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0185113.

Kamezaki, N., & Matsui, M. (1997). A review of biological studies on sea turtles in Japan. *Japanese Journal of Herpetology, 17*(1), 16-32.

Kamezaki, N., Matsuzawa, Y., Abe, O., Asakawa, H., Fujii, T., Goto, K., Hagino, S., Hayami, M., Ishii, T. I. M., Kamata, T., Kato, H., Kodama, J., Kondo, Y., Miyawaki, I., Mizobuchi, K., Nakamura, Y., Nakashima, Y., Naruse, H., Omuta, K., Samejima, M., Suganuma, H., Takeshita, H., Tanaka, T., Toji, T., Uematsu, M., Yamamoto, A., Yamato, T., & Wakabayashi, I. (2003). Loggerhead turtles nesting in Japan. Pages 210-217 in A. B. Bolten & B. E. Witherington (Eds.). *Loggerhead sea turtles*. Washington, D.C.: Smithsonian Institution Press.

Kamminga, C., & Van Velden, J. G. (1987). Investigations on cetacean sonar VIII: Sonar signals of *Pseudorca crassidens* in comparison with *Tursiops truncatus*. *Aquatic Mammals, 13*(2), 43-50.

Kanaji, Y., Miyashita, T., Minamikawa, S., & Yoshida, H. (2018). Abundance estimates of six species of Delphinidae cetaceans off the Pacific coast of Japan between 1985 and 2015. *Marine Mammal Science*. doi: 10.1111/mms.12502.

Kane, A. S., Song, J., Halvorsen, M. B., Miller, D. L., Salierno, J. D., Wysocki, L. E., . . . Popper, A. N. (2010). Exposure of fish to high-intensity sonar does not induce acute pathology. *Journal of Fish Biology, 76*(7), 1825-1840. doi:10.1111/j.1095-8649.2010.02626.x.

Kaplan, M.B., & Mooney, T.A. (2016). Coral reef soundscapes may not be detectable far from the reef. *Scientific Reports, 6*, 31862. doi: 10.1038/srep31862.

Karczmarski, L., Würsig, B., Gailey, G., Larson, K. W., & Vanderlip, C. (2005). Spinner dolphins in a remote Hawaiian atoll: social grouping and population structure. *Behavioral Ecology, 16*(4), 675-685. doi: 10.1093/beheco/ari028

Karl, T. R., Melillo, J. M., & Peterson, T. C., (Eds). (2009). *Global climate change impacts in the United States*. Cambridge, United Kingdom: Cambridge University Press.

Karlsen, H. E. (1992a). Infrasound sensitivity in the plaice (*Pleuronectes platessa*). *Journal Of Experimental Biology, 171*(1), 173-187.

Karlsen, H. E. (1992b). The inner ear is responsible for detection of infrasound in the perch (*Perca fluviatilis*). *Journal of Experimental Biology, 171*(1), 163-172.

Kasamatsu, F., & Joyce, G. G. (1995). Current status of odontocetes in the Antarctic. *Antarctic Science, 7*(4), 365-379.

Kaschner, K., Watson, R., Trites, A. W., & Pauly, D. (2006). Mapping world-wide distributions of marine mammal species using a relative environmental suitability (RES) model. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 316*, 285-310.

Kastak, D., & Schusterman, R. J. (1998). Low-frequency amphibious hearing in pinnipeds: Methods, measurements, noise, and ecology. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 103*(4), 2216-2228.

Kastelein, R. A., & Gerrits, N. M. (1991). Swimming, diving, and respiration patterns of a Northern bottlenose whale (*Hyperoodon ampullatus*, Forster, 1770). *Aquatic Mammals, 17*(1), 20-30.

Kastelein, R.A., Bunskoek, P., Hagedoorn, M., Au, W.W.L, & de Haan, D. (2002). Audiogram of a harbor porpoise (*Phocoena phocoena*) measured with narrow-band frequency-modulated signals. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 112*(1), 334-344.

Kastelein, R.A., Hagedoorn, M., Au, W.W.L., & de Haan, D. (2003). Audiogram of a striped dolphin (*Stenella coeruleoalba*). *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 113*(2), 1130-1137.

Kastelein, R. A., Hoek, L., & de Jong, C. A. F. (2011). Hearing thresholds of a harbor porpoise (*Phocoena phocoena*) for sweeps (1–2 kHz and 6–7 kHz bands) mimicking naval sonar signals. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 129*(5), 3393. doi:10.1121/1.3569739.

Kastelein, R. A., Schop, J., Hoek, L., & Covi, J. (2015). Hearing thresholds of a harbor porpoise (*Phocoena phocoena*) for narrow-band sweeps. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 138*(4), 2508. doi:10.1121/1.4932024.

Kastelein, R. A., van Schie, R., Verboom, W. C., & de Haan, D. (2005). Underwater hearing sensitivity of a male and a female Steller sea lion (*Eumetopias jubatus*). *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 118*(3), 1820-1829.

Kastelein, R. A., Wensveen, P. J., Hoek, L., Verboom, W. C., & Terhune, J. M. (2009). Underwater detection of tonal signals between 0.125 and 100 kHz by harbor seals (*Phoca vitulina*). *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 125*(2), 1222-1229.

Kasuya, T. (1971). Consideration of distribution and migration of toothed whales off the Pacific coast of Japan based upon aerial sighting record. *Scientific Report of the Whales Research Institute 23,* 37-60.

Kasuya, T. (1986). Distribution and behavior of Baird's beaked whales off the Pacific coast of Japan. *Scientific Report of the Whales Research Institute, 37*, 61-83.

Kasuya, T. (1998). *Evidence of statistical manipulations in Japanese coastal sperm whale fishery*. Paper SC/50/CAWS10 presented to the International Whaling Commission, June 1998 (unpublished). As cited in Muto et al. 2018.

Kasuya, T. (2009). Giant beaked whales *Berardius bairdii* and *B. arnuxii*. Pages 498-500 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, and J. G. M. Thewissen (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*, 2nd Ed. New York, NY: Academic Press.

Kasuya, T., & Perrin, W. F. (2017). *Small cetaceans of Japan: Exploitation and biology*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, Taylor & Francis Group.

Kato, H., & Kasuya, T. (2002). Some analyses on the modern whaling catch history of the western North Pacific stock of gray whales (*Eschrichtius robustus*), with special reference to the Ulsan whaling ground. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 4*(3), 277-282.

Kato, H., & Miyashita, T. (1998). Current status of North Pacific sperm whales and its preliminary abundance estimates. *Report SC/50/CAWS/52 submitted to the International Whaling Commission.*

Kato, H., & Perrin, W.F. (2018). Bryde's whale—*Balaenoptera edeni.* Pages 143-145 in Würsig, B., Thewissen, J.G.M., & Kovacs, K.M., (Eds). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*, 3rd Ed. Cambridge, MA: Academic Press.

Kato, H., Nakamura, G., Yoshida, H., Kishiro, T., Okazoe, N., Ito, K., Bando, T., Mogoe, T., & Miyashita, T. (2016). *Status report of conservation and researches on the western North Pacific gray whales in Japan, May 2015-April 2016.* Paper SC/66b/BRG/11 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee. Retrieved from <https://archive.iwc.int/pages/download.php>.

Kelleher, G. (1999). *Guidelines for marine protected areas*. Gland, Switzerland and Cambridge, United Kingdom: IUCN World Commission on Protected Areas.

Kennedy, A. S., Zerbini, A. N., Rone, B. K., & Clapham, P. J. (2014). Individual variation in movements of satellite-tracked humpback whales *Megaptera novaeangliae* in the eastern Aleutian Islands and Bering Sea. *Endangered Species Research, 23*, 187-195.

Kerosky, S. M., Širović, A., Roche, L. K., Baumann-Pickering, S., Wiggins, S. M., & Hildebrand, J. A. (2012). Bryde's whale seasonal range expansion and increasing presence in the Southern California Bight from 2000 to 2010. *Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers, 65*, 125-132. doi:10.1016/j.dsr.2012.03.013.

Kershaw, F., Leslie, M. S., Collins, T., Mansur, R. M., Smith, B. D., Minton, G., . . . Rosenbaum, H. C. (2013). Population differentiation of 2 forms of Bryde's whales in the Indian and Pacific Oceans. *Journal of Heredity, 104*(6), 755-764. doi:10.1093/jhered/est057.

Ketten, D. (1998). *Marine mammal auditory systems: A summary of audiometric and anatomical data and its implications for underwater acoustic impacts.* NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-256. La Jolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Ketten, D., & Bartol, S. M. (2005/2006). *Functional measures of sea turtle hearing.* ONR Final Project Report, ONR Award N00014-02-1-0510. Boston, MA.

Ketten, D. R. (1994). Functional analyses of whale ears: Adaptations for underwater hearing. *IEEE*, 264-270.

Ketten, D. R. (2000). Cetacean ears. Pages 43-108 in W. W. L. Au, A. N. Popper, & R. R. Fay (Eds.). *Hearing by whales and dolphins*. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag.

Ketten, D. R. (2013). *Acoustic fatheads: Parallel adaptations for underwater hearing in whales, turtles, and sea birds*. Paper presented at the Zurich Center for Integrative Human Physiology (ZIHP) Special Seminar, University Hospital Zurich, Germany.

Khan, M. Z., Ghalib, S. A., & Hussain, B. (2010). Status and new nesting sites of sea turtles in Pakistan. *Chelonian Conservation and Biology, 9*(1), 119–123.

Kiraç, C. O., Savas, Y., Güçlüsoy, H., & Veryeri, N. O. (2002). Observations on diving behaviour of free ranging Mediterranean monk seals *Monachus monachus* on Turkish coasts. *Monachus Guardian 5*(1):1-8.

Kishiro, T., & Kasuya, T. (1993). Review of Japanese dolphin drive fisheries and their status. *Reports of the International Whaling Commission, 43*, 439-452.

Klatsky, L. J., Wells, R. S., & Sweeney, J. C. (2007). Offshore bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops truncatus*): Movement and dive behavior near the Bermuda Pedestal. *Journal of Mammalogy, 88*(1), 59–66.

Knudsen, F. R., Enger, P. S., & Sand, O. (1992). Awareness reactions and avoidance response to sound in juvenile Atlantic *Salmon Salmo salar* L. *Journal of Fish Biology, 40*(4), 523-534.

Kobayashi, D. R., Polovina, J. J., Parker, D. M., Kamezaki, N., Cheng, I.-J., Uchida, I., . . . Balazs, G. H. (2008). Pelagic habitat characterization of loggerhead sea turtles, *Caretta caretta*, in the North Pacific Ocean (1997–2006): Insights from satellite tag tracking and remotely sensed data. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology, 356,* 96-114.

Kolinski, S. P., Hoeke, R. K., Holzworth, S. R., Ilo, L. I., Cox, E. F., O'Conner, R. C., & Vroom, P. S. (2006). Nearshore distribution and an abundance estimate for green sea turtles, *Chelonia mydas,* at Rota Island, Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands. *Pacific Science, 60*(4), 509-522.

Kondo, S., Morimoto, Y., Sato, T., & Suganuma, H. (2017). Factors affecting the long-term population dynamics of green turtles (*Chelonia mydas*) in Ogasawara, Japan: Influence of natural and artificial production of hatchlings and Harvest pressure. *Chelonian Conservation and Biology, 16*(1), 83–92. doi:10.2744/CCB-1222.1.

Kooyman, G. L., & Kooyman, T. G. (1995). Diving behavior of Emperor penguins nurturing chicks at Coulman Island, Antarctica. *The Condor, 97*, 536-549.

Kooyman, G. L., Gentry, R. L., & Urquhart, D. L. (1976). Northern fur seal diving behavior: A new approach to its study. *Science, 193*(4251).

Kopitsky, K., Pitman, R.L., & Plotkin, P.T. (2000). Investigations on at-sea mating and reproductive status of olive ridleys, *Lepidochelys olivacea*, captured in the eastern tropical Pacific. Pages 160-162 in H.J. Kalb & T. Wibbels, (Eds). Proceedings of the nineteenth annual symposium on sea turtle biology and conservation. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SEFSC-443. LaJolla, CA: National Marine Fisheries Service, Southeast Fisheries Science Center.

Koshelev, V. N., Mikodina, E. V., Mironova, T. N., Presnyakov, A. V., & Novosadov, A. G. (2012). New data on biology and distribution of Sakhalin sturgeon *Acipenser mikadoi*. *Journal of Ichthyology, 52*(9), 619-627. doi:10.1134/S0032945212050025.

Kruse, S., Caldwell, D. K., & Caldwell, M. C. (1999). Risso's dolphin *Grampus griseus* (G. Cuvier, 1812). Pages 183–212 in Ridgway, S. H., & Harrison, R. (Eds.). *Handbook of marine mammals, vol.6, The second book of dolphins and porpoises*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Kuczaj, S. A., Eskelinen, H. C., Jones, B. L., & Borger-Turner, J. L. (2015). Gotta go, Mom's calling: Dolphin (*Tursiops truncatus*) mothers use individually distinctive acoustic signals to call their calves. *Animal Behavior and Cognition 2*(1), 88-95. doi:10.12966/abc.02.07.2015.

Kuoni. (2017). Six of the best places to dive in the Indian Ocean. Retrieved from <https://www.kuoni.co.uk/indian-ocean/dive-the-indian-ocean>.

Kuzin, A. E. (2014). New data on the abundance of the northern fur seal (*Callorhinus ursinus*), Steller sea lion (*Eumetopias jubatus*), and spotted seal (*Phoca largha*) on Tyuleniy Island, Sea of Okhotsk. *Russian Journal of Marine Biology, 40*(7), 532-538.

Kuzin, A. E. (2015). New data on the abundance of the northern fur seal (*Callorhinus ursinus*), Steller sea lion (*Eumetopias jubatus*), and spotted seal (*Phoca largha*) on Tyuleniy Island, Sea of Okhotsk. *Russian Journal of Marine Biology, 40*(7), 532-538. doi: 10.1134/s1063074014070037

Kvadsheim, P. H., DeRuiter, S., Sivle, L. D., Goldbogen, J., Roland-Hansen, R., Miller, P. J. O., Lam, F. A., Calambokidis, J., Friedlaender, A., Visser, F., Tyack, P. L., Kleivane, L., & Southall, B. (2017). Avoidance responses of minke whales to 1-4kHz naval sonar. *Marine Pollution Bulletin 121*, 60-68.

Kyhn, L. A., Tougaard, J., Beedholm, K., Jensen, F. H., Ashe, E., Williams, R., & Madsen, P. T. (2013). Clicking in a killer whale habitat: narrow-band, high-frequency biosonar clicks of harbour porpoise (*Phocoena phocoena*) and Dall's porpoise (*Phocoenoides dalli*). *PLoS ONE, 8*(5), e63763. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0063763.

Kyne, P.M., Rigby, C., & Simpfendorfer, C. (2013). *Pristis clavata. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2013*: e.T39390A18620389. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2013-1.RLTS.T39390A18620389.en>.

Lacsamana, J. K. M, Ventolero, M. F. H., Blatchley, D., & Santos, M.D. (2015). First record of a rare beaked whale *Mesoplodon hotaula* in the Philippines. *Marine Biodiversity Records, 8,* e77. doi:10.1017/S1755267215000457.

Ladich, F., & Fay, R.R. (2013). Auditory evoked potential audiometry in fish. *Reviews in Fish Biology and Fisheries, 23,* 317-364. doi: 10.1007/s11160-012-9297-z.

Ladich, F., & Popper, A. N. (2004). Parallel evolution in fish hearing organs. Pages 95-227 in Manley, E. G., Popper, A. N., & Fay, R. R., (Eds.). *Evolution of the vertebrate auditory system*. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag.

Ladich, F., & Schulz-Mirbach, T. (2016). Diversity in fish auditory systems: One of the riddles of sensory biology. *Frontiers in Ecology and Evolution, 4*, 28. doi:10.3389/fevo.2016.00028.

Lammers, M. O., L. Au, W. W., & Herzing, D. L. (2003). The broadband social acoustic signaling behavior of spinner and spotted dolphins. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 114*(3), 1629-1639.

Lang, T. G. (1966). Hydrodynamic analysis of cetacean performance. In K. S. Norris, (Ed.). *Whales, dolphins, and porpoises.* Berkeley, CA: University of California Press.

Latha, G., Senthilvadivu, S., Venkatesan, R., & Rajendran, V. (2005). Sound of shallow and deep water lobsters: Measurements, analysis, and characterization (L). *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 117*(5), 2720. doi:10.1121/1.1893525.

Lavender, A., Bartol, S., & Bartol, I. (2012). Hearing capabilities of loggerhead sea turtles (*Caretta caretta*) throughout ontogeny. Pages 89-92 in Popper, A., & Hawkins, A., (Eds). *The effects of noise on aquatic life. (Advances in experimental medicine and biolog*y, Volume 730). New York, NY: Springer.

Lavender, A. L., Bartol, S. M., & BartoI, I. K. (2011). A two-method approach for investigating the hearing capabilities of loggerhead sea turtles (*Caretta caretta*). Proceedings of 31st Annual Symposium on Sea Turtle Biology and Conservation, San Diego, CA. Retrieved from <http://iconferences.seaturtle.org/preview.shtml?event_id=18&abstract_id=4003>.

Lazell, J. D. (1980). New England waters: Critical habitat for marine turtles. *Copeia, 1980*, 290-295.

Leatherwood, J.S., & Dalheim, M. E. (1978). *Worldwide distribution of pilot whales and killer whales.* NOSC Technical Note 443. Naval Ocean Systems Center (NOSC), San Diego, CA.

Leatherwood, S., & Reeves, R. R. (1983). *The Sierra Club handbook of whales and dolphins*. San Francisco, CA: Sierra Club Books.

Leatherwood, S., & Walker, W. A. (1979). The northern right whale dolphin (*Lissodelphis borealis*) in the eastern North Pacific. H.E. Winn and B.L. Olla, (Eds.). *Behavior of marine animals, Volume 3.* New York, NY: Plenum Press.

Leatherwood, S., Jefferson, T. A., Norris, J. C., Stevens, W. E., Hansen, L. J., & Mullin, K. D. (1993). Occurrence and sounds of Fraser's dolphins (*Lagenodelphis hosei*) in the Gulf of Mexico. *Texas Journal of Science, 45*(4), 349-353.

Leatherwood, S., Perrin, W. F., Kirby, V. L., Hubbs, C. L., & Dahlheim, M. (1980). Distribution and movements of Risso's dolphin *Grampus griseus* in the eastern North Pacific. *Fishery Bulletin, 77*(4), 951-964.

Leatherwood, S., Reeves, R. R., Perrin, W. F., & Evans, W. E. (1988). *Whales, dolphins and porpoises of the eastern North Pacific and adjacent Arctic waters*. New York, NY: Dover Publication.

Leatherwood, S., Thomas, J. A., & Awbrey, F. T. (1981). Minke whales off northwestern Ross Island. *Antarctic Journal, 16*, 154-156.

LeDuc, R. G. (2009). Delphinids, overview. In W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen, (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*, 2nd ed. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

LeDuc, R. G., Taylor, B. L., Martien , K. K., Robertson, K. M., Pitman, R. L., Salinas, J. C., . . . Brownell, R. L. (2012). Genetic analysis of right whales in the eastern North Pacific confirms severe extirpation risk. *Endangered Species Research, 18*(2), 163-167. doi: 10.3354/esr00440.

LeDuc, R. G., Weller, D. W., Hyde, J., Burdin, A. M., Rosel, P. E., Brownell, R. L., Jr., . . . Dizon, A. E. (2002). Genetic differences between western and eastern gray whales (*Eschrichtius robustus*). *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 4*(1), 1-5.

Lenhardt, M. L. (1994). Seismic and very low frequency sound induced behaviors in captive loggerhead marine turtles (*Caretta caretta*). Paper presented at the Proceedings of the Fourteenth Annual Symposium on Sea Turtle Biology and Conservation. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SEFSC-351, 238-241.

Lenhardt, M. L., Bellmund, S., Byles, R. A., Harkins, S. W., & Musick, J. A. (1983). Marine turtle reception of bone-conducted sound. *Journal of Auditory Research, 23*, 119-125.

Lenhardt, M. L., Klinger, R. C., & Musick, J. A. (1985). Marine turtle middle-ear anatomy. *Journal of Auditory Research, 25*, 66-72.

LGL (LGL Limited, Environmental Research Associates). (2008). Environmental assessment of a marine geophysical survey by the R/V *Marcus G. Langseth* in Southeast Asia, March–July 2009.

LGL. (2011). Environmental assessment of a low-energy marine geophysical survey by the R/V *Thompson* in the western tropical Pacific Ocean, November–December 2011.

Lillis, A., Eggleston, D. B., & Bohnenstiehl, D. R. (2013). Oyster larvae settle in response to habitat-associated underwater sounds. *PLoS ONE, 8*(10), e79337. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0079337.

Lima, I. M. S. d., de Andrade, L. G., de Carvalho, R. R., Lailson-Brito, Jr., J., & de Freitas Azevedo, A. (2012). Characteristics of whistles from rough-toothed dolphins (*Steno bredanensis*) in Rio de Janeiro coast, southeastern Brazil. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 131*(5), 4173-4181. doi:10.1121/1.3701878.

Limpus, C. J. (2007). *A biological review of Australian marine turtle species. 5. Flatback turtle, Natator depressus (Garman).* The State of Queensland, Environmental Protection Agency. Retrieved from <http://www.austurtle.org.au/SeaTurtleBiology/flatback_Garman.pdf>.

Limpus, C.J. (2008). A biological review of Australian marine turtles. 1. *Loggerhead turtle Caretta caretta (Linnaeus).* Queensland Environmental Protection Agency report.

Limpus, C.J. (2009). A biological review of Australian marine turtles. 3. *Hawksbill turtle Eretmochelys imbricata (Linnaeus).* Queensland Environmental Protection Agency report.

Limpus, C. J., & Limpus, D. J. (2003). Loggerhead turtles in the Equatorial and Southern Pacific Ocean. Pages 199-209 in A. B. Bolten & B. E. Witherington (Eds.). *Loggerhead sea turtles*. Washington, D.C.: Smithsonian Institution Press.

Limpus, C. J., Parmenter, C. J., Baker, V., & Fleay, A. (1983). The flatback turtle, *Chelonia depressa*, in Queensland: Post-nesting migration and feedling ground distribution. *Australian Wildlife Research, 10*(3), 557-561.

Limpus, C.J., Parmenter, C.J., & Chaloupka, M. (2013). *Monitoring of coastal sea turtles: Gap analysis 5. Flatback turtles, Natator depressus, in the Port Curtis and Port Alma region.* Report produced for the Ecosystem Research and Monitoring Program Advisory Panel as part of Gladstone Ports Corporation's Ecosystem Research and Monitoring Program. 26 pages.

Linnenschmidt, M., Teilmann, J., Akamatsu, T., Dietz, R., & Miller, L. A. (2013). Biosonar, dive, and foraging activity of satellite tracked harbor porpoises (*Phocoena phocoena*). *Marine Mammal Science, 29*(2), E77-E97. doi:10.1111/j.1748-7692.2012.00592.x.

Lipsky, J. D. (2009). Right whale dolphins (*Lissodelphis borealis* and *L. peronii*). Pages 958-962 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen, (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*, 2nd ed. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Littnan, C., Harting, A., & Baker, J. (2015). *Neomonachus schauinslandi. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2015*: e.T13654A45227978. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2015-2.RLTS.T13654A45227978.en>.

Ljungblad, D. K., Scoggins, P. D., & Gilmartin, W. G. (1982). Auditory thresholds of a captive Eastern Pacific bottlenose dolphin, *Tursiops* spp. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 72*(6), 1726-1729.

Lockyer, C. (1997). Diving behaviour of the sperm whale in relation to feeding. *Bulletin de l'Institut Royal des Sciences Naturelles de Belgique Biologie 67*, 47-52.

Lockyer, C., & Morris, R. (1987). Observations on diving behaviour and swimming speeds in a wild juvenile *Tursiops truncatus*. *Aquatic Mammals, 13.1*, 31-35.

London, J. M., Boveng, P. L., & Cameron, M. F. (2014). *Dive behavior of bearded, ribbon and spotted seals in the Bering and Chukchi seas*. Poster presented at the 5th International Biologging Science Symposium, Strasbourg, France.

López-Mendilaharsua, M., Rocha, C. F. D., Domingo, A., Wallace, B. P., & Miller, P. (2009). Prolonged deep dives by the leatherback turtle *Dermochelys coriacea*: Pushing their aerobic dive limits. *Marine Biodiversity Records, 2*, e35. doi:10.1017/S1755267208000390.

Loughlin, T. R. (2009). Steller's sea lion (*Eumetopias jubatus*). Pages 1107-1110 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*, 2nd ed. New York, NY: Academic Press.

Loughlin, T.R., & Gelatt, T.S. (2018). Stellar sea lions *Eumetopias jubatus.* Pages 931 to 934 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*, 3rd Ed. New York, NY: Academic Press.

Lovell, J.M., Findlay, M.M., Moate, R.M., & Yan, H.Y. (2005). The hearing abilities of the prawn *Palaemon serratus*. *Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology Part A: Molecular & Integrative Physiology 140*(1), 89-100.

Lovell, J.M., Moate, R.M., Christiansen, L., & Findlay, M.M. (2006). The relationship between body size and evoked potentials from the statocysts of the prawn *Palaemon serratus*. *Journal of Experimental Biology 209*, 2480-2485.

Lowry, L. (2016). *Histriophoca fasciata. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2016*: e.T41670A45230946. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2016-1.RLTS.T41670A45230946.en>.

Lowry, L. F., Frost, K. J., Davis, R., DeMaster, D. P., & Suydam, R. S. (1998). Movements and behavior of satellite-tagged spotted seals (*Phoca largha*) in the Bering and Chukchi Seas. *Polar Biology, 19*(4), 221-230.

Lowry, L. F., Frost, K. J., Davis, R., Suydam, R. S., & DeMaster, D. P. (1994). *Movements and behavior of satellite-tagged spotted seals (Phoca largha) in the Bering and Chukchi seas.* NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-AFSC-38. Seattle, WA: Alaska Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service. p. 80.

Luksenberg, J. A., Henriquez, A., & Sangster, G. (2015). Molecular and morphological evidence for the subspecific identity of Bryde's whales in the southern Caribbean. *Marine Mammal Science, 31* (4), 1568–1579. doi:10.1111/mms.12236.

Lutcavage, M. E., & Lutz, P. L. (1997). Diving physiology. In P. L. Lutz and J. A. Musick (Eds.). *The biology of sea turtles*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.

Mackie, G. O., & Singla, C. L. (2003). The capsular organ of *Chelyosoma productum* (Ascidiacea: Corellidae): A new tunicate hydrodynamic sense organ. *Brain, Behavior and Evolution, 61*, 45-58.

Madsen, P. T., & Mohl, B. (2000). Sperm whales (*Physeter catodon* L-1758) do not react to sounds from detonators. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 107*, 668-671.

Madsen, P. T., Kerr, I., & Payne, R. (2004a). Echolocation clicks of two free-ranging, oceanic delphinids with different food preferences: false killer whales *Pseudorca crassidens* and Risso's dolphins *Grampus griseus*. *The Journal of Experimental Biology, 207*(11), 1811-1823.

Madsen, P. T., Kerr, I., & Payne, R. (2004b). Source parameter estimates of echolocation clicks from wild pygmy killer whales (*Feresa attenuata*) (L). *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 116*(4), 1909-1912.

Madsen, P. T., Payne, R., Kristiansen, N. U., Wahlberg, M., Kerr, I., & Mohl, B. (2002a). Sperm whale sound production studied with ultrasound time/depth-recording tags. *Journal of Experimental Biology, 205*(13), 1899-1906.

Madsen, P. T., Wahlberg, M., & Møhl, B. (2002b). Male sperm whale (*Physeter macrocephalus*) acoustics in a high- latitude habitat: implications for echolocation and communication. *Behavioral Ecology and Sociobiology, 53*(1), 31-41.

Magnúsdóttir, E. E., Rasmussen, M. H., Lammers, M. O., & Svavarsson, J. (2014). Humpback whale songs during winter in subarctic waters. *Polar Biology, 37*(3), 427-433. doi: 10.1007/s00300-014-1448-3.

Maguire, J.-J., Sissenwine, M., Csirke, J., Grainger, R., & Garcia, S. (2006). *The state of world highly migratory, straddling and other high seas fishery resources and associated species.* FAO Fisheries Technical Paper No. 495. Rome, Italy: Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations.

Mann, D. A., Higgs, D. M., Tavolga, W. N., Souza, M. J., & Popper, A. N. (2001). Ultrasound detection by clupeiform fishes. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 109*(6), 3048-3054. doi:10.1121/1.1368406.

Mann, D. A., Lu, Z., & Popper, A. N. (1997). A clupeid fish can detect ultrasound. *Nature, 389*, 341.

Marine Conservation Institute. (2017a). Pacific Remote Islands Marine National Monument. Retrieved from <http://mpatlas.org/mpa/sites/8345/>.

Marine Conservation Institute. (2017b). SeaStates 2017 report released. Retrieved from <http://mpatlas.org/>.

Marine Conservation Institute. (2017c). Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument. Retrieved from <http://mpatlas.org/mpa/sites/8338/>.

Marine Education Society of Australasia (MESA). (2015). Sea snakes of Australia. Retrieved from <http://www.mesa.edu.au/sea_snakes/default.asp)>.

Márquez, M. R., Carrasco, M.A., & Jiménez, M.C. (2002). The marine turtles of Mexico: An update. Pages 281-285 in Kinan, I., (Ed.). *Proceedings of the western Pacific sea turtle cooperative research and management workshop, Hawaii, Feb. 5-8, 2002.* App. IV. Honolulu: Western Pacific Regional Fishery Management Council.

Marine Mammal Commission (MMC). (2018). *Western North Pacific gray whale.* Retrieved from <https://www.mmc.gov/priority-topics/species-of-concern/western-north-pacific-gray-whales/>.

Marsh, H., Penrose, H., Eros, C., & Hugues, J. (2002). *Dugong: Status reports and action plans for countries and territories.* UNEP/DEWA/RS.02-1. Early Warning and Assessment Report Series. Nairobi, Kenya: United Nations Environment Programme. 172 pages.

Marshall, A., Bennett, M. B., Kodja, G., Hinojosa-Alvarez, S., Galvan-Magana, F., Harding, M., Stevens, G. & Kashiwagi, T. (2011). *Manta birostris. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2011*: e.T198921A9108067. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2011-2.RLTS.T198921A9108067.en>.

Martenstyn, H. (2016). Sri Lanka's amazing maritime website; *Marine mammals: Whales, dolphins, porpoises and dugongs*. Retrieved from < http://www.slam.lk/mammals>.

Martien , K. K., Baird, R. W., Chivers, S. J., Oleson, E. M., & Taylor, B. L. (2011). *Population structure and mechanisms of gene flow within island—associated false killer whales (Pseudorca crassidens) around the Hawaiian Archipelago*. Report PSRG-2011-14. 25 pages.

Martin, K. J., Alessi, S. C., Gaspard, J. C., Tucker, A. D., Bauer, G. B., & Mann, D. A. (2012). Underwater hearing in the loggerhead turtle (*Caretta caretta*): A comparison of behavioral and auditory evoked potential audiograms. *The Journal of Experimental Biology,* 215(Pt 17), 3001-3009. doi:10.1242/jeb.066324.

Martin, S. W., Martin, C. R., Matsuyama, B. M., & Henderson, E. E. (2015). Minke whales (*Balaenoptera acutorostrata*) respond to navy training. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 137*(5), 2533. doi:10.1121/1.4919319.

Martin Lopez, L. M., Miller, P. J., Aguilar de Soto, N., & Johnson, M. (2015). Gait switches in deep-diving beaked whales: biomechanical strategies for long-duration dives. *The Journal of Experimental Biology, 218(Pt 9)*, 1325-1338. doi:10.1242/jeb.106013.

Masaki, Y. (1977). The separation of the stock units of sei whales in the North Pacific. *Report of the International Whaling Commission Special Issue, 1*, 71-79.

Mate, B. R., Ilyashenko, V. Y., Bradford, A. L., Vertyankin, V. V., Tsidulko, G. A., Rozhnov, V. V., & Irvine, L. M. (2015). Critically endangered western gray whales migrate to the eastern North Pacific. *Biology Letters, 11*(4), 20150071. doi:10.1098/rsbl.2015.0071.

Mate, B. R., Rossbach, K. A., Nieukirk, S. L., Wells, R. S., Irvine, A. B., Scott, M. D., & Read, A. J. (1995). Satellite-monitored movements and dive behavior of a bottlenose dolphin (*Tursiops truncatus*) in Tampa Bay, Florida. *Marine Mammal Science, 11*(4), 452-463.

Matthews, C. J. D., Luque, S. P., Petersen, S. D., Andrews, R. D., & Ferguson, S. H. (2011). Satellite tracking of a killer whale (*Orcinus orca*) in the eastern Canadian Arctic documents ice avoidance and rapid, long-distance movement into the North Atlantic. *Polar Biology, 34*(7), 1091-1096. doi:10.1007/s00300-010-0958-x.

Maxwell, A., Anderson Hansen, K., Næsbye Larsen, O., Christensen-Dalsgaard, J., Wahlberg, M., & Siebert, U. (2016). Testing auditory sensitivity in the great cormorant (*Phalacrocorax carbo sinensis*): Psychophysics vs. auditory brainstem response. *Proceedings of Meetings on Acoustics, 27*, 050001. doi: 10.1121/2.0000261.

McAlpine, D. F. (2009). Pygmy and dwarf sperm whales *Kogia breviceps* and *K. sima.* Pages 936-938 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen, (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*, 2nd ed. New York, NY: Academic Press.

McCauley, R.D., & Jenner, C. (2010). Migratory patterns and estimated population size of pygmy blue whales (*Balaenoptera musculus brevicauda*) traversing the Western Australian coast based on passive acoustics. *Paper SC/62/SH26 presented to the Scientific Committee, International Whaling Commission.*

McClain, C.R., Balk, M.A., Benfield, M.C., Branch, T.A., Chen, C.,...& Thaler, A.D. (2015), Sizing ocean giants: Patterns of intraspecific size variation in marine megafauna. *PeerJ, 3*, e715. doi: 10.7717/peerj.715.

McCosker, J. E. (1975). Feeding behaviour of Indo-Australian Hydrophiidae. Pages 217-232 in Dunson, W. A., Ed. *The biology of sea snakes*. Baltimore, MD: University Park Press.

McCowan, B., & Reiss, D. (1995). Quantitative comparison of whistle repertoires from captive adult bottlenose dolphins (Delphinidae, *Tursiops truncatus*): A re-evaluation of the signature whistle hypothesis. *Ethology, 100*(3), 194-209.

McDonald, M. A., & Fox, C. G. (1999). Passive acoustic methods applied to fin whale population density estimation. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 105*(5), 2643-2651.

McDonald, M. A., & Moore, S. E. (2002). Calls recorded from North Pacific right whales (*Eubalaena japonica*) in the eastern Bering Sea. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 4*(3), 261-266.

McDonald, M. A., Hildebrand, J. A., & Webb, S. C. (1995). Blue and fin whales observed on a seafloor array in the Northeast Pacific. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 98*(2), 712-721.

McDonald, M. A., Hildebrand, J. A., & Wiggins, S. M. (2006). Increases in deep ocean ambient noise in the Northeast Pacific west of San Nicolas Island, California. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 120*(2), 711-718.

McDonald, M. A., Hildebrand, J. A., Wiggins, S. M., & Ross, D. (2008). A 50 Year comparison of ambient ocean noise near San Clemente Island: A bathymetrically complex coastal region off Southern California. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 124*(4), 1985–1992. doi: 10.1121/1.2967889.

McDonald, M. A., Hildebrand, J. A., & Wiggins, S. M., Thiele, D., Glasgow, D., & Moore, S. E. (2005). Sei whale sounds recorded in the Antarctic. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 118*(6), 3941-3945. doi:10.1121/1.2130944.

McKenna, L.N., Paladino, F.V., Tomillo, P.S., & Robinson, N.J. (2019). Do sea turtles vocalize to synchronize hatching or nest emergence? *Copeia, 107*, 120-123.

McMahon, C. R., Bradshaw, C. J. A., & Hays, G. C. (2007). Satellite tracking reveals unusual diving characteristics for a marine reptile, the olive ridley turtle *Lepidochelys olivacea*. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 329*, 239-252.

McSweeney, D. J., Baird, R. W., Mahaffy, S. D., Webster, D. L., & Schorr, G. S. (2009). Site fidelity and association patterns of a rare species: Pygmy killer whales (*Feresa attenuata*) in the main Hawaiian Islands. *Marine Mammal Science, 25*(3), 557-572. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.2008.00267.x.

Meadows, D., & Coll, H. (2013). *Status review report of five foreign sturgeon*. Report to the National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources. October 2013. 78 pages.

Meier, S. K., Yazvenko, S. B., Blokhin, S. A., Wainwright, P., Maminov, M. K., Yakovlev, Y. M., & Newcomer, M. W. (2007). Distribution and abundance of western gray whales off northeastern Sakhalin Island, Russia, 2001'003. Environmental Monitoring and Assessment, 134(1-3), 107-136. doi: 10.1007/s10661-007-9811-2.

Mellinger, D. K., & Clark, C. W. (2003). Blue whale (*Balaenoptera musculus*) sounds from the North Atlantic. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 114*(2), 1108-1119.

Mellinger, D. K., Carson, C. D., & Clark, C. W. (2000). Characteristics of minke whale (*Balaenoptera acutorostrata*) pulse trains recorded near Puerto Rico. *Marine Mammal Science, 16*(4), 739-756.

Melvin, E. F., Dietrich, K. S., Fitzgerald, S., & Cardoso, T. (2011). Reducing seabird strikes with trawl cables in the pollock catcher-processor fleet in the eastern Bering Sea. *Polar Biology, 34*(2), 215-226.

Melvin, E. F., Parrish, J. K., & Conquest, L. L. (1999). Novel tools to reduce seabird bycatch in coastal gillnet fisheries. *Conservation Biology, 13*, 1386-1397.

Menze, S., Zitterbart, D.P., van Opzeeland, I., & Boebel, O. (2017). The influence of sea ice, wind speed and marine mammals on Southern Ocean ambient sound. *Royal Society Open Science*, 4, 160370. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1098/rsos.160370>.

Merkens, K., Mann, D., Janik, V. M., Claridge, D., Hill, M., & Oleson, E. (2018). Clicks of dwarf sperm whales (*Kogia sima*). *Marine Mammal Science*. doi:10.1111/mms.12488.

Merrick, R. L., Loughlin, T. R., Antonelis, G. A., & Hill, R. (1994). Use of satellite-linked telemetry to study Steller sea lion and northern fur seal foraging. *Polar Research, 13*, 105-114.

Miller, E. H., & Job, D. A. (1992). Airborne acoustic communication in the Hawaiian monk seal, *Monachus schauinslandi*. Pages 485-531 in J. A. Thomas, R. A. Kastelein, & A. Y. Supin, (Eds.). *Marine mammal sensory systems*. New York, NY: Plenum.

Miller, M. H., & Klimovich, C. (2016). Endangered Species Act status review report: Giant manta ray (*Manta birostris*) and reef manta ray (*Manta alfredi*). Draft report to National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources, Silver Spring, MD. December 2016. 127 pages.

Miller, M. H., Carlson, J., Cooper, P., Kobayashi, D., Nammack, M., Wison, J. (2014a). Status review report: Scalloped hammerhead shark (*Sphyrna lewini*). Final report to the National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources. 141 pages.

Miller, P .J. O., & Bain, D. E. (2000). Within-pod variation in the sound production of a pod of killer whales, *Orcinus orca*. *Animal Behaviour, 60*(5), 617-628.

Miller, P. J. O. M., Shapiro, A. D., & Deecke, V. B. (2010). The diving behaviour of mammal-eating killer whales (*Orcinus orca*): Variations with ecological not physiological factors. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 88*(11), 1103-1112. doi: 10.1139/z10-080.

Miksis-Olds, J. L., & Nichols, S. M. (2016). Is low frequency ocean sound increasing globally? *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 139*(1), 501-511. doi:10.1121/1.4938237.

Miksis-Olds, J. L., & Parks, S. E. (2011). Seasonal trends in acoustic detection of ribbon seal (*Histriophoca fasciata*) vocalizations in the Bering Sea. *Aquatic Mammals, 37*(4), 464-471. doi:10.1578/AM.37.4.2011.464.

Miksis-Olds, J. L., Bradley, D. L., & Niu, X. M. (2013). Decadal trends in Indian Ocean ambient sound. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 134*(5), 3464-3475. doi:10.1121/1.4821537.

Minamikawa, S., Iwasaki, T., & Kishiro. T. (2007). Diving behaviour of a Baird's beaked whale, *Berardius bairdii*, in the slope water region of the western North Pacific: first dive records using a data logger. *Fisheries Oceanography, 16*(6), 573-577. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2419.2007.00456.x.

Minamikawa, S., Watanabe, H., & Iwasaki, T. (2013). Diving behavior of a false killer whale, *Pseudorca crassidens*, in the Kuroshio-Oyashio transition region and the Kuroshio front region of the western North Pacific. *Marine Mammal Science, 29*(1), 177-185. doi:10.1111/j.1748-7692.2011.00532.x.

Mitchell, E. D. (1975). Review of biology and fisheries for smaller cetaceans. Report of the meeting on smaller cetaceans in Montreal, April 1-11, 1974. *Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada, 32*, 889-983.

Miyashita, T. (1986). Population estimates of dolphins using research vessels data. Pages 202-213 in T. Tamura, S. Ohsumi, & S. Arai (Eds.). *Report of the investigation in search of resolution of the dolphin-fishery conflict in the Iki Island area*. Tokyo, Japan: The Investigating Committee.

Miyashita, T. (1990). *Population estimate of Baird's beaked whales off Japan.* Paper SC/42/SM28 presented to the Scientific Committee Meeting of IWC, 1990. International Whaling Commission.

Miyashita, T. (1991). *Stocks and abundance of Dall's porpoises in the Okhotsk Sea and adjacent waters*. Paper IWC/SC/43/SM7 presented to the Scientific Committee Meeting of IWC (unpublished). 24 pages.

Miyashita, T. (1993). Abundance of dolphin stocks in the western North Pacific taken by the Japanese drive fishery. *International Whaling Commission, 43*, 417-437.

Miyashita, T., & Okamura, H. (2011). Abundance estimates of common minke whales using the Japanese dedicated sighting survey data for RMP Implementation and CLA—Sea of Japan and Sea of Okhotsk. SC/63/RMP11. 34 pages.

Miyazaki, N., & Perrin, W. F. (1994). Rough-toothed dolphin, *Steno bredanensis* (Lesson, 1828). Pages 1-21 in S.H. Ridgeway and R. Harrison, eds. *Handbook of marine mammals, Volume 5: The first book of dolphins.* San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Miyashita, T., Iwsaki, H., & Moronuki, H. (2007). Abundance of Dall's porpoise in the northwestern North Pacific. Abstract of autumn meeting of Nihon Suisan Gakkai [Japanese Society of Fisheries Science] in 2007, Tokyo, Japan; page 164.

Mizroch, S. A., Rice, D. W., Zwiefelhofer, D., Waite, J. M., & Perryman, W. L. (2009). Distribution and movements of fin whales in the North Pacific Ocean. *Mammal Review, 39*(3), 193-227.

Mizroch, S.A., Conn, P.B., & Rice, D.W. (2015). The mysterious sei whale: Its distribution, movements and population decline in the North Pacific revealed by whaling data and recoveries of Discovery-type marks. *Paper SC/66a/IA/14 presented at the 66a IWC Scientific Committee Meeting in San Diego, CA, 22 May to 3 June 2015*.

Mizuno, A. W., Wada, A., Ishinazaka, T., Hattori, K., Watanabe, Y., & Ohtaishi, N. (2002). Distribution and abundance of spotted seals *Phoca largha* and ribbon seals *Phoca fasciata* in the southern Sea of Okhotsk. *Ecological Research, 17*, 79-96.

Møhl, B. (2003). Sperm whale sonar rivals tactical sonar with source levels at 235 dB. Pages 41-42 in P. G. H. Evans & L. Miller, (Eds.). *Proceedings of the workshop on active sonar and cetaceans*.

Møhl, B., Wahlberg, M., Madsen, P. T., Heerfordt, A., & Lund, A. (2003). The monopulsed nature of sperm whale clicks. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 114,* 1143-1154.

Møhl, B., Wahlberg, M., Madsen, P. T., Miller, L. A., & Surlykke, A. (2000). Sperm whale clicks: Directionality and source level revisited. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 107(1),* 638-648.

Mohr, R. A., Whitchurch, E. A., Anderson, R. D., Forlano, P. M., Fay, R. R., Ketten, D. R., . . . Sisneros, J. A. (2017). Intra- and Intersexual swim bladder dimorphisms in the plainfin midshipman fish (*Porichthys notatus*): Implications of swim bladder proximity to the inner ear for sound pressure detection. *Journal of Morphology, 278*, 1458–1468. doi: 10.1002/jmor.20724.

Montgomery, J., Coombs, S., & Halstead, M. (1995). Biology of the mechanosensory lateral line in fishes. *Reviews in Fish Biology and Fisheries, 5*(4), 399-416.

Montie, E.W., C.A. Manire, & Mann, D.A. (2011). Live CT imaging of sound reception anatomy and hearing measurements in the pygmy killer whale, *Feresa attenuata*. *The Journal of Experimental Biology 214*, 945-955.

Mooney, T. A., Hanlon, R. T., Christensen-Dalsgaard, J., Madsen, P. T., Ketten, D. R., & Nachtigall, P. E. (2010). Sound detection by the longfin squid (*Loligo pealeii*) studied with auditory evoked potentials: sensitivity to low-frequency particle motion and not pressure. *The Journal of Experimental Biology, 213*(Pt 21), 3748-3759. doi:10.1242/jeb.048348.

Mooney, T.A., Samson, J.E., Schlunk, A.D.,·& Zacarias, S. (2016). Loudness‑dependent behavioral responses and habituation to sound by the longfin squid (*Doryteuthis pealeii*). *Journal of Comparative Physiology A, 202*, 489-501. Doi: 10.1007/s00359-016-1092-1.

Mooney, T. A., Tyack, P., Baird, R. W., & Nachtigall, P. E. (2012*). Acoustic behavior, baseline ecology and habitat use of pelagic odontocete species of concern.* Annual progress report to the Office of Naval Research, FY 2013. Award Number: N000141110612. Arlington, VA: Office of Naval Research. Retrieved from <http://www.onr.navy.mil/reports/FY13/mbmoone1.pdf>.

Mooney, T. A., Yang, W. C., Yu, H. Y., Ketten, D. R., & Jen, I. F. (2015). Hearing abilities and sound reception of broadband sounds in an adult Risso's dolphin (*Grampus griseus*). *Journal of Comparative Physiology. A, Neuroethology, Sensory, Neural, and Behavioral Physiology, 201*(8), 751-761. doi: 10.1007/s00359-015-1011-x.

Moore, P. W. B., & Schusterman, R. J. (1987). Audiometric assessment of northern fur seals *Callorhinus ursinus*. *Marine Mammal Science, 3*(1), 31-53.

Moore, S. E., & Ridgway, S. H. (1995). Whistles produced by common dolphins from the Southern California Bight. *Aquatic Mammals, 21*, 55-55.

Moore, S. E., Dahlheim, M. E., Stafford, K. M., Fox, C. G., Braham, H. W., McDonald, M. A., & Thomason, J. (1999). *Acoustic and visual detection of large whales in the eastern North Pacific Ocean.* NOAA Technical Memorandum. Seattle, WA: National Marine Fisheries Service, Alaska Fisheries Science Center.

Moreland, E., Cameron, M., & Boveng, P. (2012). Bering Okhotsk Seal Surveys (BOSS): Joint U.S.-Russian aerial surveys. *Alaska Fisheries Science Center Quarterly Report, April-May-June 2012*.

Mori, M., & Butterworth, D. S. (2006). A first step towards modelling the krill-predator dynamics of the Antarctic ecosystem. *CCAMLR Science, 13*, 217-277.

Morisaka, T., Shinohara, M., Nakahara, F., & Akamatsu, T. (2005a). Effects of ambient noise on the whistles of Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin populations. *Journal of Mammalogy, 86*(3), 541-546.

Morisaka, T., Shinohara, M., Nakahara, F., & Akamatsu, T. (2005b). Geographic variations in the whistles among three Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin *Tursiops aduncus* populations in Japan. *Fisheries Science, 7*1(3), 568-576.

Morreale, S. J., Standora, E. A., Spotila, J. R., & Paladino, F. V. (1996). Migration corridor for sea turtles. *Nature, 384*, 319-320.

Mortimer, J. A. (1982). Feeding ecology of sea turtles. Pages 103-109 in K. A. Bjorndal, (Ed.). *Biology and conservation of sea turtles*. Washington, D.C.: Smithsonian Institution Press.

Mortimer, J.A., & Donnelly, M. (2008). *Eretmochelys imbricata. The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2008*: e.T8005A12881238. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2008.RLTS.T8005A12881238.en>.

Moyle, P. B., & Cech, Jr., J. J. (2004). *Fishes: An introduction to ichthyology,* (5th Ed.). Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson Prentice Hall.

Mrosovsky, N. (1972). Spectrographs of the sounds of leatherback turtles. *Herpetologica 28,* 256-258.

Mugue, N. (2010). *Acipenser mikadoi*. The IUCN red list of threatened species. Version 2014.3. Retrieved from <www.iucnredlist.org>.

Mulsow, J., & Reichmuth, C. (2010). Psychophysical and electrophysiological aerial audiograms of a Steller sea lion (*Eumetopias jubatus*). *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 127*(4), 2692. doi:10.1121/1.3327662.

Munger, L. M., Wiggins, S. M., & Hildebrand, J. A. (2011). North Pacific right whale up-call source levels and propagation distance on the southeastern Bering Sea shelf. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 129*(6), 4047. doi:10.1121/1.3557060.

Murase, H., Hakamada, T., Matsuoka, K., Nishiwaki, S., Inagake, D., Okazaki, M., . . . Kitakado, T. (2014). Distribution of sei whales (*Balaenoptera borealis*) in the subarctic–subtropical transition area of the western North Pacific in relation to oceanic fronts. *Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography, 107*, 22-28. doi: 10.1016/j.dsr2.2014.05.002.

Murase, H., Tamura, T., Otani, S., & Nishiwaki, S. (2016). Satellite tracking of Bryde's whales *Balaenoptera edeni* in the offshore western North Pacific in summer 2006 and 2008. *Fisheries Science, 82*(1), 35-45. doi: 10.1007/s12562-015-0946-8.

Murray, A., Rice, A. N., & Clark, C. W. (2013). Extended seasonal occurrence of humpback whales in Massachusetts Bay. *Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom, 94*(06), 1117-1125. doi:10.1017/s0025315412001968.

Murray, S. O., Mercado, E., & Roitblat, H. L. (1998). Characterizing the graded structure of false killer whale (*Pseudorca crassidens*) vocalizations. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 104*(3, Part I), 1679-1688.

Musyl, M. K., Brill, R. W., Curran, D. S., Fragoso, N. M., McNaughton, L. M., Nielsen, A., Kikkawa, B. S., & Moyes, C. D. (2011). Postrelease survival, vertical and horizontal movements, and thermal habitats of five species of pelagic sharks in the central Pacific Ocean. *Fishery Bulletin,* 109, 341-368.

Muto, M. M., Helker, V. T., Angliss, R. P., Allen, B. A., Boveng, P. L., Breiwick, J. M., Cameron, M. F., Clapham, P. J., Dahle, S. P., Dahlheim, M. E., Fadely, B. S., Ferguson, M. C., Fritz, L. W., Hobbs, R. C., Ivashchenko, Y. V., Kennedy, A. S., London, J. M., Mizroch, S. A., Ream, R. R., Richmond, E. L., Shelden, K. E. W., Towell, R. G., Wade, P. R., Waite, J. M., & Zerbini, A. R. (2016). *Alaska marine mammal stock assessments, 2015.* NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFSAFSC-323. Seattle, WA: Alaska Fishery Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service. 176 pages. Retrieved from <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/sars/pdf/alaska 2015_final__corrected_.pdf>.

Muto, M. M., Helker, V. T., Angliss, R. P., Allen, B. A., Boveng, P. L., Breiwick, J. M., Cameron, M. F., Clapham, P. J., Dahle, S. P., Dahlheim, M. E., Fadely, B. S., Ferguson, M. C., Fritz, L. W., Hobbs, R. C., Ivashchenko, Y. V., Kennedy, A. S., London, J. M., Mizroch, S. A., Ream, R. R., Richmond, E. L., Shelden, K. E. W., Towell, R. G., Wade, P. R., Waite, J. M., & Zerbini, A. N. (2017). *Alaska marine mammal stock assessments, 2016.* NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-AFSC-355. Seattle, WA: Alaska Fishery Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service. 366 pages. doi:10.7289/V5/TM-AFSC-355.

Muto, M. M., Helker, V. T., Angliss, R. P., Allen, B. A., Boveng, P. L., Breiwick, J. M., Cameron, M. F., Clapham, P. J., Dahle, S. P., Dahlheim, M. E., Fadely, B. S., Ferguson, M. C., Fritz, L. W., Hobbs, R. C., Ivashchenko, Y. V., Kennedy, A. S., London, J. M., Mizroch, S. A., Ream, R. R., Richmond, E. L., Shelden, K. E. W., Towell, R. G., Wade, P. R., Waite, J. M., & Zerbini, A. N. (2018). *Alaska marine mammal stock assessments, 2017.* NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-AFSC-378. Seattle, WA: Alaska Fishery Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service. 382 pages. Retrieved from <https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/national/marine-mammal-protection/ marine-mammal-stock-assessment-reports-region >.

Muto, M. M., Helker, V. T., Angliss, R. P., Boveng, P. L., Breiwick, J. M., Cameron, M. F., Clapham, P. J., Dahle, S. P., Dahlheim, M. E., Fadely, B. S., Ferguson, M. C., Fritz, L. W., Hobbs, R. C., Ivashchenko, Y. V., Kennedy, A. S., London, J. M., Mizroch, S. A., Ream, R. R., Richmond, E. L., Shelden, K. E. W., Sweeney, K.L., Towell, R. G., Wade, P. R., Waite, J. M., & Zerbini, A. N. (2019). *Alaska marine mammal stock assessments, 2018.* NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-AFSC-393. Seattle, WA: Alaska Fishery Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service. 399 pages. Retrieved from <https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/national/marine-mammal-protection/marine-mammal-stock-assessment-reports-region>.

Myrberg, A. A. (1981). Sound communication and interception in fishes. Pages 395-425 in W. N. Tavolga, A. N. Popper, & R. R. Fay (Eds.). *Hearing and sound communications in fishes*. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag.

Nachtigall, P. E., & Supin, A. Y. (2008). A false killer whale adjusts its hearing when it echolocates. *Journal of Experimental Biology, 211*(11), 1714-1718.

Nachtigall, P. E., & Supin, A. Y. (2013). A false killer whale reduces its hearing sensitivity when a loud sound is preceded by a warning. *The Journal of Experimental Biology,* 216(Pt 16), 3062-3070. doi:10.1242/jeb.085068.

Nachtigall, P. E., & Supin, A. Y. (2015). Conditioned frequency-dependent hearing sensitivity reduction in the bottlenose dolphin (*Tursiops truncatus*). *The Journal of Experimental Biology,* 218(Pt 7), 999-1005. doi:10.1242/jeb.114066.

Nachtigall, P. E., Au, W. W. L., Pawloski, J. L., & Moore, P. W. B. (1995). Risso's dolphin (*Grampus griseus*) hearing thresholds in Kaneohe Bay, Hawaii. Pages 49-53 in R.A. Kastelein, J.A. Thomas, & P.E. Nachtigall, (Eds). *Sensory systems of aquatic mammals.* Woerden, Netherlands: De Spil Publication.

Nachtigall, P. E., Lemonds, D. W., & Roitblat, H. L. (2000). Psychoacoustic studies of dolphin and whale hearing. *Hearing by whales and dolphins*. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag.

Nachtigall, P. E., Yuen, M. M. L., Mooney, T. A., & Taylor, K. A. (2005). Hearing measurements from a stranded infant Risso's dolphin, *Grampus griseus*. *Journal of Experimental Biology, 208(*21), 4181-4188.

Naro-Maciel, E., Becker, J. H., Lima, E. H. S. M., Marcovaldi, M. Â., & Desalle, R. (2007). Testing dispersal hypotheses in foraging green sea turtles (Chelonia mydas) of Brazil. *Journal of Heredity, 98*(1), 29–39. doi:10.1093/jhered/esl050.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). (2002). Magnuson-Stevens Act provisions; Essential fish habitat (EFH), Final rule. *Federal Register 67*(12):2343-2383.

NMFS. (2009a). Atlantic highly migratory species. Retrieved from <http://www.nmfs.noaa. gov/sfa/hms/>.

NMFS. (2013). Essential fish habitat and consultation. Pacific Islands Regional Office. Retrieved from <http://www.fpir.noaa.gov/Library/HCD/EFH_and_Consultation_factsheet_FINAL_05-08-2013_lo.pdf>.

NMFS. (2016a**)**. Endangered and threatened marine species under NMFS' jurisdiction. Office of Protected Species, National Marine Fisheries Service. Retrieved from <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/esa/listed.htm#fish>.

NMFS. (2016c). Map figure of distribution of 14 identified humpback whale distinct population segments. Office of Protected Resources, National Marine Fisheries Service. Retrieved from <http://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/pr/images/20160817_humpback_dps_outreach_map.jpg>.

NMFS. (2016d). *Western Pacific leatherback turtle trans-Pacific migration and seasonal movement map*. Retrieved from <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/turtles/leatherback.html>.

NMFS. (2017b). Endangered and threatened marine species. Office of Protected Species, National Marine Fisheries Service. Retrieved from <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/esa/>.

NMFS. (2018). *Hawaiian monk seal population at a glance; Hawaiian monk seal research.* National Marine Fisheries Service, Pacific Islands Fishery Science Center. Retrieved from <https://www.pifsc.noaa.gov/hawaiian_monk_seal/population_at_a_glance.php>.

NMFS. (2018a*). Green sea turtle.* National Marine Fisheries Service, Pacific Islands Regional Office Protected Resources. Retrieved from <http://www.fpir.noaa.gov/PRD/prd_green_sea_turtle.html>.

NMFS. (2018b). *Olive ridley.* National Marine Fisheries Service, Pacific Islands Regional Office Protected Resources. Retrieved from <http://www.fpir.noaa.gov/PRD/prd_olive_ridley.html>.

NMFS. (2018c). *Leatherback turtle.* National Marine Fisheries Service, Pacific Islands Regional Office Protected Resources. Retrieved from <http://www.fpir.noaa.gov/PRD/prd_leatherback.html>.

NMFS. (2018d). North Pacific right whale—Population highlights. Retrieved from <https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/species/north-pacific-right-whale/highlights>.

NMFS. (2018e). Hawaiian monk seal population—Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. Pacific Islands Fishery Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service. Retrieved from <https://www.pifsc.noaa.gov/hawaiian_monk_seal/nwhi_population.php>.

NMFS. (2018f). Unusual mortality events for large whales, ice seals closed. Alaska Regional Office. Retrieved from <https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/feature-story/unusual-mortality-events-large-whales-ice-seals-closed>.

NMFS. (2018g). *2018 Revision to: Technical guidance for assessing the effect of anthropogenic sound on marine mammal hearing (Version 2.0): Underwater threshold for onset of permanent and temporary threshold shifts*. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-OPR-59. Silver Spring, MD: National Marine Fishery Service.

NMFS and USFWS. (2013a). *Hawksbill sea turtle (Eretmochelys imbricata) 5-year review: Summary and evaluation.* Office of Protected Resources, NMFS, Silver Spring, MD, and Southeast Region, USFWS, Jacksonville Ecological Services Office, Jacksonville, FL. Retrieved from <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/pdfs/species/hawksbillseaturtle2013_5yearreview.pdf>.

NMFS and USFWS. (2013b). *Leatherback sea turtle (Dermochelys coriacea) 5-year review: Summary and evaluation*. Office of Protected Resources, NMFS, Silver Spring, MD, and Southeast Region, USFWS, Jacksonville Ecological Services Office, Jacksonville, FL. Retrieved from <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/listing/5yearreview_leatherbackturtle.pdf>.

NMFS and USFWS. (2014). Olive ridley sea turtle (*Lepidochelys olivacea*) 5-year review: Summary and evaluation. Office of Protected Resources, NMFS, Silver Spring, MD, and Southeast Region, USFWS, Jacksonville Ecological Services Office, Jacksonville, FL. Retrieved from <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/pdfs/species/oliveridleyturtle_5yearreview2014.pdf>.

National Marine Protected Areas Center (NMPAC). (2009). National marine protected areas center: All about marine protected areas—The basics. Retrieved from <http://mpa.gov/all_about_mpa/basics.html>.

NMPAC. (2011). Definition and classification system for U.S. marine protected areas. Retrieved from <https://nmsmarineprotectedareas.blob.core.windows.net/marineprotectedareas-prod/media/archive/pdf/helpful-resources/factsheets/mpa_classification_may2011.pdf.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA). (1979b). Determination of critical habitat for the leatherback sea turtle. National Marine Fisheries Service; National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 44*(58), 17710-17712.

NOAA. (1988). Critical habitat; Hawaiian monk seal; Endangered Species Act; Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service; National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 53(*102), 18988-18998.

NOAA. (1993). Designated critical habitat; Snake River sockeye salmon, Snake River spring/summer Chinook salmon, and Snake River fall Chinook salmon; Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service; National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 58*(247), 68543-68554.

NOAA. (1993a). Designated critical habitat; Steller sea lion; Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service; National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 58*(165), 45269-45285.

NOAA. (1997). Endangered and threatened species: Listing of several evolutionary significant units (ESUs) of west coast steelhead; Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service; National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 62*(159), 43937-43954.

NOAA. (1998). Designated critical habitat; green and hawksbill sea turtles; Final rule. *Federal Register, 63*(170), 46693-46701.

NOAA. (1999). Designated critical habitat; Central California coast and southern Oregon/northern California coasts coho salmon; Final rule and correction. National Marine Fisheries Service; National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 64*(86), 24049-24062.

NOAA. (2001). Environmental sensitivity index (ESI) atlas: Hawaii. Office of Response and Restoration. <https://response.restoration.noaa.gov/esi_download#Hawaii>.

NOAA (2002). Magnuson-Stevens Act provisions; Essential fish habitat (EFH) Federal Register, 67(12), 2343-2383.

NOAA. (2005a). Endangered and threatened species; designation of critical habitat for seven evolutionarily significant units of Pacific salmon and steelhead in California; Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service; National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 70*(170), 52488-52627.

NOAA. (2005b). Endangered and threatened species; designation of critical habitat for 12 evolutionarily significant units of West Coast salmon and steelhead in Washington, Oregon, and Idaho; Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service; National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 70*(170), 52630-52858.

NOAA. (2005c). Endangered and threatened wildlife and plants: Endangered status for Southern Resident killer whales; Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 70*(222), 69903-69912.

NOAA. (2006). Endangered and threatened species; Designation of critical habitat for southern resident killer whale. Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 71*(229), 69054-69070.

NOAA. (2006a). Endangered and threatened species: Final listing determinations for 10 Distinct Population Segments of west coast steelhead; Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service; National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 71*(3), 834-861.

NOAA. (2006b). Environmental sensitivity index (ESI) atlas: Guam and Northern Marianas. Office of Response and Restoration. <https://response.restoration.noaa.gov/esi_download#Guam>.

NOAA. (2007). Taking and importing marine mammals; taking marine mammals incidental to Navy operations of Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active sonar—Final Rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register* 72(161):46846-46893.

NOAA. (2007a). Endangered and threatened species: final listing determination for Puget Sound steelhead; Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 72*(91), 26722-26735.

NOAA. (2008a). Endangered and threatened species: Final threatened listing determination, final protective regulations, and final designation of critical habitat for the Oregon Coast evolutionarily significant unit of coho salmon; Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service; National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 73*(28), 7816-7873.

NOAA. (2008b). Endangered and threatened species; Designation of critical habitat for North Pacific right whale; Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 73*(68), 19000-19014.

NOAA. (2011). Endangered and threatened wildlife and plants: Proposed rulemaking to revise critical habitat for Hawaiian monk seals; Proposed rule; request for comments. National Marine Fisheries Service; National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 76*(106), 32026-32063.

NOAA. (2012a). Endangered and threatened species: Final rule to revise the critical habitat designation for the endangered leatherback sea turtle; Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. *Federal Register, 77*(17), 4170-4201.

NOAA. (2012b). Endangered and threatened wildlife and plants; Endangered status for the Main Hawaiian Islands Insular false killer whale distinct population segment; Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 77*(229), 70915-70939.

NOAA. (2013). Endangered and threatened wildlife and plants; 12-month finding and proposed endangered listing of five species of sturgeons under the Endangered Species Act; Proposed rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register 78*(211), 65250-65263.

NOAA. (2014). Endangered and threatened species: Critical habitat for the Northwest Atlantic Ocean loggerhead sea turtle distinct population segment (DPS) and determination regarding critical habitat for the North Pacific Ocean Loggerhead DPS; Final rule. *Federal Register, 79*(132), 39856-39912.

NOAA. (2014a). Endangered and threatened wildlife and plants; Final endangered listing of five species of sawfish Under the Endangered Species Act; Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register 79*(239), 73978-74005.

NOAA. (2014b). Endangered and threatened wildlife and plants: Threatened and endangered status for distinct population segments of scalloped hammerhead sharks; Final rule. *Federal Register 79*(128), 38214-38242.

NOAA. (2014c). *Conserving our world's oceans one place at a time. Marine protected areas.* Retrieved from <marineprotectedareas.noaa.gov.

NOAA. (2015a). Endangered and threatened species: Final rulemaking to revise critical habitat for Hawaiian monk seals. *Federal Register, 80*(162), 50926-50988.

NOAA. (2015b). Endangered and threatened species; Identification of 14 distinct population segments of the humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) and proposed revision of species-wide listing; Proposed rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register 80*(76):22304-22356.

NOAA. (2015c). *ESA recovery plan for Snake River sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka)*. Portland, OR: West Coast Region, National Marine Fisheries Service. p. 431.

NOAA. (2015d). *Hawaiian Islands humpback whale national Marine Sanctuary draft management plan and draft environmental impact statement*. Silver Spring, MD: Office of National Marine Sanctuaries, NOAA. Retrieved from <http://hawaiihumpbackwhale.noaa.gov/management/pdfs/mp2015_dmp_deis.pdf>.

NOAA. (2016a). Endangered and threatened species; Identification of 14 distinct population segments of the humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) and revision of species-wide listing; Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register 81*(174), 62260-62320.

NOAA. (2016b). Endangered and threatened wildlife and plant species: Final rule to list eleven distinct population segments of the green sea turtle *(Chelonia mydas)* as endangered or threatened and revision of current listings under the Endangered Species Act; Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. *Federal Register, 81*(66), 20058-20090.

NOAA. (2016c). Map of green turtle distinct population segments. Retrieved from <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/turtles/images/green_turtle_dpss.pdf>.

NOAA. (2016e). Endangered and threatened wildlife and plants; Proposed threatened listing determination for the oceanic whitetip shark under the Endangered Species Act (ESA); Proposed rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 81*(250), 96304-96328.

NOAA. (2016h). Endangered and threatened wildlife and plants; Notice of 12-month finding on a petition to list the Gulf of Mexico Bryde's whale as endangered under the Endangered Species Act (ESA); Proposed rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 81*(236), 88639-88656.

NOAA. (2016i). *Species in the spotlight priority actions: 2016-2020 Sacramento River winter-run Chinook salmon Oncorhynchus tshawytscha; Winter-run Chinook salmon 5-year action plan*. Silver Spring, MD: National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. 18 pages.

NOAA. (2016j). *2016 5-Year review: Summary and evaluation of Ozette Lake sockeye.* Portland, OR: West Coast Region, National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. 47 pages.

NOAA. (2016k). *2016 5-Year review: Summary and evaluation of Puget Sound Chinook salmon, Hood Canal summer-run chum salmon, Puget Sound steelhead*. Portland, OR: West Coast Region, National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. 98 pages.

NOAA. (2016l). *2016 5-Year review: Summary and evaluation of lower Columbia River Chinook salmon, Columbia River chum salmon, lower Columbia River coho salmon, lower Columbia River steelhead*. Portland, OR: West Coast Region, National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. 87 pages.

NOAA. (2016m). *2016 5-Year Review: Summary and evaluation of Oregon coast coho salmon.* Portland, OR: West Coast Region, National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. 57 pages.

NOAA. (2016n). *2016 5-Year review: Summary and evaluation of California coastal Chinook salmon and northern California steelhead.* Portland, OR: West Coast Region, National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. 61 pages.

NOAA. (2016o). *2016 5-Year review: Summary and evaluation of southern Oregon/northern California coast coho salmon.* Portland, OR: West Coast Region, National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. 70 pages.

NOAA. (2017). Endangered and threatened wildlife and plants: Proposed rulemaking to designate critical habitat for the Main Hawaiian Islands insular false killer whale distinct population segment; Proposed rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 82*(212), 51186-51209.

NOAA. (2018a). Endangered and threatened wildlife and plants; Listing the oceanic whitetip Shark as threatened under the Endangered Species Act; Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 83*(20), 4153-4164.

NOAA. (2018b). Endangered and threatened wildlife and plants; Final rule to list the giant manta ray as threatened under the Endangered Species Act; Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 83*(14), 2916-2931.

NOAA. (2018c). Endangered and threatened wildlife and plants: Final rulemaking to designate critical habitat for the Main Hawaiian Islands insular false killer whale distinct population segment; Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 83*(142), 35062-35095.

NOAA. (2018d). Main Hawaiian Islands insular false killer whale critical habitat GIS data files. Data Set ID: 53292. Data obtained August 2018. Pacific Islands Regional Office Protected Resources, National Marine Fisheries Service, Honolulu, HI.

NOAA. (2019). Endangered and threatened wildlife and plants; Endangered status of the Gulf of Mexico Bryde's whale; Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 84(72),* 15,446-15,488.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (NOAA and USFWS). (2011). Endangered and threatened species; Determination of nine distinct population segments of loggerhead sea turtles as endangered or threatened; Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. *Federal Register, 76*(184), 58868-58952.

National Research Council (NRC). (2000). *Marine protected areas: Tools for sustaining ocean ecosystems.* Washington, D.C.: National Academy Press.

Nedelec, S.L., Radford, A.N., Simpson, S.D., Nedelec, B., Lecchini, D., & Mills, S.C. (2014). Anthropogenic noise playback impairs embryonic development and increases mortality in a marine invertebrate. *Scientific Reports, 4,* 5891. doi: 10.1038/srep05891.

Nedwell, J. R., Edwards, B., Turnpenny, A. W. H., & Gordon, J. (2004). *Fish and marine mammal audiograms: A summary of available information*. Subacoustech Report 534R0214. 281 pages.

Nel, R. (2012*). Assessment of the conservation status of the leatherback turtle in the Indian Ocean and South-East Asia*. Bangkok, Thailand: IOSEA Marine Turtle MoU Secretariat. 41 pages.

Nesterenko, V. A., & Katin, I. O. (2008). The spotted seal (*Phoca largha*) in the south of the range: The results and problems of research. Pages 386 to 389 in *Marine mammals of the Holoarctic—Collection of Scientific Papers after the 5th International Conference, Odessa, Ukraine, 2008*.

Niño-Torres, C. A., Jorge Urbán, R., Olavarrieta, T., Blanco-Parra, M. d. P., & Hobson, K. A. (2014). Dietary preferences of Bryde's whales (*Balaenoptera edeni*) from the Gulf of California: Aδ13C,δ15N analysis. *Marine Mammal Science, 30*(3), 1140-1148. doi:10.1111/mms.12081.

Norris, K. S. (1969). The echolocation of marine mammals. Pages 391-423 in H. T. Andersen (Ed.). *The biology of marine mammals*. New York, NY: Academic Press.

Norris, K. S., & Evans, W. E. (1967). Directionality of echolocation clicks in the rough-tooth porpoise, *Steno bredanensis* (Lesson). Pages 305-316 in *Marine bioacoustics*, Vol. 2. Oxford, England and New York, NY: Pergamon Press.

Norris, K. S., & Prescott, J. H. (1961). Observations on Pacific cetaceans of Californian and Mexican waters. *University of California Publications in Zoology, 63*, 291-402.

Norris, K. S., Würsig, B., Wells, R. S., & Würsig, M. (1994). *The Hawaiian spinner dolphin*. Berkeley, CA: University of California Press.

Norris, T. F., Dunleavy, K. J., Yack, T. M., & Ferguson, E. L. (2017). Estimation of minke whale abundance from an acoustic line transect survey of the Mariana Islands. *Marine Mammal Science, 33*(2), 574-592. doi: 10.1111/mms.12397

Northwest Fisheries Science Center. (2015). Status review update for Pacific salmon and steelhead listed under the Endangered Species Act: Pacific Northwest. Northwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service. 356 pages.

Notarbartolo di Sciara, G. (1983). *Bryde's whales (Balaenoptera edeni Anderson, 1878) off eastern Venezuela (Cetacea, Balaenopteridae).* Technical Report 83-153. San Diego, California: Hubbs-Sea World Research Institute. 47 pages.

Nummela, S. (2009). Hearing. Pages 553-562 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig,, & J. G. M. Thewissen, (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals, 2nd ed*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Odell, D. K., & McClune, K. M. (1999). False killer whale. Pages 213-243 in S. H. RIdgway & R. Harrison (Eds.). *Handbook of marine mammals, Vol. 6: The Second book of dolphins and the porpoises*. New York, NY: Academic Press.

Office of National Marine Sanctuaries (ONMS). (2010b). *Hawaiian Islands Humpback Whale NMS condition report 2010*. Office of National Marine Sanctuaries, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. Retrieved from <http://sanctuaries.noaa.gov/science/condition/pdfs/hihw_condition_report_low.pdf>.

O'Hara, J., & Wilcox, J. R. (1990). Avoidance responses of loggerhead turtles, *Caretta caretta*, to low frequency sound. *Copeia, 1990*, 564-567.

Ohizumi, H., Isoda, T., Kishiro, T., & Kato, H. (2003). Feeding habits of Baird's beaked whale *Berardius bairdii*, in the western North Pacific and Sea of Okhotsk off Japan. *Fisheries Science Tokyo, 69*(1), 11-20.

Ohsumi, S. (1977). Bryde's whales in the pelagic whaling ground of the North Pacific. *Report of the International Whaling Commission Special Issue, 1*, 140-149.

Ohsumi, S. (1980). Population study of the Bryde’s whale in the Southern Hemisphere under scientific permit in the three seasons, 1976/77-1978/79. *Reports of the International Whaling Commission, 30*, 319-331.

Okuyama, J., Shimizu, T., Abe, O., Yoseda, K., & Arai, N. (2010). Wild versus head-started hawksbill turtles *Eretmochelys imbricata*: Post-release behavior and feeding adaptions. *Endangered Species Research, 10*, 181-190. doi: 10.3354/esr00250.

Oleson, E. M., Baird, R. W., Martien, K. K., & Taylor, B. L. (2013). Island-associated stocks of odontocetes in the main Hawaiian Islands: A synthesis of available information to facilitate evaluation of stock structure. *Document PSRG-2013-16 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, Del Mar, California, April 2013.*

Oleson, E.M., Barlow, J., Gordon, J., Rankin, S., & Hildebrand, J.A. (2003). Low frequency calls of Bryde's whales. *Marine Mammal Science, 19*(2), 407-419.

Oleson, E. M., Boggs, C. H., Forney, K. A., Hanson, M. B., Kobayashi, D. R., Taylor, B. L., Wade, P. R., & Ylitalo, G.M. (2010). *Status review of Hawaiian insular false killer whales (Pseudorca crassidens) under the Endangered Species Act.* (NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-PIFSC-22). Honolulu, HI: Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Oleson, E. M., Sirovic, A., Bayless, A. R., & Hildebrand, J. A. (2014). Synchronous seasonal change in fin whale song in the North Pacific. *PLoS ONE, 9*(12), e115678. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0115678.

Olsen, E., Budgell, W. P., Head, E., Kleivane, L., Nottestad, L., Prieto, R., Silva, M. A., Skov, H., Vikingsson, G. A., Waring, G., & Oien, N. (2009). First satellite-tracked long-distance movement of a sei whale (*Balaenoptera borealis*) in the North Atlantic. *Aquatic Mammals, 35*, 313-318.

Olson, P. A. (2018). Pilot whales (*Globicephata melas* and *G. macrorhynchus*). Pages 701-705 in B. Würsig, J.G.M. Thewissen, & K.M. Kovacs, (Eds). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals, 3rd ed*. San Diego, California: Academic Press.

Omoto, N., Maebayashi, M., Hara, A., Adachi, S., & Yamauchi, K. (2004). Gonadal maturity in wild sturgeons, *Huso dauricus*, *Acipenser mikadoi* and *A. schrenckii* caught near Hokkaido, Japan. *Environmental Biology of Fishes, 70,* 381-391.

Omura, H. (1959). Bryde's whale from the coast of Japan. *The Scientific Reports of the Whales Research Institute, 14,* 1-33.

Omura, H., Fujino, K., & Kimura, S. (1955). Beaked whale *Berardius bairdi* of Japan, with notes on *Ziphius cavirostris*. *Scientific Reports of the Whales Research Institute, 10*, 89-132.

Oswald, J. N., Barlow, J., & Norris, T. F. (2003). Acoustic identification of nine delphinid species in the eastern tropical Pacific Ocean. *Marine Mammal Science, 19*(1), 20-37.

Oswald, J. N., Rankin, S., & Barlow, J. (2008). To whistle or not to whistle? Geographic variation in the whistling behavior of small odontocetes. *Aquatic Mammals, 34*(3), 288-302.

Oswald, J. N., Rankin, S., Barlow, J., & Lammers, M. O. (2007). A tool for real-time acoustic species identification of delphinid whistles. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 122*(1), 587-595.

Owen, K., Jenner, C. S., Jenner, M.-N. M., & Andrews, R. D. (2016). A week in the life of a pygmy blue whale: Migratory dive depth overlaps with large vessel drafts. *Animal Biotelemetry 4*.

Pacific Fishery Management Council (PFMC). (2000). *Amendment 14 to the Pacific coast salmon plan (1997). Incorporating the regulatory impact review/initial regulatory flexibility analysis and final supplemental environmental impact statement.* Portland, OR: Pacific Fishery Management Council. 420 pages.

Pacini, A. F., Nachtigall, P. E., Quintos, C. T., Schofield, T. D., Look, D. A., Levine, G. A., & Turner, J. P. (2011). Audiogram of a stranded Blainville's beaked whale (*Mesoplodon densirostris*) measured using auditory evoked potentials. *The Journal of Experimental Biology,* 214(Pt 14), 2409-2415. doi:10.1242/jeb.054338.

Packard, A., Karlsen, H. E., & Sand, O. (1990). Low frequency hearing in cephalopods. *Journal of Comparative Physiology A: Neuroethology, Sensory, Neural, and Behavioral Physiology, 166*(4), 501-505.

Panigada, S., Notarbartolo di Sciara, G., Zanardelli, M., Airoldi, S., Borsani, J. F., Jahoda, M., Pesante, G., Revelli, E. (2004). Distribution and occurrence of fin whales in the Ligurian Sea between 1990-99. *European Research on Cetaceans, 15,* 194-194.

Panigada, S., Zanardelli, M., Canese, S., & Jahoda, M. (1999). How deep can baleen whales dive? *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 187*, 309-311.

Papastavrou, V., Smith, S. C., & Whitehead, H. (1989). Diving behavior of the sperm whale *Physeter macrocephalus* off the Galapagos Islands, Ecuador. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 67*(4), 839-846.

Paredes, R., Orben, R. A., Roby, D. D., Irons, D. B., Young, R., Renner, H., Tremblay, Y., Will, A., Harding, A. M. A., & Kitaysky, A. S. (2015). Foraging ecology during nesting influences body size in a pursuit-diving seabird. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 533*, 261-276. doi:10.3354/meps11388.

Parks, S. E., Clark, C. W., & Tyack, P. L. (2007). Short-and long-term changes in right whale calling behavior: The potential effects of noise on acoustic communication. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 122*(6), 3725-3731.

Parmentier, E., & Fine, M. L. (2016). Fish sound production: Insights. Chapter 2 in R. A. Suthers, W. T. Fitch, R. R. Fay, & A. N. Popper (Eds.). *Vertebrate sound production and acoustic communication* (Springer Handbook of Auditory Research 53, pp. 19-49). Switzerland: Springer International Publishing.

Parrish, F., Marshall, G., Buhleier, B., Antonelis, G. (2008). Foraging interaction between monk seals and large predatory fish in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. *Endangered Species Research, 4*, 299-308. doi: 10.3354/esr00090.

Parrish, F., Marshall, G., Littnan, C., Heithaus, M., Canja, S., Becker, B., Braun, R., Antonelis, G. (2005). Foraging of juvenile monk seals at French Frigate Shoals, Hawaii. *Marine Mammal Science, 21*, 93-107. doi:10.1111/j.1748-7692.2005.tb01210.x.

Parrish, F. A., & Abernathy, K. (2006). Movements of monk seals relative to ecological depth zones in the lower Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. *Atoll Research Bulletin, 543*, 115-130.

Parrish, F. A., Abernathy, K., Marshall, G. J., & Buhleier, B. M. (2002). Hawaiian monk seals (*Monachus schauinslandi*) foraging in deep-water coral beds. *Marine Mammal Science, 18*(1), 244-258.

Patek, S.N., & Caldwell, R.L. (2006). The stomatopod rumble: Sound production in *Hemisquilla californiensis*. *Marine and Freshwater Behaviour and Physiology, 39*, 99-111.

Patterson, B., & Hamilton, G.R. (1964). Repetitive 20 cycle per second biological hydroacoustic signals at Bermuda. In W.M. Tavolga, (Ed). *Marine bio-acoustics, Volume 1.* Oxford, England: Pergamon Press.

Pauley, G. B., Bortz, B. M., & Shepard, M. F. (1986). *Species profiles: Life histories and environmental requirements of coastal fishes and invertebrates (Pacific northwest)—Steelhead trout.* U.S. Fish Wildlife Service Biological Report 82(11.62). U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, TR EL-82-4. 24 pages.

Pauly, D., Christensen, L., Dalsgaard, J., Froese, R., & Torres, F. (1998). Fishing down the food webs. *Science, 279*, 860-863.

Pavan, G., Hayward, T.J., Borsani, J.F., Priano, M., Manghi, M., Fossati, C., & Gordon, J. (2000). Time patterns of sperm whale codas recorded in the Mediterranean Sea 1985-1996. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 107*(6), 3487-3495.

Payne, R. S., & McVay, S. (1971). Songs of humpback whales. *Science, 173*, 585-597.

Perrin, W. F. (2009b). Common dolphins *Delphinus delphis* and *D. capensis.* Pages 255-259 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen (Eds.) *Encyclopedia of marine mammals,* 2nd Ed. New York: Academic Press.

Perrin, W. F. (2009c). Pantropical spotted dolphin (*Stenella attenuata*). Pages 819-821 in W.F. Perrin, B. Würsig, and J.G.M. Thewissen, eds. Encyclopedia of Marine Mammals, 2nd ed. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Perrin, W. F. (2009d). Spinner dolphin (*Stenella longirostris*). Pages 1100-1103 in W.F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J.G.M. Thewissen, (Eds). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals, 2nd Ed*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Perrin, W.F., Mallette, S.D., & Brownell, Jr., R.L. (2018). Minke whales Balaenoptera acutorostrata and B. bonaerensis. Pages 608-613 in B. Wursig, J.G.M. Thewissen, & K. Kovacs, (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals, 3rd Ed*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Perry, S. L., DeMaster, D. P., & Silber, G. K. (1999). The great whales: History and status of six species listed as endangered under the U.S. Endangered Species Act of 1973. *Marine Fisheries Review, 61*(1), 1-74.

Philips, J. D., Nachtigall, P. E., Au, W. W. L., Pawloski, J. L., & Roitblat, H. L. (2003). Echolocation in the Risso's dolphin, *Grampus griseus*. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 113*(1), 605-616.

Pierce, G., Santos, M., Smeenk, C., Saveliev, A., & Zuur, A. (2007). Historical trends in the incidence of strandings of sperm whales (Physeter macrocephalus) on North Sea coasts: An association with positive temperature anomalies. *Fisheries Research, 87*(2-3), 219-228. doi:10.1016/j.fishres.2007.06.001.

Pike, D. A. (2013). Climate influences the global distribution of sea turtle nesting. *Global Ecology and Biogeography, 22*, 555–566. doi:10.1111/geb.12025.

Piniak, W. E. D., Mann, D. A., Harms, C. A., Jones, T. T., & Eckert, S. A. (2016). Hearing in the juvenile green sea turtle (*Chelonia mydas*): A comparison of underwater and aerial hearing using auditory evoked potentials. *PLoS ONE, 11*(10), e0159711. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0159711.

Pitcher, K. W., Rehberg, M. J., Pendleton, G. W., Raum-Suryan, K. L., Gelatt, T. S., Swain, U. G., & Sigler, M. F. (2005). Ontogeny of dive performance in pup and juvenile Steller sea lions in Alaska. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 83*, 1214-1231.

Pitman, R. (2009b). Mesoplodont whales (*Mesoplodon* spp.). Pages 721-726 in W. F. Perrin, B. G. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen, (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals, 2nd edition*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Pitman, R. (2018). Indo-Pacific beaked whales *Indopacetus pacificus*. Pages 509-512 in B. Würsig, J.G.M. Thewissen, & K.M. Kovacs, (Eds). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals, 3rd ed*. San Diego, California: Academic Press.

Plotkin, P. T. (2003). Adult migrations and habitat. Pages 225-241 in P. L. Lutz, J. A. Musick, & J. Wyneken, (Eds.). *The biology of sea turtles, Vol 2*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.

Plotkin, P. T. (2010). Nomadic behaviour of the highly migratory olive ridley sea turtle *Lepidochelys olivacea* in the Eastern Tropical Pacific Ocean. *Endangered Species Research, 13*(1), 33-40. doi: 10.3354/esr00314.

Polovina, J. J., Balazs, G. H., Howell, E. A., Parker, D. M., Seki, M. P., & Dutton, P. H. (2004). Forage and migration habitat of loggerhead (*Caretta caretta*) and olive ridley (*Lepidochelys olivacea*) sea turtles in the central North Pacific Ocean. *Fisheries Oceanography, 13*(1), 36-51. doi:10.1046/j.1365-2419.2003.00270.x.

Polovina, J. J., Howell, E., Parker, D. M., & Balazs, G. H. (2003). Dive-depth distribution of loggerhead (*Caretta caretta*) and olive ridley (*Lepidochelys olivacea*) sea turtles in the central North Pacific: Might deep longline sets catch fewer turtles? *Fishery Bulletin, 101*(1), 189-193.

Polovina, J. J., Kobayashi, D. R., Parker, D. M., Seki, M. P., & Balazs, G. H. (2000). Turtles on the edge: Movement of loggerhead turtles (*Caretta caretta*) along oceanic fronts, spanning longline fishing grounds in the central North Pacific, 1997-1998. *Fisheries Oceanography, 9*, 71-82.

Polovina, J., Uchida, I., Balazs, G., Howell, E. A., Parker, D., & Dutton, P. (2006). The Kuroshio extension bifurcation region: A pelagic hotspot for juvenile loggerhead sea turtles. *Deep-Sea Research II, 53*, 326-339.

Pomilla, C., Amaral, A. R., Collins, T., Minton, G., Findlay, K., Leslie, M. S., Ponnampalam, L., Baldwin, R., & Rosenbaum, H. (2014). The world's most isolated and distinct whale population? Humpback whales of the Arabian Sea. *PLoS ONE, 9*(12), e114162. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0114162.

Ponganis, P.J. (2015). *Diving physiology of marine mammals and seabirds*. Cambridge, United Kingdom: Cambridge University Press.

Ponganis, P. J., Gentry, R. L., Ponganis, E. P., & Ponganis, K. V. (1992). Analysis of swim velocities during deep and shallow dives of two northern fur seals *Callorhinus ursinus*. *Marine Mammal Science, 8,* 69-75.

Popov, V. V., & Klishin, V. O. (1998). EEG study of hearing in the common dolphin, *Delphinus delphis*. *Aquatic Mammals, 24*(1), 13-20.

Popper, A.N. (1980). Sound emission and detection by delphinids. Pages 1-52 in L. M. Herman, (Ed.). *Cetacean behavior: Mechanisms and functions*. New York, NY: John Wiley & Sons.

Popper, A.N. (2003). Effects of anthropogenic sound on fishes. *Fisheries, 28*(10), 24-31.

Popper, A.N., & Coombs, S. (1982). The morphology and evolution of the ear in Actinopterygian fishes. *American Zoologist, 22*, 311-328.

Popper, A.N., & Fay, R.R. (1993). Sound detection and processing by fish critical review and major research questions. *Brain Behavior and Evolution,* 41(1), 14-38.

Popper, A. N., & Fay, R. R. (2011). Rethinking sound detection by fishes. *Hearing Research, 273*(1-2), 25-36. doi:10.1016/j.heares.2009.12.023.

Popper, A.N., & Hawkins, A.D. (2018). The importance of particle motion to fishes and invertebrates. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 143*(1), 470-488. doi: 10.1121/1.5021594.

Popper, A., & Schilt, C. R. (2008). Hearing and acoustic behavior: Basic and applied considerations. Pages 17-48 in J. F. Webb, R. R. Fay, & A. N. Popper (Eds.). *Fish bioacoustics*. New York, NY: Springer.

Popper, A. N., Fay, R. R., Platt, C., & Sand, O. (2003). Sound detection mechanisms and capabilities of teleost fishes. Pages 3-38 in S. P. Collin & N. J. Marshall, (Eds.). *Sensory processing in aquatic environments*. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag.

Popper, A. N., Halvorsen, M. B., Kane, A., Miller, D. L., Smith, M. E., Song, J., . . . Wysocki, L. E. (2007). The effects of high-intensity, low-frequency active sonar on rainbow trout. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 122*(1), 623-635.

Popper, A. N., Halvorsen, M. B., Miller, D., Smith, M. E., Song, J., Wysocki, L. E., . . . Stein, P. (2005). Effects of surveillance towed array sensor system (SURTASS) low frequency active sonar on fish. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 117*(4), 2440.

Popper, A. N., Hawkins, A. D. R., Fay, R., Mann, D. A., Bartol, S. M., Carlson, T. J., Coombs, S., Ellison, W. T., Gentry, R. L., Halvorsen, M. B., Lokkeborg, S., Rogers, P. H., Southall, B. L., Zeddies, D. G., & Tavolga, W. N. (2014). *Sound exposure guidelines for fishes and sea turtles: A technical report prepared by the ANSI-Accredited Standards Committee S3/SC1 and registered with ANSI.* Springer briefs in oceanography. New York, NY: ASA Press.

Popper, A.N., Salmon, M., & Horch, K.W. (2001). Acoustic detection and communication by decapod crustaceans. *Journal of Comparative Physiology Part A, 187*, 83-89.

Poulter, T. C. (1968). Underwater vocalization and behavior of pinnipeds. Pages 69-84 in R. J. Harrison, R. C. Hubbard, R. S. Peterson, C. E. Rice, & R. J. Schusterman (Eds.). *The behavior and physiology of pinnipeds*. New York, NY: Appleton-Century-Crofts.

Preen, A. R., Marsh, H., Lawler, I. R., Prince, R. I. T., & Shepherd, R. (1997). Distribution and abundance of dugongs, turtles, dolphins and other megafauna in Shark Bay, Ningaloo Reef and Exmouth Gulf, Western Australia. *Wildlife Research, 24*(2), 185-208.

Price, Waterhouse, & Copper. (2017). Oil and gas in Indonesia. Retrieved from <https://www.pwc.com/id/en/energy-utilities-mining/assets/oil%20and%20gas/oil-and-gas-guide-2017.pdf>.

Prieto, R., Silva, M. A., Waring, G. T., & Gonçalves, J. M. A. (2014). Sei whale movements and behaviour in the North Atlantic inferred from satellite telemetry. *Endangered Species Research, 26*, 101-113. doi: 10.3354/esr00630.

Pritchard, P.C.H. (1976). Post nesting movements of marine turtles (Cheloniidae and Dermochelyidae) tagged in the Guianas. *Copeia 1976*(4): 749-754.

Pritchard, P. C. H. (1997). Evolution, phylogeny, and current status. Pages 1-28 in P. Lutz & J. A. Musick, (Eds.). *The biology of sea turtles*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.

Professional Association of Diving Instructors (PADI). (2016). *Technical diving course offerings*. Retrieved from <http://www.padi.com/scuba-diving/PADI-Courses/Course-Catalog/Go-Beyond-with-PADI-TecRec percentC2 percentAE/>.

PADI. (2019). PADI travel—SCUBA diving destinations. <https://travel.padi.com/destinations/>.

Prosdocimi, L., Carman, V. G., Albareda, D. A., & Remis, M. I. (2012). Genetic composition of green turtle feeding grounds in coastal waters of Argentina based on mitochondrial DNA. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology, 412*, 37-45. doi:10.1016/j.jembe.2011.10.015.

Protected Planet. (2018). Protected area coverage in 2018. Retrieved from <https://protectedplanet.net/marine>.

Protected Planet. (2018a). Official MPA map. Retrieved from <https://protectedplanet.net/MPA_Map.pdf>.

Pryor, T., K. Pryor, & Norris, K. S. (1965). Observations on a pygmy killer whale (*Feresa attenuata* Gray) from Hawaii. *Journal of Mammalogy, 46*, 450-461.

Pye, H.J., & Watson III, W.H. (2004). Sound detection and production in the American lobster, *Homarus americanus*: Sensitivity range and behavioral implications. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 115*, 2486-2486.

Quora. (2017). How many onshore and offshore rigs are there in India? Retrieved from <https://www.quora.com/How-many-onshore-and-offshore-rigs-are-there-in-India>.

Radford, C.A., Tay, K., & Goeritz, M.L. (2016). Hearing in the paddle crab, *Ovalipes catharus.* Paper presented at the Fourth International Conference on the Effects of Noise on Aquatic Life. Dublin, Ireland, July 2016. *Proceedings of Meetings on Acoustics, 27*, 010013. Doi: 10.1121/2.0000259.

Rand, P.S. (2011). *Oncorhynchus nerka. The IUCN red list of threatened Species 2011*: e.T135301A4071001. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2011-2.RLTS.T135301A4071001.en>.

Rankin, S., & Barlow, J. (2005). Source of the North Pacific ``boing'' sound attributed to minke whales. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 118*(5), 3346-3351.

Rankin, S., & Barlow, J. (2007). Vocalizations of the sei whale *Balaenoptera borealis* off the Hawaiian Islands. *Bioacoustics, 16*(2), 137-145. doi:10.1080/09524622.2007.9753572.

Rankin, S., Baumann-Pickering, S., Yack, T., & Barlow, J. (2011). Description of sounds recorded from Longman's beaked whale, *Indopacetus pacificus*. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 130*(5), EL339-344. doi:10.1121/1.3646026.

Rankin, S., Oswald, J., Barlow, J., & Lammers, M. (2007). Patterned burst-pulse vocalizations of the northern right whale dolphin, *Lissodelphis borealis*. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 121*(2), 1213-1218.

Raum-Suryan, K. L., Rehberg, M. J., Pendleton, G. W., Pitcher, K. W., & Gelatt, T. S. (2004). Development of dispersal, movement patterns, and haul-out use by pup and juvenile Steller sea lions (*Eumetopias jubatus*) in Alaska. *Marine Mammal Science 20*, 823-850.

Read, A. J., & Westgate, A. J. (1997). Monitoring the movements of harbour porpoises (*Phocena phocena*) with satellite telemetry. *Marine Biology, 130*, 315-322.

Ream, R. R., Sterling, J. T., & Loughlin, T. R. (2005). Oceanographic features related to northern fur seal migratory movements. *Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography, 52*(5-6), 823-843.

Recalde-Salas, A., Salgado Kent, C. P., Parsons, M. J., Marley, S. A., & McCauley, R. D. (2014). Non-song vocalizations of pygmy blue whales in Geographe Bay, Western Australia. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 135*(5), EL213-218. doi:10.1121/1.4871581.

Reeder, D. B., & Chiu, C. S. (2010). Ocean acidification and its impact on ocean noise: Phenomenology and analysis. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 128*(3), EL137-143. doi:10.1121/1.3431091.

Rees, A. F., Al-Kiyumi, A., Broderick, A. C., Papathanasopoulou, N., & Godley, B. J. (2012). Each to their own: Inter-specific differences in migrations of Masirah Island turtles. *Chelonian Conservation and Biology, 11*(2), 243–248. doi:10.2744/CCB-1000.1.

Reeves, R. R., & Whitehead, H. (1997). Status of the sperm whale, *Physeter macrocephalus* in Canada. *Canadian Field-Naturalist, 111*(2), 293-307.

Rehberg, M. J., & Burns, J. M. (2008). Differences in diving and swimming behavior of pup and juvenile Steller sea lions (*Eumetopias jubatus*) in Alaska. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 86*(6), 539-553. doi: 10.1139/z08-018.

Rehberg, M. J., Andrews, R. D., Swain, U. G., & Calkins, D. G. (2009). Foraging behavior of adult female Steller sea lions during the breeding season in Southeast Alaska. *Marine Mammal Science, 25*(3), 588-604.

Reichmuth, C., Holt, M. M., Mulsow, J., Sills, J. M., Southall, B. L. (2013). Comparative assessment of amphibious hearing in pinnipeds. *Journal of Comparative Physiology A, 199*, 491e507.

Reilly, S.B., Bannister, J.L., Best, P.B., Brown, M., Brownell Jr., R.L., Butterworth, D.S., Clapham, P.J., Cooke, J., Donovan, G.P., Urban, J., & Zerbini, A.N. (2008a). *Eschrichtius robustus. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2008*: e.T8097A12885255. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2008.RLTS.T8097A12885255.en>.

Reilly, S.B., Bannister, J.L., Best, P.B., Brown, M., Brownell Jr., R.L., Butterworth, D.S., Clapham, P.J., Cooke, J., Donovan, G.P., Urban, J., & Zerbini, A.N. (2008b). *Balaenoptera bonaerensis. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2008*: e.T2480A9449324. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2008.RLTS.T2480A9449324.en>.

Reilly, S.B., Bannister, J.L., Best, P.B., Brown, M., Brownell Jr., R.L., Butterworth, D.S., Clapham, P.J., Cooke, J., Donovan, G.P., Urban, J., & Zerbini, A.N. (2008c). *Balaenoptera musculus. The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2008*: e.T2477A9447146. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2008.RLTS.T2477A9447146.en>.

Reilly, S.B., Bannister, J.L., Best, P.B., Brown, M., Brownell Jr., R.L., Butterworth, D.S., Clapham, P.J., Cooke, J., Donovan, G.P., Urbán, J. & Zerbini, A.N. (2008d). *Balaenoptera edeni*. The IUCN red List of threatened species 2008: e.T2476A9445502. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2008.RLTS.T2476A9445502.en>.

Reilly, S.B., Bannister, J.L., Best, P.B., Brown, M., Brownell Jr., R.L., Butterworth, D.S., Clapham, P.J., Cooke, J., Donovan, G.P., Urban, J., & Zerbini, A.N. (2008e). *Balaenoptera acutorostrata. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2008*: e.T2474A9444043. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2008.RLTS.T2474A9444043.en>.

Reilly, S.B., Bannister, J.L., Best, P.B., Brown, M., Brownell Jr., R.L., Butterworth, D.S., Clapham, P.J., Cooke, J., Donovan, G.P., Urbán, J., & Zerbini, A.N. (2008f). *Megaptera novaeangliae*. *The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2008*: e.T13006A3405371. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2008.RLTS.T13006A3405371.en. Downloaded on 03 June 2018>.

Reilly, S.B., Bannister, J.L., Best, P.B., Brown, M., Brownell Jr., R.L., Butterworth, D.S., Clapham, P.J., Cooke, J., Donovan, G.P., Urban, J., & Zerbini, A.N. (2008g). *Balaenoptera omurai. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2008*: e.T136623A4319390. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2008.RLTS.T136623A4319390.en.

Reilly, S.B., Bannister, J.L., Best, P.B., Brown, M., Brownell Jr., R.L., Butterworth, D.S., Clapham, P.J., Cooke, J., Donovan, G.P., Urbán, J. & Zerbini, A.N. (2008h). *Balaenoptera borealis*. *The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2008*: e.T2475A9445100. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2008.RLTS.T2475A9445100.en>.

Reilly, S.B., Bannister, J.L., Best, P.B., Brown, M., Brownell Jr., R.L., Butterworth, D.S., Clapham, P.J., Cooke, J., Donovan, G.P., Urbán, J. & Zerbini, A.N. (2008i). *Eubalaena japonica*. *The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2008*: e.T41711A10540463. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2008.RLTS.T41711A10540463.en>.

Reilly, S.B., Bannister, J.L., Best, P.B., Brown, M., Brownell Jr., R.L., Butterworth, D.S., Clapham, P.J., Cooke, J., Donovan, G.P., Urbán, J. & Zerbini, A.N. (2013). *Balaenoptera physalus*. *The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2013*: e.T2478A44210520. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2013-1.RLTS.T2478A44210520.en>.

Reisinger, R. R., Keith, M., Andrews, R. D., & de Bruyn, P. J. N. (2015). Movement and diving of killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) at a Southern Ocean archipelago. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology, 473*, 90-102. doi:10.1016/j.jembe.2015.08.008.

Rendell, L. E., Matthews, J., Gill, A., Gordon, J., & Macdonald, D. W. (1999). Quantitative analysis of the tonal calls of five odontocete species. *Journal of Zoology, 249*(4), 403-410.

Rice, D. W. (1989). Sperm whale *Physeter macrocephalus* Linneaus, 1758. Page 177-234 in S. H. Ridgway & R. Harrison, (Eds.). *Handbook of marine mammals, Vol. 4: River dolphins and the larger toothed whales*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Rice, J., & Harley, S. (2012). *Stock assessment of oceanic whitetip sharks in the western and central Pacific Ocean.* Western and Central Pacific Fisheries Commission Scientific Committee Eighth Regular Session. WCPFC-SC8-2012/SA-WP-06 Rev 1. 53 pages.

Rice, M. R., & Balazs, G. H. (2008). Diving behavior of the Hawaiian green turtle (*Chelonia mydas*) during oceanic migrations. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology, 356*(1-2), 121-127. doi:10.1016/j.jembe.2007.12.010.

Richardson, W. J., Greene, C. R., Malme, C. I., & Thomson, D. H. (1995). *Marine mammals and noise* (1st ed.). San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Ridgway, S. H. (1966). Dall porpoise, *Phocoenoides dalli* (True): Observations in captivity and at sea. *Norsk Hvalfangst-Tidende, 55*(5), 97-110.

Ridgway, S. H. (1986). Diving by cetaceans. Pages 33-62 in A. O. Brubakk, J. W. Kanwisher, & G. Sundness, (Eds.). *Diving in animals and man*. Trondheim, Norway: The Royal Norwegian Society of Science and Letters.

Ridgway, S. H., & Carder, D. A. (2001). Assessing hearing and sound production in cetaceans not available for behavioral audiograms: Experiences with sperm, pygmy sperm, and gray whales. *Aquatic Mammals, 27*(3), 267-276.

Ridgway, S. H., Wever, E. G., McCormick, J. G., Palin, J., & Anderson, J. G. (1969). Hearing in the giant sea turtle, *Chelonia mydas*. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 64*(3), 884-890.

Risch, D., Clark, C. W., Dugan, P. J., Popescu, M., Siebert, U., & Van Parijs, S. M. (2013). Minke whale acoustic behavior and multi-year seasonal and diel vocalization patterns in Massachusetts Bay, USA. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 489*, 279-295. doi: 10.3354/meps10426.

Risch, D., Gales, N. J., Gedamke, J., Kindermann, L., Nowacek,D. P., Read, A. J., Siebert, U., Van Opzeeland, I. C., Van Parijs, S. M., & Friedlaender, A. S. (2014a). Mysterious bio-duck sound attributed to the Antarctic minke whale (*Balaenoptera bonaerensis*). *Biology Letters, 10*(4), 20140175. doi:10.1098/rsbl.2014.0175.

Risch, D., Van Parijs, S. M., & Siebert, U. (2014b). Individual calling behaviour and movements of North Atlantic minke whales (*Balaenoptera acutorostrata*). *Behaviour, 151*(9), 1335-1360. doi: 10.1163/1568539x-00003187.

Ritter, F. (2002). Behavioural observations of rough-toothed dolphins (*Steno bredanensis*) off La Gomera, Canary Islands (1995-2000), with special reference to their interactions with humans. *Aquatic Mammals, 28*(1), 46-59.

Rivers, J. A. (1997). Blue whale, *Balaenoptera musculus*, vocalizations from the waters off central California. *Marine Mammal Science, 13*(2), 186-195.

Roberts, L., Cheesman, S., Elliott,M., & Breithaupt, T. (2016). Sensitivity of *Pagurus bernhardus* (L.) to substrate-borne vibration and anthropogenic noise. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology, 474*, 185-194.

Rohr, J. J., Fish, F. E., & Gilpatrick, J. W. (2002). Maximum swim speeds of captive and free-ranging delphinids: Critical analysis of extraordinary performance. *Marine Mammal Science, 18*(1), 1-19.

Ronconi, R. A., Ryan, P.G., & Ropert-Coudert, Y. (2010). Diving of great shearwaters (*Puffinus gravis*) in cold and warm water regions of the South Atlantic Ocean. *PLoS ONE, 5*(11), e15508. doi: 15510.11371/journal.pone.0015508.

Rosel, P. E., Corkeron, P., Engleby, L., Epperson, D., Mullin, K. D., Soldevilla, M. S., Taylor, B. L. (2016). *Status review of Bryde's whales (Balaenoptera edeni) in the Gulf of Mexico under the Endangered Species Act.* NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SEFSC-692. Miami, FL: National Marine Fisheries Service, Southeast Fisheries Science Center.

Ross, D. (1976). *Mechanics of underwater noise*. New York, NY: Pergamon.

Rossi, T., Connell, S.D., & Nagelkerken, I. (2016a) Silent oceans: Ocean acidification impoverishes natural soundscapes by altering sound production of the world's noisiest marine invertebrate. *Proceedings of the Royal Society Park B, 283*, 20153046. doi.org/10.1098/rspb.2015.3046.

Rossi, T., Nagelkerken, I., Pistevos, J.C.A., & Connell, S.D. (2016b). Lost at sea: Ocean acidification undermines larval fish orientation via altered hearing and marine soundscape modification. *Biology Letters, 12*, 20150937. doi.org/10.1098/rsbl.2015.0937.

Rubin, R., Kumli, K., & Chilcott, G. (2008*). Dive characteristics and movement patterns of acoustic and satellite-tagged manta rays (Manta birostris) in the Revillagigedos Islands of Mexico.* Paper presented at Joint Meeting of Ichthyologists and Herpetologists Montreal, Canada.

Russian Orcas. (2019). Orca research. Retrieved from <http://www.russianorca.com/project.php?lang=en>.

Ryals, B. M., Dooling, R. J., Westbrook, E., Dent, M. L., MacKenzie, A., & Larsen, O. N. (1999). Avian species differences in susceptibility to noise exposure. *Hearing Research, 131*, 71-88.

Sadoyama, A., Kamezaki, N., & Miyawaki, I. (1996). Recapture in Vietnam of the loggerhead turtle, nested in the Miyakojima Island, Okinawa Archipelago. *Umigame Newsletter 29*, 9.

Sakamoto, W., Bando, T., Arai, N., & Baba, N. (1997). Migration paths of adult female and male loggerhead turtles *Caretta caretta* determined through satellite telemetry. *Fisheries Science, 63*(4), 547-552.

Sakamoto, W., Uchida, I., Naito, Y., Kureha, K., Tujimura, M., & Sato, K. (1990). Deep diving behavior of the loggerhead turtle near the frontal zone. *Nippon Suisan Gakkaishi, 56*(9), 1435-1443.

Sale, A., Luschi, P., Mencacci, R., Lambardi, P., Hughes, G. R., Hays, G. C., Benvenuti, S., & Papi, F. (2006). Long-term monitoring of leatherback turtle diving behaviour during oceanic movements. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology, 328*(2), 197-210. doi:10.1016/j.jembe.2005.07.006.

Salm, R.V., Jensen, R.A.C., & Papastavrou, V.A. (1993). *Marine fauna of Oman: Cetaceans, turtles, seabirds, and shallow water corals.* IUCN, Gland, Switzerland. 66 pages.

Salmon, M., Hamann, M., & Wyneken, J. (2010). The development of early diving behavior by juvenile flatback sea turtles (*Natator depressus*). *Chelonian Conservation and Biology, 9*(1), 8-17.

Salmon, M., Jones, T. T., & Horch, K. W. (2004). Ontogeny of diving and feeding behavior in juvenile sea turtles: Leatherback sea turtles (*Dermochelys coriacea* L) and green sea turtles (*Chelonia mydas* L) in the Florida Current. *Journal of Herpetology, 38*(1), 36-43.

Samarra, F. I. P., Deecke, V. B., Simonis, A. E., & Miller, P. J. O. (2015). Geographic variation in the time-frequency characteristics of high-frequency whistles produced by killer whales (*Orcinus orca*). *Marine Mammal Science, 31*(2), 688-706. doi:10.1111/mms.12195.

Sand, O., & Hawkins, A.D. (1973). Acoustic properties of the cod swim bladder. *Journal of Experimental Biology 58*, 797-820.

Sand, O., & Karlsen, H. (1986). Detection of infrasound by the Atlantic cod. *Journal of Experimental Biology, 125*(1), 197-204.

Sand, O., Enger, P. S., Karlsen, H. E., Knudsen, F., & Kvernstuen, T. (2000). Avoidance responses to infrasound in downstream migrating European silver eels, *Anguilla anguilla*. *Environmental Biology of Fishes, 57*(3), 327-336.

Santoro, A., Marten, K. I., & Crawford, T. W. (1989). *Pygmy sperm whale sound Kogia breviceps.* Paper presented at the 8th Biennial Conference on the Biology of Marine Mammals, Pacific Grove, CA.

Sasaki, H., Murase, H., Kiwada, H., Matsuoka, K., Mitani, Y., & Saitoh, S.S-i. (2013). Habitat differentiation between sei (*Balaenoptera borealis*) and Bryde's whales (*B. brydei*) in the western North Pacific. *Fisheries Oceanography, 22*(6), 496–508. doi:10.1111/fog.12037.

Sasaki, T., Nikaido, M., Wada, S., Yamada, T. K., Cao, Y., Hasegawa, M., & Okada, N. (2006). *Balaenoptera omurai* is a newly discovered baleen whale that represents an ancient evolutionary lineage. *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution, 41*(1), 40-52.

Sathasivam, K. (2002). *A catalogue of Indian marine mammal records.* Paper presented at Convention on Biological Diversity regional workshop to facilitate the description of ecologically or biologically significant marine areas (EBSAs) in the north-east Indian Ocean region, Columbo, Sri Lanka, March 2015. Retrieved from: <https://www.cbd.int/doc/meetings/mar/ebsaws-2015-01/other/ebsaws-2015-01-gobi-submission5-en.pdf>.

Sato, K., Naito, Y., Kato, A., Niizuma, Y., Watanuki, Y., Charrassin, J. B., . . . Maho, Y. L. (2002). Buoyancy and maximal diving depth in penguins: Do they control inhaling air volume? *The Journal of Experimental Biology, 205*, 1189-1197.

Saunders, J., & Dooling, R. J. (1974). Noise-induced threshold shift in the parakeet (*Melopsittacus undulatus*). *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the USA, 71*(5), 1962-1965.

Sayigh, L., Quick, N., Hastie, G., & Tyack, P. (2013). Repeated call types in short-finned pilot whales, *Globicephala macrorhynchus*. *Marine Mammal Science, 29*(2), 312-324. doi:10.1111/j.1748-7692.2012.00577.x.

Scheer, M., Hofmann, B., & Behr, P. I. (1998). *Discrete pod-specific call repertoires among short-finned pilot whales (Globicephala macrorhynchus) off the SW coast of Tenerife, Canary Islands.* Paper presented at the Abstracts of the World Marine Mammal Science Conference, Monaco.

Schellart, N. A. M., & Popper, A. N. (1992). Functional aspects of the evolution of the auditory system of actinopterygian fish. Pages 295-322 in D. B. Webster, R. R. Fay, and A. N. Popper (Eds.). *The evolutionary biology of hearing*. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag.

Schevill, W. E., & Watkins, W. A. (1966). Sound structure and directionality in *Orcinus* (killer whale). *Zoologica, 51*(2), 71-76.

Schevill, W. E., & Watkins, W. A. (1972). Intense low-frequency sounds from an Antarctic minke whale, (*Balaenoptera acurostrata*). *Breviora 388*, 1-8.

Schilling, M. R., Seipt, I., Weinrich, M. T., Frohock, S. E., Kuhlberg, A. E., & Clapham, P. J. (1992). Behavior of individually-identified sei whales *Balaenoptera borealis* during an episodic influx into the southern Gulf of Maine in 1986. *Fishery Bulletin, 90*, 749-755.

Schlundt, C. E., Dear, R. L., Houser, D. S., Bowles, A. E., Reidarson, T., & Finneran, J. J. (2011). Auditory evoked potentials in two short-finned pilot whales (*Globicephala macrorhynchus*). *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 129*(2), 1111-1116. doi:10.1121/1.3531875.

Schorr, G. S., Baird, R. W., Hanson, M. B., Webster, D. L., McSweeney, D. J., & Andrews, R. D. (2009). Movements of satellite-tagged Blainville's beaked whales off the island of Hawaii. *Endangered Species Research*. doi: 10.3354/esr00229.

Schorr, G. S., Falcone, E. A., Moretti, D. J., & Andrews, R. D. (2014). First long-term behavioral records from Cuvier's beaked whales (*Ziphius cavirostris*) reveal record-breaking dives. *PLoS ONE, 9*(3), 1-10. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0092633.g001.

Schotten, M., Au, W. W. L., Lammers, M. O., & Aubauer, R. (2004). Echolocation recordings and localization of wild spinner dolphins (*Stenella longirostris*) and pantropical spotted dolphins (*S. attenuata*) using a four-hydrophone array. Pages 393-400 in J. A. Thomas, C. F. Moss, & M. Vater, (Eds.). *Echolocation in bats and dolphins*. Chicago, IL: University of Chicago Press.

Schreiber, R., & Chovan, J. (1986). Roosting by pelagic seabirds: Energetic, populational, and social considerations. *The Condor, 88*, 487–492.

Schultz, K. W., Cato, D. H., Corkeron, P. J., & Bryden, M. M. (1995). Low frequency narrow-band sounds produced by bottlenose dolphins. *Marine Mammal Science, 11*(4), 503-509.

Scott, M. D., & Chivers, S. J. (1990). Distribution and herd structure of bottlenose dolphins in the eastern tropical Pacific Ocean. Pages 387-402 in S. Leatherwood & R. R. Reeves, (Eds.). *The bottlenose dolphin*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Scott, M., Chivers, S. J., Olson, R., & Lindsay, R. (1993). *Radio tracking of spotted dolphin associated with tuna in the eastern tropical Pacific.* Paper presented at the 10th biennial conference on the biology of marine mammals, Galveston, TX.

Scott, M. D., Hohn, A. A., Westgate, A. J., Nicolas, J. R., Whitaker, B. R., & Campbell, W. B. (2001). A note on the release and tracking of a rehabilitated pygmy sperm whale (*Kogia breviceps*). *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 3*(1), 87-94.

Sears, R., & Perrin, W. F. (2018). Blue whale (*Balaenoptera musculus*). Pages 110-114 in B.G. Würsig, J.G.M. Thewissen, & K. Kovacs, Eds. *Encyclopedia of marine mammal*s, *3rd Ed.* San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Sekiguchi, K., Klages, N., Findlay, K., & Best, P. (1993). *Feeding habits and possible movements of southern bottlenose whales (Hyperoodon planifrons).* Paper presented at the Proceedings of the NIPR Symposium on Polar Biology, No. 6, Tokyo, Japan.

Sekiguchi, K., Onishi, H., Sasaki, H., Haba, S., Iwahara, Y., Mizuguchi, D., Otsuki, M., Saijo, D., Nishizawa, B., Mizuno, H., Hoshi, N., & Kamito, T. (2014). Sightings of the western stock of North Pacific right whales (*Eubalaena japonica*) in the far southeast of the Kamchatka Peninsula. *Marine Mammal Science, 30*(3), 1199-1209. doi:10.1111/mms.12105.

Seminoff, J. A. (2004). *Chelonia mydas*. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2004. e.T4615A11037468. Retrieved from <http://http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2004.RLTS. T4615A11037468.en>.

Seminoff, J. A., Allen, C. D., Balazs, G. H., Dutton, P. H., Eguchi, T., Haas, H. L., Hargrove, S. A., Jensen, M. P., Klemm, D. L., Lauritsen, A. M., MacPherson, S. L., Opay, P., Possardt, E. E., Pultz, S. L., Seney, E. E., Houtan, K. S. V., & Waples, R. S. (2015). *Status review of the green turtle (Chelonia mydas) under the U.S. Endangered Species Act.* NOAA Technical Memorandum NOAA-NMFS-SWFSC-539. La Jolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Science Center.

Shane, S. H. (1995). Behavior patterns of pilot whales and Risso's dolphins off Santa Catalina Island, California. *Aquatic Mammals, 21*(3), 195-197.

Shearer, J. M., Quick, N. J., Cioffi, W. R., Baird, R. W., Webster, D. L., Foley, H. J., . . . Read, A. J. (2019). Diving behaviour of Cuvier’s beaked whales (*Ziphius cavirostris*) off Cape Hatteras, North Carolina. *Royal Society Open Science, 6*, 181728. doi:10.1098/rsos.181728.

Shibuya, M., Kobayashi, M., Shitamichi, Y., Miyamoto, S., & Murakami, K. (2016). Changes in haul-out use by spotted seals (*Phoca largha*) on Rebun Island, Hokkado, Japan, in response to controls on harmful animals. Russian Journal of Marine Biology, 42(4), 341–350. doi:10.1134/S106307401604009X.

Shillinger, G. L., Palacios, D. M., Bailey, H., Bograd, S. J., Swithenbank, A. M., Gaspar, P., Wallace, B. P., Spotila, J. R., Paladino, F. V., Piedra, R., Eckert, S. A., & Block, B. A. (2008). Persistent leatherback turtle migrations present opportunities for conservation. *PLoS Biology, 6(*7), e171. doi:10.1371/journal.pbio.0060171.

Shine, R., Bonnet, X., Elphick, M.J., & Barrott, E.G. (2004). A novel foraging mode in snakes: Browsing by the sea snake *Emydocephalus annulatus* (Serpentes, Hydrophiidae). *Functional Ecology, 18*(1), 16–24.

Shmigirilov, A., Mednikova, A., & Israel, J. (2007). Comparison of biology of the Sakhalin sturgeon, Amur sturgeon and kaluga from the Amur River, Sea of Okhotsk and Sea of Japan biogeographic province. *Environmental Biology of Fishes, 79*, 383-395.

Silber, G. K. (1986). The relationship of social vocalizations to surface behavior and aggression in the Hawaiian humpback whale *Megaptera novaeangliae*. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 64*(10), 2075-2080.

Sills, J. M., Southall, B. L., & Reichmuth, C. (2014). Amphibious hearing in spotted seals (*Phoca largha*): underwater audiograms, aerial audiograms and critical ratio measurements. *The Journal of Experimental Biology,* 217(Pt 5), 726-734. doi:10.1242/jeb.097469.

Simon, M., Ugarte, F., Wahlberg, M., & Miller, L. A. (2006). Icelandic killer whales *Orcinus orca* use a pulsed call suitable for manipulating the schooling behaviour of herring *Clupea harengus*. *Bioacoustics, 16*, 57-74.

Simonis, A. E., Baumann-Pickering, S., Oleson, E., Melcon, M. L., Gassmann, M., Wiggins, S. M., & Hildebrand, J. A. (2012). High-frequency modulated signals of killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) in the North Pacific. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 131*(4), EL295-301. doi:10.1121/1.3690963.

Širović, A., Bassett, H. R., Johnson, S. C., Wiggins, S. M., & Hildebrand, J. A. (2014). Bryde's whale calls recorded in the Gulf of Mexico. *Marine Mammal Science, 30*(1), 399-409. doi:10.1111/mms.12036.

Širović, A., Wiggins, S.M., & Oleson, E.M. (2013). Ocean noise in the tropical and subtropical Pacific Ocean. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 134*(4), 2681-2689. doi:10.1121/1.4820884.

Širović, A., Williams, L. N., Kerosky, S. M., Wiggins, S. M., & Hildebrand, J. A. (2012). Temporal separation of two fin whale call types across the eastern North Pacific. *Marine Biology, 160*(1), 47-57. doi: 10.1007/s00227-012-2061-z.

Sisneros, J. A., & Rogers, P. H. (2016). Directional hearing and sound source localization in fishes. Pages 121-155 in J. A. Sisneros, (Ed.). *Fish hearing and bioacoustics* 877. New York, NY: Springer.

SMRU Ltd. (2012). Supporting Documentation for Global Predicted Density Data *Unpublished Sea Mammal Research Unit (SMRU) Ltd. report*. Scottish Oceans Institute, University of St. Andrews, Scotland. St Andrews, Fife, KY16 8LB, UK.

Society for Marine Mammalogy (SMM). (2017). *List of marine mammal species and subspecies. Committee on Taxonomy, Society for Marine Mammalogy*. Accessed February 2018. <https://www.marinemammalscience.org/species-information/list-marine-mammal-species-subspecies/>.

Soldevilla, M. S., Henderson, E. E., Campbell, G. S., Wiggins, S. M., Hildebrand, J. A., & Roch, M. A. (2008). Classification of Risso's and Pacific white-sided dolphins using spectral properties of echolocation clicks. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 124*(1), 609-624.

Song, X., Wang, H., Wang, W., Gu, H., Chan, S., & Jiang, H. (2002). Satellite tracking of post-nesting movements of green turtles *Chelonia mydas* from the Gangkou Sea Turtle National Nature Reserve, China, 2001. *Marine Turtle Newsletter, 97*, 8-9.

Southall, B. L., Bowles, A. E., Ellison, W. T., Finneran, J. J., Gentry, R. L., Greene, Jr., C. R., Kastak, D., Ketten, D. R., Miller, J. H., Nachtigall, P. E., Richardson, W. J., Thomas, J. A., & Tyack, P. L. (2007). Marine mammal noise exposure criteria: Initial scientific recommendations. *Aquatic Mammals, 33*(4), 411-521.

Southall, B. L., Finneran, J. J., Reichmuth, C., Nachtigall, P. E., Ketten, D. R., Bowles, A. E., Ellison, W. T., Nowacek, D. P., & Tyack, P. L. (2019). Marine mammal noise exposure criteria: Updated scientific recommendations for residual hearing effects. *Aquatic Mammals, 45*, 125-232.

Sperling, J. B. (2007). *The behaviour and physiology of the gravid flatback turtle (Natator depressus).* Doctoral dissertation, The University of Queensland, Australia.

Sperling, J. B. (2008). Two new dive types with a gradual ascent phase in flatback turtles (*Natator depressus*). *Marine Turtle Newsletter, 120*, 9-11.

Spotila, J. R. (2004). *Sea turtles: A complete guide to their biology, behavior, and conservation*. Baltimore, MD: John Hopkins University Press.

Springer, A. M., Estes, J. A., van Vliet, G. B., Williams, T. M., Doak, D. F., Danner, E. M., Forney, K. A., & Pfister, B. (2003). Sequential megafaunal collapse in the North Pacific Ocean: An ongoing legacy of industrial whaling? *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America, 100*(21), 12223-12228.

Stacey, P. J., Leatherwood, S., & Baird, R. W. (1994). *Pseudorca crassidens*. *Mammalian Species, 0*(456), 1-6.

Stafford, K. M., Fox, C. G., & Clark, D. S. (1998). Long-range acoustic detection and localization of blue whale calls in the northeast Pacific Ocean. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 104*(6), 3616-3625.

Stafford, K. M., Nieukirk, S. L., & Fox, C. G. (2001). Geographic and seasonal variation of blue whale calls in the North Pacific. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 3*(1), 65-76.

Stanistreet, J. E., Risch, D., & Van Parijs, S. M. (2013). Passive acoustic tracking of singing humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) on a northwest Atlantic feeding ground. *PLoS ONE, 8*(4), e61263. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0061263.

Starbird, C. H., Hillis-Starr, Z., Harvey, J. T., & Eckert, S. A. (1999). Internesting movements and behavior of hawksbill turtles (*Eretmochelys imbricata*) around Buck Island Reef National Monument, U.S. Virgin Islands. *Chelonian Conservation and Biology, 3*, 237– 243.

State of Hawaii. (2013). Marine reptiles: Olive ridley sea turtle *Lepidochelys olivacea.* State of Hawaii, Division of Forestry and Wildlife. Retrieved from <https://dlnr.hawaii.gov/wildlife/files/2013/09/Fact-Sheet-olive-ridley-sea-turtle.pdf>.

Statistica. (2018). Number of offshore rigs worldwide as of January 2018 by region. Retrieved from <https://www.statista.com/statistics/279100/number-of-offshore-rigs-worldwide-by-region/>.

Stelle, L. L., Megill, W. M., & Kinzel, M. R. (2008). Activity budget and diving behavior of gray whales (*Eschrichtius robustus*) in feeding grounds off coastal British Columbia. *Marine Mammal Science, 24*(3), 462–478. doi:10.1111/j.1748-7692.2008.00205.x.

Stephenson, J. R., Gingerich, A. J., Brown, R. S., Pflugrath, B. D., Deng, Z., Carlson, T. J., . . . Seaburg, A. G. (2010). Assessing barotrauma in neutrally and negatively buoyant juvenile salmonids exposed to simulated hydro-turbine passage using a mobile aquatic barotrauma laboratory. *Fisheries Research, 106*, 271-278. doi:10.1016/j.fishres.2010.08.006.

Sterling, J. T., & Ream, R. R. (2004). At-sea behavior of juvenile male northern fur seals (*Callorhinus ursinus*). *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 82*(10), 1621-1637.

Sterling, J. T., Springer, A. M., Iverson, S. J., Johnson, S. P., Pelland, N. A., Johnson, D. S., . . . Bond, N. A. (2014). The sun, moon, wind, and biological imperative–shaping contrasting wintertime migration and foraging strategies of adult male and female northern fur seals (*Callorhinus ursinus*). *PLoS ONE, 9*(4), e93068. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0093068.g001.

Stern, S. J. (1992). Surfacing rates and surfacing patterns of minke whales (*Balaenoptera acutorostrata*) off central California, and the probability of a whale surfacing within visual range. *Report of the International Whaling Commission, 42*, 379-385.

Stevick, P. T., Neves, M. C., Johansen, F., Engel, M. H., Allen, J., Marcondes, M. C., & Carlson, C. (2011). A quarter of a world away: Female humpback whale moves 10,000 km between breeding areas. *Biology Letters, 7*(2), 299-302. doi:10.1098/rsbl.2010.0717.

Stewart, B. S. (2009). Diving behavior. Pages 321-327 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*, 2nd Ed. New York, NY: Academic Press.

Stewart, B. S., Antonelis, G. A., Baker, J. D., & Yochem, P. K. (2006). Foraging biogeography of Hawaiian monk seals in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. *Atoll Research Bulletin, 543*, 131-145.

Stewart, B. S., Harvey, J., & Yochem, P. K. (2001). Post-release monitoring and tracking of a rehabilitated California gray whale. *Aquatic Mammals, 27.3*, 294-300.

Stewart, J. D., Hoyos-Padilla, E. M., Kumli, K. R., & Rubin, R. D. (2016). Deep-water feeding and behavioral plasticity in *Manta birostris* revealed by archival tags and submersible observations. *Zoology, 119*(5), 406-413.

Stimpert, A. K., Au, W. W., Parks, S. E., Hurst, T., & Wiley, D. N. (2011). Common humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) sound types for passive acoustic monitoring. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 129*(1), 476-482. doi:10.1121/1.3504708.

Stimpert, A. K., Wiley, D. N., Au, W. W. L., Johnson, M. P., & Arsenault, R. (2007). Megapclicks': Acoustic click trains and buzzes produced during night-time foraging of humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*). *Biology Letters, 3*(5), 467-470. doi:10.1098/rsbl.2007.0281.

Storch, S., Wilson, R. P., Hillis-Starr, Z.-M., & Adelung, D. (2005). Cold-blooded divers: Temperature-dependent dive performance in the wild hawksbill turtle *Eretmochelys imbricata*. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 293*, 263-271.

Straley, J. M. (1999). *Overwintering North Pacific humpback whales in Alaskan waters.* Paper presented at the 13th biennial meeting of the Society for Marine Mammalogy, Kihei, Maui, Hawaii.

Strong, C. (1990). *Ventilation patterns and behavior of Balaenopterid whales in the Gulf of California, Mexico.* Master's thesis, California State University, Moss Landing.

Subramaniam, R. C., Melbourne-Thomas, J., Davidson, A. T., & Corney, S. P. (2017). Mechanisms driving Antarctic microbial community responses to ocean acidification: A network modelling approach. *Polar Biology, 40*(3), 727-734. doi: 10.1007/s00300-016-1989-8.

Sudara, S., & Mahakunayanakul, S. (1998, 22-24 January 1998). *Distribution and river intrusion of dolphins in the inner Gulf of Thailand.* Paper presented at the World Marine Mammal Science Conference, Monaco.

Suganthi, A.M. (2002). *Status of sea turtles in India with emphasis on Andaman and Nicobar Islands.* Paper presented at the Pages 63-70 in Proceedings of the 3rd Workshop on SEASTAR2000.

Sutherland, R. W., & E. G. Sutherland. (2003). Status of the flatback sea turtle (*Natator depressus*) rookery on Crab Island, Australia, with notes on predation by crocodiles. *Chelonian Conservation and Biology, 4*(3), 612-619.

Swartz, S. (2018). Gray whale *Eschrichtius robustus*. Pages 422-428 in B. Würsig, J.G.M. Thewissen, & K. Kovacs, (Eds). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals, 3rd Ed*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Swimmer, Y., Arauz, R., McCracken, M., McNaughton, L., Ballestero, J., Musyl, M., . . . Brill, R. (2006). Diving behavior and delayed mortality of olive ridley sea turtles *Lepidochelys olivacea* after their release from longline fishing gear. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 323* 253–261.

Swimmer, Y., McNaughton, L., Foley, D., Moxey, L., & Nielsen, A. (2009). Movements of olive ridley sea turtles *Lepidochelys olivacea* and associated oceanographic features as determined by improved light-based geolocation. *Endangered Species Research, 10*, 245-254. doi: 10.3354/esr00164.

Szymanski, M. D., Bain, D. E., Kiehl, K., Pennington, S., Wong, S., & Henry, K. R. (1999). Killer whale (*Orcinus orca*) hearing: Auditory brainstem response and behavioral audiograms. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 106*(2), 1134-1141.

Tachikawa, H., Suganuma, H., Sato, F., Yamaguchi, M., Horikoshi, K., Kurata, Y., & Kimura, J. (1994). Long distance dispersal and remigration of adult green turtles in the Ogasawara Islands, Japan*.* Paper presented at the Proceedings of the Thirteenth Annual Symposium on Sea Turtle Biology and Conservation. *NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SEFSC-341*, 265.

Taylor, B.L., Baird, R., Barlow, J., Dawson, S.M., Ford, J., Mead, J.G., Notarbartolo di Sciara, G., Wade, P., & Pitman, R.L. (2008). *Physeter macrocephalus. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2008*: e.T41755A10554884. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2008.RLTS. T41755A10554884.en>.

Taylor, B.L., Baird, R., Barlow, J., Dawson, S.M., Ford, J., Mead, J.G., Notarbartolo di Sciara, G., Wade, P., & Pitman, R.L. (2008a). *Berardius bairdii. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2008*: e.T2763A9478643. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2008.RLTS. T2763A9478643.en>.

Taylor, B.L., Baird, R., Barlow, J., Dawson, S.M., Ford, J., Mead, J.G., Notarbartolo di Sciara, G., Wade, P., & Pitman, R.L. (2008b). *Ziphius cavirostris. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2008*: e.T23211A9429826. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2008.RLTS. T23211A9429826.en>.

Taylor, B.L., Baird, R., Barlow, J., Dawson, S.M., Ford, J.K.B., Mead, J.G., Notarbartolo di Sciara, G., Wade, P., & Pitman, R.L. (2012a). *Kogia breviceps. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2012*: e.T11047A17692192. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2012.RLTS. T11047A17692192.en>.

Taylor, B.L., Baird, R., Barlow, J., Dawson, S.M., Ford, J.K.B., Mead, J.G., Notarbartolo di Sciara, G., Wade, P., & Pitman, R.L. (2012b). *Kogia sima. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2012*: e.T11048A17695273. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2012.RLTS. T11048A17695273.en>.

Tershy, B. R. (1992). Body size diet, habitat use, and social behavior of *Balaenoptera* whales in the Gulf of California. *Journal of Mammalogy, 73*(3), 477-486.

The Turtle Expert Working Group. (2007). *An assessment of the leatherback turtle population in the Atlantic Ocean.* NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SEFSC-555. Miami, FL: Southeast Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Therrien, S., Carr, C., & Wells-Berlin, A. (2012). Auditory brainstem response in diving birds. *Frontiers in Behavioral Neuroscience*. Poster presented at the Tenth International Congress of Neuroethology, College Park, MD. doi: 10.3389/conf.fnbeh.2012.27.00377.

Thewissen, J. G. M. (2002). Hearing. Pages 570-574 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*, 2nd Ed. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Thiessen, G. J. (1958). Threshold of hearing of a ring-billed gull. *The Journal of Acoustical Society of America, 30*(11).

Thode, A., Bonnel, J., Thieury, M., Fagan, A., Verlinden, C., Wright, D., . . . Crance, J. (2017). Using nonlinear time warping to estimate North Pacific right whale calling depths in the Bering Sea. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 141*(5), 3059–3069. doi:10.1121/1.4982200.

Thode, A., Mellinger, D. K., Stienessen, S., Martinez, A., & Mullin, K. (2002). Depth-dependent acoustic features of diving sperm whales (*Physeter macrocephalus*) in the Gulf of Mexico. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 112*(1), 308-321.

Thomas, J., Moore, P., Withrow, R., & Stoermer, M. (1990b). Underwater audiogram of a Hawaiian monk seal (*Monachus schauinslandi*). *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 87*(1), 417-420.

Thomas, J. A., & Turl, C. W. (1990). Echolocation characteristics and range detection threshold of a false killer whale (*Pseudorca crassidens*). Pages 321-334 in J. A. Thomas & R. A. Kastelein (Eds.). *Sensory abilities of cetaceans: Laboratory and field evidence*. New York, NY: Plenum.

Thomas, J. A., Moore, P. W. B., Nachtigall, E., & Gilmartin, W. G. (1990a). A new sound from a stranded pygmy sperm whale. *Aquatic Mammals, 16*, 28-30.

Thompson, P. O., & Friedl, W. A. (1982). A long term study of low frequency sounds from several species of whales off Oahu, Hawaii. *Cetology, 45*, 1-19.

Thompson, P. O., Cummings, W. C., & Ha, S. J. (1986). Sounds, source levels, and associated behavior of humpback whales, Southeast Alaska. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 80*(3), 735-740.

Thompson, P. O., Findley, L. T., & Vidal, O. (1992). 20-Hz pulses and other vocalizations of fin whales, *Balaenoptera physalus*, in the Gulf of California, Mexico. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 92*(6), 3051-3057.

Thompson, T. J., Winn, H. E., & Perkins, P. J. (1979). Mysticete Sounds. Pages 403-431 in H. E. Winn & B. L. Olla, (Eds.). *Behavior of marine animals: Current perspectives in* research, Vol. 3: Cetaceans.

Thomson, D. H., & Richardson, W. J. (1995). Marine Mammal Sounds. Pages 159-204 in W. J. Richardson, C. R. Greene, C. I. Malme, & D. H. Thomson, (Eds.). *Marine mammals and noise* (1st ed.). San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Tillman, M. F. (1977). Estimates of population size for the North Pacific sei whale. *Report of the International Whaling Commission Special Issue, 1,* 98-106.

Tolotti, M. T., Filmalter, J. D., Bach, P., Travassos, P., Seret, B., & Dagorn, L. (2015). Banning is not enough: The complexities of oceanic shark management by tuna regional fisheries management organizations. *Global Ecology and Conservation, 4,* 1-7.

Tougaard, J., Henriksen, O. D., & Miller, L. A. (2009). Underwater noise from three types of offshore wind turbines: estimation of impact zones for harbor porpoises and harbor seals. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 125*(6), 3766-3773. doi:10.1121/1.3117444.

Tremel, D. P., Thomas, J. A., Ramirez, K. T., Dye, G. S., Bachman, W. A., Orban, A. N., & Grimm, K. K. (1998). Underwater hearing sensitivity of a Pacific white-sided dolphin, *Lagenorhynchus obliquidens*. *Aquatic Mammals, 24*(2), 63-69.

Trukhin, A. M. (2019). Spotted seal (*Phoca largha*) population increase in the Peter the Great Bay, Sea of Japan. *Marine Mammal Science*. doi:10.1111/mms.12588.

Tubelli, A. A., Zosuls, A., Ketten, D. R., Yamato, M., & Mountain, D. C. (2012). A prediction of the minke whale (*Balaenoptera acutorostrata*) middle-ear transfer function. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 132*(5), 3263-3272. doi:10.1121/1.4756950.

Tyack, P. (1981). Interactions between singing Hawaiian humpback whales and conspecifics nearby. *Behavioral Ecology and Sociobiology, 8*, 105-116.

Tyack, P. L. (2000). Functional aspects of cetacean communication. In J. Mann, R. C. Connor, P. L. Tyack, & H. Whitehead (Eds.). *Cetacean societies: Field studies of dolphins and whales*. Chicago, IL: University of Chicago Press.

Tyack, P. L. (2008). Implications for marine mammals of large-scale changes in the marine acoustic Environment. *Journal of Mammalogy, 89*(32), 549-558.

Tyne, J. A., Pollock, K. H., Johnston, D. W., & Bejder, L. (2014). Abundance and survival rates of the Hawai'i Island associated spinner dolphin (*Stenella longirostris*) stock. *PLoS ONE, 9*(1), e86132. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0086132.

Tyurneva, O.Y., Yakovlev, Y.M., Vertyankin, V.V., & Selin, N.I. (2010). The peculiarities of foraging migrations of the Korean-Okhotsk gray whale (*Eschrichtius robustus*) population in Russian waters of the Far Eastern seas. *Russian Journal of Marine Biology, 36*(2), 117-124. doi:10.1134/s1063074010020069.

United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization (UNESCO). (2009). Pelagos: The cetacean sanctuary. Retrieved from <http://whc.unesco.org/en/tentativelists/2032/>.

Urbán R., J., Weller, D., Tyurneva, O., Swartz, S., Bradford, A., Yakovlev, Y., Sychenko, O, Rosales N., H., Martínez A., S., Burdin, A., & Gómez-Gallardo U., A. (2013). *Report on the photographic comparison of the Sakhalin Island and Kamchatka Peninsula with the Mexican gray whale catalogues.* Paper SC/65/BRG04 presented to the Scientific Committee of the International Whaling Commission. Retrieved from <https://www.academia.edu/33141597/SC_65_BRG04_Report_on_the_Photographic_Comparison_of_the_Sakhalin_Island_and_Kamchatka_Peninsula_with_the_Mexican_Gray_Whale_Catalogues>.

Urick, R. J. (1983). *Principles of underwater sound* (3rd Ed.). New York, NY: McGraw-Hill Book Company.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS). (2009). Cyber salmon—Chinook salmon. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Field Office, Alaska Region. Retrieved from <https://www.fws.gov/alaska/cybersalmon/chin.htm>.

USFWS. (2009a). Cyber salmon—chum salmon. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Field Office, Alaska Region. Retrieved from <https://www.fws.gov/alaska/cybersalmon/chum.htm>.

USFWS. (2012). Marianas Trench marine national monument. Retrieved from <https://www.fws.gov/uploadedFiles/Region_1/NWRS/Zone_1/Mariana_Trench_Marine_National_Monument/Documents/MTMNM%20brief%205-24-2012.pdf>.

USFWS. (2016). Biological opinion, Navy's Northwest training and testing activities; Offshore waters of northern California, Oregon, and Washington, and inland waters of Puget Sound, and portions of the Olympic Peninsula. USFWS reference 01EWFW00-2015-F-0251. Lacey, WA: Washington Fish and Wildlife Officec, USFWS.

van Beest, F. M., Teilmann, J., Dietz, R., Galatius, A., Mikkelsen, L., Stalder, D., . . . Nabe-Nielsen, J. (2018). Environmental drivers of harbour porpoise fine-scale movements. *Marine Biology, 165*(95), 1-13. doi: 10.1007/s00227-018-3346-7.

Van Buskirk, J., & Crowder, L.B. (1994). Life-history variation in marine turtles. *Copeia, 1994*, 66–81.

Van Cise, A. M., Martien , K. K., Mahaffy, S. D., Baird, R. W., Webster, D. L., Fowler, J. H., . . . Morin, P. A. (2017b). Familial social structure and socially driven genetic differentiation in Hawaiian short-finned pilot whales. *Molecular Ecology, 26*, 6730-6741. doi:10.1111/mec.14397.

Van Cise, A. M., Morin, P. A., Baird, R. W., Lang, A. R., Robertson, K. M., Chivers, S. J., . . . Martien , K. K. (2016). Redrawing the map: mtDNA provides new insight into the distribution and diversity of short-finned pilot whales in the Pacific Ocean. *Marine Mammal Science, 32*(4), 1177-1199. doi:10.1111/mms.12315.

Van Cise, A. M., Roch, M. A., Baird, R. W., Mooney, T. A., & Barlow, J. (2017a). Acoustic differentiation of Shiho- and Naisa-type short-finned pilot whales in the Pacific Ocean. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 141*(2), 737-748. doi:10.1121/1.4974858.

Van Dam, R. P., & Diez, C. E. (1996). Diving behavior of immature hawksbills (*Eretmochelys imbricata*) in a Caribbean cliff-wall habitat. *Marine Biology, 127,* 171-178.

Van Opzeeland, I., Van Parijs, S., Kindermann, L., Burkhardt, E., & Boebel, O. (2013). Calling in the cold: Pervasive acoustic presence of humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) in Antarctic coastal waters. *PLoS ONE, 8*(9), e73007. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0073007.

Varga, L. M., Wiggins, S. M., & Hildebrand, J. A. (2018). Behavior of singing fin whales *Balaenoptera physalus* tracked acoustically offshore of Southern California. *Endangered Species Research, 35*, 113-124. doi: 10.3354/esr00881.

Veirs, S., Veirs, V., & Wood, .J.D. (2016). Ship noise extends to frequencies used for echolocation by endangered killer whales. *PeerJ, 4*, e1657. doi: 10.7717/peerj.1657.

Verboom, W. C., & Kastelein, R. A. (1995). Acoustic signals by harbour porpoises (*Phocoena phocoena*). In P. E. Nachtigall, J. Lein, W. W. L. Au, & A. J. Read, (Eds.). *Harbour porpoises, laboratory studies to reduce bycatch*. Woerden, The Netherlands: DeSpil Publishers.

Vermeij, M. J. A., Marhaver, K. L., Huijbers, C. M., Nagelkerken, I., & Simpson, S.D. (2010). Coral larvae move toward reef sounds. *PLoS ONE, 5*(5), e10660.

Víkingsson, G. A., & Heide-Jørgensen, M. P. (2015). First indications of autumn migration routes and destination of common minke whales tracked by satellite in the North Atlantic during 2001-2011. *Marine Mammal Science, 31*(1), 376-385. doi:10.1111/mms.12144.

Villadsgaard, A., Wahlberg, M., & Tougaard, J. (2007). Echolocation signals of wild harbour porpoises, *Phocoena phocoena*. *The Journal of Experimental Biology, 210*(1), 56-64.

von Brandis, R. G., Mortimer, J. A., & Reilly, B. K. (2010). In-water observations of the diving behaviour of immature hawksbill turtles, *Eretmochelys imbricata*, on a coral reef at D'Arros Island, Republic of Seychelles. *Chelonian Conservation and Biology, 9*(1), 26–32.

Vu, E. T., Risch, D., Clark, C. W., Gaylord, S., Hatch, L. T., Thompson, M. A., Wiley, D. N., & Van Parijs, S. M. (2012). Humpback whale song occurs extensively on feeding grounds in the western North Atlantic Ocean. *Aquatic Biology, 14*(2), 175-183. doi: 10.3354/ab00390.

Wada, S., Oishi, M., & Yamada, T. K. (2003). A newly discovered species of living baleen whale. *Nature, 426*(6964), 278-281.

Wade, P. R., & Baker, C. S. (2011). A summary of the plausibility of western North Pacific minke whale stock structure hypotheses I, II and III. *Report of the International Whaling Commission,* SC/63/RMP8.

Wade, P. R., & Gerrodette, T. (1993). Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. *Report of the International Whaling Commission, 43,* 477-493.

Wade, P. R., Kennedy, A., LeDuc, R., Barlow, J., Carretta, J., Shelden, K., Perryman, W., Pitman, R., Robertson, K., Rone, B., Carlos Salinas, J., Zerbini, A., Brownell, Jr., R. L., & Clapham, P. (2011). The world's smallest whale population. *Biology Letters, 7*, 83-85.

Wade, P. R., Quinn II, T. J., Barlow, J., Baker, C. S., Burdin, A. S., Calambokidis, J., Clapham, P. J., Falcone, E. A., Ford, J. K. B., Gabriele, C. M., Mattila, D. K., Rojas-Bracho, L., Straley, J. M., & Taylor, B. (2016). Estimates of abundance and migratory destination for North Pacific humpback whales in both summer feeding areas and winter mating and calving areas. Paper SC/66b/IA/21 presented at the International Whaling Commission annual meeting SC66b, 2016, Bled, Slovenia. Retrieved from <https://archive.iwc.int/pages/search.php?search=!collection24462&bc_from=themes>. 41 pages.

Wahlberg, M. (2002). The acoustic behaviour of diving sperm whales observed with a hydrophone array. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology, 281*(1-2), 53-62.

Wahlberg, M., Beedholm, K., Heerfordt, A., & Mohl, B. (2011). Characteristics of biosonar signals from the northern bottlenose whale, *Hyperoodon ampullatus*. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 130*(5), 3077-3084. doi: 10.1121/1.3641434.

Wahlberg, M., Jensen, F. H., Aguilar Soto, N., Beedholm, K., Bejder, L., Oliveira, C., Rasmussen, M., Simon, M., Villadsgaard, A., & Madsen, P. T. (2011b). Source parameters of echolocation clicks from wild bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops aduncus* and *Tursiops truncatus*). *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 130*(4), 2263. doi:10.1121/1.3624822.

Walcott, J., Eckert, S., & Horrocks, J. A. (2013). Diving behaviour of hawksbill turtles during the inter-nesting interval: Strategies to conserve energy. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology, 448,* 171-178. doi:10.1016/j.jembe.2013.07.007.

Walker, T. A., & Parmenter, C. J. (1990). Absence of a pelagic phase in the life cycle of the flatback turtle, *Natator depressa* (Garman). *Journal of Biogeography, 17*, 275-278.

Wallace, B. P., Tiwari, M., & Girondot, M. (2013). *Dermochelys coriacea. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2013*: e.T6494A43526147. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2013-2.RLTS.T6494A43526147.en> and <http://www.iucnredlist.org/attachments/2299>.

Wallace, B. P., Zolkewitz, M., & James, M. C. (2015). Fine-scale foraging ecology of leatherback turtles. *Frontiers in Ecology and Evolution, 3*(15). doi:10.3389/fevo.2015.00015.

Walter, T.C., & Boxshall, G. (2018). World of copepods database. Retrieved from <http://www.marinespecies.org/copepoda on 2018-02-08>.

Wang, J. Y., & Yang, S. C. (2009). Indo-Pacific Dolphin *Tursiops aduncus*. Pages 602-607 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen, (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*, 2nd Ed. New York, NY: Academic Press.

Wang, J. Y., Riehl, K. N., Klein, M. N., Javdan, S., Hoffman, J. M., Dungan, S. Z., Dares, L. E. & Araujo-Wang, C. (2016). Biology and conservation of the Taiwanese humpback dolphin, *Sousa chinensis taiwanensis*. *Advances in Marine Biology, 73*, 91-117.

Watanabe, H., Okazaki, M., Tamura, T., Konishi, K., Inagake, D., Bando, T., . . . Miyashita, T. (2012). Habitat and prey selection of common minke, sei, and Bryde's whales in mesoscale during summer in the subarctic and transition regions of the western North Pacific. *Fisheries Science, 78*(3), 557-567. doi: 10.1007/s12562-012-0480-x.

Watkins, W. A. (1967). The harmonic interval: Fact or artifact in spectral analysis of pulse trains. Pages 15-43 in W. N. Tavolga, (Ed.). *Marine bio-acoustics*, Vol. 2. New York, NY: Pergamon Press.

Watkins, W. A. (1981). Activities and underwater sounds of fin whales. *The Scientific Reports of the Whales Research Institute (33*), 83-117.

Watkins, W. A., & Ray, G. C. (1977). Underwater sounds from ribbon seal, *Phoca fasciata*. *Fishery Bulletin, 75*, 450-453.

Watkins, W. A., & Schevill, W. E. (1977). Sperm whale codas. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 62*, 1485-1490.

Watkins, W. A., Daher, M. A., Reppucci, G. M., George, J. E., Martin, D. L., DiMarzio, N. A., & Gannon, D. P. (2000). Seasonality and distribution of whale calls in the North Pacific. *Oceanography, 13,* 62-67.

Watkins, W. A., Daher, M. A., DiMarzio, N. A., Samuels, A., Wartzok, D., Fristrup, K. M., Howey, P. W., & Maiefski, R. R. (2002). Sperm whale dives tracked by radio tag telemetry. *Marine Mammal Science, 18(*1), 55-68.

Watkins, W. A., Daher, M. A., Fristrup, K., & Notarbartolo di Sciara, G. (1994). Fishing and acoustic behavior of Fraser's dolphin (*Lagenodelphis hosei*) near Dominica, southeast Caribbean. *Caribbean Journal of Science, 30*(1-2), 76-82.

Watkins, W. A., Tyack, P., & Moore, K. E. (1987a). The 20-Hz signals of finback whales (*Balaenoptera physalus*). *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 82*(6), 1901-1912.

Watkins, W. A., Tyack, P., & Moore, K. E., & di Sciara, G. N. (1987b). *Steno bredaneisis* in the Mediterranean Sea. *Marine Mammal Science, 3*(1), 78-82.

Wearmouth, V.J, & Sims, D.W. (2008). Sexual segregation of marine fish, reptiles, birds and mammals: behaviour patterns, mechanisms and conservation implications. *Advances in Marine Biology, 54,* 107-170.

Webb, J. F., Montgomery, J. C., & Mogdans, J. (2008). Bioacoustics and the lateral line system of fishes. Pages 145-182 in J. F. Webb, R. R. Fay, & A. N. Popper (Eds.). *Fish bioacoustics*. New York, NY: Springer.

Weilgart, L., & Whitehead, H. (1993). Coda communication by sperm whales (*Physeter macrocephalus*) off the Galapagos Islands. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 71*(4), 744-752.

Weilgart, L., & Whitehead, H. (1997). Group-specific dialects and geographical variation in coda repertoire in South Pacific sperm whales. *Behavioral Ecology and Sociobiology, 40*(5), 277-285.

Weirathmueller, M. J., Wilcock, W. S., & Soule, D. C. (2013). Source levels of fin whale 20 Hz pulses measured in the Northeast Pacific Ocean. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 13*3(2), 741-749. doi:10.1121/1.4773277.

Weller, D. W., Bradford, A. L., Kato, H., Bando, T., Otani, S., Burdin, A. M., & R.L. Brownell, J. (2008). A photographic match of a western gray whale between Sakhalin Island, Russia, and Honshu, Japan: The first link between the feeding ground and a migratory corridor. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 10*(1), 89-91.

Weller, D. W., Burdin, A. M., Würsig, B., Taylor, B. L., & Brownell, R. L., Jr. (2002). The western gray whale: A review of past exploitation, current status and potential threats. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 4*(1), 7-12.

Weller, D. W., Klimek, A., Bradford, A. L., Calambokidis, J., Lang, A. R., Gisborne, B., Burdin, A. M. Szaniszlo, W., Urbán, J., Gomez-Gallardo Unzueta, A., Swartz, S., & Brownell, R. L. (2012). Movements of gray whales between the western and eastern North Pacific. *Endangered Species Research, 18*(3), 193-199. doi:10.3354/esr00447.

Wells, R. (2013). Movements and dive patterns of short-finned pilot whales (*Globicephala macrorhynchus*) released from a mass stranding in the Florida Keys. *Aquatic Mammals, 39*(1), 61-72. doi:10.1578/am.39.1.2013.61.

Wells, R. S., & Scott, M. D. (2009). Common bottlenose dolphin *Tursiops truncatus*. Pages 249-255 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, & J. G. M. Thewissen, (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*, 2nd ed. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Wells, R. S., Manire, C. A., Byrd, L., Smith, D. R., Gannon, J. G., Fauquier, D., & Mullin, K., (2009). Movements and dive patterns of a rehabilitated Risso's dolphin, *Grampus griseus*, in the Gulf of Mexico and Atlantic Ocean. *Marine Mammal Science, 25*(2), 420–429.

West, K. (2018). Unpublished marine mammal stranding data and personal communication between Dr. Kristi West, Hawaii Pacific University, and Ms. Cheryl Schroeder, Marine Acoustics, Inc. on 5-7 May 2018.

Western Pacific Fishery Management Council (WPFMC). 2004. EFH/HAPC designations for fishery management units covered under the bottomfish, crustacean, pelagic, precious corals, and coral reef ecosystem fishery management plans. Honolulu, HI. Retrieved from <http://www.wpcouncil.org/documents/Western_Pacific_EFH_and_HAPC_Summary.pdf>.

WPFMC. (2009). *Western Pacific fishery management council.* Retrieved from <http://www.wpcouncil.org/>.

Westgate, A. J., Read, A. J., Berggren, P., Koopman, H. N., & Gaskin, D. E. (1995). Diving behaviour of harbour porpoises, *Phocoena phocoena*. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences, 52*, 1064-1073.

Westhoff, G., Fry, B. G., & Bleckmann, H. (2005). Sea snakes (*Lapemis curtus*) are sensitive to low-amplitude water motions. *Zoology, 108*, 195–200. doi: 10.1016/j.zool.2005.07.001.

Wever, E. G., Herman, P. N., Simmons, J. A., Hertzler, D. R. (1969). Hearing in the blackfooted penguin, *Spheniscus demerits*, as represented by the cochlear potentials. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Science USA, 63*, 676–680.

Whitehead, H. (2003). *Sperm whales: Social evolution in the ocean*. Chicago, Illinois: University of Chicago Press.

Whitehead, H. (2018). Sperm whale. Pages 919-925 in B. Würsig, J.G.M. Thewissen, & K. Kovacs, (Eds). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals, 3rd ed*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Whitehead, H., & Weilgart, L. (1991). Patterns of visually observable behaviour and vocalizations in groups of female sperm whales. *Behaviour, 118*(3-4), 275-296.

Whiting, A. U., Chaloupka, A. T. M., & Limpus, C. J. (2008). Seasonality, abundance and breeding biology of one of the largest populations of nesting flatback turtles, *Natator depressus*: Cape Domett, Western Australia. *Australian Journal of Zoology, 56*, 297-303.

Whiting, S. D., Long, J. L., & Coyne, M. (2007). Migration routes and foraging behaviour of olive ridley turtles *Lepidochelys olivacea* in northern Australia. *Endangered Species Research, 3*, 1-9.

Wiggins, S. M., Frasier, K. E., Henderson, E. E., & Hildebrand, J. A. (2013). Tracking dolphin whistles using an autonomous acoustic recorder array. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 133*(6), 3813-3818. doi:10.1121/1.4802645.

Wild, L. A., & Gabriele, C. M. (2014). Putative contact calls made by humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) in Southeastern Alaska. *Canadian Acoustics, 42*(4), 23-31.

Williams, T. M., Davis, R. W., Fuiman, L. A., Francis, J., Le, B. B. J., Horning, M., Calambokidis, J., & Croll, D. A. (2000). Sink or swim: Strategies for cost-efficient diving by marine mammals. *Science, 288*, 133-136.

Willis, K. L., Christensen-Dalsgaard, J., Ketten, D. R., & Carr, C. E. (2013). Middle ear cavity morphology is consistent with an aquatic origin for testudines. *PLoS ONE, 8*(1), e54086.

Willis, P. M., & Baird, R. W. (1998). Sightings and strandings of beaked whales on the west coast of Canada. *Aquatic Mammals, 24*(1), 21-25.

Wilson, K., Littnan, C., Halpin, P., Read, A. (2017). Integrating multiple technologies to understand the foraging behaviour of Hawaiian monk seals. *Royal Society Open Science, 4,* 160703. http://dx.doi.org/10.1098/rsos.160703.

Wilson, K., Littnan, C. L., & Read, A. J. (2017a). Movements and home ranges of monk seals in the main Hawaiian Islands. *Marine Mammal Science, 33,* 1080-1096. doi: 10.1111/mms.12429.

Wilson, K. C. (2015). Integrating multiple technologies to understand the foraging behaviour of monk seals in the main Hawaiian Islands. Doctoral dissertation, Duke University, Durham, NC.

Win, W. (2015). *Fishery sector in Myanmar*. Myanmar Department of Fisheries. Retrieved from <http://www.greengrowthdialogue.org/sites/greengrowthdialogue.org/files/publication_docs/Fishery%20sector%20in%20Myanmar%20-%20Department%20of%20Fisheries.pdf>.

Winn, H. E., & Perkins, P. J. (1976). Distribution and sounds of the minke whale, with a review of mysticete sounds. *Cetology, 19*, 1-12.

Witt, M. J., Augowet Bonguno, E., Broderick, A. C., Coyne, M. S., Formia, A., Gibudi, A., . . . Godley, B. J. (2011). Tracking leatherback turtles from the world's largest rookery: Assessing threats across the South Atlantic. *Proceedings of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences, 278*(1716), 2338-2347. doi:10.1098/rspb.2010.2467.

Witt, M. J., Baert, B., Broderick, A. C., Formia, A., Fretey, J., Gibudi, A., . . . Godley, B. J. (2009). Aerial surveying of the world's largest leatherback turtle rookery: A more effective methodology for large-scale monitoring. *Biological Conservation, 9*, 1719–1727. doi:10.1016/j.biocon.2009.03.009.

Witteveen, B. H., De Robertis, A., Guo, L., & Wynne, K. M. (2015). Using dive behavior and active acoustics to assess prey use and partitioning by fin and humpback whales near Kodiak Island, Alaska. *Marine Mammal Science 31*, 255-278.

World Register of Marine Species (WoRMS) Editorial Board (2018). WoRMS world register of marine species; statistics. Retrieved from <http://www.marinespecies.org> at VLIZ. Accessed February 2018. doi: 10.14284/170.

Würsig, B., Wells, R., & Croll, D. (1986). Behavior of gray whales summering near St. Lawrence Island, Bering Sea. *Canadian Journal of Zoology 64*, 611-621.

Yack, T. M., Barlow, J., Calambokidis, J., Southall, B., & Coates, S. (2013). Passive acoustic monitoring using a towed hydrophone array results in identification of a previously unknown beaked whale habitat. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 134*(3), 2589-2595. doi:10.1121/1.4816585.

Yakovlev, Y.M., Tyurneva, O.Y., Vertyankin, V.V., Gailey, G., & Sychenko, O. (2011). Discovering a new feeding area for calf-cow pairs of endangered western gray whales *Eschrichtius robustus* on the south-east shelf of Kamchatka in 2009 and their utilizing different feeding regions within one season. *Egyptian Journal of Aquatic Research, 37,* 1, 95-101.

Yan, H.-K., Wang, N., Wu, N., & Lin, W.-n. (2018). Abundance, habitat conditions, and conservation of the largha seal (*Phoca largha*) during the past half century in the Bohai Sea, China. *Mammal Study, 43* (1), 1-9. doi:10.3106/ms2017-0027.

Yang, L., Xu, X., Zhang, P., Han, J., Li, B., & Berggren, P. (2017). Classification of underwater vocalizations of wild spotted seals (*Phoca largha*) in Liaodong Bay, China. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 141*(3), 2256-2262. doi:10.1121/1.4979056.

Young, B. A. (2003). Snake bioacoustics: Toward a richer understanding of the behavioral ecology of snakes. *The Quarterly Review of Biology, 78*(3), 303-325.

Young, C. N., Carlson, J., Hutchinson, M., Hutt, C., Kobayashi, D., McCandless, C. T., Wraith, J. (2016). *Status review report: Oceanic whitetip shark (Carcharhinius longimanus).* Final Report to the National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources. November 2016. 162 pages.

Young Pioneer Tours. (2019). DPRK diving tour. <https://www.youngpioneertours.com/tour/dprk-scuba-diving-tour/>.

Yuen, M. M. L., Nachtigall, P. E., Breese, M., & Supin, A. Y. (2005). Behavioral and auditory evoked potential audiograms of a false killer whale (*Pseudorca crassidens*). *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 118*(4), 2688-2695.

Zeddies, D. G., Fay, R. R., Gray, M. D., Alderks, P. W., Acob, A., & Sisneros, J. A. (2012). Local acoustic particle motion guides sound-source localization behavior in the plainfin midshipman fish, *Porichthys notatus*. *The Journal of Experimental Biology*, 215(Pt 1), 152-160. doi:10.1242/jeb.064998.

Zelick, R., Mann, D., & Popper, A. N. (1999). Acoustic communication in fishes and frogs. Pages 363-411 in R. R. Fay & A. N. Popper, (Eds.). *Comparative hearing: fish and amphibians*. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag.

Zhang, P., Lu, J., Li, S., Han, J., Wang, Q., & Yang, L. (2016). In-air vocal repertoires of spotted seals, *Phoca largha*. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 140*(2), 1101–1107. doi:10.1121/1.4961048.

Zimmer, W. M. X., & Tyack, P.L. (2007). Repetitive shallow dives pose decompression risk in deep-diving beaked whales. *Marine Mammal Science, 23*(4), 888-925. doi:10.1111/j.1748-7692.2007.00152.x.

Zimmer, W. M. X., Johnson, M. P., Madsen, P. T., & Tyack, P. L. (2005a). Echolocation clicks of free-ranging Cuvier's beaked whales *(Ziphius cavirostris*). *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 117*(6), 3919-3927.

Zimmer, W. M. X., Tyack, P. L., Johnson, M. P., & Madsen, P. T. (2005b). Three-dimensional beam pattern of regular sperm whale clicks confirms bent-horn hypothesis. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 117*(3), Part I, 1473-1485.

Zoidis, A. M., Smultea, M. A., Frankel, A. S., Hopkins, J., Day, A., Ertl, S., Whitt, A., & Fertl, D. (2008). Sounds attributed to humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) calves recorded in Hawai‘i. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 123(*3), 1737-1746.

# 4 ENVIRONMENTAL CONSEQUENCES

## 4.1 Introduction

This chapter presents an analysis of the potential direct and indirect impacts of each alternative on the affected environment. The following discussion elaborates on the nature of the characteristics that might relate to resources. "Significantly," as used in NEPA, requires considerations of both context and intensity. Context means that the significance of an action must be analyzed in several contexts such as society as a whole (e.g., human, national), the affected region, the affected interests, and the locality. Significance varies with the setting of a proposed action. For instance, in the case of a site-specific action, significance would usually depend on the impacts in the locale rather than in the world as a whole. Both short- and long-term impacts are relevant (40 CFR part 1508.27). Intensity refers to the severity or extent of the potential environmental impact, which can be thought of in terms of the amount of the likely change. In general, the more sensitive the context, the less intense a potential impact needs to be in order to be considered significant. Likewise, the less sensitive the context, the more intense a potential impact would need to be in order to be considered significant.

## 4.2 Environmental Stressors

In determining impacts to the environment, both the indirect and direct impacts of an action are identified and assessed. The aspects of an action that may affect the environment are the "stressors" for which risk of exposure is estimated and protective measures proposed to reduce the likelihood of possible exposure. The principal stressors related to the use of LFA sonar are the:

- Presence and movements of the T-AGOS vessels;
- Animal strike or entanglement in the passive sonar array (SURTASS);
- Sound energy from the HF/M3 active component of the monitoring/mitigation system; and
- Sound energy from the LFA sonar.

Although these potential stressors related to the use of LFA sonar have been described in detail in the 2001 FOEIS/EIS (Department of the Navy [DoN], 2001), the 2007 FSEIS (DoN, 2007), the 2012 SEIS/SOEIS (DoN, 2012), and the 2017 SEIS/SOEIS (DoN, 2017b), and are incorporated herein by reference, a brief summary is provided, including how potential impacts are reduced or eliminated by the operational characteristics of the SURTASS LFA sonar system and vessels in addition to the suite of mitigation and monitoring measures implemented aboard SURTASS LFA sonar vessels.

### 4.2.1 Presence and Movement of T-AGOS Vessels

Potential adverse impacts associated with the presence and movements in the marine environment of SURTASS LFA vessels for SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities are ship strikes, ship discharges, and noise generated by the vessel engines or propellers.

#### 4.2.1.1 Ship Strikes

The potential for SURTASS LFA sonar vessels to strike a marine mammal, sea turtle, or marine fish is so low that it is discountable (NMFS, 2017). In the 16 years of SURTASS LFA sonar use, there has never been a ship strike associated with the operation of the vessels. The miniscule potential for ship strikes is due in part to the low speed at which the SURTASS LFA vessels travel, which is 3 to 4 kt (5.6 to 7.4 kph) during sonar transmissions and up to 10 or 12 kt (18.5 to 22.2 kph) during transit. Additionally, since the lookouts that keep watch during vessel transit and maneuvering are also trained visual observers for marine mammals and sea turtles, they are likely to detect any marine mammals or sea turtles in the vessel's path. Movements of SURTASS LFA vessels are not unusual or extraordinary and are in line with routine operations of seagoing vessels. In addition to the slow speed of travel, the design of the T-AGOS vessels, with the catamaran-type split-hull shape and enclosed propeller system, make the potential for striking and harming a marine mammal or sea turtle very unlikely. The lower ship speed also results in so little engine or propeller cavitation noise being generated into the surrounding marine environment that its extent and impact would be negligible.

#### 4.2.1.2 Vessel Discharges

Federal jurisdiction regarding sediments and water quality extends from 3 (or 9 for some states/territories) to 200 nmi (5.6 to 370 km) from shore. These standards and guidelines are mainly the responsibility of the EPA, specifically ocean discharge provisions of the CWA (33 U.S.C. section 1343). Ocean discharges may not result in "unreasonable degradation of the marine environment." Specifically, disposal may not result in: (1) unacceptable negative effects on human health; (2) unacceptable negative effects on the marine ecosystem; (3) unacceptable negative persistent or permanent effects due to the particular volumes or concentrations of the dumped materials; and (4) unacceptable negative effects on the ocean for other uses as a result of direct environmental impact (40 CFR section 125.122). Proposed training and testing activities using SURTASS LFA sonar also occur beyond 200 nmi (370 km) from any U.S. shores. Even though the CWA regulations may not apply to those waters, the pertinent CWA water quality standards are used as accepted scientific standards to assess potential effects on sediments and water quality associated with SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities.

The International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships (Convention) addresses pollution generated by normal vessel operations. The Convention is incorporated into U.S. law as 33 U.S.C. sections 1901–1915. The Convention includes six annexes: Annex I, oil discharge; Annex II, hazardous liquid control; Annex III, hazardous material transport; Annex IV, sewage discharge; Annex V, plastic and garbage disposal; and Annex VI, air pollution. The Navy is required to comply with the Convention; however, the U.S. is not a party to Annex IV. The discharge of sewage by military vessels is regulated by Section 312(d) of the CWA. The Convention contains handling requirements and specifies where materials can be discharged at sea, but it does not contain standards related to sediments nor water quality.

The NDAA of 1996 amended section 312 of the CWA, directing the EPA and the DoD to jointly establish the Uniform National Discharge Standards (UNDS) for discharges (other than sewage) incidental to the normal operation of military vessels. The UNDS program establishes national discharge standards for military vessels in U.S. coastal and inland waters extending seaward to 12 nmi (22 km) from shore. Twenty-five types of discharges were identified as requiring some form of pollution control (e.g., a device or policy) to reduce or eliminate the potential for effects. The discharges addressed in the program include, ballast water, deck runoff, and seawater used for cooling equipment. A complete list of discharges may be found in 40 CFR part 1700.4. These national discharge standards reduce the environmental effects associated with vessel discharges, stimulate the development of improved pollution control devices aboard vessels, and advance the development of environmentally sound military vessels.

The Navy adheres to regulations outlined in the UNDS program. Accordingly, discharges addressed under the Convention or the UNDS program for the typical operations of military vessels are not addressed further. Only the impacts associated with discharges strictly related to training or testing activities would be addressed. However, because training and testing activities involving the use for SURTASS LFA sonar as proposed herein do not involve any specific discharges, including for example, military expended materials (i.e. chaff, flares, munitions, etc.), no further discussion of discharges is required. Air emissions associated with the operation of SURTASS LFA sonar vessels are discussed in the air quality section (Section 4.3).

#### 4.2.1.3 Ship-generated Underwater Noise

The anthropogenic ambient noise environment in both the Pacific and Indian Oceans are dominated by noise from ships (Miksis-Olds and Nichols, 2016). Most of the underwater sound generated by ships is LF (<1,000 Hz), with most ship noise resulting from propeller cavitation that dominates the <200 Hz frequency range (Ross, 1976). The noise ships produce results not only from the type of engine and propeller systems used but also from the speeds at which the ships travel. Generally, larger (>328 ft [100 m]), faster moving vessels generate more intense LF underwater sound than smaller, slower moving vessels or boats (Frankel and Gabriele, 2017; Southall et al., 2018).

Most research on ship noise is from large vessels, fishing vessels, or small boats. Little to no research is available on the size class and hull design (catamaran hull) of the Navy's SURTASS LFA sonar vessels (Hildebrand, 2009; McKenna et al., 2012; Southall et al., 2018). SURTASS LFA sonar vessels range in size from 235 to 281 ft (72 to 86 m) in length and travel at speeds of 3 to 13 knots (kt) (5.6 to 47 kilometers per hour [kph]) (DoN, 2017d). Similarly-sized vessels are individual merchant ships (lengths of 276 to 400 ft [84 to 122 m]) that travel at speeds of 9.9 to 15 kt (18.4 to 27.7 kph) and smaller fishing vessels (49 to 151 ft [15 to 46 m]) capable of traveling at speeds from 7 to 10 kt (13 to 18.4 kph). Sounds from these two types of vessels range in frequency from 10 to 50 Hz with source levels from 161 to 165 dB re $\mu Pa^2/Hz$ @ 1 m and 139 to 143 dB re $\mu Pa^2/Hz$ @ 1 m, respectively (NRC, 2003).

Although no specific information is available on the noise generated by SURTASS LFA sonar vessels, since the purpose of these vessels is the detection of quiet, submersed vessels, it follows that the vessels themselves would operate as quietly as possible and generate as little detectable noise as technologically possible. For instance, the specialized SWATH (catamaran-like) hull design and encased propeller system of the T-AGOS vessels likely produce less noise than other seagoing vessel hull or propeller designs. Thus, while it is likely that the T-AGOS vessels produce some underwater noise, the lower speed at which the vessels typically operate, and their specialized function, likely result in the addition of far less noise to the ambient noise environment than the majority of other ocean-going vessels.

### 4.2.2 Passive Sonar (SURTASS)

The SURTASS component is a passive system that only receives and does not transmit any sound energy into the marine environment. Additionally, when the SURTASS HLA is being towed by a T-AGOS vessel, the vessel speed is so slow (~3 kt [5.6 kph]) that the potential for any animal being struck by the array is discountable (NMFS, 2017), as the slow tow speed would provide sufficient time for a marine animal to move and avoid the array if it were in close proximity. The likelihood of a marine mammal, sea turtle, or fish to become entangled in the towed SURTASS HLA is also discountable because of the slow tow speed (NMFS, 2017). For these reasons, operation of the SURTASS HLA is not reasonably likely to result in impacts to the environment.

#### 4.2.3 Transmission of the High-Frequency Active Sonar (HF/M3) Component of the Monitoring/Mitigation System

The HF/M3 sonar is a Navy-developed, enhanced HF commercial sonar used as a mitigation and monitoring asset to detect, locate, and track marine mammals and, to an extent, sea turtles, that may pass close enough to the SURTASS LFA sonar's transmit array to enter the LFA mitigation zone plus the 0.54-nmi (1-km) buffer zone. The HF/M3 sonar operates with a similar power level, signal type, and frequency as HF "fish finder" type sonars. The HF/M3 sonar and its operating protocols were designed to minimize possible impacts on marine animals.

The SL of 220 dB re 1 µPa @ 1 m [rms] is required for the HF/M3 sonar to effectively detect marine mammals (and possibly sea turtles) to the extent of the 180-dB LFA sonar mitigation and buffer zones under the most adverse oceanographic conditions (low echo return and high ambient noise). The maximum HF/M3 sonar pulse is 40 msec, with source frequencies from 30 to 40 kHz, and a variable duty cycle that is nominally about 3 to 4 percent. The HF/M3 sonar system is located at the top of the LFA sonar VLA, about 328 ft (100 m) below the sea surface. Due to the water depth at which the deployed LFA VLA is positioned, the HF/M3 sonar system was not designed to detect marine mammals or sea turtles at or near the surface in proximity to the SURTASS LFA vessel.

The operating profile of the HF/M3 sonar and the high transmission loss of its HF signals (i.e., over 40 dB of transmission loss in the first 100 m [328 ft] of the HF/M3 source) together reduce the possibility for the sonar to affect marine mammals, sea turtles, or fishes. Additionally, the HF/M3 sonar's frequency is not in the range of best hearing frequencies for mysticetes, pinnipeds, sea turtles, or fishes but is within the best hearing range for odontocetes. However, the required ramp-up period from a SL of 180 dB re 1 µPa rms @ 1 m in 10-dB increments to full power is designed to provide sufficient time for a marine mammal, such as an odontocete that can hear the HF/M3 signal, to move away from the vessel and the transmitting HF/M3 sonar. In total, these factors result in a predicted negligible impact on marine mammals, sea turtles, or fishes from exposure to HF/M3 sonar.

#### 4.2.4 Transmission of LFA Sonar

The transmission of low-frequency signals by the SURTASS LFA sonar system may affect the marine environment. The characteristics of the signals transmitted by LFA sonar and its operating profile are described in Chapter 2 and must be considered in determining the potential for impacts on the environment (Section 4.4).

## 4.3 Air Quality

Under both action alternatives, SURTASS LFA sonar vessels would conduct training and testing activities at sea, both potentially in U.S. territorial seas (waters between 3 and 12 nmi [5.6 to 22 km] from shore) of Hawaii, Guam, and CNMI as well as in the global commons (i.e., waters beyond the territorial seas of any nation). During the execution of their training and testing missions, SURTASS LFA sonar vessels would emit HAPs as the result of the combustion of marine diesel fuel necessary to operate the vessels. An analysis of the potential air emissions resulting from the operation of the four SURTASS LFA sonar vessels in the global commons and in U.S. territorial seas was conducted. Details of the air quality impact analysis and methodology may be found in Appendix E.

### 4.3.1 No Action Alternative

Under the No Action Alternative, the Proposed Action would not occur and there would be no change to baseline air quality. Therefore, no significant impacts to air quality or air resources would occur with implementation of the No Action Alternative.

**Air Quality Potential Impacts:**

- No Action: No change to baseline air quality
- Alternative 1/2: Minor, localized, and intermittent air emissions, primarily in the atmosphere of the global commons with a negligible concentration of air emissions in the atmosphere over U.S. territorial seas of the central and western North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans

### 4.3.2 Alternative 1/Alternative 2

Under Alternative 1, the Navy would transmit 360 hours of LFA sonar transmissions per year pooled across all vessels, while under Alternative 2, the Navy's Preferred Alternative, the Navy would transmit 496 hours of LFA sonar transmissions per year across all vessels in the first four years, and would increase LFA sonar transmissions to 592 hours in year five and continuing into the foreseeable future, regardless of the number of vessels. Under both action alternatives, transmissions would be consistent with the operating profile described in Chapter 2.

#### 4.3.2.1 Potential Impacts to Air Quality

Impacts on air quality are based on estimated direct and indirect emissions associated with the action alternatives. Estimated emissions from a proposed federal action are typically compared with the relevant national and state standards to assess the potential for increases in pollutant concentrations. The region of influence (ROI) for assessing air quality impacts is the air basin in which the project is located, which for SURTASS LFA sonar are the atmospheric basins overlying the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans.

The provisions of the CAA, however, only pertain to state and territorial waters of the U.S. Thus, the ROI for this assessment of air quality impacts relevant to the CAA is the portion of the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar in which the State of Hawaii and the territories of Guam and CNMI are located. However, due to Title 10 exemptions for the Navy's SURTASS LFA sonar vessels, the Navy's ocean surveillance vessels would not go into port in Hawaii, Guam, nor CNMI. Additionally, SURTASS LFA sonar vessels cannot conduct training and testing activities in the territorial seas of any foreign nation and transit in and out of ports or foreign port activities are not part of training and testing activities. Accordingly, the analysis of air quality for the Proposed Action does not include transit to and from ports nor port visits (or pier side activities) in any U.S. or foreign territories. Training and testing activities using SURTASS LFA sonar, however, may be conducted in the waters of the U.S. territorial sea (3 to 12 nmi [5.6 to 22 km]) of Hawaii, Guam, and CNMI, albeit at a reduced power level (coastal standoff range mitigation). Thus, a very small amount, approximately 5 percent, of training and testing activities in U.S. territorial seas are included in the analysis of air quality, while the vast majority (95 percent) of training and testing air emissions are assumed to be occurring beyond the limits of both U.S. and foreign territorial seas in the global commons.

For inert pollutants, the ROI is generally limited to a few miles downwind from the pollutant source. For a photochemical pollutant, such as ozone, the ROI may extend much farther downwind. The concentration of many small emission sources, under the right circumstances, could incrementally contribute to regional air quality degradation. The good quality of the atmosphere over the western and central Pacific Ocean portion of the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar results from the relatively low number of air pollutant sources, as well as the size, topography, and prevailing meteorological conditions.

#### *4.3.2.1.1 Air Emission Analysis and Estimates*

The air quality analysis conducted on the action alternatives of the Proposed Action evaluated the impacts of air pollutants emitted by SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities in two regions of the study area: 1) the waters of the U.S. territorial seas in Hawaii, Guam, and CNMI that are outside the limits of state or territory waters (i.e., 3 nmi [5.6 km] from shore for Hawaii, Guam, and CNMI) pursuant to NEPA (i.e., the analysis covered federal waters of the territorial seas from 3 to 12 nmi [5.6 to 22 km] from shore); and 2) beyond U.S. and foreign territorial seas (i.e., global commons) of the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans pursuant to EO 12114. In the two regions where testing and training activities may occur, the air emission analysis calculated the concentrations of the six primary air pollutants generated by the SURTASS LFA sonar vessels: carbon monoxide (CO), nitrogen oxides ($NO_x$), particulate matter under 10 microns and under 2.5 microns ($PM_{10}$ and $PM_{2.5}$, respectively), sulfur oxides ($SO_x$), and volatile organic compounds (VOC), as well as the greenhouse gas, carbon dioxide ($CO_2$) .Although lead (Pb) is a primary air pollutant, because the marine fuel used by the SURTASS LFA sonar vessels does not contain lead, no lead emissions were possible and thus, lead was not included in the air quality analysis.

As mentioned earlier in this document, HAP emissions are typically one or more orders of magnitude smaller than concurrent emissions of criteria air pollutants, and only become a concern when large amounts of fuel, explosives, or other materials are consumed during a single activity or in one location. The mobile sources (SURTASS vessels) operating as a result of the Proposed Action would be functioning intermittently over a large area and would produce negligible ambient hazardous air pollutants, predominantly in areas not routinely accessed by the general public. For these reasons, hazardous air pollutants are not further evaluated in the analysis.

The action alternatives of the Proposed Action relate to a specific number of LFA sonar transmission hours per year: 360 transmit hours for Alternative 1 and 496 to 592 transmit hours for Alternative 2. However, the air quality analysis is not concerned with the number of LFA sonar transmit hours, since the amount of underwater sound generated has no influence on the amount of air discharges. Instead, the air quality analysis focuses on the annual movements and activities of the four SURTASS LFA sonar vessels and the resulting HAPs that are released as they conduct missions that generate the annual sonar transmit hours. Thus, the air quality analysis for Alternatives 1 and 2 is based on the number of movement hours per vessel annually.

However, the number of annual hours of vessel movements for each of the SURTASS LFA sonar vessel does have to be correlated with the annual LFA sonar transmit hours per Alternatives 1 and 2 per vessel. A typical training and testing activity consists of SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions with a signal duration of 60 sec at a duty cycle of 10 percent (i.e., the source transmits for 60 sec every 10 min). This means that over a 24-hr period of training and testing activity, 2.4-hr of LFA sonar would be transmitted during 24-hr of vessel movements. Out of the 360 transmit hours under Alternative 1, each LFA sonar vessel can transmit 90 hours annually during which the sonar vessel conducted 900 hours of vessel movements (Table 4-1). Likewise, under Alternative 2, each vessel would transmit 124 sonar hours in Years 1 to 4 and 148 sonar hours during Years 5 to 7 with an associated 1,240 and 1,480 hours of vessel movements, respectively (Table 4-1). These annual vessel movement hours are the basis for the air quality analysis.

**Table 4-1. Annual Vessel Movement Hours Per SURTASS LFA Sonar Vessel for the Action Alternatives.**

| *Action Alternatives* | *Annual LFA Sonar Transmit Hours Per Vessel* | *Annual Vessel Movement Hours Per Vessel* |
|---|---|---|
| Alternate 1 | 90 | 900 |
| Alternate 2 Years 1 to 4 | 124 | 1,240 |
| Years 5 to 7 | 148 | 1,480 |

- **Alternate 1 Air Quality Analysis**

The analysis of air emissions generated by SURTASS LFA sonar vessels during Alternative 1 training and testing activities was based on 900 movement hours for each of the four SURTASS LFA sonar vessels annually. For Alternative 1, the highest rate of the primary air pollutants generated in the territorial seas and global commons by all LFA sonar vessels is $NO_x$, with the total estimated rate of 148.70 tons per year (Table 4-2). The rate of $NO_x$ emissions is an order of magnitude higher than any other emitted air pollutants. The largest rate of this gas emitted annually was in the atmosphere of the global commons. As expected from the very low percentage of vessel operations and sonar transmit hours in federal territorial seas of HI, Guam, and CNMI, the contribution of air emissions in the atmosphere of those waters was minor (Table 4-2).

- **Alternate 2 Air Quality Analysis**

The analysis of air emissions generated by SURTASS LFA sonar vessels during Alternative 2 training and testing activities was based on 1,240 and 1,480 movement hours in Years 1 to 4 and Years 5 to 7, respectively, for each of the four SURTASS LFA sonar vessels annually. In both Years 1 to 4 and Years 5 to 7 of Alternate 2, $NO_x$ is the highest HAP emitted, with the highest concentrations of 194.61 and 232.29 tons per year emitted in the atmosphere of the global commons (Table 4-2). As in the Alternative 1 analysis results, the concentration of $NO_x$ emitted in the atmosphere of the global commons is an order of magnitude higher than any other air emissions estimated annually.

### 4.3.3 Greenhouse Gas Emissions and Climate Change

To estimate the global warming potential of an activity, the U.S. quantifies greenhouse gas emissions using the 100-year timeframe values established by the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) in 2007 (IPCC, 2007), in accordance with the reporting procedures of the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change. All global warming potentials are expressed relative to the reference gas, carbon dioxide ($CO_2$), which is assigned a global warming potential equal to 1. Greenhouse gas emissions are multiplied by their global warming potential, and the results are summed to calculate the total equivalent emissions of $CO_2$ or $CO_2$ equivalency.

The Navy has derived the $CO_2$ equivalency associated with the operation of up to four SURTASS LFA sonar vessels per year based on the vessel movements associated with the action alternatives. Estimated greenhouse gas emissions for all SURTASS LFA sonar vessels during the execution of Alternative 1 activities is 5,329.2 metric tons per year $CO_2$ equivalency (Table 4-3). The annual $CO_2$ equivalency emissions under Alternative 2 are 7,342.4 and 8,763.6 metric tons for Years 1 to 4 and Years 5 to 7, respectively (Table 4-3). To put these annual vessel emissions in perspective, the International

**Table 4-2. Annual Rates of Criteria Air Pollutant Emissions for All SURTASS LFA Sonar Vessels during Execution of Training and Testing Activities Per Alternatives 1 and 2.**

| *Location of SURTASS LFA Sonar Vessels During Training and Testing Activities* | *Total Rates of Criteria Air Pollutants Emitted (tons per year)* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *CO* | *$NO_x$* | *$PM_{10}$* | *$PM_{2.5}$* | *$SO_x$* | *VOC* |
| **Alternative 1 (900 vessel movement hr/vessel)** | | | | | | |
| Vessels in federal territorial seas of HI, GU, and CNMI (5 percent) | 0.37 | 7.44 | 0.12 | 0.12 | 1.14 | 0.24 |
| Vessels in global commons (outside any territorial seas) (95 percent) | 7.12 | 141.27 | 2.36 | 2.36 | 21.59 | 4.59 |
| Total Alternative 1 | 7.49 | 148.70 | 2.48 | 2.48 | 22.73 | 4.83 |
| **Alternative 2—Years 1 to 4 (1,240 vessel movement hr/vessel)** | | | | | | |
| Vessels in federal territorial seas of HI, GU, and CNMI (5 percent) | 0.52 | 10.24 | 0.17 | 0.17 | 1.57 | 0.33 |
| Vessels in global commons (outside any territorial seas) (95 percent) | 9.81 | 194.61 | 3.24 | 3.24 | 29.75 | 6.35 |
| Total Alternative 2 (Yr 1-4) | 10.33 | 204.85 | 3.41 | 3.41 | 31.32 | 6.68 |
| **Alternative 2—Years 5 to 7 (1,480 vessel movement hr/vessel)** | | | | | | |
| Vessels in federal territorial seas of HI, GU, and CNMI (5 percent) | 0.62 | 12.23 | 0.20 | 0.20 | 1.87 | 0.40 |
| Vessels in global commons (outside any territorial seas) (95 percent) | 111.73 | 232.29 | 3.87 | 3.87 | 35.51 | 7.56 |
| Total Alternative 2 (Yr 5-7) | 12.35 | 244.52 | 4.07 | 4.07 | 37.38 | 7.96 |

Note: CO= carbon monoxide; $NO_x$=nitrogen oxides; $PM_{10}$=particulate matter under 10 microns; $PM_{2.5}$=particulate matter under 2.5 microns; $SO_x$=sulfur oxides; VOC=volatile organic compounds; GU=Guam; CNMI=Commonwealth of the Northern Marianas; HI=Hawaii

Maritime Organization (IMO) in their 2014 study of greenhouse gas emissions reported the annual average $CO_2$ equivalency emissions from international shipping for the period 2007 to 2012 was 846,000,000 mt (IMO, 2014).

#### 4.3.3.1 Federal Policies Related to Climate Change

Federal legislation related to climate change includes the Energy Policy Act of 2005, which addressed energy efficiency, renewable energy, energy tax incentives, and ethanol in motor fuels, and the Energy Independence and Security Act of 2007, which reinforces energy reduction goals for federal agencies. Under the CAA, the EPA has developed and implemented greenhouse gas emission standards for stationary sources. The EPA monitors greenhouse gas emissions through the Greenhouse Gas Reporting Program and the U.S. Inventory of Greenhouse Gas Emissions and Sinks.

**Table 4-3. Estimated Annual Greenhouse Gas Emissions ($CO_2$) Associated with Employment of Up to Four SURTASS LFA Sonar Vessels Conducting Training and Testing Activities.**

| *Location of SURTASS LFA Sonar Vessels During Training and Testing Activities* | *Annual $CO_2$ Equivalent Emissions (metric tons per year)* |
|---|---|
| **Alternative 1 (900 vessel movement hr/vessel) Total** | 5,329.18 |
| Vessels in federal territorial seas of HI, GU, and CNMI (5 percent) | 266.46 |
| Vessels in global commons (outside any territorial seas) (95 percent) | 5,062.72 |
| **Alternative 2 (Years 1 to 4) (1,240 vessel movement hr/vessel) Total** | 7,342.43 |
| Vessels in federal territorial seas of HI, GU, and CNMI (5 percent) | 367.12 |
| Vessels in global commons (outside any territorial seas) (95 percent) | 6,975.31 |
| **Alternative 2 (Years 5 to 7) (1,480 vessel movement hr/vessel) Total** | 8,763.56 |
| Vessels in federal territorial seas of HI, GU, and CNMI (5 percent) | 438.18 |
| Vessels in global commons (outside any territorial seas) (95 percent) | 8,325.39 |

Note: $CO_2$=carbon dioxide

Several EOs have been issued in recent years that direct federal agencies to address climate change and greenhouse gas emissions with emission reductions and preparedness planning and implementation. EO 13653, *Preparing the U.S. for the Impacts of Climate Change* (EO 13653, 2013), establishes task forces, research funding, and state, local, private-sector, and nonprofit-sector support to address climate preparedness, resilience, and adaptation. However, this EO was revoked by EO 13783 on March 28, 2017. EO 13693, *Planning for Federal Sustainability in the Next Decade* (2015), requires federal agencies to meet emission-reduction goals associated with energy use, water use, building design and utilization, Fleet vehicles, and procurement and acquisition decisions. EO 13693, however, was revoked and replaced by EO 13834, *Efficient Federal Operations*, on May 17, 2018. The DoD and Navy are currently evaluating the extent of changes resulting from this EO, with additional information to be included herein as the evaluation is completed.

In accordance with NEPA, federal agencies are required to consider greenhouse gas emissions and climate change when conducting environmental assessments. Navy guidance states that the Navy must address the effects of climate change, identifying and quantifying greenhouse gas emissions (where possible) that may be generated during the executing of a Proposed Action and must also describe the beneficial activities being implemented Navy-wide to reduce greenhouse gas emissions.

### 4.3.4 Summary of Potential Impacts between Alternatives

The potential sources of air emissions during the execution of the Proposed Action are the SURTASS LFA sonar vessels. Due to the increased sonar transmit hours associated with Alternative 2 compared to Alternative 1, SURTASS LFA sonar vessels would be at sea a greater amount of time to conduct a greater number of training and testing activities under Alternative 2 compared to Alternative 1. This increased operational vessel time resulted in greater air emissions, including greenhouse gases, for all years of Alternative 2 compared to Alternative 1. The concentrations of HAPs emitted into the atmosphere of the federal territorial seas of Hawaii, Guam, and the CNMIs annually under either alternative are so small that they are negligible.

Regardless of the action alternative, the resulting air emissions, including greenhouse gases, would largely disperse rather than concentrate in an area of the atmosphere due to meteorological and air chemistry processes over the open ocean where most of the vessel movements associated with the Proposed Action would occur. Thus, based on the relatively small quantities of expected air emissions resulting from Alternatives 1 or 2, the meteorology of the study area, and the frequency and isolation of the proposed training and testing activities, the incremental contribution of air emissions resulting from the execution of the Proposed Action would not result in significant additional impacts on air quality in the study area or beyond. Thus, the execution of the Proposed Action would not result in significant impacts to the Air Quality resource.

## 4.4 Marine Environment

As described in Chapter 3, the one element of the marine environment that may experience direct or indirect impacts from implementation of the alternatives is the intermittent increase in the ambient noise level in the frequency band (100-500 Hz) in which LFA sonar operates. The stressor that is analyzed is the same for all alternatives, which is the transmission of low-frequency sound energy.

**Marine Environment Potential Impacts:**

- Intermittent increase in ambient noise level during SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions

### 4.4.1 No Action Alternative

Under the No Action Alternative, the Proposed Action would not occur and there would be no change to the baseline marine environment. Therefore, no significant impacts to the marine environment would occur with implementation of the No Action Alternative.

### 4.4.2 Alternative 1/Alternative 2

Under Alternative 1, the Navy would transmit 360 hours of LFA sonar transmissions per year pooled across all vessels, while under Alternative 2, the Navy's Preferred Alternative, the Navy would transmit 496 hours of LFA sonar transmissions per year across all vessels in the first four years, and would increase usage to 592 hours of LFA sonar transmissions in year five and continuing into the foreseeable future, regardless of the number of vessels. Under both action alternatives, transmissions would be consistent with the operating profile described in Chapter 2.

#### 4.4.2.1 Potential Impacts to the Marine Environment

When deployed and transmitting, transmissions from SURTASS LFA sonar would temporarily add to the ambient noise level in the frequency band (100 to 500 Hz) in which LFA operates, but the impact on the overall noise levels in the ocean would be minimal. In most of the ocean, the 10 to 500 Hz portion of the ambient noise spectrum is dominated by anthropogenic noise sources, particularly shipping and seismic airguns. Commercial vessels are the most common source of low-frequency noise and their impact on ambient noise is basin-wide (Hildebrand, 2009).

SURTASS LFA sonar produces a coherent low-frequency signal with a duty cycle of less than 20 percent and an average pulse length of 60 sec (i.e., a 60-sec signal could be transmitted a maximum of every 5 minutes). The transmission time for this system under Alternative 1 is 360 hours per year across all vessels. The total acoustic energy output of individual sources was considered in calculating an annual noise energy budget in energy units of Joules (Hildebrand, 2005). Commercial supertankers were estimated to contribute $3.7 \times 10^{12}$ Joules of acoustic energy into the marine environment each year

(Joules/yr); seismic airguns were estimated to contribute 3.9 x $10^{13}$ Joules/yr; and mid-frequency military sonar was estimated to contribute 2.6 x $10^{13}$ Joules/yr (Hildebrand, 2005). Scaling the calculations in Hildebrand (2005) to account for the proposed transmission hours, under Alternative 1, the total contribution from 360 hours of LFA transmissions would be 1.4 x $10^{11}$ Joules/yr. Under Alternative 2 in years 1 to 4, the contribution from 496 hours of LFA transmissions would be 2.0 x $10^{11}$ Joules/yr and in years 5 and beyond, the contribution from 592 hours of LFA transmissions would be 2.3 x $10^{11}$ Joules/yr. The percentage of the total anthropogenic acoustic energy budget added by LFA source transmissions is estimated to be 0.21 percent under Alternative 1 and 0.29 and 0.34 percent, respectively for years 1 to 4 and year 5 and beyond, under Alternative 2 (Hildebrand, 2005). Therefore, within the existing ocean environment, the potential for accumulation of noise due to the intermittent operation of SURTASS LFA sonar is considered negligible.

### 4.4.3 Summary of Potential Impacts between Alternatives

Implementation of Alternative 2/Preferred Alternative would not result in significant impacts to the marine environment since LFA transmission hours would add less than 0.34 percent to the total anthropogenic acoustic energy budget. Alternative 1 would have an even smaller and less significant impact on ocean ambient noise levels than Alternative 2 since the total sonar transmission time is less.

## 4.5 Biological Resources

This analysis focuses on marine species, including marine and anadromous fishes, sea turtles, and marine mammals, and marine habitats. The information below builds on the analyses previously conducted in the Navy's 2001 EIS/OEIS and 2007, 2012, 2015, and 2017 SEIS/SOEISs for SURTASS LFA Sonar (DoN, 2001, 2007, 2012, 2017b), which are incorporated by reference. Potential impacts to marine species are presented, including the quantitative impact analysis to marine mammals, followed by the potential impacts to marine habitats.

Potential impacts on marine species from transmission of LFA sonar include:

- **Non-auditory impacts:** Non-auditory impacts include direct acoustic impact on tissue, indirect acoustic impact on tissue surrounding a structure, and acoustically mediated bubble growth within tissues from supersaturated dissolved nitrogen gas. These types of impacts have the potential to cause (1) resonance of the lungs/organs, (2) tissue damage, and (3) mortality.
- **Auditory impacts:** Auditory impacts include permanent threshold shift (PTS), which is a

**Biological Resource Potential Impacts:**

- Marine Fishes: low to moderate probability of non-auditory, auditory, behavioral, masking, or physiological stress effects when fish are in close proximity (<0.54 nmi (<1 km)) of the LFA sonar
- Sea turtles: low to moderate probability of non-auditory, auditory, behavioral, masking, or physiological stress effects when sea turtles are in close proximity (<0.54 nmi [<1 km]) of the LFA sonar
- Marine mammals: potential for auditory or behavioral effects evaluated quantitatively with the best available science; low to moderate probability of non-auditory, masking, or physiological stress assessed with best available information
- Marine habitats: LFA sonar transmissions are a small contribution to the overall noise budget and would not affect the quality of marine habitats

condition that occurs when sound intensity is very high and/or of such long duration that the result is a permanent loss of hearing sensitivity over the frequency band of the exposure; i.e., a physical injury. PTS constitutes Level A incidental "harassment" for marine mammals under the MMPA as it is considered auditory tissue injury that causes irreparable damage (Southall et al., 2007). Temporary threshold shift (TTS) is a lesser impact to hearing caused by underwater sounds of sufficient loudness to cause a transient condition in which an animal's hearing sensitivity over the frequency band of exposure is impaired for a period of time (minutes to days). With TTS, hearing is not permanently or irrevocably damaged and no physical tissue damage occurs, so TTS is not considered an injury (Richardson et al., 1995; Southall et al., 2007) and constitutes Level B incidental harassment under the MMPA.

- **Behavioral change:** Behavioral responses to sounds in a marine animal's environment vary from subtle changes in surfacing and breathing patterns to cessation of vocalization or even active avoidance or escape from regions of high sound levels (Wartzok et al., 2003/04). For military readiness activities such as the use of SURTASS LFA sonar, Level B incidental "harassment" under the MMPA is defined as any act that disturbs or is likely to disturb a marine mammal by causing disruption of natural behavioral patterns to a point where the patterns are abandoned or significantly altered.
- Masking: The presence of intense sounds in the environment can potentially interfere with an animal's ability to hear relevant sounds. This impact, known as "auditory masking", could interfere with the animal's ability to detect biologically-relevant sounds, such as those produced by predators, prey, or reproductively active mates. During auditory masking, an animal may, thus, not be able to escape predacious attack, locate food, or find a reproductive partner.
- Physiological stress: Exposure to underwater sound may evoke a response in a physiological mediator (e.g., glucocorticoids, cytokines, or thyroid hormones) (Atkinson et al., 2015). The type, duration, and magnitude of the stress response may have a metabolic cost, which is termed the allostatic load. How stress responses might be linked to individual- and population-level consequences is an area much in need of research (National Research Council, 2005).

The potential for impacts is assessed from the perspective of an individual animal as well as the populations that comprise those individuals. Under the ESA, the potential for an effect to the fitness level of an individual, defined as changes in an individual's growth, survival, annual reproductive success, or lifetime reproductive success, is considered (National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS), 2012). Similarly, under the MMPA, "any act that injures or has the significant potential to injure" or "disturbs or is likely to disturb…causing disruption of natural behavioral patterns…to a point where they are abandoned or significantly altered" is considered.

The potential for impacts to marine habitats, including critical habitat, essential fish habitat, marine protected areas, and national marine sanctuaries, was considered within the context of the addition of sound energy to the marine environment while SURTASS LFA sonar is transmitting. SURTASS LFA sonar represents a vanishingly small percentage of the overall annual underwater acoustic energy budget and would not adversely affect the ambient noise environment of marine habitats. The reader is referred to Section 4.3.2.1 for an analysis of the contribution of SURTASS LFA sonar to the ocean's sound energy budget.

### 4.5.1 No Action Alternative

Under the No Action Alternative, the Proposed Action would not occur, which means that Navy would not use SURTASS LFA sonar for training and testing activities and NMFS would not grant authorize the incidental take of marine mammals associated with the use of SURTASS LFA sonar. Since SURTASS LFA sonar would not transmit acoustic energy, there would be no change to biological resources. Therefore, no significant impacts to biological resources would occur with implementation of the No Action Alternative.

### 4.5.2 Alternative 1/Alternative 2

The action alternatives include the transmission of acoustic energy by SURTASS LFA sonar in training and testing activities and the issuance of permits by NMFS for incidental takes of marine mammals associated with these activities. The study area for the analysis of impacts to biological resources associated with Alternative 1 and Alternative 2/Preferred Alternative includes the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans. SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities will not occur in polar waters, the western Indian Ocean, or the Sea of Okhotsk, or within the territorial seas of foreign nations. Additional geographical restrictions include maintaining received levels for SURTASS LFA sonar below established levels within 12 nmi (22 km) of any land, within 0.54 nmi (1 km) of designated OBIA boundaries during their effective periods of biological activity, and within known recreational and commercial dive sites, as described in Chapter 5. Under Alternative 1, the Navy would transmit 360 hours of LFA sonar transmissions per year pooled across all vessels, while under Alternative 2, the Navy would transmit 496 hours of LFA sonar transmissions per year pooled across all vessels in the first four years, and would increase usage to 592 hours of LFA sonar transmissions in year five and continuing into the foreseeable future, regardless of the number of vessels. Under both action alternatives, transmissions will be consistent with the operating profile described in Chapter 2.

#### 4.5.2.1 Potential Impacts to Biological Resources: Marine Wildlife

##### *4.5.2.1.1 Marine and Anadromous Fishes*

The 2007, 2012, and 2017 SEIS/SOEISs included extensive discussions of research studies on fishes and their potential responses to LFA sonar; those documents are incorporated herein by reference (DoN, 2007, 2012, 2017b). For the convenience of the reader, a summary of the research that examined the response of fishes to LFA sonar signals is included below; the remainder of this section will focus on research that has been published since the 2017 SEIS/SOEIS.

A Working Group organized under the American National Standards Institute-Accredited Standards Committee S3, Subcommittee 1, Animal Bioacoustics, developed sound exposure guidelines for fish and sea turtles (Popper et al., 2014), and hereafter referred to as the ANSI Sound Exposure Guideline technical report. This technical report developed sound exposure guidelines for fishes in which they identified three types of fishes depending on how they might be affected by underwater sound. The categories include fishes with no swim bladder or other gas chamber (e.g., dab and other flatfish); fishes with swim bladders in which hearing does not involve the swim bladder or other gas volume (e.g., salmonids); and fishes with a swim bladder that is involved in hearing (e.g., channel catfish). DoN (2017c) extended these categories to include one more type of fishes: those with a swim bladder involved in hearing and having high-frequency hearing sensitivity (up to 110 kHz). Data suggest that most species of marine fish either lack a swim bladder (e.g., sharks and flatfishes) or have a swim bladder not involved in hearing and can only detect sounds below 1 kHz. Some marine fishes (clupeiforms) with a swim bladder involved in hearing are able to detect sounds to about 4 kHz (Mann et al., 1997; Mann et al., 2001; Colleye et al., 2016). One subfamily of clupeids (i.e., Alosinae) can detect high- and very high-frequency sounds (i.e., frequencies from 10 to 100 kHz, and frequencies above 100 kHz, respectively), although auditory thresholds at these higher frequencies are elevated and the range of best hearing is still in the low-frequency range (below 1 kHz) similar to other fishes.

These guidelines are based on sound pressure levels, which are the best available data. However, it is recognized that particle motion stimulates the otolith organs and is the fundamental element in hearing for fishes (Popper and Hawkins, 2018).

- **Non-auditory Impacts**

A few species of fishes were tested in captive or laboratory settings for non-auditory injuries (e.g., barotrauma, hemorrhaging or rupturing of organs or tissues) when exposed to SURTASS LFA sonar signals and seismic airguns (Kane et al., 2010; Popper et al., 2005; Popper et al., 2007; Song et al., 2008). In all fishes, the swim bladder was intact after exposure and there was no damage to tissues either at the gross or cellular levels as determined by an expert fish pathologist (Kane et al., 2010; Popper et al., 2007). No new studies of non-auditory impacts to fishes have been published since the 2017 SEIS/SOEIS that are relevant to LFA sonar. Since previous studies had exposed fish up to 193 dB rms without injury, Popper et al. (2014) based their threshold of greater than 193 dB re 1 µPa rms for mortality and potential mortal injury and recoverable injury for fishes with a swim bladder both involved and not involved in hearing on these studies. For fishes with no swim bladder, Popper et al. (2014) estimated the potential for mortality and potential mortal injury and recoverable injury as being low at all distances from LF sources. Non-impulsive sound sources (e.g., sonar, acoustic modems, and sonobuoys) have not been known to cause direct injury or mortality to fish under conditions that would be found in the wild (Halvorsen et al., 2012; Kane et al., 2010; Popper et al., 2007). Potential direct injuries (e.g., barotrauma, hemorrhage, or rupture of organs or tissue) from non-impulsive sound sources, such as sonar, are unlikely because of slow rise times, lack of a strong shock wave such as that associated with an explosive, and relatively low peak pressures.

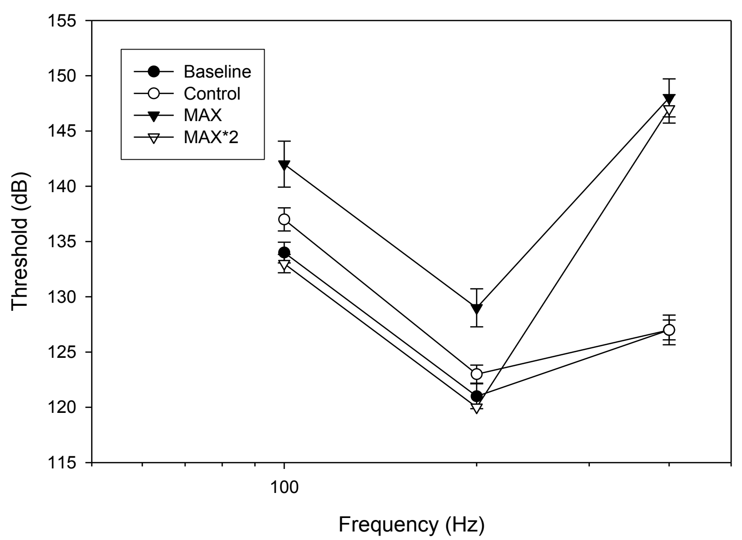
Since the potential for non-auditory injury to an individual fish is discountable in that it is extremely unlikely to occur, the potential for more than a minimal portion of any fish stock to experience such exposures is negligible; thus, the potential for non-auditory injury to fish stocks is a discountable impact.

- **Auditory Impacts**

A number of studies have examined the impacts of high-intensity sound on the sensory hair cells of the ear. Cox et al. (2018) conducted a meta-analysis of the effect of aquatic noise on fish behavior and physiology. They found that all categories of aquatic noise except music had the potential to result in negative impacts to auditory thresholds of fishes. One of these categories was anthropogenic sound; the most relevant studies for evaluating the potential effects of LFA sonar signals are those conducted with LFA sonar signals. A study on the impacts of SURTASS LFA sonar sounds on three species of fishes (rainbow trout, a fish with a swim bladder not involved in hearing and a reference species for ESA-listed salmonids; channel catfish, a fish with a swim bladder involved in hearing; and hybrid sunfish, a fish without a swim bladder) examined long-term impacts on sensory hair cells of the ear. In all species, even up to 96 hours post-exposure, there were no indications of any damage to sensory cells (Halvorsen et al., 2013; Popper et al., 2007).

The overall findings of the Popper et al. (2007) study show the following with respect to impacts on fish hearing:

1. Catfish and some (but not all) specimens of rainbow trout showed 10 to 20 dB SPL of hearing loss immediately after exposure to the LFA sound when compared to baseline and control animals (Figure 4-1), but hearing appeared to return to, or close to, normal within about 24 hours for catfish.




These data are for rainbow trout and compare hearing for baseline and control animals, and animals that received MAX and MAX*2 signals. Data represent means and standard errors of the means. Note that maximum hearing loss occurred at 400 Hz where there was over a 20 dB SPL TTS. It is not clear why there was more hearing loss after MAX stimulation than MAX*2 but this could be related to signals being closer together in the former. (Note: the "thresholds" shown are not calibrated and so do not reflect the lowest sounds that fishes necessarily hear at these frequencies.)

**Figure 4-1. Examples of Hearing Data Obtained in the SURTASS LFA Sonar Studies.**

2. Recovery data on rainbow trout that had a hearing loss was insufficient to reach firm conclusions on the time for recovery, but preliminary data suggest that recovery is likely to occur in less than 96 hours. Moreover, there is evidence that hearing loss in the trout, when it occurs at all, is primarily at 400 Hz, whereas it is over the complete range of frequencies (200 to 1,000 Hz) tested for catfish.

There is an interesting and potentially very important variation in the impacts of exposure on trout. Some groups of trout showed hearing loss, whereas others did not. All animals received identical treatment, and the only variable between experimental times was likely to be how the fish were raised prior to being obtained for the study. The significance here is not only were there differences in the impacts of sound on different species, but there may also be differences within a species, depending on environmental and other variables. However, and most importantly, under no circumstances did exposure to LFA sound result in unrecoverable hearing loss in rainbow trout, and there was no impact on any other organ systems. While there is no direct evidence to support the differences in impact on different groups of rainbow trout, another study has shown that fish from the identical genetic stock (i.e., probably same parents) will have different hearing thresholds, possibly depending on how the eggs were stored prior to being allowed to develop (Wysocki et al., 2007). This provides an additional variable in trying to understand the impacts of sound on fishes, but also indicates that the hearing of salmonids is not consistently affected by exposure to intense sounds.

No new studies of auditory impacts to fishes have been published since the 2017 SEIS/SOEIS that are relevant to LFA sonar. Given the results of the above studies, Popper et al. (2014) defined a threshold of greater than 193 dB rms for TTS for fishes with no swim bladder and fishes with a swim bladder not involved in hearing, and a threshold of 193 dB rms for TTS for fishes with a swim bladder involved in hearing. Considering the signal durations of these exposures, 324 and 648 seconds, results in cumulative sound exposure levels of 218 and 220 dB re 1 μPa$^2$-sec, respectively (Kane et al., 2010; Popper et al., 2007). In addition, exposure of fishes with a swim bladder involved in hearing to low-frequency sonar at a sound pressure level of 195 dB re 1 μPa for 324 seconds (cumulative sound exposure level of 215 dB re 1 μPa$^2$-sec) resulted in TTS (Halvorsen et al., 2013). As a conservative measure, the threshold for TTS from exposure to low-frequency sonar for all fish hearing groups with a swim bladder was rounded down to a cumulative sound exposure level of 210 dB re 1 μPa$^2$-sec (DoN, 2017c).

To receive an exposure that would exceed the thresholds of 210 dB $SEL_{cum}$, an individual fish would need to be within 3.3 ft (1 m) of an LFA projector (SL of 215 dB re 1 μPa at 1 m) for more than 2 sec or within the general proximity of the array (<0.54 nmi [<1 km] where the RL is 180 dB rms) for a longer period of time while it was transmitting. The probability of this occurring is extremely unlikely. Therefore, the potential for auditory injury to an individual fish is a discountable impact.

In fish, permanent hearing loss or PTS has not been documented (NMFS, 2015). Permanent hearing loss may be caused by the death of sensory hair cells in the ear, damage to auditory nerves, or damage to other tissues, such as the swim bladder, that may be part of the auditory pathway (Popper et al., 2014). Unless sensory hair cells die, the sensory hair cells of fishes can regenerate, unlike in marine mammals where hair cell loss is permanent (Smith et al., 2006).

Since the potential for TTS or auditory injury to an individual fish is discountable in that it is extremely unlikely to occur, the potential for more than a minimal portion of any fish stock to experience such exposures is negligible. Therefore, the potential for auditory injury to fish stocks is a discountable impact.

➢ **Behavioral Change**

A number of studies have examined the impacts of high intensity sound on behavioral change, but the most relevant to this discussion are those conducted with LFA sonar signals, which were outlined above. The overall findings of the Popper et al. (2007) study show the following with respect to behavioral responses of fishes:

- Fish behavior[7] after sound exposure was no different from behavior prior to or after tests. At the onset of the sound presentation, the trout would tend to move to the bottom of the experimental tank, but this did not last for the duration of the sound. Immediately after the sound was turned off, the fish would mill around the tank in the same pattern as they did prior to sound presentation.
- Catfish showed an immediate quick "startle"8 response and slight motion of the body, but then the fish tended to line up facing the signal source and generally stayed in that position for the

7 Note that behavior in the tank has no relevance to how fish would behave if they were not confined to the tank. Behavior monitoring was done only to provide insight into the health of the fish during the experiments and to compare in-cage responses before, during, and after sound exposure.

8 The word "startle" is used with caution. The behavior of the fish was, indeed, one that indicated detection of something unknown—a rapid movement over a short distance. However, the word "startle" has taken on a very specific meaning for some fish biologists and includes a

duration of the sound. Once the sound was turned off, the catfish would return to normal "milling" around the tank in a pattern that was statistically no different from pre-sound patterns.

In addition to the studies incorporated by reference, fishes exposed to low-frequency vessel noise had varying responses. Juvenile Ambon damselfish and European eels showed slower reaction times and lacked startle responses to predatory attacks during both simulated and actual predation experiments during exposures to vessel noise (Simpson et al., 2015; Simpson et al., 2016). In contrast, larval Atlantic cod showed a stronger anti-predator response and were more difficult to capture during simulated predator attacks (Nedelec et al., 2015).

One caveat to developing an understanding of impacts of sounds on behavior is that such studies are only useful when fish are unconstrained. That is, if fish are in any kind of cage or tank, no matter what the size, it is possible that the physical barriers will result in behaviors that would not normally be encountered in the wild in response to exposure to the same type of signal. Studies that examined impacts on behavior involving confined animals must be considered with the caveat that the observed response may not be indicative of how fish would respond in the wild. Cox et al. (2018) conducted a meta-analysis of the effect of aquatic noise on fish behavior and physiology in which they summarized the results of 42 studies, 36 of which were conducted in a laboratory setting. They found that some categories of aquatic noise had the potential to result in negative impacts to the behavior of fishes, which is consistent with the results of the other research studies summarized here.

All of the impacts described here are measurable responses. However, none of these responses rise to the level considered by Popper et al. (2014) for defining response thresholds, which was defined as "substantial change in behavior…may include long-term changes in behavior and distribution, such as moving from preferred sites for feeding and reproduction, or alteration of migration patterns. This behavioral criterion does not include impacts on single animals, or where animals become habituated to the stimulus, or small changes in behavior such as a startle response or small movements."

Therefore, the thresholds defined by Popper et al. (2014) are the best available for considering the potential for behavioral response. For fishes with no swim bladder and fishes with a swim bladder not involved in hearing, there is a low probability of behavioral response occurring at any distance from low frequency sources. For fishes with a swim bladder involved in hearing, a threshold of >197 dB SPL rms was defined.

To be exposed to a RL of >197 dB SPLrms, an individual fish would need to be within close proximity (<0.54 nmi (<1 km)) of the LFA sonar while it was transmitting. There is the potential for minor, temporary changes in behavior, including increased swimming rate, avoidance of the sound source, or changes in orientation to the sound source, none of which are significant. Therefore, the potential for biologically significant behavioral responses of an individual fish to LFA sonar is insignificant.

Since the potential for behavioral responses by an individual fish is discountable, and fishes must be in close proximity to the LFA sonar while it was transmitting for such a response to occur, it is unlikely that more than a minimal to negligible portion of any fish stock would experience behavioral responses. Therefore, the potential for behavioral responses by fish stocks is an insignificant impact.

twist of the body (c-start) at the onset of a stimulus and then rapid movement away from the stimulus. In these experiments, the video recording was not fast enough to determine if an actual c-start occurred.

### ➢ Masking

There are no data on masking of fishes by sonar. Radford et al. (2014) suggested ways in which fishes might be able to alter their acoustic signaling if masking were to occur and research studies that could be conducted to further the science in this field. If masking were to occur coincident to the use of SURTASS LFA sonar, it would only be during LFA sonar transmissions (nominal 60-sec duration wavetrain every 10 min) and within the narrow bandwidth of the signal (duration of each continuous-frequency sound transmission within the wavetrain is no longer than 10 sec in the frequency range of 100 to 500 Hz). Given the operational profile of LFA sonar, there is a very limited potential for LFA sonar to mask fish signals. This conclusion is supported by Popper et al. (2014) in which they subjectively assess the relative risk of masking occurring as a low probability at any distance for fishes with no swim bladder and fishes with a swim bladder not involved in hearing. For fishes with swim bladder involved in hearing, Popper et al. (2014) subjectively assess the relative risk of masking occurring as a low probability at intermediate and far distances (hundreds to thousands of meters) and a moderate probability at near distances (tens of meters).

There is the potential for temporary masking to occur within the frequency range of 100 to 500 Hz during LFA transmissions (nominal duration of 60 sec), but with a maximum duty cycle of 20 percent, any masking would be minimal. Therefore, the potential for masking to an individual fish by LFA sonar is insignificant.

Since the potential for masking to an individual fish is insignificant, and fishes would only be masked in the frequency range of transmissions while the LFA sonar was transmitting, it is unlikely that more than a minimal to negligible portion of any fish stock would experience masking. Therefore, the potential for masking to fish stocks is an insignificant impact.

### ➢ Physiological Stress

Very few studies have examined the potential for physiological stress in fishes. Smith et al. (2004) found that increased ambient noise (160 to 170 dB rms) caused a transient stress response in goldfish that was not sustained over long-term exposures. Wysocki et al. (2006) also found that three species of fishes (the common carp and the gudgeon, hearing specialists, and the European perch, a hearing generalist) increased cortisol secretion when exposed to ship noise. Nichols et al. (2015) examined the impact of outboard motor noise on stress levels in juvenile giant kelpfish, a coastal marine species. Continuous or intermittent outboard motor noise, separated by recordings of natural ambient noise, was played back in small (18 gal [67 L]) tanks. Intermittent noise created statistically significantly higher levels of cortisol than continuous noise or ambient noise only recordings. Random intermittent noise signals produce more stress than regular intermittent signals. Furthermore, the cortisol level scaled linearly with increases in sound levels in the tanks, the first time a magnitude response has been studied.

Similar to other potential impacts on fishes, the probability of a stress response is low and would require fishes to be within general proximity (<0.54 nmi [<1 km]) of the LFA sonar while it was transmitting, which is unlikely to occur for very long since the sonar array and vessel are moving through the ocean at 3 to 4 kt (1.54 to 2.06 m/sec). Therefore, the potential for a stress response by an individual fish by LFA sonar is insignificant.

Since the potential for a stress response by an individual fish is discountable, and fishes could only exhibit a stress response while the LFA sonar was transmitting, it is unlikely that more than a minimal to negligible portion of any fish stock would exhibit a stress response. Therefore, the potential for stress responses by fish stocks is an insignificant impact.

### ➢ Summary

Given the studies of sound exposure to fishes, the potential for impacts is restricted to within close proximity of LFA sonar while it is transmitting. A summary of the thresholds defined by Popper et al. (2014), and modified by DoN (2017c) to account for the signal duration of exposure and add fishes with high-frequency hearing sensitivity, shows that the probability of an impact is low to moderate and would require fishes to be within close proximity (<0.54 nmi [<1 km]) of the LFA sonar (Table 4-4). There is a minimal to negligible potential for an individual fish to experience non-auditory impacts, auditory impacts, or a stress response. There is a low potential for minor, temporary behavioral responses or masking of an individual fish to occur when LFA sonar is transmitting and there is no potential for fitness level consequences. Since a minimal to negligible portion of any fish stock would be in sufficient proximity during LFA sonar transmissions to experience such impacts, there is minimal potential for LFA sonar to affect fish stocks.

**Table 4-4. Summary of Fish Exposure Thresholds for Low Frequency Sonar (DoN, 2017c; Popper et al., 2014).**

| *Type of Fish* | *Recoverable Injury* | *TTS* | *Masking* | *Behavior* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Fish: No swim bladder | >218 dB $SEL_{cum}$ | NC | (N) Low<br>(I) Low<br>(F) Low | (N) Low<br>(I) Low<br>(F) Low |
| Fish: Swim bladder not involved in hearing | >218 dB $SEL_{cum}$ | >210 dB $SEL_{cum}$ | (N) Low<br>(I) Low<br>(F) Low | (N) Low<br>(I) Low<br>(F) Low |
| Fish: Swim bladder involved in hearing | >218 dB $SEL_{cum}$ | 210 dB $SEL_{cum}$ | (N) Moderate<br>(I) Low<br>(F) Low | >197 dB $SPL_{rms}$ |
| Fish: Swim bladder involved in hearing and high-frequency hearing sensitivity | NC | 210 dB $SEL_{cum}$ | NC | NC |

(N) = near (i.e. 10s of meters from the source); (I) = intermediate (i.e. 100s of meters from the source); (F) = far (1000s of meters from the source); NC=no criteria

### ➢ Comparison of Potential Impacts between Alternatives

Under Alternative 1, the Navy would transmit 360 hours of LFA sonar transmissions per year, while under Alternative 2, the Navy would transmit 496 hours of LFA sonar transmissions per year in the first four years and 592 hours of LFA sonar transmissions in year five and continuing into the foreseeable future. Alternative 2 represents a 38% and 64% increase in transmission hours in years 1 to 4 and years 5 and beyond, respectively, over Alternative 1 conditions. Therefore, there is a slight increase in the potential for impacts under Alternative 2 compared to Alternative 1. However, both alternatives represent a decrease from the currently authorized transmission hours of 1,020 per year. Moreover, under both alternatives, it remains unlikely that individual fishes would be impacted, and there is minimal potential for effects to fish stocks.

#### *4.5.2.1.2 Sea Turtles*

The information below builds on the analyses previously conducted in the Navy's 2007, 2012 and 2017 SEIS/SOEISs for SURTASS LFA Sonar (DoN, 2007, 2012, 2017b), which are incorporated by reference. Although it is known that sea turtles can hear LF sound (Lavender et al., 2014; Martin et al., 2012), there is limited information on their behavioral and physiological responses to LF sound underwater. Very few studies exist on the potential impacts of underwater sound on sea turtles and most of the available research examined the impacts of sounds of much longer duration or of different types (e.g., seismic airgun) than LFA sonar signals (McCauley et al., 2000). Additionally, very little is known about sea turtle hearing and what, if anything, may cause a sea turtle to incur permanent or even temporary loss of hearing (Popper et al., 2014).

This lack of information on hearing sensitivity is confounded by a lack of population data on sea turtles in the open ocean. The best available data on sea turtle populations (abundance estimates) are underestimates in that they only consist of counts of nesting females. The distribution of sea turtles in the open ocean is very different than their distribution in nearshore and coastal waters, with nearshore foraging hotspots having been identified for the loggerhead turtles (Seminoff, 2014) and nearshore breeding aggregations numbering in the thousands for some species (i.e., olive ridley). Nearly all species of sea turtles occur in low numbers over most of their ranges, resulting in greatly and widely dispersed distributions in the open ocean. Coupled with low numbers dispersed over enormous geographic areas is the additional complexity of some sea turtle's lifestages, such as the leatherback and olive ridley turtles, which spend their entire lives dispersed widely in pelagic waters, while the early lifestages of other sea turtle species spend only the "lost years" drifting around the central ocean gyres. In addition, most sea turtle species spend a high percentage of their lives in the upper 328 ft (100 m) of the water column, particularly if they are transiting between foraging and nesting grounds in the open ocean. The potential for sea turtles to be exposed to LFA sonar must be considered within this context.

- **Non-auditory Impacts**

No data are available on the potential for LF sonar to cause non-auditory injury in sea turtles. Direct injury to sea turtles from exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar is unlikely because of relatively lower peak pressures and slower rise times than impulsive sound sources such as seismic airguns. Popper et al. (2014) estimated the probability for mortality and potential mortal injury to be low at all distances from LF sonar.

- **Auditory Impacts**

No studies have been conducted on hearing loss in any turtles (Popper et al., 2014). Furthermore, there have been no studies to determine if the hair cells of the basilar papilla are lost, damaged, or fatigued during exposure to intense sounds. However, given that sea turtles hear best underwater at 100 to 400 Hz (Lavender et al., 2014; Martin et al., 2012), there is the potential for diving sea turtles to experience auditory impacts from exposure to LFA sonar. Popper et al. (2014) estimated the probability for TTS to be moderate at near and intermediate distances (tens to hundreds of meters) and low at far distances (thousands of meters) from LFA sonar.

In *Criteria and Thresholds for U.S. Navy Acoustic and Explosive Effects Analysis (Phase III)*, an auditory weighting function and an exposure function in sound exposure level (SEL) were developed to estimate onset TTS and PTS (DoN, 2017a). Both functions estimate the most sensitive hearing of sea turtles at a frequency of approximately 170 Hz, with sensitivity decreasing rapidly at frequencies above and below. For SURTASS LFA sonar operating at frequencies between 100 and 500 Hz, the most protective calculations would utilize auditory weighting and thresholds at 170 Hz. Therefore, the threshold for onset TTS is 200 dB re 1 $\mu Pa^2$-sec and onset PTS is 220 dB re 1 $\mu Pa^2$-sec and would be be weighted by 0 dB (DoN, 2017a). To calculate the distance at which onset TTS and onset PTS might occur from exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar, the length of a nominal LFA transmission (60 sec) must be considered. If the assumption is made that all RLs are at the same sound pressure level (SPL) RL (i.e., the animal and vessel remain at the same distance and depth from each other for an entire minute), the thresholds are lowered by approximately 18 dB ($10x\log_{10}$[60 sec]=17.8). This results in SPL thresholds for onset TTS and onset PTS of 182 dB re 1 µPa and 202 dB re 1 µPa, respectively. Based on simple spherical spreading (i.e., TL based on $20x\log_{10}$[range{m}]), sea turtles would need to be within 143 ft (44 m) or 14 ft (4 m), respectively, for the duration of an entire 60-sec LFA transmission to experience onset TTS or onset PTS.

For sea turtles to experience auditory impacts, they would need to swim at approximately 3 kt (5.6 kph) for the 60-sec signal of the SURTASS LFA sonar, to match its speed. This speed is faster than average swim speeds of sea turtles (Chapter 3), but within the range of their fastest swim speeds. However, the HF/M3 active sonar mitigation measure is able to detect sea turtles within the 180 dB re 1 µPa mitigation zone (a range of approximately 0.54 nmi [1 km]). Thus, it is unlikely that a sea turtle would remain within 143 ft (44 m) of the LFA sonar for an entire 60-sec signal without being detected to experience TTS. It is even more unlikely that a turtle would be within 14 ft (4 m) of the LFA sonar to experience PTS.

➢ **Behavioral Change**

Behavioral responses of sea turtles to anthropogenic activity have not been extensively investigated. The majority of available research is on the response of sea turtles to underwater seismic noise. Studies of captive turtles exposed to sound from individual seismic airguns suggest that they may show startle or avoidance responses to airguns (Bartol and Musick, 2003; McCauley et al., 2000; O'Hara and Wilcox, 1990). The work by O'Hara and Wilcox (1990), McCauley et al. (2000), Moein et al. (1995; cited in Bartol and Musick, 2003), and DeRuiter and Doukara (2012) reported behavioral changes of sea turtles in response to exposure to seismic airgun transmissions. O'Hara and Wilcox (1990) reported avoidance behaviors by loggerheads in response to airguns with sound levels (RL) of 175 to 176 dB re 1 µPa (peak-to-peak). McCauley et al. (2000) reported noticeable increases in swimming behavior for both green and loggerhead turtles at RLs of 166 dB re 1 µPa (peak-to-peak). At 175 dB re 1 µPa (peak-to-peak) RL, both green and loggerhead sea turtles displayed increasingly erratic behavior (McCauley et al., 2000). Moein et al. (1995) studied the effectiveness of airguns for keeping juvenile loggerhead sea turtles from hopper dredgers. They found that turtles avoided the airguns during first exposure, but showed habituation to the source, with no avoidance after three sound exposures. DeRuiter and Doukara (2012) reported that basking loggerhead turtles interrupted basking behavior and dove in response to the sound from seismic airguns; 49 of 86 observed turtles (or 57 percent) dove at or before their closest range to the airguns and at least six loggerheads dove immediately following an airgun shot, often showing a startle response. However, seismic airguns transmit impulsive signals characterized by a large frequency bandwidth, high energy, and short duration signals. Therefore, airgun signals cannot be directly compared with SURTASS LFA sonar, since the signal characteristics are very different, and the likelihood of impacts on living tissue are dissimilar as well.

Watwood et al. (2016) tagged green sea turtles in Port Canaveral, Florida to monitor their movements during a mid-frequency, pierside submarine sonar test. No significant long-term displacement was exhibited, though the authors note that Port Canaveral is an urban habitat and turtles may be less likely to respond than naive populations. Popper et al. (2014) estimated the probability for behavioral impacts to be low at all distances from LF sonar. Given the best available data from airgun exposures, a behavioral response threshold of 175 dB re 1 µPa SPL rms based on seismic data was developed by the Navy and NMFS (DoN, 2017a). This RL could occur at a distance of approximately 1 nmi (2 km) from the SURTASS LFA sonar. It is possible for sea turtles to be exposed to received levels from SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions that could result in some minor or temporary behavioral responses. However, the scale of these changes is unlikely to constitute harassment under the ESA, which requires "that actions significantly disrupt normal behavioral patterns." Therefore, the potential for biologically significant behavioral responses of an individual sea turtle to LFA sonar is insignificant.

- **Masking**

Little is known about how sea turtles use sound underwater. It is likely they can sense underwater objects through auditory and visual cues, but they are not known to produce sounds underwater for communication. Masking impacts may occur for sea turtle species since their frequencies of greatest hearing sensitivity overlap the frequencies at which LFA sonar transmits, but masking would only occur during sonar transmissions, which is unlikely to result in ecological consequences for sea turtles. Popper et al. (2014) estimated the probability for masking to be low at all distances from LF sonar.

- **Physiological Stress**

Physiological stress responses have been observed in sea turtles during capture and handling (Gregory et al., 1996; Gregory and Schmid, 2001), but no acoustic exposure studies have been conducted to determine the potential for a stress response from underwater sound. Without sufficient information, it is impossible to determine the potential for physiological stress from exposure to LFA sonar. However, as stated earlier, given the hearing sensitivities of sea turtles and the operational profile of LFA sonar, sea turtles are very unlikely to be in proximity to LFA sonar while it is transmitting, resulting in a very limited potential for a stress response to occur.

- **Summary**

The paucity of data on underwater hearing sensitivities of sea turtles, whether sea turtles use underwater sound, or the responses of sea turtles to sound exposures make a quantitative analysis of the potential impacts from LFA sonar transmissions difficult (NMFS, 2012), but available information suggests that there is a low to moderate potential for impacts to occur (Table 4-5). DoN (2017a) developed an auditory weighting function and an exposure function to estimate onset TTS and PTS as 200 dB re 1 µPa$^2$-sec and 220 dB re 1 µPa$^2$-sec, respectively. As discussed above, sea turtles would need to be within 143 ft (44 m) or 14 ft (4 m), respectively, for the duration of an entire 60-sec LFA transmission to experience onset TTS or onset PTS. This would require them to swim at approximately 3 kt for the 60-sec signal, which is faster than their average swim speeds, without being detected by the HF/M3 active sonar mitigation measure. The best estimate of a threshold for behavioral response (175 dB re 1 µPa SPL rms) is based on airgun exposure data (DoN, 2017a). This RL could occur at a distance of approximately 1 nmi (2 km) from the SURTASS LFA sonar.

Given these thresholds, the probability of TTS is low, and PTS is extremely low. There is no evidence that sea turtles use sound to communicate or capture prey, so if any hearing loss were to occur, the potential for impact on important biological functions is likely limited. It is possible for sea turtles to be exposed

**Table 4-5. Sea Turtle Exposure Thresholds for Low Frequency Sonar (DoN, 2017a; Popper et al., 2014).**

| *Type of Animal* | *PTS* | *TTS* | *Masking* | *Behavior* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sea turtles | 220 dB re 1 µPa$^2$-sec (weighted) | 200 dB re 1 µPa$^2$-sec (weighted) | (N) Low<br>(I) Low<br>(F) Low | 175 dB re 1 µPa SPL rms |

Note: (N) = near (i.e. tens of meters from the source); (I) = intermediate (i.e. 100s of meters from the source); (F) = far (thousands of meters form the source)

to received levels from SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions that could result in some minor or temporary behavioral responses (e.g., increased swim speed, diving response, startle behavior). However, the scale of these changes is unlikely to constitute harassment under the ESA, which requires "that actions significantly disrupt normal behavioral patterns...". Given that any behavioral responses are expected to be minor or temporary, the potential for biologically significant behavioral responses of an individual sea turtle to LFA sonar is insignificant.

In addition, given the lack of data on the distribution and abundance of sea turtles in the open ocean, it is not feasible to estimate the percentage of a stock that could be exposed to SURTASS LFA transmissions in a modeling site. Leatherback turtles are the most pelagic of sea turtle species and can be found seasonally foraging in continental shelf and slope waters. Olive ridley turtles also occur in oceanic environments in the SURTASS LFA sonar study area. However, given the small number of vessels and the intermittent nature of LFA sonar transmissions, the possibility of significant behavior changes is unlikely and there is no potential for fitness level consequences. The geographical restrictions imposed on LFA sonar use would greatly limit the potential for exposure to occur in areas such as nesting sites where sea turtles would be aggregated, especially in large numbers. While it is possible that a turtle could hear the transmissions if it were in close proximity to LFA sonar, when this is combined with the low probability of sea turtles being near the LFA sound source while it is transmitting and traveling at a speed of three to four knots, the potential for impacts from exposure to LFA sonar is considered negligible.

➢ **Comparison of Potential Impacts between Alternatives**

Under Alternative 1, the Navy would transmit 360 hours of LFA sonar transmissions per year, while under Alternative 2, the Navy would transmit 496 hours of LFA sonar transmissions per year in the first four years and 592 hours of LFA sonar transmissions in year five and continuing into the foreseeable future. This represents a 38% and 64% increase over Alternative 1 conditions, respectively. Therefore, there is a slight increase in the potential for impacts under Alternative 2 compared to Alternative 1, though both alternatives represent a decrease from the currently authorized transmission hours of 1,020 per year. However, the potential for impacts from exposure to LFA sonar is considered negligible under both action alternatives.

#### *4.5.2.1.3 Marine Mammals*

Marine mammals exposed to natural or man-made sound may experience non-auditory and auditory impacts, ranging the spectrum of severity (Southall et al., 2007). When exposed to LFA sonar, marine mammals may experience auditory impacts (i.e., PTS and TTS), behavioral change, acoustic masking, or physiological stress (Atkinson et al., 2015; Clark et al., 2009; Nowacek et al., 2007; Southall et al., 2019a).

Underwater sound has also been implicated in strandings of marine mammals, considered a non-auditory impact. Details and information on these types of impacts and the associated conclusions provided in previous documentation for SURTASS LFA sonar (DoN, 2007, 2012, 2017b) are incorporated by reference herein except as addressed below in summaries of recent research and information that may pertain to impacts associated with LF sources or may be pertinent to the assessment of impacts associated with SURTASS LFA sonar. A quantitative analysis of the potential impacts on marine mammals from exposure to LFA sonar transmissions follows the summaries.

- **Non-auditory Impacts**

Nowacek et al. (2007) and Southall et al. (2007) reviewed potential types of non-auditory injury to marine mammals from active sonar transmissions. These types of injuries include direct acoustic impact on tissue, indirect acoustic impact on tissue surrounding a structure, and acoustically mediated bubble growth within tissues from supersaturated dissolved nitrogen gas. The detailed descriptions and information on these types of non-auditory impacts were provided in previous documentation for SURTASS LFA sonar (DoN, 2007, 2012, 2017b) and related conclusions are incorporated by reference herein.

No new data have emerged to contradict any of the assumptions or conclusions in previous LFA documentation, especially the conclusion that SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions are not expected to cause gas bubble formation or strandings, particularly those of beaked whales. No strandings have occurred coincident to SURTASS LFA sonar in over seventeen years of its use and no studies indicate that strong avoidance reactions to LFA sonar would occur that would increase the risk of gas bubble formation.

- **Auditory Impacts**

One potential impact from exposure to high-intensity sound is auditory impacts, specifically TTS; no studies have provided direct data on PTS. Several studies by a number of investigators have been conducted, focusing on the relationships among the amount of threshold shift and the level, duration, and frequency of the stimulus (DoN, 2017a; NMFS, 2018; Southall et al., 2019a). These studies are typically conducted such that threshold shifts of 6 dB represent the upper limit of noise exposure. None of these studies have resulted in direct data on the potential for PTS, empirical measurements of hearing, or the impacts of noise on hearing for mysticetes, which are believed to be most sensitive to LFA sonar.

In addition to impacts on hair cells measured as threshold shifts, studies have shown that very large temporary threshold shifts can result in neural degeneration, resulting in auditory injury. Kujawa and Liberman (2009) found that noise exposures that produced a TTS of 40 dB, measured 24-hr post-exposure, resulted in loss of afferent nerve synapses and cochlear neurons in mice. Similar impacts were demonstrated in guinea pigs, where a TTS of approximately 50 dB, measured 24 hr post-exposure, resulted in neural degeneration (Lin et al., 2011). This observed neural degeneration is an auditory injury that will cause loss of hearing sensitivity, though it occurs under exposure conditions that result in high levels of TTS (40 to 50 dB measured 24 hr after exposure).

The best available data are used for the analysis of potential auditory impacts and, when necessary, protective assumptions are implemented that aim to provide the greatest protection to marine animals. The detailed descriptions and information on auditory impacts provided in previous documentation for SURTASS LFA sonar (DoN, 2007, 2012, 2017b) are incorporated by reference herein. Houser (2017) reviewed the development of auditory weighting functions for marine mammals, the primary use of which has been to predict and prevent noise-induced hearing loss.

NMFS (2018) provided guidance for assessing the impacts of anthropogenic sound on marine mammals under their regulatory jurisdiction, which includes whales, dolphins, seals, and sea lions. The guidance specifically defines hearing groups, develops auditory weighting functions, and identifies the received levels, or acoustic threshold levels, above which individual marine mammals are predicted to experience changes in their hearing sensitivity (PTS or TTS) for acute, incidental exposure to underwater sound. Southall et al. (2019a) published consistent weighting functions and threshold levels for marine mammal species included in the NMFS (2018) guidance but included all marine mammal species (not just those under NMFS jurisdiction) for all noise exposures (both under water and in air), as well as renaming hearing groups.

Recognizing that marine mammal species do not have equal hearing capabilities, five hearing groups of marine mammals were defined:

- Low-frequency (LF) Cetaceans—this group consists of the mysticetes with a collective generalized hearing range of 7 Hz to 35 kHz.
- Mid-frequency (MF) Cetaceans—includes most of the dolphins, all toothed whales except for *Kogia* spp., and all the beaked and bottlenose whales with a generalized hearing range of approximately 150 Hz to 160 kHz (renamed High-frequency cetaceans by Southall et al. [2019a] because their best hearing sensitivity occurs at frequencies of several tens of kHz or higher).
- High-frequency (HF) Cetaceans—incorporates all the true porpoises, the river dolphins, plus *Kogia* spp., Cephalorhynchid spp. (genus in the dolphin family Delphinidae), and two species of *Lagenorhynchus* (Peale's and hourglass dolphins) with a generalized hearing range estimated from 275 Hz to 160 kHz (renamed Very high-frequency cetaceans by Southall et al. [2019a] since some species have best sensitivity at frequencies exceeding 100 kHz).
- Phocids Underwater (PW)—consists of true seals with a generalized underwater hearing range from 50 Hz to 86 kHz (renamed Phocids carnivores in water by Southall et al. [2019a]).
- Otariids Underwater (OW)—includes sea lions and fur seals with a generalized underwater hearing range from 60 Hz to 39 kHz (termed Other marine carnivores in water by Southall et al. [2019a] and includes otariids, as well as walrus [Family Odobenide], polar bear [*Ursus maritimus*], and sea and marine otters [Family Mustelidae]).

Within their generalized hearing ranges, the ability to hear sounds varies with frequency, as demonstrated by examining audiograms of hearing sensitivity (DoN, 2017a; NMFS, 2018; Southall et al., 2019a). To reflect higher noise sensitivities at particular frequencies, auditory weighting functions were developed for each functional hearing group that reflected the best available data on hearing ability (composite audiograms), susceptibility to noise-induced hearing loss, impacts of noise on hearing, and data on equal latency (Figure 4-2). These weighting functions are applied to individual sound received levels to reflect the susceptibility of each hearing group to noise-induced threshold shifts, which is not the same as the range of best hearing.

NMFS (2018) defined acoustic threshold levels at which PTS is predicted to occur for each hearing group for impulsive and non-impulsive signals. LFA sonar is a non-impulsive source in that its signals do not have the high peak pressure with rapid rise time and decay that impulsive sounds do; instead, the pressure (i.e., intensity) of the LFA sonar transmission is consistent throughout the signal. The acoustic threshold levels for non-impulsive sounds are defined as the cumulative sound exposure level (SEL) over a 24-hr period with the appropriate frequency weighting for each hearing group (Figure 4-2; Table 4-6), which is reflected in the subscript of each threshold (e.g., the LF cetacean threshold is identified as $L_{E,LF,24h}$). The cumulative SEL metric takes into account both received level and duration of exposure over the duration of the activity within a 24-hr period. The TTS threshold is defined as 20 dB less than the PTS threshold. A summary of the cumulative sound exposure acoustic thresholds for PTS and TTS are provided (Table 4-6).

**Table 4-6. PTS and TTS Acoustic Threshold Levels for Marine Mammals Exposed to Non-impulsive Sounds (NMFS, 2018; Southall et al., 2019a).**

| *Hearing Group* | *PTS Onset* | *TTS Onset* |
|---|---|---|
| Low-frequency (LF) cetaceans ($L_{E,LF,24h}$) | 199 dB SEL | 179 dB SEL |
| Mid-frequency (MF) cetaceans ($L_{E,MF,24h}$) | 198 dB SEL | 178 dB SEL |
| High-frequency (HF) cetaceans ($L_{E,HF,24h}$) | 173 dB SEL | 153 dB SEL |
| Phocid pinnipeds underwater ($L_{E,PW,24h}$) | 201 dB SEL | 181 dB SEL |
| Otariid pinnipeds underwater ($L_{E,OW,24h}$) | 219 dB SEL | 199 dB SEL |

- **Behavioral Change**

The primary potential impact on marine mammals from exposure to LFA sonar is behavioral responses, which do not necessarily constitute significant changes in biologically important behaviors. The National Research Council (2005) noted that an action or activity becomes biologically significant to an individual animal when it affects the ability of the animal to grow, survive, and reproduce, wherein an impact on individuals can lead to population-level consequences and affect the viability of the species. The complexities associated with such an evaluation are becoming clear as researchers compile and evaluate data on extensively studied species as exemplar models of how short-term changes in behavior may accumulate to indirectly impact fitness through individual survival and reproduction (Maresh et al., 2014; New et al., 2014; Robinson et al., 2012).

An example of the amount of data needed to link a disturbance with an animal's health and how that may affect vital rates that would result in population-level consequences can be seen in a study of southern elephant seals (New et al., 2014). Southern elephant seals return to the same haul-out location twice a year after foraging trips, allowing animals to be sedated for health assessments and instruments to be attached to the animals and recovered after a foraging trip for at-sea measurements. Having such long-term access to the same animals is highly unusual in marine mammal research, but it is such individualized measurements that help inform linkages among behavioral responses and population-level consequences. In this study, an animal's lipid mass (i.e., fat content) could be measured at the beginning and end of a foraging trip, while the archival instruments measured dive data that could be correlated with their foraging success while at sea. It is unlikely that such an analysis will be possible for the majority of marine species because of the difficulties associated with collecting the necessary information (Tougaard et al., 2015).

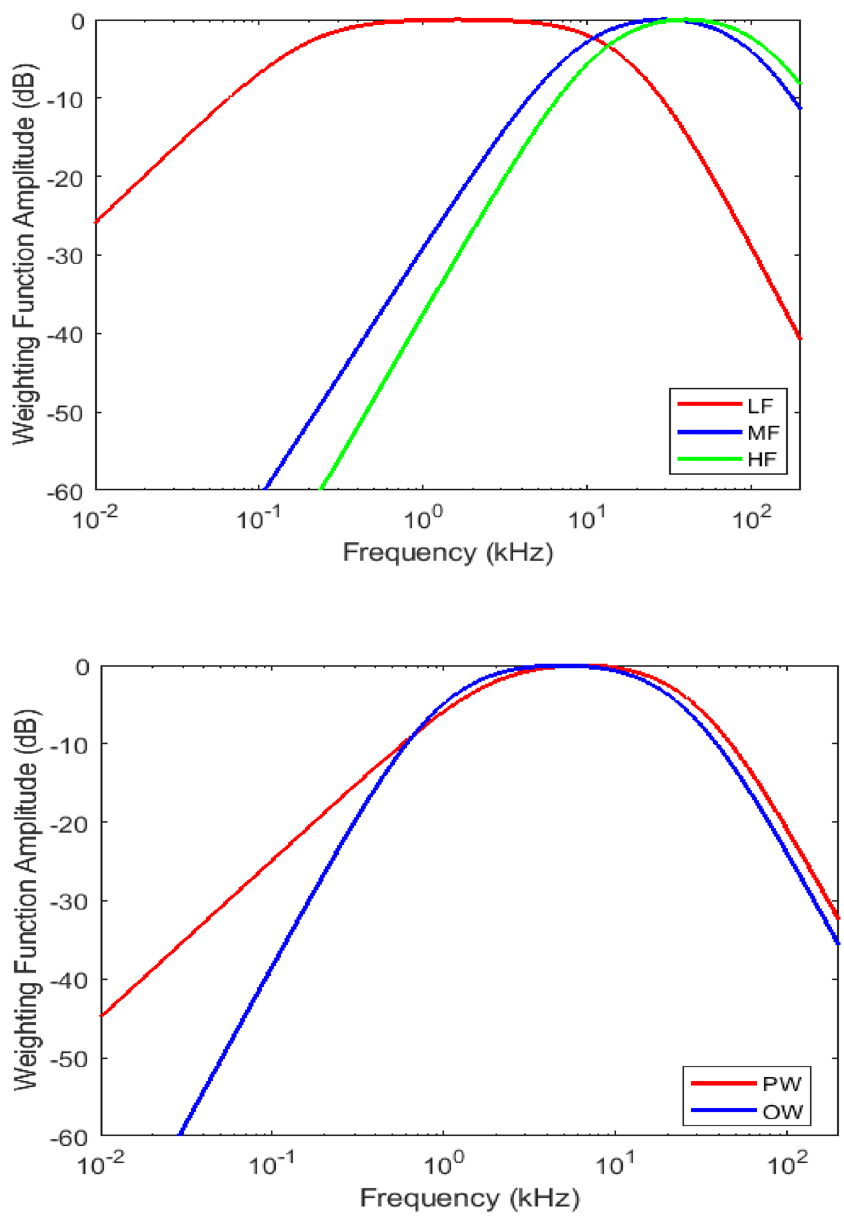



**Figure 4-2. Auditory Weighting Functions for Cetaceans (Top Panel: LF, MF, and HF Species) and Pinnipeds (Bottom Panel: PW, OW) (NMFS, 2018).**

Several review papers have been published in recent years that summarize the research that has occurred on potential effects of noise on wildlife. Shannon et al. (2016) conducted a systematic and standardized review of the scientific literature published from 1990 to 2013 on the effects of anthropogenic noise on both terrestrial and aquatic wildlife. Their review found that 37 percent of studies focused on birds and 28 percent focused on aquatic mammals, including marine mammals. A vast majority (81 percent) of the research has been conducted in North America or Europe, with a rapid increase in the volume of published, peer-reviewed articles since 2010. In evaluating 242 papers, 88 percent reported a statistically measured biological response to noise exposure (i.e., statistics determined that the response was outside what would be considered normal variation and was in fact a differential response), but only a small number investigated impacts to population persistence (survival, reproductive fitness), community interactions (predator-prey), and ecosystem services (pollination).

Another systematic literature review (370 papers) and analysis (79 studies, 195 data cases) found that behavioral response in cetaceans was best explained by the interaction between sound source type (continuous, sonar, or seismic/explosion) and hearing group (Gomez et al., 2016). Sound levels received by the animal were not part of the model best explained by the data, demonstrating that more severe behavioral responses were not consistently associated with higher RL, but that the type of source transmitting the acoustic energy was a key factor, highlighting the importance of context of exposure in impact analysis. Finally, Southall et al. (2016) summarized the suite of recent field experiments studying cetacean responses to simulated or actual active military sonars in the 1 to 8 kHz frequency range. Several of these studies are discussed later, but a common theme is the context-dependent nature of behavioral responses (e.g., Friedlaender et al., 2016; Goldbogen et al., 2013; Miller et al., 2014).

The Low Frequency Sound Scientific Research Program (LFS SRP) in 1997 to 1998 provided important results on, and insights into, the types of responses of baleen whales to LFA sonar signals and how those responses scaled relative to RL and context. These experiments still represent the most relevant predictions of the potential for behavioral changes from exposure to LFA sonar. The results of the LFS SRP confirmed that some portion of the total number of whales exposed to LFA sonar responded behaviorally by changing their vocal activity, moving away from the source vessel, or both; but the responses were short-lived, and animals returned to their normal activities within tens of minutes after initial exposure (Clark and Fristrup, 2001). Perhaps the most important result came from the LFS SRP Phase II study, where the LFA stimulus was presented to migrating gray whales. When the source was in the migratory path, the whales diverted around the source transmitting at source levels of 170 to 178 dB re 1µPa. However, when the source was moved offshore to the edge of the migratory corridor, with an increased SL to maintain the same received levels at the whales, the migrating gray whales exhibited no response to the LFA stimulus (Clark et al., 1999). The context of an exposure scenario is clearly important for determining the probability, magnitude, and duration of a response (Ellison et al., 2012).

The results of the LFS SRP were used to derive the LFA risk continuum function, from which the potential for biologically significant behavioral response is calculated as described in the impact analysis section below. This function has been described in detail in the Navy's 2001, 2007, 2012 and 2017 SEISs for SURTASS LFA sonar (DoN, 2001, 2007, 2012, 2017b), which are incorporated by reference. The risk continuum is based on the premise that a smooth, continuous function that maps RL to risk is most appropriate for defining the potential or risk for a biologically significant behavioral response (Figure 4-3). A summary of the risk continuum function follows; the reader is referred to Appendix B for additional details.

The LFS SRP experiments, which exposed baleen whales to RLs ranging from 120 to about 155 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL), detected only minor, short-term behavioral responses. Short-term behavioral responses do not necessarily constitute significant changes in biologically important behaviors. The fact that none of the LFS SRP observations revealed a significant change in a biologically important behavior helped determine an upper bound for risk. However, the LFS SRP results cannot be used to prove that there is zero risk at these levels. Accordingly, the risk continuum assumes that risk is small, but not zero, at the RLs achieved during the LFS SRP. The basement value below which risk is negligible is 120 dB SPE. Fifty percent risk of a behavioral response is defined at 165 dB SPE (Figure 4-3). The steepness of the curve, termed the risk transition sharpness parameter, is defined as 10 for LFA sonar.

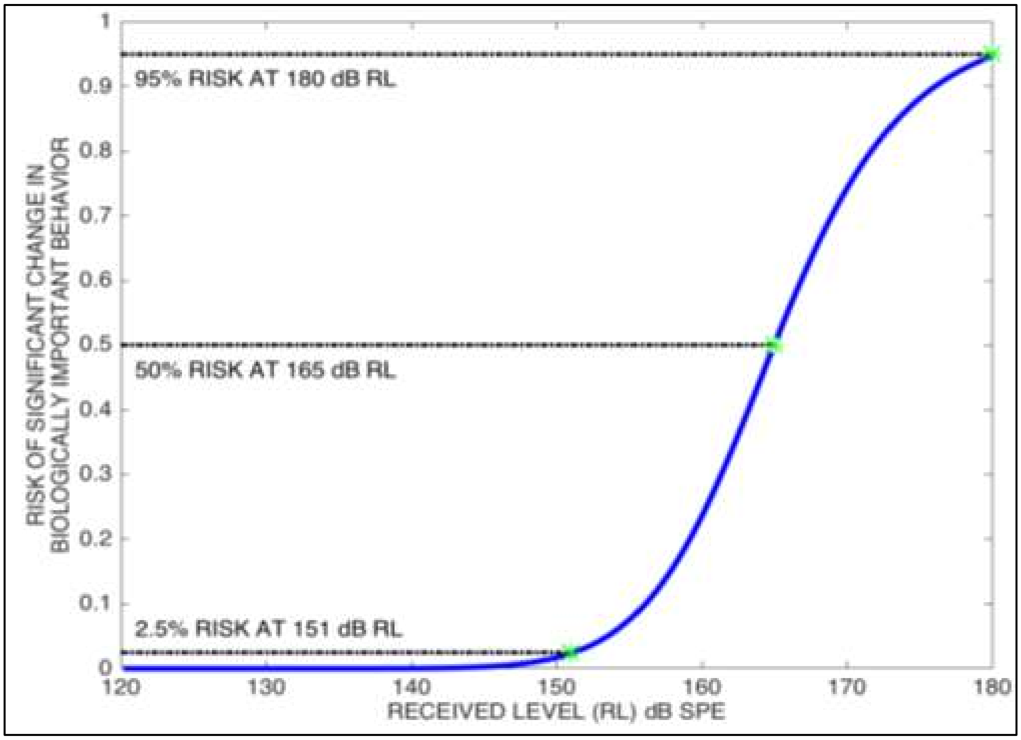



**Figure 4-3. Risk Continuum Function for SURTASS LFA Sonar Analysis that Relates the Risk of Significant Change in Biologically Important Behavior to Received Levels in Decibels Single Ping Equivalent (SPE).**

The risk continuum modeled a smooth increase in risk that culminates in a 95 percent level of risk of significant change in a biologically important behavior at 180 dB SPE. In this region, the risk continuum is unsupported by observations. Since the risk continuum function was derived from the behavioral response data of baleen whales collected with an actual SURTASS LFA sonar source, these data are realistic contextually and remain the best available for the response of LF-sensitive marine mammals to the SURTASS LFA sonar source.

Additional studies of behavioral responses of marine mammals to naval sonar have occurred. None have used a low-frequency (<1 kHz) source or been deployed from a slow-moving vessel. Therefore, their applicability to determining potential responses to LFA sonar is not clear. Nevertheless, these data represent additional information and are presented herein for awareness. Southall et al. (2016) provided an overview of the Southern California Behavioral Response Study (SOCAL-BRS). This program uses advanced tagging efforts and visual and acoustic observations to investigate behavioral responses to mid-frequency sonar signals. Blue whales exposed to simulated mid-frequency sonar showed complex, though brief, avoidance responses (Goldbogen et al., 2013). Surface feeding animals typically showed no response to the sonar signal, while non-feeding and deep-feeding animals both aborted deep feeding dives and made prolonged mid-water dives. Body orientation and horizontal displacement away from the source were additional responses. The addition of information on the water column and prey fields as explanatory variables explained approximately five times more of the variability in blue whale behavior (Friedlaender et al., 2016). When changes in prey fields were considered, blue whales had greater responses to pseudo-random noise, a unique stimulus in their environment, than they did to

MF sonar, to which they may be habituated. This work was further expanded by measuring behavioral responses of blue whales to operational, real-world-context, mid-frequency active sonar (Southall et al., 2019b). More than 50 percent of blue whales in deep-feeding behavior responded, whereas no changes in behavior were identified in shallow-feeding blue whales.

Beaked whales appear to be remarkably sensitive to noise exposure. Moretti et al. (2014) examined historical records of mid-frequency sonar operations and the vocal behavior of Blainville's beaked whales. They were able to describe the probability of the beginning of a Group Vocal Period as a function of the received level of operational mid-frequency sonars. These data were used to create a behavioral dose-response function for Blainville's beaked whales that has a structure similar to the LFA risk continuum, but with a 50 percent probability of response at 150 dB re 1µPa and a shallower slope (steepness parameter). Cuvier's beaked whale responses to mid-frequency sonar have also been described (DeRuiter et al., 2013). One whale exposed to low-level simulated sonar at close ranges (RL 89 to 127 dB) responded strongly, ceasing echolocation and fluking, extended its dive duration and swam away rapidly. However, another whale incidentally exposed to distant operational mid-frequency sonars at low levels (78 to 106 dB) did not show a response. This variation in responses again illustrates the importance of context in interpreting these results.

Miller et al. (2015) presented a single northern bottlenose whale with a 1 to 2 kHz sonar signal. The initial received level at the animal was 98 dB re 1 µPa, and at this level, the whale approached the sound source. When the level reached 130 dB re 1µPa, the whale turned 180° away and began the longest and deepest dive ever recorded for this species (94 min and 7,674 ft [2,339 m]). Wensveen et al. (2019) conducted controlled exposure experiments to investigate the effects of source distance and received level to 12 northern bottlenose whales. Sonar signals (1-2 kHz or 3.4 to 3.9 kHz, 1 sec duration) were presented in near (distance of 1 km [0.54 nmi]) and far (17 km 9.2 nmi]) scenarios off Jan Mayen, Norway, where animals are not conditioned to sonar signals. Tagged whales started avoidance behaviors at a variety of ranges from 0.8 to 25 km (0.4 to 13.5 nmi), with received levels of 117–126 dB re 1 µPa. These studies suggest that this species may also show marked responses to anthropogenic noise, as do many of the beaked whales.

This same bottlenose whale response, as well as those of minke and humpback whales, were examined by an expert panel to assess the severity of these responses (Sivle et al., 2015). The minke whale began avoiding the sonar signal at a received level of 146 dB re 1µPa. Eleven humpbacks were tested, and their response levels ranged from 94 to 179 dB re 1µPa. Responses were judged using a severity score table based on that of Southall et al. (2007) and modified by Miller et al. (2012) that included four subgroups: a) No response (score=0), b) Responses unlikely to affect vital rates (score=1 to 3), c) Responses with the potential to affect vital rates (score=4 to 6), and d) Responses likely to affect vital rates if repeated or of long duration (score=7 to 9). The avoidance by the minke whale and the long duration avoidance by the bottlenose whale both earned a severity score of 8. The scores of the humpback whale responses ranged from 1 to 7.

Antunes et al. (2014) presented 1 to 2 and 6 to 7 kHz simulated sonar signals to pilot whales as part of the 3S Experiment. One or more individuals within groups of long-finned pilot whales were instrumented with suction-cup-attached archival tags (DTAGs; Johnson and Tyack, 2003) along the coast of northern Norway (Miller et al., 2012). After a baseline, pre-exposure period, the whales were exposed to sonar signals. Source levels were increased as the vessel approached the tagged whales. The two-dimensional tracks of the animals were examined to determine the changepoint in their behavior. A dose-response curve was created, which had a 50 percent probability of behavioral change at 170 dB re

1 µPa or 173 dB SEL. While the value of the 50 percent probability of response is similar to that of the LFA risk function, the slope of their function is much shallower than the LFA function.

Killer whales were also presented with these 1 to 2 and 6 to 7 kHz FM sweeps (Miller et al., 2014). They appeared to respond with changes in swim speed and direction. The response thresholds range from 94 to 164 dB re 1µPa. The authors created a dose-response function with a 50 percent probability of avoidance value at 142 dB re 1µPa. They attributed the remarkable variation in response thresholds to intra-individual variability and other unidentified contextual values, such as proximity of the source.

Sperm whales were exposed to 1 to 2 kHz simulated naval sonar as well as playback of killer whale calls (Isojunno et al., 2016). The whales stopped foraging in response to the 1 to 2 kHz sonar signal at received levels of 131 to 165 dB re 1µPa as well as to the playback of the killer whale signals. No change in foraging was observed in response to the 6-7 kHz signals at received levels from 73 to 158 dB re 1µPa.

Curé et al. (2016) also found stronger responses by sperm whales to killer whale vocalizations and 1 to 2 kHz sonar upsweeps than the 6 to 7 kHz sonar signals. However only playbacks of killer whale vocalizations produced grouping behavior, an indication of predator detection. Thus, the actual signal structure was shown to be an important predictor of response, more so than received sound level. This study also demonstrated the value of referencing response strength to the response to a known biologically important signal (i.e., killer whales).

Two minke whales were exposed to simulated naval sonar in the 1 to 4 kHz frequency range (Kvadsheim et al., 2017). The first animal was exposed to 1.3 to 2.0 kHz upsweeps at a maximum source level of 214 dB re 1µPa at 1m. This whale began to respond at a received level of 83 dB re 1 µPa with a brief change in diving behavior and later responded at a received level of 156 dB re 1 µPa by increasing its speed from approximately 2.2 to 11.2 miles per hour (mph) (1 m/s to 5 m/s) and moving in a more linear direction, directly away from the sonar source, which was classified as an '8' on the Southall et al. (2007) severity scale (Sivle et al., 2015). The second whale was presented with a complex series of sweeps and tone between 3.5 and 4.05 kHz with a maximum source level of 210 dB re 1µPa at 1m (Kvadsheim et al., 2017). This whale began avoiding the source and swimming away in a more linear fashion at a received level of 149 dB re 1µPa, but it did not increase its speed.

Vocalizing minke whales were tracked with the hydrophone array at the U.S. Navy Barking Sands training range off Kauai, HI (Martin et al., 2015). The mean number of animals within the 1,102 $nmi^2$ (3,780 $km^2$) training range was estimated as 3.64 before training, 2.81 whales during training but without MF sonar transmissions, 0.69 whales during MF sonar transmissions, and 4.44 whales following training activities. It is not known if the decrease was due to whales leaving the area or simply an alternation of their acoustic behavior.

Additional peer-reviewed papers have been published considering the impact of LF sound on marine mammals. Risch et al. (2012) documented reduction in humpback whale vocalization concurrent with transmissions of the low-frequency Ocean Acoustic Waveguide Remote Sensing (OAWRS) system, at distances of 108 nmi (200 km) from the source. The LF pulses recorded in Stellwagen Bank NMS had a bandwidth of approximately 50 Hz, duration of 1 sec, and mean center frequencies of 415, 734, and 949 Hz (Risch et al., 2012). The OAWRS source appears to have affected more whales, by producing a greater response with a lower sound source level, than reported from the Phase III of the Low Frequency Sound Scientific Research Program LFS SRP, even though OAWRS had a lower RL (88 to 110 dB re 1 µPa) than the LFA signal. Gong et al. (2014) assessed the effects of the OAWRS transmissions on calling rates on Georges Bank and determined constant vocalization rates of humpback whales, with a reduction occurring before the OAWRS system began transmitting. Risch et al. (2014) pointed out that the results of Risch et al. (2012) and Gong et al. (2014) are not contradictory, but rather highlight the principal point of their original paper that behavioral responses depend on many factors, including range to source, RL above background noise level, novelty of signal, and differences in behavioral state.

Humpback whale foraging behavior appears to be negatively affected by low-frequency vessel noise (Blair et al., 2016). Ten foraging whales with non-invasive archival tags were studied in Stellwagen Bank NMS in the western North Atlantic Ocean. Ship noise collected on the archival tags was assessed with seven parameters of feeding behavior. As the received level of vessel noise increased, three parameters of foraging behavior decreased: number of side roll feeding events, ascent rate, and descent rate (Blair et al., 2016). Reducing in foraging behavior of individual whales could lead to population-levels impacts of shipping noise on foraging success.

A series of playback experiments using vessel noise and seismic airgun signals was conducted with humpback whales migrating along the east coast of Australia. One analysis considered the effects of both vessel presence and received level of airgun transmissions (Dunlop et al., 2017). While neither stimulus produced abnormal behaviors, the presence of the vessel, with and without operating airguns, did alter behavior, reducing dive time. The airgun signals caused a prolonged increase in respiration rate, a decrease in dive time, and movement of travel path away from the sound source (as indicated by the reduction in southward movement). This avoidance was more likely at received SELs greater than 135 dB re 1µPa$^2$-s and at ranges less than 2.2 nmi (4 km). A similar experiment with a single 20 cubic inch or 140 cubic inch airgun found that avoidance was more likely within 1.6 nmi (3 km) of the vessel and at SELs greater than 140 dB re 1µPa$^2$-s, with no response during control periods, indicating avoidance was due to the air guns and not the source vessel itself (Dunlop et al., 2017). From these studies, Dunlop et al. (2018) developed a behavioral dose-response model of migrating humpback whales reacting to seismic sources. They found that behavioral responses were a function of both received level and distance to source, where a 50% response threshold occurred at approximately 150-155 dB re 1 µPa2·sec and within 2.5 km of the source.

In summary, the results of these studies show that behavioral responses can occur at a range of received levels and may or may not rise to the level of biologically significant impacts. The current scientific literature on the possible effects of LF sound transmissions on marine species provide no contradictory information showing different potential behavioral impacts than those documented by the LFS SRP. The results of the SRP remain the best available data to estimate the potential for biologically important behavioral responses to the use of SURTASS LFA sonar since the studies used the SURTASS LFA sonar and exposed LF specialists while engaged in critical behaviors. The risk continuum function, which is based on LFS SRP data, continues to be used to define behavioral effects from exposure to LFA sonar. Additionally, no other studies have been conducted with low frequency sonars or other non-impulsive sources that utilize frequency bands similar to SURTASS LFA sonar that could be used to supplement the SRP results. The Navy acknowledges the age of the LFS SRP data, but as noted previously, the mere age of these data does not invalidate them, their contributions to science, nor the conclusions based upon those data.

- **Masking**

Erbe et al. (2016) reviewed the current state of understanding of masking in marine mammals, including anti-masking strategies for both receivers and senders. When a signal and noise are received from different directions, a receiver with directional hearing can reduce the masking impact. This is known as spatial release from masking, and this ability has been found in dolphins, killer whales, and harbor seals. Given the hearing abilities of marine mammals, it is likely that most, if not all, species have this ability to some extent.

The detectability of a signal amidst noise may also be affected by the temporal and spectral properties of the signal. Cunningham et al. (2014) conducted masking experiments where the signals were complex, including frequency and amplitude modulation as well as the presence of harmonics, parameters that are typical for natural animal signals. The ability of the receivers to detect complex signals was far better than predicted using simple energetic masking predictions, likely because of the complex structure of the signal.

Animals may be able to counteract masking by involuntarily increasing the source level of their vocalizations in the presence of noise, known as the Lombard vocal response. The SLs of vocalizations of killer whales and beluga whales have been shown to increase as the level of ship noise in the environment increased (Holt et al., 2011; Scheifele et al., 2005). Another mechanism may be to increase their calling rate or change the call structure, as demonstrated by gray whales when exposed to vessel noise (Dahlheim and Castellote, 2016). Changes in call structure included increased source level, more frequency-modulated calls, and an increased number of pulses per call. Migrating humpback whales off Australia increased the amplitude of their social calls by 0.9 dB for every 1.0 dB increase in wind-created ambient noise (Dunlop et al., 2014). While increasing their amplitude may be effective at improving communication, it may come with an increased metabolic cost, as was shown with bottlenose dolphins (Holt et al., 2015).

The potential for masking from LFA sonar signals is limited for a number of reasons. First, the typical LFA sonar signal is not a constant tone but consists of a sequence of sound transmissions (waveforms) that vary in frequency and duration. Continuous-frequency waveforms have durations of no longer than 10 seconds. Waveforms with varying frequencies (frequency-modulated or FM waveforms) have limited bandwidths (30 Hz). Therefore, within the frequency range in which masking is possible, the impact would be limited because animals that use this frequency range typically use signals with greater durations and bandwidths. Thus, only a portion of the frequency band for the animal’s signal is likely to be masked by the LFA sonar transmissions. Furthermore, when LFA sonar is in use, the source is active only 7.5 to 10 percent of the time, with a maximum 20 percent duty cycle, which means that for 90 to 92.5 percent of the time, there is no potential for masking. Therefore, within the area in which energetic masking is possible, any impact of LFA sonar transmissions would be minimal because of the limited bandwidth and intermittent nature of the signal, and the fact that animals that use this frequency region typically produce signals with greater bandwidth that are repeated for many hours.

- **Physiological Stress**

Atkinson et al. (2015) reviewed the physiology of the stress response in marine mammals. As a result of the interest of the National Research Council in the population consequences of underwater noise (NRC, 2005), there has been broadened research into marine mammal responses to environmental stressors and linking these responses to costs at the individual level that may have repercussions at the population level (Maresh et al., 2014; New et al., 2014; Robinson et al., 2012). The data do not exist for such an assessment with noise exposure, but the processes being developed highlight the research gaps that need to be prioritized for those advances to be made. A study with southern elephant seals (New et al., 2014) highlights the linkages between animal foraging success, environmental change, and population growth rates, and the level of data needed for such an assessment.

A limited amount of research has been conducted on stress responses resulting from sound exposure. Belugas demonstrated no catecholamine (hormones released in situations of stress) response to the playback of oil drilling sounds (Thomas et al., 1990), but showed an increase in catecholamines following exposure to impulsive sounds produced from a seismic water gun (Romano et al., 2004). A bottlenose dolphin exposed to the same seismic water gun signals did not demonstrate a catecholamine response, but did demonstrate an elevation in aldosterone, a hormone that has been suggested as being a significant indicator of stress in odontocetes (St. Aubin and Geraci, 1989).

Increases in heart rate were observed in bottlenose dolphins to which calls from other bottlenose dolphins were played, although no increase in heart rate was observed when ambient noise from aquarium tanks was played back (Miksis et al., 2001). A beluga's heart rate was observed to increase during exposure to noise, with increase dependent on frequency band of noise and duration of exposure, with a sharp decrease to normal or below-normal levels upon cessation of the exposure (Lyamin et al., 2011). A recently-captured beluga whale showed a two-phase heart rate response to noise exposures (frequencies of 19 to 38 kHz, levels of 150 to 160 dB). The heart rate response was indicative of changes in response to stress or emotionally negative external stimuli in terrestrial mammals and humans (Bakhchina et al., 2017). After one year of captivity, the beluga whale showed no response to the same or more intense noise exposures, indicating habituation within the dolphinarium.

It is unknown how chronic exposure to acoustic stressors may affect marine mammals. Opportunistic comparison of levels of stress-related hormone metabolites in North Atlantic right whale feces collected before and after the events of 11 September 2001 showed a decrease in metabolite levels corresponding to lower levels of ambient noise due to reduced ship traffic (Rolland et al., 2012). Collectively, these results suggest a variable response that depends on the characteristics of the received signal and prior experience with the received signal.

Atkinson et al. (2015) highlighted the need for long-term monitoring of individuals to better understand natural life-history influences on variations in stress responses and develop baselines that can be used for comparison. Since marine mammals are air-breathers that live in an underwater, oceanic environment, they have separated their need for oxygen from many biological functions for which it is directly linked in terrestrial mammals. Thus, there appear to be significant modifications to expected physiological mediators, resulting in unexpected observations. For example, where a terrestrial animal may start breathing heavily as part of a stress response, a marine mammal may have decoupled that response to conserve oxygen for underwater survival. Much more research is needed to begin to understand the potential for physiological stress in marine mammals during noise exposure scenarios.

- **Quantitative Impact Analysis for Marine Mammals**

The Navy conducted a risk assessment to analyze and assess potential impacts associated with using SURTASS LFA sonar for training and testing activities in the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans. The acoustic impact analysis presented herein represents an evolution that builds upon the analysis, methodology, and impact criteria documented in previous SURTASS LFA sonar NEPA efforts (DoN, 2001, 2007, 2012, 2017b), but incorporates the most current acoustic impact criteria and methodology to assess the potential for auditory impacts (PTS and TTS) and behavioral responses of marine mammal species. A summary of the analysis, as well as the exposure estimates, follow; a more thorough description of the impact analysis is provided in Appendix B.

Fifteen representative model areas in the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans were analyzed to represent the acoustic regimes and marine mammal species that may be encountered during SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities (Table 4-7). Modeling was conducted in each season for each model area. Seasons were defined according to the following monthly breakdown:

- Winter: December, January, and February
- Spring: March, April, and May
- Summer: June, July, and August
- Fall: September, October, and November.

**Table 4-7. Locations of the 15 Representative Model Areas for SURTASS LFA Sonar.**

| *Model Area* | *Model Area Name* | *Location of Model Area Center* | *Notes* |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | East of Japan | 38°N, 148°E | |
| 2 | North Philippine Sea | 29°N, 136°E | |
| 3 | West Philippine Sea | 22°N/124°E | |
| 4 | Offshore Guam | 11°N, 145°E | Navy Mariana Islands Testing and Training Area |
| 5 | Sea of Japan | 39°N, 132°E | |
| 6 | East China Sea | 26°N, 125°E | |
| 7 | South China Sea | 14°N, 114°E | |
| 8 | Offshore Japan 25° to 40°N | 30°N, 165°E | |
| 9 | Offshore Japan 10° to 25°N | 15°N, 165°E | |
| 10 | Hawaii North | 25°N, 158°W | Navy Hawaii-Southern California Testing and Training Area; Hawaii Operating Area |
| 11 | Hawaii South | 19.5°N, 158.5°W | Navy Hawaii-Southern California Testing and Training Area; Hawaii Operating Area |
| 12 | Offshore Sri Lanka | 5°N, 85°E | |
| 13 | Andaman Sea | 7.5°N, 96°E | |
| 14 | Northwest of Australia | 18°S, 110°E | |
| 15 | Northeast of Japan | 52°N, 163°E | |

For consistency, the seasonality for marine mammals in all model areas is presented according to this monthly arrangement, even for the one model area located in the southern hemisphere (Model Area #14 Northwest of Australia). Therefore, “winter” (encompassing the months of December, January, and February) for Model Area #14 is actually austral summer, when for instance, most baleen whales would be expected to be foraging in Antarctic waters.

To estimate the potential impacts to marine mammals in each of the model areas, a list of marine mammal stocks likely to be encountered in each region, by season, was developed and abundance and density estimates were derived from the most current published literature and documentation available (Chapter 3). Modeling was conducted for one 24-hr period in each of the four seasons in each model area. To predict acoustic exposure, the LFA sonar ship was simulated traveling in a triangular pattern at a speed of 4 kt (7.4 kph), with the time on each bearing (each "leg" of the triangle) being 8 hr (480 min). The duration of LFA sonar transmissions was modeled as 24 hr, with a signal duration of 60 sec and a duty cycle of 10 percent (i.e., the source transmitted for 60 sec every 10 min for 24 hr, which equates to a total of 2.4 transmission hours). The acoustic field around the LFA sonar source was predicted with the Navy standard parabolic equation propagation model using the defined LFA sonar operating parameters. Each marine mammal species potentially occurring in a model area in each season was simulated by creating animats (model simulated animals) programmed with behavioral values describing their dive and movement patterns, including dive depth, dive duration, surfacing time, swimming speed, and direction change.

The Acoustic Integration Model© (AIM) integrated the acoustic field created from the underwater transmissions of LFA sonar with the three-dimensional (3D) movement of marine mammals to estimate their potential sonar exposure at each 30-sec timestep within the 24-hr modeling period. Thus, the output of AIM is the time history of exposure for each animat.

Since AIM records the exposure history for each individual animat, the potential impact is determined on an individual animal basis. The sound energy received by each individual animat over the 24-hr modeled period was calculated as SEL and the potential for that animal to experience PTS and then TTS was considered using the NMFS (2018) acoustic guidance thresholds. If an animal was not predicted to experience PTS or TTS, then the sound energy received over the 24-hr modeled period was calculated as dB SPE and used as input to the LFA risk continuum function to assess the potential risk of a behavioral reaction. A step-wise process is undertaken to ensure that each individual is considered for only one potential impact (i.e., there is no double counting). The potential for PTS is considered first, as it represents the highest threshold. If an individual does not exceed the PTS threshold, then the potential for TTS is considered. If an animal does not exceed the TTS threshold, then the potential for a behavioral response is considered. Thus, individuals are only considered for one acoustic impact during a 24-hr exposure scenario.

To estimate the potential impacts for each marine mammal stock on an annual basis, several calculation steps are required. The first step is to calculate the potential impact for one LFA sonar transmission hour. The 24-hr modeling results for each season are for 2.4 transmission hours (i.e., the SURTASS LFA sonar was simulated to transmit at a 10 percent duty cycle, so 24 hours of LFA sonar use equate to 2.4 sonar transmission hours; Appendix B). Therefore, the impact estimates from 24 hours of LFA sonar use (2.4 transmission hours) were divided by 2.4 to transform the results into potential impacts on a per transmission hour basis. Then, because the use of SURTASS LFA sonar is not driven by any seasonal factors, and LFA sonar activities are most likely to occur with equal frequency in any of the four seasons, the per transmission hour impact estimates for each season were averaged to provide a single annual per transmission hour impact estimate. At this point, the average impact of an hour of SURTASS LFA transmission during any time of the year has been calculated for every species or stock.

The second step for calculating the potential impacts from all SURTASS LFA transmissions within a year is to determine the number of LFA sonar transmission hours that might occur in each model area, for each activity. To develop the total annual LFA sonar transmission hours, the Navy determined the training and testing activities that occur each year, the number of transmission hours conducted during each activity for each action alternative, and the model areas in which each activity is expected to occur (Tables 4-8 and 4-9), as not all proposed activities would occur in all modeled areas. To calculate the potential impact in each model area for each activity, the number of annual LFA sonar transmissions hours for

**Table 4-8. Activities and Transmission Hours Per Year Expected to Occur in each of the 15 Representative Model Areas Under Alternative 1.**

| ***Model Area Number/Name*** | ***Activity (Transmission Hours Per Year)*** | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | ***Contractor Crew Training (80)*** | ***MILCREW Training (64)*** | ***Naval Exercises (72)*** | ***Maintenance (48)*** | ***Acoustic Research Testing (96)*** |
| 1 /East of Japan | | X | | | X |
| 2 /North Philippine Sea | X | X | X | X | X |
| 3 /West Philippine Sea | X | X | X | X | X |
| 4 /Guam | | X | X | | X |
| 5 /Sea of Japan | | X | | | X |
| 6 /East China Sea | | X | | | X |
| 7 /South China Sea | | X | X | | X |
| 8 /Offshore Japan (25 to 40N) | | X | | | X |
| 9 / Offshore Japan (10 to 25N) | | X | | | X |
| 10 /Hawaii-North | | X | X | | X |
| 11 /Hawaii-South | | X | X | | X |
| 12 /Offshore Sri Lanka | | X | | | X |
| 13 /Andaman Sea | | X | | | X |
| 14 /Northwest Australia | | X | | | X |
| 15 /Northwest Japan | | X | | | X |

**Table 4-9. Activities and Transmission Hours Per Year Expected to Occur in each of the 15 Representative Model Areas Under Alternative 2/Preferred Alternative.**

| *Model Area Number/Name* | *Activity (Transmission Hours Per Year)* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *Contractor Crew Training (80)* | *MILCREW Training (96)* | *Naval Exercises (96)* | *Maintenance (64)* | *Acoustic Research Testing (160)* | *Years 5+: New LFA System Testing (96)* |
| 1 /East of Japan | | X | | | X | X |
| 2 /North Philippine Sea | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| 3 /West Philippine Sea | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| 4 /Guam | | X | X | | X | X |
| 5 /Sea of Japan | | X | | | X | X |
| 6 /East China Sea | | X | | | X | X |
| 7 /South China Sea | | X | X | | X | X |
| 8 /Offshore Japan (25 to 40N) | | X | | | X | X |
| 9 /Offshore Japan (10 to 25N) | | X | | | X | X |
| 10 /Hawaii-North | | X | X | | X | X |
| 11 /Hawaii-South | | X | X | | X | X |
| 12 /Offshore Sri Lanka | | X | | | X | X |
| 13 /Andaman Sea | | X | | | X | X |
| 14 /Northwest Australia | | X | | | X | X |
| 15 /Northwest Japan | | X | | | X | X |

each activity was evenly distributed across the model areas in which that activity might occur. The hours for each activity were evenly distributed across the model areas in which that activity might occur because there is an equal chance of activities happening in each model area identified for an activity; the Navy is not aware of any planning factors that would influence the distribution of activity hours among model areas. For example, the execution of vessel and equipment maintenance is estimated to require a total of 64 transmission hours, which are planned to occur only in either Model Area #2 or Model Area #3. Therefore, the 64 transmission hours were equally distributed to Model Areas #2 and #3, or 32 hours in each model area, for vessel and equipment maintenance activities.

The third step was to determine the number of model areas in which each stock may occur for each activity. The fourth step was to select the maximum per hour impact for each stock that may occur in the model areas for that activity. For instance, for maintenance activities that occur in model areas #2 and #3, if a stock occurs in both model areas, whichever per hour impact estimate for that stock was higher between the two modeling areas was selected for all subsequent calculations for estimating the impacts from maintenance activities.

The final step was to multiply the results of steps two, three, and four to calculate the potential annual impacts per activity, which are then summed across the stocks for a total potential impact for all activities. The maximum estimate of the per hour impact (result of step three) was multiplied by the planned transmission hours for each activity per model area (result of step two) and by the number of model areas in which the stock might occur for that activity (result of step four). The end result is the maximum potential impact per stock for each activity, allowing flexibility for the activity to occur in any season and any of the planned model areas for that activity.

To help explain the modeling process, the potential impacts to the Blainville's beaked whale are described as an illustrative example. Three stocks of Blainville's beaked whale are found in the study area, with the WNP stock occurring in Model Areas #2, 3, 4, 6, and 7; the Hawaii stock found in Model Areas #10 and 11; and the Indian Ocean stock occurring in Model Areas #12, 13, and 14. Contractor training (total of 80 transmission hr) and maintenance (total of 64 transmission hr) may occur in Model Areas #2 or 3, for a total of 144 transmission hr across both model areas or 72 transmission hr per model area (result of step two). Only the WNP stock of Blainville's beaked whale occurs in these two model areas. The potential impact in Model Area #2 is 0.68 behavioral takes per transmission hour, while in Model Area #3, 0.53 behavioral takes per transmission hour were computed. Since 0.68 behavioral takes per transmission hour is the greater or maximum take of the two model areas in which these two activities may occur, 0.68 behavioral takes per transmission hour is selected as the maximum (result of step four). The potential impact of 0.68 behavioral takes per transmission hour is multiplied by72 transmission hours per model area and by 2 model areas (since Blainville's beaked whale may occur in both model areas; result of step three) for a total potential impact of 97.92 behavioral takes for both contractor training and maintenance activities for the WNP stock of Blainville's beaked whales. The algebraic equation for these steps is presented below:

$$0.68\ \frac{takes}{transmission\ hr}\ x\ 72\frac{transmssion\ hr}{mission\ area}\ x\ 2\ mission\ areas = 97.92\ takes$$

The LFA sonar use as part of the naval exercises support activity may occur in Model Areas #2, 3, 4, 7, 10, and 11 for a total of 96 transmission hours. This results in 16 transmission hours per model area, when the 96 transmission hours are divided equally among the 6 model areas (result of step two). Two stocks of Blainville's beaked whale might be exposed to transmissions from the naval exercise support activity: the WNP stock occurs in Model Areas #2, 3, 4, and 7 (result of step three is four model areas for the WNP stock) and the Hawaii stock occurs in Model Areas #10 and 11 (result of step three is two model areas for the Hawaii stock). The maximum potential impact in any of the modeling areas in which the WNP stock occurs is 0.94 behavioral takes (result of step four); the maximum potential impact in any of the modeling areas in which the Hawaii stock occurs is 0.95 behavioral takes (result of step four). Thus, for the WNP stock, the potential impact of 0.94 behavioral takes per transmission hour is multiplied by 16 transmission hours per model area and by 4 model areas for a total potential impact of 60.16 behavioral takes from SURTASS LFA use during naval exercise support activities. For the Hawaii stock, the potential impact of 0.95 behavioral takes per transmission hour is multiplied by 16 transmission hours per model area and by 2 model areas for a total potential impact of 30.40 behavioral takes from SURTASS LFA use during naval exercises support activities. The same process occurs for the remaining activities (MILCREW training and acoustic research in years 1 to 4, plus the addition of new LFA sonar system testing in years 5 and beyond), which may occur in all fifteen model areas.

To develop the overall potential impact from all SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions within a year to each marine mammal stock, the potential impacts to each stock from each individual activity are then summed to derive the total maximum potential impact on an annual basis for Alternative 1 (Table 4-10) and Alternative 2 in Years 1 to 4 (Table 4-11) and Years 5 and beyond (Table 4-12). This is a conservative estimate since it is based on the maximum potential impact to a stock across all model areas in which an activity may occur. Therefore, if the activity occurs in a different model area than the area where the maximum potential impact was predicted, the actual potential impact could be less than that estimated. However, since the Navy cannot forecast where a specific activity may be conducted this far in advance, this maximum estimate provides the Navy with the flexibility to conduct its training and testing activities across all model areas identified for each activity.

- **Summary**

Non-auditory impacts to marine mammals from active sonar transmissions may include direct acoustic impact on tissue, indirect acoustic impact on tissue surrounding a structure, and acoustically mediated bubble growth within tissues from supersaturated dissolved nitrogen gas. No existing research studies or observations in the past 16 years of LFA sonar operation provide evidence that LFA sonar has the potential to cause non-auditory impacts.

The potential for masking and physiological stress was assessed with the best available data. The potential for masking from LFA sonar signals is limited because continuous-frequency waveforms have durations of no longer than 10 seconds and frequency-modulated waveforms have limited bandwidths (30 Hz). Furthermore, when LFA sonar is in operation, the source is active only 7.5 to 10 percent of the time, with a maximum 20 percent duty cycle, which means that for 90 to 92.5 percent of the time, there is no potential for masking. Much more research is needed to begin to understand the potential for physiological stress in marine mammals during noise exposure scenarios. The existing data suggest a variable response that depends on the characteristics of the received signal and prior experience with the received signal.

The potential for auditory impacts (PTS and TTS) and behavioral change was quantitatively assessed. NMFS (2018) has published acoustic guidance that specifically identifies the received levels, or acoustic threshold levels, above which individual marine mammals are predicted to experience changes in their

**Table 4-10. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 1 (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[9] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 1* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Antarctic minke whale | ANT | 0.07 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| Blue whale | CNP | 2.14 | 1.64% | 0 | 0.00% | 2 | 1.64% |
| | NIND | 0.27 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 4.48 | 0.00% | 52 | 0.52% | 56 | 0.52% |
| | SIND | 0.37 | 0.03% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.03% |
| Bryde's whale | ECS | 2.13 | 1.56% | 7 | 4.87% | 9 | 6.42% |
| | Hawaii | 3.73 | 0.43% | 0 | 0.00% | 4 | 0.43% |
| | WNP | 139.65 | 0.82% | 145 | 0.63% | 285 | 1.45% |
| | NIND | 2.53 | 0.02% | 2 | 0.02% | 5 | 0.04% |
| | SIND | 3.13 | 0.02% | 1 | 0.01% | 4 | 0.03% |
| Common minke whale | Hawaii | 190.46 | 0.76% | 201 | 0.82% | 392 | 1.57% |
| | IND | 510.04 | 0.18% | 284 | 0.09% | 794 | 0.27% |
| | WNP JW | 2.07 | 0.08% | 0 | 0.00% | 2 | 0.08% |
| | WNP OE | 816.05 | 3.33% | 831 | 3.33% | 1,647 | 6.65% |
| | YS | 35.83 | 0.80% | 85 | 1.89% | 121 | 2.69% |
| Fin whale | ECS | 1.18 | 0.23% | 4 | 0.89% | 6 | 1.12% |
| | Hawaii | 2.39 | 1.57% | 0 | 0.00% | 2 | 1.57% |
| | IND | 0.09 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | SIND | 8.23 | 0.02% | 6 | 0.01% | 14 | 0.03% |
| | WNP | 167.36 | 1.84% | 1,469 | 15.76% | 1,636 | 17.60% |
| Humpback whale | CNP stock and Hawaii DPS | 116.98 | 1.16% | 207 | 2.07% | 324 | 3.22% |
| | WAU stock and DPS | 0.53 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.00% |

9 ANT=Antarctic; CNP=Central North Pacific; NP=North Pacific; NIND=Northern Indian; SIND=Southern Indian; IND=Indian; WNP=Western North Pacific; ECS=East China Sea; JW=Sea of Japan; WP=Western Pacific; SOJ=Sea of Japan; IA=Inshore Archipelago; WAU=Western Australia; YS=Yellow Sea; OE=Offshore Japan; OW=Nearshore Japan; JW=Sea of Japan/Minke; JE=Pacific coast of Japan; SH=Southern Hemisphere; DPS=distinct population segment

**Table 4-10. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 1 (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[9] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 1* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Humpback whale (Continued) | WNP stock and DPS | 230.16 | 17.40% | 1,862 | 140.28% | 2,092 | 157.68% |
| North Pacific right whale | WNP | 2.42 | 0.21% | 53 | 5.78% | 56 | 5.99% |
| Omura's whale | NIND | 2.53 | 0.02% | 2 | 0.02% | 5 | 0.04% |
| | SIND | 3.13 | 0.02% | 0 | 0.00% | 3 | 0.02% |
| | WNP | 10.23 | 0.60% | 0 | 0.00% | 10 | 0.60% |
| Sei whale | Hawaii | 6.49 | 1.64% | 6 | 1.64% | 13 | 3.27% |
| | SIND | 0.10 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | NP | 71.64 | 1.03% | 1,911 | 27.33% | 1,983 | 28.36% |
| | NIND | 2.46 | 0.02% | 0 | 0.00% | 2 | 0.02% |
| Western North Pacific gray whale | WNP stock and Western DPS | 0.29 | 0.10% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.10% |
| Baird's beaked whale | WNP | 1,716.62 | 30.16% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,717 | 30.16% |
| Blainville's beaked whale | Hawaii | 43.07 | 2.03% | 0 | 0.00% | 43 | 2.03% |
| | WNP | 201.53 | 2.47% | 0 | 0.00% | 202 | 2.47% |
| | IND | 29.63 | 0.17% | 0 | 0.00% | 30 | 0.17% |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | 4-Islands | 3.21 | 1.70% | 0 | 0.00% | 3 | 1.70% |
| | Hawaii Island | 0.28 | 0.24% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.24% |
| | Hawaii Pelagic | 65.21 | 0.28% | 0 | 0.00% | 65 | 0.28% |
| | IA | 66.12 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 66 | 0.07% |
| | IND | 1,190.43 | 39.67% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,190 | 39.67% |
| | Japanese Coastal | 1,391.09 | 39.54% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,391 | 39.54% |
| | Kauai/Niihau | 9.07 | 4.91% | 0 | 0.00% | 9 | 4.91% |
| | Oahu | 26.16 | 3.54% | 0 | 0.00% | 26 | 3.54% |
| | WNP Northern Offshore | 363.00 | 0.36% | 0 | 0.00% | 363 | 0.36% |
| | WNP Southern Offshore | 2,107.38 | 5.13% | 0 | 0.00% | 2,107 | 5.13% |

**Table 4-10. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 1 (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| ***Marine Mammal Species*** | ***Stock[9]*** | ***Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 1*** | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | ***Behavior (Individuals)*** | ***Behavior (Percent Stock)*** | ***TTS (Individuals)*** | ***TTS (Percent Stock)*** | ***Total Level B (Individuals)*** | ***Total Level B (Percent Stock)*** |
| Common bottlenose dolphin (Continued) | WAU | 396.81 | 13.22% | 0 | 0.00% | 397 | 13.22% |
| Common dolphin | IND | 32.70 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 33 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 130,453.81 | 7.94% | 0 | 0.00% | 130,454 | 7.94% |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | Hawaii | 178.28 | 5.84% | 0 | 0.00% | 178 | 5.84% |
| | IND | 144.30 | 0.53% | 0 | 0.00% | 144 | 0.53% |
| | SH | 48.10 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 48 | 0.07% |
| | WNP | 4,677.12 | 5.24% | 0 | 0.00% | 4,677 | 5.24% |
| Dall's porpoise | SOJ *dalli* type | 383.97 | 0.22% | 0 | 0.00% | 384 | 0.22% |
| | WNP dalli ecotype | 13,785.02 | 8.51% | 0 | 0.00% | 13,785 | 8.51% |
| | WNP *truei* ecotype | 304.55 | 0.18% | 0 | 0.00% | 305 | 0.18% |
| Deraniyagala's beaked whale | IND | 98.60 | 0.58% | 0 | 0.00% | 99 | 0.58% |
| | NP | 242.87 | 0.99% | 0 | 0.00% | 243 | 0.99% |
| Dwarf sperm whale | Hawaii | 449.18 | 2.55% | 0 | 0.00% | 449 | 2.55% |
| | IND | 1.90 | 0.03% | 0 | 0.00% | 2 | 0.03% |
| | WNP | 314.98 | 0.09% | 0 | 0.00% | 315 | 0.09% |
| False killer whale | Hawaii Pelagic | 39.57 | 2.55% | 0 | 0.00% | 40 | 2.55% |
| | IA | 159.13 | 1.63% | 0 | 0.00% | 159 | 1.63% |
| | IND | 7.33 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 7 | 0.00% |
| | Main Hawaiian Islands Insular stock and DPS | 0.47 | 0.28% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.28% |
| | Northwestern Hawaiian Islands | 0.00 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 540.22 | 3.25% | 0 | 0.00% | 540 | 3.25% |
| Fraser's dolphin | CNP | 363.33 | 2.15% | 0 | 0.00% | 363 | 2.15% |
| | Hawaii | 1,332.71 | 2.60% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,333 | 2.60% |
| | IND | 58.10 | 0.03% | 0 | 0.00% | 58 | 0.03% |

**Table 4-10. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 1 (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[9] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 1* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Fraser's dolphin (Continued) | WNP | 1,787.92 | 0.91% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,788 | 0.91% |
| Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale | IND | 7.21 | 0.04% | 0 | 0.00% | 7 | 0.04% |
| | NP | 339.46 | 1.44% | 0 | 0.00% | 339 | 1.44% |
| Harbor porpoise | WNP | 228.71 | 0.73% | 0 | 0.00% | 229 | 0.73% |
| Hubbs' beaked whale | NP | 16.38 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 16 | 0.07% |
| Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin | IND | 7.07 | 0.09% | 0 | 0.00% | 7 | 0.09% |
| Killer whale | Hawaii | 4.39 | 3.02% | 0 | 0.00% | 4 | 3.02% |
| | IND | 248.03 | 1.97% | 0 | 0.00% | 248 | 1.97% |
| | WNP | 6,549.20 | 53.41% | 0 | 0.00% | 6,549 | 53.41% |
| *Kogia* spp. | WNP | 1,016.10 | 0.24% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,016 | 0.24% |
| Longman's beaked whale | Hawaii | 506.79 | 6.66% | 0 | 0.00% | 507 | 6.66% |
| | IND | 203.27 | 1.20% | 0 | 0.00% | 203 | 1.20% |
| | WNP | 324.88 | 4.24% | 0 | 0.00% | 325 | 4.24% |
| Melon-headed whale | Hawaiian Islands | 124.01 | 1.42% | 0 | 0.00% | 124 | 1.42% |
| | IND | 251.03 | 0.40% | 0 | 0.00% | 251 | 0.40% |
| | Kohala Resident | 6.33 | 0.28% | 0 | 0.00% | 6 | 0.28% |
| | WNP | 1,237.96 | 2.20% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,238 | 2.20% |
| *Mesoplodon* spp. | WNP | 6.49 | 0.03% | 0 | 0.00% | 6 | 0.03% |
| Northern right whale dolphin | NP | 0.16 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| Pacific white-sided dolphin | NP | 6,092.68 | 0.68% | 0 | 0.00% | 6,093 | 0.68% |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | 4-Islands | 21.72 | 9.87% | 0 | 0.00% | 22 | 9.87% |
| | Hawaii Island | 15.49 | 7.04% | 0 | 0.00% | 15 | 7.04% |
| | Hawaiian Pelagic | 203.91 | 0.38% | 0 | 0.00% | 204 | 0.38% |
| | IND | 194.53 | 0.03% | 0 | 0.00% | 195 | 0.03% |
| | Oahu | 15.87 | 7.23% | 0 | 0.00% | 16 | 7.23% |

**Table 4-10. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 1 (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock[9]* | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 1* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin (Continued) | WNP | 3,860.43 | 2.99% | 0 | 0.00% | 3,860 | 2.99% |
| Pygmy killer whale | Hawaii | 269.64 | 2.55% | 0 | 0.00% | 270 | 2.55% |
| | IND | 37.20 | 0.17% | 0 | 0.00% | 37 | 0.17% |
| | WNP | 683.55 | 2.18% | 0 | 0.00% | 684 | 2.18% |
| Pygmy sperm whale | Hawaii | 182.42 | 2.55% | 0 | 0.00% | 182 | 2.55% |
| | IND | 0.18 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 131.13 | 0.05% | 0 | 0.00% | 131 | 0.05% |
| Risso’s dolphin | Hawaii | 283.95 | 2.46% | 0 | 0.00% | 284 | 2.46% |
| | IA | 674.37 | 0.45% | 0 | 0.00% | 674 | 0.45% |
| | WNP | 5,309.63 | 2.34% | 0 | 0.00% | 5,310 | 2.34% |
| | IND | 2,888.07 | 0.63% | 0 | 0.00% | 2,888 | 0.63% |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | Hawaii | 146.06 | 0.19% | 0 | 0.00% | 146 | 0.19% |
| | IND | 25.90 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 26 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 1,045.55 | 20.88% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,046 | 20.88% |
| Short-finned pilot whale | Hawaii | 271.39 | 1.37% | 0 | 0.00% | 271 | 1.37% |
| | IND | 953.47 | 0.37% | 0 | 0.00% | 953 | 0.37% |
| | WNP Northern Ecotype | 327.84 | 1.58% | 0 | 0.00% | 328 | 1.58% |
| | WNP Southern Ecotype | 4,442.86 | 14.09% | 0 | 0.00% | 4,443 | 14.09% |
| Southern bottlenose whale | IND | 14.02 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 14 | 0.00% |
| Spade-toothed beaked whale | IND | 9.88 | 0.06% | 0 | 0.00% | 10 | 0.06% |
| Sperm whale | Hawaii | 72.58 | 1.61% | 0 | 0.00% | 73 | 1.61% |
| | NIND | 20.82 | 0.09% | 0 | 0.00% | 21 | 0.09% |
| | NP | 957.91 | 0.85% | 0 | 0.00% | 958 | 0.85% |

**Table 4-10. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 1 (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock[9]* | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 1* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Sperm whale (Continued) | SIND | 9.81 | 0.04% | 0 | 0.00% | 10 | 0.04% |
| Spinner dolphin | Hawaii Island | 0.85 | 0.13% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.13% |
| | Hawaii Pelagic | 131.28 | 3.92% | 0 | 0.00% | 131 | 3.92% |
| | IND | 149.80 | 0.03% | 0 | 0.00% | 150 | 0.03% |
| | Kauai/Niihau | 56.95 | 9.49% | 0 | 0.00% | 57 | 9.49% |
| | Kure/Midway Atoll | 0.00 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | Oahu/4-Islands | 13.51 | 3.83% | 0 | 0.00% | 14 | 3.83% |
| | Pearl and Hermes Reef | 0.00 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 399.30 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 399 | 0.00% |
| Stejneger's beaked whale | WNP | 125.60 | 1.56% | 0 | 0.00% | 126 | 1.56% |
| Striped dolphin | Hawaii | 184.40 | 0.28% | 0 | 0.00% | 184 | 0.28% |
| | IND | 3,162.17 | 0.47% | 0 | 0.00% | 3,162 | 0.47% |
| | Japanese Coastal | 2,776.49 | 14.17% | 0 | 0.00% | 2,776 | 14.17% |
| | WNP Northern Offshore | 166.84 | 0.04% | 0 | 0.00% | 167 | 0.04% |
| | WNP Southern Offshore | 2,487.30 | 4.76% | 0 | 0.00% | 2,487 | 4.76% |
| Hawaiian monk seal | Hawaii | 6.27 | 0.44% | 0 | 0.00% | 6 | 0.44% |
| Northern fur seal | Western Pacific | 5,296.89 | 1.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 5,297 | 1.07% |
| Ribbon seal | NP | 9,657.04 | 2.64% | 159 | 0.04% | 9,816 | 2.69% |
| Spotted seal | Alaska stock/Bering Sea DPS | 49,526.87 | 10.76% | 924 | 0.20% | 50,451 | 10.96% |
| | Southern stock and DPS | 0.27 | 0.02% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.02% |

**Table 4-10. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 1 (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[9] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 1* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Steller sea lion | Western/Asian stock, Western DPS | 1.36 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.00% |

**Table 4-11. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2, Years 1 to 4 (Marine Mammal Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[10] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Antarctic minke whale | ANT | 0.14 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| Blue whale | CNP | 3.12 | 2.39% | 0 | 0.00% | 3 | 2.39% |
| | NIND | 0.43 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 6.58 | 0.07% | 83 | 0.83% | 90 | 0.90% |
| | SIND | 0.81 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.07% |
| Bryde's whale | ECS | 3.41 | 2.49% | 11 | 7.79% | 14 | 10.28% |
| | Hawaii | 5.44 | 0.62% | 0 | 0.00% | 5 | 0.62% |
| | WNP | 184.11 | 1.08% | 194 | 0.86% | 378 | 1.94% |
| | NIND | 4.05 | 0.04% | 4 | 0.04% | 8 | 0.07% |
| | SIND | 5.01 | 0.04% | 2 | 0.02% | 7 | 0.05% |
| Common minke whale | Hawaii | 277.85 | 1.10% | 294 | 1.19% | 572 | 2.30% |
| | IND | 816.07 | 0.28% | 455 | 0.14% | 1,271 | 0.43% |
| | WNP JW | 3.31 | 0.12% | 0 | 0.00% | 3 | 0.12% |
| | WNP OE | 1,053.71 | 4.29% | 1,073 | 4.29% | 2,127 | 8.59% |
| | YS | 53.89 | 1.20% | 135 | 2.99% | 189 | 4.20% |
| Fin whale | ECS | 1.88 | 0.37% | 7 | 1.42% | 9 | 1.80% |
| | Hawaii | 3.49 | 2.30% | 0 | 0.00% | 3 | 2.30% |
| | IND | 0.14 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | SIND | 13.17 | 0.04% | 9 | 0.02% | 22 | 0.05% |
| | WNP | 259.28 | 2.85% | 2,299 | 24.70% | 2,558 | 27.55% |

10 ANT=Antarctic; CNP=Central North Pacific; NP=North Pacific; NIND=Northern Indian; SIND=Southern Indian; IND=Indian; WNP=Western North Pacific; ECS=East China Sea; JW=Sea of Japan; WP=Western Pacific; SOJ=Sea of Japan; IA=Inshore Archipelago; WAU=Western Australia; YS=Yellow Sea; OE=Offshore Japan; OW=Nearshore Japan; JW=Sea of Japan/Minke; JE=Pacific coast of Japan; SH=Southern Hemisphere; DPS=distinct population segment

**Table 4-11. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2, Years 1 to 4 (Marine Mammal Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[10] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Humpback whale | CNP stock and Hawaii DPS | 175.75 | 1.74% | 311 | 3.11% | 487 | 4.85% |
| | WAU stock and DPS | 0.85 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.00% |
| | WNP stock and DPS | 315.07 | 23.82% | 2,788 | 210.03% | 3,103 | 233.84% |
| North Pacific right whale | WNP | 3.65 | 0.33% | 85 | 9.24% | 89 | 9.57% |
| Omura's whale | NIND | 4.05 | 0.04% | 4 | 0.04% | 8 | 0.07% |
| | SIND | 5.01 | 0.04% | 0 | 0.00% | 5 | 0.04% |
| | WNP | 13.68 | 0.81% | 0 | 0.00% | 14 | 0.81% |
| Sei whale | Hawaii | 9.46 | 2.39% | 9 | 2.39% | 19 | 4.78% |
| | SIND | 0.16 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | NP | 114.31 | 1.63% | 3,058 | 43.73% | 3,172 | 45.37% |
| | NIND | 3.93 | 0.04% | 0 | 0.00% | 4 | 0.04% |
| Western North Pacific gray whale | WNP stock and Western DPS | 0.45 | 0.15% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| Baird's beaked whale | WNP | 2,746.60 | 48.26% | 0 | 0.00% | 2,747 | 48.26% |
| Blainville's beaked whale | Hawaii | 35.06 | 1.83% | 0 | 0.00% | 35 | 1.83% |
| | WNP | 269.35 | 3.30% | 0 | 0.00% | 269 | 3.30% |
| | IND | 47.41 | 0.27% | 0 | 0.00% | 47 | 0.27% |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | 4-Islands | 4.68 | 2.48% | 0 | 0.00% | 5 | 2.48% |
| | Hawaii Island | 0.41 | 0.34% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | Hawaii Pelagic | 95.14 | 0.41% | 0 | 0.00% | 95 | 0.41% |
| | IA | 104.12 | 0.11% | 0 | 0.00% | 104 | 0.11% |
| | IND | 1,128.21 | 0.14% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,128 | 0.14% |
| | Japanese Coastal | 1,686.43 | 47.94% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,686 | 47.94% |

**Table 4-11. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2, Years 1 to 4 (Marine Mammal Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock[10]* | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Common bottlenose dolphin (Continued) | Kauai/Niihau | 13.23 | 7.16% | 0 | 0.00% | 13 | 7.16% |
| | Oahu | 38.16 | 5.17% | 0 | 0.00% | 38 | 5.17% |
| | WNP Northern Offshore | 580.80 | 0.57% | 0 | 0.00% | 581 | 0.57% |
| | WNP Southern Offshore | 2,725.54 | 6.63% | 0 | 0.00% | 2,726 | 6.63% |
| | WAU | 634.90 | 21.16% | 0 | 0.00% | 635 | 21.16% |
| Common dolphin | IND | 52.32 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 52 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 203,871.30 | 12.24% | 0 | 0.00% | 203,871 | 12.24% |
| Cuvier’s beaked whale | Hawaii | 21.91 | 3.03% | 0 | 0.00% | 22 | 3.03% |
| | IND | 230.88 | 0.85% | 0 | 0.00% | 231 | 0.85% |
| | SH | 76.96 | 0.11% | 0 | 0.00% | 77 | 0.11% |
| | WNP | 6,945.66 | 7.78% | 0 | 0.00% | 6,946 | 7.78% |
| Dall’s porpoise | SOJ *dalli* type | 614.35 | 0.36% | 0 | 0.00% | 614 | 0.36% |
| | WNP *dalli* ecotype | 22,056.04 | 13.62% | 0 | 0.00% | 22,056 | 13.62% |
| | WNP *truei* ecotype | 487.28 | 0.28% | 0 | 0.00% | 487 | 0.28% |
| Deraniyagala's beaked whale | IND | 157.76 | 0.92% | 0 | 0.00% | 158 | 0.92% |
| | NP | 346.08 | 1.41% | 0 | 0.00% | 346 | 1.41% |
| Dwarf sperm whale | Hawaii | 655.27 | 3.72% | 0 | 0.00% | 655 | 3.72% |
| | IND | 3.04 | 0.05% | 0 | 0.00% | 3 | 0.05% |
| | WNP | 486.15 | 0.14% | 0 | 0.00% | 486 | 0.14% |
| False killer whale | Hawaii Pelagic | 57.73 | 3.72% | 0 | 0.00% | 58 | 3.72% |
| | IA | 251.87 | 2.59% | 0 | 0.00% | 252 | 2.59% |
| | IND | 11.73 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 12 | 0.01% |

**Table 4-11. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2, Years 1 to 4 (Marine Mammal Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[10] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| False killer whale (Continued) | Main Hawaiian Islands Insular stock and DPS | 0.69 | 0.41% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.41% |
| | Northwestern Hawaiian Islands | 0.00 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 1,350.01 | 8.15% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,350 | 8.15% |
| Fraser's dolphin | CNP | 546.45 | 3.24% | 0 | 0.00% | 546 | 3.24% |
| | Hawaii | 1,944.18 | 3.79% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,944 | 3.79% |
| | IND | 92.96 | 0.05% | 0 | 0.00% | 93 | 0.05% |
| | WNP | 2,287.28 | 1.16% | 0 | 0.00% | 2,287 | 1.16% |
| Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale | IND | 11.54 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 12 | 0.07% |
| | NP | 475.64 | 2.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 476 | 2.00% |
| Harbor porpoise | WNP | 365.94 | 1.17% | 0 | 0.00% | 366 | 1.17% |
| Hubbs' beaked whale | NP | 26.20 | 0.11% | 0 | 0.00% | 26 | 0.11% |
| Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin | IND | 11.31 | 0.14% | 0 | 0.00% | 11 | 0.14% |
| Killer whale | Hawaii | 6.41 | 4.41% | 0 | 0.00% | 6 | 4.41% |
| | IND | 396.85 | 3.15% | 0 | 0.00% | 397 | 3.15% |
| | WNP | 10,470.13 | 85.37% | 0 | 0.00% | 10,470 | 85.37% |
| *Kogia* spp. | WNP | 1,316.59 | 0.31% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,317 | 0.31% |
| Longman's beaked whale | Hawaii | 739.32 | 5.01% | 0 | 0.00% | 739 | 5.01% |
| | IND | 325.23 | 1.92% | 0 | 0.00% | 325 | 1.92% |
| | WNP | 470.53 | 6.14% | 0 | 0.00% | 471 | 6.14% |
| Melon-headed whale | Hawaiian Islands | 180.90 | 2.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 181 | 2.07% |
| | IND | 401.65 | 0.64% | 0 | 0.00% | 402 | 0.64% |

**Table 4-11. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2, Years 1 to 4 (Marine Mammal Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[10] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Melon-headed whale (Continued) | Kohala Resident | 9.23 | 0.41% | 0 | 0.00% | 9 | 0.41% |
| | WNP | 1,605.35 | 2.87% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,605 | 2.87% |
| *Mesoplodon* spp. | WNP | 10.38 | 0.05% | 0 | 0.00% | 10 | 0.05% |
| Northern right whale dolphin | NP | 0.26 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| Pacific white-sided dolphin | NP | 9,530.41 | 1.05% | 0 | 0.00% | 9,530 | 1.05% |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | 4-Islands | 31.69 | 14.40% | 0 | 0.00% | 32 | 14.40% |
| | Hawaii Island | 22.60 | 10.26% | 0 | 0.00% | 23 | 10.26% |
| | Hawaiian Pelagic | 297.46 | 0.55% | 0 | 0.00% | 297 | 0.55% |
| | IND | 311.25 | 0.05% | 0 | 0.00% | 311 | 0.05% |
| | Oahu | 23.15 | 10.54% | 0 | 0.00% | 23 | 10.54% |
| | WNP | 5,104.81 | 3.95% | 0 | 0.00% | 5,105 | 3.95% |
| Pygmy killer whale | Hawaii | 393.36 | 3.72% | 0 | 0.00% | 393 | 3.72% |
| | IND | 59.52 | 0.27% | 0 | 0.00% | 60 | 0.27% |
| | WNP | 901.17 | 2.87% | 0 | 0.00% | 901 | 2.87% |
| Pygmy sperm whale | Hawaii | 266.12 | 3.72% | 0 | 0.00% | 266 | 3.72% |
| | IND | 0.28 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 202.54 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 203 | 0.07% |
| Risso's dolphin | Hawaii | 414.23 | 3.58% | 0 | 0.00% | 414 | 3.58% |
| | IA | 1,045.41 | 0.70% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,045 | 0.70% |
| | WNP | 4,347.00 | 3.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 4,347 | 3.07% |
| | IND | 4,620.91 | 1.01% | 0 | 0.00% | 4,621 | 1.01% |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | Hawaii | 213.07 | 0.28% | 0 | 0.00% | 213 | 0.28% |
| | IND | 41.44 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 41 | 0.00% |

**Table 4-11. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2, Years 1 to 4 (Marine Mammal Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[10] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Rough-toothed dolphin (Continued) | WNP | 1,439.43 | 28.74% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,439 | 28.74% |
| Short-finned pilot whale | Hawaii | 395.90 | 2.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 396 | 2.00% |
| | IND | 1,525.55 | 0.59% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,526 | 0.59% |
| | WNP Northern Ecotype | 524.55 | 2.52% | 0 | 0.00% | 525 | 2.52% |
| | WNP Southern Ecotype | 5,682.72 | 18.03% | 0 | 0.00% | 5,683 | 18.03% |
| Southern bottlenose whale | IND | 22.44 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 22 | 0.00% |
| Spade-toothed beaked whale | IND | 15.80 | 0.09% | 0 | 0.00% | 16 | 0.09% |
| Sperm whale | Hawaii | 105.88 | 2.34% | 0 | 0.00% | 106 | 2.34% |
| | NIND | 33.32 | 0.14% | 0 | 0.00% | 33 | 0.14% |
| | NP | 1,429.07 | 1.28% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,429 | 1.28% |
| | SIND | 15.70 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 16 | 0.07% |
| Spinner dolphin | Hawaii Island | 1.24 | 0.19% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.19% |
| | Hawaii Pelagic | 191.51 | 5.72% | 0 | 0.00% | 192 | 5.72% |
| | IND | 239.68 | 0.05% | 0 | 0.00% | 240 | 0.05% |
| | Kauai/Niihau | 83.08 | 13.85% | 0 | 0.00% | 83 | 13.85% |
| | Kure/Midway Atoll | 0.00 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | Oahu/4-Islands | 19.70 | 2.88% | 0 | 0.00% | 20 | 2.88% |
| | Pearl and Hermes Reef | 0.00 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 574.02 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 574 | 0.00% |
| Stejneger's beaked whale | WNP | 200.96 | 2.49% | 0 | 0.00% | 201 | 2.49% |
| Striped dolphin | Hawaii | 269.01 | 0.41% | 0 | 0.00% | 269 | 0.41% |
| | IND | 5,059.47 | 0.75% | 0 | 0.00% | 5,059 | 0.75% |

**Table 4-11. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2, Years 1 to 4 (Marine Mammal Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[10] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Striped dolphin (Continued) | Japanese Coastal | 3,365.96 | 17.18% | 0 | 0.00% | 3,366 | 17.18% |
| | WNP Northern Offshore | 266.95 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 267 | 0.07% |
| | WNP Southern Offshore | 3,282.31 | 6.28% | 0 | 0.00% | 3,282 | 6.28% |
| Hawaiian monk seal | Hawaii | 9.71 | 0.69% | 0 | 0.00% | 10 | 0.69% |
| Northern fur seal | Western Pacific | 8,475.02 | 1.71% | 0 | 0.00% | 8,475 | 1.71% |
| Ribbon seal | NP | 15,451.27 | 4.23% | 254 | 0.07% | 15,705 | 4.30% |
| Spotted seal | Alaska stock/Bering Sea DPS | 79,242.99 | 17.21% | 1,479 | 0.32% | 80,722 | 17.53% |
| | Southern stock and DPS | 0.43 | 0.03% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| Steller sea lion | Western/Asian stock, Western DPS | 2.17 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 2 | 0.00% |

**Table 4-12. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2, Years 5 and Beyond (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[11] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 5+* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Antarctic minke whale | ANT | 0.15 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| Blue whale | CNP | 3.73 | 2.85% | 0 | 0.00% | 4 | 2.85% |
| | NIND | 0.59 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 8.44 | 0.00% | 114 | 1.14% | 123 | 1.14% |
| | SIND | 0.81 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.07% |
| Bryde's whale | ECS | 4.69 | 3.42% | 15 | 10.71% | 19 | 14.13% |
| | Hawaii | 6.50 | 0.74% | 0 | 0.00% | 6 | 0.74% |
| | WNP | 211.47 | 1.24% | 226 | 1.02% | 437 | 2.26% |
| | NIND | 5.57 | 0.05% | 5 | 0.05% | 10 | 0.10% |
| | SIND | 6.89 | 0.05% | 2 | 0.02% | 9 | 0.07% |
| Common minke whale | Hawaii | 331.63 | 1.32% | 351 | 1.43% | 682 | 2.74% |
| | IND | 1,122.10 | 0.39% | 626 | 0.20% | 1,748 | 0.59% |
| | WNP JW | 4.55 | 0.17% | 0 | 0.00% | 5 | 0.17% |
| | WNP OE | 1,191.15 | 4.85% | 1,213 | 4.85% | 2,404 | 9.71% |
| | YS | 67.65 | 1.51% | 183 | 4.06% | 250 | 5.57% |
| Fin whale | ECS | 2.59 | 0.51% | 10 | 1.96% | 12 | 2.47% |
| | Hawaii | 4.17 | 2.74% | 0 | 0.00% | 4 | 2.74% |
| | IND | 0.20 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | SIND | 18.11 | 0.05% | 12 | 0.02% | 30 | 0.07% |
| | WNP | 347.52 | 3.81% | 3,107 | 33.42% | 3,455 | 37.23% |
| Humpback whale | CNP stock and Hawaii DPS | 220.25 | 2.19% | 391 | 3.91% | 611 | 6.10% |

11 ANT=Antarctic; CNP=Central North Pacific; NP=North Pacific; NIND=Northern Indian; SIND=Southern Indian; IND=Indian; WNP=Western North Pacific; ECS=East China Sea; JW=Sea of Japan; WP=Western Pacific; SOJ=Sea of Japan; IA=Inshore Archipelago; WAU=Western Australia; YS=Yellow Sea; OE=Offshore Japan; OW=Nearshore Japan; JW=Sea of Japan/Minke; JE=Pacific coast of Japan; SH=Southern Hemisphere; DPS=distinct population segment

**Table 4-12. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2, Years 5 and Beyond (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[11] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 5+* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Humpback whale (Continued) | WAU stock and DPS | 1.17 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.00% |
| | WNP stock and DPS | 381.92 | 28.87% | 3,884 | 292.62% | 4,266 | 321.49% |
| North Pacific right whale | WNP | 4.77 | 0.44% | 117 | 12.71% | 122 | 13.15% |
| Omura's whale | NIND | 5.57 | 0.05% | 5 | 0.05% | 10 | 0.10% |
| | SIND | 6.89 | 0.05% | 0 | 0.00% | 7 | 0.05% |
| | WNP | 15.97 | 0.95% | 0 | 0.00% | 16 | 0.95% |
| Sei whale | Hawaii | 11.29 | 2.85% | 11 | 2.85% | 22 | 5.70% |
| | SIND | 0.22 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | NP | 156.58 | 2.23% | 4,204 | 60.13% | 4,361 | 62.37% |
| | NIND | 5.40 | 0.05% | 0 | 0.00% | 5 | 0.05% |
| Western North Pacific gray whale | WNP stock and Western DPS | 0.59 | 0.20% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.20% |
| Baird’s beaked whale | WNP | 3,776.57 | 66.36% | 0 | 0.00% | 3,777 | 66.36% |
| Blainville’s beaked whale | Hawaii | 47.22 | 2.40% | 0 | 0.00% | 47 | 2.40% |
| | WNP | 311.35 | 3.82% | 0 | 0.00% | 311 | 3.82% |
| | IND | 65.19 | 0.37% | 0 | 0.00% | 65 | 0.37% |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | 4-Islands | 5.59 | 2.96% | 0 | 0.00% | 6 | 2.96% |
| | Hawaii Island | 0.49 | 0.41% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | Hawaii Pelagic | 113.55 | 0.49% | 0 | 0.00% | 114 | 0.49% |
| | IA | 140.04 | 0.15% | 0 | 0.00% | 140 | 0.15% |
| | IND | 1,551.29 | 0.20% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,551 | 0.20% |
| | Japanese Coastal | 1,789.16 | 50.86% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,789 | 50.86% |
| | Kauai/Niihau | 15.79 | 8.55% | 0 | 0.00% | 16 | 8.55% |
| | Oahu | 45.55 | 6.17% | 0 | 0.00% | 46 | 6.17% |

**Table 4-12. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2, Years 5 and Beyond (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| ***Marine Mammal Species*** | ***Stock***[11] | ***Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 5+*** | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | ***Behavior (Individuals)*** | ***Behavior (Percent Stock)*** | ***TTS (Individuals)*** | ***TTS (Percent Stock)*** | ***Total Level B (Individuals)*** | ***Total Level B (Percent Stock)*** |
| Common bottlenose dolphin (Continued) | WNP Northern Offshore | 798.60 | 0.78% | 0 | 0.00% | 799 | 0.78% |
| | WNP Southern Offshore | 3,062.72 | 7.45% | 0 | 0.00% | 3,063 | 7.45% |
| | WAU | 872.98 | 29.09% | 0 | 0.00% | 873 | 29.09% |
| Common dolphin | IND | 71.94 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 72 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 275,078.61 | 16.08% | 0 | 0.00% | 275,079 | 16.08% |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | Hawaii | 26.15 | 3.62% | 0 | 0.00% | 26 | 3.62% |
| | IND | 317.46 | 1.17% | 0 | 0.00% | 317 | 1.17% |
| | SH | 105.82 | 0.15% | 0 | 0.00% | 106 | 0.15% |
| | WNP | 8,980.39 | 10.04% | 0 | 0.00% | 8,980 | 10.04% |
| Dall's porpoise | SOJ *dalli* type | 844.73 | 0.49% | 0 | 0.00% | 845 | 0.49% |
| | WNP *dalli* ecotype | 30,327.05 | 18.72% | 0 | 0.00% | 30,327 | 18.72% |
| | WNP *truei* ecotype | 670.01 | 0.39% | 0 | 0.00% | 670 | 0.39% |
| Deraniyagala's beaked whale | IND | 216.92 | 1.27% | 0 | 0.00% | 217 | 1.27% |
| | NP | 412.07 | 1.69% | 0 | 0.00% | 412 | 1.69% |
| Dwarf sperm whale | Hawaii | 782.10 | 4.44% | 0 | 0.00% | 782 | 4.44% |
| | IND | 4.18 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 4 | 0.07% |
| | WNP | 635.07 | 0.18% | 0 | 0.00% | 635 | 0.18% |
| False killer whale | Hawaii Pelagic | 68.90 | 4.44% | 0 | 0.00% | 69 | 4.44% |
| | IA | 341.17 | 3.51% | 0 | 0.00% | 341 | 3.51% |
| | IND | 16.13 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 16 | 0.00% |
| | Main Hawaiian Islands Insular stock and DPS | 0.82 | 0.49% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.49% |
| | Northwestern Hawaiian Islands | 0.00 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |

**Table 4-12. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2, Years 5 and Beyond (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[11] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 5+* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| False killer whale (Continued) | WNP | 1,596.09 | 9.63% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,596 | 9.63% |
| Fraser's dolphin | CNP | 685.97 | 4.06% | 0 | 0.00% | 686 | 4.06% |
| | Hawaii | 2,320.48 | 4.52% | 0 | 0.00% | 2,320 | 4.52% |
| | IND | 127.82 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 128 | 0.07% |
| | WNP | 2,558.59 | 1.29% | 0 | 0.00% | 2,559 | 1.29% |
| Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale | IND | 15.86 | 0.10% | 0 | 0.00% | 16 | 0.10% |
| | NP | 568.01 | 2.38% | 0 | 0.00% | 568 | 2.38% |
| Harbor porpoise | WNP | 503.16 | 1.61% | 0 | 0.00% | 503 | 1.61% |
| Hubbs' beaked whale | NP | 36.03 | 0.15% | 0 | 0.00% | 36 | 0.15% |
| Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin | IND | 15.55 | 0.20% | 0 | 0.00% | 16 | 0.20% |
| Killer whale | Hawaii | 7.65 | 5.26% | 0 | 0.00% | 8 | 5.26% |
| | IND | 545.67 | 4.33% | 0 | 0.00% | 546 | 4.33% |
| | WNP | 14,387.33 | 117.31% | 0 | 0.00% | 14,387 | 117.31% |
| *Kogia* spp. | WNP | 1,494.11 | 0.35% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,494 | 0.35% |
| Longman's beaked whale | Hawaii | 882.41 | 11.59% | 0 | 0.00% | 882 | 11.59% |
| Longman's beaked whale (Continued) | IND | 447.19 | 2.64% | 0 | 0.00% | 447 | 2.64% |
| | WNP | 574.04 | 7.50% | 0 | 0.00% | 574 | 7.50% |
| Melon-headed whale | Hawaiian Islands | 215.92 | 2.47% | 0 | 0.00% | 216 | 2.47% |
| | IND | 552.27 | 0.88% | 0 | 0.00% | 552 | 0.88% |
| | Kohala Resident | 11.02 | 0.49% | 0 | 0.00% | 11 | 0.49% |
| | WNP | 1,823.43 | 3.27% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,823 | 3.27% |
| *Mesoplodon* spp. | WNP | 14.28 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 14 | 0.07% |

**Table 4-12. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2, Years 5 and Beyond (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[11] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 5+* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Northern right whale dolphin | NP | 0.36 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| Pacific white-sided dolphin | NP | 12,890.33 | 1.41% | 0 | 0.00% | 12,890 | 1.41% |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | 4-Islands | 37.82 | 17.18% | 0 | 0.00% | 38 | 17.18% |
| | Hawaii Island | 26.97 | 12.25% | 0 | 0.00% | 27 | 12.25% |
| | Hawaiian Pelagic | 355.04 | 0.66% | 0 | 0.00% | 355 | 0.66% |
| | IND | 427.97 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 428 | 0.07% |
| | Oahu | 27.63 | 12.58% | 0 | 0.00% | 28 | 12.58% |
| | WNP | 5,883.15 | 4.53% | 0 | 0.00% | 5,883 | 4.53% |
| Pygmy killer whale | Hawaii | 469.49 | 4.44% | 0 | 0.00% | 469 | 4.44% |
| | IND | 81.84 | 0.37% | 0 | 0.00% | 82 | 0.37% |
| | WNP | 1,035.09 | 3.30% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,035 | 3.30% |
| Pygmy sperm whale | Hawaii | 317.62 | 4.44% | 0 | 0.00% | 318 | 4.44% |
| | IND | 0.39 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 264.88 | 0.09% | 0 | 0.00% | 265 | 0.09% |
| Risso's dolphin | Hawaii | 494.40 | 4.28% | 0 | 0.00% | 494 | 4.28% |
| | IA | 1,374.49 | 0.92% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,374 | 0.92% |
| | WNP | 4,914.00 | 3.47% | 0 | 0.00% | 4,914 | 3.47% |
| | IND | 6,353.75 | 1.39% | 0 | 0.00% | 6,354 | 1.39% |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | Hawaii | 254.31 | 0.33% | 0 | 0.00% | 254 | 0.33% |
| | IND | 56.98 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 57 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 1,731.81 | 34.56% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,732 | 34.56% |
| Short-finned pilot whale | Hawaii | 472.53 | 2.38% | 0 | 0.00% | 473 | 2.38% |
| | IND | 2,097.63 | 0.81% | 0 | 0.00% | 2,098 | 0.81% |

**Table 4-12. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2, Years 5 and Beyond (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock[11]* | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 5+* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Short-finned pilot whale (Continued) | WNP Northern Ecotype | 721.26 | 3.47% | 0 | 0.00% | 721 | 3.47% |
| | WNP Southern Ecotype | 6,302.66 | 19.99% | 0 | 0.00% | 6,303 | 19.99% |
| Southern bottlenose whale | IND | 30.85 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 31 | 0.00% |
| Spade-toothed beaked whale | IND | 21.73 | 0.12% | 0 | 0.00% | 22 | 0.12% |
| Sperm whale | Hawaii | 126.38 | 2.80% | 0 | 0.00% | 126 | 2.80% |
| | NIND | 45.81 | 0.20% | 0 | 0.00% | 46 | 0.20% |
| | NP | 1,855.21 | 1.68% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,855 | 1.68% |
| | SIND | 21.58 | 0.10% | 0 | 0.00% | 22 | 0.10% |
| Spinner dolphin | Hawaii Island | 1.48 | 0.22% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.22% |
| | Hawaii Pelagic | 228.58 | 6.82% | 0 | 0.00% | 229 | 6.82% |
| | IND | 329.56 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 330 | 0.07% |
| | Kauai/Niihau | 99.16 | 16.53% | 0 | 0.00% | 99 | 16.53% |
| | Kure/Midway Atoll | 0.00 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | Oahu/4-Islands | 23.52 | 6.66% | 0 | 0.00% | 24 | 6.66% |
| | Pearl and Hermes Reef | 0.00 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 720.54 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 721 | 0.00% |
| Stejneger's beaked whale | WNP | 276.32 | 3.42% | 0 | 0.00% | 276 | 3.42% |
| Striped dolphin | Hawaii | 321.08 | 0.49% | 0 | 0.00% | 321 | 0.49% |
| | IND | 6,956.77 | 1.03% | 0 | 0.00% | 6,957 | 1.03% |
| | Japanese Coastal | 3,571.00 | 18.23% | 0 | 0.00% | 3,571 | 18.23% |
| | WNP Northern Offshore | 367.06 | 0.10% | 0 | 0.00% | 367 | 0.10% |
| | WNP Southern Offshore | 3,728.63 | 7.13% | 0 | 0.00% | 3,729 | 7.13% |
| Hawaiian monk seal | Hawaii | 12.75 | 0.91% | 0 | 0.00% | 13 | 0.91% |

**Table 4-12. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2, Years 5 and Beyond (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[11] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 5+* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Northern fur seal | Western Pacific | 11,653.16 | 2.35% | 0 | 0.00% | 11,653 | 2.35% |
| Ribbon seal | NP | 21,245.50 | 5.82% | 350 | 0.10% | 21,595 | 5.92% |
| Spotted seal | Alaska stock/Bering Sea DPS | 108,959.11 | 23.66% | 2,034 | 0.44% | 110,993 | 24.10% |
| | Southern stock and DPS | 0.59 | 0.04% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.04% |
| Steller sea lion | Western/Asian stock, Western DPS | 2.98 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 3 | 0.00% |

hearing sensitivity for acute, incidental exposure to underwater sound. The results of the LFS SRP were used to derive the LFA risk continuum function, from which the potential for biologically significant behavioral response is calculated.

The potential for PTS (MMPA Level A incidental harassment) is considered within the context of the mitigation and monitoring efforts that would occur whenever SURTASS LFA sonar is transmitting. Mitigation monitoring is designed to detect marine mammals before they are exposed to 180 dB SPL RLs. The NMFS (2018) acoustic guidance for estimating the potential for PTS defines weighted thresholds as sound exposure levels. The length of a nominal LFA sonar transmission is 60 sec, which lowers the thresholds by approximately 18 dB SEL ($10x\log_{10}$ [60 sec] =17.8) if the assumption is made that all RLs are at the same SPL. In addition to signal duration, hearing sensitivity must be considered. If transmissions at 300 Hz are considered for this example, as it is in about the middle of the frequency range of LFA sonar transmissions (100 to 500 Hz), the thresholds must be appropriately weighted to account for each functional hearing group's sensitivity. This results in an increase in the thresholds of approximately 1.5, 46, 56, 15, and 20 dB, respectively, for LF, MF, HF, PW, and OW groups when considering a signal at 300 Hz. Based on simple spherical spreading (i.e., a transmission loss [TL] based on $20 \times \log_{10}$ [range in meters]), all functional hearing groups except LF cetaceans would need to remain within 22 ft (7 m) for the entirety of an LFA sonar transmission (60 sec) to potentially experience PTS. An LF cetacean would need to remain within 135 ft (41 m) for the entirety of an LFA sonar transmission to potentially experience PTS. Based on the mitigation procedures used during SURTASS LFA sonar activities, the chances of this occurring are negligible. Therefore, no PTS (MMPA Level A harassment) is expected with the implementation of mitigation measures.

The impact to marine mammals anticipated from exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions is MMPA Level B harassment. For most stocks of marine mammal species, the maximum annual percent of the stock or population that may experience Level B incidental harassment is less than 15 percent. This means that during a year, less than 15 percent of the population may react to SURTASS LFA sonar during one 24-hr period by changing behavior or moving a small distance or may experience TTS. Of the 139 stocks within the SURTASS LFA sonar study area, eight stocks under Alternative 1 and eleven stocks in years 1 to 4 and fifteen stocks in years 5 and beyond under Alternative 2 have the potential for MMPA Level B incidental harassment greater than 15 percent. The highest percentage of a population that may experience Level B harassment is the WNP stock and DPS of humpback whales at 157.68 percent under Alternative 1 and 233.84 percent and 321.49 percent in years 1 to 4 and years 5 and beyond, respectively, under Alternative 2. This means that each individual in the population may react behaviorally or have TTS one to three times during one year. The percentage of the WNP stock and DPS of humpback whales that may experience Level B harassment is influenced by the size of the population, which is small (1,328 individuals). The next highest stock is the WNP stock of killer whales, with 53.41 percent potentially experiencing Level B harassment under Alternative 1 and 85.37 percent and 117.31 percent in years 1 to 4 and years 5 and beyond, respectively, under Alternative 2.

#### 4.5.2.2 Potential Impacts to Biological Resources: Protected Habitats

Marine habitats are protected for a variety of reasons including intrinsic ecological value; biological importance to specific marine species or taxa, which are often also protected by federal or international agreements; management of fisheries; and cultural or historic significance. As was discussed in Chapter 3, there are four types of marine and aquatic habitats protected under U.S. legislation or Presidential EO: critical habitat, EFH, MPAs, and NMSs. The potential impacts to these protected habitats are described in this section.

#### *4.5.2.2.1 Critical Habitat*

Of the marine mammals that have been listed as threatened or endangered under the ESA, critical habitat has been designated within the study area for two species, the Hawaiian monk seal and the MHI Insular DPS of the false killer whale. The key biological and/or physical features of the marine neritic and pelagic CH for the two species/DPSs under consideration include:

- Habitat areas:
  - sheltered nearshore marine areas for pupping and nursing
  - island-associated marine waters that are offshore, productive, and of varied water depths
- Prey: abundant and available prey in sufficient density, diversity, distribution, and abundance to support foraging;
- Bathymetry: marine waters up to 1,640 ft (500 m) in depth for juvenile and adult foraging;
- Water quality: free of pollutants or harmful substances;
- Anthropogenic
  - low human disturbance
  - low levels of anthropogenic noise such that the ability to detect, interpret, and utilize acoustic cues would not be affected.

➢ Hawaiian monk seal

Critical habitat for the Hawaiian monk seal has been designated in the Northwestern (NWHI) and MHI and includes seafloor and marine neritic and pelagic waters within 33 ft (10 m) of the seafloor from the shoreline seaward to the 628-ft (200-m) depth contour at 10 areas in the NWHI on Kure Atoll, Midway Islands, Pearl and Hermes Reef, Lisianski Island, Laysan Island, Maro Reef, Gardner Pinnacles, French Frigate Shoals, Necker Island, Nihoa, Kaula Island and Niihau and Lehua Islands, and six areas in the MHI on Kaula, Niihau, Kauai, Oahu, Maui Nui (i.e., Kahoolawe, Lanai, Maui, and Molokai), and Hawaii (excluding National Security Exclusion zones off Kauai, Oahu, and Kahoolawe) (NOAA, 2015). The MHI critical habitat also includes specific terrestrial areas from the shoreline inland 16 ft (5 m).

The physical or biological features of the Hawaiian monk seal critical habitat that support the species' life history needs include 1) areas with characteristics preferred by monk seals for pupping and nursing; 2) shallow, sheltered nearshore marine areas preferred by monk seals for pupping and nursing; 3) marine areas up to 1,640 ft (500 m) in depth preferred by juvenile and adult monk seals for foraging; 4) areas with low levels of human disturbance; 5) marine areas with adequate prey quantity and quality; and 6) significant shore areas used by monk seals for hauling out, resting, or molting (NOAA, 2015). Nearly all of the critical habitat for the Hawaiian monk seal lies within the coastal standoff distance for SURTASS LFA sonar, wherein the sound field generated by LFA sonar cannot exceed 180 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) within 22 km (12 nmi) of any land, including islands. A small area of the monk seal's critical habitat at Penguin Bank extends beyond the 22-km coastal standoff distance. However, per the CZMA consultation with the State of Hawaii for SURTASS LFA sonar, the Navy agreed not to operate SURTASS LFA sonar in waters of Penguin Bank to the 600-ft (183-m) isobath, which is the boundary of the Penguin Bank OBIA for SURTASS LFA sonar. Thus, the critical habitat of the Hawaiian monk seal beyond the coastal standoff range would not be exposed to SURTASS LFA sonar activities.

- Potential Effects to the Physical Features of Hawaiian Monk Seal Critical Habitat

Use of SURTASS LFA sonar entails the periodic deployment of acoustic transducers and receivers into the water column from ocean-going ships. SURTASS LFA sonar is deployed from ocean surveillance ships that are U.S. Coast Guard-certified for operations and operate in accordance with all applicable federal, international, and U.S. Navy rules and regulations related to environmental compliance, especially for discharge of potentially hazardous materials. In particular, SURTASS LFA sonar ships comply with all requirements of the Clean Water Act (CWA) and Act to Prevent Pollution from Ships (APPS). SURTASS LFA sonar vessel movements are not unusual or extraordinary and are part of routine operations of seagoing vessels. Therefore, no discharges of pollutants regulated under the APPS or CWA would result from the operation of the SURTASS LFA sonar systems nor would unregulated environmental effects from the operation of the SURTASS LFA sonar vessels occur. In no way can the employment of the SURTASS LFA sonar systems affect the physical circulation processes or bathymetry of the waters in which the sonar would be operated. Thus, the Hawaiian monk seal critical habitat features of water quality, bathymetry, and physical circulation processes would not be affected by the use of SURTASS LFA sonar.

Deployment and use of the SURTASS LFA sonar systems result in no physical alterations to the marine environment other than the addition of ephemeral sound energy to the oceanic ambient noise environment when the sonar is transmitting. However, the power level of LFA sonar transmissions to which the critical habitat may be exposed would be low (< 180 dB re 1 µPa [rms]), while no LFA sonar transmissions would occur in the waters of Penguin Bank. When deployed and transmitting, transmissions from SURTASS LFA sonar would temporarily add to the ambient noise level in the frequency band (100 to 500 Hz) in which LFA sonar operates, but the effect on the overall noise levels in the ocean would be minimal. Anthropogenic sources of ambient noise that are most likely to contribute to increases in ambient noise levels are commercial shipping, offshore oil and gas exploration and drilling, and naval and other uses of sonar (ICES, 2005; MMC, 2007). The addition of even a small percentage to the ambient noise environment of the ocean would have no effect on the relevant physical features of the designated critical habitat. Thus, transmissions of SURTASS LFA sonar may affect but would not adversely affect the physical features of the Hawaiian monk seal critical habitat.

- Potential Effects to the Biological Features of Hawaiian Monk Seal Critical Habitat

The remaining potential for critical habitat effects associated with SURTASS LFA sonar activities would be to biological features of the habitat, namely to the availability and density of prey. Although the majority of the Hawaiian monk seal's prey would not be affected by SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions, marine fishes may be affected by exposure to LFA sonar transmissions, but only if they are within close proximity (<0.54 nmi [<1 km]) to the transmitting sonar source. The Navy's analysis indicates a minimal to negligible potential for an individual fish to experience non-auditory or auditory effects or a stress response from exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions. A low potential exists for minor, temporary behavioral responses or masking effects to an individual fish when LFA sonar is transmitting, but no potential is estimated for fitness level consequences to fish stocks. Since it is highly unlikely that a significant percentage of any fish stock would be in sufficient proximity during LFA sonar transmissions to experience such effects, there is minimal potential for LFA sonar to affect fish stocks. Thus, no adverse effects are reasonably expected on the availability of prey fishes or reproductive fish partners as the result of exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar. As a result, SURTASS LFA sonar activities would not affect the biological features of the Hawaiian monk seal's designated critical habitat.

### ➢ Main Hawaiian Island Insular DPS of False Killer Whales

Critical habitat has been designated for the Main Hawaiian Island Insular DPS of the false killer whale (NOAA, 2018). The critical habitat for the Main Hawaiian Islands DPS of false killer whales includes waters from the 148- to 10,499-ft (45-to 3,200-m) depth contours around the Main Hawaiian Islands from Niihau east to Hawaii. Some Navy and other federal agency areas, such as the Pacific Missile Range Facility offshore ranges, are excluded from the proposed critical habitat designation (NOAA, 2018).

The physical or biological features of the designated critical habitat that are essential for the conservation of the MHI Insular DPS of false killer whales include: 1) island-associated marine habitat (productive, deeper, just offshore waters of varying water depths); 2) prey species (large pelagic fish and squid) of sufficient quantity, quality, and availability to support individual growth, reproduction, and development, as well as overall population growth; 3) waters free of pollutants of a type and amount harmful to MHI Insular false killer whales (i.e., good water quality) so that false killer whales can forage and reproduce free from disease and impairment; and 4) habitat free of anthropogenic noise that would significantly impair the value of the habitat for false killer whales' use or occupancy (i.e., no anthropogenic noise of a certain level, intensity, and duration that could alter the ability of false killer whales to detect, interpret, and utilize acoustic cues that support important life history functions, or can result in long-term habitat avoidance or abandonment) (NOAA, 2018).

In most areas of the waters surrounding the MHI, the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA (12 nmi [22 km]) is located closer to shore than the outer boundary of the CH for the MHI Insular DPS of the false killer whale, which is the 10,499-ft (3,200 m) isobath. A portion of the critical habitat outside the coastal standoff range is located in the waters of Penguin Bank. As part of the CZMA stipulations for SURTASS LFA sonar use in Hawaiian waters, the Navy agreed not to operate SURTASS LFA sonar in the waters over Penguin Bank to a water depth of 600 ft (183 m). Additionally, the protection afforded by the MHI OBIA would extend to the part of the false killer whale's critical habitat located outside the coastal standoff range from November through April, which is the effective period for this OBIA.

- Potential Effects to the Physical Features of False Killer Whale Critical Habitat

The three physical features of the false killer whale critical habitat are island-associated habitat, waters free of pollutants, and habitat free of anthropogenic noise at a level that would cause masking, long-term habitat avoidance, or abandonment in false killer whales. SURTASS LFA sonar is deployed from ocean surveillance ships that are U.S. Coast Guard-certified for operations and operate in accordance with all applicable federal, international, and U.S. Navy rules and regulations related to environmental compliance, especially for discharge of potentially hazardous materials. In particular, SURTASS LFA sonar vessels comply with all requirements of the CWA and APPS. SURTASS LFA sonar vessel movements are not unusual or extraordinary and are part of routine operations of seagoing vessels. Therefore, no discharges of pollutants regulated under the APPS or CWA would result from the operation of the SURTASS LFA sonar systems nor would unregulated environmental effects from the operation of the SURTASS LFA sonar vessels occur. In no way can SURTASS LFA sonar activities affect the island-associated habitat features of bathymetry and productivity. Productivity is a cascading process regulated principally by available sunlight and nutrient concentrations at the lower trophic levels. Thus, the physical features of the false killer whale critical habitat of pollutant-free and island-associated habitat would not be affected by the operation of SURTASS LFA sonar.

The transmission of LF sound by SURTASS LFA sonar is the one stressor associated with SURTASS LFA sonar activities that may affect CH, particularly the physical feature of an anthropogenic noise-free environment such that masking, long-term habitat avoidance, or abandonment would not occur in false killer whales. Portions of the false killer whale habitat are located within the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA sonar while a portion of the critical habitat lies beyond the spatial extent of the coastal standoff range (Figure 3-8). When deployed and transmitting, transmissions from SURTASS LFA sonar would temporarily add to the ambient noise level in the frequency band (100 to 500 Hz) in which LFA sonar operates, but the effect on the overall noise levels in the ocean would be minimal. In the coastal standoff range, LFA sonar transmissions would be restricted to a lower power level, with transmissions less than 180 dB re 1 µPa [rms] SPL. With HFM3 monitoring and associated LFA source shutdown protocol in areas outside the coastal standoff zone, false killer whales would be detected before entering the mitigation zone, defined by a received level of 180 dB (rms). Therefore, at no time would animals experience a sound field greater than 180 dB (rms). The hearing and echolocation ability of false killer whales have been studied with captive animals (e.g., Kloepper et al., 2010; Yuen et al., 2005). Best sensitivity is found between 16 and 24 kHz, with echolocation clicks centered around 40 kHz. Therefore, the low-frequency and limited received levels that false killer whales may experience from SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities would not cause masking and are unlikely to result in long-term habitat avoidance or abandonment.

- Potential Effects to the Biological Features of False Killer Whale Critical Habitat

The availability of prey species (large pelagic fish and squid) for false killer whales is the one biological feature of the critical habitat for the Main Hawaiian Island Insular DPS of the false killer whale. The Navy has determined that no mortality of marine invertebrates is reasonably expected to occur from exposure to LFA sonar nor are population level effects likely. Thus, marine invertebrates such as squid would not reasonably be affected by SURTASS LFA sonar activities. Marine fishes, however, may be affected by exposure to LFA sonar transmissions, but only if they are located within close proximity (<0.54 nmi [<1 km]) to the transmitting sonar source. The Navy's analysis indicates a minimal to negligible potential for an individual fish to experience non-auditory or auditory effects or a stress response from exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions. A low potential exists for minor, temporary behavioral responses or masking effects to an individual fish when LFA sonar is transmitting, but no potential is estimated for fitness level consequences to fish stocks. Since it is highly unlikely that a significant percentage of any prey stock would be in sufficient proximity during LFA sonar transmissions to experience such effects, there is minimal potential for LFA sonar to affect prey fish stocks. Thus, no adverse effects are reasonably expected on the quantity, quality, and availability of prey fishes as the result of exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar activities. As a result, SURTASS LFA sonar activities would not affect the biological features of the Main Hawaiian Island Insular DPS of the false killer whale's designated critical habitat.

##### *4.5.2.2.2 Essential Fish Habitat*

In recognition of the critical importance that habitat plays in all lifestages of fish and invertebrate species, the MSFCMA, as amended, protects habitat essential to the production of federally managed marine and anadromous species within the U.S. EEZ. Congress defined EFH as "those waters and substrate necessary to fish for spawning, breeding, feeding, or growth to maturity" (16 U.S.C. §1802[10]). Information on EFH occurring within the SURTASS LFA sonar study area is provided in Chapter 3.

Adverse impacts to EFH are defined as "any impact that reduces quality and/or quantity of EFH"; adverse impacts include direct or indirect physical, chemical, or biological alterations of the waters or substrate and loss of, or injury to, benthic organisms, prey species and their habitat, and other ecosystem components, if such modifications reduce the quality and/or quantity of EFH (50 CFR §600).

As discussed above, the one stressor of the action alternatives is the transmission of LF sound. There is no potential for physical or chemical alterations of the water or substrate from sound transmissions (Chapter 4.4). In addition, there is no potential for loss of, or injury to, benthic organisms or prey species since they have little or no sensitivity to LF sound (Chapter 4.5). Therefore, there is little to no potential for impacts to EFH from either action alternative and thus, the quality nor quantity of EFH would not be reasonably affected and no adverse impacts on any type of EFH is expected from exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar activities as described in Alternatives 1 or 2.

#### *4.5.2.2.3 Marine Protected Areas*

The term "marine protected area" is very generalized and is used to describe specific regions of the marine and aquatic environments that have been set aside for protection, usually by individual nations within their territorial waters, although a small number of internationally recognized MPAs exist. The variety of names and uses of MPAs has led to confusion over what the term really means and where MPAs are used. The IUCN defines a protected area as "a clearly defined geographical space, recognized, dedicated and managed, through legal or other effective means, to achieve the long-term conservation of nature with associated ecosystem services and cultural values" (International Union for the Conservation of Nature [IUCN], 2012). In the U.S., an MPA is defined by EO 13158 as "any area of the marine environment that has been reserved by federal, state, territorial, tribal, or local laws or regulations to provide lasting protection for part or all of the natural and cultural resources therein." Although the objectives for establishing protection of marine areas vary widely, MPAs are typically used to achieve two broad objectives: 1) habitat protection, and 2) fisheries management and protection (McCay and Jones, 2011). The reader is referred to Chapter 3 for a review of MPAs within the study area.

As discussed above, the one stressor of the action alternatives is the transmission of LF sound. There is no potential for physical or chemical alterations of the water or substrate from sound transmissions. There is a potential for SURTASS LFA sonar to temporarily add to the ambient noise levels when it is transmitting (Chapter 4.3). Increases in ambient noise levels would only occur during SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions (nominal 60-sec duration wavetrain every 10 min) and within the narrow bandwidth of the signal (duration of each continuous-frequency sound transmission within the wavetrain is no longer than 10 sec). Therefore, there is little to no potential for impacts to MPAs under either action alternative.

#### *4.5.2.2.4 National Marine Sanctuaries*

The only NMS within the study area is the Hawaiian Islands Humpback Whale NMS, for which the humpback whale is the sole sanctuary resource (Chapter 3). Only Penguin Bank in Hawaiian Islands Humpback Whale NMS is located outside the coastal standoff range of SURTASS LFA sonar. Penguin Bank is an OBIA for SURTASS LFA sonar (OBIA 16), with an effective period from November through April. As a result, LFA sonar transmissions cannot exceed 180 dB re 1 µPa (rms) year-round in any part of the sanctuary except Penguin Bank, which is protected from November through April.

Marine mammals exposed to SURTASS LFA sonar may experience auditory impacts (i.e., PTS and TTS), behavioral change, acoustic masking, or physiological stress, but there is no evidence to suggest that LFA sonar has the potential to cause non-auditory impacts. Due to the operational characteristics of LFA sonar transmissions, a limited potential exists for masking. Existing data on physiological stress in marine mammals suggest a variable response that depends on the characteristics of the received signal and prior experience with the received signal. The potential for auditory impacts (PTS and TTS) and behavioral change associated with exposure of marine mammals to SURTASS LFA sonar has been quantitatively assessed. With the application of the full suite of mitigation measures that are employed whenever SURTASS LFA sonar is transmitting, there is no expectation of PTS (MMPA Level A harassment) to any marine mammals or stocks. For these reasons, no Level A incidental harassment takes have been requested for SURTASS LFA sonar operations. The analysis results (Tables 4-9, 4-10, and 4-10) show that the potential for TTS occurring is low; the most likely response, if any, following exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions is behavioral responses, which vary in magnitude by species. In accordance with Section 304 (d) of the NMSA, federal agencies are required to consult with the ONMS on actions internal or external to a Sanctuary that are likely to destroy, cause the loss of, or injure any sanctuary resource. The Navy has determined that the planned use of SURTASS LFA sonar pursuant to this SEIS/SOEIS does not require consultation under Section 304(d) of the NMSA.

## 4.6 Economic Resources

Analysis of impacts to economic resources is focused on potential impacts to commercial fisheries, subsistence harvesting of marine mammals, and recreational marine activities.

**Economic Resource Potential Impacts:**

- Commercial fisheries: minimal potential to affect individual fish or fish species; therefore, negligible impacts on commercial fisheries.
- Subsistence harvesting of marine mammals: the study area of training and testing activities does not overlap in time or space with subsistence hunts; therefore, no unmitigable adverse impacts.
- Recreational marine activities primarily occur within the coastal geographic restriction of SURTASS LFA sonar and therefore will not be affected.

### 4.6.1 No Action Alternative

Under the No Action Alternative, the Proposed Action would not occur and there would be no change to economic resources. Therefore, no significant impacts to economic resources would occur with implementation of the No Action Alternative.

### 4.6.2 Alternative 1/Alternative 2

The study area for the analysis of impacts to economic resources associated with Alternative 1 and Alternative 2/Preferred Alternative includes the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans. SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities will not occur in polar regions or the territorial seas of foreign nations. Additional geographical restrictions include maintaining received levels for SURTASS LFA sonar below established levels within OBIA boundaries and recreational and commercial dive sites, as described in Chapter 5. The only difference between Alternatives 1 and 2 is the number of hours of LF sound transmissions per year.

#### 4.6.2.1 Potential Impacts to Marine Economic Resources

##### *4.6.2.1.1 Commercial Fisheries*

SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities will not occur within the territorial seas of foreign nations and are geographically restricted such that received levels are less than 180 dB re 1 µPa (rms)

SPL within 12 nmi (22 km) from coastlines where fisheries productivity is generally high. If SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities occur in proximity to fish stocks, members of some fish species could potentially be affected by the low frequency sounds, but there is no potential for fitness level consequences. Given the studies of sound exposure to fishes, the potential for impacts is restricted to within close proximity of LFA sonar while it is transmitting. A summary of the thresholds defined by Popper et al. (2014) and modified by DoN (2017c) to add a type of fishes with high-frequency hearing sensitivity shows that the probability of an impact is low to moderate and would require fishes to be within close proximity (<0.54 nmi [<1 km]) of the LFA sonar. Since this would represent a minimal to negligible portion of any fish stock, there is minimal potential for SURTASS LFA sonar to affect fish species. Due to the negligible impacts on fish from the operation of SURTASS LFA sonar within the required guidelines and restrictions, there will be negligible impacts on commercial fisheries.

##### *4.6.2.1.2 Subsistence Harvest of Marine Mammals*

The study area of SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities does not overlap in time or space with subsistence hunts of marine mammals. Therefore, SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities would not lead to unmitigable adverse impacts on the availability of marine mammal species or stocks for subsistence use.

##### *4.6.2.1.3 Recreational Marine Activities: Diving, Swimming, Snorkeling, and Fishing*

There will be no significant impacts on recreational divers, swimmers, or snorkelers that submerge themselves below the ocean's surface from training and testing activities of SURTASS LFA sonar. This is due to the geographic restrictions imposed on LFA sonar that limit the received level at known recreational and commercial dive sites to no greater than 145 dB re 1 µPa (rms). Received levels at or below this limit will not have an adverse impact on recreational or commercial divers.

SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities would not occur in the territorial seas of foreign nations and would be geographically restricted such that received levels are less than 180 dB re 1 µPa (rms) SPL within 12 nmi (22 km) from coastlines (i.e., coastal standoff range) where recreational fishing activity is generally high. A summary of the thresholds defined by Popper et al. (2014) and modified by DoN (2017c) to add a type of fishes with high-frequency hearing sensitivity shows that the probability of an impact is low to moderate and would require fishes to be within close proximity (<0.54 nmi [<1 km]) of the LFA sonar. Since this would represent a minimal to negligible portion of any fish stock, there is minimal potential for LFA sonar to affect fish species. Due to the negligible impacts on fish from the use of LFA sonar within the required guidelines and restrictions, there will be negligible impacts on recreational fisheries.

The vast majority of recreational swimming, snorkeling, diving, and fishing occurs within 12 nmi (22 km) of shore. Since SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities would not occur in the territorial seas of foreign nations and would be restricted from transmitting received levels of greater than 180 dB re 1 µPa (rms) within 12 nmi (22 km) from shore, there is no reasonably foreseeable likelihood that operation of SURTASS LFA sonar would affect recreational diving, snorkeling, swimming, or fishing.

##### *4.6.2.1.4 Whale Watching*

There will be no significant impacts on whale watching activities as a result of SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities due to the imposed geographic restrictions. These geographic restrictions were designed such that SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities would not impact regions that may contain high concentrations of marine mammals, which correlate to prime whale watching areas. Therefore, SURTASS LFA sonar use will have no impact on whale watching activities since exposures would be limited in areas where these activities occur.

## 4.7 Summary and Comparison of Significant Environmental Impacts of the Proposed Action and Alternatives

A summary of the potential impacts associated with each of the action alternatives and the No Action Alternative is presented in Table 4-13.

## 4.8 Cumulative Impacts

This section 1) defines the scope of the cumulative impacts analysis, 2) describes past, present, and reasonably foreseeable future actions relevant to cumulative impacts, 3) analyzes the incremental interaction the Proposed Action may have with other actions, and 4) evaluates cumulative impacts potentially resulting from these interactions. The approach taken in the analysis of cumulative impacts follows the objectives of NEPA, CEQ regulations, and CEQ guidance. Cumulative impacts are defined in 40 CFR section 1508.7 as the following:

> "The impact on the environment that results from the incremental impact of the action when added to the other past, present, and reasonably foreseeable future actions regardless of what agency (Federal or non-Federal) or person undertakes such other actions. Cumulative impacts can result from individually minor but collectively significant actions taking place over a period of time."

To determine the scope of environmental impact statements, agencies shall consider cumulative actions, which when viewed with other proposed actions have cumulatively significant impacts and should therefore be discussed in the same impact statement.

In addition, CEQ and USEPA have published guidance addressing implementation of cumulative impact analyses—Guidance on the Consideration of Past Actions in Cumulative Effects Analysis (Council on Environmental Quality [CEQ], 2005) and Consideration of Cumulative Impacts in EPA Review of NEPA Documents (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency [USEPA], 1999). CEQ guidance entitled Considering Cumulative Impacts Under NEPA (1997) states that cumulative impact analyses should:

> "…determine the magnitude and significance of the environmental consequences of the Proposed Action in the context of the cumulative impacts of other past, present, and future actions...identify significant cumulative impacts…[and]…focus on truly meaningful impacts."

As per NEPA, CEQ regulations, and CEQ guidance, cumulative impacts are most likely to arise when a relationship or synergism exists between a Proposed Action and other actions expected to occur in a similar location or during a similar time period. Actions overlapping with or in close proximity to the Proposed Action would be expected to have more potential for a relationship than those more geographically separated. Similarly, relatively concurrent actions would tend to offer a higher potential for cumulative impacts. To identify cumulative impacts, the analysis needs to address the following three fundamental questions:

- Does a relationship exist such that affected resource areas of the Proposed Action might interact with the affected resource areas of past, present, or reasonably foreseeable actions?

**Table 4-13. Summary of Potential Impacts to Resource Areas[12]**

| *Resource Area* | *No Action Alternative* | *Alternative 1* | *Alternative 2* |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Air Quality** | | | |
| | No impact | Minor, localized, and intermittent air emissions, principally in the atmosphere of the global commons with a negligible impact on the concentration of air pollutants. | |
| **Marine Environment** | | | |
| | No impact | Intermittent increase in ambient noise level during LFA sonar transmissions for 360 hr per year | Intermittent increase in ambient noise level during LFA sonar transmissions for 496 hr per year in years one to four and 592 hr per year in year 5 and beyond |
| **Biological Resources** | | | |
| Marine fishes | No impact | Low to moderate probability of non-auditory, auditory, behavioral, masking, or physiological stress impacts may result when fish are in close proximity (<0.54 nmi [<1 km]) of the transmitting SURTASS LFA sonar source | |
| Sea turtles | No impact | Low to moderate potential of non-auditory, auditory, behavioral, masking, or physiological stress impacts when turtles are in close proximity (<0.54 nmi [<1 km]) of the transmitting SURTASS LFA sonar source | |
| Marine mammals | No impact | Potential for auditory or behavioral impacts evaluated quantitatively with the best available science; low to moderate probability of non-auditory, masking, or physiological stress assessed with best available scientific information and data | |
| Marine Habitats | No impact | Small, intermittent, and transitory increase in overall acoustic environment of marine habitats resulting in a negligible impact | |
| **Economic Resources** | | | |
| Commercial fisheries | No impact | Minimal potential for impacts to fish species and no potential for fitness level consequences resulting in negligible impacts on commercial fisheries | |
| Subsistence harvest of marine mammals | No impact | SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities do not overlap in time or space with subsistence hunts of marine mammals, therefore no adverse impacts on the availability of marine mammal species or stocks for subsistence use | |

12 If the conclusions for Alternative 1 and 2 were the same, one conclusion was presented for both alternatives.

## Table 4-13. Summary of Potential Impacts to Resource Areas[12]

| *Resource Area* | *No Action Alternative* | *Alternative 1* | *Alternative 2* |
|---|---|---|---|
| Recreational marine activities | No impact | Geographic restrictions limit the received level at known recreational and commercial dive sites to no greater than 145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL)[13] and no greater than 180 dB re 1 µPa within 12 nmi (22 km) of emerged lands, resulting in no impact on recreational diving, swimming, or snorkeling. Minimal potential for impacts to fish species and no potential for fitness level consequences resulting in negligible impacts on recreational fisheries. Geographic restrictions limit the sonar levels in coastal waters in which higher concentrations of marine mammals may occur, which correlates to areas of prime whale watching and thus, would result in no impact to whale watching activities | |

13 SURTASS LFA sonar sound field would be transmitted such that RLs = 145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) would occur at known recreational or commercial dive sites, unless the following conditions are met: should national security present a requirement to transmit SURTASS LFA sonar during training or testing activities such that exposure at known recreational or commercial dive may exceed RLs equal to 145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL), naval units would obtain permission from the appropriate designated Command authority prior to commencement of the activity. Prior to conducting the training or testing activity, the designated Command authority shall conduct a risk assessment, taking into account the potential for exposure of SURTASS LFA sonar to divers.

- If one or more of the affected resource areas of the Proposed Action and another action could be expected to interact, would the Proposed Action affect or be affected by impacts of the other action?
- If such a relationship exists, then does an assessment reveal any potentially significant impacts not identified when the Proposed Action is considered alone?

### 4.8.1 Scope of Cumulative Impacts Analysis

The scope of the cumulative impacts analysis involves both the geographic extent of the impacts and the time frame in which the impacts could be expected to occur, which are then coupled with other past, present, and reasonably foreseeable future actions. For this SEIS/SOEIS, the study area delimits the geographic extent of the cumulative impact's analysis. In general, the study area will include those areas previously identified in this chapter for the respective resource areas. The time frame of the Proposed Action centers the timing for considering cumulative impacts.

The scope of cumulative impacts analysis also involves identifying other actions to consider. Beyond determining that the geographic scope and time frame for the actions are coincident to the Proposed Action, the analysis employs the measure of "reasonably foreseeable" to include or exclude other actions. For the purposes of this analysis, public documents prepared by federal, state, and local government agencies form the primary sources of information regarding reasonably foreseeable actions. Documents used to identify other actions include notices of intent for EISs and EAs, management plans, land use plans, and other planning related studies.

### 4.8.2 Past, Present, and Reasonably Foreseeable Actions

This section will focus on past, present, and reasonably foreseeable future projects in the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans. In determining which projects to include in the cumulative impact's analysis, a preliminary determination was made regarding the past, present, or reasonably foreseeable action. Specifically, it was determined if a relationship exists such that the affected resource areas of the Proposed Action might interact with the affected resource areas of a past, present, or reasonably foreseeable action. If no such potential relationship exists, the project was not carried forward into the cumulative impact's analysis. In accordance with CEQ guidance (CEQ, 2005), those actions considered but excluded from further cumulative impacts analysis are not catalogued here as the intent is to focus the analysis on the meaningful actions relevant to inform decision-making. Activities included in this cumulative impact's analysis are briefly described in the following subsections (Table 4-14).

**Table 4-14. Cumulative Impacts Evaluation**

| *Action* | *Location* | *Timeframe* |
|---|---|---|
| Maritime traffic | All of study area | Past, present, and future |
| Seismic exploration | All of study area | Past, present, and future |
| Alternative energy developments | All of study area | Past, present, and future |
| Naval and other sonar activity | All of study area | Past, present, and future |

#### 4.8.2.1 Maritime Traffic

The dominant source of anthropogenic sound in the ocean stems from the propulsion of ships (Tyack, 2008). At the lower frequencies, the dominant source of this noise is the cumulative impact of ships that are too far away to be heard individually, but because of their great number, contribute substantially to the average noise background. Shipping noise centers in the 20 to 200 Hz frequency band and is increasing yearly (Ross, 2005). Ross (1976) estimated that between 1950 and 1975 shipping had caused a rise of 10 dB in ambient ocean noise levels, and he predicted that the level would increase by another 5 dB by the beginning of the 21st century. Andrew et al. (2002) collected ocean ambient sound data from 1994 to 2001 using a receiver on the continental slope off Point Sur, California. These data were compared to measurements made from 1963 to 1965 by an identical receiver. The data demonstrated an increase in ambient noise over the 33-year period of approximately 10 dB in the frequency range of 20 to 80 Hz primarily due to commercial shipping; there were also increases as large as 9 dB in the frequency ranges 100 Hz up to 400 Hz, for which the cause was less obvious (Andrew et al., 2002). In the Indian Ocean, noise in the LF band of 5 to 115 Hz has increased 2 to 3 dB over the past decade, principally attributable to distant shipping noise (Miksis-Olds et al., 2016). However, studies of the ambient sound around Wake Island, in the equatorial Pacific, showed a decrease in sound level over the past five to eight years across all frequency band examined (5-115 Hz) (Miksis-Olds and Nichols, 2016). Ship movements have remained relatively constant, but it is hypothesized that ship quieting technologies have resulted in a reduction of the ambient sound level.

#### 4.8.2.2 Seismic Exploration

Seismic surveys are performed to obtain information on subsurface geologic formations to identify potential oil and gas reserves. Deep seismic surveys are used to more accurately assess potential hydrocarbon reservoirs. High-resolution seismic surveys are used in the initial site evaluation for drill rig emplacement and platform design. Seismic surveying operations are conducted from ships towing an array of acoustic instruments, including air guns, which release compressed air into the water, creating acoustic energy that penetrates the sea floor. The acoustic signals are reflected off the subsurface sedimentary layers and recorded near the ocean surface on hydrophones spaced along streamer cables. Alternatively, cable grids are laid on the ocean floor to act as receivers and are later retrieved. In addition to air guns, seismic surveys utilize numerous other MF and HF acoustic instruments including multi-beam bathymetric sonar, side-scan sonar, and sub-bottom profilers.

Major offshore oil and gas production regions in the SURTASS LFA sonar study area include waters off Western Australia (Geoscience Australia, 2018) and Southeast Asia, including Vietnam, Indonesia, and the Philippines. Deepwater (greater than 1,000 ft [305 m]) oil and gas exploration activities are on the rise due to improved technology spurred by the discovery of high production reservoirs in deeper waters. As such, oil and gas production activities are extending to greater depths and associated greater distances from the coastline.

#### 4.8.2.3 Alternative Energy Developments

Marine alternative energy developments focus on extracting energy from renewable sources such as wind, waves, and tides. Many of these technologies are in initial stages of research and development. In the SURTASS LFA study area, ocean current technologies are focusing on the Kuroshio Current, since it flows close to Japan's coast and maintains a consistently strong flow. For example, a consortium of IHI Corporation, Toshiba Corporation, the University of Tokyo, and Mitsui Global Strategic Studies Institute is developing a floating type, twin turbine system for use in the East China Sea (IHI Corporation, 2014).

China is also investing heavily in marine alternative energy, focusing on the east China regions of Shanghai, Zhejiang, and Fujian (Wang et al., 2011). The East China Sea has the greatest tidal range and therefore the highest potential for energy extraction from tidal technologies, which are more mature than other marine renewable energy developments. There has been limited investment in offshore wind technologies or in alternative energy projects in the Indian Ocean.

#### 4.8.2.4 Naval and Other Sonar Activity

NMFS has issued incidental take authorizations for U.S. Navy activities within identified training and testing ranges. Within the study area of SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities, the Mariana Islands Training and Testing authorization occurs from 2015 to 2020. This authorization includes the use of naval sonar to support and conduct current, emerging, and future training and testing activities. The Hawaii-Southern California Training and Testing (HSTT) Final EIS was released by the Navy in October 2018 (DoN, 2018), which is a follow-on to the previous NEPA documentation and associated MMPA authorizations (NMFS, 2013a, 2013b) and ESA incidental take statement (NMFS, 2014). In addition to these training and testing activities, the Navy continues to conduct operational missions using SURTASS LFA sonar and other sonar systems in the study area. These types of missions have been conducted for decades, are ongoing, not predictable, and not conducted under the authority of the Secretary of the Navy.

In addition to U.S. naval activities, other foreign navies are known to utilize acoustic sound sources within the study area. The People's Liberation Army Navy (PLAN) is the naval branch of the armed forces of the People's Republic of China. Their sonar systems were originally based on Soviet supplied equipment, but they have also imported sonar systems from other foreign countries. South Korea and North Korea are also known to have sonar systems, used primarily within approximately 200 nmi (370 km) of their coastlines. Russia also maintains a Pacific fleet that has conducted anti-submarine warfare exercises with sonar systems.

Marine acoustic surveys are fundamental tools guiding explorations of this planet. Sound can be used to measure bathymetry and to map geology, ocean temperatures, and currents. Numerous scientific research vessels from around the world are engaged in studying the Earth's ocean and the underlying seafloor. The data that are being collected are critical to informed decision-making regarding future uses of the marine environment. Researchers use ship-mounted equipment and unmanned and manned submersible vehicles. For example, several U.S. institutions, including the Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution, Scripps Institution of Oceanography at the University of California-San Diego, Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory at Columbia University, and several science centers operated by NMFS, conduct research each year over the world's oceans.

### 4.8.3 Cumulative Impacts Analysis

Where feasible, the cumulative impacts were assessed using quantifiable data; however, for many of the activities included for analysis, quantifiable data are not available, and a review of the best available information was undertaken. In addition, where an analysis of potential environmental impacts for future actions has not been completed, assumptions were made regarding cumulative impacts related to this SEIS/SOEIS where possible. The analytical methodology presented earlier in Chapter 4, which was used to determine potential impacts to the various resources analyzed in this document, was also used to determine cumulative impacts. In general, long-term rather than short-term impacts and widespread rather than localized impacts were considered more likely to contribute to cumulative impacts. For example, for biological resources, population-level impacts were considered more likely to contribute to cumulative impacts than were individual-level impacts. Negligible impacts were not considered further in the cumulative impact's analysis. The vast majority of impacts expected from sonar exposure and underwater detonations are behavioral in nature, temporary and comparatively short in duration, relatively infrequent, and not of the type or severity that would be expected to be additive for the small portion of the stocks and species likely to be exposed either annually or in the reasonably foreseeable future.

#### 4.8.3.1 Air Quality

Low levels of air pollutants and greenhouse gases would be generated by SURTASS LFA sonar vessels during the conduct of training and testing activities, with the greater proportion of those emissions occurring in the atmosphere over the global commons, as that is where 95 percent of the activities have been estimated to occur. Under various scenarios, these emissions could intermix with emissions from other ocean-going vessels. The incremental additive impacts from combined emissions occurring in the atmosphere of either U.S. territorial seas or in the global commons would be minor, localized, intermittent, and unlikely to contribute to future degradation of the ocean atmosphere in a way that would harm ocean ecosystems or nearshore communities. The Proposed Action, when added to the impacts of all other past, present and reasonably foreseeable future actions, would not result in measurable additional impacts on air quality in the study area or beyond.

#### 4.8.3.2 Marine Environment

Cumulative impacts on ambient noise levels from past, present, and future actions would be less than significant because of the operational profile of LFA sonar. As described in Chapter 2, LFA sonar would transmit 60-sec signals at up to a 20 percent duty cycle, but more often at a 7.5-10 percent duty cycle. Section 4.4 discusses the stressor of the transmission of low-frequency sound energy. A quantitative analysis of the contribution of the proposed LFA sonar transmission hours to the total anthropogenic acoustic energy budget shows that each LFA source is estimated to add 0.21 percent under Alternative 1 and 0.29 and 0.34 percent, respectively for years 1 to 4 and year 5 and beyond, under Alternative 2 (Hildebrand, 2005). Section 4.7.1.2 from the SURTASS LFA Sonar FSEIS/SOEIS (DoN, 2012) discusses the potential cumulative effects from increased ambient noise levels, including masking and stress responses, which remains valid and is incorporated by reference. The potential impact of elevated ambient noise would be transitory and of a very brief duration. Therefore, implementation of the Proposed Action combined with the past, present, and reasonably foreseeable future projects, would not result in significant impacts.

#### 4.8.3.3 Biological Resources

Cumulative biological resource impacts from past, present, and future actions would not be significant since the contribution of potential impacts anticipated from SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities are not estimated to result in significant impacts to the biological environment. The potential impacts on any marine animal species or stock from non-auditory impacts is vanishingly small. TTS and behavioral change to marine mammals exposed to SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions may result but the impacts are not anticipated to be of biological significance to any stock or result in population level consequences. No mortality or injury is expected due to the exposure of marine mammal, sea turtle, or fishes to SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions.

For seismic exploration, direct impacts may include auditory impacts, behavioral change, and masking. In the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans, seismic exploration efforts are primarily focused off Western Australia and in nearshore waters in Southeast Asia. Tethys, developed by the Pacific Northwest National Laboratory to support the U.S. Department of Energy (https://tethys.pnnl.gov), has consolidated information on the potential environmental effects of wind and marine renewable energy technologies. In addition, BOEM is supporting research to quantify the potential impacts that may occur with alternative energy facilities, but it is expected that impact would include auditory impacts and behavioral change during construction and masking at short ranges during operation.

For the U.S. Navy training and testing activities, the vast majority of impacts expected from sonar exposure and underwater detonations are behavioral in nature, temporary and comparatively short in duration, relatively infrequent, and not of the type or severity that would be expected to be additive for the small portion of the stocks and species likely to be exposed either annually or in the reasonably foreseeable future. An extensive quantitative analysis of the potential cumulative effects from concurrent SURTASS LFA sonar and mid-frequency active (MFA) sonars (AN/SQS 53C and AN/SQS 56) was conducted as part of the SURTASS LFA sonar FSEIS/SOEIS (DoN, 2012). This analysis remains valid and is incorporated by reference. The reader is referred to Section 4.7.4 and Appendix E (DoN, 2012) for more details, but in summary, for tactical and safety reasons, it is not reasonably foreseeable that SURTASS LFA and MFA sonars would operate at distances closer than 5 nmi (9.3 km) to each other. In addition, the SURTASS LFA and MFA sonars would be moving in two dimensions, while marine animals in the region would be moving in three dimensions, reducing the potential that an animal would swim in the vicinity of both sonar systems and receive cumulative impacts. Through both a parametric analysis and a simulation modeling analysis with the Acoustic Integration Model (AIM), it was shown that concurrent SURTASS LFA and MFA sonar activities produce a zero increase in potential impacts over that from summing the potential impacts of the two sources transmitting independently.

Estimates of the level of activity of foreign navies is difficult to quantify, but it is anticipated that the majority of their activities would occur within their EEZs. Similar to U.S. Navy activities, potential impacts are likely to be behavioral in nature, temporary and comparatively short in duration, and relatively infrequent. Therefore, implementation of the action alternative combined with the past, present, and reasonably foreseeable future projects, are not anticipated to result in significant impacts.

#### 4.8.3.4 Economic Resources

Cumulative economic resource impacts from past, present, and future actions would be less than significant because of the negligible impact of LFA sonar on economic resources. There is a negligible potential for impacts on fishes from SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities, which results in negligible impacts on commercial fisheries (DoN, 2012). There is no potential to impact subsistence harvest of marine mammals. The geographic restrictions associated with SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities would limit impacts on recreational marine activities. Therefore, implementation of the Proposed Action combined with the past, present, and reasonably foreseeable future projects, would not result in significant impacts within the potential operating areas for SURTASS LFA sonar.

## 4.9 Literature Cited

Aguilar de Soto, N., Delorme, N., Atkins, J., Howard, S., Williams, J., & Johnson, M. (2013). Anthropogenic noise causes body malformations and delays development in marine larvae. *Scientific Reports,* 3, 2831. doi: 10.1038/srep02831

Andrew, R. K., Howe, B. M., Mercer, J. A., & Dzieciuch, M. A. (2002). Ocean ambient sound: Comparing the 1960s with the 1990s for a receiver off the California coast. *Acoustics Research Letters Online, 3*(2), 65-70.

Antunes, R., Kvadsheim, P. H., Lam, F. P., Tyack, P. L., Thomas, L., Wensveen, P. J., & Miller, P. J. (2014). High thresholds for avoidance of sonar by free-ranging long-finned pilot whales (*Globicephala melas*). *Marine Pollution Bulletin, 83*(1), 165-180. doi:10.1016/j.marpolbul.2014.03.056

Atkinson, S., Crocker, D. E., Houser, D., & Mashburn, K. (2015). Stress physiology in marine mammals: how well do they fit the terrestrial model? *Journal of Comparative Physiology B Biochemical Systemic and Environmental Physiology, 185*(5), 463-486.

Bakhchina, A. V., Mukhametov, L. M., Rozhnov, V. V., & Lyamin, O. I. (2017). Spectral analysis of heart rate variability in the beluga (*Delphinapterus leucas*) during exposure to acoustic noise. *Journal of Evolutionary Biochemistry and Physiology, 53*(1), 60-65.

Bartol, S. M., & Musick, J. A. (2003). Sensory Biology of Sea Turtles. In P. Lutz, J. A. Musick, and J. Wyneken (Eds.), *The Biology of Sea Turtles: Volume II* (pp. 79-102). Boca Raton, Florida: CRC Press.

Blair, H. B., Merchant, N. D., Friedlaender, A. S., Wiley, D. N., & Parks, S. E. (2016). Evidence for ship noise impacts on humpback whale foraging behaviour. *Biology Letters, 12*(8). doi:10.1098/rsbl.2016.0005

Clark, C. W., & Fristrup, K. M. (2001). Baleen whale responses to low-frequency human-made underwater sounds. The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*,* 110(5), 2751.

Clark, C. W., Ellison, W. T., Southall, B. L., Hatch, L. T., Van Parijs, S. M., Frankel, A. S., & Ponirakis, D. (2009). Acoustic masking in marine ecosystems: intuitions, analysis, and implication. Marine Ecology Progress Series*,* 395, 201-222. [Corrigendum]. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 554*, 281, July 228, 2016].

Clark, C. W., Tyack, P., & Ellison, W. T. (1999). Responses of Four Species of Whales to Sounds of SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions

Colleye, O., Kever, L., Lecchini, D., Berten, L. & Parmentier, E. (2016). Auditory evoked potential audiograms in post-settlement stage individuals of coral reef fishes. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology, 483*, 1–9.

Council on Environmental Quality (CEQ). (1997). Considering Cumulative Effects under the National Environmental Policy Act.

CEQ. (2005). Guidance on the Consideration of Past Actions in Cumulative Effects Analysis

Cunningham, K. A., Southall, B. L., & Reichmuth, C. (2014). Auditory sensitivity of seals and sea lions in complex listening scenarios. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 136*(6), 3410. doi:10.1121/1.4900568

Curé, C., Isojunno, S., Visser, F., Wensveen, P. J., Sivle, L. D., Kvadsheim, P. H., Lam, F. P., Miller, P. J. O. (2016). Biological significance of sperm whale responses to sonar: comparison with anti-predator responses. *Endangered Species Research, 31*, 89-102. doi:10.3354/esr00748

Dahlheim, M., & Castellote, M. (2016). Changes in the acoustic behavior of gray whales *Eschrichtius robustus* in response to noise. *Endangered Species Research, 31*, 227-242. doi:10.3354/esr00759

Deguignet, M., Juffe-Bignoli, D., Harrison, J., MacSharry, B., Burgess, N., & Kingston, N. (2014). *United Nations list of protected areas.* United Nations Environment Programme World Conservation Monitoring Centre (UNEP-WCMC). Cambridge, UK

Department of Defense (DoD). (2014). *2014 climate change adaptation roadmap*. Alexandria, VA. Retrieved from <https://www.acq.osd.mil/eie/downloads/CCARprint_wForward_e.pdf>.

DoD. (2015). *Strategic sustainability performance plan, FY 2015.* Retrieved from <https://www.denix.osd.mil/sustainability/dod-sspp/unassigned/dod-sspp-fy-2015/>.

DoD. (2016a). *DOD directive 4715.21, Climate change adaptation and resilience.* Office of the Under Secretary of Defense for Acquisition, Technology, and Logistics. Retrieved from <https://www.defense.gov/Portals/1/Documents/pubs/471521p.pdf>.

DoD. (2016b). Department of Defense operational energy strategy. RefID: 5-240277A. Retrieved from <https://www.acq.osd.mil/eie/Downloads/OE/2016%20DoD%20Operational%20Energy%20Strategy%20WEBc.pdf>.

Department of the Navy (DoN). (2001). Final overseas environmental impact statement and environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar. Washington, D.C.

DoN. (2007). Final supplemental environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar. Washington, D.C.

DoN. (2012). Final supplemental environmental impact statement/supplemental overseas environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar. Washington, D.C.

DoN. (2017a). Criteria and thresholds for U.S. Navy acoustic and explosive effects analysis (Phase III). SSC Pacific: San Diego, CA

DoN. (2017b). Final supplemental environmental impact statement/supplemental overseas environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar. Washington, D.C.

DoN. (2018). Final environmental impact statement/ overseas environmental impact statement for Hawaii-Southern California training and testing. San Diego, CA.

DeRuiter, S. L., & Doukara, K. L. (2012). Loggerhead turtles dive in response to airgun sound exposure. *Endangered Species Research, 16,* 16:55-63.

DeRuiter, S. L., Southall, B. L., Calambokidis, J., Zimmer, W. M., Sadykova, D., Falcone, E. A., Friedlaender, A. S., Joseph, J. E., Moretti, D., Schorr, G. S., Thomas, L., & Tyack, P. L. (2013). First direct measurements of behavioural responses by Cuvier's beaked whales to mid-frequency active sonar. *Biology Letters, 9*(4), 20130223. doi:10.1098/rsbl.2013.0223.

Dunlop, R. A., Cato, D. H., & Noad, M. J. (2014). Evidence of a Lombard response in migrating humpback whales (Megaptera novaeangliae). *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 136*(1), 430. doi:10.1121/1.4883598

Dunlop, R. A., Noad, M. J., McCauley, R. D., Kniest, E., Slade, R., Paton, D. A., & Cato, D. H. (2017a). The behavioural response of migrating humpback whales to a full seismic airgun array. *Proceedings of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences, 284*(1869), 20171901. doi:10.1098/rspb.2017.1901.

Dunlop, R. A., Noad, M. J., McCauley, R. D., Scott-Hayward, L., Kniest, E., Slade, R., Paton, D., & Cato, D. H. (2017b). Determining the behavioural dose-response relationship of marine mammals to air gun noise and source proximity. *The Journal of Experimental Biology, 220*(Pt 16), 2878-2886. doi:10.1242/jeb.160192.

Dunlop, R. A., Noad, M. J., McCauley, R. D., Kniest, E., Slade, R., Paton, D., & Cato, D. H. (2018). A behavioural dose-response model for migrating humpback whales and seismic air gun noise. *Marine Pollution Bulletin, 133*, 506-516. doi: 10.1016/j.marpolbul.2018.06.009

Ellison, W. T., Southall, B. L., Clark, C. W., & Frankel, A. S. (2012). A new context-based approach to assess marine mammal behavioral responses to anthropogenic sounds. *Conservation Biology, 26(*1), 21-28. doi:10.1111/j.1523-1739.2011.01803.x.

Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). (2017). *Inventory of greenhouse gas emissions and sinks, 1990-201*5. EPA 430-P-17-001. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. 633 pages. Retrieved from <https://www.epa.gov/sites/production/files/2017-02/documents/2017_ complete_report.pdf>.

Erbe, C., Reichmuth, C., Cunningham, K., Lucke, K., & Dooling, R. (2016). Communication masking in marine mammals: A review and research strategy. *Marine Pollution Bulletin, 103*(1-2), 15-38. doi:10.1016/j.marpolbul.2015.12.007.

Frankel, A. S., & Gabriele, C. M. (2017). Predicting the acoustic exposure of humpback whales from cruise and tour vessel noise in Glacier Bay, Alaska, under different management strategies. *Endangered Species Research, 34*, 397-415.

Friedlaender, A. S., Hazen, E. L., Goldbogen, J. A., Stimpert, A. K., Calambokidis, J., & Southall, B. L. (2016). Prey-mediated behavioral responses of feeding blue whales in controlled sound exposure experiments. *Ecological Applications, 26*(4), 1075–1085.

Geoscience Australia. (2018). *National Offshore Petroleum Information Management System*. Department of Industry, Innovation and Science, Australian Government. http://www.ga.gov.au/nopims/.

Goldbogen, J. A., Southall, B. L., DeRuiter, S. L., Calambokidis, J., Friedlaender, A. S., Hazen, E. L., Falcone, E. A., Schorr, G. S., Douglas, A., Moretti, D. J., Kyburg, C., McKenna, M. F., & Tyack, P. L. (2013). Blue whales respond to simulated mid-frequency military sonar. *Proceeding of the Royal Society B. Biological Sciences, 280*(1765), 20130657. doi:10.1098/rspb.2013.0657.

Gomez, C., Lawson, J. W., Wright, A. J., Buren, A. D., Tollit, D., & Lesage, V. (2016). A systematic review on the behavioural responses of wild marine mammals to noise: the disparity between science and policy. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 94*(12), 801-819. doi:10.1139/cjz-2016-0098.

Gong, Z., Jain, A. D., Tran, D., Yi, D. H., Wu, F., Zorn, A., Ratilal, P., & Makris, N. C. (2014). Ecosystem scale acoustic sensing reveals humpback whale behavior synchronous with herring spawning processes and re-evaluation finds no effect of sonar on humpback whale song occurrence in the Gulf of Maine in fall 2006. *PLoS ONE, 9*(10), e104733. doi:104710.101371/journal.pone.0104733.

Gregory, L. F., Gross, T. S., Bolten, A. B., Bjorndal, K. A., & Guillette, J., Louis J. (1996). Plasma corticosterone concentrations associated with acute captivity stress in wild loggerhead sea turtles (*Caretta caretta*). *General and Comparative Endocrinology, 104*(3), 312-320. doi: doi:10.1006/gcen.1996.0176.

Gregory, L. F., & Schmid, J. R. (2001). Stress responses and sexing of wild Kemp's ridley sea turtles (*Lepidochelys kempii*) in the northeastern Gulf of Mexico. *General and Comparative Endocrinology, 124*(1), 66-74. doi: doi:10.1006/gcen.2001.7683.

Halvorsen, M. B., Zeddies, D., Chicoine, D. R., & Popper, A. N. (2013). Effects of low frequency naval sonar exposure on three species of fish. *JASA Express Letters, 134*(2), EL206-210.

Halvorsen, M. B., Zeddies, D. G., Ellison, W. T., Chicoine, D. R., & Popper, A. N. (2012). Effects of mid-frequency active sonar on hearing in fish. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 131*(1), 599-607.

Hildebrand, J. A. (2005). Impacts of anthropogenic sound. In J. E. Reynolds, III., W. F. Perrin, R. R. Reeves, S. Montgomery, and T. J. Ragen (Eds.), *Marine mammal research: conservation beyond crisis* (pp. 101-124). Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins University Press.

Hildebrand, J. A. (2009). Anthropogenic and natural sources of ambient noise in the ocean. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 395*, 5-20. doi:10.3354/meps08353

Holt, M. M., Noren, D. P., Dunkin, R. C., & Williams, T. M. (2015). Vocal performance affects metabolic rate in dolphins: implications for animals communicating in noisy environments. *The Journal of Experimental Biology, 218*(Pt 11), 1647-1654. doi: 10.1242/jeb.122424.

Holt, M. M., D. P. Noren, & C. K. Emmons. (2011). Effects of noise levels and call types on the source levels of killer whale calls. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 130*(5), 3100-3106. doi:10.1121/1.3641446

Houser, D. S., Yost, W., Burkard, R., Finneran, J. J., Reichmuth, C., & Mulsow, J. (2017). A review of the history, development and application of auditory weighting functions in humans and marine mammals. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 141*(3), 1371-1413.

Hoyt, E. (2005). Marine protected areas for whales, dolphins and porpoises: A worldwide handbook for cetacean habitat conservation. London: Earthscan.

Hoyt, E. (2011). Marine protected areas for whales, dolphins and porpoises: A world handbook for cetacean habitat conservation and planning, 2nd Edition. London: Earthscan.

IHI Corporation. (2014). Power generation using the Kuroshio Current. IHI Engineering Review, 46(2).

Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC). (2007). Climate change 2007: Synthesis report. Contribution of working groups I, II and III to the fourth assessment report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change [Core Writing Team, Pachauri, R.K. & Reisinger, A. (eds.)]. IPCC, Geneva, Switzerland, 104 pp.

International Maritime Organization (IMO). (2014). *Third IMO GHG study 2014*. London, United Kingdom: Micropress Printers. Retrieved from <http://www.imo.org/en/OurWork/Environment/PollutionPrevention/AirPollution/Documents/Third%20Greenhouse%20Gas%20Study/GHG3%20Executive%20Summary%20and%20Report.pdf>.

Isojunno, S., Curé, C., Kvadsheim, P. H., Lam, F.-P. A., Tyack, P. L., Wensveen, P. J., & Miller, P. J. O. (2016). Sperm whales reduce foraging effort during exposure to 1–2 kHz sonar and killer whale sounds. *Ecological Applications, 26*(1), 77–93.

IUCN & United Nations Environmental Programme (UNEP). (2016). *World database on protected areas*. from <http://www.protectedplanet.net/>.

IUCN Marine Mammal Protected Area Task Force (IUCN MMPATF). (2017). *Working towards Important Marine Mammal Areas (IMMAs): Ground zero. Map figure of potential important marine mammal areas* from <https://www.marinemammalhabitat.org/download/working-towards-the-immas-ground-zero>.

IUCN WCPA-SSC Joint Task Force on Biodiversity and Protected Areas, & IUCN WCPA-SSC Joint Task Force on Marine Mammal Protected Areas. (2015). Joint Statement by the IUCN WCPA/SSC Task Forces: Defining the relationship between IMMAs, KBAs, and other area-based marine conservation initiatives. <http://icmmpa.org/iucn-task-force/>.

Johnson, M., & Tyack, P. L. (2003). A digital acoustic recording tag for measuring the response of wild marine mammals to sound. *IEEE Journal of Oceanic Engineering, 28*(1), 3-12.

Kane, A. S., Song, J., Halvorsen, M. B., Miller, D. L., Salierno, J. D., Wysocki, L. E., Zeddies, D., & Popper, A. N. (2010). Exposure of fish to high-intensity sonar does not induce acute pathology. *Journal of Fish Biology, 76*(7), 1825–1840.

Kloepper, L. N., Nachtigall, P. E., Gisiner, R., & Breese, M. (2010). Decreased echolocation performance following high-frequency hearing loss in the false killer whale (Pseudorca crassidens). *Journal of Experimental Biology, 213*(21), 3717-3722. doi: 10.1242/jeb.042788

Kujawa, S. G., & Liberman, M. C. (2009). Adding insult to injury: Cochlear nerve degeneration after "temporary" noise-induced hearing loss. *Journal of Neuroscience, 29*(45), 14077-14085.

Kvadsheim, P. H., DeRuiter, S., Sivle, L. D., Goldbogen, J., Roland-Hansen, R., Miller, P. J. O., Lam, F. A., Calambokidis, J., Friedlaender, A., Visser, F., Tyack, P. L., Kleivane, L., & Southall, B. L. (2017). Avoidance responses of minke whales to 1-4kHz naval sonar. *Marine Pollution Bulletin, 121*(1-2), 60-68. doi:10.1016/j.marpolbul.2017.05.037

Lavender, A. L., Bartol, S. M., & Bartol, I. K. (2014). Ontogenetic investigation of underwater hearing capabilities in loggerhead sea turtles (*Caretta caretta*) using a dual testing approach. *Journal of Experimental Biology, 217*, 2580-2589. doi:10.1242/jeb.096651

Lin, H. W., Furman, A. C., Kujawa, S. G., & Liberman, M. C. (2011). Primary neural degeneration in the guinea pig cochlea after reversible noise-induced threshold shift. *Journal of the Association for Research in Otolaryngology, 12*, 605-616. doi:10.1007/s10162-011-0277-0

Lyamin, O. I., Korneva, S. M., Rozhnov, V. V., & Mukhametov, L. M. (2011). Cardiorespiratory changes in beluga in response to acoustic noise. *Doklady Biological Sciences, 440*(1), 275-278.

Mann, D. A., Lu, Z., & Popper, A. N. (1997). A clupeid fish can detect ultrasound. *Nature*, *389,* 341.

Mann, D. A., Higgs, D. M., Tavolga, W. N., Souza, M. J., & Popper, A. N. (2001). Ultrasound detection by clupeiform fishes. *The Journal of Acoustical Society of America, 109*, 3048–3054.

Maresh, J. L., Simmons, S. E., Crocker, D. E., McDonald, B. I., Williams, T. M., & Costa, D. P. (2014). Free-swimming northern elephant seals have low field metabolic rates that are sensitive to an increased cost of transport. *The Journal of Experimental Biology, 217*(Pt 9), 1485-1495. doi:10.1242/jeb.094201

Marine Conservation Institute. (2015). *MPAtlas www.mpatlas.org.* Retrieved 22 January 2016

Martin, K. J., Alessi, S. C., Gaspard, J. C., Tucker, A. D., Bauer, G. B., & Mann, D. A. (2012). Underwater hearing in the loggerhead turtle (*Caretta caretta*): a comparison of behavioral and auditory evoked potential audiograms. *Journal of Experimental Biology, 215*, 3001-3009. doi:10.1242/jeb.066324

Martin, S. W., Martin, C. R., Matsuyama, B. M., & Henderson, E. E. (2015). Minke whales (*Balaenoptera acutorostrata*) respond to navy training. *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 137*(5), 2533-2541.

McCauley, R. D., Fewtrell, J., Duncan, A. J., Jenner, C., Jenner, M.-N., Penrose, J., Prince, R. I. T., Adhitya, A., Murdoch, J., & McCabe, K. (2000). Marine seismic surveys: A study of environmental implications. *APPEA Journal, May*, 692-708.

McCay, B. J., & Jones, P. J. S. (2011). Marine protected areas and the governance of marine ecosystems and fisheries. *Conservation Biology, 25*(6), 1130-1133.

McKenna, M. F., Cranford, T. W., Berta, A., & Pyenson, N. D. (2012). Morphology of the odontocete melon and its implications for acoustic function. *Marine Mammal Science, 28*(4), 690-713. doi:10.1111/j.1748-7692.2011.00526.x

Miksis, J. L., Connor, R. C., Grund, M. D., Nowacek, D. P., Solow, A. R., & Tyack, P. L. (2001). Cardiac responses to acoustic playback experiments in the captive bottlenose dolphin (*Tursiops truncatus*). *Journal of Comparative Psychology, 115*(3), 227-232.

Miksis-Olds, J. L., & Nichols, S. M. (2016). Is low frequency ocean sound increasing globally? *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 139*(1), 501-511. doi:10.1121/1.4938237.

Miller, P. J., Kvadsheim, P. H., Lam, F. P., Tyack, P. L., Cure, C., DeRuiter, S. L., Kleivane, L., Sivle, L. D., van, I. S. P., Visser, F., Wensveen, P. J., von Benda-Beckmann, A. M., Martin Lopez, L. M., Narazaki, T., & Hooker, S. K. (2015). First indications that northern bottlenose whales are sensitive to behavioural disturbance from anthropogenic noise. *Royal Society of Open Science, 2*(6), 140484. doi:10.1098/rsos.140484

Miller, P. J. O., Antunes, R. N., Wensveen, P. J., Samarra, F. I. P., Catarina Alves, A., Tyack, P. L., Kvadsheim, P. H., Kleivane, L., Lam, F.-P. A., Ainslie, M. A., & Thomas, L. (2014). Dose-response relationships for the onset of avoidance of sonar by free-ranging killer whales. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 135*(2), 975-993. doi:10.1121/1.4861346

Miller, P. J. O., Kvadsheim, P. H., Lam, F. P., Wensveen, P. J., Antunes, R., Alves, A. C., Visser, F., Kleivane, L., Tyack, P. L., & Sivle, L. D. (2012). The severity of behavioral changes observed during experimental exposures of killer (*Orcinus orca*), long-finned pilot (*Globicephala melas*), and sperm (*Physeter macrocephalus*) whales to naval sonar. *Aquatic Mammals, 38*(4), 362-401. doi:10.1578/am.38.4.2012.362

Moretti, D., Thomas, L., Marques, T., Harwood, J., Dilley, A., Neales, B., Shaffer, J., McCarthy, E., New, L., Jarvis, S., & Morrissey, R. (2014). A risk function for behavioral disruption of Blainville's beaked whales (*Mesoplodon densirostris*) from mid-frequency active sonar. *PLoS ONE, 9*(1), e85064. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0085064

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). (2012). ESA Section 7 Biological Opinion on SURTASS LFA sonar Training, Testing, and Operations 2012-2017. Silver Spring, MD.

NMFS. (2013a). Letter of Authorization for Takings Incidental to U.S. Navy Training in the Hawaii-Southern California Training and Testing Study Area. Silver Spring, MD.

NMFS. (2013b). Letter of Authorization for Takings Incidental to U.S. Navy Testing in the Hawaii-Southern California Training and Testing Study Area. Silver Spring, MD.

NMFS. (2014). ESA Section 7 Biological Opinion and Conference Report on U.S. Navy Hawaii-Southern California Training and Testing. Silver Spring, MD.

NMFS. (2015). ESA Section 7 Biological Opinion and Conference Report on Navy Northwest Training and Testing (NWTT) Activities and NMFS' MMPA Incidental Take Authorization. (FPR-2015-9110). Silver Spring, MD.

NMFS. (2017). ESA Section 7 Biological Opinion and Conference Report on Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low-Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) Sonar. Silver Spring, MD

NMFS. (2018). 2018 Revision to: Technical guidance for assessing the effect of anthropogenic sound on marine mammal hearing (Version 2.0): Underwater threshold for onset of permanent and temporary threshold shifts. Silver Spring, MD. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-OPR-59.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA). (2007). Taking and Importing Marine Mammals: Taking Marine Mammals Incidental to U.S. Navy Operations of Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active Sonar: Final Rule, 50 CFR Part 216 C.F.R. § 72. *Federal Register 161*, 46846-46893.

NOAA. (2012). Taking and Importing Marine Mammals: Taking Marine Mammals Incidental to U.S. Navy Operations of Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active Sonar: Final Rule, 50 CFR Part 218 C.F.R. §. *Federal Register, 77*(161), 50290-50322.

NOAA. (2015). Endangered and threatened species: Final rulemaking to revise critical habitat for Hawaiian monk seals. National Marine Fisheries Service; National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 80*(162), 50926-50988.

NOAA. (2017). Endangered and threatened wildlife and plants: Proposed rulemaking to designate critical habitat for the Main Hawaiian Islands insular false killer whale distinct population segment; Proposed rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 82*(212), 51186-51209.

NOAA. (2018). Endangered and threatened wildlife and plants: Final rulemaking to designate critical habitat for the Main Hawaiian Islands insular false killer whale distinct population segment; Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 83*(142), 35062-35095.

National Research Council. (2003). *Ocean Noise and Marine Mammals*. Washington, D.C.: The National Academies Press.

NRC. (2005). Marine Mammal Populations and Ocean Noise: Determining when noise causes biologically significant effects. Washington, D.C.

Nedelec, S. L., Simpson, S. D., Morley, E. L., Nedelec, B., & Radford, A. N. (2015). Impacts of regular and random noise on the behaviour, growth and development of larval Atlantic cod (*Gadus morhua*). *Proceedings of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences, 282*(1817), 20151943. doi:10.1098/rspb.2015.1943

New, L. F., Clark, J. S., Costa, D. P., Fleishman, E., Hindell, M. A., Klanjšček, T., Lusseau, D., Kraus, S., McMahon, C. R., Robinson, P. W., Schick, R. S., Schwarz, L. K., Simmons, S. E., Thomas, L., Tyack, P., & Harwood, J. (2014). Using short-term measures of behaviour to estimate long-term fitness of southern elephant seals. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 496*, 99-108. doi:10.3354/meps10547

Nichols, T. A., Anderson, T. W., & Širović, A. (2015). Intermittent noise induces physiological stress in a coastal marine fish. *PLoS ONE, 10*(9), e0139157. doi:doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0139157

Nowacek, D. P., Thorne, L. H., Johnston, D. W., & Tyack, P. L. (2007). Responses of cetaceans to anthropogenic noise. *Mammal Review, 37*(2), 81-115.

O'Hara, J., & Wilcox, J. R. (1990). Avoidance responses of loggerhead turtles, *Caretta caretta*, to low frequency sound. *Copeia, 1990*(2), 564-567.

Popper, A. N., & Hawkins, A. D. (2018). The importance of particle motion to fishes and invertebrates. *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 143*(1), 470-488.

Popper, A. N., Halvorsen, M. B., Kane, A., Miller, D. L., Smith, M. E., Song, J., Stein, P., & Wysocki, L. E. (2007). The effects of high-intensity, low-frequency active sonar on rainbow trout. *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 122*(1), 623-635.

Popper, A. N., Hawkins, A. D., Fay, R. R., Mann, D. A., Bartol, S. M., Carlson, T. J., Coombs, S., Ellison, W. T., Gentry, R. L., Halvorsen, M. B., Lokkeborg, S., Rogers, P. H., Southall, B. L., Zeddies, D. G., & Tavolga, W. N. (2014). *Sound Exposure Guidelines for Fishes and Sea Turtles: A technical report prepared by the ANSI-Accredited Standards Committee S3/SC1 and registered with ANSI*. New York

Popper, A. N., Smith, M. E., Cott, P. A., Hanna, B. W., MacGillivray, A. O., Austin, M. E., & Mann, D. A. (2005). Effects of exposure to seismic airgun use on hearing of three fish species. *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 117*(6), 3958-3971.

Radford, A.N., Kerridge, E., & Simpson, S.D. (2014). Acoustic communication in a noisy world: Can fish compete with anthropogenic noise? *Behavioral Ecology* 25, 1022-2030. doi: 10.1093/beheco/aru029.

Richardson, W. J., Charles R. Greene, J., Malme, C. I., & Thomson, D. H. (1995). *Marine Mammals and Noise*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Risch, D., Corkeron, P. J., Ellison, W. T., & Van Parijs, S. M. (2012). Changes in humpback whale song occurrence in response to an acoustic source 200 km away. *PLoS ONE, 7*(1), e29741. doi:29710.21371/journal.pone.0029741.

Risch, D., Siebert, U., & Van Parijs, S. M. (2014). Individual calling behaviour and movements of North Atlantic minke whales (Balaenoptera acutorostrata). *Behaviour, 151*, 1335-1360. doi:http://dx.doi.org/10.1163/1568539X-00003187

Robinson, P. W., Costa, D. P., Crocker, D. E., Gallo-Reynoso, J. P., Champagne, C. D., Fowler, M. A., Goetsch, C., Goetz, K. T., Hassrick, J. L., Huckstadt, L. A., Kuhn, C. E., Maresh, J. L., Maxwell, S. M., McDonald, B. I., Peterson, S. H., Simmons, S. E., Teutschel, N. M., Villegas-Amtmann, S., & Yoda, K. (2012). Foraging behavior and success of a mesopelagic predator in the northeast Pacific Ocean: insights from a data-rich species, the northern elephant seal. *PLoS ONE, 7*(5), e36728. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0036728

Rolland, R. M., Parks, S. E., Hunt, K. E., Castellote, M., Corkeron, P. J., Nowacek, D. P., Wasser, S. K., & Kraus, S. D. (2012). Evidence that ship noise increases stress in right whales. *Proceedings. Biological sciences / The Royal Society, 279*(1737), 2363-2368. doi:10.1098/rspb.2011.2429

Romano, T. A., Keogh, M. J., Kelly, C., Feng, P., Berk, L., Schlundt, C. E., Carder, D. A., & Finneran, J. J. (2004). Anthropogenic sound and marine mammal health: Measures of the nervous and immune systems before and after intense sound exposure. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences, 61,* 1124-1137.

Ross, D. (1976). *Mechanics of Underwater Noise*. New York: Pergamon.

Ross, D. (2005). Ship sources of ambient noise. *IEEE Journal of Oceanic Engineering, 30*(2), 257-261. doi:10.1109/JOE.2005.850879

Scheifele, P. M., Andrew, S., Cooper, R. A., Darre, M., Musiek, F. E., & Max, L. (2005). Indication of a Lombard vocal response in the St. Lawrence River beluga. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 117*(3), 1486-1492.

Seminoff, J. A., Eguchi, T., Carretta, J., Allen, C. D., Prosperi, D., Rangel, R., Gilpatrick, J. W., Forney, K., & Peckham, S. H. (2014). Loggerhead sea turtle abundance at a foraging hotspot in the eastern Pacific Ocean: implications for at-sea conservation. *Endangered Species Research, 24*(3), 207-220. doi:10.3354/esr00601

Shannon, G., McKenna, M. F., Angeloni, L. M., Crooks, K. R., Fristrup, K. M., Brown, E., Warner, K. A., Nelson, M. D., White, C., Briggs, J., McFarland, S., & Wittemyer, G. (2016). A synthesis of two decades of research documenting the effects of noise on wildlife. *Biological Reviews, 91*(4), 982-1005.

Simpson, S. D., Purser, J., & Radford, A. N. (2015). Anthropogenic noise compromises antipredator behaviour in European eels. Global Change Biology*,* 21(2), 586-593.

Simpson, S. D., Radford, A. N., Nedelec, S. L., Ferrari, M. C., Chivers, D. P., McCormick, M. I., & Meekan, M. G. (2016). Anthropogenic noise increases fish mortality by predation. *Nat Commun, 7,* 10544. doi:10.1038/ncomms10544

Sivle, L. D., Kvadsheim, P. H., Curé, C., Isojunno, S., Wensveen, P. J., Lam, F.-P. A., Visser, F., Kleivane, L., Tyack, P. L., Harris, C. M., & Miller, P. J. O. (2015). Severity of expert-identified behavioural responses of humpback whale, minke whale, and northern bottlenose whale to naval sonar. *Aquatic Mammals, 41*(4), 469-502. doi:10.1578/am.41.4.2015.469

Smith, M. E., Kane, A. S., & Popper, A. N. (2004). Noise-induced stress response and hearing loss in goldfish (*Carassius auratus*). *Journal of Experimental Biology,* 207, 427-435.

Smith, M. E., Wysocki, L. E., & Popper, A. N. (2006). Effects of background sound on fish. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*, 119(5), 3283-3284. doi:10.1121/1.4786189

Song, J., Mann, D. A., Cott, P. A., Hanna, B. W., & Popper, A. N. (2008). The inner ears of northern Canadian freshwater fishes following exposure to seismic air gun sounds. *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 124*(2), 1360-1366.

Southall, B. L., Bowles, A. E., Ellison, W. T., Finneran, J. J., Gentry, R. L., Greene, C. R., Jr., Kastak, D., Ketten, D. R., Miller, J. H., Nachtigall, P. E., Richardson, W. J., Thomas, J. A., & Tyack, P. L. (2007). Marine mammal noise exposure criteria: Initial scientific recommendations. *Aquatic Mammals, 33*(4), 411-522.

Southall, B. L., Hatch, L., Scholik-Schlomer, A., Bergmann, T., Jasny, M., Metcalf, K., . . . Perera, M. E. (2018). Reducing noise from large commercial ships-Progress and partnerships. *Proceedings, 75*(1), 58-65.

Southall, B. L., Nowacek, D. P., Miller, P. J. O., & Tyack, P. L. (2016). Experimental field studies to measure behavioral responses of cetaceans to sonar. *Endangered Species Research, 31*, 293-315. doi:10.3354/esr00764

Southall, B. L., DeRuiter, S. L., Friedlaender, A., Stimpert, A. K., Goldbogen, J. A., Hazen, E., Casey, C., Fregosi, S., Cade, D. E., Allen, A. N., Harris, C. M., Schorr, G., Moretti, D., Guan, S., & Calambokidis, J. (2019b). Behavioral responses of individual blue whales (*Balaenoptera musculus*) to mid-frequency military sonar. *Journal of Experimental Biology, 222*, jeb190637.

Southall, B. L., Finneran, J. J., Reichmuth, C., Nachtigall, P. E., Ketten, D. R., Bowles, A. E., Ellison, W. T., Nowacek, D. P., & Tyack, P. L. (2019a). Marine mammal noise exposure criteria: Updated scientific recommendations for residual hearing effects. *Aquatic Mammals, 45*, 125-232.

St. Aubin, D. J., & Geraci, J. R. (1989). Adaptive changes in hematologic and plasma chemical constituents in captive beluga whales, *Delphinapterus leucas*. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences, 46*, 796-803.

Thomas, J. A., Kastelein, R. A., & Awbrey, F. T. (1990). Behavior and blood catecholamines of captive belugas during playbacks of noise from an oil drilling platform. *Zoo Biol, 9*(5), 393-402.

Tougaard, J., Wright, A. J., & Madsen, P. T. (2015). Cetacean noise criteria revisited in the light of proposed exposure limits for harbour porpoises. *Marine Pollution Bulletin, 90*(1-2), 196-208. doi:10.1016/j.marpolbul.2014.10.051

Tyack, P. L. (2008). Implications for marine mammals of large-scale changes in the marine acoustic environment. *Journal of Mammalogy, 89*(32), 549-558.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA). (1999). Consideration of Cumulative Impacts In EPA Review of NEPA Documents

Wang, S., Yuan, P, Li, D., & Jiao, Y. (2011). *An overview of ocean renewable energy in China.* Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews, 15(2011), 91-111. doi:10.1016/j.rser.2010.09.040

Wartzok, D., Popper, A. N., Gordon, J., & Merrill, J. (2003/04). Factors affecting the responses of marine mammals to acoustic disturbance. *Marine Technology Society Journal, 37*(4), 6-15.

Watwood, S. L., Iafrate, J. D., Reyier, E. A., & Redfoot, W. E. (2016). Behavioral response of reef fish and green sea turtles to midfrequency sonar. In A. N. Popper and A. Hawkins (Eds.). *The effects of noise on aquatic life II* (pp. 1213-1221). New York, NY: Springer Science+Business Media.

Wensveen, P. J., Isojunno, S., Hansen, R. R., von Benda-Beckmann, A. M., Kleivane, L., van IJsselmuide, S., Lam, F.-P. A., Kvadsheim, P. H., DeRuiter, S. L., Cure, C., Narazaki, T., Tyack, P. L., & Miller, P. J. O. (2019). Northern bottlenose whales in a pristine environment respond strongly to close and distant navy sonar signals. *Proceedings of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences, 286*, 20182592. doi: 10.1098/rspb.2018.2592

Wood, L. J. (2007). MPA Global: A database of the world's marine protected areas. Sea Around Us Project, UNEP-WCMC & WWF. Retrieved from <www.mpaglobal.org>.

Wysocki, L. E., Dittami, J. P., & Ladich, F. (2006). Ship noise and cortisol secretion in European freshwater fishes. *Biological Conservation, 128*(4), 501-508.

Wysocki, L. E., III, J. W. D., Smith, M. E., Frankel, A. S., Ellison, W. T., Mazik, P. M., Popper, A. N., & Bebak, J. (2007). Effects of aquaculture production noise on hearing, growth, and disease resistance of rainbow trout *Oncorhynchus mykiss*. *Aquaculture, 272*, 687-697.

Yuen, M. M. L., Nachtigall, P. E., Breese, M., & Supin, A. Y. (2005). Behavioral and auditory evoked potential audiograms of a false killer whale (*Pseudorca crassidens*). *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 118*(4), 2688-2695.

# 5 MITIGATION, MONITORING, AND REPORTING

## 5.1 Mitigation Overview

Mitigation includes measures to minimize impacts by limiting the degree or magnitude of a proposed action and its implementation. Three alternatives for the use of SURTASS LFA sonar are presented in this SEIS/SOEIS (No Action Alternative, Alternative 1, and Alternative 2), two of which would meet the Navy's purpose and need and include mitigation measures that would minimize potential impacts to the greatest extent practicable, furthering NMFS's purpose and need and its statutory obligations under MMPA. These mitigation measures would apply to both action alternatives so that the Navy would achieve the maximum possible mitigation under either action alternative. Navy and NMFS have coordinated to develop these mitigation measures, and Navy will continue to work with NMFS to finalize mitigation measures through the NEPA and MMPA permitting processes.

Consistent with NMFS' purpose and need to analyze the impacts of Navy's proposed activities and prescribe mitigation and monitoring requirements that meet the statutory thresholds under the MMPA, the objective of the mitigation measures for SURTASS LFA sonar's training and testing activities is the reduction or avoidance of potential effects to marine animals and marine habitat. This mitigation objective is met by ensuring that the activities under the Proposed Action:

- Do not transmit SURTASS LFA sonar such that RLs ≥180 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL] occur in coastal waters within 12 nmi (22 km) of emergent land;
- Do not transmit SURTASS LFA sonar such that RLs ≥180 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) occur within 0.54 nmi (1 km) of any OBIA boundary during biologically important seasons;
- Use no more than 25 percent of the authorized amount of SURTASS LFA sonar for training and testing activities within 10 nmi (18.5 km) of any single OBIA during any year;
- Minimize exposure of marine mammals and sea turtles to RLs of SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions by monitoring for their presence and delaying/suspending LFA sonar transmissions when one of these animals enters the 2,000 yd (1.8 km) LFA mitigation/buffer zone; and
- Do not transmit SURTASS LFA sonar such that RLs =145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) would occur at known recreational or commercial dive sites unless the following conditions are met: should national security present a requirement to transmit SURTASS LFA sonar during training or testing activities such that exposure at known recreational or commercial dive sites may exceed RLs =145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL), naval units would obtain permission from the appropriate designated Command authority prior to commencement of the activity. Prior to conducting training or testing activities, the designated Command authority shall conduct a risk assessment, taking into account the potential for exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar by divers.

As described in the 2017 SEIS/SOEIS (Department of the Navy [DoN], 2017), the Navy proposes to retain the 180 dB re 1 µPa (rms) isopleth as the basis for mitigation of SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions. In the past, this mitigation measure was designed to reduce or alleviate the likelihood that marine mammals would be exposed to levels of sound that may result in injury (PTS). However, due to the revised criteria in the NMFS (2018) acoustic guidance and Southall et al. (2019), this mitigation measure precludes not only PTS, but also TTS and some more severe forms of behavioral harassment. Thus, this measure is now considered more protective at reducing an even broader range of impacts compared to prior authorizations.

In addition, the Navy implements a three-part monitoring protocol that is highly effective at detecting marine animals, with detection resulting in the suspension or delay of LFA sonar transmissions. The combination of visual, passive acoustic, and active acoustic (HF/M3) monitoring results in near 100 percent detection probability for a medium-sized (approximately 33 ft [10 m]) marine mammal swimming towards the system (Ellison & Stein, 1999, updated 2001). The HF/M3 system substantially increases the probability of detecting a medium- to large-sized marine mammal within 1.1 to 1.3 nmi (2 to 2.5 km) where PTS, TTS, and some more severe forms of behavioral harassment are predicted to occur. The following describes the mitigation measures that would be implemented during SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities.

## 5.2 Re-evaluation of Mitigation Basis

The 180 dB re 1 µPa (rms) threshold for the onset of potential injury has been used for SURTASS LFA sonar since 2001 (DoN, 2001, 2007, 2012, 2015, 2017). However, the NMFS (2018) acoustic guidance and Southall et al. (2019) define a new method for estimating onset of PTS, therefore, the basis for the mitigation threshold was re-evaluated. The NMFS (2018) acoustic guidance and Southall et al. (2019) specify auditory weighted ($SEL_{cum}$) values for the onset of PTS, which is considered the onset of injury. The NMFS guidance (2018) also categorized marine mammals into five hearing groups for which generalized hearing ranges were defined, with the LF cetacean group including all mysticete or baleen whales.

- Low-frequency (LF) Cetaceans—mysticetes (baleen whales)
- Mid-frequency (MF) Cetaceans—includes most dolphins, all toothed whales except *Kogia* spp., and all beaked and bottlenose whales (called High-frequency cetaceans in Southall et al. [2019])
- High-frequency (HF) Cetaceans—consists of all true porpoises, river dolphins, *Kogia* spp., *Cephalorhynchid* spp. (genus in the dolphin family Delphinidae), and two species of *Lagenorhynchus* (Peale's and hourglass dolphins) (called Very high-frequency cetaceans in Southall et al. [2019])
- Phocids Underwater (PW)—consists of true seals (called Phocid carnivores in water by Southall et al. [2019])
- Otariids Underwater (OW)—includes sea lions and fur seals (call Other marine carnivores in water by Southall et al. [2019])

NMFS's (2018) guidance and Southall et al. (2019) present the auditory weighting functions developed for each of these functional hearing groups that reflect the best available data on hearing, impacts of sound on hearing, and data on equal latency. When estimating the onset of injury (PTS), the NMFS guidance (2018) and Southall et al. (2019) define weighted thresholds as sound exposure levels (SELs) (Table 4-6). To determine the SEL for each hearing group when exposed to a 60-sec (length of a nominal LFA sonar transmission or 1 ping), 300 Hz (the center frequency in the possible transmission range of 100 to 500 Hz) SURTASS LFA sonar transmission (single element source level of 215 dB re 1 µPa @ 1 m), the auditory weighting functions must be applied to account for each hearing group's sensitivity. Applying the auditory weighting functions to the nominal LFA sonar signal results in the thresholds increasing by approximately 1.5, 46, 56, 15, and 20 dB for LF, MF, HF, PW, and OW groups, respectively.

Based on simple spherical spreading (i.e., TL based on 20 × $\log_{10}$ [range {m}]) of the maximum SL of 215 dB re 1 µPa @ 1 m, all hearing groups except LF cetaceans would need to remain within 22 ft (7 m) for the duration of an entire LFA sonar ping (60 sec) to potentially experience PTS. LF cetaceans would need to remain at the greatest distance from the transmitting LFA sonar before experiencing the onset of injury, 135 ft (41 m) for this example. Consequently, the distance at which SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions should be mitigated for marine mammals would be the distance associated with LF cetaceans (baleen whales), as the mitigation ranges would be greatest for this group of marine mammals. Thus, any mitigation measure developed for LF cetaceans would be highly conservative for any other marine mammals potentially exposed to SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions.

The following illustrates what the SPL RL would be at the distance to which an LF cetacean would begin to experience PTS from transmitting LFA sonar. Per NMFS (2018) acoustic guidance and Southall et al. (2019), the LF cetacean threshold is 199 dB re 1 $\mu Pa^2$-sec (weighted). The magnitude of the LF auditory weighting function at 300 Hz for SURTASS LFA sonar is 1.5 dB, with the equivalent unweighted $SEL_{cum}$[35] value of 200.5 dB re 1 $\mu Pa^2$-sec. To convert this value into an SPL value, total duration of sound exposure is needed:

$$SPL = SEL_{cum} - 10 \times \log_{10}(T)$$

Where *T* is the duration in seconds.

Applying the duration of a single ping of SURTASS LFA sonar, or 60 sec, would result in 17.8 dB being subtracted from the unweighted $SEL_{cum}$ value of 200.5 dB, for an SPL of 182.7 dB re 1 µPa (rms); that is, being exposed to 182.7 dB (rms) for 60 sec is equivalent to 200.5 dB SEL. The mitigation distance to the 182.7 dB re 1 µP (rms) isopleth would be somewhat smaller than that associated with the previously used 180 dB re 1 µPa (rms) isopleth. If an LF cetacean were exposed to two full pings of SURTASS LFA sonar, the resulting SPL would be 179.7 dB re 1 µPa (rms); that is, being exposed to 179.7 dB (rms) for 120 sec is equivalent to 200.5 dB SEL. This exposure scenario is unlikely, as a marine mammal would have to remain close, <200 ft (<61 m), to the transmitting LFA sonar array for an extended period, approximately 20 minutes, to experience two full pings (one ping every 10 min). Since the RL in this unlikely scenario (179.7 dB re 1 µP [rms]) is so close to the 180 dB re 1 µP (rms) RL on which previous mitigation measures for SURTASS LFA sonar have been based, the Navy intends to retain the existing mitigation basis for SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions of 180 dB re 1 µPa (rms).

## 5.3 Mitigation Measures for SURTASS LFA Sonar

### 5.3.1 Operational Parameters

The SURTASS LFA sound signals would be maintained between 100 and 500 Hz with a SL for each of the 18 projectors of no more than 215 dB re 1 µPa m (rms) and a maximum duty cycle of 20 percent. Under Alternative 1, the Navy would transmit up to a total of 360 hours of LFA sonar transmissions per year pooled across all SURTASS LFA equipped vessels, while under Alternative 2, the Navy would transmit 496 hours per year across all SURTASS LFA sonar equipped vessels in the first four years, with an increase in transmission hours to 592 hours per year in year five and continuing into the foreseeable future, regardless of the number of vessels employing SURTASS LFA sonar. The LFA sonar transmission hours of

35 $SEL_{cum}$=cumulative sound exposure level

Alternative 1 and 2 both reflect a significant reduction in sonar transmit time compared to the existing authorization for sonar transmit hours (1,020 total transmission hours per year) under the NDE.

### 5.3.2 Mitigation/Buffer Zone

In previous applications for SURTASS LFA sonar rulemaking, the Navy proposed a mitigation zone covering a volume of water ensonified to the 180 dB re 1 µPa isopleth (i.e., the volume subjected to sound pressure levels of 180 dB rms or greater), and noted that the nominal outer boundary of this volume of water is approximately 0.54 nmi (1 km). In each of the resultant Final Rules, NMFS added a 0.54-nmi (1-km) buffer zone beyond the Navy's proposed LFA sonar mitigation zone, so the total resulting mitigation/buffer zone was nominally 1.08 nmi (2 km).

Navy requested, and NMFS agreed, to establish a single, fixed, combined mitigation/buffer zone of 2,000 yards (yd) (0.99 nmi) (1,829 m/1.83 km) rather than a combined mitigation/buffer zone of nominally 1.08 nmi (2 km). This 2,000 yd (1.83 km) single fixed mitigation/buffer zone would cover virtually all of the previous combined mitigation/buffer zone of nominally 1.08 nmi (2 km), since the difference between 2,000 yd and 2 km is only about 187 yd (or 0.09 nmi [167 m]). Likewise, the difference in the sound field of the combined mitigation/buffer zones of 2,000 yd (1.83 km) versus 1.08 nmi (2,187 yd; 2 km) would also be negligible. At 2,000 yd (1.83 km), modeling shows that the sound field would be about 174.75 dB while at 1.08 nmi (2 km), the sound file would be 173.98 dB, which is a difference of only 0.77 dB. This very slight sound field difference would not be perceptible to a marine mammal.

Establishing a single, fixed, combined mitigation/buffer zone for SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities standardizes and thus simplifies implementation of this monitoring requirement, including a buffer zone, using standard Navy metrics (yards not meters), while continuing to ensure protection to marine mammals in all acoustic environments, even in the rare event of a strong acoustic duct in which the volume of water ensonified to 180 dB could be somewhat greater than 0.54 nmi (1 km) (DoN, 2001). With the combined mitigation/buffer zone of 2,000 yd (1.83 km), there is no potential for animals to be exposed to received levels greater than 180 dB rms.

### 5.3.3 Ramp-up of High Frequency Marine Mammal Monitoring (HF/M3) Sonar

The ramp-up procedure for the HF/M3 sonar system would be implemented to ensure that no inadvertent exposures of marine animals to RLs ≥180 dB re 1 µPa (rms) would occur if an animal were to occur in close proximity to the HF/M3 sonar system. Prior to full-power transmissions, the HF/M3 sonar power level will be ramped up over a period of no less than 5 minutes from a SL of 180 dB re 1 µPa @ 1 m (rms) (SPL) in 10 dB increments until full power (if required) is attained. This ramp-up procedure would commence at least 30 minutes prior to initiation of any SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions, prior to any sonar calibrations or testing that are not part of the regularly planned transmissions, and any time after the HF/M3 sonar has been powered down for more than two minutes. The HF/M3 active sonar system's SPL may not increase once a marine mammal is detected. The ramp-up process may resume once marine animals are no longer detected by all of the monitoring methods.

### 5.3.4 LFA Sonar Suspension/Delay

During training and testing activities, SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions would be delayed or suspended if the Navy detects a marine mammal or sea turtle entering or already located within the LFA mitigation/buffer zone. The suspension or delay of LFA sonar transmissions would occur if the marine animal is detected by any of the monitoring methods: visual, passive acoustic, or active acoustic monitoring. During the delay/suspension, active acoustic, visual, and passive acoustic monitoring for marine mammals and sea turtles would continue. LFA sonar transmissions would be allowed to commence/resume no sooner than 15 minutes after all marine mammals/sea turtles are no longer detected within the SURTASS LFA sonar mitigation/buffer zone and no further detections of marine animals by visual, passive acoustic, and active acoustic monitoring have occurred within the mitigation/buffer zone.

### 5.3.5 Geographic Sound Field Operational Constraints

The Navy intends to continue applying the following geographic restrictions during training and testing activities using SURTASS LFA sonar such that:

- SURTASS LFA sonar-generated sound field would be below RLs of 180 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) within 12 nmi (22 km) of any emergent land (including islands);
- SURTASS LFA sonar-generated sound field would be below RLs of 180 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) 0.54 nmi (1 km) from the outer boundary of OBIAs during the biologically important period that have been determined by NMFS and the Navy;
- No more than 25 percent of the authorized amount of SURTASS LFA sonar would be used for training and testing activities within 10 nmi (18.5 km) of any single OBIA during any year unless the following condition is met: should national security present a requirement to conduct more than 25 percent of the authorized hours of SURTAS LFA sonar within 10 nmi (18.5 km) of any single OBIA during any year, naval units would obtain permission from the appropriate designated Command authority prior to commencement of the activity. The Navy would provide NMFS with notification as soon as is practicable and include the information (e.g., sonar hours) in its annual activity reports submitted to NMFS;
- Page: 5
  SURTASS LFA sonar-generated sound field would be equal to RLs of 145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) at known recreational or commercial dive sites unless the following conditions are met: should national security present a requirement to transmit SURTASS LFA sonar during training or testing activities such that exposure at known recreational or commercial dive may exceed RLs =145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL), naval units would obtain permission from the appropriate designated Command authority prior to commencement of the activity. Prior to conducting the training or testing activity, the designated Command authority shall conduct a risk assessment, taking into account the potential for exposure of SURTASS LFA sonar to divers; and
- SURTASS LFA sonar would not be used in the waters over Penguin Bank, Hawaii, to a water depth of 600 ft (183 m), and would be operated such that the sound fields would not exceed RLs of 145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) in Hawaii State waters.

NMFS and Navy would consider additional geographic restrictions, as appropriate, based on newly available information or data and the operational practicability of implementing additional mitigation.

#### 5.3.5.1 Coastal Standoff Range

The coastal standoff range refers to the distance of 12 nmi (22 km) from any emergent land wherein the sound field generated by SURTASS LFA sonar during training and testing activities would not exceed 180 dB re 1 µPa (rms) SPL. Since many areas of biological importance to marine species, particularly protected species, occur in coastal waters, the Navy established the policy of the coastal standoff range to lower the risk to many marine animals such as marine mammals and especially sea turtles, which aggregate in coastal waters. In a review of existing and proposed marine protected areas, approximately 80 percent were found to be located in the coastal standoff range. Coastal waters are heavily used seasonally for biologically important behaviors such as nesting, calving, foraging, and migrating. Some species of sea turtles spend entire life stages in coastal waters. In addition to the coastal standoff range, SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities would not occur within the territorial seas of foreign nations.

The Navy analyzed the differences in potential impacts from increasing the coastal standoff from 12 nmi (22 km) to 25 nmi (46 km), a difference of 13 nmi (24 km), in the 2007 FSEIS for SURTASS LFA sonar. Based on this analysis of the potential impacts to marine mammals, the Navy concluded that although increasing the coastal standoff range distance decreases exposure to higher sonar RLs for coastal species, pelagic marine mammal species (including those species that inhabit the outer continental shelf and shelf-break waters) actually would be predicted to be exposed to increased sonar RLs (DoN, 2007). Though counter-intuitive, this result is due to an increase in exposure area, with less ensonification overlapping land for the 25 nmi (46 km) standoff distance. The Navy's impact analysis showed that overall, a greater risk of potential impacts to marine mammals resulted with an increase of the coastal standoff from 12 nmi (22 km) to 25 nmi (46 km), which did not meet the standard for effecting the least practicable adverse impact on marine mammal species or stocks under the MMPA. Details of this analysis are presented in Subchapter 4.8.6 of the 2007 FSEIS. Thus, the Navy will continue to employ the 12 nmi (22 km) coastal standoff distance for the use of SURTASS LFA sonar.

#### 5.3.5.2 OBIAs

Given the unique transmission characteristics of SURTASS LFA sonar, and recognizing that certain areas of biological importance lie outside of the coastal standoff range (i.e., 12 nmi [22 km] from any emergent land) for SURTASS LFA sonar, Navy and NMFS developed the concept of marine mammal OBIAs for SURTASS LFA sonar. OBIAs for SURTASS LFA sonar are not intended to apply to any other Navy activities and were established solely as a mitigation measure to reduce incidental takings of marine mammals associated with the use of SURTASS LFA sonar (NOAA, 2007). OBIAs only pertain to marine mammals since the potential for impacts to other protected marine species (such as sea turtles or marine fishes) from exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions would be low to moderate, necessitating no additional preventative measures for these taxa beyond those already established for SURTASS LFA sonar. Further details about the development of OBIAs and the OBIA process over the history of SURTASS LFA sonar may be found in Chapter 3 of the 2017 SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA sonar (DoN, 2017). Pertinent information is incorporated by reference herein.

Associated with each OBIA is an effective period during which the marine mammal(s) for which the OBIA was designated carry out biologically significant activities. NMFS has required an additional 0.54-nmi (1-km) buffer zone be implemented around the OBIA boundary. Thus, during the effective period for each OBIA, the sound field generated by SURTASS LFA sonar cannot exceed RLs of 180 dB re 1 µPa (rms) at a distance of 0.54-nmi (1-km) of an OBIA boundary. Additional information about the marine areas reviewed by the Navy and NMFS as possible OBIAs and the status of the OBIA designation process relative to this SEIS/SOEIS may be found in Appendix C.

##### 5.3.5.2.1 <u>OBIA Selection Criteria</u>

The process of identifying potential marine mammal OBIAs involves an assessment by both NMFS and the Navy to identify marine areas that meet established criteria. In their comprehensive reassessment of potential OBIAs for marine mammals conducted for the 2012 SEIS/SOEIS, NMFS and the Navy established geographical and biological criteria as the basis for consideration of an area's eligibility as a candidate OBIA.

- ***Geographic Criteria for OBIA Eligibility***

For a marine area to be eligible for consideration as an OBIA for marine mammals, the area must be located in the SURTASS LFA sonar study area (Figure 1-1, Chapter 1), but cannot be located in the coastal standoff range (i.e., the area within 12 nmi (22 km) of any emergent land including islands or island systems). This part of the study area already receives the same protection as OBIAs where sound levels would not exceed 180 dB re 1 µPa (rms) SPL.

- ***Low-Frequency Hearing Sensitivity***

SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions are well below the range of best hearing sensitivity for most odontocetes and most pinnipeds based on the measured hearing thresholds (Au and Hastings, 2008; Houser et al., 2008; Kastelein et al., 2009; Mulsow and Reichmuth, 2010; Nedwell et al., 2004; Richardson et al., 1995; Southall et al., 2007). The intent of OBIAs is to protect those marine mammal species, such as baleen whales, most likely to hear and be affected by LFA sonar transmissions and to provide them additional protections during periods when they are conducting biologically significant activities. Thus, the primary focus of the OBIA mitigation measure is on LF hearing sensitive species. However, OBIAs have been designated to provide additional mitigation protection for non-LF hearing specialists, such as elephant seals and sperm whales, since the available hearing data for these species indicate an increased sensitivity to LF sound (compared to most odontocetes and pinnipeds).

- ***Biological Criteria for OBIA Eligibility***

In addition to meeting the geographical criteria, a marine area must also meet at least one of the following biological criteria to be considered as a marine mammal OBIA for SURTASS LFA sonar. When direct data relevant to one of the following biological criteria are limited, other available data and information may be used if those data and information, either alone or in combination with the limited direct data, are sufficient to establish that the biological criteria are met:

- *High Densities*: an area of high density for one or more species of marine mammals. High density areas are those marine waters where the density within a definable area (and potentially, time) measurably and meaningfully exceeds the average density of the species or stock within the region. The exact basis for the identification of "high density areas" may differ across species/stocks and regions, depending on the available information and should be evaluated on a stock-by-stock or species-by-species basis, although combining species or stocks may be appropriate in some situations. The best source of data for this determination is publically-available, direct measurements from survey data.
- *Known Breeding/Calving or Foraging Ground or Migration Route:* an area representing a location of known biologically important activities including defined breeding or calving areas, foraging grounds, or migration routes. Potential designation under this criterion is indicative that these areas are concentrated areas for at least one biologically important activity. For the purpose of this SEIS/SOEIS, "concentrated" means that more of the animals are engaged in the particular behavior at the location (and perhaps time) than are typically engaged in that behavior elsewhere.

- *Small, Distinct Populations of Marine Mammals with Limited Distributions:* geographic areas in which small, distinct populations of marine mammals occur and whose distributional range are limited.

Citical habitat designated for an ESA-listed marine mammal species or DPS is one type of marine area that may be considered when assessing and designating OBIAs for SURTASS LFA sonar. Typically a wealth of information and data are available on the habitat and the biologically important behavior(s) conducted in those waters by an ESA-listed marine mammal. However, ESA critical habitat is designated for the specific purpose of supporting the recovery of a species whose existence is threatened or endangered, and the geographic area contains physical and/or biological features that are essential to the conservation of the threatened or endangered species. Thus, the purpose for designating critical habitat differs from the purpose for designating OBIAs, which is to expand upon the protection of the coastal standoff range and avoid or reduce the potential for impacts associated with exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions and activities in areas beyond the coastal standoff distance where marine mammals are known to engage in specific behaviors that may lead to more severe impacts if interrupted. Thus, critical habitat is just one of the factors considered when assessing the biologial importance of an area to a marine mammal, and the presence of critical habitat does not result in a marine area automatically being designated an OBIA for SURTASS LFA sonar.

- ***Navy Practicability Criterion***

If an area meets the geographic, biological, and hearing criteria, it is considered a candidate OBIA and the Navy conducts a practicability assessment, including consideration of personnel safety, practicality of implementation, and impacts on the effectiveness of SURTASS LFA active sonar testing and training activities. If the candidate area passes the practicability assessment, then the marine area is considered to meet all criteria for designation as a SURTASS LFA sonar OBIA for marine mammals. If the Navy determines that it is not practicable to designate the area as an OBIA, the Navy would identify the concerns that lead to this conclusion and discuss with NMFS whether modifications could be made to the proposed OBIA to alleviate the Navy's practicability concerns.

#### 5.3.5.2.2 Existing Marine Mammal OBIAs for SURTASS LFA Sonar

The 2017 NDE for SURTASS LFA sonar lists 29 marine mammal OBIAs and their effective periods as one of the geographic mitigation measures with which all military readiness activities using SURTASS LFA sonar must comply (DoN, 2017) (Appendix C). Of these 29 OBIAs, four occur in the current study area for SURTASS LFA sonar (Table 5-1; Figure 5-1), including OBIA #16 (Penguin Bank, Hawaiian Island Humpback Whale NMFS), OBIA #20 (Northern Bay of Bengal and Head of Swatch-of-No-Ground [SoNG]), OBIA #26 (Offshore Sri Lanka), and OBIA #27 (Camden Sound/Kimberly Region). The effective period specified for each OBIA is the season or length of time in which important biological activity is conducted annually by a specific marine mammal species or group of marine mammals in that area.

#### 5.3.5.2.3 Potential Marine Mammal OBIAs for SURTASS LFA Sonar

Since the 2017 SEIS/SOEIS and MMPA NDE for SURTASS LFA sonar, consideration and assessment of marine areas as potential OBIAs has continued as described in this section. The Navy and NMFS have conducted a comprehensive assessment of the available scientific literature, data, and information on marine areas in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar to determine their potential as OBIAs. Since this SEIS/SOEIS has a narrowed geographic scope for training and testing activities, review of OBIAs was

**Table 5-1. Four Offshore Biologically Important Areas (OBIAs) for SURTASS LFA Sonar Located in the Study Area, the Relative Location, Relevant Low-Frequency Marine Mammal Species, and Effective Seasonal Period for each OBIA.**

| *OBIA Number* | *Name of OBIA* | *Location/Water Body* | *Relevant Low-Frequency Marine Mammal Species* | *Effectiveness Seasonal Period* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 16 | Penguin Bank, Hawaiian Islands Humpback Whale NMS | North-Central Pacific Ocean | Humpback whale | November through April, annually |
| 20 | Northern Bay of Bengal and Head of Swatch-of-No- Ground (SoNG) | Bay of Bengal/Northern Indian Ocean | Bryde's whale | Year-round |
| 26 | Offshore Sri Lanka | North-Central Indian Ocean | Blue whale | December through April, annually |
| 27 | Camden Sound/Kimberly Region | Southeast Indian Ocean; northwestern Australia | Humpback whale | June through September, annually |

similarly scoped to reflect only the current study area. Navy and NMFS's comprehensive assessment of marine areas as potential OBIAs included review of the OBIA Watchlist for areas located within the study area as well as a thorough review of the Important Marine Mammal Areas (IMMAs), Ecologically or Biologically Significant Marine Areas (EBSAs), IUCN Green List of Protected and Conserved Areas, as well as marine areas recommended in public comments on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS (see Chapter 7) and on the MMPA Proposed Rule (84 FR 7186) for SURTASS LFA sonar. The Navy and NMFS solicited comments on the marine areas assessed as OBIAs and the preliminary list of those areas that were to be further considered. In the Proposed MMPA Rule for SURTASS LFA sonar, NMFS requested additional information and data on the marine areas under consideration and also asked the public to submit areas that were within the study area and important to marine mammals. Navy and NMFS together received recommendations of an additional 93 marine areas, including the newly designated IMMAs in the Southeast Asian Seas and Eastern Indian Ocean, to be considered as OBIAs.

The initial assessment step for each marine area was the geospatial analysis to resolve whether the marine area was located within the study area and outside the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA sonar (i.e., >12 nmi [22 km] from emergent land). The geospatial analysis was conducted using a geographic information system (GIS) and the best available geospatial data to most accurately analyze the boundary positions of the potential marine areas relative to the study area and coastal standoff range. Spatial boundary data for many of the assessed marine areas were publicly available for import into GIS.

Another key step in the assessment of marine areas is determining the area's relevance specifically to marine mammals, as many areas are identified for their importance or relevance to other marine taxa, such as coral reefs, or for general marine conservation factors (e.g., Ecologically or Biologically Significant Area [EBSAs]). This step is not the evaluation of a marine area against the OBIA biological criteria, but merely separates out those marine areas in which marine mammal species potentially conduct biologically important activities.

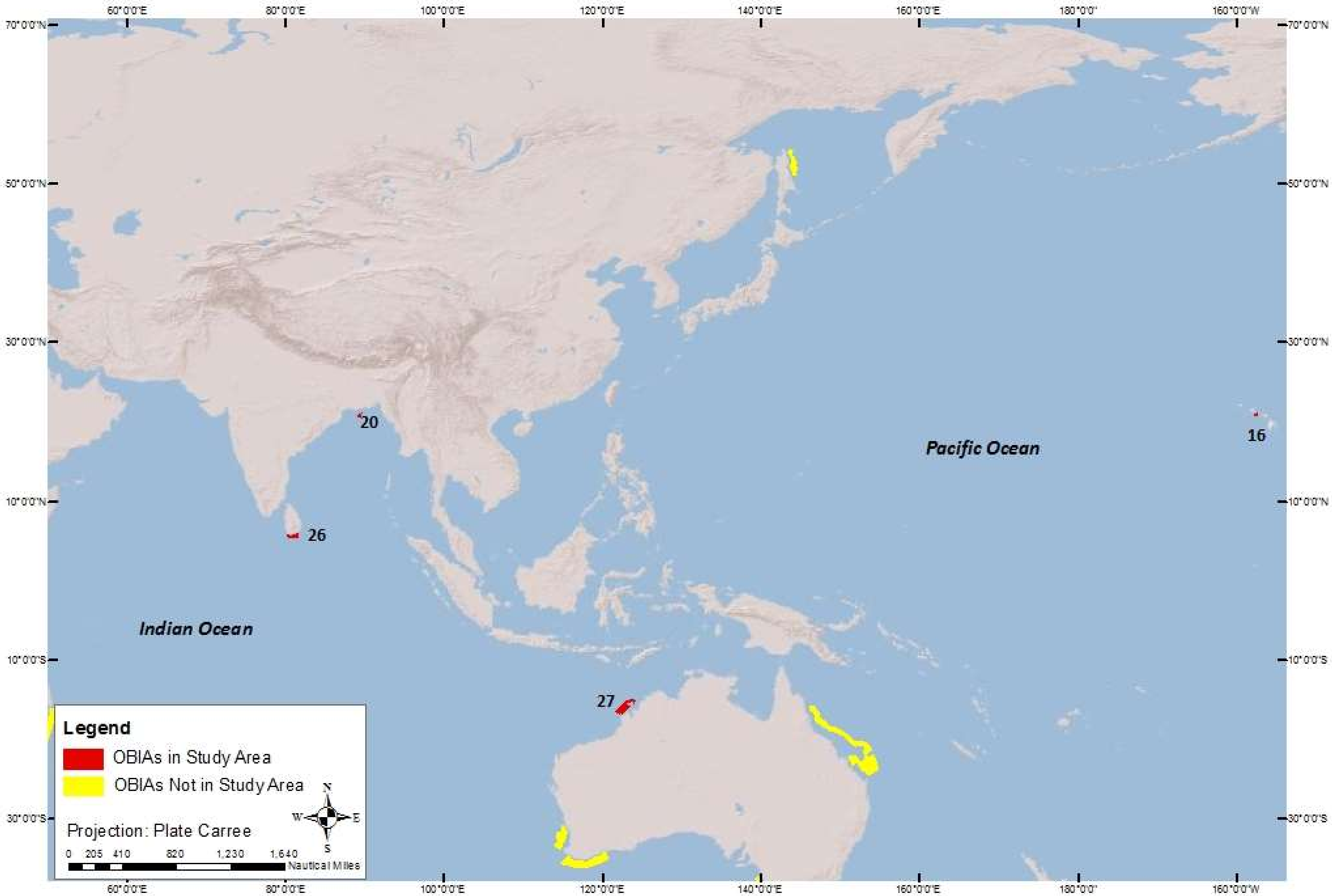



**Figure 5-1. Locations of the Four OBIAs (16, 20, 26, and 27) in the SURTASS LFA Sonar Study Area.**

Once marine areas were determined to meet the geographic criteria and had some biological relevance to marine mammals, the marine areas were further comprehensively assessed to determine if they met the OBIA biological criteria and LF sensitivity. That detailed assessment resulted in two categories of marine areas: (1) marine areas that met all criteria and factors and were considered candidate OBIAs, pending the Navy practicability assessment, and (2) those marine areas that were not further considered as OBIAs because they did not meet the OBIA selection criteria (Table 5-2; Appendix Table C-5). The following describes the types of marine areas assessed by the Navy and NMFS as potential marine mammal OBIAs for SURTASS LFA sonar. Appendix C includes the complete list of marine areas assessed by the Navy and NMFS, additional details of the OBIA assessment process, and detailed summaries describing the marine areas assessed as potential OBIAs.

➢ ***OBIA WatchList Marine Areas***

The Navy and NMFS have maintained the OBIA Watchlist, which is a list of potential marine areas already identified and reviewed as potential OBIAs but for which documentation on the importance of the area to marine mammals has not been established or is lacking in detail. These areas, however, continue to be periodically assessed as additional information becomes available.

The vast majority of the marine areas on the OBIA Watchlist are not located in the current study area for SURTASS LFA sonar in the eastern Indian Ocean or central or western North Pacific Ocean. Those few OBIA Watchlist areas that are located within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar have been re-evaluated as part of the comprehensive assessment to support this SEIS/SOEIS and associated consultations. The OBIA Watchlist areas located within the study area that were re-considered include the British Indian Ocean Territory-Chagos Islands MPA, the Pacific Remote Islands (PRI) Marine NM (MNM), Marianas Trench MNM, and the Papahānaumokuākea MNM. Only two of the units of the PRI MNM and a very small strip of the northern part of a third unit, Kingman Reef/Palmyra Atoll, were within the boundary of the study area (Appendix Figure C-2). Thus, only those areas of the MNMs coincident with the study area were further assessed.

Of these Watchlist areas, basic information indicates that marine mammals occur in the waters of all the assessed MNM units. Scientific data and information on the important biological activities conducted by a marine mammal species were most available for the Papahānaumokuākea MNM (Appendix Figure C-4), where the majority of the very small population of the critically endangered Hawaiian monk seal resides, reproduces, and forages, and where critical habitat for this species has been designated out to the 656-ft (200-m) isobath. Although little information and data are readily available on marine mammals in the waters of the Marianas Trench MNM Islands Unit or in the waters of Wake, Johnson, Palmyra atolls or Kingman Reef units of the PRI MNM, the Navy and NMFS will continue to thoroughly research the marine mammal information for these areas. Thus, specific units of the three MNMs located in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar were carried forward for further evaluation of the available biological and hearing data and information (Table 5-2).

The British Indian Ocean Territory-Chagos Islands MPA is a large MPA with a considerable area of marine waters outside the LFA coastal standoff range around the islands of the Chagos Archipelago. However, as was noted when this area was previously assessed by the Navy and NMFS, little information is available on the marine mammals of these waters (Dunne et al., 2014) and, more importantly, if marine mammals conduct biologically important activities in the area. Although all available literature and information were researched and reviewed, due to the lack of supporting information and data on the importance of these waters to any marine mammal species, the Navy and NMFS' conclusion on the

**Table 5-2. Marine Areas Considered as Candidate OBIAs and those not Further Considered as OBIAs, the Ocean Area where each Marine Area is Located, and the Proposed Name of the Candidate OBIAs.**

| *Marine Area Number* | *Marine Area Name* | *Ocean Area* | *Effective Seasonal Period* | *Candidate OBIA Name* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ***Candidate OBIAs: Marine Areas Meeting OBIA Designation Criteria*** | | | | |
| 1 | Main Hawaiian Archipelago | Central North Pacific Ocean | November to April | Main Hawaiian Islands |
| 2 | Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument | Central North Pacific Ocean | December to April | Northwestern Hawaiian Islands |
| 3 | Northwestern Hawaiian Islands | Central North Pacific Ocean | | |
| 4 | Marianas Trench Marine National Monument | Western North Pacific Ocean | February to April | Marianas |
| 5 | Bluefin Spawning/Babuyan Marine Corridor | Western North Pacific Ocean | January to April | Ryukyu-Philippines |
| 6 | Ogasawara Islands | Western North Pacific Ocean | June to September<br>December to May | Ogasawara (sperm whales),<br>Ogasawara-Kazin (humpbacks) |
| 7 | Convection Zone East of Honshu | Western North Pacific Ocean | January to May | Honshu |
| 8 | Southeast Kamchatka Coastal Waters | Western North Pacific Ocean | June to September | Southeast Kamchatka |
| 9 | Upper Gulf of Thailand/Bay of Bangkok | Eastern Indian Ocean | April to November | Gulf of Thailand |
| 10 | Savu Sea and Surrounding Areas | Eastern Indian Ocean | May to November | Western Australia (blue whales) |
| 11 | North Western Australia Shelf/Ningaloo Reef | Eastern Indian Ocean | May to November<br>May to December | Western Australia (blue whales)<br>Western Australia (humpback whales) |
| 12 | Western Australia (Shark Bay to Exmouth Gulf) | Eastern Indian Ocean | May to December | Western Australia (humpback whales) |
| 13 | Browse Basin | Eastern Indian Ocean | May to November | Western Australia (blue whales) |
| 14 | Southern Bali Peninsula and Slope | Eastern Indian Ocean | October to November | Southern Bali |
| 15 | Swatch-of-No-Ground (SoNG) | Northern Bay of Bengal | Year-round | SoNG |
| 16 | Trincomalee Canyon and Associated Ecosystems | Eastern Indian Ocean | October to April | Sri Lanka |
| 17 | Southern Coastal/Offshore Waters between Galle and Yala National Park | Eastern Indian Ocean | | |
| ***Marine Areas Not Further Considered for OBIAs*** | | | | |
| 18 | Hawaiian Monk Seal Critical Habitat | Central North Pacific Ocean | | |

**Table 5-2. Marine Areas Considered as Candidate OBIAs and those not Further Considered as OBIAs, the Ocean Area where each Marine Area is Located, and the Proposed Name of the Candidate OBIAs.**

| *Marine Area Number* | *Marine Area Name* | *Ocean Area* | *Effective Seasonal Period* | *Candidate OBIA Name* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 19 | Main Hawaiian Island Insular DPS of False Killer Whale Critical Habitat | Central North Pacific Ocean | | |
| 20 | Pacific Remote Islands Marine National Monument (Only Wake/ Johnson/Palmyra atolls and Kingman Reef Units) | Western and Central North Pacific Ocean | | |
| 21 | Kyushu Palau Ridge | Western North Pacific Ocean | | |
| 22 | Raja Ampat and Northern Bird's Head | Western North Pacific Ocean | | |
| 23 | North Pacific Transition Zone | Western North Pacific Ocean | | |
| 24 | Polar/Kuroshio Extension Fronts | Western North Pacific Ocean | | |
| 25 | Kuroshio Current South of Honshu | Western North Pacific Ocean | | |
| 26 | Peter the Great Bay | Western North Pacific Ocean | | |
| 27 | Moneron Island Shelf | Western North Pacific Ocean | | |
| 28 | Kien Giang and Kep Archipelago | Southeast Asian Seas | | |
| 29 | Southern Andaman Islands | Northeastern Indian Ocean | | |
| 30 | Gulf of Mannar and Palk Bay | North Indian Ocean | | |
| 31 | Lakshadweep Archipelago | Central Indian Ocean | | |
| 32 | West and South Coasts of India | Central Indian Ocean | | |
| 33 | West of Maldives | Central Indian Ocean | | |

British Indian Ocean Territory-Chagos Islands MPA remains unchanged; insufficient data are currently available to demonstrate that the waters of this MPA are important biologically to marine mammals. Accordingly, the Navy and NMFS did not further consider the British Indian Ocean Territory-Chagos MPA as a possible OBIA but are retaining the area on the OBIA Watchlist pending availability of additional supporting information or data.

- ***ESA Critical Habitat***

ESA-designated critical habitat has been designated in the Hawaiian waters of the central North Pacific study area for two species of marine mammals, the Hawaiian monk seal (NOAA, 2015) and the Main Hawaiian Islands Insular DPS of false killer whales (NOAA, 2018). Although these marine areas met the geographical and biological criteria but were not relevant to an LF-sensitive marine mammal. Accordingly, these areas are amongst the marine areas the Navy and NMFS did not further consider as marine mammal OBIAs for SURTASS LFA sonar (Table 5-2).

- ***IUCN WCPA-SSC Important Marine Mammal Areas (IMMAs)***

IMMAs are marine areas identified and defined by the Marine Mammal Protected Area Task Force (MMPATF), which is a joint effort of the IUCN World Commission of Protected Areas (WCPA) and Species Survival Commission (SSC) and the International Committee on Marine Mammal Protected Areas (ICMMPA). IMMAs are defined as "discrete portions of habitat that are important to one or more marine mammal species; represent priority sites for marine mammal conservation worldwide without management implications; and merit protection and monitoring" (IUCN WCPA-SSC Joint Task Force on Biodiversity and Protected Areas and IUCN WCPA-SSC Joint Task Force on Marine Mammal Protected Areas, 2015). MMPATF's goal is to create a global network of IMMAs that are essentially MPAs for marine mammals. To achieve this goal, the task force has convened workshops focused on specific ocean basins using regional experts to identify IMMAs. The MMPATF has developed geospatial tools and a standardized process for the identification of IMMA data that ensure the consistent and comprehensive identification of areas important to marine mammals.

To date, IMMAs have been identified in the western and central Pacific Ocean, Mediterranean Sea, and the North East Indian Ocean and South East Asian Seas (MMPATF, 2018 and 2019). Only those areas designated as IMMAs in the western and central North Pacific Ocean and easten Indian Ocean were assessed, as sufficient data and information on marine mammal occurrence and behavior were not available for candidate IMMAs or areas of interest. Twenty-three IMMAs are located in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar (Appendix Tables C-2 and C-3). Of the 15 Pacific Islands IMMAs, only three are located within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar in the North Pacific Ocean: the North West Hawaiian Islands, Main Hawaiian Archipelago, and Southern Shelf Waters/Slope Edge of Palau IMMAs. Only two (North West Hawaiian Islands and Main Hawaiian Archipelago IMMAs) were carried forward for further evaluation, as the Southern Shelf Waters/Slope Edge of Palau IMMA is located wholly within the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA sonar (Table 5-2; Appendix Figure C-6). In 2019, 30 IMMAs were designated in the North East Indian Ocean and South East Asian Seas (MMPATF, 2019) (Appendix Table C-3; Figures C-6 and C-7). Of these 30 IMMAs, 20 are at located at least partially within the SURTASS LFA study area, with only 9 located at least partially outside of the coastal standoff range. Thus, out of the 30 IMMAs in the North East Indian Ocean and South East Asian Seas, eight were further considered as OBIAs.

➢ ***IUCN Green List of Protected and Conserved Areas***

The IUCN Green List of Protected and Conserved Areas has been generated as part of an IUCN program that aims to encourage, achieve, and promote effective, equitable, and successful protected areas with a principal goal of increasing the number of protected and conserved areas that are effectively and equitably managed and deliver conservation outcomes. The heart of the IUCN Green List Programme is the Green List Standard, which is a set of components, criteria, and indicators for successful protected area conservation and international benchmarks for quality to provide improved performance and achievement of conservation objectives (IUCN, 2018b). The criteria of the global Sustainability Standard are focused on four areas: good governance, sound design and planning, and effective management. Being designated on the IUCN Green List of Protected and Conserved Areas is a three-phase process, consisting of application, candidate, and Green List phases (IUCN, 2017). The IUCN Green List Programme has recognized 25 protected and conserved areas in eight countries around the world (IUCN, 2018a). Eleven of the 25 Green List areas are located within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar, but all are terrestrial parks or reserves, and none of the IUCN Green List Protected or Conserved Areas encompass any marine waters (Appendix C). For this reason, no IUCN Green List areas were further considered as potential OBIAs.

➢ ***UNEP Ecologically or Biologically Significant Marine Areas (EBSAs)***

EBSAs are an effort of the Convention on Biological Diversity, which was initiated by the United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP). The Convention on Biological Diversity is an international legal instrument for the conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity. EBSAs are special marine areas that serve important purposes that ultimately support the healthy functioning of oceans and thus should have increased protection and sustainable management. To support effective policy action by countries and competent international and regional organizations, it is critical to build a sound understanding of the most ecologically and biologically important ocean areas that support healthy marine ecosystems.

The Convention on Biological Diversity has developed 278 EBSAs in 12 geographic regions of the world. The Navy and NMFS evaluated all 278 EBSAs to determine if they were located in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. Five of the 12 EBSA geographic regions are located in the eastern Indian and western and central North Pacific oceans study area for SURTASS LFA sonar (North-East Indian Ocean, Southern Indian Ocean, East Asian Seas, North Pacific Ocean, and Western South Pacific Ocean) and were examined in detail to determine which EBSAs occurred within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar, had relevance to marine mammals, and were at least in part outside the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA sonar.

In all, 129 EBSAs were geospatially assessed to determine if the EBSAs met the geographic OBIA criteria of being located within the study area (Appendix Tables C-2 and C-4). The 54 EBSAs located within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar (Appendix Table C-2) were further assessed to determine if any marine mammals under NMFS's jurisdiction[36] were associated with the waters of the EBSAs (Figures C-8 and C-9). Only 19 of the EBSAs were pertinent to marine mammals under NMFS's jurisdiction and that could potentially co-occur with SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities (Appendix Table C-4). The 19 EBSAs were additionally assessed to determine if at least part of the EBSA was located outside the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA sonar. Fourteen of the 19 EBSAs related to marine mammals

36 Dugongs, for instance, are under the jurisdiction of USFWS and occur typically in very shallow, coastal waters where SURTASS LFA sonar activities are not conducted, and as such, were excluded from further consideration in this SEIS/SOEIS.

were located at least partially outside the coastal standoff range (Table 5-2); however, only 13 were carried forward because one of the EBSAs was pertinent only to coastal/inshore species of marine mammals. Thus, 13 EBSAs co-occur with SURTASS LFA sonar operations[37], met the other geographic criteria, and were pertinent to marine mammal species under NMFS jurisdiction. One additional EBSA, the Ogasawara Islands EBSA, is located entirely within the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA sonar. However, in recognition of the importance of the Ogasawara waters as a migrational waypoint and calving/breeding area for the endangered WNP DPS and stock of humpback whales, the waters beyond the coastal standoff range of the Ogasawara Islands were assessed to determine if an areal extent could be defined in which the important migrational and/or reproductive behavior of humpback whales occurs and if data are sufficient to supports the determination. Further details on the Navy and NMFS' assessment of the 14 EBSAs further considered as OBIAs are found in Appendix C.

➢ ***Public Comment Recommendations***

Public comments were sought on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS and MMPA Proposed Rule for SURTASS LFA sonar. Marine areas were recommended for consideration as OBIAs in public comments received on both the Draft SEIS/SOEIS and Proposed Rule from the Marine Mammal Commission and a group of non-governmental organizations represented by the Natural Resources Defense Council (NRDC). For comments on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS, the NRDC et al. group consisted of these organizations: NRDC, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research. For the Proposed Rule, the NRDC et al. group included: NRDC, The Humane Society of the U.S., and Humane Society Legislative Fund.

A total of 93 marine area recommendations were received for consideration as OBIAs in the public comments from the two groups (Appendix Table C-2). These areas included 30 IMMAs for the Southeast Asian Seas and Northeast Indian Ocean that were designated in February 2019. Many of the comments in the Draft SEIS/SOEIS and the Proposed Rule recommended the same marine areas, so after duplicate areas were removed, 69 marine areas remained to be assessed. Only one of the recommended marine areas was not located within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar (Commander Islands), but the remaining 68 marine areas, including the 30 newly designated IMMAs, were assessed for concurrence with the selection criteria for OBIAs. Of the 68 marine areas, 48 were carried forward for assessment of the remaining OBIA selection criteria and factors.

➢ ***Marine Areas Further Considered as Candidate OBIAs for SURTASS LFA Sonar***

The Navy and NMFS made determinations on which of all the marine areas considered met all OBIA selection criteria and factors except the Navy operational practicability criterion (Table 5-2; Appendix Table C-2). During the assessment, different types of marine areas were combined if they were designated for the same geographic area (e.g., the Gulf of Mannar where an EBSA and IMMA have been designated) or if different species of marine mammals were designated in the same marine area (e.g., humpback and sperm whales in the Ogasawara region). This combination of areas resulted in 33 marine areas being considered as potential OBIAs herein.

Of the 33 marine areas thoroughly assessed as possible OBIAs, the Navy and NMFS's assessment resulted in 14 candidate OBIAs being designated for 17 of the marine areas, pending Navy Fleet review for practicability (Table 5-2 and Appendix Table C-6). Some OBIAs, such as the blue and humpback whale

37 As noted in Chapter 3, species must co-occur with SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities to be potentially affected by LFA sonar transmissions and thus, be considered herein. Accordingly, coastal/inshore species such as the dugong and Irrawaddy dolphin are not considered herein.

OBIAs in Western Australia encompassed several marine areas, which is why the candidate OBIAs are fewer than the number of marine areas for which OBIAs were designated. All four of the OBIAs already designated in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar (Table 5-1) have been greatly expanded spatially as part of the Navy and NMFS's assessment. OBIA #16, Penguin Bank, is now part of the much larger Main Hawaiian Islands OBIA, while OBIA #20, Northern Bay of Bengal/Swatch-of-No-Ground (SoNG) is now encompassed in the SoNG OBIA, and the Offshore Sri Lanka, OBIA #26, is now part of the more encompassing Sri Lanka OBIA. Last, OBIA #27, Kimberly-Camden Sound was greatly expanded to become the Western Australia (Humpback Whale) OBIA.

➢ ***Navy Practicability Assessment***

The 14 candidate OBIAs underwent Navy Fleet practicabilty review. The Navy Fleet determined that the designation of the 14 OBIAs in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar and the relevant seasonal effectiveness periods would not impede the effectiveness of SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities, would be practicable to implement as a geographic mitigation measure, and would not impact personnel safety. As a result, 14 new, marine mammal OBIAs for SURTASS LFA sonar have been designated herein (Table 5-3).

#### 5.3.5.3 Dive Sites

SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions would be constrained in the vicinity of known recreational and commercial dive sites to ensure that the sound field at such sites does not exceed RLs of 145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) unless the following conditions are met: should national security present a requirement to transmit SURTASS LFA sonar during training or testing activities such that exposure at known recreational or commercial dive may exceed RLs =145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL), naval units would obtain permission from the appropriate designated Command authority prior to commencement of the activity. Prior to conducting the training or testing activity, the designated Command authority shall conduct a risk assessment, taking into account the potential for exposure of SURTASS LFA sonar to divers.

Recreational dive sites are generally located in coastal/island waters less than 130 ft (40 m) in depth, although dive sites may be located in other waters. Details on the recreational and commercial dive sites in the SURTASS LFA sonar study area may be found in Chapter 3 (Section 3.5.3.1) and Appendix F.

## 5.4 Monitoring for SURTASS LFA Sonar

The Navy would cooperate with NMFS and other federal agencies to monitor impacts on marine mammals and to designate qualified on-site personnel to conduct mitigation monitoring and reporting activities in support of SURTASS LFA sonar. The Navy would continue to conduct the following monitoring measures whenever SURTASS LFA sonar is transmitting during training and testing activities:

- Visual monitoring for marine mammals and sea turtles from the SURTASS LFA sonar vessels during daylight hours by personnel trained to detect and identify sea turtles and marine mammals at sea;
- Passive acoustic monitoring using the passive SURTASS towed array to listen for sounds generated by marine mammals as an indicator of their presence; and
- Active acoustic monitoring using the HF/M3 sonar, which is a Navy-developed, enhanced HF commercial sonar, to detect, locate, and track marine mammals and, to some extent, sea

**Table 5-3. Marine Mammal Offshore Biologically Important Areas (OBIAs) Newly Designated in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar.**

| *Candidate OBIA Number* | *OBIA Name* | *Ocean Area* | *Relevant Low-Frequency Marine Mammal Species* | *Effective Seasonal Period* | *Notes* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Main Hawaiian Islands | Central North Pacific | Humpback whale | November to April | Expansion of existing OBIA #16, Penguin Bank |
| 2 | Northwestern Hawaiian Islands | Central North Pacific | Humpback whale | December to April | |
| 3 | Marianas | Western North Pacific | Humpback whale | February to April | |
| 4 | Ryukyu-Philippines | Western North Pacific | Humpback whale | January to April | |
| 5 | Ogasawara (Sperm Whale) | Western North Pacific | Sperm whale | June to September | |
| 6 | Ogasawara-Kazin (Humpback Whale) | Western North Pacific | Humpback whale | December to May | |
| 7 | Honshu | Western North Pacific | Gray whale | January to May | |
| 8 | Southeast Kamchatka | Western North Pacific | Humpback, fin, Western North Pacific gray, and North Pacific right whales | June to September | |
| 9 | Gulf of Thailand | Eastern Indian Ocean | Bryde's whale | April to November | |
| 10 | Western Australia (Blue Whale) | Eastern Indian Ocean | Blue (pygmy) whale | May to November | |
| 11 | Western Australia (Humpback Whale) | Eastern Indian Ocean | Humpback whale | May to December | Expansion of existing OBIA #27, Kimberly-Camden Sound |
| 12 | Southern Bali | Eastern Indian Ocean | Bryde's, sei, humpback, Omura's, and sperm whales | October to November | |
| 13 | Swatch-of-No-Ground (SoNG) | Northern Bay of Bengal | Bryde's whale | Year-round | Expansion of existing OBIA #20, Northern Bay of Bengal/SoNG |
| 14 | Sri Lanka | Eastern Indian Ocean | Blue (pygmy) and sperm whales | October to April | Expansion of existing OBIA #26, Offshore Sri Lanka |

turtles, that may pass close enough to the SURTASS LFA sonar's transmit array to enter the LFA mitigation/buffer zone.

### 5.4.1 Visual Monitoring

Visual monitoring would include daytime observations of the sea surface for the presence of marine mammals and sea turtles from the bridge of SURTASS LFA sonar vessels. Daytime is defined as 30 minutes before sunrise until 30 minutes after sunset. Visual monitoring would begin 30 minutes before sunrise or 30 minutes before SURTASS LFA sonar begins to transmit and would continue until 30 minutes after sunset or until the SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions cease. Observations would be made by

civilian ship personnel trained in detecting and identifying marine mammals and sea turtles from the ship's bridge using standard binoculars (7x) and the naked eye. The objective of visual monitoring would be to ensure that no marine mammal or sea turtle approaches the ship or transmitting sonar array close enough to enter the LFA mitigation/buffer zone.

Visual observers would maintain a watch for marine mammals and sea turtles at the sea surface and log all detections of marine animals during SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions. The number, identification, bearing, and range of observed marine mammals or sea turtles would be recorded; marine mammals and sea turtles would be identified to the lowest taxonomic level possible, which sometimes is only dolphin or large whale. A designated ship's officer would monitor the conduct of the visual watches and would periodically review the observation log. If a potentially affected marine mammal or sea turtle would be sighted anywhere within the LFA mitigation/buffer zone, the visual observer would notify the senior military member-in-charge, who would order the immediate delay or suspension of SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions. Similarly, if a marine mammal or sea turtle were sighted outside the LFA mitigation/buffer zone, the bridge officer would notify the senior military member-in-charge of the estimated range and bearing of the observed marine mammal or sea turtle. The senior military member-in-charge would notify the HF/M3 sonar operator to verify or determine the range and projected track of the detected marine mammal/sea turtle. If the sonar operator determined that the marine mammal or sea turtle would pass into the LFA mitigation/buffer zone, the senior military member-in-charge would order the immediate delay or suspension of SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions when the marine animal entered the LFA mitigation/buffer zone.

The visual observer would continue visual observations until the marine mammal or sea turtle was no longer observed. SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions would commence/resume 15 minutes after there would be no further detection of marine mammals or sea turtles by visual, active acoustic (HF/M3 sonar), or passive acoustic monitoring within the LFA mitigation/buffer zone. If a detected marine mammal were exhibiting unusual behavior, visual monitoring of the detected animal would continue until the behavior was assessed to return to normal or conditions do not allow monitoring to continue.

### 5.4.2 Passive Acoustic Monitoring

Passive acoustic monitoring would be conducted using the SURTASS towed HLA to detect vocalizing marine mammals as an indicator of their presence. If a detected sound were estimated to be from a vocalizing marine mammal, the sonar technician would notify the senior military member-in-charge, who would alert the HF/M3 sonar operator and visual observers (during daylight). Delay or suspension of SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions would be ordered when the HF/M3 sonar and/or visual observers verify the presence of a marine mammal to be within the LFA mitigation/buffer zone. Passive acoustic sonar technicians are trained to identify the detected vocalizations to marine mammal species whenever possible. Passive acoustic monitoring would begin 30 minutes prior to the first LFA sonar transmission, continue throughout all LFA sonar transmissions, and cease 15 minutes after LFA sonar transmissions have concluded.

### 5.4.3 Active Acoustic/HF/M3 Monitoring

HF active acoustic monitoring uses the HF/M3 sonar to detect, locate, and track marine mammals that could pass close enough to the SURTASS LFA sonar array to enter the LFA mitigation/buffer zone. Detection of sea turtles by the HF/M3 sonar system is possible due to the position of the HF/M3 sonar system above the LFA sonar array, since a sea turtle would have to swim from the surface through the HF/M3 sonar detection zone to enter into the LFA mitigation/buffer zone, making an acoustic detection of an adult sea turtle highly likely.

HF/M3 sonar monitoring would begin 30 minutes before the first SURTASS LFA sonar transmission is scheduled to commence and continue until 15 minutes after LFA sonar transmissions are terminated. Prior to full-power operations of the HF/M3 sonar, the power level would be ramped up over a period of 5 minutes from the SL of 180 dB re 1 µPa @ 1 m (rms) (SPL) in 10 dB increments until full power (if required) would be attained. This ramp-up procedure would ensure that sea turtles and marine mammals would not be inadvertently exposed to HF/M3 transmissions at RLs ≥180 dB re 1 µPa (rms).

If a marine mammal or sea turtle were detected during HF/M3 monitoring within the LFA mitigation/buffer zone, the sonar operator would notify the senior military member-in-charge, who would order the immediate delay or suspension of LFA sonar transmissions. Likewise, if HF/M3 monitoring were to detect a possible marine mammal or sea turtle outside the LFA mitigation/buffer zone, the HF/M3 sonar operator would determine the range and projected track of the marine mammal or sea turtle and notify the senior military member-in-charge that a detected animal would pass within the LFA mitigation/buffer zone. The senior military member-in-charge would notify the bridge and passive sonar operator of the potential presence of a marine animal projected to enter the mitigation/buffer zone. The senior military member-in-charge would order the delay or suspension of LFA sonar transmissions only when the marine mammal/sea turtle would enter the LFA mitigation/buffer zone, as detected by any of the three monitoring methods. SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions would commence/resume 15 minutes after there are no further detections of the animal within the LFA mitigation/buffer zone were made by the HF/M3 sonar, visual, or passive acoustic monitoring.

The effectiveness of the HF/M3 sonar system to monitor and detect marine mammals has been described in the Navy's 2001 FOEIS/EIS (Chapters 2 and 4) for SURTASS LFA sonar (DoN, 2001) in addition to the technical report by Ellison and Stein (2001). To summarize the effectiveness of the HF/M3 sonar system, the Navy's testing and analysis of the HF/M3 sonar system's capabilities indicated that the system:

- Substantially increased the probability of detecting a marine mammal within the LFA mitigation/buffer zone;
- Provides a superior monitoring capability, especially for medium- to large-sized marine mammals to a distance of 1.1 to 1.3 nmi (2 to 2.5 km) from the system (DoN, 2001);
- Would result in several detections of a marine mammal before it even entered the LFA mitigation/buffer zone (DoN, 2001)—based on the scan rate of the HF/M3 sonar system, most

animals would receive at least eight pings from the sonar (i.e., eight sonar returns or detections) before even entering the LFA mitigation/buffer zone;

   - based on this scan rate, the probability of any marine mammal being detected prior to even entering the LFA mitigation/buffer zone approaches 100 percent (Ellison and Stein, 2001);
   - the probability of the HF/M3 sonar system detecting a medium- to large-sized (~33 to 98 ft [10 to 30 m]) marine mammal (humpback to blue whale) swimming towards the system in the LFA mitigation/buffer zone with only one HF/M3 ping would be near 100 percent (Ellison and Stein, 2001);
   - for a small (~8 ft (2.5 m]) marine mammal such as a dolphin, the detection probability is 55 percent from one HF/M3 ping when the sonar is located at a distance of 2,625 to 3,051 ft (800 to 930 m) from the animal, while the detection probability increases to 90 percent for four HF/M3 pings; and

- May result in higher detection probabilities in a typical at-sea operating environment—during HF/M3 testing, analysts noted that in the expected at-sea conditions of reduced clutter interference in the open ocean and small marine mammals traveling in their typical group configurations (i.e., in pods), the detection rate would be higher (Ellison and Stein, 2001). Also, we note that the underwater conditions during which the HF/M3 data on detection distances were collected were extremely challenging (i.e., sea state and weather conditions).

The information on the HF/M3 sonar system remains valid and is incorporated herein by reference. Qualitative and quantitative assessments of the HF/M3 system's ability to detect marine mammals of various sizes were verified by 170 hours of at-sea testing (Ellison and Stein, 2001).

### 5.4.4 Visual and Passive Acoustic Observer Training

The ship's lookouts would conduct visual monitoring for marine animals at the sea surface. A marine mammal biologist qualified in conducting at-sea visual monitoring of marine mammals from surface vessels would train and qualify designated personnel aboard the Navy's ocean surveillance vessels to conduct at-sea visual monitoring for marine mammals and sea turtles. Training of the civilian ship personnel would include effective and swift communication within the observer's command structure to facilitate quick execution of protective measures if marine mammals or other marine animals are observed at the sea surface (NOAA, 2012). The visual training may be accomplished either in-person or via video training.

In addition, the Navy routinely conducts training of the MILCREWs stationed aboard SURTASS LFA sonar vessels to augment their sonar detection capabilities. Senior marine acousticians and a senior marine biologist conduct passive acoustic training of the MILCREWs to increase their ability as sonar operators to distinguish biological sounds from those of mission-directed sounds.

### 5.4.5 Monitoring to Increase Knowledge of Marine Mammals

The MMPA requires that entities authorized to take marine mammals conduct monitoring that increases knowledge of the species as well as the impacts of the activity on the affected marine mammals. As such, the Navy has undertaken several monitoring efforts designed to increase knowledge of the marine mammal species potentially affected during use of SURTASS LFA sonar.

#### 5.4.5.1 Ambient Noise Monitoring

The Navy collects ambient noise data on the marine environment when the SURTASS passive towed HLA is deployed. However, because the collected ambient noise data may also contain sensitive acoustic information, the Navy classifies the data, and thus, does not make these data publicly available. The ambient noise data, especially from areas of the ocean for which marine ambient noise data may be lacking, would be a beneficial addition to the comprehensive ocean noise budget (i.e., an accounting of the relative contributions of various underwater sources to the ocean noise field) and would increase knowledge of the ambient noise environment of the world's oceans. Ocean noise budgets are an important component of varied marine environmental analyses, including studies of masking in marine animals, marine habitat characterization, and marine animal impact analyses.

In acknowledgement of the valuable data the Navy routinely collects, NMFS has recommended that the Navy continue to explore the feasibility of declassifying and archiving the ambient noise data for incorporation into appropriate ocean noise budget efforts. Due to national security concerns, these data currently remain classified. The Navy continues to study the feasibility of declassifying portions of these data after all related security concerns have been resolved. As an initial step in this process, SURTASS LFA sonar's Marine Mammal Monitoring (M3) program has compiled information on the ambient noise data that have been collected by various underwater acoustic systems and is assessing the range of and usable content of the data prior to further discussions on data dissemination, either at a classified or unclassified level.

#### 5.4.5.2 Marine Mammal Monitoring (M3) Program

SURTASS LFA sonar's M3 program uses the Navy's fixed and mobile passive acoustic monitoring systems to enhance the Navy's collection of long-term data on individual and population levels of acoustically active marine mammals, principally baleen and sperm whales. The data that the M3 program collects are classified, however, M3 analysts are working to develop reports that can be declassified and result in scientific papers that are peer-reviewed publications in scientific journals. Progress has been achieved on addressing security concerns and declassifying data on fin whale singing and swimming behaviors from which a scientific paper has been prepared and submitted to a scientific journal for review (DoN, 2018). In addition, information on detections of Western North Pacific gray whale vocalizations in the East China Sea has been shared with marine mammal researchers participating in discussions with the IUCN and the IWC about the Western North Pacific gray whale's status and determination of possible wintering areas for this critically endangered marine mammal (DoN, 2016). The Navy (OPNAV N2/N6F24) continues to assess and analyze M3 data collected from Navy passive acoustic monitoring systems and is working toward making some portion of that data, after appropriate security reviews, available to scientists with appropriate clearances and ultimately made publicly available.

#### 5.4.5.3 Stranding Incident Monitoring

Over the sixteen years of SURTASS LFA sonar use, no injured or disabled marine mammals have been observed either during or after SURTASS LFA sonar activities nor have any mass or individual strandings been associated with SURTASS LFA sonar activities. Under either action alternative, the Navy would continue to monitor for injured or disabled marine mammals and monitor the principal marine mammal stranding networks and media for correlative strandings that overlap in time and space with SURTASS LFA sonar operations.

## 5.5 Other Mitigation and Monitoring Measures Considered

The following includes discussion of additional mitigation measures considered by the Navy and NMFS. In previous documentation for SURTASS LFA sonar, other mitigation measures, including the use of small boats, underwater gliders, or aircraft for pre-operational surveys were considered, but not carried forward (DoN, 2007, 2012, 2017). The Navy concluded that boat, glider, or aircraft pre-operational surveys were not feasible because they were not practicable, not effective, might increase the harassment of marine mammals, and were not safe to the human performers (DoN, 2007, 2017). Other discussions of recommended mitigation measures may be found in Chapter 10 of the 2007 FSEIS (DoN, 2007), Chapter 7 of the 2012 SEIS/SOEIS (DoN, 2012), and Chapter 5 of the 2017 SEIS/SOEIS (DoN, 2017).

### 5.5.1 Longer Suspension/Delay Period

Navy has considered whether a longer clearance time of 30 minutes before LFA sonar transmissions are allowed to commence or resume after an animal is detected in the LFA mitigation/buffer zone would be more be protective than the current 15-minute clearance time. The 30-minute timeframe is more widely used in other mitigation plans where marine mammals are principally detected by visual monitoring and this time period allows for the visual detection of marine mammals that are longer-duration divers. However, given the superior effectiveness of the HF/M3 sonar system in detecting marine mammals underwater, with the probability of any marine mammal being detected prior to even entering the LFA mitigation/buffer zone approaching 100 percent (Ellison and Stein, 2001), in addition to the use of the SURTASS passive system, the Navy concluded that such a long clearance time to detect deeper diving marine mammals was not necessary or warranted. HF/M3 sonar used in combination with passive acoustic and visual monitoring would effectively detect marine mammals present in the mitigation/buffer zone within the 15 minute timeframe.

### 5.5.2 Restrict Transmissions to Daylight Hours

The Navy assessed the requirements for the use of SURTASS LFA sonar for the proposed training and testing activities. Training and testing at night in addition to during daylight hours is a necessity for Navy and civilian personnel to participate in realistic at-sea scenarios that best replicate activities as they may be encountered in real-world scenarios. To do so otherwise would lessen the effectiveness of training and testing, reduce crews' abilities, and potentially introduce an increased safety risk to personnel. The civilian and MILCREWs aboard SURTASS LFA sonar vessels must be capable of operating and deploying all SURTASS LFA sonar systems in all environments that may be experienced year-round, including night conditions. Training and testing during night hours are vital because environmental differences between day and night affect the detection capabilities of sonar. Consequently, personnel must train and test during all hours of the day and night to ensure they identify and respond to changing environmental conditions. Avoiding or reducing active sonar use at night for the purpose of mitigation would result in an unacceptable impact on military readiness.

The Navy implements two other mitigation monitoring methods (passive acoustic and active acoustic monitoring) in addition to visual monitoring, so that if SURTASS LFA sonar were transmitting during the night, marine mammals or sea turtles could still be efficiently detected, and LFA sonar transmissions suspended or delayed, accordingly, upon detection of a marine animal in the mitigation/buffer zone. Therefore, the mitigation measure to restrict sonar transmissions to daylight hours was eliminated from further consideration.

### 5.5.3 Reduce Training and Testing Activities

Under the NDE, the Navy is currently approved to transmit 1,020 hours of LFA sonar transmissions per year for all four vessels. After careful consideration of the Proposed Action and Alternatives presented in this SEIS/SOEIS, the Navy is proposing to reduce its transmissions to a maximum of 496 hours in the first four years of the effective period and to a maximum of 592 hours in year five and beyond (Alternative 2, Preferred Alternative). In Chapter 2, the Navy detailed the six types of training and testing activities that comprise their proposed use of SURTASS LFA sonar. The Navy carefully considered the total sonar transmission hours that are necessary to meet its purpose and need. The ability to efficiently and effectively deploy and operate the SURTASS LFA sonar systems and vessels are skills that must be repeatedly practiced under realistic conditions. Training and testing during varied weather, light, and sea-state conditions is critical since the associated environmental conditions affect sound propagation and the detection capabilities of LFA sonar.

The Navy uses computer simulation to augment at-sea training and testing whenever possible. Computer simulation is intended to augment, not replace, at-sea training and testing since computer simulations cannot provide the fidelity and level of training necessary nor replicate all possible environmental scenarios that routinely occur in the marine environment. While the Navy would continue to use simulation to augment training and testing capabilities, a reduction in at-sea training and testing that would subsequently result from a further reduction in LFA sonar transmission hours would not meet the Navy's need for combat-ready naval forces. For this reason, this mitigation measure was eliminated from further consideration.

### 5.5.4 Increased Coastal Standoff Range

The Navy analyzed an increased coastal standoff range of 25 nmi (46 km) in Section 4.7.6 of the 2007 FSEIS/SOEIS (DoN, 2007), which is incorporated by reference. To summarize the analysis results and Navy's conclusion, increasing the coastal standoff range from 12 nmi (22 km) to 25 nmi (46 km) decreased the exposures of coastal shelf species to SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions but increased the exposures of marine mammal species that occurred in deeper, pelagic waters. This result is due to the reduced overlap of the LFA sonar exposure area with land when the sound source moves farther offshore, resulting in greater overlap of the LFA sonar exposure area with pelagic species. Since there was no overall benefit to protected species from changing the coastal standoff range, the Navy did not implement this option and it has not been further considered.

### 5.5.5 Expanded Geographic Sound Field Operational Constraints

The Navy considered reducing the sonar-generated sound field produced by SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions in the coastal standoff range and at OBIA boundaries from below RLs of 180 dB re 1 µPa to below RLs of 150 dB re 1 µPa. The selection of the 180 dB re 1 µPa isopleth was reconfirmed with NMFS (2018) acoustic guidance to encompass the zone within which onset of potential injury (PTS) could occur, as well as most of the non-injurious physiological (TTS) and exposure levels that could be associated with potentially more severe behavioral responses. Considering the 60-sec duration of a SURTASS LFA sonar pulse at a frequency of 300 Hz, the PTS SEL threshold (199 dB SEL) with frequency weighting for an LF cetacean is equivalent to a SPL RL of the LFA sonar transmission of 182.7 dB re 1 µPa (rms) SPL. Therefore, using a threshold of 180 dB re 1 µPa (rms) SPL at the coastal standoff range and OBIA boundary is conservative.

In addition, LFA sonar vessels are in constant motion when LFA sonar is transmitting, so any sonar transmission RLs within an OBIA or the coastal standoff range that could potentially cause behavioral disruption would likely be experienced briefly as the ship moves by and likely perceived as occurring in the distance, which are important contextual factors to consider. Furthermore, the range to the 150 dB (rms) isopleth would vary from tens of kilometers to over 54 nmi (100 km) based on propagation conditions. Increasing the mitigation zone to such sizes would impact the effectiveness of military readiness activities by reducing the acoustic regions in which training and testing of the SURTASS LFA sonar could occur, due to the standoff distance LFA sonar vessels would have to operate off these areas. Since the current suite of mitigation measures is implemented to lessen or avoid injury, most TTS, and most biologically significant behavioral responses, constraining the geographic sound field to a lower RL would not provide a significant reduction in the anticipated impact to marine mammals to sufficiently offset the associated decrease in military readiness. For these reasons, this potential mitigation measure was eliminated from additional consideration.

## 5.6 Reporting

Under either action alternative, the Navy would continue to annually report on SURTASS LFA sonar activities, including the locations in which LFA sonar transmissions occurred, the duration of LFA sonar transmissions, and the results of the mitigation monitoring using visual, passive acoustics, and active acoustic monitoring and LFA sonar shutdowns. The Navy would continue to track and report the cumulative number of SURTASS LFA sonar transmission hours associated with training and testing activities throughout each annual period to ensure that the maximum approved level of sonar transmission hours is not exceeded.

### 5.6.1 Incident Reporting

The crews of the SURTASS LFA sonar vessels systematically observe the sea surface during and after SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions for the presence of injured or disabled marine mammals or sea turtles. The Navy must notify NMFS immediately, or as soon as clearance procedures allow, if an injured, stranded, or dead marine mammal or sea turtle is found during, shortly after (within 24 hr), or in the vicinity of any SURTASS LFA sonar training or testing activities or anytime an injured, stranded, or dead marine mammal is observed at sea. In the event that an injured, stranded, or dead marine mammal is observed by the SURTASS LFA sonar vessel crew during transit or during normal ship activities not related to training or testing of SURTASS LFA sonar, the Navy would report the incident as soon as operationally feasible and clearance procedures allow. In addition, the Navy would immediately, or as soon as clearance procedures allow, report any ship strikes of marine mammals or sea turtles by one of the SURTASS LFA sonar vessels, including all pertinent information on the strike and associated vessel. In the history of the use of SURTASS LFA sonar, no marine mammal or sea turtles have been struck by SURTASS LFA sonar vessels nor have any injured or disabled marine mammals or sea turtles been observed during or following SURTASS LFA sonar activities.

The Navy also routinely monitors the principal marine mammal stranding networks, the Internet, and social media to compile stranding data for the regions in which SURTASS LFA sonar activities were conducted and evaluate the temporal and spatial correlation of SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions with marine mammal strandings, particularly mass strandings. The Navy would report to NMFS any marine mammal strandings that were correlated in time and space with the training or testing activities of any SURTASS LFA sonar vessels.

### 5.6.2 Annual and Comprehensive Reports

Annually, the Navy would submit unclassified and classified synthesis reports to the NMFS Office of Protected Resources' Director no later than 90 days after the anniversary of the date on which the Navy's LOA for SURTASS LFA sonar becomes effective. These reports would detail the SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities conducted during the annual effective period and would include summaries of the dates, times, and locations of LFA sonar activity; marine mammal or sea turtle detections from visual, passive acoustic, and active acoustic monitoring; and delays or suspensions of LFA sonar transmissions due only to mitigation monitoring protocol. Information reported on marine mammal detections would include general type of marine mammals (i.e., whales, dolphins) and/or species identifications, if possible; number of marine mammals detected; range and bearing of the detected animal from the vessel; detection method (visual, passive acoustic, HF/M3 sonar); and remarks/narrative, as needed.

Each annual report would build on the previous annual report to provide a cumulative overview of the level of training and testing transmission hours per year. At the end of the seven-year effective period of the LOA, the final annual report would be a cumulative, comprehensive report of SURTASS LFA sonar activities conducted during the MMPA regulation period.

## 5.7 Literature Cited

Department of the Navy (DoN). (2001). *Final overseas environmental impact statement and environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar*. Washington, D.C.: Department of the Navy, Chief of Naval Operations. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/FEIS-Vol-I.pdf>.

DoN. (2007). *Final supplemental environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar*. Washington, D.C.: Chief of Naval Operations, Department of the Navy. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/SURTASS_LFA_FSEIS.pdf>.

DoN. (2012). *Final supplemental environmental impact statement/supplemental overseas environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar*. Washington, D.C.: Chief of Naval Operations, Department of the Navy. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/SURTASS_LFA_FSEIS-SOEIS.pdf>.

DoN. (2016). *Final comprehensive report for the operation of Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar—2012 to 2016 onboard USNS VICTORIOUS, USNS ABLE, USNS EFFECTIVE, and USNS IMPECCABLE*; under the National Marine Fisheries Service regulations 50 CR 216 subpart Q; December 2016. Washington, D.C.: Chief of Naval Operations, Department of the Navy. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/LFA_Final_Comp_Rpt_2016.pdf>.

DoN. (2017). *Final supplemental environmental impact statement/supplemental overseas environmental impact statement for Suveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar*. Washington, D.C.: Chief of Naval Operations, Department of the Navy. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/Navy_SURTASS-LFA_FSEIS-SOEIS.pdf>.

DoN. (2018). *Application for rulemaking and letter of authorization under the Marine Mammal Protection Act for activities associated with use of Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar*. Washington, D.C.: Chief of Naval Operations, Department of the Navy.

Dunne, R. P., Polunin, N. V. C., Sand, P. H., & Johnson, M. L. (2014). The Creation of the Chagos Marine Protected Area: A Fisheries Perspective. In M. L. Johnson & J. Sandell (Eds.), *Advances in Marine Biology, Vol. 69* (pp. 79-127). Oxford, England: Academic Press.

Ellison, W. T., & Stein, P. (1999, updated 2001). *SURTASS LFA high frequency marine mammal monitoring (HF/M3) system: System description and test and evaluation*. Marine Acoustics, Inc. and Scientific Solutions, Inc. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/HF-M3-Ellison-Report-2-4a.pdf>.

International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN). (2017). Green list protected/conserved areas. Retrieved from <https://www.iucn.org/sites/dev/files/iucn-gl_brochure_island_cov_emailing.pdf>.

IUCN. (2018a). Green list areas. Retrieved from <https://www.iucn.org/theme/protected-areas/our-work/iucn-green-list/3-green-list-areas>.

IUCN. (2018b). Green list protected/conserved areas: Nature, culture, future. Retrieved from <https://www.iucn.org/sites/dev/files/iucn_gl_brochure_march2018.pdf>.

IUCN-MMPATF. (2018). IMMA selection criteria. Retrieved from <https://www.marinemammal habitat.org/activities/immas/imma-criteria/>.

IUCN-MMPATF. (2019). Important marine mammal area regional workshop for the North East Indian Ocean and South East Asian Seas: Final report of the third IMMA workshop, Kota Kinabalu, Sabah, Malaysia, 12-16 March 2018. Retrieved from <https://www.marinemammalhabitat.org/ downloads/>.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). (2018). *2018 Revision to: Technical Guidance for assessing the effects of anthropogenic sound on marine mammal hearing (Version 2.0): Underwater acoustic thresholds for onset of permanent and temporary threshold shifts.* Silver Spring, MD: National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Department of Commerce. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-OPR-59. Retrieved from <https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/webdam/download/75962998>.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA). (2002). Taking and importing marine mammals; taking marine mammals incidental to Navy operations of Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active sonar. Final Rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 67*(136), 46712-46789.

NOAA. (2007). Taking and importing marine mammals; taking marine mammals incidental to Navy operations of Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active sonar. Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 72*(161), 46846-46893.

NOAA. (2012). Taking and importing marine mammals: Taking marine mammals incidental to U.S. Navy operations of Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active sonar: Final rule, 50 CFR Part 218. *Federal Register, 77*(161), 50290-50322. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/LFA-Final-MMPA-Rule_2012_Federal-Register.pdf>.

Southall, B. L., Finneran, J. J., Reichmuth, C., Nachtigall, P. E., Ketten, D. R., Bowles, A. E., Ellison, W. T., Nowacek, D. P., & Tyack, P. L. (2019). Marine mammal noise exposure criteria: Updated scientific recommendations for residual hearing effects. *Aquatic Mammals, 45*, 125-232.

# 6 OTHER CONSIDERATIONS REQUIRED BY NEPA

## 6.1 Consistency with Other Applicable Federal, State, and Local Plans, Policies, and Regulations

In accordance with 40 CFR section 1502.16(c), analysis of environmental consequences shall include discussion of possible conflicts between the Proposed Action and the objectives of federal, regional, state, and local policies and regulations (Table 6-1). SURTASS LFA sonar is operating under an NDE to the MMPA (DoN, 2017b) and a BO and ITS pursuant to the ESA (NMFS, 2017), but the Navy has applied for an updated rulemaking and LOA under the MMPA and programmatic BO and ITS under the ESA. All other permits, approvals, and authorizations required for the operation of SURTASS LFA sonar have been obtained and are current.

**Table 6-1. Summary of this SEIS/SOEIS's Environmental Compliance with Applicable Federal, State, Regional, and Local Laws, Policies, and Regulations.**

| ***Federal, State, Local, and Regional Policies, and Controls*** | ***Status of Compliance*** |
|---|---|
| National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) (42 USC §§4321, et. seq.)<br><br>Council on Environmental Quality (CEQ) Regulations for Implementing the Procedural Provisions of NEPA (40 CFR §§1500-1508)<br><br>DoN Procedures for Implementing NEPA (32 CFR §775) | This SEIS/SOEIS has been prepared in accordance with NEPA, CEQ regulations, and the Navy's NEPA implementation procedures. Additionally, public participation in reviewing the Draft SEIS/SOEIS has been provided in accordance with NEPA and CEQ requirements. |
| EO 12114, Environmental Effects Abroad of Major Federal Actions | The Navy has considered potential environmental effects outside of U.S. territorial waters associated with the employment of SURTASS LFA sonar and has prepared this SEIS/SOEIS in accordance with EO 12114. The Navy concludes that the proposed action would not result in significant harm to the marine environment. |
| Endangered Species Act (ESA) (16 USC §§1531, et seq.) | Potential effects to marine species listed under the ESA as well as designated critical habitats of those species have been assessed in this SEIS/SOEIS. Additionally, the Navy initiated consultation under ESA's Section 7 with NMFS and submitted a Biological Evaluation that described the potential of the Proposed Action to affect ESA-listed marine species and critical habitat (DoN, 2018a). |
| Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) (16 USC §§1431, et seq.) | Analyzed in this SEIS/SOEIS are the potential impacts to marine mammals resulting from execution of the Proposed Action. An application for rulemaking and a Letter of Authorization under the MMPA were submitted to NMFS (DoN, 2018b). |

**Table 6-1. Summary of this SEIS/SOEIS's Environmental Compliance with Applicable Federal, State, Regional, and Local Laws, Policies, and Regulations.**

| ***Federal, State, Local, and Regional Policies, and Controls*** | ***Status of Compliance*** |
|---|---|
| The National Marine Sanctuaries Act (NMSA) (16 USC §§1431, et seq.) | The Navy has determined that its planned use of SURTASS LFA sonar pursuant to this SEIS/SOEIS does not require consultation under Section 304(d) of the NMSA for the one NMS, the Hawaiian Islands Humpback Whale NMS, located within the Navy's study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. |
| Coastal Zone Management Act (CZMA) (16 USC section 1451 et seq.) | Pursuant to the CZMA (15 CFR Part 930) regulations, as part of the analyses for the 2001 FOEIS/EIS, the Navy determined that its Proposed Action would be consistent to the maximum extent practicable with the relevant enforceable policies of the one state and two territories that are located in the current study area for SURTASS LFA sonar: Hawaii, Guam, and the CNMI. |
| Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (MSFCMA) (16 U.S.C. § 1801 et seq.) | Consultation/coordination under the MSFCMA was conducted as part of the analyses for the Navy's 2001 FOEIS/EIS (DoN, 2001) for SURTASS LFA sonar. The Navy concluded that implementation of its Proposed Action would result in no adverse effects to designated EFH. |
| Act to Prevent Pollution from Ships (APPS) (33 USC §§1901, et seq.) | The Navy and all SURTASS LFA sonar vessels comply with the discharge regulations set forth under the requirements of the APPS. |
| Clean Water Act (CWA) (33 U.S.C. §1251 et seq.) | The Navy and all SURTASS LFA sonar vessels comply with the Uniform National Discharge Standards (40 CFR part 1700), which govern discharges incidental to the normal operation of U.S. Navy vessels at sea. |
| Clean Air Act (CAA) (42 U.S.C. §7401 et seq.) | The Navy's study area for SURTASS LFA sonar includes one U.S. state and two territories (Hawaii, CNMI, and Guam, respectively) that would potentially be subject to the provisions of the CAA General Conformity Rule. However, due to Title 10 exemptions for the Navy's SURTASS LFA sonar vessels, SURTASS LFA sonar vessels would not go into port in Hawaii, Guam, or CNMI. Given the limited extent of the SURTASS LFA sonar activities conducted in the territorial seas of Hawaii, CNMI, or Guam, the resulting air quality emissions from SURTASS LFA sonar vessels meet the General Conformity standards, and no conformity determinations under the CAA are required. |

**Table 6-1. Summary of this SEIS/SOEIS's Environmental Compliance with Applicable Federal, State, Regional, and Local Laws, Policies, and Regulations.**

| *Federal, State, Local, and Regional Policies, and Controls* | *Status of Compliance* |
|---|---|
| National Historic Preservation Act (NHPA) (54 U.S.C. §300101 et seq.) | SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities are considered an "undertaking" under NHPA. However, the nature and level of sonar are such that there would be no potential to cause effects to historic properties and, therefore, there is no requirement for consultation under NHPA Section 106 or Section 402. |
| EO 12962, Recreational Fisheries | Since the Proposed Action would have no significant harm to fishes or fisheries and would in no way impair access to recreational fishing areas, the Navy concluded that it has fulfilled its EO 12962 responsibilities regarding recreational fishing uses and resources. |
| EO 13158, Marine Protected Areas (MPAs) | The Proposed Action would not harm nor affect the natural or cultural resources of any MPA, as specified under EO 13158. |
| EO 13175, Consultation and Coordination with Indian Tribal Governments; and Department of Defense Instruction 4710.03, Consultation with Native Hawaiian Organizations | The Proposed Action does not entail employment of SURTASS LFA sonar in U.S. waters except for potentially those of Hawaii, Guam, and the CNMI, where no federally recognized Indian or Native Alaskan tribes or organizations are located. Therefore, no consultation or coordination under EO 13175 is required. Similarly, the Proposed Action would not adversely affect resources of traditional religious or cultural importance to Native Hawaiian organizations, and therefore no consultation with those organizations is required. |
| EO 13840, Ocean Policy to Advance the Economic, Security, and Environmental Interests of the United States | EO 13840 calls for improved public access to marine data and information as well as efficient federal agency coordination on ocean related matters. This and other mandates of EO 13840 have been met in this SEIS/SOEIS by using and presenting the best available data for all analyses, particularly on marine mammal populations and marine areas. The Navy's coordination with the various offices and agencies of NMFS and NOAA, particularly with NMFS Office of Protected Resources as a cooperating agency on the preparation of this SEIS/SOEIS, demonstrates the Navy's strong commitment to efficient federal agency coordination. |

## 6.2 Irreversible or Irretrievable Commitment of Resources

Section 102(c)(v) of NEPA requires that an EIS identify any irreversible and irretrievable commitments of resources that would be involved in the proposed action should it be implemented. Resources that are irreversibly or irretrievably committed to a project are those that are used on a long-term or permanent basis, including the use of non-renewable resources.

Although operating SURTASS LFA sonar immeasurably enhances national security by enabling the Navy to ascertain ASW threats at long-range, implementation of the Proposed Action would involve the use of human labor and non-renewable resources such as petroleum-based fuel and steel (used in SURTASS LFA sonar vessels and sonar systems). While some short-term environmental effects to marine species may be associated with the use of SURTASS LFA sonar, no long-term environmental effects that would lead to decreased productivity; permanently reduce the range of beneficial environmental uses; or pose long-term risk to the health, safety, or general welfare of the public are reasonably expected. Thus, implementation of the Proposed Action would not result in significant irreversible or irretrievable commitment of resources.

## 6.3 Relationship between Short-Term Use of the Environment and Maintenance and Enhancement of Long-Term Productivity

The NEPA requires analysis of the relationship between a proposed action's short-term effects on the environment and any effects on the maintenance and enhancement of the long-term productivity of the affected environment. The Navy supports research that increases knowledge of marine mammals, sea turtles, and marine fishes and develops methods to reduce or eliminate the potential for effects on these species that may be associated with the operation of SURTASS LFA sonar. While some short-term environmental effects may be associated with the use of SURTASS LFA sonar, no long-term environmental effects that would lead to decreased productivity; permanently reduce the range of beneficial environmental uses; or pose long-term risk to the health, safety, or general welfare of the public are reasonably expected.

## 6.4 Unavoidable Adverse Environmental Impacts

Unavoidable adverse impacts associated with the proposed action include potential effects to marine mammals, sea turtles, and fish stocks. Nearly all potential effects on these marine taxa can be avoided due to the mitigation and monitoring methods implemented by the Navy. Additionally, the geographic restrictions on SURTASS LFA sonar employment would result in negligible impacts to fish stocks on an annual basis and no impacts to commercial or recreational fisheries.

## 6.5 Literature Cited

DoN. (2018a). Biological evaluation for activities associated with use of Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar; Reinitiation of Section 7 consultation, December 2018. Washington, D.C.: Chief of Naval Operations, Department of the Navy.

DoN. (2018b). Application for rulemaking and letter of authorization under the Marine Mammal Protection Act for activities associated with use of Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar, November 2018. Washington, D.C.: Chief of Naval Operations, Department of the Navy.

# 7 PUBLIC INVOLVEMENT AND DISTRIBUTION

This chapter of the SEIS/SOEIS describes the Navy's efforts to involve the public in the preparation of the SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA sonar and the process by which the Navy distributed the Draft SEIS/SOEIS available to the public and all interested parties and by which the Navy likewise made this Final SEIS/SOEIS available.

## 7.1 Program Website

A public website for the SURTASS LFA sonar program (<http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/>) was established as the repository of available information about the sonar system and the location where NEPA documentation, permit applications, notifications, and other pertinent information may be accessed and downloaded by the public.

## 7.2 Public Involvement Process

### 7.2.1 Public Notifications

In the Notice of Intent (NOI), published in the *Federal Register* on June 5, 2015 (DoN, 2015), the Navy, with NMFS as a cooperating agency, announced its intention to prepare an SEIS/SOEIS for the employment of SURTASS LFA sonar. Although the Navy published a Final SEIS/SOEIS in July 2017 on the worldwide use of SURTASS LFA sonar, no ROD for that proposed action was ever promulgated by the Navy.

Pursuant to NEPA and EO 12114, the Navy, with NMFS as a cooperating agency, prepared the Draft SEIS/SOEIS on the use of SURTASS LFA sonar in the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans. CEQ regulations implementing NEPA (40 CFR §1503.1) require that federal agencies make their Draft SEISs available for public review and solicit comments on their documents from the public, appropriate federal and state agencies, and other interested parties. Pursuant to Section 102(2) of NEPA, as implemented by CEQ regulations (40 CFR §§ 1500 to 1508), and EO 12114, the Navy filed the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA sonar with the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) on August 29, 2018. The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) published its Notice of Availability for the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA sonar in the *Federal Register* in September 7, 2018 (US EPA, 2018). The Draft SEIS/SOEIS was made available for review and download on the Navy's website for SURTASS LFA sonar (<http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/>).

### 7.2.2 Public Review Period

Per CEQ regulation (40 CFR §1506.10), the 45-day comment and review period on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS commenced with the publication of the Notice of Availability on September 7, 2018. The Navy accepted comments on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS from federal and state agencies, organizations, as well as interested members of the public until the comment period ended on October 22, 2018. Comments were accepted by U.S. mail or by email via the SURTASS LFA sonar website.

### 7.2.3 Distribution of SEIS/SOEIS

In conjunction with the filing of the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA sonar with the EPA and announcing its public availability, correspondence notifying appropriate federal and state government agencies and organizations as well as other interested parties was sent by the Navy. To ensure public availability, copies of the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA sonar were also supplied to appropriate public libraries. Notices were distributed to the following organizations and individuals making them aware that the Draft SEIS/SOEIS was available for review and download on the Navy's SURTASS LFA sonar website (Appendix A).

#### 7.2.3.1 Federal Organizations

Edward Boling
Associate Director of NEPA Oversight
Executive Office of the President
Council on Environmental Quality
736 Jackson Place, N.W.
Washington, DC 20503

U.S. EPA, Region 9
Environmental Review Section
75 Hawthorne Street
San Francisco, CA 94105

Commanding Officer (MSC)
Environmental Protection Branch
U.S. Coast Guard, Stop 7430
Department of Homeland Security
2703 Martin Luther King Jr. Ave SE
Washington, DC 20593-7430

Jeffrey Clark
Assistant Attorney General
U.S. Department of Justice
Environment and Natural Resources Division
Law and Policy Section
950 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW
Washington, DC 20530-0001

Director, Office of Environmental Policy and Compliance
Attn: Michaela Noble
U.S. Department of the Interior
1849 C Street, NW
Washington, DC 20240

Office of Environmental Policy and Compliance
Department of Defense Environmental Review
Attn: Cheryl Kelly
U.S. Department of the Interior
1849 C Street, NW
Washington, DC 20240

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
Headquarters, Ecological Services
5275 Leesburg Pike
Falls Church, VA 22041-3803

U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service
Pacific Region
Ecological Services
911 NE 11th Avenue
Portland, OR 97232

Pacific Islands Fish and Wildlife Office
U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
Environmental Review
300 Ala Moana Boulevard, Room 3-122
Honolulu, HI 96850

Cathy Tortorici
Chief, Endangered Species Act Interagency Cooperation Division
Office of Protected Resources F/PR5
NMFS, NOAA
1315 East-West Highway
Silver Spring, MD 20910

Jolie Harrison
Chief, Permits and Conservation Division
Office of Protected Resources F/PR1
NMFS, NOAA
1315 East West Highway
Silver Spring, MD 20910

Patricia Montanio
Director
Office of Habitat Conservation
NMFS, NOAA
1315 East-West Highway
Silver Spring, MD 20910

Peter Thomas
Executive Director
Marine Mammal Commission
4340 East West Highway, Suite 700
Bethesda, MD 20814

Western Pacific Regional Fishery Management Council
1164 Bishop Street, 1400
Honolulu, HI 96813

John Armor
Director
National Marine Sanctuaries Program, NOAA
1305 East-West Highway, 11th Floor
Silver Spring, MD 20910

Allen Tom
Regional Director, Pacific Islands Region
Office of National Marine Sanctuaries
National Ocean Service
726 South Kihei Road
Kihei, HI 96753

Sara Thompson
Acting Superintendent, Hawaiian Islands Humpback Whale National Marine Sanctuary
NOAA / DKIRC
Attn: NOS/HIHWNMS
1845 Wasp Boulevard, Building 176
Honolulu, HI 96818-5007

Leila Hatch
Gerry E. Studds Stellwagen Bank National Marine Sanctuary
175 Edward Foster Road
Scituate, MA 02066

#### 7.2.3.2 State and Territory Organizations

Samuel Lemmo
Administrator, Office of Conservation and Coastal Lands
Hawaii Department of Land and Natural Resources
1151 Punchbowl Street, Room 131
Honolulu HI 96813

Justine W. Nihipali
Planning Program Manager, Hawaii Coastal Zone Management Program
Hawaii Office of Planning
P.O. Box 2359
Honolulu, HI 96804

Brian Neilson
Acting Administrator, Division of Aquatic Resources
Hawaii Department of Land and Natural Resources
1151 Punchbowl Street, Room 330
Honolulu HI 96813

Walter Leon Guerrero
Administrator
Guam Environmental Protection Agency
Building 17-3304, Mariner Avenue
Tiyan, Barrigada, Guam 96913

Janet Castro
Director
Coastal Resources Management
Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands
Caller Box 10007
Saipan, MP 96950

Manny Pangelinan
Director, Division of Fish and Wildlife
Department of Lands and Natural Resources
Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands
P.O. Box 10007
Saipan, MP 96950

#### 7.2.3.3 Other Organizations and Interested Parties

Michael Jasny
Director, Marine Mammal Protection Project
Natural Resources Defense Council
1314 Second Street
Santa Monica, CA 90401

Joel Reynolds
Western Director/Senior Attorney
Marine Mammals, Oceans Division, Nature Program
Natural Resources Defense Council
1314 Second Street
Santa Monica, CA 90401

Michael Wall
Codirector, Litigation
Natural Resources Defense Council
111 Sutter Street, 20th Floor
San Francisco, CA 94104

David Kaplan
Cetacean Society International
P.O. Box 330298
West Hartford, CT 06133-0298

John Lovvorn
Chief Counsel/Senior Vice President for Animal Protection Litigation
The Humane Society of the United States
2100 L Street NW
Washington, DC 20037

Jean-Michel Cousteau
President/Chairman, Ocean Futures Society
513 De La Vina Street
Santa Barbara, CA 93101

Michael Stocker
Ocean Conservation Research
P.O. Box 559
Lagunitas, CA 94938

#### 7.2.3.4 Public Libraries

Hawaii Documents Center
Hawaii State Library
478 South King Street
Honolulu, HI 96813

Nieves M. Flores Memorial Public Library
Reference Department, Federal Documents
254 Martyr Street
Hagåtña, Guam 96910

Joeten-Kiyu Public Library
The State Library of the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands
Pacific Reference, Federal Documents
P.O. Box 501092
Saipan, MP 96950

### 7.2.4 Public Comments

Comments on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA sonar were received via email from five agencies, organizations, or groups of organizations. Written comments were received from two federal agencies, two state agencies, and one group of non-governmental organizations (Table 7-1).

**Table 7-1. Federal Government (G), State Government (S), and Non-Government (N) Organizations or Agencies from Whom Comments on the SURTASS LFA Sonar Draft SEIS/SOEIS were Received.**

| *Organization* | *Commenter Identification* |
|---|---|
| U.S. EPA | G1 |
| Marine Mammal Commission | G2 |
| State of Hawaii, Division of Aquatic Resources | S1 |
| State of Hawaii, Office of Planning | |
| Natural Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research (NRDC et al.) | N1 |

### 7.2.5 Responses to Public Comments

The Navy and NMFS prepared responses to comments received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS. Comment responses are presented individually by federal government agency (G-1 and G-2, EPA and Marine

Mammal Commission, respectively), state government agency (S1 and S2, State of Hawaii Division of Aquatic Resources and Office of Planning, respectively), and followed by responses to non-government organizations (N-1, NRDC et al.) (Table 7-2). Responses to the received public comments have been reviewed for scientific and technical accuracy and completeness, and responses note when a specific comment generated a revision or addition to the SEIS/SOEIS.

## 7.3 Literature Cited

Aguilar Soto, N., Johnson, M., Madsen, P. T., Tyack, P. L., Bocconcelli, A., & Borsani, J. F. (2006). Does intense ship noise disrupt foraging in deep-diving Cuvier's beaked whales *(Ziphius cavirostris)? Marine Mammal Science, 22*(3), 690-699.

Anderson, C., Branch, T. A., Alagiyawadu, A., Baldwin, R., & Marsac, F. (2012). Seasonal distribution, movements and taxonomic status of blue whales (Balaenoptera musculus) in the northern Indian Ocean. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 12*(2), 203-218.

Au, W. W. L. (1993). *The sonar of dolphins*. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag.

Bailey, H., B. Senior, D. Simmons, J. Rusin, G. Picken, P.M. Thompson. (2010). Assessing underwater noise levels during pile-driving at an offshore windfarm and its potential effects on marine mammals. *Marine Pollution Bulletin, 60*(6), 888-897. doi: 10.1016/j.marpolbul.2010.01.003.

Baird, R. W., Cholewiak, D., Webster, D. L., Schorr, G. S., Mahaffy, S. D., Curtice, C., . . . Van Parijs, S. M. (2015). Biologically important areas for cetaceans within U.S. waters – Hawai‘i region. *Aquatic Mammals, 41*(1), 54-64. doi:10.1578/am.41.1.2015.54.

Bowles, A. E., Smultea, M., Würsig, B., DeMaster, D. P., & Palka, D. (1994). Relative abundance and behavior of marine mammals exposed to transmissions from the Heard Island feasibility test. *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 96*(4), 2469-2484.

Branch, T. A., Stafford, K. M., Palacios, D. M., Allison, C., Bannister, J. L., Burton, C. L. K., . . . Warneke, R. M. (2007). Past and present distribution, densities and movements of blue whales *Balaenoptera musculus* in the Southern Hemisphere and northern Indian Ocean. *Mammal Review, 37*(2), 116-175.

Brandt, M. J., Diederichs, A., Betke, K., & Nehls, G. (2011). Responses of harbour porpoises to pile driving at the Horns Rev II offshore wind farm in the Danish North Sea. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 421*, 205-216. doi:10.3354/meps08888.

Calambokidis, J., Falcone, E. A., Quinn, T. J., Burdin, A. M., Clapham, P. J., Ford, J.K.B., Gabriele, C.M., Leduc, R., Mattila, D., Rojas-Bracho, L., Straley, J. M., Taylor, B.L., Urbán R., J., Weller, D., Witteveen, B.H., Yamaguchi, M., Bendlin, A., Camacho, D., Flynn, K., Havron, A., Huggins, J., & Maloney, N. (2008). *SPLASH: Structure of populations, levels of abundance and status of humpback whales in the North Pacific.* (Final report for Contract AB133F-03-RP-00078, Report prepared for U.S. Department of Commerce, Western Administrative Center, Seattle, Washington). Olympia, WA: Cascadia Research.

Cerchio, S., Andrianantenaina, B., Lindsay, A., Rekdahl, M., Andrianarivelo, N., & Rasoloarijao, T. (2015). Omura’s whales (*Balaenoptera omurai*) off northwest Madagascar: Ecology, behaviour and conservation needs. *Royal Society Open Science, 2*(10), 150301. doi:10.1098/rsos.150301.

Clark, C. (2012). Personal communication (“Re: NY-MARES: new acoustics paper”) with Sea Turtle List-serv, ny-mares@lists.seaturtle.org, January 14, 2012.

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | **U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), Office of Federal Activities** | |
| G1-1 | EPA has rated the DSEIS/SOEIS as "Lack of Objections." | Thank you for your comment. |
| | **Marine Mammal Commission** | |
| ***Uncertainty in Density Estimates*** | | |
| G2-1 | The Commission continues to have concerns regarding the density estimates used in other versions of the Navy Marine Species Density Database (NMSDD), expressed in multiple letters including its July 2018 letter on the Hawaii-Southern California Training and Testing DEIS. The Commission noted the varying types of areas from which sightings or abundance estimates were extrapolated and the inappropriate use of haul-out correction factors for pinnipeds.<br>For these reasons, the Commission recommends that the Navy make available to the public the resulting products of the current version of the Global NMSDD, similar to the information provided in DoN (2017c) as soon as possible and before the LOA application is published in the Federal Register. | The Navy has provided information similar to that contained in the *U.S. Navy Marine Species Density Database Phase III for the Hawaii-Southern California Training and Testing Study Area, NAVFAC Pacific Technical Report* (DoN, 2017c) within the FSEIS/SOEIS. Section 3.4.3.3.3 describes the process used to derive occurrence and population estimates for marine mammals, along with species descriptions and a table of population estimates, and Appendix D includes detailed information on the density and abundance estimates by model area and species. Where the NMSDD is referenced, primarily in the three model areas located in the Indian Ocean, the specific data source for the density value has been added to Table 3-8 and in Appendix D. |
| G2-2 | The Commission also recommends that the Navy specify whether and how it incorporated uncertainty in its density and abundance estimates and if it did not, incorporate measures of uncertainty inherent in the underlying data (e.g., CV, standard deviations, standard errors) in those estimates and re-estimate the number of takes accordingly. For all of its Phase III activities since 2016, including for HSTT, the Navy has been incorporating uncertainty in the densities and the group size estimates that ultimately seed | Information on uncertainty with respect to population estimates is included in the FSEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA sonar when available; please see Chapter 3 and Appendix D. These are the population estimates that were used in the modeling. Uncertainty around a point estimate, such as a density or abundance value, is quantified with metrics such as confidence intervals or coefficients of variations (CVs). Using the upper limit of the 95 percent confidence interval or adjusting the mean |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | its animat modeling. It is unclear why the same approach was not taken for the DSEIS.<br>The Navy also used multiple data sources to inform various density estimates….Not only is the representativeness of those estimates questionable, but it also is unclear whether and how sightings data were used to derive the various densities and whether, when referencing multiple sources, mean or maximum density estimates (or some other statistic) were used.<br>The Commission recommends that the Navy, in its revised LOA application and final SEIS, specify how density estimates were derived and what statistic (e.g., mean, median, maximum) was used when multiple sources are referenced in Table 3-8. | estimates to include the CVs would result in unreasonable and unrealistic estimates of species densities and abundances, particularly given the very high coefficients of variation (CVs) associated with most marine mammal estimates. Using the upper limit of the range as an input would do nothing to decrease the level of uncertainty. Because Navy's intent in the SEIS/OEIS is to provide a representative estimate of impacts using the best available science, the point estimate was used in the take estimation methodology<br>While uncertainty in population estimates is not included in the take estimates, uncertainty in the horizontal and vertical movement patterns of marine mammals is incorporated through the Monte Carlo nature of the modeling. At each 30-sec timestep, the diving pattern, swim speed, and heading of each modeled animal ("animat") are re-sampled, resulting in movement of each animat through the acoustic field. With a 3-dB difference in the acoustic field relating to a doubling of acoustic power, the variation in the acoustic field is often greater than any uncertainty in the population estimates, resulting in a larger impact on the take estimates.<br>In instances where multiple sources were referenced for an estimate, it was made clear what information each reference provided (e.g., population estimate or seasonality of occurrence). |
| ***Single Ping Equivalent (SPE)*** | | |
| G2-3 | The Navy has used SPE as the metric to estimate behavioral response (Level B harassment) of marine mammals to SURTASS | The risk function is based on field measurements of behavioral responses that occurred during the SURTASS LFS SRP. The |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| ***Commenter ID/ Comment Number*** | ***Comments*** | ***Response / Action*** |
|---|---|---|
| | LFA sonar for more than 18 years….SPE…is not based on an actual physical metric nor is it a metric defined by ANSI or ISO. Thus, SPE is clearly not considered the best available science. The Navy has stated that SPE is more conservative than using an SPL-based threshold, although often, it is the same….If the Navy is attempting to account for multiple pulses or energy accumulation in general, it would be prudent to just use SEL-based risk functions rather than a fictitious SPE metric with an associated, yet unsubstantiated risk function. | concept of SPE was designed by those research scientists to account for the energy of all LFA sonar transmissions that an animat receives during a 24-hr period of a SURTASS LFA sonar mission as well as an approximation of the manner in which the effect of repeated exposures accumulate, as known from studies on humans (Kryter, 1985; Richardson et al., 1995; Ward, 1968). When the exposure history of an individual animal is dominated by a single loud pulse, SPE will only be significantly greater than the SPL (rms) of that single loud pulse. However, if there are two or more pulses of the same amplitude, the SPE will be greater than the SPL (rms) of a single pulse because the SPE metric accounts for accumulation, while SPL does not. Thus, the SPE can never be lower than the SPL (rms) of the loudest pulse. SPE is the input to behavioral risk continuum.<br><br>While it is true that SEL and SPE both account for the accumulation of energy, it is not possible to simply swap SEL for SPE. SEL is a metric primarily designed to assess the potential for accumulated energy that results in TTS and PTS (NMFS, 2018) which is how the SEL metric is used in this document. However, as discussed previously, SEL is not typically the metric used to determine behavioral responses. While SPL (rms) is typically used to determine behavioral responses, the Navy has decided to use the SPE metric that was derived directly from behavioral response data specifically for LFA sonar. Therefore, SPE represents the best available science with respect to LFA sonar and is a more conservative metric than SPL (rms). |
| G2-4 | It is unclear how received levels (in units of SPL) from the LFS SRP (which appear to have been inferred based on the location of the | It is correct that received levels (RLs) (in units of SPL) were estimated based on source and whale location during the LFS |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | whales and vessel rather than obtained via direct measurements from acoustic recording tags on the whales) that apparently were used to inform the shape of the risk function reconcile with the x-axis of that function, which is based on SPE. Since the received levels were not measured in SPE, the Commission is unsure if the LFS SRP data were converted to SPEs but surmises that they were not. Using SPL-based parameters as the basis for an SPE-based function is unfounded. | SRP and were not derived from tagged animals (DoN, 2001a). The acoustic modeling used to predict transmission loss was verified in the field at the time through calibrated RL measurements made from an additional research vessel.<br><br>Section 4.2.3.1 of the Navy's 2001 FEIS (DoN, 2001) is included as part of Appendix B of the Final SEIS/SOEIS to provide an example of the conversion of received levels in SPL to SPE. A whale exposed to 10 pings with received levels between 150- and 159-dB SPL equates to an SPE of 160.49 dB (page 4.2-23, DoN, 2001). In addition, background information on human studies from which the SPE metric is derived are provided (Kryter, 1985; Richardson et al., 1995; Ward, 1968), which demonstrate that using SPL-based measurements to capture the effects of repeated exposures are based on scientific studies. |
| G2-5 | The Commission's greatest concern regarding the Navy's use of SPE for SURTASS LFA sonar is that the Navy does not use that metric for estimating behavior harassment takes for any other low-frequency (LF) sonar source. Rather, more than 10 years ago, the Navy began using the Feller (1968) function based on SPL-based parameters for most species, with the exception of using an unweighted 140 dB re 1 µPa for beaked whales and 120 dB re 1 µPa for harbor porpoises in recent years (Finneran and Jenkins 2012). Recently for the Phase III EISs, the Navy developed multiple Bayesian biphasic dose response functions….It is unclear whether the SPE-based risk function would be more conservative than the Bayesian BRFs. However, that assumption is not true when comparing the SPE-based risk function and the step-function SPL thresholds for harbor porpoises. This is of concern | The SPE metric was designed specifically for use with SURTASS LFA sonar and was derived from data collected for that acoustic source. It should be noted that the Feller (1968) function is also the basis for the risk continuum function developed for SURTASS LFA sonar (DoN, 2001; FEIS Section 4.2.3.2), though it is correct that SURTASS LFA sonar uses SPE-based parameters. As stated in response to Comment G2-3, the SPE can never be lower than the SPL (rms) of the loudest pulse an animal receives; therefore, use of SPE results in estimation of impact levels which are equal to or greater than estimates that would result from the use of SPL. The Navy has continued to use the SPE-based risk continuum because the data upon which that function are based were derived from the behavioral responses of low-frequency hearing specialists (baleen whales) collected with an actual SURTASS LFA |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | because although harbor porpoises are less likely than mysticetes to be affected by SURTASS LFA sonar, the Navy has estimated takes for harbor porpoises | sonar source (i.e., LFS SRP). As such, these data are realistic contextually and remain the best available for the response of LF-sensitive marine mammals to the SURTASS LFA sonar source. Harbor porpoises and beaked whales are not known to have good hearing sensitivities to low frequency sound; research is currently underway that may shed more light on whether these species can even detect sound below 1 kHz. |
| G2-6 | If the Navy intended to include a measure of energy in its assessment of behavioral risk from exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar, it would have been more prudent to use SEL- rather than SPE-based thresholds. A review of the history of the use of SPE suggests that it is a metric that continues to be used mainly due to inertia rather than because it is considered the best available science for providing conservative estimates of cumulative impacts of sonar transmissions on marine mammal behavior. For all of these reasons, the Commission recommends that in its revised LOA application and final SEIS, the Navy use either (1) a metric (i.e., SPL or SEL) and associated thresholds that are based on physics rather than SPE or (2) the behavioral response metrics and thresholds that the Navy currently uses for all other LF sonar sources based on DoN (2017b). | As described in more detail in the response to comment G2-5, the Navy has determined that the SPE-based risk continuum is the best available science for predicting impacts from SURTASS LFA sonar because it is based on scientific studies of the behavioral responses of LF hearing specialists conducting biologically important behaviors while being exposed to SURTASS LFA sonar (i.e., LFS SRP). As such, these data are realistic contextually and remain the best available for the response of LF-sensitive marine mammals to the SURTASS LFA sonar source. The behavioral response functions and thresholds used for other U.S. Navy LF sources (DoN, 2017b) are extrapolations from studies conducted with MF sonars. The Navy recognizes its obligation to continue to review new data as they become available and accordingly will continue to do so and determine their relevance and applicability to its impact analysis. |
| G2-7 | In either instance, the Navy should investigate the effects of SURTASS LFA sonar using updated methods, including controlled exposure experiments if feasible, given that the LFS SRP data and methods to obtain such data are more than 20 years old. Specifically, this should be incorporated into the Navy's monitoring plan for the upcoming NMFS rulemaking. | The SRP data are from the late 1990s, but they remain the best available data for the purpose of predicting potential impacts from exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar. The LFS SRP scientific studies evaluated the behavioral responses of LF hearing specialists conducting biologically important behaviors to exposures of SURTASS LFA sonar. As such, these data are realistic |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | | contextually and remain the best available for the response of LF-sensitive marine mammals to the SURTASS LFA sonar source. The Navy has evaluated the science conducted with other sound sources (e.g., mid-frequency sonar, the European "low-frequency active sonar" that operates at 1-2 and 6-7 kHz) and no newer data change the prediction of expected behavioral responses.<br>Although the SRP data are the best available science, the Navy intends to evaluate new data collection that would supplement SRP data using newer methods and technologies. These types of scientific inquiries fit within the scope the Navy's Living Marine Resources (LMR) program. The LMR program weighs the various Navy research needs against each other through a needs and solicitation process. The Navy has submitted a needs statement to the LMR advisory committee to research future data collection that would supplement understanding of how SURTASS LFA sonar may affect marine resources including mysticetes and beaked whales. |
| ***Level A and B Harassment Takes*** | | |
| G2-8 | The Navy stated that it does not expect its use of SURTASS LFA sonar to cause Level A harassment (PTS) of any marine mammals or stocks based on the application of the full suite of mitigation measures….However, that supposition has not been substantiated and the Commission questions its validity given that SURTASS LFA sonar emits 60-sec transmissions for up to a total of 2.4 hours per day (see section B-4.1 in the DSEIS). Appendix B….did not mention inclusion of mitigation within the modeling scenarios or whether modeling was even conducted based on the Level A harassment thresholds…The Navy should | The Navy noted in Chapter 4 of the Draft SEIS/SOEIS that the potentials for PTS and TTS resulting from exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions were quantitatively assessed per the NMFS (2018) guidance for estimating impacts of PTS and TTS. However, the Navy's further assessment demonstrated that all functional hearing groups of marine mammals except LF cetaceans would need to remain within 22 ft (7 m) of the LFA sonar array for the entirety of an LFA sonar transmission (60 sec) to potentially experience PTS. An LF cetacean would need to remain within 135 ft (41 m) for the entirety of an LFA sonar |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | have specified if any Level A harassment takes were estimated to occur based on a typical 24-hour scenario rather than asserting that Level A harassment takes would not occur based on implementation of mitigation measures for which effectiveness has yet to be determined. Therefore, the Commission recommends that the Navy specify the numbers of model-estimated Level A harassment takes of marine mammals in the absence of implementing mitigation measures and any and all assumptions (including within the animat modeling scenarios) that were made to reduce those takes to zero in its revised LOA application and final SEIS. | transmission to potentially experience PTS. The updated NMFS (2018) criteria and thresholds for PTS/Level A harassment substantially reduce the distance where potential injury/Level A harassment of marine mammals from the sound source may occur.<br>In addition, the suite of mitigation measures implemented when LFA sonar is transmitting is effective in detecting marine mammals before they can be exposed to RLs of 180 dB SPL. Given these factors, the likelihood that a marine mammal may experience PTS was negligible. Upon this basis, the Navy concluded that no reasonably foreseeable Level A harassment would occur, which is why none are presented in this SEIS/SOEIS.<br>NMFS agreed with Navy's conclusion and stated in the Proposed Rule for SURTASS LFA sonar that "No takes by Level A harassment are proposed to be authorized as Level A harassment is considered unlikely and will be avoided through the implementation of the Navy's proposed mitigation measures".<br>The Navy disagrees with the Commission that it has not substantiated the effectiveness of the mitigation measures it implements to reduce or prevent impacts to marine mammals when SURTASS LFA sonar is transmitting. The SEIS/SOEIS states in Chapter 5, "The combination of visual, passive acoustic, and active acoustic (HF/M3) monitoring results in near 100 percent detection probability for medium-sized (approximately 33 ft [10 m]) marine mammal swimming towards the system (Ellison and Stein, 2001). The HF/M3 system substantially increases the probability of detecting a medium- to large-sized marine |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | | mammal within 1.1 to 1.3 nmi (2 to 2.5 km) where PTS, TTS, and some types of behavioral harassment are predicted to occur." |
| G2-9 | The Commission again noticed that the proposed number of takes by temporary threshold shift (TTS) were greater by an order of magnitude than behavior takes for some low-frequency cetaceans….It is unclear how those trends in takes can occur within the same functional hearing group of animals for which the same thresholds are used. Therefore, the Commission recommends that the Navy ensure that Tables 4-9 to -11 do not contain any errors for the various species of mysticetes or, if the information in the tables is indeed accurate, explain why TTS takes are greater than behavior takes for some species of mysticetes, or stocks of mysticetes within the same species, in its revised LOA application and final SEIS. | The data in the tables are correct. Although it is true that in the vast majority of cases the number of behavioral takes is greater than the number of TTS takes, in a few cases the number of TTS takes is greater. One example is the western North Pacific stock of blue whale under Alternative 1 (Table 4-9) where the potential number of behavioral takes is 4.48 and the potential number of TTS takes is 52. This is due to the difference in how takes are estimated for an individual that may experience TTS or behavioral response. For TTS, an animal's exposure history either exceeds the weighted SEL threshold or it doesn't, so that animal's contribution to the estimate for TTS is either a 0 or 1 value (a step function). However, the potential for a behavioral response is not a step function for an individual animal, but a continuum from 0 to 1 based on the animal's SPE value. Therefore, many more animals may be (and typically are) exposed at sound levels with a very low risk for a behavior response. When these risk values are summed to calculate the risk of a behavioral response, the result may be a value that is lower than the risk for TTS. For example, if the blue whale has a hypothetical population estimate of 10 animals, one animal may experience TTS, five may have some percent risk of a behavioral response, and four may have no impact. Estimating take, one animal is predicted to experience TTS. The five animals in the population have potential behavioral response (risk values) of 0.5, 0.2, 0.05, 0.04, and 0.01. When summed, this is 0.8 for the entire population. Therefore, the risk of TTS (1 animal) is greater than the risk of behavioral response (0.8 animal), but the number |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | | of animals experiencing TTS (one) is less than the number that may experience a behavioral response (five). |
| ***Offshore Biologically Important Areas (OBIAs)*** | | |
| G2-10 | The Navy indicated that four areas are on the OBIA watchlist, including the Paphanāumokuākea Marine National Monument (MNM), the Marianas Trench MNM, and the Pacific Remote Islands MNM… it is clear that Paphanāumokuākea MNM meets multiple OBIA criteria. The other two MNMs appear to meet the criteria as well. Moreover, critical habitat for the Hawaiian monk seal and the Main Hawaiian Islands insular distinct population segment of false killer whales also clearly meet the OBIA criteria. In addition, the DSEIS indicated that Navy and NMFS are assessing whether 2 important marine mammal areas (IMMAs) (even though three are erroneously listed in Table C-1) and 15 ecologically or biologically significant marine areas (EBSAs) meet the OBIA criteria. (The Commission notes that Tables C-1 and -2 are not consistent with regard to the number of EBSAs that are being assessed further. These issues should be reconciled.) | The MMC noted a discrepancy in Table C-1 regarding the number of IMMAs in the LFA study area. There is an error in Table C-1 regarding the IMMAs, but only in the number of IMMAs outside the coastal standoff range and the number carried forward; the number of IMMAs within the LFA study area is correct as stated in Table C-1. This error has been corrected in the Final SEIS/SOEIS. Thus, in Table C-1, the number of IMMAs outside the coastal standoff range and the number carried forward for further consideration have been corrected to "2" instead of "3". As shown on Figure C-5, three IMMAs are located within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar: North West Hawaiian Islands, Main Hawaiian Archipelago, and Southern Shelf Waters/Slope Edge of Palau. The geographic extent of the Palau IMMA is located entirely within the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA sonar, and accordingly, is not eligible for consideration as an OBIA.<br><br>The Navy appreciates the MMC's note regarding the discrepancies in numbers of EBSAs between Tables C-1 and C-2. The number of EBSAs in Table C-1 has been thoroughly reviewed and updated for consistency with Table C-2. All numerical values in Tables C-1 and C-2 have been reviewed and rectified, as necessary.<br><br>As the MMC notes here, the three marine national monuments and two critical habitat areas met the OBIA geographic and preliminary biological criteria, which is why the Navy carried |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | | these areas forward for further consideration. The Navy has thoroughly investigated the available information and data for each of these marine areas to determine what, if any, biologically significant activities are carried out by LF-sensitive marine mammals (including sperm whales or elephant seals) in these waters and to evaluate the information and data that describes and supports these activities. Although OBIAs for SURTASS LFA sonar were not designated for all assessed marine areas, many of the marine areas not currently designated are retained on the OBIA Watchlist and would be reevaluated in the future should additional information or data become available. Those marine areas retained on the OBIA Watchlist are noted in Appendix C. |
| G2-11 | The Commission reminds both the Navy and NMFS that lack of data or insufficient data is not an adequate basis for the Navy to refrain from proposing precautionary measures, especially when such data do not exist for most of the world's oceans. This is a point that the Commission made in its 2011 letter on the previous DSEIS and the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Ninth Circuit (the Court) made when it recently remanded the SURTASS LFA sonar case (see *National Resources Defense Council, Inc., et al.* v. *Penny Pritzker et al.*). Specifically, the Court indicated that the Navy and NMFS should have considered whether a precautionary approach would give more protection to marine mammals, and then whether that protection would impede military training to a degree making that mitigation impracticable. | The Navy and NMFS have carefully reviewed the Court's decision and considered the recommendations of the white paper discussed in that decision for delineation of marine areas in parts of the world's ocean for which no data are available, in addition to the practicability of implementing such an approach. NMFS reviewed its consideration of the white paper in the context of the least practicable adverse impact standard in the 2019 MMPA Proposed Rule. Consideration of the white paper is available in the Proposed Rule (84 FR 41: 7186, March 1, 2019) and in Chapter 5 of this SEIS/SOEIS. As NMFS noted in the Proposed Rule, implementing the white paper's approach would provide "limited and uncertain additional protective value", particularly considering the high degree of impracticability for Navy implementation. This is especially true given the efficacy of the Navy's existing and long-employed procedural mitigation measures to reduce impacts potentially associated with use of |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | | SURTASS LFA sonar across the study area. For these reasons, after careful consideration, the white paper's recommendations were not incorporated.<br><br>However, an additional mitigation measure was added to provide additional protection to OBIAs: No more than 25 percent of the authorized amount of SURTASS LFA sonar would be used for training and testing activities within 10 nmi (18.5 km) of any single OBIA during any year unless the following condition is met: should national security present a requirement to conduct more than 25 percent of the authorized hours of SURTAS LFA sonar within 10 nmi (18.5 km) of any single OBIA during any year, naval units would obtain permission from the appropriate designated Command authority prior to commencement of the activity. The Navy would provide NMFS with notification as soon as is practicable and include the information (e.g., sonar hours) in its annual activity reports submitted to NMFS. |
| G2-12 | It is unclear how the Navy and NMFS plan to supplement the OBIA process and how various marine areas that did not meet the existing OBIA selection criteria and/or were not placed on the OBIA [watchlist] previously are being re-evaluated in accordance with the Court's guidance. It also does not appear that the Navy and NMFS are using the precautionary approach when data are lacking or insufficient, given that the DSEIS indicated that the British Indian Ocean Territory-Chagos Islands Marine Protected Area was not considered further based on insufficient data for being biologically important to marine mammals. The Commission expects that the Navy in its revised LOA application and NMFS in its proposed rule will provide clear | The Navy and NMFS have carefully reviewed the Court's decision and the white paper addressed in that decision. The white paper and its recommendations were addressed in the 2019 Proposed Rule in the context of the least practicable adverse impact standard (84FR 41: 7186, March 1, 2019) and in the SEIS/SOEIS in Chapter 5. After careful consideration of all relevant information, Navy as well as NMFS concluded that the use of the white paper recommendations was not appropriate in relation to SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing.<br><br>As has been noted previously by both NMFS and Navy and is reiterated in this SEIS/SOEIS and in the Proposed Rule, the OBIA designation process was designed to assess regions for which |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | justification why any such areas should not be considered an OBIA. | sufficient data and information are available. Like all areas on the OBIA watchlist, the BIOT-Chagos Islands MPA was re-evaluated to determine if more data have become available, as is described in Section 5.3.5.2.3 "OBIA Watchlist Marine Area"; however, it continues to remain on the OBIA watchlist since there are limited data describing the presence of marine mammals in the MPA, much less that they are conducting biologically important behaviors. |
| **State of Hawaii Department of Land and Natural Resources Division of Aquatic Resources (DAR)** | | |
| S1-1 | Although the SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar references a number of studies that find that non-auditory and auditory impacts will be minimal, we feel that these impacts have not been thoroughly assessed and still have concerns of the proposed activities influence on marine mammals. Marine mammal research is challenging to say the least, thus the information that is currently being assessed may be considered misleading for particular scenarios. | The Navy conducted the Low Frequency Sound Scientific Research Program (LFS SRP) with baleen whales, since they were thought most likely among all marine species to have sensitive hearing in the SURTASS LFA sonar frequency band. The LFS SRP experiments exposed baleen whales to RLs ranging from 120 to about 155 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) and detected only minor, short-term behavioral responses; more details on the LFS SRP can be found in Appendix B. The results of the LFS SRP were used to develop the LFA risk continuum, from which the potential for behavioral responses is predicted for all marine mammal species. |
| S1-2 | Additionally, we are especially concerned about change in biologically significant behavior of marine mammals. Although studies have been conducted on a few marine mammal species there is a number of marine mammal species where the impacts of the proposed activities are unknown. DAR believes that extrapolations of known effects on a few species should not be made to other marine mammals or even closely related species. | Although the results of the risk function modeling are interpreted such that they would constitute "significant disruptions to biologically important behaviors" and all results from the risk continuum modeling are considered Level B harassment takes, not all predicted exposures would in fact rise to such a level, resulting in take estimates that are conservative for all marine mammals. By focusing the LFS SRP on the most sensitive species, the results produce a model that is likely to |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | | overestimate the potential for behavioral response of other species. |
| S1-3 | DAR also believes that the economic concerns on commercial fisheries have not been thoroughly explored. For example how would the potential take of protected species by the EIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar's proposed activities influence the number of protected species takes allocated to Hawaii's long line fleet? | Given the vast expanse of the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar, providing detailed information on the commercial fisheries of every nation, state, or territory within the study area would have been a herculean task. However, because the potential impacts on marine fishes, marine mammals, and sea turtles were clearly articulated in the Draft SEIS/SOEIS, the Navy believed it had provided sufficient information to illustrate and document the potential impacts of SURTASS LFA training and testing activities on protected marine species and habitats and commercial activities.<br><br>Regardless, to clarify, the Navy is not requesting mortality takes for any protected species in association with SURTASS LFA sonar's proposed activities. The SEIS/SOEIS is clear that takes associated with exposure of marine mammals to SURTASS LFA sonar would be limited to Level B temporary threshold shifts and behavioral harassment only. As noted in the Cumulative Impact section of this SEIS/SOEIS (Chapter 4, Section 4.8), SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities would have minimal potential for impacts to fish species and no potential for fitness level consequences resulting in negligible impacts on commercial fisheries.<br><br>Given that no potential for lethal takes is estimated, and impacts to protected marine mammals, sea turtles, and fishes are expected to have no fitness-level consequences, projected behavioral, masking, TTS, or similar effects associated with SURTASS LFA sonar would not reasonably affect the takes |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | | associated with other activities. Therefore, the potential training and testing activities of SURTASS LFA sonar would not reasonably be estimated to have any influence on the number of protected species' takes allocated to Hawaii's long-line or other fishing fleets and, indeed, are not reasonably expected to impact Hawaii's commercial fisheries, nor are they known nor have been shown to have affected any commercial fishing industry in the nearly 20 years of SURTASS LFA sonar use. |
| S1-4 | In closing DAR recommends that the Navy funds more studies by independent researchers to better understand the influence of the Navy's activities on the state of Hawaii's natural environment, and economic status prior to initiating the proposed activities. | The Navy supports research that increases knowledge of marine mammals, sea turtles, and marine fishes and develops methods to reduce or eliminate the potential for effects that may be associated with SURTASS LFA sonar. The reader is referred to the U.S. Navy's Marine Species Monitoring website for details on some of the projects that have been funded (<https://www.navymarinespeciesmonitoring.us/>). The Navy currently has funded three continuing research projects in Hawaiian waters totaling $678,000 (<https://www.navymarinespeciesmonitoring.us/regions/pacific/current-projects/>). |
| **NRDC et al. (Natural Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, The Humane Society of the US, and Ocean Conservation Research)** | | |
| ***Legal Framework*** | | |
| N1-1 | The fundamental purpose of an EIS is to force the decision-maker to take a "hard look" at a particular action – at the agency's need for it, at the environmental consequences it will have, and at more environmentally benign alternatives that may substitute for it—before the decision to proceed is made. 40 C.F.R. §§ 1500.1(b), 1502.1; Baltimore Gas & Electric v. NRDC, 462 U.S. 87, | The Navy has incorporated "information relevant to environmental concerns and bearing on the proposed action or its impacts" that warrant preparation of a supplemental EIS/OEIS. The Navy scoped the geographic extent to better reflect the areas where the Navy anticipates conducting SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities now and into the |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | 97 (1983). This "hard look" requires agencies to obtain high quality information and accurate scientific analysis. 40 C.F.R. § 1500.1(b). "General statements about possible effects and some risk do not constitute a hard look absent a justification regarding why more definitive information could not be provided."… The Navy has not yet conducted the "hard look" necessary to analyze alternatives, consider mitigation, and examine the environmental consequences of its proposed action. | foreseeable future. The Navy did indeed take a thorough and considered look at its use of SURTASS LFA sonar and concluded that it could considerably reduce the number of sonar transmit hours required during training and testing activities and articulated what types of activities were included in these two broader categories.<br><br>Further, contrary to the characterization in this comment, where possible given current scientific data, information, and accepted methodologies, the Navy undertook quantitative analyses of potential impacts of SURTASS LFA sonar on protected taxa. The Navy has clearly been in the forefront in working with NMFS to develop the existing acoustic impact criteria and thresholds for marine mammals. The Navy also continues to fund research to further develop and support the scientific basis to determine effects of military sonar on various marine taxa. Extensive acoustic modeling was conducted for this SEIS/SOEIS and associated permit applications to predict potential impacts within the Navy's reduced study area.<br><br>Additionally, the Navy not only reevaluated the basis for use of the 180-dB standard for its mitigation but also re-considered the implementation of other mitigation and monitoring measures, as noted in Section 5.5. Consideration of other mitigation included procedural measures such as a longer clearing time period after marine animals have been detected during LFA sonar transmissions, restricting LFA sonar transmissions to daylight hours, and reducing the extent of training and testing activities. Further consideration of geographic mitigation measures included the reduction of the sonar-generated sound field in the |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | | coastal standoff range and expanding the extent of the coastal standoff range. Indeed, an additional mitigation measure was added to provide additional protection to OBIAs: No more than 25 percent of the authorized amount of SURTASS LFA sonar would be used for training and testing activities within 10 nmi (18.5 km) of any single OBIA during any year unless the following condition is met: should national security present a requirement to conduct more than 25 percent of the authorized hours of SURTAS LFA sonar within 10 nmi (18.5 km) of any single OBIA during any year, naval units would obtain permission from the appropriate designated Command authority prior to commencement of the activity. The Navy would provide NMFS with notification as soon as is practicable and include the information (e.g., sonar hours) in its annual activity reports submitted to NMFS. These mitigation and monitoring measures are in addition to those considered in the past by the SURTASS LFA sonar program, including use of small boats, underwater gliders, or aircraft for pre-operational clearing surveys of marine mammals.<br><br>The Navy's environmental planning is based on requirements established by operational commanders that meet the Navy's purpose and need while decreasing potential effects on the marine environment, resulting in action alternatives that reduced the maximum number of sonar hours and rescoped the geographic extent of SURTASS LFA sonar activities. The thorough and detailed analysis outlined in this SEIS/SOEIS demonstrate the "hard look" the commenter is calling for and which the Navy undertook. |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| ***Alternatives Analysis*** | | |
| N1-2 | In our comments on the withdrawn 2016 DSEIS, we called on the Navy to consider: (1) an alternative cap on hours developed through a reanalysis of Navy purpose and need that also includes environmental factors; (2) one or more alternatives that focus Navy activity in particular mission areas, whose selection is based in part on a consideration of environmental factors, rather than define the global ocean as its operating area and then attempt to exclude biologically important habitat; and (3) a measure—one that NMFS required during the first five years of LFA activity—that curtails the upper end of LFA transmissions at 300 Hz, which would presumably reduce environmental risk for most odontocete species.<br><br>While the Navy's alternatives incorporate the first recommendation in substantial part, providing an alternative cap but neglecting to include environmental factors in its analysis, they do not provide an alternative that would allow selection of mission areas from among viable options based on environmental factors; nor do they include an alternative that would curtail the upper end of LFA transmissions at 300 Hz….an agency must discuss all reasonable alternatives that will accomplish the agency's purpose and need. 40 C.F.R. § 1502.14 | The Navy has reassessed its purpose and need for SURTASS LFA sonar and consequently has redefined its proposed action and the associated number of LFA sonar transmit hours for training and testing activities. The Navy also re-scoped the geographic extent to better reflect the areas where the Navy anticipates conducting SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities now and into the foreseeable future. The Navy provided details about the potential areas within the study area in which types of activities that use SURTASS LFA sonar may occur (Tables 4-7 and 4-8 for Alternatives 1 and 2, respectively). Due to the national security purpose of SURTASS LFA sonar, SURTASS LFA sonar vessels are forward deployed and must be positioned in areas of the world's oceans where evolving world events and potential national security threats necessitate their presence. As such, the Navy cannot focus its use of the SURTASS LFA sonar in "particular mission areas" nor can the positioning of the vessels be based on environmental factors. SURTASS LFA sonar vessels must be capable of rapidly switching from training and testing activities to operational missions. These military ships have very limited flexibility to maneuver any substantial distance from the marine areas where they are needed to surveille for national security threats. Therefore, avoiding large marine regions would constitute a significant deviation in their staging requirements for critical missions. Furthermore, training and testing must occur in a variety of realistic marine environments, as identified in the model areas detailed in the SEIS/SOEIS. |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | | The final alternative proposed is a mitigation measure limiting LFA sonar transmissions to a maximum frequency of 300 Hz. It appears as if the request to limit transmissions to 300 Hz refers to a prior limitation, in effect from 2002 to 2007, that limited transmissions to 330 Hz, not 300 Hz. The frequency limit of 330 Hz was a sonar transmission limitation formerly required for the use of SURTASS LFA sonar related to the potential for acoustic resonance impacts in cetaceans. Concerns regarding resonance impacts to cetaceans from LF or MF sonar were shown to be unfounded in the 2002 NMFS workshop report that concluded that the tissue-lined air spaces most susceptible to resonance are too large in marine mammals to have resonance frequencies in the range used by either LF or MF sonar. In 2006, the MMC-sponsored Cox et al. noted that acoustic resonance would be highly unlikely to occur in beaked whales. Further details on the additional scientific research may be found in the Navy's 2007 SEIS/SOEIS (DoN, 2007) on SURTASS LFA sonar on pages 2-10 through 2-12 and in NMFS' 2007 Final Rule in response to Comment 68 on page 46872 (NOAA, 2007). The empirical and documentary evidence from the noted research and analysis formed the basis for the conclusion that resonance from LFA sonar activities is not a reasonably foreseeable impact nor is tissue damage from LFA sonar transmissions likely to occur in marine mammals in the frequency range from 330 to 500 Hz within or outside the LFA mitigation zone. Therefore, the restriction of SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions to 330 Hz was removed in 2007.<br><br>The frequency of 500 Hz is far below the range of best hearing for odontocetes and there are no data to show that these |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | | cetaceans would be additionally adversely affected by an increase from 330 to 500 Hz. |
| ***Mitigation Measures—Offshore Biologically Important Areas (OBIAs)*** | | |
| N1-3 | The Navy's selection criteria for OBIAs may maintain an evidentiary requirement that exceeds the information available for the of [sic] direct data on marine mammal density and habitat. *See e.g. id.* (noting that "best source" of data demonstrating high marine mammal densities is "publicly-available, direct measurements from survey data."). While the Navy's criteria do allow for use of "other available data or information" where lacking, they do so only if "those data and information, either alone or in combination with the limited direct data, are sufficient to establish that the biological criteria are met." It is not clear from this description what evidentiary standard will apply to the consideration of OBIAs where direct data are not available.<br><br>…..To meet the MMPAs "stringent standard" (*id.* at 1129), the agencies must follow a more precautionary approach that does not proceed "as if the 'no data' scenario were equivalent to… 'no biological importance'" (*id.* at 1140, quoting the NMFS White Paper, *infra*). *See* 40 C.F.R. § 1502.2(d). | The Navy and NMFS have carefully reviewed and considered the Court's decision and white paper's approach for data-poor regions. The OBIA designation criteria and process were not modified; the Navy and NMFS separately considered data-poor regions in terms of additional geographic mitigation recommendations outside of the OBIA paradigm in the MMPA Proposed Rule (84 FR 41: 7186, March 1, 2019). NMFS has concluded in the Proposed Rule for SURTASS LFA sonar that the mitigation protocol proposed for LFA sonar training and testing, including OBIAs, meets the least practicable adverse impact (LPAI) standard. NMFS noted in the Proposed Rule that the ''precautionary approach'' presented in the white paper was not suitable for implementation for SURTASS LFA sonar activities as it was subject to overestimation of suitable habitat and predicted suitable habitat outside the range of documented species' distributions.<br><br>Further, as NMFS elaborated in its Proposed Rule for SURTASS LFA sonar, its required mitigation measures do not proceed as if the ''no data'' scenario is the equivalent to ''zero population density'' or ''no biological importance.'' NMFS noted that per its interpretation of the LPAI standard, the required mitigation measures for SURTASS LFA sonar are effective in minimizing impacts on marine mammals from activities that are likely to increase the probability or severity of population level effects, |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | | *wherever* marine mammals occur, even in areas where data are limited. |
| N1-4 | First, and foremost, the Navy and NMFS must carefully consider the guidelines for capturing biologically important marine mammal habitat in data-poor areas that NMFS' subject-matter experts provided during the last LFA authorization cycle and that were addressed by the Ninth Circuit. These "White Paper" guidelines call for (i) designation as OBIAs of all continental shelf waters and waters 100 km seaward of the continental slope as biologically important for marine mammals; (ii) establishment of OBIAs within 100 km of all islands and seamounts that rise within 500 meters of the surface; and (iii) nomination as OBIAs of high-productivity regions that are not included in the continental shelf, continental slope, seamount, and island ecosystems as biologically important. It should go without saying that the Navy and NMFS should not categorically reject these three criteria as impracticable if they cannot feasibly apply, to the full extent recommended, in every data-poor region. In such cases, they should consider alternatives based on the criteria that protect marine mammals and their habitat to the greatest extent practicable. | The Navy and NMFS have carefully considered the recommended precautionary approach of the white paper for delineation of marine areas in parts of the world's oceans for which no data are available. The Navy additionally considered the practicability of such additional geographic restrictions under the least practicable adverse impact standard. Further analysis by NMFS and Navy determined that additional geographic mitigation restrictions in waters over the continental shelf/slope, surrounding island or seamounts within 1,640 ft (500 m) of the sea surface, or in high productivity areas were expected to provide limited, if any, appreciable reduction in impacts to marine mammals beyond those garnered by the existing mitigation measures, especially as compared against the high impracticality of implementation. Thus, these geographic mitigation measures were not carried forward. As NMFS noted in the Proposed Rule, mitigation measures are not evaluated strictly on the basis of whether they will reduce "taking" but focus instead on whether a measure's value contributes to the standard of *minimizing impacts to the affected species or stock and its habitat and assess measures in context of* the expected impacts and the value of other mitigation that will be implemented.<br><br>In addition, SURTASS LFA sonar ships have a very specific purpose for being in the regions of the world's oceans in which they are deployed. The ships can rapidly transition from training and testing to military operations. As previously noted, these |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | | vessels have limited flexibility to maneuver any substantial distance from their primary areas of responsibility. Therefore, having to avoid the waters over continental shelves and slopes, regardless of the buffer distance, to conduct their training and testing activities would constitute a significant deviation in their staging requirements, time at sea, and ability to conduct other vital military missions. Thus, implementing this mitigation measure would be highly impracticable and would significantly adversely affect the availability of these military ships (assets) to conduct their national security mission. SURTASS LFA sonar vessels must train and test in realistic threat and environmental conditions in areas of national security importance. For additional information, see NMFS's analysis in the proposed rule (82 FR 19460; 19510-19514, April 27, 2017; NOAA, 2017) and the Navy's discussion in Chapter 5 of the SEIS/SOEIS. |
| N1-5 | Second, we recommend that the agencies consider new habitat models for identifying areas of biological importance…More powerful modeling approaches to extrapolate cetacean densities beyond surveyed regions are now emerging (Lambert et al. 2014; Mannocci et al. 2015), although it is not clear whether they are mature enough for application. The Navy should consult with NMFS experts on the utility of such improved models in identifying areas of high marine mammal density in the regions proposed for LFA sonar deployment, with the view to carrying forward any such areas for further OBIA review. | The Navy and NMFS are aware of and continuously collaborate to stay abreast of the active area of research on the development of habitat-based models that extrapolate cetacean densities beyond surveyed regions. Lambert et al. (2014) used the simulated distribution of micronekton from the Spatial Ecosystem And Population Dynamics Model (SEAPODYM) to predict the habitat of three cetacean guilds in tropical waters. While their results provide some interesting insights into the use of predicted prey maps in cetacean distribution models, they are best used to prioritize future research areas. Corkeron et al. (2011) developed statistical methods for using spatially autocorrelated sighting results to identify the Dhofar coast of Oman as an important region for the Arabian Sea DPS of humpback whales. However, this is out of the LFA study area and |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | | Corkeren et al. state "Although it is theoretically possible for us to project model predictions into other areas, we consider this inadvisable, as our basic design was not to make inference about the distribution of humpback whales along the entire Oman coast." Therefore, though its statistical models could be applied to sightings data within the LFA study area, the humpback whale results are not applicable.<br>It is possible that the sighting results from the IWC-POWER cruises could be used to extrapolate density and abundance estimates throughout the North Pacific, using the methods developed by Mannocci et al. (2015) that were applied to extrapolate density estimates in the North Atlantic (Mannocci et al., 2017). Cruise reports from the IWC-POWER cruises through 2017 are available online, with cruises continuing for another few years. The agencies will continue to discuss models and survey results that might be able to be developed for the SURTASS LFA sonar study area. |
| N1-6 | Third, we urge the Navy and NMFS to communicate directly with researchers in the Indian Ocean and Asia to identify potential areas of biological importance, including areas with high cetacean abundance…it is highly likely that there are large unpublished data sets belonging to researchers in these regions. Institutions such as the Environment Society of Oman, University of Karachi, CetAsia Research Group, The Institute of Cetacean Research (Japan), St. Petersburg State University, and Moscow State University, among others, would provide valuable local expertise. In addition, an expert group will be established in the near future, by the IUCN Joint WCPA/SSC Marine Mammal | The Navy acknowledges the importance of regional input and data to identify the areas of biological importance to marine mammals that may be unknown from published information. The Navy and NMFS contacted marine mammal researchers in the Marianas and Guam region to request copies of their marine mammal sighting data to gain an understanding about the areas already identified via survey effort where marine mammals may be aggregating and conducting biologically important behaviors. Both agencies have also jointly sponsored line-transect surveys in this region. Additionally, the Navy has contacted regional researchers with knowledge of marine mammals in the SURTASS |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | Protected Area Task Force, to support the identification and protection of IMMAs in the North East Indian Ocean and South East Asian Seas Region; this group will provide a useful nexus of researchers from across the region. | LFA sonar study area to request literature and data on potential areas of biological importance to LF-sensitive marine mammals.<br><br>The Navy and NMFS are familiar with the efforts and progress of the IUCN Joint WCPA/SSC Marine Mammal Protected Area Task Force to identify areas important to marine mammals in the eastern Indian Ocean and East Asian Seas. We have used the IMMA information as the basis for our regional marine area investigations of the northeastern Indian Ocean and Asian continental sea and northwestern Pacific regions. |
| ***Screening of Marine Mammal Species*** | | |
| N1-7 | As it did during the most recent authorization cycle, Navy proposes to exclude from OBIA consideration all marine mammals that do not exhibit low-frequency specializations, excepting sperm whales and elephant seals. This position remains non-precautionary and inappropriate.<br><br>The Navy did not include odontocetes in the LFA Scientific Research Program, which it continues to take as the exclusive data source for estimating impacts from the LFA system, notwithstanding that study's age and limitations. Yet recent metanalyses of the ocean noise literature indicates that, taken as a whole, the odontocetes are behaviorally reactive to predominantly low-frequency sources of noise, in ways that are consistent with a higher potential for effects on vital rates, at exposure levels that would put them well outside the LFA shut-down zone (Gomez et al. 2016).<br>- the ATOC Heard Island Feasibility Test reported complete cessations in vocalizations of long-finned pilot | The intent of OBIAs is to protect those marine mammal species, such as baleen whales, most likely to hear and be affected by LFA sonar transmissions and to provide them additional protections during periods when they are conducting biologically significant activities. Thus, the primary focus of the OBIA mitigation measure is on LF hearing sensitive species. As noted elsewhere, the hearing sensitivity of other taxa (mid- and high-frequency cetaceans) is such that their sensitivity to the LFA signal is reduced by 40 to 50 dB, meaning that source has to be much louder for the animal to hear it, and therefore to potentially be behaviorally harassed by it. The Navy already has a near-100 percent-effective mitigation measure for minimizing impacts in close proximity to marine mammals (passive and active acoustic and visual detection and shutdown), as well as restricting transmissions within the coastal standoff range, which encompasses a vast majority of biological important habitats. |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | whales over a 4900 km$^2$ area following exposure to a tonal sound source operating below 500 Hz (Bowles et al., 1994).<br>- physiological research on finless porpoise indicates that a heightened sensitivity to lower-frequency sound may be conserved across porpoise species (Liu, 1985; Li et al., 2008).<br>- Harbor porpoises, for example, have been reported to react to pile-driving, a predominantly low-frequency source, at distances beyond 20 km and at Leq-fast sound pressure levels ranging from 130 to 149 dB re 1 uPa (rms) (e.g., Tougaard et al., 2009; Brandt et al., 2011; Dahne et al., 2013; Parsons, 2017; Bailey et al., 2010).<br>In beaked whales, for example, responses include foraging disruption and displacement around such acoustic sources as commercial vessels and European LFAS systems, including tonal systems with outputs above the LFA frequency output range but between 1 and 2 kHz (Aguilar de Soto et al., 2006; Pirotta et al., 2012; Miller et al., 2015; Sivle et al., 2015). | The Navy is familiar with the research mentioned and has cited them, as is appropriate, in Chapter 4. However, these studies have not resulted in a change in the Navy's analysis or approach, which focuses particularly on the species potentially most affected by SURTASS LFA sonar, which would be the species most likely to hear and be affected by LFA sonar transmissions. It is appropriate to consider first and foremost those species that would potentially be most affected by exposure to LFA sonar and that may be affected at greater distances from the LFA sound source (i.e., beyond the passive and active acoustic and visual detection systems) and to then design a strategy that provides the greatest protection to those affected species.<br>Further, the Navy considers all available data on potential impacts to marine species in its analysis, not just the LFA Scientific Research Program, as can be seen in Chapter 4. It is true that the quantitative estimates of takes are derived from the LFA risk continuum, which is based on the behavioral responses of low-frequency hearing specialists (baleen whales) collected with an actual SURTASS LFA sonar source. As such, these data are realistic contextually and remain the best available for the response of LF-sensitive marine mammals to the SURTASS LFA sonar source. Please also see response to G2-5. |
| N1-8 | Any conservative interpretation of the data would assume, barring specific data to the contrary on the effects of SURTASS LFA—research that the Navy has yet to acquire—that these highly reactive species would respond to LFA at distances that require additional mitigation. Yet one effect of the agency's narrow approach during the previous authorization cycle was the | The Navy acknowledges that habitat context is an important element in understanding the potential for effects on species. Although the commenter references papers and marine areas, such as the Gully, not within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar, the Navy is familiar with the papers mentioned and the concern noted by Forney et al. (2017) about disturbance effects |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | rejection of candidate areas with small, demographically isolated populations such as the Gully—a previously designated OBIA that was designed to protect a small population of northern bottlenose whales—without even considering the practicability of avoiding them. Other range-limited beaked whale populations have been found off Canada, in the Mediterranean, off Southern California, off North Carolina, in the Bahamas, and around the main Hawaiian Islands (Wimmer and Whitehead, 2004; Falcone and Schorr, 2014; Forney et al., 2017). According to a recent paper on the vulnerability of range-limited populations to acoustic impacts, failure to consider the effects of both noise exposure and displacement of Cuvier's beaked whales from their habitat in this region "could lead to more severe biological consequences than 'Level B Harassment.' " (Forney et al., 2017). | on island- associated populations, such as the melon-headed whales in Hawaii.<br>In recognition of the vulnerability of small, distinct populations, one of the biological criteria for OBIA eligibility is regions with small, distinct populations of marine mammals with limited distributions. The OBIA protective measure pertains to those species most likely to be affected by exposure to LFA sonar transmissions, particularly at greater distances from the LFA sound source (i.e., beyond the passive and active acoustic and visual detection systems), and to then design a strategy that provides the greatest protection for those affected species, namely LF sensitive species such as baleen whales. |
| N1-9 | With each year, the SRP's application to acoustically sensitive species such as harbor porpoises and beaked whales—non-focal species for the SRP—becomes especially tenuous. NMFS' 2012 rule required the Navy to advance research on the impacts of LFA sonar on beaked whales and harbor porpoises, first, by convening an independent Scientific Advisory Group to make research and monitoring recommendations and, second, by either promulgating a plan of action to implement the Advisory Group's recommendations or submitting a written response to NMFS explaining why they are infeasible. The Advisory Group reported back within a year, but as of August 2016 a second, interagency group that the Navy convened to review the first group's findings had not yet completed its work. No mention of the research is made in the DSEIS, making it highly unlikely that | The Navy has completed its assessment of the validity, need, and recommendations for field research and/or laboratory research on the potential effects of SURTASS LFA sonar on beaked whales and harbor porpoises in a final report submitted to NMFS in July 2017, prior to the expiration of the 2012 Rule. One research project has been funded; to study the spatial overlap of SURTASS LFA sonar activities with harbor porpoise habitat to bound the potential for impacts.<br>The completed study on the potential for overlap of SURTASS LFA sonar activities and the distributional range of harbor porpoises, which may be found on the LFA website (<http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/>), was an important first step in bounding the issue on the potential effect of LFA sonar on harbor porpoises. If harbor porpoises are not co-incident with |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| ***Commenter ID/ Comment Number*** | ***Comments*** | ***Response / Action*** |
|---|---|---|
| | any new data will be available for incorporation into the present round of environmental analysis.<br><br>It is improper to exclude these acoustically sensitive species from OBIA mitigation, as the new DSEIS proposes—particularly in favor of a research effort on which the Navy has temporized for six years and that has yet to produce any data. *See NRDC v. Pritzker*, 828 F.3d at 1142 (holding, in finding NMFS' adaptive management scheme inadequate, that "[t]he mere possibility of changing the rules to accommodate new information does not satisfy the MMPA's strict requirements for mitigating the effects of incidental take"). The Navy and NMFS must take a precautionary approach to harbor porpoises and beaked whales, both in analyzing impacts and in considering habitat-based mitigation measures. | SURTASS LFA sonar activities, then the potential for possible impacts would be non-existent. In the current study area for SURTASS LFA sonar, the overlap of harbor porpoise distribution with SURTASS LFA sonar potential activities is limited to only two regions, the Sea of Japan and the area seaward of northern Japan. Furthermore, SURTASS LFA sonar typically is employed in more offshore waters of these geographic regions than the coastal waters in which the harbor porpoise typically occurs. As a result, there is a very low potential for harbor porpoises to be exposed to SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions. The 328-ft (100-m) isobath is a good indicator of the seaward extent of harbor porpoise occurrence, and the 328-ft isobath coincides closely with the coastal standoff range in the two areas in where harbor porpoises potentially coincide with SURTASS LFA sonar activities. This means that most harbor porpoises would occur within the protection of the coastal standoff range and would thus be unlikely to be exposed to RLs than 180 dB (rms). Indeed, acoustic propagation modeling revealed that little acoustic energy is able to propagate into the shallow, nearshore environment in which harbor porpoises typically occur, and the likelihood for a harbor porpoise to experience exposure to RLs of 140 dB is very low.<br><br>In addition to funding some additional hearing studies, now that the Navy has completed this first research step in understanding the extent of the potential exposure of harbor porpoises to SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions, the Navy must determine which of the potential laboratory research efforts proposed by the SAG and EOG would best address how exposure to LFA sonar transmissions may affect harbor porpoises and seek research funding to conduct that effort. |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | | The Navy is committed to fulfilling its statutory obligations and will discuss with NMFS how best to allocate scarce research funds as part of the Adaptive Management process. Although the SRP data are the best available science, the Navy intends to evaluate new data collection that would supplement SRP data using newer methods and technologies. These types of scientific inquiries fit within the scope the Navy's Living Marine Resources (LMR) program. The LMR program weighs the various Navy research needs against each other through a needs and solicitation process. The Navy has submitted a needs statement to the LMR advisory committee to research future data collection that would supplement understanding of how SURTASS LFA sonar may affect marine resources including mysticetes and beaked whales. |
| N1-10 | We recommend, in line with NMFS' intent in previous authorizations, that frequency specialization be considered as one factor among several in determining the relative importance of a potential OBIA. The agencies can then focus their practicability analysis for odontocete species on the most biologically important habitat. For example, they should give careful analysis to areas of high marine mammal biodiversity, which are also likely to be areas of high marine biodiversity—appropriate given the increasing evidence of impacts of low-frequency sound on non-marine mammal biota, some of which is described in the DSEIS (*see*, *e.g.*, DSEIS at 3-24). *See NRDC v. Pritzker*, 828 F.3d at 1141 (noting, as an illustration of the agencies' improperly underprotective approach, the elimination of the Galapagos Islands as an OBIA). And they should carefully | Frequency specialization is one of the considerations for OBIA designation that both NMFS and Navy already assess. The intent of OBIAs is to protect those marine mammal species, such as baleen whales, most likely to hear and be affected by LFA sonar transmissions and to provide them additional protections during periods when they are conducting biologically significant activities. OBIAs are just one of the mitigation measures implemented for SURTASS LFA sonar activities, along with the very effective procedural mitigation that is applied whenever and wherever LFA sonar training and testing activities occur. The Navy and NMFS have designated OBIAs in the MHI and NWHI. Although these areas are designated for humpback whales, clearly odontocete species occurring in these waters will also benefit from the additional protection provided by the OBIAs. |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | analyze the practicability of protecting areas, such as those off the main Hawaiian Islands and around certain Hawaiian seamounts (which are important to beaked whales, among other species), that are known to contain small, resident odontocete populations. | |
| ***Practicability Analysis*** | | |
| N1-11 | For the first time, the Navy's application distinguishes among types of LFA activities, ranging from "military crew (MILCREW) proficiency training" to "vessel and equipment maintenance" (DSEIS at 2-8). The categories suggest that geographic mitigation could potentially be implemented for a subset of activities in the case that blanket geographic mitigation is deemed impracticable—a development that could, if rigorously applied, substantially improve mitigation and help the Navy and NMFS meet their MMPA responsibilities. In its practicability analysis for OBIAs, the Navy should analyze the practicability of mitigating each individual category of activity and implement mitigation measures to the greatest extent practicable for each category. | All candidate OBIAs were deemed practicable during the Navy's practicability analysis. Therefore, it was not necessary to consider alternative mitigation measures.<br>The different types of LFA activities all utilize the same operating profile, such that any single hour of SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions is the same as all others, regardless of the purpose for which LFA sonar is used. The differentiation of activities was merely for planning purposes, to aid in determining the overall number of transmission hours per year for SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing. The Navy noted in Chapter 4 that all the types of LFA sonar uses do not occur homogeneously throughout the study area, with some types of activities being restricted potentially to only certain regions of the study area. No additional geographic specificity can be defined for a given year, given the unknowns associated with the logistics of vessel support, crew training and testing requirements, and vessel deployment to areas responding to evolving national security needs. As forward deployed military assets whose mission is national security, implementing additional mitigation based solely on the type of use would be unduly burdensome to the civilian and military crews of the vessels. Due to the potential for interference with their critical national security mission, |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| ***Commenter ID/ Comment Number*** | ***Comments*** | ***Response / Action*** |
|---|---|---|
| | | implementing geographic mitigation by activity category is not practicable. |
| N1-12 | More generally, we urge the Navy and NMFS to consider the following alternatives when faced with genuine practicability limitations.<br>*First*, the Navy, in consultation with NMFS, should consider geographic alternatives for OBIAs that raise practicability concerns for certain categories of LFA activity. Given the importance of site-selection in minimizing environmental impacts, it is conventional for agencies to analyze the environmental effects of alternative sites that meet the activity's purpose and need. | All candidate OBIAs were deemed practicable during the Navy's practicability analysis. Therefore, it was not necessary to consider alternative mitigation measures.<br>In differentiating the types of activities that may occur as part of SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing, the Navy did indicate the model areas in which each activity may occur (Tables 4-7 and 4-8 for Alternatives 1 and 2, respectively). While environmental features were not considered, activities were only indicated in a region for which there is a need for them to occur. No additional geographic specificity can be defined for a given year, given the unknowns associated with the logistics of vessel support, crew training and testing requirements, and vessel deployment to areas responding to evolving national security needs.<br>Consideration of alternative sites for training and testing with SURTASS LFA sonar is not appropriate, because the locations where training and testing needs to occur is dictated by national security needs. The Navy's statutory mission is to train and equip naval forces that are combat-ready and capable of accomplishing America's strategic objectives, deterring maritime aggression, and maintaining freedom of navigation in ocean areas (10 U.S.C. Section 5062). By law, the Secretary of the Navy is responsible for functions such as training, supplying, equipping, and maintaining naval forces that are ready to achieve national security objectives as directed by the National Command Authority. |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| N1-13 | *Second*, where reasonable alternative sites are not available, the Navy, in consultation with NMFS, should consider other forms of geographic mitigation as well as procedural mitigation options (*e.g.*, requiring Fleet-level approval for use), substantive standards (*e.g.*, allowing use only when certain criteria are met), targeted restrictions (*e.g.*, limiting the number of activities per annum or avoiding biologically important periods such as the blue whale foraging season), or other mitigation methods that would protect vital habitat while allowing continued use for training purposes. | All candidate OBIAs were deemed practicable during the Navy's practicability analysis. Therefore, it was not necessary to consider alternative mitigation measures.<br>In addition, the OBIAs are just one of several mitigation measures being implemented by the Navy. First, and most important, there are three levels of mitigation monitoring, including visual, passive acoustic, and active acoustic mitigation monitoring. With a near-100 percent-effectiveness, these mitigation measures minimize impacts in close proximity to marine mammals. Geographic restrictions include a coastal standoff range within 12 nmi (22 km) of all emergent lands, restricting received levels in nearshore regions where animals are most likely to occur. |
| N1-14 | *Third*, and finally, to the extent that additional operational mitigation is impracticable, the Navy should consider compensatory mitigation to achieve the "least practicable adverse impact" required under the MMPA. | All candidate OBIAs were deemed practicable during the Navy's practicability analysis. Therefore, it was not necessary to consider alternative mitigation measures.<br>NMFS has concluded in the Proposed Rule for SURTASS LFA sonar that the mitigation protocol proposed for LFA sonar training and testing meets the least practicable adverse impact standard. This is especially true considering the anticipated success of the significant mitigation measures that the Navy has already been implementing (and which have provided a large degree of protection and have limited takes to lower forms of Level B behavioral harassment) to reduce impacts. |
| ***Mitigation Measures—Existing and Candidate OBIAs*** | | |
| N1-15 | The Navy rightly draws on more governmental and intergovernmental sources to identify potential OBIAs than it did | As noted in the DSEIS/SOEIS and as described in previous Navy and NMFS documentation for SURTASS LFA sonar, criteria for the |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | during its most recent authorizations, and its analysis in the DSEIS includes consideration of ESA Critical Habitat, Important Marine Mammal Areas ("IMMAs"), and Ecologically and Biologically Significant Areas ("EBSAs"), among others. We note, however, that ESA Critical Habitat, IMMAs, and EBSAs, have all previously been identified through a rigorous scientific process, including opportunity for public comment and peer review; as such, these areas should be immediately carried forward by the Navy for geographic mitigation purposes. An additional 46 candidate IMMAs identified in the Northeast Indian Ocean and South East Asian Seas Region, but not included in the DSEIS, are currently undergoing peer review and are expected to be finalized in the last quarter of 2018. These new IMMAs should be immediately taken into consideration by the Navy and NMFS as potential OBIAs upon their release. | designation of OBIAs are specific to the purpose of designating OBIAs for SURTASS LFA sonar, which is geographic mitigation. The purpose and criteria for designation of ESA critical habitat, EBSAs, and IMMAs are not coincident with the criteria or purpose of OBIAs for SURTASS LFA sonar. As such, all marine areas considered as OBIAs must be evaluated per the criteria developed for SURTASS LFA sonar, including the Navy's practicability assessment, regardless of the rigorous scientific processes other agencies or organizations may have undertaken for their marine area designations.<br><br>The 30 IMMAs designated in the Northeast Indian Ocean and South East Asian Seas Regions have been assessed as potential OBIAs by the Navy and NMFS. Details on which of these IMMAs met the OBIA designation criteria may be found in Chapter 5 and Appendix C |
| ***OBIAs: Marine Area Analysis—Indian Ocean Blue Whale Areas for Further Consideration*** | | |
| N1-16 | The Draft SEIS/SOEIS identifies a single existing OBIA within the range of the Sri Lankan blue whale: "#26 Offshore Sri Lanka North-Central Indian Ocean Blue whale" that is in operation from December through April. However, this area does not temporally or geographically encompass all important blue whale habitat in the waters off Sri Lanka. A number of other important areas, all of them Ecologically and Biologically Significant Areas, or "EBSAs," are included on the "OBIA Watchlist," and we urge the Navy to advance these as year-round blue whale mitigation areas to the FSEIS. These areas are: (i) "The Southern Coastal and Offshore Waters between Galle and Yala National Park," an area largely overlapping with OBIA #26 but which affords year-round | The Navy has indicated in the DSEIS/SOEIS Table 5-2, Table C-2, and Figure C-6 that areas i) and ii) mentioned in this comment were being assessed as potential OBIAs for the blue (pygmy) whale. The Navy and NMFS' final assessment of these areas' potential as OBIAs is described in the FSEIS/SOEIS Chapter 5 and Appendix C. We have also noted in our assessment that although most available data for these two areas are for blue whales, data on sperm whales have been reported and, when possible, we recommend the seasonal period during which sperm whale as well as blue whale important biological activity occurs. |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | protection to the submarine canyons that support high numbers of blue whales, and other marine megafauna, throughout the year; (ii) "Southern Coastal/Offshore Waters between Trincomalee Canyon and Associated Ecosystems;" and (iii) "Coastal and Offshore Area of the Gulf of Mannar," which also encompasses the currently not considered "Sri Lankan Side of Gulf of Mannar" EBSA. | Although both the Gulf of Mannar EBSA and IMMA were defined principally for the dugong and coastal dolphins, which occur in nearshore or inshore coastal waters too shallow for use of SURTASS LFA sonar; because baleen and sperm whale records from MPAs located within the Gulf of Mannar EBSA and IMMA are available, the Navy further evaluated the Gulf of Mannar region as a potential OBIA. The available information and data do not support the area's biological importance to blue whales, however, as only rare blue whale records, from strandings, are available for the Gulf of Mannar. Although not designated as an OBIA for SURTASS LFA sonar, the Gulf of Mannar has been added to the OBIA Watchlist so that data and information about the area will continue to be monitored.<br><br>However, most available information and data support the waters off southern and eastern Sri Lanka as important migrational and foraging areas for both pygmy blue and sperm whales, as both these regions include physiographic features and annual monsoonal transport that support higher productivity. The Navy and NMFS have designated the waters off the entire southern and eastern shore of Sri Lanka to the Trincomalee Canyon region as an OBIA for both blue (pygmy) and sperm whales. |
| N1-17 | We also recommend the Navy observe several areas as OBIAs to protect key upwelling areas for pygmy blue whales throughout the Indian Ocean. During the SW monsoon, the long-shore flow of the West Indian Coastal Current induces major upwelling along the coast of India, promoting a major phytoplankton bloom there. This productive water is carried southward around | The Navy and NMFS do not concur that the available data and information are sufficient for the area southwest and west of Sri Lanka to warrant designation as an OBIA. Blue whale data for this area are very sparse and do not support designation of this area as biologically important to blue whales. Anderson et al. (2012) used ocean color data to develop a hypothesis of blue (probably |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | the west and south coasts of Sri Lanka, where it is enhanced by further upwelling, before being transported into the Bay of Bengal. Visual and acoustic surveys, strandings, and Soviet whaling data support that blue whales occur in this area of high productivity to forage from May through November, during the southwest monsoon season (Anderson et al., 2012). We recommend the Navy establish an OBIA southwest of Indian and west of Sri Lanka that reflects the boundaries described in Anderson et al (2012): 3°–12°N, 74°–80°E. | pygmy) whale migration in the northern Indian Ocean. Based on their hypothesis, Anderson et al. (2012) predicted that blue whales may occur in this area as they migrate from the Arabian Sea to eastern Sri Lanka/Bay of Bengal, but the authors also note that, "And with only a single offshore sighting from April (Table 1 and Fig. 4), this is one area where additional survey work and/or satellite tracking will be required to test our predictions."<br><br>We conclude that the existing data are insufficient to support setting aside the proposed area as an OBIA for migration or foraging of North Indian Ocean blue whales. The proposed area SW of Sri Lanka in the Indian Ocean (3°to 12°N, 74° to 80°E) has been added to the OBIA Watchlist for reevaluation in the future. |
| N1-18 | Another key upwelling area lies west of the Maldives. Sightings and strandings have been recorded year-round in high-productivity portions of the northern Indian Ocean, including off the Maldives. Blue whale occurrence in Maldivian waters appears to be highly seasonal, with all sightings and strandings to date occurring between November and April. Anderson et al. (2012) defined this high-productivity area based on an analysis of relative chlorophyll *a* concentration. We recommend the Navy establish an OBIA west of the Maldives that reflects the boundaries described in Anderson et al (2012): 1°–6°N, 70.5°–72.5°E. | The Navy doesn't dispute that blue whales occur in the area around the Maldives. However, the purpose of OBIAs is to set aside waters with some proven biological importance to a marine mammal species. According to Anderson et al. (2012), the highest concentrations of blue whales in this area occurred in April, November, and December, with stranding's having been recorded from December through February. These data describe the average seasonal occurrence of blue whales in these waters but are not indicative of high densities nor that biologically important activity is occurring in these waters. Occurrence in a marine area is not sufficient to establish an area's importance to a species.<br><br>The Navy and NMFS examined all available data and research on blue whale occurrence in the waters adjacent to the Maldives to determine if biologically important activity of blue whales occurred in these waters. The Navy and NMFS' final assessment |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| ***Commenter ID/ Comment Number*** | ***Comments*** | ***Response / Action*** |
|---|---|---|
| | | of the Maldives area, as described in the FSEIS/SOEIS Chapter 5 and Appendix C, is that although considered, the area was not designated as an OBIA because data were not indicative of high densities nor that biologically important activity is occurring in these waters. The area was added to the OBIA Watchlist. |
| N1-19 | Satellite telemetry data shows that pygmy blue whales migrate north from the Perth Canyon/Naturaliste Plateau region in March/April, reaching potential breeding grounds in Indonesia by June, where they remain until at least September. Southern migration from Indonesia may occur from September and finish by December in the subtropical frontal zone, after which the animals return north to the Perth Canyon region by March/April (Double et al., 2014).<br>Lower rates of travel and higher rates of occupancy were recorded in the North West Cape/Ningaloo Reef region (Double et al., 2014), an area with the capacity to offer feeding opportunities as primary production rates are equal to those recorded in upwelling systems (*see* Fig. 1). Surface lunge feeding of pygmy blue whales has been observed at the North West Cape and Ningaloo Reef in June. This area may also host relatively high blue whale densities due to the convergence of migration routes of different individuals as they progress pass (sic) the peninsula. After passing the peninsula, the whales depart the coastline and travel offshore, proximate to the continental shelf edge until reaching Indonesian waters<br>i. The Navy should establish an OBIA encompassing the continental shelf along western Australia between March through June and September through December. | The Navy and NMFS have reviewed the Double et al. (2014) paper cited herein. We agree that the information cited on the migrational area for blue whales was compelling enough to warrant the Navy and NMFS researching the area to obtain additional information and data on the Western Australia shelf and slope, since the information pertains to a LF specialist marine mammal and relates to one of the key biological behaviors that define the criteria for OBIAs. The Navy and NMFS assessed the entire Western Australia shelf and slope, including Browse Basin and the nearby Savu Sea area, as a potential OBIA for blue (pygmy) and humpback whales. An OBIA was designated for each species in this region. The OBIA for the humpback whale greatly expands the geographic extent of existing OBIA #27, Camden Sound/Kimberly Region. |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | Importantly, the North West Cape/Ningaloo Reef region, out to the continental shelf edge, needs to be protected from at least April through June.<br>The Navy should also take measures to avoid the continental shelf edge off northwestern Australia between May through July and September through November, to protect whales traveling along the migration route | |
| N1-20 | Browse Basin, located at ~14°S between 121°E and 124°E off northwestern Australia, has recently been identified as a highly biodiverse area due to its coral atolls, steep submarine cliffs, oceanographic sub-mesoscale fronts and upwelling that support at least 14 species of cetaceans, including pygmy blue whales, Bryde's whales, humpback whales, dwarf minke whales, minke whales, as well as a myriad of odontocetes. There is evidence to suggest that at least some areas within the Basin (*e.g.*, Scott Reef) may provide year-round foraging opportunities. Pygmy blue whales have been observed feeding at Scott's Reef during their southern migration in October, indicating that blue whales target this area to replenish their energy stores in preparation for the southern migration.<br>An OBIA should be established to protect Browse Basin (~14°S between 121°E and 124°E) year-round, in light of its persistent upwelling and high levels of cetacean diversity, including foraging pygmy blue whales. | As noted above, the Navy and NMFS designated an OBIA for migrating blue (pygmy) whales and vastly expanded the areal extent of existing OBIA #27 for the humpback whales in the waters off Western Australia. The OBIA for the blue whale encompasses Browse Basin and the Savu Sea. |
| N1-21 | Upwelling is also evident along the southern coasts of Java and the Sumbawa Islands, Indonesia (Branch et al., 2007). Java is located where the southeast monsoon season dominates during the austral winter. Between July and October, the southeast | Branch et al. (2007) suggest the environmental factors "driving biological enrichment and enhanced blue whale foraging" and the regional location of such factors, which have been cited in this comment. The upwelling information in Branch et al. (2007) |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | monsoon generates seasonal upwelling which produces cold water in the surface, creating a difference in sea surface temperature and biological productivity between coastal and ocean-ward locations (Varela et al., 2016).<br>For similar reasons, an OBIA should also be established bounding the upwelling system along the southern coasts of Java and the Sumbawa Islands, Indonesia. A similar approach to that employed by Anderson et al. (2012) could be used to map the boundaries of this region. | is based on Hendiarti et al. (2004). Hendiarti et al. (2004) note that the majority of the upwelling in the southern Indonesian region occurs seasonally off southeastern Java. It is also difficult to discern from the data presented in Hendiarti's paper how much of the coastal upwelling would occur within the coastal standoff range of SURTASS LFA sonar, as much of the higher productivity appears to take place nearshore.<br>However, more importantly, while an upwelling area has potential, at least seasonally, as an important foraging area for cetaceans, a species' seasonal occurrence as denoted by at least its relative density would have to be higher in that area to indicate that it is there foraging during the period of increased productivity. If that associated higher density cannot be demonstrated, then area is not necessarily important to a species and does not meet the criteria for establishing an OBIA. To establish OBIAs in areas of the world's oceans where upwelling may occur, the Navy and NMFS require data or information on marine mammal biological activity. As has been previously stated, OBIAs are based on the existence of data and information regarding the occurrence of biologically important activities.<br>The association of blue whales actually foraging in this Indonesian area is missing. The Navy and NMFS would reassess this area in the future should data on its biological importance to blue whales become evident; for now, the area has been added to the OBIA Watchlist. |
| ***OBIAs: Marine Area Analysis—Indian Ocean Humpback Whale Areas for Further Consideration*** | | |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| N1-22 | In addition to protecting the important calving habitat of Kimberley Bay during the months of June through September (existing OBIA #27 "Camden Sound/Kimberly Region"), the Navy should establish the following: (i) an OBIA to protect the resting habitat of Exmouth Gulf and Shark Bay during the months July through November; (ii) an OBIA off western Australia encompassing the area from the coastline out to the 200 m depth contour from September, to December to protect humpback whales on their southern migration; and (iii) an OBIA off western Australia encompassing the area from the coastline out to the 1400 m depth contour from May to August to protect humpback whales on their northern migration.<br>We note that many of these areas coincide with the additional OBIAs that we have proposed above for blue whale habitat and also important migratory habitat for the southern right whale and are therefore of benefit to multiple species. | The Navy and NMFS have designated an OBIA off Western Australia that vastly increases the areal extent of existing OBIA #27, Camden Sound/Kimberly Region, for the humpback whale (see Appendix C for details on the science underlying the expansion of this OBIA). This greatly increased areal extent of this OBIA ranges from the southern extent of the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar off the Western Australian coast north to encompass the existing OBIA. This area includes the waters outside the coastal standoff range of Exmouth Gulf and Shark Bay. |
| N1-23 | The Arabian Sea Discrete Population Segment ("DPS"), recently recognized as a separate humpback whale subspecies (Pomilla et al., 2014), includes those whales that are currently known to breed and feed along the coast of Oman; however, sightings and strandings indicate a population range that encompasses the northern Gulf of Aden, the Balochistan coast of Pakistan, and western India and Sri Lanka, with occasional sightings along the Sistan and Baluchistan coasts of Iran and also Iraq (Bettridge et al., 2015). Photo-identification re-sightings suggest that humpback whales move seasonally between the Dhofar region (Kuria Muria Islands) in winter and the Gulf of Masirah to the | The endangered Arabian Sea DPS of humpback whales is geographically, genetically, and demographically isolated from all other populations of humpback whales. Research surveys over the past 30 years have confirmed the continuous presence of humpback whales in the shallow, nearshore waters of the Arabian Sea off Oman, which is not in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. Only a limited and incidental number of humpback whale sightings, passive acoustic detections, strandings, and one tagging record have been reported from the eastern Arabian Sea off Pakistan and western India, with only the waters off western India being located within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. Given the small population size and the well-documented |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | north in summer, with similar re-sighting rates between and within regions.<br>The Arabian Sea DPS, a small, highly isolated, resident population that requires an OBIA encompassing the continental shelf and shelf break from the southern tip of India westwards to the boundary of the proposed SURTASS LFA study area. | concentration of this DPS in the western Arabian Sea, the Navy concluded that the likelihood of humpback whales from the Arabian Sea DPS being located in the waters of the northwestern most part of the study area was vanishingly small.<br>However, as part of the OBIA process and at the recommendation of comments in the Draft SEIS/SOEIS and MMPA Proposed Rule, the Navy and NMFS assessed all available data and information on humpback whales in the waters off western India and the nearby Lakshadweep Archipelago (see Appendix C for review of the scientific literature available for this region). Although several records indicate that rare individuals from the Arabian Sea DPS of humpback whales have been reported from the waters off central and southern Western India, these records are far too sparse to suggest a regular occurrence.<br>For this reason, the Navy and NMFS decided not to include the Arabian Sea DPS of humpback whales in the SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA sonar nor in associated documentation, including the ESA Biological Evaluation, for SURTASS LFA sonar. However, due the potential for important migrational activity of humpbacks in these waters, the waters of western and southern India were added to the OBIA Watchlist. |
| ***OBIAs: Marine Area Analysis—Northwestern Pacific Ocean Humpback Whale Areas for Further Consideration*** | | |
| N1-24 | We recommend the Navy afford protection to the Okinawa/Philippines DPS by establishing an OBIA encompassing waters <200 m deep—typical of humpback whale wintering habitat—surrounding the islands of Okinawa from January to | As noted, both areas suggested were already under consideration as OBIAs for the Western North Pacific DPS of humpback whales. The Okinawa to Philippine calving and wintering area is encompassed in the Bluefin Spawning EBSA, |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | April and the islands of Ogasawara from December to June (Darling and Mori, 1993). We note that Ogasawara is included on the Navy's list of potential OBIAs and strongly recommend that this area is carried forward for inclusion, and expanded to the 200 m depth contour. | which was noted in the DSEIS/SOEIS as one of the EBSAs being considered as an OBIA. Even though the Ogasawara EBSA was located wholly within the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA sonar, in recognition of the area's importance as a migrational waypoint and calving area for the humpback whale, the Ogasawara region was considered as an OBIA. The Navy and NMFS have designated an OBIA for the humpback whale from the Ogasawara to Kazin Islands and for the sperm whale surrounding the Ogasawara Islands. |
| N1-25 | The Okinawa/Philippines DPS migrates to summer feeding areas in the northwestern Pacific, including the waters east of Kamchatka and surrounding the Commander Islands (Calambokidis et al., 2008). Humpback whales show remarkable site fidelity to this feeding area, with no interchange with feeding areas to the east recorded to date.<br>We recommend that the Navy establish (i) an OBIA extending from the east Kamchatka coastline offshore to the continental shelf break (encompassing the 'Watchlist' OBIA "Southeast Kamchatka waters," DSEIS at Table 5-2), from June through September; and (ii) an OBIA reflecting the boundaries of the "Commander Islands Shelf and Slope EBSA," which has not yet been considered. | The Commander Islands Shelf and Slope EBSA lies outside the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar, and as such, is not eligible for consideration as an OBIA.<br>The Southeast Kamchatka Coastal Waters is an EBSA that was considered but was not on the OBIA Watchlist. The Navy and NMFS designated an OBIA off southeastern Kamchatka as an OBIA. Further details on the seasonal restrictions and areal extent may be found in Appendix C. |
| ***OBIAs: Marine Area Analysis—Northwestern Pacific Ocean Gray Whale Area for Further Consideration*** | | |
| N1-26 | Gray whales migrate from winter breeding grounds, suspected, but not confirmed, to lie in the South China Sea, to summer feeding areas off the northeastern coasts of Sakhalin Island and southeastern Kamchatka (Weller et al., 2002). the 17 records | In consideration of the Convection Zone East of Honshu EBSA for baleen whales, the Navy and NMFS evaluated a migrational corridor just off the coastal standoff range along eastern Honshu island for the western gray whale DPS. The Navy and NMFS |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | since 1955 that exist in Japan, 76% (n=13) were reported from the Pacific coast and 24% (n=4) in the Sea of Japan (west coast). All occurrences took place between January and July, with the highest number of records reported between March and May (Weller et al., 2008). We therefore recommend the Navy establish an OBIA off eastern Japan extending from the coast out to the continental shelf edge from March through May. | designated an OBIA in this area off eastern Honshu for gray whale migration. Further details on the areal extent and seasonal restrictions may be found in Appendix C. |
| ***OBIAs: Marine Area Analysis—Northwestern Pacific Ocean Sei Whale Area for Further Consideration*** | | |
| N1-27 | Following the findings of Murase et al. (2014), we recommend the Navy establish an OBIA that extends from the Polar Front boundary southwards towards the Kuroshio Extension Front (*i.e.*, approximately 45°N to 35°N, 152°E to 170°E) to protect foraging sei whales. This area is generally consistent with that of the "North Pacific Transition Zone" EBSA that the Navy is currently considering (DSEIS at Table 5-2) and so, alternatively, the Navy could move forward with establishing an OBIA reflecting the boundaries of this EBSA. Protecting this highly productive foraging area would have broad benefit for a number of marine mammal species, including sperm whales, other odontocetes, and elephant seals. | As noted, the Navy and NMFS assessed the North Pacific Transition Zone EBSA for its importance to the northern elephant seal. Additionally, the Navy and NMFS evaluated the Polar/Kuroshio Extension Fronts region per this recommendation.<br><br>Although it is true that the North Pacific Transition Zone (NPTZ), Polar Front, and Kuroshio Extension Front are defined as oceanographic frontal zones that are large spatially persistent features, the physical, chemical, and even biological features by which each frontal zone is defined, including which species are associated with them, are unique and not consistent amongst frontal zones. It would, therefore, be scientifically inappropriate to combine the frontal areas into one large, combined area as suggested and disregard the defining features of the respective frontal zones and the data associated specifically with each frontal area.<br><br>The Navy and NMFS were aware of the suggested correlation of oceanographic frontal features with foraging in the sei whale and had begun researching the available information on foraging |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| ***Commenter ID/ Comment Number*** | ***Comments*** | ***Response / Action*** |
|---|---|---|
| | | areas for the North Pacific sei whale population. However, , data and information are currently insufficient to correlate specific oceanographic frontal features or their boundaries in the northwestern Pacific with biologically important behavior of sei whales.<br><br>Although neither the Polar/Kuroshio Extension Fronts nor NPTZ have been designated as OBIAs, both marine areas have been added to the OBIA Watchlist. The Navy and NMFS will continue to compile and evaluate data and information on both areas and will reassess them in the future. |
| ***OBIAs: Marine Area Analysis—Sperm Whale Areas for Further Consideration*** | | |
| N1-28 | Similar to blue whales, we recommend that the Navy advance the following three EBSAs currently included on the "OBIA Watchlist," as year-round mitigation areas for both blue and sperm whales (and, in some cases, Bryde's whales): (i) "Southern Coastal and Offshore Waters between Galle and Yala National Park," (ii) "Southern Coastal/Offshore Waters between Trincomalee Canyon and Associated Ecosystems," and (iii) "Coastal and Offshore Area of the Gulf of Mannar," which also encompasses the currently not considered "Sri Lankan Side of Gulf of Mannar" EBSA. | See response to N1-16 |
| N1-29 | To protect these important foraging areas for sperm whales, we recommend that the Navy utilize the boundaries of the three aforementioned historic whaling grounds (*i.e.*, Japan Ground, Coast of Japan Ground, and Japan-Bonin Island Ground) to delineate OBIAs for sperm whales in the Northwestern Pacific Ocean (following the areas described in Ivashchenko et al. 2014; | The Navy and NMFS did not consider the major areas of sperm whale concentration outlined in Ivashchenko et al. (2014) when assessing the North Pacific Transition Zone EBSA as we did not consider these areas either singly or in combination to be coincident with the boundary of the North Pacific Transition Zone EBSA. While the whaling data compiled by Ivaschenko et al. |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| ***Commenter ID/ Comment Number*** | ***Comments*** | ***Response / Action*** |
|---|---|---|
| | Fig. 9). The Japan Ground area is generally consistent with that of the "North Pacific Transition Zone" EBSA that the Navy is currently considering (DSEIS at Table 5-2). | (2014) provide valuable information on the historical extent of the North Pacific sperm whale distribution, those locations cannot be used without other supporting data to create OBIAs reflective of areas where sperm whales conduct important biological activities. These areas of historical concentrations provide no insights into what important biological activities were occurring in the areas. Many cetacean species became extirpated and never repopulated heavily exploited commercial whaling grounds, so basing current occurrences for a species on whaling ground data is not appropriate; those data provide a historical perspective on occurrence and distribution but cannot be used as a current template of a species' occurrence. While the Navy and NMFS would continue to investigate areas of biological importance to sperm whales within the study area of SURTASS LFA sonar, we do not believe that the former whaling grounds for the sperm whale in the North Pacific are the optimal way in which to delineate marine areas currently important to sperm whales. Accordingly, these areas are not being considered for OBIAs. |
| ***OBIAs: Marine Area Analysis—Odontocete Areas for Further Consideration*** | | |
| N1-30 | For geographic mitigation, the small population size and cumulative impacts upon mammal-eating killer whales in this area should be carefully considered by the Navy and NMFS. Neglecting to include the best available science on the population structure, ecotypes, and abundance estimates of killer whales in this region is a major oversight of DSEIS.<br><br>The Avacha Gulf is a 'core area' in the Russian Far East for resident killer whales, as well as a transit corridor for killer | The Navy is aware of the importance of southeastern Kamchatka and Avacha Gulf to resident killer whales and has assessed the wealth of survey data and information on this population of odontocetes and the importance of the area, particularly Avacha Gulf, to this population. Pertinent information about this population that occurs in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar has been added to the description of the killer whale in Chapter |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | whales of other communities (Ivkovich et al., 2010). We recommend that the Navy establish a year-round OBIA in the waters of the Avacha Gulf to protect this important foraging habitat and transitory corridor. | 3. Information on the various ecotypes of killer whales was already presented in Chapter 3.<br>However, the majority of Avacha Gulf, including the core area where most sightings of the resident killer whales have been recorded, lies within the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA sonar. To be eligible as an OBIA, a marine area must meet geographic criteria, one of which is that the area must lie outside the coastal standoff range for LFA sonar (i.e., be more than 12 nmi (22 km) from shore). Furthermore, the geographic mitigation measure of OBIA designation is designed to provide protection to those marine mammal species most likely to be impacted by LFA sonar; as previously noted, this is the principal reason OBIAs are focused on LF specialists, such as baleen whales, but also other LF-sensitive species including sperm whales and elephant seals. These combined factors render this marine area ineligible for consideration as an OBIA for SURTASS LFA sonar. However, an OBIA in southeastern Kamchatka waters outside the coastal standoff range has been designated for the gray and right whales that migrate and forage seasonally in these waters. Thus, albeit not designated specifically for the resident killer whales in this area, the OBIA geographic mitigation will afford addition protection to the resident population of killer whales. |
| N1-31 | The Navy should establish OBIAs in waters outside the coastal exclusion zone that are contained within the Biologically Important Areas for Blainville's and Cuvier's beaked whales, as well as for other small, resident odontocete populations, around the main Hawaiian Islands, as defined in Baird *et al.* (2015). Additionally, it should include critical habitat that NMFS recently | One of the Navy and NMFS' criteria for designation of OBIAs, established in the 2012 FSEIS/SOEIS and carried forward through the current SEIS/SOEIS process, is that the OBIA protective measures pertain to those species most likely to be affected by exposure to LFA sonar transmissions, namely LF sensitive species such as baleen whales. Based on current information, neither |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | designated, under the Endangered Species Act, for the main Hawaiian Islands insular false killer whale. 83 Fed. Reg. 35062 (July 24, 2018). It is likely that these areas would substantially overlap, to the extent that a single continuous OBIA could be established around the islands. | Blainville's nor Cuvier's beaked whales are known to have increased sensitivity to LF sounds, therefore Navy and NMFS do not believe added protection afforded by an OBIA (i.e., beyond that provided by the LFA shutdown criteria, described in the Mitigation section) is warranted. Accordingly, areas for neither beaked whale species are considered as OBIAs for SURTASS LFA sonar.<br><br>Although designated critical habitat is one of the biological criteria for OBIA designation, other criteria such as LF hearing sensitivity also apply. Critical habitat for the Main Hawaiian Insular DPS of false killer whales was not further considered as a marine mammal OBIA because the false killer whale is not an LF-sensitive hearing species. False killer whales hear underwater sounds in the range of 1 to 115 kHz, with best hearing at 17 kHz (Au, 1993; Johnson, 1967). |
| N1-32 | Cross Seamount is located at approximately 18°40' N. latitude and 158°10' W. longitude and rises to a charted depth of 330 m, representing the shallowest of the Navigator Seamounts that lie south of Oahu and southwest of the island of Hawai'i. Higher densities of squid and fish are observed over the seamount summit and flanks relative to those in ambient water, particularly in the upper 200 m of the water column and near the seafloor of the seamount (Johnston et al., 2008). These prey fields represent important foraging habitat for top predators: bigeye tuna caught at Cross Seamount have fuller stomachs and demonstrate a more diverse prey base, including a high percentage of cephalopods, than those caught in the open ocean (Grubbs et al., 2002). Acoustic studies have revealed that beaked | The Cross Seamount was considered in the Navy's 2012 FSEIS/SOEIS as a potential OBIA (FSEIS at D-202 to D-203) but was not designated as an OBIA for SURTASS LFA sonar. The intent of OBIAs is to protect those marine mammal species, such as baleen whales, most likely to hear and be affected by LFA sonar transmissions and to provide them additional protections during periods when they are conducting biologically significant activities. Thus, the primary focus of the OBIA mitigation measure is on LF hearing specialist species. Based on current information, beaked whales are not known to have increased sensitivity to LF sounds, therefore Navy and NMFS do not believe added protection afforded by an OBIA (i.e., beyond that provided |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | whales forage year-round at Cross Seamount on most nights, primarily at the summit (McDonald et al., 2009). Importantly, the beaked whales found at Cross Seamount are not Blainville's or Cuvier's beaked whale—the species expected to be found in this region—but are either a geographic variant of these species, or Longman's beaked whale, or another beaked whale species not yet known to occur in the region. | by the LFA buffer zone, described in the Mitigation section) is warranted.<br>As the comment states, Cross Seamount is known for prey aggregations that support beaked whale foraging, as inferred by the detection of beaked whale echolocation signals at night. However, there is no supporting information or data to suggest that the waters surrounding this seamount support higher than average densities of beaked whales, which would qualify as a biological criterion for delineation of an OBIA in the region. Accordingly, an OBIA would not be designated to protect odontocetes foraging in the waters of Cross Seamount. |
| ***OBIAs: Marine Area Analysis—Data Deficient Species*** | | |
| N1-33 | A number of marine mammal species occurring within the proposed SURTASS LFA study area are considered "data deficient" by IUCN…We remind the Navy that data-deficiency does not equate to healthy populations and recommend that the delineation of OBIAs be precautionary in this regard (Parsons, 2016). Three species of data-deficient cetaceans are worth particular note: Omurai's whale (*Balaenoptera omurai*) and Deraniyagala's beaked whale (*Mespolodon hotula*) (Dalebout et al., 2014), and *Berardius* beaked whale, which have both been recently described in the northern Pacific Ocean (Morin et al., 2017). Omurai's whale has been reported from the Cocos (Keeling) Islands, Indonesia, Japan; Malaysia, Philippines and Solomon Islands Sasaki et al. 2006). Deraniyagala's beaked whale has been reported from the Seychelles, Maldives, Gilbert Islands, the Line Islands, Sri Lanka and Kiribati (Dalebout et al., 2014). The | The Navy is aware of the active area of genetics research in which new species are being recognized. Omura's whales and Deraniyagala's beaked whales are considered in the SEIS/SOEIS impact analysis with the best available data for those taxa. The new *Berardius* beaked whale splits the black form of Baird's beaked whale into a new species distinct from the gray form of the Baird's beaked whale, which will retain the scientific name *Berardius bairdii* (Morin et al., 2017). Therefore, although this split into two species is not part of the LFA impact analysis, the data on Baird's beaked whale do encompass both forms, as has traditionally been reported.<br>While no hearing data on these new species are available, hearing in the Omura's whale is presumed, like other baleen whales, to be within the LF range of 7 Hz to 22 kHz and have been recorded producing sounds in the 15 to 50 Hz band |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | new *Berardius* beaked whale was recorded from the north Pacific (Morin et al., 2017). | (Cerchio et al., 2015; Southall et al., 2007). The intent of OBIAs is to protect those marine mammal species, such as baleen whales like the Omura's whale, most likely to hear and be affected by LFA sonar transmissions and to provide them additional protections during periods when they are conducting biologically significant activities. Thus, the primary focus of the OBIA mitigation measure is on LF hearing specialist species.<br><br>Very little is known about the Deraniyagala's beaked whale in general and nothing specifically is known about their hearing sensitivity. They are, however, similar to other beaked whales presumed to hear in the mid-frequency range from 150 Hz to 160 kHz (NMFS, 2018). While their hearing range overlaps partially with the frequency bandwidth of SURTASS LFA sonar, it is presumed that their bandwidth of best hearing, like other beaked whales, is well above the frequency range of SURTASS LFA sonar. The intent of OBIAs is to protect those marine mammal species, such as baleen whales, most likely to hear and be affected by LFA sonar transmissions and to provide them additional protections during periods when they are conducting biologically significant activities. Thus, the primary focus of the OBIA mitigation measure is on LF hearing specialist species. Based on current information, beaked whales are not known to have increased sensitivity to LF sounds, therefore Navy and NMFS do not believe added protection afforded by an OBIA (i.e., beyond that provided by the LFA buffer zone, described in the Mitigation section) is warranted. As with other marine mammals, Navy will re-evaluate if additional date becomes available that demonstrates that these animals are especially sensitive to LF sound. |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| ***Commenter ID/ Comment Number*** | ***Comments*** | ***Response / Action*** |
|---|---|---|
| | | We reiterate that data and information about biologically important behaviors to LF-hearing sensitive marine mammals are the basis for OBIAs. The purpose of mitigation measures is to provide meaningful and effective procedures by which to prevent or decrease effects to marine mammals. Deriving protective measures in areas of the oceans where we have no knowledge that these species are even benefitting from the mitigation does not meet the standards of the MMPA and is unnecessarily onerous for the action proponent to achieve with no mitigating benefit to marine mammal taxa. Without relevant supporting scientific information, no OBIAs can be designated for little known species such as the Omura's or Deraniyagala's beaked whale. |
| ***Mitigation Measures—Distance from OBIAs*** | | |
| N1-34 | According to the DSEIS, "the objective of the mitigation measures for SURTASS LFA sonar's training and testing activities is the reduction or avoidance of potential effects to marine animals and marine habitat." DSEIS at 5-1. The Navy considers this objective met by ensuring that sound pressure levels within its OBIAs and coastal exclusion zone do not exceed a specified threshold, which it defines as 180 dB re 1 µPa (rms). *Id.* at 5-2 to 5-3. Remarkably, this threshold bears no relation to the Navy's behavioral risk function, even though the agencies have repeatedly identified behavioral disruption as the primary marine mammal impact of concern from LFA sonar, or to any qualitative assessment of stress response or masking effects. Instead, it roughly reflects the Navy's threshold for the onset of auditory injury per NMFS guidance. DSEIS at 5-2 to 5-3. | The implementation of the Navy's three-part mitigation monitoring (passive and active acoustic and visual monitoring) has been shown to be near 100 percent effective at detecting marine mammals within the LFA mitigation zone in which RLs would equal or exceed 180 dB re 1 µPa (rms). In the past, this mitigation zone was designed to reduce or alleviate the likelihood that marine mammals would be exposed to levels of sound that could result in injury (PTS). When NMFS revised its acoustic guidance, Navy reevaluated the use of 180 dB re 1 µPa (rms) as the basis for its mitigation zone and concluded that 180 dB would be retained as the mitigation basis (see Chapter 5, Section 5.2 for details about the reevaluation). |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | | However, due to the revised criteria in the NMFS (2018) acoustic guidance, the LFA mitigation zone precludes not only PTS, but also TTS, and more severe forms of behavioral harassment. Although not an expansion of the mitigation zone, mitigation measures based on 180-dB re 1 µPa (rms) are now considered more protective at reducing an even broader range of impacts compared to previous analyses and authorizations.<br><br>The commenter notes that it is remarkable that the 180-dB threshold has no relevance to the LFA behavioral risk continuum. This characterization is inaccurate. As noted previously, the 180-dB threshold was formerly considered the onset of injury. The 2001 OEIS/EIS noted that "the risk continuum is based on the lower limit of potential damage" or 180 dB re 1 µPa (rms). In the LFA behavioral risk continuum function (Figures 4-3 and B-15), the received level at which 95 percent risk of a change in biologically significant behavior may occur is 180 dB re 1 µPa (rms). As noted in Appendix B, Section B-3.2.3, "The fact that none of the LFS SRP observations revealed a significant change in a biologically important behavior helped determine an upper bound for risk….The risk continuum modeled a smooth increase in risk that culminates in a 95 percent level of risk of significant change in a biologically important behavior at 180 dB SPE. Beyond this region, the risk continuum is unsupported by observations." This clearly details 180 dB as the upper bound by which risk for behavioral responses can be determined for exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions. The 180 dB is not only the upper bound for risk of biologically significant behavioral changes (i.e., more severe forms of behavioral harassment) occurring but is also the threshold at which injury |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | | and PTS occurs. This clear and direct correlation does exist between the LFA risk continuum function and the threshold at which injury and PTS occurs. It is this direct linkage why the 180-dB threshold was selected as the mitigation basis for SURTASS LFA sonar.<br><br>Moreover, because LFA sonar transmissions are shut down when any marine mammal is detected in the LFA mitigation zone, marine mammals at greater distances from the LFA sonar array (i.e., beyond the LFA mitigation zone) are also precluded from experiencing lower levels of behavioral risk. |
| N1-35 | As we have written before, the criteria that NMFS has adopted, following the Navy, to estimate temporary and permanent threshold shift in marine mammals (Finneran, 2015) are erroneous and non-conservative. Wright (2015) has identified several statistical and numerical faults in the Navy's approach, such as pseudo-replication and inconsistent treatment of data, that tend to bias the proposed criteria towards an underestimation of effects…At the root of the problem is the agencies' broad extrapolation from a small number of individual animals, mostly bottlenose dolphins, without taking account of what Racca et al. (2015) have succinctly characterized as a "non-linear accumulation of uncertainty." | As the Navy stated in its response to this comment on the Hawaii-Southern California Training and Testing Final EIS/OEIS (DoN, 2018), the permanent threshold shift/temporary threshold shift criteria and thresholds, as set by NMFS, include numerous conservative assumptions, such as:<br><br>(1) Navy assumes no recovery of hearing during time intervals between intermittent exposures. However, multiple studies from humans, terrestrial mammals, and marine mammals have demonstrated less temporary threshold shift from intermittent exposures compared to continuous exposures with the same total energy because hearing is known to experience some recovery in between noise exposures. Therefore, the Navy's approach is known to over-estimate the effects of intermittent noise sources such as tactical sonars.<br><br>(2) Marine mammal temporary threshold shift data have shown that, for two exposures with equal energy, the longer duration exposure tends to produce a larger amount of temporary |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | | threshold shift. Since most marine mammal temporary threshold shift data have been obtained using exposure durations of tens of seconds up to an hour, which is much longer than the durations of SURTASS LFA sonar pings, the use of the existing marine mammal temporary threshold shift data tends to over-estimate the effects of sonars with shorter duration signals.<br><br>Since marine mammal hearing and noise-induced hearing loss data are limited, both in the number of species and in the number of individual's available, attempts to minimize pseudo-replication would further reduce these already limited data sets. Specifically, with marine mammal behavioral temporary threshold shift studies, behaviorally derived data are only available for two mid-frequency cetacean species (bottlenose dolphin, beluga) and two phocids in water pinniped species (harbor seal and northern elephant seal), with OW pinnipeds and high-frequency cetaceans only having behaviorally derived data from one species (harbor porpoises and California sea lions). Arguments from Wright (2015) regarding pseudo replication within the temporary threshold shift data are therefore largely irrelevant in a practical sense because of limited data. Multiple data points were not included for the same individual at a single frequency; if multiple data existed at one frequency, the lowest temporary threshold shift onset was always used. There is only a single frequency where temporary threshold shift onset data exist for two individuals of the same species: 3 kHz for dolphins. Their temporary threshold shift (unweighted) onset values were 193 and 194 Db re 1 µPa2s. Thus, the Navy believes that the current approach makes the best use of the given data. While the Navy does not believe that pseudo-replication is an issue |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | | with its acoustic impact analyses, the Navy will continue monitoring and assessing data and information in the future on this topic.<br><br>Many other comments from Wright (2015) and the comments from Racca et al. (2015) appear to be erroneously based on the idea that the shapes of the auditory weighting functions and temporary threshold shift/permanent threshold shift exposure thresholds are directly related to the audiograms; i.e., that changes to the composite audiograms would directly influence the threshold shift/permanent threshold shift exposure functions [e.g., Wright (2015) describes weighting functions as "effectively the mirror image of an audiogram" (p. 2) and states "The underlying goal was to estimate how much a sound level needs to be above hearing threshold to induce temporary threshold shift." (p. 3) — both statements are incorrect and suggest a fundamental misunderstanding of the criteria/threshold derivation.] This would require a constant (frequency-independent) relationship between hearing threshold and temporary threshold shift onset that is not reflected in the actual marine mammal temporary threshold shift data. Attempts to create a "cautionary" outcome by artificially lowering the composite audiogram thresholds would not necessarily result in lower temporary threshold shift/permanent threshold shift exposure levels, since the exposure functions are to a large extent based on fitting mathematical functions. |
| N1-36 | The 180 dB threshold fails to meaningfully protect marine mammals from the behavioral impacts that the agencies believe to be of primary concern. According to the Navy's behavioral risk | The threshold of 180 dB (rms) is sufficient to prevent injury (PTS), TTS, and high-level behavioral responses from occurring. Considering the 60-sec duration of a SURTASS LFA sonar pulse at |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| ***Commenter ID/ Comment Number*** | ***Comments*** | ***Response / Action*** |
|---|---|---|
| | function, the 175-180 dB (rms) annulus has an average "take" risk of 91.5%, the 170-175 dB (RMS) annulus a take risk of 80.5%, the 165-170 dB (rms) annulus a risk of 61.5%, the 160-165 dB annulus a risk of 38.5% (RMS), the 155-160 dB annulus a risk of 18%, and the 150-155 dB annulus a risk on the order of 8-9%. *See* 2007 SEIS at 4-74.<br><br>Geographic sound field operational constraints designed to eliminate LFA exposures out to at least 150 dB (rms) are likely to be practicable for most, if not all, OBIAs. The Navy's broad claim of impracticability for any mitigation threshold lower than 180 dB exemplifies the non-rigorous rationalizing that the court in *Conservation Council* found unconvincing and unsupportable under the MMPA. *See* 97 F.Supp.3d at 1229-31. The Navy's own "practicability criterion" requires a site-specific discussion, with NMFS, of any OBIA that the Navy initially determines to be impracticable, to see if a modification of the OBIA can address the issue. DSEIS at 5-7 to 5-8. Similarly, the Navy and NMFS should presumptively adopt a 150 dB (rms) mitigation distance from each OBIA, except where geographically specific, clearly stated operational needs make such a distance impracticable, in which case it should adopt the largest practicable distance, to be determined on a case-by-case basis according to the procedure set forth in the Navy's "practicability criterion." | a frequency of 300 Hz, the PTS SEL threshold (199 dB SEL) with frequency weighting for an LF cetacean is equivalent to a SPL RL of the LFA sonar transmission of 182.7 dB re 1 µPa (rms) SPL. Therefore, using a threshold of 180 dB re 1 µPa (rms) SPL at a distance of 1 km from the OBIA boundary is protective of potentially occurring marine mammal species.<br><br>In addition, the distance to the 150 dB rms isopleth varies from tens of kilometers to over 100 km, which would put extensive portions of areas off limits from SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities and would significantly impact the Navy's ability to meet its purpose and need.<br><br>Further, the Navy is not obligated to mitigate every possible impact. The suggested modification to OBIA buffers would only result in a reduction of received level for a small percentage of exposed individuals within any stock, and our analysis already indicates that the activities and anticipated take are not expected to result in any population-level impacts in the absence of this modification to the OBIA buffer. Thus, the mitigation benefit vice the operational impracticability of such a mitigation threshold change would not result in any benefit to the species or stocks consistent with the requirements of the least practicable adverse impact standard.<br><br>However, to acknowledge the concern expressed in this comment, the Navy has determined that it is practicable that no more than 25 percent of the authorized amount of SURTASS LFA sonar would be used for training and testing activities within 10 nmi (18.5 km) of any single OBIA during any year unless the following condition is met: should national security present a requirement to conduct more than 25 percent of the authorized |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | | hours of SURTAS LFA sonar within 10 nmi (18.5 km) of any single OBIA during any year, naval units would obtain permission from the appropriate designated Command authority prior to commencement of the activity. The Navy would provide NMFS with notification as soon as is practicable and include the information (e.g., sonar hours) in its annual activity reports submitted to NMFS. |
| ***Mitigation Measures—Coastal Standoff Range*** | | |
| N1-37 | The Navy, in its DSEIS, gives little consideration to expanding the LFA coastal exclusion zone, assuming, based on its analysis in prior environmental reviews, that its standoff distance should remain 12 nautical miles from shore. Yet this reliance on prior analyses is not supportable. The district court in *LFA III* accepted NMFS' rationale that further consideration was unnecessary since, in its estimation, the OBIA analysis was adequate for data-poor areas (62 F.Supp.3d at 1009); but the Ninth Circuit's decision, in finding that OBIA analysis arbitrary and capricious (see *Pritzker,* 828 F.3d at 1138-41), effectively negated that rationale. | In the 2007 FSEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA sonar, the Navy considered Alternatives 3 and 4, which included expanding the coastal exclusion zone to 25 nmi (46 km). Chapter 4.7.6 (p.4-70 through p.4-81) analyzes the differences among the alternatives, showing that by increasing the coastal exclusion zone, exposure of coastal shelf species decreases but increases exposure levels for shelf break and pelagic species. Though counter-intuitive, this result is due to an increase in exposure area, with less ensonification overlapping land for the 25 nmi (46 km) exclusion zone. Thus, the Navy did not select either Alternative 3 or 4 and found no basis for such a requirement. The Navy's conclusion is unchanged.<br><br>As noted in 2012 Final Rule (77 FR 50290), over 80 percent of the existing and potential marine protected areas reviewed were within 12 nmi from a coastline, indicating the effectiveness of the coastal standoff as one of the primary mitigation measures for reducing potential impacts to marine mammals. OBIAs expand upon this protection by avoiding or minimizing impacts in areas beyond the coastal standoff distance where marine mammals are known to engage in specific behaviors that lead to |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | | more severe impacts if interrupted; known to congregate in higher densities; and/or known to have a limited range and small abundance that creates more vulnerability for the stock as a whole. These criteria are important when determining whether mitigation would be likely to reduce the probability of effects to individuals that would translate to minimization of impacts at the population level under the LPAI standard. In its Final Rule, NMFS discusses analysis of possible buffers and the reader is referred to the Final Rule for why such a mitigation measure is not deemed necessary under the LPAI standard. |
| N1-38 | For years, our groups have called on the Navy and NMFS to adopt a more expansive, more biologically meaningful coastal exclusion, particularly one that protects the continental shelf and slope with a standoff from the shelf break. NMFS' own subject-matter experts, in the White Paper discussed earlier in these comments, recommend that, absent specific data to the contrary, "all continental shelf waters and waters 100 km of the continental slope should be designated as biologically important habitat for marine mammal."...The Navy, in consultation with NMFS, must consider alternative coastal exclusion areas. | NMFS considered the white paper's recommendation to restrict transmissions on the continental shelf and to 100 km seaward of the continental slope in the 2017 Proposed Rule (82 FR 19460; 19510-19514, April 27, 2017) and Navy discussed the same in Chapter 5 of the 2017 SEIS/SOEIS (Section 5.2.6.2). Both agencies concluded that while these measures could potentially reduce the numbers of takes of some individual marine mammals within a limited number of species, or could add some small degree of protection to preferred habitat or feeding behaviors in certain circumstances, this limited and uncertain benefit did not justify adopting the white paper's recommendations considering the existing mitigation measures already implemented by the Navy and the high degree of impracticality for Navy implementation.<br><br>In addition, in the 2007 FSEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA sonar, the Navy considered Alternatives 3 and 4, which included expanding the coastal exclusion zone to 25 nmi (46 km). Chapter 4.7.6 (p.4-70 through p.4-81) analyzes the differences among the alternatives, showing that by increasing the coastal exclusion |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | | zone, exposure of coastal shelf species decreases but increases exposure levels for shelf break and pelagic species. Though counter-intuitive, this result is due to an increase in exposure area, with less ensonification overlapping land for the 25 nmi (46 km) exclusion zone. Thus, the Navy did not select either Alternative 3 or 4 and found no basis for expanding the coastal standoff zone. The Navy's conclusion is unchanged. Moreover, the OBIA designation process already examines coastal areas outside the standoff zone for which there is sufficient evidence of biological significance to LF-sensitive marine mammals. |
| ***Mitigation Measures—Recreational and Commercial Dive Sites*** | | |
| N1-39 | Consistent with previous reviews, the Navy proposes to operate LFA sonar such that received sound pressure levels would not exceed 145 dB re 1 µPa (RMS) in the vicinity of known recreational or commercial dive sites or in Hawai'i state waters. DSEIS at 2-1. We are concerned that the Navy, in its DSEIS, has identified only a few recreational dive sites and not provided any information about commercial dive sites within the LFA study area. The only detail it provides on diving locations is found in Table 3-10, which represents, in a single page, only a few "examples of major recreational diving locations," notwithstanding the large number of dive sites in the region. DSEIS at 3-144. Notably, neither offshore diving tours nor offshore diving locations are represented, raising doubt about whether the Navy has attempted to identify them, even though they are more likely than near-coastal sites to experience close exposure to LFA operations. Nor is there any attempt in the DSEIS to identify commercial dive sites, such as offshore oil | Section 3.5.3.1 has been expanded and Appendix F has been created to provide further detail on how this mitigation measure is implemented. The fixed underwater sites where commercial divers work, such as fixed oil or gas platforms, are well marked on nautical charts. Where commercial diving occurs in conjunction with platforms that move, such as dynamic positioning vessels, those platforms send notices to mariners informing others of their locations. This information is included in mission planning for SURTASS LFA sonar activities, ensuring the LFA sonar will not ensonify these known commercial diving sites at received levels greater than 145 dB re 1 µPa (RMS).<br><br>Most recreational dive sites are located in waters of depths <130 ft (40 m), though some divers may dive in waters deeper than this limit, particularly technical divers. Recreational diving, including snorkeling, primarily occurs at known recreational dive sites, including shipwrecks, sunken aircraft, reefs, or, less commonly in the study area, oil/gas platforms that are in coastal waters, |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | platforms. The Navy should either make its draft list of commercial and recreational dive sites available to the public, or specify, for public comment, how it proposes to identify these sites. | including insular coastal waters. Information on recreational dive sites in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar is publicly available for 22 of the 24 of the countries found in the study area; the British Indian Ocean Territory has prohibited the use of scuba or underwater swimming equipment in its territory and no publicly available information on recreational diving was available for North Korea. The compiled recreational dive sites are listed by country in Appendix F. This information is included in mission planning for SURTASS LFA sonar activities, ensuring the LFA sonar will not ensonify these known regions at received levels greater than 145 dB re 1 µPa (RMS) unless the following conditions are met: Should national security present a requirement to transmit SURTASS LFA sonar during training or testing activities such that exposure at known recreational or commercial dive sites may exceed RLs ≥ 145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL), naval units would obtain permission from the appropriate designated Command authority prior to commencement of the activity. Prior to conducting the training or testing activity, the designated Command authority shall conduct a risk assessment, taking into account the potential for exposure of SURTASS LFA sonar to divers. |
| ***Marine Mammal Impacts Analysis--Behavioral Risk Function*** | | |
| N1-40 | The Navy's new DSEIS, like its predecessors, relies entirely on the LFA Scientific Research Program ("SRP") in establishing behavioral risk parameters for the SURTASS LFA system. DSEIS at 4-29. This study, though ambitious at the time, took place twenty years ago and is inconsistent with more recent science on the behavioral response of marine mammals to low-frequency underwater noise. Reliance on the SRP to the exclusion of all | While the Navy does rely on the results of the LFS SRP for its behavioral response (risk continuum) function, as these data remain the best available data for SURTASS LFA sonar, the Navy also considered other relevant and more recent studies on the possible effects of LF sound transmissions on marine species. However, none of these other studies contradict the conclusions of the SRP and are overall consistent with the results of the SRP |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | other scientific literature on the impacts of low-frequency sound would be arbitrary and capricious. | (see Section 4.5.2.1.3 for details on these other scientific studies). While the Navy acknowledges the age of the LFS SRP data, the mere age of these data does not invalidate them, their contributions to science, nor the conclusions based upon those data.<br><br>Although the SRP data are the best available science, the Navy intends to evaluate new data collection that would supplement SRP data using newer methods and technologies. These types of scientific inquiries fit within the scope the Navy's Living Marine Resources (LMR) program. The LMR program weighs the various Navy research needs against each other through a needs and solicitation process. The Navy has submitted a needs statement to the LMR advisory committee to research future data collection that would supplement understanding of how SURTASS LFA may affect marine resources including mysticetes and beaked whales. |
| N1-41 | Marine mammal science, including the technology used to study behavioral response to underwater noise, has advanced significantly over the two decades since the SRP concluded….The newer tags provide far greater capacity to track alterations in animal orientation, velocity, and noise production, and therefore to detect disruptions in marine mammal feeding and other behaviors. Additionally, the SRP's sample sizes were small, focal species were limited, and the LFA system was operated at less than full power. | It is true that the technology and techniques available to gather marine animal data become increasingly diverse and sophisticated over time and that LFS SRP sample sizes were small. However, the Navy is aware of no basis to invalidate the overall results of the SRP. The Navy acknowledges the age of the LFS SRP data, but as noted previously, the mere age of these data does not invalidate them, their contributions to science, nor the conclusions based upon those data. The LFS SRP data remain the best available for SURTASS LFA sonar.<br><br>Phases I and III of the SRP used the full power LFA sonar source deployed from the R/V *Cory Chouest* while a single transducer (instead of an array of 18) was used in Phase II. Nevertheless, |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | | when the source vessel was placed in the path of migrating whales during Phase II, these animals exhibited behavioral responses that were not observed when the source vessel was moved offshore, and the source level was increased to result in the same received levels at the location of the whale. These results demonstrate the importance of the exposure context when assessing the potential for behavioral responses.<br><br>The LFS SRP experiments exposed baleen whales to RLs ranging from 120 to about 155 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) and detected only minor, short-term behavioral responses. Short-term behavioral responses do not necessarily constitute significant changes in biologically important behaviors. Therefore, although the results of the risk function modeling are interpreted such that they would constitute "significant disruptions to biologically important behaviors," not all predicted exposures would in fact rise to such a level, resulting in results that are most protective for all marine mammals.<br><br>Although the SRP data are the best available science, the Navy intends to evaluate new data collection that would supplement SRP data using newer methods and technologies. These types of scientific inquiries fit within the scope the Navy's Living Marine Resources (LMR) program. The LMR program weighs the various Navy research needs against each other through a needs and solicitation process. The Navy has submitted a needs statement to the LMR advisory committee to research future data collection that would supplement understanding of how SURTASS LFA may affect marine resources including mysticetes and beaked whales. |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| N1-42 | Behavioral response studies that have taken place in the intervening years, using considerably more advanced technologies and methods, indicate the limitations of the earlier Navy experiment. For example, a tagging study of sperm whales in the Gulf of Mexico did not detect any significant avoidance of the noise source (an airgun array), but did find significant reductions in buzz rate, a proxy for prey capture (Miller et al., 2009), a finding that could not have made without acoustic tags. A similar decline in buzz rate has been documented, through the use of modern CPOD tags, in harbor porpoises exposed to pile driving noise (Pirotta et al. 2012). It is unlikely that the SRP's tagging and focal follow technique, which was designed to pick up basic changes in vocalization and movement patterns, could detect these other types of responses, which have significant implications for foraging and other biologically important activities. | The LFS SRP focused on baleen whales conducting biologically significant behaviors since these species are believed to be most sensitive to LF sound. The research methods were designed to document their behaviors during biologically important activities. Phase III (humpbacks off Hawaii) was designed to document changes in singing behavior. Gray whales (Phase II) were migrating and did not vocalize much, if at all, during the experiment, despite extensive efforts to record them. Phase I focused on feeding fin and blue whales. Fin and blue whale vocalizations have not been directly tied to foraging in the way that odontocete buzzes have been and thus, were not a focus of the research methodology. The LFS SRP experiments exposed baleen whales to RLs ranging from 120 to about 155 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) and detected only minor, short-term behavioral responses. Short-term behavioral responses do not necessarily constitute significant changes in biologically important behaviors. Therefore, although the results of the risk function modeling are interpreted such that they would constitute "significant disruptions to biologically important behaviors," not all predicted exposures would in fact rise to such a level, and the resulting risk function modeling is more protective for all marine mammals.<br><br>Although the SRP data are the best available science, the Navy intends to evaluate new data collection that would supplement SRP data using newer methods and technologies. These types of scientific inquiries fit within the scope the Navy's Living Marine Resources (LMR) program. The LMR program weighs the various Navy research needs against each other through a needs and solicitation process. The Navy has submitted a needs statement |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | | to the LMR advisory committee to research future data collection that would supplement understanding of how SURTASS LFA may affect marine resources including mysticetes and beaked whales. |
| N1-43 | The Navy claims that the SRP remains more relevant than the host of more recent investigations because it is the only study of a tonal source operating at frequencies below 500 Hz. DSEIS at 4-29. Yet researchers in the Stellwagen Bank National Marine Sanctuary documented suppression in humpback whale vocalization during operations of an Ocean Acoustic Waveguard Remote Sensing system, a powerful low-frequency fish sensor operating at similar frequencies, at distances of 200 km from the source (Risch et al, 2012; C. Clark 2012 email). The Heard Island Feasibility, which likewise involved a tonal sound source operating below 500 Hz, reported complete cessations in vocalizations of long-finned pilot whales and sperm whales over a 4900 km$^2$ area following exposure (Bowles et al., 1994). These papers join a spate of other studies documenting large-scale changes in baleen whale vocalizations in response to predominantly low-frequency anthropogenic noise (*see* Nowacek et al., 2015). | Discussion of the research results of Risch et al. (2012), as well as the follow-on study by Gong et al. (2014) and the formal comment by Risch et al. (2014), are included in the SEIS/SOEIS (DSEIS at 4-28). Risch et al. (2012) documented reduction in humpback whale vocalization concurrent with transmissions of the low-frequency Ocean Acoustic Waveguide Remote Sensing (OAWRS) system, at distances of 200 km (108 nmi) from the source. The OAWRS source appears to have affected more whales than Phase III of the LFS SRP, even though exposure was at a lower RL (88 to 110 dB re 1 µPa). Gong et al. (2014) assessed the effects of the OAWRS transmissions on calling rates on Georges Bank and determined constant vocalization rates of humpback whales, with a reduction occurring before the OAWRS system began transmitting. Risch et al. (2014) pointed out that the results of Risch et al. (2012) and Gong et al. (2014) are not contradictory, but rather highlight the principal point of their original paper that behavioral responses depend on many factors, including range to source, RL above background noise level, novelty of signal, and differences in behavioral state. Nevertheless, the responses of whales to the OAWRS system are consistent with the LFA risk continuum that estimates that behavioral changes can occur at received levels lower than 180 dB. |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | | Results from the Heard Island Feasibility Test (Bowles et al., 1994) show that during the pre-experiment baseline period, sperm whales and short-finned pilot whales in addition to more than 10 other cetacean species were detected during day and night hours prior to the LF transmissions. While is it accurate that the short-finned pilot whale was not detected during the low-frequency transmissions, 39 groups of cetaceans and 23 groups of pinnipeds, including both baleen (blue whales and possibly a sei whale) and sperm whales, were sighted during the LF transmissions. Neither sperm nor the pilot whales vocalized during the LF transmissions but both species' vocalizations were detected within 48 hours following the transmissions. Sighting data were insufficient to detect whether density or occurrence changes occurred during or after the transmissions. Bowles et al. (1994) cautioned that information on the short-term effects of the transmissions on marine mammals must be carefully interpreted, since some of the observed changes may have been natural and others may have been due to the presence of three experiment-related vessels. The authors also noted that the behavior changes in baleen whales from the transmissions were consistent with the results of other playback experiments.<br><br>Additional studies on the behavioral responses of marine mammals to a variety of sound sources are included in the SEIS/SOEIS (DSEIS at 4-23 through 4-29). |
| N1-44 | The best available science suggests that the Navy's behavioral risk function for LFA is non-conservative. | It is not clear what is meant by "non conservative," but the Navy's behavioral risk function is protective of marine mammal species. The Navy is aware of no scientific literature that shows that the LFA risk continuum is not conservative or protective. As |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | | Ellison et al., (2011) reported, the potential for behavioral response to an anthropogenic source is highly dependent on context, including characteristics of the sound signals and their pattern of transmission, the environmental factors affecting sound movement, and the behavioral state of the animal during exposure. Since the LFS SRP exposed LF specialist cetaceans engaged in biologically important behaviors to real-world SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions, the SRP results remain the best available science for assessing potential impacts associated with exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar. Furthermore, it is even more protective for non-LF specialists since it focused on species believed to be most sensitive to SURTASS LFA sonar. The LFS SRP experiments exposed baleen whales to RLs ranging from 120 to about 155 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) and detected only minor, short-term behavioral responses. Short-term behavioral responses do not necessarily constitute significant changes in biologically important behaviors. Therefore, although the results of the risk function modeling are interpreted such that they would constitute "significant disruptions to biologically important behaviors," not all predicted exposures would in fact rise to such a level, and the resulting risk function modeling is more protective of all marine mammals. |
| ***Marine Mammal Impacts Analysis—Single Ping Equivalent*** | | |
| N1-45 | As the Marine Mammal Commission points out, however, the SPE has no basis in physical reality and has long since been replaced in other environmental compliance documents by "sound energy level" ("SEL"), an energetic metric that, like SPE, aims to integrate the multiple exposures likely to occur in real- | Please refer to Comment G2-3 and the associated response in which the Marine Mammal Commission's comment on this same topic is addressed. SPE does account for the energy of all LFA sonar transmissions that a modeled animal ("animat") receives during a 24-hr period of a SURTASS LFA sonar mission as well as |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| | world applications into a single, aggregate exposure. (Comment letter from Rebecca Lent, Director, Marine Mammal Commission, to LCDR Mark Murnane, SURTASS LFA Sonar SEIS/ SOEIS Project Manager (Sept. 27, 2016). It is noteworthy that NMFS' new guidance for estimating auditory impacts in take applications expressly includes an SEL-based threshold that represents total acoustic energy received over a 24-hour period (NMFS, 2016). | an approximation of the manner in which the effect of repeated exposures accumulate. SPE accounts for the increased potential effect of repeated exposures on animals by adding 5 x log10 (number of pings) to each 1-dB RL increment (Kryter 1985, Richardson et al. 1995, Ward 1968).<br>In fact, SEL is not used in other environmental compliance documents for determining behavioral responses (i.e., most behavioral thresholds are based on a SPL metric, which does not account for accumulation or repeated exposures). In both this SEIS/SOEIS and other Navy environmental compliance documents, SEL is the metric used to determine the potential for PTS and TTS, per the NMFS Acoustic Guidance. |
| N1-46 | In addition, the Navy's SPE concept—aside from being unused—is plainly less conservative than the SEL metric, becoming less conservative as the number of LFA exposures increases. The Navy's use of the less precautionary SPE is particularly concerning for resident populations and other marine mammals with limited range, which are more likely to suffer multiple LFA transmissions. Given the lack of any tenable justification for maintaining an SPE approach, the Navy should use the more widely accepted, more conservative SEL in determining the effect of multiple exposures on marine mammals. | Please refer to Comment G2-3 and the associated response in which the Marine Mammal Commission's comment on the SPE concept is addressed. In summary, the use of SPE is more protective than the use of SPL (rms) for determining behavioral responses since SPE accounts for the accumulation of sound, which SPL does not. The SPE can never be lower than the SPL (rms) of the loudest pulse, which is the metric used for determining behavioral response. However, SEL is the metric used by the Navy to determine the potential for TTS and PTS, per NMFS (2018) guidelines.<br>The comparison between the SPE and SEL is thus, inaccurate, since these metrics are used for different criteria (i.e., SEL is used for TTS and PTS and is more conservative than SPE, and SPE is only used for behavior and is more conservative than SPL). |
| ***Marine Mammal Impacts Analysis—Density and Abundance Estimates*** | | |

**Table 7-2. The Navy and NMFS' Detailed Responses to Comments Received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar. Commenter Identification: G1=U.S. EPA, G2=Marine Mammal Commission, S1=collectively the State of Hawaii Office of Planning and Division of Aquatic Resources, and N1=NRDC et al. (National Resources Defense Council, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research).**

| *Commenter ID/ Comment Number* | *Comments* | *Response / Action* |
|---|---|---|
| N1-47 | We request that the Navy make its Density Database available for public review and recommend, following the Marine Mammal Commission, that it incorporate an uncertainty factor in calculating take based on habitat suitability and other indirect data sources. | Please refer to Comment G2-1 and the associated response in which the Marine Mammal Commission's comment on the Navy's Marine Species Density Database is addressed. |
| N1-48 | Further, we recommend that it consider the more powerful modeling approaches that are emerging to extrapolate cetacean densities beyond surveyed regions (Lambert et al., 2014; Mannocci et al., 2015), which are likely to be superior to the Kaschner et al. model that the Navy has relied on in the past. The Navy should consult with NMFS experts on the utility of these models for estimating densities within the LFA study area. | Please refer to Comment N1-5 and the associated response in which this issue is addressed. |
| N1-49 | Finally, we recommend that the Navy consider conducting baseline research in unsurveyed areas that it repeatedly employs in LFA operations, prioritizing areas on the basis of exposure frequency, environmental vulnerability, and research feasibility. | Per CEQ Regulation 1502.22, the Navy has indicated plainly in the SEIS/SOEIS where data or information are incomplete to support Navy analyses and how the Navy has resolved the issue of scarcity of data/information (i.e., surrogate data/information). Since the Navy does not foresee significant adverse impacts occurring in association with SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing, the Navy does not believe that conducting costly baseline research in un-surveyed marine areas to obtain incomplete or unavailable data and information would be the best use of scarce research funds. The Navy currently sponsors surveys in many areas including Hawaii and the Marianas to provide additional occurrence information and additionally sponsors significant research efforts that together add to the understanding and knowledge of marine mammals. |

Corkeron, P. J., Minton, G., Collins, T., Findlay, K., Willson, A., & Baldwin, R. (2011). Spatial models of sparse data to inform cetacean conservation planning: an example from Oman. *Endangered Species Research, 15*(1), 39-52. doi: 10.3354/esr00367.

Dähne, M., Gilles, A., Lucke, K., Peschko, V., Adler, S., Krügel, K., Sunderleyer, J., & Siebert, U. (2013). Effects of pile-driving on harbor porpoises (*Phocoena phocoena*) at the first offshore wind farm in Germany. *Environmental Research Letters 8*, 025002.

Dalebout, M. L., Baker, C. S., Steel, D., Thompson, K., Robertson, K. M., Chivers, S. J., Perrin, W. F., Goonatilake, M., Anderson, R. C., Mead, J. G., Potter, C. W., Thompson, L., Jupiter, D., and Yamada, T. K. (2014). Resurrection of *Mesoplodon hotaula* Deraniyagala 1963: A new species of beaked whale in the tropical Indo-Pacific. *Marine Mammal Science, 30*(3), 1081-1108.

Darling, J. D., & Mori, K. (1993). Recent observations of humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) in Japanese waters off Ogasawara and Okinawa. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 71*, 325-333.

Department of the Navy (DoN). (2001). *Final overseas environmental impact statement and environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar.* Washington, DC: Chief of Naval Operations, Department of the Navy. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/FEIS-Vol-I.pdf>.

DoN. (2001a). *Low Frequency Sound Scientific Research Program technical report 1: Responses for four species of whales to sounds of SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions*. Washington, DC: Chief of Naval Operations, Department of the Navy. 219 pages.

DoN. (2015). Notice of intent to prepare a supplemental environmental impact statement/supplemental overseas environmental impact statement for employment of Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar. Department of the Navy, Department of Defense. *Federal Register 80,* 108, 32097. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/docs/NOI_FR_2015.pdf>.

DoN. (2007). *Final supplemental environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar.* Washington, D.C.: Chief of Naval Operations, Department of the Navy. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/SURTASS_LFA_FSEIS.pdf>.

DoN. (2012). *Final supplemental environmental impact statement/supplemental overseas environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar.* Washington, D.C.: Chief of Naval Operations, Department of the Navy. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/SURTASS_LFA_FSEIS-SOEIS.pdf>. 1100 pages.

DoN. (2017b). *Criteria and thresholds for U.S. Navy acoustic and explosive effects analysis (Phase III). Technical report*. San Diego, CA: SSC Pacific. Retrieved from <https://hstteis.com/portals/hstteis/files/reports/Criteria_and_Thresholds_for_U.S._Navy_Acoustic_and_Explosive_Effects_Analysis_June2017.pdf>. 194 pages.

DoN. (2017c). *U.S. Navy marine species density database Phase III for the Hawaii-southern California training and testing study area.* NAVFAC Pacific Technical Report. Naval Facilities Engineering Command Pacific, Pearl Harbor, HI. <https://hstteis.com/portals/hstteis/files/reports/U.S._Navy_Marine_Species_Density_Database_Phase_III_Technical_Rpt_for_HSTT_Oct2017.pdf>. 274 pages.

Double, M. C., Andrews-Goff, V., Jenner, C., Jenner, M.-N., Laverick, S. M., Branch, T. A., & Gales, N. J. (2014). Migratory movements of pygmy blue whales (*Balaenoptera musculus brevicauda*) between Australia and Indonesia as revealed by satellite telemetry. *PLoS ONE,* 9(4), e93578. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0093578.t001.

Ellison, W. T., & Stein, P. (1999, updated 2001). *SURTASS LFA high frequency marine mammal monitoring (HF/M3) system: System description and test and evaluation*. Marine Acoustics, Inc. and Scientific Solutions, Inc. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/HF-M3-Ellison-Report-2-4a.pdf>.

Falcone, E.A., & Schorr, G.S. (2014). Distribution and demographics of marine mammals in SOCAL through photoidentification, genetics, and satellite telemetry. Prepared for CNO N-45, Department of the Navy.

Feller, W. (1968). *An introduction to probability theory and its application*. New York, NY: Wiley.

Finneran, J.J. (2015). Auditory weighting functions and TTS/ PTS exposure functions for cetaceans and marine carnivores. Technical Report 3026. Space and Naval Warfare Systems Center Pacific, San Diego, CA, Department of the Navy.

Forney, K. A., Southall, B. L., Slooten, E., Dawson, S., Read, A. J., Baird, R. W., & Jr., R. L. B. (2017). Nowhere to go: Noise impact assessments for marine mammal populations with high site fidelity. *Endangered Species Research, 32*, 391–413. doi:10.3354/esr00820.

Gomez, C., Lawson, J. W., Wright, A. J., Buren, A. D., Tollit, D., & Lesage, V. (2016). A systematic review on the behavioural responses of wild marine mammals to noise: the disparity between science and policy. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 94*(12), 801-819. doi:10.1139/cjz-2016-0098.

Gong, Z., Jain, A. D., Tran, D., Yi, D. H., Wu, F., Zorn, A., Ratilal, P., & Makris, N. C. (2014). Ecosystem scale acoustic sensing reveals humpback whale behavior synchronous with herring spawning processes and re-evaluation finds no effect of sonar on humpback whale song occurrence in the Gulf of Maine in fall 2006. *PLoS ONE, 9*(10), e104733. doi:104710.101371/journal.pone.0104733.

Grubbs, R.D., Holland, K.N. & Itano, D.G. (2002). Comparative trophic ecology of yellowfin and bigeye tuna associated with natural and man-made aggregation sites in Hawaiian waters. SCTB15-Working paper, YFT-6. Presented at the 15th Meeting of the Standing Committee on Tuna and Billfish. Honolulu, Hawai'i (July 22-27, 2002).

Hendriati, N., Siegel, H., & Ohde, T. (2004). Investigation of different coastal processes in Indonesian waters using SeaWIFS data *Deep-Sea Research II, 51*, 85-97.

Ivashchenko, Y. V., Brownell, R. L., & Clapham, P. J. (2014). Distribution of Soviet catches of sperm whales *Physeter macrocephalus* in the North Pacific. *Endangered Species Research, 25*(3), 249-263. doi:10.3354/esr00641.

Ivkovich, T., Filatova, O. A., Burdin, A. M., Sato, H., & Hoyt, E. (2010). The social organization of resident-type killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) in Avacha Gulf, Northwest Pacific, as revealed through association patterns and acoustic similarity. *Mammalian Biology - Zeitschrift fur Saugetierkunde, 75*(3), 198-210. doi:10.1016/j.mambio.2009.03.006.

Johnson, C. S. (1967). Sound detection thresholds in marine mammals. Pages 247-260 in W. N. Tavolga (Ed.). *Marine bio-acoustics*, Vol. 2. New York, NY: Pergamon Press.

Johnston, D. W., M. McDonald, J. Polovina, R. Domokos, S. Wiggins, & Hildebrand, J. (2008). Temporal patterns in the acoustic signals of beaked whales at Cross Seamount. *Biology Letters, 4*, 208-211.

Kaschner, K., Watson, R., Trites, W., & Pauly, D. (2006). Mapping world-wide distributions of marine mammal species using a relative environmental suitability (RES) model. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 316*, 285-310.

Kryter, K. D. (1985). *The effects of noise on man* (2nd ed.). Orlando, FL: Academic Press.

Lambert, C., Mannocci, L., Lehodey, P., & Ridoux, V. (2014). Predicting cetacean habitats from their energetic needs and the distribution of their prey in two contrasted tropical regions. *PLoS ONE, 9*(8), e105958. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0105958.

Li, S., Wang, K., Wang, D., Dong, S., & Akamatsu, T. (2008). Simultaneous production of low- and high-frequency sounds by neonatal finless porpoises. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 124*(2), 716-718.

Liu, R. (1985). The ultrastructure and function of the tubercles on the back of *Neophocaena phocaenoides* in the Changjiang River in China. *Acta Hydrobiologica 9,* 209-12.

Mannocci, L., Monestiez, P., Spitz, J., & Ridoux, V. (2015). Extrapolating cetacean densities beyond surveyed regions: Habitat-based predictions in the circumtropical belt. *Journal of Biogeography, 42*(7), 1267-1280. doi:10.1111/jbi.12530.

Mannocci, L., Roberts, J. J., Miller, D. L., & Halpin, P. N. (2017). Extrapolating cetacean densities to quantitatively assess human impacts on populations in the high seas. *Conservation Biology, 31*(3), 601-614. doi: 10.1111/cobi.12856.

McDonald, M. A., Hildebrand, J. A., Wiggins, S. M., Johnston, D. W., & Polovina, J. J. (2009). An acoustic survey of beaked whales at Cross Seamount near Hawaii. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 125*(2), 624. doi:10.1121/1.3050317.

Miller, P.J., Kvadsheim, P.H., Lam, F.P., Tyack, P.L., Cure, C., DeRuiter, S.L., . . . Hooker, S.K. (2015). First indications that northern bottlenose whales are sensitive to behavioural disturbance from anthropogenic noise. *Royal Society Open Science, 2*(6), 140484. doi:10.1098/rsos.140484.

Miller, P.J.O., Johnson, M.P., Madsen, P.T., Biassoni, N., Quero, M., & Tyack, P.L. (2009). Using at-sea experiments to study the effects of airguns on the foraging behavior of sperm whales in the Gulf of Mexico. *Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers, 56*(7), 1168-1181. doi:10.1016/j.dsr.2009.02.008.

Morin, P. A., Scott Baker, C., Brewer, R. S., Burdin, A. M., Dalebout, M. L., Dines, J. P., . . . Wade, P. R. (2017). Genetic structure of the beaked whale genus *Berardius* in the North Pacific, with genetic evidence for a new species. *Marine Mammal Science, 33*(1), 96-111. doi:10.1111/mms.12345.

Murase, H., Hakamada, T., Matsuoka, K., Nishiwaki, S., Inagake, D., Okazaki, M., . . . Kitakado, T. (2014). Distribution of sei whales (*Balaenoptera borealis*) in the subarctic–subtropical transition area of the western North Pacific in relation to oceanic fronts. *Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography, 107*, 22-28. doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2014.05.002.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). (2016) Technical guidance for assessing the effects of anthropogenic sound on marine mammal hearing: Underwater acoustic thresholds for onset of permanent and temporary threshold shifts. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-OPR-55. Retrieved from <https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/national/marine-mammal-protection/marine-mammal-acoustic-technical-guidance>.

NMFS. (2018). *2018 Revision to: Technical guidance for assessing the effect of anthropogenic sound on marine mammal hearing (Version 2.0): Underwater threshold for onset of permanent and temporary threshold shifts*. Silver Spring, MD. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-OPR-59.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA). (2007). Taking and importing marine mammals: Taking marine mammals incidental to U.S. Navy operations of Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active Sonar; Final rule, 50 CFR Part 216 C.F.R. § 72. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 72*(161), 46846-46893.

NOAA. (2017). Taking and importing marine mammals: Taking marine mammals incidental to U.S. Navy operations of Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active Sonar; Proposed rule, 50 CFR Part 218. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 82*(80), 19460-19527.

Nowacek, D. P., Clark, C. W., Mann, D., Miller, P. J. O., Rosenbaum, H. C., Golden, J. S., . . . Southall, B. L. (2015). Marine seismic surveys and ocean noise: Time for coordinated and prudent planning. *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment, 13*(7), 378-386. doi:10.1890/130286.

Parsons, E.C.M. (2017). Impacts of Navy sonar on whales and dolphins: Now beyond a smoking gun? *Frontiers in Marine Science, 4*, 295. doi: 10.3389/fmars.2017.00295.

Pirotta, E., Milor, R., Quick, N., Moretti, D., Di Marzio, N., Tyack, P., . . . Hastie, G. (2012). Vessel noise affects beaked whale behavior: Results of a dedicated acoustic response study. PLoS ONE, 7(8), e42535. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0042535.

Pomilla, C., Amaral, A. R., Collins, T., Minton, G., Findlay, K., Leslie, M. S., Ponnampalam, L., Baldwin, R., & Rosenbaum, H. (2014). The world's most isolated and distinct whale population? Humpback whales of the Arabian Sea. *PLoS ONE, 9*(12), e114162. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0114162.

Racca, R., Hannay, D., Yurk, H., McPherson, C., Austin, M., MacGillivray, A., Martin, B., Zeddies, D., Warner, G., Delarue, J., & Denes S. (2015). Comment letter to N. LeBoeuf, NMFS, on National Marine Fisheries Service's 31 July 2015 notice (80 Federal Register 45642).

Richardson, W. J., Charles R. Greene, J., Malme, C. I., & Thomson, D. H. (1995). *Marine Mammals and Noise*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Risch, D., Corkeron, P. J., Ellison, W. T., & Van Parijs, S. M. (2012). Changes in humpback whale song occurrence in response to an acoustic source 200 km away. *PLoS ONE, 7*(1), e29741. doi:29710.21371/journal.pone.0029741.

Risch, D., Siebert, U., & Van Parijs, S. M. (2014). Individual calling behaviour and movements of North Atlantic minke whales (*Balaenoptera acutorostrata*). *Behaviour, 151*, 1335-1360. doi:http://dx.doi.org/10.1163/1568539X-00003187

Sasaki, T., Nikaido, M., Wada, S., Yamada, T. K., Cao, Y., Hasegawa, M., & Okada, N. (2006). *Balaenoptera omurai* is a newly discovered baleen whale that represents an ancient evolutionary lineage. *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution, 41*(1), 40-52.

Sivle, L. D., Kvadsheim, P. H., Curé, C., Isojunno, S., Wensveen, P. J., Lam, F.-P. A., Visser, F., Kleivane, L., Tyack, P. L., Harris, C. M., & Miller, P. J. O. (2015). Severity of expert-identified behavioural responses of humpback whale, minke whale, and northern bottlenose whale to naval sonar. *Aquatic Mammals, 41*(4), 469-502. doi:10.1578/am.41.4.2015.469

Southall, B. L., Bowles, A. E., Ellison, W. T., Finneran, J. J., Gentry, R. L., Greene, C. R., Jr., Kastak, D., Ketten, D. R., Miller, J. H., Nachtigall, P. E., Richardson, W. J., Thomas, J. A., & Tyack, P. L. (2007). Marine mammal noise exposure criteria: Initial scientific recommendations. *Aquatic Mammals, 33*(4), 411-522.

Tougaard, J., Henriksen, O. D., & Miller, L. A. (2009). Underwater noise from three types of offshore wind turbines: estimation of impact zones for harbor porpoises and harbor seals. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 125*(6), 3766-3773. doi:10.1121/1.3117444.

U.S. EPA (United States Environmental Protection Agency). (2018). Environmental impact statements; Notice of availability. EIS No. 20180203, Draft Supplement, USN, HI, Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System (SURTASS LFA) Sonar. *Federal Register, 83*, 174, 45442.

Ward, W. D. (1968). *Proposed damage-risk criterion for impulse noise (gunfire)*. Washington, D.C.: Committee on Hearing, Bioacoustics and Biomechanics. National Research Council, National Academy of Science.

Watkins, W. A., & Schevill, W. E. (1975). Sperm whales (*Physeter catodon*) react to pingers. *Deep-Sea Research, 22*, 123-129.

Watkins, W. A., Moore, K. E., & Tyack, P. (1985). Sperm whale acoustic behaviors in the southeast Caribbean. *Cetology, 45*, 1-15.

Weller, D. W., Burdin, A. M., Würsig, B., Taylor, B. L., & Brownell, R. L., Jr. (2002). The western gray whale: A review of past exploitation, current status and potential threats. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 4*(1), 7-12.

Weller, D. W., Bradford, A. L., Kato, H., Bando, T., Otani, S., Burdin, A. M., & R.L. Brownell, J. (2008). A photographic match of a western gray whale between Sakhalin Island, Russia, and Honshu, Japan: The first link between the feeding ground and a migratory corridor. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 10*(1), 89-91.

Wimmer, T., & Whitehead, H. (2004). Movements and distribution of northern bottlenose whales, *Hyperoodon ampullatus*, on the Scotian Slope and in adjacent waters. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 82*(11), 1782-1794. doi:10.1139/z04-168.

# 8 LIST OF PREPARERS

This SEIS/SOEIS was prepared collaboratively by Navy, National Marine Fisheries Service, and contractors.

**U.S. Department of the Navy**

CAPT John Thompson, U.S. Navy (Chief of Naval Operations, Warfare Integration for Information Dominance Division, OPNAV N974B)
M.A. National Security and Strategic Studies
M.A. Engineering Management
M.A. Engineering Management
B.S. Mechanical Engineering
Years of Experience: 29
Responsible for: SEIS/SOEIS review and endorsement

Danielle Kitchen (Chief of Naval Operations, Energy and Environmental Readiness Division OPNAV N454)
M.E.M. Coastal Environmental Management
B.S. Biological Sciences
Years of Experience: 10
Responsible for: MMPA and ESA requirements coordination; marine mammal impact technical oversight; and SEIS/SOEIS review

Ronald Carmichael (Chief of Naval Operations, Energy and Environmental Readiness Division OPNAV N454)
Graduate Certificate in Environmental Management
B.S. Ocean Engineering
Years of Experience: 32
Responsible for: SEIS/SOEIS NEPA requirements review

**National Marine Fisheries Service**

Jolie Harrison (Office of Protected Resources, Permits and Conservation Division)
M.S. Environmental Science
B.S. Biology
Years of Experience: 16
Responsible for: SEIS/SOEIS collaboration and review

Dale Youngkin (Office of Protected Resources, Permits and Conservation Division)
M.S. Biology/Marine Science
B.S. Ecology
Years of Experience: 21
Responsible for: OBIAs, SEIS/SOEIS collaboration and review

Wendy Piniak (Office of Protected Resources, Permits and Conservation Division)
Ph.D. Marine Science & Conservation
M.E.M. Coastal Environmental Management
B.A. Biology and Environmental Studies
Years of Experience:
Responsible for: SEIS/SOEIS collaboration and review

**Contractors**

Kathleen J. Vigness-Raposa (Marine Acoustics, Inc.)
Ph.D. Environmental Sciences
M.S. Biological Oceanography
B.S. Education
Years of Experience: 22
Responsible for: SEIS/SOEIS Program Manager, marine mammal population data derivation; OBIAs; impact analysis modeling oversight; marine mammal impact derivation; SEIS/SOEIS preparer; editing and technical review; GIS analysis and map preparation

Cheryl L. Schroeder (Marine Acoustics, Inc.)
M.S. Biological Oceanography
B.S. Marine Biology
Years of Experience: 37
Responsible for: SEIS/SOEIS preparer; marine biology; marine mammal population data derivation; document preparation; OBIAs; GIS analysis and map preparation; editing and technical review; editing and technical review;

Adam S. Frankel (Marine Acoustics, Inc.)
Ph.D. Oceanography
M.S. Zoology
B.S. Biology
Years of Experience: 32
Responsible for: acoustic impact modeling and analysis

Jennifer L. Amaral (Marine Acoustics, Inc.)
M.S. Ocean Engineering
B.S. Ocean Engineering
Years of Experience: 10
Responsible for: acoustic impact modeling and analysis

Brian Ward (Science Applications International Corporation, contracted under OPNAV N454)
M.S. Fisheries
B.S. Biology
Years of Experience: 6
Responsible for: ESA requirements coordination and SEIS/SOEIS review

# APPENDIX A: CORRESPONDENCE

# NATIONAL MARINE FISHERIES SERVICE: COOPERATIVE AGENCY

**DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY**
OFFICE OF THE CHIEF OF NAVAL OPERATIONS
2000 NAVY PENTAGON
WASHINGTON, DC 20350-2000

5090
Ser N45/15U132387
May 28, 2015

Ms. Jolie Harrison
Chief, Division of Permits and Conservation
National Marine Fisheries Service
1315 East West Highway
Silver Spring, MD 20910

Dear Ms. Harrison:

SUBJECT: COOPERATING AGENCY REQUEST FOR THE SUPPLEMENTAL ENVIORNMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT/SUPPLEMENTAL OVERSEAS ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT (SEIS/SOEIS) FOR THE SURVEILLANCE TOWED ARRAY SENSOR SYSTEM (SURTASS) LOW FREQUENCY ACTIVE (LFA) SONAR

In accordance with the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) and to support a new 5-Year Final Rule under the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) and Incidental Take Statement-Biological Opinion under the Endangered Species Act for employment of SURTASS LFA sonar, the Department of the Navy is initiating the preparation of a SEIS/SOEIS.

Navy requests that the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) Office of Protected Resources (OPR) continue to serve as a cooperating agency in accordance with NEPA regulations (40 CFR 1501.6) and the Council on Environmental Quality cooperating agency guidance, issued on 30 January 2002. The respective responsibilities of Navy and NMFS OPR will be consistent with those described in and agreed upon in the cooperative agency correspondence between the two agencies for the 2012 SURTASS LFA Sonar SEIS/SOEIS (dated 24 November 2008 and 6 February 2009) and the 2015 SURTASS LFA Sonar SEIS/SOEIS (dated 30 June 2014 and 3 November 2014).

Navy, as lead agency, will be responsible for overseeing preparation of the SEIS/SOEIS that will include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Gathering the necessary background information and preparing the SEIS/SOEIS and the necessary rulemaking and permit applications associated with the employment of SURTASS LFA sonar.
- Working with NMFS personnel in determining the best available science in the analysis of potential effects to protected marine species, including threatened and endangered species.
- Determining the scope and alternatives of the SEIS/SOEIS.
- Responding to NMFS requests for information in a timely manner.
- Circulating the appropriate NEPA/Executive Order 12114 documentation to the general public and other interested parties.

5090
Ser N45/15U132387
May 28, 2015

- Maintaining the SEIS/SOEIS schedule and supervising meetings held in support of the NEPA/Executive Order 12114 process. A notional schedule for the preparation of the 2017 SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA sonar as well as the associated MMPA and ESA documentation has been included in enclosure (1).
- Compiling and drafting responses to comments received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS.
- Maintaining an administrative record and responding to any Freedom of Information Act requests related to the SEIS/SOEIS.

As a cooperating agency, Navy requests NMFS provide support as follows:

- Provide timely comments on working drafts of the SEIS/SOEIS.
- Coordinate closely with the Navy to analyze potential additional new or modified marine mammal Offshore Biologically Important Areas (greater than 12 NM offshore) for SURTASS LFA sonar.
- Respond to Navy requests for information in a timely manner.
- Coordinate, to the maximum extent practicable, any public comment periods required by the MMPA permitting process, with the Navy's NEPA public comment periods on the SEIS/SOEIS.
- Assist Navy in responding to public comments.
- Participate in meetings hosted by the Navy for discussions on the SEIS/SOEIS and permitting-related issues.
- Adhere, to the maximum extent possible, to the overall schedule, as agreed upon by Navy and NMFS.

Navy views this agreement as important to the successful completion of the SEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA sonar employment. NMFS participation as a cooperating agency will be invaluable in this endeavor. A formal, written response is requested.

NEPA point of contact for this action is Dawn Schroeder (OPNAV N454), (703) 695-5219, email: dawn.schroeder@navy.mil and the technical point of contact is LCDR Mark Murnane (OPNAV N2/N6F24), (703) 695-8266, email: mark.murnane2@navy.mil.

Sincerely,

K. H. OHANNESSIAN
Deputy Director, Energy and
Environmental Readiness Division

2

5090
Ser N45/15U132387
May 28, 2015

Enclosure: 1. Notional schedule for SURTASS LFA sonar 2017 SEIS/SOEIS, MMPA, and ESA documentation

Copy to: OPNAV (N2/N6F24)

3

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
NATIONAL MARINE FISHERIES SERVICE
Silver Spring, MD 20910

SEP 21 2015

K. H. Ohannessian
Deputy Director,
Energy and Environmental Readiness Division
United States Navy
Office of the Chief of Naval Operations
2000 Navy Pentagon
Washington, D.C. 20350-2000

Dear Mr. Ohannessian,

Thank you for inviting the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration's (NOAA) National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources (OPR), Permits and Conservation Division to participate as a cooperating agency in the development of a Supplemental Environmental Impact Statement/Supplemental Overseas Environmental Impact Statement (Supplemental EIS/OEIS) for the Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar.

We support,the Navy's decision to prepare this Supplemental EIS/OEIS on this activity and agree to be a cooperating agency, due, in part, to our responsibilities under section 101(a)(5)(A) of the Marine Mammal Protection Act and section 7 of the Endangered Species Act.

We agree with the list of responsibilities itemized in the Navy's letter and request that that the Navy work with NMFS OPR staff to discuss updating the proposed scheduled milestones shown in the Navy's Enclosure 1 to ensure successful and timely completion of the 2017 Supplemental SEIS/OEIS.

If you need any additional information, please contact Jolie Harrison or Jeannine Cody, (301-427-8401), who will be the NOAA OPR points of contact for this SEIS/OEIS.

Sincerely,

Perry Gayaldo
for Donna S. Wieting
Director, Office of Protected Resources

Printed on Recycled Paper

# NATIONAL DEFENSE EXEMPTION FOR SURTASS LFA SONAR, AUGUST 2017

DEPUTY SECRETARY OF DEFENSE
1010 DEFENSE PENTAGON
WASHINGTON, DC 20301-1010

AUG 1 0 2017

MEMORANDUM FOR SECRETARY OF THE NAVY

SUBJECT: National Defense Exemption from Requirements of the Marine Mammal Protection Act for Department of Defense Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active Sonar Military Readiness Activities

Pursuant to Title 16, Section 1371(f), of the United States Code, and having conferred with the Secretary of Commerce, I have determined that it is necessary for the national defense to exempt all military readiness activities that employ Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System (SURTASS) Low Frequency Active (LFA) sonar from compliance with the requirements of the Marine Mammal Protection Act, Title 16, Sections 1361-1421h, of the United States Code. A military readiness activity is defined in Section 315(f) of Public Law 107-314.

This exemption is effective August 13, 2017, and shall remain in force for a period of two years from that date or until such time as the National Marine Fisheries Service issues Regulations and Letters of Authorization under Title 16, Section 1371 for SURTASS LFA sonar military readiness activities, whichever is earlier. During the exemption period, all military readiness activities that involve the use of SURTASS LFA sonar shall comply with the parameters and mitigation, monitoring, and reporting measures set forth in Attachment 1.

Attachment:
As stated

## Attachment 1

## Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System (SURTASS) Low Frequency Active (LFA) Sonar Mitigation, Monitoring and Reporting Measures

### I. PARAMETERS

1. This exemption covers use of SURTASS LFA sonar onboard the USNS VICTORIOUS (T-AGOS 19), the USNS ABLE (T-AGOS 20), the USNS EFFECTIVE (T-AGOS 21), and USNS IMPECCABLE (T-AGOS 23). The sound signals transmitted by the SURTASS LFA sonar source must be between 100 and 500 Hertz (Hz) with a source level for each of the 18 projectors of no more than 215 decibels (dB) re: 1 micro Pascal at 1 meter (m) root mean square (rms) and a maximum duty cycle of 20 percent.

2. The Navy will carry out an estimated total of 20 nominal active sonar missions annually among these four vessels (or equivalent number of shorter missions), but shall not exceed a total of 255 hours of sonar transmit time per vessel per year during the period of this exemption within the following areas:

   (a) Up to 16 nominal missions annually in the western North Pacific Ocean, which includes the following mission areas: east of Japan; the north Philippine Sea; the west Philippine Sea; offshore Guam; the Sea of Japan; the East China Sea; the South China Sea; offshore Japan (25° to 40° N and 10° to 25° N), and northeast of Japan.

   (b) Up to two nominal missions annually in the central North Pacific Ocean that include the Hawaii North and Hawaii South mission areas.

   (c) Up to two nominal missions annually in the Indian Ocean that include the Arabian Sea, the Andaman Sea and northwest of Australia mission areas.

### II. MITIGATION

1. SURTASS LFA sonar military readiness activities must be conducted in a manner that minimizes, to the greatest extent practicable, adverse impacts on marine mammals, their habitats, and the availability of marine mammals for subsistence uses. When conducting the military readiness activities, the following mitigation measures must be implemented:

   (a) **Personnel Training—Lookouts**:
      (1) The Navy shall train the lookouts in the most effective means to ensure quick and effective communication within the command structure in order to facilitate implementation of protective measures if they spot marine mammals.
      (2) The Navy will employ one or more marine mammal biologists qualified in conducting at-sea marine mammal visual monitoring from surface vessels to train and qualify designated ship personnel to conduct at-sea visual monitoring. This training may be accomplished either in-person, or via video training.

   (b) **General Operating Procedures**:
      (1) Prior to SURTASS LFA sonar operations, the Navy will promulgate executive guidance for the administration, execution, and compliance with this exemption.
      (2) SURTASS LFA sonar signals must not be transmitted at a frequency greater than 500 Hertz (Hz).
      (3) The Navy must ensure, to the greatest extent practicable, that no marine mammal is subjected to a sound pressure level of 180 dB re: 1 μPa (rms) or greater from SURTASS LFA sonar operations.

   (c) **Commercial and Recreational SCUBA Diving Mitigation Zone**

1

## Attachment 1

(1) The Navy will establish a mitigation zone for human divers at 145 dB re: 1 µPa at 1 m around all known human commercial and recreational diving sites. Although this geographic restriction is intended to protect human divers, it will also reduce the LFA sound levels received by marine mammals located in the vicinity of known dive sites

(d) **LFA Sonar Mitigation Zone and Additional 1-Kilometer (km) Buffer Zone:**

(1) Prior to commencing and during SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions, the Navy will use near real-time environmental data and underwater acoustic prediction models to determine the propagation of the SURTASS LFA sonar signals in the mission area and the distance from the SURTASS LFA sonar source to the 180-decibel (dB) re: 1 µPa isopleth (*i.e.,* the LFA sonar mitigation zone).

(2) The Navy will establish a180-dB LFA sonar mitigation zone around the surveillance vessel that is equal in size to the 180-dB re: 1 µPa isopleth (i.e., the volume subjected to sound pressure levels of 180 dB or greater) as well as establish a one-kilometer (1-km) buffer zone around the LFA sonar mitigation zone.

(3) The Navy will update these sound field estimates every 12 hours or more frequently depending upon changing meteorological or oceanographic conditions; and at least 30 minutes prior to any SURTASS LFA sonar transmission.

(e) **Ramp-Up Procedures for the HF/M3 System:**

(1) The Navy will ramp up the High Frequency/Marine Mammal Monitoring (HF/M3) active sonar from a power level beginning at a maximum source sound pressure level of 180 dB re: 1 µPa @ 1 m (rms) in 10-dB increments to operating levels over a period of no less than five minutes:

(A) At least 30 minutes prior to any SURTASS LFA sonar transmission,

(B) Prior to any SURTASS LFA sonar calibrations or testing that are not part of regular SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions; and

(C) Any time after individuals have powered down the HF/M3 active sonar source for more than two minutes.

(2) The Navy will not increase the HF /M3 active sonar system's sound pressure level once HF /M3 operators detect a marine mammal. Resumption of the ramp-up of HF/M3 sonar system would not occur until marine mammals are no longer detected by the HF /M3 active sonar system, passive acoustic monitoring, or visual monitoring.

(f) **Suspension/Delay for SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions:**

If a marine mammal is detected through monitoring within either the LFA sonar mitigation zone or the 1-km buffer zone, the Navy will immediately suspend or delay SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions.

(g) **Resumption of SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions:**

The Navy may resume/commence SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions 15 minutes after:

(1) All marine mammals have left the area of the LFA sonar mitigation zone and the 1- km buffer zone; and/or

(2) There is no further detection of any marine mammal within the LFA sonar mitigation zone plus the 1-km buffer zone as determined by the passive or active acoustic or visual monitoring protocols.

(h) **Geographic Restrictions:**

(1) The Navy will not operate SURTASS LFA sonar such that: the SURTASS LFA sonar sound field exceeds 180 dB re: 1 µPa (rms):

(A) At a distance of less than or equal to 12 nautical miles (nmi) (22 km (14 miles (mi)); from any coastline, including offshore islands; and

(B) At a distance of less than 1 km (0.62 mi; 0.54 nmi) seaward of the outer perimeter of any Offshore Biologically Important Area (OBIA) for marine mammals designated in the table below ,or

2

**Attachment 1**

identified through the Adaptive Management Process, specified herein, within the period of the NDE's effectiveness.

(2) The OBIAs for marine mammals (with specified periods of effectiveness) for SURTASS LFA sonar routine training, testing, and military operations are:

| Name of Area | Location of Area | Months of Importance |
|---|---|---|
| Georges Bank | Northwest Atlantic Ocean | Year-round |
| Roseway Basin Right Whale Conservation Area | Northwest Atlantic Ocean | June through December, annually |
| Great South Channel, U.S. Gulf of Maine, and Stellwagen Bank National Marine Sanctuary (NMS) | Northwest Atlantic Ocean/ Gulf of Maine | January 1 to November 14, annually Year-round for Stellwagen Bank NMS |
| Southeastern U.S. Right Whale Habitat | Northwest Atlantic Ocean | November 15 to January 15, annually |
| Gulf of Alaska | Gulf of Alaska | March through September, annually |
| Navidad Bank | Caribbean Sea/ Northwest Atlantic Ocean | December through April, annually |
| Coastal waters of Gabon, Congo and Equatorial Guinea | Southeastern Atlantic Ocean | June through October, annually |
| Patagonian Shelf Break | Southwestern Atlantic Ocean | Year-round |
| Southern Right Whale Seasonal Habitat | Southwestern Atlantic Ocean | May through December, annually |
| Central California | Northeastern Pacific Ocean | June through November, annually |
| Antarctic Convergence Zone | Southern Ocean | October through March, annually |
| Piltun and Chayvo offshore feeding grounds | Sea of Okhotsk | June through November, annually |
| Coastal waters off Madagascar | Western Indian Ocean | July through September, annually for humpback whale breeding and November through December, annually for migrating blue whales. |
| Madagascar Plateau, Madagascar Ridge, and Walters Shoal | Western Indian Ocean | November through December, annually |
| Ligurian-Corsican-Provencal Basin and Western Pelagos Sanctuary | Northern Mediterranean Sea | July to August, annually |
| Penguin Bank, Hawaiian Islands Humpback Whale NMS | North-Central Pacific Ocean | November through April, annually |
| Costa Rica Dome | Eastern Tropical Pacific Ocean | Year-round |
| Great Barrier Reef | Coral Sea/ Southwestern Pacific Ocean | May through September, annually |
| Bonney Upwelling | Southern Ocean | December through May, annually |
| Northern Bay of Bengal and Head of Swatch-of-No-Ground (SoNG) | Bay of Bengal/ Northern Indian Ocean | Year-round |

3

**Attachment 1**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Olympic Coast NMS and Prairie, Barkley Canyon, and Nitnat Canyon | Northeastern Pacific Ocean | Olympic NMS: December, January, March, and May annually.<br><br>Prairie, Barkley Canyon, and Nitnat Canyon: June through September annually |
| Abrolhos Bank | Southwest Atlantic Ocean | August through November, annually |
| Grand Manan North Atlantic Right Whale Critical Habitat | Bay of Fundy, Canada | June through December, annually |
| Eastern Gulf of Mexico | Eastern Gulf of Mexico | Year-round |
| Southern Chile Coastal Waters | Gulf of Corcovado, Southeast Pacific Ocean; Southwestern Chile | February to April, annually |
| Offshore Sri Lanka | North-Central Indian Ocean | December through April, annually |
| Camden Sound/Kimberly Region | Southeast Indian Ocean; northwestern Australia | June through September, annually |
| Perth Canyon | Southeast Indian Ocean; southwestern Australia | January through May, annually |
| Southwest Australia Canyons | Southeast Indian Ocean; southwestern Australia | Year-round |

Note: The boundaries and periods of OBIAs will be kept on file in NMFS' Office of Protected Resources and its website at http://www/nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/permits/incidental/military.htm.

(i) **Operational Exception for SURTASS LFA Sound Field in OBIAs.** During military operations, SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions may exceed 180 dB re: 1 µPa (rms) within the boundaries of an OBIA, including operating within an OBIA, when the Navy determines that it is: 1) operationally necessary to continue tracking an existing underwater contact; or 2) operationally necessary to detect a new underwater contact within the OBIA. This exception does not apply to routine training and testing with the SURTASS LFA sonar systems.

(j) **Mission Planning.** The Navy must maintain a running calculation/estimation of takes of each species and stocks over the effective period of these regulations. The Navy will plan all SURTASS LFA sonar missions to ensure that no more than 12 percent of any marine mammal species or stock would be taken by Level B harassment annually. This annual per-stock cap of 12 percent applies regardless of the number of SURTASS LFA sonar vessels operating. The Navy must coordinate to ensure that this condition is met for all vessels combined.

**III. MONITORING**

1. The Navy must perform:

(a) **Visual Mitigation Monitoring:**

(1) Marine mammal biologists qualified in conducting at-sea marine mammal visual monitoring from surface vessels will train and qualify designated ship personnel as lookouts to conduct at-sea visual monitoring. This training may be accomplished either in-person, or via video training.

(2) Marine mammal biologists will train the lookouts in the most effective means to ensure quick and effective communication within the ship's command structure to facilitate implementation of protective measures if they observe marine mammals.

(3) Conduct visual monitoring from the ship's bridge during all daylight hours (30 minutes before sunrise until 30 minutes after sunset). During activities that employ SURTASS LFA sonar in the active mode,

4

**Attachment 1**

the SURTASS vessels shall have lookouts to maintain a topside watch with standard binoculars (7x) and with the naked eye.

(b) **Passive Acoustic Mitigation Monitoring:**
(1) Use the low frequency, passive SURTASS sonar system to listen for vocalizing marine mammals.

(c) **Active Acoustic Mitigation Monitoring:**
(1) Use the HF/M3 active sonar to locate and track marine mammals in relation to the SURTASS LFA sonar vessel and the sound field produced by the SURTASS LFA sonar source array, subject to the ramp-up requirements.

2. Mitigation monitoring under Conditions III.1(a), (b), and (c) must:

(a) Commence at least 30 minutes before the first SURTASS LFA sonar transmission (30 minutes before sunrise for visual monitoring);
(a) Continue between sonar transmissions (pings); and
(a) Continue either at least 15 minutes after completion of SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions (30 minutes after sunset for visual monitoring) or if marine mammals are showing abnormal behavioral patterns, for a period of time until behavior patterns return to normal or conditions prevent continued observations.

3. The Navy must:

(a) Cooperate with NMFS and any other federal agency for monitoring the impacts of the activity on marine mammals; and
(b) Designate qualified on-site individuals to conduct the mitigation, monitoring, and reporting activities specified in this NDE.

4. The Navy will conduct all monitoring required under this NDE to increase knowledge of the affected marine mammal species. The Navy must:

(a) Consider recommendations on the different types of monitoring/research that could increase the understanding of the potential effects of SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions on beaked whales and/or harbor porpoises.
(b) Continue to assess data from the Navy Marine Mammal Monitoring (M3) program and work toward making some portion of that data, after appropriate security reviews, available to scientists with appropriate clearances. Any portions of the analyses conducted by these scientists based on these data that are determined to be unclassified after appropriate security reviews should be made publicly available.
(c) Continue to collect ambient noise data and explore the feasibility of declassifying and archiving the ambient noise data for incorporation into appropriate ocean noise research efforts.

**IV. REPORTING**

1. **Classified and Unclassified Quarterly Reports.** The Navy must submit classified and unclassified quarterly mission reports to the Director, Office of Protected Resources, NMFS no later than 45 days after the end of each quarter, beginning on the date of effectiveness of this NDE. Each quarterly mission report will include summaries of all active-mode sonar missions completed during that quarter. At a minimum, each classified mission report must contain the following information:

(a) Dates, times, and location of each vessel during each mission.
(b) Information on sonar transmissions during each mission and records of any delays or suspensions.
(c) Location of the SURTASS LFA sonar mitigation and buffer zones in relation to the LFA sonar array.

5

**Attachment 1**

(d) Marine mammal observations including animal type and/or species, number of animals sighted, date and time of observations, type of detection (visual, passive acoustic, HF/M3 sonar), bearing and range from vessel, abnormal behavior (if any), and remarks/narrative (as necessary).
(e) The report will include the Navy's estimates of the percentages of marine mammal stocks affected (both for the quarter and cumulatively for the year) by SURTASS LFA sonar military readiness activities (both within and outside the LFA sonar mitigation and buffer zones), using predictive modeling based on mission locations, dates/times of operations, system characteristics, LF A sonar transmission durations, oceanographic environmental conditions, and animal demographics.
(f) If no SURTASS LFA sonar missions are completed during a quarter, a report of negative activity will be provided.

2. **Annual Unclassified Report.** The Navy must submit an annual, unclassified report to the Director, Office of Protected Resources, NMFS, no later than 60 days after the annual anniversary of the execution of this NDE. At a minimum, the annual report will contain the following:

(a) An unclassified summary of the year's quarterly reports.
(b) The Navy's estimates of the percentages of marine mammal stocks affected by SURTASS LFA sonar military readiness activities (both within and outside the LFA sonar mitigation and buffer zones), using predictive modeling based on mission locations, dates/times of operations, system characteristics, LFA sonar transmission durations, oceanographic environmental conditions, and animal demographics.
(c) An analysis of the effectiveness of the mitigation measures with recommendations for improvements, where applicable.
(d) An assessment of any long-term effects from SURTASS LFA sonar military readiness activities a.
(e) Any discernible or estimated cumulative impacts from SURTASS LFA sonar military readiness activities.

3. **Status on Marine Mammal Monitoring (M3) Program.** The Navy must provide a status update to NMFS, in proximity to the annual anniversary of the execution of this NDE, on efforts to assess the data collected by the Marine Mammal Monitoring (M3) program and progress toward making some portion of that data, after appropriate security reviews, available to scientists with appropriate clearances. Any portions of the analyses conducted by these scientists based on these data that are determined to be unclassified after appropriate security reviews should be made publicly available. The status update may be submitted with the Navy's annual unclassified report.

4. **Marine Mammal Ship Strike Reporting**. In the event of a ship strike by the SURTASS LFA sonar vessel, at any time or place, the Navy must:

(a) Immediately, or as soon as clearance procedures allow, report to NMFS the species identification (if known), the size and length of the animal, location (lat/long) of the animal (or the strike if the animal has disappeared), whether the animal is alive or dead (or unknown), including an estimate of its injury status if alive (injured but alive, injured and moving, unknown, etc.).
(b) Report the incident to the Chief, Permits and Conservation Division, Office of Protected Resources, NMFS, at 301-427-8401 and/or by email to Jolie.Harrison@noaa.gov and Dale.Youngkin@noaa.gov.
(c) Report as soon as feasible to the NMFS the vessel's name, class/type, and length, as well as operational status, speed and vessel heading.
(d) Provide NMFS a photo or video of the struck animal, if equipment is available.

5. **Marine Mammal Stranding Reporting.** During SURTASS LFA sonar military readiness activities personnel onboard a SURTASS LFA vessel shall systematically observe for injured or disabled marine mammals and

6

**Attachment 1**

monitor the principal marine mammal stranding networks and other media to correlate analysis of any whale strandings that could potentially be associated with SURTASS LFA sonar activities, the Navy shall:

(a) Ensure that NMFS is notified immediately, or as soon as clearance procedures allow, if an injured, stranded, or dead marine mammal is observed during or shortly after (within 24 hours) and in the vicinity of any SURTASS LFA sonar activities. The Navy will report the incident to the Chief, Permits and Conservation Division, Office of Protected Resources, NMFS, at 301-427-8401 and/or by email to Jolie.Harrison@noaa.gov and Dale.Youngkin@noaa.gov.

(b) Provide NMFS with species or description of the animal(s), the condition of the animal(s) (including carcass condition if the animal is dead), location, time of first discovery, observed behaviors (if alive), and photo or video (if available).

(c) In the event that personnel onboard a SURTASS LFA vessel observe an injured, stranded, or dead marine mammal during transit, or that is not in the vicinity of, or found during or shortly after SURTASS LFA sonar military readiness activities, the Navy will report the same information to NMFS as listed above as soon as operationally feasible and clearance procedures allow.

7

# NAVY APPLICATION FOR RULEMAKING AND LETTER OF AUTHORIZATION UNDER THE MARINE MAMMAL PROTECTION ACT FOR SURTASS LFA SONAR; JUNE 2018, TRANSMITTAL LETTER

DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY
OFFICE OF THE CHIEF OF NAVAL OPERATIONS
2000 NAVY PENTAGON
WASHINGTON, DC 20350-2000

9462
June 4, 2018

From: Director, Undersea Capabilities Branch (OPNAV N2/N6F24)
To: Ms. Donna Wieting
Director, Office of Protected Resources (F/PR)
National Marine Fisheries Service
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
1315 East-West Highway
Silver Spring, Maryland 20910

Subj: APPLICATION FOR RULEMAKING AND LETTER OF AUTHORIZATION UNDER THE MARINE MAMMAL PROTECTION ACT FOR TRAINING AND TESTING ACTIVITIES ASSOCIATED WITH USE OF SURVEILLANCE TOWED ARRAY SENSOR SYSTEM LOW FREQUENCY ACTIVE (SURTASS LFA) SONAR

Encl: Application for Rulemaking and Letter of Authorization Under the Marine Mammal Protection Act for Activities Associated with Use of Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) Sonar

1. Pursuant to Section 101(a)(5)(A) of the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) of 1972, as amended, the Department of the Navy (hereafter Navy) is submitting an application for regulations and an incidental take authorization for the use of Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar during training and testing activities. Marine mammals would be incidentally harassed due to the underwater sound generated by the use of SURTASS LFA sonar systems during training and testing activities in the western and central North Pacific Ocean and eastern Indian Ocean.

2. As a result, the Navy is requesting rulemaking and a LOA under the MMPA for the taking of marine mammals by Level B harassment incidental to the use SURTASS LFA sonar systems within the western and central Pacific and eastern Indian oceans. Currently, the Navy has four surveillance ships with SURTASS LFA sonar systems onboard: United States Naval Ship (USNS) VICTORIOUS (Tactical-Auxiliary General Ocean Surveillance [T-AGOS] 19), USNS ABLE (T-AGOS 20), USNS EFFECTIVE (T-AGOS 21), and USNS IMPECCABLE (T-AGOS 23). The Navy may develop and field additional SURTASS LFA sonar equipped vessels, either to replace

Subj: APPLICATION FOR RULEMAKING AND LETTER OF AUTHORIZATION UNDER THE MARINE MAMMAL PROTECTION ACT FOR TRAINING AND TESTING ACTIVITIES ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF SURVEILLANCE TOWED ARRAY SENSOR SYSTEM LOW FREQUENCY ACTIVE (SURTASS LFA) SONAR

or complement, the Navy's current *SURTASS* LFA sonar capable fleet.

3. The complete application is provided as enclosure (1). This application for rulemaking and an LOA is the fifth such application the Navy has submitted to the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) for use of SURTASS LFA sonar.

4. The basis of this fifth request for rulemaking and an LOA is: (1) the analysis of spatial and temporal distributions of protected marine mammals in areas in which SURTASS LFA sonar would be used, (2) a review of activities that have the potential to affect marine mammals, and (3) a scientific risk assessment to determine the likelihood of impacts from the use of LFA sonar in the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans.

The Navy has narrowed the geographic scope of its application to reflect only those areas of the world's oceans where the Navy anticipates conducting covered SURTASS LFA sonar activities (i.e., training and testing conducted under the authority of the Secretary of the Navy). The Navy has provided greater detail on the types of covered SURTASS LFA sonar activities in its application. The narrowed scope will allow the Navy to more accurately assess and describe only those impacts associated with covered SURTASSS LFA sonar activities in ocean areas where the Navy expects to conduct these activities.

5. The scientific risk analysis as detailed in the Navy's application applies the 2016 NMFS acoustic thresholds for onset of permanent and temporary threshold shift as detailed in *Technical Guidance for Assessing the Effects of Anthropogenic Sound on Marine Mammal Hearing*. The results of the Navy's risk assessment, which included modeling of 15 representative areas of the acoustic regimes and marine mammal species that may be encountered during SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities, are that no (0 percent) Level A harassment is estimated for any marine mammal species or stocks, given that the full suite of mitigation measures were implemented. The primary impact anticipated from SURTASS LFA sonar transmission is MMPA Level B harassment of marine mammals. This application assumes that short-term, non-injurious sound exposures may cause temporary threshold shifts (TTS) or temporary behavioral disruptions, which constitute Level B incidental harassment. The results of the Navy's analysis indicate that for most marine mammal species, the maximum annual percent of the stock or

Subj: APPLICATION FOR RULEMAKING AND LETTER OF AUTHORIZATION UNDER THE MARINE MAMMAL PROTECTION ACT FOR TRAINING AND TESTING ACTIVITIES ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF SURVEILLANCE TOWED ARRAY SENSOR SYSTEM LOW FREQUENCY ACTIVE (SURTASS LFA) SONAR

population that may experience Level B incidental harassment is less than 15 percent. This means that during one 24-hr period during the year, less than 15 percent of the population may react to SURTASS LFA sonar by changing behavior or moving a small distance or may experience TTS. Of the 139 stocks within the SURTASS LFA sonar study area, ten stocks in years 1 to 4 and thirteen stocks in years 5 and beyond have the potential for MMPA Level B incidental harassment greater than 15 percent. The highest percentage of a population that may experience Level B harassment is the WNP stock and DPS of humpback whales at 233.79% and 313.29% in years 1 to 4 and years 5 and beyond, respectively. This means that each individual in the population may react behaviorally or experience TTS two to three times during one year. The percentage of the WNP stock and DPS of humpback whales that may experience Level B harassment is influenced by the size of the population, which is small (1,328 individuals). The next highest stock is the WNP stock of killer whales, with 85.32% and 117.25% in years 1 to 4 and years 5 and beyond, respectively.

Based on the results of the analyses conducted for SURTASS LFA sonar and more than fifteen years of documented results that are summarized in this application and presented in associated NEPA documentation, use of SURTASS LFA sonar, when used in accordance with the mitigation measures (geographic restrictions and monitoring/reporting), support a negative impact determination.

In summary:

- Potential impacts on marine mammal species and stocks are expected to be limited to Level B harassment. Since the potential Level B harassment would not involve long-term displacement or disruption of foraging, breeding, or migrations of marine mammal species or stocks, the Navy does not estimate that the Level B impacts would affect rates of recruitment or survival of the associated marine mammal species and stocks. Thus, impacts on recruitment or survival are expected to be negligible.
    - Level B harassment of marine mammals would not occur in ocean areas that are biologically important to marine mammals (e.g., foraging, reproductive areas, rookeries, ESA critical habitat) or where small, localized populations occur. Received levels above 180 decibels (root mean squared) would not be transmitted in the four identified areas of importance (offshore biologically important area [OBIAs]) to marine mammals that are within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar.

3

Subj: APPLICATION FOR RULEMAKING AND LETTER OF AUTHORIZATION UNDER THE MARINE MAMMAL PROTECTION ACT FOR TRAINING AND TESTING ACTIVITIES ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF SURVEILLANCE TOWED ARRAY SENSOR SYSTEM LOW FREQUENCY ACTIVE (SURTASS LFA) SONAR

- Based on the Navy's impact analysis results, no mortality and no injury (i.e., Level A harassment) of marine mammals may occur as a result of SURTASS LFA sonar use, and the potential to cause strandings of marine mammals is considered negligible.
- The use of SURTASS LFA sonar would entail the addition of sound energy to the oceanic ambient noise environment, which in conjunction with the sound produced by other anthropogenic sources, may increase the overall ambient noise level. Increases in ambient noise levels have the potential to affect marine animals by causing masking. However, broadband, continuous low-frequency ambient noise is more likely to affect marine mammals than narrowband, low duty cycle SURTASS LFA sonar. Moreover, the bandwidth of any SURTASS LFA sonar transmitted signal is limited (approximately 30 Hz), the average maximum pulse length is 60 sec, signals do not remain at a single frequency for more than 10 seconds, and the system is off nominally 90 to 92.5 percent of the time during an at-sea activities. With the nominal duty cycle of 7.5 to 10 percent, masking by LFA sonar would only occur over a very small temporal scale. The cumulative impacts related to the potential for masking are not a reasonably foreseeable significant adverse impact to marine mammals.
- Use of SURTASS LFA sonar would not impact the habitat of marine mammals nor result in loss or modification of marine habitat.
- The availability of marine mammals for subsistence use would not be adversely impacted.
- A comprehensive suite of mitigation measures, including three types of monitoring (passive acoustic, active acoustic, and visual) during LFA sonar transmissions, coastal standoff range (180 decibel sound field restricted to 22 km [12 nmi] from shore), and OBIA restrictions (sound field produced by sonar below 180 decibel received level), would be implemented to reduce the potential for harassment to marine mammals.

6. SURTASS LFA sonar systems would be operated in accordance with the geographic restrictions and monitoring mitigation delineated in the Navy's application.

4

Subj: APPLICATION FOR RULEMAKING AND LETTER OF AUTHORIZATION UNDER THE MARINE MAMMAL PROTECTION ACT FOR TRAINING AND TESTING ACTIVITIES ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF SURVEILLANCE TOWED ARRAY SENSOR SYSTEM LOW FREQUENCY ACTIVE (SURTASS LFA) SONAR

7. During the period of authorization, the means to increase knowledge of marine mammal species or stocks and determine the level of impacts on marine mammals from potential takes would be determined by the Navy in consultation with NMFS.

8. As the point of contact on this matter, I can be reached at (703) 695-8266.

CDR Patrick Havel

Copy to:
J. Harrison
D. Youngkin
C. Tortorici
K. Petersen
E. MacMillan
D. Kitchen

5

# NAVY BIOLOGICAL EVALUATION FOR SURTASS LFA SONAR TO INITIATE SECTION 7 CONSULTATION PURSUANT TO THE ENDANGERED SPECIES ACT, JUNE AND DECEMBER 2018, TRANSMITTAL LETTERS

# NMFS INITIATION OF SECTION 7 CONSULTATION FOR SURTASS LFA SONAR

DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY
OFFICE OF THE CHIEF OF NAVAL OPERATIONS
2000 NAVY PENTAGON
WASHINGTON, DC 20350

IN REPLY REFER TO

9462
15 June 2018

From: Director, Undersea Capabilities Branch (N2N6F24)
To: Director, Office of Protected Resources
National Marine Fisheries Service
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
1315 East-West Highway
Silver Spring, Maryland 20910

Subj: BIOLOGICAL EVALUATION FOR SURVEILLANCE TOWED ARRAY SENSOR SYSTEM (SURTASS) LOW FREQUENCY ACTIVE (LFA) SONAR TO INITIATE SECTION 7 ESA CONSULTATION

Encl: Biological Evaluation for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) Sonar; Endangered Species Section 7 Consultation; June 2018

In accordance with Section 7(a)(2) of the Endangered Species Act (ESA) (16 USC 1536(a)(2)), the Department of the Navy (DoN) (hereafter Navy) has prepared the enclosed Biological Evaluation (Enclosure 1) to initiate consultation under the ESA and to request a Biological Opinion (BO) and Incidental Take Statement (ITS) on the training and testing activities of Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System (SURTASS) Low Frequency Active (LFA) sonar in the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans. SURTASS LFA sonar's transmission of underwater sound has the potential to affect ESA-listed marine mammal, sea turtle, as well as marine and anadromous fish species and their designated critical habitat. To document its consideration of the potential effects on the marine and anadromous species and critical habitat listed or proposed for listing under the ESA that are present in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar, the Navy has prepared the enclosed Biological Evaluation (BE).

The Navy currently has four ocean surveillance ships that are equipped with SURTASS LFA sonar systems: USNS VICTORIOUS (Tactical-Auxiliary General Ocean Surveillance [T-AGOS] 19); USNS ABLE (T-AGOS 20); USNS EFFECTIVE (T-AGOS 21); and USNS IMPECCABLE (T-AGOS 23). The Navy may develop and field additional SURTASS LFA sonar equipped vessels, either to replace or complement the Navy's current SURTASS LFA sonar-capable

SUBJ: BIOLOGICAL EVALUATION FOR SURVEILLANCE TOWED ARRAY SENSOR SYSTEM (SURTASS) LOW FREQUENCY ACTIVE (LFA) SONAR

fleet. The Navy proposes to continue using SURTASS LFA sonar systems onboard these vessels within the study area, which includes the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans. As part of its Proposed Action, the Navy has narrowed the geographic scope to reflect only those areas of the world's oceans where the Navy anticipates conducting covered SURTASS LFA sonar activities in the foreseeable future. The narrowed scope would allow the Navy to more accurately assess and describe only those impacts associated with SURTASSS LFA sonar activities in areas where the Navy expects to conduct these activities.

The Navy proposes to implement procedural and geographic mitigation measures in association with the use of SURTASS LFA sonar. Specifically, the Navy would ensure that received levels of LFA sonar transmissions are below 180 decibels relative to 1 microPascal (root-mean squared) (dB re 1 µPa [rms]) within 12 nautical miles (22 kilometers) of any emergent land and at the boundary of any of the 29 designated offshore biologically important areas (OBIAs) during their effective periods of important biological activity. Of the 29 existing OBIAs, four are located within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. Procedural mitigation measures include visual, passive acoustic, and active acoustic (high frequency marine mammal monitoring [HF/M3] sonar) monitoring to minimize effects to marine animals when SURTASS LFA sonar is transmitting by providing the means to detect marine mammals and sea turtles in the 180-dB mitigation zone for SURTASS LFA sonar, and then suspending or delaying LFA sonar transmissions if marine animals are detected. Additionally, the received levels of LFA sonar transmissions would not exceed 145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) within known recreational dive sites.

Pursuant to Section 101 (a)(5)(A) of the Marine Mammal Protection Act of 1972, as amended (MMPA; 16 USC 1371), the Navy has applied for rulemaking and a Letter of Authorization (LOA) for the continued use of SURTASS LFA sonar during training and testing activities. Marine mammals may be incidentally harassed due to the underwater sound generated by the SURTASS LFA sonar systems during at-sea activities. As a result, the Navy requested rulemaking and a LOA under the MMPA for the taking of marine mammals by Level B harassment incidental to the use of SURTASS LFA sonar systems in the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans.

The Navy is in the process of preparing a Draft Supplemental Environmental Impact Statement/Supplemental Overseas

2

SUBJ: BIOLOGICAL EVALUATION FOR SURVEILLANCE TOWED ARRAY SENSOR SYSTEM (SURTASS) LOW FREQUENCY ACTIVE (LFA) SONAR

Environmental Impact Statement (DSEIS/SOEIS) for SURTASS LFA sonar that is planned to be released to the public in August 2018. This DSEIS/SOEIS would provide detailed supporting information for the BE and MMPA Rule and LOA application.

The Navy formally requests a BO and ITS from the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) for SURTASS LFA sonar activities following review of the information and data presented in the enclosed BE.

As the point of contact on this matter, I can be reached at 703-695-8266 or at <patrick.havel@navy.mil>.

CDR Patrick Havel

Enclosure: 1) Biological Evaluation for SURTASS LFA Sonar

Copy to:
C. Tortorici
K. Petersen
E. MacMillan
H. Goldstein
J. Harrison
D. Youngkin
D. Kitchen
B. Ward

3

DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY
OFFICE OF THE CHIEF OF NAVAL OPERATIONS
2000 NAVY PENTAGON
WASHINGTON DC 20350-2000

5090
Ser N45/19U132358
March 28, 2019

Ms. Donna Wieting
Director, Office of Protected Resources
National Marine Fisheries Service
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
1315 East-West Highway
Silver Spring, Maryland 20910

Subj: BIOLOGICAL EVALUATION FOR SURVEILLANCE TOWED ARRAY SENSOR SYSTEM (SURTASS) LOW FREQUENCY ACTIVE (LFA) SONAR TO INITIATE SECTION 7 ESA CONSULTATION

Encl: (1) Final Biological Evaluation for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) Sonar; Endangered Species Section 7 Consultation; Amended December 2018
(2) N2N6F24 ltr Ser 9462 of 15 June 18

In accordance with Section 7(a)(2) of the Endangered Species Act (ESA) (16 USC 1536(a)(2)), the Department of the Navy (DoN) (hereafter Navy) is requesting a Biological Opinion (BO) and Incidental Take Statement (ITS) on the training and testing activities of Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System (SURTASS) Low Frequency Active (LFA) sonar in the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans for the effective period beginning August 2019 and continuing into the reasonably foreseeable future. SURTASS LFA sonar's transmission of underwater sound has the potential to affect ESA-listed marine mammals, sea turtles, as well as marine and anadromous fish species and their designated critical habitat. To document its consideration of the potential effects on the marine and anadromous species and critical habitat listed under the ESA present in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar, the Navy prepared and submitted the enclosed Final Biological Evaluation (BE), final amendment (Enclosure 1) on 14 December 2018. This letter verifies the final submittal of the Navy's Biological Evaluation and requests the 14 December 2018 date be considered the initiation of consultation under the ESA.

The Navy currently has four ocean surveillance ships that are equipped with SURTASS LFA sonar systems: USNS VICTORIOUS (Tactical-Auxiliary General Ocean Surveillance [T-AGOS] 19); USNS ABLE (T-AGOS 20); USNS EFFECTIVE (T-AGOS 21); and USNS IMPECCABLE (T-AGOS 23). The Navy may develop and field additional SURTASS LFA sonar equipped vessels, either to replace or complement the Navy's current SURTASS LFA sonar-capable fleet. The Navy proposes to continue using SURTASS LFA sonar systems onboard these vessels within the study area, which includes the non-polar waters of western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans. As part of its Proposed Action, the Navy has narrowed the geographic scope to reflect only those areas of the world's oceans where the Navy

5090
Ser N45/19U132358
March 28, 2019

anticipates conducting SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities under the authority of the Secretary of the Navy now and into the reasonably foreseeable future.

The Navy proposes to implement geographic and procedural mitigation measures in association with the use of SURTASS LFA sonar. Specifically, the Navy would ensure that received levels of LFA sonar transmissions are below 180 decibels relative to 1 microPascal (root-mean squared) (dB re 1 µPa [rms]) within 12 nautical miles (22 kilometers) of any emergent land and at the boundary of any designated offshore biologically important areas (OBIAs) during their effective periods of important biological activity. Of the 29 existing OBIAs, four are located within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. Additionally, the Navy would not conduct training and testing activities involving the transmission of SURTASS LFA sonar within the territorial seas (ranging to 12 nm from the shore baseline) of any foreign nation. Lastly, the Navy would ensure that received levels of LFA sonar transmissions would not exceed 145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) within known recreational and commercial dive sites. Procedural mitigation measures include visual, passive acoustic, and active acoustic (high frequency marine mammal monitoring [HF/M3] sonar) monitoring when SURTASS LFA sonar is transmitting to minimize effects to marine animals by providing the means to detect marine mammals and sea turtles in the mitigation zone for SURTASS LFA sonar and then suspending or delaying LFA sonar transmissions if marine animals are detected.

Pursuant to Section 101(a)(5)(A) of the Marine Mammal Protection Act of 1972, as amended (MMPA; 16 USC 1371), the Navy has applied for rulemaking and a Letter of Authorization (LOA) for the continued use of SURTASS LFA sonar during training and testing activities for the period from August 2019 through August 2026. Marine mammals may be incidentally harassed due to the underwater sound generated by the SURTASS LFA sonar systems during at-sea activities. As a result, the Navy requested rulemaking and a LOA under the MMPA for the taking of marine mammals by Level B harassment incidental to the use of SURTASS LFA sonar systems in the western and central North Pacific and Eastern Indian oceans.

The Navy has prepared a Draft Supplemental Environmental Impact Statement/Supplemental Overseas Environmental Impact Statement (DSEIS/SOEIS) for SURTASS LFA sonar that was released to the public in August 2018. The DSEIS/SOEIS provides detailed supporting information for the BE and MMPA Rule and LOA application.

The Navy formally requests a BO and ITS from the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) for SURTASS LFA sonar activities beginning August 2019 and continuing into the foreseeable future following review of the information and data presented in the enclosed BE.

2

5090
Ser N45/19U132358
March 28, 2019

My point of contact for this matter is Ronald (Ron) B. Carmichael, who can be reached at (703) 695-5269 or ronald.carmichael@navy.mil, should you have any questions.

Sincerely,

S. T. GOODFELLOW
Director,
Energy and Environmental Readiness Division

Copy to:
C. Tortorici, NMFS OPR5
K. Petersen, NMFS OPR5
J. Molineaux, NMFS OPR5
H. Goldstein, NMFS OPR5
J. Harrison, NMFS OPR1
W. Piniak, NMFS OPR1
DASNE
NLO

3

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
NATIONAL MARINE FISHERIES SERVICE
Silver Spring, MD 20910

APR - 3 2019

**Refer to NMFS No: OPR-2019-00120**

Susan T. Goodfellow
Director, Energy and Environmental Director(N45)
Office of the Chief of Naval Operations
2000 Navy Pentagon
Washington, DC 20350

RE: Request for Consultation Pursuant to Section 7 of the Endangered Species Act on U.S. Navy's Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active Sonar routine training and testing operations (August 2019 through August 2026)

Dear Ms. Goodfellow:

On June 15, 2018, the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) received your request for formal consultation for proposed routine training and testing operations of United States Navy Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System (SURTASS) Low Frequency Active (LFA) sonar in the western and central north Pacific and eastern Indian Oceans for a five year period from August 2019 through August 2024 under the Endangered Species Act of 1973, as amended (ESA; 16 U.S.C. 1531 et seq.). At that time, NMFS began review of your request and associated documents. However, due to amendments made to the MMPA from the Fiscal Year 2019 National Defense Authorization Act, the proposed SURTASS LFA activities were extended to a seven year period. Subsequently, on March 29, 2019, NMFS received your final request for formal consultation for proposed routine training and testing operations of SURTASS LFA sonar from August 15, 2019, to August 14, 2026, in the western and central North Pacific and Indian Oceans. This response to your request was prepared by the National Marine Fisheries Service pursuant to section 7(a)(2) of the Endangered Species Act, implementing regulations at (50 CFR §402), and agency guidance.

Based on our initial review of the submitted information on December 14, 2018, we determined that there was sufficient information to initiate formal section 7 consultation. As a result, we are initiating consultation as of December 14, 2018. Furthermore, due to previous formal agreements between NMFS and the Navy, we have determined to finalize our biological opinion on or before August 6, 2019. During consultation we may request additional information or clarification to assist us in completing this consultation.

The ESA requires that after initiation of formal consultation, the action agency may not make any irreversible or irretrievable commitment of resources that would preclude the formulation or implementation of any reasonable and prudent alternatives that would avoid violating section 7(a)(2) (50 CFR §402.09). This prohibition is in force during the consultation process and continues until the requirements of section 7(a)(2) are satisfied.

Printed on Recycled Paper

If you have any questions, please contact Jonathan Molineaux at (301) 427-8440, or by e-mail at jonathan.molineaux@noaa.gov or me at (301) 427-8495 or by e-mail at cathy.tortorici@noaa.gov.

Sincerely,

Cathryn E. Tortorici
Chief, ESA Interagency Cooperation Division
Office of Protected Resources

2

# EXEMPLAR DISTRIBUTION/NOTICE OF AVAILABILITY LETTER FOR DRAFT SEIS/SOEIS FOR SURTASS LFA SONAR

**DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY**
OFFICE OF THE CHIEF OF NAVAL OPERATIONS
2000 NAVY PENTAGON
WASHINGTON, DC 20350

IN REPLY REFER TO
9462
August 24, 2018

U.S. EPA, Region 9
Environmental Review Section
75 Hawthorne Street
San Francisco, CA 94105

SUBJECT: AVAILABILITY OF DRAFT SEIS/SOEIS FOR SURTASS LFA SONAR

Dear EPA Environmental Review Section:

The U.S. Navy has prepared a Draft Supplemental Environmental Impact Statement/Supplemental Overseas Environmental Impact Statement (DSEIS/SOEIS) on the use of Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System (SURTASS) Low Frequency Active (LFA) sonar, which is now available for download and review. The Final SEIS/SOEIS will be the basis for consultations associated with regulatory permits and authorizations in 2019. These permits include rulemaking, a letter of authorization (LOA), and an incidental take statement for the incidental taking of marine mammals by harassment from August 13, 2019 to August 12, 2026.

The Navy, along with the National Marine Fisheries Service as a cooperating agency, has prepared the DSEIS/SOEIS in accordance with the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA), Executive Order 12114, and Navy guidance for implementing NEPA. The proposed action detailed in the Draft SEIS/SOEIS is the continued use of SURTASS LFA sonar onboard U.S. Navy surveillance ships for training and testing conducted under the authority of the Secretary of the Navy in the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans. Currently, four Navy surveillance ships use SURTASS LFA sonar systems, but the Navy may develop and field additional SURTASS LFA sonar equipped vessels, either to replace or complement the current SURTASS LFA sonar equipped fleet. SURTASS LFA sonar activities are conducted with certain geographic and operational mitigation and monitoring protocols.

The Draft SEIS/SOEIS evaluates the potential environmental impacts associated with the two action alternatives and a No-Action Alternative to the following resource areas: air quality, marine water resources, biological resources, and economic resources. Under the Navy's Preferred Alternative, SURTASS LFA sonar vessels would transmit a total of 496 hours of LFA sonar transmissions per year across all SURTASS LFA sonar equipped vessels in the first four years of the authorization period, with sonar transmit hours increasing to 592 total hours of LFA sonar transmissions in year five and into the foreseeable future, regardless of the number of vessels.

1

9462
August 24, 2018

The DSEIS/SOEIS for SURTASS LFA sonar is available for downloading or viewing on the SURTASS LFA sonar webpage: <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com>. If an electronic copy of the DSEIS/SOEIS on CD is needed instead of downloading from the Internet, please contact us with the request at eisteam@surtass-lfa-eis.com or at the address below.

The 45-day public comment period for the Draft SEIS/SOEIS will commence when the Notice of Availability (NOA) is published in the *Federal Register*. Comments on the DSEIS/SOEIS may be sent to the Navy by mail or e-mail at:

Attn: SURTASS LFA Sonar SEIS/SOEIS Program Manager
4350 Fairfax Drive, Suite 600
Arlington, VA 22203-1623
E-Mail: eisteam@surtass-lfa-eis.com

Comments received within the 45-day comment period would be addressed in the Navy's Final SEIS/SOEIS, which is planned to be available for public viewing in June 2019. Additional information about SURTASS LFA sonar may be found on the webpage for SURTASS LFA sonar: <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com>.

Sincerely,

CDR Patrick Havel

2

# HAWAII OFFICE OF PLANNING—FEDERAL CONSISTENCY DETERMINATION FOR SURTASS LFA SONAR PURSUANT TO THE COASTAL ZONE MANAGEMENT ACT

DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY
OFFICE OF THE CHIEF OF NAVAL OPERATIONS
2000 NAVY PENTAGON
WASHINGTON DC 20350-2000

5090
Ser N45/19U132365
April 22, 2019

Mr. Leo Asuncion
Director, Hawaii Office of Planning
P.O. Box 2359
Honolulu, HI 96804

Dear Mr. Asuncion:

SUBJECT: COASTAL ZONE MANAGEMENT ACT FEDERAL CONSISTENCY DETERMINATION FOR SURVEILLANCE TOWED ARRAY SENSOR SYSTEM LOW FREQUENCY ACTIVE (SURTASS LFA) SONAR

I am writing in response to your letter dated September 11, 2018 (s/n DTS201809101558NA) regarding the Navy's consistency determination for SURTASS LFA sonar. This letter was submitted in response to Navy's publication of a draft Environmental Impact Statement for SURTASS LFA sonar.

Consistent with our conversation in early March with Mr. John Nakagawa of the State of Hawaii Coastal Zone Management (CZM) Program, the U.S. Navy will continue to adhere to the conditions set forth in the August 11, 2000 Hawaii CZM consistency determination (enclosure (1)).

The existing guidelines within that conditional determination include:

a. No LFA sonar use in water over Penguin Bank (extent defined by the 100-fathom [183-m] depth contour) or within 3 nautical miles (NM) of the shore of all islands within the State of Hawaii;

b. Received levels of LFA sonar transmissions will not exceed 145 dB in Hawaii State waters (3 NM from shore); in known recreation or commercial dive sites or the waters over Penguin Bank to a depth of 100 fathoms; and

c. SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions will not exceed a maximum of 288 total hours of LFA sonar transmissions per year in waters of the Hawaiian Archipelago.

Because the U.S. Navy's activities remain the same and we continue to comply with all the conditions found within the August 2000 Hawaii CZM consistency determination when conducting testing and training of SURTASS LFA sonar in the waters of the State of Hawaii, no further consultation is required.

5090
Ser N45/19U132365
April 22, 2019

My point of contact for additional information is Benjamin Colbert; benjamin.colbert@navy.mil, 703-695-5270.

Sincerely,

SUSAN T. GOODFELLOW
Director,
Energy and Environmental Readiness Division

Enclosure: (1) Hawaii Coastal Zone Management Program Federal Consistency Determination dated 11 August 2000

Copy to:
SURTASS LFA Sonar SEIS/SOEIS Program Manager (9462)
Commander, U.S. Pacific Fleet (N465)

2

# APPENDIX B: MARINE MAMMAL IMPACT ANALYSIS

# APPENDIX B: MARINE MAMMAL IMPACT ANALYSIS

This appendix documents the elements of the acoustic impact analysis for marine mammals presented in Chapter 4 of this SEIS/SOEIS. The acoustic impact analysis represents an evolution that builds upon the analysis, methodology, and impact criteria documented in previous SURTASS LFA sonar NEPA efforts (Department of the Navy [DoN], 2001, 2007, 2012, 2015, 2017), which are incorporated by reference.

The acoustic impact analysis of SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions is a multi-step process based on using the Acoustic Integration Model© (AIM) to integrate the acoustic field created from the underwater transmissions of LFA sonar with the four-dimensional (4D) movement of marine mammals to estimate their potential sonar exposure. AIM is the foundation for the impact analyses presented herein as it has been for all previous analyses of acoustic impacts on marine mammals associated with SURTASS LFA sonar.

Descriptions of the proposed action, including the operating characteristics of LFA sonar, are included in Chapter 2, while Chapter 3 includes information on the distribution and population estimates of the marine mammal species and stocks that occur in the model areas for SURTASS LFA sonar and are assessed in this SEIS/SOEIS.

**References to Underwater Sound Levels**

- References to underwater sound pressure level (SPL) in this SEIS/SOEIS are values given in decibels (dBs), and are assumed to be standardized at 1 microPascal at 1 m (root mean square) (dB re 1 µPa at 1 m [rms]) for source level (SL) and dB re 1 µPa (rms) for received level (RL), unless otherwise stated (Urick, 1983).
- In this SEIS/SOEIS, underwater sound exposure level (SEL) is a measure of energy, specifically the squared instantaneous pressure integrated over time; the appropriate units for SEL are dB re 1 $\mu Pa^2$-sec (American National Standards Institute [ANSI], 2006; Southall et al., 2007; Urick, 1983).
- The term "Single Ping Equivalent" (SPE) used herein is an intermediate calculation for input to the behavioral risk continuum used in the acoustic impact analysis for SURTASS LFA sonar. SPE accounts for the energy of all LFA sonar transmissions that a modeled animal ("animat") receives during a 24-hr period of SURTASS LFA sonar use as well as an approximation of the manner in which the effect of repeated exposures accumulates. As such, the SPE metric incorporates both physics and biology. SPE is a function of SPL, not SEL. SPE levels will be expressed as "dB SPE" in this document, as they have been presented in preceding environmental compliance documentation for SURTASS LFA sonar: FOEIS/FEIS (DoN, 2001); FSEIS (DoN, 2007); FSEIS/SOEIS (DoN, 2012); FSEIS/SOEIS (DoN, 2015); and FSEIS/SOEIS (DoN, 2017).
- Briefly, SPE accounts for the increased potential for behavioral response due to repeated exposures by adding 5 x log10 (number of pings) to each 1-dB RL increment (Kryter, 1985; Richardson et al., 1995b; Ward, 1968). This calculation is done for each dB level of RL and then summed across all dB levels to determine the dB SPE for that animal. A more generalized formula is provided in the original FOEIS/FEIS (DoN, 2001).

## B-1. Introduction to AIM

AIM is described in detail and has been used in the impact analyses in these preceding environmental compliance documents for SURTASS LFA sonar: FOEIS/FEIS (DoN, 2001), FSEIS (DoN, 2007), FSEIS/SOEIS (DoN, 2012), FSEIS/SOEIS (DoN, 2015), and FSEIS/SOEIS (DoN, 2017). While the information and details on AIM and its use in the analysis of marine mammal acoustic impacts are incorporated by reference, the following summary of AIM is provided for context.

AIM is a Monte Carlo based statistical model in which multiple iterations of realistic predictions of acoustic source use as well as animal distribution and movement patterns are conducted to provide statistical predictions of estimated impacts from exposure to acoustic source transmissions. Each acoustic source and receiver is modeled via the "animat" concept. Animats are computationally simulated animals or objects. When an animat represents an object such as an acoustic source, the speed, direction, and depth are usually specified. When an animat represents an animal, movement is defined by specifying behavioral variables, such as dive parameters, swimming speed, and course/direction changes. This results in a realistic representation of animal movements such as diving patterns that mimic real-world diving patterns of that species. The movement of an animat can also be programmed to respond to environmental factors (e.g., water depth) so that a marine species that normally inhabits a specific environment (e.g., shallow, coastal waters) can be constrained to stay within a specified habitat.

A model run consists of a user-specified number of steps forward in time. During each 30-sec time step, each animat is moved according to the programmed rules describing its behavior and the received sound level at each receiver animat is recorded (in the same units that are used to specify the source level, e.g., dB rms). At the end of each time step, each animat evaluates its environment including its three-dimensional (3D) location. If an environmental variable has exceeded the user-specified boundary value (e.g., the animat has moved into water that is too deep), then the animat will alter its course to respond to the environment. These environmental responses are called "aversions". There are many aversion variables that can be used to specify an animat's reactions and to program realistic behavior, such as bathymetry, geographic boundaries, water temperature, and density of prey species.

## B-2 AIM Modeling Inputs

Fifteen representative model areas in the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans were selected for analysis to represent the acoustic regimes and marine mammal species that may be encountered during LFA sonar training and testing activities (Table B-1). The spatial extent of each model area was defined as the range at which the receive level (RL) from SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions was down at least 100 dB from the array source level (SL) (i.e., transmission loss was at least 100 dB). Seasons as applied herein are defined according to the following monthly breakdown:

- Winter: December, January, and February
- Spring: March, April, and May
- Summer: June, July, and August
- Fall: September, October, and November.

For consistency, the seasonality for marine mammals in all model areas is presented according to this monthly arrangement, even for the model area located in the southern hemisphere (Model Area #14, Northwest of Australia). Winter (encompassing the months of December, January, and February)

**Table B-1. Locations of the 15 Representative Model Areas for SURTASS LFA Sonar.**

| *Model Area* | *Model Area Name* | *Model Area Center* | *Notes* |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | East of Japan | 38°N, 148°E | |
| 2 | North Philippine Sea | 29°N, 136°E | |
| 3 | West Philippine Sea | 22°N/124°E | |
| 4 | Offshore Guam | 11°N, 145°E | Navy Mariana Islands Testing and Training Area |
| 5 | Sea of Japan | 39°N, 132°E | |
| 6 | East China Sea | 26°N, 125°E | |
| 7 | South China Sea | 14°N, 114°E | |
| 8 | Offshore Japan 25° to 40°N | 30°N, 165°E | |
| 9 | Offshore Japan 10° to 25°N | 15°N, 165°E | |
| 10 | Hawaiʻi North | 25°N, 158°W | Navy Hawaiʻi-Southern California Testing and Training Area; Hawaiʻi Range Complex |
| 11 | Hawaiʻi South | 19.5°N, 158.5°W | Navy Hawaiʻi-Southern California Testing and Training Area; Hawaiʻi Range Complex |
| 12 | Offshore Sri Lanka | 5°N, 85°E | |
| 13 | Andaman Sea | 7.5°N, 96°E | |
| 14 | Northwest of Australia | 18°S, 110°E | |
| 15 | Northeast of Japan | 52°N, 163°E | |

for Model Area #14 is actually austral summer, when for instance, most baleen whales would be expected to be foraging in Antarctic waters.

The marine mammal species potentially occurring in a modeling area were determined, along with any seasonal differences in their occurrence. Modeled species were simulated by creating animats programmed with behavioral values describing their dive behavior, including dive depth, surfacing time, dive duration, swimming speed, and direction change. Animats were randomly distributed over the model simulation area.

The modeled marine mammal animats were set to populate the simulation area with densities of 0.086, 0.17, or 0.34 animats/$nmi^2$ (0.025, 0.05, or 0.1 animats/$km^2$), densities often higher than those estimated in the marine environment. This "over population" of the modeling environment ensures that the result of the simulation is not unduly influenced by the chance placement of a few simulated marine mammals. To obtain final harassment estimates, the modeled results are normalized by the ratio of the modeled animat density to the real-world marine mammal density estimate. This allows for greater statistical power without overestimating risk.

During AIM modeling, the animats were programmed to "reflect" off the boundaries of the area to remain within the simulation area. This reflection maintains the appropriate density of animats since no animats are allowed to diffuse out of the simulation area. It is also a more protective factor in the modeling results since it keeps animats within the simulation area and available for additional acoustic exposure during the 24-hr simulation period. In reality, an animat that reflects off the simulation boundary would actually leave the simulation area, whereas the animat reflecting into the simulation would actually be a new animal with no acoustic exposure entering the simulation area. Since acoustic exposure accumulates over the 24-hr modeling period, the reflected animat may have a higher exposure than if it were considered as two separate animals.

## B-2.1 Acoustic Propagation

### B-2.1.1 Sound Source Waypoints

Each model area is defined by geographic coordinates in which the simulated SURTASS LFA sonar vessel travels in a triangular pattern (Figure B-1). For modeling purposes, the center of each model area is the center of the vessel track. For each model area, the ship speed was modeled at 4 kt (7.4 kph), and in all cases, the time on each bearing was 8 hr (480 min). The duration of LFA sonar transmissions was modeled as 24 hr at each model area, with a signal duration of 60 sec and a duty cycle of 10 percent (i.e., the source transmitted for 60 sec every 10 min for 24 hr for a total of 2.4 LFA sonar transmission hours). These operational parameters represent typical SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions during training and testing activities (Chapter 2).

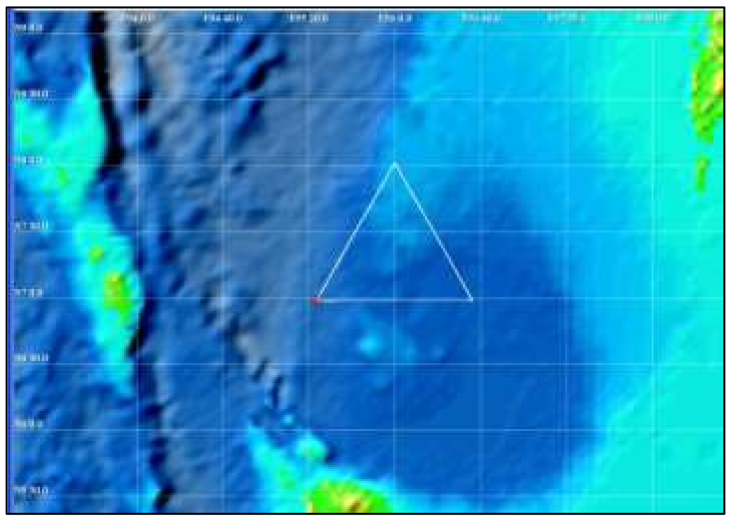


**Figure B-1. Modeled Ship Movement Pattern of SURTASS LFA Sonar Vessel during Simulated Use.**

### B-2.1.2 Transmission Loss and Modeling Area

The LFA sonar source was modeled as a vertical line array using the actual element spacing of the LFA sonar array, with transmissions at a nominal frequency and nominal SL. For this modeling effort, a single frequency of 300 Hz (i.e., the middle of the 100 to 500 Hz band of the system), and an individual element SL of 215 dB re 1 µPa @ 1 m (rms) (SPL) (or an array source level of about 235 dB re 1 µPa @ 1 m (rms) (SPL) in the far-field) were used as these nominal values.

To model the sound fields created by the SURTASS LFA sonar source, the Navy standard parabolic equation (PE) model was used. The bathymetry used was the 2-minute Gridded Global Relief Data set (ETOPO2), with an adjustment to the data that corrects the existing indexing error in the ETOPO2 dataset (NOAA National Geophysical Data Center [NOAA-NGDC], 2006). The sound velocity profiles for each location and season were obtained from the Generalized Digital Environmental Model, Version 3.0 (Carnes, 2009), a standard U.S. Navy OAML database. A wind speed of 15 kt (27.8 kph) was used to calculate surface losses using the Bechmann-Spezzichino formula modified by Leibiger (1978). For bottom loss, province 5 and curve 5 from the consolidated bottom loss upgrade (CBLUG) database (Renner and Spofford, 1985) were used for all sites. Four bearings were modeled per location and a nominal vertical half-beam width of 45° was used. Spherical spreading was assumed within 0.054 nmi (0.1 km) of the LFA sonar source.

## B-2.2 Parameters that Define Animat Movement in AIM

Animals move through four dimensions: 3D space and time. Several parameters are used in AIM to produce simulated movements that accurately represent expected real animal movement patterns. This section provides short descriptions of the various parameters, with nominal values as examples of how the parameters are implemented in AIM. The actual values used in the impact analysis and the literature from which that information was obtained are detailed later in this appendix.

### B-2.2.1 Marine Mammal Diving Patterns

Diving parameters, such as time limits, depth limits, heading variance, and speed, are specified for each animat in the AIM model (Figure B-2). As an example, a dive pattern is presented that consists of a shallow, respiratory sequence (top row of Figure B-2) followed by a deeper, longer dive (bottom row of Figure B-2). The horizontal component of the dive is handled with the “heading variance” term, which allows the animal to change course up to a certain number of degrees at each movement step. For this example, the animal can change course 20° during a shallow dive and 10° during a deep dive (Figure B-2). Using the defined diving parameters, AIM generates realistic dive patterns (Figure B-3).

### B-2.2.2 Aversions

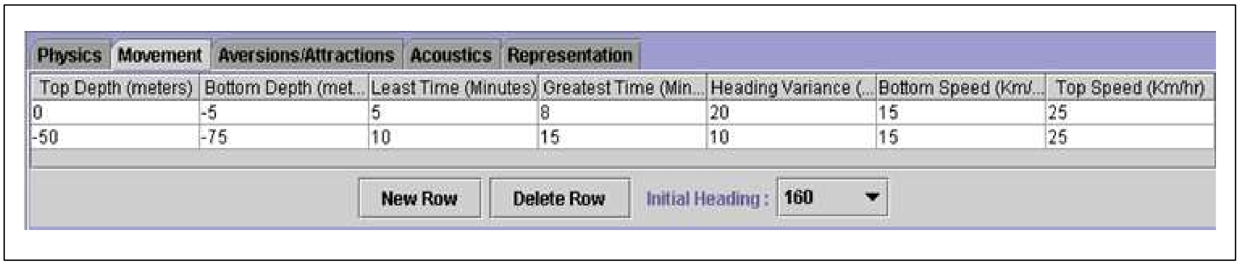
In addition to movement patterns, animats can be programmed to avoid certain environmental characteristics (Figure B-4). For example, aversions can be used to constrain an animal to a particular depth regime. (e.g., an animat can be constrained to waters between 6,562 and 16,405 ft [2,000 and 5,000 m] deep). An animat will continue to turn until the aversion is satisfied. In this example, animat makes 20° turns in water depths shallower than 6,562 feet (2,000 m) or deeper than 16,405 feet (5,000 m) to remain within that depth range.

## B-2.3 Parameters of Marine Mammal Movement Behaviors Used in Impact Analysis

Dive and swim speed information for each marine mammal or marine mammal group is a critical component of accurately and realistically modeling marine mammal movements when assessing potential exposure to underwater acoustic transmissions. Dive and swim parameters used in the AIM modeling of marine mammals potentially occurring in the representative model areas (Table B-1) are summarized (Table B-2). Narrative information, including the literature from which these values were obtained, is included in Chapter B-2.4 or incorporated by reference from the 2017 SEIS/SOEIS as described below. The narrative descriptions include discussion of additional parameters that are not direct inputs into the AIM model (e.g., habitat, group size, residency), but represent information that was used in creating the modeling scenarios to most accurately reflect known distribution patterns.

Some marine mammal species were modeled as representative groups rather than individual species. Beaked whale species are one example, where all potentially occurring beaked whales were divided into two functional modeling groups, the large and small beaked whales (see Table B-2 for the breakdown of species each grouping represents). Additionally, congener species that inhabit the same type of habitat and have similar dive and swim behaviors, such as the *Stenella* group that contains spinner, striped, and spotted dolphins, were modeled as an inclusive generic group rather than by the individual species.

The dive and swim data for many of the marine mammal species modeled for this SEIS/SOEIS (Table B-2) remain unchanged from the data and information presented previously (Appendix B, 2017 SEIS/SOEIS [DoN, 2017]); thus, the narrative information on diving and swimming behavior for some species are incorporated by reference herein and are not repeated in this appendix.



Physics | Movement | Aversions/Attractions | Acoustics | Representation

| Top Depth (meters) | Bottom Depth (met... | Least Time (Minutes) | Greatest Time (Min... | Heading Variance (... | Bottom Speed (Km/... | Top Speed (Km/hr) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | -5 | 5 | 8 | 20 | 15 | 25 |
| -50 | -75 | 10 | 15 | 10 | 15 | 25 |

New Row | Delete Row | Initial Heading : 160

**Figure B-2. Example of AIM Marine Mammal Movement Parameters, With the Top Row Showing the Parameters of a Shallow, Respiratory Dive (Diving from Surface to 16 ft (5 m) for 5 to 8 min) and the Bottom Row Showing a Deeper, Longer Dive (Diving Between 164 and 246 ft [50 and 75 m] for 10 to 15 min).**

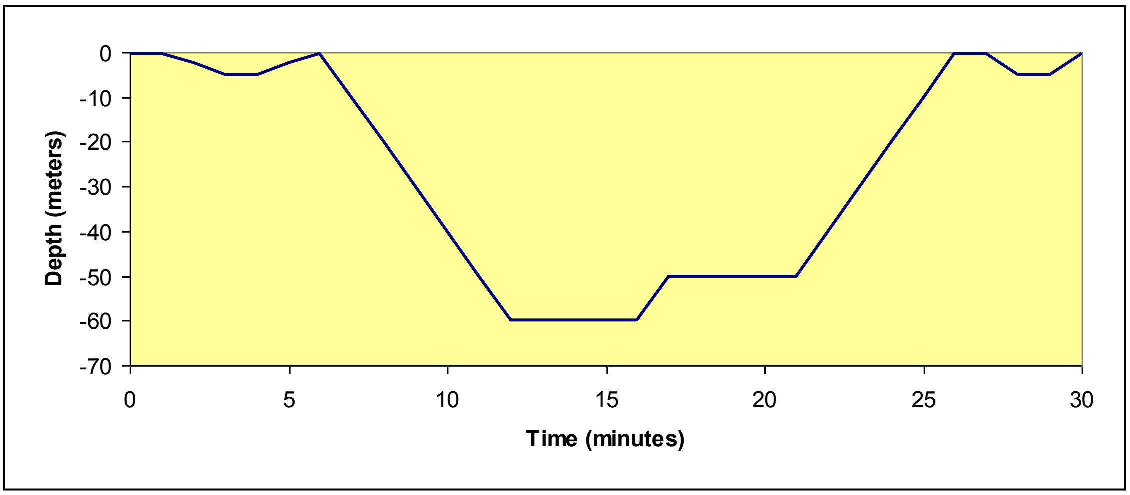
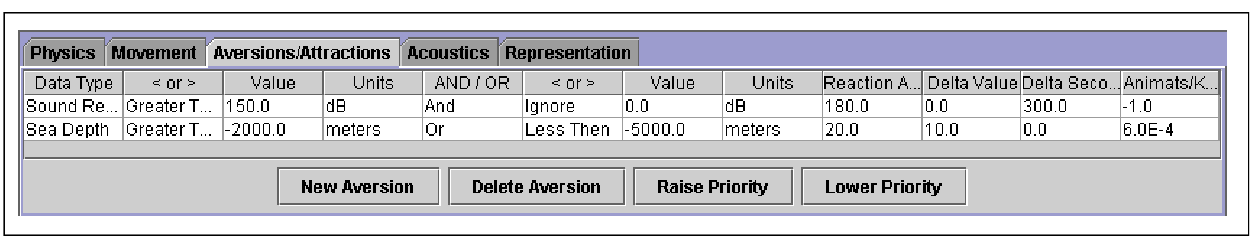



**Figure B-3. Marine Mammal Dive Pattern Based on Animat Data in Figure B-2. The Animat Makes a Shallow Dive from the Surface to 16 ft (5 m) for Approximately 6 min, Surfaces, and then Makes a Deep Dive to 197 ft (60 m) for About 5 min, Changes Depth to 164 ft (50 m) for Another 5 Minutes, and then Surfaces.**



Physics | Movement | Aversions/Attractions | Acoustics | Representation

| Data Type | < or > | Value | Units | AND / OR | < or > | Value | Units | Reaction A... | Delta Value | Delta Seco... | Animats/K... |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sound Re... | Greater T... | 150.0 | dB | And | Ignore | 0.0 | dB | 180.0 | 0.0 | 300.0 | -1.0 |
| Sea Depth | Greater T... | -2000.0 | meters | Or | Less Then | -5000.0 | meters | 20.0 | 10.0 | 0.0 | 6.0E-4 |

New Aversion | Delete Aversion | Raise Priority | Lower Priority

**Figure B-4. Example of Depth Aversion Parameters for Modeling of Marine Mammal Movements.**

**Table B-2. Dive and Swim Parameters of all the Potentially Occurring Marine Mammal Species Modeled to Assess the Potential Impact of Exposure to SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions in 15 Representative Model Areas.**

| *Modeled Species* | *Minimum/ Maximum Surface Time (Min)* | *Surface/ Dive Angle* | *Dive Depth (m) Minimum/ Maximum (Percentage)* | *Minimum/ Maximum Dive Time (min)* | *Heading Variance (Angle/Time)* | *Minimum/ Maximum Speed (kph)* | *Speed Distribution* | *Depth Limit (m)/ Reaction Angle* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Antarctic and Common Minke Whale | 1/3 | 75/75 | 20/100 (100) | 2/6 | 10/300 | 1/18 | Gamma (3.25,2) | 10/reflect |
| Blue Whale (non-foraging) (including pygmy blue whale) | 1/4 | 75/75 | 20/100 (50)<br>20/100 (50) | 2/18 | 30/300<br>90/300 | 3/14 | Normal | 100/reflect |
| Blue Whale (foraging) (including pygmy blue whale) | 1/4 | 75/75 | 20/100 (50)<br>100/300 (50) | 2/18<br>4/18 | 30/300<br>90/90 | 3/14 | Normal | 100/reflect |
| Bryde's/Omura's/Sei Whales | 1/1 | 90/75 | 10/40 (40)<br>10/40 (40)<br>50/267 (10)<br>50/267 (10) | 2/11<br>2/11<br>2/11<br>2/11 | 30/300<br>90/300<br>30/300<br>90/300 | 1/20 | Gamma (5,1) | 50/reflect |
| Fin Whale | 1/1 | 75/75 | 50/250 (45)<br>50/250 (45)<br>250/470 (10) | 5/8<br>5/8<br>10/20 | 60/120<br>90/300<br>30/300 | 1/16 | Normal | 30/reflect |
| Humpback Whale (migrating) | 1/2 | 75/75 | 10/40 (100) | 5/10 | 10/300 | 2/12 | Normal | (Min =100)/reflect |
| Humpback Whale (feeding) | 1/2 | 75/75 | 10/60 (20)<br>40/100(75)<br>100/150(5) | 5/15<br>5/15<br>5/15 | 90/300<br>90/90<br>90/90 | 1/8 | Normal | (Min =100)/reflect |
| Humpback Whale (winter grounds, singing) | 1/1 | 75/75 | 15/30 (100) | 10/25 | 10/300 | 0/1 | Normal | >1000/reflect |
| Humpback Whale (calf) | 1/2 | 75/75 | 5/30 (100) | 2/5 | 45/90 | 1/3 | Normal | >200/reflect |
| Humpback Whale (winter adult) | 1/1 | 75/75 | 15/50 (50)<br>15/50 (50) | 5/20<br>5/20 | 90/120<br>30/300 | 1/6 | Gamma (2.33,1.62) | 1000/reflect |
| North Pacific Right Whale (feeding) | 4/5 | 75 | 113/130 (50)<br>113/130 (50) | 11/13<br>11/13 | 90/90<br>30/90 | 1/4 | Normal | >10/reflect |
| North Pacific Right Whale (migrating) | 1/1 | 75/75 | 10/200 (10)<br>10/35 (90) | 1/10<br>1/7 | 90/60<br>30/300 | 2/5 | Normal | >10/reflect |

**Table B-2. Dive and Swim Parameters of all the Potentially Occurring Marine Mammal Species Modeled to Assess the Potential Impact of Exposure to SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions in 15 Representative Model Areas.**

| *Modeled Species* | *Minimum/ Maximum Surface Time (Min)* | *Surface/ Dive Angle* | *Dive Depth (m) Minimum/ Maximum (Percentage)* | *Minimum/ Maximum Dive Time (min)* | *Heading Variance (Angle/Time)* | *Minimum/ Maximum Speed (kph)* | *Speed Distribution* | *Depth Limit (m)/ Reaction Angle* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| North Pacific Right Whale (breeding) | 1/3 | 75/75 | 2/25 (50)<br>2/25 (50) | 1/8<br>1/8 | 30/300<br>90/90 | 1/3 | Normal | >10/reflect |
| Western North Pacific Gray Whale (migrating) | 1/2 | 75/75 | 10/40 (100) | 3/12 | 10/300 | 2/9 | Normal | 10/reflect |
| Western North Pacific Gray Whale (summering) | 1/2 | 75/75 | 10/bottom (100) | 1/7 | 90/90 | 1/5 | Normal | 10/reflect |
| Western North Pacific Gray Whale (mating) | 1/2 | 75/75 | 10/40 (100) | 1/7 | 90/90 | 1/5 | Normal | 10/reflect |
| Beaked Whales—Small (Blainville's, Cuvier's, Longman's, Hubbs', Ginkgo-toothed, Deraniyagala's, Spade-toothed, Stejneger's beaked whales) | 1/6 | 75/75 | 2000/3000 (5)<br>1000/2000 (12)<br>1000/2000 (13)<br>200/500 (35)<br>200/500 (35) | 100/140<br>48/74<br>48/74<br>12/30<br>12/30 | 30/300<br>30/300<br>90/90<br>90/300<br>30/300 | 2/7 | Normal | 253/ reflect |
| Beaked Whales—Large (Baird's beaked whales and southern bottlenose whales) | 1/7 | 75/75 | 500/1453 (25)<br>500/1453 (25)<br>50/200 (25)<br>50/200 (25) | 48/70<br>48/70<br>12/70<br>12/70 | 90/90<br>30/300<br>90/300<br>90/90 | 3/6 | Normal | 253/reflect |
| *Kogia* spp. (dwarf and pygmy Sperm Whales) | 1/2 | 75/75 | 200/1000 (50)<br>200/1000 (50) | 5/12<br>5/12 | 30/300<br>90/300 | 1/11 | Normal | 117/reflect |
| Blackfish (false killer whale, melon-headed whale, pygmy killer whale) | 1/1 | 75/75 | 5/50 (40)<br>5/50 (40)<br>50/300 (20) | 1/3<br>1/3<br>4/8 | 30/300<br>90/90<br>90/300 | 2/22.4 | Gamma (2.3, 1.6) | 200/reflect |
| Common and Indo-Pacific Bottlenose Dolphins (Coastal) | 1/1 | 75/75 | 15/98 (50)<br>15/98 (50) | 1/3<br>1/3 | 90/300<br>90/90 | 2/16 | Normal | 10/reflect |

**Table B-2. Dive and Swim Parameters of all the Potentially Occurring Marine Mammal Species Modeled to Assess the Potential Impact of Exposure to SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions in 15 Representative Model Areas.**

| *Modeled Species* | *Minimum/ Maximum Surface Time (Min)* | *Surface/ Dive Angle* | *Dive Depth (m) Minimum/ Maximum (Percentage)* | *Minimum/ Maximum Dive Time (min)* | *Heading Variance (Angle/Time)* | *Minimum/ Maximum Speed (kph)* | *Speed Distribution* | *Depth Limit (m)/ Reaction Angle* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Common and Indo-Pacific Bottlenose Dolphins (Pelagic) | 1/1 | 75/75 | 6/50 (40)<br>6/50 (40)<br>50/100 (5)<br>100/250 (5)<br>250/500 (10) | 1/2<br>1/2<br>2/3<br>3/4<br>5/6 | 300/300<br>30/300<br>30/300<br>90/300<br>90/300 | 2/16 | Normal | 101/1226 reflect |
| Common Dolphins | 1/1 | 75/75 | 50/200 (50)<br>50/200 (50) | 1/5<br>1/5 | 30/300<br>90/90 | 2/9 | Normal | 100-1000/reflect |
| Dall's Porpoise | 1/1 | 75/75 | 5/94 (50)<br>5/94 (50) | 1/2<br>1/2 | 30/300<br>90/90 | 6/16 | Normal | >100 m |
| Fraser's Dolphin | 1/1 | 75/75 | 50/700 (50)<br>50/700 (50) | 1/6<br>1/6 | 30/300<br>90/300 | 2/15 | Normal | 100/reflect |
| Harbor Porpoise | 1/1 | 17/31 | 1/10 (35)<br>10/40 (45)<br>40/100 (15)<br>100/230 (5) | 1/4<br>1/4<br>1/4<br>1/4 | 30/150<br>30/150<br>30/150<br>30/150 | 2/8 | Normal | 100-1000/reflect |
| Killer Whale | 1/1 | 75/75 | 10/180 (50)<br>10/180 (50) | 1/10<br>1/10 | 30/300<br>90/150 | 3/12 | Normal | 25/ reflect |
| Northern Right Whale Dolphin | 1/1 | 75/75 | 50/600 (50)<br>50/600 (50) | 1/6<br>1/6 | 90/90<br>30/300 | 2/30 | Gamma (3.2) | None |
| Pacific White-sided Dolphin | 1/1 | 75/75 | 25/125 (50)<br>25/125 (50) | 1/3<br>1/3 | 30/300<br>90/90 | 2/9 | Normal | None |
| *Stenella* spp. (pantropical spotted, spinner, and striped dolphins) | 1/1 | 75/75 | Day: 5/25 (50)<br>Night: 10/400 (10)<br>Night: 10/100 (40) | 1/4<br>1/4<br>1/4 | 30/300<br>90/90<br>90/90 | 2/15 | Normal | 10/ reflect |
| Risso's Dolphin | 1/3 | 75/75 | 150/1000 (50)<br>150/1000 (50) | 2/12<br>2/12 | 30/300<br>90/300 | 2/12 | Normal | 150/ reflect |

**Table B-2. Dive and Swim Parameters of all the Potentially Occurring Marine Mammal Species Modeled to Assess the Potential Impact of Exposure to SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions in 15 Representative Model Areas.**

| *Modeled Species* | *Minimum/ Maximum Surface Time (Min)* | *Surface/ Dive Angle* | *Dive Depth (m) Minimum/ Maximum (Percentage)* | *Minimum/ Maximum Dive Time (min)* | *Heading Variance (Angle/Time)* | *Minimum/ Maximum Speed (kph)* | *Speed Distribution* | *Depth Limit (m)/ Reaction Angle* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Rough-toothed Dolphin | 1/3 | 75/75 | 50/600 (50)<br>50/600 (50) | 1/7<br>1/7 | 30/300<br>90/300 | 5/16<br>5/16 | Normal | 194/ reflect |
| Short-finned Pilot Whale | 1/1 | 75/75 | 10/100 (40)<br>10/100 (40)<br>50/1000 (20) | 1/10<br>1/10<br>5/21 | 30/300<br>90/300<br>90/90 | 2/12<br>2/12<br>2/12 | Normal | 200/ reflect |
| Sperm Whale | 8/11 | 90/75 | 600/1400 (55)<br>600/1400 (35)<br>200/600 (10) | 40/65<br>40/65<br>18/40 | 30/90<br>90/90<br>30/90 | 1/10<br>1/10<br>1/10 | Normal | 200/reflect |
| Hawaiian Monk Seal (NW Hawaiian Islands) | 1/2 | 75/75 | 10/60 (45)<br>10/60 (45)<br>50/500 (10) | 2/8<br>2/8<br>8/12 | 30/300<br>90/300<br>90/300 | 2/9 | Normal | |
| Hawaiian Monk Seal (Main Hawaiian Islands) | 1/2 | 75/75 | 20/50 (90)<br>50/100 (10) | 4/9<br>8/12 | 10/300<br>90/300 | 2/9 | Normal | |
| Northern Fur Seal (on shelf) | 0.5/2<br>1/2<br>1/2 | 75/75 | 0/5 (57)<br>100/150 (26)<br>1/5 (17) | 1/4<br>3/7<br>1/4 | 20/300<br>1/300<br>90/300 | 4.0/6.5<br>4.0/6.5<br>0/1 | Normal | >200/reflect |
| Northern Fur Seal (off shelf) | 0.5/2<br>1/2<br>1/2 | 75/75 | 0/5 (57)<br>30/75 (26)<br>1/5 (17) | 1/4<br>1/4<br>1/4 | 20/300<br>1/300<br>90/300 | 4.0/6.5<br>4.0/6.5<br>0/1 | Normal | <1000/reflect |
| Pagophilic *Phoca* spp. (spotted and ribbon seals) | 1/2<br>0.4/2.3 | 75/75 | 5/50 (70)<br>150/360 (30) | 1/5<br>1/5 | 90/300 | 1.1/3.6<br>1.1/3.6 | Normal | |
| Steller Sea Lion (winter) | 3/8 | 75/75 | 4/10 (54)<br>10/50 (37)<br>50/250 (10) | 0/2<br>2/4<br>4/8 | 30/300<br>90/300<br>10/300 | 3/10<br>3/10<br>3/10 | Normal | |
| Steller Sea Lion (summer) | 3/8 | 75/75 | 4/10 (35)<br>10/50 (61)<br>50/250 (3) | 0/1<br>1/4<br>4/8 | 30/300<br>90/300<br>10/300 | 3/10<br>3/10<br>3/10 | Normal | |

Note: Min=minimum

Descriptions for the following marine mammal species are included by reference from the 2017 SEIS/SOEIS:

- Antarctic and Common Minke Whale
- Humpback Whale (Winter Grounds: Singer)
- Humpback Whale (Calf)
- Right Whales: North Pacific Right Whale
- Gray Whales: Western North Pacific Gray Whale
- Common and Indo-Pacific Bottlenose Dolphins
- Common Dolphin
- Dall's Porpoise
- *Kogia* spp. (Dwarf and Pygmy Sperm Whales)
- Fraser's Dolphin
- Harbor Porpoise
- Killer Whale
- Right Whale Dolphins: Northern Right Whale Dolphin
- *Lagenorhynchus* spp.: Pacific White-Sided Dolphin
- Risso's Dolphin
- Rough-toothed Dolphin
- *Stenella* spp.: Pantropical Spotted, Spinner, and Striped Dolphins
- Phagophilic *Phoca* spp. Seals (Spotted and Ribbon Seals)
- Steller Sea Lion

Updated details follow on diving for the remainder of marine mammal species that occur in the potential model areas for SURTASS LFA sonar.

## B-2.4 Marine Mammal Diving Descriptions

### B-2.4.1 Bryde's/Omura's/Sei Whales

There is a paucity of data for these species. Since they are similar in size, data for all species have been pooled to derive model parameters for these species.

**Surface Time**

No direct data were available so fin whale values were used.

**Dive Depth**

A limited number of Bryde's whales have been tagged with time-depth recorders (TDRs) (Alves et al., 2010). Shallow dives of less than 131 ft (40 m) were recorded 85 percent of the time, while deep dives occurred 15 percent of the time. The maximum dive depth reported was 876 ft (267 m). Two distinct dive types were noted for Bryde's whales. Both performed a long series of shallow dives of less than 131 ft (40 m) until 1.5 hr before sunset. The animals then made the deepest dives. During the night, sequential deep dives took place. Foraging lunges were recorded during about half of these nighttime dives.

Vocalizing sei whales were most often acoustically located at depths of 49 to 131 ft (15 to 40 m), with occasional calls at 230 ft (70 m) (Newhall et al., 2012).

Ishii et al. (2017) documented U- and V-shaped dives of foraging sei whales and noted that they dove no deeper than 187 ft (57 m) during the day and to no more than 40 ft (12.2 m) at night.

**Dive Time**

Sei whale dive times ranged between 0.75 and 11 min, with a mean duration of 1.5 min (Schilling et al., 1992). Most of the dives were short in duration, presumably because they were associated with surface or near-surface foraging. The same paper reported surface times that ranged between 2 sec and 15 min. Ishii et al. (2017) documented U- and V-shaped dives, with maximum durations of 12 min. The maximum dive time reported for two Bryde's whales was 9.4 min (Alves et al., 2010), with mean durations of 4 to 6 min.

**Heading Variance**

Observations of foraging sei whales found that they had a very high reorientation rate, frequently resulting in minimal net movement (Schilling, et al., 1992). The majority (16/17) of acoustically active Bryde's whales tracked off of Kaua'i, HI had directivity indices greater than 0.95, with a single individual that had a value of 0.14 (Helble et al., 2016).

**Speed**

Brown (1977) reported an overall speed of advance from tagged sei whales as 2.5 kt (4.6 kph). The highest speed reported for a Bryde's whale was 10.8 kt (20 kph) (Cummings, 1985). A Bryde's whale being attacked by killer whales traveled approximately 4.9 nmi (9 km) in 94 min, with most of the travel occurring in the first 50 min, producing an estimated speed of 5.8 kt (10.8 kph) (Silber et al., 1990). The maximum speed of sei whales reported from a satellite tracking study was 24.9 ft/sec (7.6 m/sec), although the distribution of speeds was highly skewed toward lower values (Olsen et al., 2009). The speed parameters used in AIM are 0.54 to 10.8 kt (1 to 20 kph), using a gamma distribution with alpha and beta parameters of 5 and 1 (Figure B-5), which cover the range of speed reported by Brown (1977). A satellite tagging study of eight sei whales reported a migration speed of 4.0 kt (SD=0.2) (7.4 kph [SD = 0.4]) and an 'off-migration' speed of 3.3 kt (SD=0.4) (6.2 kph [SD=0.8]) (Prieto et al., 2014). Bryde's Whales tracked off of Kaua'i, HI had speeds that ranged from 0.08 to 8.6 kt (0.15 to 16 kph), with an overall mean of 3.24 kt (6 kph) (Helble et al., 2016).

**Habitat**

Sei whales are known to feed on shallow banks, such as Stellwagen Bank (Kenney and Winn, 1986). Therefore, sei and Bryde's whales are allowed to move into shallow water.

**Group Size**

Sei whales in the Gulf of Maine were seen in groups of 1-6 animals with a mean group size of 1.8 whales (Schilling et al., 1992). Bryde's whales in the Gulf of California were seen in groups of 1 to 2 animals, with a mean size of 1.2 whales (Silber et al., 1994).

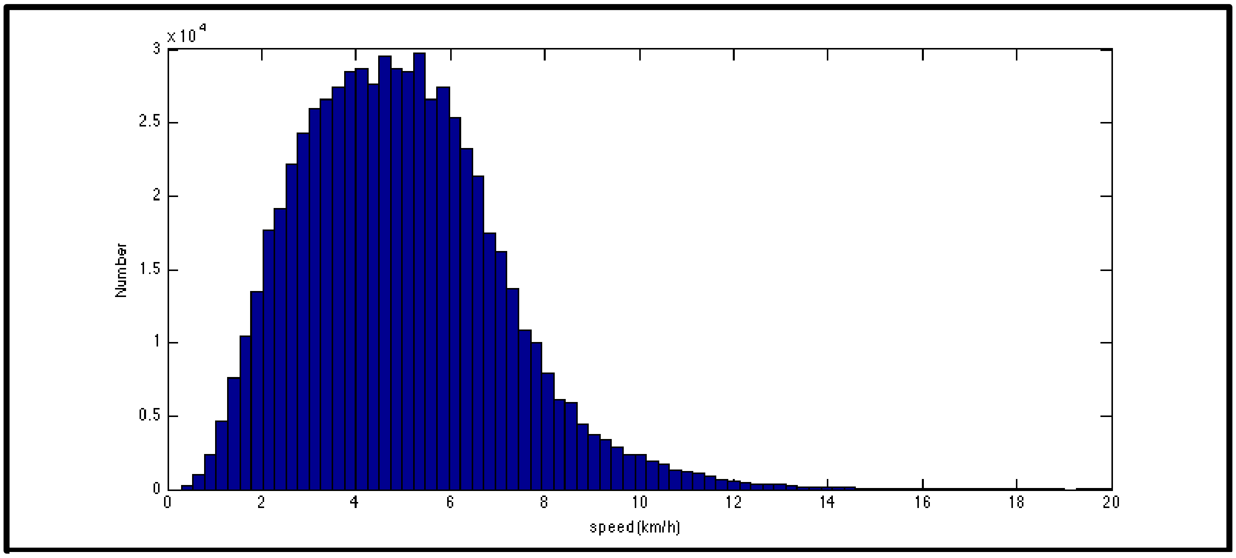



**Figure B-5. Bryde's Whale Speed Distribution.**

### B-2.4.2 Blue Whale

**Surface Time**

Of four satellite tagged blue whales, one reported surface intervals of 7 to 90 sec, with a mean of 48 sec. The other three did not report intervals > 60 sec, indicating that the surface time was short (Lagerquist et al., 2000). Blue whales off Sri Lanka had a mean surfacing time of 167 (+/-68) sec, with a range of 29 to 421 sec (de Vos et al., 2013). DeRuiter et al. (2016) identified three behavioral states in blue whales off Southern California. The surfacing times for those three states are shown in Table B-3. Based on these two reports, the AIM surfacing interval will range from 1 to 4 min.

**Dive Depth**

Croll et al. (2001) reported a mean dive depth of 3,740 ft (± 150.96) (140 m [± 46.01]) for non-foraging animals, while foraging whales had a mean dive depth of 221.8 ft (± 168.8) (67.6 m [± 51.46]). Satellite tagged whales off California displayed a bimodal distribution of dive depths, with a maximum dive depth of 630 ft (192 m) (Lagerquist et al., 2000). Several blue whales had a Crittercam attached to them off California and Mexico. The maximum dive depth reported was 961 ft (293 m) (Calambokidis et al., 2008). Many of these animals had deep feeding dives, with lunges occurring between 656 and 853 ft (200 and 260 m). Notably, one animal transitioned from deep feeding dives of decreasing depth as the sun set, transitioning into shallow non-feeding dives. This does indicate that there may be a diurnal character to some blue whale behavior. Migrating pygmy blue whales had dives consistently to approximately 43 ft (13 m), the minimum depth predicted to avoid surface drag effects (Owen et al., 2016).

**Heading Variance**

DeRuiter et al. (2016) identified three behavioral states in blue whales off Southern California, including shallow feeding, traveling, and deep feeding. Table B-3 shows turning angle (the heading change angle from one dive to the subsequent dive) and heading variance (ranging from 0 for no variation to 1 for random variation) for those three states.

**Table B-3. Reproduced from DeRuiter et al. (2016). These are the Parameters Describing the Probability Distributions for Different Behavioral States. Dive Duration, Surface Duration, Maximum Depth, and Step Length are Modeled with a Gamma Distribution (Parameters here are Mean and S.D.), but the Number of Lunges Is Modeled with a Poisson Distribution. Turning Angle uses a Von Mises (Circular Normal) Distribution, while Heading Variance is Modeled with a Beta Distribution.**

| Variable | State 1 | State 2 | State 3 |
|---|---|---|---|
| Duration (gamma) | $\mu = 135.4, \sigma = 75.3$ | $\mu = 350.5, \sigma = 216.1$ | $\mu = 508.2, \sigma = 135.8$ |
| Surf. Duration (gamma) | $\mu = 70.5, \sigma = 68.4$ | $\mu = 86.4, \sigma = 53.9$ | $\mu = 148.3, \sigma = 69.1$ |
| Max. Depth (gamma) | $\mu = 30.5, \sigma = 21.8$ | $\mu = 71.3, \sigma = 67.2$ | $\mu = 166.7, \sigma = 62.0$ |
| No. Lunges (Poisson) | $\lambda = 0.60$ | $\lambda = 0.01$ | $\lambda = 3.30$ |
| Step Length (gamma) | $\mu = 193.8, \sigma = 139.1$ | $\mu = 710.7, \sigma = 294.4$ | $\mu = 401.3, \sigma = 281.2$ |
| Turn. Angle (von Mises) | $\mu == 0, \kappa = 1.04$ | $\mu == 0, \kappa = 3.11$ | $\mu == 0, \kappa = 0.83$ |
| Head. Variance (beta) | $a = 0.88, b = 2.05$ | $a = 0.52, b = 6.16$ | $a = 1.68, b = 1.59$ |

The transition probability matrix for these three behavioral states was estimated, and produced stationary probabilities for the occurrence of each behavioral state of 43, 20, and 37 percent, respectively.

**Residency**

A pygmy blue whale has been observed across 27 years, with resightings occurring less than 10 km away (de Vos, 2016).

**Group Size**

Blue whales in the Eastern Tropical Pacific had a modal group size of one, although pods of two were somewhat common (Reilly and Thayer, 1990). The mean group size of blue whales off Australia (*B. m. brevicauda*) was 1.55 (Gill, 2002).

### B-2.4.3 Fin Whale

**Surface Time**

Remarkably good data for surface times exist for fin whales. A log survivorship analysis of all inter-blow intervals was used to determine an inflection point of 28 and 31 sec between surface and dive activity for feeding and non-feeding animals, respectively (Kopelman and Sadove, 1995). The mean surface duration for fin whales, without boats present, off Maine was 54.63 sec (SD = 59.61) while dive times were 200.84 sec (SD = 192.91) (Stone et al., 1992). Surface time of four fin whales off Kodiak Alaska was 3 min (± 0.8) (Witteveen et al., 2015).

**Dive Depth**

Foraging fin whales had mean dive depths of 321.2 ± 106.9 ft (97.9 ± 32.59 m), while traveling fin whales had mean dive depths of 194.6 ± 97.3 ft (59.3 ± 29.67 m) (Croll et al., 2001). Migrating fin whales were determined to have a maximal dive depth of 1,194.3 ft (364 m) (Charif et al., 2002). Fin whales in the Mediterranean Sea typically dove to about 328 ft (100 m), and occasionally dove to 1,542 ft (470 m) or more (Panigada et al., 1999), however these are unusually deep dives. The animats here model the more typical dive pattern 90 percent of the time. Foraging fin whales off California had a mean maximum dive depth of 813.7 ft (248 m) (Goldbogen et al., 2006). Fin whales foraging off Kodiak Alaska had mean dive depths between 337.9 and 472.5 ft (103 and 144 m) (Witteveen et al., 2015).

**Dive Time**

Foraging fin whales had mean dive times of 6.3 ± 1.53 min, while traveling fin whales had mean dive time of 4.2 ± 1.67 min (Croll et al., 2001). The maximum dive time observed was 16.9 min. Fin whales off the east coast of the U.S. were observed to have mean dive times of 2.9 min. Ranges for feeding animals ranged from 29 to 1,001 sec, while non-feeding animals had longer dives between 32 and 1,212 sec (Kopelman and Sadove, 1995). Panigada et al. (1999) found that shallow (< 328 ft [< 100 m]) dives had a mean dive time of 7.1 min, while deeper dives had dive times of 11.7 and 12.6 min. Fin whales foraging on Jeffrey's Ledge in the Gulf of Maine had mean dive times of 5.83 to 5.89 min (Ramirez et al., 2006). Fin whales foraging off California had a mean dive time of 7 ± 1 (S.D.) min (Goldbogen et al., 2006). Fin whales foraging off Kodiak had a mean dive time of 6 min (Witteveen et al., 2015).

**Heading Variance**

The meander parameter is defined as the ratio of the total distance along the smoothed path to the net distance traveled; a value of 1 would indicate a straight path. Acoustically tracked fin whales off Washington state had a mean meander value of 1.8, with a standard deviation of 2.1 (Soule and Wilcock, 2013). The mean percentage of transiting tracks (speeds > 2.2 kt [> 4 kph] and meander < 1.25) was 37 percent with a range of 17-60 percent.

Satellite tagged fin whales in the Mediterranean Sea spent an average of 9.6 percent in transit mode (high linearity values), 62.6 percent in Area Restricted Search (low linearity values), and 27.9 percent in an intermediate "uncertain" behavioral state (Panigada et al., 2017).

**Speed**

Watkins (1981) reported a mean speed of 5.4 kt (10 kph), ranging from 0.54 to 8.6 kt (1 to 16 kph), with bursts of 10.8 kt (20 kph) reported. Mean descent speeds of 10.5 ft/sec (SD = 6.0) (3.2 m/sec [SD = 1.82]) and ascent speeds of 6.9 ft/sec (SD = 2.7) (2.1 m/sec [SD = 0.82]) have been reported from fin whales in the Mediterranean (Panigada et al., 1999). Acoustically tracked fin whales had mean speeds of 2.3 kt (SD = 1.1) (4.3 kph [SD= 2.1]) with a range of 0.54-6.5 kt (1-12 kph) (Soule and Wilcock, 2013).

**Habitat**

Fin whales are found feeding on shallow banks and in bays (Woodley and Gaskin, 1996) as well as in the abyssal plains of the ocean (Watkins, 1981). Off Vancouver Island, fin whales were primarily found offshore of the shelf break, in waters deeper than 1,476 ft (450 m) (Nichol et al., 2017). Thus, fin whale animats are allowed to move into shallow water in AIM, with a 98.4-ft (30-m) inshore limit to keep them out of the very shallow waters.

**Group Size**

In the Gulf of Mexico, fin whales had a mean group size of 5.7, with a range in group sizes from 1 to 50 (Silber et al., 1994). In the Mediterranean Sea the mean group size over a number of years of observations was 1.75 animals (Panigada et al., 2005).

#### B-2.4.4 Humpback Whale (Migrating)

**Surface Time**

Approximately 65 percent of all surfacings observed in Alaska were two min in length or less (Dolphin, 1987). Surface times in Hawai'i are similar, with the exception of surface-active groups (SAGs) (Bauer et al., 1995).

**Dive Depth**

Humpback whale dive depths have been measured on the feeding grounds. 75 percent of their dives were to 131 ft (40 m) or less (Dolphin, 1988). It is likely that migrating animals would also predominantly dive to these shallow depths.

**Dive Time**

Surface times range between 1 and 2 min while dive times range between 5 and 10 min (Gabriele et al., 1996).

**Heading Variance**

The heading variance is set very low for migrating animals. Most non-competitive, group breeding animals also have linear travel. Migrating humpbacks swam very close to magnetic north from Hawai'i with very little deviation (Mate et al., 1998). Migrating animals have very linear travel, although statistics were not provided by Cerchio et al. (2016).

**Speed**

Mean speeds for humpbacks are near 2.4 kt (4.5 kph). The measured range is 1.08 to 6.2 kt (2 to 11.4 kph) (excluding stationary pods) (Gabriele et al., 1996). Satellite tracked migrating humpback whales moved at a minimum of 81 nmi/day (150 km/day) (3.37 kt [6.25 kph]) for a mother and calf pod, while another two whales moved 59.4 nmi/day (110 km/day) (2.4 kt [4.5 kph]). Humpbacks off Australia were estimated to migrate at a mean speed of 4.3 kt (8 kph), with a range between 2.6 and 7.7 kt (4.8 and 14.2 kph) (Chittleborough, 1953). A mean northern migration speed of 2.95 kt (5.47 kph) was measured for Australian humpbacks, while the southern migration speed had a mean of 2.7 kt (5.02 kph) for non-calf pods, while calf pods had mean speeds of 2.7 and 2.3 kt (5.03 and 4.25 kph) for northern and southern migrations, respectively (Chaudry, 2006). Migrating humpbacks in the northwest Atlantic had a mean estimated migratory speed of 2.3 kt (SD = 0.65) (4.3 kph [SD = 1.2]) (Kennedy et al., 2014). Migrating mom and calf pods (behavioral mode 1) had speeds of 43.7 nmi/day (1.8 kt) (81 km/day [3.4 kph]), while speed dropped to 17.3 nmi/day (0.7 kt) (32 km/day [1.3 kph]) in area restricted movement mode 2. The intermediate behavior (mode 3) had intermediate speeds of 22.2 nmi/day (0.94 kt) (41.1 km/day [1.7 kph]) (Guzman and Félix, 2017).

**Habitat**

Migrating humpbacks swim both along the coast (California population) as well as through the abyssal plains. Humpbacks swim along coastal regions are known to swim further offshore than gray whales. Therefore, the minimum depth for this species has been set at 328 ft (100 m). Non-calf pods migrating off Australian had a mean offshore distance of 10,423 ft (3,177 m) during the northern migration and 8,400 ft (2,560 m) during the southern migration. Calf pods migrated "significantly" closer inshore (Chaudry, 2006).

### B-2.4.5 Humpback Whale (Feeding)

**Surface Time**

Approximately 65 percent of all surfacings observed in Alaska were two min in length or less (Dolphin, 1987). Burrows et al. (2016) reported surface times that ranged from 1.8 to 3.3 min, with a mean of 2.5 min.

**Dive Depth**

Humpback whale dive depths have been measured on the feeding grounds. Seventy-five percent of their dives were to 131 ft (40 m) or less with a maximum depth of 492 ft (150 m) (Dolphin, 1988). Dive depth appears to be determined by prey distribution. Whales in this study were primarily foraging upon euphausids. There is also a strong correlation of dive depth and dive time and is described by the following equation (Dolphin, 1987):

$$\text{Time (sec)} = 0.52 * \text{depth (meters)} + 3.95,\ r^2 = 0.93$$

Feeding humpbacks off Kodiak Alaska had a mean maximum depth of 348.4 ft (106.2 m), with 62 percent of the dives occurring between 301.8 and 393.7 ft (92 and 120 m), with a maximum of approximately 525 ft (160 m) (Witteveen et al., 2008) (Figure B-6). The humpbacks appeared to be feeding largely on capelin and pollock. There are strong differences in the data between these two studies. This difference may reflect the distribution of prey rather than behavioral abilities of the whales.

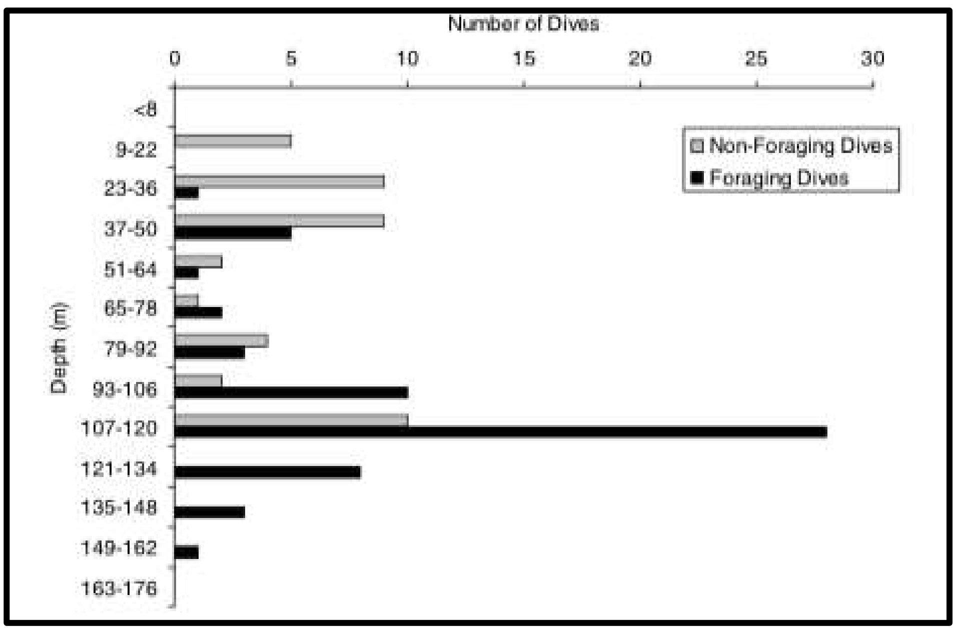



**Figure B-6. Frequency Distribution of Feeding Humpback Whale Mean Maximum Dive Depths in Depth Bins of 46 ft (14 m) (1 SD of Mean Maximum Dive Depth) for Dives Recorded from Tagged Humpback Whales (Witteveen et al., 2008).**

**Dive Time**

The maximum of the continuous portion of the distribution of dive times was 15 min (Dolphin, 1987). The distribution was skewed toward shorter dives. Burrows et al. (2016) reported dive times that ranged from 7.5 to 9.6 min, with a mean of 6.0 min.

**Heading Variance**

Satellite tracking of feeding humpback whales in the Southern Ocean showed very erratic travel, and animals frequently remained in a specific area for up to a week at a time. There were periodic movements between feeding areas (Dalla Rosa et al., 2008). Therefore, the heading variance for feeding humpbacks was set relatively high, for 80 percent of the time. Twenty percent of the time was set to low heading variance, to simulate movement between feeding areas.

Argos data for humpbacks feeding in the Aleutian Islands found that the animals spent 13 percent of their time in travel mode, 62 percent in "area-restricted search" (presumed to be foraging) and 25 percent in "unclassified" behavior (Kennedy et al., 2014).

**Speed**

Mean speeds for humpbacks are near 2.4 kt (4.5 kph). The measured range is 1.08 to 6.2 kt (2 to 11.4 kph) (excluding stationary pods) (Gabriele et al., 1996). Feeding humpbacks in the Southern Ocean had mean measured speeds between 1.22 and 2.17 kt (2.26 and 4.03 kph) (Dalla Rosa et al., 2008). These values were derived from short segments of satellite tracking data; therefore they are likely underestimates of speed. Ascent rates during dive range from 4.9 to 8.2 ft/sec (1.5 to 2.5 m/sec), while descent rates range between 4.10 and 6.56 ft/sec (1.25 and 2 m/sec) (Dolphin, 1987). The mean speed for all pod types in Glacier Bay was 1.79 kt (3.31 kph) (Baker and Herman, 1989).

**Habitat**

Migrating humpbacks swim both along the coast (California population) as well as through the oceanic abyssal plains. Humpbacks that swim along coastal regions are known to swim further offshore than gray whales. Therefore, the minimum depth for this species has been set at 328 ft (100 m).

**Group Size**

Ninety-six percent of 27,252 pods in the Gulf of Maine were composed of 1 to 3 animals, with a modal size of one adult (Clapham, 1993).

### B-2.4.6 Humpback Whale (Winter Adult)

**Surface Time**

Approximately 65 percent of all surfacings observed in Alaska were 2 min in length or less (Dolphin, 1987). Surface times in Hawaiʻi are similar, with the exception of surface active groups (Bauer et al., 1995).

**Dive Depth**

The maximum dive depth reported for a humpback on the Hawaiian winter grounds was 577.5 ft (176 m) (Baird et al., 2000). The distribution of dive depths was strongly skewed toward shallower dives (Table B-4).

**Table B-4. Humpback Whale Dive Distributions.**

| *Depth Category (m)* | *Mean Time In Depth Category (percent)* | *Standard Deviation* | *Cumulative Time (percent)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1-10 | 39.55 | 20.57 | 39.55 |
| 11-20 | 26.51 | 13.29 | 66.06 |
| 21-30 | 11.65 | 11.84 | 77.71 |
| 31-40 | 4.25 | 2.77 | 81.96 |
| 41-50 | 3.04 | 2.28 | 85.00 |
| 51-60 | 2.47 | 2.28 | 87.47 |
| 61-70 | 2.14 | 1.73 | 89.61 |
| 71-80 | 1.66 | 1.54 | 91.27 |
| 81-90 | 1.97 | 1.91 | 93.24 |
| 91-100 | 1.55 | 2.36 | 94.79 |
| 101-110 | 1.39 | 2.17 | 96.18 |
| 111-120 | 1.31 | 2.33 | 97.49 |
| 121-130 | 0.92 | 1.75 | 98.41 |
| 131-140 | 0.72 | 1.73 | 99.13 |
| 141-150 | 0.30 | 0.56 | 99.43 |
| 151-160 | 0.23 | 0.40 | 99.66 |
| 161-170 | 0.15 | 0.26 | 99.81 |
| 171-180 | 0.09 | 0.22 | 99.90 |

**Dive Time**

Surface times range between 1 and 2 min, while dive times range between 5 and 10 min (Gabriele et al., 1996).

**Heading Variance**

Most non-competitive group breeding animals also have largely linear travel.

**Speed**

The estimated speed on the breeding grounds from satellite tagged whales was 0.92 kt (SD = 0.43) (1.7 kph [SD = 0.8]) (Kennedy et al., 2014). Mean speeds for humpbacks are near 2.4 kt (4.5 kph) while the measured range is 1.08 to 6.2 kt (2 to 11.4 kph) (excluding stationary pods) min (Gabriele et al., 1996). Migrating and resident humpback off Madagascar had speeds between 0.7 and 2.5 kt (1.3 and 4.6 kph), with a mean of 1.6 kt (3.0 kph) (Cerchio et al., 2016). Fitted Gamma curve parameters (Table B-5) and humpback whale speed distribution measured in Hawaiʻi (Figure B-7) are shown below.

**Table B-5. Gamma Curve Parameters for Figure B-7.**

| *Type* | *Parameter* | *Estimate* | *Lower 95 Percent* | *Upper 95 Percent* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Shape | Alpha | 2.326775 | 2.255537 | 2.398012 |
| Scale | Sigma | 1.617174 | 1.561936 | 1.672412 |
| Threshold | Theta | 0.000000 | 1.570127 | |

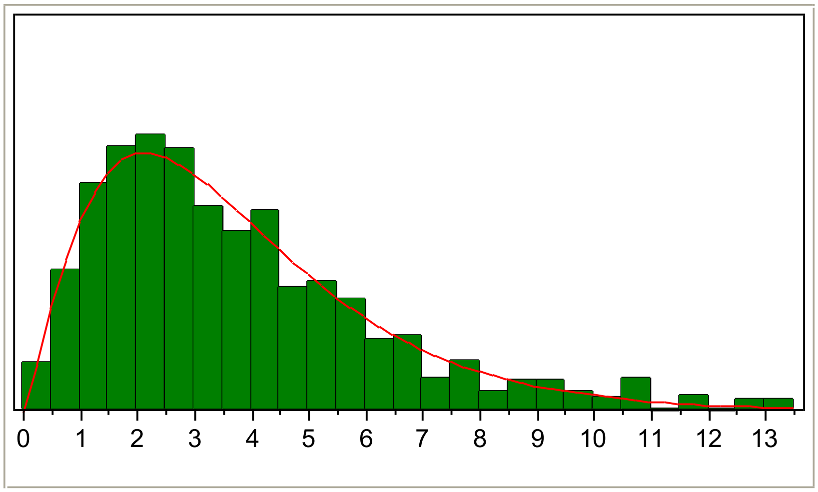



**Figure B-7. Histogram of Speeds (kph) for all Humpback Whale Pods Tracked in Hawai'i.**

<u>**Group Size**</u>

The modal group size in Hawaiʻi was two adults (Mobley and Herman, 1985).

### B-2.4.7 Beaked Whales

Data on the behavior of beaked whales is sparse. Therefore, all beaked whale species have been pooled into two animats, large and small beaked whales. A taxonomic approach (Dalebout et al., 2004) would suggest divisions by the genus *Berardius*, *Hyperoodon*/*Tasmacetus*, and *Mesoplodon*. *Ziphius*, a genus with a single species, seems to be behaviorally related most closely to *Mesoplodon*. At this point, available behavioral data are sufficient to support splitting beaked whales into large (*Berardius, Hyperoodon,* and *Tasmacetus*) and smaller whales (*Mesoplodon, Ziphius,* and *Indopacetus*) (Table B-6). The behavior of *Indopacetus* has not been documented, but it is grouped with *Mesoplodon* because it was initially classified as a *Mesoplodon* and is taxonomically most closely related to smaller beaked whales.

<u>***Small Beaked Whales***</u> (*Mesoplodon, Ziphius,* and *Indopacetus*)

<u>**Surface Time**</u>

Sowerby's beaked whales had surface times of 1-2 min, during which they would blow 6-8 times (Hooker and Baird, 1999b). Cuvier's beaked whales had surfacing bouts of 23-26 intervals that were 3-15 sec apart, with a mean of 7 sec (SD = 2.1) (Baird et al., 2006). Blainville's beaked whale surfacings were composed of an average of 18 surfacing intervals (SD = 11.3), each with a mean duration of 10.9 (SD = 5.51) sec. Cuvier's beaked whales off Southern California had surface times between 3 and 6 min in the absence of mid-frequency sonar (Falcone et al., 2017). Surfacing times tended to increase in the presence of MF sonar. Cuvier's beaked whales in the northwestern Atlantic Ocean off Cape Hatteras were reported to exhibit short surface intervals (Shearer et al., 2019).

<u>**Dive Depth**</u>

*Ziphius* tagged off the Canary Islands had foraging dives between 2,704 and 4,157 ft (824 and 1,267 m), while Blainville's beaked whales dove to depths between 2,149 and 3,199 ft (655 and 975 m) (Johnson

**Table B-6. Model Groupings of the Beaked Whale Species Encountered in Model Areas for SURTASS LFA Sonar.**

| *Common Name* | *AIM Grouping* |
|---|---|
| Baird's beaked whale | Large |
| Southern bottlenose whale | Large |
| Blainville's beaked whale | Small |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | Small |
| Deraniyagala's beaked whale | Small |
| Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale | Small |
| Hubbs' beaked whale | Small |
| Longman's beaked whale | Small |
| Spade-toothed whale | Small |
| Stejneger's beaked whale | Small |
| Strap-toothed beaked whale | Small |

et al., 2004). Blainville's beaked whales in Hawai'i performed dives to mid-water depth (328 to 1,969 ft [100 to 600 m]) approximately six times more frequently during the day than at night. Dives deeper than 2,625 ft (800 m) had no diurnal difference (Baird et al., 2008). Blainville's beaked whales in Hawai'i appeared to have two general dive types. The first are shallow dives that range from < 164 ft (50 m) to a bit deeper. Deep dives (> 2,624 ft [800 m]) were reported to occur once every 2 hours with a maximum depth of 4,620 ft (1408 m) (Baird et al., 2006). Despite similar maximum dive depths, Blainville's beaked whales spent more time in the upper portion of the water column (Baird et al., 2006).

Cuvier's beaked whales tagged off southern California had mean deep dive depths of 4,597 ft (SD = 452.1) (1,401 m [SD = 137.8]) and a duration of 67.4 min (SD = 6.9) (Schorr et al., 2014). This study also reported a maximum dive depth of 9,817 ft (2,992 m) that lasted 137.5 min. Cuvier's beaked whales in the northwestern Atlantic Ocean off Cape Hatteras were reported to exhibit highly bimodal dives, with deep dives to a median water depth of 4,777 ft (1,456 m) and shallow dives to a median depth of 919 ft (280 m) (Shearer et al., 2019).

Acoustically tracked Cuvier's beaked whales in the northwest Atlantic had mean dive depths of 3,799 ± 942 ft (1158 ± 287 m) while *Mesoplodon* whales were 2,854 ± 495 ft (870 ± 151 m) (DeAngelis et al., 2017).

Blainville's beaked whales in the Caribbean performed non-foraging dives to approximately 1,148 ft (350 m), while foraging dives ranged between 1,969 and 6,224 ft (600 and 1,900 m). Cuvier's beaked whales in the Caribbean performed non-foraging dives to approximately 1,640 ft (500 m), while foraging dives ranged between 2,297 and 6,234 ft (700 and 1,900 m) (Joyce et al., 2017).

**Dive Time**

The minimum and maximum dive time measured for northern bottlenose whales was 16 and 70.5 min respectively (Hooker and Baird, 1999a). Sowerby's beaked whales exhibited dives between 12 and (at least) 28 min in the Gully in Canada (Hooker and Baird, 1999b). Arnoux's beaked whale had modal dive times between 35 and 65 min (mean = 46.4 min, SD = 13.1), with a maximum dive time of at least 70 min (Hobson and Martin, 1996). Tagging results with *Ziphius* had one animal diving for 50 min (Johnson, et al., 2004). *Mesoplodon stejnegeri* were observed to dive for "10-15 min" in Alaska (Loughlin, 1982). Two dive duration periods were reported by Anderson et al. (2006) for Longman's beaked whales: short durations lasting from 11 to 18 min and long durations ranging from 20 to 33 min, although one beaked whale possibly was submerged as long as 45 min.

Cuvier's beaked whales in Hawaiʻi performed a regular pattern of one very long (> 59 min) and deep dive (> 3,281 ft (1,000 m), followed by 1-4 shallow (approximately 958 to 1,864 ft [292 to 568 m]) and shorter (approximately 20 min) dives (Baird et al., 2006). This pattern has been seen in many other studies as well.

Cuvier's beaked whales in southern California waters had shallow dive times of ~ 20 min and deep dive times of ~ 60 min (Falcone et al., 2017). Dive depth and duration were very strongly positively correlated. Cuvier's beaked whales in the northwestern Atlantic Ocean off Cape Hatteras were reported to exhibit highly bimodal dives, with deep dives of median duration of 58.9 min and shallow dives with a median duration of 18.7 min (Shearer et al., 2019).

Blainville's beaked whales in the Caribbean performed non-foraging dives that lasted to ~ 40 min, while foraging dives ranged between 30 and 70 min (Joyce et al., 2017). Dive times and depths were related with the equation:

$$\text{Depth in meters} = 0.434 * \text{time (in min)} - 163.342$$

Cuvier's beaked whales in the Caribbean performed non-foraging dives that lasted to ~ 40 min, while foraging dives ranged between 30 and 100 min (Joyce et al., 2017). Dive times and depths were related with the equation:

$$\text{Depth in meters} = 0.304 * \text{time (in min)} - 107.523.$$

The distributions of changes in headings were presented for a Blainville's beaked whale before and after presentation of a killer whale playback (Figure B-8) (Allen et al., 2014). The pre-test data are taken as a good estimate of the normal variance in heading data for this species.

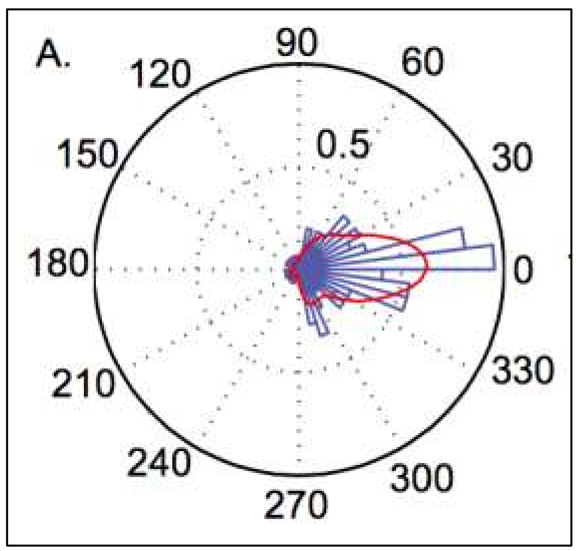



**Figure B-8. Distributions of Changes in Course are shown for Blainville's Beaked Whales Before the Presentation of Killer Whale Recordings (Allen et al., 2014).**

**<u>Heading Variance</u>**

Sowerby's beaked whales surfacing in the Gully were reported to have no apparent orientation and would change orientation up to 180 ° between surfacings (Hooker and Baird, 1999b). The opposite pattern was seen in open-ocean Blainville's beaked whales, which showed travel that was very directed for long distances before beginning a different pattern with more turns (Baird et al., 2011).

**Residency**

*Mesoplodon* whales off Kaua'i were observed in all months of the year with no obvious seasonality (Henderson et al., 2016).

**Speed**

Dive rates for northern bottlenose whales averaged 3.3 ft/sec (1 m/sec) or 1 kt (3.6 kph) (Hooker and Baird, 1999a). A mean surface speed of 2.7 kt (5 kph) was reported by (Kastelein and Gerrits, 1991). Schorr et al. (2009) reported a horizontal swim speed of 0.4 to 0.8 kt (0.8 to 1.5 kph) for a Blainville's beaked whales in Hawaii with a maximum rate of 4.4 kt (8.1 kph).

**Habitat**

The minimum sea depth in which beaked whales were found in the Gulf of Mexico was 830 ft (253 m) (Davis et al., 1998). In the Gully in Canada, Sowerby's beaked whales were found in water ranging from 1,804 to 4,922 ft (550 to 1,500 m) in depth (Hooker and Baird, 1999b). Blainville's beaked whales (*M. densirostris*) were found in water depths of 446 to 4,328 ft (136 to 1319 m) in the Bahamas, and were found most often in areas with a high bathymetric slope (MacLeod and Zuur, 2005). *Mesoplodon* species were found in waters from 2,297 ft (700 m) to > 5,906 ft (1,800 m) off Scotland and the Faroe Islands (Weir, 2000) and between 2,231 and 6,342 ft (680 and 1,933 m) in the Gulf of Mexico (Davis et al., 1998). Baird et al. (2006) reported that Blainville's beaked whales off Hawai'i were found in waters from 2,077 to 6,726 ft (633 to 2,050 m) deep (mean = 3,672 ft [1,119 m]) while Cuvier's beaked whales were found in waters from 4,531 to 11,992 ft (1,381 to 3,655 m) deep (mean = 6,992 ft [2,131 m]). *Mesoplodon* whales off Kaua'i were most often observed in water between 6,562 and 9,843 ft (2,000 and 3,000 m) in depth, with areas of high bathymetric slope (Henderson et al., 2016).

**Group Size**

*Mesoplodon stejnegeri* in Alaska had pod sizes between 5 and 15 animals (Loughlin, 1982). Sowerby's beaked whale in the Gully in Canada had group sizes between 3 and 10 (Hooker and Baird, 1999b). Dense-beaked whales off the Canary Islands had group sizes ranging between 2 and 9 with a mean size of 3.44 whales (Ritter and Brederlau, 1999). Sightings of Longman's beaked whale in the western Indian Ocean found group sizes between 1 and 40, with a mean size of 7.2 whales (Anderson et al., 2006). Blainville's beaked whales off Hawai'i had a mean group size of 2.6 (SD=3.0) with a range of 1-9, while Cuvier's beaked whales groups were smaller, with a mean size of 2.6 (SD = 1.3) and a range of 1-5 animals (Baird et al., 2006).

***Large Beaked Whales*** (*Berardius, Hyperoodon,* and *Tasmacetus*)

**Surface Time**

Surface times in Arnoux's beaked whales ranged from 1.2 to 6.8 min (Hobson and Martin, 1996). Sowerby's beaked whales had surface times of 1-2 min, during which they would blow 6-8 times (Hooker and Baird, 1999b).

**Dive Depth**

The minimum and maximum dive depth measured for a northern bottlenose whale was 394 ft (120 m) and 4,770 ft (1,453 m), respectively (Hooker and Baird, 1999a). Northern bottlenose whales performed shallow dives with a range of 135 to 1,089 ft (41 to 332 m) (n=33), while deep dives ranged from 1,618 to 4,767 ft (493 to 1,453 m) (n=23). Dive depth and dive duration were strongly correlated (Hooker and

Baird, 1999a). Martin Lopez et al. (2015) reported a mean dive depth of 5,158 ft (1,572 m) for northern bottlenose whales. Based on the depth distribution of the most commonly consumed prey, Baird's beaked whales off Honshu, Japan probably feed at depths of 2,625 to 3,937 ft (800 to 1,200 m) (Walker et al., 2002).

**Dive Time**

The minimum and maximum dive time measured was 16 and 70.5 min respectively (Hooker and Baird, 1999a). Sowerby's beaked whales had dives between 12 and (at least) 28 min in the Gully in Canada (Hooker and Baird, 1999b). Martin Lopez et al. (2015) reported a mean dive duration of 49 min for northern bottlenose whales. Arnoux's beaked whale had modal dive times between 35 and 65 min (mean = 46.4, SD = 13.1), with a maximum dive time of at least 70 min (Hobson and Martin, 1996). Tagging results with *Ziphius* had one animal diving for 50 min (Johnson et al., 2004). *Mesoplodon stejnegeri* were observed to dive for "10-15 min" in Alaska (Loughlin, 1982).

**Heading Variance**

Sowerby's beaked whales surfacing in the Gully were reported to have no apparent orientation, and would change orientation up to 180° between surfacings (Hooker and Baird, 1999b)

**Speed**

Northern bottlenose whale dive rates averaged 3.3 ft/sec (1 m/sec) or 1 kt (3.6 kph) (Hooker and Baird, 1999a). A mean surface speed of 2.7 kt (5 kph) was reported by (Kastelein and Gerrits, 1991) for northern bottlenose whales.

**Habitat**

The minimum sea depth in which beaked whales were found in the Gulf of Mexico was 830 ft (253 m) (Davis et al., 1998). The distribution of Baird's beaked whale is restricted to the cool, deep waters of the northern North Pacific Ocean and contiguous seas (Reeves and Mitchell, 1993). Northern bottlenose whales are known for inhabiting deep-water nearshore canyons (Wimmer and Whitehead, 2004).

**Group Size**

Baird's beaked whales have been seen in groups of up to 30, but groups of four to ten whales are more common (Reeves and Mitchell, 1993).

### B-2.4.8 Blackfish: False Killer Whale, Pygmy Killer Whale, and Melon-Headed Whale

Studies describing the movements and diving patterns of these species are rare and sparse. Therefore, they have been combined into a single "blackfish" category. As more data become available, these species will be split into separate animats.

**Surface Time**

No direct measurements of surface time are available, so the default value of one min was used.

**Dive Depth**

The maximum dive depth of a single false killer whale off the Madeira was 236 ft (72 m). Most of the time was spent at depths deeper than 66 ft (20 m), and the dives were V-shaped (Alves et al., 2006). Three false killer whales in Hawaiʻi had shallow dives as well, with maximum depths of 72, 171, and 174 ft (22, 52, and 53 m) (Ligon and Baird, 2001). It should be noted that these animals were feeding on fish. False killer whales offshore of Japan had mean dive depths of 56 ft (SD = 16.4) (17 m [SD = 5]) for shallow dives and 578 ft (SD = 607) (170 m [SD = 185]) for deep dives (Minamikawa et al., 2013). Shallow dives were approximately five times more common than deep dives.

Mooney et al. (2012) reported in preliminary research findings that a tagged melon-headed whale in Hawaiian waters dove deeply to near the seafloor (> 984 feet [300 m]), at night but they stayed near the sea surface during the day, with no dives > 66 ft (20 m).

Melon-headed whales in the Caribbean Sea appeared to have two modes of foraging diving; a small percentage of less than 328 ft (100 m) and most dives between 492 and 1,641 ft (150 and 500 m) (distributed nearly normally) (Joyce et al., 2017)

**Dive Time**

In the western North Pacific Ocean, shallow dives of false killer whales were reported with a mean duration of 103 sec, while deep dives had a mean duration of 269 sec (SD = 189) (Minamikawa et al., 2013). Melon-headed whales in the Caribbean appeared to forage primarily at night, with dives lasting to about 18 min (Joyce et al., 2017). Dive time and depth were related by the equation:

$$\text{Log(depth in meters)} = 1.557 * \log(\text{time in min}) - 1.742.$$

**Speed**

Maximum speed recorded for false killer whales was 26.2 ft/sec (8.0 m/sec) (15.6 kt [28.8 kph]) (Rohr et al., 2002), although the typical cruising speed is typically 20 to 24 percent less than the maximum speed (Fish and Rohr, 1999). This “typical” maximum of 20.5 ft/sec (6.24 m/sec) (11.9 kt [22 kph]) was used as the maximum speed for AIM.

**Group Size**

False killer whales in the Gulf of Mexico had group sizes between 20 and 35 (mean = 27.5, SE = 7.5, n=2) (Mullin and Fulling, 2004). False killer whales off Costa Rica had a mean group size of 36.16 (± 52.38) (May-Collado et al., 2005)

### B-2.4.9 Pilot Whales: Short-finned Pilot Whales

There are insufficient data available to have separate animats for the two pilot whale species. Therefore, they are combined into a single pilot whale animat. In the SURTASS LFA sonar study area, only the short-finned pilot whale is expected to occur.

**Surface Time**

A rehabilitated long-finned pilot whale in the North Atlantic was equipped with a satellite tag and a time-depth recorder (TDR). The log survivorship plot of dive time from this animal had an inflection point at about 40 sec (Mate et al., 2005). The authors did not feel that this qualified as a breakpoint to separate surface and dive behavior. However, it does suggest that most surface intervals are less than one min.

**Dive Depth**

Long-finned pilot whales in the Mediterranean were observed to display considerable diurnal variation in their dive depths. They never dove to more than 52.5 ft (16 m) during the day. However, at night, they dove to maximum depths of 1,181 and 2,126 ft (360 and 648 m) with mean depth of 1,011 and 1,365 ft (308 and 416 m) (Baird et al., 2002). Rehabilitated long-finned pilot whales dove to 1,024 ft (312 m) on Georges Bank, which has a depth of 1,181 ft (360 m), so these values should not be taken as the maximum. The distribution of dive depths was also skewed toward lower values (Nawojchik et al., 2003). Long-finned pilot whales in Norway had maximum dive depths of 1,457 ft (± 279) (444 m [± 85]) (Aoki et al., 2017)

Short-finned pilot whales off Madeira Island in the Atlantic Ocean spent most (~75 percent) of their time in the top 33 ft (10 m) of the water column during the day, with a very few deep dives, including one to a maximum depth of 3,242 ft (988 m) (Alves et al., 2013). Short-finned pilot whales off the Canary Islands had maximum depth of 3,343 ft (1,019 m) (Aguilar Soto et al., 2008). The majority of these were to depths of less than 328 ft (100 m while the remainder of depths were approximately evenly distributed between 328 and 3,281 ft (100 and 1000 m) (Figure B-9). Short-finned pilot whales in the Caribbean had foraging dives to maximum depth of 2,952 ft (900 m), but in a near exponential distribution, with most dives being shallow (Joyce, et al., 2017).

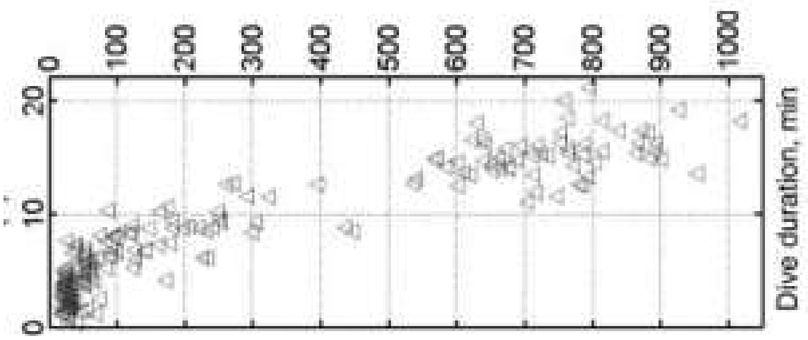



**Figure B-9. Relationship of Dive Depth and Dive Time for Short-Finned Pilot Whales of the Canary Islands (Aguilar Soto et al., 2008).**

## Dive Time

Baird et al. (2002) reported on dives of two individual long-finned pilot whales, and dive times varied between 2.14 and 12.7 min during the night. Animals spent all of their time in the top 52 ft (16 m) of the water column during the day.

A rehabilitated long-finned pilot whale in the North Atlantic had dive times between 1 and 6 min (Mate et al., 2005). Other rehabilitated long-finned whales were reported to dive for at least 25 min, although the distribution is skewed toward shorter dives, with most lasting about two min (Nawojchik et al., 2003; Figure B-10). Long-finned pilot whales off the Faroe Islands never dove longer than 18 min (Heide-Jørgensen et al., 2002). Long-finned pilot whales in Norway had relative short dives (8.9 ±1.5 min) (Aoki et al., 2017).

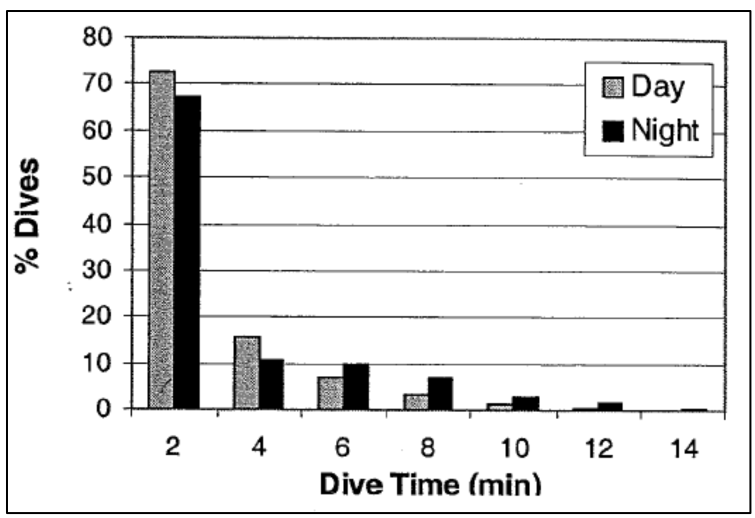



**Figure B-10. Dive Times for Long-Finned Pilot Whales (Nawojchik, St Aubin, & Johnson, 2003).**

Short-finned pilot whales off the Canary Islands had maximum foraging dive times of 21 min (Aguilar Soto et al., 2008). They demonstrated a near-linear relationship between dive depth and dive duration. Short-finned pilot whales off Madeira Island performed only a few deep dives during the day, witha mean duration of approximately 15 min (Alves et al., 2013). Therefore, pilot whale animats were programmed to perform shallow dives ranging between 1 and 10 minand deep dives between 5 and 21 min.

**Speed**

Shane (1995) reported a minimum speed of 1.08 kt (2 kph) and a maximum of 6.5 kt (12 kph) for pilot whales. During the day in the Mediterranean, animals swam slowly, with mean values for two animals of 2.5 and 2.9 ft/sec (0.76 and 0.89 m/sec) (1.53 and 1.72 kt [2.85 and 3.18 kph]), while at night, they swam faster at 6.23 ft/sec (1.90 m/sec) (3.69 ft [6.83 kph]) and 4.99 ft/sec (1.52 m/sec) (2.96 kt [5.48 kph]) (Baird et al., 2002). A single satellite tracked long fined pilot whale had a minimum speed of 0.76 kt (1.4 kph) (Mate et al., 2005). The speeds of traveling pilot whales (*G. scammoni*) was estimated at 4 to 5 kt (7.5 to 9.3 kph) (Norris and Prescott, 1961 cited in Mate, 2005). Vertical dive speeds of three TDR tagged long-finned pilot whales ranged from 2.6 to 11.1 ft/sec (0.79 to 3.38 m/sec), with a mean of 6.5 ft/sec (1.99 m/sec) (Heide-Jørgensen et al., 2002). A long-finned pilot whale had speeds of approximately 2.6 to 7.2 ft/sec (0.8 to 2.2 m/sec) before playback of acoustic stimuli (Miller et al., 2012).

**Residency**

Short-finned pilot whales in the western North Atlantic Ocean showed a strong affinity for continental shelf breaks and canyons. These individuals showed high level of area-restricted search behavior, indicating low linearity indices and high residency values. Other individuals followed meanders in the Gulf Stream (Thorne et al., 2017). These individuals would show a corresponding low residency value.

**Habitat**

The minimum water depth that pilot whales were seen in the Gulf of Mexico was 807 ft (246 m) (Davis et al., 1998) while off of Spain they preferred water deeper than 1,969 ft (600 m) (Cañadas et al., 2002). Short-finned pilot whales in the western North Atlantic showed a strong affinity for continental shelf breaks and canyons. Other individuals followed meanders in the Gulf Stream, indicating that distribution of these whales is non-random (Thorne et al., 2017).

**Group Size**

Short-finned pilot whales in the Gulf of Mexico ranged in group size between 5 and 50 (mean = 20.4, Standard Error = 3.6, n = 11) (Mullin et al., 2004). Off the Pacific coast of Costa Rica the mean group size of Pilot whales was 14.22 (SD = 12.06) (May-Collado et al., 2005).

### B-2.4.10 Sperm Whale

**Surface Time**

Male sperm whales in New Zealand had a mean duration on the surface of 9.1 min, with a range of 2 to 19 min (Jaquet et al., 2000). The distribution of surface times was non-normal, with 68 percent of the surface times ranging between 8 and 11 min.

**Surfacing and Dive Angles**

Surfacing angles of 90° and diving angles between 60° and 90° have been reported (Miller et al., 2004).

**Dive Depth**

The maximum, accurately measured, sperm whale dive depth was 4,364 ft (1,330 m) (Watkins et al., 2002). Foraging dives typically begin at depths of 984 ft (300 m) (Papastavrou et al., 1989). D-tag data from the Gulf of Mexico show that most foraging dives were between the depths of 1,312 to 2,625 ft (400 to 800 m), with occasional dives between 2,953 and 3,281 ft (900 and 1000 m) (Jochens et al., 2008). Sperm whale diving is not uniform. As an example, data from a paper on sperm whale diving reported different dive types (Amano and Yoshioka, 2003; Table B-7). Dive depths have also been shown to have diel variation in some areas while others do not show this variation (Aoki et al., 2007). These differences have been attributed to the behavior of the prey species. Off California, tagged whales changed their dive patterns in response to changes in the depth of tagged squid (Davis et al., 2007). Male sperm whales foraging in high latitude waters dove to a maximum depth of 6,103 ft (1,860 m), but the median dive depth was only 574 ft (175 m) (Teloni et al., 2008). In the Atlantic Ocean, maximum dive depths ranged from 2,097 to 3,064 ft (639 to 934 m) (Palka and Johnson, 2007).

**Table B-7. Sperm Whale Dive Parameters (Amano and Yoshioka, 2003).**

| *Type of Dive* | *N* | *Depth (m)* | | *Time (min)* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Min* | *Max* | *Min* | *Max* |
| Dives w/ active bottom period | 65 | 606 | 1082 | 33.17 | 41.63 |
| Dives w/o active bottom period | 4 | 417 | 567 | 31.29 | 33.71 |
| V shaped dives | 3 | 213 | 353 | 12.77 | 20.83 |
| Total | 74 | | | | |

Note: The dive data in this table represent only the sperm whales in the Amano and Yoshioka study. These data do not equate to the values used in AIM. For example, the table shows minimum and maximum dive times as 12.77 and 41.63 min respectively, while the values used in AIM runs are 18.2 and 65.3 min respectively, as stated below under dive time.

Off Ogasawara, Japan, sperm whales showed diel variability in dive depths. Whales dove deeper during the day (mean = 2,799 ± 427 ft [853 ± 130 m]) than at night (mean = 1,539 ± 400 ft [469 ± 122 m]) (Aoki et al., 2007). However, off of Kumano Coast, there was not a strong difference in depths (1,841 ft [561 m] versus 2,120 ft [646 m]).

Sperm whales off Kaikoura foraged at depths between 965 and 4,702 ft (294 and 1,433 m) (Guerra et al., 2017). These whales also engaged a substantial portion of demersal foraging, within 164 ft (50 m) of the sea floor.

Sperm whales in the Caribbean performed non-foraging dives to 1,641 ft (500 m), while foraging dives ranged between 1,805 and 4,265 ft (550 and 1,300 m (Joyce et al., 2017).

**Dive Time**

Sperm whale dive times average 44.4 min in duration and range from 18.2 to 65.3 min (Watkins et al., 2002). In the Gulf of Mexico, the modal dive time is about 55 min (Jochens et al., 2008). Dive times in the Atlantic averaged 40-45 min (Palka and Johnson, 2007).

**Heading Variance**

Whales in the Gulf of Mexico tend to follow bathymetric contours (Jochens et al., 2008). Figure B-11 shows a histogram of the angular difference between two fluke up positions and the orientation of the depth contours for movement intervals of less than 70 mins. Relative angles between direction of movements and direction of contours have been calculated and transformed so that 0 shows alignment with the orientation of the contour, -90 would be moving directly offshore, and +90 would be movement directly inshore. Sperm whales in the Pacific had mean ”zigzag” scores (ratio of distance swum in 12 hours/straight-line distance) reported as 1.71 (SD = 0.80) with a range of 1.12 to 3.7 (Jaquet and Whitehead, 1999).

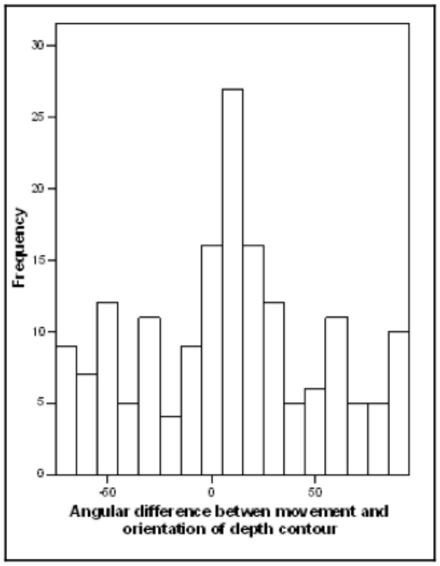



**Figure B-11. Histogram of Angular Difference Between Two Fluke up Movement Positions and the Orientation of the Depth Contours (Jochens et al., 2008).**

Examination of group behavior found the turns occurred at a rate of 0.1/hr, with a mean change of direction of 70˚ (median 56˚) for sudden turns and 84˚ (median 75˚) for gradual turns (Whitehead, 2016). The time needed for gradual turns was 1.3 hours (median 0.8h), producing a turn rate of 63˚/hr (median 92˚/hr). Irvine et al. (2017) reported diving characteristics for sperm whales tagged in the Gulf of California (Table B-8).

**Speed**

Sperm whales are typically slow or motionless on the surface. Mean surface speeds of 0.67 kt (1.25 kph) were reported by Jaquet et al. (2000) and 1.85 kt (3.42 kph) (Whitehead et al., 1989). Their mean dive rate ranges from 2.82 to 5.44 kt (5.22 to 10.08 kph) with a mean of 3.95 kt (7.32 kph) (Lockyer, 1997). In Norway, horizontal swimming speeds varied between 0.66 and 8.53 ft/sec (0.2 and 2.6 m/sec) (0.39 and 5.05 kt [0.72 and 9.36 kph]) (Wahlberg, 2002). Sperm whales in the Atlantic Ocean swam at speeds between 1.4 and 1.9 kt (2.6 and 3.5 kph) (Watkins et al., 1999;Jaquet and Whitehead, 1999). Mean speeds in the Gulf of Mexico were 1.8 kt (3.3 kph) (Jochens et al., 2008). Based on these data, a minimum speed of 0.54 kt (1 kph), and a maximum speed of 4.3 kt (8 kph0 was set for sperm whales, specified with a normal distribution, so that mean speeds will be about 2.2 kt (4 kph). Off Ogasawara Japan, sperm whales swam faster during the day, mean = 6.6 ft/sec (SD = 0.98) (2.0 m/sec [SD = 0.3]), than during the night, mean = 4.9 ft/sec (SD = 0.98) (1.5 m/sec [SD = 0.3]).

**Habitat**

Sperm whales are found almost everywhere, but they are usually in water deeper than 1,575 ft (480 m) (Davis et al., 1998). However, there have been sightings of animals in shallow water (131 to 328 ft [40 to 100 m]) (Scott and Sadove, 1997; Whitehead et al., 1992). In the Gulf of California, there was no relationship between depth or bathymetric slope and abundance, and animals were seen in water as shallow as 328 ft (100 m) (Jaquet and Gendron, 2002). Based on these reports, a compromise value of 656 ft (200 m) was used as the shallow water limit for sperm whales.

**Table B-8. Sperm whale dive parameters for Gulf of California whales (Irvine et al., 2017).**

| Dive Type | Dive Duration (min) | Max Dive Depth (m) | Mean Bottom Depth (m) | SD Bottom Depth | Ascent Rate (m/s) | Descent Rate (m/s) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Mid- water | 30.3 (5.8–61.2) | 340.0 (119.2–581.2) | 310.2 (74.2–549.1) | 19.4 (0.7–165.9) | 0.8 (0.1–1.9) | 0.7 (0.0–1.8) |
| Short, shallow | 2.3 (1.0–24.1) | 16.0 (10.4–310.8) | 15.0 (10.2–305.8) | 0.0 (0.0–15.3) | 0.1 (0.0–2.2) | 0.1 (0.0–1.4) |
| V- shaped | 21.4 (1.3–48.1) | 290.0 (42.6–832.0) | 281.5 (15.4–832.0) | 5.9 (0.0–101.9) | 0.6 (0.1–3.2) | 0.5 (0.1–2.2) |
| Benthic | 45.8 (27.3–77.3) | 456.5 (203.0–978.2) | 442.0 (198.7–973.0) | 6.9 (0.8–128.4) | 1.0 (0.6–1.7) | 1.0 (0.3–1.8) |
| Variable | 33.1 (12.1–61.6) | 635.0 (267.2–1501.0) | 512.6 (154.0–1425.5) | 60.3 (0.0–311.3) | 1.0 (0.1–2.3) | 0.9 (0.3–2.6) |
| Long, shallow | 11.0 (1.3–44.9) | 21.4 (10.6–206.2) | 17.0 (10.1–122.1) | 1.8 (0.1–66.9) | 0.1 (0.0–1.1) | 0.1 (0.0–0.5) |

| Dive Type | Bottom Duration (min) | Post-Dive Interval (min) | BottDur/ TotalDur | Dist to Bottom (m) | Speed (km/hr) | Turning Angle (deg) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Mid- water | 16.0 (1.0–49.9) | 8.4 (1.1–124.4) | 0.5 (0.1–0.9) | 388.9 (0.0–1406.8) | 3.8 (0.1–8.7) | 22.9 (0.0–178.9) |
| Short, shallow | 0.0 (0.0–10.2) | 3.9 (0.0–92.0) | 0.0 (0.0–0.8) | 547.1 (115.0–1195.6) | 3.2 (0.3–10.7) | 0.0 (0.0–125.9) |
| V- shaped | 4.2 (0.0–18.3) | 7.5 (0.1–49.3) | 0.2 (0.0–0.9) | 458.3 (0.0–1195.0) | 3.5 (0.1–9.1) | 17.5 (0.0–177.8) |
| Benthic | 31.0 (9.5–64.9) | 7.8 (2.8–17.9) | 0.7 (0.2–0.8) | 0.0 (0.0–129.0) | 3.2 (0.3–8.2) | 30.0 (0.0–178.6) |
| Variable | 14.2 (0.0–37.9) | 8.0 (4.0–49.3) | 0.5 (0.0–0.8) | 80.1 (0.0–943.0) | 3.6 (0.2–10.9) | 25.3 (0.0–179.7) |
| Long, shallow | 8.0 (0.7–39.9) | 6.0 (0.2–81.5) | 0.7 (0.2–1.0) | 434.8 (127.2–1113.0) | 3.0 (0.3–9.2) | 8.0 (0.0–173.1) |

**Group Size**

Social, female-centered groups of sperm whales in the Pacific have ”typical” group sizes of 25-30 animals, based on the more precise measurements in Coakes and Whitehead (2004), although less precise estimates are as high as 53 whales in a group.

### B-2.4.11 Hawaiian Monk Seal

**Activity Budget**

The mean proportion of time ashore ranges from 0.13 to 0.43, with an overall mean of 0.27 (DeLong et al., 1984). On average, monk seals spent 49 percent of their time diving, 19 percent on the surface, and 32 percent hauled out on land (Wilson et al., 2017).

**Surface Time**

Mean surface time was 0.8 sec (Kiraç et al., 2002).

**Dive Depth**

Monk seals were observed to dive between 164 and 1,640 ft (50 and 500 m) (Parrish et al., 2002). The overwhelming majority of the foraging dives recorded with a Crittercam were to 164-197 ft (50-60 m) in depth (Parrishet al., 2000). In the main Hawaiian Islands, monk seals dove to between 66 and 164 ft (20 and 50 m) (Wilson et al., 2017). The distribution of dive depths was skewed toward shallower dives. Maximum dive depth can be approximated with gamma distribution parameters of a=1.70625 and b = 11.8725, with bounds of 0 and 338 ft (0 and 103 m).

**Dive Time**

Maximum dive times of 12 min were observed (Neves, 1998). Mean dive times of 6.4 min have been observed (Kiraç et al., 2002). The mean proportion of time ashore ranges from 0.13 to 0.43, with a mean of 0.27 (DeLong et al., 1984). The distribution of foraging dives was fairly normally distributed between zero and 1,000 sec with a mean of 355 sec (SD = 151) (Wilson et al., 2017)

**Speed**

No swim speeds have been reported for Hawaiian monk seals. Therefore, the 4.86 kt (9 kph) value for harbor seals was used (Lesage et al., 1999).

**Heading Variance**

Yaw rates (the rate of change of the heading angle in the horizontal plane) were calculated, but not reported by Wilson et al. (2017).

**Residency**

Monk seals in the main Hawaiian Islands had relatively small home ranges, most less than 583 $nmi^2$ (2,000 $km^2$) (Wilson et al., 2017).

**Habitat**

Hawaiian monk seals are found primarily on the leeward Hawaiian Islands north of Kaua'i. They haul out on the shores and return to the water to feed. This atoll habitat makes deep water available close to shore, and they are known to dive to the seafloor in at least 1,641 ft (500 m) of water. They have recently been increasing in numbers throughout the Main Hawaiian Islands while decreasing in the Leeward Islands (Wilson et al., 2017). The boundary between nearshore Northwest Hawaiian Island and Main Hawaiian Island monk seals is taken to be 161˚ W.

**Group Size**

Hawaiian monk seals are solitary, except for mothers and calves (Reeves et al., 2002).

### B-2.4.12 Northern Fur Seal

**Surface Time**

The activity budget during feeding trips of seven lactating females consisted of diving 26 percent of the time while at sea and either resting (17 percent) or swimming (57 percent) at the surface (Gentry et al., 1986). Between deep dives, the surface time was calculated as 0.8 min, whereas between shallow dives, the surface time was 0.5 min (Goebel et al., 1991).

**Dive Depth**

Three types of diving patterns: deep dives, shallow dives, and mixed dives. Deep dives (to depths > 410 ft [125 m]) occur throughout the day and night and represent foraging dives over the continental shelf (< 656 ft [200 m] water depth) to the sea floor. Shallow dives (to depths < 246 ft [75 m]) occur primarily at night in areas with deep water depths (Ponganis et al., 1992). Gentry et al. (1986) measured modal dive depths of 164-197 ft (50-60 m) for shallow dives and 574 ft (175 m) for deep dives. Goebel et al. (1991) calculated average dive depths of 118 ± 75 ft (36 ± 23 m) for shallow dives and 282 ± 85 ft (86 ± 26 m) for deep dives.

**Dive Time**

Goebel et al. (1991) calculated average dive durations of 4.1 ± 0.2 min for shallow dives and 7.3 ± 0.5 min for deep dives. This is similar to other measured modal durations of less than 2 min for shallow dives and between 3 and 5 min for deep dives (Ponganis et al., 1992).

**Speed**

Three females tagged during the winter migration exhibited average traveling speeds of 0.59-0.92 kt (1.1-1.7 kph) (Baba et al., 2000). During summer foraging trips, mean swim velocities on shallow dives were 4.9 and 3.9 ft/sec (1.5 and 1.2 m/sec); deep dives were 5.9 and 4.9 ft/sec (1.8 and 1.5 m/sec) (Ponganis et al., 1992). During the winter migration, an overall swim speed for all animals (n=13) was 1.6 ± 0.41 ft/sec (48 ± 12.4 cm/sec) (Ream et al., 2005). Fur seals from Bering Sea islands had a mean speed of 2.7 kt (5 kph) while travelling (Battaile et al., 2015).

**Habitat**

The majority of the population of northern fur seals breeds on the Pribilof Islands of Alaska (74 percent) or the Commander Islands of Russia (17 percent) (Gentry, 2002). From November to March, animals are foraging north of about 35° N; March and April, animals move to continental shelf breaks and begin to migrate north. Pups are mainly born in July, weaned in October or November, and begin the southbound migration with the rest of population (Gentry, 2002). Animals that breed at San Miguel Island and adult males of all breeding colonies are non-migratory.

## B-3 Results of Aim Modeling

### B-3.1 Animat Exposure Histories

AIM simulates realistic animal movement through the calculated acoustic field where the received level (SPL) is recorded at each time step into the animat's exposure history. Thus, the output of AIM is the time history of exposure for each animat. For this modeling effort, the exposure history provides the received level for each modeled animat every 30 seconds for 24 hours. This history was sampled to reflect the 10 percent duty cycle of SURTASS LFA sonar; that is, 60 seconds of LFA sonar transmission every 10 minutes, which corresponds to 2.4 transmission hours over the 24-hr modeling duration.

Since AIM records the exposure history for each individual animat, the potential impact is determined on an individual animal basis. The sound energy received by each individual animat over the 24-hr modeled period was calculated as SEL and the potential for that animal to experience PTS and then TTS was considered using the NMFS (2018) acoustic guidance thresholds. If an animal was not predicted to experience PTS or TTS, then the sound energy received over the 24-hr modeled period was calculated as dB SPE and used as input to the risk continuum function to assess the potential risk of biologically significant behavioral reaction.

A step-wise process is undertaken to ensure that each individual is considered for only one potential impact (i.e., there is no double counting). The potential for PTS is considered first, as it represents the highest threshold. If an individual does not exceed the PTS threshold, then the potential for TTS is considered. If an animal does not exceed the TTS threshold, then the potential for a behavioral response is considered. Thus, individuals are only considered for one acoustic impact during a 24-hr exposure scenario.

### B-3.2 Behavioral Risk Function for SURTASS LFA Sonar

The potential for a biologically significant behavioral response is estimated using the SURTASS LFA risk continuum function. This function has been described in detail in the Navy's 2001, 2007, 2012, 2015, and 2017 SEISs for SURTASS LFA sonar (DoN, 2001, 2007, 2012, 2015, and 2017), which as previously noted are incorporated by reference. For the convenience of the reader, parts of Chapters 4.2.3 through 4.2.5 of the FOEIS/FEIS (2001) have been included here, with updates as appropriate for current best practices, to provide the foundation upon which the analysis methodology is based.

#### B-3.2.1 Development of the Risk Continuum Approach [Reiteration from the 2001 FOEIS/FEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar]

Before the biological risk standards could be applied to realistic SURTASS LFA sonar scenarios, two factors had to be considered, which resulted in the development of the risk continuum approach. In assessing the potential risk of significant change in a biologically important behavior, two questions must be resolved:

- How does risk vary with repeated exposure?
- How does risk vary with RL?

These questions have been addressed by the use of a function that translates the history of repeated exposures (as calculated in the AIM) into an equivalent RL for a single exposure with a comparable risk. This approach is similar to those adopted by previous studies of risk to human hearing (Crocker, 1997; Richardson et al., 1995b).

##### B-3.2.1.1 Effects of Repeated Exposure

The human model provides the most extensive data and is presently the best objective foundation for an assessment of repeated exposure. Long term hearing loss in humans is accelerated by chronic daily 8-hour workplace exposure (over time scales on the order of tens of years) to sounds at levels of 85 dB(A) re 20 µPa (A-weighted; i.e., in air) or greater (American Academy of Ophthalmology and Otolaryngology, 1969; Ward, 1997). The sound power reference unit dB(A) is the accepted convention for frequency-weighted measure of hearing in humans. In young healthy humans, 0 dB(A) is the nominal threshold of best hearing, and measured free-field thresholds for the frequencies of best binaural hearing (400 to 8,000 Hz) vary between –10 to + 10 dB re 20 µPa (Beranek, 1954; Harris, 1998), depending on measurement objective and technique used.

It is intuitive to assume that the effects of exposure to multiple LF sounds would be greater than the effects of exposure to a single sound. A formula is needed to address the potential for accumulation of effects over a 7 to 20-day period (estimated maximum SURTASS LFA sonar mission period), allowing for varying RLs and a duty cycle of 20 percent or less. There are no published data on marine mammals regarding responses to repeated exposure to LF sound. Two lines of evidence from human studies were used to devise a plausible formula.

Richardson et al. (1995b), citing Kryter et al. (1966), discusses workplace damage risk criteria relative to exposure to continuous narrowband (one-third octave) noise. To relate to workplace data, note that during an 8-hour exposure during normal SURTASS LFA sonar use, the pings would add up to a total of 48 to 96 min of LF sound transmission. The workplace damage risk criteria change from 88 dB to 82 dB to 80 dB re 20 µPa SPL, as the duration of exposure changes from 8 hours to 2 hours to 30 min. These changes indicate that the effects of increased exposure are not constant across this range of durations. When continuous exposure increases from 30 min to 2 hr per day, the effect scales with 10 log10(T). When continuous exposure increases from 2 to 8 hr per day, the effect scales with 3.3 log10(T). These values do not account for the probable reduction of effect due to the long intervals between SURTASS LFA sonar pings.

The second line of evidence comes from repeated exposure to impulsive sounds. Richardson et al. (1995b), citing Kryter (1985) and Ward (1968), discussed the relationship between repeated exposures of the human ear to impulsive sound and a TTS in the subject's hearing. The risk threshold is lowered by 5 dB per ten-fold increase in the number of pulses per exposure if the number of pulses per exposure is less than 100. These findings are consistent with qualitative statements by Crocker (1997). Following this logic, if a ping of level L (in dB SPL) is repeated N times, the SPE level is defined as L + 5 log10(N) in dB SPE. For example, using this formula, 100 pings at RL 170 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) are equivalent to one ping at 180 dB SPE.

The following provides some mathematical details of how the 5 log10(N) factor was implemented for repeated exposure to varying levels:

- For each animal in the AIM simulation, the RL of each ping was calculated as the animal moved in relation to the sound source;
- These RLs were converted into raw acoustic intensities (proportional to the intensity of the signal, or the variance of the waveform);
- To correctly summarize the intensities, their values were squared and summed together; and
- This sum was converted back to an equivalent dB value by taking the base 10 logarithm of the sum, and multiplying it by 5.

In this process, an SPE RL is larger than the maximum SPL RL of any single ping in a sequence (see text box below). Also, the SPE for a sequence consisting of a single loud ping and a long series of much softer pings is almost the same as the level of the single loud ping.

#### B-3.2.1.2 Determination of Risk Function

Prior to the research and analyses documented in the FOEIS/EIS (DoN, 2001), the definition of biological risk to marine mammals had generally been based on a received sound level threshold for individual species. For example, 120 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) has been used as a threshold for behavioral modification (National Research Council (NRC), 1994). However, this approach set a discrete threshold below which any RL value was considered risk-free, and any value above it had been considered certain to cause responses by marine mammals.

Nonetheless, it was unreasonable to assume that in a large animal stock a one decibel RL increase (say, from 119 to 120 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL)) would cause a change from no behavioral response to all animals in the stock responding. Additionally, the use of an SPE metric for this basement value is more protective because it is adding the potential impact of many signals, not just the loudest received.

### Sample Single Ping Equivalent (SPE) and Risk Examples

A generic example to illustrate the calculations used for translating the number of pings into an SPE (Figure B-11). This illustration assumes a marine mammal is exposed to a total of ten SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions, or pings, at received levels (RL) between 150 to 159 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL). The pings are delineated by individual bins of one dB each. The example illustration shows that the animal was exposed to two pings at RL 150 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL), none at RL 151 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL), three pings at RL 152 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL), etc. To arrive at a total SPE for the entire exposure, the intensity level for each ping is first calculated (i.e., 1 x $10^{15}$ µPa for each of the two 150 dB RL exposures, $1.58^{15}$ x 10 µPa for each of three 152 dB RL exposures, etc.). These intensity values are then squared and added together. Taking 5 log10 of this sum of the squared intensities (1.24 x $10^{32}$) results in a total of 160.47 dB SPE.

An example of the effect of increased RL can be seen in Figure B-12, which displays the probability function for a single ping. At a RL of 150 dB SPE, the risk of significant change in a biologically important behavior is 2.5 percent. The RL corresponding to 50 percent risk on this curve is 165 dB SPE. At 180 dB SPE, the risk of significant change in a biologically important behavior is 95 percent. For the above SPE example, the risk function would predict a 24.48 percent probability of significant change in a biologically important behavior.

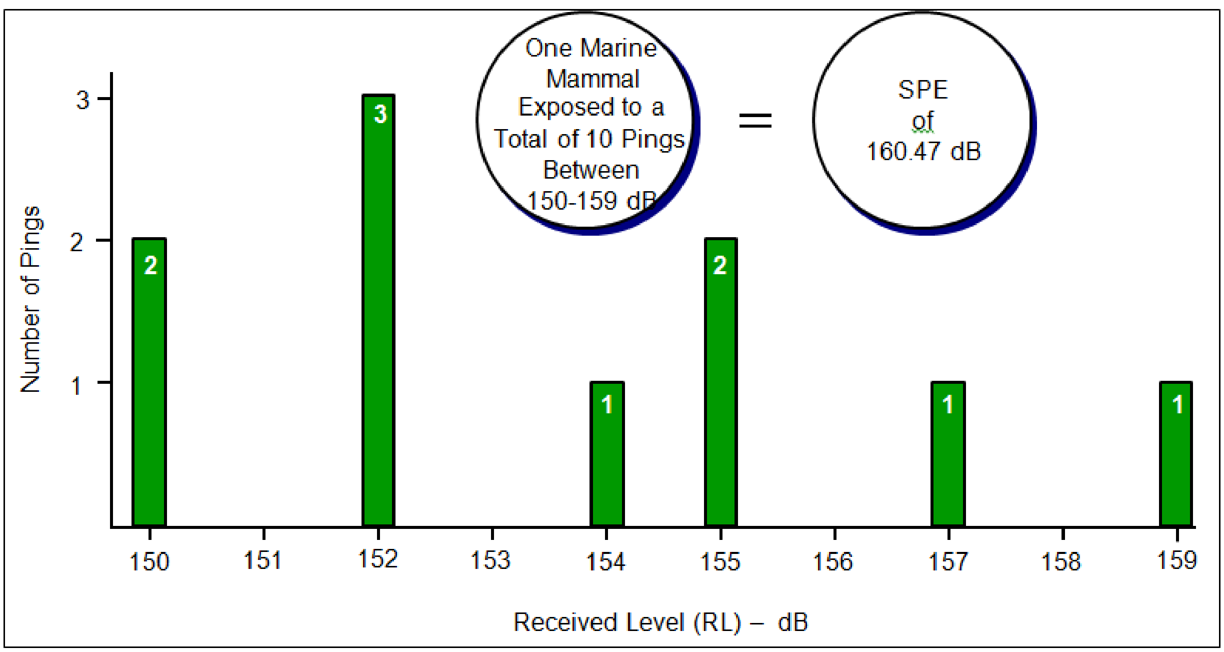



**Figure B-11. Sample Single Ping Equivalent (SPE) Calculation.**

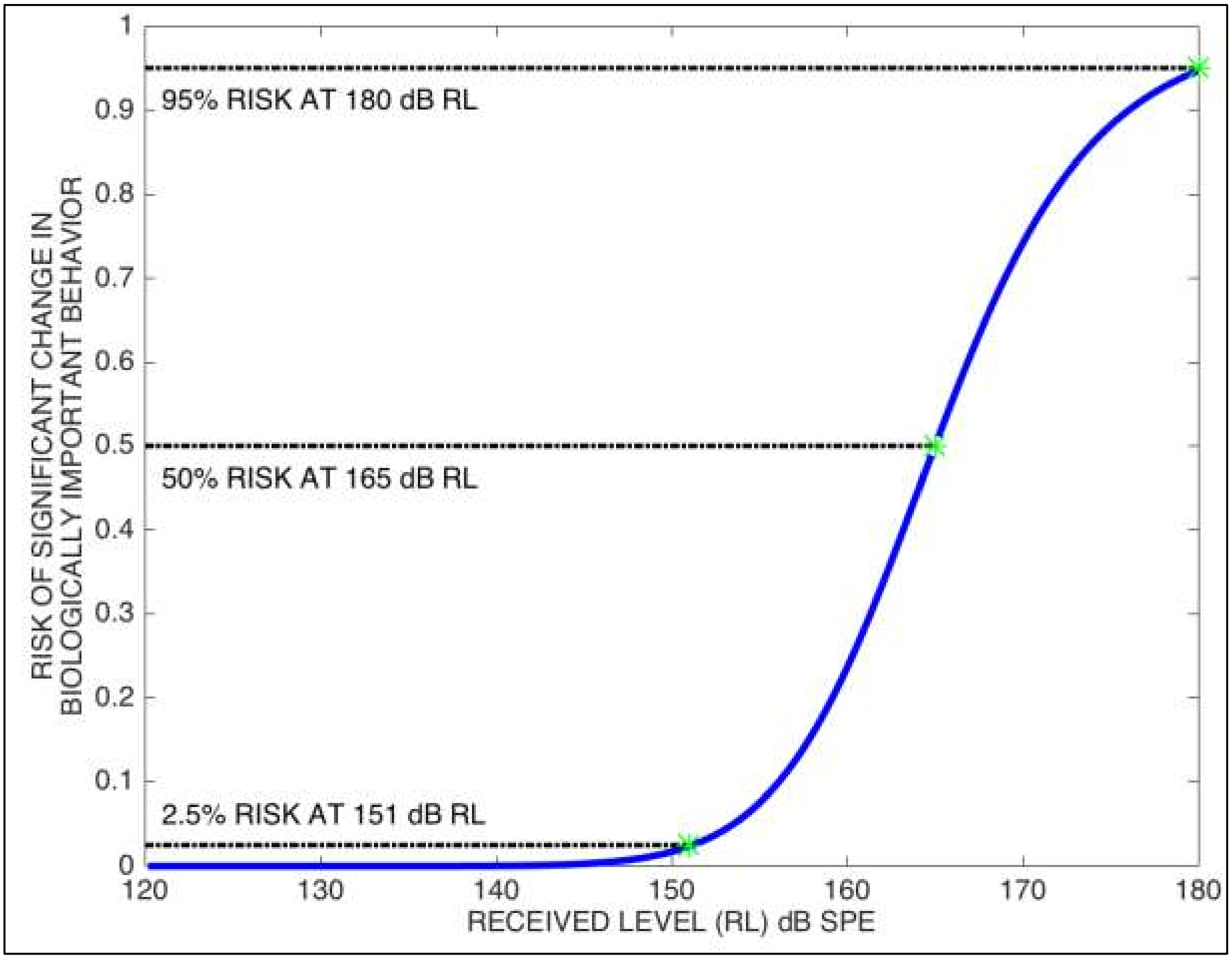



**Figure B-12. Risk Continuum Function for SURTASS LFA Sonar Analysis that Relates the Risk of Significant Change in Biologically Important Behavior to Received Levels in Decibels Single Ping Equivalent (SPE).**

The widely adopted approach used in the 2001 FOEIS/EIS (DoN, 2001) for SURTASS LFA sonar to assess biological risk was a smooth, continuous function that mapped RL to risk (Figure B-12). Scientifically, this acknowledges that individuals may vary in responsiveness. Mathematically, this eliminated the possibility for dramatic changes in estimated impact as a result of small changes in parameter values. As a result, the potential for misleading results was greatly reduced. These were the reasons for developing the risk continuum.

To represent a probability of risk of a biologically significant behavioral response (hereafter, risk), the function should have a value near zero at very low exposures, and a value near one for very high exposures. One class of functions that satisfied this criterion was cumulative probability distributions, or cumulative distribution functions. In selecting a particular functional expression for risk, several criteria were identified:

- The function must use parameters to focus discussion on regions of uncertainty;
- The function should contain a limited number of parameters;

- The function should be capable of accurately fitting experimental data; and
- The function should be reasonably convenient for algebraic manipulations.

The function used here is adapted from the solution in (Feller, 1968) and the parameter values are provided as determined through the Low Frequency Sound Scientific Research Program (LFS SRP):

$$R = \frac{1 - \left(\frac{L - B}{K}\right)^{-A}}{1 - \left(\frac{L - B}{K}\right)^{-2A}}$$

Where:

R = risk of biologically significant behavior (values=0-1.0)
L = RL in dB
B = basement RL in dB, below which risk is negligible (value=120 dB)
K = RL increment above basement at which there is 50 percent risk (value=45 dB)
A = risk transition sharpness parameter (value=10).

To use this function, the values of the three parameters (B, K, and A) need to be established. The values used in the FOEIS/EIS (DoN, 2001) analysis were based on the results of the 1997 to 1998 LFS SRP. Prior to the LFS SRP, a 50 percent probability of avoidance might have been associated with a RL of 120 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) (Malme et al., 1983, 1984). It was also hypothesized, prior to the LFS SRP, that marine mammals exposed to RLs near 140 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) would depart the area (e.g., Richardson et al., 1995b). It was critical, therefore, to examine the logic that motivated the selection of experiments for the LFS SRP, how those results related to earlier data, and how the LFS SRP results related to the development of the risk continuum.

### B-3.2.2 Low Frequency Sound Scientific Research Program (LFS SRP) [Reiteration from the 2001 FOEIS/FEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar]

In 1997, there was a widespread consensus that cetacean response to LF sound signals needed to be better defined using controlled experiments. In response, the Navy worked with scientists to develop the LFS SRP. The LFS SRP was designed to supplement the data from previous studies. Also, the Navy made the SURTASS LFA sonar vessel (R/V *Cory Chouest*) available to the LFS SRP, which enabled greater control over RL due to the dynamic range of the ship's transmission system and the quality of its environmental acoustic modeling capabilities. Logistical constraints limited the experimental use of the SURTASS LFA sonar to the North Pacific.

#### B-3.2.2.1 Previous Studies

Prior to the LFS SRP, the best information regarding whale responses to continuous, LF, anthropogenic noise was summarized by Richardson et al. (1995b):

"Some marine mammals tolerate, at least for a few hours, continuous sound at received levels above 120 dB re 1 µPa (rms). However, others exhibit avoidance when the noise level reaches ~120 dB (re 1 µPa [rms] [SPL]). It is doubtful that many marine mammals would remain for long in areas where received levels of continuous underwater noise are 140+ dB (re 1 µPa [rms] [SPL]) at frequencies to which the animals are most sensitive."

There have been several studies that have demonstrated responses of marine mammals to exposure levels ranging from detection threshold to 120 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL):

- One study examined responses of gray whales migrating along the California coast to various sound sources located in their migration corridor (Malme et al., 1983, 1984). Gray whales showed statistically significant responses to four different underwater playbacks of continuous sound at RLs of approximately 120 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL). The sources of the playbacks were typical of a drillship, semisubmersible, drilling platform, and production platform. This study was replicated in Phase II of the LFS SRP using SURTASS LFA sonar stimuli. However, the Phase II research demonstrated that it may be invalid to apply the inshore (2 km [1.1 nmi] from shore) response model (when 50 percent of the whales avoided SURTASS LFA sonar stimuli at RL of 141 +3 dB re 1 µPa [rms] [SPL]) to sources that were offshore (4 km [2.2 nmi] from shore) of migrating whales where the whales did not avoid offshore sources at RLs of 140 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL).
- Two other studies concern Arctic animals. Belugas (white whales) and narwhals showed behavioral responses to noise from an icebreaker at 50 km (27 nmi). At this range, the RL of the noise is near the detection threshold. Richardson et al. (1995b) point out that the strong reactions to icebreaker noise are unique in the marine mammal disturbance literature. These reactions appeared similar to the responses of each species to their most significant predator, the killer whale (Finley et al., 1990). It is not known why these animals were so sensitive to icebreaker noise and responded as if it were a predator. But, if these animals are responding to ice breakers as if to predators, it was understandable why these animals would show strong responses at detection threshold. This response has not been noted for other sound stimuli, only playback of killer whale calls. The sensitive responses of the Arctic species may relate to the fact that these animals are hunted using motorized boats. Other factors specific to the Arctic that may contribute to this sensitivity are sounds of ice breaking that may mimic a potentially dangerous movement of ice, scarcity of ships in the high Arctic, and low background noise and good underwater sound propagation in Arctic waters.
- Controlled playback experiments and observations around actual industrial sources show bowhead whales avoid drill ship noise at estimated RLs of 110 to 115 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) and seismic sources at estimated RLs of 110 to 132 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) (Richardson, 1997, 1998; Richardson et al., 1995a).

#### B-3.2.2.2 Selection of Species and Study Sites

The selection of species and study sites for the LFS SRP emerged from an extensive review in several workshops by a broad group of interested parties: academic scientists, federal regulators, and representatives of environmental and animal welfare groups. The outcome of this group's decisions was that baleen whales became the focus of all three projects, since they were thought most likely among all marine species to have sensitive hearing in the SURTASS LFA sonar frequency band, because of their protected status and because of prior evidence of avoidance responses to LF sounds. Study sites were selected that offered the best opportunities for detailed observations combined with previous research that documented undisturbed patterns of behavior and distribution, or avoidance reactions to anthropogenic sound at low RLs.

This focus on the most sensitive species and the best sites for detecting a response was intended to produce a model of response that could be applied to other species for which data were lacking. This was a critical element of the logic of the LFS SRP. Extrapolation was unavoidable. By selecting marine mammal species that probably have the most sensitive LF hearing, the LFS SRP results produced a model of response that is likely to overestimate the responses of other species.

The species and settings chosen for the three phases of the LF sound playback experiments were:

- Blue and fin whales feeding in the Southern California Bight (Phase I) (September-October 1997);
- Gray whales migrating past the central California coast (Phase II) (January 1998); and
- Humpback whales off HawaiʻI (February-March 1998) (Phase III).

These studies included three important behavioral contexts for baleen whales: feeding, migrating, and breeding. The first phase also involved some studies of northern elephant seals tagged with acoustic data loggers. Elephant seals are considered among the most sensitive pinnipeds to LF sound and are deep divers (Le Boeuf, 1994). The third phase was designed to include playbacks with sperm whales, but no animals were encountered during the offshore portions of the cruise schedule. Sperm whales are listed by the U.S. as endangered under the ESA, and they were suspected to be the toothed whale most sensitive to LF sound (Ketten, 1997). There have also been reports of sperm whales being sensitive to anthropogenic transient noise (Bowles et al., 1994; Mate and Stafford, 1994; Watkins and Schevill, 1975; Watkins et al., 1985).

#### B-3.2.2.3 Research Program

The 1997-98 LFS SRP was designed to ensure that no marine mammal was exposed to RLs exceeding 160 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL). The LFS SRP produced new information about responses to the SURTASS LFA sonar sounds at RLs from 120 to 155 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL). The LFS SRP team explicitly focused on situations that promoted high RLs (maximum 160 dB re 1 µPa [rms] [SPL]), but were seldom able to achieve RLs in the high region of this exposure range due to the natural movements of the whales and maneuvering constraints of the LF source vessel.

During the first phase of LFS SRP research, the source ship transmitted routinely with the full source array (18 source projectors) at source levels similar to those that would be used normally by the Navy (Clark and Fristrup, 2001). The ship also approached whales while transmitting from two of the projectors at full power levels. Over the 19-day period, there were no immediately obvious responses from either blue or fin whales as noted during observations made from any of the research vessels during playback of LFA sounds (Croll et al., 2001).

In the second phase of LFS SRP research, migrating gray whales showed responses similar to those observed in earlier research (Malme et al., 1983, 1984) when the source was moored in the migration corridor (1.1 nmi [2 km ] from shore). The study extended those results with confirmation that a louder SL elicited a larger scale avoidance response. However, when the source was placed offshore (2.2 nmi [4 km] from shore) of the migration corridor, the avoidance response was not evident. This implies that the inshore avoidance model—in which 50 percent of the whales avoid exposure to levels of 141 ±3 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL)—may not be valid for whales in proximity to an offshore source (Buck and Tyack, 2000).

The third phase of LFS SRP research examined potential effects of SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions on singing humpback whales. These whales showed some apparent avoidance responses and cessation of song during specific LFA sound transmissions at RLs ranging from 120 to 150 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL). However, an equal number of singing whales exposed to the same levels showed no cessation of song during the same LFA sound transmissions. Of the whales that did stop singing, there was little response to subsequent LFA sound transmissions; most joined with other whales or resumed singing within less than an hour of the possible response. Those that did not stop singing, sang longer songs during the period of LFA transmissions, and returned to baseline after transmissions stopped (Clark and Fristrup, 2001; Fristrup et al., 2003; Miller et al., 2000). Further analysis is required to establish how often male humpbacks stop singing in the absence of the SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions, and to evaluate the significance of the song cessation observed during playbacks.

This kind of brief interruption, followed by resumption of normal interactions, was similar to that seen when whales interrupt one another or when small vessels approach whales (Miller et al., 2000). If whales are in a breeding habitat where vessel interactions are frequent, then the aggregate impact of all disruptive stimuli could become significant. However, because the SURTASS LFA sonar system would be located well offshore of these humpback breeding areas, it is likely that the cumulative impact of numerous inshore vessels would be significantly greater on these animals than that caused by an occasional offshore series of SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions.

In summary, the scientific objective of the LFS SRP was to conduct independent field research in the form of controlled experimental tests of how baleen whales responded to SURTASS LFA sonar signals. Taken together, the three phases of the LFS SRP do not support the hypothesis that most baleen whales exposed to RLs near 140 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) would exhibit disturbance of behavior and avoid the area. These experiments, which exposed baleen whales to RLs ranging from 120 to about 155 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL), detected only minor, short-term behavioral responses. Short-term behavioral responses do not necessarily constitute significant changes in biologically important behaviors. The fact that none of the LFS SRP observations revealed a significant change in a biologically important behavior helped determine an upper bound for risk. The LFS SRP results cannot, however, be used to prove that there is zero risk at these levels. Accordingly, the risk continuum assumes that risk is small, but not zero, at the RLs achieved during the LFS SRP. The risk continuum modeled a smooth increase in risk that culminates in a 95 percent level of risk of significant change in a biologically important behavior at 180 dB SPE. Beyond this region, the risk continuum is unsupported by observations. However, the AIM simulation results indicate that a small fraction of any marine mammal stock would be exposed to sound levels exceeding 155 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL).

#### B-3.2.3 Risk Continuum Parameters [Reiteration from the 2001 FOEIS/FEIS for SURTASS LFA Sonar]

To utilize the risk function (Section B-3.2.1), the values of B, A, and K (discussed in detail below) need to be specified. The risk continuum function approximates the dose-response function in a manner analogous to pharmacological risk assessment. In this case, the risk function is combined with the distribution of sound exposure levels to estimate aggregate impact on a stock.

##### B-3.2.3.1 Basement Value for Risk—The B Parameter

The B parameter defines the basement value for risk of biologically significant behavioral response, below which the risk is so low that calculations are impractical. This 120-dB SPE level is taken as the estimate of RL (SPE) below which the risk of significant change in a biologically important behavior approaches zero for the SURTASS LFA sonar risk assessment. This level is the value at which avoidance reactions have been noted in bowhead, beluga, and gray whales. The Navy recognizes that for the actual risk of changes in biologically significant behavior to be zero, the signal-to-noise ratio at the animal must also be zero. However, the present convention of ending the risk calculation at 120 dB SPE has a negligible impact on subsequent calculations, because the risk function does not attain appreciable values until RLs (SPEs) exceed 130 dB SPE (Figure B-12).

#### B-3.2.3.2 Risk Transition—The A Parameter

The A parameter controls how rapidly risk transitions from low to high values with increasing RL (SPE). As A increases, the slope of the risk function increases. For very large values of A, the risk function can approximate a threshold response. The value used here (A=10) (Figure B-12) produces a curve that has a more gradual transition than the curves developed by the analyses of migratory gray whale studies (Malme et al., 1984). The choice of a more gradual slope than the empirical data would indicate was consistent with all other decisions to make assumptions that are more protective when extrapolating from other data sets.

#### B-3.2.3.3 The K Parameter

The K parameter is the RL (SPE) increment above basement at which there is a 50 percent risk of a biologically significant behavioral reaction. Given the lack of consistent and sustained behavioral responses in all three LFS SRP phases, the RL (SPE) at which a 50 percent potential for risk may occur is above 150 dB SPE. Thus, the LFS SRP data cannot be used to specify the value of K directly. Instead, this analysis set the value of K (in conjunction with A) such that the risk for an SPE exposure of 150 dB SPE was 2.5 percent and the risk at 180 dB SPE was 95 percent. Thus, K equals 45 dB, leading to an estimated 50 percent risk at an SPE of 165 dB (i.e., 120 dB + 45 dB). The 2.5 percent risk estimate at 150 dB SPE reflects the fact that tens of experimental trials at RLs (SPEs) up to 155 dB failed to reveal any response that could be construed as affecting survival or reproduction. The 95 percent risk value at 180 dB SPE reflects the assumption that most individuals may be at risk but that a small fraction (5 percent) of the population would not be at risk.

### B-3.3 Current TTS and PTS Thresholds

According to the NMFS acoustic guidance (NMFS, 2018), quantitative assessment of TTS and PTS consists of two parts: 1) an acoustic threshold level and 2) an associated auditory weighting function. To account for the fact that different species groups use and hear sound differently, acoustic thresholds and auditory weighting functions were defined for five broad functional hearing groups: low-, mid-, and high-frequency cetaceans as well as phocid and otariid pinnipeds in water. Southall et al. (2019) published consistent weighting functions and threshold levels for marine mammal species included in the NMFS (2018) guidance, but included all marine mammal species (not just those under NMFS jurisdiction) for all noise exposures (both under water and in air), as well as renaming hearing groups. NMFS (2018) defined these functional hearing groups by combining behavioral and electrophysiological audiograms with comparative anatomy, modeling, and response measured in ear tissues:

- Low-frequency Cetaceans—this group consists of the mysticetes (baleen whales) with a collective a generalized hearing range of 7 Hz to 35 kHz.
- Mid-frequency Cetaceans—this group includes most of the dolphins, all the toothed whales except for the Family Kogiidae, and all the beaked and bottlenose whales with a generalized hearing range of approximately 150 Hz to 160 kHz (renamed high-frequency cetaceans by Southall et al. [2019] because their best hearing sensitivity occurs at frequencies of several tens of kHz or higher).
- High-frequency Cetaceans—this group incorporates all the true porpoises, the river dolphins, plus the Franciscana, *Kogia* spp., all of the genus *Cephalorhynchus*, and two species of *Lagenorhynchus* (Peale's and hourglass dolphins) with a generalized hearing range estimated

from 275 Hz to 160 kHz (renamed very high-frequency cetaceans by Southall et al. [2019] since some species have best sensitivity at frequencies exceeding 100 kHz).

- Phocids in Water—this group consists of 23 species and subspecies of true seals with a generalized underwater hearing range from 50 Hz to 86 kHz (renamed phocids carnivores in water by Southall et al. [2019]).
- Otariids in Water—this group includes 16 species and subspecies of sea lions and fur seals with a generalized underwater hearing range from 60 Hz to 39 kHz (termed other marine carnivores in water by Southall et al. [2019a] and includes otariids, as well as walrus [Family Odobenide], polar bear [*Ursus maritimus*], and sea and marine otters [Family Mustelidae]).

The NMFS guidance (NMFS, 2018) and Southall et al. (2019) detail the science underlying the development of the acoustic threshold levels and the associated auditory weighting functions. Quantitative assessment of the received levels, or acoustic thresholds, above which individuals are predicted to experience changes in their hearing sensitivity for acute, incidental exposure to underwater sound is based upon marine mammal composite audiograms, equal latency, and data on susceptibility to noise-induced hearing loss. Acoustic thresholds and auditory weighting functions are defined for each functional hearing group.

The overall shape of the weighting functions is based on a generic band-pass filter described as:

$$W(f) = C + 10log_{10}\left(\frac{\left(\frac{f}{f_1}\right)^{2a}}{[1+(\frac{f}{f_1})^2]^a[\,1+(\frac{f}{f_2})^2]^b}\right)$$

where W(f) is the weighting function amplitude in dB at a particular frequency (f) in kHz. The function shape is determined by the following weighting function parameters (Table B-9; Figure B-13).

The weighting function is based on parameters that define a generic band-pass filter:

- Low-frequency exponent (a): This parameter determines the rate at which the weighting function amplitude declines with frequency at the lower frequencies. As the frequency decreases, the change in amplitude becomes linear with the logarithm of frequency, with a slope of “a” times 20 dB/decade (e.g., if “a” equals 1, the slope is 20 dB/decade).
- High-frequency exponent (b): Rate at which the weighting function amplitude declines with frequency at the upper frequencies. As the frequency increases, the change in amplitude becomes linear with the logarithm of frequency, with a slope of “b” times 20 dB/decade. Low-frequency cutoff ($f_1$): This parameter defines the lower limit of the band-pass filter (i.e., the lower frequency where weighting function amplitude begins to roll off or decline from the flat, central portion of the function). This parameter is directly dependent on the value of the low-frequency exponent (a). High-frequency cutoff ($f_2$): This parameter defines the upper limit of the band-pass filter (i.e., the upper frequency where the weighting function amplitude begins to roll off or decline from the flat, central portion of the function). This parameter is directly dependent on the value of the high-frequency exponent (b).

**Table B-9. Parameters of the Weighting Functions Utilized in AIM Modeling of PTS and TTS Potential Impacts Associated with Exposure to SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions.**

| *Functional Hearing Group* | *a* | *b* | *$f_1$ (kHz)* | *$f_2$ (kHz)* | *C (dB)* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Low-frequency (LF) cetaceans | 1.0 | 2 | 0.2 | 19 | 0.13 |
| Mid-frequency (MF) cetaceans | 1.6 | 2 | 8.8 | 110 | 1.20 |
| High-frequency (HF) cetaceans | 1.8 | 2 | 12 | 140 | 1.36 |
| Phocid pinnipeds (underwater) | 1.0 | 2 | 1.9 | 30 | 0.75 |
| Otariid pinnipeds (underwater) | 2.0 | 2 | 0.94 | 25 | 0.64 |

- Weighting function gain (C): This parameter determines the vertical position of the function and is adjusted to set the maximum amplitude of the weighting function to 0 dB.

These weighting function parameters have been used in AIM modeling of potential noise-induced hearing loss to marine mammals (Table B-10). The calculated SEL exposure for each individual animat is weighted by the appropriate auditory weighting function, which is then compared to the acoustic thresholds described in the next section.

### B-3.4 Application of PTS and TTS Acoustic Thresholds

In the assessment of the potential for noise-induced hearing loss to marine mammals from exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions, the final step is to compare the weighted SEL values to the appropriate weighted $SEL_{cum}$ threshold to determine if the threshold is exceeded and noise-induced hearing loss is predicted to occur (Table B-10). Since TTS is recoverable and is considered to result from the temporary, non-injurious fatigue of hearing-related tissues, it represents the upper bound of the potential for MMPA Level B impacts. PTS, however, is non-recoverable and results from irreversible impacts on auditory sensory cells, supporting tissues, or neural structures within the auditory system. PTS is an injury and is thus considered within the potential for MMPA Level A harassment impacts.

The potential for PTS (MMPA Level A incidental harassment) is further considered within the context of the mitigation and monitoring efforts that will occur when SURTASS LFA sonar is transmitting. The NMFS (2018) acoustic guidance for estimating the potential for PTS defines weighted thresholds as sound exposure levels (SELs) (Table B-10). The length of a nominal LFA transmission is 60 sec, which lowers the thresholds by approximately 18 dB SEL (10 x $\log_{10}$ [60 sec] =17.8) if the assumption is made that all RLs are at the same RL. However, if transmissions at 300 Hz are considered for this example, as it is in the middle of the frequency range of LFA sonar transmissions (100 to 500 Hz), the thresholds must be appropriately weighted to account for each functional hearing group's sensitivity. This results in an increase in the thresholds of approximately 1.5, 46, 56, 15, and 20 dB, respectively, for LF, MF, HF, PW, and OW groups when considering a signal at 300 Hz. Based on simple spherical spreading (i.e., a transmission loss [TL] based on 20 × $\log_{10}$ [range in meters]), all functional hearing groups except LF cetaceans would need to be within 22 ft (7 m) for an entire LFA transmission (60 sec) to potentially experience PTS. An LF cetacean would need to be within 135 ft (41 m) for an entire LFA transmission to potentially experience PTS. Thus, when mitigation is applied in the modeling-analysis environment, estimations of PTS impacts were 0 for all marine mammal species in all model areas. This result along with the greater than required (i.e., more protective) isopleth of 180 dB (rms) used as the extent of the

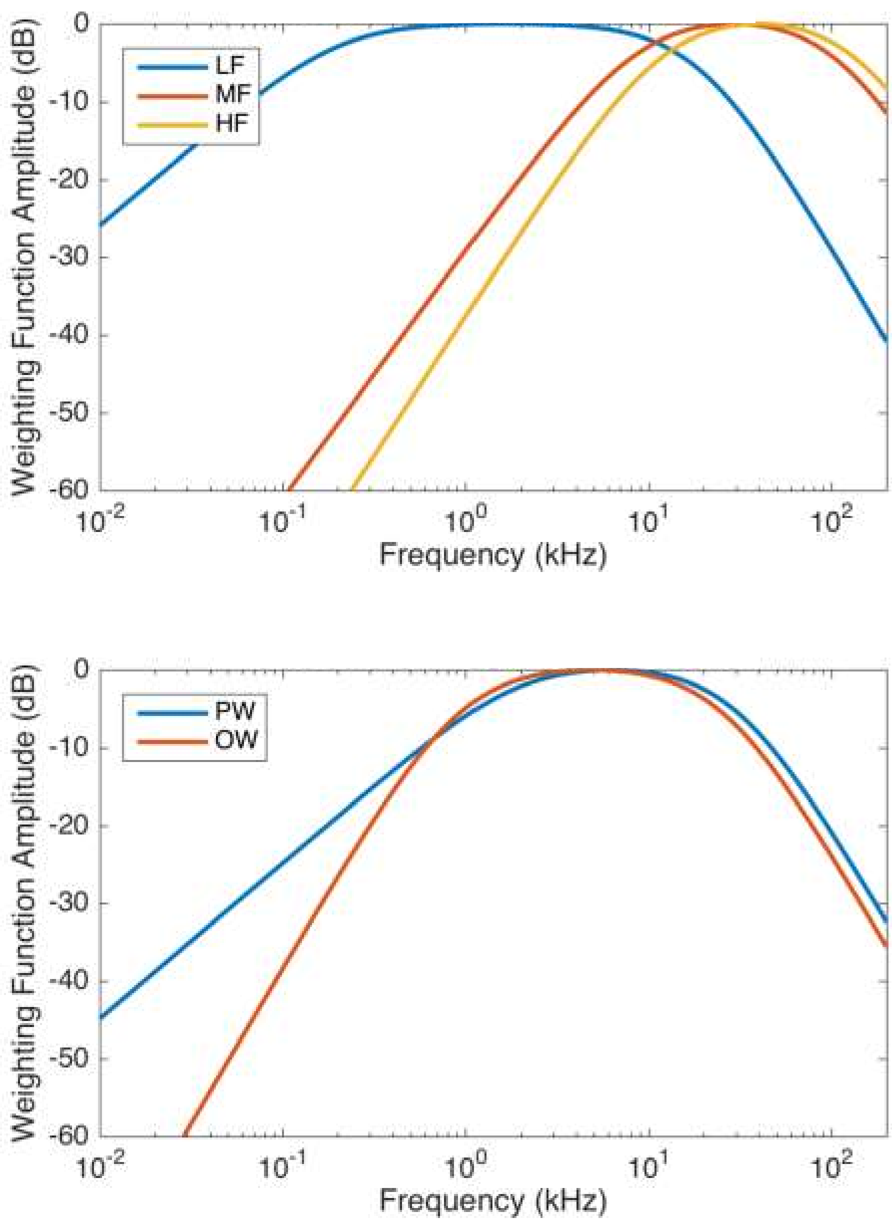



**Figure B-13. Auditory Weighting Functions for Cetaceans (Top Panel: LF, MF, and HF Species) and Pinnipeds (Bottom Panel: PW, OW) (NMFS, 2018).**

LFA mitigation zone around the transmitting sonar results in the Navy requesting no Level A incidental harassment takes.

## B-4 Impact Analysis

### B-4.1 24-hr Impact Analysis

Modeling was conducted for one 24-hr period in each of the four seasons in each model area. Since AIM records the exposure history for each individual animat, the potential impact was determined on an

**Table B-10. Acoustic Criteria and Thresholds Used to Predict Physiological Impacts on Marine Mammals Associated with Exposure to SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions (NMFS, 2018; Southall et al., 2019).**

| *Functional Hearing Group* | *Weighted TTS onset acoustic threshold level ($SEL_{cum}$) (dB)* | *Weighted PTS onset acoustic threshold level ($SEL_{cum}$) (dB)* |
|---|---|---|
| Low-frequency (LF) Cetaceans | 179 | 199 |
| Mid-frequency (MF) Cetaceans | 178 | 198 |
| High-frequency (HF) Cetaceans | 153 | 173 |
| Phocid Pinnipeds (PW underwater) | 181 | 201 |
| Otariid Pinnipeds (OW underwater) | 199 | 219 |

Note: LF cetaceans include all mysticetes (baleen whales) while MF cetaceans include dolphins, beaked whales, and medium to large toothed whales

individual animal basis. When determining the potential physiological impact, the exposure history was weighted to reflect the hearing abilities of the species according to the weighting function described in Section B-3.3 (NMFS, 2018; Southall et al., 2019). The sound energy received by each individual animat over the 24-hr modeled period was calculated as SEL and the potential for that animal to experience PTS and then TTS was considered using the NMFS (2018) acoustic guidance (Table B-10). If an animal was not predicted to experience PTS or TTS, then the sound energy received over the 24-hr modeled period was calculated as dB SPE and used as input to the risk continuum function to assess the potential risk of biologically significant behavioral reaction. The dB SPE input to the risk continuum function is an unweighted level.

To ensure that each individual is considered for only one potential impact (i.e., there is no double counting), the potential for PTS is considered first, as it represents the highest threshold. If an individual does not exceed the PTS threshold, then the potential for TTS is considered. If an animal does not exceed the TTS threshold, then the potential for a behavioral response is considered. Thus, individuals are not considered for more than one acoustic impact during a 24-hr exposure scenario.

To estimate the potential impacts for each marine mammal stock on an annual basis, several calculation steps are required. The first step is to calculate the potential impact for one LFA sonar transmission hour. The 24-hr modeling results for each season are for 2.4 transmission hours (i.e., the SURTASS LFA sonar was simulated to transmit at a 10 percent duty cycle, so 24 hours of LFA sonar use equate to 2.4 sonar transmission hours; Table B-11). Therefore, the impact estimates from 24 hours of LFA sonar use (2.4 transmission hours) were divided by 2.4 to transform the results into potential impacts on a per transmission hour basis. Then, because the use of SURTASS LFA sonar is not driven by any seasonal factors, and LFA sonar activities are most likely to occur with equal frequency in any of the four seasons, the per transmission hour impact estimates for each season were averaged to provide a single annual per transmission hour impact estimate. At this point, the average impact of an hour of SURTASS LFA transmission during any time of the year has been calculated for every species or stock.

### B-4.2 Alternatives Impact Analysis

The second step for calculating the potential impacts from all SURTASS LFA transmissions within a year is to determine the number of LFA sonar transmission hours that might occur in each model area, for each activity. To develop the total annual LFA sonar transmission hours, the Navy determined the training and

**Table B-11. Number and Percentages of Marine Mammals Potentially Taken by MMPA Level B and Level A Incidental Harassment on a 24-hour Basis by SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions in 15 Representative Mission Areas.**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Abundance* | *24 Hour Takes and Percentages of Stock Affected* | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Takes* | | | | *Percentage (%) of Stock Affected* | | | |
| | | *Behavioral Risk* | *TTS* | *Total Level B Harassment* | *Level A Harassment* | *Behavioral Risk (%)* | *TTS (%)* | *Total Level B Harassment (%)* | *Level A Harassment (%)* |
| *Mission Area 1: East of Japan* | | | | | | | | | |
| Blue whale | 9,250 | 0.02 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Bryde's whale | 20,501 | 1.16 | 1 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Common minke whale | 25,049 | 4.82 | 5 | 10 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.02% | 0.04% | 0.00% |
| Fin whale | 9,250 | 0.12 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Humpback whale | 1,328 | 0.06 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| North Pacific right whale | 922 | 0.01 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.0% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Sei whale | 7,000 | 0.56 | 1 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.01% | 0.03% | 0.00% |
| Baird's beaked whale | 5,688 | 6.1 | 0 | 6 | 0 | 0.11% | 0.00% | 0.11% | 0.00% |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | 100,281 | 40.84 | 0 | 41 | 0 | 0.04% | 0.00% | 0.04% | 0.00% |
| Common dolphin | 3,286,163 | 247.09 | 0 | 247 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | 90,725 | 11.44 | 0 | 11 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Dall's porpoise (*truei*) | 178,157 | 51.39 | 0 | 51 | 0 | 0.03% | 0.00% | 0.03% | 0.00% |
| False killer whale | 16,668 | 10.64 | 0 | 11 | 0 | 0.06% | 0.00% | 0.07% | 0.00% |
| Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale | 22,799 | 1.84 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Harbor porpoise | 31,046 | 25.73 | 0 | 26 | 0 | 0.08% | 0.00% | 0.08% | 0.00% |
| Hubbs' beaked whale | 22,799 | 1.84 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Killer whale | 12,256 | 0.38 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| *Kogia* spp. | 350,553 | 11.1 | 0 | 11 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Pacific white-sided dolphin | 931,000 | 16.4 | 0 | 16 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | 130,002 | 12.45 | 0 | 12 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |

**Table B-11. Number and Percentages of Marine Mammals Potentially Taken by MMPA Level B and Level A Incidental Harassment on a 24-hour Basis by SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions in 15 Representative Mission Areas.**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Abundance* | *24 Hour Takes and Percentages of Stock Affected* | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Takes* | | | | *Percentage (%) of Stock Affected* | | | |
| | | *Behavioral Risk* | *TTS* | *Total Level B Harassment* | *Level A Harassment* | *Behavioral Risk (%)* | *TTS (%)* | *Total Level B Harassment (%)* | *Level A Harassment (%)* |
| Pygmy killer whale | 30,214 | 6.21 | 0 | 6 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Risso's dolphin | 143,374 | 32.69 | 0 | 33 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | 5,002 | 7.58 | 0 | 8 | 0 | 0.15% | 0.00% | 0.16% | 0.00% |
| Short-finned pilot whale | 20,884 | 36.88 | 0 | 37 | 0 | 0.18% | 0.00% | 0.18% | 0.00% |
| Sperm whale | 102,112 | 3.53 | 0 | 4 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Spinner dolphin | 1,015,059 | 0.4 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Stejneger's beaked whale | 8,000 | 1.84 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.03% | 0.00% |
| Striped dolphin | 497,725 | 18.77 | 0 | 19 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Northern fur seal | 503,609 | 220.92 | 0 | 221 | 0 | 0.04% | 0.00% | 0.04% | 0.00% |
| *Mission Area 2: North Philippine Sea* | | | | | | | | | |
| Blue whale | 9,250 | 0.02 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Bryde's whale | 20,501 | 1.21 | 1 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Common minke whale | 25,049 | 8.59 | 9 | 18 | 0 | 0.03% | 0.04% | 0.07% | 0.00% |
| Fin whale | 9,250 | 0.19 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Humpback whale | 1,328 | 1.16 | 7 | 8 | 0 | 0.09% | 0.53% | 0.60% | 0.00% |
| North Pacific right whale | 922 | 0.01 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Omura's whale | 1,800 | 0.08 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Blainville's beaked whale | 8,032 | 1.62 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | 3,516 | 38.52 | 0 | 39 | 0 | 1.10% | 0.00% | 1.11% | 0.00% |
| Common dolphin | 3,286,163 | 154.33 | 0 | 154 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | 90,725 | 17.54 | 0 | 18 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| False killer whale | 16,668 | 8.13 | 0 | 8 | 0 | 0.05% | 0.00% | 0.05% | 0.00% |

**Table B-11. Number and Percentages of Marine Mammals Potentially Taken by MMPA Level B and Level A Incidental Harassment on a 24-hour Basis by SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions in 15 Representative Mission Areas.**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Abundance* | *24 Hour Takes and Percentages of Stock Affected* | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Takes* | | | | *Percentage (%) of Stock Affected* | | | |
| | | *Behavioral Risk* | *TTS* | *Total Level B Harassment* | *Level A Harassment* | *Behavioral Risk (%)* | *TTS (%)* | *Total Level B Harassment (%)* | *Level A Harassment (%)* |
| Fraser's dolphin | 220,789 | 19.5 | 0 | 20 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale | 22,799 | 1.62 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Killer whale | 12,256 | 0.27 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| *Kogia* spp. | 350,553 | 10.54 | 0 | 11 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Longman's beaked whale | 7,619 | 0.78 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Melon-headed whale | 56,213 | 12 | 0 | 12 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Pacific white-sided dolphin | 931,000 | 15.56 | 0 | 16 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | 130,002 | 32.02 | 0 | 32 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Pygmy killer whale | 30,214 | 5.89 | 0 | 6 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Risso's dolphin | 143,374 | 35.44 | 0 | 35 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | 5,002 | 7.61 | 0 | 8 | 0 | 0.15% | 0.00% | 0.16% | 0.00% |
| Short-finned pilot whale | 31,396 | 46.5 | 0 | 47 | 0 | 0.15% | 0.00% | 0.15% | 0.00% |
| Sperm whale | 102,112 | 3.38 | 0 | 3 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Spinner dolphin | 1,015,059 | 1.94 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Striped dolphin | 19,631 | 76.89 | 0 | 77 | 0 | 0.39% | 0.00% | 0.39% | 0.00% |
| ***Mission Area 3: West Philippine Sea*** | | | | | | | | | |
| Blue whale | 9,250 | 0.02 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Bryde's whale | 20,501 | 1.28 | 1 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Common minke whale | 25,049 | 6.75 | 9 | 16 | 0 | 0.03% | 0.04% | 0.06% | 0.00% |
| Fin whale | 9,250 | 0.21 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Humpback whale | 1,328 | 1.45 | 2 | 3 | 0 | 0.11% | 0.15% | 0.23% | 0.00% |
| Omura's whale | 1,800 | 0.09 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |

**Table B-11. Number and Percentages of Marine Mammals Potentially Taken by MMPA Level B and Level A Incidental Harassment on a 24-hour Basis by SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions in 15 Representative Mission Areas.**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Abundance* | *24 Hour Takes and Percentages of Stock Affected* | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Takes* | | | | *Percentage (%) of Stock Affected* | | | |
| | | *Behavioral Risk* | *TTS* | *Total Level B Harassment* | *Level A Harassment* | *Behavioral Risk (%)* | *TTS (%)* | *Total Level B Harassment (%)* | *Level A Harassment (%)* |
| Blainville's beaked whale | 8,032 | 1.27 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | 40,769 | 42.15 | 0 | 42 | 0 | 0.10% | 0.00% | 0.10% | 0.00% |
| Common dolphin | 3,286,163 | 151.86 | 0 | 152 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | 90,725 | 0.77 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Deraniyagala's beaked whale | 22,799 | 1.27 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| False killer whale | 16,668 | 8.67 | 0 | 9 | 0 | 0.05% | 0.00% | 0.05% | 0.00% |
| Fraser's dolphin | 220,789 | 19.55 | 0 | 20 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale | 22,799 | 1.27 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Killer whale | 12,256 | 0.28 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| *Kogia* spp. | 350,553 | 5.56 | 0 | 6 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Longman's beaked whale | 7,619 | 0.08 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Melon-headed whale | 56,213 | 12.8 | 0 | 13 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | 130,002 | 34.95 | 0 | 35 | 0 | 0.03% | 0.00% | 0.03% | 0.00% |
| Pygmy killer whale | 30,214 | 6.28 | 0 | 6 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Risso's dolphin | 143,374 | 33.95 | 0 | 34 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | 5,002 | 6.82 | 0 | 7 | 0 | 0.14% | 0.00% | 0.14% | 0.00% |
| Short-finned pilot whale | 31,396 | 22.96 | 0 | 23 | 0 | 0.07% | 0.00% | 0.07% | 0.00% |
| Sperm whale | 102,112 | 3.04 | 0 | 3 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Spinner dolphin | 1,015,059 | 2.12 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Striped dolphin | 52,682 | 41.84 | 0 | 42 | 0 | 0.08% | 0.00% | 0.08% | 0.00% |

**Table B-11. Number and Percentages of Marine Mammals Potentially Taken by MMPA Level B and Level A Incidental Harassment on a 24-hour Basis by SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions in 15 Representative Mission Areas.**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Abundance* | *24 Hour Takes and Percentages of Stock Affected* | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Takes* | | | | *Percentage (%) of Stock Affected* | | | |
| | | *Behavioral Risk* | *TTS* | *Total Level B Harassment* | *Level A Harassment* | *Behavioral Risk (%)* | *TTS (%)* | *Total Level B Harassment (%)* | *Level A Harassment (%)* |
| *Mission Area 4: Offshore Guam* | | | | | | | | | |
| Blue whale | 9,250 | 0.02 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Bryde's whale | 20,501 | 0.23 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Common minke whale | 25,049 | 0.08 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Fin whale | 9,250 | 0.02 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Humpback whale | 1,328 | 0.19 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Omura's whale | 1,800 | 0.03 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Sei whale | 7,000 | 0.12 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Blainville's beaked whale | 8,032 | 2.25 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.03% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | 40,769 | 9.07 | 0 | 9 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | 90,725 | 0.78 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Deraniyagala's beaked whale | 22,799 | 4.95 | 0 | 5 | 0 | 0.08% | 0.00% | 0.08% | 0.00% |
| Dwarf sperm whale | 350,553 | 13.35 | 0 | 13 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| False killer whale | 16,668 | 1.15 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Fraser's dolphin | 16,992 | 26.16 | 0 | 26 | 0 | 0.15% | 0.00% | 0.15% | 0.00% |
| Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale | 22,799 | 4.95 | 0 | 5 | 0 | 0.08% | 0.00% | 0.08% | 0.00% |
| Killer whale | 12,256 | 0.06 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Longman's beaked whale | 7,619 | 5.55 | 0 | 6 | 0 | 0.07% | 0.00% | 0.08% | 0.00% |
| Melon-headed whale | 56,213 | 4.43 | 0 | 4 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | 130,002 | 12.66 | 0 | 13 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Pygmy killer whale | 30,214 | 0.15 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |

**Table B-11. Number and Percentages of Marine Mammals Potentially Taken by MMPA Level B and Level A Incidental Harassment on a 24-hour Basis by SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions in 15 Representative Mission Areas.**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Abundance* | *24 Hour Takes and Percentages of Stock Affected* | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Takes* | | | | *Percentage (%) of Stock Affected* | | | |
| | | *Behavioral Risk* | *TTS* | *Total Level B Harassment* | *Level A Harassment* | *Behavioral Risk (%)* | *TTS (%)* | *Total Level B Harassment (%)* | *Level A Harassment (%)* |
| Pygmy sperm whale | 350,553 | 5.45 | 0 | 5 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Risso's dolphin | 143,374 | 9.35 | 0 | 9 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | 5,002 | 3.3 | 0 | 3 | 0 | 0.07% | 0.00% | 0.06% | 0.00% |
| Short-finned pilot whale | 31,396 | 10.27 | 0 | 10 | 0 | 0.03% | 0.00% | 0.03% | 0.00% |
| Sperm whale | 102,112 | 2.42 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Spinner dolphin | 1,015,059 | 0.46 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Striped dolphin | 52,682 | 3.45 | 0 | 3 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| *Mission Area 5: Sea of Japan* | | | | | | | | | |
| Bryde's whale | 20,501 | 0.31 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Common minke whale | 2,611 | 0.47 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Fin whale | 9,250 | 2.76 | 9 | 12 | 0 | 0.03% | 0.10% | 0.13% | 0.00% |
| North Pacific right whale | 922 | 0.01 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Omura's whale | 1,800 | 0.12 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Western North Pacific gray whale | 290 | 0.01 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Baird's beaked whale | 5,688 | 1.73 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.03% | 0.00% | 0.04% | 0.00% |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | 105,138 | 2.83 | 0 | 3 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Common dolphin | 279,182 | 501.97 | 0 | 502 | 0 | 0.18% | 0.00% | 0.18% | 0.00% |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | 90,725 | 18.73 | 0 | 19 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Dall's porpoise | 173,638 | 64.8 | 0 | 65 | 0 | 0.04% | 0.00% | 0.04% | 0.00% |
| False killer whale | 9,777 | 11.16 | 0 | 11 | 0 | 0.11% | 0.00% | 0.11% | 0.00% |
| Harbor porpoise | 31,046 | 18.99 | 0 | 19 | 0 | 0.06% | 0.00% | 0.06% | 0.00% |
| Killer whale | 12,256 | 0.39 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |

**Table B-11. Number and Percentages of Marine Mammals Potentially Taken by MMPA Level B and Level A Incidental Harassment on a 24-hour Basis by SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions in 15 Representative Mission Areas.**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Abundance* | *24 Hour Takes and Percentages of Stock Affected* | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Takes* | | | | *Percentage (%) of Stock Affected* | | | |
| | | *Behavioral Risk* | *TTS* | *Total Level B Harassment* | *Level A Harassment* | *Behavioral Risk (%)* | *TTS (%)* | *Total Level B Harassment (%)* | *Level A Harassment (%)* |
| *Kogia* spp. | 350,553 | 9.53 | 0 | 10 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Pacific white-sided dolphin | 931,000 | 4.01 | 0 | 4 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Risso's dolphin | 143,374 | 41.14 | 0 | 41 | 0 | 0.03% | 0.00% | 0.03% | 0.00% |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | 5,002 | 12.18 | 0 | 12 | 0 | 0.24% | 0.00% | 0.24% | 0.00% |
| Sperm whale | 102,112 | 9.86 | 0 | 10 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Spinner dolphin | 1,015,059 | 0.6 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Stejneger's beaked whale | 8,000 | 3.02 | 0 | 3 | 0 | 0.04% | 0.00% | 0.04% | 0.00% |
| Spotted seal | 6,284 | 0.01 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Northern fur seal | 503,609 | 223.46 | 0 | 223 | 0 | 0.04% | 0.00% | 0.04% | 0.00% |
| *Mission Area 6: East China Sea* | | | | | | | | | |
| Bryde's whale | 137 | 0.48 | 2 | 2 | 0 | 0.35% | 1.46% | 1.46% | 0.00% |
| Common minke whale | 4,492 | 2.39 | 9 | 11 | 0 | 0.05% | 0.20% | 0.24% | 0.00% |
| Fin whale | 500 | 0.27 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0.05% | 0.20% | 0.20% | 0.00% |
| North Pacific right whale | 922 | 0.01 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Omura's whale | 1,800 | 0.06 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Western North Pacific gray whale | 290 | 0.01 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Blainville's beaked whale | 8,032 | 1.71 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | 105,138 | 4.49 | 0 | 4 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Common dolphin | 279,182 | 344.59 | 0 | 345 | 0 | 0.12% | 0.00% | 0.12% | 0.00% |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | 90,725 | 1.03 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| False killer whale | 9,777 | 3.54 | 0 | 4 | 0 | 0.04% | 0.00% | 0.04% | 0.00% |
| Fraser's dolphin | 220,789 | 25.44 | 0 | 25 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |

**Table B-11. Number and Percentages of Marine Mammals Potentially Taken by MMPA Level B and Level A Incidental Harassment on a 24-hour Basis by SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions in 15 Representative Mission Areas.**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Abundance* | *24 Hour Takes and Percentages of Stock Affected* | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Takes* | | | | *Percentage (%) of Stock Affected* | | | |
| | | *Behavioral Risk* | *TTS* | *Total Level B Harassment* | *Level A Harassment* | *Behavioral Risk (%)* | *TTS (%)* | *Total Level B Harassment (%)* | *Level A Harassment (%)* |
| Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale | 22,799 | 1.71 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Killer whale | 12,256 | 0.29 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| *Kogia* spp. | 350,553 | 5.77 | 0 | 6 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Longman's beaked whale | 7,619 | 0.8 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Melon-headed whale | 56,213 | 13.63 | 0 | 14 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Pacific white-sided dolphin | 931,000 | 3.76 | 0 | 4 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | 130,002 | 36.49 | 0 | 36 | 0 | 0.03% | 0.00% | 0.03% | 0.00% |
| Pygmy killer whale | 30,214 | 0.45 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Risso's dolphin | 143,374 | 39.01 | 0 | 39 | 0 | 0.03% | 0.00% | 0.03% | 0.00% |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | 5,002 | 7.96 | 0 | 8 | 0 | 0.16% | 0.00% | 0.16% | 0.00% |
| Sperm whale | 102,112 | 3.3 | 0 | 3 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Spinner dolphin | 1,015,059 | 2.21 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Spotted seal | 1,500 | 0.03 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| ***Mission Area 7: South China Sea*** | | | | | | | | | |
| Bryde's whale | 20,501 | 0.78 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Common minke whale | 4,492 | 2.58 | 1 | 4 | 0 | 0.06% | 0.02% | 0.09% | 0.00% |
| Fin whale | 9,250 | 0.14 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Humpback whale | 1,328 | 0.17 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| North Pacific right whale | 922 | 0.02 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Omura's whale | 1,800 | 0.05 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Western North Pacific gray whale | 290 | 0.01 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |

**Table B-11. Number and Percentages of Marine Mammals Potentially Taken by MMPA Level B and Level A Incidental Harassment on a 24-hour Basis by SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions in 15 Representative Mission Areas.**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Abundance* | *24 Hour Takes and Percentages of Stock Affected* | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Takes* | | | | *Percentage (%) of Stock Affected* | | | |
| | | *Behavioral Risk* | *TTS* | *Total Level B Harassment* | *Level A Harassment* | *Behavioral Risk (%)* | *TTS (%)* | *Total Level B Harassment (%)* | *Level A Harassment (%)* |
| Blainville's beaked whale | 8,032 | 1.07 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | 105,138 | 1.25 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Common dolphin | 279,182 | 236.26 | 0 | 236 | 0 | 0.08% | 0.00% | 0.08% | 0.00% |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | 90,725 | 0.64 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Deraniyagala's beaked whale | 22,799 | 1.07 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| False killer whale | 9,777 | 2.06 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Fraser's dolphin | 220,789 | 14.22 | 0 | 14 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale | 22,799 | 1.07 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Killer whale | 12,256 | 0.21 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| *Kogia* spp. | 350,553 | 4.31 | 0 | 4 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Longman's beaked whale | 7,619 | 0.76 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Melon-headed whale | 56,213 | 7.96 | 0 | 8 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | 130,002 | 13.96 | 0 | 14 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Pygmy killer whale | 30,214 | 0.26 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Risso's dolphin | 143,374 | 25.18 | 0 | 25 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | 5,002 | 5.39 | 0 | 5 | 0 | 0.11% | 0.00% | 0.10% | 0.00% |
| Short-finned pilot whale | 31,396 | 2.71 | 0 | 3 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Sperm whale | 102,112 | 2.27 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Spinner dolphin | 1,015,059 | 0.84 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Striped dolphin | 52,682 | 5.93 | 0 | 6 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |

**Table B-11. Number and Percentages of Marine Mammals Potentially Taken by MMPA Level B and Level A Incidental Harassment on a 24-hour Basis by SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions in 15 Representative Mission Areas.**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Abundance* | *24 Hour Takes and Percentages of Stock Affected* | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Takes* | | | | *Percentage (%) of Stock Affected* | | | |
| | | *Behavioral Risk* | *TTS* | *Total Level B Harassment* | *Level A Harassment* | *Behavioral Risk (%)* | *TTS (%)* | *Total Level B Harassment (%)* | *Level A Harassment (%)* |
| ***Mission Area 8: Offshore Japan 25° to 40° N*** | | | | | | | | | |
| Blue whale | 9,250 | 0.02 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Bryde's whale | 20,501 | 0.96 | 2 | 3 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Common minke whale | 25,049 | 1.02 | 1 | 2 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Fin whale | 9,250 | 0.15 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Humpback whale | 1,328 | 0.41 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.03% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Sei whale | 7,000 | 0.55 | 1 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.01% | 0.03% | 0.00% |
| Baird's beaked whale | 5,688 | 0.39 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Blainville's beaked whale | 8,032 | 2.04 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.03% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | 100,281 | 2.89 | 0 | 3 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Common dolphin | 3,286,163 | 343.57 | 0 | 344 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | 90,725 | 10.91 | 0 | 11 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Dall's porpoise (*dalli*) | 162,000 | 97.83 | 0 | 98 | 0 | 0.06% | 0.00% | 0.06% | 0.00% |
| Dwarf sperm whale | 350,553 | 18.62 | 0 | 19 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| False killer whale | 16,668 | 15.38 | 0 | 15 | 0 | 0.09% | 0.00% | 0.09% | 0.00% |
| Hubbs' beaked whale | 22,799 | 1.46 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Killer whale | 12,256 | 0.39 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Longman's beaked whale | 7,619 | 0.97 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Melon-headed whale | 56,213 | 11.54 | 0 | 12 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| *Mesoplodon* spp. | 22,799 | 1.46 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Northern right whale dolphin | 68,000 | 0.03 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Pacific white-sided dolphin | 931,000 | 22.26 | 0 | 22 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |

**Table B-11. Number and Percentages of Marine Mammals Potentially Taken by MMPA Level B and Level A Incidental Harassment on a 24-hour Basis by SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions in 15 Representative Mission Areas.**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Abundance* | *24 Hour Takes and Percentages of Stock Affected* | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Takes* | | | | *Percentage (%) of Stock Affected* | | | |
| | | *Behavioral Risk* | *TTS* | *Total Level B Harassment* | *Level A Harassment* | *Behavioral Risk (%)* | *TTS (%)* | *Total Level B Harassment (%)* | *Level A Harassment (%)* |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | 130,002 | 36.31 | 0 | 36 | 0 | 0.03% | 0.00% | 0.03% | 0.00% |
| Pygmy killer whale | 30,214 | 0.43 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Pygmy sperm whale | 350,553 | 7.79 | 0 | 8 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Risso's dolphin | 143,374 | 1.98 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | 5,002 | 6.59 | 0 | 7 | 0 | 0.13% | 0.00% | 0.14% | 0.00% |
| Short-finned pilot whale | 20,884 | 9.28 | 0 | 9 | 0 | 0.04% | 0.00% | 0.04% | 0.00% |
| Sperm whale | 102,112 | 5.41 | 0 | 5 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Spinner dolphin | 1,015,059 | 6.11 | 0 | 6 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Stejneger's beaked whale | 8,000 | 1.46 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Striped dolphin | 497,725 | 18.63 | 0 | 19 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Hawaiian monk seal | 1,427 | 0.38 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.03% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Northern fur seal | 503,609 | 9.11 | 0 | 9 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| *Mission Area 9: Offshore Japan 10° to 25° N* | | | | | | | | | |
| Blue whale | 9,250 | 0.02 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Bryde's whale | 20,501 | 0.67 | 1 | 2 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Fin whale | 9,250 | 0.01 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Humpback whale | 1,328 | 0.52 | 1 | 2 | 0 | 0.04% | 0.08% | 0.15% | 0.00% |
| Omura's whale | 1,800 | 0.09 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Sei whale | 7,000 | 0.31 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Blainville's beaked whale | 8,032 | 1.43 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | 40,769 | 2.17 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | 90,725 | 7.62 | 0 | 8 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |

**Table B-11. Number and Percentages of Marine Mammals Potentially Taken by MMPA Level B and Level A Incidental Harassment on a 24-hour Basis by SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions in 15 Representative Mission Areas.**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Abundance* | *24 Hour Takes and Percentages of Stock Affected* | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Takes* | | | | *Percentage (%) of Stock Affected* | | | |
| | | *Behavioral Risk* | *TTS* | *Total Level B Harassment* | *Level A Harassment* | *Behavioral Risk (%)* | *TTS (%)* | *Total Level B Harassment (%)* | *Level A Harassment (%)* |
| Deraniyagala's beaked whale | 22,799 | 1.9 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Dwarf sperm whale | 350,553 | 12.3 | 0 | 12 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| False killer whale | 16,668 | 1.76 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Fraser's dolphin | 16,992 | 7.43 | 0 | 7 | 0 | 0.04% | 0.00% | 0.04% | 0.00% |
| Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale | 22,799 | 1.9 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Killer whale | 12,256 | 0.28 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Longman's beaked whale | 7,619 | 0.68 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Melon-headed whale | 56,213 | 8.23 | 0 | 8 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | 130,002 | 32.94 | 0 | 33 | 0 | 0.03% | 0.00% | 0.03% | 0.00% |
| Pygmy killer whale | 30,214 | 0.19 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Pygmy sperm whale | 350,553 | 5.03 | 0 | 5 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Risso's dolphin | 143,374 | 1.29 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | 5,002 | 5.19 | 0 | 5 | 0 | 0.10% | 0.00% | 0.10% | 0.00% |
| Short-finned pilot whale | 31,396 | 6.05 | 0 | 6 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Sperm whale | 102,112 | 4.76 | 0 | 5 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Spinner dolphin | 1,015,059 | 5.44 | 0 | 5 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Striped dolphin | 52,682 | 17 | 0 | 17 | 0 | 0.03% | 0.00% | 0.03% | 0.00% |
| *Mission Area 10: Hawaii North* | | | | | | | | | |
| Blue whale | 133 | 0.08 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.06% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Bryde's whale | 1,751 | 0.2 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Common minke whale | 25,049 | 7.56 | 7 | 15 | 0 | 0.03% | 0.03% | 0.06% | 0.00% |

**Table B-11. Number and Percentages of Marine Mammals Potentially Taken by MMPA Level B and Level A Incidental Harassment on a 24-hour Basis by SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions in 15 Representative Mission Areas.**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Abundance* | *24 Hour Takes and Percentages of Stock Affected* | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Takes* | | | | *Percentage (%) of Stock Affected* | | | |
| | | *Behavioral Risk* | *TTS* | *Total Level B Harassment* | *Level A Harassment* | *Behavioral Risk (%)* | *TTS (%)* | *Total Level B Harassment (%)* | *Level A Harassment (%)* |
| Fin whale | 154 | 0.1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.06% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Humpback whale | 10,103 | 6.26 | 11 | 17 | 0 | 0.06% | 0.11% | 0.17% | 0.00% |
| Sei whale | 391 | 0.26 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.07% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Blainville's beaked whale | 2,105 | 2.28 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.11% | 0.00% | 0.10% | 0.00% |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | 21,815 | 3.45 | 0 | 3 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| | 184 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| | 191 | 0.01 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| | 743 | 0.08 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| | 128 | 0.01 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | 723 | 0.8 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.11% | 0.00% | 0.14% | 0.00% |
| Dwarf sperm whale | 17,519 | 23.78 | 0 | 24 | 0 | 0.14% | 0.00% | 0.14% | 0.00% |
| False killer whale | 1,540 | 1.98 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.13% | 0.00% | 0.13% | 0.00% |
| | 167 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| | 617 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Fraser's dolphin | 51,491 | 70.56 | 0 | 71 | 0 | 0.14% | 0.00% | 0.14% | 0.00% |
| Killer whale | 146 | 0.23 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.16% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Longman's beaked whale | 7,619 | 11.91 | 0 | 12 | 0 | 0.16% | 0.00% | 0.16% | 0.00% |
| Melon-headed whale | 8,666 | 6.56 | 0 | 7 | 0 | 0.08% | 0.00% | 0.08% | 0.00% |
| | 447 | 0.34 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.08% | 0.00% | 0.08% | 0.00% |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | 55,795 | 9.37 | 0 | 9 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| | 220 | 0.03 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| | 220 | 0.03 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| | 220 | 0.03 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |

**Table B-11. Number and Percentages of Marine Mammals Potentially Taken by MMPA Level B and Level A Incidental Harassment on a 24-hour Basis by SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions in 15 Representative Mission Areas.**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Abundance* | *24 Hour Takes and Percentages of Stock Affected* | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Takes* | | | | *Percentage (%) of Stock Affected* | | | |
| | | *Behavioral Risk* | *TTS* | *Total Level B Harassment* | *Level A Harassment* | *Behavioral Risk (%)* | *TTS (%)* | *Total Level B Harassment (%)* | *Level A Harassment (%)* |
| Pygmy killer whale | 10,640 | 14.28 | 0 | 14 | 0 | 0.13% | 0.00% | 0.13% | 0.00% |
| Pygmy sperm whale | 7,138 | 9.66 | 0 | 10 | 0 | 0.14% | 0.00% | 0.14% | 0.00% |
| Risso's dolphin | 11,613 | 15.03 | 0 | 15 | 0 | 0.13% | 0.00% | 0.13% | 0.00% |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | 72,528 | 7.73 | 0 | 8 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Short-finned pilot whale | 19,503 | 14.37 | 0 | 14 | 0 | 0.07% | 0.00% | 0.07% | 0.00% |
| Sperm whale | 4,559 | 3.84 | 0 | 4 | 0 | 0.08% | 0.00% | 0.09% | 0.00% |
| Spinner dolphin | 3,351 | 4.02 | 0 | 4 | 0 | 0.12% | 0.00% | 0.12% | 0.00% |
| | 601 | 0.01 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| | 665 | 0.03 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| | 355 | 0.01 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| | 260 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| | 300 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Striped dolphin | 61,201 | 9.76 | 0 | 10 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Hawaiian monk seal | 1,427 | 0.11 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| *Mission Area 11: Hawaii South* | | | | | | | | | |
| Blue whale | 133 | 0.06 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.05% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Bryde's whale | 798 | 0.17 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Common minke whale | 25,049 | 5.36 | 8 | 13 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.03% | 0.05% | 0.00% |
| Fin whale | 154 | 0.07 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.05% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Humpback whale | 10,103 | 6.42 | 11 | 17 | 0 | 0.06% | 0.11% | 0.17% | 0.00% |
| Sei whale | 391 | 0.18 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.05% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Blainville's beaked whale | 2,105 | 1.84 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.09% | 0.00% | 0.10% | 0.00% |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | 21,815 | 2.8 | 0 | 3 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |

**Table B-11. Number and Percentages of Marine Mammals Potentially Taken by MMPA Level B and Level A Incidental Harassment on a 24-hour Basis by SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions in 15 Representative Mission Areas.**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Abundance* | *24 Hour Takes and Percentages of Stock Affected* | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Takes* | | | | *Percentage (%) of Stock Affected* | | | |
| | | *Behavioral Risk* | *TTS* | *Total Level B Harassment* | *Level A Harassment* | *Behavioral Risk (%)* | *TTS (%)* | *Total Level B Harassment (%)* | *Level A Harassment (%)* |
| Common bottlenose dolphin (Continued) | 184 | 0.48 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.26% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| | 191 | 0.17 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.09% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| | 743 | 1.39 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.19% | 0.00% | 0.13% | 0.00% |
| | 128 | 0.02 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | 723 | 0.64 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.09% | 0.00% | 0.14% | 0.00% |
| Deraniyagala beaked whale | 22,799 | 1.99 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Dwarf sperm whale | 17,519 | 18.25 | 0 | 18 | 0 | 0.10% | 0.00% | 0.10% | 0.00% |
| False killer whale | 1,540 | 2.09 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.14% | 0.00% | 0.13% | 0.00% |
| | 167 | 0.03 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Fraser's dolphin | 51,491 | 52.66 | 0 | 53 | 0 | 0.10% | 0.00% | 0.10% | 0.00% |
| Killer whale | 146 | 0.18 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.12% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Longman's beaked whale | 7,619 | 26.83 | 0 | 27 | 0 | 0.35% | 0.00% | 0.35% | 0.00% |
| Melon-headed whale | 8,666 | 4.88 | 0 | 5 | 0 | 0.06% | 0.00% | 0.06% | 0.00% |
| | 447 | 0.07 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | 55,795 | 10.8 | 0 | 11 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| | 220 | 0.82 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.37% | 0.00% | 0.45% | 0.00% |
| | 220 | 0.84 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.38% | 0.00% | 0.45% | 0.00% |
| | 220 | 1.15 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.52% | 0.00% | 0.45% | 0.00% |
| Pygmy killer whale | 10,640 | 10.62 | 0 | 11 | 0 | 0.10% | 0.00% | 0.10% | 0.00% |
| Pygmy sperm whale | 7,138 | 7.41 | 0 | 7 | 0 | 0.10% | 0.00% | 0.10% | 0.00% |
| Risso's dolphin | 11,613 | 11.25 | 0 | 11 | 0 | 0.10% | 0.00% | 0.09% | 0.00% |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | 72,528 | 6.18 | 0 | 6 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Short-finned pilot whale | 19,503 | 12.72 | 0 | 13 | 0 | 0.07% | 0.00% | 0.07% | 0.00% |

**Table B-11. Number and Percentages of Marine Mammals Potentially Taken by MMPA Level B and Level A Incidental Harassment on a 24-hour Basis by SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions in 15 Representative Mission Areas.**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Abundance* | *24 Hour Takes and Percentages of Stock Affected* | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Takes* | | | | *Percentage (%) of Stock Affected* | | | |
| | | *Behavioral Risk* | *TTS* | *Total Level B Harassment* | *Level A Harassment* | *Behavioral Risk (%)* | *TTS (%)* | *Total Level B Harassment (%)* | *Level A Harassment (%)* |
| Sperm whale | 4,559 | 2.51 | 0 | 3 | 0 | 0.06% | 0.00% | 0.07% | 0.00% |
| Spinner dolphin | 3,351 | 6.95 | 0 | 7 | 0 | 0.21% | 0.00% | 0.21% | 0.00% |
| | 601 | 3.02 | 0 | 3 | 0 | 0.50% | 0.00% | 0.50% | 0.00% |
| | 665 | 0.05 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| | 355 | 0.72 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.20% | 0.00% | 0.28% | 0.00% |
| Striped dolphin | 61,201 | 9.48 | 0 | 9 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Hawaiian monk seal | 1,427 | 0.12 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| *Mission Area 12: Offshore Sri Lanka* | | | | | | | | | |
| Blue whale | 3,691 | 0.03 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Bryde's whale | 9,176 | 0.29 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Common minke whale | 257,500 | 1.46 | 1 | 2 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Fin whale | 1,846 | 0.01 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Omura's whale | 9,176 | 0.29 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Sei whale | 9,176 | 0.55 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Blainville's beaked whale | 16,867 | 2.21 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Common dolphin | 1,819,882 | 7.36 | 0 | 7 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | 785,585 | 46.62 | 0 | 47 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | 27,272 | 10.65 | 0 | 11 | 0 | 0.04% | 0.00% | 0.04% | 0.00% |
| Deraniyagala beaked whale | 16,867 | 11.09 | 0 | 11 | 0 | 0.07% | 0.00% | 0.07% | 0.00% |
| Dwarf sperm whale | 10,541 | 0.1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| False killer whale | 144,188 | 0.27 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Fraser's dolphin | 151,554 | 3.15 | 0 | 3 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |

**Table B-11. Number and Percentages of Marine Mammals Potentially Taken by MMPA Level B and Level A Incidental Harassment on a 24-hour Basis by SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions in 15 Representative Mission Areas.**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Abundance* | *24 Hour Takes and Percentages of Stock Affected* | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Takes* | | | | *Percentage (%) of Stock Affected* | | | |
| | | *Behavioral Risk* | *TTS* | *Total Level B Harassment* | *Level A Harassment* | *Behavioral Risk (%)* | *TTS (%)* | *Total Level B Harassment (%)* | *Level A Harassment (%)* |
| Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin | 7,850 | 0.47 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Killer whale | 12,593 | 9.78 | 0 | 10 | 0 | 0.08% | 0.00% | 0.08% | 0.00% |
| Longman's beaked whale | 16,867 | 12.13 | 0 | 12 | 0 | 0.07% | 0.00% | 0.07% | 0.00% |
| Melon-headed whale | 64,600 | 10.47 | 0 | 10 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | 736,575 | 4.28 | 0 | 4 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Pygmy killer whale | 22,029 | 1.63 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Pygmy sperm whale | 10,541 | 0.02 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Risso's dolphin | 452,125 | 135.9 | 0 | 136 | 0 | 0.03% | 0.00% | 0.03% | 0.00% |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | 156,690 | 1.16 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Short-finned pilot whale | 268,751 | 41.32 | 0 | 41 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Sperm whale | 24,446 | 2.34 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Spinner dolphin | 634,108 | 3.21 | 0 | 3 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Striped dolphin | 674,578 | 69.63 | 0 | 70 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| *Mission Area 13: Andaman Sea* | | | | | | | | | |
| Blue whale | 3,691 | 0.01 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Bryde's whale | 9,176 | 0.19 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Common minke whale | 257,500 | 1.13 | 2 | 3 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Fin whale | 1,846 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Omura's whale | 9,176 | 0.19 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Blainville's beaked whale | 16,867 | 1.6 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | 785,585 | 79.33 | 0 | 79 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |

**Table B-11. Number and Percentages of Marine Mammals Potentially Taken by MMPA Level B and Level A Incidental Harassment on a 24-hour Basis by SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions in 15 Representative Mission Areas.**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Abundance* | *24 Hour Takes and Percentages of Stock Affected* | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Takes* | | | | *Percentage (%) of Stock Affected* | | | |
| | | *Behavioral Risk* | *TTS* | *Total Level B Harassment* | *Level A Harassment* | *Behavioral Risk (%)* | *TTS (%)* | *Total Level B Harassment (%)* | *Level A Harassment (%)* |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | 27,272 | 8.11 | 0 | 8 | 0 | 0.03% | 0.00% | 0.03% | 0.00% |
| Deraniyagala beaked whale | 16,867 | 1.62 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Dwarf sperm whale | 10,541 | 0.09 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| False killer whale | 144,188 | 0.31 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Fraser's dolphin | 151,554 | 2.45 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale | 16,867 | 1.62 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin | 7,850 | 0.8 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Killer whale | 12,593 | 7.68 | 0 | 8 | 0 | 0.06% | 0.00% | 0.06% | 0.00% |
| Longman's beaked whale | 16,867 | 14.99 | 0 | 15 | 0 | 0.09% | 0.00% | 0.09% | 0.00% |
| Melon-headed whale | 64,600 | 11.53 | 0 | 12 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | 736,575 | 5.49 | 0 | 5 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Pygmy killer whale | 22,029 | 1.63 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Pygmy sperm whale | 10,541 | 0.01 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Risso's dolphin | 452,125 | 141.56 | 0 | 142 | 0 | 0.03% | 0.00% | 0.03% | 0.00% |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | 156,690 | 1.1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Short-finned pilot whale | 268,751 | 43.1 | 0 | 43 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Sperm whale | 24,446 | 1.58 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Spinner dolphin | 634,108 | 4.62 | 0 | 5 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Striped dolphin | 674,578 | 91.91 | 0 | 92 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| *Mission Area 14: Northwest Australia* | | | | | | | | | |
| Antarctic minke whale | 90,000 | 0.02 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |

**Table B-11. Number and Percentages of Marine Mammals Potentially Taken by MMPA Level B and Level A Incidental Harassment on a 24-hour Basis by SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions in 15 Representative Mission Areas.**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Abundance* | *24 Hour Takes and Percentages of Stock Affected* | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Takes* | | | | *Percentage (%) of Stock Affected* | | | |
| | | *Behavioral Risk* | *TTS* | *Total Level B Harassment* | *Level A Harassment* | *Behavioral Risk (%)* | *TTS (%)* | *Total Level B Harassment (%)* | *Level A Harassment (%)* |
| Blue whale/Pygmy blue whale | 1,657 | 0.06 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Bryde's whale | 13,854 | 0.71 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Common minke whale | 257,500 | 28.69 | 16 | 45 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.01% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Fin whale | 38,185 | 1.85 | 1 | 3 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Humpback whale | 13,640 | 0.09 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Omura's whale | 13,854 | 0.71 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Sei whale | 13,854 | 0.02 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Blainville's beaked whale | 16,867 | 2.22 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | 3,000 | 89.28 | 0 | 89 | 0 | 2.98% | 0.00% | 2.97% | 0.00% |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | 76,500 | 10.82 | 0 | 11 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Dwarf sperm whale | 10,541 | 0.14 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| False killer whale | 144,188 | 0.55 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Fraser's dolphin | 151,554 | 4.36 | 0 | 4 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Killer whale | 12,593 | 18.6 | 0 | 19 | 0 | 0.15% | 0.00% | 0.15% | 0.00% |
| Longman's beaked whale | 16,867 | 15.25 | 0 | 15 | 0 | 0.09% | 0.00% | 0.09% | 0.00% |
| Melon-headed whale | 64,600 | 18.83 | 0 | 19 | 0 | 0.03% | 0.00% | 0.03% | 0.00% |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | 736,575 | 14.59 | 0 | 15 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Pygmy killer whale | 22,029 | 2.79 | 0 | 3 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Risso's dolphin | 452,125 | 216.61 | 0 | 217 | 0 | 0.05% | 0.00% | 0.05% | 0.00% |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | 156,690 | 1.94 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Short-finned pilot whale | 268,751 | 71.51 | 0 | 72 | 0 | 0.03% | 0.00% | 0.03% | 0.00% |

**Table B-11. Number and Percentages of Marine Mammals Potentially Taken by MMPA Level B and Level A Incidental Harassment on a 24-hour Basis by SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions in 15 Representative Mission Areas.**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Abundance* | *24 Hour Takes and Percentages of Stock Affected* | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Takes* | | | | *Percentage (%) of Stock Affected* | | | |
| | | *Behavioral Risk* | *TTS* | *Total Level B Harassment* | *Level A Harassment* | *Behavioral Risk (%)* | *TTS (%)* | *Total Level B Harassment (%)* | *Level A Harassment (%)* |
| Southern bottlenose whale | 599,300 | 3.16 | 0 | 3 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Spade-toothed beaked whale | 16,867 | 2.22 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Sperm whale | 24,446 | 2.21 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Spinner dolphin | 634,108 | 11.24 | 0 | 11 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Striped dolphin | 674,578 | 237.16 | 0 | 237 | 0 | 0.04% | 0.00% | 0.04% | 0.00% |
| *Mission Area 15: Northeast of Japan* | | | | | | | | | |
| Blue whale | 9,250 | 0.08 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.01% | 0.01% | 0.00% |
| Common minke whale | 25,049 | 7.81 | 6 | 14 | 0 | 0.03% | 0.02% | 0.06% | 0.00% |
| Fin whale | 9,250 | 1.98 | 25 | 27 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.27% | 0.29% | 0.00% |
| Humpback whale | 1,328 | 2.35 | 35 | 37 | 0 | 0.18% | 2.64% | 2.79% | 0.00% |
| North Pacific right whale | 922 | 0.05 | 2 | 2 | 0 | 0.01% | 0.22% | 0.22% | 0.00% |
| Sei whale | 7,000 | 1.59 | 43 | 45 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.61% | 0.64% | 0.00% |
| Western North Pacific gray whale | 290 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Baird's beaked whale | 5,688 | 72.42 | 0 | 72 | 0 | 1.27% | 0.00% | 1.27% | 0.00% |
| Common dolphin | 3,286,163 | 3337.84 | 0 | 3338 | 0 | 0.10% | 0.00% | 0.10% | 0.00% |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | 90,725 | 76.3 | 0 | 76 | 0 | 0.08% | 0.00% | 0.08% | 0.00% |
| Dall's porpoise (*dalli*) | 162,000 | 1550.82 | 0 | 1551 | 0 | 0.96% | 0.00% | 0.96% | 0.00% |
| Killer whale | 12,256 | 146.9 | 0 | 147 | 0 | 1.20% | 0.00% | 1.20% | 0.00% |
| Pacific white-sided dolphin | 931,000 | 210 | 0 | 210 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Sperm whale | 102,112 | 15.98 | 0 | 16 | 0 | 0.02% | 0.00% | 0.02% | 0.00% |
| Stejneger's beaked whale | 8,000 | 7.06 | 0 | 7 | 0 | 0.09% | 0.00% | 0.09% | 0.00% |
| Northern fur seal | 503,609 | 137.56 | 0 | 138 | 0 | 0.03% | 0.00% | 0.03% | 0.00% |

**Table B-11. Number and Percentages of Marine Mammals Potentially Taken by MMPA Level B and Level A Incidental Harassment on a 24-hour Basis by SURTASS LFA Sonar Transmissions in 15 Representative Mission Areas.**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock Abundance* | *24 Hour Takes and Percentages of Stock Affected* | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Takes* | | | | *Percentage (%) of Stock Affected* | | | |
| | | *Behavioral Risk* | *TTS* | *Total Level B Harassment* | *Level A Harassment* | *Behavioral Risk (%)* | *TTS (%)* | *Total Level B Harassment (%)* | *Level A Harassment (%)* |
| Ribbon seal | 184,000 | 2172.84 | 36 | 2209 | 0 | 0.60% | 0.01% | 0.61% | 0.00% |
| Spotted seal | 460,268 | 5571.77 | 104 | 5676 | 0 | 1.21% | 0.02% | 1.23% | 0.00% |
| Steller sea lion | 77,767 | 0.31 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |

testing activities that occur each year, the number of transmission hours conducted during each activity for each action alternative, and the model areas in which each activity is expected to occur (Tables B-12 and B-13), as not all proposed activities would occur in all modeled areas. To calculate the potential impact in each model area for each activity, the number of annual LFA sonar transmissions hours for each activity was evenly distributed across the model areas in which that activity might occur. The hours for each activity were evenly distributed across the model areas in which that activity might occur because there is an equal chance of activities happening in each model area identified for an activity; the Navy is not aware of any planning factors that would influence the distribution of activity hours among model areas. For example, the execution of vessel and equipment maintenance is estimated to require a total of 64 transmission hours, which are planned to occur only in either Model Area #2 or Model Area #3. Therefore, the 64 transmission hours were equally distributed to Model Areas #2 and #3, or 32 hours in each model area, for vessel and equipment maintenance activities.

The third step was to determine the number of model areas in which each stock may occur for each activity. The fourth step was to select the maximum per hour impact for each stock that may occur in the model areas for that activity. For instance, for maintenance activities that occur in model areas #2 and #3, if a stock occurs in both model areas, whichever per hour impact estimate for that stock was higher between the two modeling areas was selected for all subsequent calculations for estimating the impacts from maintenance activities.

The final step was to multiply the results of steps two, three, and four to calculate the potential annual impacts per activity, which are then summed across the stocks for a total potential impact for all activities. The maximum estimate of the per hour impact (result of step three) was multiplied by the planned transmission hours for each activity per model area (result of step two) and by the number of model areas in which the stock might occur for that activity (result of step four). The end result is the maximum potential impact per stock for each activity, allowing flexibility for the activity to occur in any season and any of the planned model areas for that activity.

To help explain the modeling process, the potential impacts to the Blainville’s beaked whale are described as an illustrative example. Three stocks of Blainville’s beaked whale are found in the study area, with the WNP stock occurring in Model Areas #2, 3, 4, 6, and 7; the Hawaii stock found in Model Areas #10 and 11; and the Indian Ocean stock occurring in Model Areas #12, 13, and 14. Contractor training (total of 80 transmission hr) and maintenance (total of 64 transmission hr) may occur in Model Areas #2 or 3, for a total of 144 transmission hr across both model areas or 72 transmission hr per model area (result of step two). Only the WNP stock of Blainville’s beaked whale occurs in these two model areas. The potential impact in Model Area #2 is 0.68 behavioral takes per transmission hour, while in Model Area #3, 0.53 behavioral takes per transmission hour were computed. Since 0.68 behavioral takes per transmission hour is the greater or maximum take of the two model areas in which these two activities may occur, 0.68 behavioral takes per transmission hour is selected as the maximum (result of step four). The potential impact of 0.68 behavioral takes per transmission hour is multiplied by 72 transmission hours per model area and by 2 model areas (since Blainville’s beaked whale may occur in both model areas; result of step three) for a total potential impact of 97.92 behavioral takes for both contractor training and maintenance activities for the WNP stock of Blainville’s beaked whales.

**Table B-12. Activities and Transmission Hours Per Year Expected to be Evenly Distributed Across the 15 Representative Model Areas Under Alternative 1.**

| *Model Area Number/Name* | *Activity (Transmission Hours Per Year)* | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *Contractor Crew Training (80)* | *MILCREW Training (64)* | *Navy Exercises (72)* | *Maintenance (48)* | *Acoustic Research Testing (96)* |
| 1 /East of Japan | | X | | | X |
| 2 /North Philippine Sea | X | X | X | X | X |
| 3 /West Philippine Sea | X | X | X | X | X |
| 4 /Guam | | X | X | | X |
| 5 /Sea of Japan | | X | | | X |
| 6 /East China Sea | | X | | | X |
| 7 /South China Sea | | X | X | | X |
| 8 /Offshore Japan (25 to 40N) | | X | | | X |
| 9 / Offshore Japan (10 to 25N) | | X | | | X |
| 10 /Hawaii-North | | X | X | | X |
| 11 /Hawaii-South | | X | X | | X |
| 12 /Offshore Sri Lanka | | X | | | X |
| 13 /Andaman Sea | | X | | | X |
| 14 /Northwest Australia | | X | | | X |
| 15 /Northwest Japan | | X | | | X |

The algebraic equation for these steps is presented below:

$$0.68 \frac{takes}{transmission\ hr}\ x\ 72 \frac{transmssion\ hr}{mission\ area}\ x\ 2\ mission\ areas = 97.92\ takes$$

The LFA sonar use as part of the Navy exercises support activity may occur in Model Areas #2, 3, 4, 7, 10, and 11 for a total of 96 transmission hours. This results in 16 transmission hours per model area, when the 96 transmission hours are divided equally among the 6 model areas (result of step two). Two stocks of Blainville's beaked whale might be exposed to transmissions from the Navy exercise support activity: the WNP stock occurs in Model Areas #2, 3, 4, and 7 (result of step three is four model areas for the WNP stock) and the Hawaii stock occurs in Model Areas #10 and 11 (result of step three is two model

**Table B-13. Activities and Transmission Hours Per Year Expected to be Evenly Distributed Across the 15 Representative Model Areas Under Alternative 2/Preferred Alternative.**

| *Model Area Number/Name* | *Activity (Transmission Hours Per Year)* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *Contractor Crew Training (80)* | *MILCREW Training (96)* | *Navy Exercises (96)* | *Maintenance (64)* | *Acoustic Research Testing (160)* | *Years 5+: New LFA System Testing (96)* |
| 1 /East of Japan | | X | | | X | X |
| 2 /North Philippine Sea | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| 3 /West Philippine Sea | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| 4 /Guam | | X | X | | X | X |
| 5 /Sea of Japan | | X | | | X | X |
| 6 /East China Sea | | X | | | X | X |
| 7 /South China Sea | | X | X | | X | X |
| 8 /Offshore Japan (25 to 40N) | | X | | | X | X |
| 9 /Offshore Japan (10 to 25N) | | X | | | X | X |
| 10 /Hawaii-North | | X | X | | X | X |
| 11 /Hawaii-South | | X | X | | X | X |
| 12 /Offshore Sri Lanka | | X | | | X | X |
| 13 /Andaman Sea | | X | | | X | X |
| 14 /Northwest Australia | | X | | | X | X |
| 15 /Northwest Japan | | X | | | X | X |

areas for the Hawaii stock). The maximum potential impact in any of the modeling areas in which the WNP stock occurs is 0.94 behavioral takes (result of step four); the maximum potential impact in any of the modeling areas in which the Hawaii stock occurs is 0.95 behavioral takes (result of step four). Thus for the WNP stock, the potential impact of 0.94 behavioral takes per transmission hour is multiplied by 16 transmission hours per model area and by 4 model areas for a total potential impact of 60.16 behavioral takes from SURTASS LFA use during Navy exercise support activities. For the Hawaii stock, the potential impact of 0.95 behavioral takes per transmission hour is multiplied by 16 transmission hours per model area and by 2 model areas for a total potential impact of 30.40 behavioral takes from SURTASS LFA use during Navy exercises support activities. The same process occurs for the remaining activities (MILCREW training and acoustic research in years 1 to 4, plus the addition of new LFA sonar system testing in years 5 and beyond), which may occur in all fifteen model areas.

To develop the overall potential impact from all SURTASS LFA sonar transmissions within a year to each marine mammal stock, the potential impacts to each stock from each individual activity are then summed to derive the total maximum potential impact on an annual basis for Alternative 1 (Table B-14) and Alternative 2 in Years 1 to 4 (Table B-15) and Years 5 and beyond (Table B-16). This is a conservative estimate since it is based on the maximum potential impact to a stock across all model areas in which an activity may occur. Therefore, if the activity occurs in a different model area than the area where the maximum potential impact was predicted, the actual potential impact could be less than that estimated. However, since the Navy cannot forecast where a specific activity may be conducted this far in advance, this maximum estimate provides the Navy with the flexibility to conduct its training and testing activities across all model areas identified for each activity.

These annual estimates of potential impact were used to calculate the total impact that may occur over the entire period of the Proposed Action. The Proposed Action consists of seven years of training and testing activities. The cumulative number of marine mammals potentially affected over the seven-year period was estimated for Alternative 2 (the Preferred Alternative) as part of the MMPA and ESA permit packages (Table B-17). The annual estimates of the number of individuals and the percentage of stock for Years 1 to 4 (Table B-15) and Years 5 to 7 (Table B-16) are the first four columns of take estimates, provided as the inputs upon which the final column of the seven-year totals was calculated (i.e., four years of the maximum annual estimate from the Years 1 to 4 column and three years of the maximum annual estimate from the Years to 7 column). As stated above, these are conservative estimates since the values are based on the maximum potential impact to a stock across all model areas in which an activity may occur. Therefore, if the activity occurs in a different model area than the area where the maximum potential impact was predicted, the actual potential impact could be less than that estimated.

### B-4.3 Summary

The potential for PTS (MMPA Level A incidental harassment) is considered within the context of the mitigation and monitoring efforts that would occur whenever SURTASS LFA sonar is transmitting. Mitigation monitoring is designed to detect marine mammals before they are exposed to 180 dB SPL RLs. The NMFS (2018) acoustic guidance for estimating the potential for PTS defines weighted thresholds as sound exposure levels. The length of a nominal LFA sonar transmission is 60 sec, which lowers the thresholds by approximately 18 dB SEL (10xlog10 [60 sec] =17.8) if the assumption is made that all RLs are at the same SPL. In addition to signal duration, hearing sensitivity must be considered. If transmissions at 300 Hz are considered for this example, as it is in about the middle of the frequency range of LFA sonar transmissions (100 to 500 Hz), the thresholds must be appropriately weighted to account for each functional hearing group's sensitivity. This results in an increase in the thresholds of approximately 1.5, 46, 56, 15, and 20 dB, respectively, for LF, MF, HF, PW, and OW groups when considering a signal at 300 Hz. Based on simple spherical spreading (i.e., a transmission loss [TL] based on 20 × log10 [range in meters]), all functional hearing groups except LF cetaceans would need to remain within 22 ft (7 m) for the entirety of an LFA sonar transmission (60 sec) to potentially experience PTS. An LF cetacean would need to remain within 135 ft (41 m) for the entirety of an LFA sonar transmission to potentially experience PTS. Based on the mitigation procedures used during SURTASS LFA sonar activities, the chances of this occurring are negligible. Therefore, no PTS (MMPA Level A harassment) is expected with the implementation of mitigation measures.

The impact to marine mammals anticipated from SURTASS LFA sonar transmission is MMPA Level B harassment of marine mammals. For most stocks of marine mammal species, the maximum annual percent of the stock or population that may experience Level B incidental harassment is less than 15 percent. This means that during one 24-hr period during the year, less than 15 percent of the population may react to SURTASS LFA sonar by changing behavior or moving a small distance, or may experience TTS. Of the 139 stocks within the SURTASS LFA sonar study area, eight stocks under Alternative 1 and eleven stocks in years 1 to 4 and fifteen stocks in years 5 and beyond under Alternative 2 have the potential for MMPA Level B incidental harassment greater than 15 percent. The highest percentage of a population that may experience Level B harassment is the WNP stock and DPS of humpback whales at 157.68 percent under Alternative 1 and 233.84 percent and 321.49 percent in years 1 to 4 and years 5 and beyond, respectively, under Alternative 2. This means that each individual in the population may react behaviorally or have TTS one to three times during one year. The percentage of the WNP stock and DPS of humpback whales that may experience Level B harassment is influenced by the size of the population, which is small (1,328 individuals). The next highest stock is the WNP stock of killer whales, with 53.41 percent potentially experiencing Level B harassment under Alternative 1 and 85.37 percent and 117.31 percent in years 1 to 4 and years 5 and beyond, respectively, under Alternative 2.

## B-5 Conclusion

The acoustic impact analysis integrates Navy needs with the best available data on marine mammal populations to estimate the potential impacts from incidental exposure to SURTASS LFA sonar. In this supplemental analysis, marine mammal takes incidental to the use of SURTASS LFA sonar at 15 representative mission areas have been estimated, with the results also presented in Chapter 4.

## B-6 Literature Cited


Aguilar Soto, N., Johnson, M. P., Madsen, P. T., Diaz, F., Domínguez, I., Brito, A., & Tyack, P. L. (2008). Cheetahs of the deep sea: deep foraging sprints in short-finned pilot whales off Tenerife (Canary Islands). *Journal of Animal Ecology, 77*(5), 936 - 947. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2656.2008.01393.x.

Allen, A. N., Schanze, J. J., Solow, A. R., & Tyack, P. L. (2014). Analysis of a Blainville's beaked whale's movement response to playback of killer whale vocalizations. *Marine Mammal Science, 30*(1), 154-168. doi: 10.1111/mms.12028.

Alves, F., Dinis, A., Cascão, I., & Freitas, L. (2010). Bryde's whale (*Balaenoptera brydei*) stable associations and dive profiles: New insights into foraging behavior. *Marine Mammal Science, 26*(1), 202-212. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.2009.00333.x.

Alves, F., Dinis, A., Ribeiro, C., Nicolau, C., Kaufmann, M., Fortuna, C. M., & Freitas, L. (2013). Daytime dive characteristics from six short-finned pilot whales *Globicephala macrorhynchus* off Madeira Island. *Arquipelago - Life and Marine Sciences*.

Alves, F., Freitas, L., & Dinis, A. (2006). *Occurrence and diving behaviour of false killer whale off Madeira archipelago (NE Atlantic).* Paper presented at the ECS 2006, Gydnia, Poland.

Amano, M., & Yoshioka, M. (2003). Sperm whale diving behavior monitored using a suction-cup-attached TDR tag. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 258*, 291-295. doi: 10.3354/meps258291.

American Academy of Ophthalmology and Otolaryngology. (1969). *Guide for Conservation of Hearing in Noise*.

American National Standards Institute (ANSI). (2006). *ANSI reference quantities for acoustical levels* (ANSI-S1-8-1989, revised 2006). New York: Acoustical Society of America.

**Table B-14. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 1 (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[38] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 1* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Antarctic minke whale | ANT | 0.07 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| Blue whale | CNP | 2.14 | 1.64% | 0 | 0.00% | 2 | 1.64% |
| | NIND | 0.27 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 4.48 | 0.00% | 52 | 0.52% | 56 | 0.52% |
| | SIND | 0.37 | 0.03% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.03% |
| Bryde's whale | ECS | 2.13 | 1.56% | 7 | 4.87% | 9 | 6.42% |
| | Hawaii | 3.73 | 0.43% | 0 | 0.00% | 4 | 0.43% |
| | WNP | 139.65 | 0.82% | 145 | 0.63% | 285 | 1.45% |
| | NIND | 2.53 | 0.02% | 2 | 0.02% | 5 | 0.04% |
| | SIND | 3.13 | 0.02% | 1 | 0.01% | 4 | 0.03% |
| Common minke whale | Hawaii | 190.46 | 0.76% | 201 | 0.82% | 392 | 1.57% |
| | IND | 510.04 | 0.18% | 284 | 0.09% | 794 | 0.27% |
| | WNP JW | 2.07 | 0.08% | 0 | 0.00% | 2 | 0.08% |
| | WNP OE | 816.05 | 3.33% | 831 | 3.33% | 1,647 | 6.65% |
| | YS | 35.83 | 0.80% | 85 | 1.89% | 121 | 2.69% |
| Fin whale | ECS | 1.18 | 0.23% | 4 | 0.89% | 6 | 1.12% |
| | Hawaii | 2.39 | 1.57% | 0 | 0.00% | 2 | 1.57% |
| | IND | 0.09 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | SIND | 8.23 | 0.02% | 6 | 0.01% | 14 | 0.03% |
| | WNP | 167.36 | 1.84% | 1,469 | 15.76% | 1,636 | 17.60% |
| Humpback whale | CNP stock and Hawaii DPS | 116.98 | 1.16% | 207 | 2.07% | 324 | 3.22% |
| | WAU stock and DPS | 0.53 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.00% |

38 ANT=Antarctic; CNP=Central North Pacific; NP=North Pacific; NIND=Northern Indian; SIND=Southern Indian; IND=Indian; WNP=Western North Pacific; ECS=East China Sea; JW=Sea of Japan; WP=Western Pacific; SOJ=Sea of Japan; IA=Inshore Archipelago; WAU=Western Australia; YS=Yellow Sea; OE=Offshore Japan; OW=Nearshore Japan; JW=Sea of Japan/Minke; JE=Pacific coast of Japan; SH=Southern Hemisphere; DPS=distinct population segment

**Table B-14. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 1 (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock[38]* | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 1* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Humpback whale (Continued) | WNP stock and DPS | 230.16 | 17.40% | 1,862 | 140.28% | 2,092 | 157.68% |
| North Pacific right whale | WNP | 2.42 | 0.21% | 53 | 5.78% | 56 | 5.99% |
| Omura's whale | NIND | 2.53 | 0.02% | 2 | 0.02% | 5 | 0.04% |
| | SIND | 3.13 | 0.02% | 0 | 0.00% | 3 | 0.02% |
| | WNP | 10.23 | 0.60% | 0 | 0.00% | 10 | 0.60% |
| Sei whale | Hawaii | 6.49 | 1.64% | 6 | 1.64% | 13 | 3.27% |
| | SIND | 0.10 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | NP | 71.64 | 1.03% | 1,911 | 27.33% | 1,983 | 28.36% |
| | NIND | 2.46 | 0.02% | 0 | 0.00% | 2 | 0.02% |
| Western North Pacific gray whale | WNP stock and Western DPS | 0.29 | 0.10% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.10% |
| Baird's beaked whale | WNP | 1,716.62 | 30.16% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,717 | 30.16% |
| Blainville's beaked whale | Hawaii | 43.07 | 2.03% | 0 | 0.00% | 43 | 2.03% |
| | WNP | 201.53 | 2.47% | 0 | 0.00% | 202 | 2.47% |
| | IND | 29.63 | 0.17% | 0 | 0.00% | 30 | 0.17% |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | 4-Islands | 3.21 | 1.70% | 0 | 0.00% | 3 | 1.70% |
| | Hawaii Island | 0.28 | 0.24% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.24% |
| | Hawaii Pelagic | 65.21 | 0.28% | 0 | 0.00% | 65 | 0.28% |
| | IA | 66.12 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 66 | 0.07% |
| | IND | 1,190.43 | 39.67% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,190 | 39.67% |
| | Japanese Coastal | 1,391.09 | 39.54% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,391 | 39.54% |
| | Kauai/Niihau | 9.07 | 4.91% | 0 | 0.00% | 9 | 4.91% |
| | Oahu | 26.16 | 3.54% | 0 | 0.00% | 26 | 3.54% |
| | WNP Northern Offshore | 363.00 | 0.36% | 0 | 0.00% | 363 | 0.36% |
| | WNP Southern Offshore | 2,107.38 | 5.13% | 0 | 0.00% | 2,107 | 5.13% |

**Table B-14. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 1 (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[38] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 1* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Common bottlenose dolphin (Continued) | WAU | 396.81 | 13.22% | 0 | 0.00% | 397 | 13.22% |
| Common dolphin | IND | 32.70 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 33 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 130,453.81 | 7.94% | 0 | 0.00% | 130,454 | 7.94% |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | Hawaii | 178.28 | 5.84% | 0 | 0.00% | 178 | 5.84% |
| | IND | 144.30 | 0.53% | 0 | 0.00% | 144 | 0.53% |
| | SH | 48.10 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 48 | 0.07% |
| | WNP | 4,677.12 | 5.24% | 0 | 0.00% | 4,677 | 5.24% |
| Dall's porpoise | SOJ *dalli* type | 383.97 | 0.22% | 0 | 0.00% | 384 | 0.22% |
| | WNP dalli ecotype | 13,785.02 | 8.51% | 0 | 0.00% | 13,785 | 8.51% |
| | WNP *truei* ecotype | 304.55 | 0.18% | 0 | 0.00% | 305 | 0.18% |
| Deraniyagala's beaked whale | IND | 98.60 | 0.58% | 0 | 0.00% | 99 | 0.58% |
| | NP | 242.87 | 0.99% | 0 | 0.00% | 243 | 0.99% |
| Dwarf sperm whale | Hawaii | 449.18 | 2.55% | 0 | 0.00% | 449 | 2.55% |
| | IND | 1.90 | 0.03% | 0 | 0.00% | 2 | 0.03% |
| | WNP | 314.98 | 0.09% | 0 | 0.00% | 315 | 0.09% |
| False killer whale | Hawaii Pelagic | 39.57 | 2.55% | 0 | 0.00% | 40 | 2.55% |
| | IA | 159.13 | 1.63% | 0 | 0.00% | 159 | 1.63% |
| | IND | 7.33 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 7 | 0.00% |
| | Main Hawaiian Islands Insular stock and DPS | 0.47 | 0.28% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.28% |
| | Northwestern Hawaiian Islands | 0.00 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 540.22 | 3.25% | 0 | 0.00% | 540 | 3.25% |
| Fraser's dolphin | CNP | 363.33 | 2.15% | 0 | 0.00% | 363 | 2.15% |
| | Hawaii | 1,332.71 | 2.60% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,333 | 2.60% |
| | IND | 58.10 | 0.03% | 0 | 0.00% | 58 | 0.03% |

**Table B-14. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 1 (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock[38]* | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 1* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Fraser's dolphin (Continued) | WNP | 1,787.92 | 0.91% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,788 | 0.91% |
| Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale | IND | 7.21 | 0.04% | 0 | 0.00% | 7 | 0.04% |
| | NP | 339.46 | 1.44% | 0 | 0.00% | 339 | 1.44% |
| Harbor porpoise | WNP | 228.71 | 0.73% | 0 | 0.00% | 229 | 0.73% |
| Hubbs' beaked whale | NP | 16.38 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 16 | 0.07% |
| Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin | IND | 7.07 | 0.09% | 0 | 0.00% | 7 | 0.09% |
| Killer whale | Hawaii | 4.39 | 3.02% | 0 | 0.00% | 4 | 3.02% |
| | IND | 248.03 | 1.97% | 0 | 0.00% | 248 | 1.97% |
| | WNP | 6,549.20 | 53.41% | 0 | 0.00% | 6,549 | 53.41% |
| *Kogia* spp. | WNP | 1,016.10 | 0.24% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,016 | 0.24% |
| Longman's beaked whale | Hawaii | 506.79 | 6.66% | 0 | 0.00% | 507 | 6.66% |
| | IND | 203.27 | 1.20% | 0 | 0.00% | 203 | 1.20% |
| | WNP | 324.88 | 4.24% | 0 | 0.00% | 325 | 4.24% |
| Melon-headed whale | Hawaiian Islands | 124.01 | 1.42% | 0 | 0.00% | 124 | 1.42% |
| | IND | 251.03 | 0.40% | 0 | 0.00% | 251 | 0.40% |
| | Kohala Resident | 6.33 | 0.28% | 0 | 0.00% | 6 | 0.28% |
| | WNP | 1,237.96 | 2.20% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,238 | 2.20% |
| *Mesoplodon* spp. | WNP | 6.49 | 0.03% | 0 | 0.00% | 6 | 0.03% |
| Northern right whale dolphin | NP | 0.16 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| Pacific white-sided dolphin | NP | 6,092.68 | 0.68% | 0 | 0.00% | 6,093 | 0.68% |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | 4-Islands | 21.72 | 9.87% | 0 | 0.00% | 22 | 9.87% |
| | Hawaii Island | 15.49 | 7.04% | 0 | 0.00% | 15 | 7.04% |
| | Hawaiian Pelagic | 203.91 | 0.38% | 0 | 0.00% | 204 | 0.38% |
| | IND | 194.53 | 0.03% | 0 | 0.00% | 195 | 0.03% |
| | Oahu | 15.87 | 7.23% | 0 | 0.00% | 16 | 7.23% |

**Table B-14. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 1 (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock[38]* | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 1* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin (Continued) | WNP | 3,860.43 | 2.99% | 0 | 0.00% | 3,860 | 2.99% |
| Pygmy killer whale | Hawaii | 269.64 | 2.55% | 0 | 0.00% | 270 | 2.55% |
| | IND | 37.20 | 0.17% | 0 | 0.00% | 37 | 0.17% |
| | WNP | 683.55 | 2.18% | 0 | 0.00% | 684 | 2.18% |
| Pygmy sperm whale | Hawaii | 182.42 | 2.55% | 0 | 0.00% | 182 | 2.55% |
| | IND | 0.18 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 131.13 | 0.05% | 0 | 0.00% | 131 | 0.05% |
| Risso's dolphin | Hawaii | 283.95 | 2.46% | 0 | 0.00% | 284 | 2.46% |
| | IA | 674.37 | 0.45% | 0 | 0.00% | 674 | 0.45% |
| | WNP | 5,309.63 | 2.34% | 0 | 0.00% | 5,310 | 2.34% |
| | IND | 2,888.07 | 0.63% | 0 | 0.00% | 2,888 | 0.63% |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | Hawaii | 146.06 | 0.19% | 0 | 0.00% | 146 | 0.19% |
| | IND | 25.90 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 26 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 1,045.55 | 20.88% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,046 | 20.88% |
| Short-finned pilot whale | Hawaii | 271.39 | 1.37% | 0 | 0.00% | 271 | 1.37% |
| | IND | 953.47 | 0.37% | 0 | 0.00% | 953 | 0.37% |
| | WNP Northern Ecotype | 327.84 | 1.58% | 0 | 0.00% | 328 | 1.58% |
| | WNP Southern Ecotype | 4,442.86 | 14.09% | 0 | 0.00% | 4,443 | 14.09% |
| Southern bottlenose whale | IND | 14.02 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 14 | 0.00% |
| Spade-toothed beaked whale | IND | 9.88 | 0.06% | 0 | 0.00% | 10 | 0.06% |
| Sperm whale | Hawaii | 72.58 | 1.61% | 0 | 0.00% | 73 | 1.61% |
| | NIND | 20.82 | 0.09% | 0 | 0.00% | 21 | 0.09% |
| | NP | 957.91 | 0.85% | 0 | 0.00% | 958 | 0.85% |

**Table B-14. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 1 (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[38] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 1* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Sperm whale (Continued) | SIND | 9.81 | 0.04% | 0 | 0.00% | 10 | 0.04% |
| Spinner dolphin | Hawaii Island | 0.85 | 0.13% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.13% |
| | Hawaii Pelagic | 131.28 | 3.92% | 0 | 0.00% | 131 | 3.92% |
| | IND | 149.80 | 0.03% | 0 | 0.00% | 150 | 0.03% |
| | Kauai/Niihau | 56.95 | 9.49% | 0 | 0.00% | 57 | 9.49% |
| | Kure/Midway Atoll | 0.00 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | Oahu/4-Islands | 13.51 | 3.83% | 0 | 0.00% | 14 | 3.83% |
| | Pearl and Hermes Reef | 0.00 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 399.30 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 399 | 0.00% |
| Stejneger's beaked whale | WNP | 125.60 | 1.56% | 0 | 0.00% | 126 | 1.56% |
| Striped dolphin | Hawaii | 184.40 | 0.28% | 0 | 0.00% | 184 | 0.28% |
| | IND | 3,162.17 | 0.47% | 0 | 0.00% | 3,162 | 0.47% |
| | Japanese Coastal | 2,776.49 | 14.17% | 0 | 0.00% | 2,776 | 14.17% |
| | WNP Northern Offshore | 166.84 | 0.04% | 0 | 0.00% | 167 | 0.04% |
| | WNP Southern Offshore | 2,487.30 | 4.76% | 0 | 0.00% | 2,487 | 4.76% |
| Hawaiian monk seal | Hawaii | 6.27 | 0.44% | 0 | 0.00% | 6 | 0.44% |
| Northern fur seal | Western Pacific | 5,296.89 | 1.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 5,297 | 1.07% |
| Ribbon seal | NP | 9,657.04 | 2.64% | 159 | 0.04% | 9,816 | 2.69% |
| Spotted seal | Alaska stock/Bering Sea DPS | 49,526.87 | 10.76% | 924 | 0.20% | 50,451 | 10.96% |
| | Southern stock and DPS | 0.27 | 0.02% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.02% |

**Table B-14. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 1 (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[38] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 1* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Steller sea lion | Western/Asian stock, Western DPS | 1.36 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.00% |

**Table B-15. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4 (Marine Mammal Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[39] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Antarctic minke whale | ANT | 0.14 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| Blue whale | CNP | 3.12 | 2.39% | 0 | 0.00% | 3 | 2.39% |
| | NIND | 0.43 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 6.58 | 0.07% | 83 | 0.83% | 90 | 0.90% |
| | SIND | 0.81 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.07% |
| Bryde’s whale | ECS | 3.41 | 2.49% | 11 | 7.79% | 14 | 10.28% |
| | Hawaii | 5.44 | 0.62% | 0 | 0.00% | 5 | 0.62% |
| | WNP | 184.11 | 1.08% | 194 | 0.86% | 378 | 1.94% |
| | NIND | 4.05 | 0.04% | 4 | 0.04% | 8 | 0.07% |
| | SIND | 5.01 | 0.04% | 2 | 0.02% | 7 | 0.05% |
| Common minke whale | Hawaii | 277.85 | 1.10% | 294 | 1.19% | 572 | 2.30% |
| | IND | 816.07 | 0.28% | 455 | 0.14% | 1,271 | 0.43% |
| | WNP JW | 3.31 | 0.12% | 0 | 0.00% | 3 | 0.12% |
| | WNP OE | 1,053.71 | 4.29% | 1,073 | 4.29% | 2,127 | 8.59% |
| | YS | 53.89 | 1.20% | 135 | 2.99% | 189 | 4.20% |
| Fin whale | ECS | 1.88 | 0.37% | 7 | 1.42% | 9 | 1.80% |
| | Hawaii | 3.49 | 2.30% | 0 | 0.00% | 3 | 2.30% |
| | IND | 0.14 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | SIND | 13.17 | 0.04% | 9 | 0.02% | 22 | 0.05% |
| | WNP | 259.28 | 2.85% | 2,299 | 24.70% | 2,558 | 27.55% |
| Humpback whale | CNP stock and Hawaii DPS | 175.75 | 1.74% | 311 | 3.11% | 487 | 4.85% |

39 ANT=Antarctic; CNP=Central North Pacific; NP=North Pacific; NIND=Northern Indian; SIND=Southern Indian; IND=Indian; WNP=Western North Pacific; ECS=East China Sea; JW=Sea of Japan; WP=Western Pacific; SOJ=Sea of Japan; IA=Inshore Archipelago; WAU=Western Australia; YS=Yellow Sea; OE=Offshore Japan; OW=Nearshore Japan; JW=Sea of Japan/Minke; JE=Pacific coast of Japan; SH=Southern Hemisphere; DPS=distinct population segment

**Table B-15. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4 (Marine Mammal Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock[39]* | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Humpback whale (Continued) | WAU stock and DPS | 0.85 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.00% |
| | WNP stock and DPS | 315.07 | 23.82% | 2,788 | 210.03% | 3,103 | 233.84% |
| North Pacific right whale | WNP | 3.65 | 0.33% | 85 | 9.24% | 89 | 9.57% |
| Omura's whale | NIND | 4.05 | 0.04% | 4 | 0.04% | 8 | 0.07% |
| | SIND | 5.01 | 0.04% | 0 | 0.00% | 5 | 0.04% |
| | WNP | 13.68 | 0.81% | 0 | 0.00% | 14 | 0.81% |
| Sei whale | Hawaii | 9.46 | 2.39% | 9 | 2.39% | 19 | 4.78% |
| | SIND | 0.16 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | NP | 114.31 | 1.63% | 3,058 | 43.73% | 3,172 | 45.37% |
| | NIND | 3.93 | 0.04% | 0 | 0.00% | 4 | 0.04% |
| Western North Pacific gray whale | WNP stock and Western DPS | 0.45 | 0.15% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.15% |
| Baird's beaked whale | WNP | 2,746.60 | 48.26% | 0 | 0.00% | 2,747 | 48.26% |
| Blainville's beaked whale | Hawaii | 35.06 | 1.83% | 0 | 0.00% | 35 | 1.83% |
| | WNP | 269.35 | 3.30% | 0 | 0.00% | 269 | 3.30% |
| | IND | 47.41 | 0.27% | 0 | 0.00% | 47 | 0.27% |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | 4-Islands | 4.68 | 2.48% | 0 | 0.00% | 5 | 2.48% |
| | Hawaii Island | 0.41 | 0.34% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | Hawaii Pelagic | 95.14 | 0.41% | 0 | 0.00% | 95 | 0.41% |
| | IA | 104.12 | 0.11% | 0 | 0.00% | 104 | 0.11% |
| | IND | 1,128.21 | 0.14% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,128 | 0.14% |
| | Japanese Coastal | 1,686.43 | 47.94% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,686 | 47.94% |
| | Kauai/Niihau | 13.23 | 7.16% | 0 | 0.00% | 13 | 7.16% |
| | Oahu | 38.16 | 5.17% | 0 | 0.00% | 38 | 5.17% |

**Table B-15. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4 (Marine Mammal Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[39] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Common bottlenose dolphin (Continued) | WNP Northern Offshore | 580.80 | 0.57% | 0 | 0.00% | 581 | 0.57% |
| | WNP Southern Offshore | 2,725.54 | 6.63% | 0 | 0.00% | 2,726 | 6.63% |
| | WAU | 634.90 | 21.16% | 0 | 0.00% | 635 | 21.16% |
| Common dolphin | IND | 52.32 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 52 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 203,871.30 | 12.24% | 0 | 0.00% | 203,871 | 12.24% |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | Hawaii | 21.91 | 3.03% | 0 | 0.00% | 22 | 3.03% |
| | IND | 230.88 | 0.85% | 0 | 0.00% | 231 | 0.85% |
| | SH | 76.96 | 0.11% | 0 | 0.00% | 77 | 0.11% |
| | WNP | 6,945.66 | 7.78% | 0 | 0.00% | 6,946 | 7.78% |
| Dall's porpoise | SOJ *dalli* type | 614.35 | 0.36% | 0 | 0.00% | 614 | 0.36% |
| | WNP *dalli* ecotype | 22,056.04 | 13.62% | 0 | 0.00% | 22,056 | 13.62% |
| | WNP *truei* ecotype | 487.28 | 0.28% | 0 | 0.00% | 487 | 0.28% |
| Deraniyagala's beaked whale | IND | 157.76 | 0.92% | 0 | 0.00% | 158 | 0.92% |
| | NP | 346.08 | 1.41% | 0 | 0.00% | 346 | 1.41% |
| Dwarf sperm whale | Hawaii | 655.27 | 3.72% | 0 | 0.00% | 655 | 3.72% |
| | IND | 3.04 | 0.05% | 0 | 0.00% | 3 | 0.05% |
| | WNP | 486.15 | 0.14% | 0 | 0.00% | 486 | 0.14% |
| False killer whale | Hawaii Pelagic | 57.73 | 3.72% | 0 | 0.00% | 58 | 3.72% |
| | IA | 251.87 | 2.59% | 0 | 0.00% | 252 | 2.59% |
| | IND | 11.73 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 12 | 0.01% |
| | Main Hawaiian Islands Insular stock and DPS | 0.69 | 0.41% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.41% |

**Table B-15. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4 (Marine Mammal Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[39] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| False killer whale (Continued) | Northwestern Hawaiian Islands | 0.00 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 1,350.01 | 8.15% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,350 | 8.15% |
| Fraser's dolphin | CNP | 546.45 | 3.24% | 0 | 0.00% | 546 | 3.24% |
| | Hawaii | 1,944.18 | 3.79% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,944 | 3.79% |
| | IND | 92.96 | 0.05% | 0 | 0.00% | 93 | 0.05% |
| | WNP | 2,287.28 | 1.16% | 0 | 0.00% | 2,287 | 1.16% |
| Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale | IND | 11.54 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 12 | 0.07% |
| | NP | 475.64 | 2.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 476 | 2.00% |
| Harbor porpoise | WNP | 365.94 | 1.17% | 0 | 0.00% | 366 | 1.17% |
| Hubbs' beaked whale | NP | 26.20 | 0.11% | 0 | 0.00% | 26 | 0.11% |
| Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin | IND | 11.31 | 0.14% | 0 | 0.00% | 11 | 0.14% |
| Killer whale | Hawaii | 6.41 | 4.41% | 0 | 0.00% | 6 | 4.41% |
| | IND | 396.85 | 3.15% | 0 | 0.00% | 397 | 3.15% |
| | WNP | 10,470.13 | 85.37% | 0 | 0.00% | 10,470 | 85.37% |
| *Kogia* spp. | WNP | 1,316.59 | 0.31% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,317 | 0.31% |
| Longman's beaked whale | Hawaii | 739.32 | 5.01% | 0 | 0.00% | 739 | 5.01% |
| | IND | 325.23 | 1.92% | 0 | 0.00% | 325 | 1.92% |
| | WNP | 470.53 | 6.14% | 0 | 0.00% | 471 | 6.14% |
| Melon-headed whale | Hawaiian Islands | 180.90 | 2.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 181 | 2.07% |
| | IND | 401.65 | 0.64% | 0 | 0.00% | 402 | 0.64% |
| | Kohala Resident | 9.23 | 0.41% | 0 | 0.00% | 9 | 0.41% |
| | WNP | 1,605.35 | 2.87% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,605 | 2.87% |
| *Mesoplodon* spp. | WNP | 10.38 | 0.05% | 0 | 0.00% | 10 | 0.05% |

**Table B-15. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4 (Marine Mammal Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock[39]* | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Northern right whale dolphin | NP | 0.26 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| Pacific white-sided dolphin | NP | 9,530.41 | 1.05% | 0 | 0.00% | 9,530 | 1.05% |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | 4-Islands | 31.69 | 14.40% | 0 | 0.00% | 32 | 14.40% |
| | Hawaii Island | 22.60 | 10.26% | 0 | 0.00% | 23 | 10.26% |
| | Hawaiian Pelagic | 297.46 | 0.55% | 0 | 0.00% | 297 | 0.55% |
| | IND | 311.25 | 0.05% | 0 | 0.00% | 311 | 0.05% |
| | Oahu | 23.15 | 10.54% | 0 | 0.00% | 23 | 10.54% |
| | WNP | 5,104.81 | 3.95% | 0 | 0.00% | 5,105 | 3.95% |
| Pygmy killer whale | Hawaii | 393.36 | 3.72% | 0 | 0.00% | 393 | 3.72% |
| | IND | 59.52 | 0.27% | 0 | 0.00% | 60 | 0.27% |
| | WNP | 901.17 | 2.87% | 0 | 0.00% | 901 | 2.87% |
| Pygmy sperm whale | Hawaii | 266.12 | 3.72% | 0 | 0.00% | 266 | 3.72% |
| | IND | 0.28 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 202.54 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 203 | 0.07% |
| Risso’s dolphin | Hawaii | 414.23 | 3.58% | 0 | 0.00% | 414 | 3.58% |
| | IA | 1,045.41 | 0.70% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,045 | 0.70% |
| | WNP | 4,347.00 | 3.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 4,347 | 3.07% |
| | IND | 4,620.91 | 1.01% | 0 | 0.00% | 4,621 | 1.01% |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | Hawaii | 213.07 | 0.28% | 0 | 0.00% | 213 | 0.28% |
| | IND | 41.44 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 41 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 1,439.43 | 28.74% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,439 | 28.74% |
| Short-finned pilot whale | Hawaii | 395.90 | 2.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 396 | 2.00% |
| | IND | 1,525.55 | 0.59% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,526 | 0.59% |
| | WNP Northern Ecotype | 524.55 | 2.52% | 0 | 0.00% | 525 | 2.52% |

**Table B-15. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4 (Marine Mammal Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock[39]* | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Short-finned pilot whale (Continued) | WNP Southern Ecotype | 5,682.72 | 18.03% | 0 | 0.00% | 5,683 | 18.03% |
| Southern bottlenose whale | IND | 22.44 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 22 | 0.00% |
| Spade-toothed beaked whale | IND | 15.80 | 0.09% | 0 | 0.00% | 16 | 0.09% |
| Sperm whale | Hawaii | 105.88 | 2.34% | 0 | 0.00% | 106 | 2.34% |
| | NIND | 33.32 | 0.14% | 0 | 0.00% | 33 | 0.14% |
| | NP | 1,429.07 | 1.28% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,429 | 1.28% |
| | SIND | 15.70 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 16 | 0.07% |
| Spinner dolphin | Hawaii Island | 1.24 | 0.19% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.19% |
| | Hawaii Pelagic | 191.51 | 5.72% | 0 | 0.00% | 192 | 5.72% |
| | IND | 239.68 | 0.05% | 0 | 0.00% | 240 | 0.05% |
| | Kauai/Niihau | 83.08 | 13.85% | 0 | 0.00% | 83 | 13.85% |
| | Kure/Midway Atoll | 0.00 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | Oahu/4-Islands | 19.70 | 2.88% | 0 | 0.00% | 20 | 2.88% |
| | Pearl and Hermes Reef | 0.00 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 574.02 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 574 | 0.00% |
| Stejneger's beaked whale | WNP | 200.96 | 2.49% | 0 | 0.00% | 201 | 2.49% |
| Striped dolphin | Hawaii | 269.01 | 0.41% | 0 | 0.00% | 269 | 0.41% |
| | IND | 5,059.47 | 0.75% | 0 | 0.00% | 5,059 | 0.75% |
| | Japanese Coastal | 3,365.96 | 17.18% | 0 | 0.00% | 3,366 | 17.18% |
| | WNP Northern Offshore | 266.95 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 267 | 0.07% |
| | WNP Southern Offshore | 3,282.31 | 6.28% | 0 | 0.00% | 3,282 | 6.28% |

**Table B-15. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4 (Marine Mammal Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[39] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Hawaiian monk seal | Hawaii | 9.71 | 0.69% | 0 | 0.00% | 10 | 0.69% |
| Northern fur seal | Western Pacific | 8,475.02 | 1.71% | 0 | 0.00% | 8,475 | 1.71% |
| Ribbon seal | NP | 15,451.27 | 4.23% | 254 | 0.07% | 15,705 | 4.30% |
| Spotted seal | Alaska stock/Bering Sea DPS | 79,242.99 | 17.21% | 1,479 | 0.32% | 80,722 | 17.53% |
| | Southern stock and DPS | 0.43 | 0.03% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.03% |
| Steller sea lion | Western/Asian stock, Western DPS | 2.17 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 2 | 0.00% |

**Table B-16. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2 Years 5 and Beyond (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock[40]* | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 5+* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Antarctic minke whale | ANT | 0.15 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| Blue whale | CNP | 3.73 | 2.85% | 0 | 0.00% | 4 | 2.85% |
| | NIND | 0.59 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 8.44 | 0.00% | 114 | 1.14% | 123 | 1.14% |
| | SIND | 0.81 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.07% |
| Bryde's whale | ECS | 4.69 | 3.42% | 15 | 10.71% | 19 | 14.13% |
| | Hawaii | 6.50 | 0.74% | 0 | 0.00% | 6 | 0.74% |
| | WNP | 211.47 | 1.24% | 226 | 1.02% | 437 | 2.26% |
| | NIND | 5.57 | 0.05% | 5 | 0.05% | 10 | 0.10% |
| | SIND | 6.89 | 0.05% | 2 | 0.02% | 9 | 0.07% |
| Common minke whale | Hawaii | 331.63 | 1.32% | 351 | 1.43% | 682 | 2.74% |
| | IND | 1,122.10 | 0.39% | 626 | 0.20% | 1,748 | 0.59% |
| | WNP JW | 4.55 | 0.17% | 0 | 0.00% | 5 | 0.17% |
| | WNP OE | 1,191.15 | 4.85% | 1,213 | 4.85% | 2,404 | 9.71% |
| | YS | 67.65 | 1.51% | 183 | 4.06% | 250 | 5.57% |
| Fin whale | ECS | 2.59 | 0.51% | 10 | 1.96% | 12 | 2.47% |
| | Hawaii | 4.17 | 2.74% | 0 | 0.00% | 4 | 2.74% |
| | IND | 0.20 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | SIND | 18.11 | 0.05% | 12 | 0.02% | 30 | 0.07% |
| | WNP | 347.52 | 3.81% | 3,107 | 33.42% | 3,455 | 37.23% |
| Humpback whale | CNP stock and Hawaii DPS | 220.25 | 2.19% | 391 | 3.91% | 611 | 6.10% |

40 ANT=Antarctic; CNP=Central North Pacific; NP=North Pacific; NIND=Northern Indian; SIND=Southern Indian; IND=Indian; WNP=Western North Pacific; ECS=East China Sea; JW=Sea of Japan; WP=Western Pacific; SOJ=Sea of Japan; IA=Inshore Archipelago; WAU=Western Australia; YS=Yellow Sea; OE=Offshore Japan; OW=Nearshore Japan; JW=Sea of Japan/Minke; JE=Pacific coast of Japan; SH=Southern Hemisphere; DPS=distinct population segment

**Table B-16. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2 Years 5 and Beyond (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock[40]* | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 5+* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Humpback whale (Continued) | WAU stock and DPS | 1.17 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.00% |
| | WNP stock and DPS | 381.92 | 28.87% | 3,884 | 292.62% | 4,266 | 321.49% |
| North Pacific right whale | WNP | 4.77 | 0.44% | 117 | 12.71% | 122 | 13.15% |
| Omura's whale | NIND | 5.57 | 0.05% | 5 | 0.05% | 10 | 0.10% |
| | SIND | 6.89 | 0.05% | 0 | 0.00% | 7 | 0.05% |
| | WNP | 15.97 | 0.95% | 0 | 0.00% | 16 | 0.95% |
| Sei whale | Hawaii | 11.29 | 2.85% | 11 | 2.85% | 22 | 5.70% |
| | SIND | 0.22 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | NP | 156.58 | 2.23% | 4,204 | 60.13% | 4,361 | 62.37% |
| | NIND | 5.40 | 0.05% | 0 | 0.00% | 5 | 0.05% |
| Western North Pacific gray whale | WNP stock and Western DPS | 0.59 | 0.20% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.20% |
| Baird's beaked whale | WNP | 3,776.57 | 66.36% | 0 | 0.00% | 3,777 | 66.36% |
| Blainville's beaked whale | Hawaii | 47.22 | 2.40% | 0 | 0.00% | 47 | 2.40% |
| | WNP | 311.35 | 3.82% | 0 | 0.00% | 311 | 3.82% |
| | IND | 65.19 | 0.37% | 0 | 0.00% | 65 | 0.37% |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | 4-Islands | 5.59 | 2.96% | 0 | 0.00% | 6 | 2.96% |
| | Hawaii Island | 0.49 | 0.41% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | Hawaii Pelagic | 113.55 | 0.49% | 0 | 0.00% | 114 | 0.49% |
| | IA | 140.04 | 0.15% | 0 | 0.00% | 140 | 0.15% |
| | IND | 1,551.29 | 0.20% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,551 | 0.20% |
| | Japanese Coastal | 1,789.16 | 50.86% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,789 | 50.86% |
| | Kauai/Niihau | 15.79 | 8.55% | 0 | 0.00% | 16 | 8.55% |
| | Oahu | 45.55 | 6.17% | 0 | 0.00% | 46 | 6.17% |
| | WNP Northern Offshore | 798.60 | 0.78% | 0 | 0.00% | 799 | 0.78% |

**Table B-16. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2 Years 5 and Beyond (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[40] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 5+* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Common bottlenose dolphin (Continued) | WNP Southern Offshore | 3,062.72 | 7.45% | 0 | 0.00% | 3,063 | 7.45% |
| | WAU | 872.98 | 29.09% | 0 | 0.00% | 873 | 29.09% |
| Common dolphin | IND | 71.94 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 72 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 275,078.61 | 16.08% | 0 | 0.00% | 275,079 | 16.08% |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | Hawaii | 26.15 | 3.62% | 0 | 0.00% | 26 | 3.62% |
| | IND | 317.46 | 1.17% | 0 | 0.00% | 317 | 1.17% |
| | SH | 105.82 | 0.15% | 0 | 0.00% | 106 | 0.15% |
| | WNP | 8,980.39 | 10.04% | 0 | 0.00% | 8,980 | 10.04% |
| Dall's porpoise | SOJ *dalli* type | 844.73 | 0.49% | 0 | 0.00% | 845 | 0.49% |
| | WNP *dalli* ecotype | 30,327.05 | 18.72% | 0 | 0.00% | 30,327 | 18.72% |
| | WNP *truei* ecotype | 670.01 | 0.39% | 0 | 0.00% | 670 | 0.39% |
| Deraniyagala's beaked whale | IND | 216.92 | 1.27% | 0 | 0.00% | 217 | 1.27% |
| | NP | 412.07 | 1.69% | 0 | 0.00% | 412 | 1.69% |
| Dwarf sperm whale | Hawaii | 782.10 | 4.44% | 0 | 0.00% | 782 | 4.44% |
| | IND | 4.18 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 4 | 0.07% |
| | WNP | 635.07 | 0.18% | 0 | 0.00% | 635 | 0.18% |
| False killer whale | Hawaii Pelagic | 68.90 | 4.44% | 0 | 0.00% | 69 | 4.44% |
| | IA | 341.17 | 3.51% | 0 | 0.00% | 341 | 3.51% |
| | IND | 16.13 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 16 | 0.00% |
| | Main Hawaiian Islands Insular stock and DPS | 0.82 | 0.49% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.49% |
| | Northwestern Hawaiian Islands | 0.00 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 1,596.09 | 9.63% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,596 | 9.63% |

**Table B-16. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2 Years 5 and Beyond (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[40] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 5+* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Fraser's dolphin | CNP | 685.97 | 4.06% | 0 | 0.00% | 686 | 4.06% |
| | Hawaii | 2,320.48 | 4.52% | 0 | 0.00% | 2,320 | 4.52% |
| | IND | 127.82 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 128 | 0.07% |
| | WNP | 2,558.59 | 1.29% | 0 | 0.00% | 2,559 | 1.29% |
| Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale | IND | 15.86 | 0.10% | 0 | 0.00% | 16 | 0.10% |
| | NP | 568.01 | 2.38% | 0 | 0.00% | 568 | 2.38% |
| Harbor porpoise | WNP | 503.16 | 1.61% | 0 | 0.00% | 503 | 1.61% |
| Hubbs' beaked whale | NP | 36.03 | 0.15% | 0 | 0.00% | 36 | 0.15% |
| Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin | IND | 15.55 | 0.20% | 0 | 0.00% | 16 | 0.20% |
| Killer whale | Hawaii | 7.65 | 5.26% | 0 | 0.00% | 8 | 5.26% |
| | IND | 545.67 | 4.33% | 0 | 0.00% | 546 | 4.33% |
| | WNP | 14,387.33 | 117.31% | 0 | 0.00% | 14,387 | 117.31% |
| *Kogia* spp. | WNP | 1,494.11 | 0.35% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,494 | 0.35% |
| Longman's beaked whale | Hawaii | 882.41 | 11.59% | 0 | 0.00% | 882 | 11.59% |
| | IND | 447.19 | 2.64% | 0 | 0.00% | 447 | 2.64% |
| | WNP | 574.04 | 7.50% | 0 | 0.00% | 574 | 7.50% |
| Melon-headed whale | Hawaiian Islands | 215.92 | 2.47% | 0 | 0.00% | 216 | 2.47% |
| | IND | 552.27 | 0.88% | 0 | 0.00% | 552 | 0.88% |
| | Kohala Resident | 11.02 | 0.49% | 0 | 0.00% | 11 | 0.49% |
| | WNP | 1,823.43 | 3.27% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,823 | 3.27% |
| *Mesoplodon* spp. | WNP | 14.28 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 14 | 0.07% |
| Northern right whale dolphin | NP | 0.36 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |

**Table B-16. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2 Years 5 and Beyond (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock[40]* | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 5+* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Pacific white-sided dolphin | NP | 12,890.33 | 1.41% | 0 | 0.00% | 12,890 | 1.41% |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | 4-Islands | 37.82 | 17.18% | 0 | 0.00% | 38 | 17.18% |
| | Hawaii Island | 26.97 | 12.25% | 0 | 0.00% | 27 | 12.25% |
| | Hawaiian Pelagic | 355.04 | 0.66% | 0 | 0.00% | 355 | 0.66% |
| | IND | 427.97 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 428 | 0.07% |
| | Oahu | 27.63 | 12.58% | 0 | 0.00% | 28 | 12.58% |
| | WNP | 5,883.15 | 4.53% | 0 | 0.00% | 5,883 | 4.53% |
| Pygmy killer whale | Hawaii | 469.49 | 4.44% | 0 | 0.00% | 469 | 4.44% |
| | IND | 81.84 | 0.37% | 0 | 0.00% | 82 | 0.37% |
| | WNP | 1,035.09 | 3.30% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,035 | 3.30% |
| Pygmy sperm whale | Hawaii | 317.62 | 4.44% | 0 | 0.00% | 318 | 4.44% |
| | IND | 0.39 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 264.88 | 0.09% | 0 | 0.00% | 265 | 0.09% |
| Risso's dolphin | Hawaii | 494.40 | 4.28% | 0 | 0.00% | 494 | 4.28% |
| | IA | 1,374.49 | 0.92% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,374 | 0.92% |
| | WNP | 4,914.00 | 3.47% | 0 | 0.00% | 4,914 | 3.47% |
| | IND | 6,353.75 | 1.39% | 0 | 0.00% | 6,354 | 1.39% |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | Hawaii | 254.31 | 0.33% | 0 | 0.00% | 254 | 0.33% |
| | IND | 56.98 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 57 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 1,731.81 | 34.56% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,732 | 34.56% |
| Short-finned pilot whale | Hawaii | 472.53 | 2.38% | 0 | 0.00% | 473 | 2.38% |
| | IND | 2,097.63 | 0.81% | 0 | 0.00% | 2,098 | 0.81% |
| | WNP Northern Ecotype | 721.26 | 3.47% | 0 | 0.00% | 721 | 3.47% |
| | WNP Southern Ecotype | 6,302.66 | 19.99% | 0 | 0.00% | 6,303 | 19.99% |

**Table B-16. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2 Years 5 and Beyond (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[40] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 5+* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Southern bottlenose whale | IND | 30.85 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 31 | 0.00% |
| Spade-toothed beaked whale | IND | 21.73 | 0.12% | 0 | 0.00% | 22 | 0.12% |
| Sperm whale | Hawaii | 126.38 | 2.80% | 0 | 0.00% | 126 | 2.80% |
| | NIND | 45.81 | 0.20% | 0 | 0.00% | 46 | 0.20% |
| | NP | 1,855.21 | 1.68% | 0 | 0.00% | 1,855 | 1.68% |
| | SIND | 21.58 | 0.10% | 0 | 0.00% | 22 | 0.10% |
| Spinner dolphin | Hawaii Island | 1.48 | 0.22% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.22% |
| | Hawaii Pelagic | 228.58 | 6.82% | 0 | 0.00% | 229 | 6.82% |
| | IND | 329.56 | 0.07% | 0 | 0.00% | 330 | 0.07% |
| | Kauai/Niihau | 99.16 | 16.53% | 0 | 0.00% | 99 | 16.53% |
| | Kure/Midway Atoll | 0.00 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | Oahu/4-Islands | 23.52 | 6.66% | 0 | 0.00% | 24 | 6.66% |
| | Pearl and Hermes Reef | 0.00 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% |
| | WNP | 720.54 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 721 | 0.00% |
| Stejneger's beaked whale | WNP | 276.32 | 3.42% | 0 | 0.00% | 276 | 3.42% |
| Striped dolphin | Hawaii | 321.08 | 0.49% | 0 | 0.00% | 321 | 0.49% |
| | IND | 6,956.77 | 1.03% | 0 | 0.00% | 6,957 | 1.03% |
| | Japanese Coastal | 3,571.00 | 18.23% | 0 | 0.00% | 3,571 | 18.23% |
| | WNP Northern Offshore | 367.06 | 0.10% | 0 | 0.00% | 367 | 0.10% |
| | WNP Southern Offshore | 3,728.63 | 7.13% | 0 | 0.00% | 3,729 | 7.13% |
| Hawaiian monk seal | Hawaii | 12.75 | 0.91% | 0 | 0.00% | 13 | 0.91% |
| Northern fur seal | Western Pacific | 11,653.16 | 2.35% | 0 | 0.00% | 11,653 | 2.35% |
| Ribbon seal | NP | 21,245.50 | 5.82% | 350 | 0.10% | 21,595 | 5.92% |

**Table B-16. Maximum Total Annual MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar Under Alternative 2 Years 5 and Beyond (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[40] | *Maximum Annual MMPA Level B Harassment: Alternative 2 Years 5+* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Behavior (Individuals)* | *Behavior (Percent Stock)* | *TTS (Individuals)* | *TTS (Percent Stock)* | *Total Level B (Individuals)* | *Total Level B (Percent Stock)* |
| Spotted seal | Alaska stock/Bering Sea DPS | 108,959.11 | 23.66% | 2,034 | 0.44% | 110,993 | 24.10% |
| | Southern stock and DPS | 0.59 | 0.04% | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.04% |
| Steller sea lion | Western/Asian stock, Western DPS | 2.98 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 3 | 0.00% |

**Table B-17. Maximum MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar for Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4 and Years 5 to 7 (Annual Totals) and Total Overall for 7-Year Period (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock[41]* | *Maximum Annual Level B Harassment, Years 1-4* | | *Maximum Annual Level B Harassment, Years 5-7* | | *Total Overall Level B Harassment for 7-year Period (Individuals)* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Individuals* | *Percent Stock* | *Individuals* | *Percent Stock* | |
| Antarctic minke whale | ANT | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 |
| Blue whale | CNP | 3 | 2.39% | 4 | 2.85% | 24 |
| | NIND | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.00% | 3 |
| | WNP | 90 | 0.90% | 123 | 1.14% | 726 |
| | SIND | 1 | 0.07% | 1 | 0.07% | 7 |
| Bryde's whale | ECS | 14 | 10.28% | 19 | 14.13% | 116 |
| | Hawaii | 5 | 0.62% | 6 | 0.74% | 38 |
| | WNP | 378 | 1.94% | 437 | 2.26% | 2,823 |
| | NIND | 8 | 0.07% | 10 | 0.10% | 65 |
| | SIND | 7 | 0.05% | 9 | 0.07% | 55 |
| Common minke whale | Hawaii | 572 | 2.30% | 682 | 2.74% | 4,337 |
| | IND | 1,271 | 0.43% | 1,748 | 0.59% | 10,328 |
| | WNP JW | 3 | 0.12% | 5 | 0.17% | 27 |
| | WNP OE | 2,127 | 8.59% | 2,404 | 9.71% | 15,720 |
| | YS | 189 | 4.20% | 250 | 5.57% | 1,509 |
| Fin whale | ECS | 9 | 1.80% | 12 | 2.47% | 75 |
| | Hawaii | 3 | 2.30% | 4 | 2.74% | 24 |
| | IND | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 |
| | SIND | 22 | 0.05% | 30 | 0.07% | 178 |
| | WNP | 2,558 | 27.55% | 3,455 | 37.23% | 20,597 |
| Humpback whale | CNP stock and Hawaii DPS | 487 | 4.85% | 611 | 6.10% | 3,781 |

41 ANT=Antarctic; CNP=Central North Pacific; NP=North Pacific; NIND=Northern Indian; SIND=Southern Indian; IND=Indian; WNP=Western North Pacific; ECS=East China Sea; WP=Western Pacific; SOJ=Sea of Japan; IA=Inshore Archipelago; WAU=Western Australia; YS=Yellow Sea; OE=Offshore Japan; OW=Nearshore Japan; JW=Sea of Japan/Minke; JE=Pacific coast of Japan; SH=Southern Hemisphere; DPS=distinct population segment

**Table B-17. Maximum MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar for Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4 and Years 5 to 7 (Annual Totals) and Total Overall for 7-Year Period (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[41] | *Maximum Annual Level B Harassment, Years 1-4* | | *Maximum Annual Level B Harassment, Years 5-7* | | *Total Overall Level B Harassment for 7-year Period (Individuals)* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Individuals* | *Percent Stock* | *Individuals* | *Percent Stock* | |
| Humpback whale (continued) | WAU stock and DPS | 1 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.00% | 7 |
| | WNP stock and DPS | 3,103 | 233.84% | 4,266 | 321.49% | 25,210 |
| North Pacific right whale | WNP | 89 | 9.57% | 122 | 13.15% | 722 |
| Omura's whale | NIND | 8 | 0.07% | 10 | 0.10% | 65 |
| | SIND | 5 | 0.04% | 7 | 0.05% | 41 |
| | WNP | 14 | 0.81% | 16 | 0.95% | 104 |
| Sei whale | Hawaii | 19 | 4.78% | 22 | 5.70% | 142 |
| | SIND | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 |
| | NP | 3,172 | 45.37% | 4,361 | 62.37% | 25,771 |
| | NIND | 4 | 0.04% | 5 | 0.05% | 31 |
| Western North Pacific gray whale | WNP stock and Western DPS | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.20% | 3 |
| Baird’s beaked whale | WNP | 2,747 | 48.26% | 3,777 | 66.36% | 22,319 |
| Blainville’s beaked whale | Hawaii | 35 | 1.83% | 47 | 2.40% | 281 |
| | WNP | 269 | 3.30% | 311 | 3.82% | 2,009 |
| | IND | 47 | 0.27% | 65 | 0.37% | 383 |
| Common bottlenose dolphin | 4-Islands | 5 | 2.48% | 6 | 2.96% | 38 |
| | Hawaii Island | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 |
| | Hawaii Pelagic | 95 | 0.41% | 114 | 0.49% | 722 |
| | IA | 104 | 0.11% | 140 | 0.15% | 836 |
| | IND | 1,128 | 0.14% | 1,551 | 0.20% | 9,165 |
| | Japanese Coastal | 1,686 | 47.94% | 1,789 | 50.86% | 12,111 |
| | Kauai/Niihau | 13 | 7.16% | 16 | 8.55% | 100 |

**Table B-17. Maximum MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar for Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4 and Years 5 to 7 (Annual Totals) and Total Overall for 7-Year Period (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock[41]* | *Maximum Annual Level B Harassment, Years 1-4* | | *Maximum Annual Level B Harassment, Years 5-7* | | *Total Overall Level B Harassment for 7-year Period (Individuals)* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Individuals* | *Percent Stock* | *Individuals* | *Percent Stock* | |
| Common bottlenose dolphin (Continued) | Oahu | 38 | 5.17% | 46 | 6.17% | 290 |
| | WNP Northern Offshore | 581 | 0.57% | 799 | 0.78% | 4,721 |
| | WNP Southern Offshore | 2,726 | 6.63% | 3,063 | 7.45% | 20,093 |
| | WAU | 635 | 21.16% | 873 | 29.09% | 5,159 |
| Common dolphin | IND | 52 | 0.00% | 72 | 0.00% | 424 |
| | WNP | 203,871 | 12.24% | 275,079 | 16.08% | 1,640,721 |
| Cuvier's beaked whale | Hawaii | 22 | 3.03% | 26 | 3.62% | 166 |
| | IND | 231 | 0.85% | 317 | 1.17% | 1,875 |
| | SH | 77 | 0.11% | 106 | 0.15% | 626 |
| | WNP | 6,946 | 7.78% | 8,980 | 10.04% | 54,724 |
| Dall's porpoise | SOJ *dalli* type | 614 | 0.36% | 845 | 0.49% | 4,991 |
| | WNP *dalli* ecotype | 22,056 | 13.62% | 30,327 | 18.72% | 179,205 |
| | WNP *truei* ecotype | 487 | 0.28% | 670 | 0.39% | 3,958 |
| Deraniyagala's beaked whale | IND | 158 | 0.92% | 217 | 1.27% | 1,283 |
| | NP | 346 | 1.41% | 412 | 1.69% | 2,620 |
| Dwarf sperm whale | Hawaii | 655 | 3.72% | 782 | 4.44% | 4,966 |
| | IND | 3 | 0.05% | 4 | 0.07% | 24 |
| | WNP | 486 | 0.14% | 635 | 0.18% | 3,849 |
| False killer whale | Hawaii Pelagic | 58 | 3.72% | 69 | 4.44% | 439 |
| | IA | 252 | 2.59% | 341 | 3.51% | 2,031 |
| | IND | 12 | 0.01% | 16 | 0.00% | 96 |

**Table B-17. Maximum MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar for Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4 and Years 5 to 7 (Annual Totals) and Total Overall for 7-Year Period (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[41] | *Maximum Annual Level B Harassment, Years 1-4* | | *Maximum Annual Level B Harassment, Years 5-7* | | *Total Overall Level B Harassment for 7-year Period (Individuals)* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Individuals* | *Percent Stock* | *Individuals* | *Percent Stock* | |
| False killer whale (Continued) | Main Hawaiian Islands Insular stock and DPS | 1 | 0.41% | 1 | 0.49% | 7 |
| | Northwestern Hawaiian Islands | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 |
| | WNP | 1,350 | 8.15% | 1,596 | 9.63% | 10,188 |
| Fraser's dolphin | CNP | 546 | 3.24% | 686 | 4.06% | 4,242 |
| | Hawaii | 1,944 | 3.79% | 2,320 | 4.52% | 14,736 |
| | IND | 93 | 0.05% | 128 | 0.07% | 756 |
| | WNP | 2,287 | 1.16% | 2,559 | 1.29% | 16,825 |
| Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale | IND | 12 | 0.07% | 16 | 0.10% | 96 |
| | NP | 476 | 2.00% | 568 | 2.38% | 3,608 |
| Harbor porpoise | WNP | 366 | 1.17% | 503 | 1.61% | 2,973 |
| Hubbs' beaked whale | NP | 26 | 0.11% | 36 | 0.15% | 212 |
| Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin | IND | 11 | 0.14% | 16 | 0.20% | 92 |
| Killer whale | Hawaii | 6 | 4.41% | 8 | 5.26% | 48 |
| | IND | 397 | 3.15% | 546 | 4.33% | 3,226 |
| | WNP | 10,470 | 85.37% | 14,387 | 117.31% | 85,041 |
| *Kogia* spp. | WNP | 1,317 | 0.31% | 1,494 | 0.35% | 9,750 |
| Longman's beaked whale | Hawaii | 739 | 5.01% | 882 | 11.59% | 5,602 |
| | IND | 325 | 1.92% | 447 | 2.64% | 2,641 |
| | WNP | 471 | 6.14% | 574 | 7.50% | 3,606 |
| Melon-headed whale | Hawaiian Islands | 181 | 2.07% | 216 | 2.47% | 1,372 |

**Table B-17. Maximum MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar for Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4 and Years 5 to 7 (Annual Totals) and Total Overall for 7-Year Period (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[41] | *Maximum Annual Level B Harassment, Years 1-4* | | *Maximum Annual Level B Harassment, Years 5-7* | | *Total Overall Level B Harassment for 7-year Period (Individuals)* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Individuals* | *Percent Stock* | *Individuals* | *Percent Stock* | |
| Melon-headed whale (Continued) | IND | 402 | 0.64% | 552 | 0.88% | 3,264 |
| | Kohala Resident | 9 | 0.41% | 11 | 0.49% | 69 |
| | WNP | 1,605 | 2.87% | 1,823 | 3.27% | 11,889 |
| *Mesoplodon* spp. | WNP | 10 | 0.05% | 14 | 0.07% | 82 |
| Northern right whale dolphin | NP | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 |
| Pacific white-sided dolphin | NP | 9,530 | 1.05% | 12,890 | 1.41% | 76,790 |
| Pantropical spotted dolphin | 4-Islands | 32 | 14.40% | 38 | 17.18% | 242 |
| | Hawaii Island | 23 | 10.26% | 27 | 12.25% | 173 |
| | Hawaiian Pelagic | 297 | 0.55% | 355 | 0.66% | 2,253 |
| | IND | 311 | 0.05% | 428 | 0.07% | 2,528 |
| | Oahu | 23 | 10.54% | 28 | 12.58% | 176 |
| | WNP | 5,105 | 3.95% | 5,883 | 4.53% | 38,069 |
| Pygmy killer whale | Hawaii | 393 | 3.72% | 469 | 4.44% | 2,979 |
| | IND | 60 | 0.27% | 82 | 0.37% | 486 |
| | WNP | 901 | 2.87% | 1,035 | 3.30% | 6,709 |
| Pygmy sperm whale | Hawaii | 266 | 3.72% | 318 | 4.44% | 2,018 |
| | IND | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 |
| | WNP | 203 | 0.07% | 265 | 0.09% | 1,607 |
| Risso's dolphin | Hawaii | 414 | 3.58% | 494 | 4.28% | 3,138 |
| | IA | 1,045 | 0.70% | 1,374 | 0.92% | 8,302 |
| | WNP | 4,347 | 3.07% | 4,914 | 3.47% | 32,130 |
| | IND | 4,621 | 1.01% | 6,354 | 1.39% | 37,546 |
| Rough-toothed dolphin | Hawaii | 213 | 0.28% | 254 | 0.33% | 1,614 |

**Table B-17. Maximum MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar for Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4 and Years 5 to 7 (Annual Totals) and Total Overall for 7-Year Period (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock*[41] | *Maximum Annual Level B Harassment, Years 1-4* | | *Maximum Annual Level B Harassment, Years 5-7* | | *Total Overall Level B Harassment for 7-year Period (Individuals)* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Individuals* | *Percent Stock* | *Individuals* | *Percent Stock* | |
| Rough-toothed dolphin (Continued) | IND | 41 | 0.00% | 57 | 0.00% | 335 |
| | WNP | 1,439 | 28.74% | 1,732 | 34.56% | 10,952 |
| Short-finned pilot whale | Hawaii | 396 | 2.00% | 473 | 2.38% | 3,003 |
| | IND | 1,526 | 0.59% | 2,098 | 0.81% | 12,398 |
| | WNP Northern Ecotype | 525 | 2.52% | 721 | 3.47% | 4,263 |
| | WNP Southern Ecotype | 5,683 | 18.03% | 6,303 | 19.99% | 41,641 |
| Southern bottlenose whale | IND | 22 | 0.00% | 31 | 0.00% | 181 |
| Spade-toothed beaked whale | IND | 16 | 0.09% | 22 | 0.12% | 130 |
| Sperm whale | Hawaii | 106 | 2.34% | 126 | 2.80% | 802 |
| | NIND | 33 | 0.14% | 46 | 0.20% | 270 |
| | NP | 1,429 | 1.28% | 1,855 | 1.68% | 11,281 |
| | SIND | 16 | 0.07% | 22 | 0.10% | 130 |
| Spinner dolphin | Hawaii Island | 1 | 0.19% | 1 | 0.22% | 7 |
| | Hawaii Pelagic | 192 | 5.72% | 229 | 6.82% | 1,455 |
| | IND | 240 | 0.05% | 330 | 0.07% | 1,950 |
| | Kauai/Niihau | 83 | 13.85% | 99 | 16.53% | 629 |
| | Kure/Midway Atoll | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 |
| | Oahu/4-Islands | 20 | 2.88% | 24 | 6.66% | 152 |
| | Pearl and Hermes Reef | 0 | 0.00% | 0 | 0.00% | 0 |
| | WNP | 574 | 0.00% | 721 | 0.00% | 4,459 |
| Stejneger's beaked whale | WNP | 201 | 2.49% | 276 | 3.42% | 1,632 |

**Table B-17. Maximum MMPA Level B Harassment by SURTASS LFA Sonar for Alternative 2 Years 1 to 4 and Years 5 to 7 (Annual Totals) and Total Overall for 7-Year Period (Species and Stocks Listed Alphabetically).**

| *Marine Mammal Species* | *Stock[41]* | *Maximum Annual Level B Harassment, Years 1-4* | | *Maximum Annual Level B Harassment, Years 5-7* | | *Total Overall Level B Harassment for 7-year Period (Individuals)* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Individuals* | *Percent Stock* | *Individuals* | *Percent Stock* | |
| Striped dolphin | Hawaii | 269 | 0.41% | 321 | 0.49% | 2,039 |
| | IND | 5,059 | 0.75% | 6,957 | 1.03% | 41,107 |
| | Japanese Coastal | 3,366 | 17.18% | 3,571 | 18.23% | 24,177 |
| | WNP Northern Offshore | 267 | 0.07% | 367 | 0.10% | 2,169 |
| | WNP Southern Offshore | 3,282 | 6.28% | 3,729 | 7.13% | 24,315 |
| Hawaiian monk seal | Hawaii | 10 | 0.69% | 13 | 0.91% | 79 |
| Northern fur seal | Western Pacific | 8,475 | 1.71% | 11,653 | 2.35% | 68,859 |
| Ribbon seal | NP | 15,705 | 4.30% | 21,595 | 5.92% | 127,605 |
| Spotted seal | Alaska stock/Bering Sea DPS | 80,722 | 17.53% | 110,993 | 24.10% | 655,867 |
| | Southern stock and DPS | 0 | 0.00% | 1 | 0.04% | 3 |
| Steller sea lion | Western/Asian stock, Western DPS | 2 | 0.00% | 3 | 0.00% | 17 |

Andersen, J. M., Skern-Mauritzen, M., Boehme, L., Wiersma, Y. F., Rosing-Asvid, A., Hammill, M. O., & Stenson, G. B. (2013). Investigating annual diving behaviour by hooded seals (*Cystophora cristata*) within the Northwest Atlantic Ocean. [Research Support, Non-U.S. Gov't]. *PloS ONE, 8*(11), e80438. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0080438.

Andersen, J. M., Stenson, G. B., Skern-Maurizen, M., Wiersma, Y. F., Rosing-Asvid, A., Hammill, M. O., & Boehme, L. (2014). Drift diving by hooded seals (*Cystophora cristata*) in the Northwest Atlantic Ocean. *PLoS ONE, 9*(7), e103072. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0103072.g001.

Anderson, R. C., Clark, R., Madsen, P. T., Johnson, C., Kiszka, J., & Breysse, O. (2006). Observations of Longman's beaked whale (*Indopacetus pacificus*) in the Western Indian Ocean. *Aquatic Mammals, 32*(2), 223-231. doi: 10.1578/AM.32.2.2006.223.

Aoki, K., Amano, M., Yoshioka, M., Mori, K., Tokuda, D., & Miyazaki, N. (2007). Diel diving behavior of sperm whales off Japan. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 349*, 277-287. doi: 10.3354/meps07068.

Aoki, K., Sato, K., Isojunno, S., Narazaki, T., & Miller, P. J. O. (2017). High diving metabolic rate indicated by high-speed transit to depth in negatively buoyant long-finned pilot whales. *Journal of Experimental Biology, 220*(Pt 20), 3802-3811. doi: 10.1242/jeb.158287.

Baba, N., Boltnev, A. I., & Stus, A. I. (2000). Winter migration of female northern fur seals *Callorhinus ursinus* from the Commander Islands. *Bulletin of the National Research Institute of Far Seas Fisheries, 37*, 39-44.

Baird, R. W., Borsani, J. F., Hanson, M. B., & Tyack, P. L. (2002). Diving and night-time behavior of long-finned pilot whales in the Ligurian Sea. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 237*, 301-305. doi: 10.3354/meps237301.

Baird, R. W., Ligon, A. D., & Hooker, S. K. (2000). Sub-surface and night-time behavior of humpback whales off Maui, Hawaii: a preliminary report.

Baird, R. W., Schorr, G. S., Webster, D. L., Mahaffy, S. D., McSweeney, D. J., Hanson, M. B., & Andrews, R. D. (2011). Open-ocean movements of a satellite-tagged Blainville's beaked whale (*Mesoplodon densirostris*): Evidence for an offshore population in Hawai'i? *Aquatic Mammals, 37*(4), 506-511. doi: 10.1578/am.37.4.2011.506.

Baird, R. W., Webster, D. L., McSweeney, D. J., Ligon, A. D., Schorr, G. S., & Barlow, J. (2006). Diving behaviour of Cuvier's (*Ziphius cavirostris*) and Blainville's (*Mesoplodon densirostris*) beaked whales in Hawai'i. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 84*, 1120-1128. doi: 10.1139/Z06-095.

Baird, R. W., Webster, D. L., Schorr, G. S., McSweeney, D. J., & Barlow, J. (2008). Diel variation in beaked whale diving behavior. *Marine Mammal Science, 24*(3), 630-642. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.2008.00211.x.

Baker, C. S., & Herman, L. M. (1989). *The behavioral responses of summering humpback whales to vessel traffic: Experimental and opportunistic observations*. Final Report to the National Park Service, Alaska Regional Office. Anchorage, AK: Tech Rep NPS-NR-TRS-89-01. (pp. 84).

Battaile, B. C., Nordstrom, C. A., Liebsch, N., & Trites, A. W. (2015). Foraging a new trail with northern fur seals (*Callorhinus ursinus*): Lactating seals from islands with contrasting population dynamics have different foraging strategies, and forage at scales previously unrecognized by GPS interpolated dive data. *Marine Mammal Science, 31*(4), 1494-1520. doi: 10.1111/mms.12240.

Bauer, G. B., Mobley, J. R., Frankel, A. S., Helweg, D. A., & Herman, L. M. (1995). *Behavior characteristics of humpback whales in Hawaii.* Paper presented at the Eleventh Biennial conference on the Biology of Marine Mammals, Orlando, FL.

Beranek, L. L. (1954). *Acoustics*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.

Blix, A. S., & Folkow, L. P. (1995). Daily energy expenditure in free living minke whales. *Acta Physiologica Scandinavica, 153*(1), 61-66. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-1716.1995.tb09834.x.

Bowles, A. E., Smultea, M., Würsig, B., DeMaster, D. P., & Palka, D. (1994). Relative abundance and behavior of marine mammals exposed to transmissions from the Heard Island Feasibility Test. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 96*(4), 2469-2484. doi: 10.1121/1.410120.

Brown, S. G. (1977). Some results of sei whale marking in the southern hemisphere. *Report of the International Whaling Commission, Si1*, 39-43.

Buck, J. R. & and Tyack, P. L. (2000). Response of gray whales to low-frequency sounds. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 107*(5), 2774. doi: 10.1121/1.428908.

Burrows, J. A., Johnston, D. W., Straley, J. M., Chenoweth, E. M., Ware, C., Curtice, C., . . . Friedlaender, A. S. (2016). Prey density and depth affect the fine-scale foraging behavior of humpback whales *Megaptera novaeangliae* in Sitka Sound, Alaska, USA. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 561*, 245-260. doi: 10.3354/meps11906.

Calambokidis, J., Schorr, G. S., Steiger, G. H., Francis, J., Bakhtiari, M., Marshall, G., . . . Robertson, K. (2008). Insights into the underwater diving, feeding, and calling behavior of blue whales from a suction-cup- attached video-imaging Tag (CRITTERCAM) *Marine Technology Society Journal, 41*(1), 19-29. doi: 10.4031/002533207787441980.

Cañadas, A., Sagarminaga, R., & Garcia, T. S. (2002). Cetacean distribution related with depth and slope in the Mediterranean waters off southern Spain. *Deep Sea Research Part I Oceanographic Research Papers, 49*(11), 2053-2073. doi: 10.1016/S0967-0637(02)00123-1.

Carnes, M. R. (2009). Description and Evaluation of GDEM-V 3.0 (pp. 24): Naval Research Laboratory.

Cerchio, S., Trudelle, L., Zerbini, A. N., Charrassin, J. B., Geyer, Y., Mayer, F. X., . . . Rosenbaum, H. C. (2016). Satellite telemetry of humpback whales off Madagascar reveals insights on breeding behavior and long-range movements within the southwest Indian Ocean. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 562*, 193-209. doi: 10.3354/meps11951.

Chaudry, F. A. (2006). *A comparison of east Australian humpback whale migratory behaviour between the northern and southern migrations.* Paper presented at the ECS 2006, Gydnia, Poland.

Chittleborough, R. G. (1953). Aerial observations of the humpback whale (*Megaptera nodosa*). *Australian Journal of Marine and Freshwater Research, 4*, 219-226. doi: 10.1071/MF9550315.

Christiansen, F., Lynas, N. M., Lusseau, D., & Tscherter, U. (2015). Structure and dynamics of minke whale surfacing patterns in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, Canada. *PLoS ONE, 10*(5), e0126396. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0126396.

Clapham, P. J. (1993). Social organization of humpback whales on a North Atlantic feeding ground. *Symposium of the Zoological Society of London, 66*, 131-145.

Clark, C. W., & Fristrup, K. M. (2001). Baleen whale responses to low-frequency human-made underwater sounds. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 110*(5), 2751. doi: 10.1121/1.4777574.

Coakes, A. K., & Whitehead, H. (2004). Social structure and mating system of sperm whales off northern Chile. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 82*(8), 1360-1369. doi: 10.1139/z04-115

Crocker, M. J. (1997). Rating measures, descriptors, criteria, and procedures for determining human response to noise. In M. J. Crocker (Ed.), *Encyclopedia of Acoustics* (pp. 943-965): John Wiley and Sons, Inc.

Croll, D. A., Acevedo-Gutierrez, A., Tershy, B. R., & Urban-Ramirez, J. (2001). The diving behavior of blue and fin whales: is dive duration shorter than expected based on oxygen stores? *Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology - Part A: Molecular and Integrative Physiology, 129*(4), 797-809.

Croll, D. A., Clark, C. W., Calambokidis, J., Ellison, W. T., & Tershy, B. R. (2001). Effect of anthropogenic low-frequency noise on the foraging ecology of *Balaenoptera* whales. *Animal Conservation, 4*(1), 13-27. doi: 10.1016/S1095-6433(01)00348-8.

Cummings, W. C. (1985). Bryde's whale *Balaenoptera edeni* Anderson, 1878. In S. H. Ridgway and R. Harrison (Eds.), *Handbook of marine mammals, Vol. 3: The sirenians and baleen whales* (pp. 137-154). London: Academic Press.

Dalebout, M., Baker, C., Mead, J., Cockcroft, V., & Yamada, T. (2004). A comprehensive and validated molecular taxonomy of beaked whales, family Ziphiidae. *Journal of Heredity, 95*(6), 459-476. doi: 10.1093/jhered/esh054.

Dalla Rosa, L., Secchi, E. R., Maia, Y. G., Zerbini, A. N., & Heide-Jørgensen, M. P. (2008). Movements of satellite-monitored humpback whales on their feeding ground along the Antarctic Peninsula. *Polar Biology, 31*(7), 771-781. doi: 10.1007/s00300-008-0415-2.

Davis, R. W., Fargion, G. S., May, N., Leming, T. D., Baumgartner, M., Evans, W. E., . . . Mullin, K. (1998). Physical habitat of cetaceans along the continental slope in the north-central and western Gulf of Mexico. *Marine Mammal Science, 14*(3), 490-507. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.1998.tb00738.x.

Davis, R. W., Jaquet, N., Gendron, D., Markaida, U., Bazzino, G., & Gilly, W. (2007). Diving behavior of sperm whales in relation to behavior of a major prey species, the jumbo squid, in the Gulf of California, Mexico. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 333*, 291-302. doi: 10.3354/meps333291.

de Vos, A. (2016). 27 years: the longest longevity and residency record for northern Indian Ocean blue whales. *Taprobanica, 8*(1), 21–23.

de Vos, A., Christiansen, F., Harcourt, R. G., & Pattiaratchi, C. B. (2013). Surfacing characteristics and diving behaviour of blue whales in Sri Lankan waters. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology, 449*, 149-153. doi: 10.1016/j.jembe.2013.09.010.

DeAngelis, A. I., Valtierra, R., Van Parijs, S. M., & Cholewiak, D. (2017). Using multipath reflections to obtain dive depths of beaked whales from a towed hydrophone array. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 142*(2), 1078. doi: 10.1121/1.4998709.

DeLong, R. L., Kooyman, G. L., Gilmartin, W. G., & Loughlin, T. R. (1984). Hawaiian monk seal diving behavior. *Acta Zool. Fennica, 172*, 129-131.

Department of the Navy (DoN). (2001). Final Overseas Environmental Impact Statement and Environmental Impact Statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) Sonar. Washington, DC: Chief of Naval Operations.

DoN. (2007). *Final Supplemental Overseas Environmental Impact Statement and Environmental Impact Statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) Sonar*. Washington, D.C.

DoN. (2012). *Final Supplemental Environmental Impact Statement / Supplemental Overseas Environmental Impact Statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) Sonar*. Washington, D.C.

DoN. (2015). *Final supplemental environmental impact statement/supplemental overseas environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar*. Washington, D.C.: Chief of Naval Operations.

DoN. (2017). *Final supplemental environmental impact statement/supplemental overseas environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar*. Washington, D.C.

DeRuiter, S. L., Langrock, R., Skirbutas, T., Goldbogen, J. A., Calambokidis, J., Friedlaender, A. S., & Southall, B. L. (2016). A multivariate mixed hidden Markov model to analyze blue whale diving behaviour during controlled sound exposures. *arXiv, arXiv:1602.06570*.

Dolphin, W. F. (1987). Dive behavior and estimated energy expenditure of foraging humpback whales in southeast Alaska. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 65*(2), 354-362. doi: 10.1139/z87-055.

Dolphin, W. F. (1987). Ventilation and dive patterns of humpback whales, *Megaptera novaeangliae*, on their Alaskan feeding grounds. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 65*(1), 83-90. doi: 10.1139/z87-013.

Dolphin, W. F. (1988). Foraging dive patterns of humpback whales *Megaptera novaeangliae* in Southeast Alaska USA: A cost-benefit analysis. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 66*(11), 2432-2441. doi: 10.1139/z88-360.

Falcone, E. A., Schorr, G. S., Watwood, S. L., DeRuiter, S. L., Zerbini, A. N., Andrews, R. D., . . . Moretti, D. J. (2017). Diving behaviour of Cuvier's beaked whales exposed to two types of military sonar. *Royal Society Open Science, 4*(8), 170629. doi: 10.1098/rsos.170629.

Feller, W. (1968). *An Introduction to Probability Theory and its Application*. New York: Wiley.

Finley, K. J., Miller, G. W., Davis, R. A., & Greene, C. R. (1990). Reactions of beluga (*Delphinapterus leucas*) and narwhals (*Monodon monoceros*) to ice-breaking ships in the Canadian High Artic. *Canadian Bulletin of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences, 224*, 97-117.

Fish, F. E., & Rohr, J. J. (1999). *Review of dolphin hydrodynamics and swimming performance* (pp. 196): SPAWAR: Technical Report 1801.

Folkow, L. P., & Blix, A. S. (1999). Diving behaviour of hooded seals (*Cystophora cristata*) in the Greenland and Norwegian Seas. *Polar Biology, 22*(1), 61-74. doi: 10.1007/s003000050391.

Fristrup, K. M., Hatch, L. T., & Clark, C. W. (2003). Variation in humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) song length in relation to low-frequency sound broadcasts. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 113*(6), 3411-3424. doi: DOI: 10.1121/1.1573637.

Gabriele, C. M., Straley, J. M., Herman, L. M., & Coleman, R. J. (1996). Fastest documented migration of a North Pacific humpback whale. *Marine Mammal Science, 12*(3), 457-464. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.1996.tb00599.x

Gentry, R. L. (2002). Northern fur seal *Callorhinus ursinus*. In W. F. Perrin, B. Wursig & J. G. M. Thewissen (Eds.), *Encyclopedia of Marine Mammals* (pp. 813-817). San Francisco, CA: Academic Press.

Gentry, R. L., Kooyman, G. L., & Goebel, M. E. (1986). Feeding and Diving Behavior of Northern fur seals. In R. L. Gentry and G. L. Kooyman (Eds.), *Fur seals: maternal strategies on land and at sea* (pp. 61-78). Princeton: Princeton University Press.

Gill, P. C. (2002). A blue whale (*Balaenoptera musculus*) feeding ground in a southern Australian coastal upwelling zone. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 4*(2), 179-184.

Goebel, M. E., Bengston, J. L., DeLong, R. L., Gentry, R. L., & Loughlin, T. R. (1991). Diving patterns and foraging locations of female northern fur seals. *Fishery Bulletin, 89*, 171-179.

Goldbogen, J., Calambokidis, J., Shadwick, R. E., Oleson, E. M., McDonald, M. A., & Hildebrand, J. A. (2006). Kinematics of foraging dives and lunge-feeding in fin whales. *The Journal of Experimental Biology, 209*(7), 1231-1244. doi: 10.1242/jeb.02135.

Goldbogen, J. A., Calambokidis, J., Croll, D. A., Harvey, J. T., Newton, K. M., Oleson, E. M., . . . Shadwick, R. E. (2008). Foraging behavior of humpback whales: kinematic and respiratory patterns suggest a high cost for a lunge. *The Journal of Experimental Biology, 211*(23), 3712-3719. doi: 10.1242/jeb.023366.

Guerra, M., Hickmott, L., van der Hoop, J., Rayment, W., Leunissen, E., Slooten, E., & Moore, M. (2017). Diverse foraging strategies by a marine top predator: Sperm whales exploit pelagic and demersal habitats in the Kaikōura submarine canyon. *Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers, 128*, 98-108. doi: 10.1016/j.dsr.2017.08.012.

Guzman, H. M., & Félix, F. (2017). Movements and habitat use by Southeast Pacific humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) satellite tracked at two breeding sites. *Aquatic Mammals, 43*(2), 139-155. doi: 10.1578/am.43.2.2017.139.

Harris, C. M. (1998). *Acoustical Measurements and Noise Control*. Melville, NY: Acoustical Society of America.

Heide-Jørgensen, M. P., Bloch, D., Stefansson, E., Mikkelsen, B., Ofstad, L. H., & Dietz, R. (2002). Diving behaviour of long-finned pilot whales *Globicephala melas* around the Faroe Islands. *Wildlife Biology, 8*(4), 307-313. doi: 10.2981/wlb.2002.020.

Helble, T. A., Henderson, E. E., Ierley, G. R., & Martin, S. W. (2016). Swim track kinematics and calling behavior attributed to Bryde's whales on the Navy's Pacific Missile Range Facility. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 140*(6), 4170-4177. doi: 10.1121/1.4967754.

Henderson, E. E., Martin, S. W., Manzano-Roth, R., & Matsuyama, B. M. (2016). Occurrence and habitat use of foraging Blainville's beaked whales (*Mesoplodon densirostris*) on a U.S. Navy Range in Hawaii. *Aquatic Mammals, 42*(4), 549-562. doi: 10.1578/am.42.4.2016.549.

Hobson, R. P., & Martin, A. R. (1996). Behaviour and dive times of Arnoux's beaked whales, *Berardius arnuxii*, at narrow leads in fast ice. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 74*(2), 388-393. doi: 10.1139/z96-045.

Hooker, S. K., & Baird, R. W. (1999a). Deep-diving behaviour of the northern bottlenose whale, *Hyperoodon ampullatus* (Cetacea: Ziphiidae). *Proceedings of the Royal Society of Biological Sciences: Series B., 266*(1420), 671-676. doi: 10.1098/rspb.1999.0688.

Hooker, S. K., & Baird, R. W. (1999b). Observations of Sowerby's beaked whales, *Mesoplodon bidens*, in the Gully, Nova Scotia. *Canadian Field-Naturalist, 113*(2), 273-277.

Irvine, L., Palacios, D. M., Urbán, J., & Mate, B. (2017). Sperm whale dive behavior characteristics derived from intermediate-duration archival tag data. *Ecology and Evolution, 7*(19), 7822-7837. doi: 10.1002/ece3.3322.

Ishii, M., Murase, H., Fukuda, Y., Sawada, K., Sasakura, T., Tamura, T., . . . Mitani, Y. (2017). Diving behavior of sei whales *Balaenoptera borealis* relative to the vertical distribution of their potential prey. *Mammal Study, 42*(4), 191–199. doi:10.3106/041.042.0403.

Jaquet, N., Dawson, S., & Slooten, E. (2000). Seasonal distribution and diving behaviour of male sperm whales off Kaikoura: Foraging implications. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 78*(3), 407-419. doi: 10.1139/cjz-78-3-407.

Jaquet, N., & Gendron, D. (2002). Distribution and relative abundance of sperm whales in relation to key environmental features, squid landings and the distribution of other cetacean species in the Gulf of California, Mexico. *Marine Biology, 141*(3), 591-601. doi: 10.1007/s00227-002-0839-0.

Jaquet, N., & Whitehead, H. (1999). Movements, distribution and feeding success of sperm whales in the Pacific Ocean, over scales of days and tens of kilometers. *Aquatic Mammals, 25*(1), 1-13.

Jochens, A., Biggs, D., Benoit-Bird, K., Engelhaupt, D., Gordon, J., Hu, C., . . . Würsig, B. (2008). *Sperm whale seismic study in the Gulf of Mexico, Synthesis Report* (pp. 341): U.S. Dept. of the Interior, Minerals Management Service, Gulf of Mexico OCS Region, New Orleans, LA. OCS Study MMS 2008-006.

Johnson, M., Madsen, P. T., Zimmer, W. M. X., Aguilar de Soto, N., & Tyack, P. L. (2004). Beaked whales echolocate on prey. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London Series B-Biological Sciences, 271*, S383-S386. doi: 10.1098/rsbl.2004.0208.

Joyce, G., Øien, N., Calambokidis, J., & Cubbage, J. C. (1989). Surfacing rates of minke whales in Norwegian waters. *Report of the International Whaling Commission, 39*, 431-434.

Joyce, T. W., Durban, J. W., Claridge, D. E., Dunn, C. A., Fearnbach, H., Parsons, K. M., . . . Ballance, L. T. (2017). Physiological, morphological, and ecological tradeoffs influence vertical habitat use of deep-diving toothed-whales in the Bahamas. *PLoS ONE, 12*(10), e0185113. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0185113.

Kastelein, R. A., & Gerrits, N. M. (1991). Swimming, diving, and respiration patterns of a Northern bottlenose whale (*Hyperoodon ampullatus*, Forster, 1770). *Aquatic Mammals, 17*(1), 20-30.

Kennedy, A. S., Zerbini, A. N., Rone, B. K., & Clapham, P. J. (2014). Individual variation in movements of satellite-tracked humpback whales *Megaptera novaeangliae* in the eastern Aleutian Islands and Bering Sea. *Endangered Species Research, 23*(2), 187-195. doi: 10.3354/esr00570.

Kennedy, A. S., Zerbini, A. N., Vásquez, O. V., Gandilhon, N., Clapham, P. J., & Adam, O. (2014). Local and migratory movements of humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) satellite-tracked in the North Atlantic Ocean. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 92*(1), 9-18. doi: 10.1139/cjz-2013-0161.

Kenney, R. D., & Winn, H. E. (1986). Cetacean high-use habitats of the northeast United States continental shelf. *Fisheries Bulletin, 84*(2), 345- 357.

Ketten, D. R. (1997). Structure and function in whale ears. *Bioacoustics, 8*(1-2), 103-135. doi: 10.1080/09524622.1997.9753356.

Kiraç, C. O., Savas, Y., Güçlüsoy, H., & Veryeri, N. O. (2002). Observations on diving behaviour of free ranging Mediterranean monk seals *Monachus monachus* on Turkish coasts. *Monachus Guardian 5*(1), 1-8.

Kopelman, A. H., & Sadove, S. S. (1995). Ventilatory rate differences between surface-feeding and non-surface-feeding fin whales (*Balaenoptera physalus*) in the waters off eastern Long Island, New York, U.S.A., 1981-1987. *Marine Mammal Science, 11*(2), 200-208. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.1995.tb00518.x.

Kovacs, K. M., Lydersen, C., Hammill, M. O., & Lavigne, D. M. (1996). Reproductive effort of male hooded seals (*Cystophora cristata*): estimates from mass loss. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 74*, 1521-1530. doi: 10.1139/z95-099.

Kryter, K. D. (1985). *The effects of noise on man* (2nd ed.). Orlando, FL: Academic Press.

Kvadsheim, P. H., DeRuiter, S., Sivle, L. D., Goldbogen, J., Roland-Hansen, R., Miller, P. J. O., . . . Southall, B. (2017). Avoidance responses of minke whales to 1-4kHz naval sonar. *Marine Pollution Bulletin, 121*(1-2), 60-68. doi: 10.1016/j.marpolbul.2017.05.037.

Lagerquist, B. A., Stafford, K. M., & Mate, B. R. (2000). Dive characteristics of satellite-monitored blue whales (*Balaenoptera musculus*) off the central California coast. *Marine Mammal Science, 16*(2), 375-391. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.2000.tb00931.x.

Le Boeuf, B. J. (1994). Variation in the Diving Pattern of Northern Elephant Seals with Age, Mass, Sex, and Reproductive Condition. In B. J. Le Boeuf and R. M. Laws (Eds.), *Elephant Seals: Population Ecology, Behavior, and Physiology* (pp. 237-252). Berkeley, CA: University of California Press.

Lee, J. F., Friedlaender, A. S., Oliver, M. J., & DeLiberty, T. L. (2017). Behavior of satellite-tracked Antarctic minke whales (*Balaenoptera bonaerensis*) in relation to environmental factors around the western Antarctic Peninsula. *Animal Biotelemetry, 5*(1). doi: 10.1186/s40317-017-0138-7.

Leibiger, G. A. (1978). The acoustic propagation model RAYMODE: Theory and numerical treatment. New London, Connecticut: U.S. Naval Underwater Systems Center (NUSC).

Lesage, V., Hammill, M. O., & Kovacs, K. M. (1999). Functional classification of harbor seal (*Phoca vitulina*) dives using depth profiles, swimming velocity, and an index of foraging success. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 77*(1), 74-87. doi: 10.1139/z98-199.

Ligon, A. D., & Baird, R. W. (2001). *Diving behaviour of false killer whales off Maui and Lana'i, Hawai'i.* Paper presented at the 14th Biennial Conference on the Biology of Marine Mammals, Vancouver.

Lockyer, C. (1997). Diving behaviour of the sperm whale in relation to feeding. *Bulletin de l'Institut Royal des Sciences Naturelles de Belgique Biologie, 67*(SUPPL), 47-52.

Loughlin, T. R. (1982). Observations of *Mesoplodon stejnegeri* in the central Aleutian Islands, Alaska. *Journal of Mammalogy, 63*(3), 697-700. doi: 10.2307/1380289.

MacLeod, C. D., & Zuur, A. F. (2005). Habitat utilization by Blainville's beaked whales off Great Abaco, northern Bahamas, in relation to seabed topography. *Marine Biology, 147*(1), 1-11. doi: 10.1007/s00227-004-1546-9.

Malme, C. I., Miles, P. R., Clark, C. W., Tyack, P. L., & Bird, J. E. (1983). Investigations of the potential effects of underwater noise from petroleum industry activities on migrating gray whale behavior (pp. var.): Bolt, Beranek and Newman.

Malme, C. I., Miles, P. R., Clark, C. W., Tyack, P. L., & Bird, J. E. (1984). Investigations of the potential effects of underwater noise from petroleum industry activities on migrating gray whale behavior, Phase II. (pp. var.): Bolt, Beranek and Newman.

Martin Lopez, L. M., Miller, P. J., Aguilar de Soto, N., & Johnson, M. (2015). Gait switches in deep-diving beaked whales: biomechanical strategies for long-duration dives. *The Journal of Experimental Biology, 218(Pt 9)*, 1325-1338. doi:10.1242/jeb.106013.

Mate, B. R., & Stafford, K. M. (1994). A change in sperm whale (*Physeter macrocephalus*) distribution correlated to seismic surveys in the Gulf of Mexico. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 96*(5 (pt.2)), 3268. doi: 10.1121/1.410971.

Mate, B. R., Gisiner, R., & Mobley, J. (1998). Local and migratory movements of Hawaiian humpback whales tracked by satellite telemetry. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 76*, 863-868. doi: 10.1139/cjz-76-5-863.

Mate, B. R., Lagerquist, B. A., Winsor, M., Geraci, J., & Prescott, J. H. (2005). Movements and dive habits of a satellite-monitored longfinned pilot whale (*Globicephala melas*) in the northwest Atlantic. *Marine Mammal Science, 21*(1), 136-144. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.2005.tb01213.x.

May-Collado, L., Gerrodette, T., Calambokidis, J., Rasmussen, K., & Sereg, I. (2005). Patterns of cetacean sighting distribution in the Pacific Exclusive Economic Zone of Costa Rica based on data collected from 1979-2001. *Revista De Biologia Tropical, 53*(1-2), 249-263.

Miller, P. J. O., Biassoni, N., Samuels, A., & Tyack, P. L. (2000). Whale songs lengthen in response to sonar. *Nature, 405*(6789), 903. doi: 10.1038/35016148.

Miller, P. J. O., Johnson, M. P., Tyack, P. L., & Terray, E. A. (2004). Swimming gaits, passive drag and buoyancy of diving sperm whales *Physeter macrocephalus*. *The Journal of Experimental Biology, 207*(11), 1953-1967. doi: 10.1242/jeb.00993.

Miller, P. J. O., Kvadsheim, P. H., Lam, F. P., Wensveen, P. J., Antunes, R., Alves, A. C., . . . Sivle, L. D. (2012). The severity of behavioral changes observed during experimental exposures of killer (*Orcinus orca*), long-finned pilot (*Globicephala melas*), and sperm (*Physeter macrocephalus*) whales to naval sonar. *Aquatic Mammals, 38*(4), 362-401. doi: 10.1578/am.38.4.2012.362.

Minamikawa, S., Watanabe, H., & Iwasaki, T. (2013). Diving behavior of a false killer whale, *Pseudorca crassidens*, in the Kuroshio-Oyashio transition region and the Kuroshio front region of the western North Pacific. *Marine Mammal Science, 29*(1), 177-185. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.2011.00532.x.

Mobley, J. R., Jr., & Herman, L. M. (1985). Transience of social affiliations among humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) on the Hawaiian wintering grounds. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 63*, 762-772. doi: 10.1139/z85-111.

Mooney, T. A., Yamato, M., & Branstetter, B. K. (2012). Hearing in cetaceans: from natural history to experimental biology. *Advances in Marine Biology, 63,* 197-246. doi: 10.1016/B978-0-12-394282-1.00004-1.

Morris, C., & Tscherter, U. (2006). *Site fidelity of individual minke whales (Balaenoptera acutorostrata) in the St. Lawrence estuary.* Paper presented at the European Cetacean Society Conference 2006, Gydnia, Poland.

Mullin, K. D., & Fulling, G. L. (2004). Abundance of cetaceans in the oceanic northern Gulf of Mexico, 1996-2001. *Marine Mammal Science, 20*(4), 787-807. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.2004.tb01193.x.

Mullin, K. D., Hoggard, W., & Hansen, L. J. (2004). Abundance and seasonal occurrence of cetaceans in outer continental shelf and slope waters of the North-central and Northwestern Gulf of Mexico. *Gulf of Mexico Science, 1*, 62-73. doi: 10.18785/goms.2201.06.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). (2018). *2018 Revision to: Technical guidance for assessing the effect of anthropogenic sound on marine mammal hearing (Version 2.0): Underwater threshold for onset of permanent and temporary threshold shifts*. Silver Spring, MD. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-OPR-59.

National Research Council (NRC). (1994). *Low-frequency sound and Marine Mammals*. Washington, D.C.: National Academies Press.

Nawojchik, R., St Aubin, D. J., & Johnson, A. (2003). Movements and dive behavior of two stranded, rehabilitated long-finned pilot whales (*Globicephala melas*) in the northwest Atlantic. *Marine Mammal Science, 19*(1), 232-239. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.2003.tb01105.x.

Neves, H. C. (1998). Preliminary findings on the feeding behaviour and general ecology strategy of the Mediterranean monk seal *Monachus monachus* - (Pinnipedia: Monachinae) on the Desertas Islands. *Boletim do Museu Municipal do Funchal, 5*(SUPPL. 5 PART A), 263-271.

Newhall, A. E., Lin, Y. T., Lynch, J. F., Baumgartner, M. F., & Gawarkiewicz, G. G. (2012). Long distance passive localization of vocalizing sei whales using an acoustic normal mode approach. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 131*(2), 1814-1825. doi: 10.1121/1.3666015.

Nichol, L. M., Wright, B. M., O'Hara, P., & Ford, J. K. B. (2017). Risk of lethal vessel strikes to humpback and fin whales off the west coast of Vancouver Island, Canada. *Endangered Species Research, 32*, 373-390. doi: 10.3354/esr00813.

NOAA National Geophysical Data Center (NOAA-NGDC). (2006). 2-minute Gridded Global Relief Data (ETOPO2v2). Retrieved from <http://www.ngdc.noaa.gov/mgg/fliers/06mgg01.html>.

Norris, K. S., & Prescott, J. H. (1961). Observations on Pacific cetaceans of Californian and Mexican waters. *University of California Publications in Zoology, 63*, 291-402.

Øien, N., Folkow, L., & Lydersen, C. (1990). Dive time experiments on minke whales in Norwegian waters during the 1988 season. *Reports of the International Whaling Commission, 40*, 337-341.

Olsen, E., Budgell, W. P., Head, E., Kleivane, L., Nottestad, L., Prieto, R., . . . Oien, N. (2009). First satellite-tracked long-distance movement of a sei whale (*Balaenoptera borealis*) in the North Atlantic. *Aquatic Mammals, 35*(3), 313-318. doi: 10.1578/AM.35.3.2009.313.

Olsen, E., & Holst, J. C. (2001). A note on common minke whale (*Balaenoptera acutorostrata*) diets in the Norwegian Sea and the North Sea. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 3*(2), 179-183.

Owen, K., Jenner, C. S., Jenner, M.-N. M., & Andrews, R. D. (2016). A week in the life of a pygmy blue whale: migratory dive depth overlaps with large vessel drafts. *Animal Biotelemetry, 4*(1). doi: 10.1186/s40317-016-0109-4.

Palka, D., & Johnson, M. (2007). Cooperative research to study dive patterns of sperm whales in the Atlantic Ocean: U.S. Dept. of the Interior, Minerals Management Service, Gulf of Mexico OCS Region. OCS Study MMS 2007-033.

Panigada, S., Donovan, G. P., Druon, J. N., Lauriano, G., Pierantonio, N., Pirotta, E., . . . di Sciara, G. N. (2017). Satellite tagging of Mediterranean fin whales: working towards the identification of critical habitats and the focusing of mitigation measures. *Sci Rep, 7*(1), 3365. doi: 10.1038/s41598-017-03560-9.

Panigada, S., Nortarbartolo di Sciara, G., Panigada, M., Airoldi, S., Borsani, J., & Jahoda, M. (2005). Fin whales (*Balaenoptera physalus*) summering in the Ligurian Sea: distribution, encounter rate, mean group size and relation to physiographic variables. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 7*(2), 137-145.

Panigada, S., Zanardelli, M., Canese, S., & Jahoda, M. (1999). How deep can baleen whales dive? *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 187*, 309-311. doi: 10.3354/meps187309.

Papastavrou, V., Smith, S. C., & Whitehead, H. (1989). Diving behavior of the sperm whale *Physeter macrocephalus* off the Galapagos Islands, Ecuador. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 67*(4), 839-846. doi: 10.1139/z89-124.

Parrish, F. A., Abernathy, K., Marshall, G. J., & Buhleier, B. M. (2002). Hawaiian monk seals (*Monachus schauinslandi*) foraging in deep-water coral beds. *Marine Mammal Science, 18*(1), 244-258. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.2002.tb01031.x.

Parrish, F. A., Craig, M. P., Ragen, T. J., Marshall, G. J., & Buhleier, B. M. (2000). Identifying diurnal foraging habitat of endangered Hawaiian monk seals using a seal-mounted video camera. *Marine Mammal Science, 16*(2), 392-412. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.2000.tb00932.x.

Ponganis, P. J., Gentry, R. L., Ponganis, E. P., & Ponganis, K. V. (1992). Analysis of swim velocities during deep and shallow dives of two northern fur seals *Callorhinus ursinus*. *Marine Mammal Science, 8*(1), 69-75. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.1992.tb00126.x.

Prieto, R., Silva, M. A., Waring, G. T., & Gonçalves, J. M. A. (2014). Sei whale movements and behaviour in the North Atlantic inferred from satellite telemetry. *Endangered Species Research, 26*(2), 103-113. doi: 10.3354/esr0063.

Ramirez, N., Schulte, D., & Kennedy, J. (2006). *Finback whale (Balaenoptera physalus) behavior on Jeffreys Ledge in the Gulf of Maine.* Paper presented at the ECS 2006, Gydnia, Poland.

Ream, R. R., Sterling, J. T., & Loughlin, T. R. (2005). Oceanographic features related to northern fur seal migratory movements. *Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography, 52*(5-6), 823-843. doi: 10.1016/j.dsr2.2004.12.021.

Reeves, R. R., & Mitchell, E. (1993). Status of Baird's beaked whale, *Berardius bairdii*. *Canadian Field-Naturalist, 107*(4), 509-523.

Reeves, R. R., Stewart, B. S., Clapham, P. J., & Powell, J. A. (2002). *Guide to marine mammals of the World*. New York: Knopf.

Reilly, S. B., & Thayer, V. G. (1990). Blue whale *Balaenoptera musculus* distribution in the Eastern Tropical Pacific. *Marine Mammal Science, 6*(4), 265-277. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.1990.tb00357.x.

Renner, W. W., & Spofford, C. W. (1985). Consolidated BLUG Classes: SAIC-85/1591.

Richardson, W. J. (1997). Northstar Marine Mammal Monitoring Program, 1996: Marine mammals and acoustical monitoring of a seismic program in the Alaskan Beaufort Sea. Anchorage, AK.: Final Report, LGL Report TA2121-2. Prepared for BP Exploration (Alaska) Inc. and Greeneridge Sciences, Inc.

Richardson, W. J. (1998). Marine mammals and acoustical monitoring of BPXA's seismic program in the Alaskan Beaufort Sea, 1997. Anchorage, AK: Final Report, LGL Report TA2150-3. Prepared for BP Exploration (Alaska), Inc. and National Marine Fisheries Service by LGL, Ltd. and Greeneridge Sciences, Inc.

Richardson, W. J., Finley, K. J., Miller, G. W., Davis, R. A., & Koski, W. R. (1995a). Feeding, social, and migration behavior of bowhead whales, *Balaena mysticetus*, in Baffin Bay vs. Beaufort Sea--regions with different amounts of human activity. *Marine Mammal Science, 11*(1), 1-45. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.1995.tb00272.x.

Richardson, W. J., Greene, C. R., Malme, C. I., & Thomson, D. H. (1995b). *Marine mammals and noise* (1st Ed.). San Diego: Academic Press.

Ritter, F., & Brederlau, B. (1999). Behavioural observations of dense beaked whales (*Mesoplodon densirostris*) off La Gomera, Canary Islands (1995-1997). *Aquatic Mammals, 25*(2), 55-61.

Rohr, J. J., Fish, F. E., & Gilpatrick, J. W. (2002). Maximum swim speeds of captive and free-ranging delphinids: Critical analysis of extraordinary performance. *Marine Mammal Science, 18*(1), 1-19. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.2002.tb01014.x.

Schilling, M. R., Seipt, I., Weinrich, M. T., Kuhlberg, A. E., & Clapham, P. J. (1992). Behavior of individually-identified sei whales *Balaenoptera borealis* during an episodic influx into the southern Gulf of Maine in 1986. *Fishery Bulletin, 90*(4), 749-755.

Schorr, G. S., Baird, R. W., Hanson, M. B., Webster, D. L., McSweeney, D. J., & Andrews, R. D. (2009). Movements of satellite-tagged Blainville's beaked whales off the island of Hawaii. *Endangered Species Research*. doi: 10.3354/esr00229.

Schorr, G. S., Falcone, E. A., Moretti, D. J., & Andrews, R. D. (2014). First long-term behavioral records from Cuvier's beaked whales (*Ziphius cavirostris*) reveal record- breaking dives. *PloS one, 9*(3), 1-10. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0092633.g001.

Schreer, J. F., Kovacs, K. M., & O'Hara Haines, R. J. (2001). Comparative diving patterns of pinnipeds and seabirds. *Ecological Monographs, 71*(1), 137-162. doi: 10.2307/3100048

Scott, T. M., & Sadove, S. S. (1997). Sperm Whale, *Physeter macrocephalus*, sightings in the shallow shelf waters off Long Island, New York. *Marine Mammal Science, 13*(2), 317-320. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.1997.tb00636.x.

Shane, S. H. (1995). Behavior patterns of pilot whales and Risso's dolphins off Santa Catalina Island, California. *Aquatic Mammals, 21*(3), 195-197.

Shearer, J. M., Quick, N. J., Cioffi, W. R., Baird, R. W., Webster, D. L., Foley, H. J., . . . Read, A. J. (2019). Diving behaviour of Cuvier's beaked whales (*Ziphius cavirostris*) off Cape Hatteras, North Carolina. *Royal Society Open Science, 6*, 181728. doi:10.1098/rsos.181728.

Silber, G. K., Newcomer, M. W., & Pérez-Cortés, H. M. (1990). Killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) attack and kill a Bryde's whale (*Balaenoptera edeni*). *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 68*, 1603-1606. doi: 10.1139/z90-238.

Silber, G. K., Newcomer, M. W., Silber, P. C., Pérez-Cortés M, H., & Ellis, G. M. (1994). Cetaceans of the northern Gulf of California: distribution, occurrence, and relative abundance. *Marine Mammal Science, 10*(3), 283-298. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.1994.tb00483.x.

Soule, D. C., & Wilcock, W. S. (2013). Fin whale tracks recorded by a seismic network on the Juan de Fuca Ridge, Northeast Pacific Ocean. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 133*(3), 1751-1761. doi: 10.1121/1.4774275.

Southall, B. L., Bowles, A. E., Ellison, W. T., Finneran, J. J., Gentry, R. L., Greene, C. R., Jr., . . . Tyack, P. L. (2007). Marine mammal noise exposure criteria: Initial scientific recommendations *Aquatic Mammals, 33*(4), 411-521. doi: 10.1578/AM.33.4.2007.411.

Southall, B. L., Finneran, J. J., Reichmuth, C., Nachtigall, P. E., Ketten, D. R., Bowles, A. E., Ellison, W. T., Nowacek, D. P., & Tyack, P. L. (2019). Marine mammal noise exposure criteria: Updated scientific recommendations for residual hearing effects. *Aquatic Mammals, 45*, 125-232. doi: 10.1578/am.45.2.2019.125.

Stern, S. J. (1992). Surfacing rates and surfacing patterns of minke whales (*Balaenoptera acutorostrata*) off central California, and the probability of a whale surfacing within visual range. *The Report of the International Whaling Commission, 42*, 379-385.

Stockin, K. A., Fairbairns, R. S., Parsons, E. C. M., & Sims, D. W. (2001). Effects of diel and seasonal cycles on the dive duration of the minke whale (*Balaenoptera acutorostrata*). *Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom, 81*(1), 189-190. doi: 10.1017/S0025315401003630.

Stone, G. S., Katona, S. K., Mainwaring, M., Allen, J. M., & Corbett, H. D. (1992). Respiration and surfacing rates of fin whales (*Balaenoptera physalus*) observed from a lighthouse tower. *Reports of the International Whaling Commission, 42*, 739-745.

Teloni, V., Mark, J. P., Patrick, M. J. O., & Peter, M. T. (2008). Shallow food for deep divers: Dynamic foraging behavior of male sperm whales in a high latitude habitat. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology, 354*(1), 119-131. doi: 10.1016/j.jembe.2007.10.010.

Thorne, L. H., Foley, H. J., Baird, R. W., Webster, D. L., Swaim, Z. T., & Read, A. J. (2017). Movement and foraging behavior of short-finned pilot whales in the Mid-Atlantic Bight: importance of bathymetric features and implications for management. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 584*, 245-257. doi: 10.3354/meps12371.

Urick, R. J. (1983). *Principles of underwater sound* (3rd Ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company.

Wahlberg, M. (2002). The acoustic behaviour of diving sperm whales observed with a hydrophone array. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology, 281*(1-2), 53-62. doi: 10.1016/S0022-0981(02)00411-2.

Walker, W. A., Mead, J. G., & Brownell, R. L., Jr. (2002). Diets of Baird's beaked whales, *Berardius bairdii*, in the southern sea of Okhotsk and off the Pacific coast of Honshu, Japan. *Marine Mammal Science, 18*(4), 902-919. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.2002.tb01081.x.

Ward, W. D. (1968). *Proposed damage-risk criterion for impulse noise (gunfire).* Washington, D.C. Committee on Hearing, Bioacoustics and Biomechanics. National Research Council, National Academy of Science.

Ward, W. D. (1997). Effects of high intensity sounds. In M. J. Crocker (Ed.), *Encyclopedia of Acoustics* (pp. 1497-1507). New York: J. Wiley and Sons, Inc.

Watkins, W. A. (1981). Activities and underwater sounds of fin whales. *The Scientific Reports of the Whales Research Institute* (33), 83-117.

Watkins, W. A., & Schevill, W. E. (1975). Sperm whales (*Physeter catodon*) react to pingers. *Deep-Sea Research, 22*, 123-129.

Watkins, W. A., Daher, M. A., DiMarzio, N. A., Samuels, A., Wartzok, D., Fristrup, K. M., . . . Spradlin, T. R. (1999). Sperm whale surface activity from tracking by radio and satellite tags. *Marine Mammal Science, 15*(4), 1158-1180. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.1999.tb00883.x.

Watkins, W. A., Daher, M. A., DiMarzio, N. A., Samuels, A., Wartzok, D., Fristrup, K. M., . . . Maiefski, R. R. (2002). Sperm whale dives tracked by radio tag telemetry. *Marine Mammal Science, 18*(1), 55-68. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.2002.tb01018.x.

Watkins, W. A., Moore, K. E., & Tyack, P. (1985). Sperm whale acoustic behaviors in the southeast Caribbean. *Cetology, 45*, 1-15.

Weir, C. R. (2000). Sightings of beaked whale species (Cetacea: Ziphiidae) in the waters to the north and west of Scotland and the Faroe Islands. [Proceedings of the annual conference of the European Cetacean Society]. *European Research on Cetaceans, 14*, 239-243.

Whitehead, H. (2016). Consensus movements by groups of sperm whales. *Marine Mammal Science, 32*(4), 1402-1415. doi: 10.1111/mms.12338.

Whitehead, H., Brennan, S., & Grover, D. (1992). Distribution and behavior of male sperm whales on the Scotian Shelf, Canada. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 70*(5), 912-918. doi: 10.1139/z92-130.

Wilson, K., Littnan, C., Halpin, P., & Read, A. (2017). Integrating multiple technologies to understand the foraging behaviour of Hawaiian monk seals. *Royal Society Open Science, 4*(3), 160703. doi: 10.1098/rsos.160703.

Wilson, K., Littnan, C., & Read, A. J. (2017). Movements and home ranges of monk seals in the main Hawaiian Islands. *Marine Mammal Science, 33*(4), 1080-1096. doi: 10.1111/mms.12429.

Wimmer, T., & Whitehead, H. (2004). Movements and distribution of northern bottlenose whales, *Hyperoodon ampullatus*, on the Scotian Slope and in adjacent waters. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 82*(11), 1782-1794. doi: 10.1139/z04-168.

Witteveen, B. H., De Robertis, A., Guo, L., & Wynne, K. M. (2015). Using dive behavior and active acoustics to assess prey use and partitioning by fin and humpback whales near Kodiak Island, Alaska. *Marine Mammal Science, 31*(1), 255-278. doi: 10.1111/mms.12158.

Witteveen, B. H., Foy, R. J., Wynne, K. M., & Tremblay, Y. (2008). Investigation of foraging habits and prey selection by humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) using acoustic tags and concurrent fish surveys. *Marine Mammal Science, 24*(3), 516-534. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.2008.00193.x.

Woodley, T. H., & Gaskin, D. E. (1996). Environmental characteristics of North Atlantic right and fin whale habitat in the lower Bay of Fundy, Canada. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 74*(1), 75-84. doi: 10.1139/z96-010.

# APPENDIX C: MARINE MAMMAL OFFSHORE BIOLOGICALLY IMPORTANT AREAS

# Appendix C Table of Contents

# APPENDIX C: MARINE MAMMAL OFFSHORE BIOLOGICALLY IMPORTANT AREAS

## C-1. Introduction

This appendix builds upon the OBIA section in Chapter 5 and provides more detailed information about the Navy and NMFS' comprehensive assessment of marine areas as potential marine mammal OBIAs for SURTASS LFA sonar. OBIAs are areas of biological importance to marine mammals that lie outside the coastal standoff range (i.e., 12 nmi [22 km]) and within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. In past documentation and authorizations for SURTASS LFA sonar, 29 marine mammal OBIAs were designated globally (Appendix Table C-1; Figure C-1).

The Navy applies the following OBIA mitigation measure during training and testing activities using SURTASS LFA sonar: the SURTASS LFA sonar-generated sound field would be below RLs of 180 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) 0.54 nmi (1 km) from the outer boundary of OBIAs during the biologically important period that have been determined by NMFS and the Navy, and no more than 25 percent of the authorized amount of SURTASS LFA sonar would be used for training and testing activities within 10 nmi (18.5 km) of any single OBIA during any year unless the following condition is met: should national security present a requirement to conduct more than 25 percent of the authorized hours of SURTAS LFA sonar within 10 nmi (18.5 km) of any single OBIA during any year, naval units would obtain permission from the appropriate designated Command authority prior to commencement of the activity. The Navy would provide NMFS with notification as soon as is practicable and include the information (e.g., sonar hours) in its annual activity reports submitted to NMFS. Additionally, per agreement with the State of Hawaii, SURTASS LFA sonar would not be used in the waters over Penguin Bank, HI, to a water depth of 600 ft (183 m) and would be operated such that the sound fields would not exceed RLs of 145 dB re 1 µPa (rms) (SPL) in Hawaii State waters.

Further detailed descriptions about these selection criteria for OBIAs may be found in Chapter 5, Section 5.3.5.2.1, including the assessment of Navy practicability, which includes such considerations as personnel safety, practicality of implementation, and impacts on the effectiveness of SURTASS LFA active sonar training and testing activities.

Detailed herein are the listing and assessment of the marine areas that the Navy and NMFS assessed to determine whether they met the OBIA selection critera and factors:

- Geographical criteria,
- Biological criteria
- LF-hearing sensitivity, and
- Navy practicability

As detailed in Chapter 5 (Section 5.3.5.2.1), the geographic criterion for OBIA designation entail an area being located within the study area but outside the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA sonar (>12 nmi [22 km] from emergent land). These basic geographic information are included in each marine area's summary included herein as are the areal extent, source of area's spatial boundary, type of spatial data, and date the spatial area data were obtained. Information about whether each marine area assessed met the geographic criteria for OBIAs is also found in this appendix (Tables C-3 and C-4 and sections on each type of marine area).

If a marine area meets the geographical criteria, to be further considered as an OBIA, the marine area must have relevance to marine mammals, particularly LF-sensitive marine mammals. The pertinent LF-sensitive marine mammal(s) species is identified for each marine area assessed. As noted in Chapter 5

**Table C-1. Twenty-nine Current or Existing World-wide Offshore Biologically Important Areas (OBIAs) for SURTASS LFA Sonar, the Relevant Low-Frequency Marine Mammal Species, and the Effective Seasonal Period for each OBIA.**

| *OBIA Number* | *Name of OBIA* | *Location/Water Body* | *Relevant Low-Frequency Marine Mammal Species* | *Effectiveness Seasonal Period* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Georges Bank | Northwest Atlantic Ocean | North Atlantic right whale | Year-round |
| 2 | Roseway Basin Right Whale Conservation Area | Northwest Atlantic Ocean | North Atlantic right whale | June through December, annually |
| 3 | Great South Channel, U.S. Gulf of Maine, and Stellwagen Bank NMS | Northwest Atlantic Ocean/ Gulf of Maine | North Atlantic right whale | January 1 to November 14, annually; year-round for Stellwagen Bank NMS |
| 4 | Southeastern U.S. Right Whale Critical Habitat | Northwest Atlantic Ocean | North Atlantic right whale | November 15 to April 15, annually |
| 5 | Gulf of Alaska | Gulf of Alaska | North Pacific right whale | March through August, annually |
| 6 | Navidad Bank | Caribbean Sea/Northwest Atlantic Ocean | Humpback whale | December through April, annually |
| 7 | Coastal Western Africa (Cameroon to Angola) | Southeastern Atlantic Ocean | Humpback whale and Blue whale | June through October, annually |
| 8 | Patagonian Shelf Break | Southwestern Atlantic Ocean | Southern elephant seal | Year-round |
| 9 | Southern Right Whale Seasonal Habitat | Southwestern Atlantic Ocean | Southern right whale | May through December, annually |
| 10 | Central California | Northeastern Pacific Ocean | Blue whale and Humpback whale | June through November, annually |
| 11 | Antarctic Convergence Zone | Southern Ocean | Blue whale, Fin whale, Sei whale, Minke whale, Humpback whale, and Southern right whale | October through March, annually |
| 12 | Offshore Piltun and Chayvo | Sea of Okhotsk | Western Pacific gray whale | June through November, annually |
| 13 | Eastern Madagascar Coastal Waters | Western Indian Ocean | Humpback whale and Blue whale | July through September, annually for humpback whale breeding, November through December for migrating blue whales |

**Table C-1. Twenty-nine Current or Existing World-wide Offshore Biologically Important Areas (OBIAs) for SURTASS LFA Sonar, the Relevant Low-Frequency Marine Mammal Species, and the Effective Seasonal Period for each OBIA.**

| *OBIA Number* | *Name of OBIA* | *Location/Water Body* | *Relevant Low-Frequency Marine Mammal Species* | *Effectiveness Seasonal Period* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 14 | Southern Madagascar (Madagascar Plateau, Madagascar Ridge, and Walters Shoal) | Western Indian Ocean | Pygmy blue whale, Humpback whale, and Bryde's whale | November through December, annually |
| 15 | Ligurian-Corsican-Provençal Basin and Western Pelagos Sanctuary | Northern Mediterranean Sea | Fin whale | July to August, annually |
| 16 | Penguin Bank, Hawaiian Islands Humpback Whale NMS | North-Central Pacific Ocean | Humpback whale | November through April, annually |
| 17 | Costa Rica Dome | Eastern Tropical Pacific Ocean | Blue whale and Humpback whale | Year-round |
| 18 | Great Barrier Reef | Coral Sea/Southwestern Pacific Ocean | Humpback whale and Dwarf minke whale | May through September, annually |
| 19 | Bonney Upwelling | Southern Ocean | Blue whale, Pygmy blue whale, and Southern right Whale | December through May, annually |
| 20 | Northern Bay of Bengal and Head of Swatch-of-No- Ground (SoNG) | Bay of Bengal/Northern Indian Ocean | Bryde's whale | Year-round |
| 21 | Olympic Coast NMS and The Prairie, Barkley Canyon, and Nitinat Canyon | Northeastern Pacific Ocean | Humpback whale | Olympic NMS: December, January, March, April, and May, annually;<br>The Prairie, Barkley Canyon, and Nitinat Canyon: June through September, annually |
| 22 | Abrolhos Bank | Southwest Atlantic Ocean | Humpback whale | August through November, annually |
| 23 | Grand Manan North Atlantic Right Whale Critical Habitat | Bay of Fundy | North Atlantic right whale | June through December, annually |
| 24 | Eastern Gulf of Mexico | Gulf of Mexico | Bryde's whale | Year-round |
| 25 | Southern Coastal Chile | Gulf of Corcovado, Southeast Pacific Ocean | Blue whale | February to April, annually |
| 26 | Offshore Sri Lanka | North-Central Indian Ocean | Blue whale | December through April, annually |

**Table C-1. Twenty-nine Current or Existing World-wide Offshore Biologically Important Areas (OBIAs) for SURTASS LFA Sonar, the Relevant Low-Frequency Marine Mammal Species, and the Effective Seasonal Period for each OBIA.**

| *OBIA Number* | *Name of OBIA* | *Location/Water Body* | *Relevant Low-Frequency Marine Mammal Species* | *Effectiveness Seasonal Period* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 27 | Camden Sound/Kimberly Region | Southeast Indian Ocean; northwestern Australia | Humpback whale | June through September, annually |
| 28 | Perth Canyon | Southeast Indian Ocean; southwestern Australia | Pygmy blue whale/Blue whale; Sperm whale | January through May, annually |
| 29 | Southwest Australia Canyons | Southern Ocean; southwestern Australia | Sperm whale | Year-round |

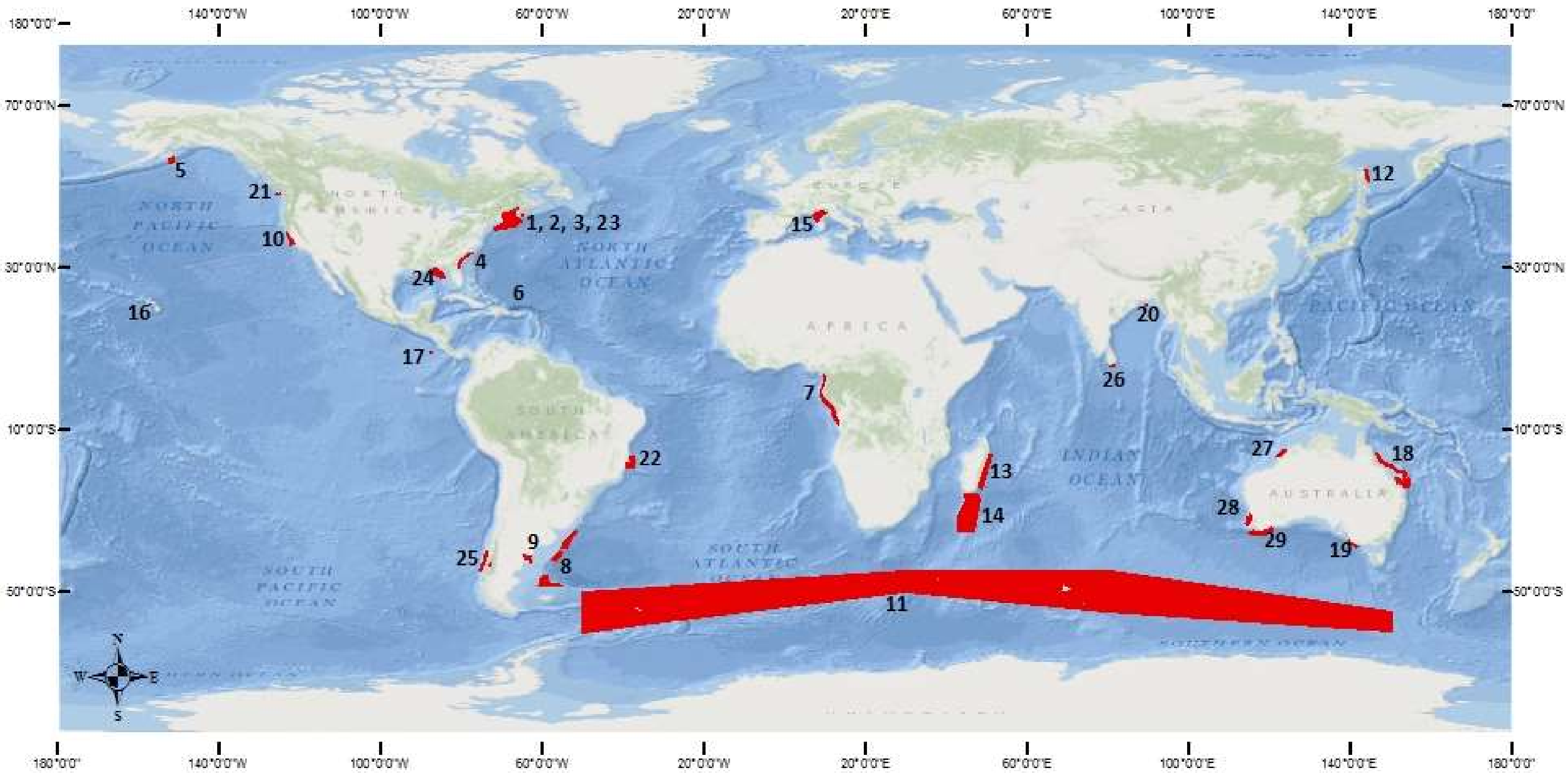



**Figure C-1. Locations of the 29 Existing/Current Marine Mammal Offshore Biologically Important Areas (OBIAs) for SURTASS LFA Sonar (the Names of OBIAs by Number Follows).**

**FIGURE C-1: EXISTING/CURRENT OBIA NAMES BY NUMBER**

1. Georges Bank
2. Roseway Basin Right Whale Conservation Area
3. Great South Channel, U.S. Gulf of Maine, and Stellwagen Bank National Marine Sanctuary
4. Southeastern U.S. Right Whale Critical Habitat
5. Gulf of Alaska
6. Navidad Bank
7. Coastal Western Africa (Cameroon to Angola)
8. Patagonian Shelf Break
9. Southern Right Whale Seasonal Habitat
10. Central California
11. Antarctic Convergence Zone
12. Offshore Piltun and Chayvo
13. Eastern Madagascar Coastal Waters
14. Southern Madagascar (Madagascar Plateau, Madagascar Ridge, and Walters Shoal)
15. Ligurian-Corsican- Provençal Basin and Western Pelagos Sanctuary
16. Penguin Bank, Hawaiian Islands Humpback Whale National Marine Sanctuary
17. Costa Rica Dome
18. Great Barrier Reef
19. Bonney Upwelling
20. Northern Bay of Bengal and Head of Swatch-of-No-Ground (SoNG)
21. Olympic Coast National Marine Sanctuary, The Prairie, Barkley Canyon, and Nitinat Canyon
22. Abrolhos Bank
23. Grand Manan North Atlantic Right Whale Critical Habitat
24. Eastern Gulf of Mexico
25. Southern Coastal Chile
26. Offshore Sri Lanka
27. Camden Sound/Kimberly Region
28. Perth Canyon
29. Southwest Australia Canyons

(Section 5.3.5.2.1), OBIAs have also been designated for non-LF hearing specialists such as sperm whales and elephant seals, since the available hearing data for these species indicate an increased sensitivity to LF sound (compared to most odontocetes and pinnipeds). Accordingly, sperm whales and elephant seals are included as LF-sensitive marine mammals herein.

An additional consideration for OBIA designation combines fundamental geographic and biologic considerations that converge the location of a species habitat with co-occurrence of SURTASS LFA sonar activities. To be considered in this SEIS/SOEIS, a marine mammal species must occur in waters in which SURTASS LFA sonar activities could be conducted (Section 3.4.3.3). Some marine mammal species, such as the dugong as well as coastal dolphins and porpoises (e.g., Irrawaddy dolphin and finless porpoise), occur in inshore and shallow coastal waters. SURTASS LFA sonar activities would not be conducted in such inshore waters even if these shallow, coastal waters are located in the study area and outside the coastal standoff range. Additionally, Thus, such coastal and inshore occurring marine mammal species, including the dugong, coastal and river dolphins, and shallow-water porpoises have been excluded from further consideration in this SEIS/SOEIS. Accordingly, OBIAs do not address these very shallow water species.

Information is provided in this appendix to show which of the reviewed marine areas met the OBIA selection criteria and factors. Marine areas that did not meet the OBIA selection criteria or factors were not further considered as potential OBIAs by the Navy and NMFS. Marine areas were not further considered if they: 1) were not located in the SURTASS LFA study area of the eastern Indian Ocean or western and central North Pacific Ocean, 2) were important to taxa other than LF-sensitive marine mammals under NMFS jurisdiction, or 3) if the available data, information, and literature did not provide sufficient support that important biological activity was occurring in the marine area. Some marine areas assessed herein but not considered as candidate OBIAs have been retained on the OBIA Watchlist for SURTASS LFA sonar and would be re-evaluated in the future as more information becomes available.

The bulk of this appendix includes summaries of the marine areas that met all OBIA selection criteria and factors and were thus further considered by the Navy and NMFS as OBIAs. The marine area summaries describe and detail all available information about the marine mammal species and important biological activities conducted in the assessed marine areas. Synopses of the cited literature, data, and information are provided so readers can readily review the available information without having to search out and acquire those source documents. Marine areas considered as candidate OBIAs (i.e., areas that meet the geographical and biological criteria and LF hearing sensitivity) are presented first (Part I), followed by those areas not further considered as possible OBIAs (Part II).

If sufficient supporting evidence for a marine area's biological importance to an LF-sensitive species (or sperm whale or elephant seal) is available, then that marine area meets all the OBIA designation criteria and would be carried forward for the last step in the OBIA designation process (listed in Part I), which is the Navy operational practicability review (see Chapter 5 for further details).

## C-2. Types of Marine Areas Considered

Navy and NMFS's comprehensive assessment of marine areas as OBIA candidates included a thorough review of the Important Marine Mammal Areas (IMMAs), Ecologically or Biologically Significant Marine Areas (EBSAs), and IUCN Green List of Protected and Conserved Areas that are located within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar (Appendix Table C-2). Additionally, OBIA Watchlist areas located within the study area were also re-examined, and marine areas suggested in public comments (MMC and NRDC et

**Table C-2. Number and Types of Marine Areas Assessed as Potential Offshore Biologically Important Areas (OBIAs) and Their Location Relative to the Study Area and Coastal Standoff Range (12 nmi) for SURTASS LFA Sonar.**

| *Marine Area Region* | *Total Number Marine Areas* | *Number of Marine Areas Located Within Study Area[1] for SURTASS LFA Sonar* | *Number of Marine Areas in LFA Study Area Relevant to Marine Mammals* | *Number of Marine Mammal Areas Located in Study Area and Outside[2] the Coastal Standoff Range* | *Number of Marine Areas Further Assessed* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ***OBIA Watchlist Areas*** | | | | | |
| Western North Pacific Ocean | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 |
| Central Indian Ocean | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| Total OBIA Watchlist | 4 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 3 |
| ***U.S. ESA Critical Habitat*** | | | | | |
| Central North Pacific Ocean | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 |
| ***UNEP Ecologically or Biologicaly Significant Areas (EBSAs)*** | | | | | |
| Northeast Indian Ocean | 10 | 10 | 5 | 3 | 3 |
| South and Western Indian Ocean | 39 | 5 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| East Asian Seas | 34 | 31 | 9 | 6 | 7[3] |
| North Pacific Ocean | 20 | 6 | 4 | 4 | 4 |
| Western South Pacific Ocean | 26 | 2 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Total EBSAs | 129 | 54 | 19 | 13 | 14 |
| ***IUCN WCPA-SSC Important Marine Mammal Areas (IMMAs)*** | | | | | |
| Pacific Islands | 15 | 3 | 3 | 2 | 2 |
| Southeast Asian Seas and Northeast Indian Ocean | 30 | 20 | 20 | 9 | 8 |
| Total IMMAs | 45 | 23 | 23 | 11 | 10 |
| ***IUCN Green List of Protected and Conserved Areas*** | | | | | |
| Asian Pacific | 11 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

1 At least par.t of marine area located within study area for SURTASS LFA sonar

2 At least part of the marine area is located outside the LFA coastal standoff range.

3 Even though the Ogasawara Islands EBSA is located within the coastal standoff range, due to its importance to the endangered humpback whale DPS, this area was further considered.

| *Recommended in Public Comments on Draft SEIS/SOEIS and MMPA Proposed Rule*[4] | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Western North Pacific Ocean | 41 | 40 | 40 | 21 | 21 |
| Eastern Indian Ocean | 52 | 52 | 52 | 27 | 27 |
| Total Comment Recommendations | 93 | 92 | 92 | 48 | 48 |

4 The number of marine areas received in Public Comments includes the newly designated IMMAs (SE Asian Seas and NE Indian Ocean) as well as duplicate marine areas, since some of the same marine areas were noted in comments received both for the DSEIS/SOEIS and Proposed Rule. Additionally, some of the recommended marine areas were EBSAs for marine mammals. The duplicate marine areas have been removed from the total number of marine areas further assessed, but that total number includes marine areas that are designated as IMMAs and EBSA.

al.) received on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS and the NMFS MMPA Proposed Rule were also included for consideration.

## C-3. Reassessment of OBIA Watchlist Marine Areas

The Navy and NMFS began the marine area assessment by first evaluating those areas on the OBIA Watchlist that occurred within the study area. As noted in Chapter 5, the majority of the marine areas on the OBIA Watchlist are not located in the current study area for SURTASS LFA sonar in the eastern Indian Ocean or central and western North Pacific Ocean. Four OBIA Watchlist areas located within the study area that were re-considered for this SEIS/SOEIS include the British Indian Ocean Territory-Chagos Islands Marine Protected Area (MPA), the Pacific Remote Islands Marine National Monument (MNM), Marianas Trench MNM, and the Papahānaumokuākea MNM. The Navy and NMFS assessed the portions of these Watchlist areas that were located outside the coastal standoff range but within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar.

MNMs are a type of marine protected area designated by the presidential proclamation to conserve and protect specific areas of the marine environment that are located in U.S. federal waters and that contain "historic landmarks, historic and prehistoric structures, and other objects of historic or scientific interest." Portions of three of the four U.S. MNMs are located within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. Not all units of the Pacific Remote Islands MNM are located within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar—only the Wake and Johnson atoll units are located wholly within the study area and only the very small northern part of the Kingman Reef/Palmyra Atoll unit is located in the study area (Appendix Figure C-2). The Marianas Trench MNM is divided into three units, with only one of those units, the Islands Unit, including waters and submerged lands while the Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire and Trench Units only include submerged (benthic) lands (USFWS, 2016). The Islands Unit includes three of the northernmost Mariana Islands: Farallon de Pajaros (also known as Uracus), Maug, and Asuncion with their geographic boundary extending from shore seaward to 50 nmi (93 km) (Appendix Figure C-3). Although two units of the Marianas Trench MNM were designated to protect the benthic features of the area and do not include the marine waters overlying these features, these areas would thus not be appropriate as candidate OBIAs. However, to ensure that all areas surrounding the Marianas Archipelago were assessed for importance to marine mammals, the Navy and NMFS evaluated all waters bounded by the Marianas Trench MNM. A large part of the Papahānaumokuākea MNM is located beyond the coastal standoff range within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar (Appendix Figure C-4).

Marine mammals are known to occur in the units of the Pacific Remote Islands MNM that lie within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar, although few data are available for this isolated region. The waters of the Marianas Island MNM's Island Unit have not been surveyed for marine mammals, but Carberra et al. (2017) note that up to 29 species of marine mammals may be present in the waters of the Island Unit and several dedicated marine mammal surveys have been conducted within the Marianas Archipelago (Fulling et al., 2011; Hill et al., 2015, 2017). The waters and islands of the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands (NWHI) that are contained in the Papahānaumokuākea MNM include the principal distributional range of the critically endangered Hawaiian monk seal as well as part of its ESA designated critical habitat. Thus, a great deal of data and information about the importance of this marine area are available for further assessment. Since at least part of these three MNMs are located outside the coastal standoff range and have relevance to marine mammals, they were carried forward for further consideration as OBIAs.

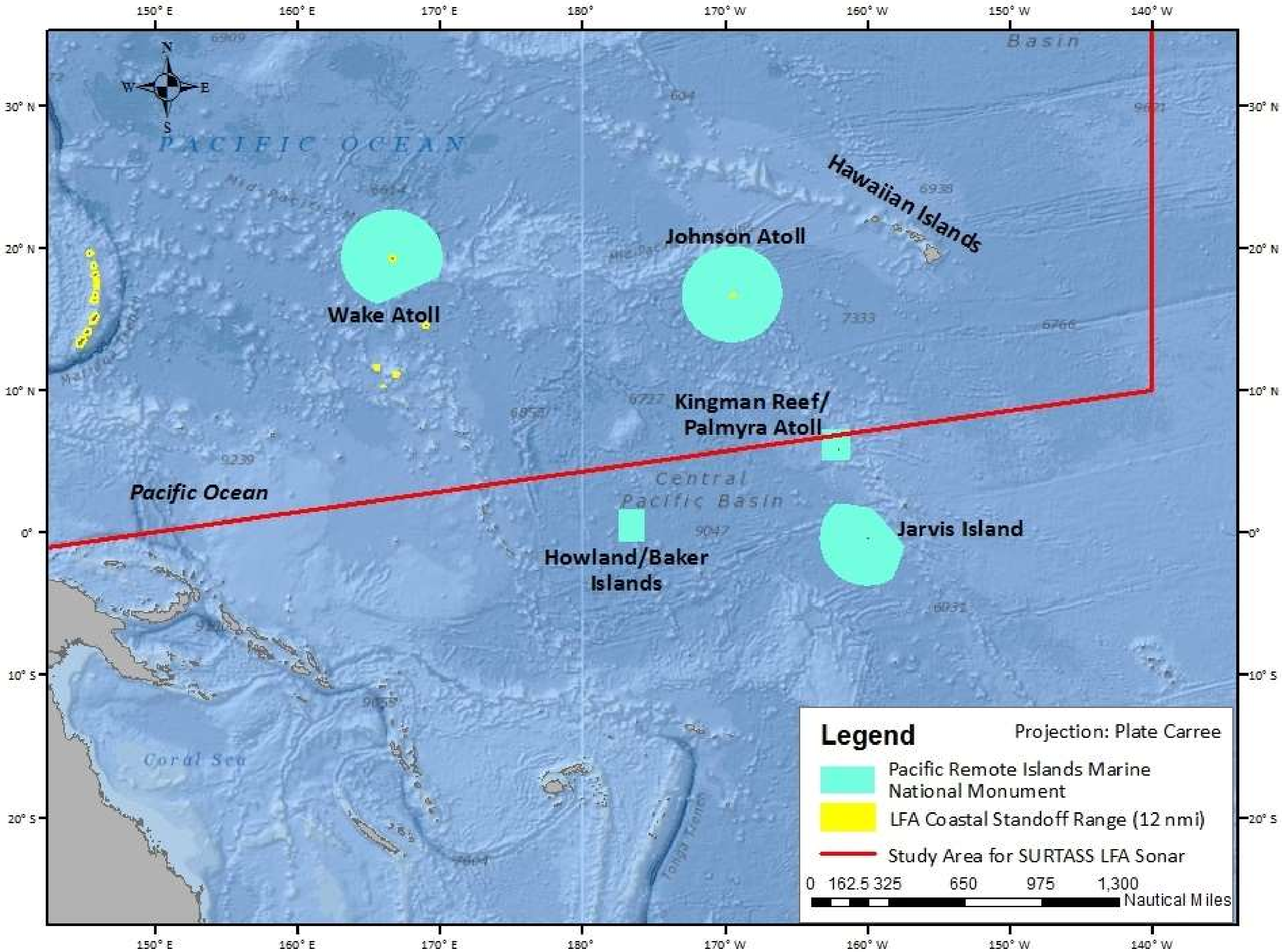



**Figure C-2. Units of the Pacific Remote Islands Marine National Monument Located in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar.**

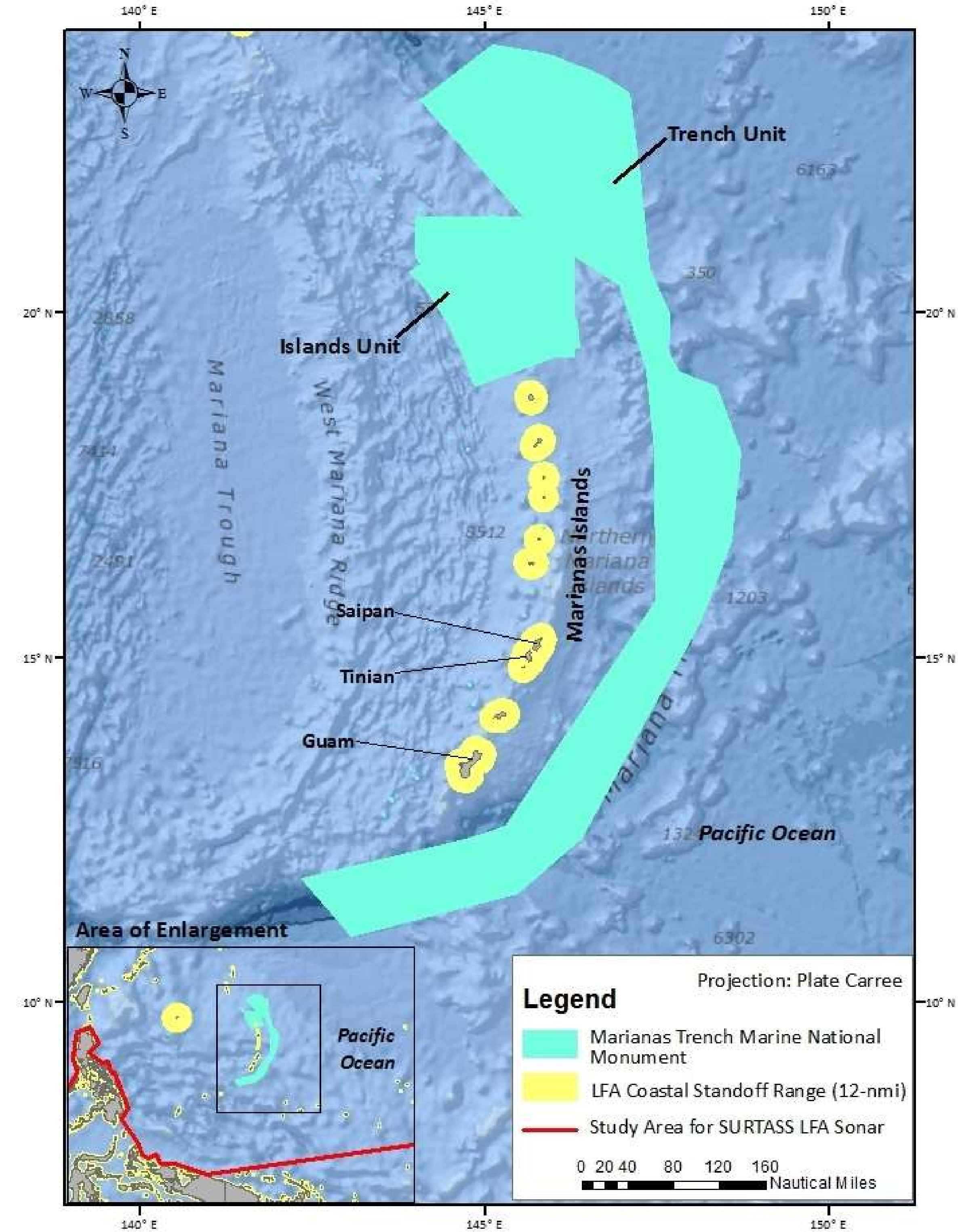



**Figure C-3. Location of the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument, Including the Islands Unit, in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar.**

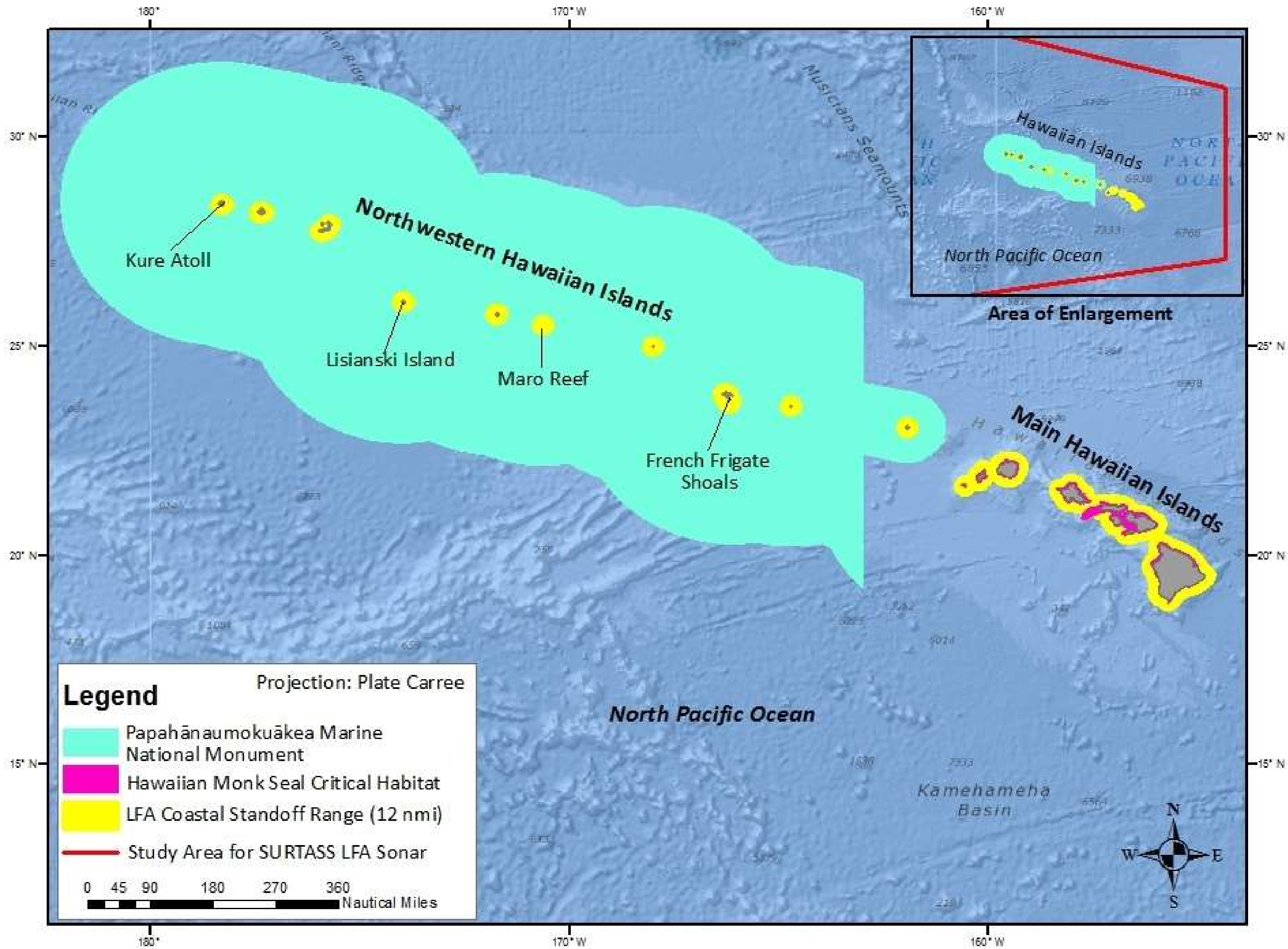



**Figure C-4. Location of Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument and Hawaiian Monk Seal Critical Habitat (NMFS, 2015) in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar.**

The British Indian Ocean Territory (BIOT)-Chagos Islands MPA is large, encompassing an area of 186,594 $nmi^2$ (640,000 $km^2$) in the central Indian Ocean, the majority of which lies outside the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA sonar (BIOT, 2019). The BIOT-Chagos MPA was designated to protect 1,166 $nmi^2$ (4,000 $km^2$) of unique near-surface coral reefs and atolls (BIOT, 2019). Little information, however, is available on marine mammals that use these remote waters or on important biological activities of marine mammals that may be conducted in these waters (Dunne et al., 2014). Available literature and information were researched and reviewed, but the Navy and NMFS' conclusion on this area remains the same, that insufficient data are currently available to demonstrate that the waters of this MPA are important biologically to marine mammals. Accordingly, the Navy and NMFS did not evaluate the MPA further as a possible OBIA but are retaining the BIOT-Chagos Islands MPA on the OBIA Watchlist.

## C-4. ESA Critical Habitat Areas

Critical habitat is defined under the ESA as the specific areas within the geographic range occupied by an ESA listed species in which physical or biological features essential to the conservation of the species are found and that may require special management consideration or protection (16 U.S.C. §1532(5)(A), 1978). The ESA requires NMFS and USFWS to designate critical habitat for any species that it lists under the ESA, except foreign species.

In the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar, critical habitat has been designated for two species of marine mammals in Hawaiian waters: the Hawaiian monk seal (NOAA, 2015; Figure C-4) and the Main Hawaiian Islands Insular DPS of false killer whales (NOAA, 2018; Figure C-5). A marine area for which ESA critical habitat has been designated is considered similarly to any other marine area in which clearly important biological activity of a marine mammal species occurs. No different consideration is given to a marine area in which critical habitat has been designated. A critical habitat area is assessed to meet the geographic and biological criterias as well as relevancy for LF hearing sensitive species. Thus, the areas of critical habitat located outside the coastal standoff range within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar were considered as potential OBIAs.

## C-5. Important Marine Mammal Areas (IMMAs)

IMMAs are marine areas identified and defined by the Marine Mammal Protected Area Task Force (MMPATF), which is a joint effort of the IUCN World Commission of Protected Areas (WCPA) and Species Survival Commission (SSC) and the International Committee on Marine Mammal Protected Areas (ICMMPA). IMMAs are defined as discrete portions of habitat that are important to one or more marine mammal species; represent priority sites for marine mammal conservation worldwide without management implications; and merit protection and monitoring (IUCN WCPA-SSC Joint Task Force on Biodiversity and Protected Areas and IUCN WCPA-SSC Joint Task Force on Marine Mammal Protected Areas [IUCN-WCPA-SSC JTFBP and IUCN-WCPA-SSC JTFMMPA], 2018). The IMMA selection criteria are designed to capture aspects of the biology, ecology, and population structure of marine mammals. The IMMA criteria are not hierarchical but prospective IMMAs are assessed sequentially in the given criteria order. As such, candidate IMMAs must only satisfy one of the criteria and/or sub-criteria to successfully qualify for IMMA status. IMMAs are selected according to the following criteria (IUCN-WCPA-SSC JTFMMPA, 2018):

- Criterion A—Species or Population Vulnerability
- Criterion B—Distribution and Abundance
- Criterion C—Key Life Activities
- Criterion D—Special Attributes.

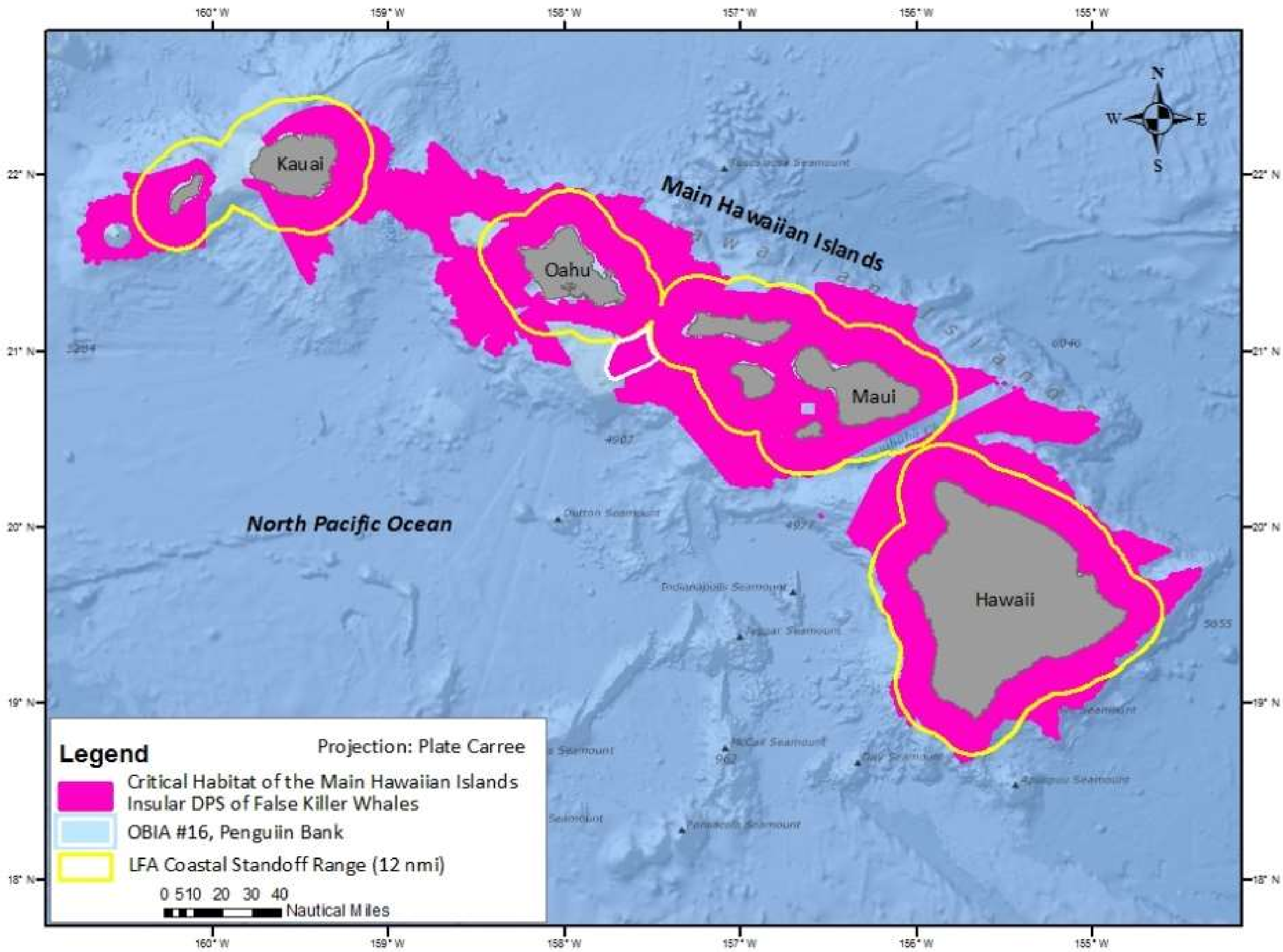



**Figure C-5. Location of Critical Habitat for the Main Hawaiian Islands Insular DPS of False Killer Whale (NMFS, 2018) in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar.**

To date, IMMAs have been identified in the western and central Pacific Ocean, Mediterranean Sea, and the North East Indian Ocean and South East Asian Seas (MMPATF, 2018 and 2019). The IMMAs are divided into three categories: IMMAs, candidate IMMAs, and areas of interest (AOIs). Only areas designated as IMMAs are considered as possible OBIAs as these areas have met the IMMA selection criteria and have complete supporting data and information. Once candidate IMMAs are designated as IMMAs, if located within the study area, they would then be assessed as potential OBIAs. Twenty-three IMMAs are located in the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar (Appendix Tables C-2 and C-3; Figures C-6 and C-7).

Of the 15 Pacific Islands IMMAs, three are located within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar in the North Pacific Ocean: the North West Hawaiian Islands, Main Hawaiian Archipelago, and Southern Shelf Waters/Slope Edge of Palau IMMAs. However, only two of these IMMAs have some part of their area located outside the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA sonar (Appendix Figure C-5); the geographic extent of the Palau IMMA is entirely located within the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA sonar and is thus not eligible for consideration as an OBIA. The Northwestern Hawaiian Islands and the Main Hawaiian Archipelago IMMAs have been carried forward for further analysis of the OBIA biological criteria and LF-hearing sensitivity.

In 2019, 30 IMMAs were designated in the North East Indian Ocean and South East Asian Seas (MMPATF, 2019) (Appendix Figures C-5 and C-6). Of these 30 IMMAs, 20 are located at least partially within the SURTASS LFA study area, with 9 located at least partially outside of the coastal standoff range (Table C-1). Eight of the North East Indian Ocean and South East Asian IMMAs have been carried forward for further review.

## C-6. IUCN Green List of Protected and Conserved Areas

IUCN Green List of Protected and Conserved Areas are designated to increase the global area of well-designed, fairly governed, and effectively managed protected and conserved areas that achieve their intended objectives and contribute to global sustainability goals (IUCN, 2018)  The IUCN Green List of Protected and Conserved Areas have been designated in four global geographic regions, but only the Asia Pacific region is located in or near the study area of SURTSS LFA sonar Although 11 IUCN Green List of Protected and Conserved Areas are located in the Asia Pacific region, none are located within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. The majority of these areas are terrestrial parks, reserves, or conservation areas, and only one is located in the marine environment, but Montague Island Nature Reserve is located entirely on the island with no adjacent waters conserved. The 11 Green List Protected and Conserved Areas in the Asia Pacific Region are:

- Korea Jirisan National Park
- Korea Odaesan National Park
- Korea Seoraksan National Park
- Australia Montague Island Nature Reserve
- Australia Arakwal National Park and Cape Byron State Conservation Area
- China Longwanqun National Forest Park
- China Sichuan Tangjiahe National Nature ReserveChina Eastern Dongting Lake National Nature Reserve
- China Mount Huangshan Scenic Area
- China Wudalianchi Geological Park

**Table C-3. Important Marine Mammal Areas (IMMAs) Reviewed as Potential Marine Mammals Offshore Biologically Important Areas (OBIAs) for SURTASS LFA Sonar**

| *IMMA Name* | *In LFA Study Area* | *Outside Coastal Standoff Range* | *Relevant Marine Mammal(s)* | *Important Biological Activity* | *Further Review as Potential OBIA* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Pacific Islands** | | | | | |
| Main Hawaiian Archipelago | Y | Y | Spinner, pantropical spotted, rough-toothed, and bottlenose dolphins; pygmy killer, dwarf sperm, short-finned pilot, melon-headed, Blainville's, Cuvier's, false killer, and humpback whales | Small, resident populations; reproduction | Y |
| Northwest Hawaiian Islands | Y | Y | Hawaiian monk seal; spinner dolphin | Small, resident populations; reproduction | Y |
| Southern Shelf Waters and Reef Edge of Palau IMMA | Y | N | Dugong | Small, resident populations; reproduction | N |
| Bismarck Sea IMMA | N | | Killer and sperm whales | Reproduction and foraging | N |
| Main Solomon Islands IMMA | N | | Dugong, Omura's whale, and Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin | Small, resident populations | N |
| New Caledonian Lagoons and Shelf Waters IMMA | N | | Dugong; humpback whale, and Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin | Small, resident populations; reproduction; foraging | N |
| Waters of New Caledonia and Loyalty Islands IMMA | N | | Humpback and sperm whales | | N |
| Vatu-i-Ra IMMA | N | | Humpback whale; spinner dolphin | Small, resident populations; reproduction | N |
| Tongan Archipelago IMMA | N | | Humpback whale; spinner dolphin | Reproduction | N |
| Samoan Archipelago IMMA | N | | Humpback whale; spinner and rough-toothed dolphins | Small, resident populations; reproduction | N |
| Cook Islands Southern Group IMMA | N | | Humpback whale and spinner dolphin | Small, resident populations; reproduction; migration | N |
| Society Archipelago IMMA | N | | Humpback whale; spinner and rough-toothed dolphins | Small, resident populations; reproduction | N |
| Austral Archipelago IMMA | N | | Humpback whale | Reproduction | N |

**Table C-3. Important Marine Mammal Areas (IMMAs) Reviewed as Potential Marine Mammals Offshore Biologically Important Areas (OBIAs) for SURTASS LFA Sonar**

| *IMMA Name* | *In LFA Study Area* | *Outside Coastal Standoff Range* | *Relevant Marine Mammal(s)* | *Important Biological Activity* | *Further Review as Potential OBIA* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Marquesas Archipelago IMMA | N | | Melon-headed whale; spinner dolphin | Aggregation | N |
| Kikori Delta IMMA | N | | Australian snubfin and Australian humpback dolphins | Small, resident populations; reproduction; foraging | N |
| **North East Indian Ocean and Southern Asian Seas** | | | | | |
| Chilika Lagoon IMMA | Y | N | Irrawaddy dolphin | Small, resident population | N |
| Coastal Northern Bay of Bengal IMMA | Y | Y | Irrawaddy, Indo-Pacific finless, and Indo-Pacific humpback dolphins | Reproduction | N |
| Sundarbans IMMA | Y | N | Irrawaddy and Ganges river dolphins | Aggregation | N |
| Swatch-of-No-Ground IMMA | Y | Y | Bryde's whale; Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin | Aggregation | Y |
| Gulf of Mannar and Palk Bay IMMA | Y | Y | Dugong | Small, resident population; foraging | Y[5] |
| South West to Eastern Sri Lanka IMMA | Y | Y | Sperm and blue whales; spinner dolphin | Reproduction; foraging | Y |
| Satun-Langkawi Archipelago IMMA | Y | N | Irrawaddy, Indo-Pacific finless, and Indo-Pacific humpback dolphins | Reproduction | N |
| Matang Mangroves and Coastal Waters IMMA | Y | Y | Irrawaddy, Indo-Pacific finless, and Indo-Pacific humpback dolphins | Reproduction; foraging | N |
| Southern Andaman Islands IMMA | Y | Y | Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin; dugong | Reproduction; foraging | Y[5] |
| Con Dao IMMA | Y | N | Dugong | Small, resident population; foraging | N |
| Kien Giang and Kep Archipelago IMMA | Y | Y | Irrawaddy dolphin; dugong | Foraging | Y |
| Mersing Archipelago IMMA | Y | N | Dugong | Reproduction; foraging | N |
| Kuching Bay IMMA | Y | N | Irrawaddy, Indo-Pacific finless, and Indo-Pacific humpback dolphins | Small, resident population | N |

5 Even though these IMMAs were designated for the dugong or other inshore species, baleen whale species also occur in the waters of these IMMAs. Due to the presence of these LF-sensitive species in the waters of these IMMAs, the areas were further assessed as potential OBIAs.

**Table C-3. Important Marine Mammal Areas (IMMAs) Reviewed as Potential Marine Mammals Offshore Biologically Important Areas (OBIAs) for SURTASS LFA Sonar**

| *IMMA Name* | *In LFA Study Area* | *Outside Coastal Standoff Range* | *Relevant Marine Mammal(s)* | *Important Biological Activity* | *Further Review as Potential OBIA* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Similajau-Kuala Nyalau Coastline IMMA | Y | N | Irrawaddy, Indo-Pacific finless, and Indo-Pacific humpback dolphins | Small, resident population | N |
| Bohol Sea IMMA | N | | | Aggregation | N |
| Babuyan Marine Corridor IMMA | Y | Y | Humpback whale; rough-toothed dolphin | Reproduction, migration | Y |
| Iloilo and Guimaras Straits IMMA | N | | Irrawaddy dolphin | Small, resident population | N |
| Malampaya Sound IMMA | Y | N | Irrawaddy dolphin | Small, resident population | N |
| Tañon Strait IMMA | N | | Spinner and Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphins | Small, resident population; foraging; migration | N |
| Berau and East Kutai District, Kalimantan IMMA | N | | Irrawaddy and Indo-Pacific humpback dolphins; sperm whale | Small, resident population; reproduction; foraging | N |
| Wakatobi and Adjacent Waters IMMA | N | | Sperm whale; spinner dolphin | Foraging | N |
| Balikpapan, Adang, Apar Bays IMMA | N | | Dugong, Irrawaddy dolphin | Small, resident population; reproduction; foraging | N |
| Tolitoli IMMA | N | | Dugong | Reproduction; foraging | N |
| Buleleng IMMA | N | | Spinner and Fraser's dolphins | Reproduction | N |
| Kaimana, West Papua IMMA | N | | | | N |
| Savu Sea and Surrounding Areas IMMA | Y | Y | Sperm, pygmy blue, and melon-headed whales; spinner, Fraser's, Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphins | Small, resident population; reproduction; migration, foraging | Y |
| Eastern Lesser Sunda Islands and Timor Coastal Area IMMA | Y | N | Dugong | Small, resident population; foraging | N |
| Western Lesser Sunda Islands and Sumba Coastal Area IMMA | Y | N | Dugong | Small, resident population; foraging | N |
| Southern Bali Peninsula and Slope IMMA | Y | Y | Bryde's whale; spinner dolphin | Foraging | Y |
| Bintuni Bay, West Papua IMMA | N | | Australian humpback dolphin | Foraging | N |

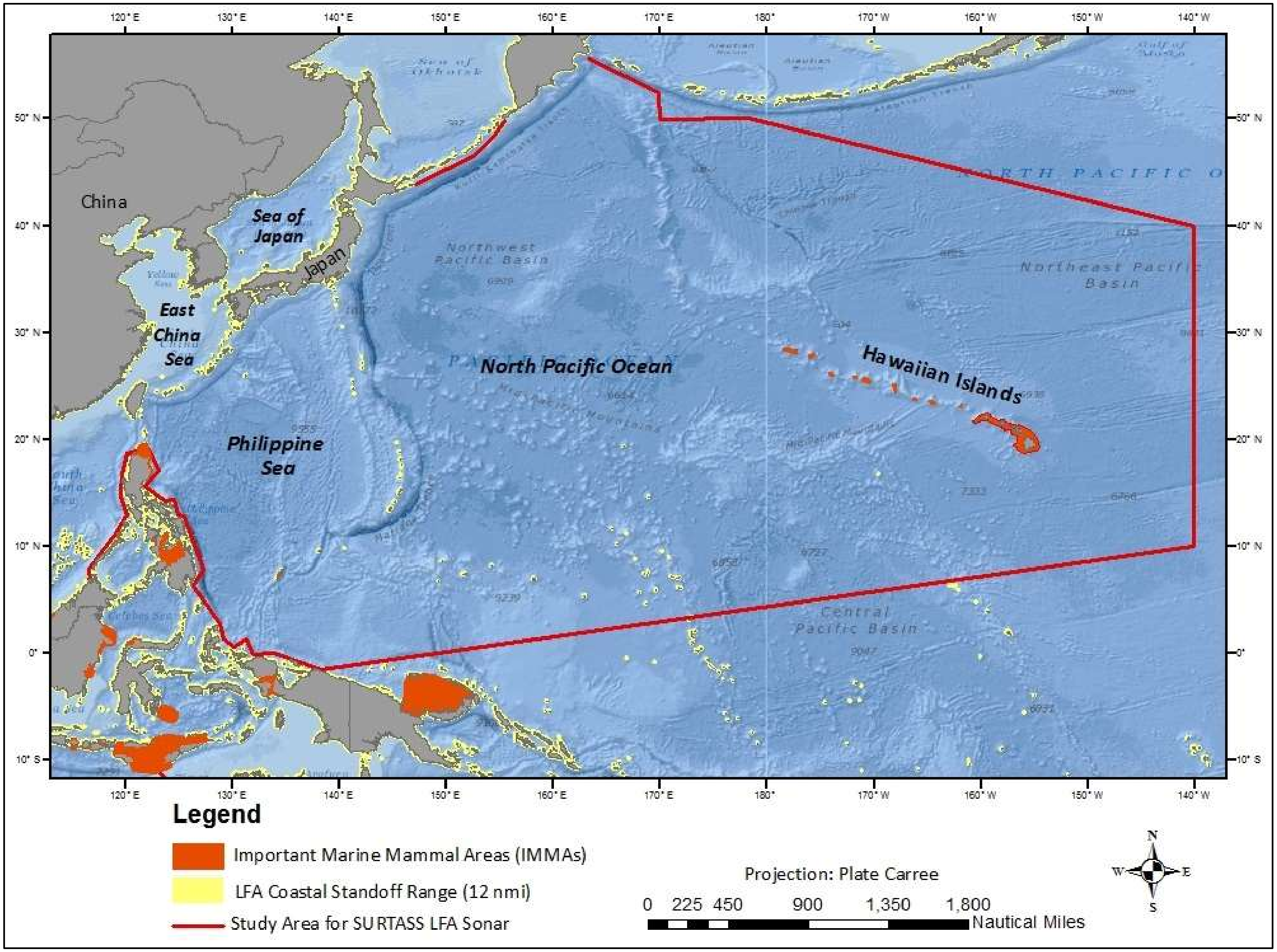



**Figure C-6. Locations of the Important Marine Mammal Areas (IMMAs) in the Pacific Ocean Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar (IUCN MMPATF, 2017 and 2019).**

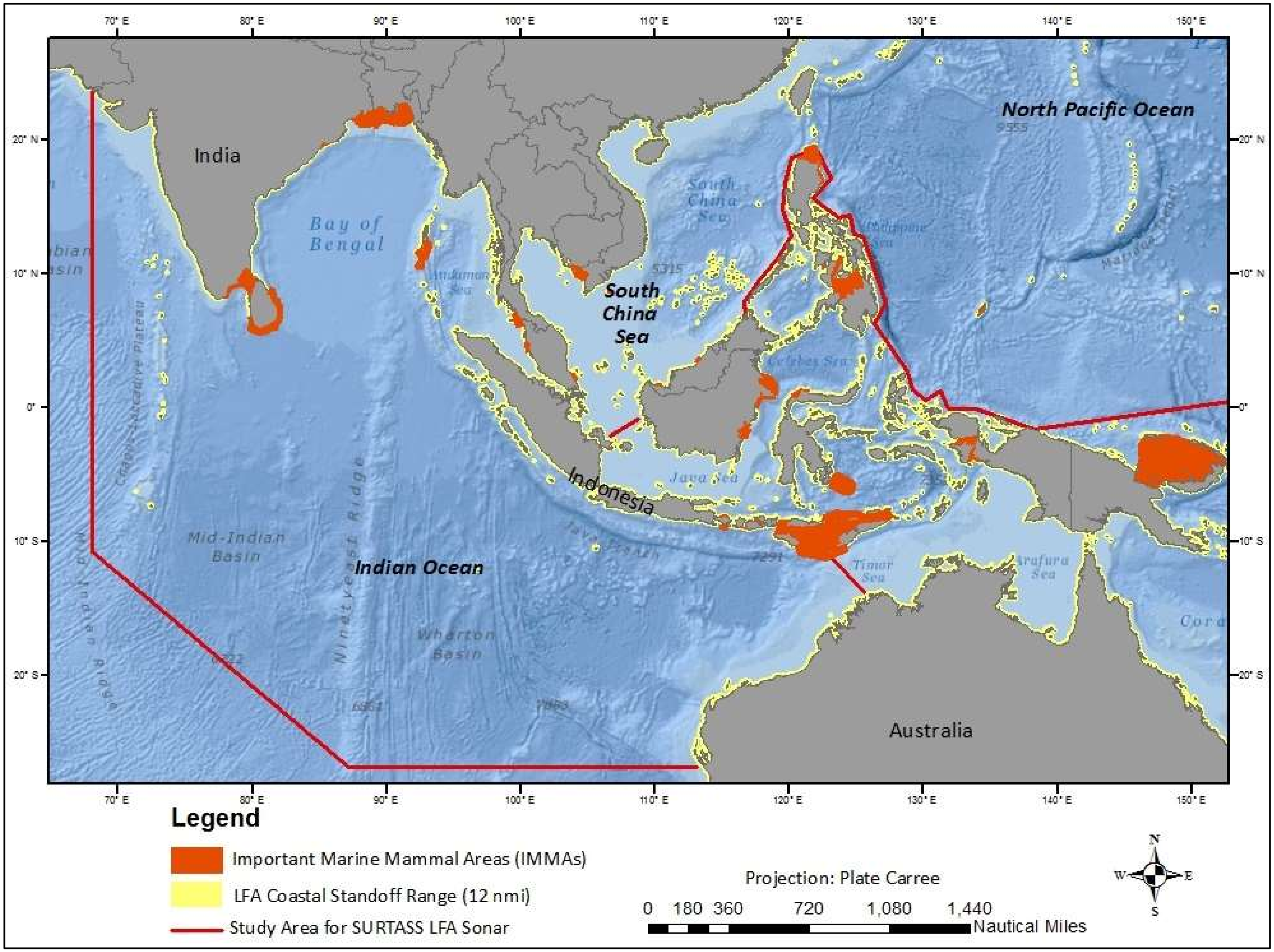



**Figure C-7. Locations of the Important Marine Mammal Areas (IMMAs) in the Indian Ocean Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar (IUCN MMPATF, 2017 and 2019).**

- China Shaanxi Changqing National Nature Reserve.

None of the IUCN Green List Areas has relevance to marine mammals or lies within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. Accordingly, no IUCN Green List areas are carried forward for further consideration as OBIAs.

## C-7. Ecologically or Biologically Significant Areas (EBSAs)

EBSAs are an effort of the Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD), which was initiated by the United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP). The CBD is an international legal instrument for the conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity. EBSAs are special marine areas in open-ocean waters and deep-sea habitats that serve important purposes that ultimately support the healthy functioning of oceans and thus, should have increased protection and sustainable management (CBD, 2018). To support effective policy action by countries and competent international and regional organizations, the concept of EBSAs was critical in building a sound understanding of the most ecologically and biologically important ocean areas that support healthy marine ecosystems. To date, 278 EBSAs globally have been designated by the UNEP CBD (CBD, 2018a).

EBSAs from the five pertinent geographic regions in the Indian and North Pacific oceans in which the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar is located were assessed as potential OBIAs. The five pertinent geographic regions were: North-East Indian Ocean, Southern Indian Ocean, East Asian Seas, North Pacific Ocean, and Western South Pacific Ocean. The 129 EBSAs in the five regions were spatially assessed to determine which occurred within or at least partially within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. The 54 EBSAs located within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar (Appendix Table C-2) were further assessed to determine if any marine mammals under NMFS's jurisdiction[6] were associated with the waters of the EBSAs (Appendix Table C-4). Of the 54 EBSAs in the LFA study area, only 19 of the EBSAs were pertinent to marine mammals under NMFS's jurisdiction (Appendix Table C-4; Figures C-8 and C-9). The 19 EBSAs were additionally assessed to determine if at last part of the EBSA was located outside the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA sonar. Fourteen of the 19 EBSAs related to marine mammals were located at least partially outside the coastal standoff range (Table 5-2); however, only 13 were carried forward because one of the EBSAs was pertinent only to coastal/inshore species of marine mammals. Thus, 13 EBSAs co-occur with SURTASS LFA sonar operations[7], met the other geographic criteria, and were pertinent to marine mammal species under NMFS jurisdiction. In addition, the Ogasawara Islands EBSA is being carried forward for additional review, even though the EBSA is located entirely within the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA sonar. In recognition of the importance of the Ogasawara area as a migrational waypoint and breeding/calving area for the endangered WNP DPS and stock of humpback whales, the waters beyond the coastal standoff range of the Ogasawara Islands were assessed to determine if an areal extent could be defined in which the important migrational or reproductive behavior of humpback whales occurs and if data are sufficient to support the determination. Ultimately, 14 EBSAs were carried forward for further assessment herein.

6 Dugongs, for instance, are under the jurisdiction of USFWS and occur typically in very shallow, coastal waters where SURTASS LFA sonar activities are not conducted, and as such, were excluded from further consideration in this SEIS/SOEIS.

7 As noted in Chapter 3, species must co-occur with SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities to be potentially affected by LFA sonar transmissions and thus, be considered herein. Accordingly, coastal/inshore species such as the dugong and Irrawaddy dolphin are not considered herein.

**Table C-4. Ecologically or Biologically Significant Areas (EBSAs) (CBD, 2018) Reviewed as Potential Marine Mammals Offshore Biologically Important Areas (OBIAs) for SURTASS LFA Sonar.**

| *EBSA Name* | *Important to Marine Mammal(s)* | *In LFA Study Area* | *Outside LFA Coastal Standoff Range* | *Relevant Marine Mammal(s)* | *Important Biological Behavior* | *Further Review as Potential OBIA* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Northeast Indian Ocean** | | | | | | |
| Olive Ridley Sea Turtle Migratory Corridor in the Bay of Bengal | N | Y | Y | NA | NA | N |
| Upwelling Zone of the Sumatra-Java Coast | N | Y | Y | NA | NA | N |
| Baa Atoll | N | Y | Y | NA | NA | N |
| Rasdhoo Atoll Reef | N | Y | Y | NA | NA | N |
| Trincomalee Canyon and Associated Ecosystems | Y | Y | Y, Part | Sperm and blue (pygmy) whales | Foraging | Y |
| Coastal and Offshore Gulf of Mannar | Y | Y | Y, Part | Dugong | Foraging | Y |
| Southern Coastal/Offshore Waters between Galle and Yala National Park | Y | Y | Y, Part | Blue whale | Foraging, small distinct population | Y; expansion of OBIA #26 |
| Trang, Home of the Dugongs | Y | Y | N | Dugong | Foraging | N |
| Lower Western Coastal Sea | Y | Y | Y, Part | Dugong | Foraging | N |
| Shelf Break Front | N | Y | Y | NA | NA | N |
| **Southern and Western Indian Ocean** | | | | | | |
| Sri Lankan Side of Gulf of Mannar | Y | Y | N | Dugong | Foraging | N |
| Due South of Great Australian Bight | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| South of Java Island | N | Y | Y | NA | NA | N |
| East Broken Ridge Guyot | N | Y | Y | NA | NA | N |
| Fool's Flat | N | Y | Y | NA | NA | N |
| Agulhas Front | Y | N | NA | Southern right whale and pinnipeds | Foraging | N |
| Rusky | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Central Indian Ocean Basin | N | Y | Y | NA | NA | N |
| Saya de Malha Bank | Y | N | NA | Pygmy blue and sperm whales | Foraging | N |
| Blue Bay Marine Park | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Atlantis Seamount | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |

**Table C-4. Ecologically or Biologically Significant Areas (EBSAs) (CBD, 2018) Reviewed as Potential Marine Mammals Offshore Biologically Important Areas (OBIAs) for SURTASS LFA Sonar.**

| *EBSA Name* | *Important to Marine Mammal(s)* | *In LFA Study Area* | *Outside LFA Coastal Standoff Range* | *Relevant Marine Mammal(s)* | *Important Biological Behavior* | *Further Review as Potential OBIA* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Mahe, Alphonse and Amirantes Plateau | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Tromelin Island | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Southern Madagascar (part of the Mozambique Channel) | Y | N | NA | Blue, Bryde's, southern right, sperm, and humpback whale | Foraging | N (OBIA #14 encompasses area) |
| Prince Edward Islands, Del Cano Rise and Crozet Islands | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Moheli Marine Park | Y | N | NA | Humpback whale | Breeding | N |
| Northern Mozambique Channel | Y | N | NA | Dugong | NK | N |
| Coral Seamount and Fracture Zone Feature | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Walters Shoals | Y | N | NA | Pygmy blue whale | Possible foraging | N |
| Lamu-Kiunga Area | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| The Iles Éparses (part of the Mozambique Channel) | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Mozambique Channel | Y | N | NA | Humpback whale | Calving | N |
| Pemba Bay—Mtwara (part of the Mozambique Channel) | Y | N | NA | Dugong | ? | N |
| Watamu Area | Y | N | NA | Humpback whale | Migration | N |
| Rufiji – Mafia- Kilwa | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Baixo Pinda – Pebane (Primeiras and Segundas Islands) | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Zanzibar (Unguja) – Saadani | Y | N | NA | Dugong, dolphins | Foraging? | N |
| Pemba-Shimoni-Kisite | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Tanga Coelacanth Marine Park | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Quelimane to Zuni River (Zambezi River Delta) | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Morrumbene to Zavora Bay (Southern Mozambique) | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Save River to San Sebastian (Central Mozambique) | Y | N | NA | Dugongs | Foraging | N |

**Table C-4. Ecologically or Biologically Significant Areas (EBSAs) (CBD, 2018) Reviewed as Potential Marine Mammals Offshore Biologically Important Areas (OBIAs) for SURTASS LFA Sonar.**

| *EBSA Name* | *Important to Marine Mammal(s)* | *In LFA Study Area* | *Outside LFA Coastal Standoff Range* | *Relevant Marine Mammal(s)* | *Important Biological Behavior* | *Further Review as Potential OBIA* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Delagoa Shelf Edge, Canyons and Slope | Y | N | NA | Humpback whale | Migration | N |
| Incomati River to Ponta do Ouro (Southern Mozambique) | Y | N | NA | Dugong | Foraging | N |
| Natal Bight | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Protea Banks and Sardine Route | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Offshore of Port Elizabeth | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Agulhas Slope and Seamounts | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Agulhas Bank Nursery Area | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| **East Asia Seas** | | | | | | |
| Bluefin Spawning Area | Y | Y | Y, Part | Humpback whale | Breeding/ Calving | Y |
| Sulu-Sulawesi Marine Ecoregion | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Redang Island Archipelago and Adjacent Area | N | Y | N | NA | NA | N |
| Hainan Dongzhaigang Mangrove National Natural Reserve | N | Y | N | NA | NA | N |
| Northeastern Honshu | N | Y | N | NA | NA | N |
| Kuroshio Current South of Honshu | Y | Y | Y, Part | Finless porpoise | Breeding | Y |
| Kyushu Palau Ridge | Y | Y | Y | Sperm whale | NR | Y |
| Convection Zone East of Honshu | Y | Y | Y | Baleen whales | Foraging | Y |
| Sagami Trough and Island and Seamount Chain of Izu-Ogasawara | N | Y | Y | NA | NA | N |
| Nankai Trough | N | Y | Y, Part | NA | NA | N |
| West Kuril Trench, Japan Trench, Izu-Ogasawara Trench and North of Mariana Trench | N | Y | Y | NA | NA | N |
| Ryukyu Trench area | N | Y | Y | NA | NA | N |
| Northern Coast of Hyogo, Kyoto, Fukui, Ishikawa and Toyama Prefectures | N | Y | N | NA | NA | N |
| Ogasawara Islands | Y | Y | N | Humpback whale | Breeding | Y |

**Table C-4. Ecologically or Biologically Significant Areas (EBSAs) (CBD, 2018) Reviewed as Potential Marine Mammals Offshore Biologically Important Areas (OBIAs) for SURTASS LFA Sonar.**

| *EBSA Name* | *Important to Marine Mammal(s)* | *In LFA Study Area* | *Outside LFA Coastal Standoff Range* | *Relevant Marine Mammal(s)* | *Important Biological Behavior* | *Further Review as Potential OBIA* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| South Kyushu including Yakushima and Tanegashima Islands | N | Y | N | NA | NA | N |
| Southern Coastal Areas of Shikoku and Honshu Islands | N | Y | N | NA | NA | N |
| Inland Sea Areas of Western Kyushu | N | Y | N | NA | NA | N |
| Southwest Islands | N | Y | N | NA | NA | N |
| Eastern Hokkaido | N | Y | N | NA | NA | N |
| Benham Rise | N | Y | Y | NA | NA | N |
| Atauro Island | Y | N | NA | Dugong | Migration | N |
| Raja Ampat and Northern Bird's Head | Y | Y, Part | Y, Part | Bryde's, false killer, killer, and sperm whales; dolphins (Indo Pacific humpback, pantropical spotted, Fraser's); dugong | Migration, small distinct population, | Y |
| Lampi Marine National Park | Y | Y | N | Dugong | Foraging | N |
| Koh Rong Marine National Park | Y | Y | N | False killer and short-finned pilot whales, dolphins (common, pantropical spotted, Irrawaddy, finless, and dwarf spinner), and dugong | ? | N |
| Tioman Marine Park | N | Y | N | NA | NA | N |
| Halong Bay-Catba Limestone Island Cluster | N | Y | N | NA | NA | N |
| Upper Gulf of Thailand | Y | Y | Y, Part | Bryde's whale, dolphins (finless, Irrawaddy, Indo-Pacific humpback, Indo-Pacific bottlenose) | Foraging, Breeding, Calving for Bryde's whale | Y |
| Nino Konis Santana National Park | Y | N | NA | Dolphins and whales | ? | N |

**Table C-4. Ecologically or Biologically Significant Areas (EBSAs) (CBD, 2018) Reviewed as Potential Marine Mammals Offshore Biologically Important Areas (OBIAs) for SURTASS LFA Sonar.**

| *EBSA Name* | *Important to Marine Mammal(s)* | *In LFA Study Area* | *Outside LFA Coastal Standoff Range* | *Relevant Marine Mammal(s)* | *Important Biological Behavior* | *Further Review as Potential OBIA* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Southern Straits of Malacca | N | Y | N | NA | NA | N |
| Intertidal Areas of East Asian Shallow Seas | N | Y | N | NA | NA | N |
| Muan Tidal Flat | N | Y | N | NA | NA | N |
| Cold Seeps | N | Y | Y | NA | NA | N |
| Nanji Islands Marine Reserve | N | Y | N | NA | NA | N |
| Shankou Mangrove National Nature Reserve | N | Y | N | NA | NA | N |
| **North Pacific Ocean** | | | | | | |
| Coronado Islands | Y | N | NA | Gray whale | Migration | N |
| Juan de Fuca Ridge Hydrothermal Vents | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Yamskie Islands and Western Shelikhov Bay | Y | N | NA | Steller sea lion; beluga and bowhead whales | Breeding and foraging | N |
| Guadalupe Island | Y | N | NA | Guadalupe fur seal | Breeding, pupping | N |
| Upper Gulf of California Region | Y | N | NA | Fin whale; common and bottlenose dolphins; California sea lion; vaquita | Foraging; small, distinct population | N |
| Alijos Islands | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Midriff Islands Region | Y | N | NA | Sperm, blue, fin, Bryde’s, minke, and killer whales; common dolphins; sea lions | Foraging, pupping | N |
| Coastal Waters Off Baja California | Y | N | NA | Gray whale | Calving | N |
| Emperor Seamount Chain and Northern Hawaiian Ridge | N | Y | Y | NA | NA | N |
| Focal Foraging Areas For Hawaiian Albatrosses During Egg-Laying And Incubation | N | Y | Y | NA | NA | N |
| North-east Pacific Ocean Seamounts | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| North Pacific Transition Zone | Y | Y, Part | Y | Elephant seal | Foraging | Y |

**Table C-4. Ecologically or Biologically Significant Areas (EBSAs) (CBD, 2018) Reviewed as Potential Marine Mammals Offshore Biologically Important Areas (OBIAs) for SURTASS LFA Sonar.**

| *EBSA Name* | *Important to Marine Mammal(s)* | *In LFA Study Area* | *Outside LFA Coastal Standoff Range* | *Relevant Marine Mammal(s)* | *Important Biological Behavior* | *Further Review as Potential OBIA* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Peter the Great Bay | Y | Y | Y, Small Part | Ringed and spotted seals | Breeding | Y |
| Commander Islands Shelf and Slope | Y | N | NA | Northern fur seal; Steller sea lion; killer whale; sea otter | Breeding, pupping, foraging | N |
| Shantary Islands Shelf, Amur and Tugur Bays | Y | N | NA | Bowhead, North Pacific right, fin, minke, humpback, killer, Baird's beaked, and beluga whales; Dall's and harbor porpoises; common dolphin | Foraging | N |
| East and South Chukotka Coast | Y | N | NA | Bowhead and beluga whales; walrus | Foraging, migration | N |
| Moneron Island Shelf | Y | Y | Y, Small Part | Steller sea lion, bearded seal | Breeding, pupping | Y |
| Eastern Shelf of Sakhalin Island | Y | N | NA | Gray whale | Foraging | N (OBIA #12 encompasses area) |
| West Kamchatka Shelf | Y | N | NA | Steller sea lion; northern fur seal; spotted seal; sea otter; beluga, fin, gray, and North Pacific right whales | Foraging | N |
| Southeast Kamchatka Coastal Waters | Y | Y | Y, Small part | Killer whale; harbor seal; Steller sea lion | Foraging | Y |
| **Western South Pacific Ocean** | | | | | | |
| Tongan Archipelago | Y | N | NA | Humpback whale | Breeding/calving | N |
| Palau Southwest | N | Y | Y | NA | NA | N |
| Niue Island and Beveridge Reef | Y | N | NA | Humpback whale | Migration | N |

**Table C-4. Ecologically or Biologically Significant Areas (EBSAs) (CBD, 2018) Reviewed as Potential Marine Mammals Offshore Biologically Important Areas (OBIAs) for SURTASS LFA Sonar.**

| *EBSA Name* | *Important to Marine Mammal(s)* | *In LFA Study Area* | *Outside LFA Coastal Standoff Range* | *Relevant Marine Mammal(s)* | *Important Biological Behavior* | *Further Review as Potential OBIA* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Manihiki Plateau | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Taveuni and Ringgold Islands | Y | N | NA | Humpback whale | | N |
| Northern New Zealand/South Fiji Basin | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Northern Lord Howe Ridge Petrel Foraging Area | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Clipperton Fracture Zone Petrel Foraging Area | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Western South Pacific High Aragonite Saturation State Zone | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Central Louisville Seamount Chain | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Equatorial High-Productivity Zone | Y | N | NA | Sperm whale | | N |
| South Tasman Sea | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Vatu-i-Ra/Lomaiviti, Fiji | Y | N | NA | Humpback whale, spinner dolphin | Migration, calving (humpback) | N |
| South of Tuvalu/Wallis and Fortuna/North of Fiji Plateau | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Suwarrow National Park | Y | N | NA | Humpback whale | Calving, breeding | N |
| Samoan Archipelago | Y | N | NA | Humpback whale | | N |
| Rarotonga Outer Reef Slopes | Y | N | NA | Humpback whale | Calving, breeding | N |
| New Hebrides Trench Region | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| New Britain Trench Region | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Monowai Seamount | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Kermadec-Tonga-Louisville Junction | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Kadavu and the Southern Lau Region | Y | N | NA | Humpback, minke, sei, and sperm whales | Migration | N |
| Remetau group: South-West Caroline Islands and Northern New Guinea | N | Y, Part | Y | NA | NA | N |
| Seamounts of West Norfolk Ridge | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |
| Ua Puakaoa Seamounts | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |

**Table C-4. Ecologically or Biologically Significant Areas (EBSAs) (CBD, 2018) Reviewed as Potential Marine Mammals Offshore Biologically Important Areas (OBIAs) for SURTASS LFA Sonar.**

| *EBSA Name* | *Important to Marine Mammal(s)* | *In LFA Study Area* | *Outside LFA Coastal Standoff Range* | *Relevant Marine Mammal(s)* | *Important Biological Behavior* | *Further Review as Potential OBIA* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Phoenix Islands | N | N | NA | NA | NA | N |

NR=not recorded; NA=Not applicable; Y=Yes; N=No

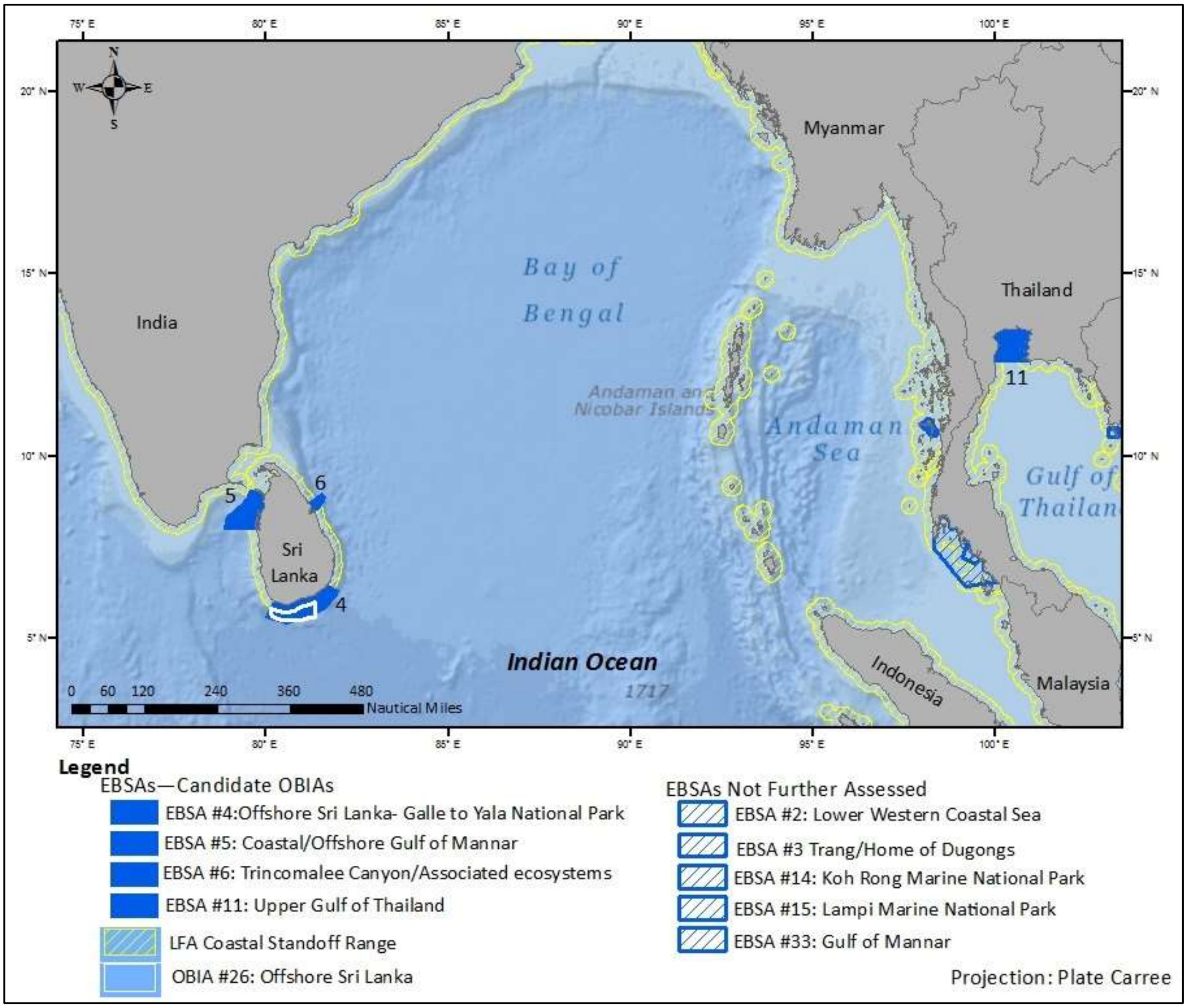



**Figure C-8. Locations of Ecologically or Biologically Significant Areas (EBSAs) (CBD, 2018a) in the Eastern Indian Ocean Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar, Including Those Assessed as Candidate Offshore Biologically Important Areas.**

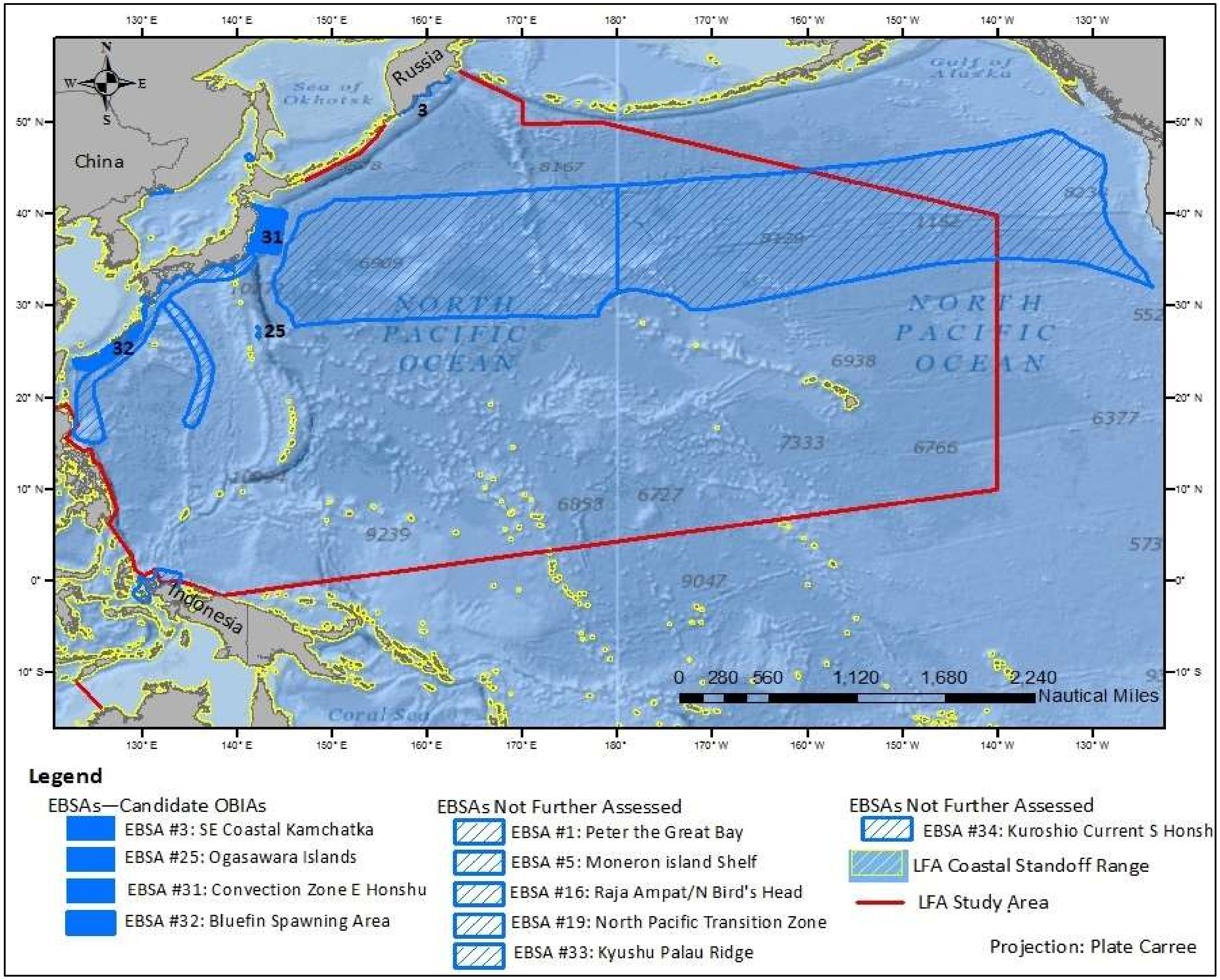



**Figure C-9. Locations of the Ecologically or Biologically Significant Areas (EBSAs) (CBD, 2018a) in the Western and Central North Pacific Ocean Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar, Including Those Assessed as Candidate Offshore Biologically Important Areas.**

## C-8. Public Comment Recommendations

Public comments were sought on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS and MMPA Proposed Rule for SURTASS LFA sonar. Marine areas were recommended for consideration as OBIAs in public comments received on both the Draft SEIS/SOEIS and Proposed Rule from the Marine Mammal Commission and a group of non-governmental organizations represented by the Natural Resources Defense Council (NRDC). For comments on the Draft SEIS/SOEIS, the NRDC et al. group consisted of these organizations: NRDC, Humane Society Legislative Fund, Humane Society of the U.S., and Ocean Conservation Research. For the Proposed Rule, the NRDC et al. group included: NRDC, The Humane Society of the U.S., and Humane Society Legislative Fund.

A total of 93 marine area recommendations were received for consideration as OBIAs in the public comments from the two groups (Appendix Table C-2). These areas included 30 IMMAs for the Southeast Asian Seas and Northeast Indian Ocean that were designated in February 2019. Many of the comments in the Draft SEIS/SOEIS and the Proposed Rule recommended the same marine areas, so after duplicate areas were removed, 69 marine areas remained to be assessed. Only one of the recommended marine areas was not located within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar (Commander Islands), but the remaining 68 marine areas, including the 30 newly designated IMMAs, were assessed for concurrence with the selection criteria for OBIAs. Of the 68 marine areas, 48 were carried forward for assessment of the remaining OBIA selection criteria and factors.

## C-9. Marine Area Summaries

Included in this appendix are summaries of all the marine areas that have been considered as marine mammal OBIAs for SURTASS LFA sonar. Marine areas were initially considered if they met the geographic criteria of being located within the study area and outside the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA sonar, and at first review, had some relevance to at least one marine mammal species. Thus, all marine areas listed herein meet the OBIA geographic criteria. Navy and NMFS did not differentiate the marine areas for relevance to LF-sensitive marine mammal species until all available information and data were gathered and reviewed. Even if the designation purpose of an area was for a specific marine mammal species, such as shallow water, inshore/coastal odontocetes or dugongs, the Navy and NMFS reviewed all available information about potentially occurring marine mammals in each marine area, as sometimes other species including baleen whales occurred in those waters.

After concluding the evaluation of all available data and information for all considered marine areas (Appendix Table C-2), the Navy and NMFS made determinations on which areas met all OBIA criteria except the Navy operational practicability criterion. Several considered marine areas were located adjacent spatially to one another, such as off the coasts of Western Australia and Sri Lanka, where multiple adjacent areas were considered for migrating blue and/or humpback whales. Since these migrating cetaceans would be moving through these adjacent areas seasonally, it was logical to combine the adjacent areas to create larger OBIAs that encompassed the seasonal movements. Additionally, some marine areas, such as the Gulf of Mannar, included more than one type of assessed marine area (e.g., an EBSA and IMMA are included in the Gulf of Mannar). In those cases, both types of marine areas were assessed together and are presented in the same marine summary.

The marine area summaries in this appendix are listed in two sections: (1) marine areas that meet the geographic and biological criteria and LF-sensitivity, and accordingly, are considered candidate OBIAs that underwent Navy operational practicability review; and (2) marine areas that are not further considered as OBIAs for SURTASS LFA sonar because they do not meet the OBIA selection criteria

(Appendix Table C-5). Candidate OBIAs have been created for 15 marine areas, while 18 marine areas are not further considered as OBIAs. However, some of the areas not considered further herein have been added to the OBIA Watchlist for future re-assessment.

Candidate OBIAs may be associated with more than one of the marine areas that were assessed. Some assessed marine areas encompass nearly the same geographic extents (e.g., Northwest Hawaiian Islands (HI) IMMA and Papahānaumokuākea MNM), with the same candidate OBIA (Northwest HI) being associated with both marine area summaries (i.e., one candidate OBIA for two marine area summaries). Conversely, more than one candidate OBIA may be associated with the same marine area (e.g., candidate OBIAs within the Ogasawara IMMA: Ogasawara sperm whales and Ogasawara-Kazin humpback whales). Due to these types of combinations, 14 candidate OBIAs having been designated for 15 marine areas (Appendix Table C-6) that were assessed for Navy operational practicability.

All the marine area summaries are numbered sequentially. The marine areas are presented in both Part I and Part II in order from east to west across the North Pacific and then the Indian Ocean. The marine area summaries include map figures of the assessed area and the supporting literature cited for each area is included in that area's summary. The marine area summaries associated with the candidate OBIAs include the preliminary boundaries recommended for each candidate OBIA. An explanation is included on the derivation of the candidate OBIA boundary and the most important factors related to the boundary's creation. On the map figures included in each marine area summary, the boundaries of the candidate OBIAs are shown in purple and are labeled as "Potential Areas" (with the working name of the candidate area inserted). These candidate OBIA boundaries are not typically the same as the geographic boundary of the assessed marine area, such as an EBSA, since often the marine area boundaries did not encompass the geographic extent of the biologically important marine mammal activities or the marine area boundary was created for another purpose.

## C-10. Literature Cited


British Indian Ocean Territory (BIOT). (2019). *Marine protected area*. Retrieved from <https://biot.gov.io/environment/marine-protected-area/>.

Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD). (2018). Background on the EBSA process. Retrieved from <https://www.cbd.int/ebsa/about>.

CBD. (2018a). GIS spatial data of ecologically and biologically significant areas. Data downloaded in 2018 from The Clearing-House Mechanism of the Convention on Biological Diversity Database.

Dunne, R. P., Polunin, N. V. C., Sand, P. H., & Johnson, M. L. (2014). The Creation of the Chagos Marine Protected Area: A Fisheries Perspective. In M. L. Johnson & J. Sandell (Eds.), *Advances in Marine Biology, Vol. 69* (pp. 79-127). Oxford, England: Academic Press.

International Union for the Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources-Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force (IUCN-MMPATF). (2017). The IUCN global dataset of important marine mammal areas (IUCN-IMMA). [March and July 2018]. Made available under agreement on terms and conditions of use by the IUCN Joint SSC/WCPA Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force and accessible via the IMMA e-Atlas <http://www.marinemammalhabitat.org/imma-eatlas/>.

IUCN. (2018). *IUCN geen list of protected and conserved areas*. Retrieved from <https://www.iucn.org/sites/dev/files/iucn_gl_brochure_march2018.pdf>.

**Table C-5. Marine Areas Considered as Candidate OBIAs and those not Further Considered as OBIAs, the Ocean Area where each Marine Area is Located, and the Proposed Name of the Candidate OBIAs.**

| *Marine Area Number* | *Marine Area Name* | *Ocean Area* | *Candidate OBIA Name* |
|---|---|---|---|
| ***Candidate OBIAs: Marine Areas Meeting OBIA Designation Criteria*** | | | |
| 1 | Main Hawaiian Archipelago | Central North Pacific Ocean | Main Hawaiian Islands |
| 2 | Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument | Central North Pacific Ocean | Northwestern Hawaiian Islands |
| 3 | Northwestern Hawaiian Islands | Central North Pacific Ocean | |
| 4 | Marianas Trench Marine National Monument | Western North Pacific Ocean | Marianas |
| 5 | Bluefin Spawning/Babuyan Marine Corridor | Western North Pacific Ocean | Ryukyu-Philippines |
| 6 | Ogasawara Islands | Western North Pacific Ocean | Ogasawara (sperm whales), Ogasawara-Kazin (humpbacks) |
| 7 | Convection Zone East of Honshu | Western North Pacific Ocean | Honshu |
| 8 | Southeast Kamchatka Coastal Waters | Western North Pacific Ocean | Southeast Kamchatka |
| 9 | Upper Gulf of Thailand/Bay of Bangkok | Eastern Indian Ocean | Gulf of Thailand |
| 10 | Savu Sea and Surrounding Areas | Eastern Indian Ocean | Western Australia (blue whales), Western Australia (humpback whales) |
| 11 | North Western Australia Shelf/Ningaloo Reef | Eastern Indian Ocean | |
| 12 | Western Australia (Shark Bay to Exmouth Gulf) | Eastern Indian Ocean | |
| 13 | Browse Basin | Eastern Indian Ocean | |
| 14 | Southern Bali Peninsula and Slope | Eastern Indian Ocean | Southern Bali |
| 15 | Swatch-of-No-Ground (SoNG) | Northern Bay of Bengal | SoNG |
| 16 | Trincomalee Canyon and Associated Ecosystems | Eastern Indian Ocean | Sri Lanka |
| 17 | Southern Coastal/Offshore Waters between Galle and Yala National Park | Eastern Indian Ocean | |
| ***Marine Areas Not Further Considered for OBIAs*** | | | |
| 18 | Hawaiian Monk Seal Critical Habitat | Central North Pacific Ocean | |
| 19 | Main Hawaiian Island Insular DPS of False Killer Whale Critical Habitat | Central North Pacific Ocean | |
| 20 | Pacific Remote Islands Marine National Monument (Only Wake/ Johnson/Palmyra atolls and Kingman Reef Units) | Western and Central North Pacific Ocean | |
| 21 | Kyushu Palau Ridge | Western North Pacific Ocean | |
| 22 | Raja Ampat and Northern Bird's Head | Western North Pacific Ocean | |

**Table C-5. Marine Areas Considered as Candidate OBIAs and those not Further Considered as OBIAs, the Ocean Area where each Marine Area is Located, and the Proposed Name of the Candidate OBIAs.**

| *Marine Area Number* | *Marine Area Name* | *Ocean Area* | *Candidate OBIA Name* |
|---|---|---|---|
| 23 | North Pacific Transition Zone | Western North Pacific Ocean | |
| 24 | Polar/Kuroshio Extension Fronts | Western North Pacific Ocean | |
| 25 | Kuroshio Current South of Honshu | Western North Pacific Ocean | |
| 26 | Peter the Great Bay | Western North Pacific Ocean | |
| 27 | Moneron Island Shelf | Western North Pacific Ocean | |
| 28 | Kien Giang and Kep Archipelago | Southeast Asian Seas | |
| 29 | Southern Andaman Islands | Northeastern Indian Ocean | |
| 30 | Gulf of Mannar and Palk Bay | North Indian Ocean | |
| 31 | Lakshadweep Archipelago | Central Indian Ocean | |
| 32 | West and South Coasts of India | Central Indian Ocean | |
| 33 | West of Maldives | Central Indian Ocean | |

**Table C-6. Candidate Marine Mammal Offshore Biologically Important Areas (OBIAs) in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar Reviewed for Navy Operational Practicability.**

| *Candidate OBIA Number* | *Candidate OBIA Name* | *Ocean Area* | *Relevant Low-Frequency Marine Mammal Species* | *Effective Seasonal Period* | *Notes* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Main Hawaiian Islands | Central North Pacific | Humpback whale | November to April | Expansion of existing OBIA #16, Penguin Bank |
| 2 | Northwestern Hawaiian Islands | Central North Pacific | Humpback whale | December to April | |
| 3 | Marianas | Western North Pacific | Humpback whale | February to April | |
| 4 | Ryukyu-Philippines | Western North Pacific | Humpback whale | January to April | |
| 5 | Ogasawara (Sperm Whale) | Western North Pacific | Sperm whale | June to September | |
| 6 | Ogasawara-Kazin (Humpback Whale) | Western North Pacific | Humpback whale | December to May | |
| 7 | Honshu | Western North Pacific | Gray whale | January to May | |
| 8 | Southeast Kamchatka | Western North Pacific | Humpback, fin, Western North Pacific gray, and North Pacific right whales | June to September | |
| 9 | Gulf of Thailand | Eastern Indian Ocean | Bryde's whale | April to November | |
| 10 | Western Australia (Blue Whale) | Eastern Indian Ocean | Blue (pygmy) whale | May to November | |
| 11 | Western Australia (Humpback Whale) | Eastern Indian Ocean | Humpback whale | May to December | Expansion of existing OBIA #27, Kimberly-Camden Sound |
| 12 | Southern Bali | Eastern Indian Ocean | Bryde's, sei, humpback, Omura's, and sperm whales | October to November | |
| 13 | Swatch-of-No-Ground (SoNG) | Northern Bay of Bengal | Bryde's whale | Year-round | Expansion of existing OBIA #20, Northern Bay of Bengal/SoNG |
| 14 | Sri Lanka | Eastern Indian Ocean | Blue (pygmy) and sperm whales | October to April | Expansion of existing OBIA #26, Offshore Sri Lanka |

IUCN-MMPATF. (2018). IMMA selection criteria. Retrieved from <https://www.marinemammal habitat.org/activities/immas/imma-criteria/>.

IUCN-MMPATF. (2019). Important marine mammal area regional workshop for the North East Indian Ocean and South East Asian Seas: Final report of the third IMMA workshop, Kota Kinabalu, Sabah, Malaysia, 12-16 March 2018. Retrieved from <https://www.marinemammalhabitat.org/ downloads/>.

IUCN WCPA-SSC Joint Task Force on Biodiversity and Protected Areas and IUCN WCPA-SSC Joint Task Force on Marine Mammal Protected Areas. (2018). Important marine mammal areas. Retrieved from <https://www.marinemammalhabitat.org/activities/immas/>.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). (2015). GIS spatial data of final Hawaiian monk seal critical habitat. Pacific Island Regional Office, Honolulu, HI. <https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/ resource/map/hawaiian-monk-seal-critical-habitat-map>.

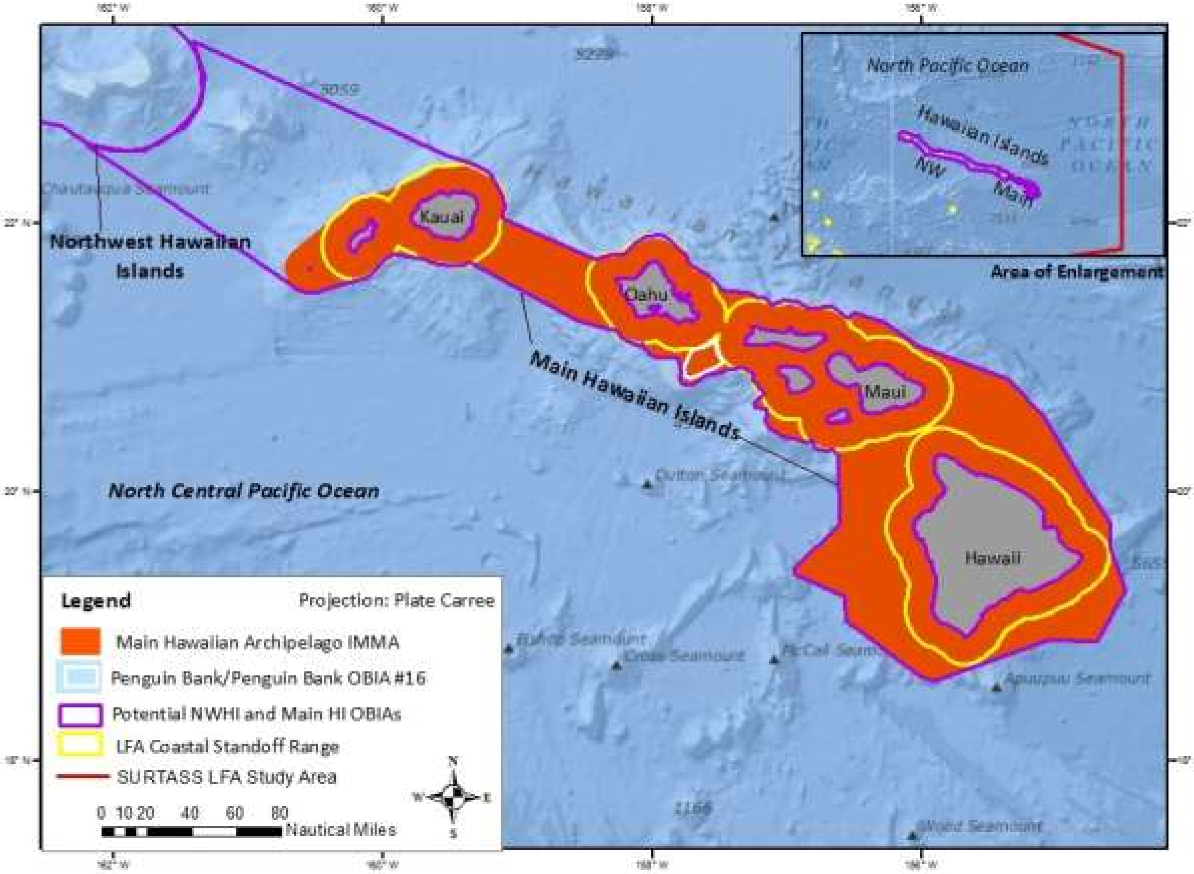
NMFS. (2018). GIS spatial data of final critical habitat for the Main Hawaiian Islands Insular DPS of false killer whale. Pacific Island Regional Office, Honolulu, HI. Dataset ID: 53292.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA). (2015). Endangered and threatened species: Final rulemaking to revise critical habitat for Hawaiian monk seals. *Federal Register, 80*(162), 50926-50988.

NOAA. (2018). Endangered and threatened wildlife and plants: Final rulemaking to designate critical habitat for the Main Hawaiian Islands insular false killer whale distinct population segment; Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 83*(142), 35062-35095.

# PART I: CANDIDATE OFFSHORE BIOLOGICALLY IMPORTANT AREAS (OBIAS): MARINE AREAS MEETING OBIA DESIGNATION CRITERIA

| Main Hawaiian Archipelago | 1 |
|---|---|




**MARINE REGION:** Central North Pacific Ocean

**COUNTRY:** USA

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:** Hawaiian monk seal; false killer, pygmy killer, short-finned pilot, dwarf sperm, Blainville's beaked, Cuvier's beaked, humpback, and melon-headed whales; common bottlenose, pantropical spotted, rough-toothed, and spinner dolphins

**MARINE AREA TYPE**

☒ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA** (OBIA #16, Penguin Bank)

☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**

☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**

☐ **IUCN Green List Site**

☒ **IMMA** (Main Hawaiian Archipelago)

☐ **EBSA**

☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**

☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**

☐ **U.S. MPA**

☐ **U.S. Critical Habitat** (Hawaiian monk seal; Main Hawaiian Islands DPS of false killer whales)

☐ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**AREA OVERVIEW:**

Important marine mammal areas (IMMAs) are the result of a joint effort of the International Committee on Marine Mammal Protected Areas and IUCN World Commission of Protected Areas (WCPA) and Species Survival Commission (SSC). IMMAs are created to represent discrete portions of marine habitat that are important to one or more species of marine mammals; represent priority sites for marine mammal conservation (with no management implications); and merit protection and monitoring.

The Main Hawaiian Archipelago IMMA is biologically important for multiple species of marine mammals:

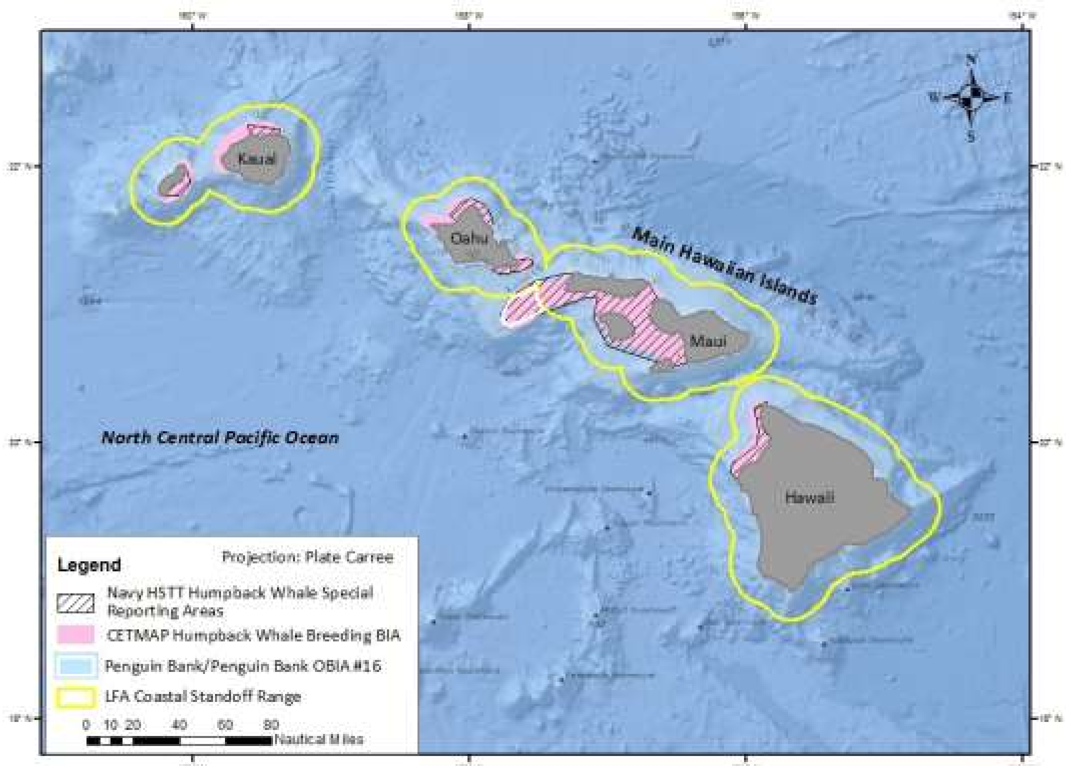
- BIAs have been recognized for small, resident odontocete populations of beaked whales (Cuvier's and Blainville's), spinner, pantropical spotted, rough-toothed, and common bottlenose dolphins; pygmy killer, dwarf sperm, short-finned pilot, and melon-headed whales
- Species or population vulnerability—false killer whales (Main Hawaiian Islands Insular DPS of false killer whales is listed as endangered)
- Seasonal reproductive areas for humpback whales
- Diversity—evidence of resident population of at least 12 species of marine mammals in the MHI (Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force, 2019).

The central focus on LFA-sensitive species occurring in MHI waters and biologically important behaviors would be the humpback whale, which migrates seasonally to the MHI, where the largest humpback breeding and calving ground in the North Pacific Ocean is located. Humpbacks that occur in the MHI are part of the Hawaii DPS, which are not listed under the ESA (Bettridge et al., 2015). More than half the population of the Hawaii DPS migrates during winter to the MHI (Baird et al., 2015). Although never witnessed, breeding and calving are assumed to occur somewhere in the waters of the MHI, with behaviors related to courtship and mating having been documented (National Geographic, 2018; Silvers, 1997). Humpback whales begin arriving as early as October in Hawaiian waters and remain through May or early June, with the peak density of whales occurring in January through March (Herman and Antinoja, 1977).

Most humpbacks in the MHIs occur in waters 600 ft (183 m) especially in the waters of Maui, Molokaʻi, Lānaʻi, and Kahoʻolawe and Penguin Bank, with breeding female humpbacks and female humpbacks with calves generally prefer coastal waters and shallow (<65 ft [20 m]) banks adjoining the MHI (Craig and Herman, 2000; Herman, 1979; Smultea, 1994). Female-calf pairs have been observed in nearshore waters of several MHI localities and within 0.3 nmi (0.5 km) of the shoreline along the coast of West Maui (Glocker-Ferrari and Ferrari, 1990). Accounts of habitat use by female-calf pairs between 1980 and 1984 indicated some dispersal from the Maui shoreline to 1.6 to 2.2 nmi (3 to 4 km), which was why the State of Hawaii implemented the current wintertime ban on small watercraft in near-shore waters. Likewise, Cartwright et al. (2012) found that the preferred regions for female-calf pairs in the waters of Au'au Chanel between the islands of Maui and Lanai were between 131 to 197 ft (40 to 60 m) in depth with regions of rugged bottom topography located between 2.2 to 3.2 nmi (4 to 6 km) from a small boat harbor (Lahaina Harbor). Females with calves also appear to prefer certain regions over others, with nearly 75 percent of all calves observed some seasons are observed in the 4-Island region compared to only 11 percent in Hawaii waters (Craig and Herman, 2000). However, Pack et al. (2017) found that both calf age and size influence habitat choice by mother-calf pairs in their breeding grounds, with the movement of the mothers and their maturing calves into deeper waters with more rugged sea floor topography appears to be part of a continuum of behavioral changes as the whales prepare to migrate from the breeding grounds.

Baird et al. (2015) characterized BIAs of odontocetes and mysticetes in Hawaiian waters as part of the CETMAP program. Using published, unpublished, and expert opinion, Baird et al. (2015) characterized one humpback whale reproductive area in the MHI based on high densities of humpback whales from February through March. The entire extent of the humpback whale BIA, except that located on Penguin Bank, is within the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA sonar (see second map figure below). Not only is Penguin Bank an existing OBIA for humpback whales wherein LFA sonar would not be operated such that received levels >180 dB would enter the waters within 0.54 nmi (1 km) of the Penguin Bank OBIA from November through April annually, but the Navy has an agreement with the State of Hawaii to not operate LFA sonar on Penguin Bank, as defined by the 600-ft (183-m) depth contour.

The Navy's Hawaii Range Complex, which is part of the Navy's HSTT study area, overlaps with the central North Pacific part of the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. In the HSTT study area, the Navy applies both procedural and geographic mitigation measures (DoN, 2018). These mitigation areas have been designed to benefit particular species and/or stocks of marine mammals and may include the application of mitigation measures year-round or seasonally, depending on the unique characteristics of the area. One of the mitigation geographic mitigation measures for the HSTT study area are Humpback Whale Special Reporting Areas (see map figure above), which encompasses the Hawaiian Islands Humpback




Whale National Marine Sanctuary plus a 2.7-nmi (5-km) buffer around the sanctuary, excluding the Pacific Missile Range Facility. The Humpback Whale National Marine Sanctuary, which includes Penguin Bank, was established in the MHI principally to protect the key North Pacific humpback whale breeding/calving/nursery ground. Overall, this mitigation measure is designed to avoid or reduce potential impacts from mid-frequency active sonar and explosives within the mitigation area on humpback whales. The Navy would continue to report the total hours of surface ship hull-mounted mid-frequency active sonar it uses in the Humpback Whale Special Reporting Areas from December 15 through April 15, which would aid the Navy and NMFS in analyzing the effectiveness of mitigation in these areas during the adaptive management process.

NOTE: Other marine areas in the MHI were also assessed as potential marine mammal OBIAs for SURTASS LFA sonar. The Hawaiian Monk Seal Critical Habitat and Main Hawaiian Island Insular DPS of False Killer Whale Critical Habitat areas in the MHI encompass much of the same geographic area with the same relevant marine mammal species as the MH Archipelago IMMA.

**CANDIDATE OBIA #1—MAIN HAWAIIAN ISLANDS BOUNDARY:**

The proposed boundary for the Potential Main Hawaiian Island OBIA is coincident with the boundary of the Main Hawaiian Island IMMA and merges with the boundary of the NWHI Potential Area to create a migrational space for seasonally migrating humpback whales as they travel from the NWHI to the MHI, which is the location of a breeding/calving ground.

**GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA**

**Location in LFA Study Area**: IMMA: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

**Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range** (12 nmi from emergent land): IMMA: ☐ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside

**Eligible Areal Extent:** 8,366.76 $nmi^2$ (28,697.20 $km^2$)

**Source of Official Boundary:** IMMA: IUCN-Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force
CETMAP BIAs: Office of Science and Technology, National Marine Fisheries Service
Navy Hawaii Mitigation Areas: DoN (2018)

**Spatial File Type:** GIS Shapefiles

**Spatial File Source**: IMMA: IUCN-Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force (MMPATF), 2017. GIS data made available by the IUCN Global Dataset of Important Marine Mammal Areas (IUCN-IMMA), July 2018. Made available under agreement on terms of use by the IUCN Joint SSC/WCPA Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force and accessible at IMMA e-Atlas <www.marinemammalhabitat.org/imma-eatlas>.
CETMAP BIAs: Office of Science and Technology, National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
Navy Hawaii Reporting Areas: DoN (2018)

**Date Obtained/Created**: IMMA: 7/28/18; CETMAP BIAs: 4/27/2015; Navy Hawaii Humpback Reporting Areas: 10/30/18; Navy Potential MHI Area: 5/1/19

**LOW FREQUENCY HEARING SENSITIVITY**

☒ Species: humpback whale

## BIOLOGICAL CRITERIA

**High Density**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Breeding / Calving**: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Migration**: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Foraging:** ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Distinct Small Population**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Critical Habitat**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data (monk seal and FKW)

## SEASONAL EFFECTIVE PERIOD

☐ Year-round ☒ Seasonal Period (Months Annually): November to May (humpback whale)

## OBIA WATCHLIST ADDITION

☐ Yes ☒ No

## SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION

### Peer Reviewed Articles

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Pack, A. A., Herman, L. M., Craig, A. S., Spitz, S. S., Waterman, J. O., Herman, E. Y. K., . . . Lowe, C. (2017). Habitat preferences by individual humpback whale mothers in the Hawaiian breeding grounds vary with the age and size of their calves. *Animal Behaviour, 133*, 131e144. doi:10.1016/j.anbehav.2017.09.012. | This study investigated whether calf age and calf size influenced habitat choice by humpback whale mother-calf pairs in their Hawaiian breeding grounds. During 1997 to 2008, we conducted focal follows of mother-calf pairs. Across 72 mother-calf pairs re-sighted over various intervals within a breeding season, the magnitude of depth changes between initial and final sightings increased significantly with re-sighting interval. Although no preference for sea-bed terrain type by mother-calf pairs existed at their initial sighting, by their final re-sighting, there was a preference for rugged terrain. Thus, both calf age and size influence habitat choice by mother-calf pairs in their breeding grounds. The movement of mothers and their maturing calves into deeper waters where they favor rugged sea-bed terrain appears to be part of a suite of behavioral changes during the pre-migratory phase of residency in the breeding grounds. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Baird, R. W., Cholewiak, D., Webster, D. L., Schorr, G. S., Mahaffy, S. D., Curtice, C., . . . Van Parijs, S. M. (2015). Biologically important areas for cetaceans within U.S. waters–Hawai'i region. *Aquatic Mammals, 41*(1), 54-64. doi:10.1578/am.41.1.2015.54. | Using existing published, unpublished information, and expert judgment for U.S. Hawaii waters, 20 biologically important areas (BIAs) were identified and created for small and resident populations of odontocetes and one reproductive area for humpback whales in both the Main and Northwest Hawaiian Islands. |
| Cartwright, R., Gillespie, B., Labonte, K., Mangold, T., Venema, A., Eden, K., & Sullivan, M. (2012). Between a rock and a hard place: Habitat selection in female-calf humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) pairs on the Hawaiian breeding grounds. *PLoS ONE, 7*(5), e38004. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0038004. | The Au'au Channel between the islands of Maui and Lanai, Hawaii comprises critical breeding habitat for humpback whales of the Central North Pacific stock. However, these waters are also the focus of local eco-tourism and whale watching vessels. Our study focused on the current trends in habitat preference in female-calf humpback whale pairs within this region, focusing specifically on the busy, eastern portions of the channel. Our study revealed that while mysticete female-calf pairs on breeding grounds typically favor shallow, inshore waters, female-calf pairs in the Au'au Channel avoided shallow waters (67 ft [20 m]) and regions within 2 km of the shoreline. Preferred regions for female-calf pairs comprised water depths between 131 to 197 ft (40 to 60 m), regions of rugged bottom topography and regions that lay between 2.2 to 3.2 n,l (4 and 6 km) from a small boat harbor (Lahaina Harbor), and only minimal evidence of typical patterns of stratification or segregation according to group composition. Our study suggests that within the Hawaiian Islands, maternal females alter their use of habitat according to locally varying pressures. |
| Craig, A. S., & Herman, L. M. (2000). Habitat preferences of female humpback whales *Megaptera novaeangliae* in the Hawaiian Islands are associated with reproductive status. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 193*, 209-216. | Photographs of humpback whales, including 63 females, sighted in at least two years with at least one calf, were taken in waters off Maui and Hawaii between 1977 and 1994. Calves formed a significantly larger proportion of the population off Maui than off Hawaii. The overall proportion of calves to all whales identified (crude birth rate) was 0.099 off Maui and 0.061 off Hawaii. Also, considering only females seen in more than one year, the number of calves per female per year (calving rate) was 0.71 off Maui and 0.52 off Hawaii. Females sighted at both Maui and Hawaii in different years were with a calf significantly more often in Maui waters than in Hawaii waters. We concluded that habitat utilization by females varied between Maui and Hawaii, appearing to depend in part upon reproductive status. |
| Silvers, L. E., Atkinson, S., Iwasa, M., Combelles, C., & Salden, D. R. (1997). A large placenta encountered in | Copulation has not been witnessed in humpback whales, but behaviors consistent with courtship and |

the Hawaiian winter grounds of the humpback whale, *Megaptera novaeangliae*. *Marine Mammal Science, 13*(4), 711-716.

mating have been documented. Neither has a birth of a humpback whale been witnessed. In January 1994, a whale-watching captain observed what he believed to be a humpback whale giving birth on known breeding and calving grounds of h humpback whales in Hawaii. The solitary whale thrashed at the surface, dove for an extended time, and resurfaced with a very small calf. The captain noticed what appeared to be a large placenta in the water after the female surfaced with the calf. The whale-watch boat was able to obtain pieces of the placenta before it sank. The tissue was frozen in seawater and sent for analysis. The photographic and biochemical analysis of the tissue proved that it was a placenta, and the estimated size and structure of the material suggested that it is consistent with that of an animal as large as a humpback whale and may well have resulted from the birth of a humpback whale calf.

Smultea, M. A. (1994). Segregation by humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) cows with a calf in coastal habitat near the island of Hawaii. *Canadian Journal of Zoology, 72*, 805-811.

Humpback whales were tracked from the shore of Hawaii during the winter 1988 and 1989. The temporal and spatial distributions of whales differed with group size and composition. During afternoon hours, groups containing a calf occurred in water significantly shallower and nearer to shore than did groups without a calf. Late in the breeding season, the same segregation pattern occurred throughout the day. Distances between groups was greatest for those groups with calves. The number of whales observed per hour peaked during mid-February. Adults without a calf may use deep water to facilitate breeding behavior, while maternal females may use shallower water to avoid harassment and injury to calves from sexually active males, harsh sea conditions, or predators. The predominance of cows with a calf in coastal habitats increases their exposure to expanding human-related development and aquatic activities.

Glockner-Ferrari, D. A., & Ferrari, M. J. (1990). Reproduction in the humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) in Hawaiian waters, 1975-1988: The life history, reproductive rates and behavior of known individuals identified through surface and underwater photography. *Reports of the International Whaling Commission* (Special Issue 12), 161-169.

A photo study of humpback whales off the west coast of Maui was conducted from 1975 to 1988. Using both underwater and surface photos, 584 adult and 268 calves were identified, and re-sighting histories compiled. Intervals between the first and last sightings ranged from 1 to 13 years. Of 34 re-sighted females, 31 produced more than one calf. Of the calves, 53 percent were male, and 47 percent were female. One male calf was re-sighted when he was 6, 7, and 10 years of age. The occurrence of mother-calf pairs in the nearshore waters decreased in the period from 1977 to 1988.

| | |
|---|---|
| Herman, L. M. (1979). Humpback whales in Hawaiian waters: A study in historical ecology. *Pacific Science, 33*(1), 1-15. | Historical evidence suggests that humpback whales have only populated their winter Hawaiian breeding and calving habitat over the last 200 years and were unknown to the Hawaiians before 1778. Possible mechanisms for the presumptive recent invasion include dispersion from other areas, accelerated by chronic whaling pressure, and long-term changes in locations of major North Pacific water masses affecting preferred surface temperature characteristics. Short-term localized changes in preferred sites within the Hawaiian habitat have occurred over the last 125 years in response to shore-based whaling activities, disturbances to the marine environment during World War II, and offshore effects due to development following statehood on Oahu after 1959. The major habitat shift to Hawaiian waters and the various localized site movements and alterations are seen as adaptive responses of humpback to important changes in their physical environment. |
| Herman, L. M., & Antinoja, R. C. (1977). Humpback whales in the Hawaiian breeding waters: Population and pod characteristics. *Scientific Reports of the Whales Research Institute, 29*, 59-85. | Aerial, shipboard, and underwater observations of humpback whale breeding were made from February to April 1976 in Hawaiian waters. Humpbacks were found around all the MHI, almost always within the 100 fathom (600 ft) contour, with the bulk of the population (200 to 250 animals) concentrated in regions having the greatest contiguous extent of such water.<br><br>Breeding and calf rearing were not confined to any given area. The birth rate was estimated as less than 10 percent, a low figure of some concern. Coloration characteristics of the Hawaii population differed considerably from the eastern North Pacific population of humpback whales, suggesting little genetic exchange with that group.<br><br>Approximately 18 percent of the whales were solitary when observed; the remainder were in pods of 2 to 9 whales. Overall there were considerably fewer singletons and considerably larger-sized pods than has been observed in feeding-ground aggregations. A calf was typically found in a multiple-whale pod, consisting of the mother and, most frequently, one other adult " escort" whale. The escort seemed to serve a protective function. Most of the pods were swimming in fairly regular formations in apparent local migratory movements. Milling pods, with animals contacting one another, or engaging in other behaviors seemingly |

| | |
|---|---|
| | consistent with sexual courtship or advertisement, was observed in 16 percent of the cases. |

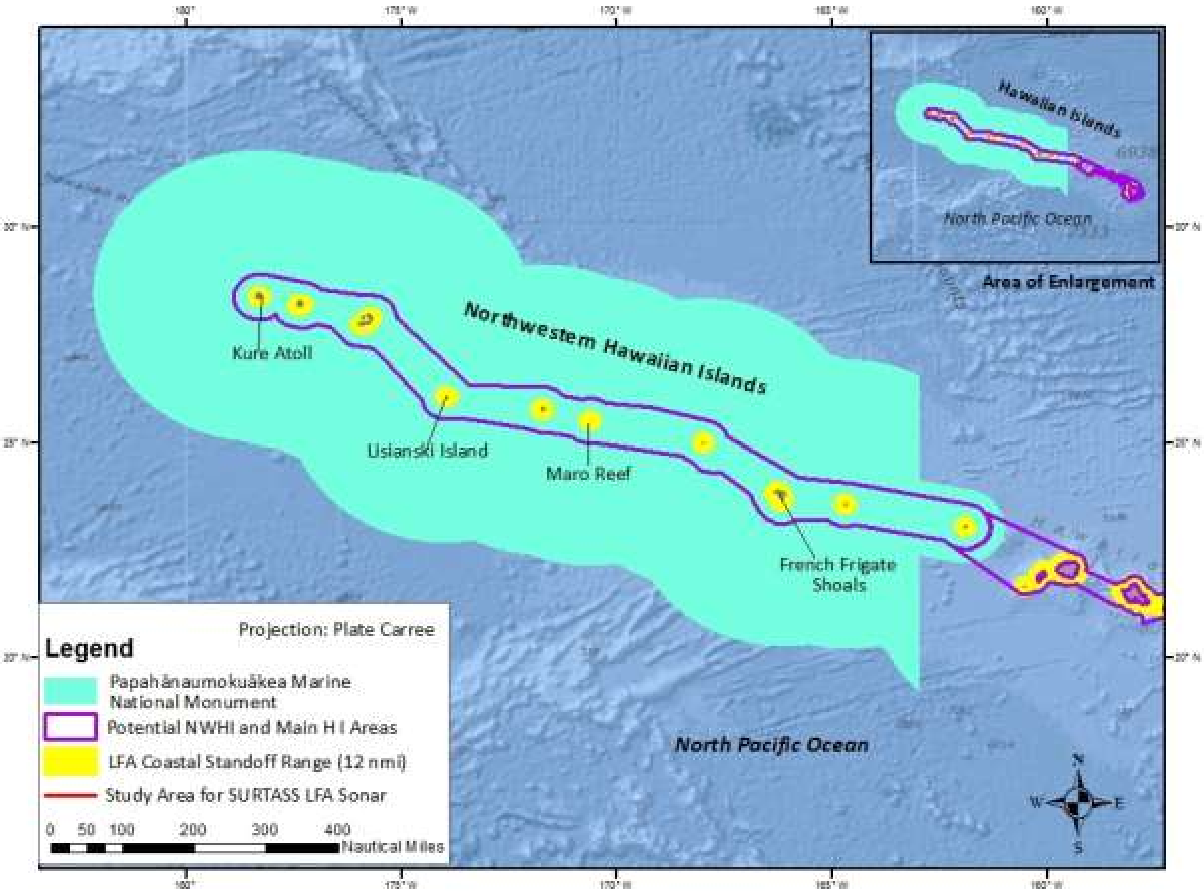
**Committee or Government Reports**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force. (2019). Main Hawaiian Archipelago IMMA. Retrieved from <https://www.marinemammalhabitat.org/portfolio-item/main-hawaiian-archipelago/>. | Brief description of criteria for this IMMA and supporting scientific literature. |
| Department of the Navy (DoN). (2018). Hawaii-Southern California training and testing environmental impact statement/overseas environmental impact statement (EIS/OEIS). Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Pacific, Pearl Harbor, HI. Retrieved from <https://www.hstteis.com/Documents/2018-Hawaii-Southern-California-Training-and-Testing-Final-EIS-OEIS/Final-EIS-OEIS>. | The Navy's EIS/OEIS evaluates the potential environmental impacts of conducting training and testing activities after December 2018 in the Hawaii-Southern California Training and Testing Study Area (Study Area). The Study Area is made up of air and sea space off Southern California, around the Hawaiian Islands, and the transit corridor that connects the two areas. The Navy considered three alternatives: no action; a representative (not maximum) year of new and ongoing training and testing representing the natural fluctuation of training cycles and deployment schedules that generally limit the maximum level of training from occurring year after year in any five-year period, with the some unit-level training being conducted using synthetic means (e.g., simulators) and that some unit-level active sonar training will be completed through other training exercises; and the maximum number of new and ongoing training and testing activities that could occur within a given year with that maximum level of activity occurring every year over any five-year period. |
| Bettridge, S., Baker, C. S., Barlow, J., Clapham, P. J., Ford, M., Gouveia, D., Mattila, D. K., Pace, III, R. M., Rosel, P. E., Silber, G. K., & Wade, P. R. (2015). *Status review of the humpback whale (Megaptera novaeangliae) under the Endangered Species Act.* NOAA Technical Memorandum NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-540. La Jolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Service, National Marine Fisheries Service. | As part of the comprehensive review of the status of humpback whales as the basis for possible revisions under the ESA, all available information and data on humpback whales were compiled by the Humpback Biological Review Team. The team differentiated the global populations of humpback whales into 15 distinct population segments (DPSs) based on the primary breeding location of the associated population. Descriptions of the breeding and foraging ranges of each DPS are included in the status review. The risk of each DPS for extinction was assessed as the subsequent basis for designation of each DPS's status under the ESA. |

**Websites / Social Media**

| *Website/Organization* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| National Geographic. (2018). How does a humpback give birth? These explorers plan to solve the mystery. Retrieved from <https://news.nationalgeographic.com/ 2018/04/humpback-whale-birth-documentary-rare-animals-spd/> | This project sponsored by National Geographic aims to film something no one has observed nor captured on camera: a humpback whale birth. The filmmakers are working in Hawaii during winter when humpback whales are in their breeding and calving grounds in waters of the Hawaiian Island Humpback Whale National Marine Sanctuary searching for female humpback about to give birth, although they don't know what to look for, since that behavior hasn't been documented. The filmmakers were unsuccessful in 2018 finding a female giving birth but will continue searching. |

## Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument 2




**MARINE REGION:** Central North Pacific Ocean

**COUNTRY:** U.S.A.

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:** Hawaiian monk seal, humpback whale

**MARINE AREA TYPE**

- ☐ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA**
- ☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**
- ☒ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**
- ☐ **IUCN Green List Site**
- ☐ **IMMA**
- ☐ **EBSA**
- ☒ **U.S. Marine National Monument**
- ☒ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**
- ☒ **U.S. MPA**
- ☒ **U.S. ESA Critical Habitat**
- ☐ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**AREA OVERVIEW:**

The Papahanaumokuakea Marine National Monument (MNM) encompasses the Northwest Hawaiian Islands (NWHI). It is the largest contiguous fully protected conservation area under the U.S. flag, and one of the largest marine conservation areas in the world. It encompasses 439,916.13 $nmi^2$ (362,073 $km^2$) of the central Pacific Ocean (National Ocean Service, 2017).

Many of the islands and shallow water environments are important habitats for rare species such as the endangered Hawaiian monk seal. Critical habitat for the Hawaiian monk seal is located in the nearshore waters of this MNM; all the critical habitat for the Hawaiian monk seal in the NWHI is located within the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA sonar. Hawaiian monk seal critical habitat is not addressed here as a separate marine area covers the critical habitat (Marine Area #16).

Although previously it was assumed that humpback whales may migrate through the waters of the NWHI, visual and acoustic observations of humpback whales during winter in the NWHI indicate that these whales occur in these waters seasonally and may be relatively common (Johnson et al., 2007; Lammers et al., 2011, 2016). Johnson et al. (2007) modeled the available habitat in the NWHI and determined that the amount of shallow, warm-water habitat in the NWHI is almost double that available in the Main Hawaiian Islands (MHI). The sighting and acoustic data as well as the habitat suitability modeling indicate to researchers that the NWHI may be an important winter habitat for humpback whales and potentially may represent an unidentified breeding site. Current information and data are insufficient to determine whether the humpback whales occurring in the NWHI and MHI represent the same breeding stock (Bettridge et al.,2015; Lammers et al., 2011). Bettridge et al. (2015) proposed an alternative theory for the presence of humpback whales in the NWHI during winter, which that the breeding populations in the MHI have simply expanded their range to include the NWHI. Although the specific purpose for humpbacks in the NWHI has yet to be fully ascertained, it does seem clear that the shallower habitat of the NWHI is seasonally important to the humpback whale.

**NOTE**: Another marine area in the NWHI was also assessed as a potential marine mammal OBIA for SURTASS LFA sonar. Marine area #3, NWHI IMMA, encompasses much of the same geographic area with the same relevant marine mammal species. Also, the Hawaiian monk seal critical habitat is not addressed here as it is addressed under Marine area #18.

#### CANDIDATE OBIA #2—NORTHWESTERN HAWAIIAN ISLANDS BOUNDARY:

NWHI candidate OBIA presented in marine area #2 and #3 are the same candidate OBIA. The proposed boundary for the Potential NWHI OBIA was derived by buffering[8] a distance of about 18 nmi (33 km) seaward from the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA sonar for a total distance of 30 nmi (55.6 km) from the coastlines of emergent islands in the NWHI. This buffer distance was intended to provide an adequate migration space for humpback whales as they migrate through the NWHI to the reach their breeding and calving grounds in the MHI. Since there are no appropriate/usable isobaths that run parallel to the length of the NWHI, the coastal standoff range was used as the reasonable basis for the candidate OBIA boundary.

#### GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA

**Location in LFA Study Area**: MNM: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

**Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range** (12 nmi from emergent land): MNM: ☐ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside

**Eligible Areal Extent**: MNM: 433, 593.28 $nmi^2$ (1,487,183.34 $km^2$)

8 Buffering involves measuring a set distance outward from an object, such as a coastline.

Navy Created Potential NWHI Area: 59,243.73 nmi² (203,200.3 km²)

**Source of Official Boundary**: MNM: NOAA National Marine Sanctuaries System

**Spatial File Type**: GIS shapefiles

**Spatial File Source**: MNM: NOAA National Marine Sanctuaries System, <https://sanctuaries.noaa.gov/library/imast_gis.html>

**Date Obtained/Created**: MNM: 7/13/2018; Navy Created Potential NWHI Area: 11/30/18

**LOW FREQUENCY HEARING SENSITIVITY**

☒ Species: Humpback whales

**BIOLOGICAL CRITERIA**

**High Density**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Breeding / Calving**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data (data are currently insufficient to prove humpback breeding occurs in the NWHI)

**Migration**: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification (humpback whale wintering ground)
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Foraging**: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification (monk seals)
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Distinct Small Population**: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification (monk seals)
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Critical** Habitat: ☐ Eligible; enough data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data (see Marine Area #15 for monk seal critical habitat; however, all monk seal critical habitat in the NWHI is located within the coastal standoff range)

**SEASONAL EFFECTIVE PERIOD**

☐ Year-round ☒ Seasonal Period (Months Annually): November to May (humpback whale)

**OBIA WATCHLIST ADDITION**

☐ Yes ☒ No

**SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION**

**Peer Reviewed Articles/Book Sections**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Lammers M.O., & Munger L.M. (2016) From shrimp to whales: Biological applications of passive acoustic monitoring on a remote Pacific coral reef. Pages 61-81 | The authors analyzed PAM data from 2006 to 2009 at French Frigate Shoals (FFS) in the NWHI. Humpback whale songs were detected in December through |

in Au W., & Lammers M. (eds). *Listening in the ocean. Modern acoustics and signal processing.* New York, NY: Springer.

April; occurrence was greater during 2008 to 2009 than 2006 to 2007, possibly reflecting an increase in whale density near FFS. The results also provide the first long-term record of minke whales in the NWHI and indicated that minke "boing" sounds were detected from late October, with one or two peaks in the December to March period; during March 2009, minke whale calls were present nearly every day.

Lammers, M. O., Fisher-Pool, P. I., Au, W. W. L., Meyer, C. G., Wong, K. B., & Brainard, R. E. (2011). Humpback whale *Megaptera novaeangliae* song reveals wintering activity in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 423*, 261-268. doi:10.3354/meps08959.

Seven passive acoustic recorders were deployed in the NWHI and two recorders were deployed off Oahu in the MHI to record humpback whale songs as an indicator of winter breeding activity. Humpback whale songs were recorded at differing schedules from June 2008 through October 2009 at the nine sites, with humpback songs found to be prevalent at Maro Reef, Lisianski Island, and French Frigate Shoals but were also recorded at Kure, Midway, Pearl, and Hermes atolls in the NWHI. The timing and quantity of songs at several of the NWHI sites were consistent with those found in the breeding areas of the MHI. These data and trends suggested to the researchers that humpbacks use the NWHI as a wintering area.

Johnston, D.W., Chapla, M. E., Williams, L. E., & Matthila, D. K. (2007). Identification of humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) wintering habitat in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands using spatial habitat modeling. *Endangered Species Research, 3*, 249–257. doi:10.3354/esr00049.

This study consisted on spatial habitat modeling as well as visual and acoustic surveys to determine if the NWHI were a wintering spot for humpback whales, which were previously thought to only overwinter in the MHI. Humpback whales prefer warm, shallow regions in winter months, which has been linked to reproductive status and success. Central North Pacific humpback whales' winter in the MHI with peak densities occurring in late March. This study conducted surveys from March 26 through April 12, 2007, cruising across the NWHI. During surveys, nine groups of humpbacks were detected visually. At least two of these groups had young calves present and three groups were engaged in activity consistent with breeding. Previous hypotheses were that the NWHI were used as a migratory corridor on way to wintering grounds in the MHI but migrating whales' movements are not generally restricted to shallow habitats such as those occupied during breeding periods. All observations were made in shallow regions at or within the 656-ft (200-m) isobath (shallow waters) despite considerable survey effort in deeper regions. Authors noted that no humpback whales were found at Ladd Seamount despite extensive surveys in that location. Further, results from satellite telemetry studies (Mate et al., 2007) showed that none of the

| | |
|---|---|
| | tagged whales on the winter grounds in the MHI moved through the NWHI on their way back to summer foraging grounds. Instead, these whales moved either directly north or northeast toward the mainland U.S. after leaving Hawaii. Therefore, results from this study suggest that NWHI should now be considered wintering habitat for humpback whales. The authors also note that the amount of shallow, warm-water habitat in the NWHI is almost double that available in the MHI, indicating its importance as overwintering habitat. |

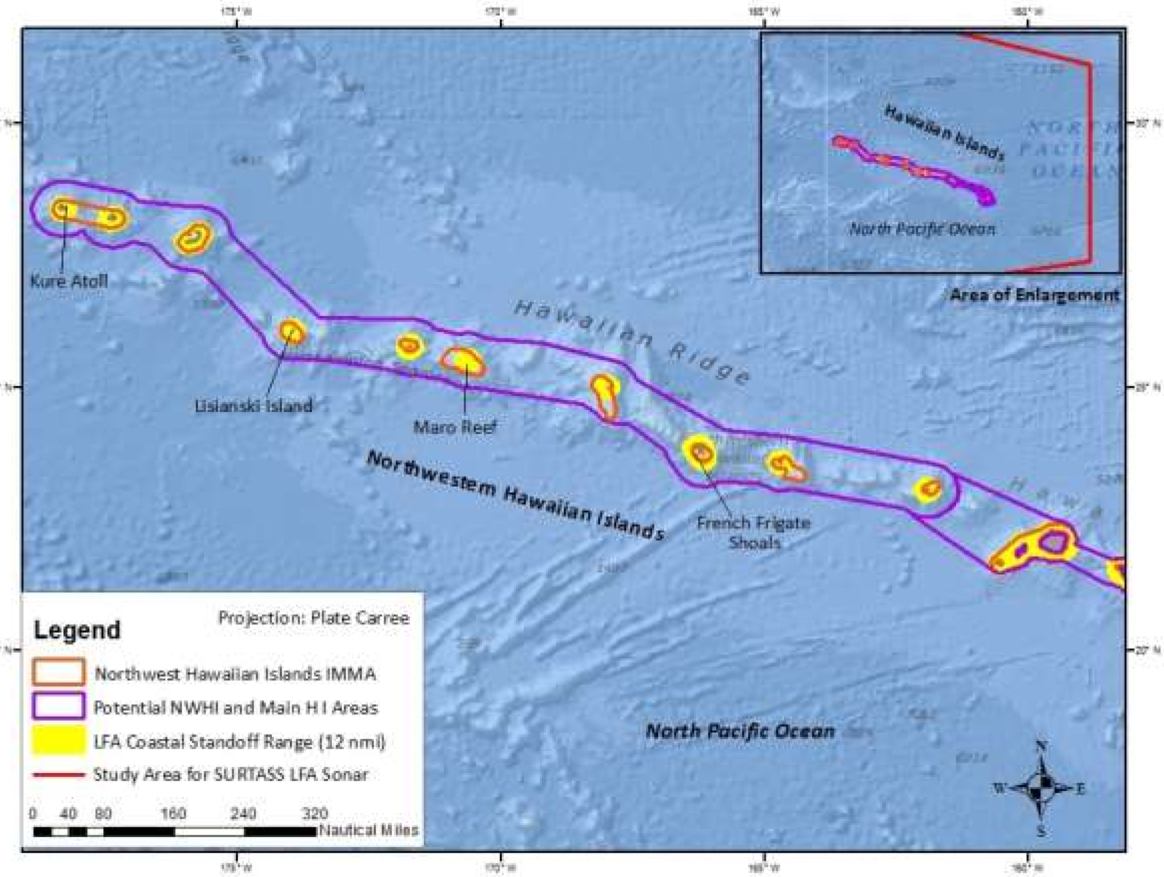
**Committee or Government Reports**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Bettridge, S., Baker, C. S., Barlow, J., Clapham, P. J., Ford, M., Gouveia, D., Mattila, D. K., Pace, III, R. M., Rosel, P. E., Silber, G. K., & Wade, P. R. (2015). *Status review of the humpback whale (Megaptera novaeangliae) under the Endangered Species Act.* NOAA Technical Memorandum NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-540. La Jolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Service, National Marine Fisheries Service. | As part of the comprehensive review of the status of humpback whales as the basis for possible revisions under the ESA, all available information and data on humpback whales were compiled by the Humpback Biological Review Team. The team differentiated the global populations of humpback whales into 15 distinct population segments (DPSs) based on the primary breeding location of the associated population. Descriptions of the breeding and foraging ranges of each DPS are included in the status review. The risk of each DPS for extinction was assessed as the subsequent basis for designation of each DPS's status under the ESA. |

**Websites / Social Media**

| *Website/Organization* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| National Ocean Service. (2017). *About Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument*. National Marine Sanctuaries Office, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. Retrieved from <https://www.papahanaumokuakea.gov/new-about/>. | This website presents the basic information about the Papahanaumokuakea Marine National Monument, including the monument's vision, mission, history, and management. |

| Northwestern Hawaiian Islands | 3 |
|---|---|




**MARINE REGION:** Central North Pacific Ocean

**COUNTRY:** USA

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:** Hawaiian monk seal; spinner dolphin; humpback whale

**MARINE AREA TYPE**

☐ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA**

☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**

☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**

☐ **IUCN Green List Site**

☒ **IMMA** (NW Hawaiian Islands)

☐ **EBSA**

☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**

☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**

☐ **U.S. MPA**

☒ **U.S. Critical Habitat** (Hawaiian monk seal)

☐ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**AREA OVERVIEW:**

Important marine mammal areas (IMMAs) are the result of a joint effort of the International Committee on Marine Mammal Protected Areas and IUCN World Commission of Protected Areas (WCPA) and Species Survival Commission (SSC). IMMAs are created to represent discrete portions of marine habitat that are important to one or more species of marine mammals; represent priority sites for marine mammal conservation (with no management implications); and merit protection and monitoring.

A significant proportion of the global population of the endangered Hawaiian monk seal occurs in the waters of the NWHI IMMA. Critical habitat for the Hawaiian monk seal is designated in the nearshore waters of the NWHI. However, all critical habitat for the Hawaiian monk seal in the NWHI is located within the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA sonar.

Small and resident populations of spinner dolphins also occur in the waters of the NWHI IMMA at Kure and Midway Atoll as well as Pearl and Hermes Reef, where year-round BIAs were created to differentiate the area in which these spinner dolphin populations are found (Baird et al., 2015).

Although previously it was assumed that humpback whales may only migrate through the waters of the NWHI, visual and acoustic observations of humpback whales during winter in the islands indicate that these whales occur in these waters seasonally and may be relatively common (Johnson et al., 2007; Lammers et al., 2011). Johnson et al. (2007) modeled the available habitat in the NWHI and determined that the amount of shallow, warm-water habitat in the NWHI is almost double that available in the MHI. The sighting and acoustic data as well as the habitat suitability modeling indicate to researchers that the NWHI may be an important winter habitat for humpback whales and potentially may represent an unidentified breeding area. Current information and data are insufficient to determine whether the humpback whales occurring in the NWHI and MHI represent the same breeding stock (Bettridge et al.,2015; Lammers et al., 2011). Bettridge et al. (2015) proposed an alternative theory for the presence of humpback whales in the NWHI during winter, namely that the breeding populations in the MHI have simply expanded their range to include the NWHI. Although the specific purpose for humpbacks in the NWHI has yet to be fully ascertained, it does seem clear that the shallower habitat of the NWHI is seasonally important to the humpback whale.

**NOTE**: Other NWHI marine areas were also assessed as potential marine mammal OBIAs for SURTASS LFA sonar, such as Marine area #2, Papahānaumokuākea MNM, which encompasses the same geographic area and the same relevant marine mammal species as this IMMA. The Hawaiian monk seal critical habitat is not addressed here since it is addressed in the separate marine area assessment (Marine area #18).

**CANDIDATE OBIA #2— NORTHWESTERN HAWAIIAN ISLANDS BOUNDARY:**

NWHI candidate OBIA presented in marine area #2 and #3 are the same candidate OBIA. The proposed boundary for the Potential NWHI OBIA was derived by buffering a distance of about 18 nmi (33 km) seaward from the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA sonar for a total distance of 30 nmi (55.6 km) from the coastlines of emergent islands in the NWHI. This buffer distance was intended to provide an adequate migration space for humpback whales as they migrate through the NWHI to the reach their breeding and calving grounds in the MHI. Since there are no appropriate/usable isobaths that run parallel to the length of the NWHI, the coastal standoff range was used as the reasonable basis for the candidate OBIA boundary.

## GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA

**Location in LFA Study Area**: IMMA: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

**Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range** (12 nmi from emergent land): IMMA: ☐ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside (nearly all area outside CSR)

**Eligible Areal Extent**: IMMA: 2,134.43 nmi$^2$ (7,320.89 km$^2$)
Navy Created Potential NWHI Area: 59,243.73 nmi$^2$ (203,200.3 km$^2$)

**Source of Official Boundary**: IMMA: IUCN-Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force

**Spatial File Type:** GIS Shapefiles

**Spatial File Source**: IMMA: IUCN-Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force, 2017. GIS data made available by the IUCN Global Dataset of Important Marine Mammal Areas (IUCN-IMMA), July 2018. Made available under agreement on terms of use by the IUCN Joint SSC/WCPA Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force and accessible via IMMA e-Atlas <www.marinemammalhabitat.org/ imma-eatlas>.

**Date Obtained**: IMMA: 7/28/18; Navy Created Potential NWHI Area: 11/30/18

## LOW FREQUENCY HEARING SENSITIVITY

☒ Species: humpback whale

## BIOLOGICAL CRITERIA

**High Density**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Breeding / Calving**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data (data are currently insufficient to prove humpback breeding occurs in the NWHI)

**Migration**: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification (humpback)
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Foraging:** ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Distinct Small Population**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Critical Habitat**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification

☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data (monk seal; CH all in very shallow waters within the LFA coastal standoff range; see MA #15 for Hawaiian monk seal critical habitat)

**SEASONAL EFFECTIVE PERIOD**

☐ Year-round ☒ Seasonal Period (Months Annually): November to May (humpbacks)

**OBIA WATCHLIST ADDITION**

☐ Yes ☒ No

**SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION**

**Peer Reviewed Articles**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Lammers M.O., & Munger L.M. (2016) From shrimp to whales: Biological applications of passive acoustic monitoring on a remote Pacific coral reef. Pages 61-81 in Au W., & Lammers M. (eds). *Listening in the ocean. Modern acoustics and signal processing.* New York, NY: Springer. | The authors analyzed PAM data from 2006 to 2009 at French Frigate Shoals (FFS) in the NWHI. Humpback whale songs were detected in December through April; occurrence was greater during 2008 to 2009 than 2006 to 2007, possibly reflecting an increase in whale density near FFS. The results also provide the first long-term record of minke whales in the NWHI and indicated that minke "boing" sounds were detected from late October, with one or two peaks in the December to March period; during March 2009, minke whale calls were present nearly every day. |
| Baird, R. W., Cholewiak, D., Webster, D. L., Schorr, G. S., Mahaffy, S. D., Curtice, C., . . . Van Parijs, S. M. (2015). Biologically important areas for cetaceans within U.S. waters–Hawai'i region. *Aquatic Mammals, 41*(1), 54-64. doi:10.1578/am.41.1.2015.54. | Using existing published, unpublished information, and expert judgment for U.S. Hawaii waters, 20 biologically important areas (BIAs) were identified and created for small and resident populations of odontocetes and one reproductive area for humpback whales in both the Main and Northwest Hawaiian Islands. |
| Lammers, M. O., Fisher-Pool, P. I., Au, W. W. L., Meyer, C. G., Wong, K. B., & Brainard, R. E. (2011). Humpback whale *Megaptera novaeangliae* song reveals wintering activity in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 423*, 261-268. doi:10.3354/meps08959. | Seven passive acoustic recorders were deployed in the NWHI and two recorders were deployed off Oahu in the MHI to record humpback whale songs as an indicator of winter breeding activity. Humpback whale songs were recorded at differing schedules from June 2008 through October 2009 at the nine sites, with humpback songs found to be prevalent at Maro Reef, Lisianski Island, and French Frigate Shoals but were also recorded at Kure, Midway, Pearl, and Hermes atolls in the NWHI. The timing and quantity of songs at several of the NWHI sites were consistent with those found in the breeding areas of the MHI. These data |

| | |
|---|---|
| | and trends suggested to the researchers that humpbacks use the NWHI as a wintering area. |
| Johnston, D.W., Chapla, M. E., Williams, L. E., & Matthila, D. K. (2007). Identification of humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) wintering habitat in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands using spatial habitat modeling. *Endangered Species Research, 3*, 249–257. doi:10.3354/esr00049. | This study consisted on spatial habitat modeling as well as visual and acoustic surveys to determine if the NWHI were a wintering spot for humpback whales, which were previously thought to only overwinter in the MHI. Humpback whales prefer warm, shallow regions in winter months, which has been linked to reproductive status and success. Central North Pacific humpback whales' winter in the MHI with peak densities occurring in late March. This study conducted surveys from March 26 through April 12, 2007, cruising across the NWHI. During surveys, nine groups of humpbacks were detected visually. At least two of these groups had young calves present and three groups were engaged in activity consistent with breeding. Previous hypotheses were that the NWHI were used as a migratory corridor on way to wintering grounds in the MHI but migrating whales' movements are not generally restricted to shallow habitats such as those occupied during breeding periods. All observations were made in shallow regions at or within the 656-ft (200-m) isobath (shallow waters) despite considerable survey effort in deeper regions. Authors noted that no humpback whales were found at Ladd Seamount despite extensive surveys in that location. Further, results from satellite telemetry studies (Mate et al., 2007) showed that none of the tagged whales on the winter grounds in the MHI moved through the NWHI on their way back to summer foraging grounds. Instead, these whales moved either directly north or northeast toward the mainland U.S. after leaving Hawaii. Therefore, results from this study suggest that NWHI should now be considered wintering habitat for humpback whales. The authors also note that the amount of shallow, warm-water habitat in the NWHI is almost double that available in the MHI, indicating its importance as overwintering habitat. |

**Committee or Government Reports**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Bettridge, S., Baker, C. S., Barlow, J., Clapham, P. J., Ford, M., Gouveia, D., Mattila, D. K., Pace, III, R. M., Rosel, P. E., Silber, G. K., & Wade, P. R. (2015). *Status review of the humpback whale (Megaptera novaeangliae) under the Endangered Species Act.* NOAA Technical Memorandum NOAA-TM-NMFS- | As part of the comprehensive review of the status of humpback whales as the basis for possible revisions under the ESA, all available information and data on humpback whales were compiled by the Humpback Biological Review Team. The team differentiated the global populations of humpback whales into 15 |

SWFSC-540. La Jolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Service, National Marine Fisheries Service.

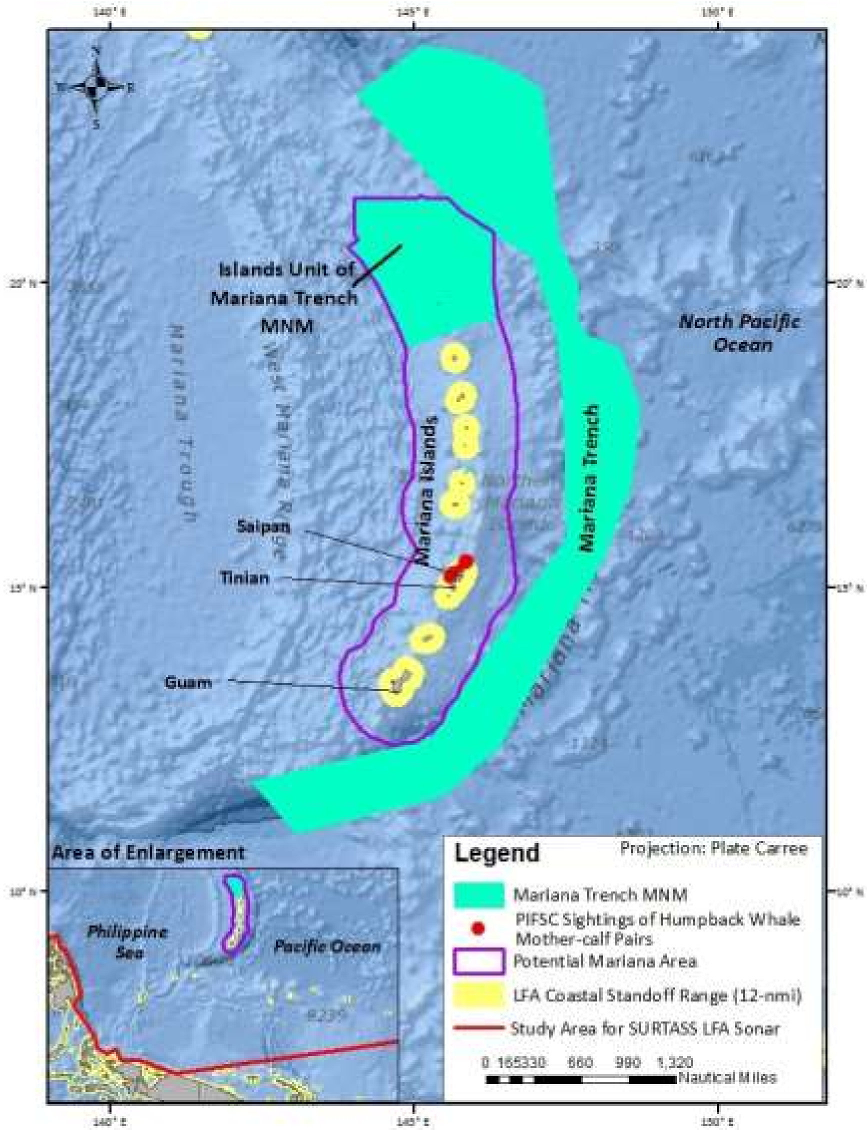
distinct population segments (DPSs) based on the primary breeding location of the associated population. Descriptions of the breeding and foraging ranges of each DPS are included in the status review. The risk of each DPS for extinction was assessed as the subsequent basis for designation of each DPS's status under the ESA.

| Marianas Trench Marine National Monument (Islands Unit) | 4 |
|---|---|

**MARINE REGION:** Western North Pacific Ocean

**COUNTRY:** U.S.A.

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:** Humpback, common minke, Bryde's, sei, and sperm whales




**MARINE AREA TYPE**

☐ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA**

☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**

☒ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**

☐ **IUCN Green List Site**

☐ **IMMA**

☐ **EBSA**

☒ **U.S. Marine National Monument**

☒ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**

☒ **U.S. MPA**

☐ **U.S. ESA Critical Habitat**

☐ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**AREA OVERVIEW:**

The Marianas Trench MNM is comprised of three units: Islands Unit, Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge, and Trench Unit/Refuge. The Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge and Trench Unit/Refuge include only submerged lands but not the waters above the seafloor while the Island Unit includes both submerged lands and the marine waters above the seafloor. The Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge includes the submerged lands within 1 nmi (1.9 km) of 21 designated volcanic sites, while the Trench Unit/Refuge encompasses the submerged lands extending from the northern limit of the Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) in the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands (CNMI) to the southern limit of the EEZ of the U.S. in the Territory of Guam. The Islands Unit includes the waters and submerged lands of the three northernmost Mariana Islands of Farallon de Pajaros (also known as Uracus), Maug, and Asuncion. Although the entirety of the Mariana MNM and waters surrounding the Mariana Islands were considered in the development of the Potential Marianas Area, only the boundary of the MNM's Islands Unit was used in the boundary of the candidate Mariana OBIA.

The bathymetry of the waters of Guam and the CNMI are exemplified by a steeply sloping seafloor with water depths descending rapidly off the islands of the Mariana Archipelago. The Mariana Archipelago (15 volcanic islands) is located on the Mariana Ridge to the west of the Mariana Trench. The Mariana Trench is over 1,226 nmi (2,270 km) long and 62 nm (114 km) wide, with the deepest point on the planet (Challenger Deep) found 294 nmi (544 km) southwest of Guam in the southwestern extremity of the trench. The Mariana Ridge is surrounded by numerous seamounts. The passage of the North Equatorial Current through the Mariana Archipelago often creates regions of localized, enhanced productivity. Since tropical waters are typically oligotrophic (low productivity), any oceanographic or topographic features that enhance productivity may be important to species diversity and as a foraging "hotspot".

As many as 13 species of marine mammals have been reported in the waters of the Marianas Islands, including baleen and sperm whales, with sightings of sperm, beaked, and Bryde's whales associated with areas of steep bathymetric relief (Fulling et al. 2011; Hill et al., 2015, 2017, 2018, 2019; USFWS, 2017). Several studies have also documented marine mammal behaviors associated with breeding and have observed cow-calf pairs and young-of-the-year calves of humpback, sperm, Bryde's, and sei whales (Fulling et al. 2011; Hill et al. 2015, 2017). Previous studies in these waters also noted cow-calf pairs of sperm, sei, and Bryde's whales (Navy, 2005; Shimada and Miyashita, 2001; and Eldredge, 2003).

More evidence is available of humpback whales calving and reproductive behavior in Marianas' waters than has been reported for any other species of baleen or sperm whales in this region. Humpback whales were detected acoustically by their song during the winter to spring surveys reported by Fulling et al. (2011) in the waters of Guam and the CNMIs. Humpback were only rarely sighted off Saipan but were engaged in social behaviors that have been frequently observed on humpback breeding grounds elsewhere. Humpbacks exhibited acoustic singing displays, another behavior commonly exhibited on breeding and feeding grounds (Fulling et al. 2011).

NMFS' Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center's (PIFSC) Cetacean Research Program (CRP), in partnership with the Navy's U.S. Pacific Fleet Environmental Readiness Division, has been conducting visual surveys and long-term acoustic monitoring for cetaceans in the waters surrounding Guam and the CNMI (Saipan and Tinian) since 2010. These principally coastal small boat surveys are conducted annually, weather permitting, in winter (February to March) and summer (August to September). The goal of the winter surveys is to document the presence of humpback whales in these waters during their seasonal migration (Hill et al., 2016, 2017). Male and female humpback whales and calves have been observed in waters off Saipan and Tinian, with calves including young-of-the-year as well as neonates (Hill et al., 2016, 2017). Hill et al. (2015, 2016) observed humpback whales in competitive groups, a common humpback whale breeding behavior, where males compete for access to females. Mother-calf pairs of humpback whales have been observed in the winter surveys, with the calves clearly identified as neonates (young-of-the-year). At least one female humpback whales have been re-sighted in the waters off Saipan and Tinian from 2007 through 2016, demonstrating some site fidelity (Hill et al., 2017). The presence of reproductive behavior and mother-calf pairs in nearshore waters suggests that breeding may be occurring in these waters (NMFS, 2018).

Calambokidis et al. (2008) extended the winter/breeding range of the WNP humpback whale to encompass the Marianas Islands. The repeated presence of humpback mother-calf pairs in the waters of the southern Marianas Archipelago as well as reproductive behavior suggests to the scientists of the PIFSC that this area may be important breeding/calving habitat for humpback whales (Hill et al., 2016, 2017; NMFS, 2018).

#### CANDIDATE OBIA #3—MARIANAS BOUNDARY:

The proposed boundary for the Potential Mariana OBIA was derived by buffering about 38 nmi (70.4 km) seaward of the coastal standoff surrounding the Mariana Islands for a total distance of about 50 nmi (92.6 km) from the coastlines of the emergent islands of the Mariana Archipelago south of the boundary of the Islands Unit. This distance is very conservative given that reproductive behavior has to date been in nearshore surveyed waters. However, since waters at greater depths and further north than Saipan and Tinian have not been surveyed, to be most protective of this critical reproductive area, a conservative distance outside the coastal standoff range surrounding the Mariana Islands was chosen.

This buffered boundary was then connected to the boundary of the Islands Unit of the Mariana Trench MNM to create a continuous and complete candidate OBIA that encompasses the entirety of the Mariana Archipelago. Although data are quite sparse for the Islands Unit, the rationale for including this region in the candidate OBIA was based on the assumption that humpbacks are most likely migrating through the waters of the northernmost archipelago as they transit from their feeding to breeding/calving grounds, which may well include waters in the southern Mariana Archipelago (Hill et al., 2015, 2016, 2017; NMFS, 2018). The buffered distance of 38 nmi not only meshed smoothly with the Islands Unit boundary but this distance provided an adequate migration space for humpback whales as they move through the archipelago, potentially for breeding and calving in the southern archipelago. No data are available that indicate the distances from shore that migrating humpback whales in this region use to travel north and south through the archipelago, so a larger, conservative distance was provided given these unknowns.

#### GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA

**Location in LFA Study Area**: MNM, Islands Unit: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

**Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range** (12 nmi from emergent land): MNM: ☒ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside (nearly entire Islands Unit is outside CSR)

**Eligible Areal Extent**: Marianas Trench MNM, Islands Unit: 15,097.67 nmi$^2$ (51,783.57 km$^2$)
Navy Created Potential Marianas Area: 35,667.9 nmi$^2$ (122,337.5 km$^2$)

**Source of Official Boundary**: MNM: World Database on Protected Areas (UN EP and IUCN)

**Spatial File Type**: GIS shapefiles

**Spatial File Source**: MNM: World Database on Protected Areas, <https://www.protectedplanet.net/400010>

**Date Obtained/Created**: MNM: 8/6/2018; Navy Created Potential Marianas Area: 11/19/18

## Low Frequency Hearing Sensitivity

☒ Species: Humpback, Bryde's, sei, common minke, and sperm whales

## Biological Criteria

High Density: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Breeding / Calving: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification (humpback whales)
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Migration: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification (humpback whales)
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Foraging: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Distinct Small Population: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Critical Habitat: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## Seasonal Effective Period

☐ Year-round
☒ Seasonal Period (Months Annually): February to April (humpback breeding/calving) (literature indicated through March but 1 month added to be conservative)

## OBIA Watchlist Addition

☐ Yes ☒ No

## Supporting Documentation

### Peer Reviewed Articles

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Hill, M. C., Bendlin, A. R., Cise, A. M. V., Milette-Winfree, A., Ligon, A. D., Ü, A. C., . . . Oleson, E. M. (2018). Short-finned pilot whales (*Globicephala macrorhynchus*) of the Mariana Archipelago: Individual affiliations, movements, and spatial use. *Marine Mammal Science, 9999*(9999), 1-28. doi:10.1111/mms.12567. | To expand understanding of short-finned pilot whale ecology in the region, the authors conducted small-boat surveys from 2010 to 2016 within the Marina Archipelago (Guam and CNMIs) and investigated their individual associations, movement, spatial use, and dive behavior.<br><br>The area with the highest probability of use by short-finned pilot whales was off the northwest side of Guam extending north to Rota Bank (area encompassing 193.9 nmi$^2$ [665 km$^2$]). Satellite tag data also suggests that some individuals are island-associated year-round and demonstrate site fidelity. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Satellite tag data indicate that short-finned pilot whales are primarily using near-island waters (median distance from shore 7.2 nmi {13.4 km}), despite occasional distant offshore movements up to >216 nmi (400 km) from shore. |
| Norris, T. F., Dunleavy, K. J., Yack, T. M., & Ferguson, E. L. (2017). Estimation of minke whale abundance from an acoustic line transect survey of the Mariana Islands. *Marine Mammal Science, 33*(2), 574-592. doi:10.1111/mms.12397. | In the North Pacific Ocean, common minke whales produce a distinctive sound known as a "boing". Although commonly occurring in most oceanic waters, minke whales are rarely observe in subtropical waters.<br><br>A vessel-based survey using both visual and passive acoustic monitoring was conducted during the spring of 2007 over a large (179,596.86 nmi$^2$ [616,000 km$^2$]) area that encompassed the Mariana Islands. We applied line transect methods to data collected from a towed hydrophone array to estimate the abundance of calling minke whales in our study area. Although no minke whales were sighted, hundreds of acoustic "boing" detections were recorded. Analysis of these acoustic data resulted in two best abundance estimates of 80 and 91 minke whales (0.13 and 0.15 animals per 1,000 km$^2$, respectively; CV = 34 percent). Since not all minke whales in an area vocalize, these abundance estimates are considered minimum estimates of the true number of actual minke whales in the area and additionally represent the first abundance estimates made from towed hydrophone data. |
| Fulling, G. L., Thorson, P. H., & Rivers, J. (2011). Distribution and abundance estimates for cetaceans in the waters off Guam and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands. *Pacific Science, 65*(3), 321-343. doi:10.2984/65.3.321. | This was the first line-transect visual survey in the waters of Guam and the CNMI, conducted during January to April 2007. Trackline coverage (5,957 nmi [11,033 km]) was dominated by high seas, but 13 cetacean species were recorded. The sperm whale was most frequently encountered whale, followed by Bryde's and sei whales. Pantropical spotted dolphins were the most frequently encountered delphinid, followed by striped dolphins and false killer whales. Numerous cetacean sightings were associated with steep bathymetric features including the West Mariana Ridge, the Mariana Ridge, and the Mariana Trench.<br><br>Although no calves were seen, humpback whales were sighted 8 nmi (15 km) off Saipan engaged in social behaviors frequently observed on the breeding grounds of the species. Humpbacks were also acoustically detected by their song, which is commonly heard on breeding and feeding grounds. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | There were several sightings of cow-calf pairs of sperm whales, sei whales, and Bryde's whales, which had also been documented in previous studies (Navy, 2005; Shimada and Miyashita, 2001; and Eldredge, 2003).<br><br>Sperm whales were found to be associated with areas near steep bathymetric relief, sei and Bryde's whales were seen near underwater ridges and in an area between the Chamorro seamounts and the start of the Caroline Ridge; two of the three sightings of beaked whales occurred over the northern end of the west Mariana Ridge near a few unnamed sea mounts; and there were several sightings of delphinids near slopes and seamounts. |

**Subject Matter Experts / e-NGO Reports / Regional Expertise**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Calambokidis, J., E.A. Falcone, T.J. Quinn, A.M. Burdin, P.J. Clapham, J.K.B. Ford, C.M. Gabriele, R. LeDuc, D. Mattila, L. Rojas-, Bracho, J. M. S., B.L. Taylor, J. Urbán R., D. Weller, B.H. Witteveen, M. Yamaguchi, A. Bendlin, D. Camacho, K. Flynn, A., & Havron, J. H., & N. Maloney. (2008). *SPLASH: Structure of populations, levels of abundance and status of humpback whales in the North Pacific.* Final report for Contract AB133F-03-RP-00078. Olympia, Washington: Cascadia Research. 56 pages. | SPLASH (Structure of Populations, Levels of Abundance and Status of Humpbacks) was a large, international (50 research groups and more than 400 researchers in 10 countries) collaboration of humpback whale studies and data synthesis in the North Pacific Ocean. It was designed to determine the abundance, trends, movements, and population structure of humpback whales throughout the North Pacific and to examine human impacts on this population. Field efforts were conducted on all known winter breeding regions for humpback whales in the North Pacific during three seasons (2004, 2005, 2006) and all known summer feeding areas during two seasons (2004, 2005). A total of 18,469 quality fluke identification photographs were taken during over 27,000 approaches of humpback whales. A total of 7,971 unique individual humpback whales were cataloged in SPLASH.<br><br>Migratory movements and population structure of humpback whales in the North Pacific were found to be more complex than had been previously described. The overall pattern showed that coastal wintering regions of the western (Asia) and eastern (mainland Mexico and Central America) North Pacific were the primary wintering areas for the lower latitude coastal feeding regions, while the wintering areas off Hawaii and the Revillagigedo Archipelago were the primary wintering regions for humpbacks feeding in more central and northern latitude foraging areas. The SPLASH data suggested the existence of missing wintering area(s); humpbacks that feed off the Aleutian Islands and in the Bering Sea were not well represented on any of the sampled wintering areas |

| | |
|---|---|
| | and must be going to one or more unsampled winter locations. Thus, it is likely that SPLASH has revealed a new breeding ground for humpback whales. The Mariana Islands were noted as a wintering ground for WNP humpback whales. The best humpback whale estimate of overall abundance in the North Pacific, excluding calves, is the average of two modeled results or 18,302 individuals. |

**Committee or Government Reports**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Hill, M.C., Ligon, A.D., Ü, A.C., & Oleson, E.M. (2019). Cetacean monitoring in the Mariana Islands range complex, 2018. Prepared for the U.S. Pacific Fleet Environmental Readiness Office. PIFSC Data Report DR-19-010. 22 pages. | The NMFS' Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center's (PIFSC) Cetacean Research Program (CRP) in partnership with the Navy's U.S. Pacific Fleet Environmental Readiness Division conducted summer visual boat surveys in the waters of the Marianas off Saipan, Aguijan, Guam, and Tinian from August to September 2018. Five species of odontocetes were observed, including sperm whales. Five satellite tags were deployed, and 33 biopsy samples were collected. Spinner dolphins were the most commonly observed species. Only one group of sperm whales was encountered off Guam, with 13 whales in the group, including 3 mother-calf pairs. These sperm whales were encountered off the western Guam where sperm whales have been previously encountered in 2010 and 2016. |
| Hill, M.C., Bradford, A.L., Ligon, A.D., Ü, A.C., & Oleson, E.M. (2018). Cetacean monitoring in the Mariana Islands range complex, 2017. Prepared for the U.S. Pacific Fleet Environmental Readiness Office. PIFSC Data Report DR-18-002. 28 pages. | The NMFS' Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center's (PIFSC) Cetacean Research Program (CRP) in partnership with the Navy's U.S. Pacific Fleet Environmental Readiness Division has been conducting visual surveys for cetaceans in the waters surrounding Guam and the CNMI as part of an ongoing effort to develop a record of cetacean occurrence in the region and to comply with cetacean monitoring conditions of the Navy's LOA for the Mariana Islands Testing and Training (MITT) area. Visual surveys have been conducted aboard small boats 24.9 to 40 ft (7.6 to 12.2 m) since 2010 off the southernmost islands of the Mariana Archipelago (Guam, Rota, Saipan, Tinian, and Aguijan). These surveys include the collection of photographs for individual identification, tissue samples for genetic analysis of population structure, and the deployment of satellite tags for assessment of individual movements throughout the broader region. This report includes a summary of the most recent visual surveys that were conducted in the "winter" (February) and "summer" (May) of 2017.<br>Encounter rates during the May surveys were lower than in previous years perhaps due to the higher sea |

states encountered (81 percent of survey effort in Beaufort sea states 4 to 5). Beaked whales (Blainville's, Cuvier's, and one unidentified) were observed during the May visual and acoustic surveys. Spinner dolphins were the most frequently encountered species during the May 2017 visual surveys but were also encountered during the February surveys, suggesting that they occur year-round.

The surveys were conducted in February to coincide with potential seasonal occurrences of baleen whales in these waters based on previous survey data. Humpback whales were encountered at a similar rate to the previous two survey years, but more adult humpbacks were present during the February 2017 survey. One Bryde's whale was observed during the May survey. The only baleen whales observed during all years of the small boat visual surveys have been humpback and Bryde's whales.

Hill, M.C., Bendlin, A.R., Ü, A.C., Yano, K.M., Bradford, A.L., Ligon, A.D. & Oleson, E.M. (2017). Cetacean monitoring in the Mariana Islands range complex, 2016. Prepared for the U.S. Pacific Fleet Environmental Readiness Office. PIFSC Data Report DR-17-002. 46 pages. doi:10.7289/V5/DR-PIFSC-17-002.

Since 2010, NMFS' PIFSC has been conducting visual surveys in waters surrounding Guam and the CNMI in partnership with the Navy's Pacific Fleet, which is mandated to monitor cetaceans within the MITT study area.

Specific locations of greater relative cetacean abundance cannot be addressed, but habitat use (depth and distance from shore) and encounter rates reveal varying patterns for species occurring around the islands of Guam, Rota, Saipan, Tinian, and Agujan. Patterns of habitat use by some odontocetes (e.g., spinner dolphins, pantropical spotted dolphins, bottlenose dolphins, and short-finned pilot whales) were similar to those described previously (Hill et al., 2014, 2015, 2016), while new information emerged for rough toothed dolphins, dwarf sperm whales, and sperm whales.

Information suggests spinner dolphins may use the area year-round and most encounters were on Marpi Reef. Pantropical spotted dolphins were encountered more off Guam than other islands and varied broadly in location from shore 1 to 18.6 nmi (1.9 to 15.9 km). Short-finned pilot whales were encountered at distances of 1.5 to 4.6 nmi (2.7 to 8.5 km) off the west side of Guam similar to previous years. Satellite tag data indicate greater use of nearshore areas off Guam with an overall median distance from shore of 8.6 km for this species. Rough-toothed dolphin encounter rates mirrored previous studies averaging 3.7 nmi (6.8 km) from shore. Dwarf sperm whales were encountered for the first-time off Guam and were seen four times (two of these encounters were the same mother-calf pair). Encounters indicated potential preference for the area near Agat Bay. Encounters ranged from 0.9 to 2.1 nmi (1.6 to 3.8 km) from shore. Sperm whales were encountered off Saipan and Guam where they had been encountered in previous years, but tag data from two sperm whales showed travel distances of up to 59 nmi (110 km) offshore and up to 13,976 ft (4,260 m) in depth.

Surveys were conducted in March 2016 to coincide with known seasonal occurrence of humpback whales off Saipan and Tinian based on 2015 survey work. Five mother-calf pairs were encountered, and all calves were clearly neonates. Four mother-calf pairs were observed in 2015, and one of the mothers was a re-sighting from 2007, suggesting site fidelity and that the Marianas may be a calving area. This could be important if these whales are part of the North Pacific humpback population. During 2010 through 2012, recordings off Saipan and Tinian detected other baleen whales (blue, fin, and minke); however, no other baleen whales were observed in 2016.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. (2017). Final environmental assessment, finding of no significant impact, memorandum of agreement, and patent for the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument Northern Lands Transfer to the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands. Pacific Region, Portland, OR. 126 pages.

ESA-listed marine mammals that may occur in the Mariana Archipelago are the sperm, humpback, sei, blue, and fin whales. Several other non-ESA-listed marine mammals have been recorded in the Mariana Archipelago, including short-finned pilot, pygmy killer, Bryde’s, Cuvier’s beaked, melon-headed, pygmy sperm, and dwarf sperm whales, as well as several dolphin species.

Only a limited number of marine mammal surveys have been conducted in the Mariana Archipelago. One of the first, and most complete, was funded by the Department of Defense (DoD), and was conducted from January to April 2007 covering 6,850 miles (11,033 km) of trackline. This study documented 153 sightings of 13 different marine mammal species. The most frequently sighted species was the sperm whale (n=23), followed by Bryde’s whale (n=18), and sei whale (n=16) (Fulling et al., 2007).

Subsequent to the 2007 surveys, both the Navy and NMFS’ Pacific Island Fishery Science Center (PIFSC) have conducted numerous surveys around Guam and CNMI. Ninety-five cetacean groups have been documented. The most common cetacean species recorded was the spinner dolphin (55 percent of total encounters). The next most common species was the pantropical spotted dolphin, short-finned pilot whales, and bottlenose dolphins.

Hill, M.C., Oleson, E.M., Baumann-Pickering, S., VanCise, A.M., Ligon, A.M., Bendlin, A.R., Ü, A.C., Trickey, J.S., & Bradford, A.L. (2016). Cetacean monitoring in the Mariana Islands range complex, 2015. Prepared for the U.S. Pacific Fleet Environmental Readiness Office. PIFSC Data Report DR-16-01. 36 pages.

NMFS' PIFSC Cetacean Research Program conducted visual surveys and long-term acoustic monitoring in waters surrounding Guam and the CNMI in partnership with the Navy's Pacific Fleet. Visual surveys including satellite-tagging, photo-IDing, and biopsy darting, were conducted in winter (February to March) and summer (August to September) 2015 from small boats (24.9 to 40 ft [7.6 to 12.2 m]) in the waters of the southern islands of Guam, Rota, Saipan, Tinian, and Agujan. PISFC has additionally been collecting long-term passive acoustic data using HARPs at two sites near Tinian and Saipan since 2010. The report describes the beaked whale acoustic data collected from the passive acoustic monitoring, but analysis of the baleen whale data was not yet completed.

The winter surveys targeted humpback whales specifically, which from previous sighting information were known to occur in these waters seasonally during winter. The summer surveys were broader in scope, focusing on capturing the entire cetacean faunal assembly. No surveys were conducted around Saipan during the summer due to destruction caused by a typhoon.

At the Saipan HARP location, acoustic signals from both Blainville's and Cuvier beaked whales were identified as well as a third signal, possibly from a ginkgo-toothed beaked whale. Only Blainville's beaked whale signals with one signal possibly from a ginkgo-toothed beaked whale were detected at the Tinian site. No diel variability was noted in the Cuvier or Blainville's signals, but the possible ginkgo-toothed signal only occurred at night.

During the summer surveys, only one group of Blainville's beaked whales was observed. Spinner dolphins were the most commonly sighted cetacean in all survey years, but during the summer 2015 surveys, pantropical spotted dolphins were more frequently encountered. The same group of pygmy killer whales was observed off Guam. Tagging data of a false killer whale in the CNMIs indicated that the population of false killer whales in the Mariana Islands may be transient.

Four mother-calf pairs of humpback whales were observed during the winter surveys, with the calves being identified as young-of-the-year, suggesting that

| | |
|---|---|
| | the Mariana Islands may be a breeding site for humpback whales. One Bryde's whale was observed in the southernmost part of the Mariana's archipelago. |

**Surveys**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Hill, M.C. (2018). Personal communication between Dr. M.C. Hill, Cetacean Research Program, NMFS and Mr. D. Youngkin, Office of Protected Resources, NMFS regarding humpback whale mother-calf data, Marianas Islands. November 14, 2018. | Mother-calf locational data for Saipan and Tinian waters from 2015 to 2018.  |
| Hill, M.C., Bradford, A.L., Ligon, A.D., Ü, A.C., & Oleson, E.M. (2018). Cetacean monitoring in the Mariana Islands range complex, 2017. Prepared for the U.S. Pacific Fleet Environmental Readiness Office. PIFSC Data Report DR-18-002. 28 pages. | See visual summary above. |
| Hill, M.C., Bendlin, A.R., Ü, A.C., Yano, K.M., Bradford, A.L., Ligon, A.D. & Oleson, E.M. (2017). Cetacean monitoring in the Mariana Islands range complex, 2016. Prepared for the U.S. Pacific Fleet Environmental Readiness Office. PIFSC Data Report DR-17-002. 46 pages. doi:10.7289/V5/DR-PIFSC-17-002. | See visual summary above. |
| Hill, M.C., Oleson, E.M., Baumann-Pickering, S., VanCise, A.M., Ligon, A.M., Bendlin, A.R., Ü, A.C., Trickey, J.S., & Bradford, A.L. (2016). Cetacean monitoring in the Mariana Islands range complex, 2015. Prepared for the U.S. Pacific Fleet Environmental Readiness Office. PIFSC Data Report DR-16-01. 36 pages. | See visual and acoustic summary above. |

**Websites / Social Media**

| *Website/Organization* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| NMFS. (2018). #MIhumpbacks: Humpback whales of the Mariana Islands. Retrieved from <https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/feature-story/mihumpbacks-humpback-whales-mariana-islands>. | This website details the humpback whale research in the Mariana Islands of NMFS researchers with funding from the US Navy Pacific Fleet to learn more the possible winter destination of humpback whales in the western North Pacific and if the Mariana Islands could be the missing humpback whale breeding area. Researchers began winter (February to March) surveys off Saipan and Tinian in 2015 and continued seasonal winter surveys through 2017. They collected |

photographs and biopsy samples and found that some whales return to Saipan in different years. They observed competitive groups and newborn calves, leading them to the conclusion that humpback whales are breeding in the Marianas Islands.

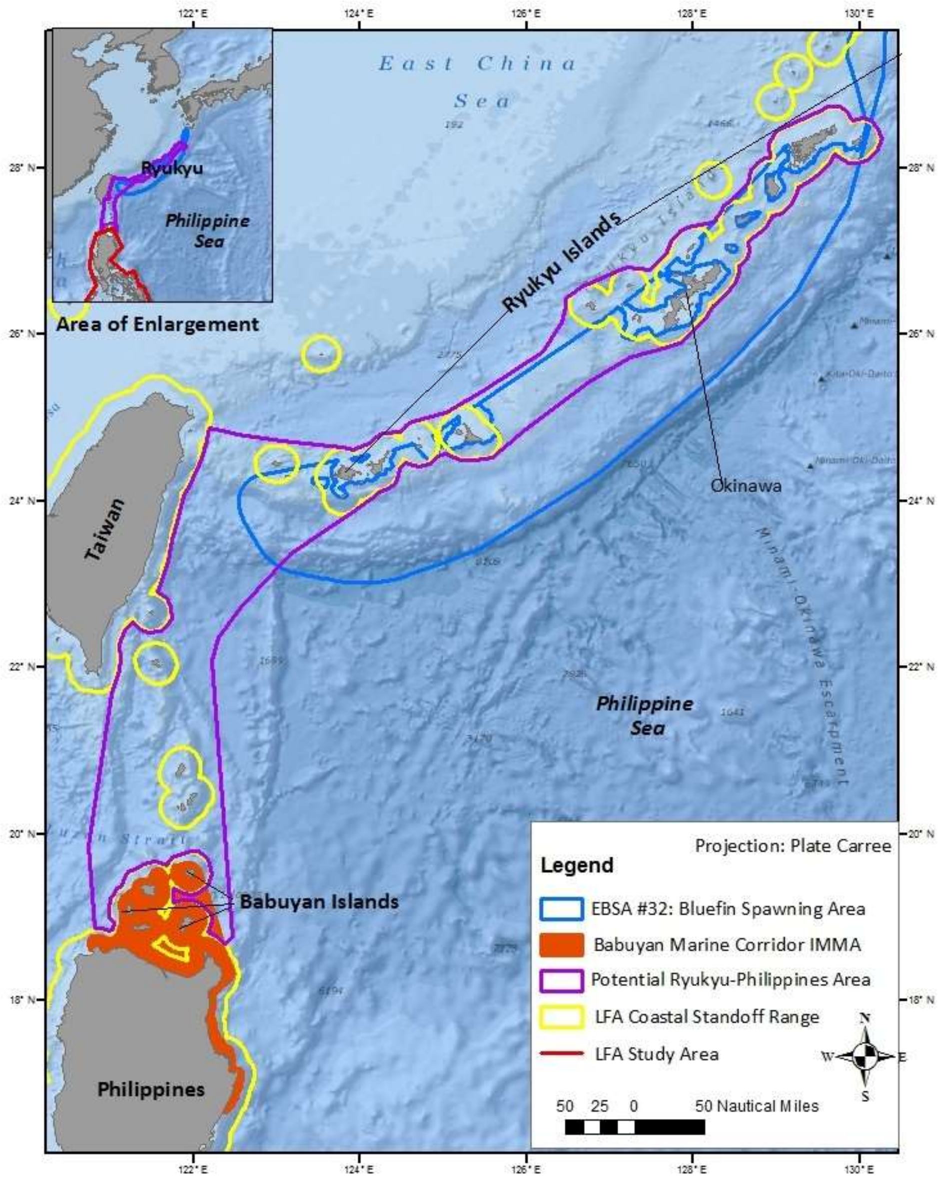
| Bluefin Spawning Area/Babuyan Marine Corridor | 5 |
|---|---|

**MARINE REGION:** Western North Pacific Ocean

**COUNTRY:** Japan, Taiwan, Philippines

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:**

Humpback whale




**MARINE AREA TYPE**

☐ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA**

☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**

☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**

☐ **IUCN Green List Site**

☒ **IMMA**

☒ **EBSA** (EA #32)

☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**

☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**

☐ **U.S. MPA**

☐ **U.S. ESA Critical Habitat**

☐ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**AREA OVERVIEW**

The waters of the Bluefin Spawning EBSA are influenced by the subtropical, northeastward flowing Kuroshio Current. The Kuroshio Current (also known as the Japanese Current) is a fast-moving (2 to 4 kt [1 to 2.1 m/sec]), narrow (~54 nmi [100 km] wide) surface western boundary current that flows northeastward from the Philippines and Taiwan past the Ryukyu Islands, close to the southern and eastern coasts of the main islands of Japan, to about 150° E, where it deflects offshore to become the

Kuroshio Extension Current. Waters of the Kuroshio Current are characterized by high temperatures-and salinities and low nutrient concentrations (UNEP CBD, 2017c).

Although this EBSA was designated due to its importance as the principle spawning area for bluefin tuna in the North Pacific Ocean, it also is known to be an important reproductive area for the humpback whale in the North Pacific Ocean (Bettridge et al., 2015; UNEP CBD, 2017c). In the North Pacific Ocean, the known humpback whale breeding grounds are located in three regions: (1) the central North Pacific in the waters of the Hawaiian Islands; (2) the eastern North Pacific off the Mexican Baja Peninsula and Islas Revillagigedo; and (3) the western North Pacific in the Bonin (Ogasawara) Island chain south of Japan and Ryukyu (Okinawa) Islands northeast of Taiwan (Baker et al., 1994; Bettridge et al., 2015). The Babuyan Marine Corridor IMMA was designated specifically due to the importance of the Babuyan Islands region as a seasonal reproductive area for humpback whales (MMPATF, 2019).

NMFS recently redefined the status and global populations of humpback whales based on the wintering/breeding locations of each population (Bettridge et al., 2015). Although two WNP populations of humpback whales are thought to exist, NMFS was unable to differentiate the WNP into two humpback subpopulations because no breeding location is known for the second putative WNP subpopulation. Thus, the one humpback endangered subpopulation (DPS) designated for the WNP is based on the humpback's wintering and breeding in the area from the Ryukyu Islands (e.g., Okinawa) to the Philippines, including the Ogasawara Island areas (Acebes et al., 2007; Bettridge et al., 2015; Calambokidis et al., 2008; Darling and Mori, 1993; NOAA, 2016); Calambokidis et al. (2008) extended this winter/breeding range somewhat to encompass the Marianas Islands. Calambokidis et al. (2008) noted that humpback whales in the Asia breeding area are distributed over a large area along the island chains of the western Philippine Sea. The two nominal WNP humpback subpopulations are believed to overlap in the Ogasawara Island region (Bettridge et al. 2015). Humpback whales that overwinter and breed in the Ryukyu Islands and the Philippines migrate to feeding grounds in the northern Pacific, primarily off the Russian coast (Bettridge e al., 2015; Silberg et al. 2013; Titova et al. 2018).

The waters of the Ryukyu Islands, particularly around Okinawa, were once an important seasonal (January to March) whaling ground for humpback whales, with as many as 970 humpback whales having been killed off Okinawa between 1958 and 1961, while 817 were killed off Ogasawara between 1924 and 1944 (Nasu, 1966; Nishiwaki, 1959).

Guan et al. (1999) noted that humpback whales were acoustically recorded during the winter breeding season from January to March in areas of the Ryukyu Islands. Kobayashi et al. (2016 and 2017) conducted sighting and photo-identification surveys in the waters off islands (Ie and Kerama Islands) west of Okinawa, Japan to determine the timing of humpback whale migration and to verify the peak breeding season as well as the movement patterns between the islands off Okinawa. Mid-February through March is the peak calving period for humpback whales in the Okinawa area, with the breeding period beginning in late January (Kobayashi et al., 2016). Kobayashi et al. (2017) found that male and female humpback whales, but typically not humpback females with calves, move between the islands of Ie and Kerama, while females with calves remain in shallow, nearshore waters. Acebes et al. (2007) documented the occurrence of humpback whales, including cow-calf pairs, in the Babuyan Islands of Luzon, Philippines from late February through May, with photo IDs of whales in the Philippines matching those documented in the Ryukyu and Ogasawara Islands, proving that the breeding grounds of the WNP population of humpback whales extended as far south as the northern Philippines. Humpback whales in the Babuyan Islands have been observed in social groups common to breeding/wintering grounds including cow-calf pairs, cow-calf-escort groups, singers and surface-active groups (Acebes et al., 2007).

Okabe et al. (2017) reported on photo-ID fluke matches of humpback whales from the Okinawa and Babuyan/Philippines breeding-calving areas. One hundred photo-ID matches were found of humpbacks observed in both breeding-calving areas, with at least eight of the humpbacks moving between the two breeding grounds during the same breeding season and two male humpbacks moving between these two breeding areas in multiple seasons (Okabe et al., 2017). Yamaguchi et al. (2002) reported that five of ten humpback whales observed repeatedly in the Babuyan Islands since 1999 were photo-ID matched to humpbacks from the Ogasawara-Ryukyu photo-ID database. Of these five whales, three were observed in Ogasawara waters, one was in Ryukyu waters, and one was in both regions. These photo-ID data strongly suggest that Darling and Mori's (1993) theory was correct that humpback whales of the WNP DPS use all Asian breeding areas interchangeably and no one area exclusively.

**CANDIDATE OBIA #4—RYUKYU-PHILIPPINES BOUNDARY:**

The proposed boundary for the Potential Ryukyu-Philippines OBIA was derived by creating a buffer that was just offset from the coastal standoff range by <2 nmi (3.7 km) around the majority of the Ryukyu Islands and Babuyan Islands, with straight lines creating transit corridors between the Ryukyu Islands, the eastern Taiwan coast, and the Babuyan Islands off the northern Philippines. The boundary off eastern Taiwan was created as a straight line <3 nmi (5.6 km) from the Taiwanese coastal standoff range. Although the Ryukyu Islands extend all the way to Kyushu Island of the main Japanese islands, since no records indicate humpback whales are sighted in these waters of the northern Ryukyu Islands, the OBIA boundary extends only as far north as Amami Island.

**GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA**

**Location in LFA Study Area**: EBSA: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

**Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range** (12 nmi from emergent land): EBSA: ☐ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside
IMMA: ☐ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside

**Eligible Areal Extent**: EBSA: 33,783.17 nmi$^2$ (115,873.04 km$^2$)
IMMA: 582.18 nmi$^2$ (1996.83 km$^2$)
Navy Created Ryukyu-Philippines Potential Area: 33,296.11 nmi$^2$ (114,202.45 km$^2$)

**Source of Official Boundary**: EBSA: UNEP Convention of Biological Diversity
IMMA: IUCN MMPATF

**Spatial File Type**: GIS shapefiles

**Spatial File Source**: EBSA: UNEP Convention of Biological Diversity *(/api/v2013/documents/0BB21D56-B364-37EB-A5D6-764C80DC0502/attachments/EA_32_EBSA.zip)*
IMMA: IUCN-Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force (MMPATF), 2019. GIS data made available by the IUCN Global Dataset of Important Marine Mammal Areas (IUCN-IMMA), April 2019. Made available under agreement on terms of use by the IUCN Joint SSC/WCPA Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force and accessible at IMMA e-Atlas <www.marinemammalhabitat.org/imma-eatlas>.

**Date Obtained/Created**: EBSA: 7/18/2018; Navy Created Ryukyu-Philippines Potential Area: 12/31/18; IMMA: 4/10/19

## LOW FREQUENCY HEARING SENSITIVITY

☒ Species: Humpback whale

## BIOLOGICAL CRITERIA

**High Density**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Breeding / Calving**: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Migration**: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Foraging:** ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Distinct Small Population**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Critical Habitat**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## SEASONAL EFFECTIVE PERIOD

☐ Year-round ☒ Seasonal Period (Months Annually): January to April (Okinawa); late February to April (Philippines)

## OBIA WATCHLIST ADDITION

☐ Yes ☒ No

## SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION

### Peer Reviewed Articles

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Titova, O. V., Filatova, O. A., Fedutin, I. D., Ovsyanikova, E. N., Okabe, H., Kobayashi, N., . . . Hoyt, E. (2018). Photo-identification matches of humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) from feeding areas in Russian Far East seas and breeding grounds in the North Pacific. *Marine Mammal Science, 34*(1), 100–112. doi:10.1111/mms.12444. | The Russian Far East consists of multiple high latitude feeding areas for humpback whales, with 102 foraging humpback whales having been identified from breeding area catalogs during the SPLASH surveys. The goal of this study was to use photographs collected in the Russian Far East from 2004 through 2014 to further refine the migratory destinations of the humpback whales foraging in Russian waters seasonally. These researchers compared photographs taken of wintering humpbacks with photo catalogs from the breeding grounds of Hawaii, Mexico, |

Okinawa, and the Philippines. The highest number of matches was with Asian breeding grounds (i.e., Okinawa and the Philippines); for the Kamchatka feeding ground, the majority of whales were from the Asian breeding grounds while in the Commander Islands foraging grounds, the proportion of whales from Asian was twice that from the Hawaii breeding ground and six times higher than the Mexican breeding ground. The total match rate was considered low, which continues to support and suggest the hypothesis of some undiscovered humpback whale breeding location in the North Pacific.

Kobayashi, N., Okabe, H., Kawazu, I., Higashi, N., Kato, K., Miyahara, H., . . . Uchida, S. (2017). Distribution and local movement of humpback whales in Okinawan waters depend on sex and reproductive status. *Zoological Science, 34*(1), 58-63. doi:10.2108/zs160012.

The distribution and movement patterns of humpback whales in waters off western Okinawa Island, southwest Japan, were investigated using line transect and photo-identification methodologies. Line transect surveys were conducted in February and March from 2011 to 2014, with photo-identification surveys having been conducted from January to March 2006 through 2012. During the surveys, humpback whales aggregated in the areas around Ie and Kerama Islands and tended to travel along the inshore coast of Okinawa Island when they move locally between the two sites. The sexes of 496 humpback whales were photo-identified (322 males, 75 females, and 99 females with a calf). Of these, 24.8% were confirmed moving locally between the sites of Ie and Kerama Islands within the same season. Additionally, the data indicate that male humpback whales tend to move more actively between the local breeding sites as compared to females and females with a calf. We speculate that the males search for more opportunities to mate, whereas females with a calf tend to remain in the same areas to nurse their calves.

This study confirmed that humpback whales were found most frequently in the areas of Ie and Kerama islands in the waters west of Okinawa Island at depths shallower than 656 ft (200 m), in agreement with observations from other North Pacific breeding grounds. The results of these surveys also suggest to the authors that the waters around the Ie and Kerama islands are equally important breeding sites for humpback whales.

Kobayashi, N., Okabe, H., Kawazu, I., Higashi, N., Miyahara, H., Kato, H., & Uchida, S. (2016). Peak mating and breeding period of the humpback whale—(*Megaptera novaeangliae*) in Okinawa Island, Japan.

The migratory timing of humpback whales in Okinawan waters, one of their breeding grounds in the North Pacific Ocean, was researched to distinguish the reproductive status (male, female, or female with a calf), group compositions (singleton, pair, or whales

*Open Journal of Animal Sciences, 6* 169-179. doi:10.4236/ojas.2016.63022.

more than three) and group types (singer or competitive group) in order to assess the peak period of breeding activities. A total of 7,366 humpback whales were sighted during 1,192 days of photo-identification surveys from 1991 to 2012. The sex was determined in 1,284 of the observed humpback whales (848 males, 147 females, and 289 females with a calf), with 1,138 individual whales, 1416 pairs, and 710 groups of more than three whales having been observed. Females without calves tended to occur from late January to late February, which was the beginning of the breeding season and male-female pairs were observed most frequently during this period. The peak occurrence of competitive groups, which was considered a mating-related behavior group formed by females and males, was also observed during this period. These results indicated that humpback whales peak mating period in Okinawa occurred between late January and late February. Females with a calf tended to increase from mid-February toward the end of the breeding season, maintaining a high sighting per unit effort (SPUE) value in late March. We, therefore, suggested that the peak time of birthing and newborn care was probably from mid-February through late March in Okinawa.

Kobayashi, N., Okabe, H., Kawazu, I., Higashi, N., Miyahara, H., Kato, H., & Uchida, S. (2016a). Spatial distribution and habitat use patterns of humpback whales in Okinawa, Japan. *Mammal Study, 41*, 207–214. doi:10.3106/041.041.0405.

Using sighting survey data of humpback whales collected over 21 years in the waters of Kerama and Ie Islands, Okinawa, Japan, the distribution, environmental conditions, and reproductive status of the whales on part of their North Pacific breeding ground was investigated. Of the 1,402 humpback whales that were photo-identified (856 males, 100 singers, 150 females, and 296 females with calves) in the Okinawa area, males, females, and singers were mainly distributed in deep offshore waters, while females with a calf were distributed in shallow nearshore, interisland waters. These analysis results suggest that certain reproductive activities, such as mating behavior or competition among males over females with whom to mate, might occur in the offshore waters (<656 to 1,640 ft [200 to 500 m]) north of the Kerama Islands and west of Ie Island, while nurturing of calves by females occurs in the shallower (<263 to 328 ft [80 to 100 m]), interisland waters of Kerama and Ie Islands. These patterns of habitat use are similar to those observed in the Hawaii and Mexico breeding areas of the North Pacific.

| | |
|---|---|
| Silberg, J. N., Acebes, J. M. V., Burdin, A. M., Mamaev, E. G., Dolan, K. C., Layusa, C. A., & Aca, E. Q. (2013). New insight into migration patterns of western North Pacific humpback whales between the Babuyan Islands, Philippines and the Commander Islands, Russia. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 13*(1), 53-57. | Much of the Asian population of humpback whales spends the summer season foraging in the waters of the Kamchatka Peninsula, Russia and overwinters in the waters in the breeding grounds of the Okinawa and Ogasawara islands, Japan and Babuyan Islands, northern Philippines. Prior studies of humpback whales foraging grounds grouped the Commander Islands, Russia with the eastern Aleutian Islands as part of the central North Pacific stock of humpback whales. The authors of this study used photo-ID data from the Commander Islands and Babuyan Islands, Philippines to establish an unreported humpback migrational path between the Commander Islands and the Philippines. This finding suggests that a small number of humpback whales supposedly migrating to a 'missing' or unknown breeding ground are actually instead migrating to the Philippines. |
| Acebes, J. M. V., Darling, J. D., & Yamaguchi, M. (2007). Status and distribution of humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) in northern Luzon, Philippines. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 9*(1), 37-43. | After humpback whales were first observed in the Babuyan Islands off northern Luzon, Philippines in 1999, boat-based sighting surveys were conducted from February through May 2000 through 2003 to determine the seasonal distribution and occurrence, with photo-identifications of flukes and biopsy samples also being taken and songs recorded as well. A total of 367 humpback whales were sighted over the four annual seasons around the Babuyan Islands, including one cow-calf pair off northern Sierra Madre Island, which indicated that breeding occurs as far south as the Philippines. Several individuals photo-identified in the Philippines were matched to humpback whales identified in Ogasawara and Okinawa, Japan, indicating that the humpbacks occurring in Philippine waters are part of the same population that occur in the Ryukyu and Ogasawara Islands. Characteristics of the humpback songs from the Philippines whales indicates some similarity and mixing acoustically with humpback whales in Hawaii. |
| Guan, S., Takemura, A., & Koido, T. (1999). An introduction to the structure of humpback whale, *Megaptera novaeangliae*, song off Ryukyu Islands, 1991/1992. *Aquatic Mammals, 25*(1), 35-42. | Humpback whale songs were recorded during the winter breeding season from January to March in 1991 and 1992 off Zamami, Ryukyu Islands, Japan. Each of the humpback songs was composed of six fundamental themes, with each theme constructed of repeating phrases emitted in a sequence. Sixteen different units were recognized among songs recorded during the research period. The average song duration was 7.76 (± 1.8l) min in 1991 and 11.94 (±4.62) min in 1992. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Baker, C. S., Slade, R. W., Bannister, J. L., Abernethy, R. B., Weinrich, M. T., Lien, J., . . . Palumbi, S. R. (1994). Hierarchical structure of mitochondrial DNA gene flow among humpback whales *Megaptera novaeangliae*, world-wide. *Molecular Ecology, 3*, 313-327. | Mitochondrial DNA analysis of samples taken from six humpback whale subpopulations around the world revealed that maternal lineages are highly subdivided among the three major oceanic populations of humpbacks, with maternal lineages showing greatest segregation on summer feeding grounds. The majority of the results were on the delineation of the central and eastern North Pacific stocks of humpback whales, the North Atlantic humpbacks, and those in the Southern Ocean. The analysis supports the division of the North Pacific into a central stock which feeds in Alaskan waters and winters predominantly in Hawaii, and an eastern or 'American' stock that migrates between feeding grounds along the coast of California and wintering grounds along the coast of Mexico. The analysis results further support the division of the western and eastern Australia/New Zealand Southern Ocean humpback populations. |
| Darling, J. D., & Mori, K. (1993). Recent observations of humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) in Japanese waters off Ogasawara and Okinawa. *Canadian Journal of Zoology* 71(2):325-33. | Photos of 177 individual humpback whale’s tail flukes were collected from 1987 to 1990 in Okinawa and Ogasawara waters and analyzed to estimate abundance and determine behavior patterns. Humpback whales were commonly sighted throughout the Ogasawara Archipelago and near the Kerama Islands, Okinawa from December to May. Humpback whales were not regularly seen near Saipan in the Northern Mariana Islands or near Kenting, Taiwan. The predominant behavior patterns related to calving and mating. Two whales were identified in both the Okinawa and Ogasawara regions in different years, suggesting that both regions are used by the same population of humpback whales. |
| Nasu, K. (1966). Fishery oceanographic study on the baleen whaling grounds. *Scientific Reports of the Whales Research Institute, 20*, 157-210. | This paper describes the Japanese whaling grounds in the Pacific and Southern oceans for baleen whales and includes a few notes about humpback whales in the Ryukyu Islands.<br><br>Humpback whales were primarily caught in waters adjacent to Okinawa Island in the Ryukyu Islands. In abundant years, more than 200 animals were taken during January to March (the catch in 1958 reached 240 animals). The Ryukyu Island’s whaling operation closed around 1963. |
| Nishiwaki, M. (1959). Humpback whales in Ryukyuan waters. *Scientific Reports of the Whales Research Institute, 14*, 49-86. | Whaling around the Bonin (Ogasawara) Islands began in 1924 but whaling operations were closed due to the significant decreases in catch. In Ryukyuan waters, fishermen often reported the occurrence of humpback |

| | |
|---|---|
| | whales and started to kill them with rifles in 1954, harvesting 13 whales in 1956 and 23 in 1957. Japanese commercial whaling industry began in the Ryukyu area in 1958. Although these companies expected to kill 50 humpback whales and 30 sperm whales, no sperm whales were ever harvested. However, the whaling companies caught as many as 290 humpback whales in Ryukyuan waters.<br><br>The author estimated the number of migrating humpback whales in 1959 to be around 1,200 to 1,600 individuals. Based on the total number of humpbacks harvested in 1959, some lactating females or with calves, the total abundance is now estimated to be 2,250 migrating humpbacks with an estimated North Pacific population of 5,000 to 6,000. |

**Subject Matter Experts / e-NGO Reports / Regional Expertise**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Okabe, H., Acebes, J.M.V, Kobayashi N., Nakagun S., Higashi N., & Uchida S. (2017). To go or not to go: Movements of humpback whales between breeding grounds in Okinawa, Japan and the Philippines. Poster presented at the 22nd Biennial Conference on the Biology of Marine Mammals, Halifax, Canada, 22-27 October 2017. | To better understand movements between humpback whale breeding areas in Okinawa, Japan and the Philippine islands, surveys were conducted from 1991 to 2014 and 1996 to 2016, respectively, including photographs of all humpbacks observed. Photograph matches of the flukes of humpback observed in both breeding areas resulted in 100 animals (38 males, 24 females, remainder unknown) observed in both areas. Of these 100 humpbacks, eight individuals were recorded moving within seasons between the breeding areas, and two males were recorded moving between areas in multiple seasons (2005, 2008, 2012). One whale was observed in the Philippines and sighted in Okinawa waters 13 days later. |
| Calambokidis, J., E.A. Falcone, T.J. Quinn, A.M. Burdin, P.J. Clapham, J.K.B. Ford, C.M. Gabriele, R. LeDuc, D. Mattila, L. Rojas-, Bracho, J. M. S., B.L. Taylor, J. Urbán R., D. Weller, B.H. Witteveen, M. Yamaguchi, A. Bendlin, D. Camacho, K. Flynn, A., & Havron, J. H., & N. Maloney. (2008). *SPLASH: Structure of populations, levels of abundance and status of humpback whales in the North Pacific.* Final report for Contract AB133F-03-RP-00078. Olympia, Washington: Cascadia Research. 56 pages. | SPLASH (Structure of Populations, Levels of Abundance and Status of Humpbacks) was a large, international (50 research groups and more than 400 researchers in 10 countries) collaboration of humpback whale studies and data synthesis in the North Pacific Ocean. It was designed to determine the abundance, trends, movements, and population structure of humpback whales throughout the North Pacific and to examine human impacts on this population. Field efforts were conducted on all known winter breeding regions for humpback whales in the North Pacific during three seasons (2004, 2005, 2006) and all known summer feeding areas during two seasons (2004, 2005). A total of 18,469 quality fluke identification photographs were taken during over 27,000 approaches of |

humpback whales. A total of 7,971 unique individual humpback whales were cataloged in SPLASH.

Migratory movements and population structure of humpback whales in the North Pacific were found to be more complex than had been previously described. The overall pattern showed that coastal wintering regions of the western (Asia) and eastern (mainland Mexico and Central America) North Pacific were the primary wintering areas for the lower latitude coastal feeding regions, while the wintering areas off Hawaii and the Revillagigedo Archipelago were the primary wintering regions for humpbacks feeding in more central and northern latitude foraging areas. The SPLASH data suggested the existence of missing wintering area(s); humpbacks that feed off the Aleutian Islands and in the Bering Sea were not well represented on any of the sampled wintering areas and must be going to one or more unsampled winter locations. Thus, it is likely that SPLASH has revealed a new breeding ground for humpback whales.

The best humpback whale estimate of overall abundance in the North Pacific, excluding calves, is the average of two modeled results or 18,302 individuals.

Yamaguchi, M., Acebes, J.M.V., & Miyamura, Y. (2002). The breeding ground distribution of the humpback whales, *Megaptera novaeangliae*, in the western North Pacific and their transmovements among the Ogasawara Islands, the Ryukyu Islands and the Philippines. Paper presented at the Second Conference on Marine Mammals of Southeast Asia, Dumaguete, Philippines, July 2002. Page 159 in W.F. Perrin, R.R. Reeves, M.L.L. Dolar, T.A. Jefferson, H. Marsh, J.Y. Wang, & J. Estacion, Eds. Report of the Second Workshop on The Biology and Conservation of Small Cetaceans and Dugongs of South-East Asia. CMS Technical Series Publication Nº 9. Retrieved from <http://www.iucn-csg.org/wp-content/uploads/2010/03/Perrinetal.0589.pdf>.

The Ogasawara Islands and Ryukyu (Kerama) Islands, Japan, have been known as major breeding grounds for humpback whales. Observations of newborn calves and mating pods have proven that breeding and calving occur in these waters, and re-sightings of individual humpback whales in the same season or over seasons have been proved by fluke photo identification. The biological research in the Ogasawara and Ryukyu Islands has been conducted since 1989 and since 1999 in the Babuyan Islands, northern Luzon, Philippines. During 1989 to 1994, 490 individuals were identified in the Ogasawara Islands (including photos taken in 1987 to 1988) and 89 in the Ryukyu Islands, with 28 individuals were found in both waters. The dense interchanges of species between these two regions indicates that the species that migrate to both regions and belong to the same population so-called “Asian stock”. To further determine the southern extent of the Asian stock’s distribution, sighting surveys were conducted in the water of the Mariana Islands in 1995 and 1996. Although no humpback whales were sighted in those surveys, some sightings were reported by residents with photographs as evidence. Additionally, five of ten whales, which have been identified in the northern part of the Philippines since 1999, were matched to the ones in Ogasawara-Ryukyu ID photo collections. Of

| | |
|---|---|
| | these five whales, three were found in Ogasawara, one was in Ryukyu and one was in both regions. Although it is assumed that the humpback whales in the breeding ground of the western North Pacific are still densely distributed in the Ogasawara and Ryukyu Islands, their recent distribution extends to the waters of the Philippines and the Mariana Islands. |

**Committee or Government Reports**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| MMPATF (Marine Mammal Protected Area Task Force). (2019). Babuyan marine corridor IMMA. Retrieved from <https://www.marinemammal habitat.org/portfolio-item/babuyan-marine-corridor/>. | Overview of IMMA criteria and justification for area's selection as an important marine mammal area (IMMA). More than 10 species of marine mammals have been observed in these waters, but it is humpback's migration to the island area for breeding and calving seasonally that is the reason for its designation. |
| UNEP CBD. (2017c). Ecologically or biologically significant areas: Bluefin spawning area, EA #32. Retrieved from <https://chm.cbd.int/pdf/ documents/marineEbsa/237881/1>. | Overview of EBSA information collected on this area along with the criteria for designation. The waters of the Kuroshio Current's subtropical zone from the Nansei (Okinawa) Islands, where the Kuroshio Current flows north to the waters off the coast of southern Kyushu, are connected to the Coral Triangle and provide a major spawning area for bluefin tuna. |
| NOAA. (2016). Endangered and threatened species identification of 14 distinct population segments of the humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) and revision of species-wide listing; Final rule. *Federal Register 81*, 174, 62260-62320. | Identification of 14 global populations of humpback whales based on the location of their breeding areas; the feeding areas for each population or distinct population segments (DPSs) is also provided. This rule formally relists four (Western North Pacific, Cape Verde Islands/North Atlantic, Central America, and Arabian Sea) of the 14 global DPSs as endangered and one (Mexico) DPS as threatened under the ESA. The remaining nine DPSs are not listed under the ESA.<br><br>The Western North Pacific DPS is described as those humpback whales that breed or winter in the region around Okinawa and the Philippines in the Kuroshio Current (as well as unknown breeding grounds in the Western North Pacific Ocean), transiting through the Ogasawara area, and feeding in the North Pacific Ocean, primarily in the West Bering Sea, off the Russian coast, and the Aleutian Islands. |
| Bettridge, S., Baker, C. S., Barlow, J., Clapham, P. J., Ford, M., Gouveia, D., Mattila, D. K., Pace, III, R. M., Rosel, P. E., Silber, G. K., & Wade, P. R. (2015). *Status review of the humpback whale (Megaptera novaeangliae) under the Endangered Species Act.* | As part of the comprehensive review of the status of humpback whales as the basis for possible revisions under the ESA, all available information and data on humpback whales were compiled by the Humpback Biological Review Team. The team differentiated the |

| | |
|---|---|
| NOAA Technical Memorandum NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-540. La Jolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Service, National Marine Fisheries Service. | global populations of humpback whales into 15 distinct population segments (DPSs) based on the primary breeding location of the associated population. Descriptions of the breeding and foraging ranges of each DPS are included in the status review. The risk of each DPS for extinction was assessed as the subsequent basis for designation of each DPS's status under the ESA. |

**Surveys**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| See peer-review papers above (Kobayashi and Acebes) and regional experts (Okabe and Yamaguchi). | |

**Websites / Social Media**

| *Website/Organization* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Balyena.org. (2018). Balyena at lumba sa Pilipinas. Humpback whale research in the Babuyan Islands—research, education and conservation. Retrieved from <http://balyena.org.ph/research/humpbacks>. | Information about the annual boat-based surveys of the humpback whale breeding grounds in the Babuyan Islands off Luzon, north Philippines. Through comparisons of fluke photos and song recordings from humpbacks from Russia, Japan, and Hawaii, we aim to better understand the links with other populations in the western North Pacific, particularly in feeding grounds. Our photoID study has currently identified 241 humpback whale individuals. Twelve other marine mammal species as well as sea turtles and whale sharks are also found in these diverse waters. |
| Visit Okinawa Japan. (2018). Whale watching guide—An impressive experience to encounter in Okinawa! Retrieved from <https://www.visito kinawa.jp/information/whale-watching>. | Information about humpback whale watching from January to March around the coast of Zamami Island, Okinawa, Japan. This is said to be the time of year when humpbacks are confirmed to be in the waters of Zamami Island during the best season of whale watching. |

| Ogasawara Islands | 6 |
|---|---|

**MARINE REGION:** Western North Pacific Ocean

**COUNTRY:** Japan

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:** Humpback whale and sperm whale

**MARINE AREA TYPE**

☐ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA**

☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**

☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**

☐ **IUCN Green List Site**

☐ **IMMA**

☒ **EBSA** (EA #25)

☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**

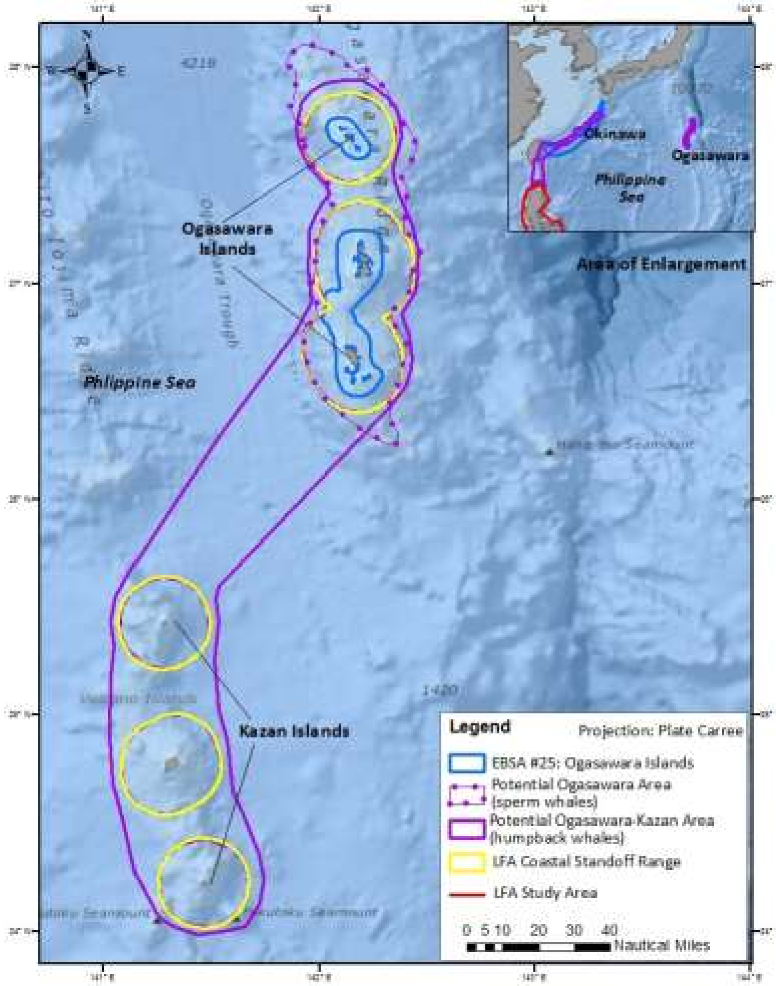
☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**

☐ **U.S. MPA**

☐ **U.S. ESA Critical Habitat**

☒ **UNESCO World Heritage Site**

☐ **Public Comment Recommendation**




**AREA OVERVIEW:**

The Ogasawara Islands (or Bonin Islands) are a group of Japanese islands located about 540 nmi (1,000 km) southeast of Tokyo, Japan. Like the Hawaiian or Galapagos Islands, the Ogasawara Islands are volcanic oceanic islands that consist of unique ecosystems as they've been isolated since their formation. In recognition of their uniqueness, the Ogasawara Islands were designated as a World Heritage site in 2011 by the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) (UNEP CBD, 2017d). The Ogasawara Islands consist of two major sections: the northern groups of islands, of which Chichi-jima Island is the largest, and the southern groups of islands, of which the greatest Haha-jima Island is largest. Located in the subtropical climate region, well-developed coral reefs are along the coasts of these oceanic islands, which are also known as important breeding grounds for seabirds, humpback whales, and green turtles (UNEP CBD, 2017d).

The Ogasawara Islands are also an important waypoint in the migrational route of the WNP DPS of humpback whales between their feeding grounds in the Commander Islands and off Kamchatka, Russia and their breeding grounds from the Ogasawara Islands further south in the Ryukyu Islands (surrounding Okinawa primarily) to the Babuyan Islands (northern Philippines) (Baker et al., 1994; Bettridge et al. 2015; Calambokidis et al., 2008; Silberg et al. 2013; Titova et al., 2018). The waters of the Ogasawara Islands were once part of the seasonal (January to March) whaling ground for humpback whales, with as many 817 humpback whales killed in Ogasawara waters between 1924 and 1944 (Nasu, 1966; Nishiwaki, 1959). Not only are the Ogasawara Islands an important breeding area and migrational waypoint, but humpback breeding behavior has also been reported in the Kazan Islands (Iwo-jima, Kitaiwo-jima, and Minamiiwo-jima), which lie a bit farther south of the Ogasawara Islands (Mori et al., 1998; Ohizumi et al., 2002).

When NMFS recently redefined the status and global populations of humpback whales, it was based on the wintering/breeding locations of each population (Bettridge et al., 2015). Although two WNP populations of humpback whales are thought to exist, NMFS was unable to differentiate the WNP into two humpback subpopulations because no breeding location is known for the second putative WNP subpopulation, although the two nominal WNP humpback subpopulations are believed to overlap in the Ogasawara Island region (Bettridge et al. 2015). Thus, one humpback endangered subpopulation (DPS) was designated for the WNP, which is based on the humpback's wintering and breeding in the area from the Ryukyu Islands (e.g., Okinawa) to the northern Philippines, including the Ogasawara Island areas (Bettridge et al., 2015; Calambokidis et al., 2008; Darling and Mori, 1993; NOAA, 2016); Calambokidis et al. (2008) extended this winter/breeding range somewhat to encompass the Marianas Islands. Calambokidis et al. (2008) noted that humpback whales in the Asia breeding area are distributed over a large area along the island chains of the western Philippine Sea.

Humpback whales are observed in the Ogasawara Islands typically from December through May (Darling and Mori, 1993; Journey of Japan, 2016). Mori et al. (1998) found that humpback whales were densely distributed in the shallow, coastal (~656 ft [200 m] but within about 3.2 nmi [6 km] of shore) waters of the Ogasawara Islands and the Kazan Islands from December through May, with a peak density in February. During their period of occupation of these waters, humpback whales move repeatedly throughout the Ogasawara and Kazan Islands, with male humpbacks having greater mobility than females with calves (Mori et al., 1998). Females with calves begin to appear around the main island of Chichi-jima in mid-February and early March and continue to occur until between late April and mid-May (Mori et al., 1998).

Photographs have identified the same whales in both the Ogasawara and Okinawa island breeding grounds in different years, suggesting that humpback whales of the WNP DPS likely do not use any one Asian breeding area exclusively but instead use all Asian breeding areas interchangeably (Darling and Mori, 1993). Ohizumi et al. (2002) noted several differences between the Ogasawara and Hawaii breeding areas, namely that mother-calf pairs migrate later in Ogasawara than in Hawaii; there are fewer calves and fewer breeding activities, such as mating pods, observed in Ogasawara than in Hawaii; and the water temperature in the Ogasawara Islands is about (5° C) cooler than that preferred by mating humpbacks in Hawaii. Yamaguchi et al. (2002) reported that five of ten humpback whales observed repeatedly in the Babuyan Islands since 1999 were photo-ID matched to humpbacks from the Ogasawara-Ryukyu photo-ID database. Of these five whales, three were observed in Ogasawara waters, one was in Ryukyu waters, and one was in both regions.

Additionally, sperm whales were hunted by commercial Japanese whalers in the Ogasawara Islands until the 1980s (Kasuya and Miyashita, 1988). Female and juvenile sperm whales have been reported in the waters of the Ogasawara Islands with the suggestion that groups of sperm whales are not resident but rather migrate into these waters periodically, perhaps to use the area as a nursery ground, as all sperm whales observed were mature females and immature male and female sperm whales, but no mature male sperm whales (Mori et al., 1999). Mori et al. (1999) observed sperm whales throughout the year in waters of the Ogasawara Islands >656 ft (200 m) but more typically about 3,281 ft (1,000 m) with concentrations in areas where the bottom topography is steeply sloping near shore. Kasuya and Miyashita (1988) reported that previous researchers believed that western Pacific breeding sperm whales migrated in winter to the Ogasawara Islands and summered in the waters off Sanriku and Hokkaido, Japan.

Sperm whales in the Ogasawara Islands have been tagged with dive and acoustic sensors since 2002, with genetic analysis of tissue samples of tagged whales supporting the data and observations of Mori et al. (1999) that all tagged Ogasawara sperm whales were mature females and immature (male and female) sperm whales (Aoki et al., 2007, 2012; Amano et al., 2014). The dive results obtained by Aoki et al. (2012, 2015) on 12 sperm whales tagged in the Ogasawara Islands indicated that the sperm whales were actively hunting prey and foraging during their studies, indicating that sperm whales were also feeding in the waters of the Ogasawara Islands. Amano et al. (2014) recorded the vocalization repertoire of clicks, termed codas, of the female and immature sperm whales in the Ogasawara Islands and compared them to codas of sperm whales recorded off the Kumano (southern, Pacific) coast of Honshu, Japan and found that the codas of the Ogasawara sperm whales were representative of a different clan of sperm whales than those off the Kumano coast, suggesting that two vocal clans of sperm whales inhabit these waters. The coda data suggested to Amano et al. (2014) that the sperm whales found off the Ogasawara Islands are from the Short clan, which is found widely in the South Pacific Ocean, while the sperm whales off the Kumano coast may be part of the ‘‘++1/+1+1’’ clan, that has only been reported once off Tonga by Rendell and Whitehead (2003).

**CANDIDATE OBIAS #5 AND #6—OGASAWARA (SPERM WHALE) AND OGASAWARA-KAZIN (HUMPBACK WHALE) BOUNDARIES:** Although humpback whales are observed in relatively shallow waters of the Ogasawara and Kazin Islands, humpbacks move between the islands. Male humpback whales are also observed in deeper more offshore waters than are female humpbacks with calves. Last, the specific location where breeding and calving occur in this area is unknown. Given that lack of knowledge and to accommodate the deeper water movements of male humpbacks, the OBIA boundary around the Ogasawara and Kazin Islands was just offset from the coastal standoff range by <4 nmi (7.4 km). A straight-line corridor to accommodate migrating humpbacks that are traveling between the Ogasawara and Kazin Islands was created.

Sperm whales have been observed in the waters off the Ogasawara Islands in waters about 3,281 ft (1,000 m) in depth and within approximately 17 nmi (32 km) from shore. The sperm whale Ogasawara OBIA boundary was created as closely aligned with the coastal standoff range around the Ogasawara Islands and along isobaths between islands and off the northern and southern most islands.

GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA

**Location in LFA Study Area:** EBSA: ☐ Eligible ☒ Not Eligible

**Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range** (12 nmi from emergent land): Navy Created Potential Ogasawara-Kazan Area—humpback whale and Navy

Created Potential Ogasawara Area—sperm whale:
☒ Entirely Outside
☐ Partially Outside

**Eligible Areal Extent:** Navy Created Potential Ogasawara-Kazan Area—humpback whale: 7,385.03 $nmi^2$ (25,329.95 $km^2$)
Navy Created Potential Ogasawara Area—sperm whale: 793.8 $nmi^2$ (2,722.7 $km^2$)

**Source of Official Boundary**: Navy Created Potential Ogasawara Areas: DoN

**Spatial File Type**: GIS shapefiles

**Spatial File Source**: Navy Created Potential Ogasawara Areas: DoN

**Date Obtained**: Navy Created Potential Ogasawara-Kazan Area—humpback whale and sperm whale: 1/11/19

## Low Frequency Hearing Sensitivity

☒ Species: Humpback whale

## Biological Criteria

**High Density**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Breeding / Calving**: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Migration**: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification (both humpback and sperm whales)
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Foraging:** ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification (sperm whale)
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Distinct Small Population**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Critical Habitat**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## Seasonal Effective Period

☒ Year-round or Seasonal Period: June to September (sperm whales)
☒ Seasonal Period (Months Annually): February to May (humpback females with calves); December to May (all migrating humpback whales)

## OBIA Watchlist Addition

☐ Yes ☒ No

## SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION

### Peer Reviewed Articles

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Titova, O. V., Filatova, O. A., Fedutin, I. D., Ovsyanikova, E. N., Okabe, H., Kobayashi, N., . . . Hoyt, E. (2018). Photo-identification matches of humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) from feeding areas in Russian Far East seas and breeding grounds in the North Pacific. *Marine Mammal Science, 34*(1), 100–112. doi:10.1111/mms.12444. | The Russian Far East consists of multiple high latitude feeding areas for humpback whales, with 102 foraging humpback whales having been identified from breeding area catalogs during the SPLASH surveys. The goal of this study was to use photographs collected in the Russian Far East from 2004 through 2014 to further refine the migratory destinations of the humpback whales foraging in Russian waters seasonally. These researchers compared photographs taken of wintering humpbacks with photo catalogs from the breeding grounds of Hawaii, Mexico, Okinawa, and the Philippines. The highest number of matches was with Asian breeding grounds (i.e., Okinawa and the Philippines); for the Kamchatka feeding ground, the majority of whales were from the Asian breeding grounds while in the Commander Islands foraging grounds, the proportion of whales from Asian was twice that from the Hawaii breeding ground and six times higher than the Mexican breeding ground. The total match rate was considered low, which continues to support and suggest the hypothesis of some undiscovered humpback whale breeding location in the North Pacific. |
| Aoki, K., Amano, M., Kubodera, T., Mori, K., Okamoto, R., & Sato, K. (2015). Visual and behavioral evidence indicates active hunting by sperm whales. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 523*, 233-241. doi:10.3354/meps11141. | Cameras and accelerometers were attached to 17 sperm whales in the Ogasawara islands from 2010 through 2012 to verify that sperm whales use an actively pursuit strategy when hunting prey. Nearly 43 hours of sperm whale dive data resulted in 17,715 images, of which only 1.5 percent showed visible imagery or identifiable material and were recorded at water depths deeper than <1112 ft (339 m). Some of the recorded images were associated with bursts of speed twice the normal dive swimming speed of the sperm whales. The authors concluded that these data verified the hypothesis that sperm whales actively hunt to capture prey. |
| Amano, M., Kourogi, A., Aoki, K., Yoshioka, M., & Mori, K. (2014). Differences in sperm whale codas between two waters off Japan: Possible geographic separation of vocal clans. *Journal of Mammalogy, 95*(1), 169-175. doi:10.1644/13-mamm-a-172. | Vocalizations of mature female and immature sperm whales from two areas of Japan, the Ogasawara Islands and off the Kumano coast of Honshu Island, were recorded to determine whether these groups of whales shared a repertoire of vocalizations (codas) and belonged to the same social or clan structure. Both the repertoire and duration of the codas for each |

| | |
|---|---|
| | of the areas was different, suggesting that the sperm whales in each area were from different clans, with such a clear geographic clan structure being unknown elsewhere in the Pacific Ocean. The coda data analysis suggested to the authors that the sperm whales found off the Ogasawara Islands are from the Short clan, which is found widely in the South Pacific Ocean, while the sperm whales off the Kumano coast may be part of the ''++1/+1+1'' clan, that has only been reported once off Tonga. |
| Silberg, J. N., Acebes, J. M. V., Burdin, A. M., Mamaev, E. G., Dolan, K. C., Layusa, C. A., & Aca, E. Q. (2013). New insight into migration patterns of western North Pacific humpback whales between the Babuyan Islands, Philippines and the Commander Islands, Russia. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 13*(1), 53-57. | Much of the Asian population of humpback whales spends the summer season foraging in the waters of the Kamchatka Peninsula, Russia and overwinters in the waters in the breeding grounds of the Okinawa and Ogasawara islands, Japan and Babuyan Islands, northern Philippines. Prior studies of humpback whales foraging grounds grouped the Commander Islands, Russia with the eastern Aleutian Islands as part of the central North Pacific stock of humpback whales. The authors of this study used photo-ID data from the Commander Islands and Babuyan Islands, Philippines to establish an unreported humpback migrational path between the Commander Islands and the Philippines. This finding suggests that a small number of humpback whales supposedly migrating to a 'missing' or unknown breeding ground is instead actually migrating to the Philippines. |
| Aoki, K., Amano, M., Mori, K., Kourogi, A., Kubodera, T., & Miyazaki, N. (2012). Active hunting by deep-diving sperm whales: 3D dive profiles and maneuvers during bursts of speed. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 444*, 289-301. doi:10.3354/meps09371. | Data loggers were attached to 12 mature and immature sperm whales in the Ogasawara Islands to record speed, duration, and depths during dives. The tagged whales completed 126 dives and spent the majority of their time diving to water depths that exceeded 656 ft (200 m). The maximum dive depth and duration were 4,665 ft (1,422 m) and 53 min, respectively. The whales swam continuously during deep dives, with the mean dive swim speed of 2.9 kt (1.5 m/sec). Bursts of speed twice the typical dive speed occurred during about a third of deep dives (>1,312 ft [400 m]) and were suggestive of chasing of prey. Our results strongly indicate that sperm whales use an active-pursuit hunting strategy and use the bursts of speed only to capture powerful and/or nutritious (i.e., large and/or muscular) prey that compensate for the energetic cost of the speed burst. |
| Aoki, K., M. Amano, M. Yoshioka, K. Mori, D. Tokuda, and N. Miyazaki. (2007). Diel diving behavior of sperm | To investigate the possible diel dive patterns in sperm whales, data loggers were attached to sperm whales in two areas of Japan, off the Pacific coast of Kumano |

| | |
|---|---|
| whales off Japan. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 349*, 277-287. | and the Ogasawara Islands. Obvious diel patterns of diving behavior were found off the Ogasawara Islands, where the whales dived deeper and swam faster during the day than at night, whereas, off Kumano, the sperm whales showed no diel rhythm in diving depths or swimming speed. The authors suggest that the likely difference in the diel dive patterns of the sperm whales at these two locations was due to the diel behavior of the sperm whale's prey. |
| Ohizumi, H., Matsuishi, T., & Kishino, H. (2002). Winter sightings of humpback and Bryde's whales in tropical waters of the western and central North Pacific. *Aquatic Mammals, 28*(1), 73-77. | Sighting surveys of cetaceans were conducted in tropical waters of the western and central North Pacific Ocean during January and February 1993. Humpback whales were sighted around Hawaii and Iwo Island, Kazan Islands, which is thought to be the most probable southernmost area of the common wintering and breeding grounds of humpback whales in the Ogasawara-Kazan-Mariana region. No cetaceans were observed in the Marianas Islands. A solitary humpback whale was sighted some distance from Hawaii, which may have been a 'wanderer' that was flexible in its selection of wintering grounds. |
| Mori, K., Abe, H., Suzuki, M., & Kubodera, T. (1999). School structure, distribution and food habits of sperm whales near the Ogasawara Islands, Japan. Paper presented at the Abstracts, Thirteenth Biennial Conference on the Biology of Marine Mammals. *28 November-December 1999* (Abstract), 130. | Sighting and photo-ID studies were conducted during 1994 to 1998 to investigate the habitat use of sperm whales near the Ogasawara (Bonin) Islands. During 37 daytime whale-sighting cruises conducted within 20 miles of shore, 234 sperm whales in 24 schools were observed, with schools usually composed of 3 to 25 female and immature sperm whales; no male sperm whales were observed. This later finding suggests that the waters off Ogasawara may serve as a nursery ground for sperm whales in the western North Pacific. In total, 129 individuals were photo-IDd, with 17 of those whales re-sighted over the five-year study and five whales re-sighted four times during the study period. Our data suggest that whales are not permanent residents near the islands, but rather that several different schools alternately migrate to this area every year. Sperm whales were observed at the bottom depths greater than 200 m (mostly >1,000 m) through the year. Whales appeared to concentrate in a small area where the continental slope makes a narrow valley toward the island, particularly during mid-summer through fall. Such bottom topography may promote strong upwelling, which could increase the amount of prey. In this area |
| Mori, K., Sato, F., Yamaguchi, M., Suganuma, H., & Ueyanagi, S. (1998). Distribution, migration and local | From 1987 to 1992, land- and ship-based sighting surveys were conducted of humpback whales in the |

movements of humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) in the adjacent waters of the Ogasawara (Bonin) Islands, Japan. *Journal of the School of Marine Science and Technology Tokai University, 45*, 197-213.

Ogasawara and Kazan islands, although the majority of surveys were conducted in the waters of Chichi-jimi (largest of Ogasawara Islands). Most humpbacks were sighted within the 200-m isobath and typically within 5 km of the coast, which indicated an insular coastal distribution. Humpbacks began arriving in December and remained in the area until May, when they were no longer observed in the area. Females with calves were observed from mid-February to early March and continuing until late April through mid-May; the authors noted that the exact location of humpback calving is not known. Photo-ID catalogs indicates a high rate of recurrence for humpbacks returning annually to the Ogasawara region.

Baker, C. S., Slade, R. W., Bannister, J. L., Abernethy, R. B., Weinrich, M. T., Lien, J., . . . Palumbi, S. R. (1994). Hierarchical structure of mitochondrial DNA gene flow among humpback whales *Megaptera novaeangliae*, world-wide. *Molecular Ecology, 3*, 313-327.

Mitochondrial DNA analysis of samples taken from six humpback whale subpopulations around the world revealed that maternal lineages are highly subdivided among the three major oceanic populations of humpbacks, with maternal lineages showing greatest segregation on summer feeding grounds. The majority of the results were on the delineation of the central and eastern North Pacific stocks of humpback whales, the North Atlantic humpbacks, and those in the Southern Ocean. The analysis supports the division of the North Pacific into a central stock which feeds in Alaskan waters and winters predominantly in Hawaii, and an eastern or 'American' stock that migrates between feeding grounds along the coast of California and wintering grounds along the coast of Mexico. The analysis results further support the division of the western and eastern Australia/New Zealand Southern Ocean humpback populations.

Darling, J. D., & Mori, K. (1993). Recent observations of humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) in Japanese waters off Ogasawara and Okinawa. *Canadian Journal of Zoology* 71(2):325-33.

Photos of 177 individual humpback whale’s tail flukes were collected from 1987 to 1990 in Okinawa and Ogasawara waters and analyzed to estimate abundance and determine behavior patterns. Humpback whales were commonly sighted throughout the Ogasawara Archipelago and near the Kerama Islands, Okinawa from December to May. Humpback whales were not regularly seen near Saipan in the Northern Mariana Islands or near Kenting, Taiwan. The predominant behavior patterns related to calving and mating. Two whales were identified in both the Okinawa and Ogasawara regions in different years, suggesting that both regions are used by the same population of humpback whales.

| | |
|---|---|
| Kasuya, T., & Miyashita, T. (1988). Distribution of sperm whale stocks in the North Pacific. *Scientific Reports of the Whales Research Institute, 39*, 31-75. | This paper discusses the two contrary hypotheses of sperm whale stock segregation in the North Pacific Ocean, longitudinal versus latitudinal, which were reflected by the changes in Japanese whaling of sperm whales. The authors believe that two stocks of sperm whales formerly inhabited the western North Pacific with only one stock inhabiting the eastern North Pacific Ocean. One of the western North Pacific's stocks were so heavily exploited that it was effectively extirpated, leaving only one without enough members to fill in the area left by the extirpated stock. a |
| Nasu, K. (1966). Fishery oceanographic study on the baleen whaling grounds. *Scientific Reports of the Whales Research Institute, 20*, 157-210. | This paper describes the Japanese whaling grounds in the Pacific and Southern oceans for baleen whales and includes a few notes about humpback whales in the Ryukyu Islands.<br><br>Humpback whales were primarily caught in waters adjacent to Okinawa Island in the Ryukyu Islands. In abundant years, more than 200 animals were taken during January to March (the catch in 1958 reached 240 animals). The Ryukyu Island's whaling operation closed around 1963. |
| Nishiwaki, M. (1959). Humpback whales in Ryukyuan waters. *Scientific Reports of the Whales Research Institute, 14*, 49-86. | Whaling around the Bonin (Ogasawara) Islands began in 1924 but whaling operations were closed due to the significant decreases in catch. In Ryukyuan waters, fishermen often reported the occurrence of humpback whales and started to kill them with rifles in 1954, harvesting 13 whales in 1956 and 23 in 1957. Japanese commercial whaling industry began in the Ryukyu area in 1958. Although these companies expected to kill 50 humpback whales and 30 sperm whales, no sperm whales were ever harvested. However, the whaling companies caught as many as 290 humpback whales in Ryukyuan waters.<br><br>The author estimated the number of migrating humpback whales in 1959 to be around 1,200 to 1,600 individuals. Based on the total number of humpbacks harvested in 1959, some lactating females or with calves, the total abundance is now estimated to be 2,250 migrating humpbacks with an estimated North Pacific population of 5,000 to 6,000. |

**Subject Matter Experts / e-NGO Reports / Regional Expertise**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Calambokidis, J., E.A. Falcone, T.J. Quinn, A.M. Burdin, P.J. Clapham, J.K.B. Ford, C.M. Gabriele, R. LeDuc, D. Mattila, L. Rojas-, Bracho, J. M. S., B.L. Taylor, J. Urbán | SPLASH (Structure of Populations, Levels of Abundance and Status of Humpbacks) was a large, international (50 research groups and more than 400 researchers in |

R., D. Weller, B.H. Witteveen, M. Yamaguchi, A. Bendlin, D. Camacho, K. Flynn, A., & Havron, J. H., & N. Maloney. (2008). *SPLASH: Structure of populations, levels of abundance and status of humpback whales in the North Pacific.* Final report for Contract AB133F-03-RP-00078. Olympia, Washington: Cascadia Research. 56 pages.

10 countries) collaboration of humpback whale studies and data synthesis in the North Pacific Ocean. It was designed to determine the abundance, trends, movements, and population structure of humpback whales throughout the North Pacific and to examine human impacts on this population. Field efforts were conducted on all known winter breeding regions for humpback whales in the North Pacific during three seasons (2004, 2005, 2006) and all known summer feeding areas during two seasons (2004, 2005). A total of 18,469 quality fluke identification photographs were taken during over 27,000 approaches of humpback whales. A total of 7,971 unique individual humpback whales were cataloged in SPLASH.

Migratory movements and population structure of humpback whales in the North Pacific were found to be more complex than had been previously described. The overall pattern showed that coastal wintering regions of the western (Asia) and eastern (mainland Mexico and Central America) North Pacific were the primary wintering areas for the lower latitude coastal feeding regions, while the wintering areas off Hawaii and the Revillagigedo Archipelago were the primary wintering regions for humpbacks feeding in more central and northern latitude foraging areas. The SPLASH data suggested the existence of missing wintering area(s); humpbacks that feed off the Aleutian Islands and in the Bering Sea were not well represented on any of the sampled wintering areas and must be going to one or more unsampled winter locations. Thus, it is likely that SPLASH has revealed a new breeding ground for humpback whales.

The best humpback whale estimate of overall abundance in the North Pacific, excluding calves, is the average of two modeled results or 18,302 individuals.

Yamaguchi, M., Acebes, J.M.V., & Miyamura, Y. (2002). The breeding ground distribution of the humpback whales, *Megaptera novaeangliae*, in the western North Pacific and their transmovements among the Ogasawara Islands, the Ryukyu Islands and the Philippines. Paper presented at the Second Conference on Marine Mammals of Southeast Asia, Dumaguete, Philippines, July 2002. Page 159 in W.F. Perrin, R.R. Reeves, M.L.L. Dolar, T.A. Jefferson, H. Marsh, J.Y. Wang, & J. Estacion, Eds. Report of the Second Workshop on The Biology and Conservation of Small Cetaceans and Dugongs of South-East Asia. CMS Technical Series Publication Nº 9. Retrieved from

The Ogasawara Islands and Ryukyu (Kerama) Islands, Japan, have been known as major breeding grounds for humpback whales. Observations of newborn calves and mating pods have proven that breeding and calving occur in these waters, and re-sightings of individual humpback whales in the same season or over seasons have been proved by fluke photo identification. The biological research in the Ogasawara and Ryukyu Islands has been conducted since 1989 and since 1999 in the Babuyan Islands, northern Luzon, Philippines. During 1989 to 1994, 490 individuals were identified in the Ogasawara Islands (including photos taken in 1987 to 1988) and 89 in the

| | |
|---|---|
| <http://www.iucn-csg.org/wp-content/uploads/2010/03/Perrinetal.0589.pdf>. | Ryukyu Islands, with 28 individuals were found in both waters. The dense interchanges of species between these two regions indicates that the species that migrate to both regions and belong to the same population so-called "Asian stock". To further determine the southern extent of the Asian stock's distribution, sighting surveys were conducted in the water of the Mariana Islands in 1995 and 1996. Although no humpback whales were sighted in those surveys, some sightings were reported by residents with photographs as evidence. Additionally, five of ten whales, which have been identified in the northern part of the Philippines since 1999, were matched to the ones in Ogasawara-Ryukyu ID photo collections. Of these five whales, three were found in Ogasawara, one was in Ryukyu and one was in both regions. Although it is assumed that the humpback whales in the breeding ground of the western North Pacific are still densely distributed in the Ogasawara and Ryukyu Islands, their recent distribution extends to the waters of the Philippines and the Mariana Islands. |

**Committee or Government Reports**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| UNEP CBD. (2017d). Ecologically or biologically significant areas: Ogasawara Islands, EA #25. Retrieved from <https://chm.cbd.int/pdf/documents/marineEbsa/237869/1>. | Overview of EBSA information collected on this area along with the criteria for designation. The Ogasawara Islands host a variety of endemic species. In 2011, the whole area was declared a UNESCO World Heritage Site. Located in the subtropical climate region, the coastal sea areas have well-developed coral reefs specific to oceanic islands, and the islands are also known as important breeding grounds for seabird colonies. |
| NOAA. (2016). Endangered and threatened species identification of 14 distinct population segments of the humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) and revision of species-wide listing; Final rule. *Federal Register 81*, 174, 62260-62320. | Identification of 14 global populations of humpback whales based on the location of their breeding areas; the feeding areas for each population or distinct population segments (DPSs) is also provided. This rule formally relists four (Western North Pacific, Cape Verde Islands/North Atlantic, Central America, and Arabian Sea) of the 14 global DPSs as endangered and one (Mexico) DPS as threatened under the ESA. The remaining nine DPSs are not listed under the ESA.<br><br>The Western North Pacific DPS is described as those humpback whales that breed or winter in the region around Okinawa and the Philippines in the Kuroshio Current (as well as unknown breeding grounds in the Western North Pacific Ocean), transiting through the |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Ogasawara area, and feeding in the North Pacific Ocean, primarily in the West Bering Sea, off the Russian coast, and the Aleutian Islands. |
| Bettridge, S., Baker, C. S., Barlow, J., Clapham, P. J., Ford, M., Gouveia, D., Mattila, D. K., Pace, III, R. M., Rosel, P. E., Silber, G. K., & Wade, P. R. (2015). *Status review of the humpback whale (Megaptera novaeangliae) under the Endangered Species Act.* NOAA Technical Memorandum NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-540. La Jolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Service, National Marine Fisheries Service. | As part of the comprehensive review of the status of humpback whales as the basis for possible revisions under the ESA, all available information and data on humpback whales were compiled by the Humpback Biological Review Team. The team differentiated the global populations of humpback whales into 15 distinct population segments (DPSs) based on the primary breeding location of the associated population. Descriptions of the breeding and foraging ranges of each DPS are included in the status review. The risk of each DPS for extinction was assessed as the subsequent basis for designation of each DPS's status under the ESA. |

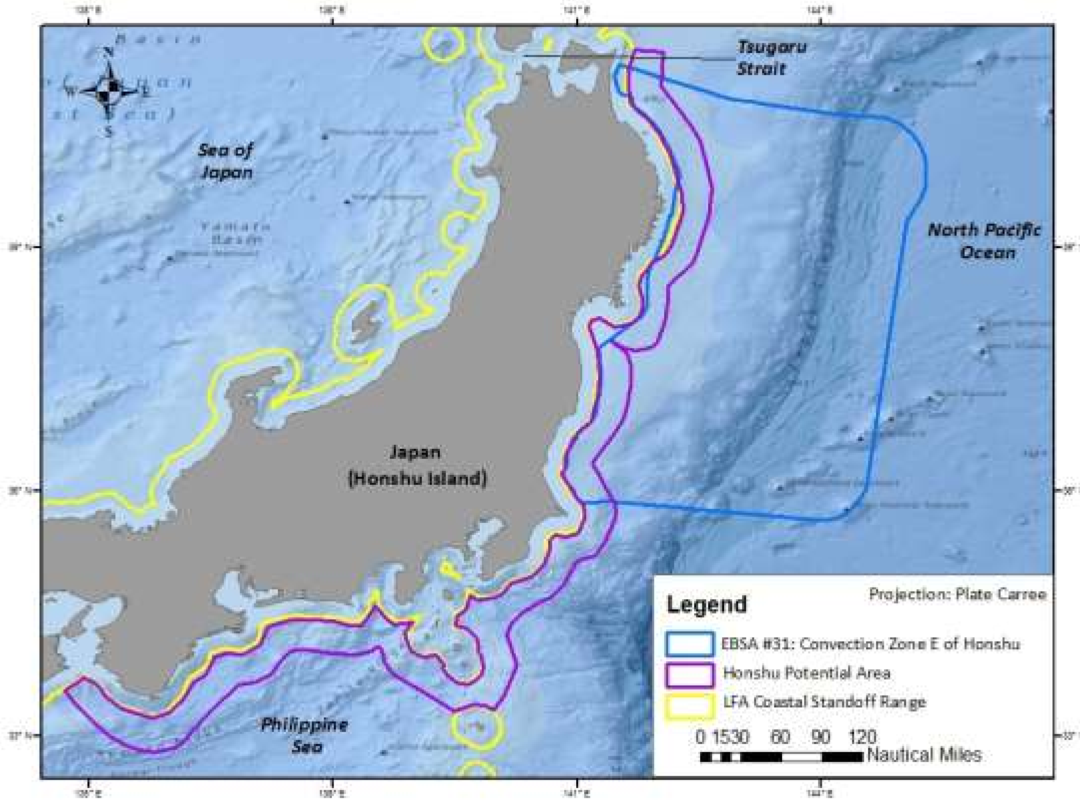
**Surveys**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Mori et al. 1998 (above) | |
| Ohizumi et al. (2002) above | |

**Websites / Social Media**

| *Website/Organization* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Japan-guide. (2018). Chicijimi island. Retrieved from <https://www.japan-guide.com/ e/e8202.html>. | Website about travel to Chici-jimi Island and activities available on the island, including whale watching. Japan-guide notes that humpback whales can be seen in the waters of Chici-jimi from February to April while sperm whales can be seen from July to September and swim-with programs for both taxa are available. |
| Journey of Japan. (2016). Ogasawara islands—You can see whales! Retrieved from <https://journey-of-japan.com/article/268/en>. | Information about taking a trip to the Ogasawara Islands from Tokyo, Japan (the Ogasawara's are part of Tokyo prefecture) to visit the World Heritage islands and go whale watching to see spinner, Indo-Pacific bottlenose, pantropical spotted dolphins, and sperm whales year-round and humpback whales seasonally when they migrate to the area from December through May. |

| Convection Zone East of Honshu | 7 |
|---|---|




**MARINE REGION:** Western North Pacific Ocean

**COUNTRY:** Japan

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:** Gray whale

**MARINE AREA TYPE**

- ☐ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA**
- ☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**
- ☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**
- ☐ **IUCN Green List Site**
- ☐ **IMMA**
- ☒ **EBSA** (EA #31)
- ☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**
- ☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**
- ☐ **U.S. MPA**
- ☐ **U.S. ESA Critical Habitat**
- ☐ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**AREA OVERVIEW:**

East and offshore of Honshu, Japan is the complex and unique oceanographic environment that results from the convection and mixing of the cold (<57° F [14° C]), southwesterly flowing Oyashio Current; the warm (75° F [24° C]), northeasterly flowing Kuroshio Current; and the warm (>66° F [19° C], easterly flowing Tsugaru Current (through the Tsugaru Straits) (McKinnell and Dagg, 2010). Complex oceanographic frontal boundaries and features such as eddies and upwelling result off the Honshu region from these converging currents. As a result, productivity is high near the surface in this area, with biota from both cold- and warm-water species represented. This unique convergence region is a very productive fishing region and foraging area for baleen whales and seabird species as well as spawning areas for several fish species and the finless porpoise (UNEP CBD, 2017f). The finless porpoise, however, is a coastal species found within the coastal standoff range of SURTASS LFA sonar and not considered herein.

Historically, this area along the Pacific coast of Honshu, Japan, as well as the coastal waters of eastern Russia and Korea, was one of the migrational routes of the Western North Pacific gray whale that feed in summer off the northeastern coast of Sakhalin Island, Russia (OBIA #12, Offshore Piltun and Chayvo) and migrated south to winter breeding grounds (Kato and Kasuya, 2002; Weller et al., 2008). Currently, however, the winter breeding grounds of the very small, endangered DPS of Western North Pacific gray whales is not known, and the migrational routes of the members of this population are not fully understood. Tracking of Western North Pacific gray whales from the Sakhalin feeding grounds equipped with satellite tags and photo-ID matching showed that a part of the Western North Pacific population of gray whales migrates across the North Pacific Ocean and have been observed during winter in the Pacific Northwest and Mexico (Cooke, 2018; Weller et al., 2012).

However, not all Western North Pacific gray whales migrate east across the Pacific. Since 1990, about 30 sightings and strandings have been documented in Japan, mainly on the Pacific Honshu coast (Kato et al., 2016). Weller et al. (2016) speculated whether this paucity of gray whale occurrence data in Japan reflects the true rare occurrence of this whale's sparse migration along the coast of Japan or is entirely an indication of the low level of research effort and/or reporting opportunities. Weller et al. (2008) reported on the entanglement and death in 2005 to 2007 of four migrating gray whales along the Pacific coast of Honshu. Nakamura et al. (2017) reported that from 2015 to 2016, seven sightings and two strandings of gray whales along the Honshu coast of Japan were reported; three of the 2015 sightings were all the same animal, photo-matched to a gray whale last observed in Sakhalin during 2014, indicating that this whale had migrated along the coast of Japan for two consecutive years. Weller et al. (2016) also reported on the repeated sightings of a reproductive female moving between Sakhalin in summer and Pacific Japan in winter and spring 2014 to 2016, which was the same gray whale reported by Nakamura et al. (2017). No strandings or fishery interactions with gray whales along the Pacific coast of Honshu were reported in 2016 to 2018 (IWC, 2017 and 2018); Weller (IWC, 2018) reported four gray whale sightings from the Honshu/Pacific coast in the late winter and early spring of 2017 and 2018, although no photo-ID matches could be made with Sakhalin whales.

**CANDIDATE OBIA #7—HONSHU BOUNDARY:**

The Potential Honshu OBIA boundary was created to conform with the outline of coastal Honshu, with the inner boundary closely aligned with the boundary of the coastal standoff range while the outer (seaward) OBIA boundary was buffered approximately 20 nmi (37 km) seaward to provide an adequate migrational space for seasonally migrating gray whales.

**GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA**

**Location in LFA Study Area**: EBSA: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

**Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range** (12 nmi from emergent land): EBSA: ☐ Entirely Outside

☒ Partially Outside (nearly entire area)

**Eligible Areal Extent**: EBSA: 59,921.43 $nmi^2$ (205,524.75 $km^2$)
Navy Created Honshu Potential Area: 21,024.69 $nmi^2$ (72,112.68 $km^2$)

**Source of Official Boundary**: EBSA: UNEP Convention of Biological Diversity

**Spatial File Type**: GIS shapefiles

**Spatial File Source**: EBSA: UNEP Convention of Biological Diversity *(/api/v2013/documents/6D82D227-416C-C5A8-8964-9AC566DBEEF1/attachments/EA_31_EBSA.zip)*

**Date Obtained**: EBSA: 5/7/2018; Navy Created Honshu Potential Area: 1/18/19

## Low Frequency Hearing Sensitivity

☒ Species: Gray whale

## Biological Criteria

**High Density**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification

☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Breeding / Calving**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification

☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Migration**: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification

☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Foraging:** ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification

☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Distinct Small Population**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification

☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Critical Habitat**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification

☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## Seasonal Effective Period

☐ Year-round ☒ Seasonal Period (Months Annually): January to May

## OBIA Watchlist Addition

☐ Yes ☒ No

## Supporting Documentation

### Peer Reviewed Articles

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Nakamura, G., Katsumata, H., Kim, Y., Akagi, M., Hirose, A., Arai, K., & Kato, H. (2017). Matching of the gray whales off Sakhalin and the Pacific coast of Japan, with a note on the stranding at Wadaura, Japan in March, 2016. *Open Journal of Animal Sciences, 7*, 168-178. doi:10.4236/ojas.2017.72014. | The coast of Japan is a migratory corridor for the western stock of the gray whales, which was once considered extinct and remains endangered. From 1955 to 2014, only 21 gray whale occurrences were recorded in Japan over this 59-year period. However, from 2015 to 2016, seven sightings and the two strandings of gray whales on the Honshu coast were reported. Four of the sightings were later identified to be of the same gray whale, who had been photo-matched as a gray whale that feeds off Sakhalin Island. One of the stranded whales was examined and determined to have been a young female that was photo-matched from the Sakhalin feeding group. The authors concluded that between 2015 and 2016 that at least three gray whales migrated along the Honshu coast of Japan. |
| Weller, D. W., Klimek, A., Bradford, A. L., Calambokidis, J., Lang, A. R., Gisborne, B., . . . Brownell, R. L. (2012). Movements of gray whales between the western and eastern North Pacific. *Endangered Species Research, 18*(3), 193-199. doi:10.3354/esr00447. | Photo-catalog comparisons of gray whales in the western and eastern North Pacific were undertaken to assess possible mixing between the two populations. Photographs of Western North Pacific (WNP) gray whales from the Sakhalin Island catalog were compared to photographs of Eastern North Pacific (ENP) gray whales from San Ignacio Lagoon in Mexico and from the Pacific Northwest. Six WNP gray whales were identified in the ENP Pacific Northwest catalog, having been photographed off Vancouver Island, British Columbia, Canada, and four WNP gray whales were identified in the ENP catalog from San Ignacio, Mexico. This along with recent sightings of gray whales off Japan makes it clear that not all WNP gray whales share a common winter ground. |
| Weller, D. W., Bradford, A. L., Kato, H., Bando, T., Otani, S., Burdin, A. M., & R.L. Brownell, J. (2008). A photographic match of a western gray whale between Sakhalin Island, Russia, and Honshu, Japan: The first link between the feeding ground and a migratory corridor. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 10*(1), 89-91. | Between 2005 and 2007, four female western gray whales were accidentally entrapped and died in Japanese set nets while migrating along the Pacific coast of Honshu, Japan. Photographs of these animals were compared to a photo-identification catalogue of western gray whales from their feeding ground off Sakhalin Island, Russia, to look for matches of individuals between the two areas. Only one photograph of any of the four gray whales from Japan from the Sakhalin feeding catalog was available to confirm a match between the two areas. This photographic match is the first recent evidence of a |

| | |
|---|---|
| | link between the Sakhalin feeding group and a migratory corridor off the east coast of Japan. |
| Kato, H., & Kasuya, T. (2002). Some analyses on the modern whaling catch history of the western North Pacific stock of gray whales (*Eschrichtius robustus*), with special reference to the Ulsan whaling ground. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 4*(3), 277-282. | The authors reviewed whaling records of gray whale captures after 1900 in the Yellow Sea and Sea of Japan (Ulsan) whaling grounds off Korea. Apparently small-scale harvest of gray whales continued until the mid-1960s after commercial whaling ceased in the 1935 to 1945, which the authors suggest as a possible cause for this populations lack of recovery after release from harvest pressure. Analysis of the whaling data indicated two distinctive migration peaks along the east coast of the Korean peninsula: the first peak in December/January due to southbound migration for winter breeding somewhere south of Korea, and the later March/ April peak representing the return northbound migration for summer feeding off Russia. |

**Subject Matter Experts / e-NGO Reports / Regional Expertise**

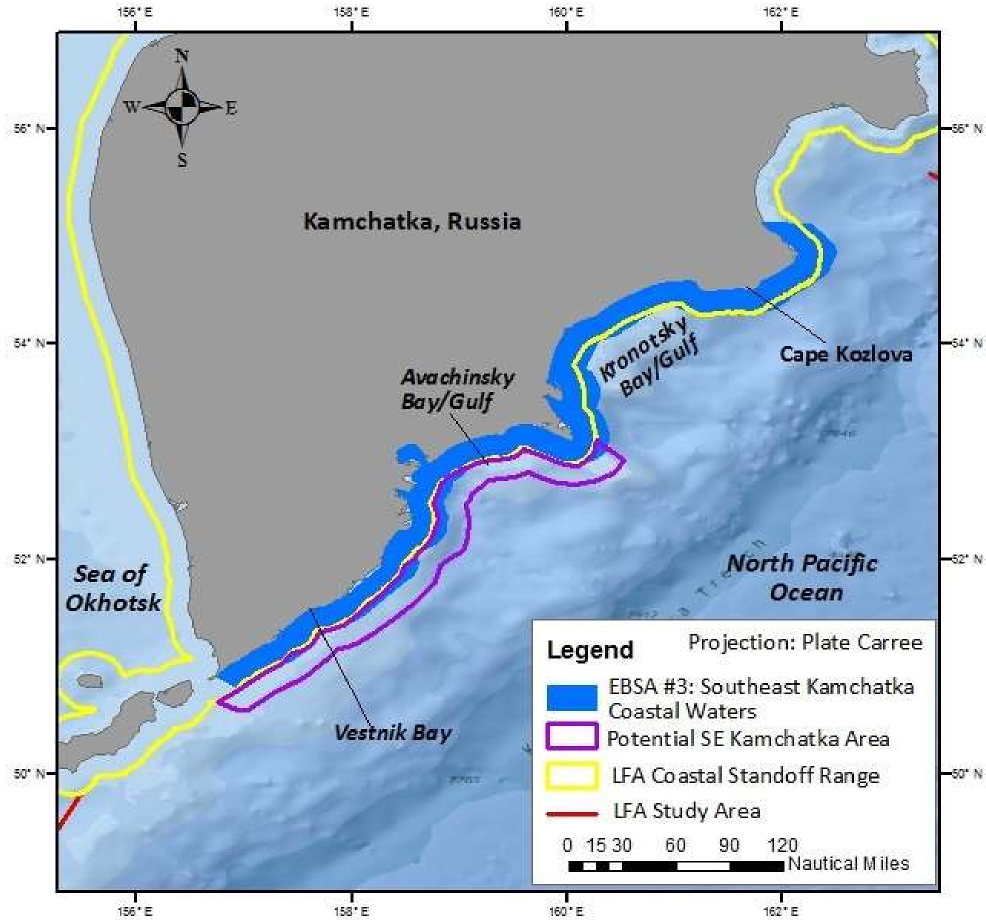
| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Cooke, J.G. (2018). *Eschrichtius robustus*. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2018: e.T8097A50353881. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2018-2.RLTS.T8097A50353881.en>. | IUCN Red List review of both the Eastern and Western North Pacific populations of the gray whale. Cooke notes that the breeding capability of the WNP population of gray whales no longer exists due to the small size of the remaining population. Former whaling grounds off Korea and southwestern Japan indicate the existence of a separate WNP or Asian population that migrated to breeding grounds south of the Korean Peninsula, based on the seasonality of catches in the Korean grounds, but the last sighting in Korean waters was in 1977, and recent surveys in Korean waters have reported no gray whales. The whales that feed off Sakhalin Island, Russia were thought to be a remnant of this breeding population, but some members of the feeding stock have recently been shown to migrate across the Pacific to the North American coastal area during winter, which shed doubt on this notion. However, recent records from winter and spring off eastern (Honshu) Japan, the Yellow Sea, and Taiwan Strait indicate that some of the Sakhalin feeding gray whales do migrate southward, presumably to an unknown calving/nursery area, and may be the remnant of the historical WNP gray whale population. |

**Committee or Government Reports**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| International Whaling Commission (IWC). (2018). Fifth rangewide workshop on the status of North Pacific gray whales. Paper SC/67B/REP/07 Rev1. WGWAP-19/INF.4, Western Gray Whale Advisory Panel, 19th meeting, November 2018. | The primary identified tasks of the workshop were to review the results of the modelling to validate the gray whale stocks, to examine the new proposed Makah Management Plan, and to update the scientific components of the Conservation Management Plan for Western gray whales, including obtaining updated occurrence data. Reports of recent strandings (none from Japan) and sightings and photo-matches with Sakhalin feeding group whales were reviewed (four from Honshu area of Japan). |
| IWC. (2017). Report of the scientific committee, IWC meeting SC/67a, Bled, Slovenia, 9-21 May 2017. IWC/67/Rep01. Retrieved from <https://archive.iwc.int/pages/search.php?search=!collection24503&bc_from=themes>. | Report of all IWC scientific committee groups, including updated occurrence information from the various reporting regions on North Pacific gray whales. Japan reported no fishery or other anthropogenic related incidents with gray whales and two sightings in Tokyo Bay in February and April 2017. Further details of the sighting at Izu Archipelago and Shizuoka prefecture from 2015 to 2016 clarified that they were of the same gray whale, but that a report and photograph of a gray whale at Aogashima Island, Japan could not be verified. |
| UNEP CBD. (2017f). Ecologically or biologically significant areas: Convection zone east of Honshu, EA #31. Retrieved from <https://chm.cbd.int/pdf/documents/marineEbsa/237875/1>. | Overview of EBSA information collected on this area along with the criteria for designation. In this area where the Oyashio Current (cold current), Kuroshio Current (warm current), and Tsugaru Current (warm current) mix and result in very complex oceanographic features such as oceanographic fronts from which warm- and cold-water eddies are generated. Production is high in this area, making it a key foraging area for seabirds, fishes, and baleen whales. It is also the spawning area for the finless porpoise and several fish species. |
| Kato, H., Nakamura, G., Yoshida, H., Kishiro, T., Okazoe, N., Ito, K., Bando, T., Mogoe, T., & Miyashita, T. (2016). Status report of conservation and researches on the western North Pacific gray whales in Japan, May 2015-April 2016. Paper SC/66b/BRG/11 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee. Retrieved from <https://archive.iwc.int/pages/download.php>. | The Japanese delegation to the IWC meeting presented the updated occurrence information on western gray whale occurrences in Japan. They reported that there were no entanglements of gray whales from May 2014 through April 2015 but two strandings of female gray whales had occurred along the southern (Honshu) coast during this period. Three sightings of gray whales were reported from Sagami Bay, Tokyo Bay, and Izu Islands area, but through photo-ID analyses were shown to be sightings of the |

| | |
|---|---|
| | same whale previously reported off Kozushima Island near Tokyo in March 2015. |
| Weller, D.W., Takanawa, N., Ohizumi, H., Funahashi, N., Sychencko, O.A., Burdin, A.M., Lang, A.R., Brownell, Jr., R.L. (2016). Gray whale migration in the western North Pacific: Further support for a Russia-Japan connection. Paper SC/66b/BRG/16 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee. Retrieved from <https://www.iucn. org/sites/dev/files/wgwap_17-inf.8_rs6104_sc_ 66b_brg_16_weller_et_al_wg_russia-japan_connection.pdf>. | The authors report on the migratory movements of a photo-identified gray whale (no. 233 from the Sakhalin Feeding Group Catalog) as it moved between Sakhalin Island, Russia and the Pacific coast of Honshu, Japan during 2014 to 2016. The gray whale was first sighted as a calf with its mother off Sakhalin Island in August 2014. The following spring, in March through May, it was sighted four times in three separate locations off Japan's Honshu coast. That summer in August 2015, whale 233 was again observed and photographed off Sakhalin Island, Russia. The following January and February, whale 233 was again sighted and photographed at two separate locations along Japan's Honshu coast. |
| McKinnell, S.M., & Dagg, M.J., Eds. (2010). Marine ecosystems of the north Pacific Ocean, 2003-2008. The North Pacific Marine Science Organization **(**PICES) Special Publication 4. 393 pages. | Overview of the Oyashio and Kuroshio Current systems as well as the other large marine areas of the North Pacific Ocean. Included are descriptions of the biological, chemical, and physical properties of these water mass/regions as well as the principal relevant biota. |

## Southeast Kamchatka Coastal Waters 8




**MARINE REGION:** Northwest Pacific Ocean

**COUNTRY**: Russia

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:** Killer, fin, humpback, North Pacific right, and Western North Pacific gray whales; Steller sea lion

**MARINE AREA TYPE**

☐ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA**

☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**

☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**

☐ **IUCN Green List Site**

☐ **IMMA**

☒ **EBSA** (NP #3)

☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**

☒ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA** (southern tip of Kamchatka)

☐ **U.S. MPA**

☐ **U.S. Critical Habitat**

☐ **Public Comment Recommendation**

## AREA OVERVIEW:

The coastal waters of southeast Kamchatka are a highly biodiverse marine habitat characterized by an irregular, high-relief coastline incised with bays, fjords, and islands; relatively narrow continental shelf: and temperate waters (UNEP CBD, 2016b). Migration routes and foraging area for marine birds, cetaceans (killer and gray whales), pinnipeds (Steller sea lions), and salmon are located in these coastal waters (UNEP CBD, 2016b).

This area is a seasonal migrational route for Western North Pacific gray whales, which are have been regularly observed foraging in Vestnik Bay and Olga Harbor (Kronontsky Gulf) (Filatova et al., 2017; Tyurneva et al., 2010; Yakovlev et al. ,2011). Yakovlev et al. (2011) reported 78 Western North Pacific gray whales from 2004 and 2006 through 2009 in Kamchatka waters, with a mother-calf pair observed in Olga Harbor during the summer of 2008 (Tyurneva et al., 2010), with seven mother-calf pairs documented in Olga Harbor/Bay in 2009. Sightings of these mother-calf pairs off southeastern Kamchatka waters may indicate that Olga Harbor/Bay is a second nursery ground for Western North Pacific gray whales (Yakovlev et al., 2011). Recent photo-ID matching studies between Sakhalin, Kamchatka, and Mexican photographic catalogs of gray whales resulted in nine matches, with two gray whales having been observed in all three locations, three gray whales had been observed in both Sakhalin and Mexico, and four gray whales having been observed in Kamchatka and Mexican waters (Urbán R et al., 2013). The results of this photo-ID matching study along with genetic and tagging studies show that Western and Eastern North Pacific gray whale populations mix during the winter reproductive season and that at some of the Western North Pacific gray whale population that summer in both Sakhalin and Kamchatka engage in lengthy transoceanic migrations (Urbán R et al., 2013).

Sighting surveys in coastal waters of southeastern Kamchatka waters during summer observed foraging humpback and fin whales in Karaginsky, Ozernoy, and Kamchatsky gulfs, with one right whale recorded in Avachinskaya Bay (aka Avacha Bay) in 2016 (Filatova et al., 2017). Ovsyanikova et al. (2015) compiled all available records of opportunistic sightings of right whales in the waters of eastern Kamchatka and noted that right whales were sighted during summer with some regularity in the inshore waters (typically within 12 nmi [22 km] of shore) of Kambalny and Vestnik Bays.

### CANDIDATE OBIA #8—KAMCHATKA BOUNDARY:

The narrow Southeast Kamchatka Potential OBIA was created with the inner boundary created in alignment with the coastal standoff range of southeastern Kamchatka, while the seaward boundary was buffered by approximately 14 nmi (26 km) to provide a migrational space for gray and right whales as they transit close to shore along the Pacific coast of southeastern Kamchatka. Straight lines join the inner and outer/seaward boundaries of the candidate OBIA.

## GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA

**Location in LFA Study Area**: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

**Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range** (12 nmi from emergent land): EBSA: ☐ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside

**Eligible Areal Extent**: EBSA: 1,601.58 nmi$^2$ (5,493.25 km$^2$)
Navy Created SE Kamchatka Potential Area: 3,881.12 nmi$^2$ (13,311.88 km$^2$)

**Source of Official Boundary**: UNEP Convention of Biological Diversity

**Spatial File Type**: GIS shapefiles

**Spatial File Source**: UNEP Convention of Biological Diversity
*</api/v2013/documents/A65F9731-8AD3-8242-2A8D-FA6C2E1CBCED/attachments/NP_3_EBSA-GIS%20shapefile.zip>*

**Date Obtained**: EBSA: 5/7/18; Navy Created SE Kamchatka Potential Area: 3/22/19

## LOW FREQUENCY HEARING SENSITIVITY

☒ Species: humpback, fin, Western North Pacific gray, and North Pacific right whales

## BIOLOGICAL CRITERIA

**High Density**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Breeding / Calving**: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification (Western North Pacific gray whales)
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Migration**: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Foraging:** ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Distinct Small Population**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Critical Habitat**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## SEASONAL EFFECTIVE PERIOD

☐ Year-round ☒ Seasonal Period (Months Annually): June to September (Western North Pacific gray and North Pacific right whales)

## OBIA WATCHLIST ADDITION

☐ Yes ☒ No

## SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION

### Peer Reviewed Articles

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Ovsyanikova, E., Fedutin, I., Belonovich, O., Burdin, A., Burkanov, V., Dolgova, E., Filatova, O., Fomin, S., Hoyt, E., Mamaev, E., Richard, G., Savenko, O., Sekiguchi, K., Shpak, O., Sidorenko, M., & Titova, O. (2015). Opportunistic sightings of the endangered North | Population estimates of North Pacific right whale do not include all Russian waters nor do they include potential sightings or use by right whales of inshore habitats. From 2003 to 2014, various Russian researchers working on marine mammal projects |

| | |
|---|---|
| Pacific right whales (*Eubalaena japonica*) in Russian waters in 2003-2014. Marine Mammal Science, 31, 4, 1559-1567. doi: 10.1111/mms.12243. | along the coast of the Russian Far East have collected records of 19 opportunistic encounters with right whales that represented sightings of 31 right whales, with one whale sighted twice (records No. 2 and 3), 17 days and about 224 nmi (415 km) apart.<br><br>Previously little was known about the distribution of right whales off the Pacific coast of the Kamchatka Peninsula. Thus, the regularity of sightings of right whales in waters along the east coast of Kamchatka (Kambalny and Vestnik Bays) reflected in our records indicates that this area is frequently utilized by the whales. Most of the observations off Kamchatka noted in this paper took place inshore (all sightings except Nos. 1 and 15 are within 12 nmi [22 km] from shore). |
| Yakovlev, Y.M., Tyurneva, O.Y., Vertyankin, V.V., Gailey, G., & Sychenko, O. (2011). Discovering a new feeding area for calf-cow pairs of endangered western gray whales *Eschrichtius robustus* on the south-east shelf of Kamchatka in 2009 and their utilizing different feeding regions within one season. *Egyptian Journal of Aquatic Research, 37,* 1, 95-101. | Over the past few decades, researchers have become increasingly aware of a wide distribution of gray whales in the coastal waters off southeast Kamchatka during the summer, autumn, and early winter months. To determine more about the distribution of right whales in the area, in 2009, photo-ID studies were conducted off Sakhalin Island and eastern Kamchatka (Olga and Vestnik Bays) of Western North Pacific gray whales. Photo-ID studies conducted offshore southeast Kamchatka since 2006 revealed that some of Kamchatka whales belong to the western gray whale (WGW) population. Solitary gray whales have been previously been detected in the waters of southeast Kamchatka. From 2004, and 2006 to 2009, 78 gray whales were observed and photographed in areas offshore of Kamchatka, with 41 of those whales having been matched to photographs in the Sakhalin/Piltun photo-catalog.<br><br>In 2008, a mother-calf pair was recorded in Olga Bay, Kamchatka for the first time. In July to September 2009, seven mother-calf pairs were observed in Olga Bay, Kamchatka; four of these females/mothers had been identified off Sakhalin Island in previous years and two of the seven calves were later observed in Sakhalin waters later in the 2009 season. Five mother-calf pairs and one solitary calf were identified in Sakhalin waters during 2009. Thus, a total of 10 calves that have mothers in the Sakhalin photo catalog were recorded in 2009. These results indicate that the Piltun/Sakhalin offshore area is not the only foraging area for mother-calf pairs of Western North Pacific gray whales but that a second "nursery ground" exists in Olga Bay, Kamchatka. |
| Tyurneva, O.Y., Yakovlev, Y.M., Vertyankin, V.V., & Selin, N.I. (2010). The peculiarities of foraging | From June to October 2008, photo-ID studies were conducted in the waters off northeastern Sakhalin |

| | |
|---|---|
| migrations of the Korean-Okhotsk gray whale (*Eschrichtius robustus*) population in Russian waters of the Far Eastern seas. *Russian Journal of Marine Biology, 36*(2), 117-124. doi:10.1134/s1063074010020069. | Island and Olga Bay, southeastern Kamchatka, Russia. Fifty gray whales were observed in Kamchatka waters during 2008. Photographs of those observed gray whales were matched against the existing Sakhalin-Piltun photo-ID catalog, which includes 165 discrete gray whales. Twenty-four gray whales from the Sakhalin-Piltun catalog were observed in Olga Bay. Of the gray whales observed off Kamchatka during 2008, 25 whales had never previously been observed off Sakhalin Island before, making it unclear if these gray whales were part of the Western gray whale stock, which feeds principally off Sakhalin Island, or was instead part of the Eastern gray whale stock, which feeds in the Chukchi and migrates along the North American coast.<br><br>The results from this study indicate that gray whales likely forage in more than one feeding ground during the same season, which means that these whales can make long intra-annual movements. Two whales in 2006 and one whale in 2008 were first identified off Kamchatka, and later in the same season were observed in the offshore Sakhalin foraging area. In 2007, 13 gray whales sighted off Kamchatka were then observed foraging in Sakhalin waters. Conversely, some gray whales only relocate to foraging grounds interannually. Half the ways observed in Olga Bay in 2008 had been observed off Sakhalin Island in previous years.<br><br>In 2008, for the first time, one mother-calf pair was observed in Olga Bay. This female gray whale had been recorded off Sakhalin Island in 2002 through 2006, when she was accompanied by a calf in 2003, and was observed in Kamchatka waters in 2007.<br><br>Recent sightings of gray whales in other locations (e.g., Kuril Islands, northern Sea of Okhotsk, Medny Island) besides Sakhalin and Kamchatka waters suggests that the foraging and migrational pathways of the gray whale in the northwestern Pacific Ocean are not well known nor understood. |

**Committee or Government Reports**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| UNEP CBD. (2016b). Ecologically or biologically significant areas: Southeast Kamchatka coastal waters. Retrieved from <https://chm.cbd.int/pdf/ documents/marineEbsa/204111/2>. | Overview of EBSA information collected on this marine area along with the criteria justification for designation. The southeast Kamchatka coastal waters (Northwest Pacific) are critical for several species of marine megafauna and are a rich marine habitat |

| | |
|---|---|
| | characterized by a high level of biodiversity. Migration routes of different vertebrates (marine birds, cetaceans, pinnipeds, salmons) are located along the shore. Gray whales are regularly seen in Kronotsky Bay and Vestnik Bay. Steller's sea lions are observed at Cape Kozlova. Avachinskaya Bay is a feeding ground for killer whales. Closed bays are inhabited by sea otters. Starichkov and Utashud islands are important bird areas, harboring 13 species of colonial seabirds. |
| Urbán R., J., Weller, D., Tyurneva, O., Swartz, S., Bradford, A., Yakovlev, Y., Sychenko, O, Rosales N., H., Martínez A., S., Burdin, A., & Gómez-Gallardo U., A. (2013). Report on the photographic comparison of the Sakhalin Island and Kamchatka Peninsula with the Mexican gray whale catalogues. Paper SC/65/BRG04 presented to the Scientific Committee of the International Whaling Commission. Retrieved from <https://www.academia.edu/33141597/SC_65_BRG04_Report_on_the_Photographic_Comparison_of_the_Sakhalin_Island_and_Kamchatka_Peninsula_with_the_Mexican_Gray_Whale_Catalogues>. | A photo-ID matching study of 382 gray whales photographed on their Russian summer feeding grounds off Sakhalin Island (232 photographs taken from 1994 to 2012) and Kamchatka (150 photographs taken from 2004 through 2011) were compared to 4,352 gray whales photographed on their winter calving/breeding lagoons in Baja California Peninsula, Mexico (from 2006 and 2012). The comparison between the three catalogs resulted in nine confirmed matches, one male, three females, and five whales whose sex was unknown. Two whales were observed in all three locations, three gray whales had been identified in both Sakhalin and Mexico, and four gray whales were identified in Kamchatka and Mexico. Seven of the nine whales photographed in Mexico were only observed there in one winter season, one whale was photographed in Mexico during two winter seasons, and only one whale was photographed in Mexico during three winters. Some of the gray whales were photographed in consecutive seasons. For example, female gray whale #2 was first observed off Kamchatka in 2008, in Mexico within winter 2009, in Kamchatka in summer 2009, and in Mexico winter 2012 and Sakhalin summer 2012.<br><br>These results along with tagging and genetic studies show that the Western and Eastern North Pacific gray whale populations mix during the winter reproductive season and that at some of the Western North Pacific gray whale population that summer in Russian waters engages in transoceanic migrations. |

**Surveys**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Filatova, O.A., Fedutin, I.D., Titova, O.V., Shpak, O.V., Burdin, A.M., Hoyt, E. (2017). Cetacean surveys in the coastal waters of the Russian Pacific in 2014-2016. Paper SC/67A/NH/06 presented at 18th Gray Whale Advisory Panel Meeting, International Whaling | Working from platforms ranging in size from 7.5 m inflatable catamaran to 30 m cargo ship, surveys to estimate cetacean distribution were conducted in the coastal waters of the eastern Kamchatka peninsula, Commander and Kuril Islands, as well as the western |

Commission (WGWAP-18/INF.8). Retrieved from <https://www.iucn.org/sites/dev/files/content/documents/wgwap_18-inf.8_filatova_et_al_cet_surveys_sc_67a_nh_06_highlights.pdf>.

and northern Okhotsk Sea from 2014 to 2016; incidental sightings of large whales reported during killer whale surveys of Avacha Gulf were also included. Since the International Whaling Commission has jurisdiction over large whales such as all baleen whales and the sperm whale, only sightings of these whales are noted in this paper.

Eastern Kamchatka—Waters of eastern Kamchatka waters were surveyed in 2015 but in 2016 (at least August through September), only a short survey of Kronotsky Bay/Gulf was conducted. Feeding aggregations of fin and humpback whales were sighted in Karaginsky, Ozernoy, and Kamchatsky Gulfs. In Karaginsky Gulf, 56 humpback whales were photo-identified, eight of which were matched to humpbacks photographed in the Commander Islands. One of the humpbacks photographed near Kozlova Cape was identified in 2013 off Bering Island. In Avacha Gulf, humpback whales were common but not frequent. They also occurred south of the gulf near Piratkov Cape and north of the gulf near Shipunsky Cape.

Eleven fin whales were identified, with one pair of fin whales identified three times, twice in Ozernoy Gulf in August and once in September in Kamchatsky Gulf. Gray whales were observed Olga Bay in the northern Karaginsky Gulf, as well as in other regions of Kronotsky Gulf and near Kronotsky Cape. Last, in 2016, a single right whale was observed in Avacha Gulf.

Commander Islands—The most common large whale sighted was the humpback whale, with 1365 humpbacks identified in this area. Common minke and sperm whales are also common detected in these waters. Fin whales were not detected.

Kuril Islands—In August 2014, we surveyed the northern Kuril Islands and southwestern Kuril Islands, and in 2016, we surveyed the entire Kuril Island chain. Sperm whales occurred along the length of the Kuril Island chain but were more frequent in areas with steep underwater slopes. A small feeding aggregation of humpback whales off observed off the northern Kuril Islands while two humpback whales were encountered off southern Kuril Islands. Only one fin whale was observed off Urup Island (southern Kuril Islands). In 2014, we observed two right whales in the northern Kuril Islands. Minke whales were common in the northern Kuril Islands but rare in other regions of the island chain.

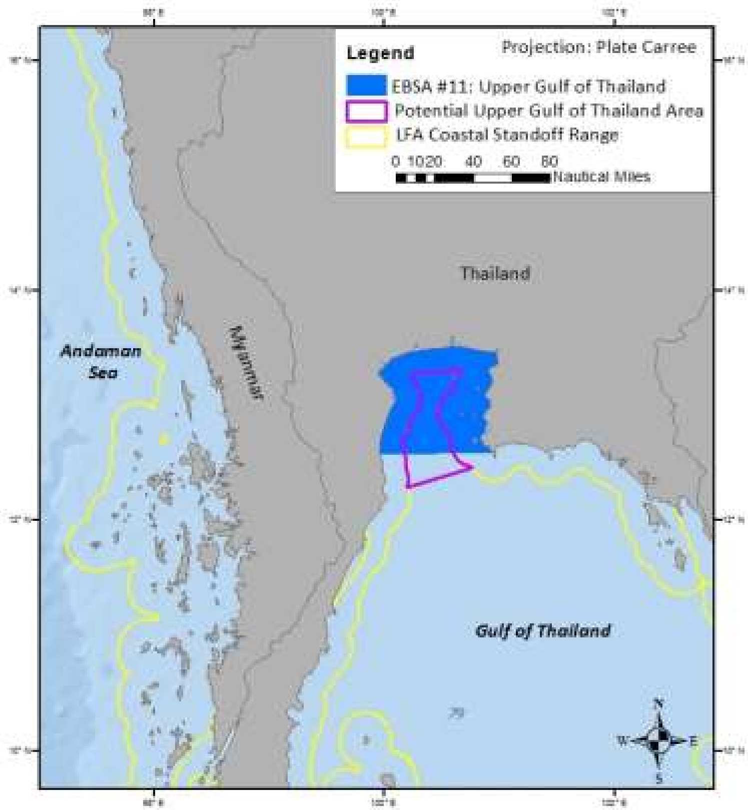
Okhotsk Sea—In the western Okhotsk Sea, we surveyed the western coast of Sakhalinsky Bay, around the Shantar Islands and in adjacent mainland bays in 2015. We observed minke and bowhead whales off Shantar Islands and near the mainland coast. Minke whales were mostly encountered in open waters of the Shantar archipelago. Additionally, several bowhead whales were encountered near the shoreline of Lindholm Strait. Gizhiginskaya and Tauiskaya Gulfs were surveyed in the northern Sea of Okhotsk with minke whales being the most common large whale observed. In Gizhiginskaya Gulf, two juvenile bowheads were detected as were a gray female and calf. The female gray whale was photographed and matched against the Sakhalin Island catalog, which revealed that the whale had never been identified off Sakhalin. Genetic analysis revealed that the female had a rare haplotype of mitochondrial DNA found only in 6.8% of whales from the eastern gray whale population and not yet observed in gray whales from Sakhalin Island. The authors suggest that perhaps this sighting and other numerous reports represent a separate small feeding group of gray whales in Gizhiginskaya Gulf.

## Upper Gulf of Thailand/Bay of Bangkok 9

**MARINE REGION:** Northeast Indian Ocean

**COUNTRY:** Thailand

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:** Bryde's whale




**MARINE AREA TYPE**

☐ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA**

☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**

☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**

☐ **IUCN Green List Site**

☐ **IMMA**

☒ **EBSA** (EA #11)

☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**

☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**

☐ **U.S. MPA**

☐ **U.S. ESA Critical Habitat**

☐ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**AREA OVERVIEW:**

The Bay of Bangkok in the upper Gulf of Thailand is influenced by the input of five rivers and seasonal monsoons, with the northeastern monsoon bringing cooler, drier weather to the region from November to February while the southeastern monsoon brings rainy stormy weather from May to September. The upper Gulf of Thailand is characterized by high biodiversity and a wide range of coastal habitats (UNEP CBD, 2017b).

The Bay of Bangkok in the upper Gulf of Thailand is an important reproductive and foraging habitat for Bryde's whales. Neither the IUCN Red List nor International Whaling Commission (IWC) has yet to assess the population of Bryde's whales in this region, but data on the seasonal occurrences, strandings, and fishery interactions was presented to the IWC Scientific Committee (IWC, 2018).

Although Bryde's whales have been observed in the upper Gulf of Thailand previously, in 2010, Byrde's whales began to be seen in the upper gulf in large groups (20+ animals). Annually, Bryde's whales migrate into the gulf in April and remain until about November (Cherdsukjai et al., 2016), although Bryde's whales have been observed in the gulf during all months of the year. Both foraging and reproductive behavior has been observed in Bryde's whale in the waters of the upper gulf, including nursing and mating behaviors (Cherdsukjai et al., 2015; Thongsukdee et al., 2014). According to photo identification data compiled by the Thailand Department of Marine and Coastal Resources, the population of Bryde's whales in the upper Gulf of Thailand is estimated to be very small, with 50 individuals; the information provided to the IWC (2018) described the population of Bryde's whales in the gulf as 63±8 (S.E.) individuals. Researchers have observed mating behavior and have reported mother-calf pairs in this region from April to November, with detection of the mother-calf pairs during mark recapture studies indicating that this region is likely an important nursing ground for this population (IWC, 2018; Thongsukdee et al., 2014). One of the calves observed in the mother-calf pairs was so young that the researchers believed it had been born in the gulf (Animal Welfare Institute, 2011). From 2010 through 2014, 12 female Bryde's whales were observed with 19 calves (Thongsukdee et al., 2014). Cherdsukjai et al. (2016) found that tagged Bryde's whales moved on average 16 nmi/day (30 km/day) when on the feeding grounds in the upper gulf but averaged as much as (100 km/day) when moving out of the upper Gulf of Thailand into a different habitat.

The Thai government considers the Byrde's population in the upper Gulf of Thailand to relatively unique because the small population appears to be closed, with little breeding occurring with other populations. Additionally, Bryde's whales in the upper Gulf of Thailand exhibit a foraging method or behavior not witnessed elsewhere. Bryde's whales in the area feed primarily on anchovy, ilisha, and sardines. Iwata et al. (2017) described the unique foraging as tread-water or head-lifting feeding since Bryde's whales tread water vertically with their mouths open at the sea surface, with fishes being trapped in their open mouths. This feeding method is thought to be an energy conservation strategy.

#### CANDIDATE OBIA #9—GULF OF THAILAND BOUNDARY:

The Gulf of Thailand OBIA boundary follows the coastal standoff range boundary in the upper gulf (Bay of Bankgok) with the southern boundary formed by a straight line that nominally separates the Bay of Bankgok from the rest of the Gulf of Thailand.

#### GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA

**Location in LFA Study Area**: EBSA: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

**Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range** (12 nmi from emergent land): EBSA: ☐ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside

**Eligible Areal Extent**: EBSA: 769.30 $nmi^2$ (2,638.92 $km^2$)
Navy Created Potential Upper Gulf of Thailand Area: 1,166.54 $nmi^2$ (4,001.13 $km^2$)

**Source of Official Boundary**: EBSA: UNEP Convention of Biological Diversity

**Spatial File Type**: GIS shapefiles

**Spatial File Source**: EBSA: UNEP Convention of Biological Diversity, *</api/v2013/documents/B1290F26-F6DA-D879-41BE-F0FAE1473FFB/attachments/EA_11_EBSA.zip>*

**Date Obtained**: EBSA: 5/7/2018: Navy Created Potential Upper Gulf of Thailand Area: 12/7/18

#### LOW FREQUENCY HEARING SENSITIVITY

☒ Species: Bryde's whale

## BIOLOGICAL CRITERIA

**High Density**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Breeding / Calving**: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Migration**: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Foraging:** ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Distinct Small Population**: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Critical Habitat**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## SEASONAL EFFECTIVE PERIOD

☐ Year-round ☒ Seasonal Period (Months Annually): April to November, annually

## OBIA WATCHLIST ADDITION

☐ Yes ☒ No

## SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION

**Peer Reviewed Articles**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Iwata, T., Akamatsu, T., Thongsukdee, S., Cherdsukjai, P., Adulyanukosol, K., & Sato, K. (2017). Tread-water feeding of Bryde's whales. *Current Biology, 27*, R1141-R1155. doi: 10.1016/j.cub.2017.09.045. | Bryde's whales, among other rorquals, are known to use the lunge feeding strategy to capture prey, which allows for a vast quantity of prey to be captured. However, lunge feeding entails a high energetic cost due to the drag created by the whale's open mouth as it moves at high speed. In the upper Gulf of Thailand, Bryde's whales, which were feeding on small fish species, demonstrated a range of feeding behaviors such as oblique, vertical, and lateral lunging in addition to a novel head-lifting foraging behavior. The head-lifting feeding behavior was characterized by whales treading water to hold themselves for several seconds in a vertical posture with an open mouth at the water surface. This paper describes the head-lifting foraging behavior in detail. The authors concluded that the passive feeding behavior of tread-water feeding is an energy-saving foraging strategy. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Cherdsukjai, P., Thongsukdee, S., Passada, S., Prempree, T., & Yaovasuta, P. (2016). Satellite tracking of Bryde's whale (*Balaenoptera edeni*), in the upper Gulf of Thailand. O-F-015. Pages 104 to 114 in Proceedings of the 5th Marine Science Conference 1-3 June 2016 Rama Gardens Hotel, Bangkok. Retrieved from <http://www.bims.buu.ac.th>. | The movements of Bryde's whales residing in the upper Gulf of Thailand (Bay of Bangkok) were studied using seven satellite tags (model: SPOT-240C) during June to November 2015. The tags were attached on the whales for 0 to 22 days (average of 7.5 days). The Bryde's whales moved on average 16 nmi/day (30 km/day) when on the feeding grounds in the upper gulf but averaged as much as (100 km/day) when moving out of the upper Gulf of Thailand into a different habitat. Moreover, the study showed that, in the study period, some Bryde's whales resided only in the northwestern Bay of Bangkok, while several other tagged whales traveled to the southeastern part of the by off Prachuap Khiri Khan Province. |
| Cherdsukjai, P., Thongsukdee, S., Adulyanukosol, K., Passada, S., & Prempree, T. (2015). Population size of Bryde's whale (*Balaenoptera edeni*) in the upper Gulf of Thailand, estimated by mark and recapture method. *Proceedings of the Design Symposium on Conservation of Ecosystem Volume* 3 (14th SEASTAR2000 workshop), *3,* 1-5. | The population size of Bryde's whale (*Balaenoptera edeni*) in the Upper Gulf of Thailand was estimated using mark and recapture method during the period of January 2010 to December 2013. Forty-five whales were observed by identifying distinctive markings. Using the M(bh)-Pollock and Otto model in the Program CAPTURE and CJS model in the Program MARK, the Bryde's whale population size and survival rate probability estimations were estimated as 63±8.48 (S.E.) animals and 0.88±0.04 (S.E.), respectively. Although the size of the Bryde's whale population in the upper gulf was small, the likely population trend is expected to increase. |
| Thongsukdee, S., Adulyanukosol, K., Passada, S., & Prempree, T. (2014). A study of Bryde's whale in the upper Gulf of Thailand. *Proceedings of* the *1st Design Symposium on Conservation of Ecosystem (SEASTAR2000), 1,* 26-31. | In the upper Gulf of Thailand, Bryde's whales are distributed along the coastlines of six provinces. This study was conducted during January 2010 to December 2012 using photo identification. The Bryde's whale population identified by recognizing the different characteristics of the dorsal fin and other wounds such as marks on the dorsal fin, body and fluke in addition to the color patterns around the mouth and jaw. Bryde's whales primarily were observed from April to November. The population of 40 Bryde's whales was identified, including seven females with 10 calves. The mother-calf pairs stayed together for at least 17 months. The authors recognized the upper Gulf of Thailand area as suitable habitat for Bryde's whale foraging, breeding, and nursing grounds. |

**Subject Matter Experts / e-NGO Reports / Regional Expertise**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|

| | |
|---|---|
| Thongsukdee, S., Adulyanukosol, K., Passada, S., & Prempree, T. (2014). A study of Bryde's whale in the upper Gulf of Thailand. *Proceedings of* the *1st Design Symposium on Conservation of Ecosystem (SEASTAR2000), 1,* 26-31 (Powerpoint presentation). | Presentation of scientific paper presented at conference on conservation of ecosystems. The purpose of the research was to study the Bryde's whale population and distribution in the upper Gulf of Thailand and to learn more about foraging, breeding, and nursing behavior conducted by Bryde's whales in these waters. The researchers conducted small boat surveys and photographed the observed Bryde's whales, which were later photo-identified and a catalog of the whale population developed, with 48 individuals having been identified. The distribution of Bryde's whales from 2010 through 2014 was mapped. Twelve female Bryde's whales were observed over this period with 19 calves. Breeding behavior was observed from April to November, although Bryde's whales in the upper gulf may breed and give birth year-round. |

**Committee or Government Reports**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| International Whaling Commission (IWC). (2018). Gulf of Thailand Bryde's whales. Paper SC/67b/HIM/09rev01. Page 8 in *Report of the scientific committee, Annex G, Report of the sub-committee on Northern Hemisphere whale stocks*. IWC/67/Rep01. IWC, Bled, Slovenia. 18 pages. | Information present to the Scientific Committee on Bryde's whales in the Bay of Bangkok, northern Gulf of Thailand, which has not yet assessed this population. The population is estimated to be 63±8 (S.E.) based upon photo-identification data collected between January 2010 and December 2013. Researchers reported mother-calf pairs in this region from April to November. Detection of mother-calf pairs during mark recapture studies suggest this region could serve as an important nursing ground for this population. Bryde's whales in this area, including a calf, have been killed due to fishery interactions, which highlights the fishery threat to this small population. |
| UNEP CBD. (2017b). Ecologically or biologically significant areas: The Upper Gulf of Thailand. Retrieved from <https://chm.cbd.int/pdf/documents/marineEbsa/237851/1>. | Information about the physical characteristics of the Gulf of Thailand; its importance to Bryde's whales and coastal marine mammal species, sea turtles, and marine and migratory birds. Included are the designations and justifications under each of the EBSA criteria for the area. Overview information on the use of these waters and associated seasonality by Bryde's whales is provided. |
| UNEP CBD. (2015). Regional workshop to facilitate the description of ecologically or biologically significant marine areas (EBSAs) in the Seas of East Asia, and training session on EBSAs. Retrieved from <https://www.cbd.int/meetings/EBSAWS-2015-02>. | Compilation of the relevant scientific information submitted by parties, other governments and relevant organizations in support of workshop objectives, including information on Bryde's whales in the |

| | |
|---|---|
| | northern Gulf of Thailand and justification for setting it aside as an EBSA. |

**Surveys**

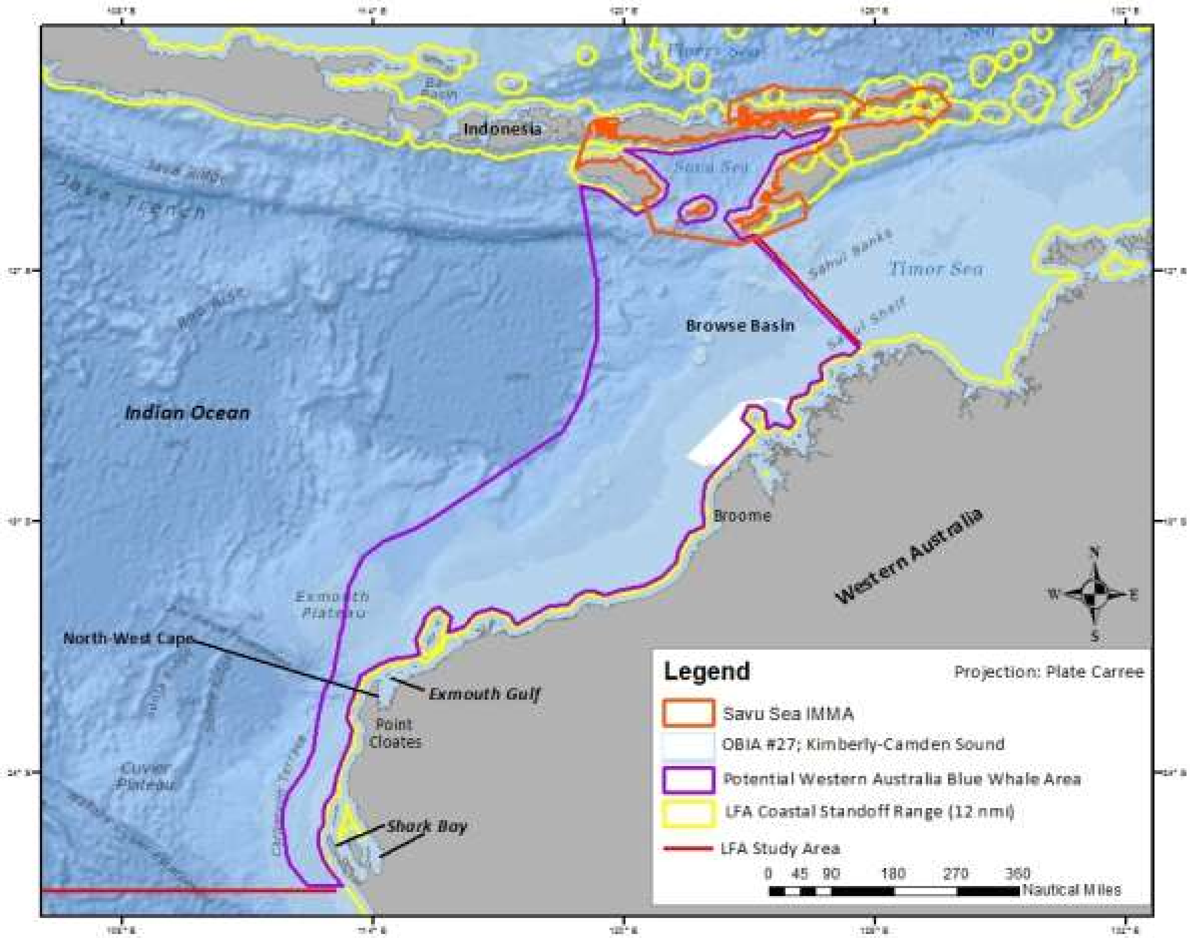
| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Cherdsukjai, P., Thongsukdee, S., Adulyanukosol, K., Passada, S., & Prempree, T. (2015). Population size of Bryde's whale (*Balaenoptera edeni*) in the upper Gulf of Thailand, estimated by mark and recapture method. *Proceedings of the Design Symposium on Conservation of Ecosystem Volume* 3 (14th SEASTAR2000 workshop), *3,* 1-5. | See summary above |
| Thongsukdee, S., Adulyanukosol, K., Passada, S., & Prempree, T. (2014). A study of Bryde's whale in the upper Gulf of Thailand. *Proceedings of* the *1st Design Symposium on Conservation of Ecosystem (SEASTAR2000), 1,* 26-31. | See summary above. |

**Websites / Social Media**

| *Website/Organization* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Roney, T. (2017). Thar she blows: Thailand's whale watching season kicks off. Retrieved from <https://www.remotelands.com/travelogues/thar-blows-thailands-whale-watching-season>. | Article about a whale watching trip to observe foraging Bryde's whales in the upper Gulf of Thailand that notes the optimal time to see the whales is September through December, although whale watching trips run from April through January. The whale watch operator noted that Bryde's whales are more typically seen closer to shore and they have been observed trap-feeding. |
| Australian Broadcast Company. (2016). Thailand's whales at risk after mystery deaths. Retrieved from <https://www.abc.net.au/news/2016-10-11/thailands-whales-at-risk-after-mystery--deaths/7923696>. | Concern about the 10 percent mortality in the population of 55 Bryde's whales in the upper Gulf of Thailand and the potential causes are described. The article describes the unique foraging strategy many Thai Bryde's whales use to forage on anchovies. |
| Coconuts Bangkok. (2014). 20 Bryde's whales frolic in Gulf of Thailand. Retrieved from <https://coconuts.co/bangkok/news/20-brydes-whales-frolic-gulf-thailand/>. | Posting of the sighting of a pod of 20 Byrde's whales in August 2014 off Samut Sakhon province in the Gulf of Thailand. Also noted were the deaths of two Bryde's whales in July and August, due to fishery interactions. |
| Animal Welfare Institute. (2011). Scientists study Bryde's whales in Gulf of Thailand. Retrieved from <https://awionline.org/awi-quarterly/2011-fall/scientists-study-brydes-whales-gulf-thailand>. | Article describes the research on Bryde's whales conducted in the northern Gulf of Thailand by Dr. K. Adulyanukosol and Mr. S. Thaongsukdee from Thailand's Marine and Coastal Resources Research Center. Since 2003, the department conducted boat surveys and photo-ID studies of the Bryde's whales to discern more about their foraging and feeding ground. |

In 2011, researchers observed a pod of 35 Bryde's whales that included seven mother-calf pairs. In addition to foraging behavior, the observers also observed mating behavior. One of the calves observed in the mother-calf pairs was so young that the researchers believed it had been born in the gulf.

## Savu Sea and Surrounding Areas 10




**MARINE REGION:** Southeast Indian Ocean

**COUNTRY:** Indonesia

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:** Blue (pygmy) and sperm whales

**MARINE AREA TYPE**

☒ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA** (OBIA #27)

☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**

☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**

☐ **IUCN Green List Site**

☒ **IMMA**

☐ **EBSA**

☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**

☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**

☐ **U.S. MPA**

☐ **U.S. Critical Habitat**

☒ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**AREA OVERVIEW:**

The Savu Sea is located at approximately 8°S, 120°E to 125°E. Surrounded by archipelagos, it is located on the south side of the World Coral Triangle in warm, tropical waters. Located at the juncture between the Pacific and Indian oceans, it is a migration corridor for blue whales into wintering areas within Indonesia. Sperm whales have been hunted by traditional village communities, though catches in recent years have declined. The Savu Sea Marine National Park was designated in 2009. It consists of a core zone, restricted to research and education; a sustainable fisheries zone; a marine tourism zone; and an others zone, further sub-divided into areas for traditional use, cetaceans, and cultural tourism. The core zone makes up 2.34 percent of the total area of the Savu Sea MPA, while the sub-cetacean zones make up 37.61 percent of the entire MPA.

Blue (pygmy) blue whales migrate seasonally along the Western Australia coast, across Browse Basin, and through the Savu Sea during annual migrations between their purported breeding grounds in Indonesia and foraging grounds in the waters of southern Australia and Antarctica (Double et al., 2014; Gales et al., 2010). Double et al. (2014) tagged blue whales in the waters near Perth Canyon in March through April and monitored their northward movements through the waters of Western Australia, with the tagged whales moving further offshore after North-West Cape, heading for the Savu Sea. Some of the tagged blue whales traveled directly through the western waters of Browse Basin in May through June to reach the waters of Indonesia, while other tagged blue whales traveled more northwestwardly to Indonesian through deeper waters. By June, the whales were traveling through the Savu and Timor seas (outside the LFA study area). All but one of the whale's tags ceased functioning before they made their southward migration starting in September to their austral summer foraging grounds.

Branch et al. (2007) compiled available data for catches, sightings, strandings, acoustic recordings and Discovery mark recoveries of blue whales from a variety of published and unpublished sources. Sighting rates off southern and western Australia were among the highest recorded (7.4–18.6 groups per 1000 km). These areas were also where Soviet whalers took large catches of pygmy blue whales, and where relatively many strandings have been recorded. Given the near continuous distribution of records from Tasmania to Indonesia, it is likely that these blue whales form one population. Blue whales have been recorded in Indonesian waters during May to November.

**NOTE**: Two other adjacent marine areas, Marine area #11, North Western Australia Shelf/Ningaloo Reef (North-West Cape) and Marine Area #13, Browse Basin, along the coast of Western Australia were also assessed as a potential marine mammal OBIAs for SURTASS LFA sonar.

**CANDIDATE OBIA #10—WESTERN AUSTRALIA BLUE WHALE BOUNDARY:**

The Savu Sea area is encompassed with the Western Australia blue whale candidate OBIA. The northern boundary of the blue whale Western Australia OBIA in the Savu Sea area was created by encompassing the waters of the Savu Sea that were located outside the coastal standoff range and inside the Savu Sea and Surrounding Waters IMMA. This northern boundary was merged with the OBIA derived to encompass the Browse Basin and waters offshore of Western Australia. The western boundary of the blue whale Western Australia OBIA was created by a combination of buffering out a set distance and following a bathymetric contour. From the study area boundary in the south to NW Cape, the western boundary was buffered 42 nmi (78 km) from the coastal standoff range, per the distance of 54 nmi (100 km) in Double et al. (2014). From NW Cape, the western boundary followed a bathymetric contour to

Indonesia, which was designed to encompass all the tagged blue whale tracks from Double et al. (2014). The eastern boundary was created along the coastal standoff range of Western Australia.

## GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA

Location Status: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range (12 nmi from emergent land): ☐ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside

Eligible Areal Extent: Savu Sea IMMA: 46,798 $nmi^2$ (160,512 $km^2$)
Navy Created Potential Western Australia Blue Whale Area: 203,646.60 $nmi^2$ (698,488.30 $km^2$)

Source of Official Boundary: IMMA: IUCN MMPATF

Spatial File Type: GIS Shapefiles

Spatial File Source: IMMA: IUCN-Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force (MMPATF), 2019. GIS data made available by the IUCN Global Dataset of Important Marine Mammal Areas (IUCN-IMMA), April 2019. Made available under agreement on terms of use by the IUCN Joint SSC/WCPA Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force and accessible at IMMA e-Atlas <www.marinemammalhabitat.org/imma-eatlas>.

Date Obtained/Created: IMMA: 4/8/2019; Navy Created Potential Western Australia Blue Whale Area: 3/24/19

## LOW FREQUENCY HEARING SENSITIVITY

☒ Species: Blue (pygmy) and sperm whales

## BIOLOGICAL CRITERIA

High Density: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Breeding / Calving: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Migration: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Foraging: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Distinct Small Population: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Critical Habitat: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## SEASONAL EFFECTIVE PERIOD

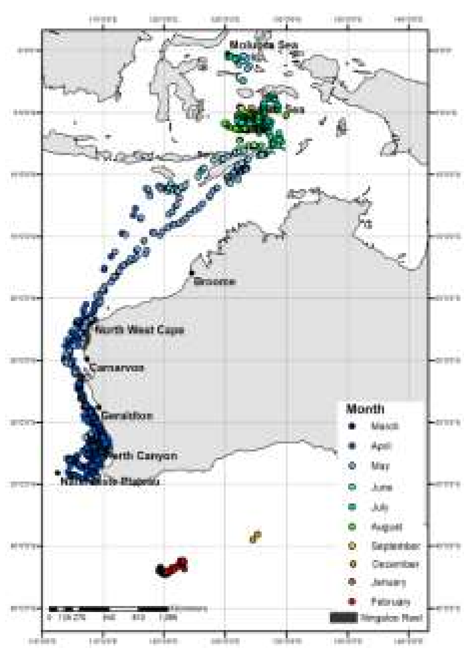
☐ Year-round ☒ Seasonal Period (Months Annually): May to November (blue whale)

## OBIA Watchlist Addition

☐ Yes ☒ No

## Supporting Documentation

### Peer Reviewed Articles

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Mujiyanto, Riswanto, Dharmadi, & Wildan Ghiffary. (2017). Composition and distribution of dolphin in Savu Sea National Marine Park, East Nusa Tenggara. *Indonesian Fisheries Research Journal, 23*(2): 55-67. | Field surveys were conducted November 2015 and March-April 2016 to document the dolphin species located in the Savu Sea National Marine Park. Seven species were identified, including bottlenose dolphin, Fraser's dolphin, pantropical spotted dolphin, Risso's dolphin, rough-toothed dolphin, spinner dolphin, and striped dolphin. Measurements of environmental parameters determined that dolphins were most correlated with sea surface temperature. |
| Mujiyanto, M., Riswanto, R., & Nastiti, A.S. (2017). Effectiveness of sub zone cetacean protection in marine protected areas Savu Sea National Marine Park, East Nusa Tenggara. *Coastal and Ocean Journal, 1*(2): 1-12. (Abstract in English; article in Indonesian). | The Savu Sea National Marine Park is divided into sub zones that authorize different types of activities based on habitat needs. This study was a review of the zones, with additional cetacean sighting data inside and outside the National Marine Park. The authors suggest that the sub zones need to be re-evaluated to more effectively match their research results. |
| Double, M. C., Andrews-Goff, V., Jenner, C., Jenner, M.-N., Laverick, S. M., Branch, T. A., & Gales, N. J. (2014). Migratory movements of pygmy blue whales (*Balaenoptera musculus brevicauda*) between Australia and Indonesia as revealed by satellite telemetry. *PLoS ONE, 9*(4), e93578. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0093578.t001. | Eleven pygmy blue whales were tagged near Perth Canyon in March and April and tracked with satellite telemetry on their north-bound migration. Animals remained   near the coastline (54.0 ± 0.9 nmi [100.0 ± 1.7 km]) throughout March and April until reaching the North West Cape (22.23°S, 113.96°E) where they moved |

| | |
|---|---|
| | farther offshore (128.5 ± 7.5 nmi [238.0 ± 13.9 km]) towards Indonesia. By June, the whales were traveling through the Savu and Timor seas (outside the LFA study area). The region around the North West Cape was an area with higher occupancy times than other regions across the duration of the tracking period. Four whales spent 330.3 hours in one single grid cell (100 $km^2$ [29.2 $nmi^2$]), which the authors suggest was due to migratory tracks converging around this prominent peninsula. |
| Branch, T. A., Stafford, K. M., Palacios, D. M., Allison, C., Bannister, J. L., Burton, C. L. K., Cabrera, E., Carlson, C. A., Galletti Vernazzani, B., Gill, P. C., Hucke-Gaete, R., Jenner, K. C. S., Jenner, M. N. M., Matsuoka, K., Mikhalev, Y. A., Miyashita, T., Morrice, M. G., Nishiwaki, S., Sturrock, V. J., Tormosov, D., Anderson, R. C., Baker, A. N., Best, P. B., Borsa, P., Brownell Jr, R. L., Childerhouse, S., Findlay, K. P., Gerrodette, T., Ilangakoon, A. D., Joergensen, M., Kahn, B., Ljungblad, D. K., Maughan, B., McCauley, R. D., McKay, S., Norris, T. F., Rankin, S., Samaran, F., Thiele, D., Van Waerebeek, K., & Warneke, R. M. (2007). Past and present distribution, densities and movements of blue whales Balaenoptera musculus in the Southern Hemisphere and northern Indian Ocean. *Mammal Review, 37*(2), 116-175. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2907.2007.00106.x | The authors compiled available data for catches, sightings, strandings, acoustic recordings and Discovery mark recoveries of blue whales from a variety of published and unpublished sources. Sighting rates off southern and western Australia were among the highest recorded (7.4–18.6 groups per 1000 km). These areas were also where Soviet whalers took large catches of pygmy blue whales, and where relatively many strandings have been recorded. Given the near continuous distribution of records from Tasmania to Indonesia, it is likely that these blue whales form one population. Blue whales have been recorded in Indonesian waters during May to November. |

**Subject Matter Experts / e-NGO Reports / Regional Expertise**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Cooke, J.G. (2018). *Balaenoptera musculus*. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2018: e.T2477A50226195. <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2018-2.RLTS.T2477A50226195.en>. | The Committee on Taxonomy of the Society for Marine Mammalogy recognizes northern blue whale (*Balaenoptera musculus musculus*), Antarctic blue whale (*B. m. intermedia*), northern Indian Ocean blue whale (*B. m. indica*), pygmy blue whale (*B. m. brevicauda*), and Chilean blue whale (*B. m.* un-named subspecies). The number of pygmy blue whales is very uncertain but may be in the range of 2,000 to 5,000 individuals. Blue whales feed almost exclusively on euphasiids (krill), feeding both at the surface and at depths of up to 300 m (984 ft). |
| Double, M. C., Jenner, K. C. S., Jenner, M.-N., Ball, I., Laverick, S., & Gales, N. (2012). *Satellite tracking of pygmy blue whales (Balaenoptera musculus brevicauda) off Western Australia.* Australian Marine Mammal Centre. 23 pages. | This study builds on Gales et al. (2010) with more satellite-tagged pygmy blue whales. Ten tags provided movement information for one to 162 days. Several animals remained near Perth Canyon/Naturaliste Plateau for over month, moving less than 50 km (27 nmi) per day. When animals began to migrate north, |

| | |
|---|---|
| | they increased their travel speed to 100 km (54 nmi) per day until they reach the North West Cape/Ningaloo Reef region, where they decreased to less than 50 km (27 nmi) per day again. The animals continued through the Savu Sea to reach the northern terminus of their migration, the Banda and Molucca seas in Indonesia. |
| Mustika, P.L.K. (2006). Marine Mammals in the Savu Sea (Indonesia): Indigenous knowledge, threat analysis and management options. Thesis submitted for the degree of Master of Science in the School of Tropical Environmental Studies and Geography, James Cook University. | Two traditional communities (Lamalera village on Lembata Island and Lamakera village on Solor Island) hunt whales in the Savu Sea, defined as subsistence whaling according to the International Whaling Commission definition. The focal species has been sperm whales until recently when catch numbers have decreased, resulting in increasing catches of small cetaceans and other marine megafauna such as whale sharks, sunfish, and manta rays.. |

**Committee or Government Reports**

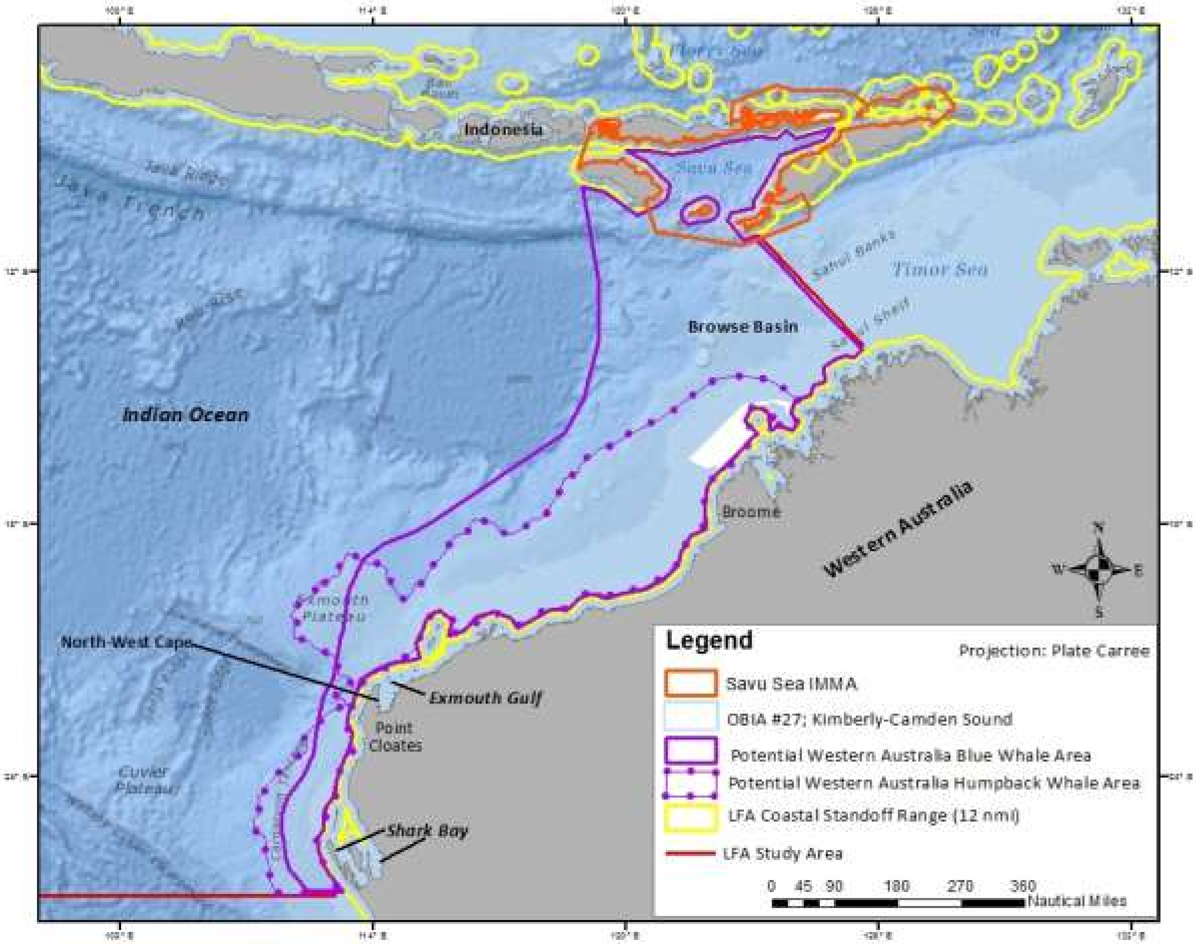
| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| IUCN Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force. (2019). Savu Sea and Surrounding Areas IMMA. https://www.marinemammalhabitat.org/portfolio-item/savu-sea-surrounding-area/ | This region was designated as an IMMA to protect the migration corridor of pygmy blue whales, vulnerable population of sperm whales that have been targeted by traditional aboriginal hunters, and feeding and reproductive area for several dolphin species. |
| Gales, N. J., Double, M. C., Robinson, S., Jenner, C., Jenner, M. N., King, E., . . . Paton, D. (2010). Satellite tracking of Australian humpback (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) and pygmy blue whales (*Balaenoptera musculus brevicauda*). *Report of the International Whaling Commission*, SC/62/SH21. | The authors describe the deployment of satellite tags on southbound Stock D (west Australian) humpback whales in the Kimberly region, northbound Stock E (east Australian) humpback whales, and on pygmy blue whales in the Perth Canyon off Western Australia. Forty-one tags were deployed, three on pygmy blue whales and 38 on humpback whales (23 on female humpback whales accompanied by a calf in between Camden Sound and Pender Bay, Kimberly). The tag results provide the first link between blue whales in Perth Canyon and those that occur around Indonesia (Savu and Banda seas). Furthermore, two of the four humpback whales that provided location data south of Exmouth Gulf deviated from the expected migratory route close to the coast and were tracked 1,200 km (648 nmi) into the Indian Ocean, presumably to exploit temperate foraging areas. |

**Websites / Social Media**

| *Website/Organization* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|

| | |
|---|---|
| The Nature Conservancy. Indonesia – Savu Sea. Retrieved from <https://marine planning.org/projects/asia/indonesia-savu-sea/>. | The Nature Conservancy (TNC) participated in the design and implementation of the two interconnected marine protected areas (MPAs) in coordination with the Indonesian Ministry of Marine Affairs and Fisheries. Following establishment of the park, TNC, in collaboration with the East Nusa Tenggara Marine Conservation Council conducted a 3-month long survey to evaluate stakeholders' perceptions on the natural resource management in 10 districts within the MNP. TNC also partnered with local NGOs to explore the economic benefits of the MNP and to provided training in financial and project management. |

| North Western Australia Shelf/Ningaloo Reef (North-West Cape) | 11 |
|---|---|




**Marine Region:** Southeast Indian Ocean

**Country:** Australia

**Species of Concern:** Blue (pygmy) and humpback whales

**Marine Area Type**

- ☒ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA** (OBIA #27, Kimberly-Camden Sound)
- ☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**
- ☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**
- ☐ **IUCN Green List Site**
- ☐ **IMMA**
- ☐ **EBSA**
- ☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**
- ☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**
- ☐ **U.S. MPA**
- ☐ **U.S. ESA Critical Habitat**
- ☒ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**AREA OVERVIEW:**

The oceanography of the Ningaloo region of northern Western Australia is dominated by the Leeuwin Current that drives warm, nutrient-poor surface waters south along the continental shelf during the autumn and winter. In the summer, southerly winds drive the Ningaloo Current north, creating cold water upwelling that generates primary productivity (Sleeman et al., 2007).

Pygmy blue whales, a subspecies of blue whales, inhabit the Indian Ocean, the southwest Pacific Ocean, and the eastern part of the Southern Ocean. The eastern Indian Ocean population inhabits waters west and south of Australia, occurring in two distinct feeding areas (Perth Canyon [OBIA #28] and off Southern Australia, both south of the SURTASS LFA sonar study area) during the austral summer. Satellite-tagged blue whales traveled north (March/April) from Perth Canyon within 54 nmi (100 km) of the coast until North West Cape, where they moved more offshore and traveled within 128.5 nmi (238 km) of shore (Double et al., 2014). Tagged blue whales continued their northward movements further offshore until reaching the waters of Indonesia. By June, the whales were traveling through the Savu and Timor seas (outside the LFA study area). Only one whale maintained its tag through the southern migration, leaving Indonesian waters in September and arriving at the subtropical frontal zone south of Western Australia by December, returning to the Perth Canyon area by March (Double et al. 2014). Migratory tracks converged around the North West Cape peninsula on their way north, with Ningaloo Reef exhibiting higher occupancy than the mean along the track path.

This general migration pattern is supported by acoustic recordings (Samaran et al., 2010; Gavrilov and McCauley, 2013; Samaran et al., 2013) in which Australian pygmy blue whale calls were detected at Crozet Island in the southwest Indian Ocean during January to April (Samaran et al., 2010) and southwest and northeast of Amsterdam Island in the central North Pacific during austral autumn and winter (Samaran et al., 2013). The acoustic recordings also suggest that Australian pygmy blue whales exhibit basin-scale longitudinal and latitudinal movement patterns, indicating multiple migration routes and a migratory elasticity that has been demonstrated in other blue whale populations (e.g., the eastern North Pacific, Double et al., 2014).

Humpback whales also migrate along the Western Australia shelf, with calving grounds extending along the Kimberley coast between Camden Sound and Broome (15 to 18°S) (OBIA #27, Camden Sound) (Gales et al., 2010; Jenner et al., 2001). In recent years during aerial photogrammetric research, large numbers of humpback whale calves were sighted along North-West Cape (21° 47' to 22° 43'S) (Salgado et al., 2012), with the majority of calves (85 percent in 2013 and 94 percent in 2015) classified as neonates (Irvine et al., 2018). Almost all neonates (97 percent and 95.4 percent in 2013 and 2015, respectively) were traveling northward. Searches were conducted out to approximately 3 nmi (5.5 km) from the reef edge, with a second track along the 656 ft (200 m) depth contour, approximately 2.7 to 5.4 nmi (5 to 10 km) seaward of the reef edge. Calves were distributed along a narrow corridor that followed the contour of the seaward edge of the fringing reef, with 88 percent and 96 percent of sighting in water depths ≤197 ft (60 m) in 2013 and 2015, respectively. Far more groups were sighted along the trackline that followed the 656 ft (200 m) depth contour, but none of these groups contained calves. Irvine et al. (2018) suggest that the calving range extends from Camden Sound (15°S) to Point Cloates (22° 43'S) and that Exmouth Gulf may be used as a nursery area by both young northbound calves and older southbound calves. The southbound migration is located closer to shore (within the 656-ft [200-m] isobath), while the northbound migration is more dispersed in farther offshore waters. Bejder et al. (2019) recently tagged humpback females, males, and calves in Exmouth Gulf during their southbound migration in August and September. Exmouth Gulf has been described as a breeding and resting ground for humpback whales where female humpbacks rest and nurse their calves in the calm waters of Exmouth Gulf to enable the storage of sufficient energy reserves to nurse their calves during their southern migration to Antarctic foraging grounds (Bejder et al., 2019). The authors found that lactating females with suckling calves (<3 months in age) spend a significant amount of time resting on their breeding grounds. Annually from about August to November, migrating humpback whales are observed in the waters of Ningaloo Reef Marine Park, Exmouth Gulf, and Shark Bay with the Australian government recently authorizing swim-with programs with the resting and migrating humpbacks (Australia's Coral Coast, 2019; Parks and Wildlife Service, 2019; Traveller, 2019).

NRDC et al. has suggested an OBIA for migrating pygmy blue whales located along the continental shelf from March to June and September to December, with North-West Cape/Ningaloo Reef area to the continental shelf break particularly protected from April to June. For an area further south along the Western Australia coast, NRDC et al. also recommended a seasonal area for migrating humpback whales to the 200-m to 1400-m isobaths as well as the waters of Shark Bay and Exmouth Gulf for resting humpbacks.

**NOTE**: Two other marine areas along the coast of Western Australia were also assessed as potential marine mammal OBIAs for SURTASS LFA sonar. Marine area #12, Western Australia (Shark Bay to Exmouth Gulf) and Marine area #13, Browse Basin encompass much of the same geographic area with the same relevant marine mammal species.

**CANDIDATE OBIA #10, WESTERN AUSTRALIA BLUE WHALE AND OBIA #11, WESTERN AUSTRALIA HUMPBACK WHALE BOUNDARIES:**

The area of the Western Australia shelf and Ningaloo Reef (North-West Cape) are encompassed by candidate OBIAs #10 and #11. The northern boundary of the blue whale Western Australia OBIA in the Savu Sea area was created by encompassing the waters of the Savu Sea that were located outside the coastal standoff range and inside the Savu Sea and Surrounding Waters IMMA. This northern boundary was merged with the OBIA derived to encompass the Browse Basin and waters offshore of Western Australia. The western boundary of the blue whale Western Australia OBIA was created by a combination of buffering out a set distance and following a bathymetric contour. From the study area boundary in the south to NW Cape, the western boundary was buffered out to a distance of 42 nmi from the coastal standoff range, per the distance of 54 nmi in Double et al. (2014). From NW Cape, the western boundary followed a bathymetric contour to Indonesia, which was designed to encompass all the tagged blue whale tracks from Double et al. (2014). The eastern boundary was created along the coastal standoff range of Western Australia.

The eastern boundary of humpback whale Western Australia OBIA followed the coastal standoff range off Western Australia and connected along the northern boundary to the 4,593-ft (1400-m) isobath, encompassing existing OBIA #27, Camden Sound/Kimberly region. The western boundary followed the 4,593-ft (1400-m) isobath to the southern study area boundary, which was designed to encompass the northward migrating humpback whales when they travel through deeper waters than their southward-bound migration through waters no deeper typically than 656 ft (200 m) (Irvine et al., 2018; Jenner et al., 2001).

**GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA**

**Location Status**: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

**Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range (12 nmi from emergent land)**: ☒ Entirely Outside
☐ Partially Outside

**Eligible Areal Extent**: LFA OBIA #27: 4,729.18 $nmi^2$ (16,220.65 $km^2$)
Navy Created Potential Western Australia Humpback Whale Area: 118,596.63 $nmi^2$ (406,775.07 $km^2$)
Navy Created Potential Western Australia Blue Whale Area: 203,646.60 $nmi^2$ (698,488.30 $km^2$)

**Source of Official Boundary**: OBIA #27: LFA OBIA, DoN, 2017

**Spatial File Type**: GIS Shapefiles

**Spatial File Source:** LFA OBIA, DoN, 2017

**Date Obtained/Created**: LFA OBIA #27: 8/9/17; Navy Created Potential Western Australia Humpback Whale Area: 3/24/19; Navy Created Potential Western Australia Blue Whale Area: 3/24/19

## Low Frequency Hearing Sensitivity

☒ Species: Blue (pygmy) and humpback whales

## Biological Criteria

High Density: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Breeding / Calving: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification (humpback whale)
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Migration: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification (blue and humpback whales)
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Foraging: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Distinct Small Population: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Critical Habitat: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## Seasonal Effective Period

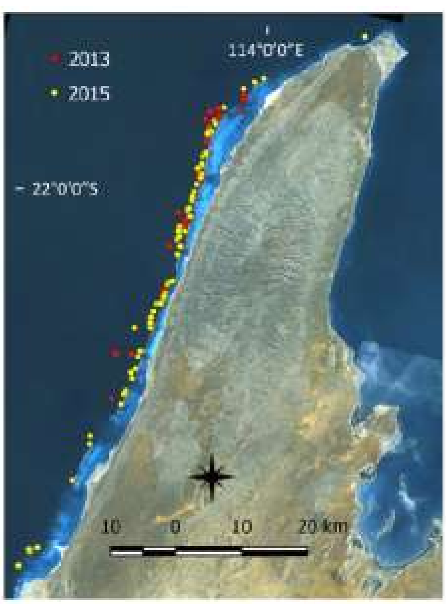
☐ Year-round ☒ Seasonal Period (Months Annually): March to May, October to November (blue whale migration)
May to December (humpback migration and calving)

## OBIA Watchlist Addition

☐ Yes ☒ No

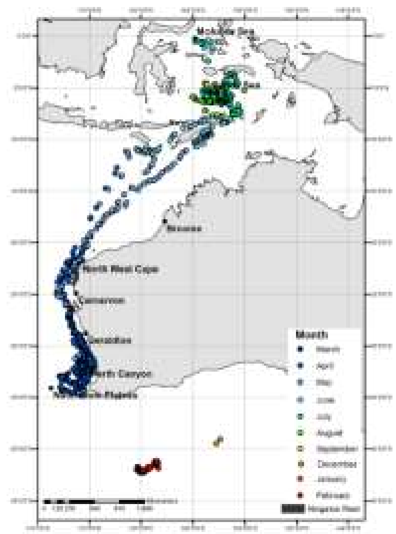
## SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION

### Peer Reviewed Articles

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Bejder, L., Videsen, S., Hermannsen, L., Simon, M., Hanf, D., & Madsen, P. T. (2019). Low energy expenditure and resting behaviour of humpback whale mother-calf pairs highlights conservation importance of sheltered breeding areas. *Scientific Reports, 9*, 771. doi:10.1038/s41598-018-36870-7. | Female humpback whales and their calves (and one adult male) were tagged with DTAGs on a resting and breeding ground in Exmouth Bay, Western Australia and on two western Greenland foraging grounds to compare the energetics of lactating females with suckling calves to foraging females. The authors describe Exmouth Bay as a resting and breeding ground where nursing female humpbacks and their calves rest in August and September before beginning their southern migration to their Antarctic feeding grounds.<br><br>The results of the tagging were that lactating females maintain a low energy expenditure on their breeding grounds by resting (low respiration and low metabolic rates) for a significant amount of time with an energetic rate half that of foraging humpbacks. When resting in shallow waters, female humpbacks maintain stationary positions, making them vulnerable to boat or ship strikes. |
| Irvine, L. G., Thums, M., Hanson, C. E., McMahon, C. R., & Hindell, M. A. (2018). Evidence for a widely expanded humpback whale calving range along the Western Australian coast. *Marine Mammal Science, 34*(2), 294-310. doi: 10.1111/mms.12456.<br><br> | During aerial photogrammetric research, large numbers of humpback whale calves were sighted along North West Cape (21° 47' to 22° 43'S), with the majority of calves (85 percent in 2013 and 94 percent in 2015) classified as neonates. Almost all neonates (97 percent and 95.4 percent in 2013 and 2015, respectively) were traveling northward. Searches were conducted out to approximately 3 nmi (5.5 km) from the reef edge, with a second track along the 656 ft (200 m) depth contour, approximately 2.7 to 5.4 nmi (5 to 10 km) seaward of the reef edge. Calves were distributed along a narrow corridor that followed the contour of the seaward edge of the fringing reef, with 88% and 96% of sighting in water depths ≤197 ft (60 m) in 2013 and 2015, respectively. Far more groups were sighted along the trackline that followed the 656 ft (200 m) depth contour, but none of these groups contained calves. These results indicate that the calving range extends from Camden Sound (15°S) to Point Cloates (22° 43'S) and that Exmouth Gulf may be used as a nursery area by both young northbound calves and older southbound calves. It is clear that the waters along the seaward edge of the fringing reef are important habitat for mothers and their newborn calves (Figure 6, copied below). |

Double, M. C., Andrews-Goff, V., Jenner, C., Jenner, M.-N., Laverick, S. M., Branch, T. A., & Gales, N. J. (2014). Migratory movements of pygmy blue whales (*Balaenoptera musculus brevicauda*) between Australia and Indonesia as revealed by satellite telemetry. *PLoS ONE, 9*(4), e93578. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0093578.t001.

Eleven pygmy blue whales were tagged near Perth Canyon in March and April and tracked with satellite telemetry on their northbound migration. Animals remained near the coastline (54.0 ± 0.9 nmi [100.0 ± 1.7 km]) throughout March and April until reaching the North West Cape (22.23°S, 113.96°E) where they moved farther offshore (128.5 ± 7.5 nmi [238.0 ± 13.9 km]) towards Indonesia. By June, the whales were traveling through the Savu and Timor seas (outside the LFA study area). The region around the North West Cape was an area with higher occupancy times than other regions across the duration of the tracking period. Four whales spent 330.3 hours in one single grid cell (100 km$^2$ [29.2 nmi$^2$]), which the authors suggest was due to migratory tracks converging around this prominent peninsula.




Pendoley, K. L., Schofield, G., Whittock, P. A., Ierodiaconou, D., & Hays, G. C. (2014). Protected species use of a coastal marine migratory corridor connecting marine protected areas. *Marine Biology, 161*(6), 1455-1466. doi: 10.1007/s00227-014-2433-7.

A coastal migratory corridor for flatback turtles was created from the tag results of 73 adult females that linked eleven Commonwealth Marine Reserves along the coast from North West Cape to Camden Sound. Humpback migratory tracks overlapped with 96 percent of the flatback turtle core corridor (defined by the 75 percent kernel density estimate [i.e., it encompasses 75 percent of locations]). Maximum water depth was 416.7 ft (127 m) (± 65.6 ft [±20 m]), range is 164.05 to 416.7 ft (50 to 127 m).and maximum distance offshore was 67.5 nmi (125 km) (±18.9 nmi [±35 km]), range 19.4 to 67.5 nmi (36 to 125 km).

Gavrilova, A. N., & McCauley, R. D. (2013). Acoustic detection and long-term monitoring of pygmy blue whales over the continental slope in southwest

Nine years of continuous passive acoustic recordings at Cape Leeuwin station, Western Australia, were analyzed for pygmy blue whale calls. There was a consistent seasonal pattern with whales calling from mid-November to mid-January (presumably animals

Australia. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 134*(3), 2505-2513. doi: 10.1121/1.4816576

traveling south) and from early February to late-June to mid-July (animals traveling north). The detection range of pygmy blue whale calls was estimated at a maximum of 108 nmi (200 km), which is south of the LFA study area.

Samaran, F., Stafford, K. M., Branch, T. A., Gedamke, J., Royer, J.-Y., Dziak, R. P., & Guinet, C. (2013). Seasonal and geographic variation of southern blue whale subspecies in the Indian Ocean. *PLoS ONE, 8*(8), e71561. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0071561.

The calls of different acoustic populations of blue whales were recorded at three locations in the Indian Ocean: Madagascar Basin 320 nmi (593 km) south of La Reunion Island (26° 05′ S, 58° 03′ E), 470 nmi (870 km) northeast of Amsterdam Island (31° 35′ S, 83° 14′ E), and 350 nmi (648 km) southwest of Amsterdam Island (42° 59′ S, 74° 35′ E) (outside LFA study area). Australian pygmy blue whale calls were detected at the Northeast Amsterdam during March to June (peak March to May) and Southwest Amsterdam sites during January to June (peak June). This pattern suggests that Australian pygmy blue whales may feed between the northern and southern subtropical fronts before moving to the northeast of the Indian Ocean basin during winter.

Salgado Kent, C., Jenner, C. U., Jenner, M. I., Bouchet, P. H., Rexstad, E. R. (2012). Southern Hemisphere breeding stock D humpback whale population estimates from North West Cape, Western Australia. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 12*(1), 29-38.

Aerial surveys were conducted between June and November west of North West Cape during 2000, 2001, 2006, 2007, and 2008, in an area where humpback whales travel within close proximity to the shore, to determine migration models. A total of eight tracks 5.4 nmi (10 km) apart and taking about four hours to complete were surveyed consistently every year in a direction against that of the general whale migration during the northern migration and in the direction of the migration during the southern migration.

A total of 3,127 whale detections were made during 74 surveys conducted over the five years. The number of whale detections varied substantially amongst survey days which resulted in highly variable daily abundance estimates. As a consequence of the high variability, the migration models also varied widely in how well they fit the daily estimates. Pod abundance for each flight was computed using a Horvitz Thompson like estimator and converted to an absolute measure of abundance after corrections were made for estimated mean cluster size, un-surveyed time, swimming speed and animal availability. Resulting estimates from the migration model of best fit with the most credible assumptions were 7,276 (CI = 4,993–10,167) for 2000, 12,280 (CI = 6,830–49,434) for 2001, 18,692 (CI =12,980–24,477) for 2006, 20,044 (CI =

| | |
|---|---|
| | 13,815–31,646) for 2007, and 26,100 (CI = 20,152–33,272) for 2008. |
| Samaran, F., Adam, O., & Guinet, C. (2010). Discovery of a mid-latitude sympatric area for two Southern Hemisphere blue whale subspecies. *Endangered Species Research, 12*(2), 157-165. doi: 10.3354/esr00302. | Continuous, year-round acoustic monitoring of blue whales was conducted off the Crozet Islands (46° 25' S, 51° 40' E) in the southwest Indian Ocean (outside LFA study area). The detection range to vocalizing blue whales was determined to be less than 97 nmi (180 km). Australian pygmy blue whale calls were detected in austral summer/fall (January through April), suggesting basin-scale longitudinal and latitudinal movements, with a distributional range that is substantially larger than previously thought. It may be that animals are moving from east to west along the Sub-Antarctic and Subtropical fronts of the Indian Ocean. |
| Sleeman, J. C., Meekan, M. G., Wilson, S. G., Jenner, C. K. S., Jenner, M. N., Boggs, G. S., . . . Bradshaw, C. J. A. (2007). Biophysical correlates of relative abundance of marine megafauna at Ningaloo Reef, Western Australia. *Marine and Freshwater Research, 58*(7), 608-623. | Sightings (relative biomass) from aerial surveys adjacent to Ningaloo Reef between June 2000 and April 2002 were correlated with sea surface temperature (SST), SST gradient, chlorophyll-*a*, bathymetry (BTH), and BTH gradient. Species were grouped by trophic guilds to include krill feeders (humpback, pygmy blue, and minke whales; filter-feeding rays; and whale sharks), fish/cephalopod feeders (dolphins and sharks), and other invertebrate/macro-algae feeders (turtles and dugongs). Pygmy blue whales were seen June to October and November 2001, and in April and May 2002. The peak of blue whale sightings in deeper waters in October and November 2001 drove the correlation results, with the krill-feeding guild found at greater relative biomass in deeper waters. The authors suggest that either krill feeders have a foraging advantage in deeper waters or insufficient data were collected to understand the underlying mechanisms of their distribution. Humpback whales were migrating through the region and none of the explanatory variables explained their sighting occurrence, as the authors expected. |
| Jenner, K. C. S., Jenner, M. N., & McCabe, K. A. (2001). Geographical and temporal movements of humpback whales in Western Australian waters. *Appea Journal, 38*(1), 692-707. | The migratory paths of humpback whales along the Western Australian coast lie within the continental shelf boundary or 656 ft (200 m) bathymetry. Major resting areas along the migratory path have been identified at Exmouth Gulf (southern migration only) and at Shark Bay. The northern endpoint of migration and resting area for reproductively active whales in the population appears to be Camden Sound in the Kimberley. A 6,750 $km^2$ area of the Kimberley region, |

| | |
|---|---|
| | inclusive of Camden Sound, has also been identified as a major calving ground. The northern and southern migratory paths have been shown to be divergent at the Perth Basin, Dampier Archipelago, and Kimberley regions. In all cases the northern migratory route is further off-shore.<br><br>Northward migrating whales were within 15 nmi (28 km) of the western islands of Shark Bay. Kills plotted by the Carnarvon whaling station, on the north side of Shark Bay, show the maximum range of whales from the coast to be 40 nmi (74 km) or the edge of the 656 ft (200 m) isobaths, with the great majority killed within 10 nmi (18.5 km) of the coast. |

**Subject Matter Experts / e-NGO Reports / Regional Expertise**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Cooke, J.G. (2018). *Balaenoptera musculus*. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2018: e.T2477A50226195. <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2018-2.RLTS.T2477A50226195.en>. | The Committee on Taxonomy of the Society for Marine Mammalogy recognizes northern blue whale (*Balaenoptera musculus musculus*), Antarctic blue whale (*B. m. intermedia*), northern Indian Ocean blue whale (*B. m. indica*), pygmy blue whale (*B. m. brevicauda*), and Chilean blue whale (*B. m.* un-named subspecies). The number of pygmy blue whales is very uncertain but may be in the range of 2,000 to 5,000 individuals. Blue whales feed almost exclusively on euphasiids (krill), feeding both at the surface and at depths of up to 984 ft (300 m). |
| Double, M. C., Jenner, K. C. S., Jenner, M.-N., Ball, I., Laverick, S., & Gales, N. (2012). *Satellite tracking of pygmy blue whales (Balaenoptera musculus brevicauda) off Western Australia.* Australian Marine Mammal Centre. 23 pages. | This study builds on Gales et al. (2010) with more satellite-tagged pygmy blue whales. Ten tags provided movement information for one to 162 days. Several animals remained near Perth Canyon/Naturaliste Plateau for over month, moving less than 27 nmi (50 km) per day. When animals began to migrate north, they increased their travel speed to 54 nmi (100 km) per day until they reach the North West Cape/Ningaloo Reef region, where they decreased to less than 27 nmi (50 km) per day again. The northern terminus of the migration was the Banda and Molucca seas in Indonesia. |

**Committee or Government Reports**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Gales, N. J., Double, M. C., Robinson, S., Jenner, C., Jenner, M. N., King, E., . . . Paton, D. (2010). Satellite tracking of Australian humpback (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) and pygmy blue whales (*Balaenoptera* | The authors describe the deployment of satellite tags on southbound Stock D (west Australian) humpback whales in the Kimberly region, northbound Stock E (east Australian) humpback whales, and on pygmy |

| | |
|---|---|
| *musculus brevicauda*). *Report of the International Whaling Commission*, SC/62/SH21. | blue whales in the Perth Canyon off Western Australia. Forty-one tags were deployed, three on pygmy blue whales and 38 on humpback whales (23 on female humpback whales accompanied by a calf in between Camden Sound and Pender Bay, Kimberly). The tag results provide the first link between blue whales in Perth Canyon and those that occur around Indonesia (Savu and Banda seas). Furthermore, two of the four humpback whales that provided location data south of Exmouth Gulf deviated from the expected migratory route close to the coast and were tracked 1,200 km (648 nmi) into the Indian Ocean, presumably to exploit temperate foraging areas. |

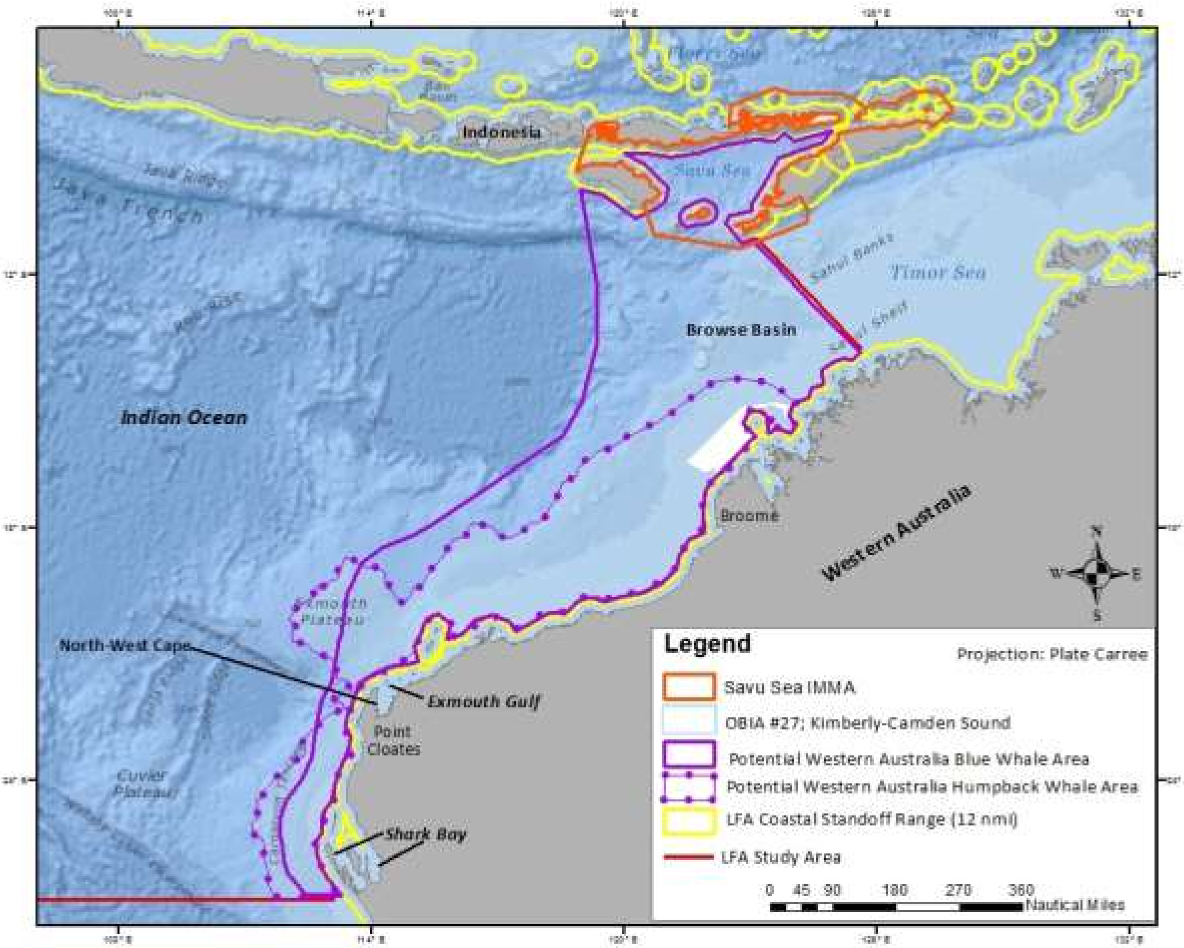
**Surveys**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| See peer-reviewed papers above (Sleeman et al, Salgado et al., etc. | |

**Websites / Social Media**

| *Website/Organization* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Australia's Coral Coast. (2019). Swim with humpback whales. Retrieved from <https://www.australiascoralcoast.com/ destination/swim-humpback-whales>. | In Western Australia, see and experience an in-water interaction with migrating humpback whales in the waters of Ningaloo Marine Park off the coast of Exmouth and Coral Bay. These whales can be seen in the Exmouth Gulf as they journey between summer breeding grounds off the North West Australia shelf and winter-feeding grounds in the Antarctic. The best time to see and swim with the whales is between June and November. |
| Traveller. (2019). Ningaloo Reef, Western Australia: On the trail of humpback whales, Ningaloo Reef. Retrieved from <http://www.traveller.com.au/ ningaloo-reef-western-australia-on-the-tail-of-humpback-whales-at-ningaloo-reef-gsg84i>. | In August, 2018 the Western Australian government began a four-month trial allowing tourists to swim with the humpbacks off Ningaloo Reef. The humpbacks swimming past the reef are migratory and are not inclined to stop and rest. |

| Western Australia (Shark Bay to Exmouth Gulf) | 12 |
|---|---|




**MARINE REGION:** Southeast Indian Ocean

**COUNTRY:** Australia

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:** Humpback and blue (pygmy) whales

**MARINE AREA TYPE**

☒ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA** (OBIA #27, Kimberly-Camden Sound)

☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**

☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**

☐ **IUCN Green List Site**

☐ **IMMA**

☐ **EBSA**

☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**

☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**

☐ **U.S. MPA**

☐ **U.S. ESA Critical Habitat**

☒ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**AREA OVERVIEW:**

Humpback whales migrate along the Western Australia shelf, with calving grounds extending along the Kimberley coast between Camden Sound and Broome (15 to 18°S) (OBIA #27, Camden Sound) (Jenner et al., 2001). In recent years during aerial photogrammetric research, large numbers of humpback whale calves were sighted along North-West Cape (21° 47' to 22° 43'S) (Salgado et al., 2012), with the majority of calves (85 percent in 2013 and 94 percent in 2015) classified as neonates (Irvine et al., 2018). Almost all neonates (97 percent and 95.4 percent in 2013 and 2015, respectively) were traveling northward. Searches were conducted out to approximately 3 nmi (5.5 km) from the reef edge, with a second track along the 656 ft (200 m) depth contour, approximately 2.7 to 5.4 nmi (5 to 10 km) seaward of the reef edge. Calves were distributed along a narrow corridor that followed the contour of the seaward edge of the fringing reef, with 88 percent and 96 percent of sighting in water depths ≤197 ft (60 m) in 2013 and 2015, respectively. Far more groups were sighted along the trackline that followed the 656 ft (200 m) depth contour, but none of these groups contained calves. Irvine et al. (2018) suggest that the calving range extends from Camden Sound (15°S) to Point Cloates (22° 43'S) and that Exmouth Gulf may be used as a nursery area by both young northbound calves and older southbound calves. The southbound migration is located closer to shore (within the 656-ft [200-m] isobath), while the northbound migration is more dispersed in farther offshore waters.

Bejder et al. (2019) recently tagged humpback females, males, and calves in Exmouth Gulf during their southbound migration in August and September. Exmouth Gulf has been described as a breeding and resting ground for humpback whales where female humpbacks rest and nurse their calves in the calm waters of Exmouth Gulf to enable the storage of sufficient energy reserves to nurse their calves during their southern migration to Antarctic foraging grounds (Bejder et al., 2019). The authors found that lactating females with suckling calves (<3 months in age) spend a significant amount of time resting on their breeding grounds. Annually from about August to November, migrating humpback whales are observed in the waters of Ningaloo Reef Marine Park, Exmouth Gulf, and Shark Bay with the Australian government recently authorizing swim-with programs with the resting and migrating humpbacks (Australia's Coral Coast, 2019; Parks and Wildlife Service, 2019).

The eastern Indian Ocean population of pygmy blue whales inhabits waters west and south of Australia, occurring in two distinct feeding areas (Perth Canyon [OBIA #28] and off Southern Australia, both south of the SURTASS LFA sonar study area) during the austral summer. Satellite-tagged blue whales traveled north (March/April) from Perth Canyon within 100 km (54 nmi) of the coast until North West Cape (Double et al., 2014). Migratory tracks converged around the North West Cape peninsula on their way north, with Ningaloo Reef exhibiting higher occupancy than the mean along the track path. Tagged blue whales continued their northward movements further offshore until reaching the waters of Indonesia. This general migration pattern is supported by acoustic recordings (Samaran et al., 2010; Gavrilov and McCauley, 2013; Samaran et al., 2013) in which Australian pygmy blue whale calls were detected at Crozet Island in the southwest Indian Ocean during January to April (Samaran et al., 2010) and southwest and northeast of Amsterdam Island in the central North Pacific during austral autumn and winter (Samaran et al., 2013). The acoustic recordings also suggest that Australian pygmy blue whales exhibit basin-scale longitudinal and latitudinal movement patterns, indicating multiple migration routes and a migratory elasticity that has been demonstrated in other blue whale populations (e.g., the eastern North Pacific, Double et al., 2014).

NRDC has suggested an OBIA for Exmouth Gulf from July to November for resting habitat and along the Western Australian coastline out to the 656 ft (200 m) isobath from September to December for the humpback whale southbound migration and out to the 4,593 ft (1,400 m) isobath from May to August for the northbound migration.

**NOTE**: Two other marine areas along the coast of Western Australia were also assessed as potential marine mammal OBIAs for SURTASS LFA sonar. Marine area #11, North Western Australia Shelf/Ningaloo Reef (North-West Cape) and Marine area #13, Browse Basin encompass much of the same geographic area with the same relevant marine mammal species.

**CANDIDATE OBIA #10, WESTERN AUSTRALIA BLUE WHALE AND OBIA #11, WESTERN AUSTRALIA HUMPBACK WHALE BOUNDARIES:**

Candidate OBIA #10 and #11 encompass the area from Exmouth Gulf to Shark Bay. The northern boundary of the blue whale Western Australia OBIA in the Savu Sea area was created by encompassing the waters of the Savu Sea that were located outside the coastal standoff range and inside the Savu Sea and Surrounding Waters IMMA. This northern boundary was merged with the OBIA derived to encompass the Browse Basin and waters offshore of Western Australia. The western boundary of the blue whale Western Australia OBIA was created by a combination of buffering out a set distance and following a bathymetric contour. From the study area boundary in the south to NW Cape, the western boundary was buffered out to a distance of 42 nmi from the coastal standoff range, per the distance of 54 nmi in Double et al. (2014). From NW Cape, the western boundary followed a bathymetric contour to Indonesia, which was designed to encompass all the tagged blue whale tracks from Double et al. (2014). The eastern boundary was created along the coastal standoff range of Western Australia.

The eastern boundary of humpback whale Western Australia OBIA followed the coastal standoff range off Western Australia and connected along the northern boundary to the 4,593-ft (1400-m) isobath, encompassing existing OBIA #27, Camden Sound/Kimberly region. The western boundary followed the 4,593-ft (1400-m) isobath to the southern study area boundary, which was designed to encompass the northward migrating humpback whales when they travel through deeper waters than their southward-bound migration through waters no deeper typically than 656 ft (200 m) (Irvine et al., 2018; Jenner et al., 2001).

**GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA**

**Location Status**: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

**Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range (12 nmi from emergent land)**: ☐ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside

**Eligible Areal Extent**: LFA OBIA #27: 4,729.18 nmi$^2$ (16,220.65 km$^2$)
Navy Created Potential Western Australia Humpback Whale Area: 118,596.63 nmi$^2$ (406,775.07 km$^2$)
Navy Created Potential Western Australia Blue Whale Area: 203,646.60 nmi$^2$ (698,488.30 km$^2$)

**Source of Official Boundary**: OBIA #27: LFA OBIA, DoN, 2017

**Spatial File Type**: GIS Shapefiles

**Spatial File Source:** LFA OBIA, DoN, 2017

**Date Obtained/Created**: LFA OBIA #27: 8/9/17; Navy Created Potential Western Australia Humpback Whale Area: 3/24/19; Navy Created Potential Western Australia Blue Whale Area: 3/24/19

## LOW FREQUENCY HEARING SENSITIVITY

☒ Species: Humpback and blue (pygmy) whales

## BIOLOGICAL CRITERIA

High Density: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Breeding / Calving: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification (humpback whale)
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Migration: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification (blue and humpback whales)
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Foraging: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Distinct Small Population: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Critical Habitat: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## SEASONAL EFFECTIVE PERIOD

☐ Year-round ☒ Seasonal Period (Months Annually): March to May, October to November (blue whale migration)
May to December (humpback migration and calving)

## OBIA WATCHLIST ADDITION

☐ Yes ☒ No

## SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION

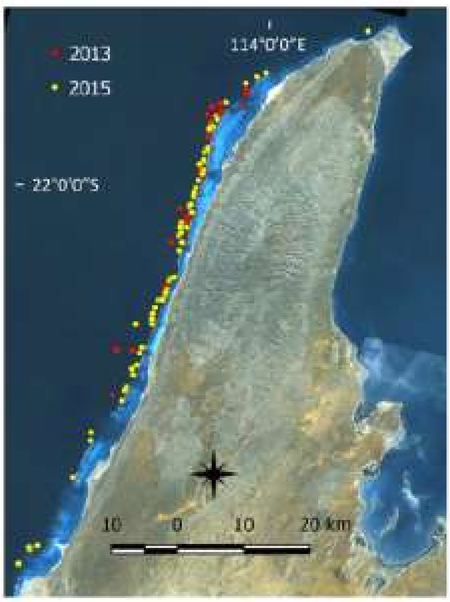
### Peer Reviewed Articles

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Bejder, L., Videsen, S., Hermannsen, L., Simon, M., Hanf, D., & Madsen, P. T. (2019). Low energy expenditure and resting behaviour of humpback whale mother-calf pairs highlights conservation importance of sheltered breeding areas. *Scientific Reports, 9*, 771. doi:10.1038/s41598-018-36870-7. | Female humpback whales and their calves (and one adult male) were tagged with DTAGs on a resting and breeding ground in Exmouth Bay, Western Australia and on two western Greenland foraging grounds to compare the energetics of lactating females with suckling calves to foraging females. The authors describe Exmouth Bay as a resting and breeding ground where nursing female humpbacks and their calves rest in August and September before beginning |

their southern migration to their Antarctic feeding grounds.

The results of the tagging were that lactating females maintain a low energy expenditure on their breeding grounds by resting (low respiration and low metabolic rates) for a significant amount of time with an energetic rate half that of foraging humpbacks. When resting in shallow waters, female humpbacks maintain stationary positions, making them vulnerable to boat or ship strikes.

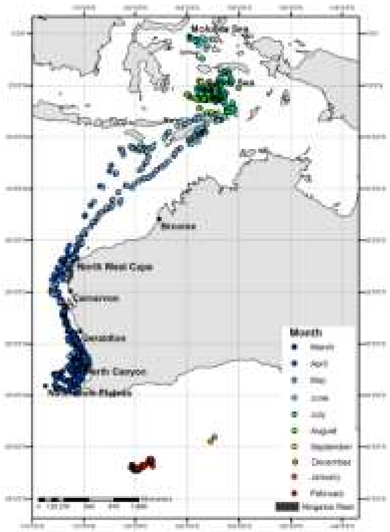
Irvine, L. G., Thums, M., Hanson, C. E., McMahon, C. R., & Hindell, M. A. (2018). Evidence for a widely expanded humpback whale calving range along the Western Australian coast. *Marine Mammal Science, 34*(2), 294-310. doi: 10.1111/mms.12456.




During aerial photogrammetric research, large numbers of humpback whale calves were sighted along North West Cape (21° 47' to 22° 43'S), with the majority of calves (85 percent in 2013 and 94 percent in 2015) classified as neonates. Almost all neonates (97 percent and 95.4 percent in 2013 and 2015, respectively) were traveling northward. Searches were conducted out to approximately 3 nmi (5.5 km) from the reef edge, with a second track along the 656 ft (200 m) depth contour, approximately 2.7 to 5.4 nmi (5 to 10 km) seaward of the reef edge. Calves were distributed along a narrow corridor that followed the contour of the seaward edge of the fringing reef, with 88% and 96% of sighting in water depths ≤197 ft (60 m) in 2013 and 2015, respectively. Far more groups were sighted along the trackline that followed the 656 ft (200 m) depth contour, but none of these groups contained calves. These results indicate that the calving range extends from Camden Sound (15°S) to Point Cloates (22° 43'S) and that Exmouth Gulf may be used as a nursery area by both young northbound calves and older southbound calves. It is clear that the waters along the seaward edge of the fringing reef are important habitat for mothers and their newborn calves (Figure 6, copied below).

Double, M. C., Andrews-Goff, V., Jenner, C., Jenner, M.-N., Laverick, S. M., Branch, T. A., & Gales, N. J. (2014). Migratory movements of pygmy blue whales (*Balaenoptera musculus brevicauda*) between Australia and Indonesia as revealed by satellite telemetry. *PLoS ONE, 9*(4), e93578. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0093578.t001.

Eleven pygmy blue whales were tagged near Perth Canyon in March and April and tracked with satellite telemetry on their northbound migration. Animals remained near the coastline (54.0 ± 0.9 nmi [100.0 ± 1.7 km]) throughout March and April until reaching the North West Cape (22.23°S, 113.96°E) where they moved farther offshore (128.5 ± 7.5 nmi [238.0 ± 13.9 km]) towards Indonesia. By June, the whales were traveling through the Savu and Timor seas (outside the LFA study area). The region around the North West Cape was an area with higher occupancy times than other regions across the duration of the tracking period. Four whales spent 330.3 hours in one single grid cell (100 km$^2$ [29.2 nmi$^2$]), which the authors suggest was due to migratory tracks converging around this prominent peninsula.




Salgado Kent, C., Jenner, C. U., Jenner, M. I., Bouchet, P. H., Rexstad, E. R. (2012). Southern Hemisphere breeding stock D humpback whale population estimates from North West Cape, Western Australia. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 12*(1), 29-38.

Aerial surveys were conducted between June and November west of North West Cape during 2000, 2001, 2006, 2007, and 2008, in an area where humpback whales travel within close proximity to the shore, to determine migration models. A total of eight survey tracks 10 km apart and taking about four hours to complete were surveyed consistently every year in a direction against that of the general whale migration during the northern migration and in the direction of the migration during the southern migration.

A total of 3,127 whale detections were made during 74 surveys conducted over the five years. The number of whale detections varied substantially amongst survey days which resulted in highly variable daily abundance estimates. As a consequence of the high variability, the migration models also varied widely in how well they fit the daily estimates. Pod abundance for each flight was computed using a Horvitz Thompson like estimator and converted to an absolute measure of abundance after corrections were made for estimated mean cluster size, unsurveyed time, swimming speed and animal availability. Resulting estimates from the migration model of best fit with the most credible assumptions were 7,276 (CI = 4,993–10,167) for 2000, 12,280 (CI = 6,830–49,434) for 2001, 18,692 (CI =12,980–24,477) for 2006, 20,044 (CI = 13,815–31,646) for 2007, and 26,100 (CI = 20,152–33,272) for 2008.

Samaran, F., Adam, O., & Guinet, C. (2010). Discovery of a mid-latitude sympatric area for two Southern Hemisphere blue whale subspecies. *Endangered*

Continuous, year-round acoustic monitoring of blue whales was conducted off the Crozet Islands (46° 25′ S, 51° 40′ E) in the southwest Indian Ocean (outside LFA

| | |
|---|---|
| *Species Research, 12*(2), 157-165. doi: 10.3354/esr00302. | study area). The detection range to vocalizing blue whales was determined to be less than 97 nmi (180 km). Australian pygmy blue whale calls were detected in austral summer/fall (January through April), suggesting basin-scale longitudinal and latitudinal movements, with a distributional range that is substantially larger than previously thought. It may be that animals are moving from east to west along the Sub-Antarctic and Subtropical fronts of the Indian Ocean. |
| Jenner, K. C. S., Jenner, M. N., & McCabe, K. A. (2001). Geographical and temporal movements of humpback whales in Western Australian waters. *Appea Journal, 38*(1), 692-707. | The migratory paths of humpback whales along the Western Australian coast lie within the continental shelf boundary or 200 m (656 ft) bathymetry. Major resting areas along the migratory path have been identified at Exmouth Gulf (southern migration only) and at Shark Bay. The northern endpoint of migration and resting area for reproductively active whales in the population appears to be Camden Sound in the Kimberley. A 6,750 $km^2$ area of the Kimberley region, inclusive of Camden Sound, has also been identified as a major calving ground. The northern and southern migratory paths have been shown to be divergent at the Perth Basin, Dampier Archipelago, and Kimberley regions. In all cases the northern migratory route is further off-shore.<br><br>Northward migrating whales were within 28 km (15 nmi) of the western islands of Shark Bay. Kills plotted by the Carnarvon whaling station (25 °S), on the north side of Shark Bay, show the maximum range of whales from the coast to be 74 km (40 nm) or the edge of the 200 m (656 ft) isobaths, with the great majority killed within 10 nm of the coast. Surveys conducted along the west coast of the Exmouth peninsula suggest that both the northbound and southbound migratory paths occur within 16.7 km (9 nmi) of the coast. Aerial surveys northeast of Exmouth Gulf found that the majority of humpback whales migrated south in depths of less than 200 m (656 ft). Although some animals may rest in Exmouth Gulf, others, farther offshore, continue south along the western side of Ningaloo Reef in water deeper than 50 m (164 ft). 68% of whales observed in Exmouth Gulf were milling, not migrating. |

**Committee or Government Reports**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Bettridge, S., Baker, C. S., Barlow, J., Clapham, P. J., Ford, M., Gouveia, D., . . . Wade, P. R. (2015). Status | The West Australia Distinct Population Segment (DPS) consists of whales whose breeding/winter range |

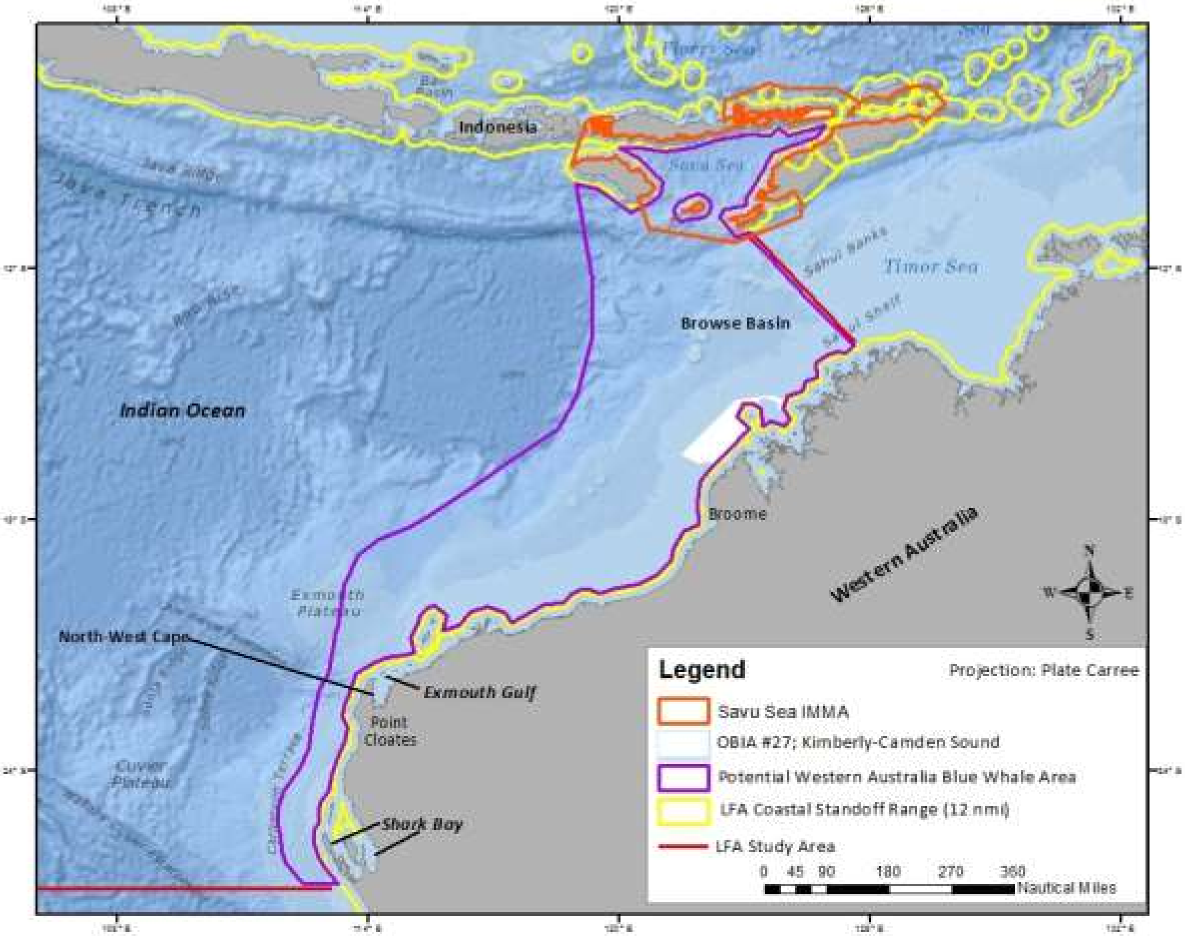
| | |
|---|---|
| review of the humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) under the Endangered Species Act. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-540: U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Southwest Fisheries Science Center. | includes the West Australia coast, primarily in the Kimberley Region, migrating to Antarctica, primarily between 80°E and 110°E. The abundance in 2008 was estimated at 21,750 (95% CI = 17,550-43,000) (Hedley et al., 2009), with a population growth rate of approximately 10% annually since 1982 (Bannister, 1984; Bannister and Hedley, 2001). |
| Gales, N. J., Double, M. C., Robinson, S., Jenner, C., Jenner, M. N., King, E., . . . Paton, D. (2010). Satellite tracking of Australian humpback (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) and pygmy blue whales (*Balaenoptera musculus brevicauda*). *Report of the International Whaling Commission*, SC/62/SH21. | The authors describe the deployment of satellite tags on southbound Stock D (west Australian) humpback whales in the Kimberly region, northbound Stock E (east Australian) humpback whales, and on pygmy blue whales in the Perth Canyon off Western Australia. Forty-one tags were deployed, three on pygmy blue whales and 38 on humpback whales (23 on female humpback whales accompanied by a calf in between Camden Sound and Pender Bay, Kimberly). The tag results provide the first link between blue whales in Perth Canyon and those that occur around Indonesia (Savu and Banda seas). Furthermore, two of the four humpback whales that provided location data south of Exmouth Gulf deviated from the expected migratory route close to the coast and were tracked 1,200 km (648 nmi) into the Indian Ocean, presumably to exploit temperate foraging areas. |

**Websites / Social Media**

| *Website/Organization* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Parks and Wildlife Service. (2019). Shark Bay World Heritage area, Western Australia. Retrieved from <https://www.sharkbay.org/>. | Shark Bay was declared a World Heritage Area in 1991, satisfying all four criteria for natural heritage values (exceptional natural beauty, evolutionary history, ongoing processes and evolution, and most significant habitats). It consists of several parks, including Monkey Mia Reserve with bottlenose dolphins and Shark Bay with the world's largest meadows of seagrass and a population of more than 10,000 dugongs. Humpback whales visit the region each year between August and October. |
| Shark Bay Marine Park, Parks and Wildlife Service, Commonwealth of Western Australia. (2017). Retrieved from <https://parks.dpaw.wa.gov.au/park/shark-bay>. | Shark Bay Marine Park, covering 748,725 hectares, is known for its large marine animals, such as the famous Monkey Mia dolphins, turtles, dugongs, and sharks. |
| Shark Bay Dive & Marine Safaris. (2019). Retrieved from <https://www.sharkbaydive.com.au/>. | Maintaining the Ocean Park, an award-winning, eco-friendly aquarium, Shark Bay Dive & Marine Safaris also offer whale watching tours for humpback whales between August and October. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Australia's Coral Coast. (2019). Swim with humpback whales. Retrieved from <https://www.australiascoralcoast.com/destination/swim-humpback-whales>. | In Western Australia, see and experience an in-water interaction with migrating humpback whales in the waters of Ningaloo Marine Park off the coast of Exmouth and Coral Bay. These whales can be seen in the Exmouth Gulf as they journey between summer breeding grounds off the North West Australia shelf and winter-feeding grounds in the Antarctic. The best time to see and swim with the whales is between June and November. |

| Browse Basin | 13 |
|---|---|




**Marine Region:** Southeast Indian Ocean

**Country:** Australia

**Species of Concern:** Blue (pygmy) whale

**MARINE AREA TYPE**

☒ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA** (OBIA #27; Kimberly-Camden Sound)

☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**

☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**

☐ **IUCN Green List Site**

☐ **IMMA**

☐ **EBSA**

☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**

☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**

☐ **U.S. MPA**

☐ **U.S. ESA Critical Habitat**

☒ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**AREA OVERVIEW:**

Browse Basin, located at approximately 14°S, 121°E to 124°E, encompasses both shallow water coastal and deeper oceanic ecosystems, submerged and emergent reefs, and underwater cliffs and canyons. Two prominent physical features include Scott Reef and Browse Cliffs. Scott Reef is situated in deep water to the west of Browse Basin, with two emergent, atoll-like structures with a 1.08 nmi (2 km) passage between them that reaches depths of up to 1,542 ft (470 m). Browse Cliffs is a feature at 14°15'S, 123°E that slopes steeply from a depth of 410 to 1,017 ft (125 to 310 m), spanning 9.2 nmi (17 km), forming part of the Ancient Coastline (Sutton et al., In press). Sutton et al. (In press) provide the first comprehensive assessment of the cetacean species occurring in Browse Basin (with surveys in winter and spring of 2008), including migrating pygmy blue whales (two sightings of three individual in austral winter, one sighting of two individuals in austral spring), humpback whales (one sighting of one individual in austral winter, three sightings of six individuals in austral spring), Bryde's whales (four sightings of four individuals in austral spring), and dwarf minke whales (one sighting of one individual in austral winter), as well as several odontocetes (31 sightings of 404 individuals in austral winter and 83 sightings of 3103 individuals In austral spring). On October 30, 2008, two blue whales were observed in the Scott Reef Channel, then three additional blue whales were observed at the western entrance. Elevated biomass (120 kHz echosounder backscatter data) on Scott Reef during the blue whale sightings suggested the region may provide foraging opportunities (Sutton et al., In press).

Blue (pygmy) blue whales migrate seasonally across Browse Basin during the annual migrations between their purported breeding grounds in Indonesia and foraging grounds in the waters of southern Australia and Antarctica (Double et al., 2014; Gales et al., 2010). Double et al. (2014) tagged blue whales in the waters near Perth Canyon in March through April and monitored their northward movements through the waters of Western Australia, with the tagged whales moving further offshore after North-West Cape. Some of the tagged blue whales traveled directly through the western waters of Browse Basin in May through June to reach the waters of Indonesia, while other tagged blue whales traveled more northwestwardly to Indonesian through deeper waters. By June, the whales were traveling through the Savu and Timor seas (outside the LFA study area). All but one of the whale's tags ceased functioning before they made their southward migration starting in September to their austral summer foraging grounds.

NRDC et al. recommends a year-round OBIA for foraging pygmy blue whales in Browse Basin.

**NOTE**: One other adjacent marine area, Marine area #11, North Western Australia Shelf/Ningaloo Reef (North-West Cape), along the coast of Western Australia was also assessed as a potential marine mammal OBIA for SURTASS LFA sonar. One mysticete species found in this area also occurs seasonally in Browse Basin.

**CANDIDATE OBIA #10—WESTERN AUSTRALIA BLUE WHALE BOUNDARY:**

The northern boundary of the blue whale Western Australia OBIA in the Savu Sea area was created by encompassing the waters of the Savu Sea that were located outside the coastal standoff range and inside the Savu Sea and Surrounding Waters IMMA. This northern boundary was merged with the OBIA derived to encompass the Browse Basin and waters offshore of Western Australia. The western boundary of the blue whale Western Australia OBIA was created by a combination of buffering out a set distance and following a bathymetric contour. From the study area boundary in the south to NW Cape, the western boundary was buffered out to a distance of 42 nmi from the coastal standoff range, per the distance of 54 nmi in Double et al. (2014). From NW Cape, the western boundary followed a bathymetric contour to Indonesia, which was designed to encompass all the tagged blue whale tracks from Double et al. (2014). The eastern boundary was created along the coastal standoff range of Western Australia.

## GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA

**Location Status**: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

**Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range (12 nmi from emergent land)**: ☒ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside

**Eligible Areal Extent**: LFA OBIA #27: 4,729.18 $nmi^2$ (16,220.65 $km^2$)
Navy Created Potential Western Australia Blue Whale Area: 203,646.60 $nmi^2$ (698,488.30 $km^2$)

**Source of Official Boundary**: OBIA #27: LFA OBIA, DoN, 2017

**Spatial File Type**: GIS Shapefiles

**Spatial File Source:** LFA OBIA, DoN, 2017

**Date Obtained/Created**: LFA OBIA #27: 8/9/17; Navy Created Potential Western Australia Blue Whale Area: 3/24/19

## LOW FREQUENCY HEARING SENSITIVITY

☒ Species: Blue whale (pygmy) whale

## BIOLOGICAL CRITERIA

**High Density**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Breeding / Calving**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Migration**: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Foraging**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Distinct Small Population**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Critical Habitat:** ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## SEASONAL EFFECTIVE PERIOD

☐ Year-round ☒ Seasonal Period (Months Annually): March to May, October to November (blue whale migration)

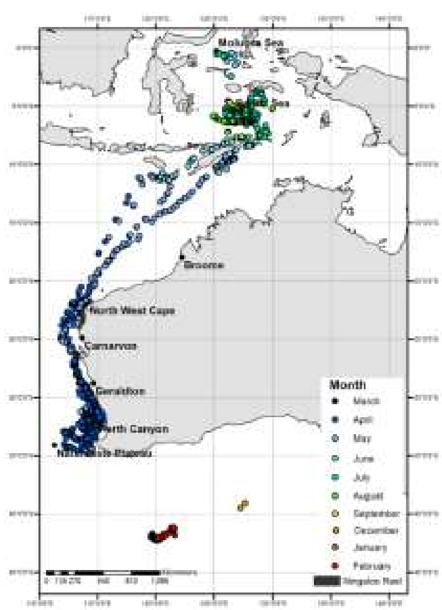
## OBIA WATCHLIST ADDITION

☐ Yes ☒ No

## SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION

### Peer Reviewed Articles

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Sutton, A.L., Jenner, K.C.S., & Jenner, M-N. (In press). Habitat associations of cetaceans and seabirds in the tropical eastern Indian Ocean. Deep-Sea Research II: Topical Studies in Oceanography. doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2018.06.002. | Sutton et al. (In press) provide the first comprehensive assessment of the cetacean species occurring in Browse Basin (with surveys in winter and spring of 2008), including migrating pygmy blue whales (two sightings of three individual in austral winter, one sighting of two individuals in austral spring), humpback whales (one sighting of one individual in austral winter, three sightings of six individuals in austral spring), Bryde's whales (four sightings of four individuals in austral spring), and dwarf minke whales (one sighting of one individual in austral winter), as well as a myriad of odontocetes. On October 30, 2008, two blue whales were observed in the Scott Reef Channel, then three additional blue whales were observed at the western entrance. Elevated biomass (120 kHz echosounder backscatter data) Scott Reef during the blue whale sightings suggested the region may provide foraging opportunities, though no feeding has been observed. |
| Double, M. C., Andrews-Goff, V., Jenner, C., Jenner, M.-N., Laverick, S. M., Branch, T. A., & Gales, N. J. (2014). Migratory movements of pygmy blue whales (*Balaenoptera musculus brevicauda*) between Australia and Indonesia as revealed by satellite telemetry. *PLoS ONE, 9*(4), e93578. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0093578.t001. | Eleven pygmy blue whales were tagged near Perth Canyon in March and April and tracked with satellite telemetry on their northbound migration. Animals remained near the coastline (54.0 ± 0.9 nmi [100.0 ± 1.7 km]) throughout March and April until reaching the North West Cape (22.23°S, 113.96°E) |



| | |
|---|---|
| | where they moved farther offshore (128.5 ± 7.5 nmi [238.0 ± 13.9 km]) towards Indonesia. By June, the whales were traveling through the Savu and Timor seas (outside the LFA study area). The region around the North West Cape was an area with higher occupancy times than other regions across the duration of the tracking period. Four whales spent 330.3 hours in one single grid cell (100 $km^2$ [29.2 $nmi^2$]), which the authors suggest was due to migratory tracks converging around this prominent peninsula. |

**Subject Matter Experts / e-NGO Reports / Regional Expertise**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Cooke, J.G. (2018). *Balaenoptera musculus*. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2018: e.T2477A50226195. <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2018-2.RLTS.T2477A50226195.en>. | The Committee on Taxonomy of the Society for Marine Mammalogy recognizes northern blue whale (*Balaenoptera musculus musculus*), Antarctic blue whale (*B. m. intermedia*), northern Indian Ocean blue whale (*B. m. indica*), pygmy blue whale (*B. m. brevicauda*), and Chilean blue whale (*B. m.* un-named subspecies). The number of pygmy blue whales is very uncertain but may be in the range of 2,000 to 5,000 individuals. Blue whales feed almost exclusively on euphasiids (krill), feeding both at the surface and at depths of up to 300 m (984 ft). |
| Double, M. C., Jenner, K. C. S., Jenner, M.-N., Ball, I., Laverick, S., & Gales, N. (2012). *Satellite tracking of pygmy blue whales (Balaenoptera musculus brevicauda) off Western Australia.* Australian Marine Mammal Centre. 23 pages. | This study builds on Gales et al. (2010) with more satellite-tagged pygmy blue whales. Ten tags provided movement information for one to 162 days. Several animals remained near Perth Canyon/Naturaliste Plateau for over month, moving less than 50 km (27 nmi) per day. When animals began to migrate north, they increased their travel speed to 100 km (54 nmi) per day until they reach the North West Cape/Ningaloo Reef region, where they decreased to less than 50 km (27 nmi) per day again. The northern terminus of the migration was the Banda and Molucca seas in Indonesia. |

**Committee or Government Reports**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Gales, N. J., Double, M. C., Robinson, S., Jenner, C., Jenner, M. N., King, E., . . . Paton, D. (2010). Satellite tracking of Australian humpback (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) and pygmy blue whales (*Balaenoptera musculus brevicauda*). *Report of the International Whaling Commission*, SC/62/SH21. | The authors describe the deployment of satellite tags on southbound Stock D (west Australian) humpback whales in the Kimberly region, northbound Stock E (east Australian) humpback whales, and on pygmy blue whales in the Perth Canyon off Western Australia. Forty-one tags were deployed, three on pygmy blue whales and 38 on humpback whales (23 on female |

| | |
|---|---|
| | humpback whales accompanied by a calf in between Camden Sound and Pender Bay, Kimberly). The tag results provide the first link between blue whales in Perth Canyon and those that occur around Indonesia (Saru and Banda seas). Furthermore, two of the four humpback whales that provided location data south of Exmouth Gulf deviated from the expected migratory route close to the coast and were tracked 1,200 km (648 nmi) into the Indian Ocean, presumably to exploit temperate foraging areas. |

**<u>Websites / Social Media</u>**

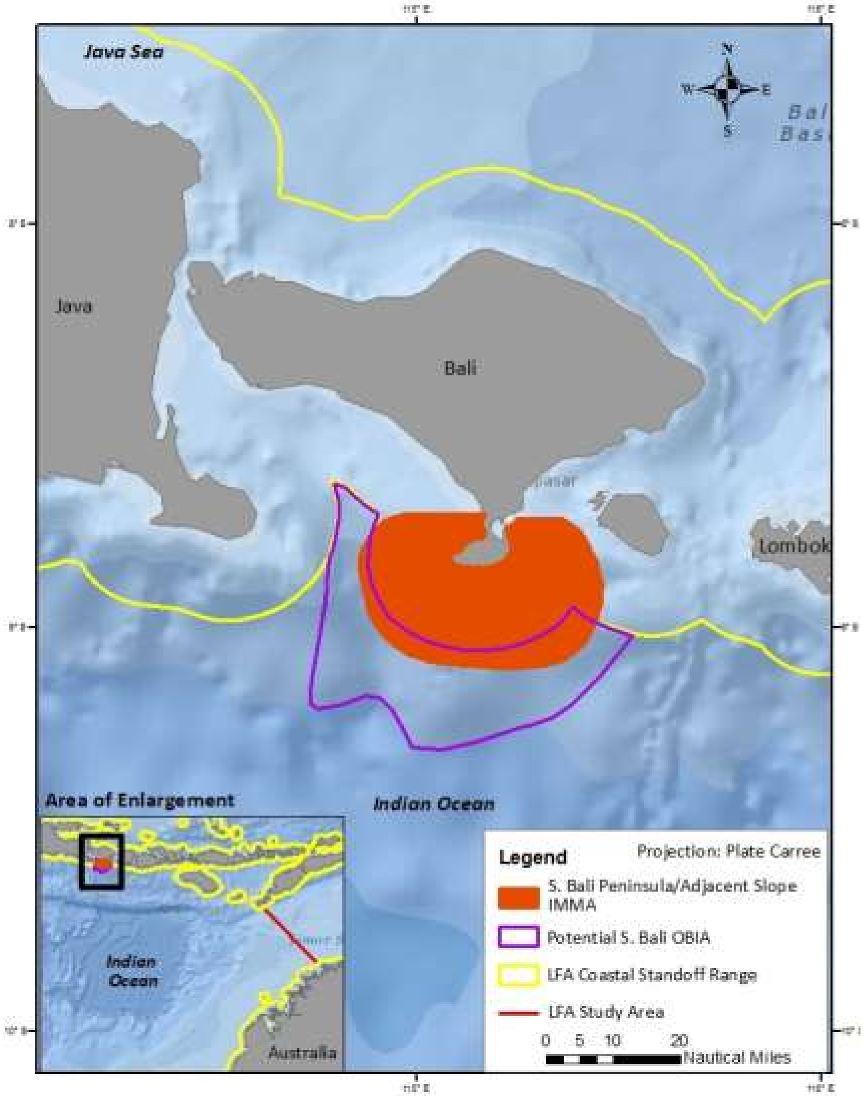
| *Website/Organization* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Australian Government, GeoScience Australia. (2019). Browse Basin. Retrieved from <http://www.ga.gov.au/scientific-topics/energy/province-sedimentary-basin-geology/petroleum/offshore-northwest-australia/browse>. | Browse Basin is a proven hydrocarbon province, with major undeveloped gas/condensate fields in the outer and central basin and minor oil discoveries on the Basin's eastern margin. |
| Government of Western Australia. (2019). Browse Basin. Retrieved from <http://www.dmp.wa.gov.au/Petroleum/Browse-Basin-10988.aspx>. | Provides location information for the basin as well as the areal extent of the basin. Principally includes geological information and the history of the oil and gas exploration that has occurred in the basin. |

## Southern Bali Peninsula and Slope 14

**MARINE REGION:** Northeast Indian Ocean

**COUNTRY:** Indonesia

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:** Bryde's, Omura's, blue, humpback, sei, and sperm whales




**MARINE AREA TYPE**

- ☐ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA**
- ☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**
- ☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**
- ☐ **IUCN Green List Site**
- ☒ **IMMA**
- ☐ **EBSA**
- ☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**
- ☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**
- ☐ **U.S. MPA**
- ☐ **U.S. Critical Habitat**
- ☒ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**AREA OVERVIEW:**

The Southern Peninsula of Bali, or the Bukit Peninsula, is flanked on the eastern and western parts by underwater canyons. Seasonal upwelling (June to October) exists off the south-western peninsula around the canyon perimeter, which is characterized by steep bathymetric gradients (MMPATF, 2019; Mustika et al., 2016). Water depths plument swiftly from 656 to 3,280 ft (200 to 1000 m) within 5 km of the southern shore.

Although several species of dolphins have been documented in the waters of Indonesia, less information is available about the occurrences of baleen and sperm whales, particularly in the waters surrounding Bali. Indonesian waters were known as a whalilng grounds for sperm whales in the 19th century, and subsistence hunting of sperm whales occurred in some Indonesian villages through at least the mid-

1990s (Rudolph et al., 1997). Blue, sperm, and even humpback whale records have been reported from the Java and Savu seas of Indonesia, but only sperm whales have historically been recorded for Balinese waters (Rudolph et al., 1997).

Mustika et al. (2009) reported on cetacean strandings in Indonesian waters, with nine stranding events occurring on Bali from 1987 through 2007, primarily along the southern coast. These strandings included a sperm whale and a young humpback whale, which was the first sighted off Bali and later was found stranded; the sighting of this humpback whale was the first observed in Balinese waters (Mustika et al., 2009). In 2009, another humpback stranded on Bali (NMMSD, 2019). In 2016, a baby Bryde's whale stranded on the southwestern shore of the Bali Peninsula (Mustika et al., 2016). The stranding of the baby Byrde's whale indicated to Mustika et al. (2016) that the southwestern waters of the peninsula may be nursery or calving grounds for the Bryde's whale. Since 2009, four sperm whales have been reported stranding in Bali (2009, 2010, 2014, and 2016) (NMMSD, 2019).

Sixteen species of marine mammals have been reported from the waters off the Bukit Peninsula, including killer, sperm, Bryde's, humpback, blue, and Omura's whales (MMPATF, 2019). Bryde's whale have been observed feeding at the south-western extend of the bathymetric slope, and sperm whales have been observed aggregating at the perimeter of the southwestern canyon. Spinner dolphins are often sighted feeding and aggregating above the south-eastern parts of the canyon. Mustika et al. (2016) conducted the only known survey of southern Balinese water during October to November 2015 (i.e., the wet season). Dedicated boat-based line-transect surveys were conducted in the waters surrounding the southern peninsula of Bali to a seaward distance of 12 nmi (22 km). Mustika et al. (2016) observed eight species of cetaceans, including spinner, pantropical spotted, Fraser's, Risso's, and bottlenose dolphins as well as sei, Bryde's, and sperm whales. An estimated 15,100 dolphins were estimated for the entire area surrounding the Bukit Peninsula of Bali, with only 109 whales observed (Mustika et al., 2016). Although only one Bryde's whales was observed in the westernmost waters off Bukit Peninsula during the 2015 surveys, the whale was foraging when observed, which indicated to Mustika et al. (2016) that the productive waters off southern Bali were important foraging grounds.

**CANDIDATE OBIA #12—SOUTHERN BALI BOUNDARY:**

The boundary of the Southern Bali Peninsula and Slope IMMA was created at a distance roughly 13.5 nmi (25 km) from shore because that approximately represented the extent of the waters of southern Bali that were surveyed by Mustika et al. (2016). Rather than create the OBIA boundary at the extent of the IMMA boundary and the boat surveys, the southern boundary follows approximately along lines of bathymetry, which are a more likely indicator of the extent of where marine mammals may aggregate in these waters. The northern and westen boundaries of the Southern Bali OBIA boundary were created along the coastal standoff range and the eastern boundary is simply a line connecting the seaward and landward boundaries.

**GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA**

Location Status: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range (12 nmi from emergent land): IMMA: ☐ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside

Eligible Areal Extent: IMMA: 652.79 $nmi^2$ (2,239 $km^2$)
Navy Created S. Bali Potential Area: 676.80 $nmi^2$ (2321.36 $km^2$)

Source of Official Boundary: IMMA: IUCN MMPATF

Spatial File Type: GIS Shapefiles

Spatial File Source: IUCN-Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force (MMPATF), 2019. GIS data made available by the IUCN Global Dataset of Important Marine Mammal Areas (IUCN-IMMA), April 2019. Made available under agreement on terms of use by the IUCN Joint SSC/WCPA Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force and accessible at IMMA e-Atlas <www.marinemammalhabitat.org/imma-eatlas>.

Date Obtained/Created: IMMA: 4/8/2019; Navy Created S. Bali Potential Area: 4/24/19

## Low Frequency Hearing Sensitivity

☒ Species: Bryde's, sei, humpback, Omura's, and sperm whales

## Biological Criteria

High Density: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Breeding / Calving: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data (some evidence of Bryde's whale calving)

Migration: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Foraging: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Distinct Small Population: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Critical Habitat: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## Seasonal Effective Period

☐ Year-round ☒ Seasonal Period (Months Annually): October to November

## OBIA Watchlist Addition

☐ Yes ☒ No

## Supporting Documentation

### Peer Reviewed Articles

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Mustika, P. L. K., Hutasoit, P., Madusari, C. C., Purnomo, F. S., Setiawan, A., Tjandra,K. & Prabowo, W. E. (2009). Whale strandings in Indonesia, including | This paper presents whale strandings in Indonesia from 1987 to 2007. The most identified stranding species was the sperm whale, followed by short-finned |

| | |
|---|---|
| the first record of a humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) in the Archipelago. *The Raffles Bulletin of Zoology, 57,* 199–206. | pilot whales. In total, almost half of all stranding events involved unidentified cetaceans. Despite an insufficient stranding network in Indonesia, a well-recorded stranding of a young humpback whale was recorded on 2 and 9 October 2007 in Bali, Indonesia. The humpback whale stranding in Bali was the one of the first recorded incidence of the species' presence in the Indonesian Archipelago. |
| Rudolph, P., Smeenk, C., & Leatherwood, S. (1997). Preliminary checklist of Cetacea in the Indonesian Archipelago and adjacent waters. *Zoologische Verhandelingen, 312*, 1-48. | Documentation of the 29 species of marine mammals, including the sperm and six baleen whales, occurring in Indonesian waters based on published and unpublished sources. The presence of 26 species could be confirmed by material in museum collections, photographs or documentation by specialists, but the occurrence of three species remained unconfirmed. |

**Subject Matter Experts / e-NGO Reports / Regional Expertise**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| NMMSNI (National Marine Mammal Stranding Network of Indonesia). (2019). Bali stranding records. Retrieved from <http://www.whalestranding indonesia.com/stranding-database.html>. | Marine mammal stranding data records for Bali from 2001 to 2018. |
| Mustika, P. L., Williams, R., Kadarisman, H. P., Purba, A. O., & Maharta, I.P.R.F. (2016). Final report of marine mammal survey at the Peninsular waters of Bali. Prepared for Conservation International Indonesia. 24 pages. | Boat-based line transect surveys were conducted in the waters of the southern Peninsula of Bali to a distance of 12 nmi in October through November 2015 to understand the species diversity and general habitat preference of the cetaceans utilizing the area, to obtain preliminary sampling of ocean noise as a possible major threats to the cetaceans and to provide general anthropogenic threats to the cetaceans in the Peninsula waters. Eight cetacean species were observed, including spinner, Fraser's, bottlenose, pantropical spotted, and Risso's dolphins as well as sei, Bryde's, and sperm whales. Whales were principally only sighted in the waters of the western part of the study area. The estimated abundance of dolphin in the study area is 15,100 individuals while only 109 whales were estimated. |

**Committee or Government Reports**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| MMPATF. (2019). Southern Bali Peninsula and slope IMMA. Retrieved from <https://www.marinemammalhabitat.org/portfolio-item/southern-bali-peninsula-slope/>. | Summary of Southern Bali Peninsula and Slope IMMA and the criteria for designation. Designated for its importance to Bryde's whale and spinner dolphin foraging and aggregation. Fourteen other marine mammal species have been observed in the waters off southern Bali. |

**Surveys**

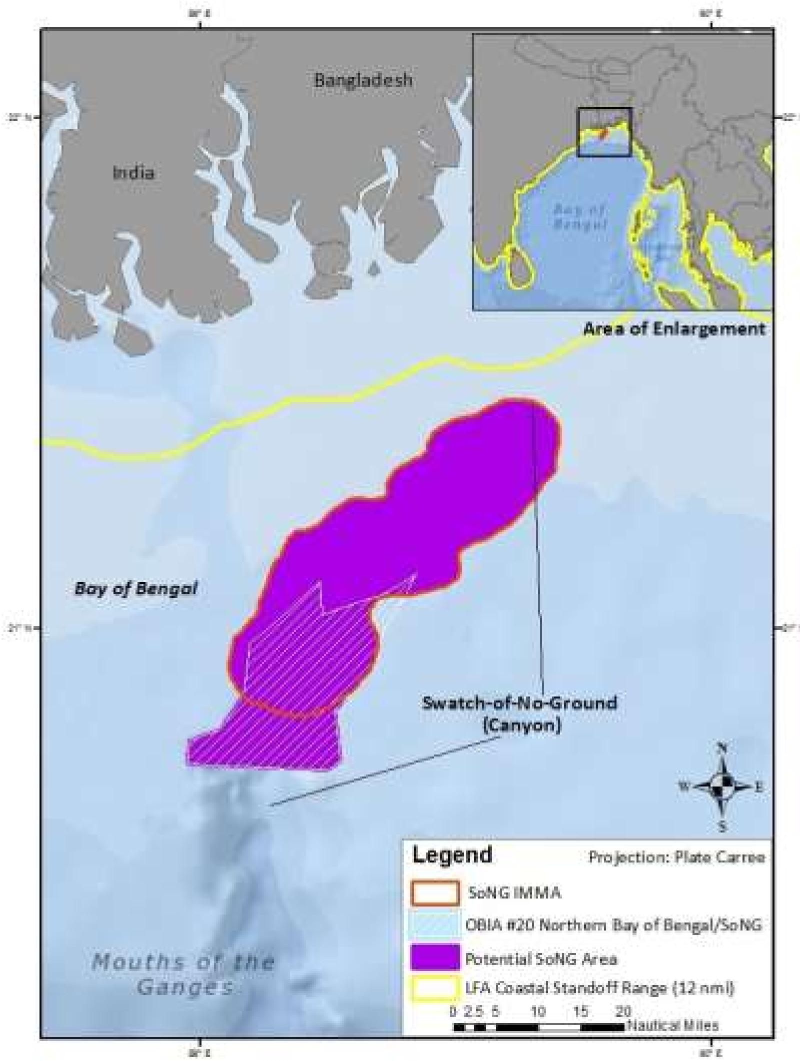
| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| See Mustika 2016 | |

## Swatch-of-No-Ground 15

**MARINE REGION:** North-central Indian Ocean

**COUNTRY:** Bangladesh

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:** Bryde's whale, Indo-Pacific dolphin




**MARINE AREA TYPE**

- ☒ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA** (OBIA #20; Northern Bay of Bengal/Swatch-of-No-Ground)
- ☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**
- ☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**
- ☐ **IUCN Green List Site**
- ☒ **IMMA**
- ☐ **EBSA**
- ☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**
- ☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**
- ☐ **U.S. MPA**
- ☐ **U.S. Critical Habitat**
- ☒ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**AREA OVERVIEW:**

An existing OBIA, #20, for SURTASS LFA sonar is located in the Northern Bay of Bengal at the head of the Swatch-of-No-Ground canyon and was designated year-round for Bryde's whale (DoN, 2012). The Swatch-of-No-Ground (SoNG) is 70-nmi (130-km) long and 2,953-ft (900-m) deep submarine canyon formed by the outflow from the Ganges/Brahmaputra/Meghna River system, which is the third largest in the world (Smith et al., 2008). This massive outflow of freshwater into the tropical ocean waters of the northern Bay of Bengal results in upwelling of nutrients near the head of the canyon and increased biological productivity (Amaral et al., 2017).

Although several species of coastal dolphins aggregate in the mangrove waters along the coast of the India and Bangladesh border and in the SoNG region, Bryde's whales routinely are observed in foraging aggregations in the highly productive waters near the head of SoNG canyon. Kershaw et al. (2013)

recently conducted genetic analysis of the Bryde's off Bangladesh and identified them as the smaller, coastal ecotype (*Balaenoptera edeni edeni).* The average group size of Bryde's whales near the head of the SoNG is 2.2 whales (range = 1 to 15), as estimated from146 sightings between 2004 and 2012 in waters that averaged 318 ft (97 m) (WCS Bangladesh, 2014). The head of the SoNG canyon is the core area where the majority of Bryde's whales were observed during the 2004 to 2012 sighting surveys in waters that range in depth from about 164 to over 3,281 ft (50 to over 1,000 m) (WCS Bangladesh, 2014). Calves have been reported being sighted in these waters, suggesting the area may be an important reproductive area for Bryde's whales (MMPATF, 2019).

The SoNG IMMA encompasses the waters of the head of the SoNG canyon (MMPATF, 2019), which were not fully encompassed in OBIA #20. The IMMA boundary fully captures the foraging habitat where Bryde's whales have been identified (Smith et al., 2008; WCS Bangladesh, 2014).

**CANDIDATE OBIA #13—SWATCH-OF-NO-GROUND (SONG) BOUNDARY:**

The boundary of the expanded SoNG OBIA was created by merging the southern boundary of the existing OBIA #20 with the north, east, and western boundaries of the SoNG IMMA. The OBIA boundary needed to be extended northward to encompass the head of the SoNG canyon, as this is the area where most of the Bryde's whale sightings have been made (WCS, 2014) and apparently is where Bryde's whales aggregate to forage.

## GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA

Location Status: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range (12 nmi from emergent land): ☒ Entirely Outside
☐ Partially Outside

Eligible Areal Extent: IMMA: 571.44 $nmi^2$ (1,960 $km^2$)
Navy Created Potential SoNG Area: 1,826.05 $nmi^2$ (6,263.18 $km^2$)

Source of Official Boundary: IMMA: IUCN MMPATF
OBIA #20: DoN, 2017

Spatial File Type: GIS shapefiles

Spatial File Source: LFA OBIA: DoN, 2017
IMMA: IUCN-Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force (MMPATF), 2019. GIS data made available by the IUCN Global Dataset of Important Marine Mammal Areas (IUCN-IMMA), April 2019. Made available under agreement on terms of use by the IUCN Joint SSC/WCPA Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force and accessible at IMMA e-Atlas <www.marinemammalhabitat.org/imma-eatlas>.

Date Obtained/Created: LFA OBIA: 8/9/17; IMMA: 4/8/2019; Navy Created Potential SoNG Area; 4/12/19

## LOW FREQUENCY HEARING SENSITIVITY

☒ Species: Bryde's whale

## BIOLOGICAL CRITERIA

High Density: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification

☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Breeding / Calving: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification (possible but little data)
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Migration: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Foraging: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Distinct Small Population: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Critical Habitat: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## SEASONAL EFFECTIVE PERIOD

☒ Year-round ☐ Seasonal Period (Months Annually):

## OBIA WATCHLIST ADDITION

☐ Yes ☒ No

## SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION

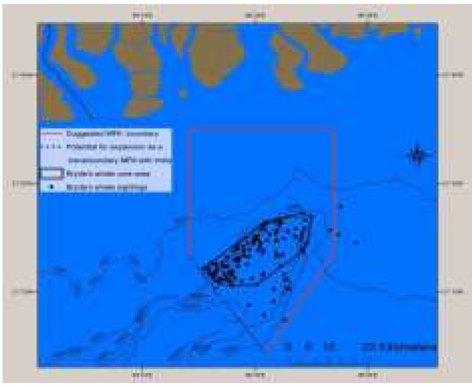
### Peer Reviewed Articles

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Amaral, A. R., Smith, B. D., Mansur, R. M., Brownell Jr., R. L., & Rosenbaum, H. C. (2017). Oceanographic drivers of population differentiation in Indo-Pacific bottlenose (*Tursiops aduncus*) and humpback (*Sousa* spp.) dolphins of the northern Bay of Bengal. *Conservation Genetics, 18*(2), 371–381. doi:10.1007/s10592-016-0913-7. | The Bay of Bengal is one of the most productive ecosystems in the northern Indian Ocean and it harbors a rich community of cetaceans, including Indo-Pacific bottlenose (*Tursiops aduncus*) and humpback (*Sousa* spp.) dolphins. The taxonomy of these genera has been controversial, but within the Indian Ocean both seem to be divided into phylogenetically discrete units that range from the east to the west. Within the *Sousa* genus, *S. plumbea* is distributed in the western Indian Ocean while *S. chinensis* is distributed in the eastern Indian and western Pacific Ocean. *T. aduncus* has a discontinuous distribution throughout the Indo-Pacific Ocean and two different phylogenetic units are known to exist, one along the eastern African coast and another one in the eastern Indian and west Pacific Ocean. In this study we investigate the phylogeography of Indo-Pacific humpback and bottlenose dolphins in the northern Bay of Bengal. We sequenced the mitochondrial DNA control region for 17 bottlenose and 15 humpback dolphins and compared the results with previously published sequences within each genus. In both cases, we found that Bangladesh dolphins are genetically different from neighboring populations. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Kershaw, F., Leslie, M. S., Collins, T., Mansur, R. M., Smith, B. D., Minton, G., . . . Rosenbaum, H. C. (2013). Population differentiation of 2 forms of Bryde's whales in the Indian and Pacific Oceans. *Journal of Heredity, 104*(6), 755-764. doi:10.1093/jhered/est057. | To understand how Bryde's whale populations and subspecies are genetically structured, a population level analysis of mitochondrial DNA from 56 samples from Bryde's whales from Oman, Bangladesh (SoNG Canyon), and the Maldives was conducted, using published sequences from Bryde's whales from Java and the northwest Pacific Ocean. Two forms of Bryde's whales were identified, the larger, offshore form and the smaller, coastal form. The analysis showed strong differences in genetic diversity and population structure within each subspecies. Bryde's whales from Bangladesh waters were identified as the smaller, coastal (*edeni edeni*) form. |
| Smith, B. D., Ahmed, B., Mowgli, R., & Strindberg, S. (2008). Species occurrence and distributional ecology of nearshore cetaceans in the Bay of Bengal, Bangladesh, with abundance estimates for Irrawaddy dolphins *Orcaella brevirostris* and finless porpoises *Neophocaena phocaenoides*. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 10*(1), 45-58. | A vessel-based line-transect survey conducted during February 2004 along 1,018 km of systematic trackline in the nearshore waters of Bangladesh resulted in 111 'on-effort' cetacean sightings including: Irrawaddy dolphins, *Orcaella brevirostris* (*n*=75, mean group size=2.2); finless porpoises, *Neophocaena phocaenoides* (*n*=11, mean group size=2.6); Indo-Pacific humpback dolphins, *Sousa chinensis* (*chinensis*form; *n*=6, mean group size=16.2); Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphins, *Tursiops aduncus* (*n*=3, mean group size=36.1); pantropical spotted dolphins, *Stenella attenuata* (*n*=1, best, high and low group size estimates=800, 1,100 and 600, respectively); Bryde's whales, *Balaenoptera edeni/brydei* (large-form; *n*=1, three individuals); and unidentified small cetaceans (*n*=14). Cetacean distribution was closely tied to environmental gradients, with Irrawaddy dolphins and finless porpoises occurring most often in nearshore, turbid, low-salinity waters, Indo-Pacific humpback dolphins in slightly deeper waters where the color turned from brown to green and Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphins and Bryde's whales in deep, clear, high-salinity waters of the Swatch-of-No-Ground (SoNG), a 900+m-deep submarine canyon that extends to within about 40km of the Sundarbans mangrove forest. |

**Subject Matter Experts / e-NGO Reports / Regional Expertise**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| WCS (Wildlife Conservation Society) Bangladesh. (2014). Proposal to establish a marine protected area in the Swatch-of-No-Ground submarine canyon and surrounding coastal waters in the Bay of Bengal. Prepared by the WCS Bangladesh Cetacean Diversity | This proposal to designate a marine protected area (MPA) in the waters of the SoNG uses marine mammal records for seven species surveyed in the canyon's waters from 2004 through 2012 to define boundaries of the MPA. These core areas for six odontocete |

| | |
|---|---|
| Project. 13 pages. Retrieved from <https://www.cbd.int/doc/meetings/mar/ebsaws-2015-01/other/ebsaws-2015-01-gobi-submission6-en.pdf>.  | (Irrawaddy, Indo-Pacific bottlenose, Indo-Pacific humpback, spinner, and pantropical spotted dolphins and finless porpoise) and one mysticete (Bryde's whale) are principally in the head of the SoNG canyon. The northern part of the proposed MPA stretches to encompass the coastal mangrove areas where more of the coastal odontocete species occur. |

**Committee or Government Reports**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| MMPATF. (2019). Swatch of No Ground IMMA. Retrieved from <https://www.marinemammal habitat.org/portfolio-item/swatch-of-no-ground/>. | Description of the criteria and justification for designation of this IMMA for Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphins and Bryde's whales. The area is described as a Bryde's whale aggregation area for foraging and potentially reproduction, as calves have been observed in these waters. |
| DoN. (2012). *Final supplemental environmental impact statement/supplemental overseas environmental impact statement for Surveillance Towed Array Sensor System Low Frequency Active (SURTASS LFA) sonar.* Washington, D.C.: Chief of Naval Operations, Department of the Navy. <http://www.surtass-lfa-eis.com/docs/SURTASS_LFA_FSEIS-SOEIS.pdf>. | Included in the third EIS/EOIS for SURTASS LFA sonar was the designation of 21 OBIAs for SURTASS LFA sonar, including the Northern Bay of Bengal/SoNG OBIA #20. These OBIAs were designated based on revised geographic and biological criteria. The boundary for OBIA #20 was derived based on the best available data regarding Bryde's whale records. |

**Surveys**

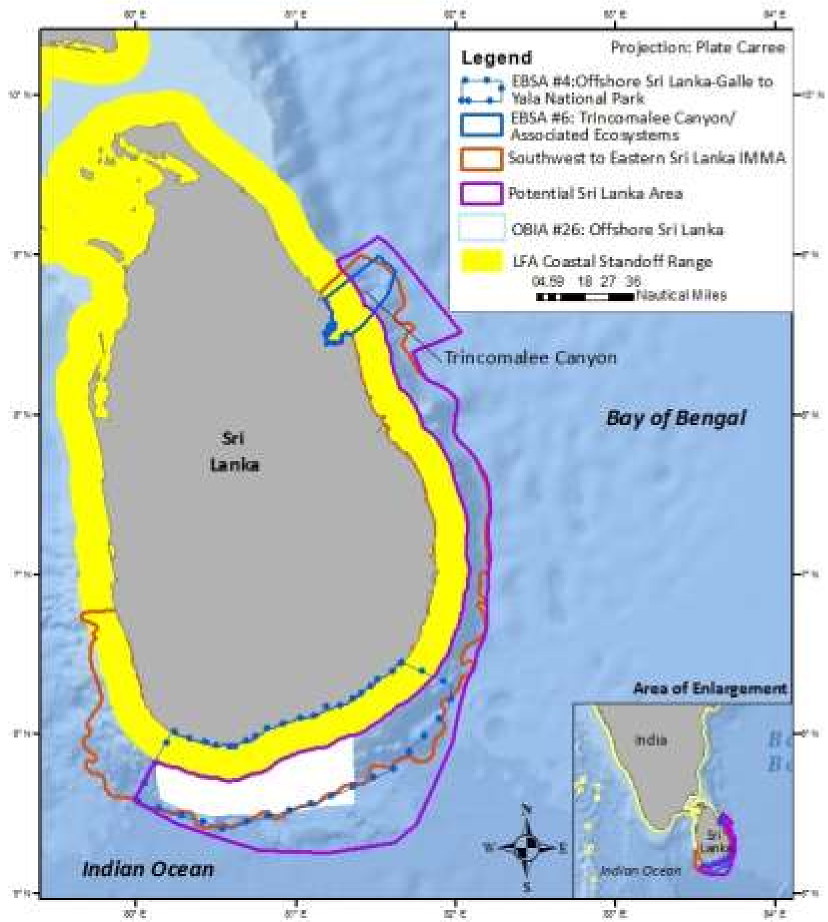
| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| See WCS Bangladesh and Smith et al. entries above | |

## Trincomalee Canyon and Associated Ecosystems/ Southwest to Eastern Sri Lanka — 16

**MARINE REGION:** Northeast Indian Ocean

**COUNTRY:** Sri Lanka

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:** Blue (pygmy) and sperm whales




**MARINE AREA TYPE**

☐ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA**

☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**

☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**

☐ **IUCN Green List Site**

☒ **IMMA**

☒ **EBSA** (NEIO #4 and #6)

☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**

☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**

☐ **U.S. MPA**

☐ **U.S. ESA Critical Habitat**

☒ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**AREA OVERVIEW:**

The Trincomalee area consists of a complex of multiple submarine canyons, of which the Trincomalee Canyon is the largest; Trincomalee Canyon is one of the 20 largest submarine canyons in the world. The Mahaweli River, the largest in Sri Lanka, flows into the Trincomalee Canyon complex, increasing the nutrient concentrations of the regional waters. The Trincomalee Canyon extends about 21.6 nmi (40 km) and is as deep as 8,202 ft (2,500 m) (UNEP CBD, 2017). Virtually no information is available about the offshore pelagic environment of the Trincomalee region (UNEP CBD, 2017). Moors-Murphy (2014) has shown that canyon habitat such as that of the Trincomalee Canyon Complex are important cetacean habitat areas. The Trincomalee Canyon EBSA principally encompasses the entirety of the Trincomalee Canyon.

High concentrations of cetaceans, including sperm whales and pygmy blue whales, have been reported in the waters of this EBSA (Alling et al., 1991; Nanayakkara et al., 2014). A total of 11 species of cetaceans have been identified in the area, including the two mysticetes species: blue and Bryde's whales, and nine species of odontocete species: sperm whale, killer whale, dwarf sperm whale, Longman's beaked whale, false killer whale, rough-toothed dolphin, common bottlenose dolphin, striped dolphin, and spinner dolphin (Nanayakakra et al., 2014).

Blue whales principally occur in the region from November through April, with peak occurrences in December to January and March to April, periods that coincide with monsoon seasons are when blue whales are thought to be migrating around Sri Lanka from the northwestern or western Indian Ocean (Arabian Sea or Chagos region) eastward in November and returning westward in late spring. Blue whales have been observed diving and foraging in the waters of the canyon complex (Ailing et al., 1991; Sri Lanka Whales Watching, 2015; Taylor, 2018). The migrational patterns of pygmy blue whales in the Northern Indian Ocean are not well understood or documented, but occurrence records indicate no Antarctic (north to south) migration (Branch et al., 2007). Anderson et al., (2012) hypothesized that pygmy blue whales in the Northern Indian Ocean migrate east-and-west, with seasonal movements triggered by the advent of the southwest (from about May to October) and northeast (December to March) monsoon seasons that result in intense upwelling in the Arabian Sea off the coasts of Somalia and the Arabian peninsula or off eastern Sri Lanka, west of the Maldives, the vicinity of the Indus Canyon, and some parts of the southern Indian Ocean, respectively.

Fewer records of sperm whales in the region are available, but sperm whales are present in the waters of the canyon complex in the same seasonal time frame as blue whales, from about October/November through April. Gordon (1987) reported that the frequent sightings in Sri Lankan waters of large groups of female sperm whales and calves may be indicative of Sri Lankan waters being an important calving ground as well as foraging area for sperm whales. Although Bryde's whales occur in these waters, no information is available that indicate the area to be significant to the species or that important biological activities occur in this region.

**CANDIDATE OBIA #14—SRI LANKA BOUNDARY:**

The inner boundary of the candidate Sri Lanka OBIA was created along the coastal standoff range along the shore of southern and eastern Sri Lanka from just west of the existing OBIA #26 boundary to the canyon just north of the Trincomalee Canyon. The area off the Trincomalee Canyon was extended offshore to encompass the waters over the full extent of the Trincomalee and surrounding canyon features. The eastern seaward boundary of the OBIA roughly follows that of the IMMA boundary except that it has been smoothed instead of following the undulating IMMA boundary. The southern OBIA boundary extends further offshore than the IMMA boundary along an isobath to encompass the irregular topographic features that might affect upwelling in the region.

**GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA**

**Location in LFA Study Area**: EBSA: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

**Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range** (12 nmi from emergent land): EBSA: ☐ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside

**Eligible Areal Extent**: EBSA: 203.92 $nmi^2$ (699.41 $km^2$)
Navy Created Potential Sri Lanka Area (Expansion of OBIA #26): 6,229.89 $nmi^2$ (21,367.92 $km^2$)

**Source of Official Boundary**: EBSA: UNEP Convention of Biological Diversity

IMMA: IUCN MMPATF

**Spatial File Type**: GIS shapefiles

**Spatial File Source**: EBSA: UNEP Convention of Biological Diversity *(/api/v2013/documents/996BAA02-58AE-4781-9B20-D92BC79672B0/attachments/NEIO_6_EBSA.zip)*
IMMA: IUCN-Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force (MMPATF), 2019. GIS data made available by the IUCN Global Dataset of Important Marine Mammal Areas (IUCN-IMMA), April 2019. Made available under agreement on terms of use by the IUCN Joint SSC/WCPA Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force and accessible at IMMA e-Atlas <www.marinemammalhabitat.org/imma-eatlas>.

**Date Obtained/Created**: EBSA: 5/7/18; IMMA: 4/8/19; Navy Created Potential Sri Lanka Area: 4/17/19

## Low Frequency Hearing Sensitivity

☒ Species: blue (pygmy) and sperm whales

## Biological Criteria

**High Density:** ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification (for blue whales)
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Breeding / Calving:** ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Migration:** ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Foraging:** ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Distinct Small Population:** ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Critical Habitat**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## Seasonal Effective Period

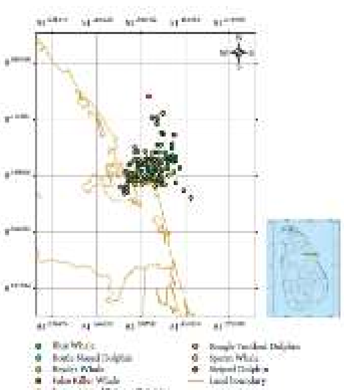
☐ Year-round ☒ Seasonal Period (Months Annually): Blue whales: November to April (peaks in December to January; March to April)
Sperm whales: October to April

## OBIA Watchlist Addition

☐ Yes ☒ No

## Supporting Documentation

### Peer Reviewed Articles

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| de Vos, A. (2016). 27 years: The longest longevity and residency record for northern Indian Ocean blue whales. *TAPROBANICA, 8*(1), 21-23. | de Vos noted that blue whales in Sri Lankan waters are  considered pygmy blue whales and that some of the blue whales observed may remain resident year-round. Principally this paper describes the photographic matches of 3 blue whale sightings in a small area in the Trincomalee Canyon vicinity over 27 years (see map to left for sighting locations). The 3 sightings (2 of which were on consecutive days in 1984) were in March and April. DeVos concludes that these sightings represent the longest recorded sighting interval and longevity record for this subpopulation of pygmy blue whales. |
| Moors-Murphy, H.B. (2014). Submarine canyons as important habitat for cetaceans, with special reference to the Gully: A review. *Deep Sea Research II 104*, 6-19. | In this summary of the importance of canyon habitat to cetaceans, Moors-Murphy cites the records of Gordon (1991) of high concentrations of sperm whales at the mouth of Trincomalee Canyon and Ailing et al. (1991) reports of blue whale concentrations in the canyon waters during their surveys as examples of the association of cetaceans with canyon habitat. |
| Nanayakkara, R.P., Herath, J., & de Mel, R.K (2014). Cetacean presence in the Trincomalee Bay and adjacent waters, Sri Lanka. *Journal of Marine Biology, 2014 (*Article ID 819263). Hindawi Publishing Corporation.  | Boat surveys of the waters of Trincomalee Bay and its adjacent waters were conducted over 19 months. Eleven cetacean species were observed: blue, Bryde's, sperm, killer, dwarf sperm, Longman's beaked, and false killer whales, as well as rough-toothed, common bottlenose, striped, and spinner dolphins. Spinner dolphins were the most abundant and regularly observed species, but blue whales were the next most numerous species of marine mammal observed. Most sightings were located in the waters of the CSR (see map insert of sightings in Trincomalee Canyon area) as the transect survey lines only went 10 nmi from the mouth of the bay; some sightings of blue, sperm, and Bryde's whales were located just offshore of the CSR limit. The authors noted that the highest abundances of marine mammals were observed at the beginning of the two monsoon seasons: Southwest monsoon season (May to September) and Northeast monsoon (December to February). |

| | |
|---|---|
| Anderson, R.C., Branch, T.A., Alagiyawadu, A., Baldwin, R., & Marsac, F. (2012). Seasonal distribution, movements and taxonomic status of blue whales (*Balaenoptera musculus*) in the northern Indian Ocean. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 12*(2), 203-218. | Using all available blue whale occurrence data (sightings, strandings, acoustic detections, and whaling catches) from the Northern Indian Ocean, the authors developed a hypothesis about the east-and-west migrational patterns of blue/pygmy blue whales in the Northern Indian Ocean. Triggered by the advent of the southwest (from about May to October) and northeast (December to March) monsoon seasons that result in intense upwelling in the Arabian Sea off the coasts of Somalia and the Arabian peninsula or off eastern Sri Lanka, west of the Maldives, the vicinity of the Indus Canyon, and some parts of the southern Indian Ocean, respectively, blue whale seasonal movement patterns are east and west. |
| Ilangakoon, A.D. (2012). A review of cetacean research and conservation in Sri Lanka. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 12*(2), 177–183. | Spinner dolphins are the most common marine mammals in Sri Lankan waters, including the Trincomalee Canyon region, while blue and Bryde's whales are the most common and widely distributed baleen whales in Sri Lankan waters. Blue and sperm whales near Trincomalee Canyon were first observed in abundance in the early 1980s. Author noted that Bryde's whales have been reported from all Sri Lankan waters. Sperm whales are thought to occur abundantly in the Trincomalee Canyon area since deep waters approach close to land. |
| Branch, T. A., Stafford, K. M., Palacios, D. M., Allison, C., Bannister, J. L., Burton, C. L. K., . . . Warneke, R. M. (2007). Past and present distribution, densities and movements of blue whales *Balaenoptera musculus* in the Southern Hemisphere and northern Indian Ocean. *Mammal Review, 37*(2), 116-175. | Records of blue whale stranding or sightings in the Trincomalee Canyon area are reported beginning with the first recorded in 1932. General Sri Lankan distributional information listed but nothing specific to the Trincomalee region. |

**Subject Matter Experts / e-NGO Reports / Regional Expertise**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| di Silva Wijeyeyeratne, G. (2007). *Sri Lankan wildlife: A visitor's guide*. Bucks, England: Brandt Travel Guides, Ltd. | Noted that blue and sperm whales can be observed in the waters of Trincomalee Canyon/Bay, with blue whales occurring in these waters during what is understood to be migrational movements from the Arabian Sea eastwards in December and return westerly movements in April. |
| Sathasivam, K. (2000). A catalogue of Indian marine mammal records. Blackbuck 16(2 and 3). Retrieved from <https://www.cbd.int/doc/meetings/mar/ebsaws-2015-01/other/ebsaws-2015-01-gobi-submission5-en.pdf>. | Lists first records of sperm, blue, and Bryde's whale in the Trincomalee Canyon area, all from the early 1980s. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Alling, A., Dorsey, E. M., & Gordon, J. C. D. (1991*). Blue whales (Balaenoptera musculus) off the northeast coast of Sri Lanka: Distribution, feeding and individual identification*. UNEP Marine Mammal Technical Report 3, 247-258. | Blue whale acoustic and sighting records detected during 1983 and 1984 surveys of the NE Sri Lankan waters, including the Trincomalee Canyon area. Photographs were taken, and dive information was recorded from depth recorders. Conclusions about seasonality in Sri Lankan waters and notes that migration to other waters likely during remainder of year. |

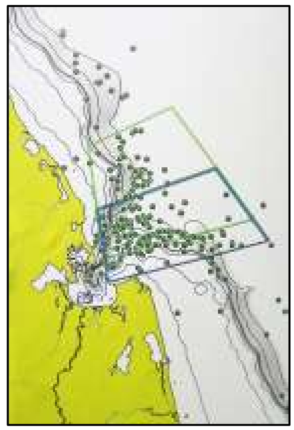
**Committee or Government Reports**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| United Nations Environmental Programme (UNEP) Center for Biological Diversity (CBD). (2017). Ecologically or biologically significant areas: Trincomalee Canyon and associated ecosystems. Retrieved from <https://chm.cbd.int/pdf/ documents/marineEbsa/237766/1>. | Overview of EBSA information collected on this area along with the criteria for designation. This area is important to threatened, endangered, or declining species and/or habitat due to the occurrence of 11 cetacean species (species listed in Area Overview), including two baleen whales and the sperm whale. |
| Gordon, J.C.D. (1987). Sperm whale groups and social behaviour observed off Sri Lanka. *Reports of the International Whaling Commission 37*, 205–17. | Surveys of Sri Lankan waters in 1983 and 1984 to document sperm whale behavior resulted in the detection of varying sized groups composed principally of mature females and calves. Foraging behavior was exhibited more often by smaller groups while social interactions were more common in larger groups. Gordon speculated that the higher than expected calf to adult ratio may be either indicative of the norm, meaning that calf-adult ratios in more well studied areas were only representative of exploited populations of that Sri Lankan waters were an important nursery ground. |

**Surveys**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Nanayakkara, R.P., Herath, J., & de Mel, R.K (2014). Cetacean presence in the Trincomalee Bay and adjacent waters, Sri Lanka. *Journal of Marine Biology, 2014 (*Article ID 819263). Hindawi Publishing Corporation. | See synopsis above (Peer-reviewed) |
| Alling, A., *E.* M. Dorsey And J. C. D. Gordon. 1991. Blue whales *(Balaenoptera musculus)* off the northeast coast of Sri Lanka: Distribution, feeding and individual identification. UNEP Marine Mammal Technical Report 3:247-258. | See synopsis above (Government/Committee Reports) |

**Websites / Social Media**

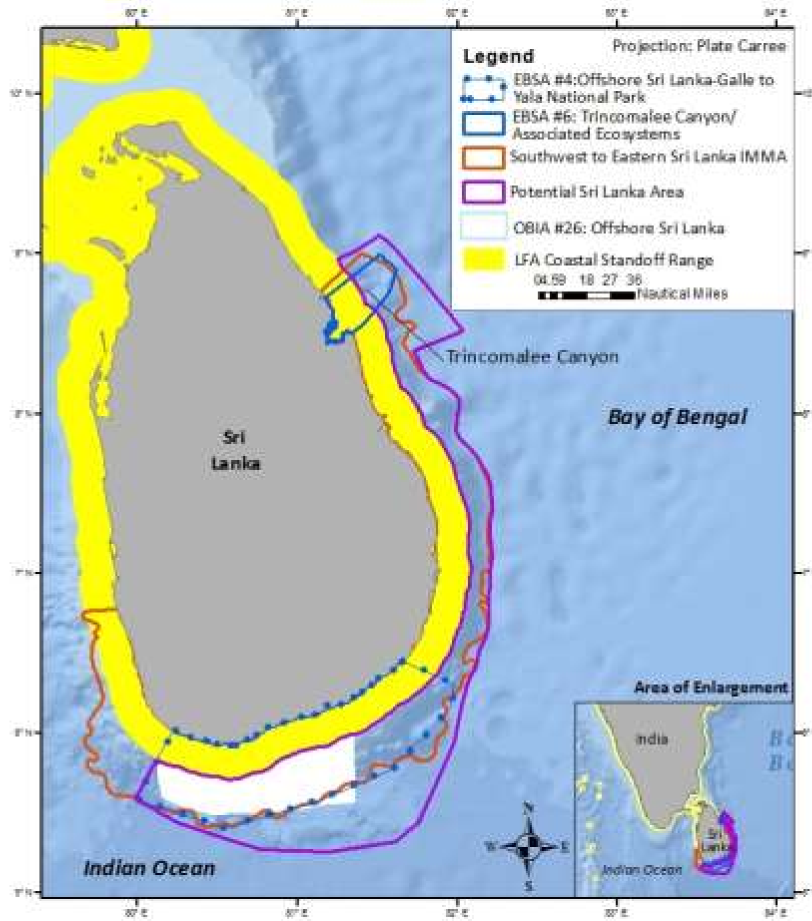
| *Website/Organization* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Taylor, C. (2018). 'Fantastic beasts'–Marine mammals on the loose. Blue Lanka Tours blog. Retrieved from <https://www.bluelankatours.com/blog/fantastic-beasts-marine-mammals-on-the-loose-they-are-coming-for-you>. | Blue Lanka Tours sponsors whale watching trips to two Sri Lanka locations one of which is Trincomalee Canyon. The author notes that blue whales can reliably be observed in these waters in March through April, with the most optimal sighting time being the first two weeks of March, when the whales are most abundant. |
| Sri Lanka Whales Watching. (2015). Getting the best out of your marine mammal encounters. Retrieved from <http://www.srilankawhaleswatching.com/getting-the-best-out-of-your-marine-mammal-encounters/#comment-2>. |  This whale watching company describes the best times of year to observe specific marine mammals in the Trincomalee Canyon area and less than 12 nmi from shore. March to April is the best time of the year to see beaked whales and the largest aggregations of Bryde's whales; blue whales and sperm are present in largest numbers between October and April; orcas are most frequently spotted in September; while March to June is best for pilot whales and false killer whales. Spinner dolphins can be observed year-round. |

| Southern Coastal/Offshore Waters between Galle and Yala National Park/ Southwest to Eastern Sri Lanka | 17 |
|---|---|

**MARINE REGION:** Northeast Indian Ocean

**COUNTRY:** Sri Lanka

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:** Blue (pygmy), Bryde's, and sperm whales




**MARINE AREA TYPE**

☒ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA**

☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**

☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**

☐ **IUCN Green List Site**

☒ **IMMA**

☒ **EBSA** (NEIO #4 and 6)

☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**

☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**

☐ **U.S. MPA**

☐ **U.S. ESA Critical Habitat**

☒ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**AREA OVERVIEW:**

This EBSA area encompasses existing OBIA #26/Offshore Sri Lanka that was designated for the blue whale (effective period October to April). The EBSA encompasses a narrow, steep continental shelf and slope and two submarine canyons and other areas of physiographic relief that along with the associated circulation features, including monsoonal regime of seasonally reversing currents, flow convergence, and associated offshore transport, result in upwelling and enhanced year-round productivity off the southern Sri Lankan coast (de Vos et al., 2014a). Highest surface chlorophyll concentrations are observed during the southwest monsoon (May/June to October) season when winds parallel to land result in upwelling off southern Sri Lanka. Higher chlorophyll concentrations are also found during the northeast monsoon (December to April) season resulting from the "island-mass effect" (UNEP CBD, 2017a). Consequently, the waters off southern Sri Lanka are more productive compared to other tropical waters (de Vos et al., 2014a). Blue whales are typically and consistently observed off southern Sri Lankan waters during the northeast monsoonal season when waters are not as productive (de Vos et al., 2014b).

The year-round higher productivity of the waters off southern Sri Lanka are important seasonal and year-round migrational, foraging, and possibly reproductive habitat to the pygmy blue whale and 20 additional and regularly occurring cetacean species, including Bryde's and sperm whales (de Vos et al., 2012; Thilakarathne et al., 2015; UN CBD, 2017a). Sighting, stranding, and acoustic data all show that blue whales occur in Sri Lankan waters year-round (Alling et al., 1991; Branch et al., 2007; de Vos et al., 2012 and 2018; Ilangakoon and Sathasivam, 2012; Randage et al., 2014).

Pygmy blue whales in the northern Indian Ocean form a resident population (Branch et al. 2007). Unlike other blue whale populations, the northern Indian Ocean population of blue whales does not appear to migrate annually from tropical to cooler waters (i.e., north and south seasonal movements) but remains in warm tropical waters year-round, seasonally moving in an east-west pattern (Alling et al., 1991; Anderson et al., 2012; de Vos et al., 2012 and 2014b). de Vos et al. (2014b) observed that blue whales were detected in southern Sri Lankan waters during the northeast monsoonal season, which is consistent with the results of data analysis by Anderson et al. (2012) for the waters off eastern Sri Lanka. It appears clear that pygmy blue whales migrate seasonally through the waters off southern and eastern Sri Lanka. Given this migrational pattern, mating and calving likely take place opportunistically throughout the year, explaining why small calves have been observed during periods that are 6 months out of phase with blue whales in the Southern Ocean and why mother-calf pairs and blue whales engaged in courtship displays have been observed (de Vos et al., 2018; Randage et al., 2012; UNEP CBD, 2017a).

In addition to its importance as a migrational pathway and as a calving and reproductive area, waters off southern and eastern Sri Lanka are important foraging grounds for the blue whale, which have been observed in foraging aggregations and diving deeper and longer than in other areas, which are indicative of area-specific foraging patterns (de Vos et al., 2013 and 2014a; UNEP CBD, 2017a). Mother-calf pairs and foraging Bryde's and sperm whales have also been observed in southern Sri Lankan waters (de Vos et al., 2012).

**CANDIDATE OBIA #14—SRI LANKA BOUNDARY:**

The inner boundary of the candidate Sri Lanka OBIA was created along the coastal standoff range along the shore of southern and eastern Sri Lanka from just west of the existing OBIA #26 boundary to the canyon just north of the Trincomalee Canyon. The area off the Trincomalee Canyon was extended offshore to encompass the waters over the full extent of the Trincomalee and surrounding canyon features. The eastern seaward boundary of the OBIA roughly follows that of the IMMA boundary except that it has been smoothed instead of following the undulating IMMA boundary. The southern OBIA boundary extends further offshore than the IMMA boundary along an isobath to encompass the irregular topographic features that might affect upwelling in the region.

**LOW FREQUENCY HEARING SENSITIVITY**

☒ Species: Blue (pygmy), Bryde's, and sperm whales

**GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA**

**Location in LFA Study Area:** EBSA: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

IMMA: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

**Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range** (12 nmi from emergent land): EBSA: ☐ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside
(Overlap with OBIA #26/Offshore Sri Lanka
IMMA: ☐ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside

**Eligible Areal Extent:** EBSA: 2,132.89 nmi$^2$ (7,315.61 km$^2$)
IMMA: 8,367.29 nmi$^2$ (28,699 km$^2$)
LFA OBIA #26: 1,225.62 nmi$^2$ (4,203.76 km$^2$)
Navy Created Potential Sri Lanka Area (Expansion of OBIA #26): 6,229.89 nmi$^2$ (21,367.92 km$^2$)

**Source of Official Boundary:** EBSA: UNEP Convention of Biological Diversity
IMMA: IUCN MMPATF
LFA OBIA #26: DoN, 2017

**Spatial File Type:** GIS shapefiles

**Spatial File Source:** EBSA: UNEP Convention of Biological Diversity (*/api/v2013/documents/9A89FE77-6631-A9CE-4F0C-1D31674AF980/attachments/NEIO_4_EBSA.zip*)
IMMA: IUCN-Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force (MMPATF), 2019. GIS data made available by the IUCN Global Dataset of Important Marine Mammal Areas (IUCN-IMMA), April 2019. Made available under agreement on terms of use by the IUCN Joint SSC/WCPA Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force and accessible at IMMA e-Atlas <www.marinemammalhabitat.org/imma-eatlas>.
LFA OBIA #26: DoN, 2017

**Date Obtained/Created:** EBSA: 5/7/2018; LFA OBIA #26: 8/9/17; IMMA: 4/8/19; Navy Created Potential Sri Lanka Area:4/17/19

## Biological Criteria

**High Density**: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Breeding / Calving:** ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Migration:** ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Foraging:** ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Distinct Small Population:** ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Critical Habitat:** ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## Seasonal Effective Period

☐ Year-round ☒ Seasonal Period (Months Annually): October to April, annually (blue [pygmy] whale)

## OBIA Watchlist Addition

☐ Yes ☒ No

## Supporting Documentation

### Peer Reviewed Articles

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| de Vos, A., Faux, C.E., Marthick, J., Dickinson, J. & Jarman, S.N. (2018). New determination of prey and parasite species for northern Indian Ocean blue whales. *Frontiers of Marine Science, 5*,104. doi: 10.3389/fmars.2018.00104 | This study focused on feeding behavior of blue whales using dietary DNA derived from fecal samples collected off southern Sri Lanka from January through March 2013. Unlike in other foraging areas where blue whales feed predominantly on krill, southern Sri Lankan blue whales feed on sergestid shrimp, which are found within the top 984 ft (300 m) of the water column off southern Sri Lanka. |
| Thilakarathne, E.P.D.N., Pradeep Kumara, P.B.T., & Thilakarathna, R.M.G.N. (2015). Diversity and distribution of cetaceans off Mirissa in the southern coast of Sri Lanka II. Relationship with sea surface temperature, salinity and water density. *Sri Lanka Journal of Aquatic Science, 20*(1), 35-45. | Ship survey of marine mammals and associated oceanographic conditions in waters off Mirissa, Sri Lanka over 43 days from January to April. Eight cetacean species were observed, including the blue, fin, and sperm whales. Blue whales and sperm whales were recorded in relatively high temperature areas, ranging between 28° C and 28.5° C while blue whales also occurred in waters with the highest salinity 36 psu). |
| de Vos, A., Pattiaratchi, C. B., & Harcourt, R. G. (2014a). Inter-annual variability in blue whale distribution off southern Sri Lanka between 2011 and 2012. *Journal of Marine Science and Engineering, 2*, 534-550. doi: 10.3390/jmse2030534. | A part of the northern Indian Ocean blue whale population remains around Sri Lanka year-round, with blue whales found close to the southern coast during the Northeast Monsoon. Systematic conductivity-temperature-depth (CTD) and visual surveys (and 3 years of opportunistic sightings) of blue whales were conducted between January–March 2011 and 2012 off southern Sri Lanka. The distribution of blue whales off southern Sri Lanka is clearly tied to the location of their prey, since a noticeable shift in sightings occurred in 2011 from waters ranging in depth from 328 to 3,281 ft (100 and 1,000 m) to water depths >4,921 ft (1500 m). This distributional shift occurred due to the anomalously large rainfalls and high freshwater concentrations in upper coastal waters off |

| | |
|---|---|
| | southern Sri Lanka and the resultant lower productivity. The authors hypothesized that blue whales moved into deeper, upwelled waters with higher productivity further offshore where their prey had moved in response to the low salinity of the coastal waters. |
| de Vos, A., Pattiaratchi, C.B., & Wijeratne, E.M.S., 2014b). Surface circulation and upwelling patterns around Sri Lanka. *Biogeosciences, 11*, 5909-5930. | The waters off southern Sri Lanka experience bi-annually reversing current system caused by the reversing monsoon winds. The major upwelling region during two monsoon periods (southwest and northeast) is located off southern Sri Lanka, although the highest chlorophyll concentrations only occur during the southwest monsoonal season. Aggregations of blue whales have been observed along the southern coast of Sri Lanka during the northeast monsoon, when satellite imagery indicates lower primary productivity in the surface waters, although the presence of feeding aggregations suggests overall higher secondary productivity. This study shows that the upwelling system along the southern coast of Sri Lanka is not driven by Ekman dynamics but by an interaction of the wind-driven circulation around Sri Lanka, which results in a converging coastal current system that flows offshore, creating a divergence at the coastline and results in upwelling that maintains relatively higher productivity during both monsoon periods. |
| Randage, S.M., Alling, A., Currier, K., Heywood, E. (2014). Review of the Sri Lanka blue whale (*Balaenoptera musculus*) with observations on its distribution in the shipping lane. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 14*, 43-49. | Blue whales are resident year-round in the waters off southern Sri Lanka, based on sighting evidence collected opportunistically from 2009 through 2012 by a whalewatching crew during the southeast (May to November) and northeast (December through April) monsoon periods. Blue whale sightings ranged from 1 to 30 whales with an average of 4.56 individuals observed per sighting. Calves were observed during January through March and October through November. |
| de Vos, A., Christiansen, F., Harcourt, R.G., & Pattiaratchi, C.B. (2013). Surfacing characteristics and diving behaviour of blue whales in Sri Lankan waters. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology, 449, 149–153. | Focal follows of blue whales were conducted in waters off southern Sri Lanka from January through March of 2012 and 2013 to detail their diving behavior and dive characteristics. The blue whales lifted their tail flukes out of the water on 55 percent of terminal dives, which is considerably more frequent than elsewhere in the world but was not suggestive that the whales were diving deeper. Blue whales performed surface and deep dives, breathing between 3 and 20 times (average 11) at the surface over a 29 to 421 second |

| | |
|---|---|
| | period. Following this surface period, the whales dove for an average of 640 seconds. Overall, dive characteristics are similar to blue whales in other ocean areas. |
| Anderson, R.C., Branch, T.A., Alagiyawadu, A., Baldwin, R., & Marsac, F. (2012). Seasonal distribution, movements and taxonomic status of blue whales (*Balaenoptera musculus*) in the northern Indian Ocean. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 12*(2), 203-218. | Using all available blue whale occurrence data (sightings, strandings, acoustic detections, and whaling catches) from the Northern Indian Ocean, the authors developed a hypothesis about the east-and-west migrational patterns of blue/pygmy blue whales in the Northern Indian Ocean. Triggered by the advent of the southwest (from about May to October) and northeast (December to March) monsoon seasons that result in intense upwelling in the Arabian Sea off the coasts of Somalia and the Arabian peninsula or off eastern Sri Lanka, west of the Maldives, the vicinity of the Indus Canyon, and some parts of the southern Indian Ocean, respectively, blue whale seasonal movement patterns are east and west. t |
| de Vos, A., Clark, R., Johnson, C., Johnson, G., Kerr, I., Payne, R., & Madsen, P. T. (2012). Cetacean sightings and acoustic detections in the offshore waters of Sri Lanka: March–June 2003. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 12*(2), 185-193. | Marine mammal ship surveys were conducted in western, southern, and southeastern waters of Sri Lanka from March through June 2003. Eleven species of cetaceans were observed, including blue, sperm, and Bryde’s whales. Spinner dolphins were the most commonly observed small cetacean. The correlation with cetacean sightings and submarine canyons was noted. |
| Ilangakoon, A.D., & Sathasivam, K. (2012). The need for taxonomic investigations on Northern Indian Ocean blue whales (*Balaenoptera musculus*): implications of year-round occurrence off Sri Lanka and India. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 12*(2), 195-202. | Examination of blue whale sighting records from Sri Lankan waters and stranding records from Sri Lanka and India showed that blue whales are present year-round in Sri Lankan waters and that these waters are ecologically important to the blue whale population in the northern Indian Ocean. The taxonomy, however, of this population remains unresolved. |
| Branch, T. A., Stafford, K. M., Palacios, D. M., Allison, C., Bannister, J. L., Burton, C. L. K., . . . Warneke, R. M. (2007). Past and present distribution, densities and movements of blue whales *Balaenoptera musculus* in the Southern Hemisphere and northern Indian Ocean. *Mammal Review, 37*(2), 116-175. | Records of blue whale stranding or sightings in the Trincomalee Canyon area are reported beginning with the first recorded in 1932. General Sri Lankan distributional information listed but nothing specific to the Trincomalee region. |

**Subject Matter Experts / e-NGO Reports / Regional Expertise**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Alling, A., Dorsey, E. M., & Gordon, J. C. D. 1991. Blue whales *(Balaenoptera musculus)* off the northeast coast of Sri Lanka: Distribution, feeding and individual | Blue whale acoustic and sighting records detected during 1983 and 1984 surveys of the NE Sri Lankan waters, including the Trincomalee Canyon area. Photographs were taken, and dive information was |

| | |
|---|---|
| identification. UNEP Marine Mammal Technical Report 3:247-258. | recorded from depth recorders. Conclusions about seasonality in Sri Lankan waters and notes that migration to other waters likely during remainder of year. |

**Committee or Government Reports**

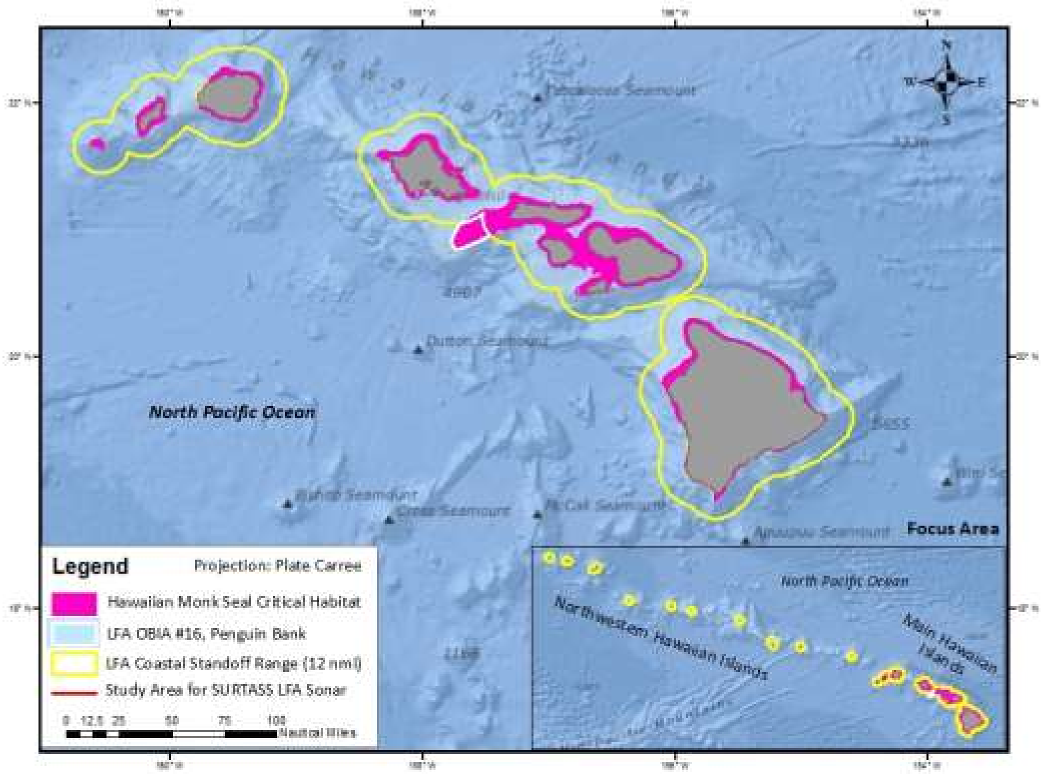
| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| UNEP CBD. (2017a). Ecologically or biologically significant areas: Southern Coastal/Offshore Waters between Galle and Yala National Park, NEIO #4. Retrieved from <https://chm.cbd.int/ pdf/documents/marineEbsa/237763/1>. | Overview of EBSA information collected on this area along with the criteria for designation. The highly productive waters off southern Sri Lanka are particularly important to the endangered blue whale and marine turtles, but 20 species of cetaceans occur in these waters; little information is available on the importance of this area to Bryde's and sperm whales. |

**Surveys**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Thilakarathne, E.P.D.N., Pradeep Kumara, P.B.T., & Thilakarathna, R.M.G.N. (2015). Diversity and distribution of cetaceans off Mirissa in the southern coast of Sri Lanka II. Relationship with sea surface temperature, salinity and water density. *Sri Lanka Journal of Aquatic Science, 20*(1), 35-45. | Ship survey of marine mammals and associated oceanographic conditions in waters off Mirissa, Sri Lanka over 43 days from January to April. Eight cetacean species were observed, including the blue, fin, and sperm whales. Blue whales and sperm whales were recorded in relatively high temperature areas, ranging between 28° C and 28.5° C while blue whales also occurred in waters with the highest salinity 36 psu). |
| de Vos, A., Pattiaratchi, C. B., & Harcourt, R. G. (2014a). Inter-annual variability in blue whale distribution off southern Sri Lanka between 2011 and 2012. *Journal of Marine Science and Engineering, 2*, 534-550. doi: 10.3390/jmse2030534. | See synopsis above. |
| de Vos, A., Clark, R., Johnson, C., Johnson, G., Kerr, I., Payne, R., & Madsen, P. T. (2012). Cetacean sightings and acoustic detections in the offshore waters of Sri Lanka: March–June 2003. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 12*(2), 185-193. | Synopsis above. |
| Alling, A., *E.* M. Dorsey And J. C. D. Gordon. (1991). Blue whales *(Balaenoptera musculus)* off the northeast coast of Sri Lanka: Distribution, feeding and individual identification. UNEP Marine Mammal Technical Report 3:247-258. | Blue whale acoustic and sighting records detected during 1983 and 1984 surveys of the NE Sri Lankan waters, including the Trincomalee Canyon area. Photographs were taken, and dive information was recorded from depth recorders. Conclusions about seasonality in Sri Lankan waters and notes that migration to other waters likely during remainder of year. |

# PART II: MARINE AREAS NOT FURTHER CONSIDERED/ DO NOT MEET OBIA DESIGNATION CRITERIA

## Hawaiian Monk Seal Critical Habitat 18




**Marine Region:** Central North Pacific Ocean

**Country:** U.S.A.

**Species of Concern:** Hawaiian monk seal

**Marine Area Type**

- ☒ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA** (OBIA #16, Penguin Bank)
- ☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**
- ☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**
- ☐ **IUCN Green List Site**
- ☐ **IMMA**
- ☐ **EBSA**
- ☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**
- ☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**
- ☐ **U.S. MPA**
- ☒ **U.S. ESA Critical Habitat**
- ☐ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**Area Overview:**

Critical habitat for the Hawaiian monk seal was first designated in 1988 for 10 nearshore areas in the Northwest Hawaiian Islands (NWHI), but in 2015, the critical habitat was revised to extend the critical habitat boundary into the Main Hawaiian Islands (MHI). As revised, critical habitat for the Hawaiian monk seal includes seafloor and marine neritic and pelagic waters within 33 ft (10 m) of the seafloor from the shoreline seaward to the 628-ft (200-m) depth contour at 10 areas in the NWHI, including Kure Atoll, Midway Islands, Pearl and Hermes Reef, Lisianski Island, Laysan Island, Maro Reef, Gardner Pinnacles, French Frigate Shoals, Necker Island, Nihoa, Kaula Island and Niihau and Lehua Islands and six areas in the MHI including Kaula, Niihau, Kauai, Oahu, Maui Nui (i.e., Kahoolawe, Lanai, Maui, and Molokai), and Hawaii (excluding National Security Exclusion zones off Kauai, Oahu, and Kahoolawe) (NOAA, 2015).

Certain areas have been excluded from the Hawaiian monk seal's critical habitat because they are managed under military Integrated Natural Resources Plans. These areas in the Hawaiian Islands include: 1) Marine Corps Base Hawaii, Oahu—a 500-yd (91 m) buffer zone in the waters surrounding the base and the Puuloa Training Facility on the Ewa coastal plain, Oahu; 2) Joint Base Pearl Harbor-Hickam, Oahu inclusive of Nimitz Beach, White Plains Beach, Naval Defensive Sea Area, Barbers Point Underwater Range, and Ewa Training Minefield; 3) Pacific Missile Range Facility, Kauai, Offshore Areas plus Kaula Island and the coastal and marine areas to the 33 ft (10-m) isobath surrounding the Island of Niihau; 4) Kingfisher Underwater Training area, off the northeast coast of Niihau; 5) Puuloa Underwater Training Range off Pearl Harbor, Oahu; and 6) Shallow Water Minefield Sonar Training Range, off the western coast of Kahoolawe in the Maui Nui area (NOAA, 2015).

The physical or biological features of the Hawaiian monk seal critical habitat that support the species' life history needs include 1) areas with characteristics preferred by monk seals for pupping and nursing; 2) shallow, sheltered nearshore marine areas preferred by monk seals for pupping and nursing; 3) marine areas up to 1,640 ft (500 m) in depth preferred by juvenile and adult monk seals for foraging; 4) areas with low levels of human disturbance; 5) marine areas with adequate prey quantity and quality; and 6) significant shore areas used by monk seals for hauling out, resting, or molting (NOAA 2015).

All but one small area of the critical habitat for the Hawaiian monk seal lies within the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA sonar. The only critical habitat area that extends beyond the LFA coastal standoff range and that would thus be eligible for consideration as an OBIA is the small area that extends onto Penguin Bank. However, per agreement with the State of Hawaii CZMA Program, no SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities would be conducted in the waters of Penguin Bank to the extent of the 600 ft (183 m) depth contour, which is also the boundary of the Penguin Bank OBIA #16. Although the critical habitat for the Hawaiian monk seal is ineligible for consideration as an OBIA for SURTASS LFA sonar as it does not meet the geographic criteria for designation, monk seal's critical habitat is protected by these other mitigation measures.

## Geographic Criteria

**Location in LFA Study Area**: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

**Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range** (12 nmi from emergent land): ☐ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside (only Penguin Bank area)

**Eligible Areal Extent**: None; per agreement with State of Hawaii, no SURTASS LFA sonar activities would be conducted on Penguin Bank to the extent of the 600 ft (183 m) depth contour, which is also the extent of the Penguin Bank OBIA (OBIA # 16).

**Source of Official Boundary**: Pacific Islands Regional Office Protected Resources, National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration

**Spatial File Type**: GIS shapefile

**Spatial File Source**: Pacific Islands Regional Office Protected Resources, National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration

**Date Obtained**: 10/26/2015

## Low Frequency Hearing Sensitivity

☐ Species: None

## Biological Criteria

High Density: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Breeding / Calving: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Migration: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Foraging: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Distinct Small Population: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Critical Habitat: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data (all monk seal critical habitat is located within the coastal standoff range except on Penguin Bank. However, per agreement with the State of Hawaii CZMA Program, no SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities would be conducted in the waters of Penguin Bank to the extent of the 600 ft (183 m) depth contour. Thus, no Hawaiian monk seal critical habitat is eligible.

## Seasonal Effective Period (None recommended)

☐ Year-round ☐ Seasonal Period (Months Annually):

## OBIA Watchlist Addition

☐ Yes ☒ No

## SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION

### Committee or Government Reports

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|

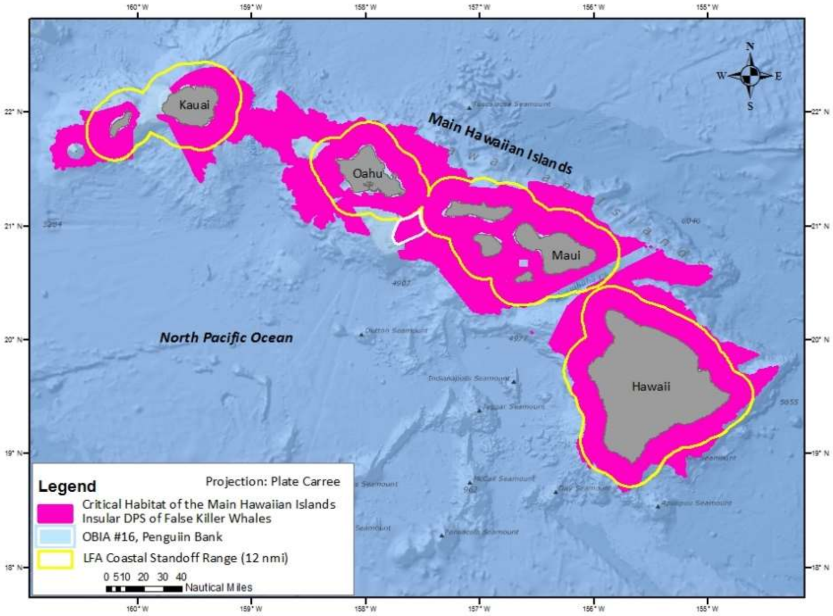
| | |
|---|---|
| NOAA. (2015). Endangered and threatened species: Final rulemaking to revise critical habitat for Hawaiian monk seals. National Marine Fisheries Service; National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 80*(162), 50926-50988. | This Final Rule officially revised the critical habitat under the ESA of the Hawaiian monk seal to include the Main Hawaiian Islands. The principal constituent elements of the physical and biological features of the critical habitat are defined in this rulemaking. |

## Main Hawaiian Island Insular DPS of False Killer Whale Critical Habitat 19

**MARINE REGION:** Central North Pacific Ocean

**COUNTRY:** U.S.A.

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:** False killer whale (Main Hawaiian Islands Insular DPS)




**MARINE AREA TYPE**

☒ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA** (OBIA #16, Penguin Bank)

☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**

☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**

☐ **IUCN Green List Site**

☐ **IMMA**

☐ **EBSA**

☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**

☒ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA** (BIAs)

☐ **U.S. MPA**

☒ **U.S. ESA Critical Habitat**

☐ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**AREA OVERVIEW:**

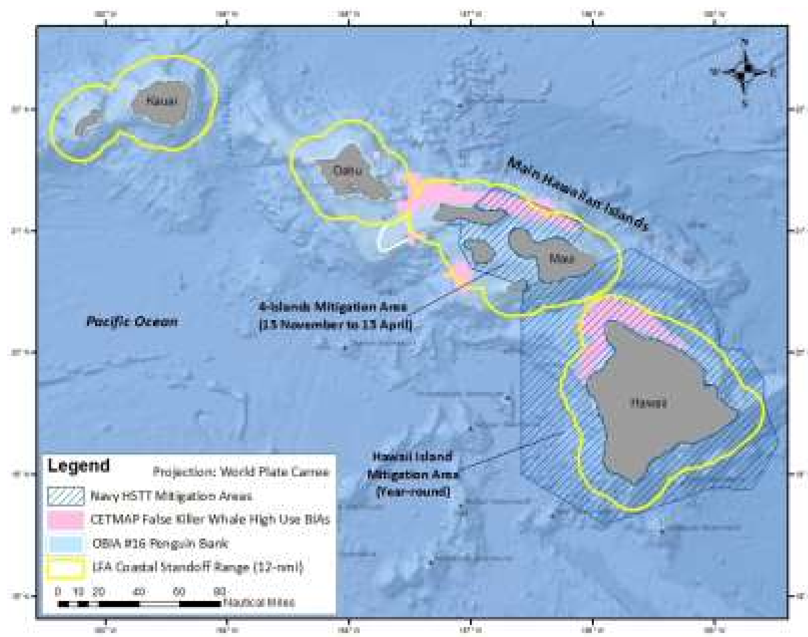
On July 24, 2018, NMFS issued a final rule designating critical habitat for the Main Hawaiian Island insular false killer whale (MHI IFKW) distinct population segment (DPS) (83 FR 35062), pursuant to section 4 of the Endangered Species Act (ESA). This designation was based on the recommendations provided in a Draft Biological Report, an initial Regulatory Flexibility Analysis (RFA), and ESA section 4(b)(2) analysis (which considers exclusions to critical habitat based on economic, national security and other relevant impacts). Critical habitat was designated as waters from the 148- to 10,499-ft (45-m to the 3,200-m) depth contours around the MHIs from Niihau east to Hawaii, except for 14 areas including one area with two sites requested by the Bureau of Ocean Energy Management and the others requested by the Navy. Additionally, the Ewa Training Minefield and the Naval Defensive Sea Area were precluded from designation under section 4(a)(3) of the ESA because they are managed under the Joint Base Pearl Harbor-Hickam Integrated Natural Resource Management Plan that NMFS found provides a benefit to the MHI IFKW.

The designated critical habitat area was determined to contain physical or biological features essential to the conservation of the DPS that may require special management considerations or protection, and included areas identified as high use (or high-density) areas. These high-use areas were described as areas of higher conservation value where greater foraging and/or reproductive opportunities are believed to exist, or areas of concentrated travel.

Four characteristics support the physical/biological feature of island-associated marine critical habitat and the false killer whale's ability to travel, forage, communicate, and move freely around and among the MHI:

- Adequate space for movement and use within the continental shelf and slope habitat;
- Prey species of sufficient quantity, quality, and availability to support individual growth, reproduction, and development, as well as overall population growth;
- Waters free of pollutants of a type and amount harmful to MHI Insular false killer whales; and
- Underwater sound levels that would not significantly impair false killer whales' use or occupancy (NOAA, 2018).

About 40 percent of the MHI IFKW DPS' critical habitat lies beyond the spatial extent of the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA sonar. Part of the critical habitat outside the coastal standoff range is located on Penguin Bank, where the Navy has an agreement with the State of Hawaii not to conduct SURTASS LFA sonar activities in waters to the extent of the 600 ft (183 m) depth contour, which coincides with the boundary of the Penguin Bank OBIA #16 for SURTASS LFA sonar.




Baird et al. (2015) characterized biologically important areas (BIAs) of odontocetes in Hawaiian waters as part of the Cetacean Density and Distribution Mapping (CETMAP) program. Using published, unpublished, and expert opinion, Baird et al. (2015) characterized the high-use areas of the MHI IFKW population based on density of location data gleaned from satellite-tagged FKWs. These areas were first presented in Baird et al. (2012), which was used to help define the critical habitat for the MHI IFKW DPS. Some refinements were made in the gridding of the data for the BIA high-use delineation. All the Baird et al. (2015) BIAs for the MHI IFKW DPS are located inside the 3,281-ft (1,000-m) isobath; most of the BIA extent is also within the coastal standoff range for SURTASS LFA sonar (see second map figure).

The Navy's Hawaii Range Complex, which is part of the Navy's Hawaii-Southern California Training and Testing (HSTT) study area, overlaps with the central North Pacific part of the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. In the HSTT study area, the Navy applies both procedural and geographic mitigation measures, which include specific mitigation measures in designated geographic locations within the Study Area, referred to as "mitigation areas" (DoN, 2018). These mitigation areas have been designed to benefit particular species and/or stocks of marine mammals and may include the application of mitigation measures year-round or seasonally, depending on the unique characteristics of the area.

Although the critical habitat area for the Main Hawaiian Insular DPS meets the geographic and biological criteria for consideration as an OBIA for SURTASS LFA sonar, based on current information on false killer whale hearing, false killer whales are not known to have increased sensitivity to LF sound. Therefore, the additional protection afforded by an OBIA beyond that of the coastal standoff range mitigation measure is not warranted, and no OBIA is designated for false killer whale critical habitat in the MHI.

### GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA

**Location in LFA Study Area**: Critical habitat (CH): ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

**Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range** (12 nmi from emergent land): CH/BIAs/HSTT Mitigation Areas:
☐ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside

**Eligible Areal Extent**: CH: 5,675.22 nmi$^2$ (19,465.44 km$^2$)
CETMAP BIAs: 179.28 nmi$^2$ (614.93 km$^2$)
HSTT Mitigation Areas: 5,189.81 nmi$^2$ (17,800.58 km$^2$)

**Source of Official Boundary**: CH: Pacific Islands Regional Office Protected Resources, National Marine Fisheries Service
CETMAP BIAs: Office of Science and Technology, National Marine Fisheries Service
Navy Hawaii Mitigation Areas: DoN (2018)

**Spatial File Type**: GIS shapefiles

**Spatial File Source**: CH and CETMAP BIAs: Pacific Islands Regional Office Protected Resources and Office of Science and Technology, National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
Navy Hawaii Mitigation Areas: DoN (2018)

**Date Obtained**: CH: 8/17/2018; CETMAP BIAs: 4/27/2015; Navy Hawaii Mitigation Areas: 10/30/18

### LOW FREQUENCY HEARING SENSITIVITY

☐ Species: None

### BIOLOGICAL CRITERIA

High Density: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Breeding / Calving: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Migration: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Foraging: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Distinct Small Population: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification

☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Critical Habitat: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## Seasonal Effective Period (None Recommended)

☐ Year-round ☐ Seasonal Period (Months Annually):

## OBIA Watchlist Addition

☐ Yes ☒ No

## Supporting Documentation

### Peer Reviewed Articles

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Baird, R. W., Cholewiak, D., Webster, D. L., Schorr, G. S., Mahaffy, S. D., Curtice, C., . . . Van Parijs, S. M. (2015). Biologically important areas for cetaceans within U.S. waters-Hawai'i region. *Aquatic Mammals, 41*(1), 54-64. doi: 10.1578/am.41.1.2015.54. | Eighteen species of odontocetes, including some resident populations, have been documented in Hawaiian waters based on small-boat sightings and survey effort, photo-identification, genetic analyses, and satellite tagging. The authors merged existing published and unpublished information along with scientific expertise for the Hawaii region to identify and support the delineation of Biologically Important Areas (BIAs) for one of the three populations of false killer whales in Hawaii waters. The MHI IFKW is more well studied than the other populations of false killer whales in Hawaiian waters and this small population has been listed as endangered under the ESA. The population consists of 151 individuals with a known range that extends from west of Ni'ihau to east of Hawaii, and as far as 66 nmi (122 km) offshore.<br><br>Baird et al. (2012) identified several high use areas based on the location densities with greater than two standard deviations above the mean location density. The authors refined their methodology to one standard deviation above the mean and mapped the location density data accordingly to derive six year-round high-use BIAs for MHI IFKWs (see map figure above). |
| Baird, R. W., Hanson, M. B., Schorr, G. S., Webster, D. L., McSweeney, D. J., Gorgone, A. M., . . . Andrews, R. D. (2012). Range and primary habitats of Hawaiian insular false killer whales: Informing determination of critical habitat. *Endangered Species Research, 18*(1), 47-61. doi:10.3354/esr00435. | The authors assessed the population's range and heavily used habitat areas using data from 27 satellite tag deployments. Tag data were available for periods of between 13 and 105 days (median = 40.5), with 8,513 locations, 93.4 percent of which were from July to January due to seasonality bias, as virtually no information was available on spatial use during months of March through June. Three high-use areas were identified: 1) off the north half of Hawaii Island; |

2) north of Maui and Molokai; and 3) southwest of Lanai. However, data was only available for 2 of the 3 main social clusters identified.

Two large areas of high-use were identified, including an area off the north end of Hawaii encompassing both the windward and leeward sides of the island, and a broad area ranging from east of Oahu to north of Maui located entirely off the windward side of the islands. Assessment of the density by social clusters indicated that the area off the north end of Hawaii Island was only a high density area for individuals from one social cluster (Cluster 1), while the area off the north side of Molokai was the primary high-density area for individuals from another social cluster (Cluster 3), while individuals from Cluster 1 appeared to commonly use this area as well. Such overlap in range but differences in high-density areas is similar to what has been reported for pods of fish-eating killer whales from the coastal waters of Washington and British Columbia (Hauser et al 2007). The differences in high density areas for Clusters 1 and 3 suggest that high-density areas for Cluster 2 are likely not reflected in this analysis and more work is needed to identify the high-density area for this social cluster. Most of the high-density areas are no the windward, rather than on the leeward side of the islands, even though on average individuals spent approximately the same amount of time on the leeward sides. Higher density areas were on average shallower, closer to shore, and with gentler slopes than lower density areas.

The authors assessed the population's range and Available evidence suggests that false killer whales feed throughout their range, as foraging and feeding behavior has been documented in virtually all the long encounters the authors had with this population. However, the authors suggest that, given the amount of time the whales spent in the high-density areas, and the frequency at which false killer whales are observed feeding during encounters, the authors consider it likely that the high-density areas represent particularly important feeding areas.

**Committee or Government Reports**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Department of the Navy (DoN). (2018). Hawaii-Southern California training and testing environmental impact statement/overseas environmental impact statement (EIS/OEIS). Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Pacific, Pearl Harbor, HI. Retrieved from <https://www.hstteis.com/Documents/2018-Hawaii- | The Navy's EIS/OEIS evaluates the potential environmental impacts of conducting training and testing activities after December 2018 in the Hawaii-Southern California Training and Testing Study Area (Study Area). The Study Area is made up of air and sea space off Southern California, around the Hawaiian Islands, and the transit corridor that connects the two |

| | |
|---|---|
| Southern-California-Training-and-Testing-Final-EIS-OEIS/Final-EIS-OEIS>. | areas. The Navy considered three alternatives: no action; a representative (not maximum) year of new and ongoing training and testing representing the natural fluctuation of training cycles and deployment schedules that generally limit the maximum level of training from occurring year after year in any five-year period, with the some unit-level training being conducted using synthetic means (e.g., simulators) and that some unit-level active sonar training will be completed through other training exercises; and the maximum number of new and ongoing training and testing activities that could occur within a given year with that maximum level of activity occurring every year over any five-year period. |
| National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA). (2018). Endangered and threatened wildlife and plants: Final rulemaking to designate critical habitat for the Main Hawaiian Islands insular false killer whale distinct population segment; Final rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. *Federal Register, 83*(142), 35062-35095. | The Final Rule officially designating the critical habitat under the ESA of the Main Hawaiian Islands Insular DPS of false killer whales. The principal component elements of the physical and biological features of the critical habitat are defined. |
| National Marine Fisheries Service. (2017). Final biological report: Designation of critical habitat for the endangered Main Hawaiian Islands insular false killer whale distinct population segment. Prepared by Pacific Islands Regional Office, Protected Resources Division, Honolulu, Hawaii. Retrieved from <https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/resource/document/biological-report-designation-critical-habitat-endangered-main-hawaiian>. | The physical and biological feature essential to conservation of the MHI IFKW (essential feature) is island-associated marine habitat, including adequate space for movement and use; prey species of sufficient quantity, quality, and availability; waters free of harmful pollutants; and sound levels that would not significantly impair use of occupancy (which include sounds that fall within their best hearing range and are chronic or frequently occurring within the critical habitat).<br><br>MHI IFKWs are found in waters surrounding each of the MHI (Niihau to Hawaii). At the time of their ESA listing (2012), their range was described consistent with the MMPA description as nearshore of the MHIs out to 140 km. However, new satellite tracking data has since proved this description of the range to be more restricted, especially on the windward sides of the islands (Bradford et al.., 2015). NMFS revised the range in the 2015 stock assessment report (Caretta et al., 2016) in accordance with review and reevaluation of satellite tracking data. MHI IFKWs show less offshore movement on the windward sides (maximum of 51.4 km from shore) than on the leeward sides (maximum distance of 115 km from shore) and have seasonal bias. |

MHI IFKWs circumnavigate the islands and quickly move throughout their range (Baird et al., 2008; 2012). One individual was shown to move from Hawaii to Maui to Lanai to Oahu to Molokai, covering a minimum distance of 449 km over a 96-hour period (Baird et al., 2010; Oleson et al., 2010). Tracking data shows the IFKWs spend equal amounts of time on both the leeward and windward sides of the islands but exhibit greater offshore movements on the leeward sides. The water depths range between 45 and 3,200 m, which incorporates the majority of the tracking locations of MHI IFKWs and the essential features of the critical habitat.

Baird et al. (2012) described three areas of high use by the MHI IFKWs: the north side of the island of Hawaii (both east and west sides), a broad area extending from north of Maui to northwest of Molokai, and a small area to the southwest of Lanai.

Bradford, A.L., Oleson, E.M., Baird, R.W., Boggs, C.H., Forney, K.A., & Young, N.C. (2015). Revised stock boundaries for false killer whales in Hawaiian waters. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-PIFSC-47. Pacific Islands Fishery Science Center, National Marine Fishery Center. Retrieved from <https://www.pifsc.noaa.gov/library/pubs/tech/NOAA_Tech_Memo_PIFSC_47.pdf>.

The MHI IFKW stock boundary was changed from a uniform 140-km radius around the MHI to a minimum convex polygon bounded around a 72-km radius of the MHI, resulting in a boundary shape that reflects greater offshore use in the leeward portion of the MHI.

Telemetry data through 2010 show three social groups (Clusters 1, 2, and 3) make up this stock and they appear to differ in their spatial use, although Clusters 1 and 3 share a common high-use area (or "hotspot") off the northern coasts of Moloka'I and Maui (Baird et al., 2012). No individuals were tagged from Cluster 2, so their locations are unknown although they are seen more often than expected off Hawaii Island and less than expected off Oahu and Maui.

This effort was solely to determine stock boundaries, and not biologically important areas. The authors acknowledge that stock boundaries developed were not empirically driven but were determined using the best available scientific information. The revised stock boundaries developed reflect the full range of each stock and are associated with the average density estimate. However, the "hot spot" area off the northern coasts of Moloka'I and Maui indicate an area of higher density.

## Pacific Remote Islands Marine National Monument (Only Wake/ Johnson/Palmyra atolls and Kingman Reef Units) 20

**Marine Region:** Western North Pacific Ocean

**Country:** U.S.A.

**Species of Concern:** Baleen, beaked, and sperm whales

**Marine Area Type**

☐ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA**

☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**

☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**

☐ **IUCN Green List Site**

☐ **IMMA**

☐ **EBSA**

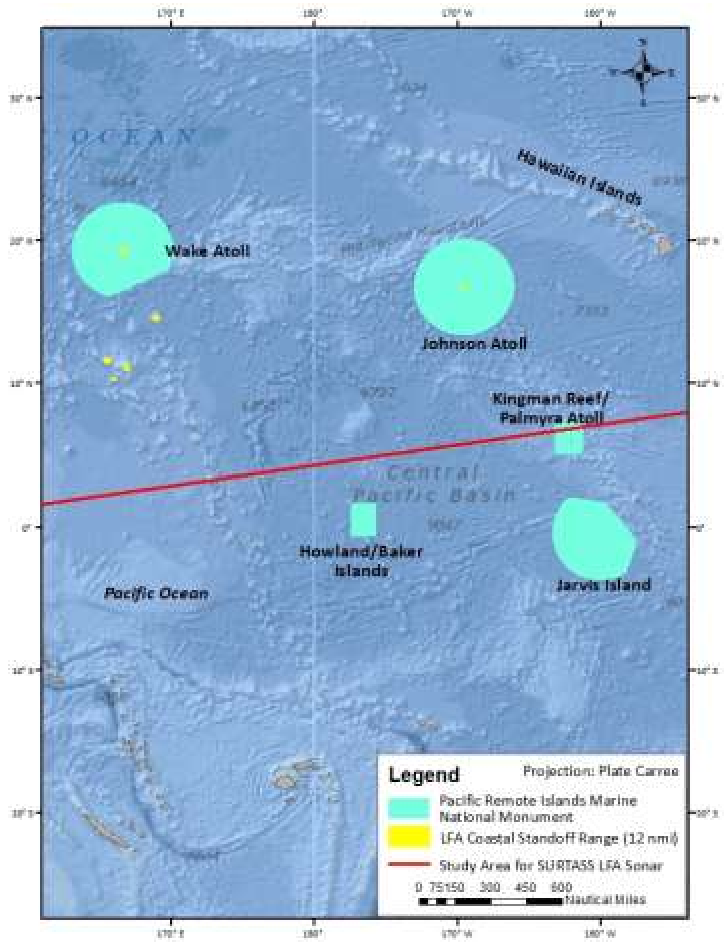
☒ **U.S. Marine National Monument**

☒ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**

☒ **U.S. MPA**

☐ **U.S. ESA Critical Habitat**

☐ **Public Comment Recommendation**




**Area Overview:**

The Pacific Remote Islands MNM encompasses seven islands and atolls in the central Pacific Ocean and consists of five areas approximately 370,000 nmi$^2$ (1,269,065 km$^2$) in size that are located to the south and west of the Hawaiian Islands. However, only a small part (2,753.37 nmi$^2$ [9,443.8 km$^2$]) of the northern end of the Kingman Reef/Palmyra Atoll Unit of this MNM is located within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar, while neither the Howland/Baker nor Jarvis Island Units are within the study area boundary.

The Pacific Remote Islands MNM is one the largest marine protected areas in the world and is an important part of the most widespread collection of marine life on the planet under a single country's jurisdiction. This area sustains a diversity of species including corals, fish, shellfish, marine mammals, seabirds, land birds, insects, and vegetation not found anywhere else in the world. Many threatened, endangered, and depleted species thrive in the Pacific Remote Islands MNM, including dolphins and whales. However, no specific important biological behaviors of marine mammals have been characterized in these waters). As such, this marine area does not meet the biological criteria required for designation of an OBIA and is not further considered currently as an OBIA.

## GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA

**Location in LFA Study Area**: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

**Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range** (12 nmi from emergent land): ☐ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside (Relevant units: Wake and Johnson atolls; part of Palmyra Atoll/Kingman Reef)

**Eligible Areal Extent**: 261,398.11 nmi$^2$ (896,570.41 km$^2$)

**Source of Official Boundary**: World Database on Protected Areas (UNEP and IUCN)

**Spatial File Type**: GIS shapefile

**Spatial File Source**: World Database on Protected Areas, <https://www.protectedplanet.net/400011>

**Date Obtained**: 7/13/2018

## LOW FREQUENCY HEARING SENSITIVITY

☐ Species: Sperm whale

## BIOLOGICAL CRITERIA

High Density: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Breeding / Calving: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Migration: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Foraging: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Distinct Small Population: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Critical Habitat: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## SEASONAL EFFECTIVE PERIOD (NONE RECOMMENDED)

☐ Year-round ☐ Seasonal Period (Months Annually):

## OBIA WATCHLIST ADDITION

☒ Yes ☐ No

## Supporting Documentation

### Peer Reviewed Articles

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Baumann-Pickering, S., Trickey, J. S., Wiggins, S. M., & Oleson, E. M. (2016). Odontocete occurrence in relation to changes in oceanography at a remote equatorial Pacific seamount. *Marine Mammal Science, 32*(3), 805-825. doi:10.1111/mms.12299. | This acoustic study using HARP sensors was conducted at an unnamed seamount chain near the equator roughly 216 nmi (400 km) due south of Kingman Reef/Palmyra Atoll. The acoustic presence of beaked whales at this equatorial seamount site was one of the highest of all the sites monitored acoustically in the North Pacific Ocean to date. This suggests that the area is highly suitable habitat for deep-diving cetaceans. Beaked whale diel acoustic behavior indicated continuous foraging for all species except for an unknown species. Despite the region appearing to be suitable habitat for deep-diving beaked whales, and predictive models suggesting higher densities of sperm whales, sperm whales were detected on only a few occasions. There seems to be a seasonality in sperm whale occurrence based on old whaling data indicating higher numbers in autumn and possibly winter, so monitoring may not have been conducted at an optimal time to detect sperm whales. |
| Baumann-Pickering, S., Roch, M. A., Jr, R. L. B., Simonis, A. E., McDonald, M. A., Solsona-Berga, A., . . . Hildebrand, J. A. (2014). Spatio-temporal patterns of beaked whale echolocation signals in the North Pacific. *PLoS ONE, 9*(1), e86072. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0086072. | HARP sensors were deployed at 24 sites in the North Pacific Ocean including Palmyra Atoll, Kingman Reef, and Wake Atoll. The collected acoustic data showed that the highest relative daily presence of beaked whale signals occurred at Kingman Reef, followed closely by Pearl and Hermes Reef and Wake Atoll. Moderate relative presence was found at the North Shore of Palmyra Atoll and Cross Seamounts off the Hawaii Islands. No strong seasonal signals were detected in the acoustic data. The author's noted that the Deraniyagala beaked whale had likely been visually and acoustically detected at Palmyra Atoll. |
| Dalebout, M. L., Baker, C. S., Steel, D., Robertson, K. M., Chivers, S. J., Perrin, W. F., . . . Schofield Jr., D. (2007). A divergent mtDNA lineage among *Mesoplodon* beaked whales: Molecular evidence for a new species in the tropical Pacific? *Marine Mammal Science, 23*(4), 954–966. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.2007.00143.x. | Based on the evaluation of DNA evidence from two beaked whale skulls, one of which was collected from Palmyra Atoll, this team of scientists believe that an unnamed *Mesoplodon* beaked whale species exists in the North Pacific Ocean. |

**Subject Matter Experts / e-NGO Reports / Regional Expertise**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
| --- | --- |
| Morgan, L., Chandler, W., Douce, E., Brooke, S., Guinotte, J., Myhre, S. (2010), *Research Priorities for the Pacific Remote Islands Marine National Monument*. Workshop report by Marine Conservation Biology Institute; April 2010. Retrieved from <https://www.researchgate.net/ publication/265080606>. | Limited surveys have been conducted in the region. The Pacific Islands Cetacean Ecosystem Assessment (PICEAS) 2005 cruise surveyed the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) waters surrounding Palmyra and Johnston Atolls (Barlow et al. 2008). At least 21 different species of cetaceans were observed during this cruise; combining this list with other previous reported cetaceans (MCBI & EDF report 2008) brings the total number of known cetacean species to 27 for the region. The most commonly observed cetaceans in the 2005 cruise were spotted dolphins, striped dolphins, short-finned pilot whales, false killer whales, sperm whales, and bottlenose dolphins.<br><br>Extrapolating from research in the main Hawaiian Islands and elsewhere in the North Pacific, it is likely that island-associated resident populations exist within the region of the Pacific Remote Islands, genetically distinct sub-populations and stocks (e.g., NMFS recognizes a separate stock of false killer whales from the main Hawaiian islands), potential critical habitat for some threatened and endangered species (e.g., humpback whales), and possibly new species (e.g., a resurrected species of beaked whale has been identified in waters surrounding Palmyra Atoll, *Mesoplodon hotaula*; Dalebout et al. 2007). |

**Committee or Government Reports**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
| --- | --- |
| Barlow, Rankin, S., Jackson, A., & Henry, A. (2008). Marine mammal data collected during the Pacific Islands cetacean and ecosystems assessment survey (PICEAS) conducted aboard the NOAA ship *McArthur II*, July-November 2005. NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-420. La Jolla, California: National Marine Fisheries Service, Southwest Fisheries Science Center. 32 pages. | This report documents the first comprehensive survey of cetaceans in the U.S. EEZ surrounding Palmyra Atoll & Kingman Reef, the U.S. EEZ surrounding Johnston Atoll, and in the adjacent international waters south of the Hawaiian Islands. A total of 290 sightings were made during the 2005 PICEAS survey, comprised of at least 22 cetacean species. However, the authors do not discuss biological importance for any of the species detected/observed. |

**Surveys**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
| --- | --- |
| Barlow, Rankin, S., Jackson, A., & Henry, A. (2008). Marine mammal data collected during the Pacific Islands cetacean and ecosystems assessment survey | See synthesis above (Government Report). |

(PICEAS) conducted aboard the NOAA ship *McArthur II*, July-November 2005. NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-420. La Jolla, California: National Marine Fisheries Service, Southwest Fisheries Science Center. 32 pages.

**Websites / Social Media**

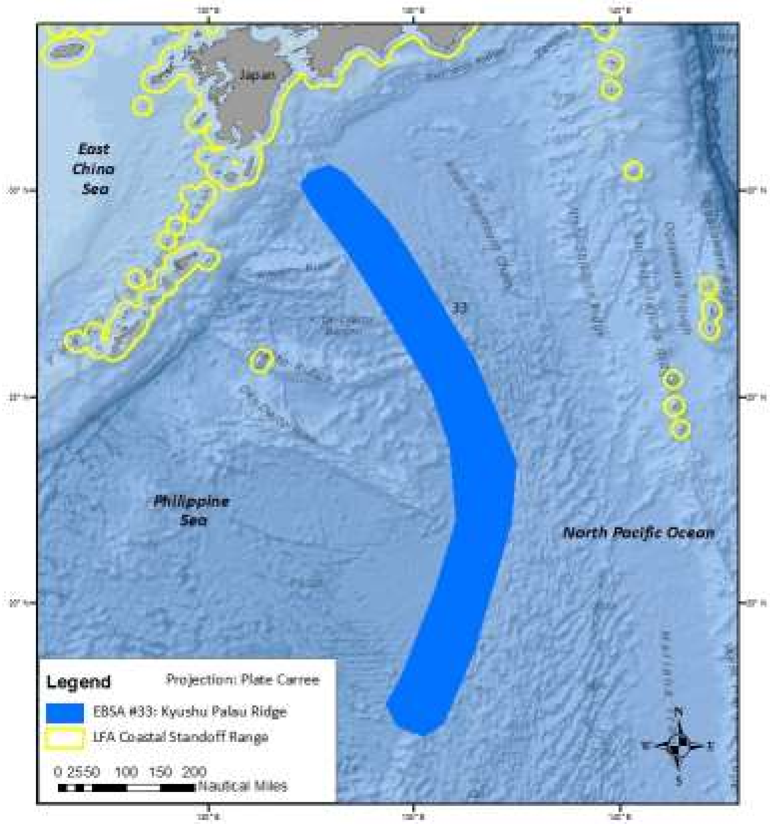
| *Website/Organization* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Pacific Remote Islands MNM Wildlife and Habitat site. Retrieved from <https://www.fws.gov/refuge/ Pacific_Remote_Islands_Marine_National_Monument /wildlife_and_habitat/index.html>. | This site summarizes the marine mammal information for each of the seven National Wildlife Refuges (NWR) in the Pacific Islands Remote MNM. The following summarizes the marine mammal information included for each NWR that are found within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar:<br>• Johnston Atoll: Most marine mammals are visitors outside Johnston Atoll and occasionally to lagoon waters. Cuvier's Beaked Whales were sighted on numerous occasions in the early 1990s both within and outside the lagoon; there were no confirmed sightings of these rare whales in 1993, 1994, or 1995. A Cuvier's Beaked Whale was observed calving off the south side of Johnston Island in 1995, but no additional sightings have been documented. Hawaiian Monk Seals feed on fish and crustaceans from the reef and lagoon and, although able to spend long periods at sea, often haul out on sandy beaches to bask in the sun.<br>• Kingman Reef: The Refuge supports a sizable population of bottlenose dolphins and melon-headed whales.<br>• Palmyra Atoll: Pacific bottle-nosed dolphins, spinner dolphins, melon headed whales frequent the waters of the Refuge.<br>• Wake Atoll: No information provided regarding marine mammals. |

## Kyushu Palau Ridge — 21

**MARINE REGION:** Western North Pacific Ocean

**COUNTRY:** NA

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:** Sperm whale




**MARINE AREA TYPE**

☐ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA**

☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**

☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**

☐ **IUCN Green List Site**

☐ **IMMA**

☒ **EBSA** (EA #33)

☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**

☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**

☐ **U.S. MPA**

☐ **U.S. ESA Critical Habitat**

☐ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**AREA OVERVIEW:**

The Kyushu-Palau Ridge is a 1,620-nmi (3,000-km) long seafloor feature that extends from Kyushu Japan in the north to Palau in the south and consists of a chain of extinct volcanos, or seamounts. The Kuroshio Current influences much of the area, and when the warm water surface current hits the seamount chain, localized upwelling results with the more productive waters surrounding the seamounts. Fish diversity, in particular, is high in this region, and includes many unique deep-sea species and the discovery of the spawning area of the commercially important Japanese conger along the Kyushu-Palau Ridge (UNEP CBD, 2017e).

Only three sperm whales have been observed along the axis of the Kyushu-Palau Ridge, and those records are whaling records from the late 1700s to the early 1900s; the only other OBIS-SEAMAP data for the ridge area are rare sea turtle occurrences (Halpin et al., 2009). Thus, this marine area has no known nor apparent biological importance to any marine mammal species, and accordingly, does note meet the biological criteria for OBIA designation.

**GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA**

**Location in LFA Study Area**: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

**Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range** (12 nmi from emergent land): ☒ Entirely Outside
☐ Partially Outside

**Eligible Areal Extent**: 71,472.64 $nmi^2$ (245,144.28 $km^2$)

**Source of Official Boundary**: UNEP Convention of Biological Diversity

**Spatial File Type**: GIS Shapefile

**Spatial File Source**: UNEP Convention of Biological Diversity
*(/api/v2013/documents/64021521-8B63-37FC-7D6A-E6C220345C90/attachments/EA_33_EBSA.zip)*

**Date Obtained**: 4/7/2018

## Low Frequency Hearing Sensitivity

☐ Species: sperm whale

## Biological Criteria

**High Density**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Breeding / Calving**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Migration**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Foraging:** ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Distinct Small Population**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Critical Habitat**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## Seasonal Effective Period (None Recommended)

☐ Year-round ☐ Seasonal Period (Months Annually):

## OBIA Watchlist Addition

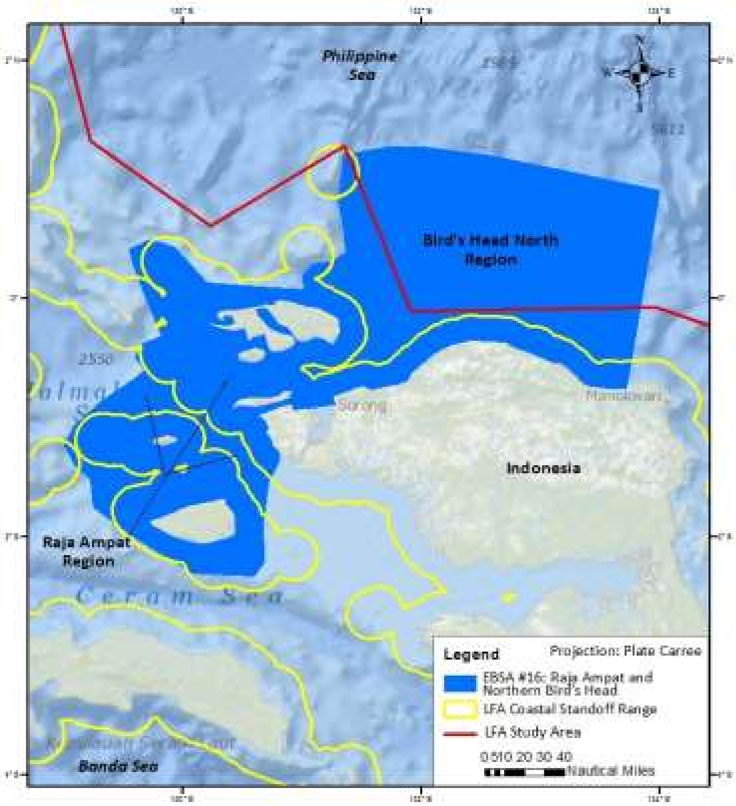
☐ Yes ☒ No

## Supporting Documentation

**Subject Matter Experts / e-NGO Reports / Regional Expertise**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Halpin, P.N., A.J. Read, E. Fujioka, B.D. Best, B. Donnelly, L.J. Hazen, C. Kot, K. Urian, E. LaBrecque, A. Dimatteo, J. Cleary, C. Good, L.B. Crowder, & K.D. Hyrenbach. (2009). OBIS-SEAMAP: The world data center for marine mammal, sea bird, and sea turtle distributions. *Oceanography, 22*(2), 104-115. | Database of available megavertebrate global data, including historical data. |

## Raja Ampat and Northern Bird's Head 22




**MARINE REGION:** Western North Pacific Ocean

**COUNTRY:** Indonesia

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:** Bryde's, false killer, killer, and sperm whales; as well as dolphins (Indo Pacific humpback, pantropical spotted, Fraser's)

**MARINE AREA TYPE**

☐ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA**

☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**

☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**

☐ **IUCN Green List Site**

☐ **IMMA**

☒ **EBSA** (EA #16)

☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**

☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**

☐ **U.S. MPA**

☐ **U.S. ESA Critical Habitat**

☐ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**AREA OVERVIEW:**

The Raja Ampat and Northern Bird's Head marine area is part of the Bismarck Solomon Seas Ecoregion and contains a high diversity of coral, reef fishes, and habitat types. The Bird's Head Seascape Region is a large area of West Papua, Indonesia. Raja Ampat consists of four main islands and hundreds of other small islands, located at the western this area includes critical nesting and feeding habitats and migration routes for various threatened species, including sea turtles and cetaceans (UNEP CBD, 2017f).

Sixteen species of marine mammals, including 15 cetaceans and the dugong, have been reported in the waters of the Bird's Head Seascape (Borsa and Nugroho, 2010; Mangubhai et al., 2012, Kahn, 2015; Rudolph et al., 1997). Enders et al. (2014) reported only 13 species of cetaceans in Raga Ampat waters, based on 2006 to 2011 aerial and boat surveys, not including the blue whale or dugong. Kahn (2015) noted that the dugong and blue whale occurred only rarely in the waters of Raja Ampat during his 2011 to 2016 sighting surveys, with the blue whale having been observed only once in five field seasons and the dugong observed in only three field seasons. The January and September 2006 aerial survey observations of marine mammals in the Raja Ampat region were all reported in the waters of the straits (>1,640 ft [500 m]) between the closely grouped islands or clustered in the insular shelf waters (Ender et al, 2014; Wilson et al., 2010). Ender et al. (2014) noted that highest cetacean diversity occurred in January to February, May, and October to November. Ender et al. (2014) and Wilson et al. (2010) suggested that Dampier and Sagewin straits may function as migratory corridors for cetaceans migrating between the western Pacific and eastern Indian oceans. None of the area's surveyed in any of the cited literature herein occur within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. Since there is no data supporting important biological activities by marine mammals being carried out in the part of this marine area that lies within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar, this area does not meet the biological criteria for OBIA designation and is thus not considered further as an OBIA.

## Geographic Criteria

**Location in LFA Study Area**: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

**Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range** (12 nmi from emergent land): ☐ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside (partially in study area/CSR)

**Eligible Areal Extent**: 10,103.98 nmi$^2$ (34,655.69 km$^2$)

**Source of Official Boundary**: UNEP Convention of Biological Diversity

**Spatial File Type**: GIS shapefile

**Spatial File Source**: UNEP Convention of Biological Diversity
*(/api/v2013/documents/68A3E020-B97B-E4C0-3CE5-564C40845E94/attachments/EA_16_EBSA.zip)*

**Date Obtained**: 7/17/2018

## Low Frequency Hearing Sensitivity

☒ Species: Bryde's and sperm whales

## Biological Criteria

**High Density**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Breeding / Calving**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Migration**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Foraging:** ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Distinct Small Population**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Critical Habitat**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## Seasonal Effective Period (Not Recommended)

☐ Year-round ☐ Seasonal Period (Months Annually):

## OBIA Watchlist Addition

☒ Yes ☐ No

## Supporting Documentation

**Peer Reviewed Articles**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Ender, A.I., Muhajir, Mangubhai, S., Wilson, J.R., Purwanto, & Muljadi, A. (2014). Cetaceans in the global centre of marine biodiversity. *Marine Biodiversity Records, 7*, e18. doi:10.1017/s1755267214000207. | Incidental sightings of marine mammals during coastal resource's aerial surveys in 2006 (January and September) and boat-based surveys of coral reefs in 2006 to 2011 in Raja Ampat in the Bird's Head Seascape, Indonesia documented the spatial and temporal distribution of cetaceans in central and southern Raja Ampat. Six whale (Bryde's, sperm, pygmy killer, false killer, killer, and short-finned pilot whales) and seven dolphin (spinner, common and Indo-Pacific bottlenose, Fraser's, Risso's, pantropical spotted, and Indo-Pacific humpback dolphins) species were documented in these waters. More than three times the number of cetaceans were observed during the January aerial surveys than in the September surveys. Short-finned pilot whales and the common bottlenose dolphins were the most commonly sighted species during the boat surveys. The Bryde's whale was the most commonly sighted of the large whales (19.6 percent).<br><br>The highest cetacean diversity and abundances were recorded in the waters of Dampier and Sagewin Straits and in Kofiau Marine Protected Area. The authors suggest that Dampier and Sagewin Straits are cetacean migration corridors between the western Pacific and Indian oceans, although no evidence beyond the higher abundances in the straits is put forward to support this theory. The authors also note that seasonal upwelling and nutrient rich waters in the region may provide important foraging grounds for resident and migrating cetaceans. |
| Mangubhai, S., Erdmann, M.V., Wilson, J.R., Huffard, C.L., Ballamu, F., Hidayat, N.I., Hitipeuw, C., Lazuardi, M.E., Mahajir, Pada, D., Purba, G., Rotinsulu, C., | The Bird's Head Seascape located in eastern Indonesia is the global epicenter of tropical shallow water marine biodiversity with over 600 species of corals and |

| | |
|---|---|
| Rumetna, L., Sumolang, K., & Wen, W. (2012). Papuan Bird's Head Seascape: Emerging threats and challenges in the center of marine biodiversity. *Marine Pollution Bulletin, 64*, 2279-2295. | 1,638 species of coral reef fishes. The Seascape also includes critical habitats for globally threatened marine species, including sea turtles and cetaceans. This paper states the area contains a high diversity and healthy population of cetacean species and references Tomascik et al., 1997 and Rudolf et al., 1997. The authors state migratory species such as baleen and sperm whales are sighted annually in Dampier and Sagewin Straits in Raja Ampat (Wilson et al., 2010a, TNC/CI, unpublished data). The authors also state that frequent year-round sightings of Bryde's whales from Raja Ampat south to Bintuni Bay (Kahn et al., 2006) and Triton Bay suggest resident populations (Kahn, 2009). These areas, however, are not within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar. |
| Borsa, P., & Nugroho, D. A. (2010). Spinner dolphin (*Stenella longirostris*) and other cetaceans in Raja Ampat waters, West Papua. *Marine Biodiversity Records, 3*, e49. doi:10.1017/s175526721000045x. | Ship surveys of cetaceans were conducted during November and December 2007 in the waters of Raja Ampat, Indonesia. Six cetacean species were observed during these surveys, with the pelagic spinner dolphin being the most commonly observed cetacean species. The five sperm whales reported during the surveys were detected in Dampier Strait waters deeper than 1,903 ft (580 m). The authors suggested that the waters of Raja Ampat, at least during the November to December period, are a foraging area for various cetacean species that occur in relatively high densities. |
| Rudolph, P., Smeenk, C., & Leatherwood, S. (1997). Preliminary checklist of Cetacea in the Indonesian Archipelago and adjacent waters. *Zoologische Verhandelingen, 312*, 1-48. | The authors state sperm whales were hunted by whalers during the 19th century, particularly in the deeper waters in the eastern part of the archipelago (Beale, 1839; Townsend, 1935; Barnes, 1991).<br><br>Although reports have been published on individual species or groups of species occurring in Indonesian waters, no comprehensive accounts of this area's diverse and rich cetacean fauna exist. Furthermore, much information has remained unpublished and exists only in difficult to obtain "grey" literature or in researchers' field notes. This paper summarizes information on the distribution, movements, abundance, and seasonality of cetaceans known to occur in Indonesian waters (here defined as the marine waters from 6° N to 10° S and 95° to 142° E) from data in scientific literature, preserved in scientific collections, and from unpublished field notes by the authors and other workers. The authors were unable to verify all published records and often had to rely on the authors' and correspondents' identifications. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | The authors state there are reports of the occurrence of large male sperm whales off the village of Lamalera (Lembata, Savu Sea), which would indicate that the region is a breeding ground (Fuchs, 1978, cited from Hembree, 1980). Sperm whales are found in these waters year-round, but nothing is known about the relationship of this population with other stocks. The passages between the Lesser Sunda Islands are supposed to be a migration route of sperm whales between the Indian and Pacific Ocean (Rice, 1989). Fishermen from Lamalera revealed that blue whales are also seen throughout the year, with a peak abundance in April and May. Blue whales are regularly observed around Komodo Island (UNEP/IUCN, 1988).<br><br>None of these areas, however, are within the SURTASS LFA sonar study area. Other than the above examples, the authors mainly present information on presence of marine mammals and do not identify other areas of high density or areas of biological importance for marine mammals within the SURTASS LFA sonar study area. |

**Subject Matter Experts / e-NGO Reports / Regional Expertise**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Kahn, B. (2015). Marine mammal species diversity in Raja Ampat. Retrieved from <https://apex-environmental.com/marine-mammals-raja-ampat/>. | Basic overview of the research B. Kahn has conducted on marine mammals in the Raja Ampat region and the 16 species he has observed, along with a table of the species occurrences over the last five field seasons (2011 through 2015). Kahn noted that he has observed no additional species since 2013 and that his species list doesn't include the Indo-Pacific humpbacked dolphin because he doesn't typically work in the interior island waters where that species occurs. He only observed a blue whale during the 2013 field season and dugong were observed only during three field seasons. |
| Wilson, J., Rotinsulu, C., Muljadi, A., Wen, W., Barmawi, M., & Mandagi, S. (2010*). Spatial and temporal patterns in marine resource use in Raja Amput region from aerial surveys 2006*. Report No 3/10. Marine Program, Asia Pacific Conservation Region. The Nature Conservancy, Bali, Indonesia. | Aerial surveys of island coastal resources, including marine mammals, were conducted in January and September 2006 in the waters of Raja Ampat. It was not possible to identify all marine mammals to species. The author's note the appearance of seasonality to marine mammal sightings, stating whales and dolphins were significantly more abundant in January compared to September. The authors state that most sightings were between Sorong and Salawati Island, in Dampier Strait, and around Kofiau Island, all of which are outside the LFA study area. Dugongs were widely distributed around all the islands surveyed and were |

| | |
|---|---|
| | observed in equal numbers during both months surveyed. |

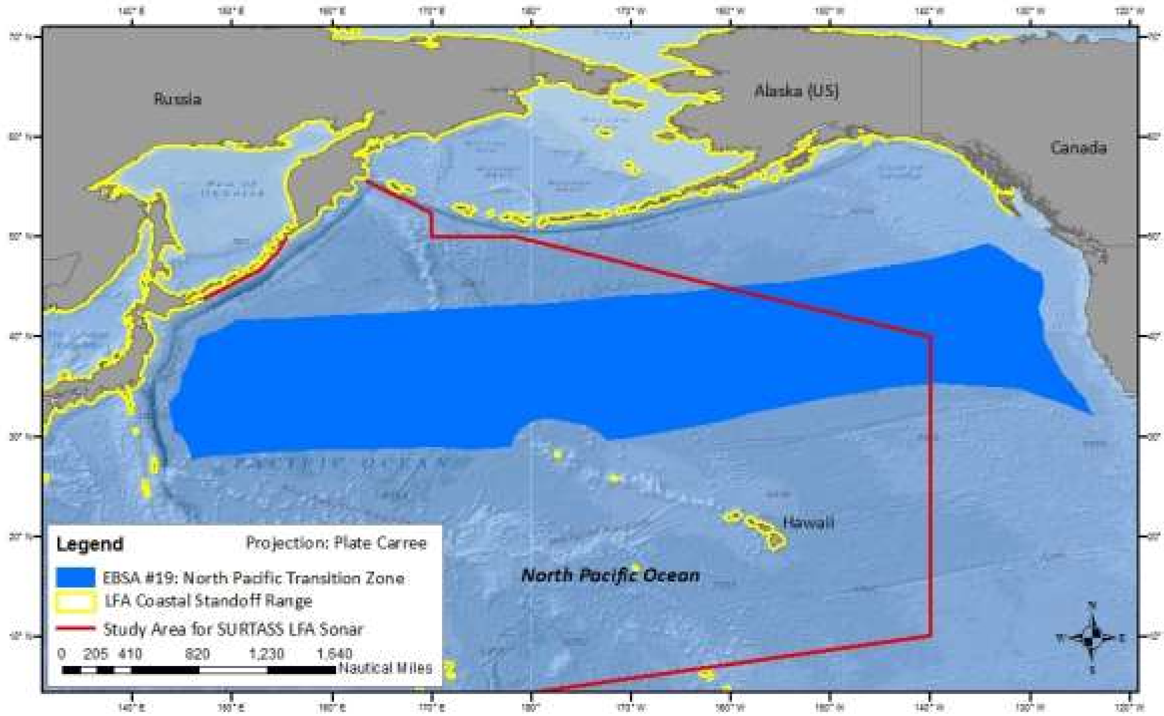
**Committee or Government Reports**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| UNEP CBD. (2017f). Ecologically or biologically significant areas: Raja Ampat and Northern Bird's Head. Retrieved from <https://chm.cbd.int/ pdf/documents/marineEbsa/237857/1>. | Overview of EBSA information collected on this area along with the criteria for designation. Raja Ampat and Northern Bird's Head are regarded as among the six globally important areas within the Bismarck Solomon Seas Ecoregion. The Bird's Head Seascape and Raga Ampat areas are important biodiversity hotspots, encompassing a high diversity of geographical features, habitats, and marine species, including 600 coral species and 1,638 reef fish species. Northern Bird's Head has the largest nesting aggregation of the endangered leatherback turtles in the Pacific region. Surveys and reports around the Bird's Head Seascape suggest that this region is a cetacean hotspot that supports a high diversity of cetacean species, including Bryde's, false killer, killer, and sperm whales, and Indo Pacific humpback, pan tropical spotted, and Fraser's dolphins. Aerial surveys revealed the wide distribution of dugongs. |

**Surveys**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| See Wilson et al. 2010 above | |
| See Ender et al. 2014 above | |

| North Pacific Transition Zone | 23 |
|---|---|




**MARINE REGION:** North Pacific Ocean

**COUNTRY:** Not applicable

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:** Northern elephant seal

## MARINE AREA TYPE

☐ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA**

☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**

☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**

☐ **IUCN Green List Site**

☐ **IMMA**

☒ **EBSA** (NP #19)

☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**

☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**

☐ **U.S. MPA**

☐ **U.S. Critical Habitat**

☐ **Public Comment Recommendation**

## AREA OVERVIEW:

The North Pacific Transition Zone (NPTZ) is a unique oceanographic feature within the circulation system of the North Pacific Ocean, but it is not, however, globally unique nor is a rare habitat (UNEP CBD, 2016d). The NPTZ is a 4,860-nmi (9,000-km) wide oceanographic feature of the upper water column that is bounded to the north and south by thermohaline (temperature/salinity) fronts (Subarctic and Subtropical Frontal Zones). Located within this wide north-south gradient of the NPTZ is the Transition

Zone Chlorophyll Front (TZCF), which is a front or boundary where the surface chlorophyll *a* concentration[9] abruptly changes due to the mixing of nutrient-rich polar and nutrient-poor subtropical water masses. The TZCF migrates seasonally and interannually by as much 540 nmi (1,000 km) north and south, with a latitudinal minimum in January to February and maximum in July to August (Polovina et al., 2001). Consequently, the boundaries of the NPTZ move seasonally, with the latitudinal extent varying seasonally between 28° to 34°N and 40° to 43°N, extending further south during winter (UNEP CBD, 2016d). Thus, the NPTZ is the area between the southern and northern extremes of the TZCF and is basically the region between two spatial extremes, cold, nutrient-rich polar water to the north and warm, nutrient-poor subtropical water to the south.

At the TZCF, in addition to the mixing of nutrient concentrations, phytoplankton communities from polar and subtropical waters also mix. This rich phytoplankton concentration attracts zooplankton and species such as fish and squid that feed on plankton. These species are aggregated at the TZCF boundary, attracting predators, including apex predators such elephant seals. This highly persistent, productive habitat of the NPTZ is not only a foraging area, where predators and prey are aggregated, but also is a migratory corridor for species such as bluefin tuna and loggerhead turtles that move east and west across the North Pacific Ocean (UNEP CBD, 2016d).

Although a large amount of research has been conducted on the importance of the NPTZ, especially most recently with top trophic predators, only a limited number of pinniped species have been shown to have any correlation with this feature. The one pinniped for which the most research has been conducted with affinity to the NPTZ is the northern elephant seal (Harrison, 2012; Simmons et al., 2010). Le Boeuf et al. (2000) reported that only female northern elephant seals fed extensively, although not exclusively, in the waters of the NPTZ, while males moved directly to the waters of the western Aleutian Islands to forage. Harrison (2012) and Robinson et al. (2012) showed that female elephant seals have a strong affinity to the NPTZ during the summer and autumn but that they remain in more northerly waters when the NPTZ and TZCF migrate south (up to 540 nmi [1,000 km]) in the winter. Robinson et al. (2012) reported that the female elephant seals do not appear to track surface features such as the TZCF but instead use the boundaries of oceanic gyres during their two seasonal migrational journeys to foraging grounds since the boundaries of these features do not move and remain stable across seasons and years.

Polovina et al. (2015) considered the TZCF to be important to Hawaiian monk seal pups in the northern atolls of the NWHI. However, Hawaiian monk seals do not move to or within the TZCF but instead respond to the interannual variation of the southernmost position of the front when it reaches the northernmost atolls of the archipelago (Baker et al., 2007). Specifically, Baker et al. (2007) found a statistically significant correlation between the survival through age 4 of more than 300 monk seals at the most northerly atolls during 1984 to 2004 and the southernmost (winter) position of the 18° C isotherm, which served as a proxy for the TZCF years prior to the advent of remotely-sensed ocean color data. The Hawaiian monk seal pup survival rate was poor during winters when the TZCF remained north of the atolls. Baker et al., (2007) concluded that variation in ocean productivity may mediate prey availability in monk seal foraging habitat and consequently influence juvenile survival in the northern portion of their range.

9 Chlorophyll *a* concentration is an indicator of the level of primary productivity; chlorophyll *a* concentrations and primary productivity would be much higher in nutrient-rich colder polar waters than in subtropical waters.

Satellite-tagging of a rehabilitated Guadalupe fur seal released on the California coast showed that the seal traveled thousands of miles to forage in the waters of NPTZ, which was the first documentation of this foraging behavior in the NPTZ for the Guadalupe fur seal (Marine Mammal Center, 2014).

Although the NPTZ meets the geographic criteria for OBIA designation, the biological criteria for this area's relevance to the northern elephant seal are not strong, as only the female northern elephant seal forages periodically in NPTZ waters and not exclusively, and it is not clear what biological importance these waters have for monk seal pups. Some researchers have suggested that female elephant seals are not necessarily dependent upon the NPTZ but are instead fixing on the static boundaries of the Pacific mid-ocean gyre, which is located in the same ocean space. While an OBIA has been designated for a foraging area of the southern elephant seal, that area was the primary foraging area of both sexes of southern elephant seals. Such is not the case for the NPTZ and the northern elephant seal. Due to insufficient biological support, the NPTZ is not further designated as an OBIA for SURTASS LFA sonar.

### GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA

**Location in LFA Study Area**: ☒ Eligible (majority inside study area) ☐ Not Eligible

**Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range** (12 nmi from emergent land): ☒ Entirely Outside
☐ Partially Outside

**Eligible Areal Extent**: 4,311,064.75 nmi$^2$ (14,107,417.24 km$^2$)

**Source of Official Boundary**: UNEP Convention of Biological Diversity

**Spatial File Type**: GIS shapefile

**Spatial File Source**: UNEP Convention of Biological Diversity,
*</api/v2013/documents/6F9DF7CF-33A6-D981-C9A3-71E065B96AD2/attachments/NP_19_EBSA-GIS%20shapefile.zip)>*

**Date Obtained**: 5/7/2018

### LOW FREQUENCY HEARING SENSITIVITY

☒ Species: Northern elephant seal (may exhibit increased sensitivity)

### BIOLOGICAL CRITERIA

**High Density**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Breeding / Calving**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Migration**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Foraging:** ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification (but only for female northern elephant seals)
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Distinct Small Population**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Critical Habitat**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## Seasonal Effective Period (None Recommended)

☐ Year-round ☐ Seasonal Period (Months Annually):

## OBIA Watchlist Addition

☒ Yes ☐ No

## Supporting Documentation

### Peer Reviewed Articles

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Polovina, J.J., Howell, E.A., Kobayashi, D.A., & Seki, M.P. (2015). The Transition Zone Chlorophyll Front updated: Advances from a decade of research. *Progress in Oceanography, 150*, 79-85. | The TZCF was first described 15 years ago based on the empirical association between the apparent habitat of loggerhead sea turtles and albacore tuna and the basin-wide chlorophyll front observed with remotely sensed ocean color data. Subsequent research has provided evidence that the TZCF is an indicator of a dynamic ocean feature with important physical and biological characteristics. In the summer, the TZCF is located at the southern boundary of the subarctic gyre while its position in the winter and spring is defined by the extent of the southward transport of surface nutrients. Although the TZCF is defined as the dynamic boundary between low and high surface chlorophyll, it is also a boundary between subtropical and subarctic phytoplankton communities and is also characterized as supporting enhanced phytoplankton net community production throughout its seasonal migration. Lastly, the TZCF is important to the growth rate of neon flying squid and to the survival of monk seal pups in the NWHI. |
| Robinson, P. W., Costa, D. P., Crocker, D. E., Gallo-Reynoso, J. P., Champagne, C. D., Fowler, M. A., . . . Yoda, K. (2012). Foraging behavior and success of a mesopelagic predator in the northeast Pacific Ocean: Insights from a data-rich species, the northern elephant seal. *PLoS ONE, 7*(5), e36728. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0036728. | Diving, tracking, foraging success, and natality data for 297 adult female northern elephant seal migrations were collected from 2004 to 2010. During the longer post-molting migration, individual energy gain rates were significant predictors of pregnancy. At sea, seals focused their foraging effort along a narrow band corresponding to the boundary between the sub-arctic and sub-tropical gyres. Elephant seals target the gyre-gyre boundary throughout the year rather than follow the southward winter migration of surface features, such as the Transition Zone Chlorophyll Front. Female elephant seals show a strong affinity to the TZCF during much of the summer and autumn, but the seals |

remain in northern waters while the TZCF migrates up to 1,000 km southward during the winter. The gyre-gyre boundary remains quite stable across seasons and years. The elephant seals appear to utilize the gyre-gyre-boundary during both migrations rather than track surface features such as the TZCF.

| | |
|---|---|
| Simmons, S.E., Crocker, D.E., Hassrick, J L., Kuhn, C.E., Robinson, P.W., Tremblay, Y., & Costa, D.P. (2010). Climate-scale hydrographic features related to foraging success in a capital breeder, the northern elephant seal *Mirounga angustirostris*. *Endangered Species Research, 10*: 233-243. | Satellite telemetry from 75 adult female northern elephant seals and point measurements of foraging success (energy/mass gain) were used to examine habitat selection at large temporal and spatial scales in the North Pacific Ocean. Elephant seals spend up to 10 months per year ranging widely across the Pacific searching for food. Two areas of the North Pacific Ocean were used to examine elephant seal foraging success and energy gain: Transition Zone and the Subarctic Gyre. Underlying differences in prey composition and/or distribution may drive the differences seen in searching behavior and foraging success of elephant seals at large scales. By linking searching behavior to measures of foraging success, such as mass/energy gain, we can ascertain the ecological significance of selected habitat and better understand potential impacts of climate change. Our study revealed that the seals showed comparable levels of foraging success across both migrations and in all ecoregions. The variability was greater in the mass gain during foraging migrations to the Subarctic Gyre than to the Transition Zone. Foraging success was notably greater than measured in previous studies. |
| Baker, J. D., Polovina, J. J., & Howell, E. A. (2007). Effect of variable oceanic productivity on the survival of an upper trophic predator, the Hawaiian monk seal *Monachus schauinslandi*. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 346*, 277-283. | The Hawaiian monk seal population is declining, and low juvenile survival due to prey limitation is believed to be a primary cause. We analyzed the relationship of the survival of more than 3,000 monk seals during 1984 to 2004 to the southernmost latitude of the 18°C isotherm (a proxy for the TZCF). We found a statistically significant nonlinear relationship between the winter position of the TZCF and survival of monk seals through 4 years of age at the most northerly atolls. When the front remained farther north, survival was poorer. The relationship was strongest following a 1- or 2-year lag, perhaps indicating the time required for enhanced productivity to influence the food web and improve the seals' prey base. No such relationship was found at subpopulations located farther south or among adult animals at any site. Variation in ocean productivity may mediate prey availability in monk seal foraging habitat and consequently influence juvenile survival in the northern portion of their range. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Le Boeuf, B. J., Crocker, D. E., Costa, D. P., Blackwell, S. B., Webb, P. M., & Houser, D. S. (2000). Foraging ecology of northern elephant seals. *Ecological Monographs, 70*(3), 353-382. | This study reviewed diving and foraging behavior, foraging locations, and distribution of the northern elephant seal by sex to determine if sexual segregation was occurring during foraging during their two annual migrations into the North Pacific Ocean. Daily movements of 27 adult males and 20 adult females, during 56 migrations from Año Nuevo, CA were monitored by data from satellite tags and from recovered time-depth-speed recorders. Pronounced sex differences were found in foraging location and foraging pattern. Females range widely over deep water, apparently foraging on patchily distributed, vertically migrating, pelagic prey, whereas males forage along the continental margin at the distal end of their migration in a manner consistent with feeding on benthic prey. |

**Committee or Government Reports**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| UNEP CBD. (2016d). Ecologically or biologically significant areas: North Pacific transition zone. Retrieved from <https://chm.cbd.int/pdf/documents/marineEbsa/204130/2>. | Overview of EBSA information collected on this marine area along with the criteria justification for designation. The North Pacific Transition Zone is an oceanographic feature that includes the Transition Zone Chlorophyll Front and is of special importance to the biology of many species in the North Pacific Ocean. The North Pacific Transition Zone is a 4,860-nmi (9000-km) wide upper water column oceanographic feature bounded to the north and south by thermohaline fronts. These fronts form the boundaries to this highly productive habitat where prey and predators, including top trophic (apex) predators, aggregate. In addition to providing key North Pacific foraging areas, the feature also serves as a migratory corridor for species such as bluefin tuna and loggerhead sea turtles. |

**Theses/Dissertations**

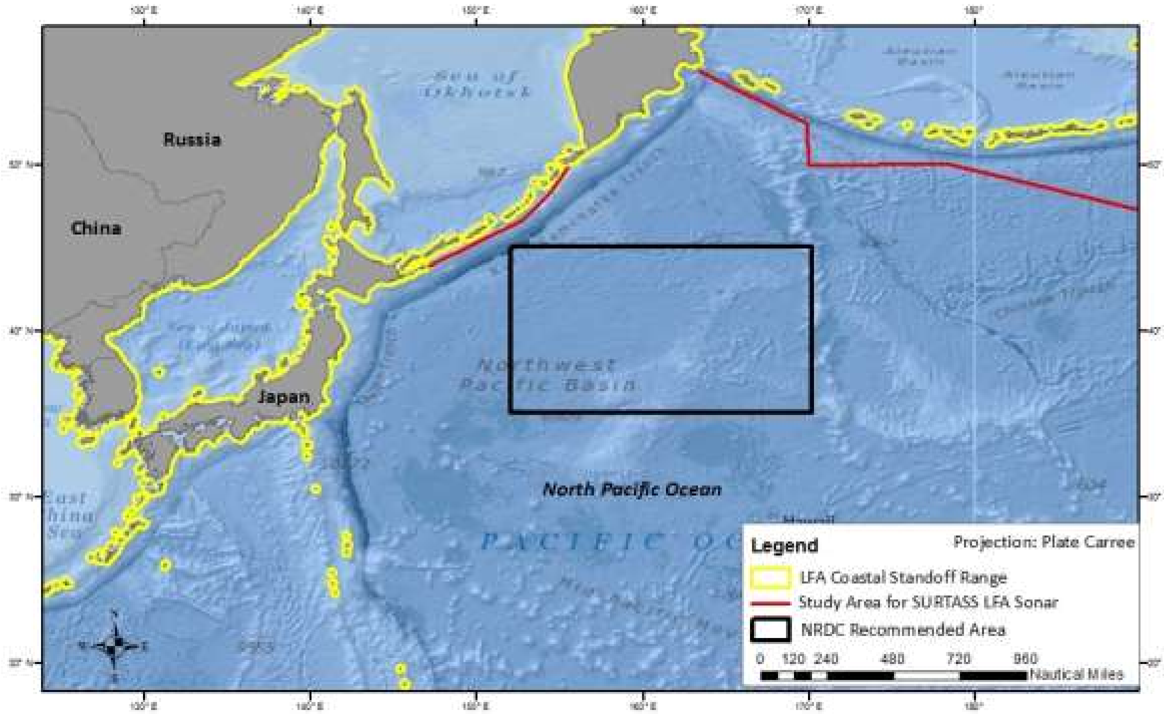
| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Harrison, A.-L. (2012). *A synthesis of marine predator migrations, distribution, species overlap, and use of Pacific Ocean Exclusive Economic Zones.* Ph.D. dissertation, University of California at Santa Cruz. | |

**Websites / Social Media**

| *Website/Organization* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|

| | |
|---|---|
| Marine Mammal Center. (2014). Satellite-tagged Guadalupe fur seal Sterling Archer heads straight for a seafood buffet. Retrieved from <http://www.marinemammalcenter.org/about-us/News-Room/2014-news-archives/sterling-archer.html>. | Story about a rehabilitated Guadalupe fur seal that was satellite-tagging before being released on the coast of California near San Francisco. Unlike the other released and tagged Guadalupe fur seals, this fur seal did not travel south to their principal rookery on Guadalupe Island, Mexico as had other tagged and released Guadalupe fur seals. This tagged seal traveled west to thousands of miles to the waters of the North Pacific Transition Zone, presumably to forage. This was the first documentation of this species' relationship to this oceanographic feature. |

| Polar/Kuroshio Extension Fronts | 24 |
|---|---|




**MARINE REGION:** North Pacific Ocean

**COUNTRY:** Not applicable

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:** Sei whale

**MARINE AREA TYPE**

- ☐ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA**
- ☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**
- ☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**
- ☐ **IUCN Green List Site**
- ☐ **IMMA**
- ☐ **EBSA**
- ☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**
- ☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**
- ☐ **U.S. MPA**
- ☐ **U.S. ESA Critical Habitat**
- ☒ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**AREA OVERVIEW:**

There are three major ocean fronts in the western North Pacific, the Polar Front that occurs roughly parallel to 45°N, the Subarctic Front at approximately 40°N, and the Kuroshio Extension Front at approximately 35°N. The region being considered for an OBIA (35°N to 45°N, 152°E to 170°E) represents a transition zone between subtropical waters to the south and subarctic waters to the north, generally consistent with the North Pacific Transition Zone EBSA (Marine Area #20). Within this wide north-south gradient is the Transition Zone Chlorophyll Front (TZCF), which is a front or boundary where the surface chlorophyll a concentration[10] abruptly changes due to the mixing of nutrient-rich polar and nutrient-poor subtropical water masses. The TZCF migrates seasonally and interannually by as much 540 nmi (1,000 km) north and south, with a latitudinal minimum in January to February and maximum in July to August (Polovina et al., 2001). Consequently, the boundaries of the NPTZ move seasonally, with the latitudinal extent varying seasonally between 28° to 34°N and 40° to 43°N, extending further south during winter (UNEP CBD, 2016d). Thus, similar to the North Pacific Transition Zone, this region lies between two spatial extremes, cold, nutrient-rich polar water to the north and warm, nutrient-poor subtropical water to the south.

At the TZCF, in addition to the mixing of nutrient concentrations, phytoplankton communities from polar and subtropical waters also mix. This rich phytoplankton concentration attracts zooplankton and species such as fish and squid that feed on plankton. These species are aggregated at the TZCF boundary, attracting predators, including apex predators such elephant seals. This highly persistent, productive habitat is not only a foraging area where predators and prey are aggregated, but also is a migratory corridor for species such as bluefin tuna and loggerhead turtles that move east and west across the North Pacific Ocean (UNEP CBD, 2016d).

Research efforts have focused on sei whales to identify environmental factors that define habitat features. Sighting survey data from July in the years 2000 to 2007 were analyzed in relation to the distances from the Polar Front, Subarctic Front, and Kuroshio Extension Front (Murase et al., 2014). Sei whales were found in higher densities from 135 to 189 nmi (250 to 350 km) north and from 54 to 108 nmi (100 to 200 km) south of the Subarctic Front. The authors suggest that the bimodal distribution of higher abundances might reflect annual changes in their environment at varying spatial scales. This study focused on macro scale (months and 1,000s of km) to meso scale (days to weeks over 100s of km) distributions; the authors suggest that macro to nano-scale studies are needed to understand the spatial distribution of sei whales.

To investigate sei whale diving behavior at smaller spatial scales, Ishii et al. (2017) attached acoustic time-depth recorders to two sei whales in the western North Pacific. The sei whales were found to dive to depths of approximately 40 m (131 ft) during the day. Many of the daytime dives were classified as U-shaped dives, which the authors suggest are foraging dives since the dives went to depths that correlated with the highest amounts of acoustic backscatter. The authors suggest that sei whales use oceanographic features such as sea surface temperature (SST) to find mesoscale regions (100s km) (Sasaki et al., 2013), then search within those regions for microscale (10s km), high-density prey fields.

Similar heterogeneity in sei whale distribution has been found in the North Atlantic (Skov et al., 2008). It appears as if sei whale utilize fine-scale frontal processes that interact with the seafloor topography, where consistent flow gradients result in patterns of increased primary and secondary productivity. The persistence of such features, as well as the association of sei whales, needs to be investigated further. Furthermore, Sasaki et al. (2013) found distinct and separate habitats for sei and Bryde's whales in the western North Pacific, both habitats which appears to migrate seasonally with SST.

Although this marine area meets the geographic criteria for OBIA designation, there is insufficient support of this area's biological importance to the sei whale or other LF-hearing cetaceans. As such, the Polar/Kuroshio Extension Front area is not further considered as an OBIA. It is, however, being retained

10 Chlorophyll *a* concentration is an indicator of the level of primary productivity; chlorophyll *a* concentrations and primary productivity would be much higher in nutrient-rich colder polar waters than in subtropical waters.

on the OBIA Watchlist and would be periodically reassessed should additional research on the area become available.

**NOTE**: Another marine area in the western North Pacific was also assessed as a potential marine mammal OBIA for SURTASS LFA sonar. Marine area #23, North Pacific Transition Zone, encompasses much of the same geographic area.

### Geographic Criteria

Location Status: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range (12 nmi from emergent land): ☒ Entirely Outside
☐ Partially Outside

Eligible Areal Extent: 662,135.5 $nmi^2$ (2,271,061.51 $km^2$)

Source of Official Boundary: Murase et al., 2014

Spatial File Type: GIS shapefile

Spatial File Source: Murase et al., 2014

Date Obtained/Created: 2/1/19

### Low Frequency Hearing Sensitivity

☒ Species: Sei whale

### Biological Criteria

High Density: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Breeding / Calving: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Migration: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Foraging: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Distinct Small Population: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Critical Habitat: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

### Seasonal Effective Period (None Recommended)

☐ Year-round ☐ Seasonal Period (Months Annually):

### OBIA Watchlist Addition

☒ Yes ☐ No

## SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION

**Peer Reviewed Articles**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Hakamada, T., Matsuoka, K., Murase, H., & Kitakado, T. (2017). Estimation of the abundance of the sei whale *Balaenoptera borealis* in the central and eastern North Pacific in summer using sighting data from 2010 to 2012. *Fisheries Science, 83*(6), 887-895. doi: 10.1007/s12562-017-1121-1 | Sighting survey for sei whales in the central and eastern North Pacific (40°N to Alaska coast, 170°E to 135°W), July to August 2010 to 2012. Spatial distribution of sei whale sightings was heterogeneous, similar to other studies in the North Pacific and North Atlantic. Abundance estimate was 29,632 sei whales (CV=0.242), which should be added to survey in the western North Pacific (5,086 whales, CV=0.38) for a total North Pacific population estimate of 34,718 sei whales. |
| Ishii, M., Murase, H., Fukuda, Y., Sawada, K., Sasakura, T., Tamura, T., . . . Mitani, Y. (2017). Diving behavior of sei whales *Balaenoptera borealis* relative to the vertical distribution of their potential prey. *Mammal Study, 42*(4), 191–199. doi:10.3106/041.042.0403. | Acoustic time-depth recorders were attached to two sei whales in August 2013 in the western North Pacific (around 45°N, 157°E). An echosounder and trawl and plankton net sampling were used to infer the prey field. The sei whales were found to dive to depths of approximately 40 m (131 ft) during the day. Many of the daytime dives were classified as U-shaped dives, which the authors suggest are foraging dives since the dives went to depths that correlated with the highest amounts of acoustic backscatter. The authors suggest that sei whales use oceanographic features such as sea surface temperature (SST) to find mesoscale regions (100s km), then search within those regions for microscale (10s km), high-density prey fields. |
| Murase, H., Hakamada, T., Matsuoka, K., Nishiwaki, S., Inagake, D., Okazaki, M., . . . Kitakado, T. (2014). Distribution of sei whales (*Balaenoptera borealis*) in the subarctic–subtropical transition area of the western North Pacific in relation to oceanic fronts. *Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography, 107*, 22-28. doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2014.05.002. | Sei whale sighting survey data and oceanographic observations in July 2000 to 2007 were modeled to investigate the relationship between sei whale distribution and the distances from the Polar Front, Subarctic Front, and Kuroshio Extension Front. Sei whales were found in higher densities from 250 to 350 km north and from 100 to 200 km south of the Subarctic Front. The authors suggest that the bimodal distribution of higher abundances might reflect annual changes in their environment at varying spatial scales. This study focused on macro scale (months and 1,000s of km) to meso scale (days to weeks over 100s of km) distributions; the authors suggest that macro to nano-scale studies are needed to understand the spatial distribution of sei whales. |
| Sasaki, H., Murase, H., Kiwada, H., Matsuoka, K., Mitani, Y., & Saitoh, S.-i. (2013). Habitat differentiation between sei (*Balaenoptera borealis*) and Bryde's | Sighting survey results from May to August of 2004 and 2005 were correlated with environmental covariates to predict suitable habitat for sei and |

| | |
|---|---|
| whales (*B. brydei*) in the western North Pacific. *Fisheries Oceanography, 22*(6), 496–508. doi:10.1111/fog.12037. | Bryde's whales in the western North Pacific. SST was the dominant factor for both species, but habitats were clearly distinct and separate, with sei whales found in colder waters than Bryde's whales. Suitable habitat for sei whales was located north of that for Bryde's whales, and habitats for both species shifted northward as the season progressed, at different rates in 2004 than in 2005. |
| Baumgartner, M. F., & Fratantoni, D. M. (2008). Diel periodicity in both sei whale vocalization rates and the vertical migration of their copepod prey observed from ocean gliders. *Limnology and Oceanography, 53*(5, Part 2), 2197-2209. | This study correlated sei whale vocalization rates with acoustic backscatter in the Gulf of Maine. The acoustic backscatter showed strong diel periodicity that correlated with the vertical migration of the calanoid copepod (*Calanus finmarchicus*) from deep depths during the day to shallow depths at night. Sei whale vocalizations also show diel periodicity, with more vocalizations during the day. The authors suggest that sei whales increase their social interactions during the day when foraging is more difficult or less efficient, and feed on the shallow, near-surface aggregations at night. |
| Skov, H., T. Gunnlaugsson, W.P. Budgell, J. Horne, L. Nøttestad, E. Olsen, H. Søiland, G. Vı´kingsson, and G. Waring. (2008). Small-scale spatial variability of sperm and sei whales in relation to oceanographic and topographic features along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. *Deep Sea Research II, 55*, 254-268. | Sighting surveys for sei and sperm whales along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge were correlated with 3D concurrent oceanographic data to determine covariates of habitat suitability. Sperm and sei whale sightings were segregated, with sperm whales being found mainly over the top of the MAR and sei whales mainly over the slopes. These results point to the significance of interactions between seabed topography and surface and subsurface flow gradients as key habitat drivers. Whales were aggregated within fine-scale regions (30-80 km [16-43 nmi]) where frontal processes interacted with topography. Thus, habitat suitability will be influenced by persistent of these flow features over space and time. |

**Subject Matter Experts / e-NGO Reports / Regional Expertise**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Cooke, J.G. (2018a). *Balaenoptera borealis*. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2018:e.T2475A130482064. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2018-2.RLTS.T2475A130482064.en>. | Sei whales are found in temperate to subpolar, offshore waters of the North Atlantic, North Pacific, and Southern oceans, displaying seasonal migrations from high latitude summer feeding grounds to low latitude winter regions. Though sei whales feed on a variety of prey species, they tend to concentrate their foraging on one species at a time. |
| Kanda, N., Bando, T., Matsuoka, K., Murase, H., Kishiro, T., Pastene, L. A., & Ohsumi, S. (2015). *A* | Summary of existing studies on the stock structure of sei whales in the North Pacific Ocean using all |

| | |
|---|---|
| *review of the genetic and non-genetic information provides support for a hypothesis of a single stock of sei whales in the North Pacific*. Paper SC/66a/IA/9 presented to the International Whaling Commission Scientific Committee. 18 pages. | available data. Mark-recapture data indicated that sei whales from the same breeding area distribute widely in the feeding area over almost the entire North Pacific Ocean Although historical whaling catch data show heterogeneous distribution of sei whales, genetic evidence indicate no temporal or spatial genetic differences among all sei whales in the entire North Pacific. The heterogeneous catch distribution appeared to reflect non-random operations of commercial whaling as well as patchy distribution of sei whale prey species. Overall, based on the series of the available evidence, we propose a single stock hypothesis for sei whales in the North Pacific. |

**Committee or Government Reports**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| UNEP CBD. (2016d). Ecologically or biologically significant areas: North Pacific transition zone. Retrieved from <https://chm.cbd.int/pdf/documents/marineEbsa/204130/2>. | Overview of EBSA information collected on this marine area along with the criteria justification for designation. The North Pacific Transition Zone is an oceanographic feature that includes the Transition Zone Chlorophyll Front and is of special importance to the biology of many species in the North Pacific Ocean. The North Pacific Transition Zone is a 4,860-nmi (9000-km) wide upper water column oceanographic feature bounded to the north and south by thermohaline fronts. These fronts form the boundaries to this highly productive habitat where prey and predators, including top trophic (apex) predators, aggregate. In addition to providing key North Pacific foraging areas, the feature also serves as a migratory corridor for species such as bluefin tuna and loggerhead sea turtles. |

**Surveys**

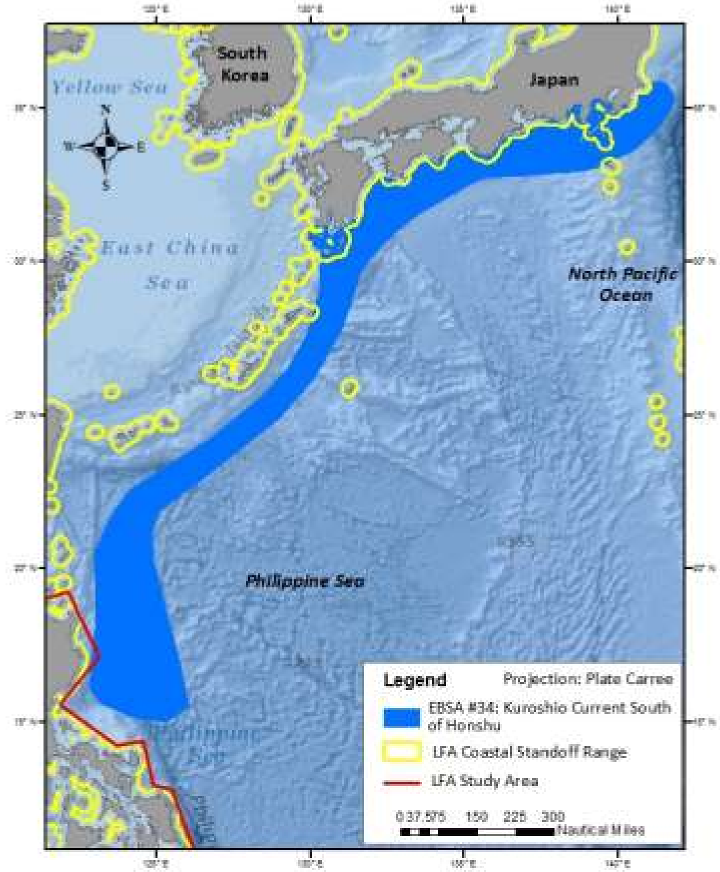
| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Hakamada, T., Matsuoka, K., Murase, H., & Kitakado, T. (2017). Estimation of the abundance of the sei whale *Balaenoptera borealis* in the central and eastern North Pacific in summer using sighting data from 2010 to 2012. *Fisheries Science, 83*(6), 887-895. doi: 10.1007/s12562-017-1121-1 | See summary above. |

## Kuroshio Current South of Honshu 25

**MARINE REGION:** Western North Pacific Ocean

**COUNTRY**: Off Japan and Philippines

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:** Finless porpoise




### MARINE AREA TYPE

☐ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA**

☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**

☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**

☐ **IUCN Green List Site**

☐ **IMMA**

☒ **EBSA** (EA #34)

☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**

☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**

☐ **U.S. MPA**

☐ **U.S. Critical Habitat**

☐ **Public Comment Recommendation**

### AREA OVERVIEW:

This marine area is dominated by the subtropical waters of the Kuroshio Current as it sweeps along the southern reaches of the Ryukyu Islands and roughly parallel to coasts of Kyushu, Shikoku, and Honshu Islands, Japan until it is deflected eastward from land off Honshu to become the Kuroshio Extension Current. UNEP CBD (2017h) notes that this EBSA includes the reproductive area for the finless porpoise, but this species typically only occurs in coastal waters <164 ft (50 m) in depth (Wang and Reeves, 2017). No information about the breeding area, especially in offshore waters, of the finless porpoise could be located. No occurrence data of baleen whales coincides with this EBSA, and only rare historical whaling records of sperm whales coincide with the EBSA, but not in sufficient density to suggest a correlation (Halpin et al., 2009). Since the biological criteria are not met nor are there data to show relevance to any LF sensitive marine mammal in this marine area, it has not been designated as an OBIA for SURTASS LFA sonar.

### GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA

**Location in LFA Study Area**: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

**Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range** (12 nmi from emergent land): ☐ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside

**Eligible Areal Extent**: 147,451.3 $nmi^2$ (505,743.8 $km^2$)

**Source of Official Boundary**: UNEP Convention of Biological Diversity

**Spatial File Type**: GIS shapefile

**Spatial File Source**: UNEP Convention of Biological Diversity (/api/v2013/documents/204D44FA-6596-F868-8B53-4D8372447AB3/attachments/EA_34_EBSA.zip)

**Date Obtained**: 5/7/2018

## Low Frequency Hearing Sensitivity

☐ Species: None

## Biological Criteria

**High Density**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Breeding / Calving**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Migration**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Foraging:** ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Distinct Small Population**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Critical Habitat**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## Seasonal Effective Period (None Recommended)

☐ Year-round ☐ Seasonal Period (Months Annually):

## OBIA Watchlist Addition

☐ Yes ☒ No

## Supporting Documentation

### Subject Matter Experts / e-NGO Reports / Regional Expertise

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Wang, J.Y., & Reeves, R. (2017). *Neophocaena asiaeorientalis. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2017*: e.T41754A50381766. Retrieved from | Description of the distribution, status, taxonomy, populations, abundances, and threat of finless porpoises. Two subpopulations exist, the Yangtze finless porpoise in China, and East Asian finless |

| | |
|---|---|
| <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2017-3.RLTS.T41754A50381766.en>. | porpoise that occurs principally from Taiwan Strait through the East China Sea north to the Bohai/Yellow Sea in China and the waters of Korea and Japan. This species is found in waters <164 ft (50 m), especially in inshore waters and in the Inshore Sea of Japan. No information on the reproductive grounds of this species is included. |
| Halpin, P.N., A.J. Read, E. Fujioka, B.D. Best, B. Donnelly, L.J. Hazen, C. Kot, K. Urian, E. LaBrecque, A. Dimatteo, J. Cleary, C. Good, L.B. Crowder, & K.D. Hyrenbach. (2009). OBIS-SEAMAP: The world data center for marine mammal, sea bird, and sea turtle distributions. *Oceanography, 22*(2), 104-115. | Database of available megavertebrate global data, including historical data. |

**Committee or Government Reports**

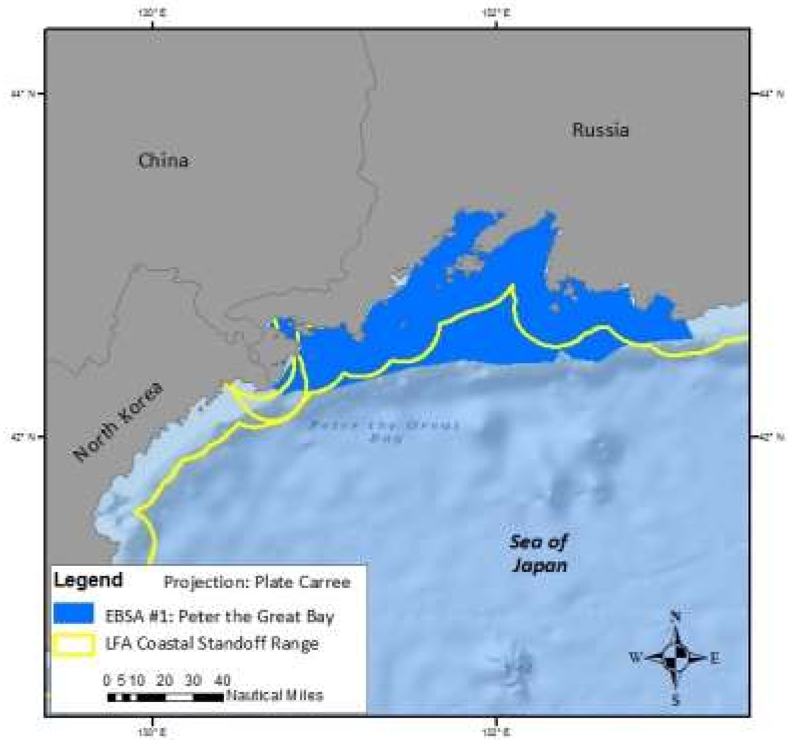
| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| UNEP CBD. (2017h). Ecologically or biologically significant areas: Kuroshio Current south of Honshu. Retrieved from <https://chm.cbd.int/pdf/documents/marineEbsa/237877/1>. | Overview of EBSA information collected on this marine area along with the criteria justification for designation. This EBSA includes is influenced by the subtropical waters of the Kuroshio Current that sweeps past the Philippines northward along the southern coast of Kyushu, Shikoku. and Honshu islands, Japan before deflecting out to sea. This area is used as a reproductive area of finless porpoise. |

| Peter the Great Bay | 26 |
|---|---|

**MARINE REGION:** Sea of Japan

**COUNTRY:** Russia

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:** Spotted seal[11]




**MARINE AREA TYPE**

☐ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA**

☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**

☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**

☐ **IUCN Green List Site**

☐ **IMMA**

☒ **EBSA** (NP #1)

☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**

☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**

☐ **U.S. MPA**

☐ **U.S. Critical Habitat**

☐ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**AREA OVERVIEW:**

Peter the Great Bay is an embayment of the western Sea of Japan along the coast of Russia comprised of three smaller bays (Amur, Ussuri, and Posieta), This area is located at the biogeographic boundary between temperate and subtropical regimes, and thus is characterized by a mixture of temperate and subtropical fauna and relatively high biodiversity (UNEP CBD, 2016).

Spotted seals from the Southern DPS occur year-round in Peter the Great Bay (Boveng, 2016, Nesterenko and Katin, 2010). The Southern DPS of spotted seals, which consists of breeding concentrations in the Yellow Sea and Peter the Great Bay, is listed as threatened under the ESA and depleted under the MMPA (Boveng et al., 2009). Nesterenko and Katin (2008) reported that as many as 450 spotted seals remain in Peter the Great Bay during summer, with some of the spotted seals from

11 In the feature area detail description of the UNEP CBD (2016) summary of the Peter the Great Bay EBSA, the only information on potentially occurring marine mammals is presented as "…large rookeries of ringed seal (about 2500 individuals) are situated in the area". However, ringed seals do not occur in Sea of Japan south of the Hokkaido area. We believe that the inclusion of ringed seals in the Peter the Great Bay IMMA information is simply a typographical error, as no occurrences of ringed seals are known in the literature for this region. However, spotted seals are known to occur in Peter the Great Bay and its associated embayments (Amur, Ussuri, and Posieta) and have been studied for decades (Nesterenko and Katin, 2008, 2015). We believe that the marine mammal species that should have been referenced for this EBSA was the spotted seal, which is what we have evaluated accordingly for the Peter the Great EBSA.

Peter the Great Bay migrating northward to the waters off Hokkaido, Japan. Nesterenko and Katin (2015) reported that a high percentage of immature spotted seals migrate out of the bay northward. Trukin and Mizuno (2002) reported that during winter, spotted seals congregated in the ice-covered waters of Peter the Great Bay, avoiding the open waters of the nearby coast of Russia, but in summer and fall, the pattern reversed with fewer spotted seals occurring with Peter the Great Bay and more seals hauling out along the shores of nearby Primorye, Russia. Pupping begins in January, followed soon after by molting, and by May, many seals have molted and begin dispersing throughout the bay and northward (Nesterenko and Katin, 2010). Unlike in the northern parts of their range, spotted seals in Peter the Great Bay do not reproduce on ice floes but instead, uniquely breed on island locations, principally in the Rimsky-Korsakov Archipelago (Nesterenko and Katin, 2010, 2015). Trukhin (2019) recently reported that the growth of the spotted seal population in Peter the Great Bay is considered stable, with the population in 2017 estimated as the seasonal maximum of 3,200 to 3,600 individuals.

Only a small portion of Peter the Great Bay lies outside the coastal standoff range and thus meets the geographic criteria. While Peter the Great Bay is an important seasonal reproductive area for the spotted seal, pupping activities are conducted in the northern reaches of the bay, well within the coastal standoff range, and no pupping or reproductive activity occurs in the portion of the bay outside the coastal standoff range. Further, based on currently available information and data, the spotted seal is not known to have increased sensitivity to LF sound; the best hearing sensitivity in-water of the spotted seal is between 2 and 72 kHz (Reichmuth et al., 2013; Sills et al., 2014). Reichmuth et al. (2016) found no TTS in trained spotted seals exposed to LF impulsive sounds that represented single seismic air gun transmissions (which are different from LFA sonar signals). As such, the added protection afforded by an OBIA beyond that of the coastal standoff range is not warranted. For these reasons, the IMMA for Peter the Great Bay is not further considered as an OBIA for SURTASS LFA sonar.

### GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA

**Location in LFA Study Area**: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

**Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range** (12 nmi from emergent land): ☐ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside

**Eligible Areal Extent**: 874.70 $nmi^2$ (3,000.13 $km^2$)

**Source of Official Boundary**: UNEP Convention of Biological Diversity

**Spatial File Type**: GIS shapefile

**Spatial File Source**: UNEP Convention of Biological Diversity;
*</api/v2013/documents/89E24077-6311-490A-398D-5CAE7699E53D/attachments/NP_1_EBSA-GIS%20shapefile.zip>*

**Date Obtained**: 7/7/2018

### LOW FREQUENCY HEARING SENSITIVITY

☐ Species: None

### BIOLOGICAL CRITERIA

**High Density**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification

☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Breeding / Calving**: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Migration**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Foraging:** ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Distinct Small Population**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Critical Habitat**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## SEASONAL EFFECTIVE PERIOD (NONE RECOMMENDED)

☐ Year-round ☐ Seasonal Period (Months Annually):

## OBIA WATCHLIST ADDITION

☐ Yes ☒ No

## SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION

### Peer Reviewed Articles

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Trukhin, A. M. (2019). Spotted seal (*Phoca largha*) population increase in the Peter the Great Bay, Sea of Japan. *Marine Mammal Science*. doi:10.1111/mms.12588. | The Far Eastern Marine Reserve was established in the waters of Peter the Great Bay in 1978, which includes the Rimsky-Korsakov Archipelago, where the principal breeding rookeries of the spotted seal in Peter the Great Bay. Prior to 1996, the breeding sites of spotted seals in Peter Great Bay were not known. Subsequent tagging studies were the basis for the discovery that a significant part of the spotted seal population in the bay, including young-of-year, moved out of the bay at the end of the reproductive and molting period, moving northward to the Sea of Okhotsk as far as Sakhalin and the northeastern shores of Hokkaido, Japan.<br><br>Based on pup counts from 2015 through 2017, the growth rate of the population in Peter the Great Bay is considered stable, with the population estimated to include 3,200 to 3,600 individuals with an annual production about 800 pups in 2017. Trukhin noted the population of spotted seals in the bay has substantially increased since surveys began in the 1960s, and the expansion of the breeding grounds in the bay is likely |

| | |
|---|---|
| | due to the increased density and distribution of breeding females occupying existing breeding areas. Also, breeding females have been observed forming tight aggregations in the breeding areas, which is not typical in ice-breeding spotted seals. |
| Sills, J. M., Southall, B. L., & Reichmuth, C. (2017). The influence of temporally varying noise from seismic air guns on the detection of underwater sounds by seals. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 141*(2), 996–1008. doi:10.1121/1.4976079. | One spotted seal and one ring seal were exposed to the sounds of LF seismic air gun pulses recorded 1 and 30 km from an operational air gun array to test determine if the received signals resulted in masking of LF sound, using psychophysical methods. Masking of LF sound was predicted for both seals by conventional audiometric data/modeling but there were some instances when model was confounded. When the noise background fluctuated more rapidly closer to the onset of the airgun pulse, the ringed seal showed higher signal-to-noise detection ratios, indicating to the authors that the model is confounded by closer to noise onset of the signals and results in overestimation of the extent of masking. |
| Reichmuth, C., Ghoul, A., Sills, J. M., Rouse, A., & Southall, B. L. (2016). Low-frequency temporary threshold shift not observed in spotted or ringed seals exposed to single air gun impulses. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 140*(4), 2646–2658. doi:10.1121/1.4964470. | Underwater hearing thresholds were measured at 100 Hz in two trained spotted and two ringed seals before and immediately following voluntary exposure to impulsive seismic air gun noise. Auditory responses were measured by psychoacoustic and behavioral methods of exposure to increasing sound levels from 165 to 181 dB re $1\mu Pa^2$ sec and peak-to-peak sound pressures from 190 to 207 dB re 1 µPa. Exposure to a single seismic signal did not alter hearing. At higher exposure levels, very mild behavioral responses were noted. No TTS was observed but the authors noted that stronger behavioral responses may result in wild seals. |
| Nesterenko, V.A., & Katin, I.O. (2015). Use of space by immature spotted seals (*Phoca largha*) in Peter the Great Bay (Sea of Japan) breeding area. *Russian Journal of Theriology, 14*,2, 163-170. | The breeding population of spotted seals in Peter the Great Bay is the smallest and is uniquely characterized by coastal reproduction, where spotted seals breed on islands rather than solely on ice floes as do the other breeding populations of spotted seals. Many spotted seals remain in Peter the Great Bay throughout the year and remain connected with the coastal areas.<br><br>In 2009, 170 pups were hot-branded, and their movements followed year-round through 2012. Half of the branded seals were re-sighted at least once during that period, with 34 being re-sighted two to three times. At least once in the 2010 to 2012 period, 99 of the branded seals were observed in Peter the Great Bay, while 71 of the branded seals were never observed again after branding. |

In summer, most immature seals migrate from Peter the Great Bay, but some never leave the bay. Upon returning to the bay the following season, the branded seals used different haulout space than as pups and interacted differently with other seals. The seals in the bay continuously moved from one haulout to another, joining any group of seals with no agonistic behavior. This rotational use of space allows members of a colony to maintain maximum level of contact, which the authors term “social panmixia”.

Nesterenko, V. A., & Katin, I. O. (2010). Cycle of transformation of the spotted seal (*Phoca largha*, Pallas, 1811) onshore associations in Peter the Great Bay of the Sea of Japan. *Russian Journal of Marine Biology, 36*(1), 47-55. doi:10.1134/s1063074010010062.

In Peter the Great Bay, the spotted seal is associated with island haulout sites year-round and forms four types of onshore associations (preliminary, reproductive, molting, and rehabilitative) over an annual period that correspond with phases in the seal’s life cycle.

Spotted seal abundance in the bay begins increasing in October annually, followed by the formation of onshore associations (OAs). The first type of OA formed is the preliminary association, which is formed by the combination of migrant seals returning to the bay and those seals that remained resident in the bay, aggregating at the same haulout locations to form large groups of seals of all age-groups and sexes. This OA lasts through January. Reproductive OAs commence in mid-January and last until mid-April, or about 12 weeks, and are located at different haulout sites in the bay. Reproductive OAs are formed by pregnant females, rutting males, and newborn pups. In February, molting associations begin to form by seals that did not participate in mating or reproduction and occupy the same haulouts as did the preliminary OAs. In March as ice cover breaks up in the bay and seals that have completed their reproductive associations move to the molting groups, and number of seals in the associations rapidly increases. The molting OAs include seals of all age groups and sexes. By late May, the abundance of the molting abundances rapidly decreases as many seals migrate out of the bay and spread along the coast.

Following the completion of molting and migration, the nearly 500 spotted seals that remain in the bay form rehabilitative associations that functions primary as a rest and restorative period. The seals that remain in Peter the Great Bay appear to prefer reef types of haulouts, which likely provide the greatest safety from predators. The number of resident seals in these groups number from 5 to 10, remaining stable throughout the remainder of the season, and includes all age groups and both sexes.

Nesterenko, V.A., & Katin, I.O. (2008). The spotted seal (*Phoca largha*) in the south of the range: The results and problems of research. Pages 386 to 389 in *Marine mammals of the Holoarctic—Collection of scientific papers after the 5th International Conference, Odessa, Ukraine, 2008*.

Spotted seals in Peter the Great Bay are composed of a resident population and a migrating population, with the resident population comprising about 450 seals that disperse throughout the bay and along the Russian coast north of the bay. The migrating population disperse northward as far as Hokkaido, Japan. Surveys of seals in the bay during winter reveal that the population consists of 2,500 individuals with at least 300 pups born annually.

Spotted seals in the bay are associated with shore ice but never have been observed breeding on the ice. Thirty-seven haulouts have been identified in the bay that are distinguishable as one of three geomorphological types: beach (spit or sand bars), bay, and reef. The authors noted that four types of onshore associations form among spotted seals groups during the annual cycle in Peter the Great Bay: preliminary, breeding, molting, and resting. These onshore associations are characterized by a specific composition and number of seals marked by a cyclic redistribution of seals with some of the associations temporally but not spatially overlapping.

Trukhin, A. M., & Mizuno, A. W. (2002). Distribution and abundance of the largha seal (*Phoca largha* Pall.) on the coast of Primorye Region (Russia): A literature review and survey report. *Mammal Study, 27*, 1-14.

Aerial, boat, and land-based surveys of spotted seals in Peter the Great Bay and the surrounding coastal region of Primorye province, Russia along the Sea of Japan were conducted from 1985 through 1999. Spotted seals in Peter the Great Bay breed from mid-January through early April, which is earlier than in the Sea of Okhotsk. The spatial and temporal distribution of spotted seals in Peter the Great Bay in winter depends upon ice conditions. In years when ice cover in the bay is significant, spotted seals are widespread throughout the bay system. However, in years when ice cover is minimal, spotted seals are only narrowly distributed in Amur Bay (northwestern Peter the Great Bay). Seal distribution in the bay was correlated with the location of the ice edge. Seals begin to aggregate in increasing numbers as breeding season approached, with the most dense aggregations occurring during the height of breeding season. Seals aggregated on ice floes for molting, post-breeding, but as the ice dissipated in late February to March, more seals move to shore haulouts to molt. Although some spotted seals do haul out along the coast of the Sea of Japan, the vast majority of spotted seals occupy Peter the Great Bay. Some spotted seals remain year-round in

| | |
|---|---|
| | Peter the Great Bay but tagging of some seals revealed that they migrated as far north as Hokkaido, Japan or the Sea of Okhotsk after the molting period. |

**Subject Matter Experts / e-NGO Reports / Regional Expertise**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Boveng, P. (2016). *Phoca largha. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2016*: e.T17023A45229806. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2016-1.RLTS.T17023A45229806.en>. | IUCN Red List review of the spotted seal including its known distributional range, habitat and ecology, populations, abundances, and threats. Overall the species is listed as least concern on the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species, indicating that overall it is an abundant species with no evidence of recent declines. Overexploitation of prey fishes, particularly in the Sea of Okhotsk and the Bering Sea, pose the largest threat to spotted seals. |

**Committee or Government Reports**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| UNEP CBD. (2016). Ecologically or biologically significant areas: Peter the Great Bay. Retrieved from <https://chm.cbd.int/pdf/documents/marineEbsa/204109/2>. | Overview of EBSA information collected on this marine area along with the criteria justification for designation. Area is characterized by high biodiversity due to the mixture of temperate and subtropical species as two biogeographic regimes intersect in this area. The area exhibits unique benthic communities and is a spawning area for one species of salmon. Large rookeries of spotted seals (incorrectly identified as ringed seals, whose range does not extend this far south) occur in the bay with a population of about 2500 seals. The area is important to birds as it is a stopover on the East Asian-Australasian Flyway. Northern limit of three shark species and spawning ground for one of these shark species. |
| Boveng, P.L., Bengtson, J.L., Buckley, T.W., Cameron, M.F., Dahle, S.P., Kelly, B.P., Megrey, B.A., Overland, J.E., & Williamson, N.J. (2009). *Status review of the spotted seal (Phoca largha).* NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-AFSC-200. National Marine Fisheries Service, Alaska Fisheries Science Center. 169 pages. | The best available data at the time on the status of spotted seal populations and threats to their existence. The species is divided into three DPSs: the Bering Sea, Okhotsk, and Southern DPSs, of which only the Southern DPS is listed under the ESA as threatened. Spotted seals are primarily associated with sea ice during its whelping, nursing, mating, and pelage molt periods, though in some places these functions take place on shore. These functions occur earliest (January to April) in the Yellow Sea, and latest (April to June) in the Bering Sea. Shifting ice conditions, however, may cause a change in habitat use for spotted seals, as has already occurred for the Southern DPS, where breeding now takes place ashore on rocks and small islands. However, scientists |

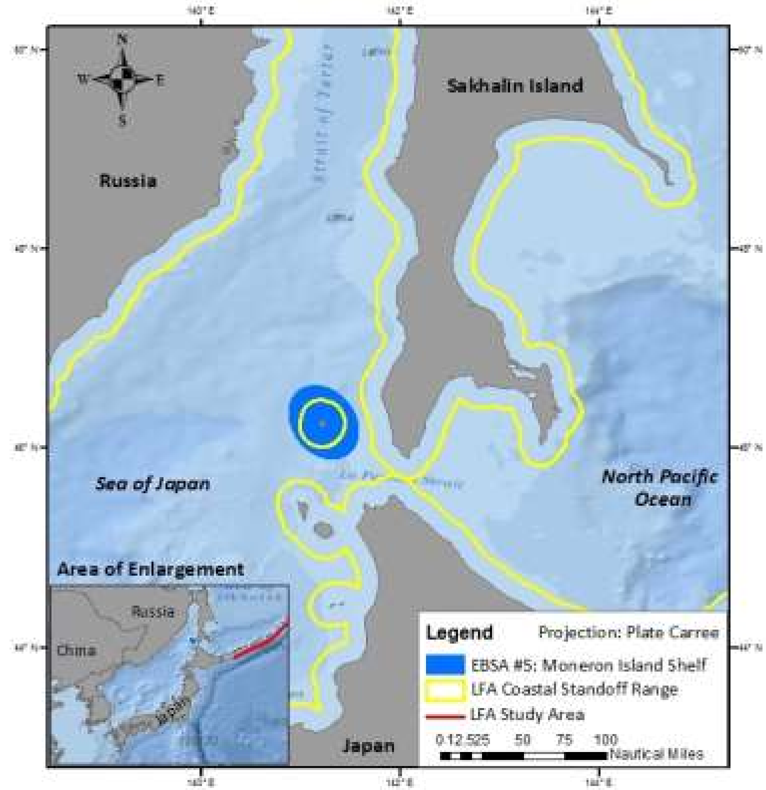
speculate that breeding in non-preferred and scarce habitat in the southern part of the species' range and reduced prey populations in the Yellow Sea likely pose a threat to the continued existence of the Southern DPS.

## Moneron Island Shelf 27

**Marine Region:** Sea of Japan/Strait of Tartar

**Country:** Russia

**Species of Concern:** Steller sea lion




**Marine Area Type**

- ☐ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA**
- ☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**
- ☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**
- ☐ **IUCN Green List Site**
- ☐ **IMMA**
- ☒ **EBSA** (NP #5)
- ☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**
- ☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**
- ☐ **U.S. MPA**
- ☐ **U.S. Critical Habitat**
- ☐ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**Area Overview:**

This insular shelf area surrounding Moneron Island, which lies at the conjunction of the northern Sea of Japan and the Strait of Tartar just southwest of the southwestern tip of Sakhalin Island, is noted for its biological diversity, particularly its benthic biota (UNEP CBD, 2016a). This diversity is due to the influence of the northward flowing warm-water Tsushima Current, which causes localized upwelling and increased nutrient concentrations.

Two haulouts and one small rookery of Steller sea lions are located on Moneron Island, which is the southernmost Russian rookery, and where 26 pups were first counted in 2006 (Burkanov and Loughlin, 2007; Trukhin, 2009). Only two counts of Steller sea lions on Moneron Island are known, with the 1997 count recording 465 sea lions while only 2 sea lions were recorded in 1983 (Burkanov and Loughlin, 2007). Travel Russia (2017) report an abundance of 300 to 350 sea lions with residency from the end of February through May. Reputedly a rookery of bearded seals is also found on Moneron Island (UNEP CBD, 2016a), but no supporting information is available. Trukhin (2009) reported bearded seal haulouts only in the northern Sea of Okhotsk, Sakhalin and Shantar Islands; no reports of a bearded seal rookery on Moneron Island was documented. Travel Russia (2017) reports that up to 1,000 breeding seals migrate to the coast of Moneron Island at the end of December and in early spring; no species of seals are identified and whether these numbers and information represent two seal species.

This area has not been further considered as an OBIA since no evidence exists on the biological importance of this IMMA to any marine mammal species. It does not meet the biological criteria to quality for consideration as an OBIA, and no LF sensitive marine mammal species occurs in the waters surrounding Moneron Island.

## Geographic Criteria

**Location in LFA Study Area**: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

**Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range** (12 nmi from emergent land): ☐ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside

**Eligible Areal Extent**: 818.69 $nmi^2$ (2,808.04 $km^2$)

**Source of Official Boundary**: UNEP Convention of Biological Diversity

**Spatial File Type**: GIS shapefile

**Spatial File Source**: UNEP Convention of Biological Diversity;
*</api/v2013/documents/D8C7AC8F-7B15-D07F-726E-78A0B43BB489/attachments/NP_5_EBSA-GIS%20shapefile.zip>*

**Date Obtained**: 5/7/18

## Low Frequency Hearing Sensitivity

☐ Species: None

## Biological Criteria

**High Density**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Breeding / Calving**: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Migration**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Foraging:** ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Distinct Small Population**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

**Critical Habitat**: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## Seasonal Effective Period (None Recommended)

☐ Year-round ☐ Seasonal Period (Months Annually):

## OBIA Watchlist Addition

☐ Yes ☒ No

## Supporting Documentation

**Peer Reviewed Articles**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Trukhin, A.M. (2009). Current status of pinnipeds in the Sea of Okhotsk. Pages 82-89 in M. Kashiwai & G.A. Kantakov, Eds. *PICES Scientific Report No. 36—Proceedings of the Fourth Workshop on the Okhotsk Sea and Adjacent Areas*. North Pacific Marine Science Organization (PICES), Sidney, B.C., Canada. | Seven species of pinnipeds occur in the Sea of Okhotsk, including two Otariids (Steller sea lion and northern fur seal) and five Phocids (bearded, ringed, spotted, harbor, and ribbon seals). Until 1994, commercial ship-based harvest of all but the harbor seal ended. The last aerial survey of the true seals was conducted in 1990 when harvests were still being conducted, when the populations were estimated to include: 710 ringed, 562 ribbon, 178 spotted, and 95 bearded seals. Fur seals are apparently still harvested.<br><br>When the paper was written, 14 Steller sea lion rookeries existed in Russia, with only three rookeries found outside the Sea of Okhotsk, including one at Moneron Island. The only rookery with an increasing population of Steller sea lions is off the eastern Sakhalin Island at Tyuleny Island.<br><br>Four northern fur seal rookeries exist in Russian waters, one in the Commander Islands, two in the Kuril Islands, and one on Tyuleny Island in the Sea of Okhotsk. Even though fur seals are still harvested, the population on Tyuleny Island still showed a small increase in population. All the Russian fur seals winter in waters of central Sea of Japan on Yamato Bank or in the waters off western Japan.<br><br>Bearded seals were little harvested during the prime sealing years, so their population numbers were little impacted by exploitation. This species is currently harvested in small numbers in the northern Sea of Okhotsk. Trukhin reported haulouts from the northern sea and from Sakhalin and Shantar Islands. Ringed seals are the most numerous and widely distributed seal in the Sea of Okhotsk, with the largest population found in the western part of the sea.<br><br>Two separate populations of spotted seals are formed in the Sea of Okhotsk, spatially segregated in the northern sea and eastern Sakhalin Island. Both populations total 20,000 individuals. Within the Sea of Okhotsk, harbor seals are found only in the Kuril Islands, with an uneven distribution and small |

| | |
|---|---|
| | population of only about 3,000 individuals. The ribbon seal is the least studied of all the seals in the Sea of Okhotsk, but the largest populations are found along eastern Sakhalin Island and in the northern sea on Kashevarov Bank. After reproduction, this seal move into deep, pelagic waters.<br><br>Trukhin noted that ice coverage in the Sea of Okhotsk has been impacted by global warming and although the total impact in the ice-seals is not fully known, the distributions and migrations of seals in the northern Sea of Okhotsk have been affected by late ice formation in the autumn and early breakup in spring. |
| Burkanov, V.N., & Loughlin, T.R. (2007). Distribution and abundance of Steller sea lions, *Eumetopias jubatus*, on the Asian coast, 1720's–2005. *Marine Fisheries Review, 67*, 2, 1-62. | Published and archived records for the past 250 years of Steller sea lions were reviewed to determine the occurrence and abundance of the species along the Asian coast from the Bering Strait to the Korean Peninsula. Over the past 50 years, the northern extent of the Steller sea lion has not changed, but the southern extent has moved northward by ~300 to 500 nmi (500 to 900 km). The number of animals and their distribution has changed on the Commander Islands, Kuril Islands, and Kamchatka Peninsula. No changes in the number of rookeries occurred in the northern Sea of Okhotsk, but a new rookery was established at Tuleny Island on the eastern coast of Sakhalin Island. Present estimated abundance of Steller sea lions in Asia is about 16,000 individuals (including about 5,000 pups), about half of which occur in the Kuril Islands. There were no rookeries on the Commander Islands, but by 1977, a rookery was established, but abundance declined. Steller sea lion abundances declined drastically in Kamchatka, Kuril Islands, and the northern Sea of Okhotsk as well. Numbers at Tuleny Island have increased, however, since establishment of a rookery there during 1983–2005 and by immigration from other sites.<br><br>Steller sea lions were first observed on Moneron Island in the early 20th century and two haulout sites on the island were identified in 1997. A small rookery of Steller sea lions is located on Moneron Island, which is the southernmost Russian rookery, and where some 26 pups were first observed in 2006. |

**Committee or Government Reports**

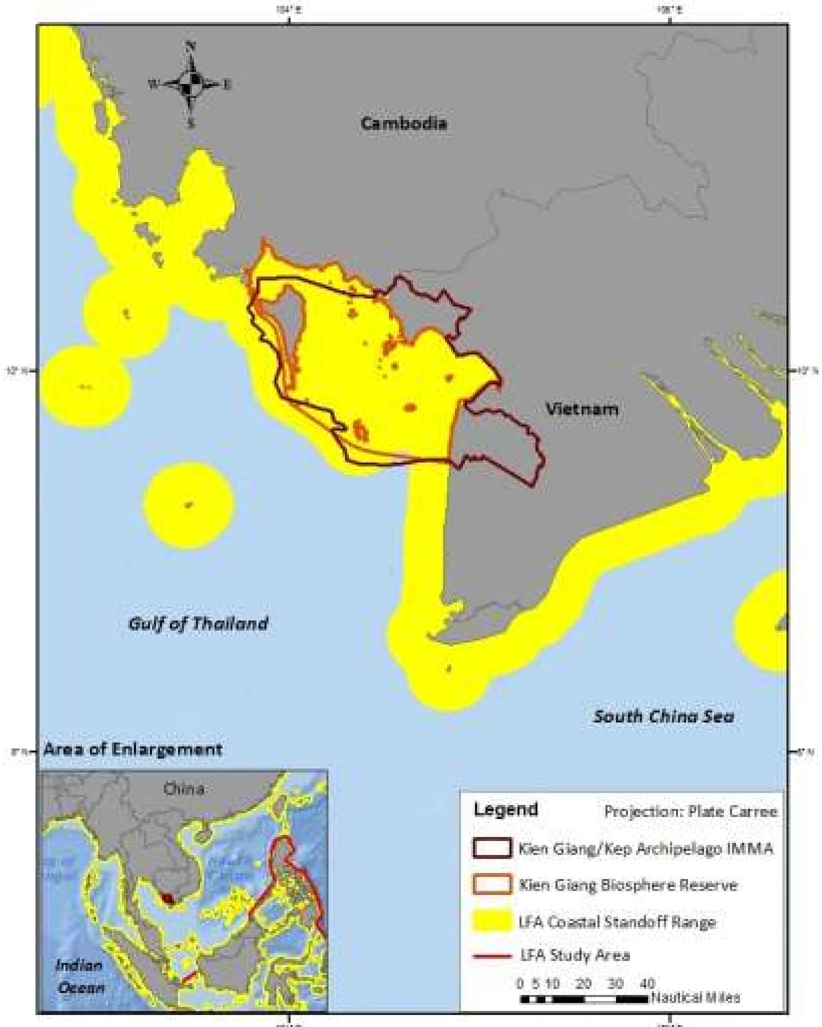
| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| UNEP CBD. (2016a.). Ecologically or biologically significant areas: Moneron Island shelf. Retrieved | Overview of EBSA information collected on this marine area along with the criteria justification for |

| | |
|---|---|
| from <https://chm.cbd.int/pdf/documents/marineEbsa/204113/2>. | designation. All supporting literature is listed in Russian. No citations given in text for Steller sea lion or bearded seal rookery information. |

**Websites / Social Media**

| *Website/Organization* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Russia Travel. (2017). Moneron Island. Retrieved from <https://eng.russia.travel/objects/284306/>. | Description of Moneron Island as a tourist destination and cultural or natural sites of interest. Sea lions and seals have breeding grounds on the coast of the island, with the largest sea lion population (300 to 350 individuals) located near the south/south-west coast of the island from the end of February until May. Up to 1000 seals visit their breeding grounds in the early spring and at the end of December. |

## Kien Giang and Kep Archipelago 28




**MARINE REGION**: Southeast Asia

**COUNTRY:** Vietnam/Cambodia

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:** Bryde's whale

**MARINE AREA TYPE**

☐ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA**

☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**

☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**

☐ **IUCN Green List Site**

☒ **IMMA**

☐ **EBSA**

☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**

☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**

☐ **U.S. MPA**

☐ **U.S. Critical Habitat**

☒ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**AREA OVERVIEW:**

The Kien Giang and Kep Archipelago IMMA covers the coastal waters of Kien Giang province in Vietnam and Kep province in Cambodia. The Kien Giang and Kep Archipelago IMMA was designated primarily to protect the Irrawaddy dolphin but also to conserve the dugong (MMPATT, 2019b). Other marine mammal species, including Indo-Pacific finless porpoises, Indo-Pacific humpback dolphins, pantropical spotted dolphins, false killer whales, finless porpoise, and Bryde's whales have also been reported in these waters, but some of these species are only known from remains in whale temples (Long et al., 2017). Only the Irrawaddy dolphin has been observed in the waters of the Kep Archipelago. Sighting of Bryde's whales by fishermen are the only confirmed sightings of baleen whales in these waters (Long et al., 2017).

Since there are no data or information demonstrating that any biologically important behaviors of marine mammals occur in the waters of the Kien Giang and Kep Archipelago IMMA, the criteria of OBIA biological importance have not beeen met. Accordingly, an OBIA is not designated in the waters of the Kien Giang and Kep Archipelago.

## Geographic Criteria

Location Status: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range (12 nmi from emergent land): ☐ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside

Eligible Areal Extent: 8.8 $nmi^2$ (30 $km^2$)

Source of Official Boundary: IUCN MMPATF

Spatial File Type: GIS Shapefiles

Spatial File Source: IUCN-Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force (MMPATF), 2019. GIS data made available by the IUCN Global Dataset of Important Marine Mammal Areas (IUCN-IMMA), April 2019. Made available under agreement on terms of use by the IUCN Joint SSC/WCPA Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force and accessible at IMMA e-Atlas <www.marinemammalhabitat.org/imma-eatlas>.

Date Obtained: 4/8/2019

## Low Frequency Hearing Sensitivity

☒ Species: Bryde's whale

## Biological Criteria

High Density: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Breeding / Calving: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Migration: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Foraging: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Distinct Small Population: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Critical Habitat: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## Seasonal Effective Period (None Recommended)

☐ Year-round ☐ Seasonal Period (Months Annually):

## OBIA Watchlist Addition

☒ Yes ☐ No

## Supporting Documentation

**Peer Reviewed Articles**

| Paper | Synopsis |
|---|---|
| Beasley, I.L., & Davidson, P.J.A. (2007). Conservation status of marine mammals in Cambodian waters, including seven new cetacean records of occurrence. | The first dedicated, boat-based marine mammal surveys in Cambodian coastal waters were conducted over seven discrete survey periods, spanning February to September 2001. These surveys covered the majority of Cambodian coastal waters, including the waters of the main offshore islands. Eight species of marine mammals were observed, including six species never before reported in Cambodian waters, resulting in a total of 10 cetacean species being reported to occur in Cambodian waters, including the long-beaked common dolphin, short-finned pilot whale, false killer whale, pantropical spotted dolphin, .spinner dolphin, Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin, spinner dolphin, Indo-Pacific humpback dolphin, finless porpoise, and Irrawaddy dolphin. |
| Smith, B. D., Jefferson, T. A., Leatherwood, S., Ho Dao, T., Van Thuoc, C., & Hai Quang, L. (1997). Investigations of marine mammals in Vietnam. *Asian Marine Biology, 14*, 145-172. | Coastal sighting surveys for marine mammals were conducted off south-central Vietnam in March, April, and October of 1995 while surveys in the delta area of the Mekong River were conducted in April of 1996. No cetaceans were observed in the Mekong River and only four cetaceans were observed during the more than 1000-km of survey effort off the coast of Vietnam. However, investigations of the marine mammal remains (bones) that were located in 19 "whale temples" revealed 16 types of marine mammals, one mysticete (humpback whale) and 15 odontocetes. |

**Subject Matter Experts / e-NGO Reports / Regional Expertise**

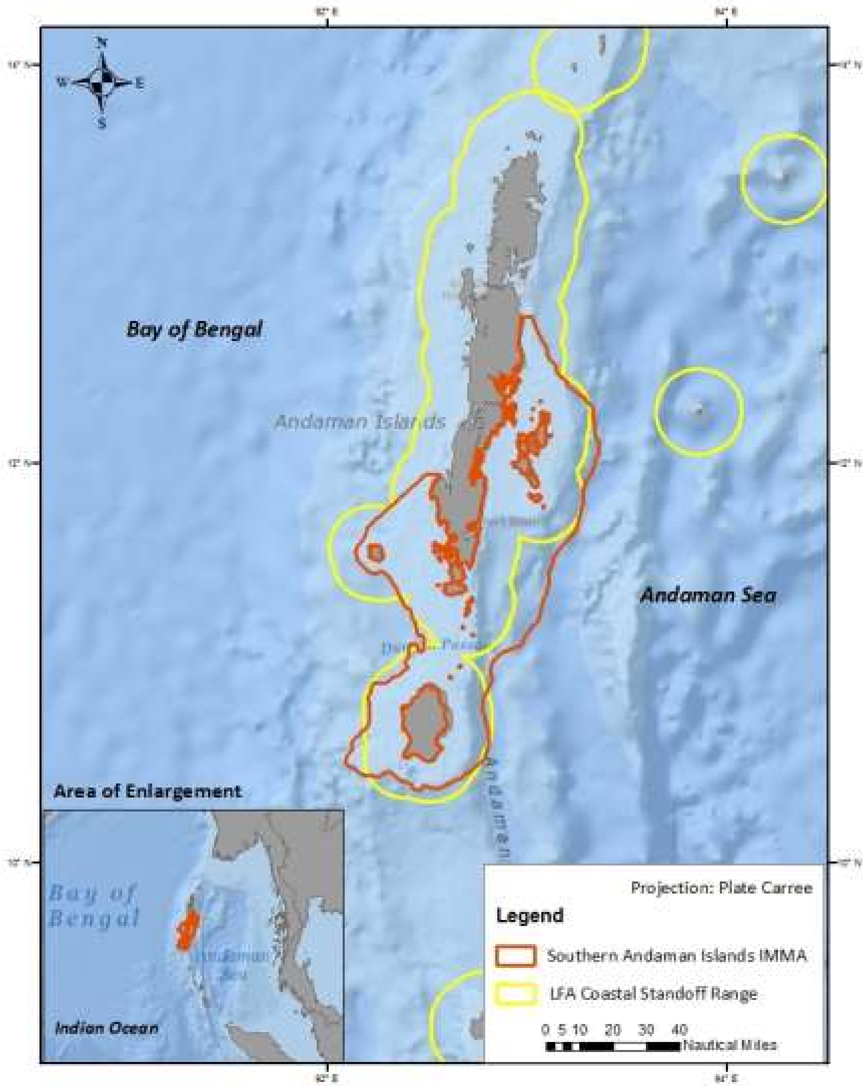
| Paper | Synopsis |
|---|---|
| Long, V., Tho, T.A., Hung, N.N., & Duy, L. (2017). Conservation of cetaceans in Kien Giang Biosphere Reserve, Ken Giang province, Vietnam. Final Report, Rufford Small Grants Foundation. Retrieved from <https://www.rufford.org/files/10664-1%20Detailed%20Final%20Report.pdf>. | Boat line-transect surveys including photo-ID/mark-recapture studies were conducted in the waters of the Kien Giang Biosphere Reserve during November 2015, in particular to determine if Irrawaddy dolphins were still found in the area. Sightings of three cetacean species including the Irrawaddy dolphin, finless porpoise, and Indo-Pacific humpback dolphin were recorded during the surveys and over 500 photos of the Irrawaddy dolphins were taken. This establishes the first photo database of Irrawaddy dolphins in the reserve. All cetaceans were observed in nearshore waters. In addition, the cetacean remains from six whale temples were examined and four species were identified: Irrawaddy dolphin, pygmy sperm whale, Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin, and finless porpoise. A Balaeonopterid skull was also reviewed but couldn't be speciated. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Tubbs, S. 2018. The Cambodian marine mammal conservation project. Annual report. Retrieved from <https://www.researchgate.net/publication/328981858_The_Cambodian_Marine_Mammal_Conservation_Project_Annual_Report>. | Boat surveys in the waters of the Kep Peninsula, Cambodia were conducted between September 2017 and June 2018 and land based visual surveys were also conducted between June and September 2018 of the same waters. In June 2018, a continuous porpoise detector passive acoustic sensor was deployed in shallow waters east of Koh Ach Seh. The sighting surveys observed 29 groups of Irrawaddy dolphins and no results were analyzed from the passive acoustic sensor when the report was written. Irrawaddy dolphins were observed engaging in traveling and foraging behavior. |

**Committee or Government Reports**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| MMPATF. 2019. Kien Giang and Kep Archipelago IMMA. Retrieved from <https://www.marinemammalhabitat.org/portfolio-item/kien-giang-kep-archipelago/>. | The description of the IMMA qualifying marine mammal species and criteria for the waters of the Kien Giang and Kep Archipelago regions. The IMMA was designated to preserve habitat necessary for the recovery of the Irrawaddy dolphin but the dugong, finless porpoise, Indo-Pacific humpback dolphin, pantropical spotted dolphin, false killer whale, and Bryde's whale have also been recorded. |

## Southern Andaman Islands 29




**MARINE REGION:** Northeastern Indian Ocean

**COUNTRY:** Myanmar

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:** Bryde's, Omura's, and sperm whales

**MARINE AREA TYPE**

- ☐ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA**
- ☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**
- ☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**
- ☐ **IUCN Green List Site**
- ☒ **IMMA**
- ☐ **EBSA**
- ☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**
- ☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**
- ☐ **U.S. MPA**
- ☐ **U.S. Critical Habitat**
- ☒ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**AREA OVERVIEW:**

The Andaman and Nicobar Islands are a group of volcanic island systems in the North-eastern Indian Ocean with complex bathymetry, characterized by fringing coral reefs, seagrass beds and mangroves. The IMMA of southern Andaman Islands has 16 species of marine mammals consisting of 15 cetacean species and the dugong (MMPATF, 2019). Although the Southern Andaman Sea IMMA was designated for the resident dugong and Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin, sperm whales and the recently observed Bryde's and Omura's whales have been documented in these waters. Of the 16 species of marine mammals recorded from systematic vessel based surveys, ferry-based sighting surveys, opportunistic sightings by network members and past records, only the Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin and dugong are resident in the nearshore waters of the southern islands but the pantropical spotted, spinner, and Risso's dolphins are commonly observed (Malakar et al., 2015; MMPATF, 2019). Surveys of nearshore waters only observed bottlenose dolphins and one dugong (Malakar et al., 2015). An Omura's whale was observed for the first time in the southern coastal waters of the Andaman Islands in 2015 (MMCNI, 2019). Mohan and Sojitra (2018) compiled all known records of marine mammals in the waters of the Andaman Islands, including interviewing fishermen, and reported seven species of marine mammals, including the sperm, killer, false killer, Bryde's, short-finned pilot, and Blainville's beaked whales in addition to the dugong. A mass stranding of 30 pilot whales occurred in the Andaman Islands in May 2010 (Mohan and Sojitra, 2018).

Since information on the occurrence of Bryde's and Omura's whales is so recent, no scientific evidence exists on the importance of the waters of the Andaman Islands to these baleen whale species. Thus, the IMMA does not meet the biological importance to any marine mammal species. However, this area has been retained on the OBIA Watchlist and would be evaluated as additional information become available.

## Geographic Criteria

Location Status: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range (12 nmi from emergent land): ☐ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside

Eligible Areal Extent:

Source of Official Boundary: IUCN MMPATF

Spatial File Type: GIS Shapefiles

Spatial File Source: IUCN-Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force (MMPATF), 2019. GIS data made available by the IUCN Global Dataset of Important Marine Mammal Areas (IUCN-IMMA), April 2019. Made available under agreement on terms of use by the IUCN Joint SSC/WCPA Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force and accessible at IMMA e-Atlas <www.marinemammalhabitat.org/imma-eatlas>.

Date Obtained: 4/8/2019

## Low Frequency Hearing Sensitivity

☒ Species: Bryde's, Omura's, and sperm whales

## Biological Criteria

High Density: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Breeding / Calving: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Migration: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Foraging: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Distinct Small Population: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification

☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Critical Habitat: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## Seasonal Effective Period (None Recommended)

☐ Year-round ☐ Seasonal Period (Months Annually):

## OBIA Watchlist Addition

☒ Yes ☐ No

## Supporting Documentation

### Peer Reviewed Articles

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Mohan, P.M., & Sojitra, M.U. (2018). Whales and dugong sighting in Andaman Sea, off Andaman and Nicobar Islands. *Open Access Journal of Science, 2*(4), 274-280. | The authors collected all possible records of marine mammals observed in the waters of the Andaman and Nicobar Islands, including interviews with fishermen, reviews of published literature and unpublished government reports, including stranding records. Their collected data showed that seven marine mammal species are found in these waters, including the dugong, sperm whale, Bryde's whale (1 record), killer whale, Blainville's beaked whale (1 record), short-finned pilot whale, and false killer whale (1 record). A mass stranding of 30 short-finned pilot whales occurred May 2010. Four killer and two sperm whales were observed in waters off the Andaman and Nicobar Islands. |
| Malakar, B., Venu, S., Chandrakanta, O., Santhosh Ram, B., Gogoi, N.K., Lakra, R.K., Basumatary, G., Thomas, L., & Nagesh, R. (2015). Recent sightings of marine mammals in Andaman Islands, India. *Journal of Threatened Taxa, 7*(5), 7175-7180. | This study reports opportunistic sightings of marine mammals in nearshore waters between August 2013 and January 2014 in the mid- and central-Andaman region. Seven sightings were recorded during this period, including that of a dugong, which is significant considering its small population size in India and limited data on its distribution and abundance. The rest of the sightings were of 24 dolphins (*Tursiops* sp.). Four sightings were of the same pod of dolphins on different days at the same location. Two sightings occurred during regular coral reef monitoring survey and the other five during fishery resource survey by trawling operations. |

### Subject Matter Experts / e-NGO Reports / Regional Expertise

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|

| | |
|---|---|
| Marine Mammal Conservation Network of India (MMCNI). (2019). Omura's whale. Retrieved from <whale http://www.marinemammals.in/ balaenopteridae/omura-s-whale>. | This database entry accompanied by a photograph of the Omura's whale provides few details about the May 2015 sighting of the whale in the coastal waters off Port Blair, Southern Andaman Island. |
| Mankeshwar, M. (2018). Cetacean diversity, abundance and space use in the waters of Andaman Islands, India. Final report to The Rufford Foundation. Retrieved from <https://www.rufford.org /projects/mahi_mankeshwar>. | This informal report to the granting agency provides only a basic overview of the funded project, which entailed collecting sighting data from January to November 2018 from boat-based surveys as well as ferry-based opportunistic sightings to understand the cetacean population of the area and their population trends. The author notes that 10 cetacean species have been reported opportunistically but that their study identified 15 species of cetaceans in these waters, but no species were listed, although photographs of a Risso's dolphin and false killer whale were included. |

**Committee or Government Reports**

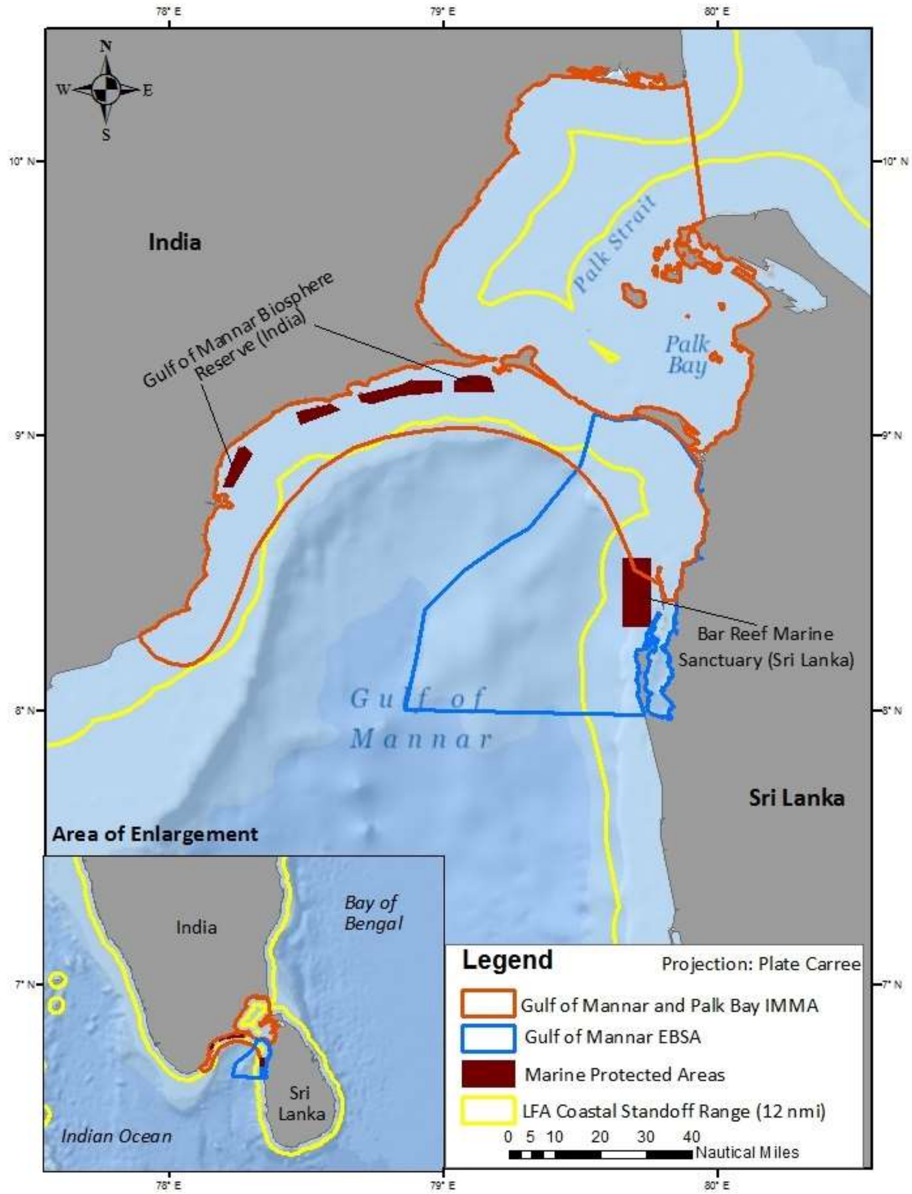
| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| MMPATF. (2019). Southern Andaman Islands IMMA. Retrieved from <https://www.marinemammalhabitat .org/portfolio-item/southern-andaman-islands/>. | Summarization of the marine mammal species and criteria for designation of the IMMA, which was designated to protect the dugong. In addition, 15 cetacean species have also been reported in the waters of the southern Andaman Islands but only the dugong and Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin are resident to these waters, but pantropical spotted, spinner, and Risso's dolphins and short-finned pilot whales are commonly observed. The first reports of Fraser's dolphin as well as Omura's and false killer whales were recently reported in these waters. |

## Gulf of Mannar and Palk Bay 30

**MARINE REGION:** North Central Indian Ocean

**COUNTRY:** India and Sri Lanka

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:** Dugong, sperm and baleen whales




**MARINE AREA TYPE**

- ☐ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA**
- ☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**
- ☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**
- ☐ **IUCN Green List Site**
- ☒ **IMMA**
- ☒ **EBSA** (NEIO #5)
- ☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**
- ☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**
- ☐ **U.S. MPA**
- ☐ **U.S. Critical Habitat**
- ☒ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**AREA OVERVIEW:**

The Gulf of Mannar, located between India and Sri Lanka, is a biologically and ecologically diverse coastal region that supports a large, remnant population of dugongs (MMPAT, 2019; UNEP CBD, 2017i). Although both the EBSA for the Gulf of Mannar as well as the IMMA for the gulf and adjacent Palk Bay were both designated to protect the population of dugongs, 15 other species of marine mammals have been reported from the Gulf of Mannar, including minke, blue, sei, and sperm whales, although some of these species are only known from strandings.

The dugong and the Indo-Pacific finless porpoise are the most commonly occurring marine mammals in the waters of northern gulf, including both the IMMA and EBSA. Sighting surveys and stranding records from the waters of Bar Reef Marine Sanctuary, Gulf of Mannar Biosphere Reserve, and the northern gulf document the occurrence of minke, blue, humpback, and sperm whales, with these whales having been described as migrating, and blue and sperm whales only observed in the inter-monsoonal periods (Ilangakoon, 2006 and 2012; Jayasiri and Haputhantri, 2015). Strandings of at least one blue, minke, sei, and sperm whales have been reported from the northern gulf (Ilangakoon, 2012; Kannaiyan and Venkataraman, 2008; Sutaria et al., 2017).

The Gulf of Mannar and Palk Bay EBSA and IMMA are not further considered as an OBIA for SURTASS LFA sonar because they do not meet the biological criteria for OBIA designation. The area is retained on the OBIA Watchlist for future reevaluation as additional information on the biological important behaviors occuring in the area becomes available.

## GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA

Location Status: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range (12 nmi from emergent land): EBSA: ☐ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside
IMMA: ☐ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside

Eligible Areal Extent:

Source of Official Boundary: EBSA: UNEP Convention of Biological Diversity *(/api/v2013/documents/034D170A-0871-BD13-CDD1-B034C8FD7907/attachments/NEIO_5_EBSA.zip)*

IMMA: IUCN-Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force (MMPATF), 2019. GIS data made available by the IUCN Global Dataset of Important Marine Mammal Areas (IUCN-IMMA), April 2019. Made available under agreement on terms of use by the IUCN Joint SSC/WCPA Marine Mammal Protected Areas Task Force and accessible at IMMA e-Atlas <www.marinemammalhabitat.org/imma-eatlas>.

Spatial File Type: GIS Shapefiles

Spatial File Source: EBSA: UNEP CBD; IMMA: IUCN MMPATF

Date Obtained: EBSA: 7/18/18; IMMA: 4/8/19

## LOW FREQUENCY HEARING SENSITIVITY

☒ Species: Blue, minke, humpback, and sperm whales

## BIOLOGICAL CRITERIA

High Density: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Breeding / Calving: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Migration: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data (sparse evidence)

Foraging: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Distinct Small Population: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Critical Habitat: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## Seasonal Effective Period (None Recommended)

☐ Year-round ☐ Seasonal Period (Months Annually):

## OBIA Watchlist Addition

☒ Yes ☐ No

## Supporting Documentation

### Peer Reviewed Articles

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Ilangakoon, A.D. (2012). A review of cetacean research and conservation in Sri Lanka. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management 12*(2), 177–183. | This paper documents the three decades of sporadic and discontinuous research conducted on cetaceans in the waters of Sri Lanka. Sri Lanka's waters have high cetacean species richness with 27 species recorded to date and year-round abundance. The author reports that minke whales appear to occur mainly in the shallower northwestern waters of the Gulf of Mannar, based on recorded strandings and sightings. |
| Ilangakoon, A.D. (2006). Cetacean occurrence and distribution around the Bar Reef Marine Sanctuary, north-west Sri Lanka. *Journal of the National Science Foundation of Sri Lanka, 34*(3), 149-154. | A dedicated marine mammal sighting survey was conducted in 2004 to 2005 in the waters of the Bar Reef Marine Sanctuary of Sri Lanka. Boat surveys were carried out each month following a pre-planned transect line and all cetacean sightings in the Sanctuary, the adjacent Puttalam Lagoon and deeper waters beyond the sanctuary were recorded. During the study, a total of 33 sightings of eight cetacean species were documented year-round. |

### Subject Matter Experts / e-NGO Reports / Regional Expertise

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Sutaria, D., Sule, M., Jog, K., Bopardikar, I., Jamalabad, A., & Panicker, D. (2017). Baleen whale records from India. Paper SC/67A/CMP/03Rev1 presented to the Scientific Committee of the International Whaling Commission. Retrieved from <https://arabiansea | Records of Bryde's, humpback, and blue whale sightings and strandings from the coast of India are documented in this report to the IWC; reports from fishermen are also included. Blue and Bryde's whales are reported from all waters of India but the |

| | |
|---|---|
| whalenetworkdotorg.files.wordpress.com/2017/05/sc_67a_cmp_03_rev1_baleen-whale-records-from-india.pdf>. | humpback whale is only found along western India. Numerous strandings of baleen whales in the Gulf of Mannar are reported, including one sei whale. |
| Jayasiri, H.B., & Haputhantri, S.S.K. (2015). Gulf of Mannar, Sri Lanka; Submission of scientific information to describe areas meeting scientific criteria for ecologically or biologically significant marine areas. Submitted to North-East Indian Ocean Regional Workshop to facilitate the description of ecologically or biologically significant marine areas. Retrieved from <https://www.cbd.int/doc/meetings/mar/ebsaws-2015-01/other/ebsaws-2015-01-srilanka-en.pdf>. | These authors submitted information on the Gulf of Mannar to justify its designation as an EBSA. They noted that the Gulf of Mannar is one of the most biologically diverse coastal regions with over 3,600 species of plants and animals. The first biosphere reserve in the South-East Asian region is located in the gulf. It is also among the largest remaining feeding grounds for the endangered dugong. Ten other species of marine mammals have been reported from the waters of the gulf, including fin, humpback, minke, false killer, and sperm whales as well as seven dolphin species. |
| Kannaiyan, S., & Venkataraman, K., Eds. (2008). Biodiversity conservation in the Gulf of Mannar Biosphere Reserve. Chennai, India: National Biodiversity Authority. Retrieved from <https://www.academia.edu/27256848/Biodiversity-Conservation-in-Gulf-of-Mannar-Biosphere-Reserve.pdf>. | This compilation of materials presented at an international workshop on the conservation and sustainability of the Gulf of Mannar Biosphere Reserve, India. Brief information is presented on the number of marine mammal species occurring in the reserve (16 species). Most of the marine mammal species are described as oceanic species with strandings occurring. Dugong and dolphins are noted as being the most common marine mammal in the reserve, but that baleen whales have also been observed. |

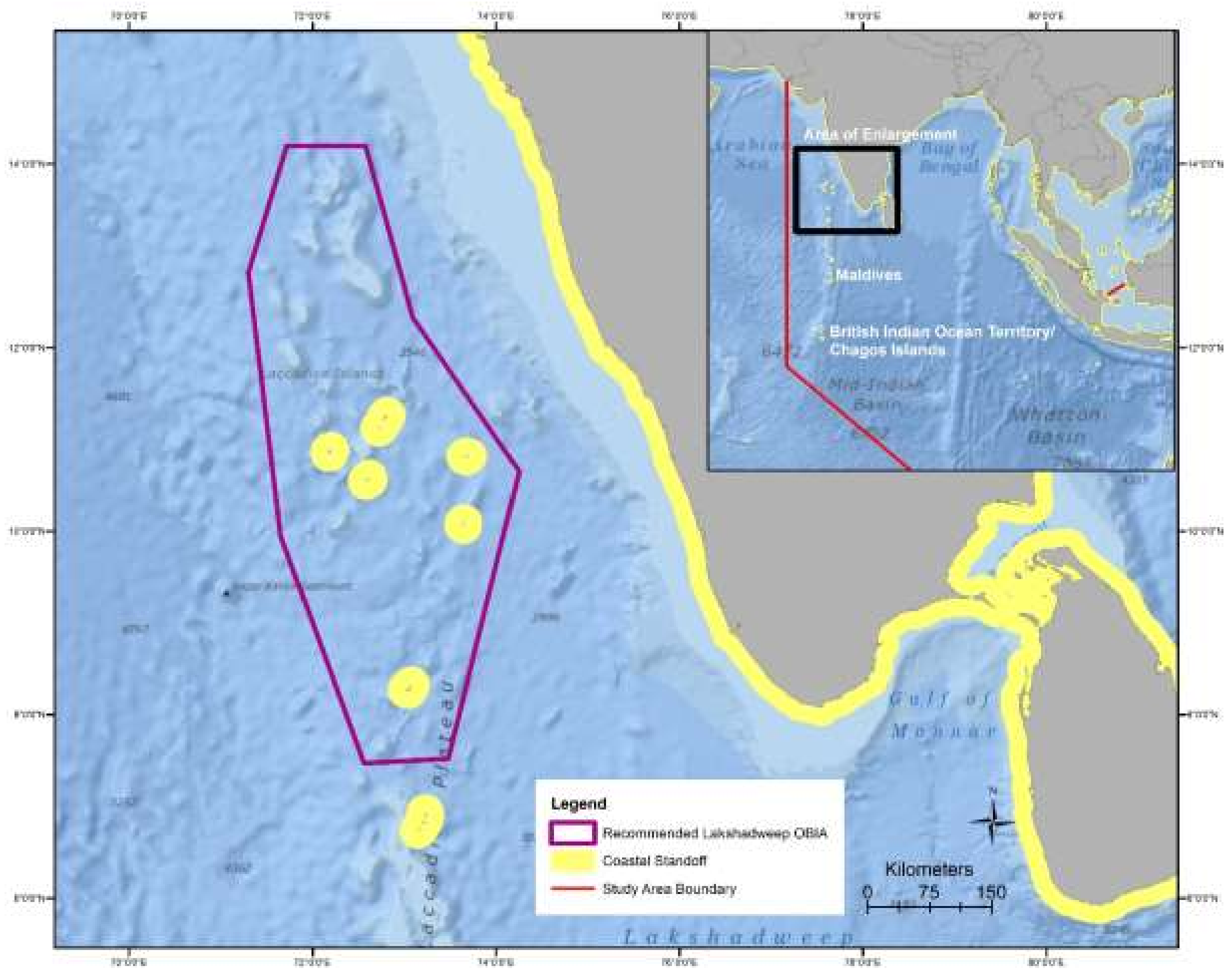
**Committee or Government Reports**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| MMPAT. (2019a). Gulf of Mannar and Palk Bay IMMA. Retrieved from <https://www.marinemammalhabitat.org/portfolio-item/gulf-mannar-palk-bay/>. | Criteria and justification provided for designation as an IMMA for the remnant but still breeding population of dugongs. |
| UNEP CBD. (2017i). Ecologically or biologically significant areas: Coastal and offshore area of the Gulf of Mannar. Retrieved from <https://chm.cbd.int/pdf/documents/marineEbsa/237765/1>. | Overview of EBSA information collected on this marine area along with the criteria justification for designation. |

**Surveys**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| See Ilangakoon (2006) above | |

## Lakshadweep Archipelago 31




**Marine Region:** Central Indian Ocean

**Country:** India

**Species of Concern:** Sperm whale

**Marine Area Type**

☐ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA**

☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**

☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**

☐ **IUCN Green List Site**

☐ **IMMA**

☐ **EBSA**

☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**

☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**

☐ **U.S. MPA**

☐ **U.S. Critical Habitat**

☒ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**AREA OVERVIEW:**

The Lakshadweep Archipelago is a group of islands located 108 to 238 nmi (200 to 440 km) off the southwest coast of India. The archipelago is a Union Territory of India with a total surface area of only 9.3 $nmi^2$ (32 $km^2$). Only ten of the islands are inhabited. The main occupations are fishing and coconut cultivation, with tuna as the primary export. The Lakshadweep Archipelago forms a terrestrial ecoregion with the Maldives and the Chagos, as they are parts of an island/seamount chain in the mid-Indian Ocean stretching from the Chagos Islands in the south to the Lakshadweep Archipelago in the north, as can be seen on the inset map.

Very few scientific studies have occurred around the Lakshadweep Archipelago, resulting in poor knowledge about the marine mammals that may be found in the region. Panicker et al. (2017) conducted platform-of-opportunity, line-transect surveys in which eight toothed whales and one baleen whale (*Balaenoptera* sp., considered most likely to be a pygmy blue or fin whale) were sighted. The most abundance species were, in order, spinner dolphins and short-finned pilot whales. During both on- and off-efforts, 65 unidentified cetaceans were detected. Kumar et al. (2018) presented the first confirmed record of the stranding of a dwarf sperm whale (*Kogia sima*) in Indian waters, which occurred on the Lakshadweep Archipelago. The Marine Mammal Conservation Network of India (www.marinemammals.in/index.php/database/sightings-strandings) includes records of six strandings, one sighting, and one animal taken by whaling of sperm whales; two strandings and one sighting of Bryde's whales; one stranding of a blue whale; and one sighting that was determined to most likely be a minke whale.

The Lakshadweep Archipelago region does not meet the biological criteria for OBIA selection. Without further information on the biological importance of this region to marine mammals, it cannot be considered for an OBIA but is added to the OBIA Watchlist and would be reevaluated should additional information become available to verify the importance of this region for marine mammals.

**GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA**

Location Status: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range (12 nmi from emergent land): ☒ Entirely Outside
☐ Partially Outside

Eligible Areal Extent:

Source of Official Boundary: NRDC Public Comments on MMPA Proposed Rule

Spatial File Type: GIS shapefile

Spatial File Source: Navy created

Date Obtained: 3/17/19

**LOW FREQUENCY HEARING SENSITIVITY**

☒ Species: Sperm whale

**BIOLOGICAL CRITERIA**

High Density: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification

☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Breeding / Calving: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification

☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Migration: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification

☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Foraging: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification

☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Distinct Small Population: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification

☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Critical Habitat: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification

☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## Seasonal Effective Period (None Recommended)

☐ Year-round ☐ Seasonal Period (Months Annually):

## OBIA Watchlist Addition

☒ Yes ☐ No

## Supporting Documentation

### Peer Reviewed Articles

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Kumar, K. V. A., Baby, S. T., Dhaneesh, K. V., Manjebrayakath, H., Saravanane, N., & Sudhakar, M. (2019). A stranding record of dwarf sperm whale *Kogia sima* in Lakshadweep Archipelago, India and its genetic analogy by molecular phylogeny. *Thalassas: An International Journal of Marine Sciences, 35*(1), 239-245. doi: 10.1007/s41208-018-0115-9 | This study presents the first confirmed record of dwarf sperm whale from Indian waters. The specimen was found on the west coast of Agatti Island in Lakshadweep Archipelago and was examined by skull morphology and molecular identification. |

### Subject Matter Experts / e-NGO Reports / Regional Expertise

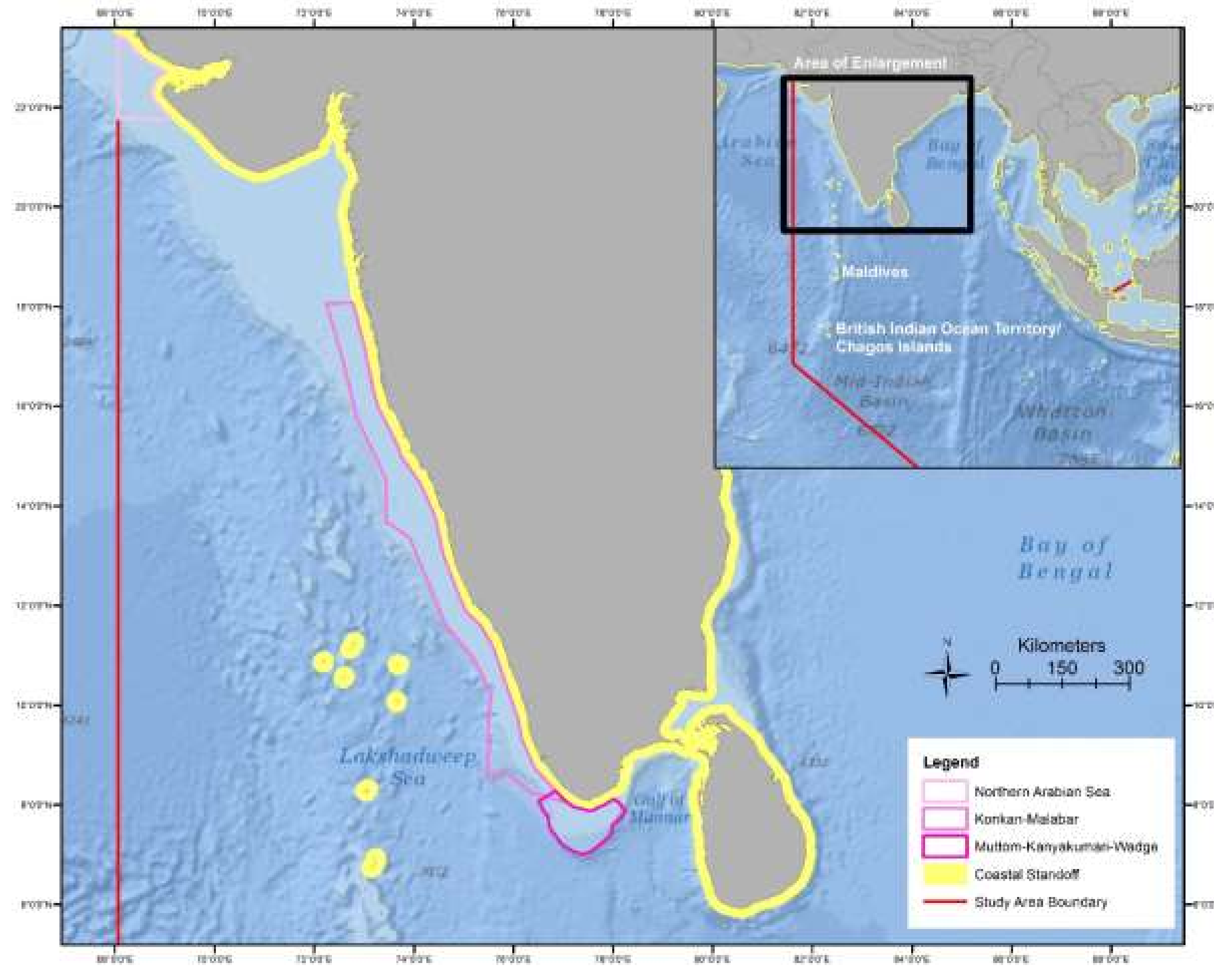
| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Panicker, D. (2017). Cetacean diversity and distribution in the Lakshadweep Islands, India. Final report to the Rufford Foundation Small Grants. Rufford Small Grant reference # 16159-2. Retrieved from <https://www.rufford.org/files/16159-2%20Final%20Report.pdf>. | Panicker conducted 3,880.33 km (2,095.2 nmi) of line-transect surveys around the Lakshadweep Archipelago. During the surveys, eight toothed whales and one baleen (*Balaenoptera* sp., most likely a pygmy blue or fin whale) were documented. The most abundant species were spinner dolphins, followed by short-finned pilot whales. There were 65 unidentified sightings during both on- and off-effort periods of the |

| | |
|---|---|
| | surveys. The author also conducted interviews with 34 participants from fishing communities and 6 participants from administrative or scientific staff. 100% of respondents had come across dolphins and 94.9% had come across whales in Lakshadweep waters. All respondents stated that dolphin surface activity was used as an indicator of possible tuna shoals. |

**Websites / Social Media**

| *Website/Organization* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Marine Mammal Conservation Network of India. (2019). Retrieved from <www.marinemammals.in /index.php/database/sightings-strandings>. | The sightings and strandings database includes records of six strandings, one sighting, and one animal taken by whaling of sperm whales; two strandings and one sighting of Bryde's whales; one stranding of a blue whale; and one sighting that was most likely determined to be a minke whale. |

## West and South Coasts of India 32




**MARINE REGION:** Central Indian Ocean

**COUNTRY:** India

**SPECIES OF CONCERN:** Humpback (Arabian Sea DPS), blue, and Bryde's whales

**MARINE AREA TYPE:**

- ☐ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA**
- ☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**
- ☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**
- ☐ **IUCN Green List Site**
- ☐ **IMMA**
- ☐ **EBSA**
- ☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**
- ☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**
- ☐ **U.S. MPA**
- ☐ **U.S. Critical Habitat**
- ☒ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**AREA OVERVIEW:**

The Arabian Sea Distinct Population Segment (DPS) of humpback whales is known to breed and feed along the coast of Oman in the western Indian Ocean (Corkeron et al., 2011; Bettridge et al., 2015). However, historical records (Mikhalev, 1997), along with recent results from a tagging study (IUCN-SSC, 2018) and passive acoustic detections (Madhusudhana et al., 2018), indicate that Arabian Sea humpback whales may also occur in the eastern Arabian Sea along the coasts of Pakistan and India. Three OBIAs were recommended within the SURTASS LFA sonar study area, which encompasses the west and south coast of India, including one in the Northern Arabian Sea (north of north of 21°50’N from the western coast of India westward to the boundary of the SURTASS LFA study area), one along the coast of west coast of India from Konkan and Malabar out to 60 km (32.4 nmi) from shore, and one along the south coast of India from Muttom to Kanyakumari out to include Wadge Bank.

The evidence for the presence of humpback whales along the western and southern coast of India is scarce, with one tagged animal spending 45 days in the region and ten passive acoustic detections of humpback whale songs from mid-January through mid-March, with no indication of the number of individuals represented. Although humpback whales periodically and only rarely appear to occur in the waters of western and southern India, no information on the biological importance of these waters to the humpback whale is known. Since the biological criteria for OBIA designation have not been met, no OBIA would be designated in western or southern Indian waters at this time, but this region has been added to the OBIA Watchlist and would be reassessed in the future should additional information become available.

**GEOGRAPHIC CRITERIA**

Location Status: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range (12 nmi from emergent land): ☐ Entirely Outside
☒ Partially Outside

Eligible Areal Extent:

Source of Official Boundary: NRDC Public Comments MMPA Proposed Rule and Draft SEIS/SOEIS

Spatial File Type: GIS shapefile

Spatial File Source: Navy created

Date Obtained: 2/2/2016

**LOW FREQUENCY HEARING SENSITIVITY**

☒ Species: Humpback (Arabian Sea DPS), blue, and Bryde’s whales

**BIOLOGICAL CRITERIA**

High Density: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Breeding / Calving: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Migration: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Foraging: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Distinct Small Population: ☒ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☐ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Critical Habitat: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

## Seasonal Effective Period (None Recommended)

☐ Year-round ☐ Seasonal Period (Months Annually):

## OBIA Watchlist Addition

☒ Yes ☐ No

## Supporting Documentation

### Peer Reviewed Articles

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Madhusudhana, S. K., Chakraborty, B., & Latha, G. (2018). Humpback whale singing activity off the Goan coast in the Eastern Arabian Sea. *Bioacoustics*, 1-16. | Humpback whale vocalizations (singing) over several days were detected using passive acoustic data collection methods (autonomous logger) in a shallow-water site off the eastern coast of Grande Island (Goa, India). While the authors have not directly established an association between the songs recorded and the Arabian Sea population, cursory comparison of vocalizations from this study with those collected from Oman in the same year indicate the same themes were present in songs in the two areas. Authors note further analysis is required, and that these findings may support previous findings by Whitehead (1985) showing similarity of song content between historical song samples in Oman and Sri Lanka. |
| Mahanty, M. M., Latha, G., & Thirunavukkarasu, A. (2015). Analysis of humpback whale sounds in shallow waters of the Southeastern Arabian Sea: An indication of breeding habitat. *Journal of Biosciences*, *40*(2), 407-417. | Ten humpback whale vocalizations (singing) were detected from mid-January to mid-March using an autonomous ambient noise measurement system deployed in shallow waters of the Southeastern Arabian Sea (southern Kerala coast) from January to May 2011. Arabian Sea humpback whales breed and calve in the winter months (coinciding with other northern hemisphere humpback whales). Authors suggest that these recordings indicate that the Southeast Arabian Sea is a breeding ground for humpback whales. |
| Pomilla, C., Amaral, A. R., Collins, T., Minton, G., Findlay, K., Leslie, M. S., ... & Rosenbaum, H. (2014). The world's most isolated and distinct whale | In order to understand the genetic relationship between Arabian Sea humpback whale population and other humpback whale populations, authors analyzed |

| | |
|---|---|
| population? Humpback whales of the Arabian Sea. *PLoS ONE,* 9(12), e114162. | 11 microsatellites from 67 Arabian Sea humpback whales and compared to similar datasets for northern and southern hemisphere humpback whales. Results indicate that the Arabian Sea population is highly distinct from other populations. Data suggest it originated from the Southern Indian Ocean, that it has been isolated for ~70,000 years, and that low genetic diversity exists within the population (due to recent bottlenecks). The authors consider it unlikely that migrants currently exchange between the Arabian Sea and Southern Indian Ocean populations. |
| Corkeron, P. J., Minton, G., Collins, T., Findlay, K., Willson, A., & Baldwin, R. (2011). Spatial models of sparse data to inform cetacean conservation planning: an example from Oman. *Endangered Species Research, 15*(1), 39-52. doi: 10.3354/esr00367. | The authors present space-use modeling (spatial eigenvector mapping built on generalized linear models, SEVM-GLMs) for instances when data are not appropriate for traditional habitat modeling. Using photo-identification observations conducted in regions where humpback whales are believed to occur or where it was logistically feasible to sample along the Oman coast, they determined that the clumped distribution of humpback whales along part of the Dhofar coast and the Hallaniyat Islands is not a sampling artefact, but a result of the whales' ranging behavior. This suggests that establishing marine protected areas in these high-use areas along the Oman coast could be very effective at reducing anthropogenic impacts. |
| Minton, G. T. J. Q., Collins, T., Findlay, K. P., Ersts, P. J., Rosenbaum, H. C., Berggren, P., & Baldwin, R. (2011). Seasonal distribution, abundance, habitat use and population identity of humpback whales in Oman. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, Special Issue on Southern Hemisphere Humpback Whales, 3*, 185-198. | During 12 small-boat surveys off the coast of Oman from February 2000 to November 2004, humpback whales were observed in Dhofar and Gulf of Masirah. Foraging was observed in October/November and February March, but authors noted that behavior and environmental observations indicated that the Gulf of Masirah is primarily an important foraging ground, while the Dhofar region may be a breeding area (though no recent observations of mother-calf pairs or competitive groups may indicate that other primary mating, calving, and nursing areas are yet to be identified). Photo-identification yielded a high-rate of resightings between years and survey areas indicating year-round residence of whales off the coast of Oman. Authors estimated the population to have <100 individuals but note the estimate may be impacted by small sample sizes and various sources of bias. Comparison of the photo-identification catalogue to those from Zanzibar, Antongil Bay (Madagascar) and Mayoote and the Geyser Atoll (Comoros Archipelago) yielded no matches between individuals. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Braulik, G. T., Ranjbar, S., Owfi, F., Aminrad, T., Dakhteh, S. M. H., Kamrani, E., & Mohsenizadeh, F. (2010). Marine mammal records from Iran. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 11*(1), 49-63. | Authors compiled marine mammal records in Iran and found records of 26 mysticetes. Of these, 10 were tentatively identified as Bryde's whales, 1 as a possible fin whale, 3 as humpback whales and the remainder were not identified to the species level. |
| Mikhalev, Y. A. (1997). Humpback whales *Megaptera novaeangliae* in the Arabian Sea. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 149*, 13-21. | Study reports Arabian Sea humpback whale information based upon whaling and observations collected by the Soviet Union (primarily in November, 1966). A total of 238 humpbacks were killed off the coasts of Oman, Pakistan, and northwestern India in November 1966, and an additional 5 whales were killed in 1965. Examinations of fetuses indicated the reproductive cycle of Arabian Sea humpbacks coincides with other northern hemisphere humpback whales. Data indicated that Arabian Sea humpback whales constitute a discrete population and remain in tropical waters of the Arabian Sea year-round. |

**Committee or Government Reports**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Srinivasan, M., Stafford, K., Yin, S., Vázquez, E., Baumgartner, M., Kumar, A., Panicker, D., Banerjee, A., & Saravanane, N. (2018). Marine Mammal Research in India Symposium – Part 2 Multispecies Cetacean Line-Transect Survey Training off Kochi, India 15-18 December 2017 (Cruise# 368). Final Cruise Report. (pp. 20): U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-F/SPO-182 | A multispecies cetacean systematic survey training was conducted from December 15 to 18, 2017, off Kochi, India. Ten participants were trained to conduct broad-scale, line-transect surveys to systematically collect, record, and report cetacean visual data. To the authors' knowledge, this is the first systematic offshore survey of cetaceans off the west coast of India. During the three-day cruise, one sighting of Bryde's/Omura's whale was recorded, along with one sighting each of Risso's dolphin, spinner dolphin, pilot whale, common bottlenose dolphin, and pantropical spotted dolphin, as well as five unidentified dolphin sightings and one unidentified whale sighting. |
| Sutaria, D. (2018). Baleen whales reports from the eastern Arabian Sea based on interview surveys and stranding reports: update from India. SC/67B/CMP/15. International Whaling Commission. | This note is a continuation of Sutaria et al. (2016) and Sutaria et al. (2017) (IWC reports on baleen whales off the west coast of India from 2001-2017). Authors add to previous data that in 2017 and 2018 seven unidentified baleen whales, two Bryde's whales, and two humpback whales were reported on the west coast of India. One humpback whale stranded live in Gujarat, one was recorded singing off the coast of Goa (reported in Madhusudhana et al., 2018), and one satellite tagged whale spent several days off the coast of Kerala (see IUCN-SSC webpage below). In an effort to identify baleen whale hotsports along the coast, authors are conducting ongoing interviews with local |

fishers. Based on these interviews, they have identified seven potential hotspots for humpback whales. Future work in 2018-2020 will include systematic vessel-based surveys using dipping hydrophone in four of the seven hotspots.

| | |
|---|---|
| Bettridge, S., Baker, C. S., Barlow, J., Clapham, P. J., Ford, M., Gouveia, D., . . . & Wade, P. R. (2015). Status review of the humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) under the Endangered Species Act. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-540: U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Southwest Fisheries Science Center. | As part of the comprehensive review of the status of humpback whales as the basis for possible revisions under the ESA, all available information and data on humpback whales were compiled by the Humpback Biological Review Team. The team differentiated the global populations of humpback whales into 15 distinct population segments (DPSs) based on the primary breeding location of the associated population. Descriptions of the breeding and foraging ranges of each DPS are included in the status review. The risk of each DPS for extinction was assessed as the subsequent basis for designation of each DPS's status under the ESA.<br><br>Bettridge et al. describe the Arabian Sea DPS as including those whales breeding and feeding in tropical waters year-round along the coast of Oman and notes that historical records from the eastern Arabian Sea along the coasts of Pakistan and India indicate its range may also include these areas. Bettridge et al. considered the population discrete because its breeding and feeding distribution is geographically separated from other humpback whale breeding distributions, and because of its marked degree of genetic differentiation from other populations in the Southern Hemisphere. Based on mark-recapture studies from 2000-2004, the population was estimated to have 82 individuals (95% C.I.: 60-111) and is thought to face unique threats in part because they do not extensively migrate between breeding and feeding areas and therefore breed and feed in a relatively constrained geographic area. |
| Brownell, R.L., de Vos, A., Ilangakoon, A. D. (2015) Large whale strandings from Sri Lanka between 1889 and 2014. SC/67A/HIM/11. International Whaling Commission. | Authors report standing data for all large whales in Sri Lanka from 1889- 2014. During this time only two humpbacks whales were recorded (1981 and 1989). |
| Willson, A., Baldwin, R., Collins, T., Godley, B. J., Minton, G., al Harthi, S., Pikesley, S., & Witt, M. J. (2015). Preliminary ensemble ecological niche modelling of Arabian Sea humpback whale vessel sightings and satellite telemetry data: Report to the International Whaling Commission. SC/67A/CMP/15. | Sightings (n=99) and locations from satellite tags of nine humpback whales (n=913) were input into a mixed modeling framework to predict habitat suitability for Arabian Sea humpback whales across the Northern Indian Ocean. Distance from the 200 m (656 ft) isobath, sea surface temperature, and net primary productivity were the primary covariates |

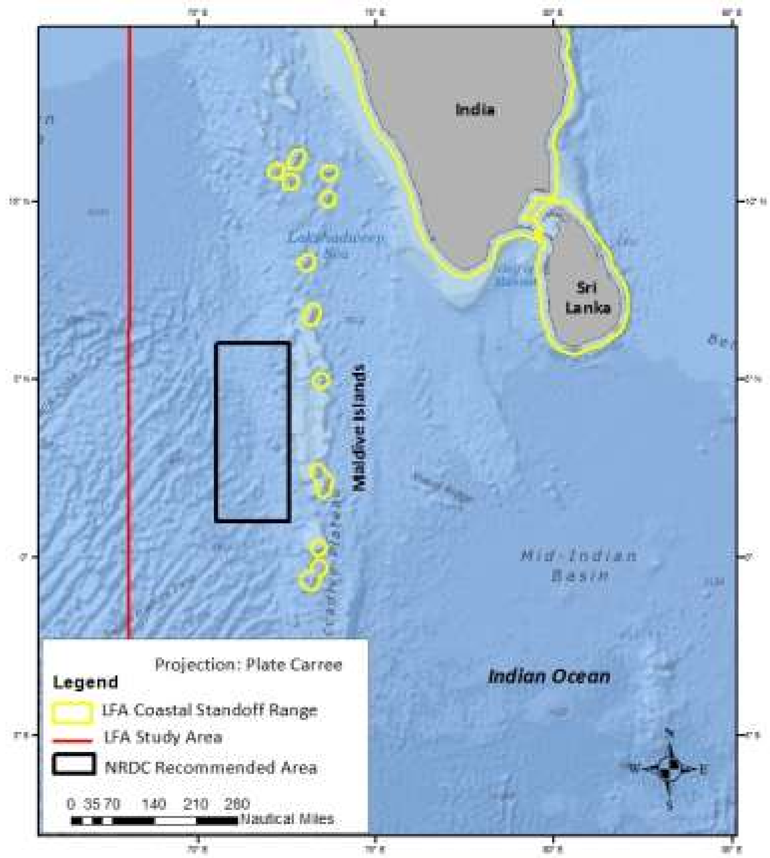
| | |
|---|---|
| | explaining telemetry locations. Depth, slope, and net primary productivity were the primary covariates for the vessel sighting data. The telemetry mixed model only predicted suitability in an offshore area straddling the EEZ of Pakistan and India. The sightings model predicted moderate suitability for the west coast of India and high suitability in the Gulf of Rambhat, northwest India. The mean of the ensemble models from both datasets matched well with reported humpback whale catches by the Soviets between 1962 and 1966, with high suitability in water depths of less than 50 m (164 ft) off the coast of Gujarat. |
| IUCN – SSC Cetacean Specialist Group. Arabian Sea humpback whale tagged off the coast of Oman crosses to India. http://www.iucn-csg.org/index.php/2018/02/03/arabian-sea-humpback-whale-tagged-off-the-coast-of-oman-crosses-to-india/ (additional tag data on SeaTurtle.org: http://www.seaturtle.org/tracking/index.shtml?project_id=1295). | News post describes the track of a female humpback whale (named Lubaan) satellite tagged in the Gulf of Masirah, Oman that travelled to the west coast of India where she engaged in small-scale local movements off the southernmost coast of India for several months. Lubaan is one of 14 satellite tagged whales (of which two are female), and the first to make this migration to India. |
| Marine Mammal Conservation Network of India. Sightings and Strandings. http://www.marinemammals.in/database/sightings-strandings | Database contains all known strandings and sightings (including location, photos, and videos as available) for marine mammals in India. Database included 13 entries for humpbacks whales, with records from 1943. |

| West of Maldives | 33 |
|---|---|

**Marine Region:** Central Indian Ocean

**Country:** Maldives

**Species of Concern:** Blue (pygmy), Bryde's, and humpback whales




**Marine Area Type**

- ☐ **OBIA in Regulations/LOA**
- ☐ **Mission Blue Hope Spot**
- ☐ **Pew Ocean Legacy Site**
- ☐ **IUCN Green List Site**
- ☐ **IMMA**
- ☐ **EBSA**
- ☐ **U.S. Marine National Monument**
- ☐ **Hoyt Cetacean MPA**
- ☐ **U.S. MPA**
- ☐ **U.S. ESA Critical Habitat**
- ☒ **Public Comment Recommendation**

**Area Overview:**

Officially, the Republic of Maldives consists of coral atolls that form a chain running north-south from about 7°N to about 1°S (Anderson et al., 2005). The chain is single in the north and south but is double in the central part of the archipelago where an "inter-atoll sea" exists with bottom depths of 6.5 to 1,640 ft (2 to 500 m). Outside the atolls, the seafloor steepens quickly to depths of about 9,843 ft (3,000 m). Bays and estuaries exist within the atolls, where spinner dolphins can be found during the day within the northern Indian Ocean (Anderson et al., 2012a).

The Maldives are dominated by the seasonal monsoons. The southwest monsoon occurs from about May to October, producing intense upwelling in the Arabian Sea off the coasts of Somalia and the Arabian Peninsula. Winds blow from the southwest or west, from Africa towards India. During the northeast monsoon, from about December to March, the winds die down and the intense upwelling ceases. In these months, whales disperse more widely to regions with seasonally high productivity, such as the waters west of the Maldives (Anderson et al., 2012a).

A wide diversity of cetacean species has been documented around the Maldives (Ballance et al., 2001; Branch et al., 2007; Anderson et al., 2012b). Anderson et al. (2012b) compiled whaling information, visual and acoustic survey results, and stranding records for their review paper of cetaceans around the

Maldives. Spinner dolphins were the mostly commonly sighted species, while the one acoustic survey most commonly detected sperm whales. There were no passive acoustic detections of blue whales, and one detection of humpback whales, though this region was targeted by Soviet whalers in the 1960s for blue, Bryde's, humpback, and sperm whales (Anderson et al., 2012b). Clark et al. (2012) reported that the most commonly sighted species were Risso's dolphin, pantropical spotted dolphin, spinner dolphin, and sperm whale. Spinner dolphins have been observed using nearshore atoll bays as daytime resting locations, then moving offshore at night to forage, as has been documented around Hawaii. Clark et al. (2012) only documented sightings of two sperm whale calves during their survey; no other species were observed to have calves with them.

Genetic studies of Bryde's whales show that a distinct population exists in the northern Indian Ocean, though insufficient samples in the Maldives preclude a definite statement about those individuals (Kershaw et al., 2013). However, Kershaw et al. (2013) did document that their samples were Bryde's whales and not Omura's whales. Cerchio et al. (2019) documented fragmented occurrences of Omura's whale along the rim of the Indian Ocean, from the Andaman Sea to Sri Lanka, Persian Gulf/Gulf of Oman, and Madagascar, including the Chagos Archipelago, but acknowledged that Omura's whale may not be present in the Maldives.

Anderson et al. (2012a) compiled catches, sightings, strandings, and acoustic detections of pygmy blue whales and correlated the distribution with ocean color data indicative of higher chlorophyll *a* concentrations. While there is a peak in chlorophyll *a* west of the Maldives in December to March, the Maldives have much lower chlorophyll values overall. The observations suggest that most blue whales pass by the Maldives as they migrate east-west between monsoon seasons, though some animals do loiter (Anderson et al., 2012a). However, the available data are not indicative that the Maldives are of any biological importance as a significant foraging ground for either blue or humpback whales. Since the biological criteria required for OBIA designation have not been met for the Maldives region, the area is not designated as an OBIA for SURTASS LFA sonar. Should additional information showing that important biological activities of baleen whales occur in this region, the Maldives area would be reassessed as an OBIA.

## Geographic Criteria

Location Status: ☒ Eligible ☐ Not Eligible

Relation to LFA Coastal Standoff Range (12 nmi from emergent land): ☒ Entirely Outside
☐ Partially Outside

Eligible Areal Extent:36,986.26 nmi$^2$ (126,859.34 km$^2$)

Source of Official Boundary:

Spatial File Type: GIS shapefile

Spatial File Source: Anderson et al., 2012a

Date Obtained: 2/2/19

## Low Frequency Hearing Sensitivity

☒ Species: Blue (pygmy) and Bryde's whales

### Biological Criteria

High Density: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Breeding / Calving: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Migration: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Foraging: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Distinct Small Population: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

Critical Habitat: ☐ Eligible; sufficient data, adequate justification
☒ Not Eligible; not relevant, insufficient data

### Seasonal Effective Period (None Recommended)

☐ Year-round ☐ Seasonal Period (Months Annually):

### OBIA Watchlist Addition

☒ Yes ☐ No

### Supporting Documentation

**Peer Reviewed Articles**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Cerchio, S., Yamada, T. K., & Brownell, R. L. J. (2019). Global distribution of Omura's whales (*Balaenoptera omurai*) and assessment of range-wide threats. *Frontiers in Marine Science, 6*, 67. doi: 10.3389/fmars.2019.00067 | This review compiled all available sources of information to document the occurrence of Omura's whale around the world. The species is widely distributed in primarily tropical and warm-temperate locations, with a strong preference for a coastal distribution. Along the rim of the Indian Ocean, Omura's whale occurrence appears to be fragmented, with documented reports from the Andaman Sea to Sri Lanka, Persian Gulf/Gulf of Oman, and Madagascar, including the Chagos Archipelago. However, given the results of Kershaw et al. (2013, Cerchio et al. (2019) acknowledged that Omura's whale may not be present in the Maldives. |
| de Vos, A., Faux, C. E., Marthick, J., Dickinson, J., & Jarman, S. N. (2018). New determination of prey and parasite species for northern Indian Ocean blue whales. *Frontiers in Marine Science, 5*, 104. doi:10.3389/fmars.2018.00104. | This study focused on feeding behavior of blue whales using dietary DNA derived from fecal samples collected off southern Sri Lanka from January through March 2013. Unlike in other foraging areas where blue whales feed predominantly on krill, southern Sri |

Lankan blue whales feed on sergestid shrimp, which are found within the top 300 m (984 ft) of the water column off southern Sri Lanka.

| | |
|---|---|
| Kershaw, F., Leslie, M. S., Collins, T., Mansur, R. M., Smith, B. D., Minton, G., . . . Rosenbaum, H. C. (2013). Population differentiation of 2 forms of Bryde's whales in the Indian and Pacific Oceans. *Journal of Heredity, 104*(6), 755-764. doi: 10.1093/jhered/est057, 10.5061/dryad.b9q73 | Phylogenetic analyses support the presence of two taxonomic units of Bryde's whales (*Balaenoptera edeni edeni* and *Balaenoptera brydei*). Three main, genetically distinct clusters are apparent for *B. e. brydei*: the northern Indian Ocean (Oman, Maldives, and Bangladesh), off Java, and the northwest Pacific. No records of *B. e. edeni* were found off the Maldives, though 11.1 percent and 4.4 percent were found in Oman and Bangladesh, respectively, with samples occurring close to shore. The small sample size off the Maldives (n=8) precludes a definitive conclusion regarding genetic differentiation, but the authors suggest a precautionary approach to include the Maldives as a separate population unit for management purposes. |
| Anderson, R.C., Branch, T.A., Alagiyawadu, A., Baldwin, R., & Marsac, F. (2012a). Seasonal distribution, movements and taxonomic status of blue whales (*Balaenoptera musculus*) in the northern Indian Ocean. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 12*(2), 203-218. | Using all available blue whale occurrence data (sightings, strandings, acoustic detections, and whaling catches) from the Northern Indian Ocean, the authors developed a hypothesis about the east-west migrational pattern of blue/pygmy blue whales in the Northern Indian Ocean. Animals appear to congregate in the Arabian Sea off the coasts of Somalia and southern Arabia during the southwest monsoon (from about May to October) where intense upwelling occurs, then blue whales disperse more widely during the northeast monsoon (December to March). Blue whales appear to pass by the north of the Maldives in November to January heading eastwards, returning westwards in April to May. Although most blue whales pass by the Maldives, some blue whales may loiter, since they have been observed during January to April. |
| Anderson, R. C., Sattar, S. A., & Adam, M. S. (2012b). Cetaceans in the Maldives: A review. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 12*(2), 219-225. | This review paper summarizes historical whaling records, visual and passive acoustic survey results, and stranding network records for the region around the Maldives. Whaling occurred in the mid 19th century, primarily targeting sperm whales between Sri Lanka and the Maldives, and the 1960s, when Soviet whalers targeted blue, Bryde's, humpback, and sperm whales. During visual surveys, 23 species have been documented, with spinner dolphins being the mostly common. One passive acoustic survey (Clark et al., 2012) has been conducted, with one detection of humpback whales and no detections of blue whales. Within stranding records, 16 species have been |

documented, with sperm whales being the most common.

Clark, R.A., Johnson, C.H., Johnson, G., Payne, R., Kerr, I., Anderson, R.C., Sattar, S.A., Godard, C.A.J., & Madsen, P.T. (2012). Cetacean sightings and acoustic detections in the offshore waters of the Maldives during the northeast monsoon seasons of 2003 and 2004. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 12*(2), 227–234.

The R/V *Odyssey* conducted visual and acoustic surveys in the northeast monsoon season of 2003 and 2004, primarily focusing on biopsy sampling of sperm whales as part of a global survey of ocean pollutants. The surveys were located in offshore and atoll slope waters. The most commonly sighted species were Risso's dolphin, pantropical spotted dolphin, spinner dolphin, and sperm whale. All other species were seen less than ten times during the two surveys. No sightings of blue whales were recorded; 8 sightings of Bryde's whales were reported. Most sperm whale sightings occurred between 0° and 3°N, 72°E and 74°E.

Stafford, K. M., Chapp, E., Bohnenstiel, D. R., & Tolstoy, M. (2011). Seasonal detection of three types of "pygmy" blue whale calls in the Indian Ocean. *Marine Mammal Science, 27*(4), 828-840. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.2010.00437.x

Acoustic data from three International Monitoring System hydrophones (Diego Garcia North [DGN], Diego Garcia South [DGS], and Cape Leeuwin, Australia [CLA]) were collected from January 2002 through December 2003. Three types of blue whale calls, believed to be from separate acoustic populations of pygmy blue whales, were identified. Sri Lanka calls were detected year-round at DGS and DGN. Madagascar calls were only detected at DGN, and then for only 1.3% of the time and only during the austral winter. Australia calls were only recorded at CLA and only in the austral winter.

Branch, T. A., Stafford, K. M., Palacios, D. M., Allison, C., Bannister, J. L., Burton, C. L. K., . . . Warneke, R. M. (2007). Past and present distribution, densities and movements of blue whales *Balaenoptera musculus* in the Southern Hemisphere and northern Indian Ocean. *Mammal Review, 37*(2), 116-175.

The authors compiled catches (303,329), sightings (4,383 records of more than 8,058 whales), strandings (103), Discovery marks (2,191), and recoveries (95) of blue whales in the southern hemisphere and northern Indian Ocean. The recorded data around the Maldives were further analyzed in Anderson et al. (2012), summarized above. General distribution information is provided, but nothing specific to the Maldives.

Anderson, R. C. (2005). Observations of cetaceans in the Maldives, 1990-2002. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 7*(2), 119-135.

These data were further analyzed in Anderson et al. (2012), summarized above.

Ballance, L. T., Anderson, R. C., Pitman, R. L., Stafford, K., Shaan, A., Waheed, Z., & R.L. Brownell, J. (2001). Cetacean sightings around the Republic of the Maldives, April 1998. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 3*(2), 213-218.

A survey was conducted in April 1998, focusing on biopsy samples of blue whales for molecular genetic analysis. Effort occurred within 27 nmi (50 km) of shore. Though blue whales were encountered rarely (n=4), at least 16 cetacean species were documented, with spinner dolphins and bottlenose dolphins recorded most often. One dense concentration of Bryde's whales was encountered in the waters between Felidhoo and Mulaku atolls.

**Subject Matter Experts / e-NGO Reports / Regional Expertise**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Cooke, J.G. (2018). *Balaenoptera musculus*. The IUCN red list of threatened species 2018: e.T2477A50226195. Retrieved from <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2018-2.RLTS.T2477A50226195.en>. | The Committee on Taxonomy of the Society for Marine Mammalogy recognizes northern blue whale (*Balaenoptera musculus musculus*), Antarctic blue whale (*B. m. intermedia*), northern Indian Ocean blue whale (*B. m. indica*), pygmy blue whale (*B. m. brevicauda*), and Chilean blue whale (*B. m.* un-named subspecies). The number of pygmy blue whales is very uncertain but may be in the range of 2,000 to 5,000 individuals. Blue whales feed almost exclusively on euphasiids (krill), feeding both at the surface and at depths of up to (984 ft (300 m). |

**Surveys**

| *Paper* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| Clark, R.A., Johnson, C.H., Johnson, G., Payne, R., Kerr, I., Anderson, R.C., Sattar, S.A., Godard, C.A.J., & Madsen, P.T. (2012). Cetacean sightings and acoustic detections in the offshore waters of the Maldives during the northeast monsoon seasons of 2003 and 2004. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 12,* 2, 227–234. | See summary above. |
| Stafford, K. M., Chapp, E., Bohnenstiel, D. R., & Tolstoy, M. (2011). Seasonal detection of three types of “pygmy” blue whale calls in the Indian Ocean. *Marine Mammal Science, 27*(4), 828-840. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.2010.00437.x | See summary above. |
| Ballance, L. T., Anderson, R. C., Pitman, R. L., Stafford, K., Shaan, A., Waheed, Z., & R.L. Brownell, J. (2001). Cetacean sightings around the Republic of the Maldives, April 1998. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 3*(2), 213-218. | See summary above. |

**Websites / Social Media**

| *Website/Organization* | *Synopsis* |
|---|---|
| The Whale and Dolphin Company. (2019). The very best tropical whale and dolphin watching. Retrieved from < http://www.whale-and-dolphin.com/maldives_whale_dolphin_watching.htm>. | This whale and dolphin watching company offers liveaboard cruise packages in April and November. Spinner dolphins, bottlenose dolphins, Risso’s dolphins, and short-finned pilot whales are advertised as abundant. They don’t see “large number of big whales,” but regularly have “superb view of sperm whales, blue whales, and Bryde’s whales.” The company lists Bryde’s whales as commonly seen and blue whales are regularly seen. |

# APPENDIX D: DENSITY AND ABUNDANCE INFORMATION FOR POTENTIALLY AFFECTED MARINE MAMMAL STOCKS IN THE WESTERN AND CENTRAL NORTH PACIFIC AND EASTERN INDIAN OCEANS

# APPENDIX D: DENSITY AND ABUNDANCE INFORMATION FOR POTENTIALLY AFFECTED MARINE MAMMAL STOCKS IN THE WESTERN AND CENTRAL NORTH PACIFIC AND EASTERN INDIAN OCEANS

This appendix describes the estimation approach and scientific literature sources used to derive density and stock abundance estimates for the marine mammal species potentially occurring in each of the SURTASS LFA sonar model areas. Information is listed by model area with marine mammal species occurring in each model area listed in alphabetical order by common name within the three general taxonomic groups: mysticetes, odontocetes, and pinnipeds.

## D-1. MODEL AREA 1—EAST OF JAPAN

**Blue whale**: Few data are available on blue whale occurrence in the North Pacific Ocean and the stock structure in the North Pacific remains uncertain. Stafford et al. (2001) studied the geographic variation of blue whale calls in the North Pacific, and although there was no hydrophone coverage in the Philippine Sea, there was some coverage near the Kamchatka Peninsula and along the western Aleutian Islands chain. All calls recorded on these hydrophones were northwest Pacific blue whale calls (Stafford et al., 2001). Although the blue whale was the initial focus of Japanese whaling effort in the North Pacific, limited data were reported on blue whales. Therefore, sighting surveys associated with Japanese whaling of fin whales were judged to be the most appropriate proxy for blue whale occurrence estimates (Tillman, 1977; Carretta et al., 2019). Thus, the best available abundance for the WNP blue whale stock is 9,250 animals (Tillman, 1977). The best density for blue whales, which are found in this model area in the winter, spring, and fall seasons, is 0.0001 whales/km$^2$, which was estimated in three different documents, including encounter rates during Japanese whaling in the northwest Pacific Ocean (Tillman, 1977), correlations with density estimates from a similar latitude in the eastern North Pacific (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003), and summarized data and monitoring during a geophysical seismic survey (LGL, 2008). This density for blue whales is comparable to density estimates of the blue whale in offshore areas of the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2003) and to the waters surrounding Guam (Fulling et al., 2011).

**Bryde's whale**: Yoshida and Kato (1999) identified three stocks of Bryde's whales in the western North Pacific: Solomon Islands/Southeast Asia, East China Sea, and offshore western North Pacific. The International Whaling Commission (IWC) provides the best available population estimate for the western North Pacific stock of 20,501 whales (IWC, 2009). The all-season density estimate (0.0006 animals/km$^2$) for the western North Pacific (WNP) stock is derived from whaling sighting data (Ohsumi, 1977). Bradford et al. (2013) observed Bryde's whales around the Hawaiian Islands, calculating a similar density estimate (0.00033 animals/km$^2$) to that derived for the WNP stock.

**Common minke whale**: Several stocks of minke whales are recognized in the western North Pacific Ocean, including the western North Pacific "O" east (WNP OE) stock, and the western North Pacific "J" west (WNP JW) stock (Miyashita & Okamura, 2011; Wade & Baker, 2011). Minke whales potentially occurring in the waters of this model area are believed to be part of the WNP OE stock. Buckland et al. (1992) conducted sighting surveys during July and August in the western North Pacific Ocean and Sea of Okhotsk, from which a spatially-explicit density estimate (0.0022 animals/km$^2$) and overall abundance estimate (25,049 individuals) were derived (Buckland et al., 1992). The density estimates that Ferguson and Barlow (2001; 2003) computed for this species in the offshore areas of the eastern tropical Pacific (ETP) are an order of a magnitude lower than those derived from Buckland et al. (1992).

**Fin whale**: A seasonal density estimate, 0.0002 animals/km$^2$, was derived from encounter rates during Japanese whaling in the northwest Pacific Ocean (Tillman, 1977). An abundance estimate, 9,250 individuals, was derived from encounter rates during Japanese whaling in the northwest Pacific Ocean (Tillman, 1977), which was corroborated with a compilation of catch statistics, sighting data, mark recoveries, and acoustics data (Mizroch et al., 2009). The seasonal density is comparable to that derived in offshore areas of the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow 2001, 2003) and an order of magnitude higher than that calculated for around Hawaii (0.00002 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013).

**Humpback whale**: The NMFS Humpback Whale Biological Review Team (BRT) conducted a comprehensive status review in which they revised the ESA status for humpback whales in this region to be part of the Western North Pacific Distinct Population Segment (WNP DPS) and listed as endangered (Bettridge et al., 2015; NOAA, 2016a). The WNP DPS breeds/winters in the region of Okinawa and the Philippines and migrates to feeding grounds in the North Pacific, primarily off the Russian coast, though sightings off northern Japan have been documented. Thus, humpback whales are only expected to occur in the East of Japan model area during summer and fall. The SPLASH consortium derived an average abundance for the Asian wintering grounds of approximately 1,000 humpback whales (Calambokidis et al., 2008), which has increased annually to an abundance estimate of 1,328 individuals (Bettridge et al., 2015). A density of 0.00036 animals/km$^2$ was derived for the WNP stock of humpback whales based on photo-identification surveys throughout the North Pacific (Calambokidis et al., 2008) that provided information on distributional preferences and a compilation of surveys in the western North Pacific (LGL, 2008). Approximately one-quarter of the animals were estimated to stay in water depths of less than 1,000 m (3,281 ft) as part of nearshore feeding aggregations.

**North Pacific right whale**: The WNP stock of North Pacific right whales is considered distinct from the eastern North Pacific population, arbitrarily separated by the 180° line of longitude (Best et al., 2001). Data from Japanese sighting cruises in the Okhotsk Sea provide an abundance estimate of 922 animals for the WNP stock (CV=0.433, 95% CI=404-2,108) (Best et al., 2001). No density estimates are available for this very rare marine mammal species, therefore, the nominal minimum density estimate of 0.00001 animals/km$^2$ was used in the risk analysis to reflect the very low probability of occurrence in this region during winter and spring seasons.

**Sei whale:** Tillman (1977) derived an abundance estimate of 8,600 individuals for sei/Bryde's[1] whale in the North Pacific from whaling catch statistics. Mizroch et al. (2015) estimated the size of the pelagic migratory stock in 1975 at approximately 4,000 animals, but their "single stock" (coastal and pelagic) state space analysis estimated a population size of 7,000 animals in 1974, which is used here as the best available data. Initial estimates for a portion of the sei whale population off Japan indicate abundance estimates of similar magnitude (7,744 for May to June and 5,406 for July to September; Hakamada et al., 2009). Sighting survey data from the Guam/Marianas Island regions derived a density estimate of 0.00029 animals/km$^2$ for the sei whale's North Pacific (NP) stock (Fulling et al., 2011). This is similar to that calculated for around Hawaii (0.00016 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017).

**Baird's beaked whale**: Based on Kasuya's (1986) encounter rate and effective search width from 25 years of aerial surveys and shipboard sightings in 1984 off the Pacific coast of Japan, an all-season density estimate of 0.0029 animals/km$^2$ was derived for this species. Kasuya and Perrin (2017) cited an abundance estimate by Miyashita (1986, 1990) of 5,688, and is the abundance estimated for the WNP stock of Baird's beaked whales.

1 Sei and Bryde's whales are difficult to distinguish from one another at sea.

**Common dolphin**: Short-beaked and long-beaked common dolphins were redefined as one species, common dolphin (*Delphinus delphis*) (SMM, 2017). No data on density or abundance estimates of common dolphins are available for the waters of the western North Pacific (Miyashita, 1993). Due to this lack of information, population data derived from ETP surveys are the best available, including an abundance estimate of 3,286,163 animals and a spatially-explicity density estimate of 0.0761 animals/km$^2$ (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003).

**Common bottlenose dolphin**: Kasuya and Perrin (2017) define a WNP Northern Offshore Stock for this region. Using a subset of the survey data from Miyashita (1993), Kasuya and Perrin (2017) report an abundance estimate of 100,281 individuals (CV=0.261). Miyashita (1993) reported a density estimate (0.0171 animals/km$^2$) for common bottlenose dolphins off the Pacific coast of Japan. Miyashita's (1993) density is comparable to that observed for common bottlenose dolphins in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0103 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000) but is an order of magnitude larger than that from habitat-based modeling (0.00118 animals/km$^2$; Forney et al., 2015).

**Cuvier's beaked whale**: No density or abundance estimate data are available for Cuvier's beaked whales of the WNP stock. Considering habitat preferences (e.g., water temperature and bathymetry), the best population data available to extrapolate for the Cuvier's WNP stock located in this model area are the Ferguson and Barlow (2001 and 2003) long-time series from the ETP, from which a density of 0.0031 animals/km$^2$ and an abundance of 90,725 animals were estimated. This density estimate is greater than that estimated for the Hawaii EEZ (0.0003 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017) but comparable to the mean predicted density estimate for the ETP (0.00455 animals/km$^2$; Ferguson et al., 2006).

**Dall's porpoise**: Dall's porpoise are found only in the North Pacific, primarily north of 36°N in the western North Pacific Ocean. This species has two distinct color morphs: one with a white flank patch that extends forward to the dorsal fin (*dalli* type) and one with a flank patch extending all the way to the front flippers (*truei* type). These morphological differences have been noted between animals from the Pacific coast of Japan (the *truei*-type), the Sea of Japan, and Sea of Okhotsk (the *dalli*-type), and the offshore northwestern Pacific and western Bering Sea (the *dalli*-type) (Hayano et al., 2003). Hayano et al. (2003) conducted genetic studies on the three populations and found a low, but significant, difference between the Sea of Japan-Okhotsk population and the other two populations. Kasuya and Perrin (2017) cite Miyashita (2007) for an abundance estimate of 178,157 animals in this region. Based on surveys of the eastern North Pacific, a density estimate of 0.0520 animals/km$^2$ was derived for the WNP stock, with ¼ less (0.0390 animals/km$^2$) during the winter season (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003). This density estimates a concentration of Dall's porpoises probably larger than what would be encountered by LFA operations in the western North Pacific since it includes survey effort in nearshore waters where animals are more often found.

**False killer whale**: Miyashita (1993) estimated the abundance (16,668 animals, CV=0.263) of false killer whales from 34 sighting cruises associated with the Japanese drive fishery and also derived density estimates in 1° latitude by 1° longitude boxes from which an average density, 0.0036 animals/km$^2$, was derived for the WNP Pelagic stock of false killer whales in this model area. Miyashita's (1993) density is comparable to the density estimated for the pelagic stock of false killer whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0006 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2012) and in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0017 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000), including the Main Hawaiian Islands insular stock (0.0008 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2015; Oleson et al., 2010) and the Northwest Hawaiian Islands insular stock (0.0006 animals/ km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2015; Forney et al., 2015).

**Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale**: The ginkgo-toothed whale is only known from strandings in the temperate and tropical waters of the Pacific (Palacios, 1996; Dalebout et al., 2014). Since no data on density or abundance estimates are available for ginkgo-toothed beaked whales in the western North Pacific Ocean, the best population estimations from which to extrapolate for this species in this region are those derived for *Mesoplodon* spp. from the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003). Using Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) northernmost strata, a density of 0.0005 animals/km$^2$ and an abundance of 22,799 animals are estimated for the North Pacific (NP) stock of ginkgo-toothed whales. This derived density estimate is comparable to that computed for unidentified *Mesoplodon* whales in the Hawaiian EEZ (0.0021 animals/km$^2$, Bradford et al., 2013) and the mean predicted density estimate for *Mesoplodon* spp. in the ETP (0.0003 animals/km$^2$; Ferguson et al., 2006).

**Harbor porpoise**: Little is known about the harbor porpoises that are found off the northern coasts of Japan (Gaskin et al., 1993). Off the U.S. east coast and U.S. west coast, animals are found almost exclusively at water depths of less than 100 m (323 ft) (Read and Westgate, 1997; Carretta et al., 2001) and fine-scale stock structure exists (Carretta et al., 2019; Muto et al., 2019). Preliminary analysis of mitochondrial DNA suggests that Japanese harbor porpoises mix with Alaskan animals to form a genetically distinct group (Taguchi et al., 2010). Therefore, using survey data corrected for sighting biases, the abundance estimate (31,046 animals, CV=0.21) (Hobbs and Waite, 2010 cited in Allen and Angliss, 2014) and density estimate (0.19 animals/km$^2$; Hobbs and Waite, 2010) of the Gulf of Alaska stock are most appropriate.

**Hubbs' beaked whale**: All known occurrences to date of Hubb's beaked whales in the western North Pacific Ocean having been strandings along Japan's shore (MacLeod et al., 2006). Miyazaki et al. (1987) reported five strandings of Hubbs' beaked whales along the Pacific coast of northern Honshu. Since no data on density or stock estimates are available for the Hubb's beaked whale in the waters of this model area, *Mesoplodon* spp. data from the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003) are considered to be the most appropriate population estimates available from which to extrapolate population estimates for this beaked whale in this model area. Using the northernmost strata from Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) data, a density of 0.0005 animals/km$^2$ and an abundance of 22,799 animals are estimated for the NP stock of Hubb's beaked whales. Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) density is comparable to that estimated for unidentified *Mesoplodon* whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0021 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013) and the mean predicted density estimated for the ETP *Mesoplodon* spp. (0.0003 animals/km$^2$; Ferguson et al., 2006).

**Killer whale**: Killer whales have been observed off the southeast coast of Honshu but none were taken in Japanese drive fisheries (Miyashita, 1993). With no population data for killer whales to estimate the WNP stock, the best available data from which to extrapolate abundance estimate is the ETP time series data, where Ferguson and Barlow (2001, 2003) derived an abundance estimate of 12,256 animals. A density of 0.0001 animals/km$^2$ was estimated from LGL (2011) data. The LGL (2011) density estimated for the WNP stock is comparable to the density, 0.00004 animals/km$^2$, estimated for killer whales in the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2013).

***Kogia* spp.**: Few occurrence data are available for *Kogia* spp. in the western North Pacific. In the ETP, Ferguson and Barlow (2001; 2003) summed the abundances of *Kogia breviceps, Kogia sima,* and *Kogia* spp. for an estimated overall abundance of 350,553 animals. Although only *Kogia breviceps* (pygmy sperm whale) is expected at the northern latitude of this area, the abundance from the ETP remains the best estimate for the WNP stock of *Kogia* spp. The density estimate of 0.0031 animals/km$^2$ calculated for *Kogia* spp. from the ETP at about 30° N is considered the best estimate (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001;

2003) from which to extrapolate a density of undifferentiated *Kogia* in the WNP stock. Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) density is comparable to the density estimates for pygmy sperm whale (0.00291 animals/km$^2$ [CV=1.12]) and dwarf sperm whale (0.00714 animals/km$^2$ [CV=0.74]) estimated within the Hawaii EEZ (Barlow, 2006).

**Pacific white-sided dolphin**: No data on density or abundance estimates are available for this gregarious, pelagic species in this model area (Miyashita, 1993). Recent research on genetic differentiation suggests that animals found in coastal Japanese waters and the Sea of Japan belong to a different Pacific white-sided dolphin population than animals found in offshore North Pacific waters (Hayano et al., 2004). Data from sighting surveys in the North Pacific were analyzed to estimate an abundance of 931,000 individuals in the WNP stock of Pacific white-sided dolphins (Buckland et al., 1993). This estimate is over an order of magnitude larger than the abundance estimated for this species in waters of the eastern North Pacific (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003). Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) density estimates of 0.0082 animals/km$^2$ from the ETP is appropriate to extrapolate as a density for the WNP stock in this model area. No sightings of Pacific white-sided dolphins were reported in Hawaiian surveys (Mobley et al., 2000; Barlow, 2006; Bradford et al., 2017).

**Pantropical spotted dolphin**: Gilpatrick et al. (1987) described a known distribution of pantropical spotted dolphins occurring east of Japan. Kanaji et al. (2018) report an abundance estimate of 130,002 individuals (CV=0.43) and Miyashita (1993) reports a seasonal density estimate, 0.0259 animals/km$^2$, for pantropical spotted dolphins occurring east of Japan. In the high latitude waters of this model area, pantropical spotted dolphins are not expected to occur during winter or spring. Miyashita's (1993) density for the WNP stock of pantropical spotted dolphins can be compared to that observed in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0407 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000), although it is an order of magnitude higher than that estimated for pantropical spotted dolphins in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00369 animals/km$^2$; Forney et al., 2015).

**Pygmy killer whale:** Kishiro and Kasuya (1993) reported that no pygmy killer whales were taken in Japanese drive fisheries, but Leatherwood and Reeves (1983) reported that pygmy killer whales were seen relatively frequently in the waters of the tropical Pacific off Japan. However, since no population data are available for pygmy killer whales in the western North Pacific Ocean, density (0.0021 animals/km$^2$) and abundance (30,214 individuals) estimates were extrapolated from the ETP data (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003) and used to reflect the population levels of the WNP stock of pygmy killer whales. Ferguson and Barlow's (2001 and 2003) density is comparable to that observed for pygmy killer whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00435 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017).

**Risso's dolphin**: Kanaji et al. (2018) report an abundance for the WNP stock of 143,374 individuals (CV=0.69) and Miyashita (1993) reports a density estimate of 0.0097 animals/km$^2$ derived for Risso's dolphins in waters off the Pacific coast of Japan. Miyashita's (1993) density is comparable to that observed for this species in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00474 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017).

**Rough-toothed dolphin**: The best available density estimate (0.00224 animals/km$^2$) is from habitat-based models in the central North Pacific (Forney et al., 2015). Kanaji et al. (2018) report an abundance estimate (5,002 individuals, CV=1.24) from their sighting surveys in the western North Pacific. While the density estimated for rough-toothed dolphins in the waters of the Hawaii EEZ (0.0026 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013) is comparable, the density estimated for nearshore Hawaii waters is slightly lower (0.0017 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Short-finned pilot whale**: The stock delineation of the short-finned pilot whale in the western North Pacific is not fully resolved, but a northern ecotype and southern ecotype are recognized, segregating at Choshi Point (35°42'N, 140°51'E) (Kasuya and Perrin, 2018). Using the results of Miyashita (1993), an abundance estimate of 20,884 individuals (CV=0.332) was calculated and an average density estimate (0.0128 animals/km$^2$) was derived to represent the WNP northern stock. This density estimate is higher than that found in pelagic waters of the Hawaii EEZ (0.0051 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013).

**Sperm whale**: Sperm whale stock structure in the western North Pacific Ocean is not well defined. Kasuya and Miyashita's (1988) data suggest that there are two stocks of sperm whales in the western North Pacific: a northwestern stock whose females summer off the Kuril Islands (~50°N) and winter off Hokkaido and Sanriku (~40°N) and a southwestern stock whose females summer off Hokkaido and Sanriku (~40°N) and winter around the Bonin Islands (~25°N). The males of both stocks are thought to occur north of the corresponding female's ranges, i.e., in the Bering Sea (~55°N) and off Hokkaido and Sanriku (~40°N), respectively, during the summer (Kasuya and Miyashita, 1988). Since population level data are not available to quantify two North Pacific stocks, abundance can be estimated for only the North Pacific (NP) stock as a whole. The best available population estimate for sperm whales occurring in the NP stock is Kato and Miyashita's (1998) estimate of 102,112 animals (CV=0.155). The density estimate of sperm whales, 0.00123 animals/km$^2$, calculated from the winter/spring survey around Guam and the Mariana Islands, is the best representative estimate for the NP stock of sperm whales in this model area (Fulling et al., 2011). This is comparable to the density estimate of sperm whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00158 animals/km$^2$; Forney et al., 2015).

**Spinner dolphin**: The spinner dolphin is not mentioned in historical Japanese whaling records (Kishiro and Kasuya, 1993), and no data on density or abundance estimates are available for this species in the western North Pacific Ocean (Miyashita, 1993). Due to this lack of information, the abundance for the WNP stock, 1,015,059 animals, is estimated from the ETP population data (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003) while the density, 0.00083 animals/km$^2$, is estimated from offshore stratum of the Hawaii EEZ survey data (Barlow, 2006); no sightings of spinner dolphins occurred during systematic effort in the 2010 summer/fall survey (Bradford et al., 2013). Due to the high latitude at which this model area occurs, spinner dolphins are only expected to occur in these waters during summer and fall.

**Stejneger's beaked whale**: Strandings along the Pacific coast of Japan in winter and spring suggest a migratory pattern (Mead, 1989; Yamada, 1997), but density or stock estimate data are not available for the WNP stock in this region. Considering habitat preferences (e.g., water temperature, bathymetry), the most appropriate density estimate for Stejneger's beaked whale is 0.0005 animals/km$^2$, which is derived from ETP data (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003), with the most appropriate abundance (8,000 animals) extrapolated from the abundance estimate derived for the WNP stock of Baird's beaked whales (Kasuya, 1986).

**Striped dolphin**: Kasuya and Perrin (2017) recognize a northern offshore population, determining that the best available abundance estimate is 497,725 individuals (CV=0.179) from Miyashita (1993). Miyashita (1993) derived a spatially-explicit density estimate of 0.0111 animals/km$^2$ for this area, which is the best available. This is slightly higher than the density estimate of striped dolphins in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0084 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013).

**Northern fur seal**: Northern fur seals in this region are part of the Western Pacific stock. Northern fur seals only go ashore on their breeding grounds further north; after breeding and molting, many northern fur seals travel southward, where they remain at sea and may be found in this region during the winter and spring (Buckland et al., 1993; Allen and Angliss, 2015). The Western Pacific stock is estimated at 503,609 animals, which is the sum of the abuandance estimates for the Kuril Islands and Commander Island (Gelatt et al., 2015) plus Tyuleniy Island (Kuzin, 2015). Horimoto et al. (2016) estimated a density of 0.368 animals/km$^2$ in nearshore waters during winter, with half that density in spring.

## D-2. MODEL AREA 2—NORTH PHILIPPINE SEA

**Blue whale**: Few data are available on blue whale occurrence in the North Pacific Ocean and the stock structure in the North Pacific remains uncertain. Stafford et al. (2001) studied the geographic variation of blue whale calls in the North Pacific, and although there was no hydrophone coverage in the Philippine Sea, there was some coverage near the Kamchatka Peninsula and along the western Aleutian Islands chain. All calls recorded on these hydrophones were northwest Pacific blue whale calls (Stafford et al., 2001). Although the blue whale was the initial focus of Japanese whaling effort in the North Pacific, limited data were reported on blue whales. Therefore, sighting surveys associated with Japanese whaling of fin whales were judged to be the most appropriate proxy for blue whale occurrence estimates (Tillman, 1977; Carretta et al., 2019). Thus, the best available abundance for the WNP blue whale stock is 9,250 animals (Tillman, 1977). The best density for blue whales, which are found in this model area in the winter, spring, and fall seasons, is 0.0001 whales/km$^2$, which was estimated in three different documents, including encounter rates during Japanese whaling in the northwest Pacific Ocean (Tillman, 1977), correlations with density estimates from a similar latitude in the eastern North Pacific (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003), and summarized data and monitoring during a geophysical seismic survey (LGL, 2008). This density for blue whales is comparable to density estimates of the blue whale in offshore areas of the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2003) and to the waters surrounding Guam (Fulling et al., 2011).

**Bryde's whale**: Yoshida and Kato (1999) identified three stocks of Bryde's whales in the western North Pacific: Solomon Islands/Southeast Asia, East China Sea, and offshore western North Pacific. The International Whaling Commission (IWC) provides the best available population estimate for the western North Pacific stock of 20,501 whales (IWC, 2009). The all-season density estimate (0.0006 animals/km$^2$) for the western North Pacific (WNP) stock is derived from whaling sighting data (Ohsumi, 1977). Bradford et al. (2013) observed Bryde's whales around the Hawaiian Islands, calculating a similar density estimate (0.00033 animals/km$^2$) to that derived for the WNP stock.

**Common minke whale**: Several stocks of minke whales are recognized in the western North Pacific Ocean, including the western North Pacific "O" east (WNP OE) stock, and the western North Pacific "J" west (WNP JW) stock (Miyashita & Okamura, 2011; Wade & Baker, 2011). Minke whales potentially occurring in the waters of this model area are believed to be part of the "WNP OE" stock. Buckland et al. (1992) conducted sighting surveys during July and August in the western North Pacific Ocean and Sea of Okhotsk, from which a spatially-explicit density estimate, 0.0044 animals/km$^2$, for minke whales in this area was derived from the encounter rates and effective search widths for the offshore population (standard error (SE) = 0.17), while the stock estimate for the WNP OE stock is estimated as 25,049 individuals by Buckland et al. (1992). Ferguson and Barlow (2001; 2003) computed density estimates in offshore areas of the ETP that are an order of magnitude lower than those derived from Buckland et al. (1992).

**Fin whale**: A seasonal density estimate, 0.0002 animals/km$^2$, was derived from encounter rates during Japanese whaling in the northwest Pacific Ocean (Tillman, 1977). An abundance estimate, 9,250 individuals, was derived from from encounter rates during Japanese whaling in the northwest Pacific Ocean (Tillman, 1977), which was corroborated with a compilation of catch statistics, sighting data, mark recoveries, and acoustics data (Mizroch et al., 2009). The seasonal density is comparable to that derived in offshore areas of the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow 2001, 2003) and an order of magnitude higher than that calculated for around Hawaii (0.00002 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013).

**Humpback whale**: The NMFS Humpback Whale Biological Review Team (BRT) conducted a comprehensive status review in which they revised the ESA status for humpback whales in this region to be part of the Western North Pacific Distinct Population Segment (WNP DPS) and listed as endangered (Bettridge et al., 2015; NOAA, 2016a). The WNP DPS breeds/winters in the region of Okinawa and the Philippines and migrates to feeding grounds in the North Pacific, primarily off the Russian coast. Thus, humpback whales are only expected to occur in the North Philippine Sea model area during winter, spring, and fall. The SPLASH consortium derived an average abundance for the Asian wintering grounds of approximately 1,000 humpback whales (Calambokidis et al., 2008), which has increased annually to an abundance estimate of 1,328 individuals (Bettridge et al., 2015). A density of 0.00089 animals/km$^2$ was derived (LGL, 2008) for the WNP stock of humpback whales based on boat-based surveys in the Phillipines (Acebes et al., 2007).

**North Pacific right whale**: The WNP right whale population is considered distinct from the eastern north Pacific population, arbitrarily separated by the 180° line of longitude (Best et al., 2001). Data from Japanese sighting cruises in the Okhotsk Sea provide an abundance estimate of 922 animals (CV=0.433, 95% CI=404-2,108) (Best et al., 2001) for the WNP stock of North Pacific right whales. The WNP population may occur in the waters of the North Philippine Sea only in winter and spring. No density estimates are available for this very rare marine mammal species, therefore, the nominal minimum density estimate of 0.00001 animals/km$^2$ was used in the risk analysis to reflect the very low probability of occurrence in this region during winter and spring seasons.

**Omura's whale:** Little population information is known or available for this species only described in 2003 but this baleen whale ranges from roughly northern Japan to Australia in the eastern Indian Ocean and western Pacific Ocean (Yamada, 2009). With so little information available, the Omura's whale is assumed to comprise one stock, the WNP, throughout its range in the western Pacific Ocean. The only abundance information available is an estimate made by Ohsumi (1980) for Bryde's whales in the Solomon Sea, which are now known to have been Bryde's and Omura's whales. Lacking other data, Ohsumi's (1980) abundance of 1,800 animals was used to represent the WNP stock of Omura's whales. A density estimate from the NMSDD (DoN, 2018, citing LGL, 2008) is used (0.00004 animals/km$^2$).

**Blainville's beaked whale**: Without any data on abundance or density estimates of the Blainville's beaked whale for the western North Pacific, extrapolation from ETP data is appropriate (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003). A density estimate of 0.0005 animals/km$^2$ represents the WNP stock of Blainville's beaked whales in model area 2. The abundance estimate of 8,032 individuals was derived by adding the *Mesoplodon densirostris* abundance estimate to one-fifth of the *Mesoplodon* spp. abundance estimate (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003). The ETP density estimate is similar to the density of Blainville's beaked whales estimated in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00086 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017) and the mean predicted density estimate (0.000296 animals/km$^2$; Ferguson et al., 2006) for the ETP, but lower than the main Hawaiian Islands (0.0012 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2001).

**Common dolphin**: Short-beaked and long-beaked common dolphins were redefined as one species, common dolphin (*Delphinus delphis*) (SMM, 2017). No data on density or abundance estimates of common dolphins are available for the waters of the western North Pacific (Miyashita, 1993). Due to this lack of information, population data derived from ETP surveys are the best available, including an abundance estimate of 3,286,163 animals and a spatially-explicit density estimate of 0.0562 animals/km$^2$ (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003).

**Common bottlenose dolphin**: Kasuya and Perrin (2017) define a Japanese Coastal Stock for this region. Kanaji et al. (2018) report an abundance estimate of 3,516 individuals. Miyashita (1993) density (0.0146 animals/km$^2$) estimates for common bottlenose dolphins off southern Japan were used to represent the WNP stock, which occurs in this model area. Miyashita's (1993) density is comparable to that derived for the bottlenose dolphins in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0103 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000) but is an order of magnitude larger than that that from habitat-based modeling (0.00118 animals/km$^2$; Forney et al., 2015).

**Cuvier's beaked whale**: No density or abundance estimate data are available for the Cuvier's beaked whale in this region. Considering the Cuvier's habitat preferences (e.g., water temperature, bathymetry), the best data available to represent the WNP stock of Cuvier's beaked whales is the density (0.0054 animals/km$^2$) and abundance (90,725 animals) estimated for the Cuvier's in the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003). This density estimate is greater than that estimated for the Hawaii EEZ (0.0003 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017) but comparable to the mean predicted density estimate for the ETP (0.00455 animals/km$^2$; Ferguson et al., 2006).

**False killer whale**: Miyashita (1993) estimated an abundance of 16,668 (CV=0.263) individuals from 34 sighting cruises associated with the Japanese drive fishery and derived a density estimate of 0.0029 animals/km$^2$ for the WNP Pelagic stock of false killer whales. Miyashita's (1993) density is much higher than the density estimated for the pelagic stock of false killer whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0006 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2012) and in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0017 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000), including the Main Hawaiian Islands insular stock (0.0008 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2015; Oleson et al., 2010) and the Northwest Hawaiian Islands insular stock (0.0006 animals/ km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2015; Forney et al., 2015

**Fraser's dolphin**: Without data on abundance or density estimates for the western North Pacific, Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) abundance estimate of 220,789 animals is extrapolated to represent the WNP stock of Fraser's dolphins, which occurs in this model area. However, the density estimate derived for Hawaiian waters, 0.0069 animals/km$^2$ (Bradford et al., 2013), is most appropriate and representative of the stock.

**Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale**: The ginkgo-toothed whale is only known from strandings in the temperate and tropical waters of the Pacific (Palacios, 1996; Dalebout et al., 2014). With no data available on density or abundances of the NP stock of ginkgo-toothed beaked whales, the best population estimations are those extrapolated from the ETP derivations of Ferguson and Barlow (2001 and 2003) for *Mesoplodon* spp. Using Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) northernmost strata, a density of 0.0005 animals/km$^2$ and an abundance of 22,799 animals are estimated. Ferguson and Barlow's density estimate is an order of magnitude less than that for unidentified beaked whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0.0021 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013) but comparable to the mean predicted density estimate for the ETP *Mesoplodon* spp. (0.000296 animals/km$^2$; Ferguson et al. 2006).

**Killer whale**: Killer whales have been observed off the southeast coast of Honshu, Japan, but no killer whales were taken in Japanese drive fisheries (Miyashita, 1993). Without any population or occurrence data on killer whales for the western North Pacific, the best available data to use as a proxy for the WNP stock of killer whales are from the long time-series in the ETP, where Ferguson and Barlow (2001, 2003) derived an abundance estimate of 12,256 animals. The most appropriate density, 0.00009 animals/km$^2$, is derived by LGL (2011). LGL's (2011) density can be compared to the density estimate of 0.00004 animals/km$^2$ estimated for killer whales in the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2013).

***Kogia* spp.**: Few occurrence data are available for *Kogia* spp. in the western North Pacific. In the ETP, Ferguson and Barlow (2001; 2003) summed the abundances of *Kogia breviceps, Kogia sima,* and *Kogia* spp. for an estimated overall abundance of 350,553 animals. Although only *Kogia breviceps* (pygmy sperm whale) is expected at the northern latitude of this model area, the abundance from the ETP remains the best population estimate for the WNP stock of *Kogia* spp. The density estimate of 0.0031 animals/km$^2$ calculated for *Kogia* spp. from the ETP at about 30°N is considered the best estimate for *Kogia* spp. in this western region of the North Pacific (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003). Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) density is comparable to the density estimates for pygmy sperm whale (0.00291 animals/km$^2$, CV=1.12) and dwarf sperm whale (0.00714 animals/km$^2$, CV=0.74) observed within the Hawaii EEZ (Barlow, 2006).

**Longman's beaked whale**: Longman's beaked whales are known from tropical waters of the Pacific and Indian Oceans (Pitman et al., 1999; Dalebout et al., 2003). Ferguson and Barlow (2001) reported that all Longman's beaked whale sightings in their surveys were south of 25ºN. Considering the lack of occurrence or population data for the WNP stock of Longman's beaked whales, the abundance of 7,619 animals estimated for Longman's beaked whales in offshore Hawaiian waters (Bradford et al., 2017) and the density of 0.00025 animals per km$^2$ (LGL, 2011) derived from the Marianas region are considered most appropriate to represent the WNP stock of Longman's beaked whale.

**Melon-headed whale**: An abundance estimated by Kanaji et al. (2018) from the Pacific coast of Japan of 56,213 animals (CV=0.56) and a density estimated by Fulling et al. (2011) of 0.00428 animals/km$^2$ from the Marianas Islands region were the best available data to use to represent the WNP stock of melon-headed whales. The density of Fulling et al. (2011) is higher than the density (0.0021 animals/km$^2$) estimated by Mobley et al. (2000) for melon-headed whales near the Main Hawaiian Islands.

**Pacific white-sided dolphin**: No data on density or abundance estimates are available on the Pacific white-sided dolphin in the western North Pacific (Miyashita, 1993). Recent research on genetic differentiation suggests that Pacific white-sided dolphins found in coastal Japanese waters and the Sea of Japan belong to a different population than Pacific white-sided dolphins found in offshore North Pacific waters (Hayano et al., 2004). Sighting surveys in the North Pacific were analyzed to estimate the abundance of Pacific white-sided dolphins in the WNP stock as 931,000 individuals (Buckland et al., 1993). This estimate is over an order of magnitude larger than the abundance estimated for this species in the eastern North Pacific by Ferguson and Barlow (2001, 2003). Without any data on density estimates for the western North Pacific (Miyashita, 1993), the density estimate of 0.0119 animals/km$^2$ from the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) are most appropriate as a proxy to represent the WNP stock of Pacific white-sided dolphins occurring in this model area during winter and spring. No sightings of Pacific white-sided dolphins were reported in Hawaii surveys (Barlow, 2006; Bradford et al., 2017; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Pantropical spotted dolphin**: Gilpatrick et al. (1987) described a known distribution of pantropical spotted dolphins occurring east of Japan. Kanaji et al. (2018) report an abundance estimate of 130,002 individuals (CV=0.43) and Miyashita (1993) reports a seasonal density estimate, 0.0137 animals/km$^2$, for pantropical spotted dolphins occurring east of Japan. Miyashita's density is comparable to the density derived for the species in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0407 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000) but is higher than that derived for these dolphins in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00369 animals/km$^2$; Forney et al., 2015).

**Pygmy killer whale**: Kishiro and Kasuya (1993) reported that no pygmy killer whales were taken in Japanese drive fisheries, but Leatherwood and Reeves (1983) reported that pygmy killer whales were seen relatively frequently in the tropical Pacific off Japan. With no population data available for the WNP stock of pygmy killer whales, a density of 0.0021 animals/km$^2$ and abundance of 30,214 animals estimated from eastern Pacific by Ferguson and Barlow (2001, 2003) were used to represent the WNP stock. Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) density estimate is comparable to that observed for pygmy killer whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00435 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017). No pygmy killer whales were sighted in nearshore Hawaii waters (Mobley et al., 2000).

**Risso's dolphin**: Kanaji et al. (2018) report an abundance for the WNP stock of 143,374 individuals (CV=0.69) and Miyashita (1993) reported a density estimate of 0.0106 animals/km$^2$ for Risso's dolphins in waters off the Pacific coast of Japan. Miyashita's (1993) density is comparable to that observed for this species in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00474 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017).

**Rough-toothed dolphin**: Rough-toothed dolphins are reportedly rare off Japan and in the heavily studied ETP. Since there are no data on abundance or density estimates for the WNP stock of rough-toothed dolphins, the best available density estimate (0.00224 animals/km$^2$) is from habitat-based models in the central North Pacific (Forney et al., 2015). Kanaji et al. (2018) report an abundance estimate (5,002 individuals, CV=1.24) from their sighting surveys in the western North Pacific. This density is comparable to those observed for this species in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0026 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013) and in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0017 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Short-finned pilot whale**: The stock delineation of the short-finned pilot whale in the western North Pacific is not fully resolved, but a northern ecotype and southern ecotype are recognized, segregating at Choshi Point (35°42'N, 140°51'E) (Kasuya and Perrin, 2018). Using the results of Miyashita (1993), an abundance estimate of 31,396 individuals (CV=0.65) was calculated and an average density estimate (0.0153 animals/km$^2$) was derived to represent the WNP southern stock. This density estimate is higher than that found in pelagic waters of the Hawaii EEZ (0.0051 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013).

**Sperm whale**: Stock structure of this species has not been completely delineated for sperm whales in the North Pacific. NMFS considers historical and current abundance estimates to be unreliable (Allen and Angliss, 2013). Sightings collected by Kasuya and Miyashita (1988) suggest that two stocks of sperm whales occur in the western North Pacific, a northwestern stock with females that summer off the Kuril Islands (~50°N) and winter off Hokkaido and Sanriku (~40°N) and a southwestern North Pacific stock with females that summer off Hokkaido and Sanriku (~40°N) and winter around the Bonin Islands (~25°N); the males of these two stocks are found north of the range of the corresponding females, i.e., in the Bering Sea (~55°N) and off Hokkaido and Sanriku (~40°N), respectively, during the summer. Since the stock structure has not been well delineated, an abundance is estimated for the NP stock of sperm whales as 102,112 individuals (CV=0.155) (Kato and Miyashita, 1998). The density estimate of sperm whales, 0.00123 animals/km$^2$, calculated from the winter/spring survey around Guam and the Mariana Islands is the best representative estimate for sperm whales in this model area (Fulling et al., 2011). This is comparable to the density estimate of sperm whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00158 animals/km$^2$; Forney et al., 2015).

**Spinner dolphin**: Gilpatrick et al. (1987) did not report any sightings from the Pacific coast of Japan, and this species was not mentioned in historical Japanese whaling records (Kishiro and Kasuya, 1993). No data on density or abundance estimates are available for spinner dolphins in this region (Miyashita, 1993). Lacking density or abundance data on the WNP stock of spinner dolphins, the abundance estimate, 1,015,059 animals, derived for spinner dolphins in waters of the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) at a similar latitude is appropriate to characterize this stock in this region. Barlow's (2006) density estimate, 0.00083 animals/km$^2$, derived for spinner dolphins in the waters of the outer Hawaii EEZ, is the best available; no sightings of spinner dolphins occurred during systematic effort in the 2010 summer/fall survey (Bradford et al., 2013).

**Striped dolphin**: Kasuya and Perrin (2017) recognize a Japanese coastal population, determining that the best available abundance estimate is 19,631 individuals (CV=0.696), citing Miyashita (1993). Miyashita (1993) estimated a spatially-explicity density of striped dolphins off southern Japan/east Taiwan as 0.0329 animals/km$^2$. This is higher than the density estimate of striped dolphins in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00385 animals/km$^2$; Forney et al., 2015).

## D-3. MODEL AREA 3—WEST PHILIPPINE SEA

**Blue whale**: Few data are available on blue whale occurrence in the North Pacific Ocean and the stock structure in the North Pacific remains uncertain. Stafford et al. (2001) studied the geographic variation of blue whale calls in the North Pacific, and although there was no hydrophone coverage in the Philippine Sea, there was some coverage near the Kamchatka Peninsula and along the western Aleutian Islands chain. All calls recorded on these hydrophones were northwest Pacific blue whale calls (Stafford et al., 2001). Although the blue whale was the initial focus of Japanese whaling effort in the North Pacific, limited data were reported on blue whales. Therefore, sighting surveys associated with Japanese whaling of fin whales were judged to be the most appropriate proxy for blue whale occurrence estimates (Tillman, 1977; Carretta et al., 2019). Thus, the best available abundance for the WNP blue whale stock is 9,250 animals (Tillman, 1977). The best density for blue whales, which are found in this model area in the winter, spring, and fall seasons, is 0.0001 whales/km$^2$, which was estimated in three different documents, including encounter rates during Japanese whaling in the northwest Pacific Ocean (Tillman, 1977), correlations with density estimates from a similar latitude in the eastern North Pacific (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003), and summarized data and monitoring during a geophysical seismic survey (LGL, 2008). This density for blue whales is comparable to density estimates of the blue whale in offshore areas of the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2003) and to the waters surrounding Guam (Fulling et al., 2011).

**Bryde's whale**: Yoshida and Kato (1999) identified three stocks of Bryde's whales in the western North Pacific: Solomon Islands/Southeast Asia, East China Sea, and offshore western North Pacific. The International Whaling Commission (IWC) provides the best available population estimate for the western North Pacific stock of 20,501 whales (IWC, 2009). The all-season density estimate (0.0006 animals/km$^2$) for the western North Pacific (WNP) stock is derived from whaling sighting data (Ohsumi, 1977). Bradford et al. (2013) observed Bryde's whales around the Hawaiian Islands, calculating a similar density estimate (0.00033 animals/km$^2$) to that derived for the WNP stock.

**Common minke whale**: Several stocks of minke whales are recognized in the western North Pacific Ocean, including the western North Pacific "O" east (WNP OE) stock, and the western North Pacific "J" west (WNP JW) stock (Miyashita & Okamura, 2011; Wade & Baker, 2011). Minke whales potentially occurring in the waters of this model area are believed to be part of the "WNP OE" stock. Buckland et al. (1992) conducted sighting surveys during July and August in the western North Pacific Ocean and Sea of Okhotsk, from which a spatially-explicit density estimate, 0.0033 animals/km$^2$, for minke whales in this area was derived from the encounter rates and effective search widths for the offshore population (standard error (SE) = 0.17), while the stock estimate for the WNP "OE" stock is estimated as 25,049 individuals. Ferguson and Barlow (2001; 2003) computed density estimates in offshore areas of the ETP that are an order of magnitude lower than those derived from Buckland et al. (1992).

**Fin whale**: A seasonal density estimate, 0.0002 animals/km$^2$, was derived from encounter rates during Japanese whaling in the northwest Pacific Ocean (Tillman, 1977). An abundance estimate, 9,250 individuals, was derived from from encounter rates during Japanese whaling in the northwest Pacific Ocean (Tillman, 1977), which was corroborated with a compilation of catch statistics, sighting data, mark recoveries, and acoustics data (Mizroch et al., 2009). This density estimated for fin whales in the WNP stock are comparable to the density estimated for this species in offshore areas of the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003) and an order of magnitude higher than that calculated for around Hawaii (0.00002 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013).

**Humpback whale**: The NMFS Humpback Whale Biological Review Team (BRT) conducted a comprehensive status review in which they revised the ESA status for humpback whales in this region to be part of the Western North Pacific Distinct Population Segment (WNP DPS) and listed as endangered (Bettridge et al., 2015; NOAA, 2016a). The WNP DPS breeds/winters in the region of Okinawa and the Philippines and migrates to feeding grounds in the North Pacific, primarily off the Russian coast. Thus, humpback whales are only expected to occur in the Western Philippine Sea model area during winter, spring, and fall. The SPLASH consortium derived an average abundance for the Asian wintering grounds of approximately 1,000 humpback whales (Calambokidis et al., 2008), which has increased annually to an abundance estimate of 1,328 individuals (Bettridge et al., 2015). A density of 0.00089 animals/km$^2$ was derived (LGL, 2008) for the WNP stock of humpback whales based on boat-based surveys in the Phillipines (Acebes et al., 2007).

**Omura's whale:** Little population information is known or available for this species only described in 2003 but this baleen whale ranges from roughly northern Japan to Australia in the eastern Indian Ocean and western Pacific Ocean (Yamada, 2009). With so little information available, the Omura's whale is assumed to comprise one stock, the WNP, throughout its range in the western Pacific Ocean. The only abundance information available is an estimate made by Ohsumi (1980) for Bryde's whales in the Solomon Sea, which are now known to have been Bryde's and Omura's whales. Lacking other data, Ohsumi's (1980) abundance of 1,800 animals was used to represent the WNP stock of Omura's whales. A density estimate from the NMSDD (LGL, 2008 in DoN, 2018) is used (0.00004 animals/km$^2$).

**Blainville's beaked whale**: Lacking data on population estimates for the Blainville's beaked whale in the western North Pacific, the data derived for this species in waters of the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) are deemed most appropriate to represent the species in the WNP stock. Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) abundance derived for *Mesoplodon densirostris* added to one-fifth of the *Mesoplodon* spp. abundance provides an estimate of 8,032 animals to represent this stock. The density estimate for *Mesoplodon* spp. at the same latitudes in the eastern Pacific, 0.0005 animals/km$^2$; is most appropriate (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003). This density estimate is similar to the density of Blainville's beaked whales estimated in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00086 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017) and the mean predicted density estimate (0.000296 animals/km$^2$; Ferguson et al., 2006) for the ETP, but lower than the main Hawaiian Islands (0.0012 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2001).

**Common dolphin**: Short-beaked and long-beaked common dolphins were redefined as one species, common dolphin (*Delphinus delphis*) (SMM, 2017). No data on density or abundance estimates of common dolphins are available for the waters of the western North Pacific (Miyashita, 1993). Due to this lack of information, population data derived from ETP surveys are the best available, including an abundance estimate of 3,286,163 animals (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) and a spatially-explicit density estimate from a line-transect survey off the North American west coast (Carretta et al., 2011; 0. 1158 animals/km$^2$, CV=0.31).

**Common bottlenose dolphin**: Kasuya and Perrin (2017) define a WNP Southern Offshore Stock for this region. Kanaji et al. (2018) report an abundance estimate of 40,769 individuals. Miyashita (1993) estimated density as 0.0146/km$^2$, which is similar to that observed in the nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0103/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000) but is an order of magnitude larger than that that from habitat-based modeling (0.00118 animals/km$^2$; Forney et al., 2015).

**Cuvier's beaked whale**: No data are available for Cuvier's beaked whales in this region. Considering Cuvier's habitat preferences (e.g., water temperature, bathymetry), the best data available to use as a proxy for the WNP stock of Cuvier's beaked whales that occur in model area #3 are Ferguson and Barlow's (2001 and 2003) density estimate of 0.0003 animals/km$^2$ and abundance estimate of 90,725 animals derived for the species in waters at the same latitudes in the eastern Pacific. This eastern Pacific density is comparable to that estimated for the Hawaii EEZ (0.0003 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017) and less than the mean predicted density estimate for the ETP (0.00455 animals/km$^2$; Ferguson et al., 2006).

**Deraniyagala's beaked whale**: Dalebout et al. (2014) conducted genetic and molecular analyses to demonstrate that *Mesoplodon hotaula* was genetically distinct from the ginkgo-toothed beaked whale (*M. ginkgodens*). Little is known about this beaked whale species, but a stranding in the southern Philippines suggests this species may occur in this model area (Lacsamana et al., 2015). No abundance or stock information is available for the Deraniyagala's beaked whale. Given that this species was synonymous with the ginkgo-toothed beaked whale, which is part of the *Mesoplodon* spp. complex, the best available density and abundance estimates for *Mesoplodon* spp. at the same latitudes in the ETP are most appropriate for this region (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003). Using Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) northernmost strata, a density estimate of 0.0005 animals/km$^2$ and abundance estimate of 22,799 animals were used for analyses for the Deraniyagala's beaked whale in this model area.

**False killer whale**: From 34 sighting cruises associated with the Japanese drive fishery, Miyashita (1993) estimated an abundance of 16,668 (CV=0.263) and an average density of 0.0029 animals/km$^2$ of false killer whales in the WNP stock. Miyashita's (1993) density is comparable to the density estimated for the pelagic stock of false killer whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0006 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2012) and in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0017 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000), including the Main Hawaiian Islands insular stock (0.0008 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2015; Oleson et al., 2010) and the Northwest Hawaiian Islands insular stock (0.0006 animals/ km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2015; Forney et al., 2015).

**Fraser's dolphin**: Lacking occurrence or population data on the Fraser's dolphins in the western North Pacific, the abundance estimated at 220,789 animals for the species in the waters of the ETP by Ferguson and Barlow (2001, 2003) and the density of 0.0069 animals/km$^2$ estimated for Fraser's dolphins in the waters of the Hawaii EEZ by Bradford et al. (2013) best represented the WNP stock of Fraser's dolphins.

**Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale**: Since no data on density or stock estimates are available for the Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale in this region, the density of 0.0005 animals/km$^2$ and abundance of 22,799 animals was estimated for *Mesoplodon* spp. at the same latitudes in the eastern Pacific (Ferguson and

Barlow, 2001, 2003) are most appropriate to represent the North Pacific stock of ginkgo-toothed beaked whales in this region. The ETP density estimate is an order of magnitude less than that for unidentified beaked whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0.0021 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013) but comparable to the mean predicted density estimate for the ETP *Mesoplodon* spp. (0.000296 animals/km$^2$; Ferguson et al., 2006).

**Killer whale**: Killer whales have been observed off the southeast coast of Honshu, Japan, but no killer whales were taken in Japanese drive fisheries (Miyashita, 1993). Without any population or occurrence data on killer whales for the western North Pacific, the best available abundance estimate of 12,256 animals is from Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) long time series in the ETP while the best available density estimate of 0.00009 animals/km$^2$ is from LGL (2011) compilation of data for the Marianas area. LGL's (2011) density is comparable to the density, 0.00004 animals/km$^2$, estimated for killer whales in the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2013).

***Kogia* spp.**: Evans (1987) reported records of *Kogia* spp. off the Japanese coast with primarily an oceanic distribution that are not believed to be concentrated anywhere specific. Summing the abundances of *Kogia breviceps, Kogia sima, and Kogia* spp. in the geographic strata defined by Ferguson and Barlow (2001, 2003), an overall abundance of 350,553 animals was computed in the ETP. Considering the lack of data for the western North Pacific, Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) data are the most appropriate to represent *Kogia* spp. in this model area. At this latitude, *Kogia breviceps* and *Kogia sima* are both expected to occur. Reviewing density estimates calculated in the eastern Pacific Ocean at about 20°N (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003), a density estimate of 0.0017 animals/km$^2$ was derived, which is considered the best available for the WNP stock of *Kogia* spp. Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) density is slightly lower than the densities for pygmy sperm whale (0.00291 animals/km$^2$, CV=1.12) and dwarf sperm whale (0.00714 animals/km$^2$, CV=0.74) estimated within the Hawaii EEZ (Barlow, 2006).

**Longman's beaked whale:** Longman's beaked whales are known from tropical waters of the Pacific Ocean (Pitman et al., 1999; Dalebout et al., 2003). Ferguson and Barlow (2001) reported that all Longman's beaked whale sightings in their ETP surveys were south of 25ºN. Considering the lack of occurrence or population data for the WNP stock of Longman's beaked whales, the abundance of 7,619 animals estimated for Longman's beaked whales in offshore Hawaiian waters (Bradford et al., 2017) and the density of 0.00025animals per km$^2$ (LGL, 2011) derived from the Marianas regions are considered most appropriate to represent the WNP stock.

**Melon-headed whale:** An abundance estimated by Kanaji et al. (2018) from the Pacific coast of Japan of 56,213 animals (CV=0.56) and a density estimated by Fulling et al. (2011) of 0.00428 animals/km$^2$ derived for the Marianas region are the best available estimations for the WNP stock. The Fulling et al. (2011) density value is higher than the estimate from Mobley et al. (2000) for near the Main Hawaiian Islands: 0.0021 animals/km$^2$.

**Pantropical spotted dolphin**: Gilpatrick et al. (1987) described a known distribution of pantropical spotted dolphins occurring east of Japan. Kanaji et al. (2018) report an abundance estimate of 130,002 individuals (CV=0.43) and Miyashita (1993) reports a seasonal density estimate, 0.0137 animals/km$^2$. Miyashita's (1993) density is higher than that observed in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00369 animals/km$^2$; Forney et al., 2015) but is comparable to that derived for nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0407 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Pygmy killer whale**: Lacking data on the pygmy killer whale in the western North Pacific, density, 0.0021 animals/km$^2$, and abundance, 30,214 animals, estimates from eastern Pacific (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003) were considered the best available to use as a proxy to represent the WNP stock of pygmy killer whales in this model area. The Ferguson and Barlow density is comparable to that observed for pygmy killer whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00435 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017), while no pygmy killer whales were sighted in nearshore Hawaii waters (Mobley et al., 2000).

**Risso's dolphin**: Kanaji et al. (2018) report an abundance for the WNP stock of 143,374 individuals (CV=0.69). Miyashita's (1993) density estimate of 0.0106 animals/km$^2$ derived for Risso's dolphins off southern Japan/east Taiwan were used to represent the WNP stock of Risso's dolphin in this region. Miyashita's (1993) density is an order of magnitude larger than that observed in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00474 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017); no Risso's dolphins were observed in nearshore Hawaii waters (Mobley et al., 2000).

**Rough-toothed dolphin:** Rough-toothed dolphins are reportedly rare off Japan and in the heavily studied ETP. Since there are no data on abundance or density estimates for the WNP stock of rough-toothed dolphins, the best available density estimate (0.00224 animals/km$^2$) is from habitat-based models in the central North Pacific (Forney et al., 2015). Kanaji et al. (2018) report an abundance estimate (5,002 individuals, CV=1.24) from their sighting surveys in the western North Pacific. This density is comparable to those observed in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0026 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013) and in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0017 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Short-finned pilot whale**: The stock delineation of the short-finned pilot whale in the western North Pacific is not fully resolved, but a northern ecotype and southern ecotype are recognized, segregating at Choshi Point (35°42'N, 140°51'E) (Kasuya and Perrin, 2018). Using the results of Miyashita (1993), an abundance estimate of 31,396 individuals (CV=0.65) was calculated for the WNP southern stock and an average density estimate (0.0076 animals/km$^2$) was derived for the West Philippine Sea. This density estimate is similar to that found in pelagic waters of the Hawaii EEZ (0.0051 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013).

**Sperm whale**: Stock structure of this species has not been completely delineated in the North Pacific Ocean. Even though sightings collected by Kasuya and Miyashita (1988) were interpreted to indicate that two stocks of sperm whales exists in the western North Pacific Ocean, insufficient population-level data exist to adequately define a fine-scale population structure, except for the populations of sperm whales in U.S. EEZ waters (Allen and Angliss, 2013). For this reason, the number of sperm whales in the entire North Pacific stock is taken from Kato and Miyashita's (1998) estimate of 102,112 animals (CV=0.155). Since no densities of sperm whales have been estimated for this region, the density of 0.00123 animals/km$^2$ (Fulling et al., 2011), calculated from the winter/spring survey around Guam and the Mariana Islands, is the best representative estimate for this model area. This is comparable to the density estimate of sperm whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00158 animals/km$^2$; Forney et al., 2015).

**Spinner dolphin**: Records of spinner dolphins are not mentioned in historical Japanese whaling records (Kishiro and Kasuya, 1993), and no data on density or abundance estimates for this species are available (Miyashita, 1993). Lacking data on abundance or density estimates for the WNP stock of spinner dolphins, Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) abundance of 1,015,059 animals derived from the ETP, while the density estimated by Barlow (2006) of 0.00083 animals/km$^2$ from the offshore stratum of the outer Hawaiian EEZ are considered most appropriate to represent this stock in this model area; no sightings of spinner dolphins occurred during systematic effort in the 2010 summer/fall survey (Bradford et al., 2013).

**Striped dolphin**: Kasuya and Perrin (2017) recognize a southern offshore population, with an abundance estimate of 52,682 individuals (Miyashita, 1993). Density, 0.0164 animals/km$^2$, was estimated as one-half of Miyashita's (1993) spatially-explicit density estimate from off southern Japan/east Taiwan. This is higher than the density estimate of striped dolphins in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0084 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013).

## D-4. MODEL AREA 4—GUAM

Eldredge (1991) compiled the first list of published and unpublished records or marine mammals in the waters of the Guam and the lower Marianas Islands, reporting 19 species. The waters in the vicinity of Guam and nearby Marianas Islands were most recently surveyed for marine mammals from January to April 2007 (Fulling et al., 2011), in August 2007 (Mobley, 2007), and from February to March 2010, when waters around Guam and Saipan were surveyed by small-boat (Ligon et al., 2011).

**Blue whale**: Few data are available on blue whale occurrence in the North Pacific Ocean and the stock structure in the North Pacific remains uncertain. Stafford et al. (2001) studied the geographic variation of blue whale calls in the North Pacific, and although there was no hydrophone coverage around Guam, there was some coverage near the Kamchatka Peninsula, along the western Aleutian Islands chain, and near Hawaii. All calls recorded near Kamchatka and along the Aleutians were northwest Pacific blue whale calls, whereas calls around Hawaii were split between northwest (30 percent) and northeast (70 percent) Pacific blue whale calls (Stafford et al., 2001). Although the blue whale was the initial focus of Japanese whaling effort in the North Pacific, limited data were reported on blue whales. Therefore, sighting surveys associated with Japanese whaling of fin whales were judged to be the most appropriate proxy for blue whale occurrence estimates (Tillman, 1977; Carretta et al., 2019). Thus, the best available abundance for the WNP blue whale stock is 9,250 animals (Tillman, 1977). The best density for blue whales in this model area is 0. 00005 whales/km$^2$ (CV=1.09), which was estimated for the winter, spring, and fall seasons from a shipboard line-transect survey around Hawaii (Bradford et al., 2017). This density for blue whales is comparable to density estimates of the blue whale in offshore areas of the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2003) and to the waters surrounding Guam (Fulling et al., 2011).

**Bryde's whale**: The IWC provides the best available population estimate for the WNP stock at 20,501 whales (IWC, 2009). Sightings from the Fulling et al. (2011) 2007 surveys in the Marianas region produced an abundance of 233 Bryde's whales. The best available density estimate (0.00041 animals/km$^2$) is calculated from the winter/spring survey around Guam and the Mariana Islands (Fulling et al., 2011). The Fulling et al. (2011) density is comparable to density estimates from the ETP (0.0009/km$^2$) (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) and the Hawaii EEZ (0.00033 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013).

**Common minke whale**: Several stocks of minke whales are recognized in the western North Pacific Ocean, including the western North Pacific "O" east (WNP OE) stock, and the western North Pacific "J" west (WNP JW) stock (Miyashita & Okamura, 2011; Wade & Baker, 2011). Minke whales potentially occurring in the waters of this model area are believed to be part of the "WNP OE" stock. Minke whales were heard but not sighted during recent surveys in Guam and the Mariana Islands waters (Fulling et al., 2011), with a density estimate of 0.00015 animals/km$^2$ (Norris et al., 2017) . Buckland et al. (1992) conducted sighting surveys during July and August in the western North Pacific Ocean and Sea of Okhotsk, from which the abundance estimate, 25,049 individuals, was derived. The best available density estimate for common minke whales in this region is based on the Ferguson and Barlow (2001; 2003) computed density estimates (0.0003 animals/km$^2$) in offshore areas of the ETP.

**Fin whale**: Fin whales are not typically expected to occur south of 20°N (Mizroch et al., 2009), and during recent surveys, no fin whales were detected (Fulling et al., 2011). Due to the lack of data available for fin whales in this region, any rare fin whales potentially occurring in this region are considered part of the WNP stock, with an abundance estimate, 9,250 individuals, derived from from encounter rates during Japanese whaling in the northwest Pacific Ocean (Tillman, 1977), which was corroborated with a compilation of catch statistics, sighting data, mark recoveries, and acoustics data (Mizroch et al., 2009). The density estimate of 0.00006 animals/km$^2$ (CV=1.05) was used from a shipboard line-transect survey around Hawaii (Bradford et al., 2017), which is comparable to the average calling fin whale density estimate of 0.000027 animals/km$^2$ by McDonald and Fox (1999) based on recordings north of Oahu, Hawaii .

**Humpback whale**: The NMFS Humpback Whale Biological Review Team (BRT) conducted a comprehensive status review in which they revised the ESA status for humpback whales in this region to be part of the Western North Pacific Distinct Population Segment (WNP DPS) and listed as endangered (Bettridge et al., 2015; NOAA, 2016a). The WNP DPS breeds/winters in the region of Okinawa and the Philippines and migrates to feeding grounds in the North Pacific, primarily off the Russian coast. Thus, humpback whales are only expected to occur in the Guam model area during winter, spring, and fall. The SPLASH consortium derived an average abundance for the Asian wintering grounds of approximately 1,000 humpback whales (Calambokidis et al., 2008), which has increased annually to an abundance estimate of 1,328 individuals (Bettridge et al., 2015). A density of 0.00089 animals/km$^2$ was derived (LGL, 2008) for the WNP stock of humpback whales based on boat-based surveys in the Phillipines (Acebes et al., 2007).

**Omura's whale:** Little population information is known or available for this species only described in 2003 but this baleen whale ranges from roughly northern Japan to Australia in the eastern Indian Ocean and western Pacific Ocean (Yamada, 2009). With so little information available, the Omura's whale is assumed to comprise one stock, the WNP, throughout its range in the western Pacific Ocean. The only abundance information available is an estimate made by Ohsumi (1980) for Bryde's whales in the Solomon Sea, which are now known to have been Bryde's and Omura's whales. Lacking other data, Ohsumi's (1980) abundance of 1,800 animals was used to represent the WNP stock of Omura's whales. A density estimate from the NMSDD (LGL, 2008 in DoN, 2018) was used (0.00004 animals/km$^2$).

**Sei whale**: The IWC recognizes one stock of sei whales in the North Pacific (Donovan, 1991), although some evidence exists for several populations (Carretta et al., 2019). Very few sightings of sei whales have occurred in any region of the North Pacific. Until the recent survey conducted in the waters of the Mariana Islands (Fulling et al., 2011), during which a total of 16 sei whale sightings were observed, sei whales were considered rare in the Marianas region. The best density estimate is 0.00029 animals/km$^2$, derived from the 2007 surveys (Fulling et al., 2011). This is similar to that calculated for around Hawaii (0.00016 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017). The Marianas 2007 surveys derived an abundance estimate of 177 animals, which is similar to other site-specific estimates in the eastern North Pacific where limited sightings have occurred (Carretta et al., 2019). Tillman (1977) derived an abundance estimate of 8,600 individuals for sei/Bryde's[1] whale in the North Pacific from whaling catch statistics. Mizroch et al. (2015) estimated the size of the pelagic migratory stock in 1975 at approximately 4,000 animals, but their "single stock" (coastal and pelagic) state space analysis estimated a population size of 7,000 animals in 1974, which is used here as the best available data. Initial estimates for a portion of the sei whale population off Japan indicate abundance estimates of similar magnitude (7,744 for May to June and 5,406 for July to September; Hakamada et al., 2009).

**Blainville's beaked whale**: The density estimate of 0.00086 animals/km$^2$ (CV=1.13) derived for the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017) is the most appropriate for this species in this model area. Lacking abundance data for this region, Ferguson and Barlow's (2001 and 2003) abundance estimate from the eastern Pacific that included the *Mesoplodon densirostris* estimate added to one-fifth of the *Mesoplodon* spp. abundance estimate, resulting in a total of 8,032 animals, was considered best to represent the WNP stock. Bradford et al.'s (20017) density estimate is comparable to that for Blainville's beaked whales in the eastern Pacific (0.0013 animals/km$^2$; Ferguson and Barlow, 2003), in the main Hawaiian Islands (0.0012 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2001), and the mean predicted density estimate for the ETP *Mesoplodon* spp. (0.000296/km$^2$; Ferguson et al., 2006).

**Common bottlenose dolphin:** Kasuya and Perrin (2017) define a WNP Southern Offshore Stock for this region. Kanaji et al. (2018) report an abundance estimate of 40,769 individuals. The best available density estimate, 0.00899 animals/km$^2$ (CV=0.57), is calculated from the Hawaii EEZ survey data (Bradford et al., 2017). This density is comparable to that derived for this species in the eastern North Pacific at similar latitudes (0.0025 animals/km$^2$) (Ferguson and Barlow, 2003).

**Cuvier's beaked whale:** With few population data available for the western North Pacific Ocean, the best data available density and abundance estimates for the WNP stock of Cuvier's beaked whales are 0.0003 animals/km$^2$ (CV=0.69) for the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017) and 90,725 animals from the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003). The Hawaii density is less than the mean predicted density estimate for the ETP (0.00455 animals/km$^2$; Ferguson et al., 2006).

**Deraniyagala beaked whale**: Dalebout et al. (2014) conducted genetic and molecular analyses to demonstrate that *Mesoplodon hotaula* was genetically distinct from the ginkgo-toothed beaked whale (*M. ginkgodens*). Little is known about this beaked whale species, and no abundance or stock information is available for the Deraniyagala beaked whale. Given that this species was synonymous with the ginkgo-toothed beaked whale, which is part of the *Mesoplodon* spp. complex, the best available abundance estimate for *Mesoplodon* spp. at the same latitudes in the ETP are most appropriate for this region (22,799 animals; Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003). The best available density estimate is for unidentified *Mesoplodon* spp. In a shipboad line-transect survey around Hawaii (0.00189 animals/km$^2$, CV=0.48; Bradford et al., 2017).

**Dwarf sperm whale**: Ferguson and Barlow's (2001 and 2003) derived an abundance estimate for *Kogia* spp. of 350,553 in the ETP, which is the most appropriate to use as an abundance proxy for the dwarf sperm whale in the Guam area. The 0.0071 animals/km$^2$ (CV=0.74) for dwarf sperm whales derived for the Hawaii EEZ (Barlow, 2006) is the best available density for the dwarf sperm whale in the Guam region.

**False killer whale**: Miyashita (1993) estimated the abundance of false killer whales as 16,668 animals (CV=0.263) from 34 sighting cruises associated with the Japanese drive fishery. The best available density estimate (0.0011 animals/km$^2$) for the WNP Pelagic stock is calculated from the winter/spring surveys in the waters of Guam and the Mariana Islands (Fulling et al., 2011). This is comparable to the density estimated for the pelagic stock of false killer whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0006 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2012) and in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0017 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000), including the Main Hawaiian Islands insular stock (0.0008 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2015; Oleson et al., 2010) and the Northwest Hawaiian Islands insular stock (0.0006 animals/ km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2015; Forney et al., 2015.

**Fraser's dolphin**: With few population data available for the WNP stock, the estimated density of 0.02104 animals/km$^2$ (CV=0.66) (Bradford et al., 2017) and abundance of 16,992 (Bradford et al., 2013) for Fraser's dolphins in Hawaiian waters is the most appropriate in this model area. Although Fraser's dolphins are estimated to occur regularly and year-round in the Mariana region's waters of the Guam model area, no Fraser's dolphins were observed during the 2007 surveys of this area (Fulling et al., 2011).

**Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale**: Since no data on density or stock estimates are available for this species, the best available abundance estimate for *Mesoplodon* spp. at the same latitudes in the ETP are most appropriate for this region (22,799 animals; Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003). The best available density estimate is for unidentified *Mesoplodon* spp. In a shipboad line-transect survey around Hawaii (0.00189 animals/km$^2$, CV=0.48; Bradford et al., 2017).

**Killer whale**: Killer whales are considered rare with limited sightings reported, and during the 2007 surveys of this area, no killer whales were observed (Fulling et al., 2011; Carretta et al., 2019). The best available density estimate, 0.00006 animals/km$^2$ (CV=0.96), is for killer whales in the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017). An abundance of 12,256 animals was estimated by Ferguson and Barlow (2001 and 20003) and is the most appropriate for this region. Mobley et al. (2000) did not report any sightings in their surveys of waters within 25 nm of the Main Hawaiian Islands.

**Longman's beaked whale:** Few population data are available for this rarely observed beaked whale. No density estimates for Longman's beaked whales are available from the Mariana Islands area (Fulling et al., 2011), so the best available data are a density estimate of 0.00311 animals/km$^2$ (CV = 0.66) and an abundance estimate of 7,619 animals estimated for offshore Hawaiian waters (Bradford et al., 2013, 2017).

**Melon-headed whale**: Kanaji et al. (2018) estimated abundance for the Pacific coast of Japan (56,213 animals; CV=0.58). The best available density (0.00428 animals/km$^2$) estimates for the melon-headed whale's Northern Mariana Island stock found in this model area are derived from the winter/spring 2007 surveys around Guam and the Mariana Islands (Fulling et al., 2011). This is higher than the density estimate calculated in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0021 animals/km$^2$) during the spring, summer and fall (Mobley et al., 2000).

**Pantropical spotted dolphin**: Gilpatrick et al. (1987) cited a known distribution of pantropical spotted dolphins east of Japan. Kanaji et al. (2018) report an abundance estimate of 130,002 individuals (CV=0.43). The best available density estimate, 0.0226 animals/km$^2$, is calculated from the winter/spring surveys around Guam and the Mariana Islands (Fulling et al., 2011). This density is greater than that observed in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00369 animals/km$^2$; Forney et al., 2015) and comparable to that observed in nearshore waters of Hawaii (0.0407 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Pygmy killer whale**: One sighting of six animals was observed during the 2007 surveys around the Mariana Islands, from which a density estimate (0.00014 animals/km$^2$) was derived (Fulling et al., 2011). Data from the eastern North Pacific was used to derive a stock-wide abundance estimate (30,214 animals) (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003) for the WNP stock of pygmy killer whales. The density for this model area for this species is an order of magnitude less than that observed in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00435 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017), but no pygmy killers were sighted in nearshore Hawaii waters (Mobley et al., 2000).

**Pygmy sperm whale**: Ferguson and Barlow's (2001 and 2003) derived an abundance estimate for *Kogia* spp. of 350,553 for in the ETP, which is the best estimate available for the WNP stock in the Guam model area. The combined densities of 0.00291 animals/km$^2$ (CV=1.12) for pygmy sperm whales was derived for the Hawaii EEZ (Barlow, 2006) and was used for this species in the Guam model area. Mobley et al. (2000) observe two pods of five individuals during the 1993 to 1998 surveys in Hawaii, but no density or abundance estimates were derived.

**Risso's dolphin:** Neither Fulling et al. (2011) or Mobley et al. (2000) collected sufficient sighting data to derive density or abundance estimates for this species. Kanaji et al. (2018) report a WNP stock estimate of 143,374 animals (CV=0.69). The density estimate of 0.00474 animals/km$^2$ (CV=0.43) used for the WNP stock in this model area was derived from surveys in the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017). This density is comparable to the density estimate calculate for the eastern North Pacific (0.0007 animals/km$^2$; Ferguson and Barlow, 2003).

**Rough-toothed dolphin**: Rough-toothed dolphins are reportedly rare off Japan and in the heavily studied ETP. Since there are no data on abundance or density estimates for the WNP stock of rough-toothed dolphins, the best available density estimate (0.00185 animals/km$^2$) is from LGL (2011). Kanaji et al. (2018) report an abundance estimate (5,002 individuals, CV=1.24) from their sighting surveys in the western North Pacific).

**Short-finned pilot whale:** The stock delineation of the short-finned pilot whale in the western North Pacific is not fully resolved, but a northern ecotype and southern ecotype are recognized, segregating at Choshi Point (35°42'N, 140°51'E) (Kasuya and Perrin, 2018). Using the results of Miyashita (1993), an abundance estimate of 31,396 individuals (CV=0.65) was calculated for the WNP southern stock. The best available density estimate (0.00797 animals/km$^2$, CV=0.49) is calculated from the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017). This density is an order of magnitude less than in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0237 animals/km$^2$) during the spring, summer and fall (Mobley et al., 2000).

**Sperm whale**: Insufficient population-level data exist to currently adequately define the stock structure of sperm whales in the North Pacific, except in U.S. EEZ waters, where for management purposes, three stocks have been defined: a North Pacific stock that migrates between Alaska and the western North Pacific, a central North Pacific stock around Hawaii, and a California/Oregon/Washington stock off the U.S. west coast (Allen and Angliss, 2014). Further, NMFS considers both currently available and historical population estimates for the North Pacific stock to be unreliable (Allen and Angliss, 2014). The IWC recognizes two stocks in the North Pacific Ocean (eastern and western stocks), but stock boundaries delineation and review by the IWC are woefully out of date (Donovan, 1991). Sperm whales in the Guam model area are part the NP stock. Since an abundance estimate is needed for the calculation of impacts, the best available abundance estimate for the NP stock is the estimate of 102,112 individuals (Kato and Miyashita, 1998). In the 2007 surveys of the southern Mariana Islands, including Guam, Fulling et al. (2011) reported that the sperm whale was the most frequently encountered marine mammal. The density estimated for sperm whales in waters of the southern Marianas Islands, 0.00123 animals/km$^2$, was calculated from the 2007 winter/spring surveys reported in Fulling et al. (2011). This is comparable to the density estimate of sperm whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00158 animals/km$^2$; Forney et al., 2015).

**Spinner dolphin:** Although a stock structure incorporating an inshore (insular) and pelagic stock of spinner dolphins has been suggested for the Marianas region following the stock delineation for the species in the Hawaiian archipelago (i.e., DoN, 2013a), currently sufficient population level abundance data are not available to designate insular and pelagic stocks of spinner dolphins, as are needed for computation of the percentage of the stocks affected by SURTASS LFA sonar. Similarly, in the American Samoan Islands, NMFS currently is only able to define one stock of spinner dolphins, and no stocks are designated in the Marianas Islands (Carretta et al., 2019). Thus, for the purposes of this LOAs application, spinner dolphins in the Marianas region are estimated to be part of the WNP stock, with an estimated abundance of 1,015,059 animals, as derived from Ferguson and Barlow (2001, 2003) ETP data estimates. Further, the best available density estimate for the WNP stock of spinner dolphins, 0.00083 animals/km$^2$, is derived from the Hawaiian pelagic survey data (Barlow, 2006); no sightings of spinner dolphins occurred during systematic effort in the 2010 summer/fall survey (Bradford et al., 2013). The density of Barlow (2006) is an two orders of magnitude less than that observed in nearshore waters of Hawaii (0.0443 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Striped dolphin**: Kasuya and Perrin (2017) recognize a southern offshore population, with an abundance estimate of 52,682 individuals (Miyashita, 1993). The best available density estimate (0.00616 animals/km$^2$) is calculated from the winter/spring survey around Guam and the Mariana Islands (Fulling et al., 2011). This is comparable to that observed in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0084 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013) and in nearshore waters of Hawaii (0.0016 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

## D-5. MODEL AREA 5—SEA OF JAPAN

**Bryde's whale**: Omura (1977) refers to four major whaling grounds on the coast of Japan: waters off Bonin Islands, Sanriku, Wakayama (Taiji), and West Kyushu, although none of these are located in the Sea of Japan. However, Evans (1987) described the Bryde's whale range from northern Japan to the equator in the western North Pacific. Considering habitat preferences (e.g., water temperature, bathymetry), the best density data available are the long-term time series from the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003), with an appropriate density estimate (0.0001 animals/km$^2$) to represent the WNP stock in this area. The IWC population estimate of 20,501 whales for the WNP stock was used for in analyses for this model area (IWC, 2009). Bradford et al. (2013) observed Bryde's whales around the Hawaiian Islands, calculating a similar density estimate (0.00033 animals/km$^2$) to that derived for the WNP stock.

**Common minke whale**: Minke whales have been reported from the Sea of Okhotsk, Sea of Japan, and East China Sea (Yellow Sea), with recent sighting surveys by Japan and Korea designed to update abundance through the International Whaling Commission (Miyashita and Okamura, 2011). In addition, the stock structure is being re-evaluated, with the current hypothesis that there are five stocks: one in the Yellow Sea ("Y" stock), one in the Sea of Japan ("JW" stock), a J-like stock along the Pacific coast of Japan ("JE" stock), and two O-like stocks in the nearshore and offshore Western North Pacific ("OE" and "OW" stocks, respectively) (Wade and Baker, 2011). Minke whales in the Sea of Japan are believed to be from the JW stock. The sighting surveys from Japan and Korea estimate an abundance for the JW stock of 2,611 animals (Miyashita and Okamura, 2011), with a density of 0.00016 animals/km$^2$ extrapolated from the eastern North Pacific (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003).

**Fin whale**: Fin whales are known to winter in the Sea of Japan, with documented catches occurring in all months from September through May (Mizroch et al., 2009). There is some suggestion that animals may occur year-round, though this is based on a limited sample size. An historic stock estimate for the WNP stock of fin whales, 9,250 animals, was derived from encounter rates of Japanese scouting boats in the northwest Pacific (Tillman, 1977). The current density estimate (0.0009 animals/km$^2$) for the WNP stock is roughly estimated from data of the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003), which is an order of magnitude higher than that calculated for around Hawaii (0.00002 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013).

**North Pacific right whale**: The western North Pacific right whale population is considered distinct from the eastern population, arbitrarily separated by the 180° line of longitude (Best et al., 2001). The

Okhotsk Sea, Kuril Islands, and eastern Kamchatka coast represent major feeding grounds for the western population (Brownell et al., 2001) where animals are typically found May through September (Clapham et al., 2004). Various areas have been proposed for breeding and calving grounds, including the Ryukyu Islands, Yellow Sea, Sea of Japan, offshore waters far from land, and the Bonin Islands, but a lack of winter sightings (December to February) makes a definitive assessment impossible (Brownell et al., 2001). Clapham et al. (2004) note the extensive offshore component to the right whale's distribution in the 19$^{th}$ century data. Movement north in spring (peak months of February to April) and south in fall (peak months September to December) suggest the possibility of two putative sub-populations in the western population that are kept apart by the Japanese islands, though this seems unlikely (Brownell et al., 2001, Clapham et al., 2004). Data from Japanese sighting cruises in the Okhotsk Sea provide an abundance estimate of 922 animals (CV=0.433, 95% CI=404 to 2,108) (Best et al., 2001) for the WNP population. No density estimates are available for this very rare marine mammal species, therefore, the nominal minimum density estimate of 0.00001 animals/km$^2$ was used in the risk analysis to reflect the very low probability of occurrence in this region during winter and spring seasons.

**Omura's whale:** Little population information is known or available for this species only described in 2003 but this baleen whale ranges from roughly northern Japan to Australia in the eastern Indian Ocean and western Pacific Ocean (Yamada, 2009). With so little information available, the Omura's whale is assumed to comprise one stock, the WNP, throughout its range in the western Pacific Ocean. The only abundance information available is an estimate made by Ohsumi (1980) for Bryde's whales in the Solomon Sea, which are now known to have been Bryde's and Omura's whales. Lacking other data, Ohsumi's (1980) abundance of 1,800 animals was used to represent the WNP stock of Omura's whales. A density estimate from the NMSDD (LGL, 2008 in DoN, 2018) was used (0.00004 animals/km$^2$).

**Western North Pacific gray whale**: Gray whales in the western North Pacific Ocean are genetically distinct from those gray whales occurring in the eastern North Pacific Ocean (LeDuc et al., 2002). New data photographing western North Pacific gray whales off the U.S. west coast has prompted NMFS to draft the first ever stock assessment report for this population (Carretta et al., 2019). The present day distribution of the WNP gray whale stock appears to range from summering grounds in west central Okhotsk Sea off the northeast coast of Sakhalin Island to wintering grounds in the South China Sea (Meier et al., 2007; Weller et al., 2002). However, some individuals that summer off Sakhalin Island have also been documented off the west coast of North America (Carretta et al., 2019). The WNP stock of gray whales migrates through the Sea of Japan in November to December. The exact migration route is not known, and Omura (1988) indicated that gray whales were caught along the Chinese and North Korea coasts in the Sea of Japan. Gray whales presumably maintain a shallow water/nearshore affinity throughout the southern portion of their range. The best available abundnace estimate is 290 animals (Carretta et al., 2019). With no density estimate for this rare species available, a minimal density of 0.0001 animals/km$^2$ was used in risk computation for this model area to reflect the extremely low potential for this species occurring.

**Baird's beaked whale**: Kasuya (1986) reported catches of Baird's in the Sea of Japan around approximately 37°N (Toyama Bay) and off southern Hokkaido (41°-42°N). From Kasuya's (1986) encounter rate and effective search widths, a density of 0.0003 animals/km$^2$ was derived for a region from about 32° to 40°N and seaward of the Pacific Japanese coast out to about 150°E. This density estimate is comparable to that derived from the ETP by Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003. Kasuya and Perrin (2017) cited an abundance estimate by Miyashita (1986, 1990) of 5,688, and is the abundance estimated for the WNP stock of Baird's beaked whales.

**Common dolphin**: Short-beaked and long-beaked common dolphins were redefined as one species, common dolphin (*Delphinus delphis*) (SMM, 2017). No data on density or abundance estimates of common dolphins are available for the insular waters of the Sea of Japan (Miyashita, 1993). The best density estimate (0.1158 animals/km$^2$) and abundance estimate (279,182 animals) are from a line-transect survey off the North American west coast (Carretta et al., 2011).

**Common bottlenose dolphin**: Kishiro and Kasuya (1993) reported that bottlenose dolphins were caught at Ohmishima in Yamaguchi Prefecture in the Sea of Japan. Miyashita (1993) reported that reproductive differences suggest that animals from the Sea of Japan and East China Sea are members of an inshore Archipelago stock that are separate from animals in the WNP stock found in the waters of the western North Pacific Ocean. Kishiro and Kasuya (1993) cite Miyashita (1986) as estimating the abundance of the stock in the East China Sea as 35,046. Since these data represent only about one-third of the habitat of bottlenose dolphins in the East China Sea, the population estimate is tripled to derive an abundance for the inshore Archipelago stock estimate as 105,138 animals. No density estimates are available for the inshore Archipelago stock; therefore, the density estimate (0.00077 animals/km$^2$) was calculated from LGL (2011) data.

**Cuvier's beaked whale:** No density or stock estimate data are available for this region, but Leatherwood and Reeves (1983) state that Cuvier's beaked whales are relatively common in the Sea of Japan. Considering habitat preferences (e.g., water temperature, bathymetry), the best available density and abundance data are derived from Ferguson and Barlow (2001, 2003) ETP survey estimates, with a representative density for the WNP stock in this area estimated as 0.0031 animals/km$^2$ and an abundance estimated as 90,725 animals. This density estimate is greater than that estimated for the Hawaii EEZ (0.0003 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017) but comparable to the mean predicted density estimate for the ETP (0.00455 animals/km$^2$; Ferguson et al., 2006).

**Dall's porpoise**: Dall's porpoise are found only in the North Pacific, primarily north of 36°N in the western North Pacific Ocean. This species has two distinct color morphs: one with a white flank patch that extends forward to the dorsal fin (*dalli* type) and one with a flank patch extending all the way to the front flippers (*truei* type). These morphological differences have been noted between animals from the Pacific coast of Japan (the *truei*-type), the Sea of Japan, and Sea of Okhotsk (the *dalli*-type), and the offshore northwestern Pacific and western Bering Sea (the *dalli*-type) (Hayano et al., 2003). Hayano et al. (2003) conducted genetic studies on the three populations and found a low, but significant, difference between the Sea of Japan-Okhotsk population and the other two populations. Based on surveys of the eastern North Pacific, a density estimate of 0.0520 animals/km$^2$ (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003)and an abundance estimate of 76,720 animals (IWC, 2008) best represent the Sea of Japan stock in this model area. This density estimates a concentration of Dall's porpoises probably larger than what would be encountered by LFA operations in the Sea of Japan since it includes survey effort in nearshore waters where animals are more often found.

**False killer whale**: Kishiro and Kasuya (1993) reviewed the history of Japanese coastal whaling, reporting that false killer whales were caught in the Sea of Japan along the Noto coast of Japan. Miyashita (1993) suggested that animals summering in the Sea of Japan were probably from a separate, inshore Archipelago stock, by analogy from Pacific white-sided dolphins, than animals found in the western North Pacific. Kishiro and Kasuya (1993) cited Miyashita (1986) as estimating the population wintering in Iki Island waters (in the Korea Strait) and part of the East China Sea at 3,259 animals. Since these data represent only about one-third of the habitat of false killer whales in the East China Sea, the population estimate is tripled for the inshore Archipelago stock estimate of 9,777 animals. This is smaller than the estimated abundance of false killer whales off the Pacific coast of Japan (16,668 animals CV=0.263) (Miyashita, 1993). Since no sightings of false killer whales were made during the survey effort in the Sea of Japan and East China Sea (Miyashita, 1993), the density estimate (0.0027 animals/km$^2$) for this inshore Archipelago stock is derived from the northernmost region of eastern North Pacific (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003). This is higher than the density estimated for the pelagic stock of false killer whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0006 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2012) and in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0017 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000), including the Main Hawaiian Islands insular stock (0.0008 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2015; Oleson et al., 2010) and the Northwest Hawaiian Islands insular stock (0.0006 animals/ km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2015; Forney et al., 2015.

**Harbor porpoise:** Little is known about the harbor porpoises that are found off the northern coasts of Japan (Gaskin et al., 1993). Off the U.S. east coast and U.S. west coast, animals are found almost exclusively at water depths of less than 100 m (323 ft) (Read and Westgate, 1997; Carretta et al., 2001) and fine-scale stock structure exists (Carretta et al., 2019; Muto et al., 2019). Preliminary analysis of mitrochondrial DNA suggests that Japanese harbor porpoise group with Alaskan animals to form a genetically distinct group (Taguchi et al., 2010).Therefore, using survey data corrected for sighting biases, the abundance estimate (31,046 animals, CV=0.21) (Hobbs and Waite, 2010 cited in Allen and Angliss, 2014) and density estimate (0.19 animals/km$^2$) and density estimate (0.019 animals/km$^2$; Hobbs and Waite, 2010) of the Gulf of Alaska stock are most appropriate.

**Killer whale**: Killer whales are considered rare with limited sightings reported (Carretta et al., 2019). The best available density estimate (0.00009 animals/km$^2$) was derived from LGL (2011) data. The most representative abundance estimate of 12,256 animals for the WNP stock was calculated from the Ferguson and Barlow's (2001 and 2003) eastern North Pacific data. Mobley et al. (2000) did not report any sightings in their surveys of waters within 25 nm of the Main Hawaiian Islands, nor did the Fulling et al. (2011) surveys around the Mariana Islands.

***Kogia* spp.:** With no available population data available for the WNP stock in the Sea of Japan, Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) abundance estimated for *Kogia* spp. of 350,553 in the ETP and their density of 0.0017 animals/km$^2$ were deemed the best estimate available for the Sea of Japan area. Mobley et al. (2000) observe two pods of five individuals during the 1993 to 1998 surveys in Hawaii, but no density or abundance estimates were derived.

**Pacific white-sided dolphin**: Recent research on genetic differentiation suggests that animals found in coastal Japanese waters and the Sea of Japan belong to a separate, inshore archipelago stock than animals found in offshore North Pacific waters (Hayano et al., 2004; Miyashita, 1993). Sighting surveys in the North Pacific were analyzed to estimate the abundance of Pacific white-sided dolphins as 931,000 individuals (Buckland et al. 1993). This estimate is over an order of magnitude larger than the abundance estimate in the eastern North Pacific (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003). Without any data for the inshore archipelago stock, it is roughly estimated that the abundance estimate from the WNP (931,000 animals) (Buckland et al. 1993) and the density estimate (0.0030 animals/km$^2$) from the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) are most appropriate to represent the inshore archipelago stock. No sightings of Pacific white-sided dolphins were reported in Hawaii surveys (Barlow, 2006; Bradford et al., 2017; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Risso's dolphin**: Kishiro and Kasuya (1993) reported that Risso's dolphins were caught on islands in the Korea Strait. Miyashita (1993) reported sightings in the Sea of Japan during June surveys (no effort during other months) and suggested by analogy to bottlenose dolphins and Pacific white-sided dolphins that Risso's summering in the Sea of Japan represent a separate, inshore Archipelago stock separate from the WNP stock. There are no separate data reported for the Sea of Japan or East China Sea, however. Therefore, the WNP stock estimate (143,374 animals, CV=0.69; Kanaji et al., 2018) and density estimate (0.0073 animals/km$^2$) derived from the Pacific coast of Japan (Miyashita, 1993) are most appropriate to represent the inshore Archipelago stock that occurs in the Sea of Japan. This stock density is comparable to that observed in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0067 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013), and no Risso's dolphins were observed in nearshore Hawaii waters (Mobley et al., 2000), or around Guam and the Mariana Islands (Fulling et al., 2011).

**Rough-toothed dolphin**: With the absence of population data for this dolphin in the Sea of Japan, the best available data are for the WNP stock of rough-toothed dolphins. The best available density estimate (0.00224 animals/km$^2$) is from habitat-based models in the central North Pacific (Forney et al., 2015). Kanaji et al. (2018) report an abundance estimate (5,002 individuals, CV=1.24) from their sighting surveys in the western North Pacific. This density is comparable to that observed in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0026 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013) and in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0017 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Sperm whale**: Stock structure of sperm whales in the North Pacific Ocean remains unclear except in U.S. EEZ waters (Allen and Angliss, 2014). Kasuya and Miyashita (1988) reported no Japanese whaling stations processing sperm whales in the Sea of Japan (Leatherwood and Reeves, 1983). Gregr and Trites (2001) reviewed sperm whale catch data off the coast of British Columbia to determine habitat preferences, and it is possible that the Sea of Japan provides adequate habitat conditions for sperm whales. The density, 0.00123 animals/km$^2$, estimated for sperm whales from the dedicated surveys in the waters around the Mariana Islands (Fulling et al., 2011) represents the best available density for this model area. Kato and Miyashita's (1998) sperm whale abundance estimate of 102,112 animals for the NP stock that migrates between Alaska and the western North Pacific is the best currently available for the overall stock. The Sea of Japan density is comparable to that (0.00158 animals/km$^2$) estimated for the main Hawaiian Islands (Forney et al., 2015).

**Spinner dolphin:** Gilpatrick et al. (1987) reported a high density of sightings in the Korea Strait and adjacent waters to the north but no spinner dolphin sightings were reported from the Sea of Japan. This species is not mentioned in historical Japanese whaling records (Kishiro and Kasuya, 1993), and there are no data on density or stock estimates (Miyashita, 1993). Thus, the best available density estimate (0.00083 animals/km$^2$) for possible occurrence in summer and fall is derived from the Hawaii EEZ (Barlow, 2006), which is an order of magnitude less than that observed in nearshore waters of Hawaii (0.0443 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000); no sightings of spinner dolphins occurred during systematic effort in the 2010 summer/fall survey (Bradford et al., 2013). The best data available abundance estimate (1,015,059 animals) for spinner dolphins in the WNP stock is that derived from ETP surveys (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003).

**Stejneger's beaked whale**: Miyazaki et al. (1987) reported four Stejneger's beaked whales stranded in the Sea of Japan at about 37°N, 135°E. Density or stock estimate data are not available for the WNP stock in this region. Considering habitat preferences (e.g., water temperature, bathymetry), the most appropriate Stejneger's density estimate of 0.0005 animals/km$^2$ is derived from ETP data of Ferguson and Barlow (2001, 2003), with the most appropriate abundance (8,000 animals) approximated from that derived for the WNP stock of Baird's beaked whales (Kasuya, 1986).

**Northern fur seal**: Northern fur seals in this region are part of the Western Pacific stock. Northern fur seals only go ashore on their breeding grounds further north; after breeding and molting, many northern fur seals travel southward, where they remain at sea and may be found in this region during the winter and spring (Buckland et al., 1993; Allen and Angliss, 2015). The Western Pacific stock is estimated at 503,609 animals, which is the sum of the abuandance estimates for the Kuril Islands and Commander Island (Gelatt et al., 2015) plus Tyuleniy Island (Kuzin, 2015). Horimoto et al. (2016) estimated a density of 0.368 animals/km$^2$ in nearshore waters during winter, with half that density in spring.

**Spotted seal**: The Southern DPS of spotted seals consists of breeding concentrations in the Yellow Sea (particularly the Bohai Sea, both of which are northern parts of the East China Sea), and Peter the Great Bay (northwestern Sea of Japan). Beyond limited information on select haul-out locations, very little information exists on their spatial and/or seasonal distribution. The most current population estimate of the Southern DPS is 6,284 seals, which is derived from summing the most current abundances for subareas of the Sea of Japan including Liaodong Gulf/Bohai Sea (1,500 individuals; Han et al. 2005 cited in Yan et al., 2018; Han et al., 2010), Peter the Great Bay (3,600 individuals; Trukhin, 2019), and in the northern Sea of Japan off western Hokkaido (1,184 seals; Shibuya et al., 2016). No density estimates are available, so a default minimum density estimate of 0.0001 animals/km$^2$ was estimated to reflect the very low probability of occurrence.

## D-6. MODEL AREA 6—EAST CHINA SEA

**Bryde's whale:** Yoshida and Kato (1999) identified three stocks of Bryde's whales in the western North Pacific: Solomon Islands/Southeast Asia stock (mainly Philippine waters and the Gulf of Thailand), East China Sea, and offshore western North Pacific. Animals within this model area belong to the East China Sea (ECS) stock. The best available population estimate for the ECS stock is estimated by the IWC as 137 whales (IWC, 1996). Without survey information for the region, the best available density estimate is from the 2010 Hawaii EEZ survey (0.0003 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013), which is comparable to the ETP (0.0009 animals/km$^2$; Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) and Guam and the Mariana Islands (0.00041 animals/km$^2$) (Fulling et al., 2011).

**Common minke whale**: Minke whales have been reported from the Sea of Okhotsk, Sea of Japan, and East China Sea (Yellow Sea), with recent sighting surveys by Japan and Korea designed to update abundance through the International Whaling Commission (Miyashita and Okamura, 2011). Minke whales in the East China Sea are believed to be part of the Yellow Sea "Y" stock, with an abundance estimate for the Y stock of 4,492 animals, which is a combined estimate based on surveys in different regions of the stock's distribution (Hakamada and Hatanaka, 2010; Miyashita and Okamura, 2011). A spatially-explicit density estimate of 0.0018 animals/ km$^2$ (SE=0.17) was derived for this area based on encounter rates (Buckland et al., 1992).

**Fin whale**: Fin whales winter in the East China Sea and Yellow Sea. The East China Sea population of fin whales is thought to be resident and is considered to represent a distinct population (Evans, 1987). There are limited data on distribution and abundance, however, for fin whales in this region (Mizroch et al., 2009). Density and stock estimates for the East China Sea stock of fin whales were thus derived from encounter rates of Japanese scouting boats in the northwest Pacific , resulting in a density estimate, 0.0002 animals/km$^2$, derived from encounter rates during Japanese whaling in the northwest Pacific Ocean (Tillman, 1977). An abundance estimate, 500 individuals, was derived from from encounter rates during Japanese whaling in the northwest Pacific Ocean (Tillman, 1977), which was corroborated with a compilation of catch statistics, sighting data, mark recoveries, and acoustics data (Mizroch et al., 2009). This density is comparable to density estimates in the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) and an order of magnitude higher than that calculated for around Hawaii (0.00002 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013).

**North Pacific right whale**: The WNP right whale population is considered distinct from the eastern population, arbitrarily separated by the 180° line of longitude (Best et al., 2001). The Okhotsk Sea, Kuril Islands, and eastern Kamchatka coast represent major feeding grounds for the western population (Brownell et al., 2001) where animals are typically found May through September (Clapham et al., 2004). Various areas have been proposed for breeding and calving grounds, including the Ryukyu Islands, Yellow Sea, Sea of Japan, offshore waters far from land, and the Bonin Islands, but a lack of winter sightings (December to February) makes a definitive assessment impossible (Brownell et al., 2001). Clapham et al. (2004) noted the extensive offshore component to the right whale's distribution in the 19$^{th}$ century data. Movement north in spring (peak months of February to April) and south in fall (peak months September to December) suggest the possibility of two putative sub-populations in the western population that are kept apart by the Japanese islands, though this seems unlikely (Brownell et al., 2001, Clapham et al., 2004). Data from Japanese sighting cruises in the Okhotsk Sea provide an abundance estimate of 922 animals (CV=0.433, 95% CI=404-2,108) (Best et al., 2001) for the WNP population. No density estimates are available for this very rare marine mammal species, therefore, the nominal minimum density estimate of 0.00001 animals/km$^2$ was used in the risk analysis to reflect the very low probability of occurrence in this region during winter and spring seasons.

**Omura's whale:** Little population information is known or available for this species only described in 2003 but this baleen whale ranges from roughly northern Japan to Australia in the eastern Indian Ocean and western Pacific Ocean (Yamada, 2009). With so little information available, the Omura's whale is assumed to comprise one stock, the WNP, throughout its range in the western Pacific Ocean. The only abundance information available is an estimate made by Ohsumi (1980) for Bryde's whales in the Solomon Sea, which are now known to have been Bryde's and Omura's whales. Lacking other data, Ohsumi's (1980) abundance of 1,800 animals was used to represent the WNP stock of Omura's whales. A density estimate from the NMSDD (LGL, 2008 in DoN, 2018) was used (0.00004 animals/km$^2$).

**Western North Pacific gray whale**: Gray whales in the western North Pacific Ocean are genetically distinct from those gray whales occurring in the eastern North Pacific Ocean (LeDuc et al., 2002). New data photographing western North Pacific gray whales off the U.S. west coast has prompted NMFS to draft the first ever stock assessment report for this population (Carretta et al., 2019). The exact location of winter breeding grounds for this species is not known, though it is hypothesized that western Pacific gray whales overwinter in the East and South China Seas, in the vicinity of Korea and China (Evans, 1987, Omura, 1988). The exact migration route is not known, but western North Pacific gray whales are believed to migrate directly across the East China Sea, which is one of the few times that they leave their shallow, nearshore habitat (Omura, 1988). During migration, WNP gray whales may be found up to 741 km (400 nmi) offshore (Weller et al., 2002). In addition, some individuals that summer off Sakhalin Island have also been documented off the west coast of North America (Carretta et al., 2019). The best available abundnace estimate is 290 animals (Carretta et al., 2019). With no density estimate for this rare species available, a minimal density of 0.0001 animals/km$^2$ was used in risk computation for this model area to reflect the extremely low potential for this species occurring.

**Blainville's beaked whale:** With no population data available for this species in the East China Sea, the best available data are the density estimate (0.0005 animals/km$^2$) and abundance estimate of 8,032 animals derived from the eastern Pacific survey data (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003). The *Mesoplodon densirostris* estimate was added to one-fifth of the *Mesoplodon* spp. abundance estimate for an estimate of 8,032 animals. The density estimate is comparable to that for Blainville's beaked whales in the main Hawaiian Islands (0.0012 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2001), in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00086 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017), and the mean predicted density estimate for the ETP *Mesoplodon* spp. (0.000296/km$^2$; Ferguson et al., 2006).

**Common dolphin**: Short-beaked and long-beaked common dolphins were redefined as one species, common dolphin (*Delphinus delphis*) (SMM, 2017). No data on density or abundance estimates of common dolphins are available for the insular waters of the East China Sea (Miyashita, 1993). The best density estimate (0.1158 animals/km$^2$) and abundance estimate (279,182 animals) are from a line-transect survey off the North American west coast (Carretta et al., 2011).

**Common bottlenose dolphin**: Kishiro and Kasuya (1993) reported that bottlenose dolphins were caught in the Korea Strait and off Goto Island in the East China Sea. Miyashita (1993) reported that reproductive differences suggest that animals from the Sea of Japan and East China Sea are a separate, inshore Archipelago stock from animals in the western North Pacific. Kishiro and Kasuya (1993) cited Miyashita (1986) as estimating the abundance of the stock in the East China Sea as 35,046. Since these data represent only about one-third of the habitat of bottlenose dolphins in the East China Sea, this population estimate is tripled to represent the inshore Archipelago stock estimate (105,138 animals). No density estimates were available for this stock; therefore, a density estimate of 0.00077 animals/km$^2$ was derived from LGL (2011). This is appropriate since bottlenose dolphins were sighted in the East China Sea survey effort (Miyashita, 1993). This density estimate is lower than that of Mobley et al. (2000) estimate around Hawaii (0.0103 animals/km$^2$) but is more comparable to that derived for offshore waters around Hawaii (0.0025 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013).

**Cuvier's beaked whale:** No density or stock estimate data are available for this region for Cuvier's beaked whales. Considering habitat preferences (e.g., water temperature, bathymetry) of this species elsewhere in the North Pacific Ocean, the best data available to represent the WNP stock are those derived for the ETP with a density estimate 0.0003 animals/km$^2$ and an abundance estimate of 90,725 animals (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003). This density estimate is comparable to that estimated for the Hawaii EEZ (0.0003 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017).

**False killer whale**: Miyashita (1993) suggested that animals summering in the eastern Asian continental seas are probably from a separate, inshore Archipelago stock than animals offshore in the western North Pacific (i.e., WNP stock) by analogy from Pacific white-sided dolphins. Kishiro and Kasuya (1993) cited Miyashita (1986) as estimating the population wintering in the East China Sea at 3,259 animals. Since these data represent only about one-third of the habitat of false killer whales in the East China Sea, the population estimate of 3,259 animals was tripled to represent the inshore Archipelago stock estimate (9,777 animals). There are no data on density estimates for the East China Sea. Thus, the best available density estimate (0.0011 animals/km$^2$) to represent the inshore Archipelago stock is derived from the winter/spring survey around Guam and the Mariana Islands (Fulling et al., 2011). This density is comparable to the density estimated for the pelagic stock of false killer whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0006 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2012) and in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0017 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000), including the Main Hawaiian Islands insular stock (0.0008 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2015; Oleson et al., 2010) and the Northwest Hawaiian Islands insular stock (0.0006 animals/ km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2015; Forney et al., 2015).

**Fraser's dolphin:** Kishiro and Kasuya (1993) reported catches off the Pacific coast of Japan in drive fisheries. With no data available on stock or density estimates for the western North Pacific or the East China Sea, the population estimate (220,789 animals) from the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) is most appropriate for application to this area, while Bradford et al.'s (2013) density estimate (0.0069 animals/km$^2$) derived for the Hawaiian EEZ is the most appropriate density for this model area.

**Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale:** Miyazaki et al. (1987) reported no strandings of ginkgo-toothed beaked whales in the East China Sea. Although the ginkgo-toothed beaked whales in the East China Sea probably represent a separate population from that of the offshore western North Pacific, no data are available for a distinct stock. With no data on density or stock estimates available for this species, density was roughly estimated as 0.0005 animals/km$^2$ and abundance estimated at 22,799 animals for *Mesoplodon* spp. at the same latitude from the eastern Pacific survey data (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003). This density estimate is an order of magnitude less than that for unidentified beaked whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0.0021 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013) but comparable to the mean predicted density estimate for the ETP *Mesoplodon* spp. (0.000296 animals/km$^2$; Ferguson et al., 2006).

**Killer whale**: Killer whales are considered rare with limited sightings reported (Carretta et al., 2019). The best available density estimate (0.00009 animals/km$^2$) is estimated from LGL (2011) data for the WNP stock while the best abundance estimate (12,256 animals) are derived from the eastern North Pacific by Ferguson and Barlow (2001, 2003). Mobley et al. (2000) did not report any sightings in their surveys of waters within 25 nmi of the Main Hawaiian Islands, nor did the Fulling et al. (2011) surveys around the Mariana Islands.

***Kogia* spp.:** At the latitude of this modeling area, *Kogia breviceps* and *Kogia sima* are both expected to occur. However, no density or abundance estimates are available for these species in this region. Summing the abundances of *Kogia breviceps, Kogia sima, and Kogia* spp. in the geographic strata defined by Ferguson and Barlow (2001, 2003), an overall abundance of 350,553 animals is computed in the ETP, and this abundance is thus deemed most appropriate to represent the WNP stock of *Kogia* spp. Reviewing density estimates calculated in the eastern Pacific Ocean at about 20°N (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003), a density estimate of 0.0017 animals/km$^2$ was considered the best available for this stock in this region. This density estimate is comparable to that derived for pygmy sperm whale (0.00291 animals/km$^2$ (CV=1.12) and dwarf sperm whale (0.00714 animals/km$^2$ (CV=0.74) observed within the Hawaii EEZ (Barlow, 2006).

**Longman's beaked whale:** Ferguson and Barlow (2001) reported that all Longman's beaked whale sightings were south of 25°N. No population estimates are available for this beaked whale in this model area. Therefore, the density estimate of 0.00025 animals/km$^2$ derived from LGL (2011) data and the abundance estimate of 7,619 animals in offshore Hawaiian waters (Bradford et al., 2017) were considered best to represent the WNP stock, animals of which potentially occur in the East China Sea.

**Melon-headed whale:** Very few records of melon-headed whales are available for this region. The first record of melon-headed whales in Korean waters occurred in January 2009 with the stranding of an adult male reported from the southeast corner of the country (Kim et al., 2010). Melon-headed whales are probably uncommon in the colder waters of the East China Sea. The best available density estimate (0.00428 animals/km$^2$) to represent the WNP stock is calculated from the winter/spring survey around Guam and the Mariana Islands (Fulling et al., 2011). This is comparable to the density estimate calculated in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0021 animals/km$^2$) during the spring, summer and fall (Mobley et al., 2000). An abundance estimate of 56,213 animals (CV=0.58) was derived from surveys off the Pacific coast of Japan (Kanaji et al., 2018).

**Pacific white-sided dolphin:** Recent research on genetic differentiation suggests that animals found in continental eastern Asian seas belong to a separate, inshore Archipelago (IA) stock than animals found in offshore North Pacific waters (Miyashita, 1993; Hayano et al., 2004). Sighting surveys in the North Pacific were analyzed to estimate the abundance of Pacific white-sided dolphins as 931,000 individuals (Buckland et al., 1993). This estimate is over an order of magnitude larger than the abundance estimate in the eastern North Pacific (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003). However, with no other data available to represent the IA population, the abundance of 931,000 animals was roughly estimated from the western North Pacific, and the density estimate (0.0028 animals/km$^2$) from the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) was most appropriate to represent the occurrences of this dolphin in this area during winter and spring. No sightings of Pacific white-sided dolphins were reported in Hawaii surveys (Barlow, 2006; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Pantropical spotted dolphin:** Gilpatrick et al. (1987) reported some animals from along the chain of the Ryukyu Islands. Kanaji et al. (2018) report an abundance estimate of 130,002 individuals (CV=0.43) and Miyashita's (1993) density estimated at 0.01374 animals/km$^2$ for the WNP stock is the best available. This density is comparable to those observed in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0067 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013) and in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0407 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Pygmy killer whale**: There was no mention of pygmy killer whale sightings in Japanese whaling records (Kishiro and Kasuya, 1993), and no data on density or stock estimates off Japan or Taiwan have been reported (Miyashita, 1993). The best available density estimate (0.00014 animals/km$^2$) is calculated from the winter/spring surveys around Guam and the Mariana Islands (Fulling et al., 2011). This is an order of magnitude less than that observed for pygmy killer whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00435 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017). No pygmy killer whales were seen in nearshore aerial during the spring, summer and fall (Mobley et al., 2000). An abundance of 30,214 animals was estimated from Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) eastern North Pacific data and is considered the best available to represent the WNP stock of pygmy killer whales.

**Risso's dolphin:** Kishiro and Kasuya (1993) reported that Risso's dolphin inhabit the East China Sea. Miyashita (1993) reported sightings in the East China Sea during June and September surveys (no effort during other months) and suggested, by analogy to bottlenose dolphins and Pacific white-sided dolphins, that animals summering in this area represent a separate, IA stock from the WNP stock. However, no population data have been reported for the Sea of Japan or East China Sea. Consequently, abundance estimated for the WNP stock (143,374 animals, CV=0.69; Kanaji et al., 2018) and density estimated as 0.0106 animals/km$^2$ (Miyashita, 1993) were used to represent the IA stock in this model area. For comparison, no density estimates were available from Mobley et al. (Mobley et al., 2000) and Fulling et al. (2011), and an estimate of 0.0067 animals/km$^2$ was reported in the offshore waters of Hawaii (Bradford et al., 2013).

**Rough-toothed dolphin:** With the absence of population data for this dolphin in the East China Sea, the best available data are for the WNP stock of rough-toothed dolphins. The best available density estimate (0.00224 animals/km$^2$) is from habitat-based models in the central North Pacific (Forney et al., 2015). Kanaji et al. (2018) report an abundance estimate (5,002 individuals, CV=1.24) from their sighting surveys in the western North Pacific. This density is comparable to that observed in the Hawaii EEZ

(0.0026 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013) and in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0017 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Sperm whale**: Stock structure of sperm whales in the North Pacific Ocean remains unclear except in U.S. EEZ waters (Allen and Angliss, 2014), and all sperm whales occurring in the North Pacific are currently classified as one stock, the NP stock. De Boer (2000) sighted sperm whales in the South China Sea and suggested that whales seen west of the Balabac Strait might be migrating between the South China and Sulu Seas. Based on such movements, sperm whales might also be found in the East China Sea, where habitat characteristics suggest that conditions are conducive for sperm whale occurrence. The best available abundance estimate for the sperm whales potentially occurring in the East China Sea model area is that of the NP population of sperm whales, 102,112 individuals (CV=0.155), which was derived by Kato and Miyashita (1998). The most appropriate density estimate (0.00123 animals/km$^2$) is derived from recent survey data collected in the southern Mariana Islands (Fulling et al., 2011). This density estimate is comparable to the Forney et al. (2015) Hawaii estimate (0.00158 animals/km$^2$).

**Spinner dolphin**: Gilpatrick et al. (1987) reported a high density of spinner dolphin sightings in the Korea Strait and adjacent waters to the north, but no spinner dolphin sightings were reported from the East China Sea. Neither is this species mentioned in historical Japanese whaling records (Kishiro and Kasuya, 1993), and no data on density or stock estimates are available (Miyashita, 1993). Given this lack of available data, the best available density estimate (0.00083 animals/km$^2$) is calculated from the Hawaii EEZ survey data (Barlow, 2006), which is an order of magnitude less than that observed in nearshore waters of Hawaii (0.0443 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000); no sightings of spinner dolphins occurred during systematic effort in the 2010 summer/fall survey (Bradford et al., 2013). The best data available abundance estimate for spinner dolphins is (1,015,059 animals) is derived from surveys of the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003).

**Spotted seal**: The Southern DPS of spotted seals consists of breeding concentrations in the Yellow Sea (particularly the Bohai Sea, both of which are in the northern East China Sea) and Peter the Great Bay (northwestern Sea of Japan). The most current population estimate of the spotted seals that occur in the Bohai Sea and Liaodong Gulf region is 1,500 seals (Han et al., 2005 in Yan et al., 2018; Han et al., 2010). No density estimates are available, so a default minimum density estimate of 0.0001 animals/km$^2$ was estimated to reflect the very low probability of occurrence.

## D-7. MODEL AREA 7—SOUTH CHINA SEA

**Bryde's whale:** Yoshida and Kato (1999) identified three stocks of Bryde’s whales in the western North Pacific: Solomon Islands/Southeast Asia stock (mainly Philippine waters and the Gulf of Thailand), East China Sea, and offshore western North Pacific. Bryde’s found in this model area are considered part of the WNP stock. De Boer (2000) sighted Bryde’s whales in this region but reported no stock data; therefore, the IWC (2009) population estimate of 20,501 whales is considered the most appropriate. Ohsumi’s (1977) western North Pacific density estimate is most appropriate (0.0006 animals/km$^2$) and is comparable to that derived by Fulling et al. (2007) (0.00041 animals/km$^2$) in Mariana waters, Bradford et al. (2013) (0.00033 animals/km$^2$) in Hawaiian waters, and Ferguson and Barlow (2001, 2003) for the ETP.

**Common minke whale**: Minke whales have been reported from the Sea of Okhotsk, Sea of Japan, and East China Sea (Yellow Sea), with recent sighting surveys by Japan and Korea designed to update abundance through the International Whaling Commission (Miyashita and Okamura, 2011). No recent surveys have occurred in the South China Sea, but to be conservative, minke whales from the Yellow Sea “Y” stock are estimated to be present, with an abundance estimate for the Y stock of 4,492 animals, which is a combined estimate based on surveys in different regions of the stock's distribution (Hakamada and Hatanaka, 2010; Miyashita and Okamura, 2011). A spatially-explicity density estimate of 0.0018 animals/ $km^2$ (SE=0.17) was derived for this region based on encounter rates (Buckland et al., 1992).

**Fin whale**: De Boer (2000) conducted a research cruise in the Indian Ocean Sanctuary and the South China Sea from 29 March to 17 April, 1999, during which fin whales and a sperm whale were sighted west of the Balabac Strait, suggesting a possible migration route of these species between the South China Sea and the Sulu Sea. De Boer's cruise is the first record of fin whales in the South China Sea (De Boer, 2000). A population of fin whales is thought to be resident and may represent a distinct East China Sea population (Evans, 1987). Without any population data for fin whales in the South China Sea, data from the WNP stock are estimated to be most appropriate to represent fin whales in this model area (Mizroch et al., 2009). Density (0.0002 animals/$km^2$) and abundance (9,250 animals) estimates were derived from encounter rates of Japanese scouting boats in the northwest Pacific (Tillman, 1977). This density is comparable to density estimates in other areas of the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) and an order of magnitude higher than that calculated for around Hawaii (0.00002 animals/$km^2$; Bradford et al., 2013).

**Humpback whale**: The NMFS Humpback Whale Biological Review Team (BRT) conducted a comprehensive status review in which they revised the ESA status for humpback whales in this region to be part of the Western North Pacific Distinct Population Segment (WNP DPS) and listed as endangered (Bettridge et al., 2015; NOAA, 2016a). The WNP DPS breeds/winters in the region of Okinawa and the Philippines and migrates to feeding grounds in the North Pacific, primarily off the Russian coast. Thus, humpback whales are only expected to occur in the South China Sea model area during winter, spring, and fall. In addition, approximately one-quarter of the population is expected to be found in water depths of less than 1,000 m (3,281 ft), which was implemented in the modeling as a depth aversion. The SPLASH consortium derived an average abundance for the Asian wintering grounds of approximately 1,000 humpback whales (Calambokidis et al., 2008), which has increased annually to an abundance estimate of 1,328 individuals (Bettridge et al., 2015). A density of 0.00036 animals/$km^2$ was derived for the WNP stock of humpback whales based on photo-identification surveys throughout the North Pacific (Calambokidis et al., 2008) that provided information on distributional preferences and a compilation of surveys in the western North Pacific (LGL, 2008).

**North Pacific right whale**: During limited survey effort in the South China Sea, no observations of right whales have ever been reported in the area (Clapham et al., 2004). In addition, right whales migrate further north to feed during summer, and are thus not expected in this model at that time of year. Right whales are likely to occur in the South China Sea primarily during winter but also may be found in these waters as they migrate north and south in spring. Due to the lack of population level data for the North Pacific right whale in this region, an abundance estimate of 922 animals derived from Japanese sighting cruises in the Okhotsk Sea (Best et al., 2001) was used for this model area. No density estimates are available for this very rare marine mammal species, therefore, the nominal minimum density estimate of 0.00001 animals/$km^2$ was used in the risk analysis to reflect the very low probability of occurrence in this region during winter and spring seasons.

**Omura's whale:** Little population information is known or available for this species only described in 2003 but this baleen whale ranges from roughly northern Japan to Australia in the eastern Indian Ocean and western Pacific Ocean (Yamada, 2009). With so little information available, the Omura's whale is assumed to comprise one stock, the WNP, throughout its range in the western Pacific Ocean. The only abundance information available is an estimate made by Ohsumi (1980) for Bryde's whales in the Solomon Sea, which are now known to have been Bryde's and Omura's whales. Lacking other data, Ohsumi's (1980) abundance of 1,800 animals was used to represent the WNP stock of Omura's whales. A density estimate from the NMSDD (LGL, 2008 in DoN, 2018) was used (0.00004 animals/km$^2$).

**Western North Pacific gray whale**: Gray whales found in the western and eastern North Pacific are genetically and distributionally distinct (LeDuc et al., 2002). New data photographing western North Pacific gray whales off the U.S. west coast has prompted NMFS to draft the first ever stock assessment report for this population (Carretta et al., 2019). Gray whales are expected to occur principally in this model area during the winter season but also may occur in these waters as they migrate north and south during spring and fall. Exact wintering grounds of this species are not known but are believed to be located in the South China Sea, in the vicinity of Korea, and China (Evans, 1987; Omura, 1988). Presumably, gray whales maintain a shallow water/nearshore affinity throughout this southern portion of their range. The exact migration route of gray whales in the western North Pacific is not known, but they are believed to migrate directly across the East China Sea, which is one of the few times that they leave their shallow, nearshore habitat (Omura ,1988). During this time, they may be found up to 741 km (400 nmi) offshore (Weller et al., 2002). In addition, some individuals that summer off Sakhalin Island have also been documented off the west coast of North America (Carretta et al., 2019). The best available abundnace estimate is 290 animals (Carretta et al., 2019). With no density estimate for this rare species available, a minimal density of 0.0001 animals/km$^2$ was used in risk computation for this model area to reflect the extremely low potential for this species occurring.

**Blainville's beaked whale:** Miyazaki et al. (1987) did not report any strandings of *M. densirostris* from the South China Sea. Neither De Boer (2000) nor Miyashita et al. (1996) observed any *M. densirostris* during their research cruises. Lacking data on stock or density estimates for the western North Pacific for this species, data from the ETP surveys (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) are most appropriate to represent this species in this model area. The *Mesoplodon densirostris* estimate added to one-fifth of the *Mesoplodon* spp. abundance estimate in the ETP data results in an abundance estimate of 8,032 animals while the *Mesoplodon* spp. density estimate, 0.0005 animals/km$^2$, is best for use at this area (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003). This density estimate can be compared to that for Blainville's beaked whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0. 00086 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017), in the main Hawaiian Islands (0.0012 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2001), and the mean predicted density estimate for the ETP *Mesoplodon* spp. (0.000296 animals/km$^2$; Ferguson et al., 2006).

**Common dolphin**: Short-beaked and long-beaked common dolphins were redefined as one species, common dolphin (*Delphinus delphis*) (SMM, 2017). No data on density or abundance estimates of common dolphins are available for the insular waters of the South China Sea (Miyashita, 1993). The best density estimate (0.1158 animals/km$^2$) and abundance estimate (279,182 animals) are from a line-transect survey off the North American west coast (Carretta et al., 2011).

**Common bottlenose dolphin:** Smith et al. (1997) reported that bottlenose dolphins are found in "whale temples" in South China Sea nations. Miyashita (1993) reported that reproductive differences suggest that animals from the Sea of Japan and East China Sea are a separate, IA stock than animals in the western North Pacific. It is highly likely that bottlenose dolphins found in the Sea of Japan, East China Sea, and South China Sea belong to the same IA stock. For this reason, the stock of bottlenose dolphins in the South China Sea is classified as part of the IA stock. Kishiro and Kasuya (1993) cite Miyashita (1986) as estimating the abundance of the stock in the East China Sea as 35,046 animals. Since these data represent only about one-third of the habitat of bottlenose dolphins in the East China Sea, the population estimate was tripled (105,138 animals) to represent the IA stock, and that abundance represents the IA stock in this sea. No density estimates are available for this stock; therefore, a density estimate was derived 0.00077 animals/km$^2$ estimated by LGL (2011) was most appropriate. This is within the range of densities estimated in the eastern North Pacific (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) and lower than those around Hawaii, 0.0103 animals/km$^2$ (Mobley et al. 2000), 0.0025 animals/km$^2$ (Bradford et al., 2013), and around Guam and the Mariana Islands, 0.00021 animals/km$^2$ (Fulling et al., 2011).

**Cuvier's beaked whale**: De Boer (2000) sighted Cuvier's beaked whales during his cruise through the South China Sea. No density or stock estimate data are available for this region, however. Considering habitat preferences (e.g., water temperature, bathymetry), the best available data to characterize the WNP stock found in this model area are the density estimate (0.0003 animals/km$^2$) and the abundance estimate of 90,725 animals from the same latitude in the eastern Pacific (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003). This density is comparable to that estimated for the Hawaii EEZ (0.0003 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017) but less than the mean predicted density estimate for the ETP (0.00455 animals/km$^2$; Ferguson et al., 2006).

**Deraniyagala beaked whale:** Dalebout et al. (2014) conducted genetic and molecular analyses to demonstrate that *Mesoplodon hotaula* was genetic distinct from the ginkgo-toothed beaked whale (*M. ginkgodens*). Little is known about this beaked whale species. No abundance or stock information is available for the Deraniyagala beaked whale. Given that this species was synonymous with the ginkgo-toothed beaked whale, which is part of the *Mesoplodon* spp. complex, the best available density and abundance estimates for *Mesoplodon* spp. at the same latitudes in the ETP are most appropriate for this region (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003). Using Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) northernmost strata, a density estimate of 0.0005 animals/km$^2$ and abundance estimate of 22,799 animals were used for analyses for the Deraniyagala beaked whale in this model area.

**False killer whale:** False killer whales are sighted infrequently in the South China Sea (De Boer, 2000; Miyashita et al., 1996; Smith et al., 1997). Miyashita (1993) suggested that animals summering in the Sea of Japan are probably from a separate, IA stock, by analogy of Pacific white-sided dolphins, than animals from the WNP stock. It is reasonable to assume that false killer whales occurring in the Sea of Japan, East China Sea, and South China Sea are all part of same, IA stock. Kishiro and Kasuya (1993) cited Miyashita (1986) as estimating the population wintering in the East China Sea at 3,259 animals. Since these data represent only about one-third of the habitat of false killer whales in the area, the population estimate was tripled (9,777 individuals) to represent the IA stock estimate. With no data available on density estimates for this species in the South China Sea, the best available density estimate (0.0011 animals/km$^2$) calculated from the winter/spring survey around Guam and the Mariana Islands (Fulling et al., 2011) was used for this species in this model area. This density is comparable to the density estimated for the pelagic stock of false killer whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0006 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2012) and in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0017 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000), including the Main Hawaiian Islands insular stock (0.0008 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2015; Oleson et al., 2010) and the Northwest Hawaiian Islands insular stock (0.0006 animals/ km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2015; Forney et al., 2015).

**Fraser's dolphin**: Kishiro and Kasuya (1993) report catches of Fraser's dolphins off the Pacific coast of Japan in drive fisheries. No population data are available on this species in the western North Pacific Ocean or in the South China Sea. Lacking stock or density data, an abundance most appropriate to represent the WNP stock of Fraser's dolphins of 220,789 animals is derived from the ETP (Ferguson and

Barlow, 2001, 2003) while the best available density estimate of 0.0069 animals/km$^2$ is derived from the Hawaii EEZ survey (Bradford et al., 2013).

**Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale:** Miyazaki et al. (1987) report no strandings of *M. ginkgodens* from the South China Sea. Neither De Boer (2000) nor Miyashita et al. (1996) observed ginkgo-toothed beaked whales during their research cruises. Since no data on density or stock estimates are available for this species in the North Pacific Ocean, a density (0.0005 animals/km$^2$) and abundance (22,799 animals) estimated for *Mesoplodon* spp. at the same latitude in the eastern Pacific (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) was considered most appropriate to characterize this species' population in this model area. This density estimate is an order of magnitude less than that for unidentified beaked whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0.0021 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013) but comparable to the mean predicted density estimate for the ETP *Mesoplodon* spp. (0.000296 animals/km$^2$; Ferguson et al., 2006).

**Killer whale**: Killer whales are considered rare with limited sightings reported (Carretta et al., 2019), especially in the western North Pacific Ocean. The best available density estimate (0.00009 animals/km$^2$) derived by LGL (2011) and abundance estimate (12,256 animals) calculated from ETP survey data (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003) are used to characterize the WNP stock of killer whales found in this model area. Mobley et al. (2000) did not report any sightings in their surveys of waters within 25 nmi of the Main Hawaiian Islands, nor did the 2007 surveys around the Mariana Islands (Fulling et al., 2011).

***Kogia* spp.**: Both *Kogia breviceps* and *Kogia sima* potentially may occur in this region. Smith et al. (1997) reported that *Kogia* were found in "whale temples" in nations surrounding the South China Sea. No sightings of *Kogia* spp. were made by De Boer (2000) during his survey. No density or abundance estimates are available for this species in this region. Summing the abundances of *Kogia* spp. in the geographic strata defined by Ferguson and Barlow (2001, 2003), an overall abundance of 350,553 animals is computed in the ETP and best represents the WNP stock of *Kogia* spp. Reviewing density estimates calculated in the eastern Pacific Ocean at about 20°N, the derived density estimate of 0.0017 animals/km$^2$ from that area best represents the WNP stock (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003). This density is comparable to the density estimates for pygmy sperm whale (0.00291 animals/km$^2$ CV=1.12) and dwarf sperm whale (0.00714 animals/km$^2$ CV=0.74) observed within the Hawaii EEZ (Barlow, 2006).

**Longman's beaked whale:** Ferguson and Barlow (2001) reported that all Longman's beaked whale sightings occurred south of 25°N. No population data are available for this species in this model area or for the WNP stock. Lacking data, the best available density estimate for Longman's beaked whales in the WNP stock is that estimated of by LGL (2011) as 0.00025 animals/km$^2$, while the best available abundance for this stock is that estimated as 7,619 animals in offshore Hawaiian waters (Bradford et al., 2017).

**Melon-headed whale:** Leatherwood and Reeves (1983) stated that melon-headed whales are rare except in the Philippine Sea. Distributed in tropical and subtropical waters, melon-headed whales have been observed in the South China Sea (De Boer, 2000) and are reported from "whale temples" on islands surrounding the South China Sea (Smith et al., 1997). However, they were not observed by Miyashita et al. (1996). With no specific population data for this model area, the best available density estimate (0.00428 animals/km$^2$) is calculated from the winter/spring surveys around Guam and the Mariana Islands (Fulling et al., 2011). This density is comparable to the density estimate calculated in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0021 animals/km$^2$) during the spring, summer and fall (Mobley et al., 2000).

An abundance estimated by Kanaji et al. (2018) from the Pacific coast of Japan of 56,213 animals (CV=0.56) is the best available for this region.

**Pantropical spotted dolphin**: This species has been reported during the De Boer (2000) research cruise, observed in winter (January to February) in the South China Sea by Miyashita et al. (1996), reported from historical "whale temples" (Smith et al., 1997), and also summarized by Gilpatrick et al. (1987) from one record west of Taiwan in the northern portion of the South China Sea. Kanaji et al. (2018) report an abundance estimate of 130,002 individuals (CV=0.43) for surveys off the Pacific coast of Japan. Miyashita (1993) summarized data from 34 sighting cruises conducted as part of the Japanese drive fishery and derived a density estimate as 0.01374 animals/$km^2$. This density is comparable to those observed in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0067 animals/$km^2$; Bradford et al., 2013) and in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0407 animals/$km^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Pygmy killer whale:** Pygmy killer whales were seen by De Boer (2000) during his research cruise through the South China Sea, known from historical "whale temples" (Smith et al., 1997), but not seen by Miyashita et al. (1996). No mention of these animals exists in Japanese whaling records (Kishiro and Kasuya, 1993). There are no data on density or stock estimates off Japan or Taiwan (Miyashita, 1993) or nearshore Hawaii (Mobley et al., 2000). Therefore, the best available density estimate to represent the WNP stock in this model area was judged to be 0.00014 animals/$km^2$ derived from the winter/spring 2007 surveys around Guam and the Mariana Islands (Fulling et al., 2011). This density is an order of magnitude less than that observed for pygmy killer whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00435 animals/$km^2$; Bradford et al., 2017). The best available abundance estimate of 30,214 animals from the eastern Pacific (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) was considered to best represent the WNP stock of pygmy killer whales.

**Risso's dolphin**: Smith et al. (1997) reported that Risso's dolphin bones were found in "whale temples" in nations along the South China Sea, but this species was not seen by Miyashita et al. (1996) or De Boer (2000) during their surveys. Miyashita (1993) suggested by analogy to bottlenose dolphins and Pacific white-sided dolphins that Risso's dolphins summering in the Sea of Japan are part of a separate, IA stock different from the WNP stock. Since it is reasonable to assume that Risso's dolphins occurring in the Sea of Japan, East China Sea, and South China Sea are all part of same, IA stock, Risso's in this model area are considered to be part of the IA stock. Since population data are lacking for the IA stock region, the WNP stock estimate (143,374 animals, CV=0.69; Kanaji et al., 2018) and the density estimate (0.0106 animals/$km^2$ derived for southeast Pacific coast of Japan/east of Taiwan; Miyashita, 1993) were used to represent the IA stock. Miyashita's density is within the range of densities estimated in the eastern North Pacific (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) and higher than those around Hawaii (0.0067 animals/$km^2$, Bradford et al., 2013).

**Rough-toothed dolphin:** Rough-toothed dolphins have been reported from "whale temples" in South China Sea nations (Smith et al., 1997). Few other population data, however, are available for this dolphin species in this region. Given that lack of data, the best available data are for the WNP stock of rough-toothed dolphins. The best available density estimate (0.00224 animals/$km^2$) is from habitat-based models in the central North Pacific (Forney et al., 2015). Kanaji et al. (2018) report an abundance estimate (5,002 individuals, CV=1.24) from their sighting surveys in the western North Pacific. This density is comparable to that observed in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0026 animals/$km^2$; Bradford et al., 2013) and in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0017 animals/$km^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Short-finned pilot whale**: Smith et al. (1997) reported that short-finned pilot whales are found in "whale temples" on islands surrounding the South China Sea. De Boer (2000) did not observe pilot whales during his research cruise, but Miyashita et al. (1996) did observe them in the western North Pacific. The stock delineation of the short-finned pilot whale in the western North Pacific is not fully resolved, but a northern ecotype and southern ecotype are recognized, segregating at Choshi Point (35°42'N, 140°51'E) (Kasuya and Perrin, 2018). With limited data for this particular region, data from the Pacific coast of Japan were used to estimate population data for the WNP stock of pilot whales in this region. Using the results of Miyashita (1993), an abundance estimate of 31,396 individuals (CV=0.65) was calculated for the WNP southern stock. The best available density estimate (0.00159 animals/km$^2$) was calculated from the winter/spring 2007 surveys around Guam and the Mariana Islands (Fulling et al., 2011). This density is comparable to the density estimate (0.0051 animals/km$^2$) calculated from the summer/fall survey in the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al. 2013) and an order of magnitude less than in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0237 animals/km$^2$) during the spring, summer and fall (Mobley et al., 2000).

**Sperm whale**: The population structure of sperm whales throughout the North Pacific Ocean remains largely unresolved. De Boer (2000) sighted sperm whales in the South China Sea (March through April) and suggested that animals seen west of the Balabac Strait might be migrating between the South China and Sulu Seas. Miyashita et al. (1996) also observed sperm whales in the winter in the South China Sea, very close to the Philippines. No data on density or stock estimates were derived from either the De Boer (2000) or Miyashita et al. (1996) studies. The only available abundance estimate for the NP population of sperm whales is 102,112 animals (CV=0.155) (Kato and Miyashita, 1998). The best available density estimate, 0.00123 animals/km$^2$, for use in this region was derived from recent survey in waters of Guam and the Mariana Islands (Fulling et al., 2011). This is comparable to the density estimate of sperm whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00158 animals/km$^2$; Forney et al., 2015).

**Spinner dolphin:** Gilpatrick et al. (1987) reported a high density of spinner dolphin sightings in the Korea Strait and adjacent waters to the north but none were reported from the South China Sea or Philippine Sea. Spinner dolphins were not mentioned in historical Japanese whaling records (Kishiro and Kasuya, 1993), nor were they reported during the De Boer (2000) research cruise, nor encountered in historical "whale temples" (Smith et al., 1997). No data on density or stock estimates are available (Miyashita, 1993). Given that lack of regional data, the best available density estimate for the WNP stock found in this model area is that derived (0.00083 animals/km$^2$) from the Hawaii EEZ (Barlow, 2006); no sightings of spinner dolphins occurred during systematic effort in the 2010 summer/fall survey (Bradford et al., 2013). This density is orders of magnitude less than that observed in nearshore waters of Hawaii (0.0443 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000). The best available abundance estimate for spinner dolphins (1,015,059 animals) in the WNP stock is derived from the ETP surveys (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 003).

**Striped dolphin:** These dolphins were not reported during the De Boer (2000) research cruise in March to April but were sighted by Miyashita et al. (1996) in the South China Sea during the January to February cruise. No data on density or abundance estimates for the South China Sea are available on striped dolphins. Kasuya and Perrin (2017) recognize a southern offshore population, with an abundance estimate of 52,682 individuals (Miyashita, 1993). LGL's (2011) density of 0.00584 animals/km$^2$ was considered best for this species in this region. This density is comparable to the density estimates from the Hawaii EEZ (0.0084 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013)), from nearshore Hawaii (0.0016 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000), and from Guam and the Mariana Islands (0.00616 animals/km$^2$; Fulling et al., 2011).

## D-8. MODEL AREA 8—OFFSHORE JAPAN/WESTERN NORTH PACIFIC 25° TO 40° N

**Blue whale**: Few data are available on blue whale occurrence in the North Pacific Ocean and the stock structure in the North Pacific remains uncertain. Stafford et al. (2001) studied the geographic variation of blue whale calls in the North Pacific, and although there was no hydrophone coverage in the mid-latitudes off Japan, there was some coverage near the Kamchatka Peninsula and along the western Aleutian Islands chain. All calls recorded on these hydrophones were northwest Pacific blue whale calls (Stafford et al., 2001). Although the blue whale was the initial focus of Japanese whaling effort in the North Pacific, limited data were reported on blue whales. Therefore, sighting surveys associated with Japanese whaling of fin whales were judged to be the most appropriate proxy for blue whale occurrence estimates (Tillman, 1977; Carretta et al., 2019). Thus, the best available abundance for the WNP blue whale stock is 9,250 animals (Tillman, 1977). The best density for blue whales, which are found in this model area in the winter, spring, and fall seasons, is 0.0001 whales/km$^2$, which was estimated in three different documents, including encounter rates during Japanese whaling in the northwest Pacific Ocean (Tillman, 1977), correlations with density estimates from a similar latitude in the eastern North Pacific (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003), and summarized data and monitoring during a geophysical seismic survey (LGL, 2008). This density for blue whales is comparable to density estimates of the blue whale in offshore areas of the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2003) and to the waters surrounding Guam (Fulling et al., 2011).

**Bryde's whale**: Yoshida and Kato (1999) identified three stocks of Bryde's whales in the western North Pacific: Solomon Islands/Southeast Asia, East China Sea, and offshore western North Pacific. Ohizumi et al. (2002) conducted winter sighting surveys, observing Bryde's whales at about 20°N, which is the southern limit of their summer range. The IWC provides the best available population estimate, 20,501 whales, for the WNP Bryde's whale stock (IWC, 2009). The best available density estimate for this species in this region, 0.0003 animals/km$^2$, is calculated by LGL (2011). This density is comparable to density estimates from offshore areas of the ETP (0.00003/km$^2$; Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) and the Hawaii EEZ (0.00033 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013).

**Common minke whale:** Several stocks of minke whales are recognized in the western North Pacific Ocean, including the western North Pacific "O" east (WNP OE) stock, and the western North Pacific "J" west (WNP JW) stock (Miyashita & Okamura, 2011; Wade & Baker, 2011). Minke whales potentially occurring in the waters of this model area are believed to be part of the "WNP OE" stock. Buckland et al. (1992) conducted sighting surveys during July and August in the western North Pacific Ocean and Sea of Okhotsk, from which a spatially-explicity density estimate of 0.0003 animals/km$^2$ (SE = 0.17) from encounter rates and effective search widths was derived for the offshore population in this region. The abundance estimate for the WNP "OE" stock is estimated as 25,049 individuals (Buckland et al., 1992). Ferguson and Barlow (2001; 2003) computed density estimates in offshore areas of the ETP that are of the same magnitude.

**Fin whale**: Fin whales have been reported migrating south in the winter to about 20°N (Mizroch et al., 2009), have been observed in summer from near Japan north to the Chukchi Sea and Aleutian Islands, and may occur in the waters of this model area seasonally (Evans, 1987). A seasonal density estimate, 0.0001 animals/km$^2$, was derived from encounter rates during Japanese whaling in the northwest Pacific Ocean (Tillman, 1977). An abundance estimate, 9,250 individuals, was derived from from encounter rates during Japanese whaling in the northwest Pacific Ocean (Tillman, 1977), which was corroborated with a compilation of catch statistics, sighting data, mark recoveries, and acoustics data (Mizroch et al., 2009). This density is comparable to density estimates in offshore areas of the ETP (Ferguson and

Barlow, 2001, 2003) and an order of magnitude higher than that calculated for around Hawaii (0.00002 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013).

**Humpback whale**: The NMFS Humpback Whale Biological Review Team (BRT) conducted a comprehensive status review in which they proposed revising the ESA status for humpback whales in this region to be part of the WNP DPS and listed as threatened (Bettridge et al., 2015). The WNP DPS breeds/winters in the region of Okinawa and the Philippines and migrates to feeding grounds in the North Pacific, primarily off the Russian coast. Thus, humpback whales are only expected to occur in model area #8 during summer and fall. In addition, approximately one-quarter of the population is expected to be found in water depths of less than 1,000 m (3,281 ft), which was implemented in the modeling as a depth aversion. The SPLASH consortium derived an average abundance for the Asian wintering grounds of approximately 1,000 humpback whales, which has increased annually to an abundance estimate of 1,328 individuals (Calambokidis et al., 2008; Bettridge et al., 2015). A density of 0.00036 animals/km$^2$ was derived for the WNP stock of humpback whales based on photo-identification surveys throughout the North Pacific (Calambokidis et al., 2008) that provided information on distributional preferences and a compilation of surveys in the western North Pacific (LGL, 2008).

**Sei whale**: Sei whales are present throughout the temperate waters of the North Pacific Ocean but have been observed as far south as 20°N (Horwood, 1987). The IWC recognizes one stock of sei whales in the North Pacific (Donovan, 1991), although some evidence exists for several populations (Carretta et al., 2019). Very few sightings of sei whales have occurred in any region of the North Pacific, and adding to the difficulty, sei whales are extremely difficult to differentiate from Bryde's whales at sea. Tillman (1977) derived an abundance estimate of 8,600 individuals for sei/Bryde's whale in the North Pacific from whaling catch statistics. Mizroch et al. (2015) estimated the size of the pelagic migratory stock in 1975 at approximately 4,000 animals, but their "single stock" (coastal and pelagic) state space analysis estimated a population size of 7,000 animals in 1974, which is used here as the best available data. Initial estimates for a portion of the sei whale population off Japan indicate abundance estimates of similar magnitude (7,744 for May to June and 5,406 for July to September; Hakamada et al., 2009). With no specific densities derived for these waters, the best available density estimate (0.00029 animals/km$^2$ CV=48.7) for the sei whales in this model area is calculated from the winter/spring surveys around Guam and the Mariana Islands (Fulling et al., 2011). This is similar to that calculated for around Hawaii (0.00016 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017).

**Baird's beaked whale**: Kasuya (1986) reported the presence of Baird's beaked whales off the east coast of Japan, as did Leatherwood and Reeves (1983). Miyazaki et al. (1987) did not report any Baird's beaked whale strandings along the Pacific coast of Japan. Ohizumi et al. (2003) examined the stomach content of Baird's whales caught off the east coast of Japan and reported that the observed prey species were demersal fish that were identical to those caught in bottom-trawl nets at depths greater than 1,000 m (3,281 ft). Kasuya (1986) collected sighting data from 25 years of aerial survey records and 1984 shipboard sightings off the Pacific coast of Japan; based on Kasuya's (1986) encounter rate and effective search width, a density estimate of 0.0001 animals/km$^2$ was derived for the Baird's beaked whale stock in this model area. The density estimate is comparable to the most western strata density estimates in the eastern Pacific (Ferguson and Barlow, 2003). Kasuya and Perrin (2017) cited an abundance estimate by Miyashita (1986, 1990) of 5,688, and is the abundance estimated for the WNP stock of Baird's beaked whales

**Blainville's beaked whale**: Lacking data on population estimates for the Blainville's beaked whale in the western North Pacific, the data derived for this species in waters of the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001,

2003) are deemed most appropriate to represent the species in the WNP stock. Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) abundance derived for *Mesoplodon densirostris* added to one-fifth of the *Mesoplodon* spp. abundance provides an estimate of 8,032 animals to represent this stock. The density estimate of 0.0007 animals/km$^2$ is most appropriate (LGL, 2011). This density estimate is similar to that derived for Blainville's beaked whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0086 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013), in the main Hawaiian Islands (0.0012 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2001), and the mean predicted density estimate for the ETP *Mesoplodon* spp. (0.000296 animals/km$^2$; Ferguson et al., 2006).

**Common dolphin**: Short-beaked and long-beaked common dolphins were redefined as one species, common dolphin (*Delphinus delphis*) (SMM, 2017). No data on density or abundance estimates of common dolphins are available for the waters of the western North Pacific (Miyashita, 1993). Due to this lack of information, population data derived from ETP surveys are the best available, including an abundance estimate of 3,286,163 animals and a spatially-explicit density estimate of 0.0863 animals/km$^2$ (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003).

**Common bottlenose dolphin:** Kasuya and Perrin (2017) define a WNP Northern Offshore Stock for this region. Using a subset of the survey data from Miyashita (1993), Kasuya and Perrin (2017) report an abundance estimate of 100,281 individuals (CV=0.261). LGL (2011) derived a density estimate of 0.00077 animals/km$^2$ for pelagic bottlenose dolphins in this region. This is comparable to the density estimate around Guam and the Mariana Islands (0.00021 animals/km$^2$; Fulling et al., 2011).

**Cuvier's beaked whale:** No density or stock estimate data are available for Cuvier's beaked whales in this region. Considering habitat preferences (e.g., water temperature, bathymetry), it was determined that the best available abundance of 90,725 animals derived from the long-term ETP time series (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) and the best available density estimate of 0.0037 animals/km$^2$ derived by LGL (2011) most optimally represent this stock in this region. This density estimate is greater than that estimated for the Hawaii EEZ (0.0003 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017) but comparable to the mean predicted density estimate for the ETP (0.00455 animals/km$^2$; Ferguson et al., 2006).

**Dall's porpoise**: Dall's porpoise are found only in the North Pacific, primarily north of 36°N in the western North Pacific Ocean. This species has two distinct color morphs: one with a white flank patch that extends forward to the dorsal fin (*dalli* type) and one with a flank patch extending all the way to the front flippers (*truei* type). These morphological differences have been noted between animals from the Pacific coast of Japan (the *truei*-type), the Sea of Japan, and Sea of Okhotsk (the *dalli*-type), and the offshore northwestern Pacific and western Bering Sea (the *dalli*-type) (Hayano et al., 2003). Hayano et al. (2003) conducted genetic studies on the three populations and found a low, but significant, difference between the Sea of Japan-Okhotsk population and the other two populations. Kasuya and Perrin (2017) cite Miyashita (1991) for an abundance estimate of 162,000 animals in this region. Based on surveys of the eastern North Pacific, a density estimate of 0.0520 animals/km$^2$ was derived for the WNP stock, with ¼ less (0.0390 animals/km$^2$) during the winter season (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003). This density estimates a concentration of Dall's porpoises probably larger than what would be encountered by LFA operations in the western North Pacific since it includes survey effort in nearshore waters where animals are more often found.

**Dwarf sperm whale:** Evans (1987) reported records of *Kogia* spp. off the Japanese coast with primarily an oceanic, non-aggregated distribution. Although only the pygmy sperm whale is expected to occur in this area, given the lack of information about this species in this region, the dwarf sperm whale is also included in this model area. Given the lack of population level data on either *Kogia* species in the western North Pacific, the most representative abundance for the WNP stock of the dwarf sperm whale was derived by summing the abundances of *Kogia* spp. in the geographic ETP strata defined by Ferguson and Barlow (2001, 2003), resulting in an overall abundance of 350,553 animals. LGL's (2011) density estimate of 0.0043 animals/$km^2$ is the best available for this species in this region. This density is comparable to the density estimates for pygmy sperm whale (0.00291 animals/$km^2$ CV=1.12) and dwarf sperm whale (0.00714 animals/$km^2$ CV=0.74) observed within the Hawaii EEZ (Barlow, 2006).

**False killer whale**: Little occurrence or population data are available in these waters for the false killer whale. The most representative estimates of the WNP stock and density of false killer whales is Miyashita's (1993) estimated abundance of 16,668 animals (CV=0.263) from 34 sighting cruises associated with the Japanese drive fishery and his density estimate of 0.0036 animals/$km^2$. This density is higher than the density estimated for the pelagic stock of false killer whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0006 animals/$km^2$; Bradford et al., 2012) and in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0017 animals/$km^2$; Mobley et al., 2000), including the Main Hawaiian Islands insular stock (0.0008 animals/$km^2$; Bradford et al., 2015; Oleson et al., 2010) and the Northwest Hawaiian Islands insular stock (0.0006 animals/ $km^2$; Bradford et al., 2015; Forney et al., 2015).

**Hubbs' beaked whale**: All known occurrences to date of Hubb's beaked whales in the western North Pacific Ocean having been strandings along Japan's shore (MacLeod et al., 2006). Miyazaki et al. (1987) reported five strandings of Hubbs' beaked whales along the Pacific coast of northern Honshu. Since no data on density or stock estimates are available for the Hubb's beaked whale in the waters of this model area, *Mesoplodon* spp. data from the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003) are considered to be the most appropriate population estimates available from which to extrapolate population estimates for this model area. Using the northernmost strata from Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) data, a density of 0.0005 animals/$km^2$ and an abundance of 22,799 animals are estimated for the NP stock of Hubb's beaked whales. Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) density is comparable to that estimated for unidentified *Mesoplodon* whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0021 animals/$km^2$; Bradford et al., 2013) and the mean predicted density estimated for the ETP Mesoplodon spp. (0.000296 animals/km2; Ferguson et al., 2006).

**Killer whale**: Killer whales have been observed in the waters off the southeast coast of Honshu, Japan, but no killer whales were taken in Japanese drive fisheries (Miyashita, 1993). Without any population or occurrence data on killer whales for the western North Pacific, the best available abundance estimate of 12,256 animals is derived from Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) long time series in the ETP while the best available density estimate of 0.00009 animals/km2 is derived from LGL's (2011) compilation of data for the Marianas area. LGL's (2011) density is comparable to the density, 0.00004 animals/km2, estimated for killer whales in the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2013).

**Longman's beaked whale:** Considering the lack of occurrence or population data for the WNP stock of Longman's beaked whales, the abundance of 7,619 animals estimated for Longman's beaked whales in offshore Hawaiian waters (Bradford et al., 2017) and the density of 0.00025 animals per $km^2$ (LGL, 2011) derived from the Marianas regions are considered most appropriate to represent the WNP stock in this model area.

**Melon-headed whale:** Leatherwood and Reeves (1983) stated that melon-headed whales are rare except in the Philippine Sea. Distributed in tropical and subtropical waters, preferring equatorial water masses, they are probably uncommon outside of the warm waters of the Kuroshio Current. With these limited data and information available, a density estimate of 0.00267 animals/$km^2$ from LGL (2011) was considered most appropriate to represent the WNP stock in this region. This density is comparable to Mobley et al.'s (2000) density estimate for Hawaii waters of 0.0021 animals/km$^2$ and the Guam/Marianas estimate of 0.00428 animals/km$^2$ (Fulling et al., 2011). An abundance estimate of 56,213 whales (CV=0.58) was derived from surveys off the Pacific coast of Japan (Kanaji et al., 2018).

***Mesoplodon* spp:** Miyazaki et al. (1987) reported five strandings of *M. ginkgodens* from the east coast of Japan. Of the 15 known strandings of *M. ginkgodens,* Palacios (1996) reported eight off Taiwan and Japan. Since so very little occurrence or population data are available for this species, especially in this oceanic region, data on *Mesoplodon* spp. from the northernmost ETP stratum (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) were considered most appropriate to represent the Mesoplodon genus in this model area. Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) derived density estimate of 0.0005 animals/km$^2$ and abundance estimate of 22,799 animals represents *Mesoplodon* whales in the WNP stock. This density estimate is comparable to that for unidentified beaked whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00015 animals/km$^2$; Barlow, 2006) and the mean predicted density estimate for the ETP *Mesoplodon* spp. (0.000296 animals/km$^2$; Ferguson et al., 2006).

**Northern right whale dolphin**: The northern right whale dolphin is found in deep, temperate waters of the North Pacific Ocean, between about 30°N and 50°N. Buckland et al. (1993) estimated an abundance of 68,000 animals (CV=0.71) in the oceanic North Pacific based on sightings data, which represents the best available estimate for this region. No surveys have estimated density; therefore, a nominal density of 0.0001 animals/km$^2$ was used in exposure modeling to represent the low probability that this species would be encountered.

**Pacific white-sided dolphin:** No data on density or stock estimates of Pacific white-sided dolphins in this region are available (Miyashita, 1993). Due to this lack, the density (0.0048 animals/km$^2$) estimated from eastern Pacific waters (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) was used to best represent the WNP stock of these dolphins in this model area, while Buckland et al.'s (1993) abundance of 931,000 animals is most appropriate to characterize the WNP stock of Pacific white-sided dolphins. No sightings of Pacific white-sided dolphins were reported in Hawaii surveys (Mobley et al., 2000; Barlow, 2006).

**Pantropical spotted dolphin:** Kanaji et al. (2018) report an abundance estimate of 130,002 individuals (CV=0.43) based on surveys off the Pacific coast of Japan. LGL's (2011) density estimate of 0.0113 animals/km$^2$ best characterizes this species in this oceanic area. This density is an order of magnitude higher than that derived for the Hawaii EEZ (0.0067 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013), and nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0407 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Pygmy killer whale:** Kishiro and Kasuya (1993) reviewed the historical catches of Japanese drive fisheries and reported that no pygmy killer whales were caught in Taiji fisheries (located on the south coast of Kii Peninsula of Japan). Leatherwood and Reeves (1983), however, reported that pygmy killer whales were seen relatively frequently in the tropical Pacific off Japan. Given such sparsely available data on this species in this region, the best available density estimate (0.00014 animals/km$^2$) was derived from LGL (2011) data in the Mariana Islands. This density is an order of magnitude less than that observed for pygmy killer whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00435 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017). No pygmy killer whales were seen in nearshore aerial during the spring, summer, and fall (Mobley et al., 2000). The best available abundance estimate of 30,214 animals from the eastern Pacific survey data (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) best represents the WNP stock of this species.

**Pygmy sperm whale:** Evans (1987) reported records of *Kogia* spp. off the Japanese coast with primarily an oceanic, non-aggregated distribution. At this northern latitude, only *Kogia breviceps* is expected to occur. With so few *Kogia* data available in this region, an abundance was derived for the WNP stock by summing the abundances of *Kogia* spp. in the ETP geographic strata defined by Ferguson and Barlow (2001, 2003), which resulted in an overall abundance of 350,553 animals. LGL (2011) calculated a density estimate of 0.0018/km$^2$ for the pygmy sperm whale in the Mariana region and this estimate was considered to be represent this species in this model area. This density is comparable to the density estimates for pygmy sperm whale (0.00291 animals/km$^2$ CV=1.12) observed within the Hawaii EEZ (Barlow, 2006).

**Risso's dolphin:** With little occurrence information available on the Risso's dolphin in this ocean model area, Kanaji et al.'s (2018) abundance (143,374 animals, CV=0.69) best represents the WNP stock, while LGL's (2011) density estimate of 0.0005 animals/km$^2$ derived for the species in the waters of the Mariana Islands is the best available density. This is an order of magnitude lower than that observed in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0067 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013).

**Rough-toothed dolphin:** Due to the very limited amount of population data available on this dolphin species in this offshore Japan model area, the best available density estimate of 0.0019 animals/km$^2$ derived from LGL's (2011) data from the Mariana region. This density is comparable to that observed in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0026 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013) and in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0017 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000). The best available abundance of 5,002 animals is estimated from western Pacific waters (Kanaji et al., 2018).

**Short-finned pilot whale:** The stock delineation of the short-finned pilot whale in the western North Pacific is not fully resolved, but a northern ecotype and southern ecotype are recognized, segregating at Choshi Point (35°42'N, 140°51'E) (Kasuya and Perrin, 2018). Using the results of Miyashita (1993), an abundance estimate of 20,884 individuals (CV=0.332) was calculated for the WNP northern stock. The most appropriate density estimate for this offshore site, 0.0021 animals/km$^2$, was derived from LGL (2011) data in the Mariana region. This density estimate is similar to that found in pelagic waters of the Hawaii EEZ (0.0051 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013).

**Sperm whale**: Stock structure of sperm whales in the North Pacific is not well resolved. Sightings collected by Kasuya and Miyashita (1988) suggest that in the summer, the density of sperm whales is high south of the Kuroshio Current System (south of approximately 35°N) but extremely low north of 35°N. These data suggest two stocks of sperm whales in the western North Pacific, a northwestern stock with females that summer off the Kuril Islands (~50° N) and winter off Hokkaido and Sanriku (~40° N) and the southern WNP stock with females that summer off Hokkaido and Sanriku (~40° N) and winter around the Bonin Islands (~25°N) (Kasuya and Miyashita, 1988). The males of these two stocks are found north of the range of the corresponding females, i.e., in the Bering Sea (~55° N) and off Hokkaido and Sanriku (~40°N), respectively, during the summer (Kasuya and Miyashita, 1988). However, until further data are available, sperm whales are considered to belong to only one NP stock. Potentially, sperm whales of the NP stock, numbering 102,112 individuals (Kato and Miyashita, 1998), may occur year-round in the waters of this offshore model area. The best density estimated for sperm whales in model area 8 is 0.0022 animals/km$^2$, derived by LGL (2011). This density is higher but in the same order of magnitude as that derived by Forney et al. (2015; 0.00158 animals/km$^2$) for the Hawaii EEZ and Fulling et al. (2011; 0.00123 animals/km$^2$) for the waters around Guam and Mariana Islands.

**Spinner dolphin:** Gilpatrick et al. (1987) did not report any sightings of spinner dolphins from the Pacific coast of Japan and neither is this species mentioned in historical Japanese whaling records (Kishiro and Kasuya, 1993). With no data on density or stock estimates available (Miyashita, 1993), the best stock and density estimates for the WNP stock of spinner dolphins is considered to be Ferguson and Barlow (2001, 2003) estimate of 1,015,059 spinner dolphins from a similar latitude of the ETP and LGL's (2011) estimate of 0.0019 animals/km$^2$, respectively.

**Stejneger's beaked whale**: Strandings along the Pacific coast of Japan in winter and spring suggest a migratory pattern (Mead, 1989; Yamada, 1997), but density or stock estimate data are not available for the WNP stock in this region. Considering habitat preferences (e.g., water temperature, bathymetry), the most appropriate Stejneger's density estimate of 0.0005 animals/km$^2$ is derived from ETP data of Ferguson and Barlow (2001, 2003), with the most appropriate abundance (8,000 animals) approximated from that derived for the WNP stock of Baird's beaked whales (Kasuya, 1986).

**Striped dolphin:** Kasuya and Perrin (2017) recognize a northern offshore population, with an abundance estimate of 497,725 individuals (CV=0.179) (Miyashita, 1993). LGL (2011) derived a density estimate of 0.0058 animals/km$^2$ from data derived from the Mariana region. This density is comparable to the density estimates from the Hawaii EEZ (0.0084 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013), from nearshore Hawaii (0.0016 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000), and from Guam and the Mariana Islands (0.00616 animals/km$^2$; Fulling et al., 2011).

**Hawaiian monk seal**: Monk seals are known to haul out on Kure Atoll, the westernmost atoll in the northwest Hawaiian Islands (NWHI) (Carretta et al., 2019). Monk seals from Kure Atoll may forage on the Hancock Banks, NW of Kure Atoll. Parrish et al. (2002) compiled information on monk seal diving wherein the authors referenced a study by Abernathy (1999), who reported that monk seals may travel up to 400 km (216 nmi) to forage. The Hancock Banks are approximately 162 nmi (300 km) NW of Kure Atoll and are characterized by a single pinnacle that is shallower than 1,476 ft (450 m); this single pinnacle is within the known range of movements of monk seals. However, it appears unlikely that many, if any, seals would travel a distance near their maximum-recorded and dive to a depth near their maximum recorded depth to access a small potential foraging area. However, to account for the possibility that monk seals may forage such distances from known foraging areas, monk seals were included in the marine mammal fauna for this model area. The abundance of the Hawaiian monk seal stock is estimated at 1,427 animals (NMFS, 2018). Although no density for the very rare Hawaiian monk seal is available, a density estimate is necessary to compute the potential risk to this species. Thus, a density estimate of 0.00001 animals/km$^2$ was used in the impact analysis for this species to reflect the very low probability of occurrence in this region.

**Northern fur seal**: Northern fur seals in this region are part of the Western Pacific stock. Northern fur seals only go ashore on their breeding grounds further north; after breeding and molting, many northern fur seals travel southward, where they remain at sea and may be found in this region during the winter and spring (Buckland et al., 1993; Allen and Angliss, 2015). The Western Pacific stock is estimated at 503,609 animals, which is the sum of the abuandance estimates for the Kuril Islands and Commander Island (Gelatt et al., 2015) plus Tyuleniy Island (Kuzin, 2015). Buckland et al. (1993) estimated a density of 0.0123 animals/km$^2$ in offshore waters of the western North Pacific, which represents the best available estimate for this model area, in which northern fur seals are expected in winter.

## D-9. MODEL AREA 9—OFFSHORE JAPAN/WESTERN NORTH PACIFIC 10° TO 25° N

**Blue whale**: Few data are available on blue whale occurrence in the North Pacific Ocean and the stock structure in the North Pacific remains uncertain. Stafford et al. (2001) studied the geographic variation of blue whale calls in the North Pacific, and although there was no hydrophone coverage in the mid-latitudes off Japan, there was some coverage near the Kamchatka Peninsula and along the western Aleutian Islands chain. All calls recorded on these hydrophones were northwest Pacific blue whale calls (Stafford et al., 2001). Although the blue whale was the initial focus of Japanese whaling effort in the North Pacific, limited data were reported on blue whales. Therefore, sighting surveys associated with Japanese whaling of fin whales were judged to be the most appropriate proxy for blue whale occurrence estimates (Tillman, 1977; Carretta et al., 2019). Thus, the best available abundance for the WNP blue whale stock is 9,250 animals (Tillman, 1977). The best density for blue whales, which are found in this model area in the winter, spring, and fall seasons, is 0.0001 whales/km$^2$, which was estimated in three different documents, including encounter rates during Japanese whaling in the northwest Pacific Ocean (Tillman, 1977), correlations with density estimates from a similar latitude in the eastern North Pacific (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003), and summarized data and monitoring during a geophysical seismic survey (LGL, 2008). This density for blue whales is comparable to density estimates of the blue whale in offshore areas of the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2003) and to the waters surrounding Guam (Fulling et al., 2011).

**Bryde's whale:** Yoshida and Kato (1999) identified three stocks of Bryde’s whales in the western North Pacific: Solomon Islands/Southeast Asia, East China Sea, and offshore western North Pacific. Ohizumi et al. (2002) conducted winter sighting surveys, observing Bryde’s whales at about 20°N, which is the southern limit of their summer range. The IWC provides the best available population estimate, 20,501 whales, for the WNP Bryde’s whale stock (IWC, 2009). The best available density estimate for this species in this region, 0.0003 animals/km$^2$, is calculated by LGL (2011). This density is comparable to density estimates from offshore areas of the ETP (0.00003/km$^2$; Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) and the Hawaii EEZ (0.00033 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013).

**Fin whale**: Fin whales have been reported migrating south in the winter to about 20° N (Mizroch et al., 2009) and may occur in the northern portion of this model area. An abundance for the WNP stock (9,250 animals) was derived from whaling data (Tillman, 1977). No density information is available for the fin whale in this region, therefore a density estimate of 0.00001 animals/km$^2$ was used in the risk analysis to reflect the very low probability of occurrence in this region during winter, spring, and fall. This is comparable to that calculated for around Hawaii (0.00006 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017).

**Humpback whale**: The NMFS Humpback Whale Biological Review Team conducted a comprehensive status review in which they revised the ESA status for humpback whales in this region to be part of the Western North Pacific Distinct Population Segment (WNP DPS) and listed as endangered (Bettridge et al., 2015; NOAA, 2016a). The WNP DPS breeds/winters in the region of Okinawa and the Philippines and migrates to feeding grounds in the North Pacific, primarily off the Russian coast. Thus, humpback whales are only expected to occur in the model area #9 during winter, spring, and fall. In addition, approximately one-quarter of the population is expected to be found in water depths of less than 3,281 ft (1,000 m), which was implemented in the modeling as a depth aversion. The SPLASH consortium derived an average abundance for the Asian wintering grounds of approximately 1,000 humpback whales (Calambokidis et al., 2008), which has increased annually to an abundance estimate of 1,328 individuals (Bettridge et al., 2015). A density of 0.00036 animals/km$^2$ was derived for the WNP stock of humpback whales based on photo-identification surveys throughout the North Pacific (Calambokidis et al., 2008) that provided information on distributional preferences and a compilation of surveys in the western North Pacific (LGL, 2008).

**Omura’s whale:** Little population information is known or available for this species only described in 2003 but this baleen whale ranges from roughly northern Japan to Australia in the eastern Indian Ocean and western Pacific Ocean (Yamada, 2009). With so little information available, the Omura's whale is assumed to comprise one stock, the WNP, throughout its range in the western Pacific Ocean. The only abundance information available is an estimate made by Ohsumi (1980) for Bryde's whales in the Solomon Sea, which are now known to have been Bryde's and Omura's whales. Lacking other data, Ohsumi's (1980) abundance of 1,800 animals was used to represent the WNP stock of Omura's whales. A density estimate from the NMSDD (LGL, 2008 in DoN, 2018) was used (0.00004 animals/km$^2$).

**Sei whale**: Sei whales are present throughout the temperate North Pacific Ocean but have been observed as far south as 20° N (Horwood, 1987). The IWC recognizes one stock of sei whales in the North Pacific (Donovan, 1991), although some evidence exists for several populations (Carretta et al., 2019). Very few sightings of sei whales have occurred in any region of the North Pacific, and adding to the difficulty, sei whales are extremely difficult to differentiate from Bryde's whales at sea. Tillman (1977) derived an abundance estimate of 8,600 individuals for sei/Bryde's whale in the North Pacific from whaling catch statistics. Mizroch et al. (2015) estimated the size of the pelagic migratory stock in 1975 at approximately 4,000 animals, but their "single stock" (coastal and pelagic) state space analysis estimated a population size of 7,000 animals in 1974, which is used here as the best available data. Initial estimates for a portion of the sei whale population off Japan indicate abundance estimates of similar magnitude (7,744 for May to June and 5,406 for July to September; Hakamada et al., 2009). With no specific densities derived for these waters, the best available density estimate (0.00029 animals/km$^2$ CV=48.7) for the sei whales in this model area is calculated from the winter/spring surveys around Guam and the Mariana Islands (Fulling et al., 2011). This is similar to that calculated for around Hawaii (0.00016 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017).

**Blainville's beaked whale**: Lacking data on population estimates for the Blainville's beaked whale in the western North Pacific, the abundance data derived for this species in waters of the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) are deemed most appropriate to represent the species in the WNP stock. Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) abundance derived for *Mesoplodon densirostris* added to one-fifth of the *Mesoplodon* spp. abundance provides an estimate of 8,032 animals to represent the WNP stock. The density estimate derived by LGL (2011), 0.0007 animals/km$^2$; is most appropriate for this beaked whale in this oceanic model area. This density estimate is similar to that derived for Blainville's beaked whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0086 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013), in the main Hawaiian Islands (0.0012 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2001), and the mean predicted density estimate for the ETP *Mesoplodon* spp. (0.000296 animals/km$^2$; Ferguson et al., 2006).

**Common bottlenose dolphin:** Kasuya and Perrin (2017) define a WNP Southern Offshore Stock for this region. Kanaji et al. (2018) report an abundance estimate of 40,769 individuals. The best available density of bottlenose dolphins in this model area of 0.00077 animals/km$^2$ as derived by LGL (2011) for this species in waters of the Mariana region. This density is comparable to the density estimate around Guam and the Mariana Islands (0.00021 animals/km$^2$; Fulling et al., 2011).

**Cuvier's beaked whale:** No density or stock estimate data are available for Cuvier's beaked whales in this oceanic region. Considering habitat preferences (e.g., water temperature, bathymetry), the best available abundance for the WNP stock of 90,725 animals was derived for this beaked whale from long-term time ETP series data (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003). The best density for this species in this region is LGL's (2011) estimate of 0.0037 animals/km$^2$. This density estimate is greater than that estimated for the Hawaii EEZ (0.0003 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017) but comparable to the mean predicted density estimate for the ETP (0.00455 animals/km$^2$; Ferguson et al., 2006).

**Deraniyagala beaked whale**: Dalebout et al. (2014) conducted genetic and molecular analyses to demonstrate that *M. hotaula* was genetic distinct from the ginkgo-toothed beaked whale (*M. ginkgodens*). Little is known about this beaked whale species. No abundance or stock information is available for the Deraniyagala beaked whale. Given that this species was synonymous with the ginkgo-toothed beaked whale, which is part of the *Mesoplodon* spp. complex, the best available density and abundance estimates for *Mesoplodon* spp. at the same latitudes in the ETP are most appropriate for this region (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003). Using Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) northernmost strata, a density estimate of 0.0009 animals/km$^2$ and abundance estimate of 22,799 animals were used for analyses for the Deraniyagala beaked whale in this model area.

**Dwarf sperm whale:** Evans (1987) reported records of *Kogia* spp. off the Japanese coast with primarily an oceanic, disbursed distribution. Although at this latitude, only the pygmy sperm whale is expected to occur, the dwarf sperm whale is included in this model area due to the lack of concrete data and information on its deep ocean occurrence. To derive the best available abundance for the WNP stock of dwarf sperm whales, the abundances of *Kogia* spp. in the appropriate geographic ETP strata were summed to derive an overall abundance of 350,553 animals (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003). LGL's density estimate of 0.0043 animals/km$^2$ best represents this species in this region. This density is comparable to the density estimates for pygmy sperm whale (0.00291/km$^2$ (CV=1.12) and dwarf sperm whale (0.00714 animals/km$^2$ CV=0.74) observed within the Hawaii EEZ (Barlow, 2006).

**False killer whale:** With so sparse occurrence data available for false killer whales in this oceanic model area, Miyashita's (1993) abundance of 16,668 false killer whales (CV=0.263) from 34 sighting cruises associated with the Japanese drive fishery best typifies the WNP stock. LGL's (2011) density of 0.0006 animals/km$^2$ is most representative of this species in model area #9. This density is comparable to the density estimated for the pelagic stock of false killer whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0006 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2012) and in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0017 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000), including the Main Hawaiian Islands insular stock (0.0008 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2015; Oleson et al., 2010) and the Northwest Hawaiian Islands insular stock (0.0006 animals/ km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2015; Forney et al., 2015).

**Fraser's dolphin**: Without data on abundance or density estimates for the western North Pacific Ocean for the Fraser's dolphin, Bradford et al. (2013) abundance estimate of 16,992 animals is extrapolated to represent the central North Pacific stock of Fraser's dolphins. The density estimated by LGL (2011) as 0.0025 animals/km$^2$ is considered the best available and most appropriate to characterize Fraser's dolphin in this model area.

**Gingko-toothed beaked whale**: During the genetic and molecular analyses of Dalebout et al. (2014), additional distribution information about the ginkgo-toothed beaked whale was demonstrated, suggesting that it may occur in this model area. Little is known about this beaked whale species, with no live sightings having been recorded. No abundance or stock information is available; therefore, the best available density and abundance estimates for *Mesoplodon* spp. at the same latitudes in the ETP are most appropriate for this region (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003). Using Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) northernmost strata, a density estimate of 0.0009 animals/km$^2$ and abundance estimate of 22,799 animals were used for analyses for the ginkgo-toothed beaked whale in this model area.

**Killer whale**: Without any population or occurrence data on killer whales for the western North Pacific, the best available abundance estimate of 12,256 animals for the WNP stock was derived from Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) long time series of ETP data. The best available density for the killer whale in this region is represented by the density of 0.00009 animals/km$^2$ (LGL, 2011) estimated for the Marianas area. LGL's (2011) density is comparable to the density, 0.00004 animals/km$^2$, estimated for killer whales in the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2013).

**Longman's beaked whale:** Ferguson and Barlow (2001) reported that all Longman's beaked whale sightings in their ETP surveys occurred south of 25° N. Considering the lack of occurrence or population data for the WNP stock of Longman's beaked whales, the abundance of 7,619 animals estimated for Longman's beaked whales in offshore Hawaiian waters (Bradford et al., 2017) and the density of 0.00025 animals per km$^2$ (LGL, 2011) derived from the Marianas regions are considered most appropriate to represent the WNP stock in this oceanic region.

**Melon-headed whale:** Leatherwood and Reeves (1983) stated that melon-headed whales are rare in all western North Pacific waters except those of the Philippine Sea. With such limited data available, a density estimate derived by LGL (2011) of 0.00267 animals/km$^2$ is the best available to characterize the occurrence of melon-headed whales in this region. This density is very comparable to Mobley et al.'s (2000) density estimate for Hawaii waters of 0.0021 animals/km$^2$ and the Guam/Marianas estimate of 0.00428 animals/km$^2$ (Fulling et al., 2011). An abundance estimate of 56,213 whales (CV=0.58) was derived from surveys off the Pacific coast of Japan (Kanaji et al., 2018).

**Pantropical spotted dolphin:** Gilpatrick et al. (1987) cited a known distribution of pantropical spotted dolphins east of Japan. Kanaji et al. (2018) report an abundance estimate of 130,002 individuals (CV=0.43) from surveys off the Pacific coast of Japan. The best available density of 0.0113 animals/km$^2$ is estimated from this species data from the Mariana region (LGL, 2011). This density is comparable to that observed in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00369 animals/km$^2$; Forney et al., 2015) and an order of magnitude less than that observed in nearshore waters of Hawaii (0.0407 animals/km$^2$; (Mobley et al., 2000).

**Pygmy killer whale:** Kishiro and Kasuya (1993) reviewed the historical catches of Japanese drive fisheries and reported that no pygmy killer whales were caught in Taiji fisheries (located on the south coast of Kii Peninsula of Japan). However, Leatherwood and Reeves (1983) reported that pygmy killer whales were seen relatively frequently in the tropical Pacific waters off Japan. Few data are available for this species in this oceanic model area. Thus, the best available density estimate of 0.00006 animals/km$^2$ for this area was derived by LGL (2011) from Mariana Islands data. This density is an order of magnitude less than that observed for pygmy killer whales in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00435 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017). No pygmy killer whales were seen in nearshore aerial during the spring, summer, and fall by Mobley et al. (2000). The best abundance estimate to represent the WNP stock of pygmy killer whales is 30,214 animals derived from the eastern Pacific survey data (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003).

**Pygmy sperm whale:** Evans (1987) reported records of *Kogia* spp. off the Japanese coast with primarily an oceanic, dispersed distribution. Although only this species of *Kogia* is expected to occur at this the latitude of this site, due to the lack of concrete data, to be conservative both *Kogia* species are included for this model area. The best estimated abundance for the WNP stock of pygmy sperm whales is derived by summing the abundances of *Kogia* spp. in the ETP geographic strata defined by Ferguson and Barlow (2001, 2003), which results in an overall abundance of 350,553 animals. The density of 0.00176 animals/km$^2$ derived for the greater Mariana Islands region (LGL, 2011) is the most representative of this species in this region. This density is comparable to the density estimates for pygmy sperm whale (0.00291/km$^2$ (CV=1.12) and dwarf sperm whale (0.00714 animals/km$^2$ CV=0.74) observed within the Hawaii EEZ (Barlow, 2006).

**Risso's dolphin:** Very sparse occurrence or population level data are available for the Risso's dolphin in this oceanic area. Kanaji et al. (2018) estimated abundance for the WNP stock of 143,374 animals (CV=0.69) is the best data available. Likewise, LGL's (2011) density estimate of 0.00046 animals/km$^2$ best represents this species in this region. This density is lower than the density estimate off Hawaii (0.0067 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013).

**Rough-toothed dolphin:** With few data available for this species, the best available density estimate (0.00185 animals/km$^2$) is from LGL (2011). Kanaji et al. (2018) report an abundance estimate (5,002 individuals, CV=1.24) from their sighting surveys in the western North Pacific. This density is comparable to that observed in the Hawaii EEZ (0.0026 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013) and in nearshore Hawaii waters (0.0017 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Short-finned pilot whale:** The stock delineation of the short-finned pilot whale in the western North Pacific is not fully resolved, but a northern ecotype and southern ecotype are recognized, segregating at Choshi Point (35°42' N, 140°51' E) (Kasuya and Perrin, 2018). Using the results of Miyashita (1993), an abundance estimate of 31,396 individuals (CV=0.65) was calculated for the WNP southern stock. The most appropriate and best available density for this whale in this region is 0.0021 animals/km$^2$, estimated by LGL (2011). This density estimate is similar to that found in pelagic waters of the Hawaii EEZ (0.0051 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013).

**Sperm whale**: Sightings collected by Kasuya and Miyashita (1988) suggest that in the summer, the density of sperm whales is high south of the Kuroshio Current System (south of approximately 35° N) but extremely low north of 35°N. Kasuya and Miyashita's (1988) data suggest that there are two stocks of sperm whales in the western North Pacific, a northwestern stock with females that summer off the Kuril Islands (~50° N) and winter off Hokkaido and Sanriku (~40° N), and the southwestern North Pacific stock with females that summer off Hokkaido and Sanriku (~40° N) and winter around the Bonin Islands (~25° N). Male sperm whales of these two stocks are found north of the range of the corresponding females. Based on this information, sperm whales may occur throughout the year in this model area. However, data is insufficient to clearly define the stock structure of sperm whales in the North Pacific Ocean, except in the U.S. EEZ waters. For this reason, Kato and Miyashita's (1988) stock estimate of 102,112 animals is the best available estimate of the NP stock of sperm whales in this model area. A density estimate of 0.0022 animals/km$^2$ was derived from LGL data (2011) and is considered optimal to represent this species occurrence in this area. This density is higher than the Forney et al. (2015) estimate (0.00158 animals/km$^2$) calculated from the summer/fall survey off Hawaii in 2010 and the density estimate (0.00123 animals/km$^2$) calculated from the winter/spring surveys around Guam and Mariana Islands (Fulling et al., 2011).

**Spinner dolphin:** The spinner dolphin is not mentioned in historical Japanese whaling records (Kishiro and Kasuya, 1993), and no data on density or stock estimates are available for this species from data compiled by Miyashita (1993). The best available density estimate (0.00187 animals/km$^2$) is calculated by LGL (2011) and is comparable to that observed in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00137 animals/km$^2$; Barlow, 2006) but is an order of magnitude less than that observed in nearshore waters of Hawaii (0.0443 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000); no sightings of spinner dolphins occurred during systematic effort in the 2010 summer/fall survey (Bradford et al., 2013). The abundance estimated as 1,015,059 animals for spinner dolphins from the ETP data (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) is the best available to characterize the WNP stock.

**Striped dolphin:** Kasuya and Perrin (2017) recognize a southern offshore population, with an abundance estimate of 52,682 individuals (Miyashita, 1993). The best existing density of 0.0058 animals/km$^2$ was derived by LGL (2011) and is comparable to the density estimates from nearshore Hawaii (0.0016/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000), and the Hawaii EEZ (0.0084 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013) and Guam and the Mariana Islands (0.00616/km$^2$; Fulling et al., 2011).

## D-10. MODEL AREA 10—HAWAII NORTH

**Blue whale**: Due to the general lack of occurrence data for blue whales in the North Pacific Ocean, stock structure remains uncertain. NMFS recognizes a central North Pacific stock around Hawaii and an eastern North Pacific stock around California (Carretta et al., 2019). Blue whales occur rarely in the central North Pacific, with few sightings and acoustic detections having been made. No sightings of blue whales were made around Hawaii during the Acoustic Thermometry of Ocean Climate Marine Mammal Research Program aerial surveys or during a summer/fall 2002 line-transect survey (Barlow, 2006; Mobley, 2006). Line-transect surveys of the Hawaii EEZ estimated an abundance of 133 (CV=1.09) animals and a density of 0.00005 animals/km$^2$ (Bradford et al., 2017).

**Bryde's whale:** Sightings of the Bryde's whale in Hawaiian waters have been recorded sporadically since 1977 (Carretta et al., 2019). Occurrence data are sufficient to define a Hawaii stock of Bryde's whales. Bradford et al.'s (2017) abundance estimate of the Hawaii stock of Bryde's whales is the best available (1,751 animals, CV=0.29). The best density for Bryde's whales is 0.00009 animals/km$^2$, derived from habitat-based modeling (Forney et al., 2015).

**Common minke whale:** A Hawaii stock is recognized that occurs seasonally (November-March) in Hawaiian waters, though no estimate of abundance has been calculated (Carretta et al., 2019). Minke whales were observed and acoustically detected during the 2002 summer/fall survey of the Hawaiian EEZ (Barlow, 2006). One off-effort sighting was made during the 2010 summer/fall survey (Bradford et al., 2013). A year-long analysis of acoustic recordings made at Station ALOHA (A Long-term Oligotrophic Habitat Assessment) 100 km (54 nmi) north of Oahu detected "central" or "Hawaii" boings from 22 October 2007 to 21 May 2008 but none were detected during the months of June to September, though this does not indicate that minke whales were not present (Oswald et al., 2011). Using passive acoustic detections from hydrophones on the Pacific Missile Range Facility off Kauai, Martin et al. (2015) estimated density as 0.00423 animals/km$^2$, which is used as the best available data. Lacking abundance data for this stock in Hawaiian waters, the best estimate of abundance (25,049 animals) is derived from sighting surveys in July and August in the western North Pacific and Sea of Okhotsk (Buckland et al., 1992).

**Fin whale**: There has been acoustic evidence for fin whale presence in fall and winter (Thompson and Friedl, 1982; Moore et al., 1998) and one sighting in nearshore waters (February) (Mobley et al., 1996). From the sightings reported during line-transect surveys, an abundance estimate of 154 animals and a density estimate of 0.00006 animals/km$^2$ (CV=1.05) was calculated for the Hawaii stock of fin whales (Bradford et al., 2017). This estimate is similar to that of McDonald and Fox (1999) who derived an average calling whale density estimate of 0.000027 animals/km$^2$ based on recordings made north of Oahu, Hawaii. The seasonal maximum calling whale density was about three times the average, or 0.000081 animals/km$^2$ (McDonald and Fox, 1999).

**Humpback whale**: The NMFS Humpback Whale Biological Review Team (BRT) conducted a comprehensive status review in which they revised the ESA status for humpback whales with animals in this region defined as part of the Hawaii DPS and not listed under the ESA (Bettridge et al., 2015; NOAA, 2016a). The Hawaii DPS is synonymous with the Central North Pacific (CNP) stock identified under the MMPA and evaluated in the NMFS stock assessment reports (Muto et al., 2019). The CNP/Hawaii DPS breeds/winters within the Main Hawaiian Islands and migrates to mostly known feeding grounds in the North Pacific, with about half of the stock/DPS migrating to southeast Alaska and northern British Columbia. Thus, humpback whales are only expected to occur in the Hawaii-North model area during winter, spring, and fall. The best available abundance estimate for the CNP stock/Hawaii DPS of humpback whales is 10,103 individuals (Calambokidis et al., 2008; Muto et al., 2019). A density of 0.00529 animals/km$^2$ was derived for the CNP stock and Hawaii DPS of humpback whales based on aerial surveys (Mobley et al., 2001) that were modified based on photo-identification survey results (Calambokidis et al., 2008).

**Sei whale**: Sei whales are present throughout the temperate North Pacific Ocean but have been observed as far south as 20° N (Horwood, 1987), with whaling effort distributed continuously across the North Pacific between 45° N and 55° N (Masaki, 1977). The IWC only considers one stock of sei whales in the North Pacific (Donovan, 1991), but NMFS recognizes three stocks, including a Hawaii stock. The best estimates of abundance and density are from line-transect surveys of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ that estimated 391 animals and 0.00016 animals/km$^2$ (CV=0.90) (Bradford et al., 2017). Sei whales may occur in the Hawaii-North model area in fall, winter, and spring.

**Blainville's beaked whale:** Blainville's beaked whales potentially occur in the deep waters of this model area. The best available density estimate (0.00086 animals/km$^2$) and abundance estimate (2,105 animals, CV=1.13) are calculated from the surveys in the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017).

**Common bottlenose dolphin**: Recent photo-id and genetic studies around the main Hawaiian Islands suggest limited movements among islands and offshore waters (Baird et al., 2009). Five Pacific Islands Region stocks are identified: (1) Kauai and Niihau; (2) Oahu; (3) the "4-Island Region" including Molokai, Lanai, Maui, and Kahoolawe; (4) Hawaii Island; and (5) Hawaii pelagic stock (Carretta et al., 2019). The boundary between the insular stocks and the pelagic stock is the 1,000-m (3,281-ft) isobath.

*Hawaii pelagic stock*: The best available density estimate (0.00118 animals/km$^2$) is from habitat-based modeling (Forney et al., 2015). The abundance estimate (21,815 animals, CV=0.57) for the pelagic stock of bottlenose dolphins is calculated from the line-transect surveys in the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017).

*Kauai/Niihau stock*: The best abundance estimate for this insular stock is 184 dolphins based on 2003 to 2005 photo-ID studies (Baird et al., 2009; Carretta et al., 2019). Density estimates are for this insular stock (0.065 animals/km$^2$; Baird et al., 2009). The density estimate is an order of magnitude higher than that calculated for nearshore Hawaiian waters (0.0013 animals/km$^2$) by Mobley et al. (2000).

*Oahu stock*: The best abundance estimate for this insular stock is 743 dolphins based on 2002, 2003, and 2006 in Oahu waters (except the windward waters) (Baird et al., 2009; Carretta et al., 2019). Density estimates are for this insular stock (0.187 animals/km$^2$; Baird et al., 2009). The density estimate is an order of magnitude higher than that calculated for nearshore Hawaiian waters (0.0013 animals/km$^2$) by Mobley et al. (2000).

*4-Islands stock*: The best abundance estimate for this insular stock is 191 dolphins based on 2002 to 2006 photo-ID studies of individual common bottlenose dolphins in the waters of Maui and Lanai (Baird et al., 2009; Carretta et al., 2019). Density estimates are for this insular stock (0.017 animals/km$^2$; Baird et al., 2009). The density estimate is two orders of magnitude higher than that calculated for nearshore Hawaiian waters (0.0013 animals/km$^2$) by Mobley et al. (2000).

*Hawaii Island stock*: The best abundance estimate for this insular stock is 128 dolphins based on 2003 to 2006 photo-ID studies (Baird et al., 2009; Carretta et al., 2019). Density estimates are for this insular stock (0.028 animals/km$^2$; Baird et al., 2009). The density estimate is an order of magnitude higher than that calculated for nearshore Hawaiian waters (0.0013 animals/km$^2$) by Mobley et al. (2000).

**Cuvier's beaked whale:** The best available density estimate (0.0003 animals/km$^2$) and abundance estimate (723 individuals, CV=0.69) for the Hawaii stock of Cuvier's beaked whales are calculated from line-transect surveys in the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017). The density estimate is comparable to the density estimate in nearshore Hawaiian waters (0.0008 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Dwarf sperm whale**: Dwarf sperm whales are known in Hawaii from both strandings and sightings, with Mobley et al. (2000) having observed two pods of dwarf and pygmy sperm whales for a total of five individuals during his 1993 to 1998 survey efforts, although no density or abundance estimates were derived. Dwarf sperm whales were also observed near Niihau, Kauai, Lanai, and Hawaii during small boat surveys between 2000 and 2003 (Baird, 2005). The best available estimates for the Hawaiian stock of dwarf sperm whales are the density and abundance, 0.00714 animals/km$^2$ and 17,519 animals, respectively, estimated from the summer/fall survey in the Hawaii EEZ (Barlow, 2006).

**False killer whale**: Three stocks are recognized within the Hawaiian Island Stock Complex (Carretta et al., 2019): the main Hawaiian Islands insular stock (which includes false killer whales occurring within approximately 40 nmi [72 km] of the main Hawaiian Islands); the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands stock (which includes false killer whales inhabiting waters within 50 nmi [93 km] of the NWHI and Kauai); and the Hawaii pelagic stock (including false killer whales occurring in waters further than approximately 6 nmi [11 km] of the main Hawaiian Islands with no inner boundary within the NWHI). It is recognized that the stocks have partially overlapping ranges (Bradford et al., 2015).

*Main Hawaiian Islands insular stock/DPS:* The best available abundance estimate is 167 animals for the Main Hawaiian Islands insular stock (Carretta et al., 2019; Bradford et al., 2018). A density estimate of 0.00080 animals/km$^2$ is the best available estimate of the insular stock from the 2010 dedicated survey of Hawaiian EEZ waters (Bradford et al., 2015).

*Hawaii pelagic stock*: The abundance of the Hawaii pelagic stock of false killer whales is estimated as 1,540 individuals (CV=0.66) from 2010 visual line-transect data (Carretta et al., 2019; Bradford et al., 2014, 2015). The best available density estimate for the Hawaii pelagic stock, 0.00060 individuals/km$^2$, was also estimated from the 2010 dedicated survey of Hawaiian EEZ waters (Bradford et al., 2015) from which habitat-based, spatially-explicit density models were created(Forney et al., 2015; DoN, 2018).

*Northwestern Hawaiian Islands stock/DPS*: This stock was defined only recently, and the abundance of this stock estimated from 2010 visual line-transect survey data is 617 whales (CV=1.09) (Carretta et al., 2019; Bradford et al., 2014, 2015). The most current density estimated for the Northwestern Hawaiian Island stock is 0.00060 individuals/km$^2$, was also estimated from the 2010 dedicated survey of Hawaiian EEZ waters (Bradford et al., 2015) from which habitat-based, spatially-explicit density models were created (Forney et al., 2015; DoN, 2018).

**Fraser's dolphin**: Fraser's dolphins were first documented in Hawaiian waters during the 2003 summer/fall survey (Barlow, 2006). The best available density estimate of 0.02104 animals/km$^2$ and abundance estimate of 51,491 animals (CV=0.66) are from the 2010 summer/fall survey (Bradford et al., 2017).

**Killer whale**: Killer whales are considered rare in Hawaiian waters with limited sightings having been reported (Carretta et al., 2019). The best available density estimate (0.00006 animals/km$^2$) and abundance estimate (146 animals, CV=0.96) are calculated from the summer/fall survey in the waters of the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017). Mobley et al. (2000) did not report any sightings in their surveys of coastal waters of the Main Hawaiian Islands.

**Longman's beaked whale:** Longman's beaked whale has only recently been identified to species (Dalebout et al., 2003; Pitman et al., 1999) and is considered one of the rarest and least known of cetacean species. The best available density estimate (0.00311 animals/km$^2$) and abundance estimate (7,619 animals, CV=0.66) for the Hawaiian stock of this beaked whale were calculated from the 2010 summer/fall survey in the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017). No other density estimates exist for this species around Hawaii (Mobley et al., 2000).

**Melon-headed whale**: Recent studies reveal evidence for island-associated stock structure in melon-headed whales in the main Hawaiian Islands and NMFS now recognizes two stocks (Carretta et al., 2019): (1) a Kohala Resident Stock, consisting of animals within the 2,500 m (8,202.5 ft) isobath around the west and northwest sides of Hawaii Island (Oleson et al., 2013); and (2) a Hawaiian Islands Stock, consisting of the remainder of melon-headed whales found within the Hawaii EEZ. The northern boundary between the two stocks provisionally runs through the Alenuihaha Channel between Hawaii Island and Maui, bisecting the distance between the 1,000-m (3,281-ft) depth contours (Oleson et al., 2013).

*Hawaiian Islands stock*: Recent studies of photo-identification data using mark-recapture techniques provide the best available abundance estimate (8,666 animals CV=0.20) (Bradford et al., 2017). The best available density estimate (0.0020 animals/km$^2$) is calculated from the summer/fall survey in the Hawaii EEZ (Aschettino, 2010; Bradford et al., 2017). The density estimate is comparable to nearshore Hawaiian waters (0.0021 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

*Kohala Resident stock:* Individuals in the smaller Kohala resident stock have a range restricted to shallower waters of the Kohala shelf and west side of Hawaii Island (Aschettino et al., 2012). Satellite telemetry data indicate they occur in waters less than 8,202.5 ft (2,500 m) depth around the northwest and west shores of Hawaii Island, west of 155°45' W and north of 19°15' N (Oleson et al., 2013). The best available abundance estimate (447 animals, CV=0.12) is from photo-identification work between 2002 and 2009 (Aschettino, 2010). Similarly, a density estimate (0.1 animals/km$^2$) was derived from the photo- identification work and the estimated spatial range of the stock (Aschettino, 2010).

**Pantropical spotted dolphin:** Genetic analyses support the recognition of three island-associated insular stocks: a Hawaii Island Stock that extends 65 km (35 nmi) from shore, a 4-Islands Stock that extends 11 nmi (20 km) from shore, and an Oahu Stock that extends 11 nmi (20 km) from shore (Oleson et al., 2013), in addition to a Hawaii Pelagic Stock that consists of all other pantropical spotted dolphins within the Hawaii EEZ (Carretta et al., 2019).

*Hawaii Pelagic stock:* The best available density estimate (0.00369 animals/km$^2$) and abundance estimate (55,795 animals, CV=0.40) are calculated from the summer/fall survey in the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017). The best available density estimate is 0.003691 (Forney et al., 2015).

*Hawaii Island stock:* The best abundance estimate for this insular stock is the effective population size estimated by Courbis et al. (2014) as 220 animals. The best available estimate of density is 0.061 animals/km$^2$ (Oleson et al., 2013).

*Oahu stock:* There are no data to estimate the abundance of this stock. Therefore, the best available data are those from the Hawaii Island Stock (220 animals). The best available estimate of density is 0.072 animals/$km^2$ (Oleson et al., 2013).

*4-Islands stock:* There are no data to estimate the abundance of this stock. Therefore, the best available data are those from the Hawaii Island Stock (220 animals). The best available estimate of density is 0.061 animals/$km^2$ (Oleson et al., 2013).

**Pygmy killer whale:** Very little information exists about this species in the Hawaii region. Mobley et al. (2000) did not report any sightings in their surveys of the Main Hawaiian Islands. The summer/fall survey in the Hawaii EEZ resulted in the best available density estimate (0.00435 animals/$km^2$) and abundance estimate (10,640 animals, CV=0.53) (Bradford et al., 2017).

**Pygmy sperm whale**: Mobley et al. (2000) observed pygmy sperm whales during his 1993 to 1998 survey efforts, while two sightings were observed during Barlow's (2006) 2002 sighting survey; many strandings of this species are also recorded in Hawaiian waters (Carretta et al., 2014). A Hawaii stock of pygmy sperm whales is recognized (Carretta et al., 2019). The best available estimates for the Hawaiian stock of pygmy sperm whales is the density of 0.0029 animals/$km^2$ and the abundance 7,138 animals calculated from the summer/fall survey data in the Hawaii EEZ (Barlow, 2006; Carretta et al., 2014).

**Risso's dolphin:** A Hawaiian stock of Risso's dolphins is recognized, although this dolphin appears to occur rarely in the Hawaiian waters (Carretta et al., 2019). Mobley et al. (2000) observed insufficient sightings of Risso's dolphins to derive density or abundance estimates in nearshore waters. NMFS suggests that based on the locations of Hawaiian longline-fishery interactions of this species, it is likely that Risso's dolphins primarily occur in pelagic waters tens to hundreds of miles from the main Hawaiian Islands and are only occasionally found nearshore (Carretta et al., 2014). The best available density estimate (0.00474 animals/$km^2$) and abundance estimate (11,613 animals, CV=0.43) are calculated from the summer/fall survey in the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017).

**Rough-toothed dolphin:** A Hawaiian stock of rough-toothed dolphins is recognized. The best available density estimate (0.00224 animals/$km^2$) is from habitat-based modeling (Forney et al., 2015) and the abundance estimate (72,528 animals, CV=0.39) is calculated from the summer/fall survey in the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017). This density estimate is comparable to nearshore Hawaiian waters (0.0017 animals/$km^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Short-finned pilot whale:** Short-finned pilot whales occur both in the NWHI and the MHI, where they occur commonly, and a Hawaiian stock is recognized (Carretta et al., 2019). The best available density estimate (0.00459 animals/$km^2$) is from habitat-based modeling (Forney et al., 2015) and the abundance estimate (19,503 animals, CV=0.49) is calculated from the summer/fall survey in the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017). This density estimate is less than near-shore Hawaiian waters (0.0237 animals/$km^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Sperm whale**: Sperm whales are known from many strandings and sightings in Hawaiian waters, and sperm whales occurring in the deep waters of the Hawaiian Islands are considered to be part of the Hawaiian stock, which numbers 4,559 animals (CV=0.33) (Bradford et al., 2017). The best available density estimate (0.00158 animals/$km^2$) for sperm whales in this model area was calculated from the habitat-based modeling (Forney et al., 2015; DoN, 2018). This density estimate is comparable to near-shore Hawaiian waters (0.0010 animals/$km^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Spinner dolphin:** Based on analyses of genetic data, movement patterns of dolphins, and the geographic distances among the Hawaiian Islands, five separate island-associated, insular stocks are recognized in the central North Pacific: Hawaii Island, Oahu/4-Islands Region, Kauai/Niihau, Pearl and Hermes Reef, and Midway Atoll/Kure (Hill et al., 2010; Carretta et al., 2019). The seaward boundary of the insular stocks is 10 nmi (18.5 km) around each island or island group (Hill et al., 2010). All five of the Hawaii spinner dolphin insular stocks are found in the Hawaii North model area, as well as the Hawaii Pelagic stock.

*Hawaii Pelagic stock*: Spinner dolphins beyond 18.5 km (10 nmi) from shore or around other islands within the Hawai'i EEZ belong to the Hawaii Pelagic Stock. A 2002 shipboard line-transect survey of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ resulted in an abundance estimate of 3,351 (CV=0.74) spinner dolphins (Barlow, 2006). However, this study assumed a single Hawaiian Islands stock and occurred over eight years old. A 2010 shipboard line-transect study within the Hawaiian EEZ did not record any sightings of pelagic spinner dolphins (Bradford et al., 2013). The best available density estimate (0.00159 animals/km$^2$) is based on habitat modeling of existing sightings (Forney et al., 2015). This density estimate is an order of magnitude less than nearshore Hawaiian waters (0.0443 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

*Hawaii Island stock*: The seaward boundary of the island-associated stocks is 18.5 km (10 nmi) around each island or island group (Hill et al., 2010). The best estimate of abundance for the Hawaii Island Stock is from intensive year-round photo-identification surveys in Kauhako Bay, Kealakekua Bay, Honaunau Bay, and Makako Bay along the Kona Coast of Hawaii Island in 2010 and 2011, 631 animals (CV=0.09) (Tyne et al. 2013; Carretta et al., 2014). The best available density estimate (0.066 animals/km$^2$) is derived from Tyne et al. (2013) to account for animals within 18.5 km (10 nmi) of the Hawaii Island (DoN, 2018).

*Oahu/4 Islands stock*: The seaward boundary of the island-associated stocks is 18.5 km (10 nmi) around each island or island group (Hill et al., 2010). The best estimate of abundance for the Oahu/4-Islands Region Stock is from a photo-identification study conducted July to September 2007 on the leeward coast of Oahu, which resulted in an estimate of 355 animals (CV=0.09), though it is recognized that this is likely an underestimate because of its limited spatial scope (Carretta et al., 2019). The best available density estimate (0.023 animals/km$^2$) is derived from Hill et al. (2011) to account for animals within 18.5 km (10 nmi) of the Oahu/4-Island Complex (DoN, 2018).

*Kauai/Niihau stock*: The seaward boundary of the island-associated stocks is 10 nmi (18.5 km) around each island or island group (Hill et al., 2010). The best estimate of abundance for the Kauai/Niihau Stock is from a photo-identification study conducted October to November 2005 on the leeward coast of Kauai, which resulted in an estimate of 601 animals (CV=0.20), though it is recognized that this is likely an underestimate because of its limited spatial scope (Carretta et al., 2019). The best available density estimate (0.097 animals/km$^2$) is derived from Hill et al. (2011) to account for animals within 18.5 km (10 nmi) of Kauai/Niihau (DoN, 2018).

*Kure/Midway Atoll stock*: During a 2010 shipboard line-transect survey within the Hawaiian EEZ, only one off-effort spinner dolphin was sighted at Kure Atoll (Carretta et al., 2014). An earlier multi-year photo-identification study at Midway Atoll identified a population of 260 spinner dolphins based on 139 identified individuals (Karczmarski et al., 1998), which remains the best available stock estimate for the Kure/Midway Atoll stock of spinner dolphins (Carretta et al., 2019). The best available density estimate (0.0070 animals/km$^2$) is from the 2002 summer/fall survey in the Hawaii EEZ (Barlow, 2006).

*Pearl and Hermes Reef stock*: While spinner dolphins in this area have been photo-identified, little survey and low re-sighting rates of these dolphins makes estimating an abundance challenging. However, based on the work of Andrews et al. (2006) that studied the genetic diversity of the region and Karczmarski et al. (2005) that studied residency patterns of spinner dolphins in the Northwest Hawiian Islands, the best available abundance for the Pearl and Hermes Reef stock has been estimated at 300 animals, while the best density estimate for this stock, 0.0070 animals/km$^2$, is derived from the summer/fall survey of the Hawaiian EEZ waters (Barlow, 2006).

**Striped dolphin:** Striped dolphins in Hawaiian waters are separated into a discrete Hawaiian stock (Carretta et al., 2019). The best available density estimate for the Hawaiian stock of striped dolphins is 0.00385 animals/km$^2$ based on spatially-explicit habitat modeling (Forney et al., 2015; DoN, 2018) and the best abundance is 61,201 individuals (CV=0.38) as derived from the summer/fall surveys in the Hawaiian EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017). This density estimate is comparable to nearshore Hawaiian waters (0.0016 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Hawaiian monk seal:** Monk seals primarily occur in the NWHI, though a respectable population began to establish itself throughout the MHI in 2006 (Carretta et al., 2019). Migration occurs amongst the NWHI subpopulations, so these subpopulations are not isolated (Harting, 2002). Foraging behavior suggests offshore movement patterns (Parrish et al., 2000; Parrish et al., 2002). The current abundance estimated for the stock of Hawaiian monk seals is 1,427 animals (NMFS, 2018) and the best available density estimate is of 0.00004 animals/km$^2$ (DoN, 2018; NMFS, 2018).

## D-11. MODEL AREA 11—HAWAII SOUTH

**Blue whale**: Due to the general lack of occurrence data for blue whales in the North Pacific Ocean, stock structure remains uncertain. NMFS recognizes a central North Pacific stock around Hawaii and an eastern North Pacific stock around California (Carretta et al., 2019). Blue whales occur rarely in the central North Pacific, with few sightings and acoustic detections having been made. No sightings of blue whales were made around Hawaii during the Acoustic Thermometry of Ocean Climate Marine Mammal Research Program aerial surveys or during a summer/fall 2002 line-transect survey (Barlow, 2006; Mobley, 2006). Line-transect surveys of the Hawaii EEZ estimated an abundance of 133 (CV=1.09) animals and a density of 0.00005 animals/km$^2$ (Bradford et al., 2017).

**Bryde's whale:** Sightings of the Bryde's whale in Hawaiian waters have been recorded sporadically since 1977 (Carretta et al., 2019). Occurrence data are sufficient to define a Hawaii stock of Bryde's whales. Bradford et al.'s (2017) abundance estimate of the Hawaii stock of Bryde's whales is the best available (1,751 animals, CV=0.29). The best density for Bryde's whales is 0.00012 animals/km$^2$, derived from habitat-based modeling (Forney et al., 2015; DoN, 2018).

**Common minke whale:** A Hawaii stock is recognized that occurs seasonally (November-March) in Hawaiian waters, though no estimate of abundance has been calculated (Carretta et al., 2019). Minke whales were observed and acoustically detected during the 2002 summer/fall survey of the Hawaiian EEZ (Barlow, 2006). One off-effort sighting was made during the 2010 summer/fall survey (Bradford et al., 2013). A year-long analysis of acoustic recordings made at Station ALOHA (A Long-term Oligotrophic Habitat Assessment) 54 nmi (100 km) north of Oahu detected "central" or "Hawaii" boings from 22 October 2007 to 21 May 2008 but none were detected during the months of June to September, though this does not indicate that no minke whales were present (Oswald et al., 2011). Using passive acoustic detections from hydrophones on the Pacific Missile Range Facility off Kauai, Martin et al. (2015) estimated density as 0.00423 animals/km$^2$, which is used as the best available data. Lacking abundance data for this stock in Hawaiian waters, the best estimate of abundance (25,049 animals) is derived from sighting surveys in July and August in the western North Pacific and Sea of Okhotsk (Buckland et al., 1992).

**Fin whale**: There has been acoustic evidence for fin whale presence in fall and winter (Thompson and Friedl, 1982; Moore et al., 1998) and one sighting in nearshore waters (February) (Mobley et al., 1996). From the sightings reported during line-transect surveys, an abundance estimate of 154 animals and a density estimate of 0.00006 animals/km$^2$ (CV=1.05) was calculated for the Hawaii stock of fin whales (Bradford et al., 2017). This estimate is similar to that of McDonald and Fox (1999) who derived an average calling whale density estimate of 0.000027 animals/km$^2$ based on recordings made north of Oahu, Hawaii. The seasonal maximum calling whale density was about three times the average, or 0.000081 animals/km$^2$ (McDonald and Fox, 1999).

**Humpback whale:** The NMFS Humpback Whale BRT conducted a comprehensive status review in which they revised the ESA status for humpback whales in this region to be part of the Hawaii DPS and not listed under the ESA (Bettridge et al., 2015). The Hawaii DPS is synonymous with the Central North Pacific (CNP) stock identified under the MMPA and evaluated in the NMFS stock assessment reports (Carretta et al., 2019). The CNP/Hawaii DPS breeds/winters within the Main Hawaiian Islands and migrates to most known feeding grounds in the North Pacific, though about half of the stock/DPS migrate to southeast Alaska and northern British Columbia. Thus, humpback whales are only expected to occur in the Hawaii-South model area during winter, spring, and fall. Based on Calambokidis et al. (2008), the best available abundance estimate for the CNP stock/Hawaii DPS of humpback whales is 10,103 individuals (Muto et al., 2019). A density of 0.00631 animals/km$^2$ was derived for the CNP stock and Hawaii DPS of humpback whales based on aerial surveys (Mobley et al., 2001) that were modified based on photo-identification survey results (Calambokidis et al., 2008).

**Sei whale**: Sei whales are present throughout the temperate North Pacific Ocean but have been observed as far south as 20° N (Horwood, 1987), with whaling effort distributed continuously across the North Pacific between 45° N and 55° N (Masaki, 1977). The IWC only considers one stock of sei whales in the North Pacific (Donovan, 1991), but NMFS recognizes three stocks, including a Hawaii stock. The best estimates of abundance and density are from line-transect surveys of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ that estimated 391 animals and 0.00016 animals/km$^2$ (CV=0.90) (Bradford et al., 2017). Sei whales may occur in the Hawaii-South model area in fall, winter, and spring.

**Blainville's beaked whale:** Blainville's beaked whales potentially occur in the deep waters of this model area. The best available density estimate (0.00086 animals/km$^2$) and abundance estimate (2,105 animals, CV=1.13) are calculated from the surveys in the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017).

**Common bottlenose dolphin**: Recent photo-id and genetic studies around the main Hawaiian Islands suggest limited movements among islands and offshore waters (Baird et al., 2009). Five Pacific Islands Region stocks are identified: (1) Kauai and Niihau; (2) Oahu; (3) the "4-Island Region" including Molokai, Lanai, Maui, and Kahoolawe; (4) Hawaii Island; and (5) Hawaii pelagic stock (Carretta et al., 2019). The boundary between the insular stocks and the pelagic stock is the 1,000-m (3,281-ft) isobath.

*Hawaii pelagic stock*: The best available density estimate (0.00126 animals/km$^2$) is from habitat-based modeling (Forney et al., 2015; DoN, 2018). The abundance estimate (21,815 animals, CV=0.57) for the pelagic stock of bottlenose dolphins is calculated from the line-transect surveys in the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017).

*Kauai/Niihau stock*: The best abundance estimate for this insular stock is 184 dolphins based on 2003 to 2005 photo-ID studies (Baird et al., 2009; Carretta et al., 2014). Density estimates are for this insular stock (0.065 animals/km$^2$; Baird et al., 2009). The density estimate is an order of magnitude higher than that calculated for nearshore Hawaiian waters (0.0013 animals/km$^2$) by Mobley et al. (2000).

*Oahu stock*: The best abundance estimate for this insular stock is 743 dolphins based on 2002, 2003, and 2006 in Oahu waters (except the windward waters) (Baird et al., 2009; Carretta et al., 2014). Density estimates are for this insular stock (0.187 animals/km$^2$; Baird et al., 2009). The density estimate is an order of magnitude higher than that calculated for nearshore Hawaiian waters (0.0013 animals/km$^2$) by Mobley et al. (2000).

*4-Islands stock*: The best abundance estimate for this insular stock is 191 dolphins based on 2002 to 2006 photo-ID studies of individual common bottlenose dolphins in the waters of Maui and Lanai (Baird et al., 2009; Carretta et al., 2014). Density estimates are for this insular stock (0.017 animals/km$^2$; Baird et al., 2009). The density estimate is two orders of magnitude higher than that calculated for nearshore Hawaiian waters (0.0013 animals/km$^2$) by Mobley et al. (2000).

*Hawaii Island stock*: The best abundance estimate for this insular stock is 128 dolphins based on 2003 to 2006 photo-ID studies (Baird et al., 2009; Carretta et al., 2014). Density estimates are for this insular stock (0.028 animals/km$^2$; Baird et al., 2009). The density estimate is an order of magnitude higher than that calculated for nearshore Hawaiian waters (0.0013 animals/km$^2$) by Mobley et al. (2000).

**Cuvier's beaked whale:** The best available density estimate (0.0003 animals/km$^2$) and abundance estimate (723 individuals, CV=0.69) for the Hawaii stock of Cuvier's beaked whales are calculated from line-transect surveys in the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017). The density estimate is comparable to the density estimate in nearshore Hawaiian waters (0.0008 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Deraniyagala beaked whale**: Dalebout et al. (2014) conducted genetic and molecular analyses to demonstrate that *M. hotaula* was genetic distinct from the ginkgo-toothed beaked whale (*M. ginkgodens*). Little is known about this beaked whale species. No abundance or stock information is available for the Deraniyagala beaked whale. Given that this species was synonymous with the ginkgo-toothed beaked whale, which is part of the *Mesoplodon* spp. complex, the best available density and abundance estimates for *Mesoplodon* spp. at the same latitudes in the ETP are most appropriate for this region (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003). Using Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) northernmost strata, a density estimate of 0.0009 animals/km$^2$ and abundance estimate of 22,799 animals were used for analyses for the Deraniyagala beaked whale in this model area.

**Dwarf sperm whale**: Dwarf sperm whales are known in Hawaii from both strandings and sightings, with Mobley et al. (2000) having observed two pods of dwarf and pygmy sperm whales for a total of five individuals during his 1993 to 1998 survey efforts, although no density or abundance estimates were derived. Dwarf sperm whales were also observed near Niihau, Kauai, Lanai, and Hawaii during small boat surveys between 2000 and 2003 (Baird, 2005). The best available estimates for the Hawaiian stock of dwarf sperm whales are the density and abundance, 0.00714 animals/km2 and 17,519 animals, respectively, estimated from the summer/fall survey in the Hawaii EEZ (Barlow, 2006).

**False killer whale**: Three stocks are recognized within the Hawaiian Island Stock Complex (Carretta et al., 2019), two of which may be affected by operations in this model area: the main Hawaiian Islands insular stock (which includes false killer whales occurring within approximately 40 nmi [72 km] of the main Hawaiian Islands); and the Hawaii pelagic stock (including false killer whales occurring in waters further than approximately 6 nmi [11 km] of the main Hawaiian Islands with no inner boundary within the NWHI). It is recognized that the stocks have partially overlapping ranges (Bradford et al., 2015).

*Main Hawaiian Islands insular stock:* The best available abundance estimate is 167 animals for the Main Hawaiian Islands insular stock (Bradford et al., 2018; Carretta et al., 2019 ). A density estimate of 0.00080 animals/km$^2$ is the best available estimate of the insular stock (Bradford et al., 2015).

*Hawaii pelagic stock*: The abundance of the Hawaii pelagic stock of false killer whales is estimated as 1,540 individuals (CV=0.66) from 2010 visual line-transect data (Carretta et al., 2019; Bradford et al., 2014, 2015). The best available density estimate for the Hawaii pelagic stock, 0.00086 individuals/km$^2$, was also estimated from the 2010 dedicated survey of Hawaiian EEZ waters (Bradford et al., 2015) from which habitat-based, spatially-explicit density models were created (Forney et al., 2015; DoN, 2018).

**Fraser's dolphin**: Fraser's dolphins were first documented in Hawaiian waters during the 2003 summer/fall survey (Barlow, 2006). The best available density estimate of 0.02104 animals/km$^2$ and abundance estimate of 51,491 animals (CV=0.66) are from the 2010 summer/fall survey (Bradford et al., 2017).

**Killer whale**: Killer whales are considered rare in Hawaiian waters with limited sightings having been reported (Carretta et al., 2019). The best available density estimate (0.00006 animals/km$^2$) and abundance estimate (146 animals, CV=0.96) are calculated from the summer/fall survey in the waters of the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017). Mobley et al. (2000) did not report any sightings in their surveys of coastal waters of the Main Hawaiian Islands.

**Longman's beaked whale:** Longman's beaked whale has only recently been identified to species (Dalebout et al., 2003; Pitman et al., 1999) and is considered one of the rarest and least known of cetacean species. The best available density estimate (0.00311 animals/km$^2$) and abundance estimate (7,619 animals, CV=0.66) for the Hawaiian stock of this beaked whale were calculated from the 2010 summer/fall survey in the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017). No other density estimates exist for this species around Hawaii (Mobley et al., 2000).

**Melon-headed whale**: Recent studies reveal evidence for island-associated stock structure in melon-headed whales in the main Hawaiian Islands and NMFS now recognizes two stocks (Carretta et al., 2019): (1) a Kohala Resident Stock, consisting of animals within the 8,202.5-ft (2,500-m) isobath around the west and northwest sides of Hawaii Island (Oleson et al., 2013); and (2) a Hawaiian Islands Stock, consisting of the remainder of melon-headed whales found within the Hawaii EEZ. The northern boundary between the two stocks provisionally runs through the Alenuihaha Channel between Hawaii Island and Maui, bisecting the distance between the 3,281-ft (1,000-m () depth contours (Oleson et al., 2013).

*Hawaiian Islands stock*: Recent studies of photo-identification data using mark-recapture techniques provide the best available abundance estimate (8,666 animals CV=0.20) (Bradford et al., 2017). The best available density estimate (0.0020 animals/km$^2$) is calculated from the summer/fall survey in the Hawaii EEZ (Aschettino, 2010; Bradford et al., 2017). The density estimate is comparable to nearshore Hawaiian waters (0.0021 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

*Kohala Resident stock:* Individuals in the smaller Kohala resident stock have a range restricted to shallower waters of the Kohala shelf and west side of Hawaii Island (Aschettino et al., 2012). Satellite telemetry data indicate they occur in waters less than 8,202.5 ft (2,500 m) depth around the northwest and west shores of Hawaii Island, west of 155°45' W and north of 19°15' N (Oleson et al., 2013). The best available abundance estimate (447 animals, CV=0.12) is from photo-identification work between 2002 and 2009 (Aschettino, 2010). Similarly, a density estimate (0.1 animals/km$^2$) was derived from the photo- identification work and the estimated spatial range of the stock (Aschettino, 2010).

**Pantropical spotted dolphin:** Genetic analyses support the recognition of three island-associated insular stocks: a Hawaii Island Stock that extends 35 nmi (65 km) from shore, a 4-Islands Stock that extends 20 km (11 nmi) from shore, and an Oahu Stock that extends 20 km (11 nmi) from shore (Oleson et al., 2013), in addition to a Hawaii Pelagic Stock that consists of all other pantropical spotted dolphins within the Hawaii EEZ (Carretta et al., 2019).

*Hawaii Pelagic stock:* The best available density estimate (0.00541 animals/km$^2$) and abundance estimate (55,795 animals, CV=0.40) are calculated from the summer/fall survey in the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017).

*Hawaii Island stock:* The best abundance estimate for this insular stock is the effective population size estimated by Courbis et al. (2014) as 220 animals. The best available estimate of abundance is 0.061 animals/km$^2$ (Oleson et al., 2013).

*Oahu stock:* There are no data to estimate the abundance of this stock. Therefore, the best available data are those from the Hawaii Island Stock (220 animals). The best available estimate of abundance is 0.072 animals/km$^2$ (Oleson et al., 2013).

*4-Islands stock:* There are no data to estimate the abundance of this stock. Therefore, the best available data are those from the Hawaii Island Stock (220 animals). The best available estimate of abundance is 0.061 animals/km$^2$ (Oleson et al., 2013).

**Pygmy killer whale:** Very little information exists about this species in the Hawaii region. Mobley et al. (2000) did not report any sightings in their surveys of the Main Hawaiian Islands. The summer/fall survey in the Hawaii EEZ resulted in the best available density estimate (0.00435 animals/km$^2$) and abundance estimate (10,640 animals, CV=0.53) (Bradford et al., 2017).

**Pygmy sperm whale**: Mobley et al. (2000) observed pygmy sperm whales during his 1993 to 1998 survey efforts, while two sightings were observed during Barlow's (2006) 2002 sighting survey; many strandings of this species are also recorded in Hawaiian waters (Carretta et al., 2014). A Hawaii stock of pygmy sperm whales is recognized (Carretta et al., 2019). The best available estimates for the Hawaiian stock of pygmy sperm whales is the density of 0.0029 animals/km$^2$ and the abundance 7,138 animals calculated from the summer/fall survey data in the Hawaii EEZ (Barlow, 2006).

**Risso's dolphin:** A Hawaiian stock of Risso's dolphins is recognized, although this dolphin appears to occur rarely in the Hawaiian waters (Carretta et al., 2019). Mobley et al. (2000) observed insufficient sightings of Risso's dolphins to derive density or abundance estimates in nearshore waters. NMFS suggests that based on the locations of Hawaiian longline-fishery interactions of this species, it is likely that Risso's dolphins primarily occur in pelagic waters tens to hundreds of miles from the main Hawaiian Islands and are only occasionally found nearshore (Carretta et al., 2019). The best available density estimate (0.00474 animals/km$^2$) and abundance estimate (11,613 animals, CV=0.43) are calculated from the summer/fall survey in the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017).

**Rough-toothed dolphin:** A Hawaiian stock of rough-toothed dolphins is recognized. The best available density estimate (0.00257 animals/km$^2$) is from habitat-based modeling (DoN, 2018; Forney et al., 2015) and the abundance estimate (72,528 animals, CV=0.39) is calculated from the summer/fall survey in the

Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017). This density estimate is comparable to nearshore Hawaiian waters (0.0017 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Short-finned pilot whale:** Short-finned pilot whales occur both in the NWHI and the MHI, where they occur commonly, and a Hawaiian stock is recognized (Carretta et al., 2019). The best available density estimate (0.00549 animals/km$^2$) is from habitat-based modeling (DoN, 2018; Forney et al., 2015) and the abundance estimate (19,503 animals, CV=0.49) is calculated from the summer/fall survey in the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017). This density estimate is less than near-shore Hawaiian waters (0.0237 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Sperm whale**: Sperm whales are known from many strandings and sightings in Hawaiian waters, and sperm whales occurring in the deep waters of the Hawaiian Islands are considered to be part of the Hawaiian stock, which numbers 4,559 animals (CV=0.33) from the summer/fall survey in the Hawaii EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017). The best available density estimate (0.00131 animals/km$^2$) for sperm whales in this model area was calculated from habitat-based modeling (DoN, 2018; Forney et al., 2015). This density estimate is comparable to near-shore Hawaiian waters (0.0010 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Spinner dolphin:** Based on analyses of genetic data, movement patterns of dolphins, and the geographic distances among the Hawaiian Islands, five separate island-associated, insular stocks are recognized in the central North Pacific, three of which might be exposed in this model area, as well as the Hawaii Pelagic stock: Hawaii Island, Oahu/4-Islands Region, and Kauai/Niihau (Hill et al., 2010; Carretta et al., 2019). The seaward boundary of the insular stocks is 18.5 km (10 nmi) around each island or island group (Hill et al., 2010).

*Hawaii Pelagic stock*: Spinner dolphins beyond 10 nmi (18.5 km) from shore or around other islands within the Hawai'i EEZ belong to the Hawaii Pelagic Stock. A 2002 shipboard line-transect survey of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ resulted in an abundance estimate of 3,351 (CV=0.74) spinner dolphins (Barlow, 2006). However, this study assumed a single Hawaiian Islands stock and occurred over eight years old. A 2010 shipboard line-transect study within the Hawaiian EEZ did not record any sightings of pelagic spinner dolphins (Bradford et al., 2013). The best available density estimate (0.00348 animals/km$^2$) is based on habitat modeling of existing sightings (Forney et al., 2015). This density estimate is an order of magnitude less than nearshore Hawaiian waters (0.0443 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

*Hawaii Island stock*: The seaward boundary of the island-associated stocks is 10 nmi (18.5 km) around each island or island group (Hill et al., 2010). The best estimate of abundance for the Hawaii Island Stock is from intensive year-round photo-identification surveys in Kauhako Bay, Kealakekua Bay, Honaunau Bay, and Makako Bay along the Kona Coast of Hawaii Island in 2010 and 2011, 631 animals (CV=0.09) (Tyne et al. 2013; Carretta et al., 2019). The best available density estimate (0.066 animals/km$^2$) is derived from Tyne et al. (2013) to account for animals within 18.5 km (10 nmi) of the Hawaii Island (DoN, 2018).

*Oahu/4 Islands stock*: The seaward boundary of the island-associated stocks is 10 nmi (18.5 km) around each island or island group (Hill et al., 2010). The best estimate of abundance for the Oahu/4-Islands Region Stock is from a photo-identification study conducted July to September 2007 on the leeward coast of Oahu, which resulted in an estimate of 355 animals (CV=0.09), though it is recognized that this is likely an underestimate because of its limited spatial scope (Carretta et al., 2014). The best available density estimate (0.023 animals/km$^2$) is derived from Hill et al. (2011) to account for animals within 18.5 km (10 nmi) of the Oahu/4-Island Complex (DoN, 2018).

*Kauai/Niihau stock*: The seaward boundary of the island-associated stocks is 10 nmi (18.5 km) around each island or island group (Hill et al., 2010). The best estimate of abundance for the Kauai/Niihau Stock is from a photo-identification study conducted October to November 2005 on the leeward coast of Kauai, which resulted in an estimate of 601 animals (CV=0.20), though it is recognized that this is likely an underestimate because of its limited spatial scope (Carretta et al., 2014). The best available density estimate (0.097 animals/km$^2$) is derived from Hill et al. (2011) to account for animals within 18.5 km (10 nmi) of Kauai/Niihau (DoN, 2018).

**Striped dolphin:** Striped dolphins in Hawaiian waters are separated into a discrete Hawaiian stock (Carretta et al., 2019). The best available density estimate for the Hawaiian stock of striped dolphins is 0.00475 animals/km$^2$ based on spatially-explicit habitat modeling (DoN, 2018; Forney et al., 2015) and the best abundance is 61,201 individuals (CV=0.38) as derived from the summer/fall surveys in the Hawaiian EEZ (Bradford et al., 2017). This density estimate is comparable to nearshore Hawaiian waters (0.0016 animals/km$^2$; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Hawaiian monk seal:** Monk seals primarily occur in the NWHI, though a respectable population began to establish itself throughout the MHI in 2006 (Carretta et al., 2019). Migration occurs amongst the NWHI subpopulations, so these subpopulations are not isolated (Harting, 2002). Foraging behavior suggests offshore movement patterns (Parrish et al., 2000; Parrish et al., 2002). The current abundance estimated for the stock of Hawaiian monk seals is 1,427 animals (NMFS, 2018) and the best available density estimate is of 0.00004 animals/km$^2$ (DoN, 2018; NMFS, 2018).

## D-12. MODEL AREA 12—OFFSHORE SRI LANKA

Population and even occurrence data for most species of marine mammals are sparsely available for much of the Indian Ocean except in very limited regions, typically for coastal waters. Thus, because abundance and density estimates were needed for the acoustic impact analyses for the model areas in the Indian Ocean, abundances for many of the marine mammal species potentially occurring in the model areas of the Indian Ocean were extrapolated from well-studied oceanic areas with similar oceanographic and/or ecological characteristics and density estimates were derived from relative environmental suitability (RES) models (DoN, 2018).

**Blue whale:** Blue whales are found year-round in the northern and equatorial Indian Ocean, especially around Sri Lanka and the Maldives (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). Because of their year-round presence, a northern Indian stock of blue whales is identified, with a best abundance estimate of 3,691 animals (IWC, 2016). With no direct data available on density estimates in the region, seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.000035 animals/km$^2$ for winter and spring, and 0.000036 animals/km$^2$ for summer and fall were calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Bryde's whale:** Bryde's whales occur throughout the Indian Ocean north of about 35° S. The IWC has identified two stocks in the Indian Ocean, a northern and a southern stock (IWC, 2016). The best available abundance estimate is an extrapolation from the eastern tropical Pacific of 9,176 animals (Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.00041 animals/km$^2$ for winter, spring, summer, and fall calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Common minke whale:** A single stock is identified for the Indian Ocean (IWC, 2016), though minke whales are considered rare in the northern Indian Ocean (Salm et al., 1993; Sathasivam, 2002). It is likely they migrate to Antarctic waters during the austral summer for better foraging conditions. The best available abundance estimate is one-half of the overall southern hemisphere estimate (257,500 animals; IWC, 2016). The best available density estimates are a RES-modeled density estimates of 0.00625 animals/km$^2$ for summer calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018) and the nominal minimum density estimate of 0.00001 animals/km$^2$ for fall and spring.

**Fin whale:** Fin whales are not common in the Indian Ocean, though their presence has been documented by strandings. With no direct population data for this species, an abundance estimate of one-half (1,846 animals) that estimated for blue whales in the Indian Ocean has been used. The nominal minimum density estimate of 0.00001 animals/km$^2$ was used for all seasons since no RES-modeled density estimates were available (DoN, 2018).

**Omura's whale**: Although it was only recently described (Wada et al., 2003), the separate species status of Omura's whale is now well established (Sasaki et al., 2006). However, because it was believed to be a pygmy form of the Bryde's whale for many years, distinct information on its distribution and abundance is not available. Therefore, the best available data are those for the Bryde's whale with an abundance estimate of 9,176 animals (Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates is a RES-modeled density estimate of 0.00041 animals/km$^2$ calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Sei whale**: Limited information is available on sei whales in the northern Indian Ocean, but animals are likely to occur primarily in this region in winter, migrating to Antarctic waters in the austral summer. The best available data are those of the similar species, the Bryde's whale[1] with an abundance estimate of 9,176 animals (Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are RES-modeled density estimates of 0.00141, 0.00045, 0.00045, and 0.00095 animals/km$^2$ calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018) for winter, spring, summer, and fall, respectively.

**Blainville's beaked whale**: Blainville's beaked whales are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008; Lambert et al., 2014). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (16,867 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimate is a RES-modeled density estimate of 0.00105 animals/km$^2$ calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Common dolphin:** Short-beaked and long-beaked common dolphins were redefined as one species, common dolphin (*Delphinus delphis*) (SMM, 2017). The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (1,819,882 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.00513 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.00516 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.00541 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.00538 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Common bottlenose dolphin**: Common bottlenose dolphins are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (785,585 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.04839 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.04829 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.04725 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.04740 animals/km$^2$ for fall calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Cuvier's beaked whale:** Cuvier's beaked whales are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (27,272 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.00506 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.00508 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.00505 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.00505 animals/km$^2$ for fall calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Deraniyagala's beaked whale**: The Deraniyagala's beaked whale has been documented in the northern Indian Ocean (Dalebout et al., 2014; Lambert et al., 2014). The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from ginkgo-toothed whales in the eastern tropical Pacific (16,867 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.00513 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0. 00516 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.00541 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.00538 animals/km$^2$ for fall calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018) for ginkgo-toothed whales. (Deraniyagala's beaked whale is recently resurrected species for which no population data are available.)

**Dwarf sperm whale:** Dwarf sperm whales are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (10,541 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimate is a RES-modeled density estimate of 0.00005 animals/km$^2$ for winter, spring, summer, and fall calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**False killer whale:** False killer whales are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015; Minton et al., 2010). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (144,188 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.000248 animals/km$^2$ for winter and fall, and 0.000247 animals/km$^2$ for spring and summer calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Fraser's dolphin:** Fraser's dolphins are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (151,554 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimate is a RES-modeled density estimate of 0.00207 animals/km$^2$, calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin:** Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphins are typically found inshore of SURTASS LFA operations; however, Afsal et al. (2008) documented sightings farther from shore that may result in exposures. There are no data on abundance or density estimates for this region. The best available abundance estimate is 1/100 of the common bottlenose dolphin estimate (7,850 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.00048 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.00048 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.00047 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.00047 animals/km$^2$ for fall calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Killer whale:** Killer whales are distributed throughout all waters of the world, including the Indian Ocean (Baldwin et al., 2001; Minton et al., 2010). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (12,593 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.00697 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.00155 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.00693 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.00694 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Longman's beaked whale:** Longman's beaked whale may be more common in the Indian Ocean than in the Pacific Ocean (Anderson et al., 2006). The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (16,867 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.00513 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.00516 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.00541 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.00538 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Melon-headed whale:** Melon-headed whales are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (64,600 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.00921 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.00920 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.00937 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.00936 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Pantropical spotted dolphin:** Pantropical spotted dolphins are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (736,575 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimate is a RES-modeled density estimate of 0.00904 animals/km$^2$, calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Pygmy killer whale:** Pygmy killer whales are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (22,029 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.00138 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.00137 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.00152 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.00153 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Pygmy sperm whale:** Pygmy sperm whales are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). They have been documented in the western Indian Ocean (Vivekanandan and Jeyabaskaran, 2012). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the dwarf sperm whale in the eastern tropical Pacific (10,541 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimate is a RES-modeled density estimate of 0.00001 animals/km$^2$, calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Risso's dolphin:** Risso's dolphins are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (452,125 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.08641 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.08651 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.08435 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.08466 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Rough-toothed dolphin:** Rough-toothed dolphins are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (156,690 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimate is a RES-modeled density estimate of 0.00071 animals/km$^2$, calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Short-finned pilot whale:** Short-finned pilot whales are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (268,751 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.03219 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.03228 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.03273 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.03279 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Sperm whale**: The IWC divides the Indian Ocean into two stocks, a northern Indian stock and a southern Indian stock (Perry et al., 1999). The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (24,446 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.00129 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.00118 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.00126 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.00121 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Spinner dolphin:** Spinner dolphins are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (634,108 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimate is a RES-modeled density estimate of 0.00678 animals/km$^2$, calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Striped dolphin:** Striped dolphins are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (674,578 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.14601 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.14629 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.14780 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.14788 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

## D-13. MODEL AREA 13—ANDAMAN SEA

Population and even occurrence data for most species of marine mammals are sparsely available for much of the Indian Ocean except in very limited regions, typically for coastal waters. Thus, because abundance and density estimates were needed for the acoustic impact analyses for the model areas in the Indian Ocean, abundances for many of the marine mammal species potentially occurring in the model areas of the Indian Ocean were extrapolated from well-studied oceanic areas with similar oceanographic and/or ecological characteristics and density estimates were derived from RES models (DoN, 2018).

**Blue whale**: Blue whales are found year-round in the northern and equatorial Indian Ocean, especially around Sri Lanka and the Maldives (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). Because of their year-round presence, a northern Indian stock of blue whales is identified, with a best abundance estimate of 3,691 animals (IWC, 2016). With no direct data available on density estimates in the region, seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.000029 animals/km$^2$ for winter and 0.000027 animals/km$^2$ for spring, summer, and fall were calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Bryde's whale**: Bryde's whales occur throughout the Indian Ocean north of about 35° S. The IWC has identified two stocks in the Indian Ocean, a northern and a southern stock (IWC, 2016). The best available abundance estimate is an extrapolation from the eastern tropical Pacific of 9,176 animals (Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.000375 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.000363 animals/km$^2$ for spring, and 0.000373 animals/km$^2$ for summer and fall calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Common minke whale**: A single stock is identified for the Indian Ocean (IWC, 2016), though minke whales are considered rare in the northern Indian Ocean (Salm et al., 1993; Sathasivam, 2002). It is likely they migrate to Antarctic waters during the winter (austral summer) for better foraging conditions. The best available abundance estimate is one-half of the overall southern hemisphere estimate (257,500 animals; IWC, 2016). The best available density estimates are a RES-modeled density estimate of 0.009679 animals/km$^2$ for summer calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018) and the nominal minimum density estimate of 0.00001 animals/km$^2$ for spring and fall.

**Fin whale**: Fin whales are not common in the Indian Ocean, though their presence has been documented by strandings (Sathasivam, 2002). With no direct data for this species, an abundance estimate of one-half of blue whales is calculated (1,716 animals). The best available density estimates is the nominal minimum of 0.00001 animals/km$^2$ for winter, spring, and fall since no RES-modeled density estimates are available (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Omura's whale**: Although it was only recently described (Wada et al., 2003), the separate species status of Omura's whale is now well established (Sasaki et al., 2006). However, because it was believed to be a pygmy form of the Bryde's whale for many years, distinct information on its distribution and abundance is not available. Therefore, the best available data are those for the Bryde's whale with an abundance estimate of 9,176 animals (Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.000375 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.000363 animals/km$^2$ for spring, and 0.000373 animals/km$^2$ for summer and fall calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Blainville's beaked whale**: Blainville's beaked whales are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008; Lambert et al., 2014). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (16,867 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.000940 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.000890 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.000935 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.000990 animals/km$^2$ for fall calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Common bottlenose dolphin**: Common bottlenose dolphins are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (785,585 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.075781 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.077811 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.072605 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.072122 animals/km$^2$ for fall calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Cuvier's beaked whale:** Cuvier's beaked whales are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (27,272 animals;

Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.004656 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.004824 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.004795 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.004734 animals/km$^2$ for fall calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Deraniyagala's beaked whale**: The Deraniyagala's beaked whale has been documented in the northern Indian Ocean (Dalebout et al., 2014). The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from ginkgo-toothed whales in the eastern tropical Pacific (16,867 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.000935 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.000919 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.000972 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.000988 animals/km$^2$ for fall calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018) for ginkgo-toothed beaked whales.

**Dwarf sperm whale:** Dwarf sperm whales are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (10,541 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.000054 animals/km$^2$ for winter and fall, and 0.000056 animals/km$^2$ for spring and summer, calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**False killer whale:** False killer whales are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015; Minton et al., 2010). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (144,188 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.000229 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.000231 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.000237 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.000230 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Fraser's dolphin:** Fraser's dolphins are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (151,554 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.001762 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.001787 animals/km$^2$ for spring, and 0.001795 animals/km$^2$ for summer and fall, calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Ginkgo-toothed beaked whale:** The ginkgo-toothed beaked whale occurs in temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (16,867 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.000935 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.000919 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.000972 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.000988 animals/km$^2$ for fall calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin:** Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphins are typically found inshore of SURTASS LFA operations; however, Afsal et al. (2008) documented sightings farther from shore that may result in exposures. There are no data on abundance or density estimates for this region. The best available abundance estimate is 1/100 of the common bottlenose dolphin estimate (7,850 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.000758 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.000778 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.000726 animals/km$^2$

for summer, and 0.000721 animals/km$^2$ for fall calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Killer whale:** Killer whales are distributed throughout all waters of the world, including the Indian Ocean (Baldwin et al., 2001; Minton et al., 2010). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (12,593 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.007436 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.001781 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.007298 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.007343 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Longman's beaked whale:** Longman's beaked whale may be more common in the Indian Ocean than in the Pacific (Anderson et al., 2006). The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (16,867 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.004437 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.004290 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.004586 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.004403 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Melon-headed whale:** Melon-headed whales are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (64,600 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.008835 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.008476 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.008778 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.008464 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Pantropical spotted dolphin:** Pantropical spotted dolphins are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (736,575 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.008682 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.008406 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.008290 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.008730 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Pygmy killer whale:** Pygmy killer whales are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). Sathasivam (2002) reported them from around Sri Lanka. A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (22,029 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.001213 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.001126 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.001249 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.001311 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Pygmy sperm whale:** Pygmy sperm whales are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). They have been documented in the Andaman Islands (Sathasivam, 2002; Vivekanandan and Jeyabaskaran, 2012). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the dwarf sperm whale in the eastern tropical Pacific (10,541 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates is a RES-modeled density estimate of 0.000009 animals/km$^2$ for winter, spring, summer, and fall, calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Risso's dolphin:** Risso's dolphins are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (452,125 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.091970 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.092146 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.091726 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.093658 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Rough-toothed dolphin:** Rough-toothed dolphins are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (156,690 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.000770 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.000775 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.000769 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.000744 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Short-finned pilot whale:** Short-finned pilot whales are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (268,751 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.033542 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.033638 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.035427 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.035039 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Sperm whale**: The IWC divides sperm whales in the Indian Ocean into two stocks, a northern and southern Indian stock (Perry et al., 1999). Since no abundance data are available for either stock of the sperm whales in the Indian Ocean, the best available abundance estimate was extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (24,446 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.001092 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.000989 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.001072 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.001050 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Spinner dolphin:** Spinner dolphins are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (634,108 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.007364 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.007109 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.007006 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.007259 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Striped dolphin:** Striped dolphins are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (674,578 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.144134 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.141739 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.141232 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.144024 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

## D-14. MODEL AREA 14—NORTHWEST OF AUSTRALIA

Population and even occurrence data for most species of marine mammals are sparsely available for much of the Indian Ocean except in very limited regions, typically for coastal waters. Thus, because abundance and density estimates were needed for the acoustic impact analyses for the model areas in the Indian Ocean, abundances for many of the marine mammal species potentially occurring in the model areas of the Indian Ocean were extrapolated from well-studied oceanic areas with similar oceanographic and/or ecological characteristics and density estimates were derived from RES models (DoN, 2018).

Note that the seasons listed in this model area are northern-hemisphere seasons to match the seasonality of the remainder of model areas, which all occur in the northern hemisphere. Thus, “winter” for model area 14 represents austral summer (the months of December, January, and February) while “summer” is actually austral winter (the months of June, July, and August).

**Antarctic minke whale**: Since 2000, the IWC has recognized the Antarctic minke whale as a distinct species from the common minke whale, which is found in the northern hemisphere and as the “dwarf” form in the southern hemisphere. The Antarctic minke whale is abundant south of 60° S during the austral summer, but the winter distribution is less defined, suggesting that it is dispersed and offshore. The best estimate of abundance is 90,000 animals in IWC Area IV (Bannister et al., 1996). With no known density estimate, the default density of 0.00001 animals/km$^2$ was used for exposure estimates.

**Blue whale**: There is ongoing research into the population structure of blue whales throughout the world. The Society for Marine Mammalogy currently recognizes five subspecies: the true or northern blue whale, the Antarctic blue whale, the northern Indian Ocean blue whale, the pygmy blue whale, and the Chilean blue whale (SMM, 2017). Pygmy blue whales as well as Antarctic blue whales are found in waters off western and northwestern Australia, though blue whales do leave the region in the austral summer for better foraging grounds (Branch et al., 2007; Double et al., 2014). The best abundance estimate for this model area is 1,657 animals, which is an average of the highest estimated abundances based on passive acoustics (1,559 animals; McCauley and Jenner, 2010) and mark-recapture data (1,754 animals; Jenner et al., 2008). With no direct data available on density estimates in the region, a RES-modeled density estimate of 0.000028 animals/km$^2$ was calculated for spring, summer, and fall from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Bryde’s whale**: Bryde’s whales occur throughout the Indian Ocean north of about 35° S. The IWC has identified two stocks in the Indian Ocean, a northern and a southern stock (IWC, 2016). Population data are sparse for the Bryde’s whale in the Indian Ocean, as shown by the best available abundance estimate being twenty-five years old (13,854 animals; IWC, 1981). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.000318 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.000315 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.000317 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.000316 animals/km$^2$ for fall calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Common minke whale**: A single stock is identified for the Indian Ocean (IWC, 2016). It is likely they migrate to Antarctic waters during the winter (austral summer) for better foraging conditions. The best available abundance estimate is one-half of the overall southern hemisphere estimate (257,500 animals; IWC, 2016). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.012270 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.019285 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.019469 animals/km$^2$ for fall calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Fin whale**: A southern Indian stock is identified, with animals that migrate to Antarctic waters in the winter (austral summer). The best available abundance estimate is 38,185 animals, which includes an abundance estimate from south of 60°S (Branch and Butterworth, 2001) and an abundance estimate for surveys that extended as far north as 30°S (Mori and Butterworth, 2006). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.00001 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.000985 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.001276 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.001210 animals/km$^2$ for fall calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Humpback whale**: The Western Australian stock and DPS occurs in this model area during spring, summer, and fall as animals migrate between possible breeding ground in Indonesia and feeding grounds in Antarctica (Australian Government, 2010). There is some uncertainty surrounding the abundance of this stock/DPS, with the IWC (2016) estimating a population size of 29,000 animals and Bettridge et al. (2015) estimating less than 2,000 animals. However, Bannister and Hedley (2001) estimated a population of 13,640, which is considered the best available population estimate. The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.000065 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.000067 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.000066 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Omura's whale**: Although it was only recently described (Wada et al., 2003), the separate species status of Omura's whale is now well established (Sasaki et al., 2006). However, because it was believed to be a pygmy form of the Bryde's whale for many years, distinct information on its distribution and abundance is not available. Therefore, the best available data are those for the Bryde's whale with an abundance estimate of 13,854 animals (IWC, 1981). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.000318 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.000315 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.000317 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.000316 animals/km$^2$ for fall calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Sei whale**: Sei whales occur in the southern Indian Ocean, with a summer distribution mainly around 40° to 50° S and a winter distribution primarily known from hunting grounds (Reilly et al., 2008b). Similar to other baleen whales, the IWC divides southern hemisphere sei whales into six management areas, but no recent sighting surveys have occurred in the distributional range of sei whales to provide insight into abundance or density estimates. Therefore, the best available data are those for the Bryde's whale, a species similar to the sei whale[1], with an abundance estimate of 13,854 animals (IWC, 1981). With no known density estimate, the default density of 0.00001 animals/km$^2$ was used for exposure estimates.

**Blainville's beaked whale**: Blainville's beaked whales are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015; Lambert et al., 2014). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (16,867 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.000830 animals/km$^2$ for winter, spring, and fall, and 0.000822 animals/km$^2$ for summer, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Common bottlenose dolphin**: Common bottlenose dolphins are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world, with pockets of smaller subpopulations such as the one present in Shark Bay (Preen et al., 1997). The best available abundance estimate for common bottlenose dolphins in this model area is 3,000 animals (Preen et al., 1997). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.036293 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.036517 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.034592 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.037247 animals/km$^2$ for fall calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Cuvier's beaked whale:** Cuvier's beaked whales are principally known from strandings in Australia, recorded between January and June, of which five occurred in Western Australia (Ross, 2006). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate in this model area is the median value of the southern hemisphere population (76,500 animals; Dalebout et al., 2005). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.003993 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.004059 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.004017 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.004052 animals/km$^2$ for fall calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Dwarf sperm whale:** Dwarf sperm whales are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (10,541 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.000044 animals/km$^2$ for winter, spring, and summer, and 0.000043 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**False killer whale:** False killer whales are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015; Minton et al., 2010). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (144,188 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.000199 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.000201 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.000193 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.000195 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Fraser's dolphin:** Fraser's dolphins are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (151,554 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.001454 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.001484 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.001486 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.001470 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Killer whale:** Killer whales are distributed throughout all waters of the world, including the Indian Ocean (Baldwin et al., 2001; Minton et al., 2010). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (12,593 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.005847 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.004350 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.005878 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.005797 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Longman's beaked whale:** Longman's beaked whale may be more common in the western Indian Ocean than in the Pacific (Anderson et al., 2006). The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (16,867 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.003934 animals/km$^2$ for winter and spring, 0.004029 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.004120 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Melon-headed whale:** Melon-headed whales are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (64,600 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.007165 animals/km$^2$ for winter and spring, 0.006348 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.006367 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Pantropical spotted dolphin:** Pantropical spotted dolphins are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (736,575 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.007269 animals/km$^2$ for winter and spring, 0.007145 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.007455 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Pygmy killer whale:** Pygmy killer whales are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). Strandings have been reported in Western Australia (Ross, 2006). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (22,029 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.000995 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.001036 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.001012 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.000965 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Risso's dolphin:** Risso's dolphins are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (452,125 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.071516 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.072144 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.069443 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.027159 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Rough-toothed dolphin:** Rough-toothed dolphins are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (156,690 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.000594 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.000599 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.000588 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.000590 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Short-finned pilot whale:** Short-finned pilot whales are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (268,751 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.026984 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.027585 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.026887 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.027159 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Southern bottlenose whale**: Kasamatsu and Joyce (1995) estimated an abundance of 559,300 (CV=15%) beaked whales south of the Antarctic Convergence Zone in January, most of which were considered to be southern bottlenose whales; this is the best estimate of abundance for this model area. The best available density estimates are extrapolated from the seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of Blainville's beaked whales: 0.000830 animals/km$^2$ for winter, spring, and fall, and 0.000822 animals/km$^2$ for summer, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Spade-toothed whale**: The spade-toothed whale has been documented from only three specimens, two from New Zealand, and one from Chile. Based on these data, it is estimated that it may be found in southern hemisphere waters. As a proxy, data from the Blainville's beaked whale are used as the best available. The abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (16,867 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.000830 animals/km$^2$ for winter, spring, and fall, and 0.000822 animals/km$^2$ for summer, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Sperm whale**: The IWC divides the Indian Ocean into two stocks, a northern Indian stock and a southern Indian stock (Perry et al., 1999). The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (24,446 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.000955 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.000872 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.000971 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.000915 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

**Spinner dolphin:** Spinner dolphins are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (634,108 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.005607 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.005492 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.005683 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.005626 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**Striped dolphin:** Striped dolphins are distributed throughout temperate and tropical waters of the world (Jefferson et al., 2008, 2015). A single stock is recognized in the Indian Ocean. The best available abundance estimate is extrapolated from the eastern tropical Pacific (674,578 animals; Wade and Gerrodette, 1993). The best available density estimates are seasonally-specific, RES-modeled density estimates of 0.120177 animals/km$^2$ for winter, 0.120411 animals/km$^2$ for spring, 0.116797 animals/km$^2$ for summer, and 0.117268 animals/km$^2$ for fall, calculated from the NMSDD (SMRU Ltd., 2012 in DoN, 2018).

## D-15. MODEL AREA 15—NORTHEAST OF JAPAN

**Blue whale**: Few data are available on blue whale occurrence in the North Pacific Ocean and the stock structure in the North Pacific remains uncertain. Stafford et al. (2001) studied the geographic variation of blue whale calls in the North Pacific, and although there was no hydrophone coverage in the mid-latitudes off Japan, there was some coverage near the Kamchatka Peninsula and along the western Aleutian Islands chain. All calls recorded on these hydrophones were northwest Pacific blue whale calls (Stafford et al., 2001). Although the blue whale was the initial focus of Japanese whaling effort in the North Pacific, limited data were reported on blue whales. Therefore, sighting surveys associated with Japanese whaling of fin whales were judged to be the most appropriate proxy for blue whale occurrence estimates (Tillman, 1977; Carretta et al., 2019). Thus, the best available abundance for the WNP blue whale stock is 9,250 animals (Tillman, 1977). The best density for blue whales, which are found in this model area in the winter, spring, and fall seasons, is 0.0001 whales/km$^2$, which was estimated in three different documents, including encounter rates during Japanese whaling in the northwest Pacific Ocean (Tillman, 1977), correlations with density estimates from a similar latitude in the eastern North Pacific

(Ferguson and Barlow, 2001 and 2003), and summarized data and monitoring during a geophysical seismic survey (LGL, 2008)). This density for blue whales is comparable to density estimates of the blue whale in offshore areas of the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2003) and to the waters surrounding Guam (Fulling et al., 2011).

**Common minke whale:** Several stocks of minke whales are recognized in the western North Pacific Ocean, including the western North Pacific "O" east (WNP OE) stock, and the western North Pacific "J" west (WNP JW) stock (Miyashita & Okamura, 2011; Wade & Baker, 2011). Minke whales potentially occurring in the waters of this model area are believed to be part of the "WNP OE" stock. Buckland et al. (1992) conducted sighting surveys during July and August in the western North Pacific Ocean and Sea of Okhotsk, from which a density estimate of 0.0022 animals/km$^2$ (SE = 0.17) from encounter rates and effective search widths was derived for the offshore population. The abundance estimate for the WNP "OE" stock is estimated as 25,049 individuals (Buckland et al., 1992). Ferguson and Barlow (2001; 2003) computed density estimates in offshore areas of the ETP that are of the same magnitude.

**Fin whale**: Fin whales have been reported in this region from spring, summer, and fall, migrating south in the winter to about 20°N (Mizroch et al., 2009). Density and stock estimates, 0.0002 animals/km$^2$ and 9,250 animals, respectively, for the WNP stock of fin whales, were derived from encounter rates of Japanese scouting boats in the northwest Pacific (Tillman, 1977). This density is comparable to density estimates in offshore areas of the ETP (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) and an order of magnitude higher than that calculated for around Hawaii (0.00002 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2013).

**Humpback whale**: The NMFS Humpback Whale BRT conducted a comprehensive status review in which they revised the ESA status for humpback whales in this region to be part of the WNP DPS and listed as endangered (Bettridge et al., 2015; NOAA, 2016a). The WNP DPS breeds/winters in the region of Okinawa and the Philippines and migrates to feeding grounds in the North Pacific, primarily off the Russian coast. Thus, humpback whales are expected to occur in model area #15 during spring, summer, and fall. In addition, approximately one-quarter of the population is expected to be found in water depths of less than 3,281 ft (1,000 m), which was implemented in the modeling as a depth aversion. The SPLASH consortium derived an average abundance for the Asian wintering grounds of approximately 1,000 humpback whales, which has increased annually to an abundance estimate of 1,328 individuals (Calambokidis et al., 2008; Bettridge et al., 2015). A density of 0.000498 animals/km$^2$ was estimated for the WNP stock of humpback whales (Kaschner et al., 2006 in DoN, 2018).

**North Pacific right whale**: The WNP stock of North Pacific right whales is considered distinct from the eastern population, arbitrarily separated by the 180° line of longitude (Best et al., 2001). The Okhotsk Sea, Kuril Islands, and eastern Kamchatka coast represent major feeding grounds for the western population (Brownell et al., 2001) where animals are typically found May through September (Clapham et al. 2004). Various areas have been proposed for breeding and calving grounds, including the Ryukyu Islands, Yellow Sea, Sea of Japan, offshore waters far from land, and the Bonin Islands, but a lack of winter sightings (December to February) makes a definitive assessment impossible (Brownell et al., 2001). Clapham et al. (2004) note the extensive offshore component to the right whale's distribution in the 19$^{th}$ century data. Data from Japanese sighting cruises in the Okhotsk Sea provide an abundance estimate of 922 animals (CV=0.433, 95% CI=404 to 2,108) (Best et al., 2001) for the WNP population. No density estimates are available for this very rare marine mammal species, therefore, the nominal minimum density estimate of 0.00001 animals/km$^2$ was used in the risk analysis to reflect the very low probability of occurrence in this region during summer and fall seasons.

**Sei whale**: Sei whales are present throughout the temperate North Pacific Ocean but have been observed as far south as 20° N (Horwood, 1987). The IWC recognizes one stock of sei whales in the North Pacific (Donovan, 1991), although some evidence exists for several populations (Carretta et al., 2019). Very few sightings of sei whales have occurred in any region of the North Pacific, and adding to the difficulty, sei whales are extremely difficult to differentiate from Bryde's whales at sea. Tillman (1977) derived an abundance estimate of 8,600 individuals for sei/Bryde's whale in the North Pacific from whaling catch statistics. Mizroch et al. (2015) estimated the size of the pelagic migratory stock in 1975 at approximately 4,000 animals, but their "single stock" (coastal and pelagic) state space analysis estimated a population size of 7,000 animals in 1974, which is used here as the best available data. Initial estimates for a portion of the sei whale population off Japan indicate abundance estimates of similar magnitude (7,744 for May to June and 5,406 for July to September; Hakamada et al., 2009). With no specific densities derived for these waters, the best available density estimate (0.00029 animals/km$^2$ CV=48.7) for the sei whales in this model area is calculated from the winter/spring surveys around Guam and the Mariana Islands (Fulling et al., 2011). This is similar to that calculated for around Hawaii (0.00016 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017).

**Western North Pacific gray whale**: Gray whales in the western North Pacific Ocean are genetically distinct from those gray whales occurring in the eastern North Pacific Ocean (LeDuc et al., 2002). New data photographing western North Pacific gray whales off the U.S. west coast has prompted NMFS to draft the first ever stock assessment report for this population (Carretta et al., 2019). The present day distribution of the WNP gray whale stock appears to range from summering grounds in west central Okhotsk Sea off the northeast coast of Sakhalin Island to wintering grounds in the South China Sea (Meier et al., 2007; Weller et al., 2002). However, some individuals that summer off Sakhalin Island have also been documented off the west coast of North America, suggesting long seasonal migrations (Carretta et al., 2019). The best available abundnace estimate is 290 animals (Carretta et al., 2019). With no density estimate for this rare species available, a minimal density of 0.0001 animals/km$^2$ was used in risk computation for this model area to reflect the extremely low potential for this species occurring.

**Baird's beaked whale**: Baird's beaked whales are migratory, arriving in continental slope waters in April to May and remaining through October (Dohl et al., 1983; Kasuya, 1986). Ohizumi et al. (2003) examined the stomach content of Baird's whales caught off the east coast of Japan and reported that the observed prey species were demersal fish that were identical to those caught in bottom-trawl nets at depths greater than 3,281 ft (1,000 m). Kasuya (1986) collected sighting data from 25 years of aerial survey records and 1984 shipboard sightings off the Pacific coast of Japan; based on Kasuya's (1986) encounter rate and effective search width, a density estimate of 0.0029 animals/km$^2$ was derived for the Baird's beaked whale stock in this model area during summer and fall, and 0.0015 animals/km$^2$ for the spring. Kasuya and Perrin (2017) cited an abundance estimate by Miyashita (1986, 1990) of 5,688, and is the abundance estimated for the WNP stock of Baird's beaked whales.

**Common dolphin**: Short-beaked and long-beaked common dolphins were redefined as one species, common dolphin (*Delphinus delphis*) (SMM, 2017). No data on density or abundance estimates of common dolphins are available for the waters of the western North Pacific (Miyashita, 1993). Due to this lack of information, population data derived from ETP surveys are the best available, including an abundance estimate of 3,286,163 animals and a spatially-explicity density estimate of 0.0863 animals/km$^2$ (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003).

**Cuvier's beaked whale:** No density or stock estimate data are available for Cuvier's beaked whales in this region. Considering habitat preferences (e.g., water temperature, bathymetry), it was determined that the best available abundance of 90,725 animals derived from the long-term ETP time series (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) and the best available density estimate of 0.0054 animals/km$^2$ (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) most optimally represent this stock in this region. This density estimate is greater than that estimated for the Hawaii EEZ (0.0003 animals/km$^2$; Bradford et al., 2017) but comparable to the mean predicted density estimate for the ETP (0.00455 animals/km$^2$; Ferguson et al., 2006).

**Dall's porpoise**: Dall's porpoise are found only in the North Pacific, primarily north of 36° N in the western North Pacific Ocean. This species has two distinct color morphs: one with a white flank patch that extends forward to the dorsal fin (*dalli* type) and one with a flank patch extending all the way to the front flippers (*truei* type). These morphological differences have been noted between animals from the Pacific coast of Japan (the *truei*-type), the Sea of Japan, and Sea of Okhotsk (the *dalli*-type), and the offshore northwestern Pacific and western Bering Sea (the *dalli*-type) (Hayano et al., 2003). Hayano et al. (2003) conducted genetic studies on the three populations and found a low, but significant, difference between the Sea of Japan-Okhotsk population and the other two populations. Based on surveys of the eastern North Pacific, a density estimate of 0.0520 animals/km$^2$ was derived for the spring and fall, with slightly lower (0.0390 animals/km$^2$) and slightly higher (0.650 animals/km$^2$) densities in the winter and summer, respectively (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003). Kasuya and Perrin (2017) cite Miyashita (1991) for an abundance estimate of 162,000 animals in this region. This abundance estimates a concentration of Dall's porpoises probably larger than what would be encountered by LFA operations in the model area since it includes survey effort in nearshore waters where animals are more often found.

**Killer whale**: Killer whales have been observed in waters northeast of Japan (Forney and Wade, 2006) and along the Aleutian archipelago and in the Bering Sea (Springer et al., 2003). Without any population or occurrence data on killer whales for the western North Pacific, the best available abundance estimate of 12,256 animals is derived from Ferguson and Barlow's (2001, 2003) long-term time series in the ETP. The best available density estimate of 0.0036 animals/km$^2$ is derived from Springer et al.'s (2013) survey data of the central Aleutian Islands. This is two orders of magnitude higher than LGL's (2011) density (0.00009 animals/km$^2$) and the density in the Hawaii EEZ (0.00006 animals/km$^2$, Bradford et al., 2017).

**Pacific white-sided dolphin:** No data on density or stock estimates of Pacific white-sided dolphins in this region are available (Miyashita, 1993), but one NP stock is estimated for this species. Due to this lack, the density (0.0048 animals/km$^2$) estimated from eastern Pacific waters (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003) was used to best represent the NP stock of these dolphins in this model area, while Buckland et al.'s (1993) abundance of 931,000 animals is most appropriate. No sightings of Pacific white-sided dolphins were reported in Hawaii surveys (Barlow, 2006; Bradford et al., 2017; Mobley et al., 2000).

**Sperm whale**: Stock structure of sperm whales in the North Pacific is not well resolved. Sightings collected by Kasuya and Miyashita (1988) suggest that in the summer, the density of sperm whales is high south of the Kuroshio Current System (south of approximately 35° N) but extremely low north of 35° N. These data suggest two stocks of sperm whales in the western North Pacific, a northwestern stock with females that summer off the Kuril Islands (~50°N) and winter off Hokkaido and Sanriku (~40° N) and the southern WNP stock with females that summer off Hokkaido and Sanriku (~40° N) and winter around the Bonin Islands (~25° N) (Kasuya and Miyashita, 1988). The males of these two stocks are found north of the range of the corresponding females, i.e., in the Bering Sea (~55°N) and off Hokkaido and Sanriku (~40°N), respectively, during the summer (Kasuya and Miyashita, 1988). However, until higher resolution population and distributional data are available, sperm whales are considered to belong to only one NP stock. Potentially, sperm whales of the NP stock, numbering 102,112 individuals (Kato and Miyashita, 1998; Allen and Angliss, 2015), may occur year-round in the waters of this offshore model area. The best density estimated for sperm whales is 0.0022 animals/km$^2$ in the spring, summer, and fall, as derived by LGL (2011), and slightly smaller in the winter (0.0017 animals/km$^2$). These densities are similar to that derived by Forney et al. (2015; 0.00158 animals/km$^2$) for the Hawaii EEZ and Fulling et al. (2011; 0.00123 animals/km$^2$) for the waters around Guam and Mariana Islands.

**Stejneger's beaked whale**: Considering habitat preferences (e.g., water temperature, bathymetry), the most appropriate density estimate for Stejneger's beaked whale is 0.0005 animals/km$^2$, which is derived from ETP data (Ferguson and Barlow, 2001, 2003), with the most appropriate abundance (8,000 animals) extrapolated from the abundance estimate derived for the WNP stock of Baird's beaked whales (Kasuya, 1986).

**Northern fur seal**: Northern fur seals in this region are part of the Western Pacific stock. Northern fur seals only go ashore on their breeding grounds; after breeding and molting, many northern fur seals travel southward, where they remain at sea (Buckland et al., 1993; Allen and Angliss, 2015). During the reproductive season, adult males haul-out from May to August, whereas adult females are ashore from June to November. The Western Pacific stock is estimated at 503,609 animals, which is the sum of the abuandance estimates for the Kuril Islands and Commander Island (Gelatt et al., 2015) plus Tyuleniy Island (Kuzin, 2015). Averaging the densities for the areas surveyed in Buckland et al. (1993) that occur in the waters of Model area 15, the average density of 0.0138 animals/km$^2$ was estimated for northern fur seals in this region during spring, summer, and fall. Fewer animals are expected in winter when most fur seals migrate southward, resulting in a density estimate of 0.0069 animals/km$^2$.

**Ribbon seal**: Ribbon seals occupy the pack ice that overlies deeper water near the continental shelf break from late winter until summer. When the pack ice breaks up in summer, their distribution is not well known, though satellite data suggest they disperse widely. Ten seals tagged near the eastern coast of Kamchatka spent the summer and fall throughout the Bering Sea and Aleutian Islands (Boveng et al., 2008). The best available data suggest an abundance estimate for the North Pacific stock of 365,000 animals (Lowry, 2016). The best density data are from the Bering Sea, with a winter/spring density estimate of 0.0904 animals/km$^2$ and a summer/fall density of 0.0452 animals/km$^2$ (Moreland et al., 2012).

**Spotted seal**: The Bering Sea DPS (Boveng et al., 2009) is synonymous with the MMPA Alaska stock of spotted seals (Allen and Angliss, 2015) and includes seals that breed in the Bering Sea. Spotted seals inhabit the southern edge of the pack ice from winter to early summer. Although population data are limited on spotted seals in northwestern Pacific waters, spotted seals have been observed in the waters off eastern Kamchatka during spring and summer (Boveng et al., 2009). The best available abundance estimate is 461,625 animals (Conn et al., 2014; Muto et al., 2019) and the best available density estimate is from the Bering Sea, with the spring season density estimate (0.277 animals/km$^2$; Moreland et al., 2008) and half that density estimate for the summer season (0.1385 animals/km$^2$).

**Steller sea lion**: Steller sea lions range along the North Pacific Rim from northern Japan to California (Muto et al., 2019). They are divided into two stocks, of which animals from the western/Asian stock and western DPS may occur in this model area year-round, though in low numbers in winter. The best available abundance estimate is 77,767 animals (Muto et al., 2019). There are no density estimates for this species; therefore, the default minimum density of 0.0001 animals/km$^2$ was used in the exposure estimates.

## D-16. LITERATURE CITED


Acebes, J. M. V., Darling, J.D., & Yamaguchi, M. (2007). Status and distribution of humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) in northern Luzon, Philippines. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 9*(1), 37-43.

Allen, B. M., & Angliss, R. P. (2014). Alaska marine mammal stock assessments, 2013. (NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-AFSC-277). Seattle, Washington: Alaska Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Allen, B. M., & Angliss, R. P. (2015). *Alaska marine mammal stock assessments, 2014*. (NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-AFSC-301). Seattle, Washington: Alaska Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Andrews, K. R., Karczmarski, L., Au, W. W. L., Rickards, S. H., Vanderlip, C. A., & Toonen, R. J. (2006). Patterns of genetic diversity of the Hawaiian spinner dolphin (*Stenella longirostris*). *Atoll Research Bulletin, 543*, 65-73.

Aschettino, J. M. (2010). *Population size and structure of melon-headed whales (Peponocephala electra) around the Main Hawaiian Islands: Evidence of multiple populations based on photographic data.* Master's thesis. Hawai'i Pacific University, Honolulu, HI.

Aschettino, J. M., Baird, R. W., McSweeney, D. J., Webster, D. L., Schorr, G. S., Huggins, J. L., . . . West, K. L. (2012). Population structure of melon-headed whales (*Peponocephala electra*) in the Hawaiian Archipelago: Evidence of multiple populations based on photo identification. *Marine Mammal Science, 28*(4), 666-689.

Australian Government. (2010). *Megaptera novaeangliae in species profile and threats database*. Department of the Environment, Australian Government, Canberra, Australia. Accessed April 2016. Retrieved from: <http://www.environment.gov.au/sprat>.

Baird, R. W., Gorgone, A. M., McSweeney, D.J., Ligon, A. D., Deakos, M. H., Webster, D. L., Schorr, G. S., Martien, K.K., Salden, D. R., & Mahaffy, S. D. (2009). Population structure of island-associated dolphins: Evidence from photo-identification of common bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops truncatus*) in the main Hawaiian Islands. *Marine Mammal Science, 25*(2), 251-274.

Baird, R. W., Schorr, G. S., Webster, D. L., McSweeney, D. J., Hanson, M. B., & Andrews, R. D. (2011). Movements of two satellite-tagged pygmy killer whales (*Feresa attenuata*) off the island of Hawaiʻi. *Marine Mammal Science, 27*(4), E332–E337. doi:10.1111/j.1748-7692.2010.00458.x.

Bannister J. L., & Hedley, S. L. (2001). Southern Hemisphere Group IV humpback whales: Their status from recent aerial survey. *Memoirs of the Queensland Museum, 47*, 587-598.

Bannister, J. L., Kemper, C. M., & Warneke, J. M. (1996). *The action plan for Australia cetaceans.* Canberra, AU: Australian Nature Conservation Agency. ISBN 0 642 21388 7.

Barlow, J. (1995). The abundance of cetaceans in California waters: Part I. Ship surveys in summer and fall of 1991. *Fishery Bulletin, 93*(1), 1-14.

Barlow, J. (1999). Trackline detection probability for long-diving whales. In G. W. Garner, S. C. Amstrup, J. L. Laake, B. F. J. Manly, L. L. McDonald, & D. G. Robertson (Eds.). *Marine mammal survey and assessment methods* (pp. 209-221). Brookfield, IL: A.A Balkema.

Barlow, J. (2006). Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters estimated from a summer/fall survey in 2002. *Marine Mammal Science, 22*(2), 446-464.

Barlow, J. (2010). *Cetacean abundance in the California Current from a 2008 ship-based line-transect survey.* (NOAA Technical Memorandum NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-456). La Jolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Service, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Barlow, J., & Forney, K. (2007). Abundance and population density of cetaceans in the California Current ecosystem. *Fishery Bulletin, 105*, 509-526.

Barlow, J., Ferguson, M. C., Becker, E. A., Redfern, J. V., Forney, K. A., Vilchis, I. L., Fiedler, P.C., Gerrodette, T., & Ballance, L. T. (2009). *Predictive modeling of cetacean densities in the Eastern Pacific Ocean*. (NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-444). La Jolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Barlow, J., Ferguson, M. C., Perrin, W. F., Ballance, L., Gerrodette, T., Joyce, G., Macleod, C. D., Mullin, K., Palka, D. L., & Waring, G. (2006). Abundance and densities of beaked and bottlenose whales (family Ziphiidae). *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 7,* 263-270.

Best, P. B. (1975). *Status of Bryde's whale (Balaenoptera edeni* or *B. brydei)*. (Paper presented at the Marine Mammal Symposium, Rome, Italy).

Best, P. B., Bannister, J. L., Brownell, Jr., R. L., & Donovan, G. P. (Eds). (2001). Right whales: Worldwide status. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, (Special Issue 2)***,** 1-309.

Bettridge, S., Baker, C. S., Barlow, J., Clapham, P. J., Ford, M., Gouveia, D., Mattila, D. K., Pace, III, R. M., Rosel, P. E., Silber, G. K., & Wade, P. R. (2015). *Status review of the humpback whale (Megaptera novaeangliae) under the Endangered Species Act.* (NOAA Technical Memorandum NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-540). La Jolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Service, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Boveng, P. L., Bengtson, J. L., Buckley, T. W., Cameron, M. F., Dahle, S. P., Kelly, B. P., Megrey, B. A., Overland, J. E., & Williamson, N. J. (2009). *Status review of the spotted seal (Phoca largha).* (NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-AFSC-200). Seattle, WA: Alaska Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Boveng, P. L., Bengtson, J. L., Cameron, M. F., Dahle, S. P., Logerwell, E. A., London, J. M., Overland, J. E., Sterling, J. T., Stevenson, D. E., Taylor, B. L., & Ziel, H. L. (2013). *Status review of the ribbon seal.* (NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-AFSC-255). Seattle, WA: Alaska Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Bradford, A. L., Baird, R. W., Mahaffy, S. D., Gorgone, A. M., McSweeney, D. J., Cullins, T., Webster, D. L., & Zerbini, A. N. (2018). Abundance estimates for management of endangered false killer whales in the main Hawaiian Islands. *Endangered Species Research, 36*, 297-313. doi: 10.3354/esr00903.

Bradford. A. L., Forney, K. A., Oleson, E. M., & Barlow, J. (2013). *Line-transect abundance estimates of cetaceans in the Hawaiian EEZ*. (PIFSC Working Paper WP-13-004; PSRG-2013-18). Honolulu, HI: Pacific Islands Fishery Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Bradford, A. L., Forney, K. A., Oleson, E. M., & Barlow, J. (2014). Accounting for subgroup structure in line-transect abundance estimates of false killer whales (*Pseudorca crassidens*) in Hawaiian waters. *PLoS ONE 9*(2), e90464. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0090464.

Bradford, A. L., Forney, K. A., Oleson, E. M., & Barlow, J. (2017). Abundance estimates of cetaceans from a line-transect survey within the U.S. Hawaiian Island exclusive economic zone. *Fishery Bulletin, 115*, 129-142. Braham, H. W. (1984). The bowhead whale, *Balaena mysticetus*. *Marine Fisheries Review, 46*(4), 45-53.

Bradford, A. L., Oleson, E. M., Baird, R. W., Boggs, C. H., Forney, K. A., & Young, N. C. (2015). *Revised stock boundaries for false killer whales (Pseudorca crassidens) in Hawaiian waters.* (NOAA Technical Memorandum NOAA-TM-NMFS-PIFSC-47). Honolulu, HI: Pacific Islands Fishery Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Branch, T. A., & Butterworth, D. S. (2001). Estimates of abundance south of 60° S for cetacean species sighted frequently on the 1978/79 to 1997/98 IWC/IDCR-SOWER sighting surveys. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 3*(3), 251-270.

Brownell, R. L., Jr., & Chun, C. (1977). Probable existence of the Korean stock of the gray whale (*Eschrichtius robustus*). *Journal of Mammalogy, 58*(2), 237-239.

Buckland, S.T., Cattanach, K. L., and Hobbs, R. C. (1993). Abundance estimates of Pacific white-sided dolphin, northern right whale dolphin, Dall's porpoise and northern fur seal in the North Pacific, 1987-1990. *International North Pacific Fisheries Commission Bulletin, 53*, 387-407.

Buckland, S.T., Cattanach, K. L., & Miyashita, T. (1992). Minke whale abundance in the northwest Pacific and the Okhotsk Sea, estimated from 1989 and 1990 sighting surveys. *Report of the International Whaling Commission, 42*, 387-392.

Calambokidis, J. (2013). Updated abundance estimates of blue and humpback whales off the US west coast incorporating photo-identifications from 2010 and 2011. *Document PSRG-2013-13 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, April 2013, Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.*

Calambokidis, J., Falcone, E. A., Quinn, T. J., Burdin, A. M., Clapham, P. J., Ford, J.K.B., Gabriele, C.M., Leduc, R., Mattila, D., Rojas-Bracho, L., Straley, J. M., Taylor, B.L., Urbán R., J., Weller, D., Witteveen, B.H., Yamaguchi, M., Bendlin, A., Camacho, D., Flynn, K., Havron, A., Huggins, J., & Maloney, N. (2008). *SPLASH: Structure of populations, levels of abundance and status of humpback whales in the North Pacific.* (Final report for Contract AB133F-03-RP-00078, Report prepared for U.S. Department of Commerce, Western Administrative Center, Seattle, WA). Olympia, WA: Cascadia Research.

Carretta, J. V., Chivers, S. J., & Perryman, W. L. (2011). Abundance of long-beaked common dolphin (*Delphinus capensis*) in California and western Baja California waters estimated from a 2009 ship-based line-transect survey. *Bulletin of the Southern California Academy of Sciences, 110*(3), 152-164.

Carretta, J. V., Oleson, E., Weller, D. W., Lang, A. R., Forney, K. A., Baker, J., Hanson, B., Martien, K., Muto, M. M., Orr, A. J., Huber, H., Lowry, M. S., Barlow, J., Lynch, D., Carswell, L., Brownell, Jr, R. L., & Mattila, D. K. (2014). *U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments, 2013.* (NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-532). LaJolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Carretta, J. V., Oleson, E. M., Weller, D. W. , Lang, A. R., Forney, K. A., Baker, J., Muto, M. M., Hanson, B., Orr, A. J., Huber, H., Lowry, M. S., Barlow, J., Moore, J. E., Lynch, D., Carswell, L., & Brownell, Jr., R. L. (2015). *U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments: 2014*. (NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-549). LaJolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service. doi:10.7289/V5/TM-SWFSC-549.

Carretta, J. V., Oleson, E. M., Baker, J., Weller, D. W. , Lang, A. R., Forney, K. A., Muto, M. M., Hanson, B., Orr, A. J., Huber, H., Lowry, M. S., Barlow, J., Moore, J. E., Lynch, D., Carswell, L., & Brownell, Jr., R. L. (2016). *U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments: 2015*. (NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-561). LaJolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service. doi:10.7289/V5/TM-SWFSC-561.

Carretta, J. V., Forney, K. A., Oleson, E. M., Weller, D. W., Lang, A. R., Baker, J. D., Muto, M. M., Hanson, B., Orr, A. J., Huber, H., Lowry, M. S., Barlow, J., Moore, J. E., Lynch, D., Carswell, L., & Brownell Jr, R. L. (2018). *U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments: 2017*. La Jolla, CA: U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SWFSC-602.

Carretta, J. V., Forney, K. A., Oleson, E. M., Weller, D. W., Lang, A. R., Baker, J. D., Muto, M. M., Hanson, B., Orr, A. J., Huber, H., Lowry, M. S., Barlow, J., Moore, J. E., Lynch, D., Carswell, L., & Brownell Jr, R. L. (201p). *U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments: 2018*. La Jolla, CA: U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SWFSC-617. Retrieved from < https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/national/marine-mammal-protection/marine-mammal-stock-assessment-reports-region>.

Cerchio, S., Andrianantenaina, B., Lindsay, A., Rekdahl, M., Andrianarivelo, N., & Rasoloarijao, T. (2015). Omura's whales (*Balaenoptera omurai*) off northwest Madagascar: Ecology, behaviour and conservation needs. *Royal Society Open Science, 2*(10), 150301. doi:10.1098/rsos.150301.

Chapskii, K. (1938). The bearded seal (*Erignathus barbatus* Fabr.) of the Kara and Barents Seas. *Transactions of the Arctic and Antarctic Scientific Research Institute, 123*, 7-70.

Conn, P. B., Ver Hoef, J. M., McClintock, B. T., Moreland, E. E., London, J. M., Cameron, M. F., Dahle, S. P., & Boveng, P. L. (2014). Estimating multispecies abundance using automated detection systems: Ice-associated seals in the Bering Sea. *Methods in Ecology and Evolution 5,* 1280-1293. doi: 10.1111/2041-210X.12127.

Cooke, J. G., Weller, D., Bradford, A. L., Sychenko, O. A., Burdin, A. M. & Brownell, R. L., Jr. (2013). Population assessment of the Sakhalin gray whale aggregation. (*Paper SC/65a/BRG27 presented to the International Whaling Commission Scientific Committee*). Retrieved from <http://www.iwcoffice.org/>.

Courbis, S., Baird, R. W., Cipriano, F., & Duffield, D. (2014). Multiple populations of pantropical spotted dolphins in Hawaiian waters. 2014. *Journal of Heredity, 105*(5), 627-614.

Cribb, N., Miller, C., & Seuront, L. (2013). Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphin (*Tursiops aduncus*) habitat preference in a heterogeneous, urban, coastal environment. *Aquatic Biosystems, 9*(3), 1-9.

Dalebout, M. L., Baker, C. S., Steel, D., Thompson, K., Robertson, K. M., Chivers, S. J., Perrin, W. F., Goonatilake, M., Anderson, R. C., Mead, J. G., Potter, C. W., Thompson, L., Jupiter, D., & Yamada, T. K. (2014). Resurrection of *Mesoplodon hotaula* Deraniyagala 1963: A new species of beaked whale in the tropical Indo-Pacific. *Marine Mammal Science, 30*(3), 1081-1108.

Dalebout, M. L., Robertson, K. M., Frantzis, A., Engelhaupt, D. A. N., Mignucci-Giannoni, A. A., Rosario-Delestre, R. J., & Baker, C. S. (2005). Worldwide structure of mtDNA diversity among Cuvier's beaked whales (*Ziphius cavirostris*): Implications for threatened populations. *Molecular Ecology, 14*, (11), 3353-3371.

Dalebout, M. L., Ross, G. J. B., Baker, C. S., Anderson, R. C., Best, P. B., Cockcroft, V. G., . . . Pitman, R. L. (2003). Appearance, distribution, and genetic distinctiveness of Longman's beaked whale, *Indopacetus pacificus*. *Marine Mammal Science, 19*(3), 421-461.

De Boer, M. N. (2000). A note on cetacean observations in the Indian Ocean Sanctuary and the South China Sea, Mauritius to the Philippines, April 1999. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 2*(3), 197-200.

de Vos, A., Pattiaratchi, C., & Harcourt, R. (2014). Inter-annual variability in blue whale distribution off southern Sri Lanka between 2011 and 2012. *Journal of Marine Science and Engineering, 2*(3), 534-550. doi: 10.3390/jmse2030534.

Department of the Navy (DoN). (2018). Navy marine species density database. Geospatial global database. Accessed March and April 2017; July, December 2018. Chief of Naval Operations, DoN.

Dolar, M.L.L., Perrin, W. F., Taylor, B. L., Kooyman, G. L., & Alava, M.N.R. (2006). Abundance and distributional ecology of cetaceans in the central Philippines. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 8*(1), 93-111.

Donovan, G. P. (1991). A review of IWC stock boundaries. *Report of the International Whaling Commission, 0*(0), 39-68.

Ellison, W. T., & P. J. Stein. (1999, updated 2001). *SURTASS LFA high frequency marine mammal monitoring (HF/M3) sonar: System Description and Test & Evaluation* (pp. 75).

Fedoseev, G. A. (2000). *Population biology of ice-associated forms of seals and their role in the northern Pacific ecosystems.* Center for Russian Environmental Policy, Russian Marine Mammal Council, Moscow, Russia. 271 pages (Translated from Russian by I. E. Sidorova, 271 p.).

Ferguson, M. C., & Barlow, J. (2001). Spatial distribution and density of cetaceans in the eastern tropical Pacific Ocean based on summer/fall research vessel surveys in 1986-1996. (NMFS-SWFSC Administrative Report LJ-01-04). La Jolla, California: Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Ferguson, M. C., & Barlow, J. (2003). Addendum: Spatial distribution and density of cetaceans in the eastern tropical Pacific Ocean based on summer/fall research vessel surveys in 1986-96. (NMFS-SWFSC Administrative Report LJ-01-04, Addendum). La Jolla, California: Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Forney, K. (2007). *Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance along the U.S. west coast and within four National Marine Sanctuaries during 2005.* (NOAA Technical Memorandum NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-406). La Jolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Forney, K. A., & Wade, P. (2006). Worldwide distribution and abundance of killer whales. In J. A. Estes, R. L. Brownell, D. P. DeMaster, D. F. Doak, & T. M. Williams (Eds.), *Whales, whaling and ocean ecosystems* (pp. 145-162). Berkeley, CA: University of California Press.

Forney, K. A., Becker, E. A., Foley, D. G., Barlow, J., & Oleson, E. M. (2015). Habitat-based models of cetacean density and distribution in the central North Pacific. *Endangered Species Research, 27*, 1-20. doi: https://doi.org/10.3354/esr00632

Fulling, G.L., Thorson, P.H., & Rivers, J. (2011). Distribution and abundance estimates for cetaceans in the waters off Guam and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands. *Pacific Science, 65*(3), 321-343.

Gaskin, D. E. (1992). Status of the harbour porpoise, *Phocoena*. *Canadian Field-Naturalist, 106(*1), 36–54.

Gerrodette, T., Watters, G., Perryman, W., & Balance, L. (2008). Estimates of 2006 dolphin abundance in the Eastern Tropical Pacific, with revised estimates from 1996-2003. (NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-422). La Jolla, CA: Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Han, J. B. (2011). *Effect of land reclamation on the spotted seals and the Seals' Conversation Zone of Dalian Industrial Park in Jinzhou Bay, Bohai Sea, China*. Marine environmental impact report. Dalian City, China: Liaoning Ocean and Fisheries Science Research Institute. 41 pages.

Han, J. B., Wang, W. & Ma, Z. Q. (2005). Spotted seals in the estuary of Shuangtaizi River of Liaodong Bay. *Marine Environmental Science, 1*, 51–53 (Abstract translated from Chinese).

Hill, M. C., Bradford, A. L., Andrews, K. R., Baird, R. W., Deakos, M. H., Johnston, S. D., . . . Yin, S. (2011). Abundance and movements of spinner dolphins off the main Hawaiian Islands: Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center Working Paper WP-11-013.

Hobbs, R. C., & Waite, J. M. (2010). Abundance of harbor porpoise (*Phocoena phocoena*) in three Alaskan regions, corrected for observer errors due to perception bias and species misidentification, and corrected for animals submerged from view. *Fishery Bulletin, 108*, 251–267.

Horimoto, T., Mitani, Y., Kobayashi, M., Hattori, K., & Sakurai, Y. (2017). Seasonal and spatial occurrence of northern fur seals *Callorhinus ursinus* around northern Japan. *Mammal Study, 42*(1), 51-56. doi:10.3106/041.042.0106.

Horimoto, T., Mitani, Y., & Sakurai, Y. (2016). Spatial association between northern fur seal (*Callorhinus ursinus*) and potential prey distribution during the wintering period in the northern Sea of Japan. *Fisheries Oceanography, 25*(1), 44-53. doi:10.1111/fog.12133.

International Whaling Commission (IWC). 1981. Report of the subcommittee on other baleen whales. *Report of the International Whaling Commission 31*, 122-132.

IWC. (1996). Report of the subcommittee on North Pacific Bryde's whales. *Report of the International Whaling Commission 46*, 147-159.

IWC. (2008). International Whaling Commission: Report of the scientific committee. *Report to the International Whaling Commission 60/Report 1.* Cambridge, U.K.: IWC.

IWC. (2009). Population estimates. Retrieved from IWC website <http.www.iwcoffice.org/conservation/estimate.htm>.

IWC. (2010). *Whale population estimates*. Retrieved from <https://iwc.int/estimate>.

IWC. (2016). *Whale population estimates*. Retrieved January 2016 from <https://iwc.int/estimate>.

Jefferson, T. A., Leatherwood, S., & Webber, M. A. (1993). *FAO species identification guide: Marine mammals of the world*. Rome, Italy: Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations.

Jefferson, T. A., Webber, M. A., & Pitman, R. L. (2008). *Marine mammals of the world a comprehensive guide to their identification.* San Diego, CA: Elsevier.

Jefferson, T. A., Webber, M. A., & Pitman, R. L. (2015). *Marine mammals of the world a comprehensive guide to their identification* (2nd Ed.). San Diego, CA: Elsevier.

Jenner, C., Jenner, M., Burton, C., Sturrock, V., Salgado Kent, C., Morrice, M., Attard, C., Moller, L. & Double, M.C. (2008). Mark recapture analysis of pygmy blue whales from the Perth Canyon, Western Australia 2000-2005. *Paper submitted for consideration by the International Whaling Commission Scientific Committee SC/60/SH16*.

Johnston, S. E., Zerbini, A. N., & Butterworth, D. S. (2011). A Bayesian approach to assess the status of Southern Hemisphere humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) with an application to breeding stock G. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, (Special issue, 3*, 309-18.

Kanaji, Y., Miyashita, T., Minamikawa, S., & Yoshida, H. (2018). Abundance estimates of six species of Delphinidae cetaceans off the Pacific coast of Japan between 1985 and 2015. *Marine Mammal Science*. doi: 10.1111/mms.12502.

Kanaji, Y., Miyashita, T., Yoshida, H., Okazaki, M., & Kishiro, T. (2015). Abundance estimates of *dalli*-type and *truei*-type of Dall’s porpoise *Phocoenoides dalli* in the western central part of the Sea of Okhotsk, July–September between 1990 and 2010. *Fisheries Science, 81,* 611-619.

Karczmarski, L., Würsig, B., Gailey, G., Larson, K. W., & Vanderlip, C. (2005). Spinner dolphins in a remote Hawaiian atoll: social grouping and population structure. *Behavioral Ecology, 16*(4), 675-685. doi: 10.1093/beheco/ari028

Kasamatsu, F., & Joyce, G. G. (1995). Current status of odontocetes in the Antarctic. *Antarctic Science, 7(*4), 365-379.

Kaschner, K., Watson, R., Trites, A. W., & Pauly, D. (2006). Mapping world-wide distributions of marine mammal species using a relative environmental suitability (RES) model. *Marine Ecology Progress Series, 316*, 285-310.

Kasuya, T. (1971). Consideration of distribution and migration of toothed whales off the Pacific coast of Japan based upon aerial sighting record. *Scientific Report of the Whales Research Institute 23,* 37-60.

Kasuya, T. (1986). Distribution and behavior of Baird's beaked whales off the Pacific coast of Japan. *Scientific Report of the Whales Research Institute, 37*, 61-83.

Kasuya, T. (2009). Giant beaked whales *Berardius bairdii and B. arnouxii.* Pages 498-500 in W.F. Perrin, B. Wursig, & H.G.M. Thewissen, (Eds.). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals, 2nd ed*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Kasuya, T., & Perrin, W. F. (2017). *Small cetaceans of Japan: Exploitation and biology*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, Taylor & Francis Group.

Kato, H., & Miyashita, T. (1998). Current status of North Pacific sperm whales and its preliminary abundance estimates. *Report SC/50/CAWS/52 submitted to the International Whaling Commission.*

Kelly, B. P., Bengtson, J. L., Boveng, P. L., Cameron, M. F., Dahle, S. P., Jansen, J. K., Logerwell, E. A., Overland, J. E., Sabine, C. L., Waring, G. T., & Wilder, J. M. (2010). *Status review of the ringed seal (Phoca hispida).* (NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-AFSC-212). Seattle, WA: Alaska Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Kuzin, A. E. (2014). New data on the abundance of the northern fur seal (*Callorhinus ursinus*), Steller sea lion (*Eumetopias jubatus*), and spotted seal (*Phoca largha*) on Tyuleniy Island, Sea of Okhotsk. *Russian Journal of Marine Biology, 40*(7), 532-538.

Lacsamana, J. K. M, Ventolero, M. F. H., Blatchley, D., & Santos, M.D. (2015). First record of a rare beaked whale *Mesoplodon hotaula* in the Philippines. *Marine Biodiversity Records, 8,* e77. doi:10.1017/S1755267215000457.

Laidre, K. L., Stern, H., Kovacs, K. M., Lowry, L., Moore, S. E., Regehr, E. V., Ferguson, S. H., Wiig, Ø., Boveng, P., Angliss, R. P., Born, E. W., Litovka, D., Quakenbush, L., Lydersen, C., Vongraven, D., & Ugarte, F. (2015). Arctic marine mammal population status, sea ice habitat loss, and conservation recommendations for the 21st century. *Conservation Biology, 29*(3), 724-737. doi:10.1111/cobi.12474.

LGL (LGL Limited, Environmental Research Associates). (2008). Environmental assessment of a marine geophysical survey by the R/V *Marcus G. Langseth* in Southeast Asia, March–July 2009.

LGL. (2011). Environmental assessment of a low-energy marine geophysical survey by the R/V *Thompson* in the western tropical Pacific Ocean, November–December 2011.

Masaki, Y. (1977). The separation of the stock units of sei whales in the North Pacific. *Report of the International Whaling Commission Special Issue, 1*, 71-79.

Mate, B. R., Ilyashenko, V. Y., Bradford, A. L., Vertyankin, V. V., Tsidulko, G. A., Rozhnov, V. V., & Irvine, L. M. (2015). Critically endangered western gray whales migrate to the eastern North Pacific. *Biology Letters, 11*(4), 20150071. doi:10.1098/rsbl.2015.0071.

McCauley, R.D., & Jenner, C. (2010). Migratory patterns and estimated population size of pygmy blue whales (*Balaenoptera musculus brevicauda*) traversing the Western Australian coast based on passive acoustics. *Paper SC/62/SH26 presented to the Scientific Committee, International Whaling Commission.*

McDonald, M. A., & Fox, C. G. (1999). Passive acoustic methods applied to fin whale population density estimation. *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 105*(5), 2643-2651.

McDonald, M. A., & Moore, S. E. (2002). Calls recorded from North Pacific right whales (*Eubalaena japonica*) in the eastern Bering Sea. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management, 4*(3), 261-266.

Minton, G., Collins, T. J. Q., Findlay, K. P., Ersts, P. J., Rosenbaum, H. C., Berggren, P., & Baldwin, R. M. (2011). Seasonal distribution, abundance, habitat use and population identity of humpback whales in Oman. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management,* Special Issue on Southern Hemisphere Humpback Whales**,** 185–198.

Minton, G., Collins, T. J. Q., Pomilla, C., Findlay, K. P., Rosenbaum, H. C., Baldwin, R. & Brownell, Jr., R. L. (2008). *Megaptera novaeangliae*, Arabian Sea subpopulation. *IUCN Red List of Threatened Species.* <http://www.iucnredlist.org/details/132835>.

Miyashita, T. (1986). Population estimates of dolphins using research vessels data. In T. Tamura, S. Ohsumi, & S. Arai (Eds.), *Report of the investigation in search of resolution of the dolphin-fishery conflict in the Iki Island area* (pages 202-213). Tokyo, Japan: The Investigating Committee.

Miyashita, T. (1993). Abundance of dolphin stocks in the western North Pacific taken by the Japanese drive fishery. *International Whaling Commission, 43*, 417-437.

Miyashita, T., & Okamura, H. (2011). Abundance estimates of common minke whales using the Japanese dedicated sighting survey data for RMP Implementation and CLA - Sea of Japan and Sea of Okhotsk. SC/63/RMP11 (pp. 34).

Miyashita, T., Vladimirov, V. L. & Kato, H. (2005). *Current status of cetaceans in the Sea of Okhotsk, Japanese and Russian survey results.* (S3-2489). Presentation and abstract, North Pacific Marine Science Organization (PICES) fourteen annual meeting, September 29–October 9, 2005, Valdivostock, Russia: <http://www.pices.int/publications/presentations/PICES_14/S3/Miyashita.pdf>.

Miyazaki, N. (2002). Ringed, Caspian, and Baikal seals *Pusa hispida*, *P. caspica*, and *P. sibirica*. Pages 1033-1037 in Perrin, W. F., Wursig, B., and Thewissen, J. G. M. (eds). *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Mizroch, S.A., Conn, P.B., & Rice, D.W. (2015). The mysterious sei whale: Its distribution, movements and population decline in the North Pacific revealed by whaling data and recoveries of Discovery-type marks. [Presentation]. *Paper SC/66a/IA/14 presented at the 66a IWC Scientific Committee Meeting in San Diego, CA, 22 May to 3 June 2015*.

Mizroch, S. A., Rice, D. W., Zwiefelhofer, D., Waite, J. M., & Perryman, W. L. (2009). Distribution and movements of fin whales in the North Pacific Ocean. *Mammal Review, 39*(3), 193-227.

Mizuno, A.W., A. Wada, T. Ishinazaka, K. Hattori, Y. Watanabe, & N. Ohtaishi. (2002). Distribution and abundance of spotted seals *Phoca largha* and ribbon seals *Phoca fasciata* in the southern Sea of Okhotsk. *Ecological Research, 17*, 79-96.

Mobley, J. R. (2006). Results of 2006 aerial surveys of humpback whales north of Kauai. Honolulu, HI.

Mobley, J. R., Jr., Smultea, M., Norris, T., & Weller, D. (1996). Fin whale sighting north of Kaua'i, Hawai'i. *Pacific Science, 50*(2), 230-233.

Mobley, J. R., Jr., Spitz, S. S., Forney, K. A., Grotefendt, R., & Forestell, P. H. (2000). Distribution and abundance of odontocete species in Hawaiian waters: Preliminary results of 1993-98 aerial surveys. Honolulu, HI.

Mobley, J. R., Jr., Spitz, S., & Grotefendt, R. A. (2001). Abundance of humpback whales in Hawaiian waters: Results of 1993-2000 aerial surveys. Honolulu, HI: Hawaiian Islands Humpback Whale National Marine Sanctuary. (pp. 16).

Moreland, E., Cameron, M., & Boveng, P. (2012). Bering Okhotsk Seal Surveys (BOSS): Joint U.S.-Russian aerial surveys. *Alaska Fisheries Science Center Quarterly Report, April-May-June 2012*.

Murase, H., Hakamada, T., Matsuoka, K., Nishiwaki, S., Inagake, D., Okazaki, M., . . . Kitakado, T. (2014). Distribution of sei whales (*Balaenoptera borealis*) in the subarctic–subtropical transition area of the western North Pacific in relation to oceanic fronts. *Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography, 107*, 22-28. doi: 10.1016/j.dsr2.2014.05.002.

Muto, M. M., Helker, V. T., Angliss, R. P., Allen, B. A., Boveng, P. L., Breiwick, J. M., Cameron, M. F., Clapham, P. J., Dahle, S. P., Dahlheim, M. E., Fadely, B. S., Ferguson, M. C., Fritz, L. W., Hobbs, R. C., Ivashchenko, Y. V., Kennedy, A. S., London, J. M., Mizroch, S. A., Ream, R. R., Richmond, E. L., Shelden, K. E. W., Towell, R. G., Wade, P. R., Waite, J. M., & Zerbini, A. R. (2016). Alaska marine mammal stock assessments, 2015. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFSAFSC-323. Seattle, WA: Alaska Fishery Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service. 300 pages. doi:10.7289/V5/TM-AFSC-323. Retrieved from <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/sars/pdf/alaska2015_final__corrected_.pdf>.

Muto, M. M., Helker, V. T., Angliss, R. P., Allen, B. A., Boveng, P. L., Breiwick, J. M., Cameron, M. F., Clapham, P. J., Dahle, S. P., Dahlheim, M. E., Fadely, B. S., Ferguson, M. C., Fritz, L. W., Hobbs, R. C., Ivashchenko, Y. V., Kennedy, A. S., London, J. M., Mizroch, S. A., Ream, R. R., Richmond, E. L., Shelden, K. E. W., Towell, R. G., Wade, P. R., Waite, J. M., & Zerbini, A. N. (2017). *Alaska marine mammal stock assessments, 2016.* NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-AFSC-355. Seattle, WA: Alaska Fishery Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service. 366 pages. doi:10.7289/V5/TM-AFSC-355.

Muto, M. M., Helker, V. T., Angliss, R. P., Allen, B. A., Boveng, P. L., Breiwick, J. M., Cameron, M. F., Clapham, P. J., Dahle, S. P., Dahlheim, M. E., Fadely, B. S., Ferguson, M. C., Fritz, L. W., Hobbs, R. C., Ivashchenko, Y. V., Kennedy, A. S., London, J. M., Mizroch, S. A., Ream, R. R., Richmond, E. L., Shelden, K. E. W., Towell, R. G., Wade, P. R., Waite, J. M., & Zerbini, A. N. (2018). *Alaska marine mammal stock assessments, 2017.* NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-AFSC-378. Seattle, WA: Alaska Fishery Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service. 382 pages. Retrieved from < https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/national/marine-mammal-protection/marine-mammal-stock-assessment-reports-region>.

Muto, M. M., Helker, V. T., Angliss, R. P., Boveng, P. L., Breiwick, J. M., Cameron, M. F., Clapham, P. J., Dahle, S. P., Dahlheim, M. E., Fadely, B. S., Ferguson, M. C., Fritz, L. W., Hobbs, R. C., Ivashchenko, Y. V., Kennedy, A. S., London, J. M., Mizroch, S. A., Ream, R. R., Richmond, E. L., Shelden, K. E. W., Sweeney, K.L., Towell, R. G., Wade, P. R., Waite, J. M., & Zerbini, A. N. (2019). *Alaska marine mammal stock assessments, 2018.* NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-AFSC-393. Seattle, WA: Alaska Fishery Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service. 399 pages. Retrieved from <https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/national/marine-mammal-protection/marine-mammal-stock-assessment-reports-region>.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). (2017). Celebrating 10 years of dedicated monk seal recovery, an increase in the population, and 12 months of monk seal fun! Spotlight on monk seals, Winter 2016-2017. Pacific Islands Regional Office, National Marine Fisheries Service. Retrieved from <http://www.fpir.noaa.gov/PRD/hms_sis_updates_winter_2016_2017.html.

NMFS. (2018). *Hawaiian monk seal population at a glance; Hawaiian monk seal research.* National Marine Fisheries Service, Pacific Islands Fishery Science Center. Retrieved from <https://www.pifsc.noaa.gov/hawaiian_monk_seal/population_at_a_glance.php>.

Nesterenko, V. A., & Katin, I. O. (2008). The spotted seal (*Phoca largha*) in the south of the range: The results and problems of research. Pages 386 to 389 in *Marine mammals of the Holoarctic—Collection of Scientific Papers after the 5th International Conference, Odessa, Ukraine, 2008*.

Noad, M.J., Dunlop, R.A., Paton, D., & Cato, D.H. (2011). Absolute and relative abundance estimates of Australian east coast humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management* (Special issue, 3, 243–252.

Ohsumi, S. (1977). Bryde's whales in the pelagic whaling ground of the North Pacific. *Report of the International Whaling Commission Special Issue, 1*, 140-149.

Ohsumi, S. (1980). Population study of the Bryde's whale in the Southern Hemisphere under scientific permit in the three seasons, 1976/77-1978/79. *Reports of the International Whaling Commission, 30*, 319-331.

Ohizumi, H., Isoda, T., Kishiro, T., & Kato, H. (2003). Feeding habits of Baird's beaked whale *Berardius bairdii*, in the western North Pacific and Sea of Okhotsk off Japan. *Fisheries Science, 69*(1), 11-20.

Oleson, E.M., Barlow, J., Gordon, J., Rankin, S., & Hildebrand, J. A. (2003). Low frequency calls of Bryde's whales. *Marine Mammal Science, 19*(2), 407-419.

Oleson, E. M., Boggs, C. H., Forney, K. A., Hanson, M. B., Kobayashi, D. R., Taylor, B. L., Wade, P. R., & Ylitalo, G.M. (2010). *Status review of Hawaiian insular false killer whales (Pseudorca crassidens) under the Endangered Species Act.* (NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-PIFSC-22). Honolulu, HI: Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Oleson, E. M., Baird, R. W., Martien, K. K., & Taylor, B. L. (2013). Island-associated stocks of odontocetes in the main Hawaiian Islands: A synthesis of available information to facilitate evaluation of stock structure. *Document PSRG-2013-16 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, Del Mar, California, April 2013.*

Omura, H. (1959). Bryde's whale from the coast of Japan. *Scientific Reports of the Whales Research Institute 14*, 1-33.

Omura, H., Fujino, K., & Kimura, S. (1955). Beaked whale *Berardius bairdi* of Japan, with notes on *Ziphius cavirostris*. *Scientific Reports of the Whales Research Institute, 10*, 89-132.

Parrish, F. A., & Abernathy, K. (2006). Movements of monk seals relative to ecological depth zones in the lower Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. *Atoll Research Bulletin, 543*, 115-130.

Parrish, F.A., Abernathy, K., Marshall, G. J., & Buhleier, B. M. (2002). Hawaiian monk seals (*Monachus schauinslandi*) foraging in deep-water coral beds. *Marine Mammal Science, 18*(1), 244-258.

Parsons, K. M., Durban, J. W., Burdin, A. M., Burkanov, V. N., Pitman, R. L., Barlow, J., Barrett-Lennard, L. G., LeDuc, R. G., Robertson, K. M., Matkin, C. O., & Wade, P. R. (2013). Geographic patterns of genetic differentiation among killer whales in the northern North Pacific. *The Journal of Heredity, 104*, 737-754.

Pastene, L.A. & Goto, M. (1998). An estimate of the mixing proportion of 'J' and 'O' stocks minke whales in subarea 11 based on mitochondrial DNA haplotype data. *Report of the International Whaling Commission, 48*, 471-474.

Pitman, R.L., Palacios, D. M., Rodriguez, P. L., Brennan, B. J., Balcomb, K. C., & Miyashita., T. (1998). P*robable sightings of Longman's beaked whale (Indopacetus [Mesoplodon] pacificus) from the equatorial Indian and Pacific oceans*. Abstracts of the World Marine Mammal Science Conference, Monaco, 24-28 January 1998.

Preen, A. R., Marsh, H., Lawler, I. R., Prince, R. I. T., & Shepherd, R. (1997). Distribution and abundance of dugongs, turtles, dolphins and other megafauna in Shark Bay, Ningaloo Reef and Exmouth Gulf, Western Australia. *Wildlife Research, 24*(2), 185-208.

Reilly, S.B., Bannister, J.L., Best, P.B., Brown, M., Brownell Jr., R.L., Butterworth, D.S., Clapham, P.J., Cooke, J., Donovan, G.P., Urbán, J. & Zerbini, A.N. (2008a). *Balaenoptera edeni*. The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2008: e.T2476A9445502. Retrieved 24 July 2015 from http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2008.RLTS.T2476A9445502.en.

Reilly, S.B., Bannister, J.L., Best, P.B., Brown, M., Brownell Jr., R.L., Butterworth, D.S., Clapham, P.J., Cooke, J., Donovan, G.P., Urbán, J. & Zerbini, A.N. (2008b). *Balaenoptera borealis*. The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2008: e.T2475A9445100. Retrieved 11 April 2017 from http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2008.RLTS.T2475A9445100.en.

Rosenbaum, H. C., Pomilla, C., Mendez, M., Leslie, M. S., Best, P. B., Findlay, K. P., . . . Kiszka, J. (2009). Population structure of humpback whales from their breeding grounds in the South Atlantic and Indian Oceans. *PLoS ONE, 4*(10). e7318. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0007318.

Sasaki, T., Nikaido, M., Wada, S., Yamada, T.K., Cao, Y., Hasegawa, M., & Okada, N. (2006). *Balaenoptera omurai* is a newly discovered baleen whale that represents an ancient evolutionary lineage. *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution, 41*, 40-52.

Sathasivam, K. (2002). *A catalogue of Indian marine mammal records.* Paper presented at Convention on Biological Diversity regional workshop to facilitate the description of ecologically or biologically significant marine areas (EBSAs) in the north-east Indian Ocean region, Columbo, Sri Lanka, March 2015. Retrieved from: <https://www.cbd.int/doc/meetings/mar/ebsaws-2015-01/other/ebsaws-2015-01-gobi-submission5-en.pdf>.

Schorr, G.S., R.W. Baird, M.B. Hanson, D.L. Webster, D.J. McSweeney, & R.D. Andrews. (2009). Movements of satellite-tagged Blainville's beaked whales off the island of Hawai'i. *Endangered Species Research, 10***,** 203-213.

Schorr, G. S., Falcone, E. A., Moretti, D. J., & Andrews, R. D. (2014). First long-term behavioral records from Cuvier's beaked whales (*Ziphius cavirostris*) reveal record-breaking dives. *PLoS One, 9*(3), 1-10. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0092633.g001.

Sekiguchi, K., Onishi, H., Sasaki, H., Haba, S., Iwahara, Y., Mizuguchi, D., Otsuki, M., Saijo, D., Nishizawa, B., Mizuno, H., Hoshi, N., & Kamito, T. (2014). Sightings of the western stock of North Pacific right whales (*Eubalaena japonica*) in the far southeast of the Kamchatka Peninsula. *Marine Mammal Science, 30*(3), 1199-1209. doi:10.1111/mms.12105.

Shibuya, M., Kobayashi, M., Shitamichi, Y., Miyamoto, S., & Murakami, K. (2016). Changes in haul-out use by spotted seals (*Phoca largha*) on Rebun Island, Hokkado, Japan, in response to controls on harmful animals. Russian Journal of Marine Biology, 42(4), 341–350. doi:10.1134/S106307401604009X.

SMRU Ltd. (2012). Supporting Documentation for Global Predicted Density Data *Unpublished Sea Mammal Research Unit (SMRU) Ltd. report*. Scottish Oceans Institute, University of St. Andrews, Scotland. St Andrews, Fife, KY16 8LB, UK.

Society for Marine Mammalogy (SMM). (2018). *List of marine mammal species and subspecies. Committee on Taxonomy, Society for Marine Mammalogy*. Accessed May 2018. <https://www.marinemammalscience.org/species-information/list-marine-mammal-species-subspecies/>.

Special Committee on Seals (CSOS). (2015). *Scientific advice on matters related to the management of seal populations: 2015*. Report of Sea Mammal Research Unit and Natural Environment Research Council. St. Andrew's, Scotland: Sea Mammal Research Unit, St. Andrew's University.

Tillman, M. F. (1977). Estimates of population size for the North Pacific sei whale. *Report of the International Whaling Commission Special Issue, 1,* 98-106.

Trukhin, A. M. (2019). Spotted seal (*Phoca largha*) population increase in the Peter the Great Bay, Sea of Japan. Marine Mammal Science. doi:10.1111/mms.12588.

Tyne, J. A., Pollock, K. H., Johnston, D. W., & Bejder, L. (2014). Abundance and survival rates of the Hawai'i Island associated spinner dolphin (*Stenella longirostris*) stock. *PloS ONE, 9*(1), e86132. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0086132.

Tyurneva, O. Y., Yakovlev, Y. M., Vertyankin, V. V., & Selin, N. I. (2010). The peculiarities of foraging migrations of the Korean-Okhotsk gray whale (*Eschrichtius robustus*) population in Russian waters of the Far Eastern seas. *Russian Journal of Marine Biology, 36*(2), 117-124. doi:10.1134/s1063074010020069.

Wada, S., Oishi, M., & Yamada, T. K. (2003). A newly discovered species of living baleen whale. *Nature, 426*(6964), 278-281.

Wade, P. R., & Gerrodette, T. (1993). Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. *Report of the International Whaling Commission, 43,* 477-493.

Weller, D. W., Klimek, A., Bradford, A. L., Calambokidis, J., Lang, A. R., Gisborne, B., Burdin, A. M., Szaniszlo, W., Urbán, J., Gomez-Gallardo Unzueta, A., Swartz, S., & Brownell, R. L. (2012). Movements of gray whales between the western and eastern North Pacific. *Endangered Species Research, 18*(3), 193-199. doi:10.3354/esr00447.

Wells, R. (2013). Movements and dive patterns of short-finned pilot whales (*Globicephala macrorhynchus*) released from a mass stranding in the Florida Keys. *Aquatic Mammals, 39*(1), 61-72. doi:10.1578/am.39.1.2013.61.

Wells, R. S., Manire, C. A., Byrd, L., Smith, D. R., Gannon, J. G., Fauquier, D., & Mullin, K., (2009). Movements and dive patterns of a rehabilitated Risso's dolphin, *Grampus griseus*, in the Gulf of Mexico and Atlantic Ocean. *Marine Mammal Science, 25*(2), 420–429.

Yan, H.-K., Wang, N., Wu, N., & Lin, W.-n. (2018). Abundance, habitat conditions, and conservation of the largha seal (*Phoca largha*) during the past half century in the Bohai Sea, China. *Mammal Study, 43* (1), 1-9. doi:10.3106/ms2017-0027.

# APPENDIX E: AIR QUALITY ANALYSIS

# APPENDIX E: AIR QUALITY ANALYSIS, EMISSIONS CALCULATIONS, AND RECORD OF NON-APPLICABILITY

This appendix presents the analysis that was conducted on air quality in support of SURTASS LFA sonar training and testing activities in the western and central North Pacific and eastern Indian oceans. The information presented in this appendix provides the documentation for the information presented in the Air Quality section of Chapter 4 (Section 4.3). Included herein are further details about the development of the air emission analysis factors as well as the analysis/calculation results of the concentrations of air emissions associated with training and testing activities of the action alternatives, including analysis assumptions. The air emissions analysis was conducted in a Navy-proprietary analysis system for air emissions and marine fuel consumption.

Four T-AGOS ships are equipped with SURTASS LFA sonar systems. Three of the T-AGOS vessels equipped with LFA sonar are of the VICTORIOUS class ship design (T-AGOS 19, 20, and 21) while the fourth LFA sonar vessel is of the IMPECCABLE class ship design (T-AGOS 23). The ship class is an analysis factor because the two vessel designs differ in size, which results in a different number of engines to power the vessels and a related difference in fuel consumption. Both vessel classes, however, use the same type of marine diesel fuel.

## E.1 Air Quality Calculations

### E.1.1 Surface Activity Emissions

Surface activities consist of SURTASS LFA sonar vessel movements during training and testing activities related to the action alternatives. In addition to propulsion engines, all SURTASS LFA sonar vessels are equipped with generators that provide electricity for non-propulsion systems. The engine configurations or propulsion methods may differ amongst the classes of SURTASS LFA sonar vessels, such as marine outboard engines, diesel engines, and gas turbines. Calculations of air emissions are based on the combustion of the marine fuel that power the SURTASS LFA sonar vessel's engines and the amount of time the engines are estimated to be in operation, based upon the ship's movements associated with conducting each action alternative.

#### E.1.1.1 Diesel Engines

The air emissions generated by SURTASS LFA sonar vessels were calculated using emission factors from the Naval Sea Systems Command Navy and Military Sealift Command Marine Engine Fuel Consumption and Emission Calculator for the propulsion systems and the supplemental ship service generator(s) associated with each of the LFA T-AGOS vessels.

### E.1.2 Analysis Assumptions

The following assumptions formed the basis of the air quality analysis:

- Marine fuel F-76 (or equivelent) with sulfur content per overseas vessel deployment.
- Three VICTORIOUS class vessels each operating one emergency diesel generator engine and four integrated propulsion engines.
- One IMPECCABLE class vessel operating one emergency diesel generator engine and three integrated propulsion engines.

- Vessel movements of each ship equate to 900 hours per year for Alternate 1 training and testing activities during which LFA sonar is transmitted for 90 sonar transmit hours per vessel (total of 360 sonar transmit hours across all vessel).
- Vessel movements of each ship equate to 1,240 hours per year for Alternate 2 training and testing activities in Years 1 to 4 during which LFA sonar is transmitted for 124 hours per vessel (total of 496 transmit hours across all vessel), while during Years 5 through 7 of Alternate 2, 1,480 hours of vessel movements are associated with training and testing activies during which LFA sonar would be transmitted for 148 sonar transmit hours (or 592 sonar transmit hours for all vessels).
- 5 percent of annual vessel movements for each ship are in the federal waters of the territorial seas of Hawaii, Guam, and the CNMI (i.e., 3 to 12 nmi) since SURTASS LFA sonar does not conduct training and testing activities in foreign territorial seas.
- 95 percent of annual vessel movements per ship are in the global commons (i.e., >12 nmi from shore).
- Assumptions are based per vessel not per engine.

### E.1.3 Air Emission Estimates

Concentrations of five criteria air pollutants were calculated based on the assumptions given above for each of the four SURTASS LFA sonar vessels per year of the action alternatives. The summary concentrations are the total for all four LFA sonar vessels per alternative. The concentration of CO2 emitted per year was estimated and converted to CO2 equivalency.

Analysis input, assumptions, and the resulting analysis summary illustrate the air emissions output from the Navy proprietary analysis system for air emissions and marine fuel consumption that were computed for the existing four SURTASS LFA sonar vessels for the three alternatives of the Proposed Action (Table E-1; Figure E-1).

**Table E-1. Concentrations of Criteria Air Pollutant and Greenhouse Gas (as Carbon Dioxide Equivalency) Concentrations Emitted by All SURTASS LFA Sonar Vessels Annually during Execution of Training and Testing Activities Per Alternatives 1 and 2.**

| *Location of SURTASS LFA Sonar Vessels During Training and Testing Activities* | *Total Concentrations of Criteria Air Pollutants Emitted (tons per year)* | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *CO* | *$NO_x$* | *$PM_{10}$* | *$PM_{2.5}$* | *$SO_x$* | *VOC* | *$CO_2$ eq (metric tons)* |
| **Alternative 1 (900 vessel movement hr/vessel)** | | | | | | | |
| Vessels in federal territorial seas of HI, GU, and CNMI (5 percent) | 0.37 | 7.44 | 0.12 | 0.12 | 1.14 | 0.24 | 266.46 |
| Vessels in global commons (outside any territorial seas) (95 percent) | 7.12 | 141.27 | 2.36 | 2.36 | 21.59 | 4.59 | 5,062.72 |
| Total Alternative 1 | 7.49 | 148.70 | 2.48 | 2.48 | 22.73 | 4.83 | 5,329.18 |
| **Alternative 2—Years 1 to 4 (1,240 vessel movement hr/vessel)** | | | | | | | |

**Table E-1. Concentrations of Criteria Air Pollutant and Greenhouse Gas (as Carbon Dioxide Equivalency) Concentrations Emitted by All SURTASS LFA Sonar Vessels Annually during Execution of Training and Testing Activities Per Alternatives 1 and 2.**

| *Location of SURTASS LFA Sonar Vessels During Training and Testing Activities* | *Total Concentrations of Criteria Air Pollutants Emitted (tons per year)* | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | ***CO*** | ***$NO_x$*** | ***$PM_{10}$*** | ***$PM_{2.5}$*** | ***$SO_x$*** | ***VOC*** | ***$CO_2$ eq (metric tons)*** |
| Vessels in federal territorial seas of HI, GU, and CNMI (5 percent) | 0.52 | 10.24 | 0.17 | 0.17 | 1.57 | 0.33 | 367.12 |
| Vessels in global commons (outside any territorial seas) (95 percent) | 9.81 | 194.61 | 3.24 | 3.24 | 29.75 | 6.35 | 6,975.31 |
| Total Alternative 2 (Yr 1-4) | 10.33 | 204.85 | 3.41 | 3.41 | 31.32 | 6.68 | 7,342.43 |
| **Alternative 2—Years 5 to 7 (1,480 vessel movement hr/vessel)** | | | | | | | |
| Vessels in federal territorial seas of HI, GU, and CNMI (5 percent) | 0.62 | 12.23 | 0.20 | 0.20 | 1.87 | 0.40 | 438.18 |
| Vessels in global commons (outside any territorial seas) (95 percent) | 111.73 | 232.29 | 3.87 | 3.87 | 35.51 | 7.56 | 8,325.39 |
| Total Alternative 2 (Yr 5-7) | 12.35 | 244.52 | 4.07 | 4.07 | 37.38 | 7.96 | 8,763.56 |

Note: CO= carbon monoxide; $NO_x$=nitrogen oxides; $PM_{10}$=particulate matter under 10 microns; $PM_{2.5}$=particulate matter under 2.5 microns; $SO_x$=sulfur oxides; VOC=volatile organic compounds; $CO_2$ eq=carbon dioxide equivalency; GU=Guam; CNMI=Commonwealth of the Northern Marianas; HI=Hawaii

| Vessel Hours(Per Vessel) Per Year | No Action | Alternative 1 | Alternative 2 Preferred Years (1-4) & (5-7) |
|---|---|---|---|
| Testing and Training Hours Per Year | 0 | 900 | 1240 / 1480 |

**Per Vessel Type Vessel Emissions**

| T-AGOS 19 | CO (Tons Per Year) | NOx | PM10 | PM2.5 | SOx | VOC | CO2 | CO2e (MT) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Restricted Waters (Ocean Operations)* No Action Alternative | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| Restricted Waters (Ocean Operations)* Alt #1 | 2.14 | 30.01 | 0.64 | 0.64 | 4.95 | 1.33 | 1,301.45 | 1,180.45 |
| Restricted Waters (Ocean Operations)* Alt #2 Years 1-4 | 2.95 | 41.34 | 0.88 | 0.88 | 6.82 | 1.84 | 1,793.11 | 1,626.40 |
| Restricted Waters (Ocean Operations)* Alt #2 Years 5-7 | 3.53 | 49.35 | 1.05 | 1.05 | 8.14 | 2.19 | 2,140.17 | 1,941.20 |

| T-AGOS 23 | CO (Tons Per Year) | NOx | PM10 | PM2.5 | SOx | VOC | CO2 | CO2e (MT) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Restricted Waters (Ocean Operations)* No Action Alternative | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| Restricted Waters (Ocean Operations)* Alt #1 | 1.07 | 58.67 | 0.56 | 0.56 | 7.88 | 0.84 | 1,971.07 | 1,787.82 |
| Restricted Waters (Ocean Operations)* Alt #2 Years 1-4 | 1.48 | 80.83 | 0.77 | 0.77 | 10.86 | 1.16 | 2,715.70 | 2,463.22 |
| Restricted Waters (Ocean Operations)* Alt #2 Years 5-7 | 1.76 | 96.47 | 0.92 | 0.92 | 12.96 | 1.39 | 3,241.32 | 2,939.97 |

## EMISSIONS SUMMARY

| | Fraction of Total Vessel Training Hour by location |
|---|---|
| Vessel Training Ops (>12 Nm Open Ocean - OEIS - EO12114) | 0.95 |
| Vessel Training Ops (3 Nm > X > 12Nm - EIS - NEPA) | 0.05 |

| Primary Event Activity - SURTASS FLEET | No Action Alternative (Tons Per Year) Years 1-7 | | | | | | | MT/YR |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | CO | NOx | PM10 | PM2.5 | SOx | VOC | CO2 | CO2e |
| Vessel Training Ops Totals | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| Vessel Training Ops (>12 Nm Open Ocean - OEIS - EO12114) | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| Vessel Training Ops (3 Nm > X > 12Nm - EIS - NEPA) | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Primary Event Activity - SURTASS FLEET | Action Alternative 1 (Tons Per Year) Low T&T Years 1-7 | | | | | | | MT/YR |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | CO | NOx | PM10 | PM2.5 | SOx | VOC | CO2 | CO2e |
| Vessel Training Ops Totals | 7.49 | 148.70 | 2.48 | 2.48 | 22.73 | 4.83 | 5,875.42 | 5,329.18 |
| Vessel Training Ops (>12 Nm Open Ocean - OEIS - EO12114) | 7.12 | 141.27 | 2.36 | 2.36 | 21.59 | 4.59 | 5,581.65 | 5,062.72 |
| Vessel Training Ops (3 Nm > X > 12Nm - EIS - NEPA) | 0.37 | 7.44 | 0.12 | 0.12 | 1.14 | 0.24 | 293.77 | 266.46 |

| Primary Event Activity - SURTASS FLEET | Action Alternative 2 - Preferred (Tons Per Year) High T&T Years 1-4 | | | | | | | MT/YR |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | CO | NOx | PM10 | PM2.5 | SOx | VOC | CO2 | CO2e |
| Vessel Training Ops Totals | 10.33 | 204.85 | 3.41 | 3.41 | 31.32 | 6.68 | 8,095.03 | 7,342.43 |
| Vessel Training Ops (>12 Nm Open Ocean - OEIS - EO12114) | 9.81 | 194.61 | 3.24 | 3.24 | 29.75 | 6.35 | 7,690.28 | 6,975.31 |
| Vessel Training Ops (3 Nm > X > 12Nm - EIS - NEPA) | 0.52 | 10.24 | 0.17 | 0.17 | 1.57 | 0.33 | 404.75 | 367.12 |

| Primary Event Activity - SURTASS FLEET | Action Alternative 2 - Preferred (Tons Per Year) High T&T Years 5-7 | | | | | | | MT/YR |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | CO | NOx | PM10 | PM2.5 | SOx | VOC | CO2 | CO2e |
| Vessel Training Ops Totals | 12.35 | 244.52 | 4.07 | 4.07 | 37.38 | 7.96 | 9,661.83 | 8,763.56 |
| Vessel Training Ops (>12 Nm Open Ocean - OEIS - EO12114) | 11.73 | 232.29 | 3.87 | 3.87 | 35.51 | 7.56 | 9,178.74 | 8,325.39 |
| Vessel Training Ops (3 Nm > X > 12Nm - EIS - NEPA) | 0.62 | 12.23 | 0.20 | 0.20 | 1.87 | 0.40 | 483.09 | 438.18 |

**Figure E-1. Summary of Air Emission's Calculations for SURTASS LFA Sonar Vessels Per the Action Alternatives.**

# APPENDIX F: RECREATIONAL DIVE SITES IN THE SURTASS LFA STUDY AREA

This appendix is the supporting recreational dive site information for Chapter 3, Section 3.5.3.1. The recreational dive sites listed herein are located within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar and are listed by country and by region or water body within that country, if that information was available. Also provided, if the information was available for each dive site, is the maximum water depth.

For countries such as Indonesia, Malaysia, or Australia where only part of the country is located within the study area for SURTASS LFA sonar, dive sites were only compiled from the part of the country located in the study area. For Indonesia, this included sites from only the southern and western coastline or islands. For smaller Indonesian islands such as Bali or Lombok, dive sites only from off the southern coasts of the islands were included, as the northern portions of these islands were located in the Java Sea, which is not part of the study area. For Malaysia, dive sites along the peninsula and South China Sea coasts were included but no dive sites from the Celebes or Sulu seas were included, as that area of Malaysia is not located within the study area. For Australia, dive sites were compiled only from the waters off the State of Western Australia located within the study area and for the Christmas and Cocos/Keeling island groups, which are external territories of Australia located in the eastern Indian Ocean.

As noted in Section 3.5.3.1, no one source is available that can provide recreational dive sites worldwide or even for specific regions in the world. Three websites were particularly useful in compiling information on dive sites within the study area: Professional Association of Diving Instructor (PADI) travel destinations (<https://travel.padi.com/destinations/>), DiveSeven world dive atlas and logbook (<http://diveseven.com/atlas>), and the WannaDive world dive site atlas (<https://www.wannadive.net/>). Many other sources provided information on recreational dive sites in specific countries or in specific regions; all sources from which information was gleaned are listed by dive site. All source references cited herein are found at the end of the appendix.

The names of recreational dive sites and their general, descriptive locations are readily available, but information on the specific geographic locations (i.e., latitude and longitudes) of each dive site were typically not available. Two exceptions to this are notably for the Hawaiian and Mariana Islands. Geospatial information on the recreational dive sites in Hawaii and the Marianas are available because they were compiled and locations digitized by the Navy (DoN, 2005a and 2005b, 2015, 2018). Also available for Hawaii and the Marianas are recreational dive sites by geographic location only from NOAA's Habitat Sensitivity Index (HSI) (NOAA, 2001 and 2006). NOAA compiled these data on the locations of coastal resources, including recreational dive sites, that could potentially be at risk during an oil spill. These data are available from NOAA's Office of Response and Restoration. Since the NOAA HSI data have no place names associated with the geospatial data, they are not listed in the tabular information for Hawaii and the Marianas that follows. However, with this wealth of geospatial data, map figures of depicting the recreational dive sites in both these U.S. archipelago regions were prepared and are included herein (Figures F-1 and F-2) to provide a visual overview of the locations of dive sites in the Hawaiian and Mariana islands.

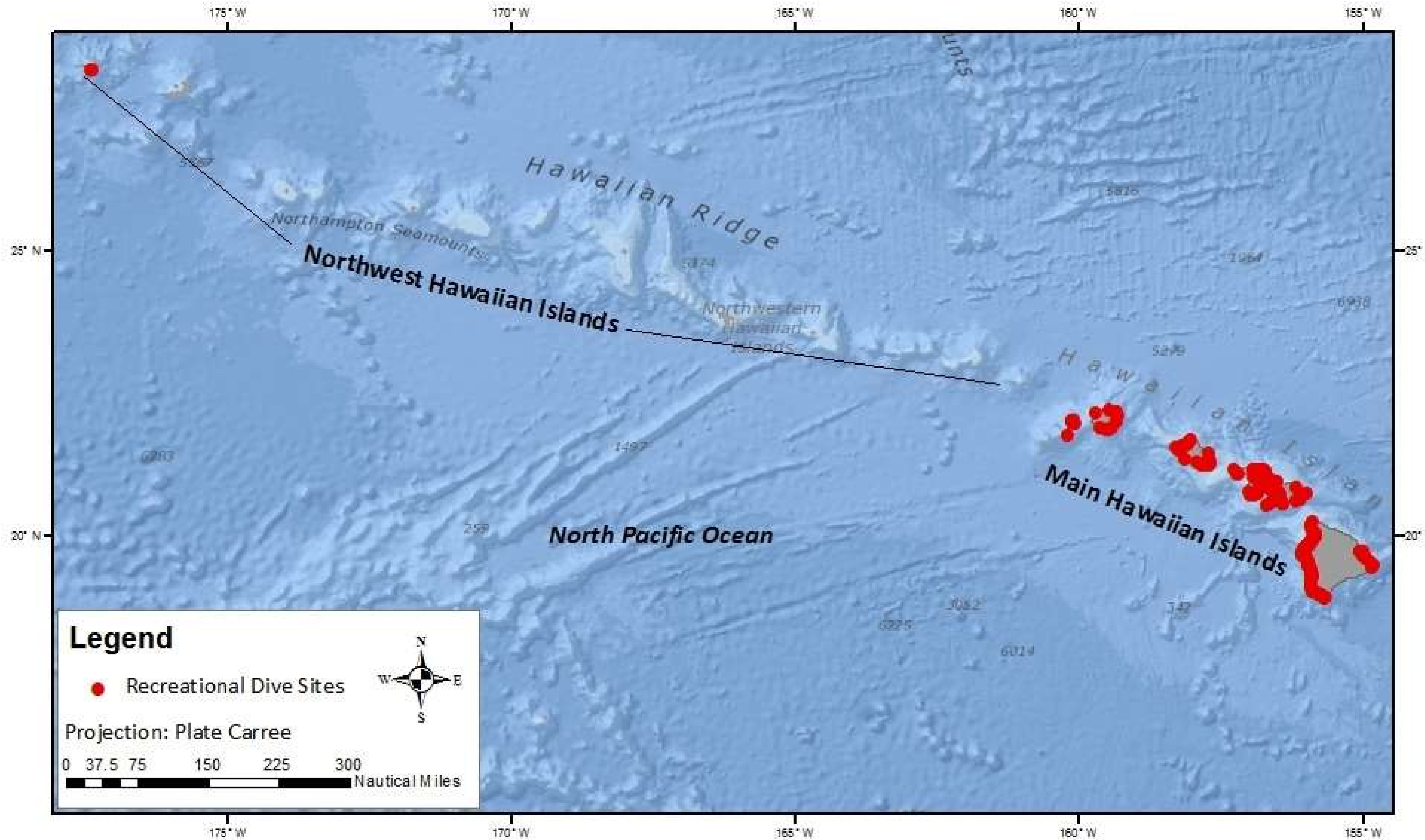



**Figure F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Hawaiian Islands (DoN, 2005 and 2018; NOAA, 2001).**

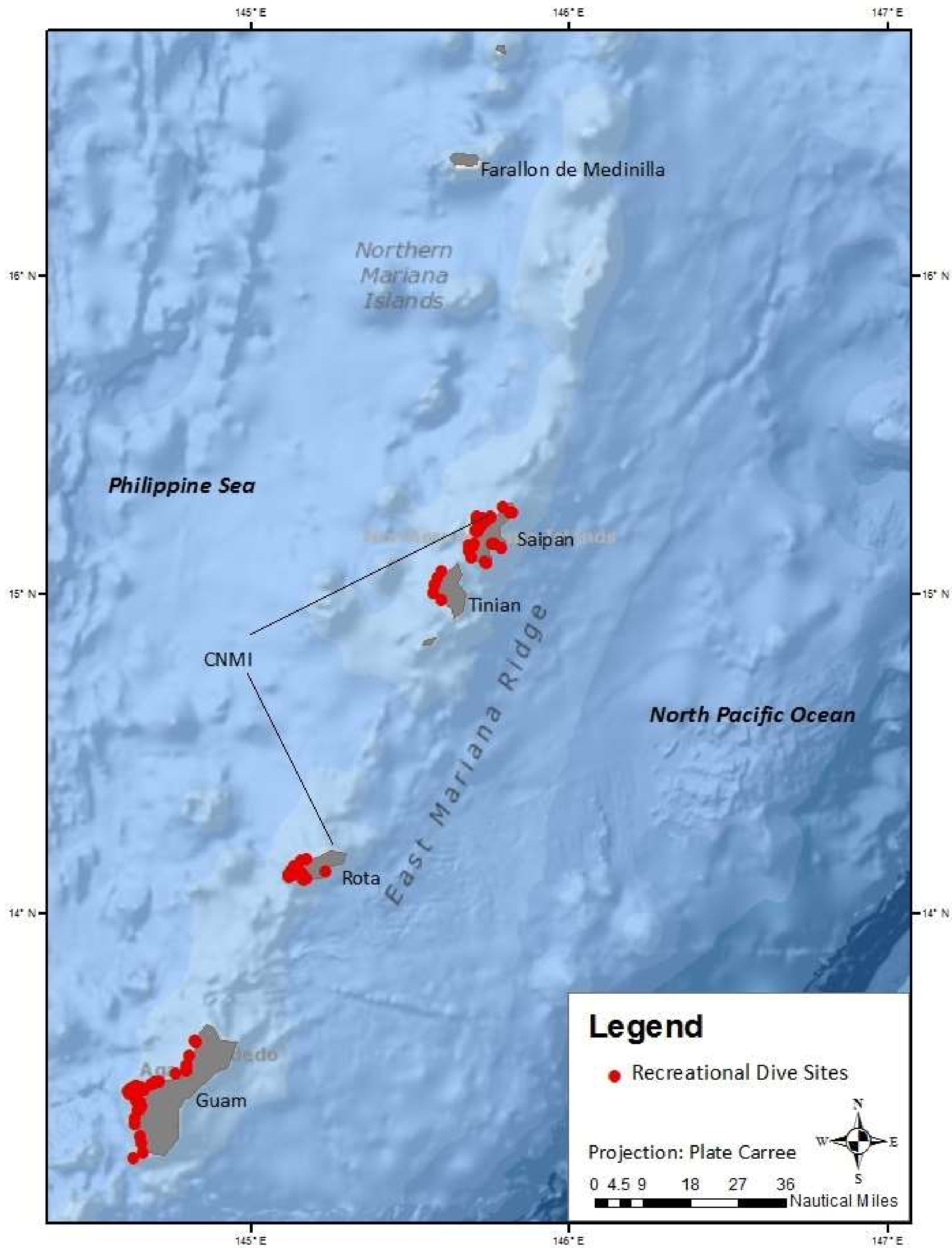



**Figure F-2. Recreational Dive Sites in the U.S. Mariana Islands (DoN, 2005 and 2015; NOAA, 2006).**

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| *Region or Island Chain* | *Dive Site Name* | *Maximum Water Depth (ft)* | *Reference(s)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | ***United States of America*** | | |
| Main Hawaiian Islands[1] | 100 Foot Hole | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | 80 foot Tank | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | 85 foot Pinnacle | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Arched Rock | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Auau Canyon | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Baby Barge | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Backside (East) | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Backside (Kahuko) | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Backside (Napali) | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Barge Harbor | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Big Bugga Ledge | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Capt. Cook Monument | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Center Reef | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Center Reef (North) | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Circus Circus | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Cook Point | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Corsair | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Dark Side (Deep) | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Eel Gardens | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Enenue | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | F4U Corsair | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | F6F Hellcat | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Fantasy Reef | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Fingers | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Firehouse | | DiveSeven, 2019 |
| | First Cathedral | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |

1 Only recreational dive sites for which place names are available are listed herein; recreational dive site data from NOAA's (2001) Habitat Sensitivity Index for the Hawaiian Islands includes only geographic coordinates with no associated place names.

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| *Region or Island Chain* | *Dive Site Name* | *Maximum Water Depth (ft)* | *Reference(s)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Fish Rain (Hole in the Wall) | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Fishbowl | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Five Graves | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Grand Canyon | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Halona Blow Hole | | DiveSeven, 2019 |
| | Hanauma Bay | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Hawaiian Paradise Park | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Itels | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Kahala Barge | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Kahe Beach Park | | DiveSeven, 2019 |
| | Kamanamana Point | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Kapoho | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Kauna Point | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Kawaihoa Point (South Point) | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Kewalo Pipe | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Key Hole | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | King's Landing | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Kumukahi | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | La Perouse Pinnacle | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | LCU | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Lehua Gardens | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Lighthouse | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Long Lava Tube | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Maalaea Mud Flats | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Mahukona | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Makaha Caverns | | DiveSeven, 2019 |
| | Mala Wharf | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Marty's Reef | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Menpachi Caves (Secret Cove) | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Mid-Reef | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| *Region or Island Chain* | *Dive Site Name* | *Maximum Water Depth (ft)* | *Reference(s)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Mike's Ridge | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Mokapu Island | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Molokini Crater | | DiveSeven, 2019 |
| | Monolith | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Niihau Arches | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Okala Tunnel | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Outhouse | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Paniau | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Pentagon | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Pohoiki Bay | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Portlock Wall | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Puhi Bay | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Puu Olai | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Pyramid Point | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Reef's End | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Reef's End Cave | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Richardson's | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Rod's Reach | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Sea Coves | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Second Cathedral | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Sergeant Major | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Sergeant Minor | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Shark Fin | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Shark's Cove | | DiveSeven, 2019 |
| | Skull Rock | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | St. Anthony Wreck | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Stairway to Heaven | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Stonewall | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Summer House | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Sunken Pier | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| *Region or Island Chain* | *Dive Site Name* | *Maximum Water Depth (ft)* | *Reference(s)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Tank and Landing Craft | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | The 110 | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | The Dark Side | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | The Dome (Pink Floyd) | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | The Missile | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | The Pinnacle | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Three-Room Cave | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Three Tables | | DiveSeven, 2019 |
| | Turtle Haven | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Turtles | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Ulua Cave | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Up Against the Wall | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Vertical Awareness | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | Wash Rock | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | WWII Tank | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| | YO 257 San Pedro | | DoN, 2005 and 2018 |
| Northwest Hawaiian Islands | French Frigate Shoals | | NOAA, 2001 |
| | Kamole (Laysan Island) | | Weiss, 2016 |
| | Kapou (Lisianski Island) | | Weiss, 2016 |
| | Kuaihelani (Midway Atoll) | | Weiss, 2016 |
| | Kamokuokamohoaliʻi (Maro Reef) | | Weiss, 2016 |
| Marinas Islands[2] | #1 Point | | Michael, 2004 |
| | A-Frame | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Alaguan Bay | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | American Tanker | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Apra Harbor | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Arizona | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |

2 Only recreational dive sites for which place names are available are listed herein; recreational dive site data from NOAA's (2006) Habitat Sensitivity Index for the Marianas Islands includes only geographic coordinates with no associated place names.

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| *Region or Island Chain* | *Dive Site Name* | *Maximum Water Depth (ft)* | *Reference(s)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Asan Cut abd Beach | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | B-29 | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Banzai Grotto | | DiveSeven, 2019a |
| | Barracuda Rock | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Bird Island | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Blue Hole | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Boy Scout | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Chensen | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Cocos Island Lagoon | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Cocos Wall | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Coral Garden | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Coral Gardens | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Coral Gardens | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Dimple | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Double Reef | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Dry Dock Reef | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Dump Coke | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Eagle Ray City | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Eel Gardens | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Family Beach | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Fingers Reef | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Fireworks | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Fish Eye Marine Park | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Fishing Base | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Fleming | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Fleming II | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Forbidden Island | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Fouha Bay | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Gaan Point | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | GabGab Beach | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| *Region or Island Chain* | *Dive Site Name* | *Maximum Water Depth (ft)* | *Reference(s)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | GabGab II Reef | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Grotto | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Gun Beach | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Hap's Reef | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Hidden Reef | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Hospital Point | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Ice Cream | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Jade Shoals | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Jerry's Reef | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Joanne's Reef | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Kitsugawa Maru | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Lao Lao | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Lao Lao 2 | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Lao Lao 3 | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Managaha North | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Managaha South | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Micro Beach | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Middle Ground | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Naftan Beach | | DiveSeven, 2019a |
| | Obyan Beach | | DiveSeven, 2019a |
| | Old Man by the Sea | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Oleai Beach | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Outer Cove Marina | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | PauPau | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Pearlman Tunnel | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Pete's Reef | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Pinatang | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Piti Bomb Holes | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Piti Channel | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Pona Point | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| *Region or Island Chain* | *Dive Site Name* | *Maximum Water Depth (ft)* | *Reference(s)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Pona Point II | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Public Works Beach | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Rizal Coral Heads | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Rock's Reef | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Sailigai Tunnel | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Seabee Junkyard | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Seaplane | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Senhanom Cave | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Senhanom Wall | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Shark Pit | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Shark's Hole | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Shoun Maru | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Shoun Maru II | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Site 1 | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Site 2 | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Site 3 | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Smiling Cove | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Smiling Cove Marina | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | SMS *Cormoran* | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Sponge Reef | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Sugar Dock | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Sunset Villa | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Tabletop | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Tanapag | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | The Amtrac | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | The Crevice | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | The Pinnacle | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Tinian Grotto | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Toguan Bay | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Tokia Maru | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| *Region or Island Chain* | *Dive Site Name* | *Maximum Water Depth (ft)* | *Reference(s)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Tumon Bay | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Twin Coral | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Wedding Cake Point | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | West Harbor | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Western Shoals | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Wing Beach | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| | Zero | | DoN, 2005a and 2015 |
| Pacific Remote Islands | Baker Island | | PADI, 2019n |
| | Wake Island/Atoll | | DiveBuddy, 2019 |
| **Republic of the Marshall Islands** | | | |
| | Arno Atoll | | WannaDive, 2019 |
| | Aneko Island | 90 | WannaDive, 2019 |
| | Bikini Atoll, USS *Saratoga* wreck | 164 to 330 | WannaDive, 2019 |
| | Bokolap Island | 20 | The Scuba Diving Resource, 2019 |
| | Ejit Island, The Parking Lot | 120 | The Scuba Diving Resource, 2019 |
| | Fourth Island | | The Scuba Diving Resource, 2019 |
| | Kalalen Pass/Island | | WannaDive, 2019 |
| | Kwajalein wreck | | The Scuba Diving Resource, 2019 |
| | Majuro Island | | |
| | Pinnacle #9 | | WannaDive, 2019 |
| | The Bridge | | The Scuba Diving Resource, 2019 |
| | Shark Street | | The Scuba Diving Resource, 2019 |
| | Rongelap Atoll | | PADI, 2019a; WannaDive, 2019 |
| | The Aquarium | 130 | The Scuba Diving Resource, 2019 |
| | The Grumman "Duck" | | The Scuba Diving Resource, 2019 |
| | The Riviera | 130 | The Scuba Diving Resource, 2019 |
| **Federated States of Micronesia** | | | |
| | Chuuk Island/Truk Lagoon (Ghost Fleet WW II wrecks) | | PADI, 2019b |
| | Betty Bomber | 59 | WannaDive, 2019a |

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| *Region or Island Chain* | *Dive Site Name* | *Maximum Water Depth (ft)* | *Reference(s)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Emily Flying Boat | 53 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Fujikawa Maru | 102 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Heian Maru | 118 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Hoki Maru | 174 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | IJN Fumitsuki | 125 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Kensho Maru | 115 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Kiyosumi Maru | 109 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Nippo Maru | 164 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Rio de Janiero Maru | 115 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | San Francisco Maru/The Million Dollar Wreck | 207 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Sankisan Maru | 131 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Shinkoku Maru | 125 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Unkai Maru | 131 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Yamagiri Maru | 112 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Yubai Maru | 118 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Kosrae Island | | |
| | Hiroshi Point | | ScubaDiving, 2019a |
| | Shark Island | 98 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Walung Coral Gardens | | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Pohnpei Island | | |
| | Ant Atoll | | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Areu Wall | | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Mwand Pass | | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Pakin Atoll | | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Phelong Pass | | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Yap Island | | |
| | 1:2 | 59 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Big Bend | 82 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Bird Island | 59 | WannaDive, 2019a |

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| *Region or Island Chain* | *Dive Site Name* | *Maximum Water Depth (ft)* | *Reference(s)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Choqol Mini Wall | | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Gabach Channel | 105 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Gapow Reef | 82 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Kurrekurredutt Dropoff | 98 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Laurie Marie wreck | 62 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Lionfish Wall | 148 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Main Channel | 131 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Manta Ridge | 82 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Mi'l Channel | 82 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Peelack Channel | 125 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Semakai Reef | 125 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Stammtisch | 49 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Sunrise Reef | 62 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | The Barge | 105 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Vertigo | 131 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Valley of the Rays | 59 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| | Yap Cavern | | Deeper Blue, 2019a |
| | Yap Corner | 98 | WannaDive, 2019a |
| **Republic of Palau** | | | |
| | Arakababesang Island | 13 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Cap Island | | |
| | Turtle Cove | | DiveSeven, 2019b |
| | Eil Malk island | | |
| | Jellyfish Lake (Ongeim'l Tketau) | 82 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Koror State and Island | | PADI, 2019c |
| | Amatsu Maru wreck | | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Chandelier Cave | | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Chuyo Maru wreck | 98 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Clam City, Euidelchol Island | 26 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Helmet | 98 | WannaDive, 2019b |

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| *Region or Island Chain* | *Dive Site Name* | *Maximum Water Depth (ft)* | *Reference(s)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Metkerel a Ikesul/Island | | |
| | Bichu Maru | 79 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Ngemelis Island | | PADI, 2019c |
| | Blue Corner Wall | 102 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Blue Holes | 115 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Dexter's Wall | 148 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Fern's Wall | 115 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | German Channel/Wall | 82 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | New Drop Off | | DiveSeven, 2019b |
| | Ngemelis Coral Gardens | 92 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Ngemelis Wall | 230 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Peleliu Island | | |
| | Peleliu Corner | 131 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Peleliu Cut | 131 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Peleliu Express | 131 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Southwest Islands | | |
| | Dongosarao Island | 131 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Fana Island | 131 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Helen Reef | 115 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Merir Island | 131 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Merir Cave | 46 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Puro Island, Pulo Anna | 131 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Tobi Island | 131 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Amatsu Maru | 135 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Barnum's Wall | | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Big Drop Off | 131 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Buoy #6 Wreck | 76 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Cemetery Reef | | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Coastal Patrol Boat wreck | 26 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Devil Fish City | | WannaDive, 2019b |

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| *Region or Island Chain* | *Dive Site Name* | *Maximum Water Depth (ft)* | *Reference(s)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Hafa Dai | 66 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Iro Maru | 34 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Jake Seaplane | | Deeper Blue, 2019 |
| | Lighthouse Channel | 33 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Lost Lake | 13 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | LST | 108 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Lukes Bank | 49 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Malakal Harbor Reef | 27 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Mandarinfish Lake | 13 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Mysterious Cave | 16 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Nagisan Maru | 50 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Ngargol Island | 27 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Ngedebus Coral Garden | 98 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Ngedebus Corner/Wall | 131 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Ngerchong Island/Channel | 49 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Ryuko Maru wreck | 85 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Sam's Restaurant Wall | 39 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Sata | | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Shark City | 82 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Short Dropoff | 98 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Siaes Cave/Corner | | DiveSeven, 2019b; WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Teshio Maru | 102 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Ulong Channel | 85 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | USS *Perry* | | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Virgin Blue Hole | 82 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | West Passage | 66 | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Yellow wall | | WannaDive, 2019b |
| | Zero Zeke | | WannaDive, 2019b |
| **Russian Federation** | | | |
| | Kamchatka | | Travel Triangle, 2019 |

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| *Region or Island Chain* | *Dive Site Name* | *Maximum Water Depth (ft)* | *Reference(s)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Avachinsky Bay | | Russia Beyond, 2019 |
| | Starichkov Island | | Russia Beyond, 2019 |
| | Russian Bay | | Russia Beyond, 2019 |
| | Moneron Island | | PADI, 2019d |
| **People's Republic of China** | | | |
| Hainan/Sanya | Yalong Bay | | WannaDive, 2019c |
| | Baifu Bay | | deepblu, 2019 |
| | Wuzhizhou Island, Haitang Bay | | XtremeSport, 2019 |
| Hong Kong/Guangdong-Shenzhen | Big Blue/Green Needle | | WannaDive, 2019c |
| | Gui Wan | | deepblu, 2019 |
| | Damei Shawan | | deepblu, 2019 |
| | Da Shu Keng, Daya Bay | | deepblu, 2019 |
| | Da La Jia, Daya Bay | | deepblu, 2019 |
| | Kung Chau | | South China Diving Club, 2019 |
| | Sai Kung | | South China Diving Club, 2019 |
| | Breaker Reef and Tung Ping Chau, Tai Po | | South China Diving Club, 2019 |
| | ~100 Hong Kong area dive sites, but no names provided | | South China Diving Club, 2019 |
| **Republic of Korea** | | | |
| Korea Strait | Jeju Moon/Cheju Island | | PADI, 2019e |
| | Bum-Sum/ Beomseom Island | | Scuba Diving Review, 2019 |
| | Mun-Sum/Munseom Island | | Scuba Diving Review, 2019 |
| | Sup-Sum/Seopsum/Seopseom (Forest) Island | | Scuba Diving Review, 2019 |
| | Nam Hae Region | | Dive Zone, 2019 |
| | Geojae | | Dive Zone, 2019 |
| | Tongyoung | | Dive Zone, 2019 |
| | Namhae | | Dive Zone, 2019 |
| | Mijo | | Dive Zone, 2019 |

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| *Region or Island Chain* | *Dive Site Name* | *Maximum Water Depth (ft)* | *Reference(s)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Sangju | | Dive Zone, 2019 |
| | Pusan/Busan | | |
| | Taejongdae | | Scuba Diving Review, 2019 |
| Sea of Japan | Uljin | | Scuba Diving Review, 2019 |
| | Deco Point | | Scuba Diving Review, 2019 |
| | Iron Tower | | Scuba Diving Review, 2019 |
| | Kangwong Province (Dong Hae & Gangneung) | | Scuba Diving Review, 2019 |
| | Young Jin Beach | | Scuba Diving Review, 2019 |
| | Munam Beach | | Scuba Diving Review, 2019 |
| | Bongpo Beach | | Scuba Diving Review, 2019 |
| | Chuam Beach | | Scuba Diving Review, 2019 |
| | Ingu Beach | | Scuba Diving Review, 2019 |
| | Nagok sunken vessel No. 1 | | Scuba Diving Review, 2019 |
| | Nagok sunken vessel No. 2 | | WannaDive, 2019d |
| | Nagok Wreck | | WannaDive, 2019d |
| | Flower Garden | | WannaDive, 2019d |
| | Sungsunaegi | | WannaDive, 2019d |
| | Pohang | | Scuba Diving Review, 2019 |
| **Republic of China (Taiwan)** | | | |
| Luzon Strait/Baschi Channel | Banana Bay | | DiveSeven, 2019c |
| | Beauty Hole | | WannaDive, 2019e |
| | Ceasars Rock | | WannaDive, 2019e |
| | Ho-Jie | | WannaDive, 2019e |
| | Houbihu Feed Fish Area | | WannaDive, 2019e |
| | Isolated Reef | | WannaDive, 2019e |
| | Nan Wan | | DiveSeven, 2019c |
| | Sail Rock | | WannaDive, 2019e |
| | Sand Island | | WannaDive, 2019e |
| | Seven Stars Reef | | WannaDive, 2019e |

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| *Region or Island Chain* | *Dive Site Name* | *Maximum Water Depth (ft)* | *Reference(s)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Turtle Bay | | DiveSeven, 2019c |
| Philippine Sea | Ba-Dai-Wan, Orchid (Lan Yu) Island | | PADI, 2019f; WannaDive, 2019e |
| | Green (Lutao Hsiang) Island | | WannaDive, 2019e |
| | Artificial Reefs by Steel | | WannaDive, 2019e |
| | Artificial Reefs by Wire Pole | | WannaDive, 2019e |
| | Big Mushroom | | WannaDive, 2019e |
| | Gateway Rock | | WannaDive, 2019e |
| | Great White Sand | | WannaDive, 2019e |
| | Shark Point/Gun Swei Bi | | DiveSeven, 2019c |
| | Shih-Lang | | WannaDive, 2019e |
| Taiwan Strait/East China Sea | Dungji Island | | PADI, 2019f |
| | Liuqiu Island | | |
| | Xiao Liu Qiu | | PADI, 2019f |
| | Turtle Cavern | | WannaDive, 2019e |
| | Penghu/Pescadores Islands | | Scuba Diving Review, 2019a |
| East China Sea | Long Dong Bay | | WannaDive, 2019e |
| | Secret Garden | | WannaDive, 2019e |
| | **Japan** | | |
| Hokkaido | Shiretoko Peninsula | | PADI, 2019g |
| Honshu | Chinsen Point, Atami, Izu Peninsula | 115 | WannaDive, 2019f |
| | Izu Oceanic Park, Izu Peninsula | 59 | WannaDive, 2019f |
| | Osezaki Bay, Surego Bay | | Deeper Blue, 2019b |
| | Shirahama Beach | | DiveSeven, 2019d |
| | Stella Polaris Wreck | 246 | WannaDive, 2019f |
| Kyushu | Iki Islands | | Kairi Murakami, 2019 |
| | Izu Ocean Park | 98 | DiveSeven, 2019d |
| | Miyake Island | | Diveoclock, 2019 |
| | Mikomoto Island | | Diveoclock, 2019 |
| | Kuwashima Point | | Dive Advisor, 2019 |
| | Osetto Beach | | PADI, 2019g |

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| *Region or Island Chain* | *Dive Site Name* | *Maximum Water Depth (ft)* | *Reference(s)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Sasebo Wreck | 49 | DiveSeven, 2019d |
| Shikoku Island | | | Tribloo, 2019 |
| Ryukyu Archipelago | Aguni Island, Fudensachi | | PADI, 2019g |
| | Ishigaki Island | 53 | WannaDive, 2019f |
| | Manta Scramble | 39 | WannaDive, 2019f |
| | Middle Book | 46 | WannaDive, 2019f |
| | Sand Pool | | DiveSeven, 2019d |
| | Ukon Danchi | 66 | WannaDive, 2019f |
| | Kerama Islands | 56 | WannaDive, 2019f |
| | Dragon Lady | 66 | WannaDive, 2019f |
| | Gishippu Island | 59 | WannaDive, 2019f |
| | Kame Paradise | 66 | WannaDive, 2019f |
| | Nozaki | 92 | WannaDive, 2019f |
| | Kume Island, Tonbara Point | | PADI, 2019g |
| | Miyako Island, Yabiji | 33 | PADI, 2019g |
| | Okinawa Islands | | |
| | Diamond Beach | 56 | DiveSeven, 2019d |
| | Kadena North Marker | 69 | WannaDive, 2019f |
| | Maeda Point | 121 | WannaDive, 2019f |
| | Mama-san Beach | 53 | DiveSeven, 2019d |
| | Onnason beach | 13 | WannaDive, 2019f |
| | Oodo Beach | 9 | WannaDive, 2019f |
| | Sunabe | 102 | WannaDive, 2019f |
| | Toilet Bowl | 118 | DiveSeven, 2019d |
| | USS *Emmons* wreck | 148 | PADI, 2019g |
| | Yosuji-no-ne | 79 | PADI, 2019g |
| | Zamami Cove | 43 | WannaDive, 2019f |
| | Yeyama Islands | | PADI, 2019g |
| Bonin/Ogasawara Islands | Chichijima/Daimi Maru wreck | 108 | Dive Advisor, 2019 |
| Izu Archipelago | Miyakejima/Island | 49 | Deeper Blue, 2019b |

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| *Region or Island Chain* | *Dive Site Name* | *Maximum Water Depth (ft)* | *Reference(s)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| Tsushima Island | | | Dive Advisor, 2019 |
| Yonaguni Island | Yonaguni Monument | 105 | WannaDive, 2019f |
| **Socialist Republic of Vietnam** | | | |
| Con Dao Islands | Fish Highway | 98 | PADI, 2019h; Top Vietnam, 2019 |
| Da Nang | Cu Lao Cham | 66 | WannaDive, 2019g |
| Hoi An | Hon Mo, Cham Island | 115 | Adventure in You, 2019 |
| | Hon Nhan | | Adventure in You, 2019 |
| Ho Trau Nam/Three Kings Island | | 98 | Adventure in You, 2019; PADI, 2019h |
| | Whale Island Bay | 164 | Adventure in You, 2019 |
| Nha Trang | Big Wall | 131 | DiveSeven, 2019e |
| | Debbie's Beach | 59 | WannaDive, 2019g |
| | Electric Nose | 148 | WannaDive, 2019g |
| | Hon Mun Marine Park | | PADI, 2019h; WannaDive, 2019g |
| | Lighthouse Bay Reef | 59 | WannaDive, 2019g |
| | Madonna Rock | 82 | PADI, 2019h; WannaDive, 2019g |
| | Mama Hanh | 53 | WannaDive, 2019g |
| | Moray Beach | 59 | PADI, 2019h; WannaDive, 2019g |
| | Murray's Beach | 43 | WannaDive, 2019g |
| | Whale Island House Reef | 49 | WannaDive, 2019g |
| Phú Quốc | Dry Island (Hon Ko) | | Adventure in You, 2019; DiveSeven, 2019e |
| | Nudibranch Gardens/Heaven | | Adventure in You, 2019; WannaDive, 2019g |
| | Turtle island | | WannaDive, 2019g |
| | Pineapple Island | 36 | DiveSeven, 2019e |
| | Whale Island | | Adventure in You, 2019 |
| | White Rock | 131 | Adventure in You, 2019 |
| Vin Hy Bay | | | Top Vietnam, 2019 |
| **Kingdom of Cambodia** | | | |
| Koh Kon | | 46 | PADI, 2019i; WannaDive, 2019h |
| Koh Prins | | 125 | PADI, 2019i; WannaDive, 2019h |
| | Anemone Garden | | Adventure in You, 2019a |

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| ***Region or Island Chain*** | ***Dive Site Name*** | ***Maximum Water Depth (ft)*** | ***Reference(s)*** |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Drop Off | 98 | Adventure in You, 2019a |
| | Shark Point | | Adventure in You, 2019a |
| Koh Rong/Koh Rong Saloem | Back Door | | Adventure in You, 2019a; PADI, 2019i |
| | Buddha Reef | | Adventure in You, 2019a |
| | Cobia Point | 59 | WannaDive, 2019h |
| | Condor Reef | 121 | WannaDive, 2019h |
| | Khmer Garden | | Adventure in You, 2019a |
| | Koh Ta Kiev | | Adventure in You, 2019a |
| | Nudibranch Heaven | | Adventure in You, 2019a |
| | Rocky Bay | | deepblu, 2019a |
| | Sponge Garden | 56 | WannaDive, 2019h |
| | Two Tone Garden | 39 | WannaDive, 2019h |
| | Victoria's Secret Garden | 33 | Divescover, 2019 |
| Koh Sdach Archipelago | | | Adventure in You, 2019a |
| Koh Ta | | | Adventure in You, 2019a |
| | Shark Island | | Adventure in You, 2019a |
| Koh Tang | | 66 | WannaDive, 2019h |
| | Explosion Reef | 59 | PADI, 2019i; WannaDive, 2019h |
| | Fly By Reef | 72 | WannaDive, 2019h |
| | Giraffe Lookout | | Adventure in You, 2019a |
| | Sting Ray Alley | | Adventure in You, 2019a |
| | The Steps | 72 | WannaDive, 2019h |
| | Three Bears | 53 | WannaDive, 2019h |
| Koh Wai (Poulo Wai) | | 131 | WannaDive, 2019h |
| **Republic of Singapore** | | | |
| | Kusu Island | 66 | PADI, 2019j |
| | Labrador Reef | 33 | Discoverg, 2019 |
| | Pulau Jong Island | | PADI, 2019j |
| | Pulau Salu Island | 33 | Discoverg, 2019 |
| Pulau Hantu Island | Pulau Hantu South | 98 | WannaDive, 2019i |

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| *Region or Island Chain* | *Dive Site Name* | *Maximum Water Depth (ft)* | *Reference(s)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Raffles Lighthouse Jetty | | WannaDive, 2019i |
| Pulau Subar Laut | Sisters Island Marine Park | | Discoverg, 2019 |
| Singapore Wrecks | Sisters Wreck (MV *Iran Sarai*) | 59 | WannaDive, 2019i |
| | Sudong Wreck | 49 | WannaDive, 2019i |
| **Kingdom of Thailand** | | | |
| | East of Eden | 112 | Scuba Travel, 2019 |
| | HTMS Sattakut Wreck | | Dive Seven, 2019f |
| | Koh Dok Mai | | Dive Seven, 2019f |
| | Koh Racha, Staghorn Reef | | WannaDive, 2019j |
| | Pattaya | | WannaDive, 2019j |
| | Richelieu Rock | 118 | WannaDive, 2019j |
| Koh Chang Marine National Park | Anemone Life | 43 | WannaDive, 2019j |
| | Hin Kuak Ma | 53 | WannaDive, 2019j |
| | Hin Luk Bat | 59 | WannaDive, 2019j |
| | Koh Mai Si Lek | 66 | WannaDive, 2019j |
| | Koh Maphring | 46 | WannaDive, 2019j |
| | Koh Raet | 49 | WannaDive, 2019j |
| | Koh Rang | 33 | WannaDive, 2019j |
| Koh Lanta/Krabi | Anemone Reef | | WannaDive, 2019j |
| | Hin Daeng (Red Rock) | 230 | WannaDive, 2019j |
| | Hin Muang (Purple Rock) | 197 | WannaDive, 2019j |
| | King Cruiser Wreck | | Phuket, 2019 |
| | Koh Haa (Twin Cathedrals) | 82 | WannaDive, 2019j |
| | Koh Phi Phi | | WannaDive, 2019j |
| | Koh Rok Nok | 76 | WannaDive, 2019j |
| | Shark Point | | WannaDive, 2019j |
| Koh Lipe, Adang Archipelago | Adang Corner | 82 | WannaDive, 2019j |
| | Jabang | 49 | WannaDive, 2019j |
| | Koh Jang | 82 | WannaDive, 2019j |
| | Stonehenge | 49 | WannaDive, 2019j |

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| *Region or Island Chain* | *Dive Site Name* | *Maximum Water Depth (ft)* | *Reference(s)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| Koh Phangan | Koh Kra | 98 | WannaDive, 2019j |
| | Sail Rock (Hin Bai) | | WannaDive, 2019j |
| Koh Phi Phi | Koh Bida Nok | 108 | Dive Seven, 2019f |
| | Koh Binda Nai | 98 | Dive Seven, 2019f |
| Koh Tao | Chumphon Pinnacle | | Adventure in You, 2019b |
| | Japanese Gardens | 49 | WannaDive, 2019j |
| | Sail Rock | | Adventure in You, 2019b |
| | Twins | | Dive Seven, 2019f |
| | White Rock | 98 | Dive Seven, 2019f |
| Similan Islands | Breakfast Bend | 112 | Scuba Travel, 2019a |
| | Koh Bon | | PADI, 2019k |
| | Koh Tachai | | WannaDive, 2019j |
| **Republic of the Union of Myanmar** | | | |
| | Burma Banks | | PADI, 2019l |
| | Fan Forest Pinnacle | | Dive Zone, 2019a |
| Mergui Archipelago | Black Rock | 115 | WannaDive, 2019k |
| | High Rock | 115 | WannaDive, 2019k |
| | North East Little Torres | | Sunrise Divers, 2019 |
| | North Twin Plateau | 115 | WannaDive, 2019k |
| | Three Islets | 131 | WannaDive, 2019k |
| | Western Rocky Island | 98 | WannaDive, 2019k |
| **Malaysia** | | | |
| | Pinnacle II, Johor Marine Park | | WannaDive, 2019m |
| Kota Kinabalu, Tunku Abdul Rahman National Park | Edgell Patches/ | | WannaDive, 2019m |
| | Ron Reef | | WannaDive, 2019m |
| | The Rock | | WannaDive, 2019m |
| Miri | *Atago Maru* Wreck | | WannaDive, 2019m |
| | Miri-Sibuti Coral Reefs National Park | | Dive Seven, 2019g |
| Perhentian Island | Police Wreck | | WannaDive, 2019m |

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| *Region or Island Chain* | *Dive Site Name* | *Maximum Water Depth (ft)* | *Reference(s)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Serenggeh | | WannaDive, 2019m |
| | Sugar Wreck | | WannaDive, 2019m |
| | Terumbu Tiga | | WannaDive, 2019m |
| | Tokong Laut/Temple of the Sea | | WannaDive, 2019m |
| Redang Island | Mak Cantik | | WannaDive, 2019m |
| | Pulau Ekor Tebu | | WannaDive, 2019m |
| | Pulau Lima/Big Seamount | | WannaDive, 2019m |
| Semblian Islands, Pulau Saga | White Rock | | WannaDive, 2019m |
| Spratly Islands/Layang Layang Island | Crack Reef | 164 | WannaDive, 2019m |
| | D Wall | 164 | WannaDive, 2019m |
| | Dogtooth Lair | 164 | WannaDive, 2019m |
| | Gorgonian forest | 131 | WannaDive, 2019m |
| | Sharks Cave | 164 | WannaDive, 2019m |
| | Snapper ledge | 164 | WannaDive, 2019m |
| | The Point | 164 | WannaDive, 2019m |
| | The Valley | 164 | WannaDive, 2019m |
| | Wreck Point | 164 | WannaDive, 2019m |
| Tenggol Island | Tanjung Pasir | | WannaDive, 2019m |
| Tioman Island | Batu Malang | 98 | Dive Seven, 2019g |
| | Fan Canyon | 131 | Dive Seven, 2019g |
| | Pulau Chebeh | 148 | Dive Seven, 2019g |
| | Pulau Labas | 115 | Dive Seven, 2019g |
| | Pulau Soyak | | WannaDive, 2019m |
| | Salang Bay | 66 | Dive Seven, 2019g |
| | Teluk Kador | | WannaDive, 2019m |
| | Tiger Reef/Rocks | | WannaDive, 2019m |
| **Nation of Brunei** | | | |
| | Ampa/Victoria Reefs, Tutong | | PADI, 2019m |
| | American Wreck/USS *Salute* AM 29 | 98 | WannaDive, 2019l |
| | Australian Wreck/ SS *De Klerk* | 108 | PADI, 2019m; WannaDive, 2019l |

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| ***Region or Island Chain*** | ***Dive Site Name*** | ***Maximum Water Depth (ft)*** | ***Reference(s)*** |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Cement Wreck/M.V. *Tung Hwang* | 105 | WannaDive, 2019l |
| | Rig Reef | 65 | PADI, 2019m |
| | *Yuho Maru* Wreck | 181 | WannaDive, 2019l |
| **Republic of Indonesia (Southern Only)** | | | |
| Bali | Amuk Bay | | |
| | Bias Tugal | 98 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Gili Biaha | 98 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Gili Tepekong, The Canyon | 82 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Mimpang | 66 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Padangbai Blue Lagoon | 59 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Padangbai House Reef | 148 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Tanah Ampo Jetty | 53 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Tanjung Jipun | 98 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Channel Point | 66 | Dive Seven, 2019h |
| | Penida Bay/Penida Island | 164 | Dive Seven, 2019h |
| | Selang North | 164 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Submarine Reef | 33 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| Lombok | Cannibal Rock, Belongas | | Dive Zone, 2019 |
| | Cathedral (Gili Anak Ewok) | | Dive Zone, 2019b |
| | Gili Nanggu | | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Gili Renggit (West and East) | | Dive Zone, 2019 |
| | Gili Sarang, Belongas Bay | | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Magnet (BatuKapal), Belongas Bay | | Dive Zone, 2019b |
| | Shark Point | | Dive Seven, 2019h |
| Nusa Penida | Buyuk | 102 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Batu Abah | 102 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Batu Meling | 82 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Canyons | 108 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Crystal Bay | 115 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Ental Point | 102 | WannaDive, 2019n |

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| *Region or Island Chain* | *Dive Site Name* | *Maximum Water Depth (ft)* | *Reference(s)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Gamat | 49 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Jangka Point | 98 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Lenbongan Bay | 33 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Malibu Point | 56 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Manta Point | 82 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Nusa Penida/Nusa Lembongan | | PADI, 2019o |
| | Sental | 102 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Toyapakeh | 98 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| Pulau Weh, (Aceh) Sumatra | Batee Meuduro | 115 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Batee Tokong | 82 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Gapang | 53 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Shark Plateau | 148 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | Sophie Rickmers Wreck | 213 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| | The Canyon | 115 | WannaDive, 2019n |
| **Commonwealth of Australia** | | | |
| Christmas Islands | *Eidsvold* Wreck | 60 | Arrival Guides, 2019 |
| | Perpendicular Wall | 118 | Arrival Guides, 2019 |
| | Rhoda Wall | 100 | Arrival Guides, 2019 |
| | The Morgue | 82 | Arrival Guides, 2019 |
| | Thundercliffe Cave | | PADI, 2019p |
| Cocos/Keeling Islands | Cabbage Patch | 59 | Dive Global, 2019; PADI, 2019p |
| | Cannons | | Dive Global, 2019 |
| | Cologne Gardens | 115 | Dive Global, 2019 |
| | Direction Island | | Dive Global, 2019 |
| | Garden of Eden | | Dive Global, 2019 |
| | Manta Ray Corner | | Dive Global, 2019 |
| | Pulu Keeling National Park | | Dive Global, 2019 |
| | Shark Alley | | Dive Global, 2019 |
| | The Towers | | Dive Global, 2019 |
| | Two Caves | | Dive Global, 2019 |

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| ***Region or Island Chain*** | ***Dive Site Name*** | ***Maximum Water Depth (ft)*** | ***Reference(s)*** |
|---|---|---|---|
| Western Australia | Abrolhos Islands | | WannaDive, 2019o |
| | Batavia shipwreck | | WannaDive, 2019o |
| | North Island | | WannaDive, 2019o |
| | Cod Hole | | WannaDive, 2019o |
| | Exmouth Gulf | | WannaDive, 2019o |
| | Navy Pier | | WannaDive, 2019o |
| | Sponge Gardens | | WannaDive, 2019o |
| | Lively Shipwreck | | WannaDive, 2019o |
| | Ningaloo Reef | | PADI, 2019t |
| | 5 Mile Reef | | WannaDive, 2019o |
| | Outter Reef Bommies | | WannaDive, 2019o |
| | Turquoise Bay | | WannaDive, 2019o |
| | V in the Wall | | WannaDive, 2019o |
| **People's Republic of Bangladesh** | | | |
| St Martin's Island (Narikel Jinjira/ Coconut Island) | Borshiller | | Bangladesh.com, 2019; Dive and Travel the World, 2019 |
| | Cheradip | | Dive and Travel the World, 2019 |
| | St. Martin´s Jetty | | Dive and Travel the World, 2019 |
| **Republic of India** | | | |
| | Rameshwaram | | Holidify, 2019 |
| Andaman/Nicobar Islands | Campbell Shoal | 82 | WannaDive, 2019p |
| | Cinque Island, North Point | | Holidify, 2019 |
| | Corruption Rock | | Holidify, 2019 |
| | Dixon's Pinnacle | | Dive Seven, 2019i |
| | Havelock Islands | | PADI, 2019q |
| | Lighthouse | | PADI, 2019q |
| | Washing Machine | 328 | WannaDive, 2019p |
| | Johnny's Gorge | 131 | Dive Seven, 2019i |
| | Mahatma Gandhi Marine National Park | | Thrillophilia, 2019 |

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| *Region or Island Chain* | *Dive Site Name* | *Maximum Water Depth (ft)* | *Reference(s)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Minerva Ledge | 82 | Scuba Travel, 2019b |
| | MV *Mars* Wreck | 82 | Dive Seven, 2019i |
| | Neil Island | | PADI, 2019q |
| | Bus Stop | | PADI, 2019q |
| | Junction | | PADI, 2019q |
| | K Rock | | PADI, 2019q |
| | Margherita's Mischief | | PADI, 2019q |
| | North Bay Island | | Thrillophilia. 2019 |
| | Pilot Reef | 85 | Dive Seven, 2019i |
| | The Wall | 131 | Dive Seven, 2019i |
| Pondicherry | 4 Corners | 59 | Holidify, 2019 |
| | Aravind's Wall | 115 | Dive Site, 2019 |
| | Coral Sharks Reef | 76 | Holidify, 2019 |
| | Danny's Eel Sanctuary | | Dive Report, 2019 |
| | Temple Reef | 59 | Holidify, 2019 |
| | The Hole | 98 | Holidify, 2019 |
| Chennai | Covelong Beach | | Holidify, 2019 |
| | Twin Towers | | WannaDive, 2019p |
| Goa | Grand Island | | |
| | Jetty | | Holidify, 2019 |
| | Suzy Wreck | 33 | WannaDive, 2019p |
| | Sail Rock | | WannaDive, 2019p |
| Karnataka | Devbagh Island | | Thrillophilia. 2019 |
| | Netrani Island/Pigeon Island | | Nanak Flights, 2019 |
| | Pebble Beach | | WannaDive, 2019p |
| Kerala | Cochin | | Thrillophilia. 2019 |
| | Kovalam | | Holidify, 2019 |
| | Varkala Beach | | Thrillophilia. 2019 |
| Lakshadweep Archipelago | Aggati Island | | Holidify, 2019 |
| | Bangaram Island | | PADI, 2019q |

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| *Region or Island Chain* | *Dive Site Name* | *Maximum Water Depth (ft)* | *Reference(s)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Kadmat Island/Cardamom Islands | | PADI, 2019q |
| | Kavaratti Island | | PADI, 2019q |
| | Laccadives | | Holidify, 2019 |
| | Manta Point/Grand Canyon | | PADI, 2019q |
| | Minicoy Point | | PADI, 2019q |
| | Princess Royal Wreck | | PADI, 2019q |
| | The Wall | | PADI, 2019q |
| **Democratic Socialist Republic of Sri Lanka** | | | |
| | Anchorpoint Reef | | Dive Seven, 2019j |
| | Barrakuda Reef, Mount Lavinia | | Dive Seven, 2019j |
| | Boiler Wrecks | | Dive Seven, 2019j |
| | British Sergeant Wreck, Passikudah | 79 | PADI, 2019r |
| | Cargo Wreck | | Dive Seven, 2019j |
| | Dakune Gala | | Dive Seven, 2019j |
| | Dispa Rock | | Dive Seven, 2019j |
| | Fish Rock | | Dive Seven, 2019j |
| | Goda Gala Diyamba, Unawatuna | | PADI, 2019r |
| | HMS *Hermes*, Uga Bay | | Dive Seven, 2019j |
| | Mahala Gala | | Dive Seven, 2019j |
| | Navy Reef | | WannaDive, 2019q |
| | Panadura Nilkete Wreck | | Dive Seven, 2019j |
| | Pigeon Rock, Pigeon Island National Park | | WannaDive, 2019q |
| | Swami Rock | 76 | Dive Seven, 2019j |
| | Taprobane Reefs | | Dive Seven, 2019j |
| Laccadive Sea | Lagoon Reef | 39 | Dive Seven, 2019j |
| | Mada Gala | 85 | Dive Seven, 2019j |
| | Siri | 82 | Dive Seven, 2019j |
| | The Conch | 69 | Dive Seven, 2019j |
| | Y-Gala | 92 | Dive Seven, 2019j |

**Table F-1. Recreational Dive Sites in the Study Area for SURTASS LFA Sonar by Country and Region and Including Maximum Water Depth, When Available.**

| *Region or Island Chain* | *Dive Site Name* | *Maximum Water Depth (ft)* | *Reference(s)* |
|---|---|---|---|
| Matara | Palapana Rock | 43 | Dive Seven, 2019j |
| | Yala Rock | 72 | Dive Seven, 2019j |
| **Republic of the Maldives** | | | |
| | Ari Atoll (Alifu) | | PADI, 2019s |
| | Dhigurah Thila | | Dive Seven, 2019k |
| | Maamigili Beru | | Dive Seven, 2019k |
| | Maaya Thila | | Scuba Travel, 2019c |
| | Mushimasmigili | | Dive Seven, 2019k |
| | Rangali Madivaru | | Dive Seven, 2019k |
| | Baa Atoll | | PADI, 2019s |
| | Dhaalu Atoll | | PADI, 2019s |
| | Faafu Atoll | | PADI, 2019s |
| | Fuvahmulah Atoll | | PADI, 2019s |
| | Haa Alif Atoll | | PADI, 2019s |
| | Huvadhoo Atoll | | PADI, 2019s |
| | Ihavandhippolhu Atoll | | PADI, 2019s |
| | Laamu Atoll | | PADI, 2019s |
| | Lhaviyani Atoll | | PADI, 2019s |
| | Kuredu Express | 82 | Dive Seven, 2019k |
| | The Shipyard | 82 | Dive Seven, 2019k |
| | Malé Atoll | | Dive Seven, 2019k |
| | Bandos Reef | 82 | Dive Seven, 2019k |
| | HP Reef | 131 | Dive Seven, 2019k |
| | Nassimo Thila | 118 | Dive Seven, 2019k |
| | Kuda Giri Wreck, S. Malé Atoll | 131 | Dive Seven, 2019k |
| | Meemu Atoll | | PADI, 2019s |
| | Noonu Atoll | | PADI, 2019s |
| | Raa Atoll | | PADI, 2019s |
| | Thaa Atoll | | PADI, 2019s |
| | Vaavu Atoll | | PADI, 2019s |

## F-1 Literature Cited


Adventure in You. (2019). Diving in Vietnam: Best dive sites you can’t miss. Retrieved from <https://www.adventureinyou.com/vietnam/best-diving-in-vietnam/>.

Adventure in You. (2019a). Best Cambodia diving: Dive sites you can’t miss. Retrieved from <https://www.adventureinyou.com/cambodia/best-diving-cambodia/>.

Adventure in You. (2019b). Best scuba diving in Thailand: Dive sites you can’t miss. Retrieved from <https://www.adventureinyou.com/thailand/best-scuba-diving-in-thailand/>.

Arrival Guides. (2019). Christmas Island—scuba diving. Retrieved from <https://www.arrivalguides.com/en/Travelguides/Oceania/Australia/AUSTRALIASINDIANOCEANISLANDS/doandsee>.

Bangladesh.com. (2019). Scuba diving in Bangladesh. Retrieved from <https://www.bangladesh.com/blog/scuba-diving-in-bangladesh/>.

deepblu. (2019). Diving in China. Retrieved from <https://www.deepblu.com/planet/country/CN/China>.

deepblu. (2019a). Diving in Rocky Bay. Retrieved from <https://www.deepblu.com/planet/divespot/Rocky%20Bay/KH/59f01fca6dddf779fcea96f4/5705d57363ed3f1d2f5b94f3>.

Deeper Blue. (2019). Top 9 dives sites in Micronesia. Retrieved from <https://www.deeperblue.com/top-9-dive-sites-micronesia/>.

Deeper Blue. (2019b). Top 5 dive sites in Japan. Retrieved from <https://www.deeperblue.com/top-4-dive-sites-japan/>.

Department of the Navy (DoN). (2005). Marine resources assessment for the Hawaiian Islands operating area. Pacific Division, Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Pearl Harbor. Contract #N62470-02-D-9997, CTO 0026. Prepared by Geo-Marine, Inc., Plano, TX.

DoN. (2005a). Marine resources assessment for the Marianas operating area. Pacific Division, Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Pearl Harbor. Contract #N62470-02-D-9997, CTO 0027. Prepared by Geo-Marine, Inc., Plano, TX.

DoN. (2015). *Mariana Islands training and testing activities final environmental impact statement/Overseas environmental impact statement*. Pearl Harbor, HI: Chief of Naval Operations, Department of the Navy. <https://mitt-eis.com/Documents/2015-Mariana-Islands-Training-and-Testing-EIS-OEIS-Documents/Final-EIS-OEIS>.

DoN. (2018a). *Final environmental impact statement/overseas environmental impact statement for Hawaii-southern California training and testing*. Pearl Harbor, HI: Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Pacific. <https://www.hstteis.com/Documents/2018-Hawaii-Southern-California-Training-and-Testing-Final-EIS-OEIS/Final-EIS-OEIS>.

Discoverg. (2019). 6 absolutely beautiful dive spots in Singapore that you can actually dive in! Retrieve from <https://discoversg.com/2016/08/30/dive-spots-marine-life-singapore/>.

Dive Advisor. (2019). Scuba diving in Japan. Retrieved from <https://diveadvisor.com/japan>.

DiveBuddy. (2019). Wake Island—United States Minor Outlying Islands. Retrieved from <http://www.divebuddy.com/divesite/4415/wake-island-united-states-minor-outlying-islands/>.

Dive and Travel the World. (2019). Bangladesh. Retrieved from <http://www.diveandtraveltheworld.com/wordpress/destinations/asia/bangladesh/>.

Dive Global. (2019). Best diving in Cocos (Keeling) Islands. Retrieved from <https://www.diveglobal.com/diving/cocos-keeling-islands/>.

Divescover. (2019). Victoria's Secret Garden, Sihanoukville, Cambodia. Retrieved from <http://divescover.com/dive-site/victoria-s-secret-garden/40151>.

Diveoclock. (2019). Izu Oceanic Park—Tips for relaxed diving at this awesome spot in Japan. Retrieved from <https://www.diveoclock.com/destinations/Asia/Japan/Izu/>.

Dive Report. (2019). Diving Pondicherry. Retrieved from <http://www.divereport.com/locations/south-east-asia/india/pondicherry/>.

DiveSeven. (2019). Hawaii. Retrieved from <http://diveseven.com/region/view/271/Hawaii>.

DiveSeven. (2019a). Northern Mariana Islands. Retrieved from <http://diveseven.com/region/view/149/northern-mariana-islands>.

DiveSeven. (2019b). Palau. Retrieved from <http://diveseven.com/region/view/185/palau>.

DiveSeven. (2019c). Taiwan. Retrieved from <http://diveseven.com/region/view/226/Taiwan>.

DiveSeven. (2019d). Japan. Retrieved from <http://diveseven.com/region/view/113/japan>.

DiveSeven. (2019e). Vietnam. Retrieved from <http://diveseven.com/region/view/239/Vietnam>.

Dive Seven. (2019f). Thailand. Retrieved from <http://diveseven.com/region/view/216/Thailand>.

Dive Seven. (2019g). Malaysia. Retrieved from <http://diveseven.com/region/view/158/Malaysia>.

Dive Seven. (2019h). Indonesia. Retrieved from <http://diveseven.com/region/view/100/Indonesia>.

Dive Seven. 2019i). India. Retrieved from <http://diveseven.com/region/view/104/india>.

Dive Seven. 2019j). Sri Lanka. Retrieved from <http://diveseven.com/region/view/130/sri-lanka>.

Dive Seven. (2019k). Maldives. Retrieved from <http://diveseven.com/region/view/155/Maldives>.

Dive Zone. (2019). Best diving sites in South Korea. Retrieved from <https://divezone.net/diving/south-korea>.

Dive Zone. (2019a). Best Burma liveaboard reviews 2019. Retrieved from <https://divezone.net/burma-liveaboard-reviews-2013>.

Dive Zone. (2019b). Belongas dive sites—Dive Belongas. Retrieved from <http://www.divezone-lombok.com/belongas-bay-dive-sites/>.

Holidify. (2019). Best places for scuba diving In India. Retrieved from <https://www.holidify.com/pages/scuba-diving-in-india-59.html>.

Kairi Murakami. (2019). Iki and its stunningly beautiful ocean. Retrieved from <https://www.kairi-iki.com/en/sightseeing/>.

Michael, M. (2004). Dive site coordinates for Rota. Received December 2004 from Mr. Mark Michael, Dive Rota, Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands; Marine resources assessment for the Marianas operating area.

Nanak Flights. (2019). Five places you must travel for scuba diving in India. Retrieved from <https://www.nanakflights.com/Five-places-you-must-travel-for-scuba-diving-in-India.asp>.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA). (2001). Environmental sensitivity index (ESI) atlas: Hawaii. Office of Response and Restoration. Retrieved from <https://response.restoration.noaa.gov/esi_download#Hawaii>.

Phuket. (2019). King Cruiser wreck diving, Phuket dive sites. Retrieved from <http://www.phuket.com/diving/divingsites/kingcruiser.htm>.

Professional Association of Dive Instructors (PADI). (2019). Travel; SCUBA diving destinations. Retrieved from <https://travel.padi.com/destinations/>.

PADI. (2019a). Diving in the Marshall Islands. Retrieved from <https://travel.padi.com/d/marshall-islands/>.

PADI. (2019b). Diving in the Federated States of Micronesia. Retrieved from <https://travel.padi.com/d/federated-states-of-micronesia/>.

PADI. (2019c). Diving in Palau. Retrieved from <https://travel.padi.com/d/palau/>.

PADI. (2019d). Diving in Russia. Retrieved from <https://travel.padi.com/d/russia/>.

PADI. (2019e). Diving in South Korea. Retrieved from <https://travel.padi.com/d/south-korea/>.

PADI. (2019f). Diving in Taiwan. Retrieved from <https://travel.padi.com/d/taiwan/>.

PADI. (2019g). Diving in Japan. Retrieved from <https://travel.padi.com/d/japan/>.

PADI. (2019h). Diving in Vietnam. Retrieved from <https://travel.padi.com/d/vietnam/>.

PADI. (2019i). Diving in Cambodia. Retrieved from <https://travel.padi.com/d/cambodia/>.

PADI. (2019j). Diving in Singapore. Retrieved from <https://travel.padi.com/d/singapore/>.

PADI. (2019k). Diving in Thailand. Retrieved from <https://travel.padi.com/d/thailand/>.

PADI. (2019l). Diving in Myanmar (Burma). Retrieved from <https://travel.padi.com/d/myanmar-burma/>.

PADI. (2019m). Diving in Brunei. Retrieved from <https://travel.padi.com/d/brunei/>.

PADI. (2019n). Diving in the United States minor outlying islands. Retrieved from <https://travel.padi.com/d/united-states-minor-outlying-islands/>.

PADI. (2019o). Diving in Indonesia. Retrieved from <https://travel.padi.com/d/indonesia/>.

PADI. (2019p). Diving in the Christmas Island. Retrieved from <https://travel.padi.com/d/christmas-island/>.

PADI. (2019q). Diving in India. Retrieved from <https://travel.padi.com/d/india/>.

PADI. (2019r). Diving in Sri Lanka. Retrieved from <https://travel.padi.com/d/sri-lanka/>.

PADI. (2019s). Diving in the Maldives. Retrieved from <https://travel.padi.com/d/maldives/>.

PADI. (2019t). Diving in Western Australia. Retrieved from <https://travel.padi.com/d/western-australia/>.

Russia Beyond. (2019). 5 best places for scuba diving in Russia. Retrieved from <https://www.rbth.com/travel/328292-diving-sites-russia>.

ScubaDiving. (2019a). Where is the best scuba diving in Thailand? Retrieved from <https://www.scubadiving.com/travel/micronesia/best-micronesia#page-4>.

Scuba Diving Review. (2019). Best diving in South Korea. Retrieved from <https://www.diveglobal.com/diving/south-korea/>.

Scuba Diving Review. (2019a). Best diving in Taiwan. Retrieved from <https://www.diveglobal.com/diving/taiwan/>.

Scuba Travel. (2019). Where is the best scuba diving in Thailand? Retrieved from <https://www.scubatravel.co.uk/thailand/best-diving.html>.

Scuba Travel. (2019b). Diving in India. Retrieved from <https://www.scubatravel.co.uk/pacific/india-diving.html>.

Scuba Travel. (2019c). Scuba diving the Maldives. Retrieved from <https://www.scubatravel.co.uk/pacific/maldives-diving.html>.

South China Diving Club. (2019). Diving Hong Kong. Retrieved from <https://www.scdc.org.hk/diving>.

Sunrise Divers. (2019). Myanmar dive sites. Retrieved from <https://www.sunrise-divers.com/dive-sites/myanmar/>.

The Scuba Diving Resource. (2019). Marshall Islands—Dive sites. Retrieved from <https://scubadivingresource.com/destinations/pacific-south-pacific/marshall-islands/dive-sites/>.

Thrillophilia. (2019). Scuba diving places in India. Retrieved from <http://www.thrillophilia.com/blog/scuba-diving-places-in-india/>.

Top Vietnam. (2019). 7 best places for scuba diving in Vietnam. Retrieved from <http://tops vietnam.com/5-best-places-scuba-diving-vietnam/>.

Travel Triangle. (2019). Scuba diving in Russia: Discover the underwater secrets of deep blue Pacific Ocean. Retrieved from <https://traveltriangle.com/blog/scuba-diving-in-russia/>.

Tribloo. (2019). Japan—Discover the best dive centers in Japan. Retrieved from <https://www.tribloo.com/en/destination/83/diving/japan.html>.

WannaDive. (2019). Dive sites, Australia & Pacific: Marshall Islands. Retrieved from <https://www.wannadive.net/spot/Australia_Pacific/Marshall_Islands/index.html>.

WannaDive. (2019a). Dive sites, Australia & Pacific: Federal State of Micronesia. Retrieved from <https://www.wannadive.net/spot/Australia_Pacific/Micronesia/>.

WannaDive. (2019b). Dive sites, Australia & Pacific: Republic of Palau. Retrieved from <https://www.wannadive.net/spot/Australia_Pacific/Palau/>.

WannaDive. (2019c). Dive sites, Asia: China. Retrieved from <https://www.wannadive.net/spot/Asia/China/index.html>.

WannaDive. (2019d). Dive sites, Asia: South Korea. Retrieved from <https://www.wannadive.net/spot/Asia/South_Korea/index.html>.

WannaDive. (2019e). Dive sites, Asia: Taiwan. Retrieved from <https://www.wannadive.net/spot/Asia/Taiwan/>.

WannaDive. (2019f). Dive sites, Asia: Japan. Retrieved from <https://www.wannadive.net/spot/Asia/Japan/>.

WannaDive. (2019g). Dive sites, Asia: Vietnam. Retrieved from <https://www.wannadive.net/spot/Asia/Vietnam/>.

WannaDive. (2019h). Dive sites, Asia: Cambodia. Retrieved from <https://www.wannadive.net/spot/Asia/Cambodia/>.

WannaDive. (2019i). Dive sites, Asia: Singapore. Retrieved from <https://www.wannadive.net/spot/Asia/Singapore/>.

WannaDive. (2019j). Dive sites, Asia: Thailand. Retrieved from <https://www.wannadive.net/spot/Asia/Thailand/>.

WannaDive. (2019k). Dive sites, Asia: Burma. Retrieved from <https://www.wannadive.net/spot/Asia/Burma/>.

WannaDive. (2019l). Dive sites, Asia: Brunei. Retrieved from <https://www.wannadive.net/spot/Asia/Brunei/>.

WannaDive. (2019m). Dive sites, Asia: Malaysia. Retrieved from <https://www.wannadive.net/spot/Asia/Malaysia/index.html>.

WannaDive. (2019n). Dive sites, Asia: Indonesia. Retrieved from <https://www.wannadive.net/spot/Asia/Indonesia/index.html>.

WannaDive. (2019o). Dive sites, Australia: Western Australia. Retrieved from <https://www.wanna dive.net/spot/Australia_Pacific/Australia/WA/index.html>.

WannaDive. (2019p). Dive sites, Asia: India. Retrieved from <https://www.wannadive.net/spot/Asia/India/index.html>.

WannaDive. (2019q). Dive sites, Asia: Sri Lanka. Retrieved from <https://www.wannadive.net/spot/Asia/Sri_Lanka/>.

Weiss, K.R. (2016). The far atolls. Retrieved from (http://hanahou.us/issues/19.4/feat-nw-hawn-islands.html).

XtremeSport. (2019). Scuba diving at an exotic tropical location in China. Retrieved from <http://xtremesport4u.com/extreme-water-sports/scuba-diving-at-an-exotic-tropical-location-in-china/>.